

Oracle® Revenue Management and Billing  
Version 2.7.0.1.0

Insurance User Guide

Revision 8.8

F16609-01

February, 2019





---

---

# Notices

---

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Version 2.7.0.1.0 Insurance User Guide

E98019-01

## **Copyright Notice**

Copyright © 2019, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

## **Trademark Notice**

Oracle, Java, JD Edwards, PeopleSoft, and Siebel are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

## **License Restrictions Warranty/Consequential Damages Disclaimer**

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure, and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or de-compilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

## **Warranty Disclaimer**

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

## **Restricted Rights Notice**

If this software or related documentation is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

## **U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS**

Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, documentation, and/or technical data delivered to U.S. Government end users are “commercial computer software” or “commercial technical data” pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, documentation, and/or technical data shall be subject to license terms and restrictions as mentioned in Oracle License Agreement, and to the extent applicable, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software--Restricted Rights (June 1987). No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

## **Hazardous Applications Notice**

This software is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use of this software. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software in dangerous applications.

## **Third Party Content, Products, and Services Disclaimer**

This software and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third party content, products, or services.



# Contents

<b>About this Document.....</b>	<b>37</b>
Intended Audience.....	37
Organization of the Document.....	37
Conventions.....	40
Related Documents.....	41
Change Log.....	41
 <b>Chapter I: Self-Funded Customer Management.....</b>	 <b>45</b>
Self-Funded Entities.....	46
Parent Customer.....	46
Bill Groups.....	46
Bill Group's Account.....	47
Self-Funded Policy.....	48
Price Items.....	48
Pricing Rule Types.....	48
Pricing Rules.....	49
Price Assignments.....	50
 <b>Chapter II: Customer 360° View.....</b>	 <b>51</b>
Prerequisites.....	52
Customer 360° View.....	52
360° Search.....	52
Searching for a Person.....	60
Searching for an Account.....	61
Searching for a Policy.....	62
Viewing the 360° Information of a Person.....	63
Viewing the 360° Information of an Account.....	65
Viewing the 360° Information of a Policy.....	66
Viewing the Pricing Information of a Parent Customer.....	67
Viewing the Pricing Information of a Bill Group.....	68
Customer 360° Information.....	69
Customer 360° Information - Person.....	71
Person Information.....	72
Person Characteristics.....	74
Child Persons.....	74
Person Hierarchy.....	75
Person Billing Hierarchy.....	76
Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters.....	79
Bill Group Sorting.....	81
Customer Contacts.....	82
Customer 360° Information - Account.....	83
Bill Group Accounts.....	84
Account Information.....	85
Account Characteristics.....	86
Administrative Contracts.....	86
Auto Pay Details.....	87
Account Financial and Collections Summary.....	87
Billing and Adjustment Summary.....	88
Open Bills.....	89

Billed Vs Paid.....	90
Timeline.....	93
Customer 360° Information - Policy.....	96
Policy Information.....	97
Packaged Savings Code.....	98
Policy Persons.....	98
Policy Plans.....	98
Customer 360° Information - Pricing.....	99
Parent Customer Pricing Rules.....	101
Bill Group Policy Pricing Rule Summary.....	104
Parent Customer Pricing Rule Summary.....	105
Bill Group Policy Information.....	105
Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules.....	107
Bill Group Pricing Groups.....	111
Pricing Rule Approval Transactions.....	112
Defining a Sort ID for a Bill Group.....	113
Editing a Sort ID of a Bill Group.....	115
Deleting a Sort ID of a Bill Group.....	116
Creating a Bill Group Sorting Upload Request.....	117
Defining the Derivation and Pricing Parameters for a Bill Group and Sort ID Combination.....	119
Editing the Derivation and Pricing Parameters of a Bill Group and Sort ID Combination..	122
Creating a Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters Upload Request.....	123
Viewing the Pricing Rules Defined for a Policy of a Bill Group.....	125
Viewing the Pricing Groups of a Bill Group.....	126
Renewing a Self-Funded Policy of a Bill Group.....	127
Viewing the Bill Details.....	129
Bill Information.....	131
Bill Information.....	131
Adjustments.....	132
Settlement Activities.....	132
Bill Segment Summary.....	132
Bill Segment Details.....	133
Hold Details.....	134
Offset Details.....	134
Refund and Write Off Details.....	135

## **Chapter III: Pricing Management..... 137**

Types of Pricing.....	139
Multi Parameter Based Pricing.....	139
Price Assignment Search Mechanism.....	143
Person Relationship Type Sequence.....	145
Pricing Eligibility.....	147
Persisting Interest Rate for Rate Type Price Items.....	148
Persisting Fee for Fee Type Price Items.....	149
Repricing.....	149
Two-Dimensional Pricing.....	154
Types of Price Item Bundle.....	154
Regular Bundle.....	154
Ratio Bundle.....	156
Phantom Bundle.....	158
Parameter.....	160
Parameter (Used for Searching).....	160
Search Parameter.....	160
Searching for a Parameter.....	163

Defining a Parameter.....	163
Editing a Parameter.....	169
Deleting a Parameter.....	175
Copying a Parameter.....	176
Viewing the Parameter Details.....	182
Parameter (Used for Viewing).....	182
Parameter.....	183
Price Item.....	185
Price Item (Used for Searching).....	186
Search Price Item.....	186
Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle.....	188
Defining a Price Item or Price Item Bundle.....	189
Associating a Parameter with a Price Item or Price Item Bundle.....	192
Defining Valid Predefined Parameter Values for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle.....	194
Associating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle with a Division.....	195
Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle..	196
Defining Division-Specific SQIs for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle.....	198
Defining a Characteristic for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle.....	199
Copying a Price Item or Price Item Bundle.....	200
Viewing the Price Item or Price Item Bundle Details.....	203
Price Item (Used for Viewing).....	204
Price Item.....	205
Parameters.....	206
Predefined Parameter Values for Price Item.....	207
Divisions.....	207
Division-Specific Characteristics for Price Item.....	208
Division-Specific SQIs for Price Item.....	208
Price Item Relationship.....	209
Editing a Price Item or Price Item Bundle.....	210
Price Item Relationship.....	213
Assigned Price Items.....	214
Viewing the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Associated with a Parent Price Item.....	216
Viewing the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Added to a Price Item Bundle.....	216
Associating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle with a Parent Price Item.....	216
Adding a Price Item or Price Item Bundle to a Price Item Bundle.....	219
Setting the Parameters for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle.....	221
Defining Relationship-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle.....	223
Disassociating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle from a Parent Price Item.....	224
Removing a Price Item or Price Item Bundle from a Price Item Bundle.....	225
Filtering the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Associated with a Parent Price Item.....	225
Filtering the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Added to a Price Item Bundle.....	226
Price Item Assignments.....	227
Active Price Lists where Price Item is Assigned.....	227
Persons to whom Price Item is Assigned.....	227
Accounts where Price Item is Assigned.....	228
Viewing the Price Lists, Persons, or Accounts where a Price Item is Assigned.....	228
Price List.....	229
Price List (Used for Searching).....	230
Search Price List.....	230
Price List Price Items.....	233
Searching for a Price List.....	234
Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List.....	235

Defining a Price List.....	236
Defining the Price List Hierarchy.....	238
Defining a Characteristic for a Price List.....	240
Associating a Price List with a Division.....	241
Defining Eligibility Criteria for a Price List.....	242
Copying a Price List.....	246
Viewing the Price List Details.....	248
Price List (Used for Viewing).....	249
Price List.....	249
Eligibility Criteria.....	250
Price List Price Items.....	251
Editing a Price List.....	253
Price List Price Item Pricing.....	255
Price List Price Items.....	255
Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing.....	257
Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List.....	263
Removing a Price Item Pricing from a Price List.....	264
Viewing a Price Item Pricing Details.....	265
Editing a Price Item Pricing of a Price List.....	265
Assigning a Price Item to a Price List.....	269
Copying a Price Item Pricing.....	273
Price List Assignment.....	278
Price List Assignments.....	279
Price List Price Items.....	281
Search Price List for Assignment.....	283
Viewing Price Lists Assigned to an Account.....	285
Viewing Price Lists Assigned to a Person.....	286
Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List of an Account or a Person.....	288
Assigning a Price List to an Account.....	289
Assigning a Price List to a Person.....	292
Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment.....	295
Editing the Price List Assignment Details of an Account.....	296
Editing the Price List Assignment Details of a Person.....	299
Price List Assignments.....	302
Persons to whom Price List is Assigned.....	302
Accounts where Price List is Assigned.....	303
Viewing Persons and Accounts where Price List is Assigned.....	304
Entities Eligible for Price List Assignment.....	304
Eligible Accounts.....	305
Eligible Persons.....	305
Assigning a Price List to One or More Eligible Accounts.....	306
Assigning a Price List to One or More Eligible Persons.....	308
Defining a Characteristic for a Price List Assignment.....	309
Pricing (Account).....	310
Effective Price Assignments for Account.....	311
Search Price Item.....	316
Viewing Effective Price Assignments of an Account.....	321
Filtering Effective Price Assignments of an Account.....	322
Exporting Effective Price Assignments of an Account.....	323
Copying a Price Item Pricing.....	326
Viewing a Price Item Pricing.....	327
Editing a Price Item Pricing of an Account.....	329
Overriding a Price Item Pricing of an Account.....	333
Assigning a Price Item to an Account.....	337
Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing.....	341
Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing.....	342

Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing.....	343
Pricing (Person).....	344
Effective Price Assignments for Person.....	345
Search Price Item.....	350
Viewing Effective Price Assignments of a Person.....	355
Filtering Effective Price Assignments of a Person.....	356
Exporting Effective Price Assignments of a Person.....	357
Copying a Price Item Pricing.....	360
Viewing a Price Item Pricing.....	361
Editing a Price Item Pricing of a Person.....	363
Overriding a Price Item Pricing of a Person.....	367
Assigning a Price Item to a Person.....	371
Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing.....	375
Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing.....	376
Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing.....	377
Price Item Pricing (Used for Viewing).....	378
Price Item Pricing.....	379
Rate and Price Component Summary.....	382
Two-Dimensional Pricing.....	382
Defining a Price Item Pricing.....	383
Editing a Price Item Pricing.....	388
Deleting a Price Item Pricing.....	395
Submitting a Price Item Pricing.....	398
Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component of an Account.....	401
Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component of a Person.....	403
Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component of a Price List.....	405
Editing a Price Component of a Rate Component.....	406
Deleting a Price Component of a Rate Component.....	407
Defining a Tiering Criteria for a Price Component.....	408
Editing a Tiering Criteria of a Price Component.....	410
Deleting a Tiering Criteria of a Price Component.....	413
Defining a Pricing Eligibility Criteria for a Price Component.....	413
Editing a Pricing Eligibility Criteria of a Price Component.....	417
Deleting a Pricing Eligibility Criteria of a Price Component.....	421
Editing the Two-Dimensional Pricing.....	421
Overriding a Price Item Pricing.....	422
Pricing Simulation.....	424
Search Pricing.....	424
Simulation - Effective Pricing Information.....	428
Searching Pricing Simulation for Account or Price List.....	433
Viewing Pricing Simulation.....	433
Exporting Effective Price Simulation.....	434
Eligible Price List.....	436
Search Eligible Price Lists.....	437
Rate Definition.....	438
Rate Schedule Components.....	439
Create/Edit Rate Definition.....	440
Defining Tiering Setup of a Rate Component.....	441
Editing Tiering Setup of a Rate Component.....	442
Deleting Tiering Setup of a Rate Component.....	443
Tiering Criterion.....	444
Tiering Criterion List.....	444
Edit Tiering Criterion.....	444
Create Tiering Criterion.....	445
Creating a Tiering Criterion.....	445
Editing a Tiering Criterion.....	446

Variance Parameter.....	447
Filtering the Variance Parameters.....	447
Defining a Variance Parameter.....	448
Editing a Variance Parameter.....	448
Deleting a Variance Parameter.....	449
Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence.....	449
Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Price Item.....	450
Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division.....	451
Searching Relationship Type Sequence for a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters.....	452
Defining Relationship Type Sequence for a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters.....	453
Editing Relationship Type Sequence of a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters.....	455
Deleting Relationship Type Sequence of a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters.....	456
Viewing Relationship Type Sequence of a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters.....	457
Searching Relationship Type Sequence for a Division.....	457
Defining Relationship Type Sequence for a Division.....	458
Editing Relationship Type Sequence of a Division.....	459
Deleting Relationship Type Sequence of a Division.....	460
Viewing Relationship Type Sequence of a Division.....	461

## **Chapter IV: Division.....463**

Division Search.....	464
Searching for a Division.....	464
Division.....	465
Defining a Division.....	467
Associating Access Groups with a Division.....	470
Associating Price Items with a Division.....	471
Associating Price Lists with a Division.....	472
Associating Languages with a Division.....	473
Associating Invoice Currencies with a Division.....	474
Associating Person Identifier Types with a Division.....	475
Associating Algorithms with a Division.....	475
Defining Characteristics for a Division.....	479
Associating Bill Messages with a Division.....	480
Associating Party Char Types with a Division.....	481
Associating Bill Cycles with a Division.....	482
Associating Account Identifier Types with a Division.....	483
Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item.....	484

## **Chapter V: Approval Workflow..... 487**

Most Commonly Used Terms.....	489
Approval Workflow Process.....	489
Prerequisites.....	491
Approval Transaction.....	493
Search Approval Transaction.....	493
Approval Transaction Log.....	497
Searching for an Approval Transaction.....	498
Viewing the Log of an Approval Transaction.....	498
Comparison: New versus Existing.....	499
Approving an Approval Transaction.....	499

Rejecting an Approval Transaction.....	500
Canceling an Approval Transaction.....	501
Modifying an Approval Transaction.....	502
Withdrawing an Approval Transaction.....	503
Resolving an Approval Transaction.....	503
Approve Price Assignment.....	504
Search.....	504
List of Price Assignments.....	507
Approve Price Assignment - Comparison: New versus Existing.....	508
Approval Transaction Log.....	510
Approving a Price Assignment for an Account.....	511
Approving a Price Assignment for a Person.....	512
Approving a Price Assignment for a Price List.....	513
Rejecting a Price Assignment for an Account.....	514
Rejecting a Price Assignment for a Person.....	515
Rejecting a Price Assignment for a Price List.....	517
Canceling a Price Assignment for an Account.....	518
Canceling a Price Assignment for a Person.....	519
Canceling a Price Assignment for a Price List.....	521
Modify Price Assignment.....	522
Search.....	522
List of Price Assignments.....	526
Modifying a Price Assignment for an Account.....	527
Modifying a Price Assignment for a Person.....	528
Modifying a Price Assignment for a Price List.....	529
Withdrawing a Price Assignment for an Account.....	529
Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Person.....	530
Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Price List.....	531
Viewing the Log of an Approval Transaction.....	532
Resolve Price Assignment.....	533
Search.....	533
List of Price Assignments.....	537
Resolving a Price Assignment for an Account.....	538
Resolving a Price Assignment for a Person.....	539
Resolving a Price Assignment for a Price List.....	540
Withdrawing a Price Assignment for an Account.....	540
Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Person.....	541
Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Price List.....	542
Viewing the Log of an Approval Transaction.....	543
Approval Workflow Group (Used for Searching).....	544
Search Approval Workflow Group.....	544
Searching for an Approval Workflow Group.....	545
Viewing the Approval Workflow Group Details.....	546
Defining an Approval Workflow Group.....	546
Adding a Business Object.....	550
Defining a Group BO Relation.....	552
Approval Workflow Group (Used for Viewing).....	553
Approval Workflow Group.....	554
Editing an Approval Workflow Group.....	556
Deleting an Approval Workflow Group.....	556
Editing a Business Object.....	557
Deleting a Business Object.....	559
Editing a Group BO Relation.....	559
Deleting a Group BO Relation.....	561
Approval Workflow Chain (Used for Searching).....	561
Search Approval Workflow Chain.....	561

Searching for an Approval Workflow Chain.....	562
Viewing the Approval Workflow Chain Details.....	563
Defining an Approval Workflow Chain.....	563
Defining Approval Levels for an Approval Workflow Chain.....	564
Approval Workflow Chain (Used for Viewing).....	565
Approval Workflow Chain.....	565
Editing an Approval Workflow Chain.....	566
Deleting an Approval Workflow Chain.....	567
Approval Workflow Criterion Type (Used for Searching).....	568
Search Approval Workflow Criterion Type.....	568
Searching for an Approval Workflow Criterion Type.....	568
Viewing the Approval Workflow Criterion Type Details.....	569
Defining an Approval Workflow Criterion Type.....	569
Approval Workflow Criterion Type (Used for Viewing).....	571
Approval Workflow Criterion Type.....	571
Editing an Approval Workflow Criterion Type.....	572
Deleting an Approval Workflow Criterion Type.....	574
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage (Used for Searching).....	574
Search Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage.....	574
Searching for an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage.....	575
Viewing the Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage Details.....	576
Defining an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage.....	576
Defining Group Chain Linkage Criteria for an Approval Workflow.....	578
Defining a Field Approval Rule.....	578
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage (Used for Viewing).....	580
Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage.....	581
Editing an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage.....	583
Deleting an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage.....	584
Approval Workflow Setting (Used for Searching).....	584
Search Approval Workflow Group.....	584
Searching for an Approval Workflow Group.....	585
Viewing the Approval Workflow Setting Details.....	586
Defining Approval Workflow Group Settings.....	586
Approval Workflow Setting (Used for Viewing).....	588
Approval Workflow Group Settings.....	588
Editing Approval Workflow Group Settings.....	590
Deleting Approval Workflow Group Settings.....	590
Regenerating Input and Display UI Maps.....	591
Approval Workflow Reason (Used for Searching).....	591
Approval Workflow Reason List.....	591
Filtering the Approval Workflow Reasons.....	592
Viewing the Approval Workflow Reason Details.....	593
Defining an Approval Workflow Reason.....	593
Approval Workflow Reason (Used for Viewing).....	594
Approval Workflow Reason.....	594
Editing an Approval Workflow Reason.....	595
Deleting an Approval Workflow Reason.....	596

## **Chapter VI: Rules Engine.....597**

Rule Type (Used for Searching).....	599
Search Rule Type.....	599
Searching for a Rule Type.....	600
Defining a Rule Type.....	601
Defining Input and Output Parameters for a Rule Type.....	603
Associating a Characteristic Entity with a Rule Type.....	604



Associating an Algorithm with a Rule Type.....	605
Editing a Rule Type.....	606
Deleting a Rule Type.....	608
Copying a Rule Type.....	609
Viewing the Rule Type Details.....	611
Rule Type (Used for Viewing).....	611
Rule Type.....	611
Rule.....	613
Search.....	613
Searching for a Rule.....	614
Defining a Rule.....	614
Editing a Rule.....	619
Deleting a Rule.....	623
Copying a Rule.....	624
View Rule.....	625
Rule Information.....	625
Viewing the Rule Details.....	627
Rule Check.....	627
Rule Check.....	628

## **Chapter VII: Alternate Sequential Bill Numbers.....631**

Sequential Bill Number Generation Algorithms.....	632
C1_ALTBLLSYS.....	632
C1_ALTBLSYS1.....	632
C1_ALTBLDV.....	635
C1_ALTBLDIV1.....	635
Enabling the Alternate Sequential Bill Numbers Feature.....	638

## **Chapter VIII: Transaction Feed Management.....641**

Prerequisites.....	642
Transaction Rating Before Billing.....	642
Transaction Aggregation.....	650
Header Validation.....	651
Transaction Validation and Initial Price Item Determination.....	653
Price Item Pricing Verification.....	664
Aggregation.....	669
Clean Up.....	673
Transaction Aggregation Batch Processing.....	675
Transaction Disaggregation.....	678
Transaction Disaggregation Batch Processing.....	685
Reseeding.....	686
Transaction Cancellation.....	689
Transaction Cancellation Batch Processing.....	692
Transaction Rollback.....	693
Feed Status Transition.....	695
Transaction Status Transition.....	696
Transaction Leg Status Transition.....	697
Transaction Data File.....	705
Error List.....	708
Feed Management Dashboard.....	744
Search - Feed Level.....	744
Division Level Information.....	746
Transaction Level Information.....	747
Transaction Leg Information.....	748

Transaction Leg Service Quantity.....	749
Transaction Leg Calculation Lines.....	749
Transaction Leg Calc Line Characteristics.....	751
Searching for a Transaction Feed.....	751
Viewing Division Level Details of a Transaction Feed.....	752
Viewing Transactions that Belong to a Division.....	752
Viewing Legs of a Transaction.....	752
Viewing the SQIs Calculated for a Transaction Leg.....	753
Viewing the Calculation Lines of a Transaction Leg.....	754
Viewing Characteristics of a Calculation Line.....	754
View Billed Transactions.....	755
Search Bill.....	755
Bill Segments.....	757
Transaction Details.....	758
SQ Details.....	759
Searching for a Bill.....	759
Viewing the Bill Segments of a Bill.....	760
Viewing Transactions for which the Bill Segment is Generated.....	760
Viewing SQIs Calculated on the Billable Charge.....	761
Transaction Details.....	761
Search.....	761
Searching for an UPLD Transaction.....	762
Searching for an INPD Transaction.....	765
Searching for an COMP Transaction.....	767
Searching for an CNCL Transaction.....	769
Searching for an EROR Transaction.....	771
Searching for an IGNR Transaction.....	773
Searching for an INVL Transaction.....	776
Viewing the Transaction Legs.....	778
Viewing Error Messages.....	780
Viewing the Transaction Details.....	780
Adding a Transaction.....	782
Copying a Transaction.....	785
Transaction Source.....	787
Search Transaction Source.....	788
Searching for a Transaction Source.....	788
Defining a Transaction Source.....	789
Editing a Transaction Source.....	790
Deleting a Transaction Source.....	790
Copying a Transaction Source.....	791
Transaction Record Type.....	792
Search Transaction Record Type.....	792
Searching for a Transaction Record Type.....	793
Defining a Transaction Record Type.....	794
Editing a Transaction Record Type.....	799
Deleting a Transaction Record Type.....	805
Copying a Transaction Record Type.....	806
Transaction Aggregation Rule.....	811
Transaction Aggregation Rules.....	811
Defining Transaction Aggregation Rule for an SQL.....	812
Editing Transaction Aggregation Rule of an SQL.....	813
Deleting Transaction Aggregation Rule of an SQL.....	814
Schedule.....	815
Search Schedule.....	815
Searching for a Schedule.....	816
Viewing the Schedule Details.....	816

Defining a Schedule.....	817
Editing a Schedule.....	818
Deleting a Schedule.....	819
Disaggregation Request.....	819
Search Disaggregation Request.....	820
Searching for a Disaggregation Request.....	820
Creating a Disaggregation Request.....	823
Deleting a Disaggregation Request.....	827
Accumulation Data.....	828

## **Chapter IX: Upload Validated Payment Data.....829**

Payment Upload Process.....	830
Upload Payment Records in the Pre-Staging Area.....	830
Move Payment Records to the Staging Area.....	831
Create Payment Events and Payments.....	831
Prerequisites.....	832
CSV File Format.....	833
Payment Data File Status Transition.....	835
Payment Record Status Transition.....	835
Error Messages.....	837
Payment Upload.....	841
Search Payment Data File.....	842
Payment Data Records.....	844
Payment Data File Log.....	845
Searching for a Payment Data File.....	846
Uploading a Payment Data File.....	846
Replacing an Existing File.....	848
Cancelling a Payment Data File.....	849
Moving the Payment Records to the Staging Area.....	849
Editing a Payment Staging Record.....	850
Viewing the Records of a Payment Data File.....	851
Viewing the Log of a Payment Data File.....	851
Viewing the Error Messages.....	852

## **Chapter X: Freeze Payments on Notification..... 853**

Freeze Payments on Notification Process.....	855
Creating Automatic Payments and Refunds.....	855
Generating a Flat File.....	855
Uploading Response from Auto Clearing House (ACH).....	855
Freezing or Canceling Automatic Payments.....	856
Voiding Refund Requests and Canceling Refund Adjustments.....	857
Generating To Do Entries.....	857
Creating Tender Controls.....	857
Prerequisites.....	858
Automatic Payment or Refund Clearing Staging Record Status Transition.....	859
EDI 824 File Format.....	859
Sample EDI 824 File Format.....	860
Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason.....	861
Upload Reasons.....	861
Defining an Upload Reason.....	862
Editing an Upload Reason.....	864
Deleting an Upload Reason.....	866
Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging.....	866
Search Clearing Record.....	867

Associated Clearing Staging Records.....	869
Clearing Staging Upload Reasons.....	870
Clearing Staging Characteristics.....	870
Searching for a Clearing Record.....	871
Viewing the Clearing Staging Records Associated to a Clearing Record.....	871
Viewing the Upload Reason Specified in the Clearing Staging Record.....	872
Viewing the Characteristics of the Clearing Staging Record.....	872
Editing a Clearing Staging Record.....	873
Defining Characteristics for a Clearing Staging Record.....	874
Deleting a Clearing Staging Record.....	875

## **Chapter XI: Trial Billing..... 877**

Trial Bill (Used for Searching).....	879
Search Trial Bill .....	879
Searching for a Trial Bill.....	880
Viewing the Trial Bill Details.....	881
Trial Bill (Used for Viewing).....	882
Trial Bill.....	882
Trial Bill Segments.....	883
Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines.....	885
Trial Bill Segment SQ Details.....	886
Trial Bill Segment Financial Details.....	886
Printing a Trial Bill in the PDF Format.....	887
Viewing the Segments of a Trial Bill.....	887
Filtering the Trial Bill Segments.....	888
Viewing the Calc Lines of a Trial Bill Segment.....	888
Viewing the SQ Details of a Trial Bill Segment.....	889
Viewing the Financial Details of a Trial Bill Segment.....	890

## **Chapter XII: GL Account Validation..... 891**

Static GL Account Validation.....	892
Dynamic GL Account Validation.....	892

## **Chapter XIII: Upload Validated Adjustment Data..... 893**

Prerequisites.....	895
CSV File Format.....	895
Adjustment Upload Request (Without Approval) Status Transition.....	896
Adjustment Upload Request (With Approval) Status Transition.....	897
Algorithms Used in C1-ADJUPLD.....	898
Adjustment Upload Request.....	901
Search Adjustment Upload Request.....	901
Adjustment Upload Request.....	902
Adjustment Data Records.....	905
Searching for an Adjustment Upload Request.....	906
Uploading an Adjustment Data File.....	906
Replacing an Adjustment Data File.....	909
Cancelling an Adjustment Data File.....	911
Creating Adjustments for an Adjustment Data File.....	912
Submitting an Adjustment Data File for Approval.....	913
Approving an Adjustment Data File.....	914
Rejecting an Adjustment Data File.....	915
Viewing the Adjustment Upload Request Details.....	916
Viewing All Records of an Adjustment Data File.....	917

Viewing the Log of an Adjustment Upload Request.....	917
Adding a Log Entry for an Adjustment Upload Request.....	918

## **Chapter XIV: Payment Request..... 921**

Prerequisites.....	923
Payment Request (Without Approval) Status Transition.....	924
Payment Request (With Approval) Status Transition.....	925
Algorithms Used in C1-PaymentRequest.....	926
Algorithms Used in C1-PaymentTransferRequest.....	930
Payment Request Type.....	935
Payment Request Type List.....	935
Payment Request Type.....	936
Defining a Payment Request Type.....	938
Defining Characteristics for a Payment Request Type.....	941
Editing a Payment Request Type.....	942
Copying a Payment Request Type.....	945
Deleting a Payment Request Type.....	948
Viewing the Payment Request Type Details.....	949
Payment Request (Used for Searching).....	949
Search Payment Request.....	950
Searching for a Payment Request.....	952
Viewing the Payment Request Details.....	953
Payment Request (Used for Viewing).....	954
Payment Request.....	954
Payment Distribution.....	960
Creating a Payment Creation Request.....	962
Defining Characteristics for a Payment Tender.....	967
Editing the Payment Amount.....	968
Editing a Payment Request.....	970
Deleting a Payment Request.....	973
Distributing the Tender or Payment Amount.....	974
Distributing and Freezing the Tender or Payment Amount.....	975
Redistributing the Tender or Payment Amount.....	976
Editing the Payment Segment Amount.....	977
Freezing Payments Created Through a Payment Request.....	979
Submitting a Payment Request for Approval.....	980
Approving a Payment Request.....	980
Rejecting a Payment Request.....	982
Discarding a Payment Request.....	984
Viewing the Log of a Payment Request.....	984
Adding a Log Entry for a Payment Request.....	985
Payment Event Summary.....	986
Search Payment Event.....	986
Payments.....	989
Payment Segments.....	991
Searching for a Payment Event.....	991
Creating a Payment Transfer Request.....	992
Cancelling a Payment Event.....	996
Deleting a Payment Event.....	997
Viewing Payments Created Through a Payment Event.....	998
Cancelling a Payment.....	998
Deleting a Payment.....	999
Viewing Payment Segments of a Payment.....	999

**Chapter XV: Account Receivable Central..... 1001**

Single Offset.....	1002
Mass Offset.....	1002
Cross Currency Offset.....	1003
Hold.....	1003
Refund.....	1004
Write Off.....	1004
Dispute.....	1004
Account Receivable Central.....	1004
Search Bill .....	1004
Bill Information.....	1008
Offset Details.....	1008
Hold Details.....	1008
Garnishment Details.....	1009
Bill Line Items.....	1009
Searching for a Bill.....	1009
Viewing the Bill Details.....	1010

**Chapter XVI: Offset Request..... 1011**

Offset Request (Without Approval) Status Transition.....	1012
Offset Request (With Approval) Status Transition.....	1013
Algorithms Used in C1-OffsetRequest.....	1013
Prerequisites.....	1019
Offset Request Type.....	1020
Offset Request Type List.....	1021
Offset Request Type.....	1021
Defining an Offset Request Type.....	1024
Defining Characteristics for an Offset Request Type.....	1026
Editing an Offset Request Type.....	1027
Deleting an Offset Request Type.....	1030
Copying Offset Request Type.....	1031
Viewing the Offset Request Type Details.....	1034
Offset Request (Used for Searching).....	1034
Search Offset Request.....	1034
Searching for an Offset Request.....	1037
Viewing the Offset Request Details.....	1038
Offset Request (Used for Viewing).....	1039
Offset Request - Main.....	1039
Offset Request.....	1039
Selected Bills.....	1041
Search Bill.....	1042
View Adjustments.....	1044
Offset Request - Log.....	1045
Offset Request Log.....	1045
Creating an Offset Request.....	1045
Defining Characteristics for an Offset Request.....	1047
Filtering Credit and Debit Bills of an Offset Request.....	1048
Adding a Credit or Debit Bill to the Offset Request.....	1049
Editing an Offset Request.....	1051
Deleting an Offset Request.....	1053
Submitting an Offset Request.....	1054
Approving an Offset Request.....	1055
Rejecting an Offset Request.....	1056

Viewing the Log of an Offset Request.....	1058
Adding a Log Entry for an Offset Request.....	1058
Unapplying an Offset Request.....	1059

## **Chapter XVII: Funding Request.....1061**

Prerequisites.....	1064
Funding Request (Without Approval) Status Transition.....	1064
Funding Request (With Approval) Status Transition.....	1065
Algorithms Used in C1-FundingReq.....	1066
C1-FUNDINFO.....	1067
C1-FUNDSUBMT.....	1067
C1-FUNDAPP.....	1068
C1-FUNDAPRVD.....	1068
F1-TODOCOMPL.....	1068
F1-AT-RQJ.....	1068
C1-FNDRESUBM.....	1069
C1-FUNDVAL.....	1069
C1-FUNDAPAY.....	1069
C1-FUNDADJCR.....	1069
C1-FUNDCANCL.....	1070
Funding Request Type.....	1070
Funding Request Type List.....	1070
Funding Request Type.....	1071
Defining a Funding Request Type.....	1074
Defining a Characteristic for a Funding Request Type.....	1081
Editing a Funding Request Type.....	1082
Deleting a Funding Request Type.....	1089
Copying a Funding Request Type.....	1090
Viewing the Funding Request Type Details.....	1097
Funding Request (Used for Searching).....	1098
Search Funding Request.....	1098
Searching for a Funding Request.....	1101
Viewing the Funding Request Details.....	1102
Creating a Funding Request.....	1102
Funding Request (Used for Viewing).....	1103
Funding Request - Main.....	1103
Funding Request.....	1104
Search Bill.....	1107
Funding Request - Bills.....	1111
Currency Statistics.....	1111
Selected Bills.....	1111
Funding Payment Details.....	1114
Funding Adjustments.....	1115
Funding Request - Log.....	1115
Funding Request Log.....	1115
Adding a Debit or Credit Bill to a Funding Request.....	1116
Deleting a Debit or Credit Bill from a Funding Request.....	1117
Excluding a Bill from a Funding Request.....	1117
Editing a Funding Request.....	1119
Defining a Characteristic for a Funding Request.....	1121
Deleting a Funding Request.....	1122
Cancelling a Funding Request.....	1123
Submitting a Funding Request.....	1124
Approving a Funding Request.....	1126
Rejecting a Funding Request.....	1128

Requesting to Resubmit a Funding Request.....	1130
Withdrawing a Funding Request.....	1131
Transferring the Funding Amount of a Credit Bill to a Garnishment Contract.....	1132
Viewing the Garnishment Details of a Credit Bill.....	1133
Viewing the Payments Created Through a Funding Request.....	1134
Viewing the Adjustments Created Through a Funding Request.....	1135
Viewing the Log of a Funding Request.....	1135
Adding a Log Entry for a Funding Request.....	1136

## **Chapter XVIII: Refund/Write Off Request..... 1139**

Refund Request (Without Approval) Status Transition.....	1141
Refund Request (With Approval) Status Transition.....	1141
Write Off Request (Without Approval) Status Transition.....	1142
Write Off Request (With Approval) Status Transition.....	1143
Algorithms Used in C1-RefundReq.....	1144
Algorithms Used in C1-WORequest.....	1149
Prerequisites.....	1153
Refund/Write Off Request Type.....	1153
Refund/Write Off Request Type List.....	1157
Refund/Write Off Request Type.....	1158
Defining a Refund or Write Off Request Type.....	1160
Defining Characteristics for a Refund or Write Off Request Type.....	1163
Editing a Refund or Write Off Request Type.....	1164
Deleting a Refund or Write Off Request Type.....	1168
Copying a Refund or Write Off Request Type.....	1168
Viewing the Refund or Write Off Request Type Details.....	1172
Refund/Write Off Request.....	1173
Search Refund/Write Off Request.....	1173
Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request.....	1177
Viewing the Refund Request Details.....	1178
Viewing the Write Off Request Details.....	1178
Refund Request.....	1179
Refund Request - Main.....	1180
Refund Request.....	1180
Refund Details.....	1182
Bill Line Items.....	1183
Refund Request - Bills.....	1184
Search Bills.....	1184
Bill Line Items.....	1186
Refund Request - Payments.....	1186
Search Payment Event.....	1187
Payments.....	1188
Refund Request - Log.....	1188
Refund Request Log.....	1189
Creating a Refund Request.....	1189
Defining Characteristics for a Refund Request.....	1192
Adding a Payment Event to the Refund Request.....	1193
Adding a Payment to the Refund Request.....	1194
Adding a Credit Bill to the Refund Request.....	1195
Adding a Credit Bill Line Item to the Refund Request.....	1196
Editing a Refund Request.....	1198
Editing the Refund Details.....	1200
Deleting a Refund Request.....	1202
Deleting a Bill from the Refund Request.....	1202
Deleting a Bill Line Item from the Refund Request.....	1203



Submitting a Refund Request.....	1203
Approving a Refund Request.....	1206
Rejecting a Refund Request.....	1208
Viewing the Log of a Refund Request.....	1209
Adding a Log Entry for a Refund Request.....	1210
Voiding a Refund Request.....	1211
Write Off Request.....	1212
Write Off Request - Main.....	1213
Write Off Request.....	1213
Write Off Details.....	1215
Bill Line Items.....	1216
Write Off Request - Bills.....	1217
Search Bills.....	1217
Bill Line Items.....	1218
Write Off Request - Log.....	1219
Write Off Request Log.....	1219
Creating a Write Off Request.....	1220
Defining Characteristics for a Write Off Request.....	1222
Adding a Debit Bill to the Write Off Request.....	1223
Adding a Debit Bill Line Item to the Write Off Request.....	1225
Editing a Write Off Request.....	1226
Editing the Write Off Details.....	1228
Deleting a Write Off Request.....	1230
Deleting a Bill from the Write Off Request.....	1230
Deleting a Bill Line Item from the Write Off Request.....	1231
Submitting a Write Off Request.....	1231
Approving a Write Off Request.....	1233
Rejecting a Write Off Request.....	1235
Viewing the Log of a Write Off Request.....	1236
Adding a Log Entry for a Write Off Request.....	1237
Cancelling a Write Off Request.....	1238

## **Chapter XIX: Hold Request..... 1241**

Hold Request (Without Approval) Status Transition.....	1243
Hold Request (With Approval) Status Transition.....	1243
Algorithms Used in C1-HoldRequest.....	1244
Prerequisites.....	1250
Hold Request Type.....	1250
Hold Request Type List.....	1250
Hold Request Type.....	1251
Defining a Hold Request Type.....	1253
Defining Characteristics for a Hold Request Type.....	1256
Editing a Hold Request Type.....	1257
Deleting a Hold Request Type.....	1259
Copying a Hold Request Type.....	1260
Viewing the Hold Request Type Details.....	1263
Hold Request (Used for Searching).....	1264
Search Hold Request.....	1264
Searching for a Hold Request.....	1267
Viewing the Hold Request Details.....	1268
Creating a Hold Request.....	1268
Hold Request (Used for Viewing).....	1273
Hold Request - Main.....	1274
Hold Request.....	1274
Hold Entities.....	1276

Search Account.....	1278
Search Bill.....	1281
Search Person.....	1282
Hold Request - Log.....	1283
Hold Request Log.....	1283
Searching Persons.....	1284
Searching Accounts.....	1284
Searching Bills.....	1285
Adding Persons in a Hold Request.....	1285
Adding Accounts in a Hold Request.....	1286
Adding Bills in a Hold Request.....	1287
Adding Processes in a Hold Request.....	1287
Defining Characteristics for a Hold Request.....	1288
Editing a Hold Request.....	1289
Editing Hold Request Entities.....	1291
Deleting Hold Request Entities.....	1292
Deleting a Hold Request.....	1293
Submitting a Hold Request.....	1294
Approving a Hold Request.....	1295
Releasing a Hold Request.....	1296
Rejecting a Hold Request.....	1297
Resubmitting a Hold Request.....	1298
Viewing the Log of a Hold Request.....	1299
Adding a Log Entry for a Hold Request.....	1300

## **Chapter XX: Delinquency Central..... 1303**

Prerequisites.....	1304
Delinquency Central (Used for Viewing).....	1304
Search Overdue Process.....	1304
Overdue Events.....	1309
Searching for an Overdue Process.....	1310
Viewing Events of an Overdue Process.....	1310
Viewing the Overdue Process Details.....	1311
Overdue Process Information for Account: {Account ID}.....	1311
Person Information.....	1311
Account Information.....	1312
Customer Contact Details.....	1312
Promise To Pay.....	1312
Hold Details.....	1313
Overdue Bills.....	1313
Payment Arrangement.....	1313
Search Bill.....	1314
Searching for a Bill.....	1315
Adding the Customer Contact Details.....	1315
Creating a Hold Request for an Overdue Process.....	1316
Creating a Payment Arrangement for an Overdue Process.....	1317
Defining a Promise To Pay for an Overdue Process.....	1317

## **Chapter XXI: Upload Request..... 1319**

Upload Request (Without Approval) Status Transition.....	1322
Upload Request (With Approval) Status Transition.....	1323
Prerequisites.....	1324
Algorithms Used in C1-BillCycleUpdateUpdReq.....	1325
Algorithms Used in C1-ContractRiderUpdateUpdReq.....	1330

Algorithms Used in C1-HoldUploadRequest.....	1335
Algorithms Used in C1-RefundUploadRequest.....	1342
Algorithms Used in C1-WriteOffUploadRequest.....	1346
Algorithms Used in C1-BillableChargeUploadRequest.....	1350
Algorithms Used in C1-ReinstatementUploadRequest.....	1354
Algorithms Used in C1-BillGrpSortUploadRequest.....	1360
C1-BLSRTUPLD.....	1361
C1-BLSRTDERV.....	1361
C1-BLSRTVALD.....	1361
F1-AT-RQJ.....	1362
C1-UPLSUBENT.....	1362
C1-DEFERUPLD.....	1362
C1-UPLAPPENT.....	1362
C1-UPLAPPEXT.....	1362
F1-TODOCOMPL.....	1362
C1-BLSRTPROC.....	1363
Algorithms Used in C1-BillLevelUploadRequest.....	1363
C1-BLVUPLDTL.....	1364
C1-BLVLDERIV.....	1364
C1-BLVLVALID.....	1364
F1-AT-RQJ.....	1365
C1-UPLSUBENT.....	1365
C1-DEFERUPLD.....	1365
C1-UPLAPPENT.....	1365
C1-UPLAPPEXT.....	1365
F1-TODOCOMPL.....	1365
C1-BLVLVLPRO.....	1365
CSV File Format for Account Bill Cycle Upload Request.....	1366
CSV File Format for Contract Rider Upload Request.....	1366
CSV File Format for Billable Charge Upload.....	1367
CSV File Format for Hold Upload Request.....	1371
CSV File Format for Refund Request Upload.....	1375
CSV File Format for Write Off Request Upload.....	1376
CSV File Format for Reinstatement Upload Request.....	1377
CSV File Format for Bill Group Sorting Upload Request.....	1378
CSV File Format for Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters Upload Request.....	1379
Upload Request Type.....	1381
Upload Request Type List.....	1382
Upload Request Type.....	1383
Defining an Upload Request Type.....	1386
Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request Type.....	1392
Editing an Upload Request Type.....	1393
Deleting an Upload Request Type.....	1397
Copying an Upload Request Type.....	1397
Mapping an Upload Request Type.....	1401
Viewing the Upload Request Type Details.....	1403
Upload Request (Used for Searching).....	1403
Search Upload Request.....	1404
Searching for an Upload Request.....	1405
Viewing the Upload Request Details.....	1406
Creating an Upload Request.....	1406
Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request.....	1409
Upload Request (Used for Viewing).....	1410
Upload Request - Main.....	1410
Upload Request.....	1410
Data Records.....	1413

Upload Request - Log.....	1414
Upload Request Log.....	1414
Editing an Upload Request.....	1415
Deleting an Upload Request.....	1416
Validating an Upload Request.....	1417
Cancelling an Upload Request.....	1417
Submitting an Upload Request.....	1418
Approving an Upload Request.....	1422
Rejecting an Upload Request.....	1425
Viewing the Data Record Details.....	1426
Viewing the Log of an Upload Request.....	1427
Adding a Log Entry for an Upload Request.....	1428

## **Chapter XXII: General Ledger (GL) Accounting Template.....1429**

GL Accounting Template (Without Approval) Status Transition.....	1434
GL Accounting Template (With Approval) Status Transition.....	1434
Algorithms Used in C1- GLAT.....	1435
Prerequisites.....	1437
GL Accounting Template (Used for Searching).....	1437
Search GL Accounting Template.....	1438
GL Accounting Template Lines.....	1439
Searching for a GL Accounting Template.....	1440
Viewing the GL Accounting Template Details.....	1440
Viewing the GL Accounting Template Lines Details.....	1441
Creating a GL Accounting Template.....	1441
GL Accounting Template (Used for Viewing).....	1443
GL Accounting Template - Main.....	1443
GL Accounting Template.....	1444
GL Accounting Template - Log.....	1445
GL Accounting Template Log.....	1445
Editing a GL Accounting Template.....	1446
Deleting a GL Accounting Template.....	1448
Submitting a GL Accounting Template.....	1448
Approving a GL Accounting Template.....	1449
Rejecting a GL Accounting Template.....	1450
Deactivating a GL Accounting Template.....	1452
Viewing the Log of a GL Accounting Template.....	1453
Adding a Log Entry for a GL Accounting Template.....	1454

## **Chapter XXIII: Payment Agreement Request..... 1455**

Payment Agreement Request (Without Approval) Status Transition.....	1458
Payment Agreement Request (With Approval) Status Transition.....	1459
Prerequisites.....	1460
Algorithms Used in C1-PaymentAgreementRequest.....	1460
Payment Agreement Request Type.....	1461
Payment Agreement Request Type List.....	1461
Payment Agreement Request Type.....	1462
Defining a Payment Agreement Request Type.....	1465
Defining Characteristics for a Payment Agreement Request Type.....	1467
Editing a Payment Agreement Request Type.....	1468
Deleting a Payment Agreement Request Type.....	1471
Copying a Payment Agreement Request Type.....	1471
Viewing the Payment Agreement Request Type Details.....	1474
Payment Agreement Request (Used for Searching).....	1474

Search Payment Agreement Request.....	1475
Bill Details.....	1478
Searching for a Payment Agreement Request.....	1478
Viewing the Bills Added in the Payment Agreement Request.....	1479
Viewing the Payment Agreement Request Details.....	1479
Creating a Payment Agreement Request.....	1480
Defining Characteristics for a Payment Agreement Request.....	1481
Defining Payment Schedule for a Payment Agreement Request.....	1482
Payment Agreement Request (Used for Viewing).....	1483
Payment Agreement Request - Main.....	1484
Payment Agreement Request.....	1484
Bill Details.....	1486
Payment Schedule.....	1487
Payment Agreement Request - Bills.....	1487
Search Bills.....	1487
Payment Agreement Request - Log.....	1489
Payment Agreement Request Log.....	1489
Editing a Payment Agreement Request.....	1489
Deleting a Payment Agreement Request.....	1492
Submitting a Payment Agreement Request.....	1493
Removing an Overdue Bill from a Payment Agreement Request.....	1494
Approving a Payment Agreement Request.....	1494
Rejecting a Payment Agreement Request.....	1496
Resubmitting a Payment Agreement Request.....	1497
Filtering Overdue Bills of an Account.....	1498
Adding an Overdue Bill in a Payment Agreement Request.....	1499
Viewing the Log of a Payment Agreement Request.....	1500
Adding a Log Entry for a Payment Agreement Request.....	1501

## **Chapter XXIV: Inbound Message..... 1503**

Customer Inbound Message.....	1504
Prerequisites.....	1504
Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through User Interface.....	1505
Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through a Batch Process.....	1506
Algorithms Used in C1-CustomerInboundMessage.....	1507
C1-AT-RQJ.....	1508
F1-AT-RQJ.....	1508
C1-CINMSGVAL.....	1508
C1-CINMSGPRC.....	1509
C1-TODORETRY.....	1518
C1-TDCRINMSG.....	1518
Customer Inbound Message XML Format.....	1519
Customer Inbound Message Schema.....	1536
Sample Customer Inbound Message.....	1539
Membership Inbound Message.....	1542
Prerequisites.....	1542
Membership Inbound Message Status Transition through User Interface.....	1543
Membership Inbound Message Status Transition through a Batch Process.....	1544
Algorithms Used in C1-MemberInboundMessage.....	1545
C1-AT-RQJ.....	1546
F1-AT-RQJ.....	1546
C1-INMEMEVAL.....	1546
C1-INMEMEPRC.....	1547
C1-TODORETRY.....	1554
C1-TDCRINMSG.....	1554

F1-TODOCOMPL.....	1555
Membership Inbound Message XML Format.....	1555
Membership Inbound Message Schema.....	1568
Sample Membership Inbound Message.....	1570
ASO Customer Inbound Message.....	1572
Prerequisites.....	1573
ASO Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through User Interface.....	1574
ASO Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through a Batch Process.....	1575
Algorithms Used in C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage.....	1576
C1-AT-RQJ.....	1577
F1-AT-RQJ.....	1577
C1-ASOCINVAL.....	1577
C1-ASOCINPRC.....	1578
C1-TODORETRY.....	1578
C1-TDCRINMSG.....	1578
ASO Customer Inbound Message XML Format.....	1579
ASO Customer Inbound Message Schema.....	1598
Sample ASO Customer Inbound Message.....	1602
Inbound Message Type.....	1609
Inbound Message Type List.....	1610
Inbound Message Type.....	1611
Viewing the Inbound Message Type Details.....	1614
Defining an Inbound Message Type.....	1614
Defining a Characteristic for an Inbound Message Type.....	1619
Editing an Inbound Message Type.....	1620
Copying an Inbound Message Type.....	1623
Deleting an Inbound Message Type.....	1627
Inbound Message (Used for Searching).....	1628
Search Inbound Message.....	1628
Searching for an Inbound Message.....	1631
Creating an Inbound Message.....	1632
C1-CustomerStructureInboundMessage.....	1632
C1-MembershipInboundMessage.....	1633
C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage.....	1633
Viewing the Inbound Message Details.....	1633
Inbound Message (Used for Viewing).....	1634
Inbound Message - Main.....	1634
Inbound Message.....	1634
Inbound Message - Message.....	1636
Inbound Message Content.....	1636
Inbound Message - Log.....	1637
Inbound Message Log.....	1637
Editing an Inbound Message.....	1637
Defining a Characteristic for an Inbound Message.....	1638
Deleting an Inbound Message.....	1639
Processing an Inbound Message.....	1640
Using the Retry Option for an Inbound Message.....	1642
Voiding an Inbound Message.....	1642
Viewing the Content of an Inbound Message.....	1643
Viewing the Log of an Inbound Message.....	1643
Adding a Log Entry for an Inbound Message.....	1644

## **Chapter XXV: Policy-Membership Overview..... 1645**

Policy Status Transition.....	1646
Algorithms Used in C1-Policy.....	1646

Algorithms Used in C1-Membership.....	1656
Prerequisites.....	1657
Policy Type.....	1657
Policy Type List.....	1657
Policy Type.....	1658
Defining a Policy Type.....	1659
Editing a Policy Type.....	1660
Deleting a Policy Type.....	1661
Copying a Policy Type.....	1662
Policy Person Role.....	1663
Policy Person Role List.....	1663
Defining a Policy Person Role.....	1664
Editing a Policy Person Role.....	1665
Deleting a Policy Person Role.....	1665
Policy (Used for Searching).....	1666
Search Policy.....	1666
Searching a Policy.....	1669
Viewing the Details of a Policy.....	1670
Defining a Policy.....	1671
Associating a Person with a Policy.....	1673
Defining Characteristics for a Policy.....	1674
Policy (Used for Viewing).....	1675
Policy - Main.....	1676
Policy.....	1676
Policy - Plan.....	1680
Plans.....	1680
Memberships.....	1681
Policy - Log.....	1681
Policy Log.....	1681
Activating a Policy.....	1682
Editing a Policy.....	1682
Deleting a Policy.....	1685
Initiating a Termination Request for a Policy.....	1685
Terminating a Policy.....	1686
Defining a Policy Plan.....	1686
Defining Characteristics for a Policy Plan.....	1687
Editing a Policy Plan.....	1688
Viewing the Membership Details of a Policy Plan.....	1689
Filtering a Policy Plan.....	1689
Viewing the Log of a Policy.....	1691
Defining a Log Entry for a Policy.....	1691
Membership.....	1692
Search Membership.....	1693
Searching for a Membership.....	1695
Viewing the Membership Details.....	1696
Defining a Membership for a Policy Plan.....	1697
Defining Characteristics for a Membership.....	1699
Membership Information.....	1700
Membership - Main.....	1700
Membership.....	1700
Persons Included in Membership.....	1703
Other Plans of Main Subscriber.....	1704
Membership - Contracts & Premiums.....	1705
Membership Contracts.....	1705
Premiums.....	1706
Adding a Membership Contract.....	1707

Editing a Membership Contract.....	1708
Deleting a Membership Contract.....	1708
Membership - Log.....	1709
Membership Log.....	1709
Editing a Membership.....	1709
Deleting a Membership.....	1711
Adding a Person in a Membership.....	1711
Defining Characteristics for a Membership - Person.....	1713
Editing Membership Details of a Person.....	1714
Deleting a Person from Membership.....	1715
Viewing the Log of a Membership.....	1716
Adding a Log Entry for the Membership.....	1716

## **Chapter XXVI: Upload Lockbox Payment and Remittance Advices**

### **Overview..... 1719**

Prerequisites.....	1721
EDI 820 Flat File Description.....	1721
Sample EDI 820 Flat File.....	1723
Upload EDI 820 Files in ORMB.....	1726

## **Chapter XXVII: Deferred Revenue Recognition..... 1729**

Prerequisites.....	1731
Deferred Revenue Recognition Status Transition.....	1731
Algorithms Used in Deferred Revenue Recognition.....	1733
Deferred Revenue Recognition Template (Used for Searching).....	1738
Search Deferred Revenue Recognition Template.....	1738
Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template.....	1739
Defining a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template.....	1740
Associating Algorithms with a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template.....	1742
Associating Deferred Revenue Recognition Template With A Division.....	1743
Defining Characteristics for a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template.....	1744
Viewing the Deferred Revenue Recognition Template Details.....	1745
Deferred Revenue Recognition Template (Used for Viewing).....	1746
Deferred Revenue Recognition Template.....	1746
Editing a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template.....	1748
Deleting a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template.....	1749
Deferred Revenue Recognition (Used for Searching).....	1749
Search Deferred Revenue Recognition.....	1750
Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition.....	1754
Viewing the Deferred Revenue Recognition Details.....	1754
Deferred Revenue Recognition (Used for Viewing).....	1755
Deferred Revenue Recognition - Main.....	1755
Deferred Revenue Recognition.....	1755
Associated Deferred Revenue Recognitions.....	1757
Recognition Schedule.....	1758
Revenue Recognition Items.....	1758
Deferred Revenue Recognition - Log.....	1758
Deferred Revenue Recognition Log.....	1758
Editing a Deferred Revenue Recognition.....	1759
Creating the Deferred Revenue Recognition Schedule.....	1760
Defining Characteristics for a Deferred Revenue Recognition.....	1760
Adding Related Deferred Revenue Recognitions.....	1761
Editing the Deferred Revenue Recognition Schedule Details.....	1762
Viewing the Log of a Deferred Revenue Recognition.....	1763



Adding a Log Entry for a Deferred Revenue Recognition.....	1764
--	------

## **Chapter XXVIII: Reconciliation..... 1767**

Reconciliation Status Transition.....	1770
Pay Instruction Status Transition.....	1771
Discrepancy Report Status Transition.....	1773
EDI 820 File Format For Reconciliation.....	1773
Sample EDI 820 File Format.....	1774
Algorithms Used in C1-MemberReconType.....	1775
C1-REOCNPEP.....	1775
Algorithms Used in C1-MemberReconciliation.....	1776
C1-RECONINFO.....	1777
C1-MRECONVAL.....	1777
F1-AT-RQJ.....	1777
F1-TDCREATE.....	1777
C1-VALPAYINS.....	1778
F1-TODOCOMPL.....	1778
C1-MRECONVAL.....	1778
C1-MONPAYINS.....	1779
C1-TRNPAYRCN.....	1779
C1-RCOPNPYIN.....	1780
C1-RCNOPNMR.....	1780
C1-RCMONPNCN.....	1780
C1-CANPAYINS.....	1781
C1-CANRCNPAY.....	1781
C1-RCNCANLTD.....	1781
Algorithms Used in C1-PayInstruction.....	1781
C1-MPAYININF.....	1782
C1-PYINDRVAN.....	1782
C1-PIRECOCIL.....	1783
C1-PYICNADJ.....	1784
F1-AT-RQJ.....	1784
Algorithms Used in C1-MemberDiscReportType.....	1784
C1-DISCPEP.....	1785
Algorithms Used in C1-DiscrepancyReport.....	1785
F1-AT-RQJ.....	1785
C1-DISRINFO.....	1785
C1-VALNEWDIS.....	1786
C1-CRDSLNTM.....	1786
F1-TODOCOMPL.....	1786
C1-VALCMPDIS.....	1786
Reconciliation Type.....	1786
Reconciliation Type List.....	1787
Reconciliation Type.....	1787
Defining a Reconciliation Type.....	1789
Defining Characteristics for a Reconciliation Type.....	1791
Associating an Algorithm with a Reconciliation Type.....	1791
Editing a Reconciliation Type.....	1793
Deleting a Reconciliation Type.....	1794
Copying a Reconciliation Type.....	1795
Viewing the Reconciliation Type Details.....	1796
Reconciliation (Used for Searching).....	1797
Search Reconciliation.....	1797
Searching for a Reconciliation.....	1800
Viewing the Reconciliation Details.....	1801

Reconciliation (Used for Viewing).....	1801
Reconciliation - Main.....	1802
Reconciliation.....	1802
Pay Instructions.....	1804
Reconciliation - Log.....	1805
Reconciliation Log.....	1805
Editing a Reconciliation.....	1806
Defining Characteristics for a Reconciliation.....	1806
Deleting a Reconciliation.....	1808
Submitting Pay Instructions for a Reconciliation.....	1808
Reconciling Pay Instructions.....	1809
Adding a Log Entry for a Reconciliation.....	1810
Viewing the Log of a Reconciliation.....	1810
Canceling a Reconciliation.....	1811
Viewing the Pay Instruction Details.....	1812
Pay Instruction.....	1812
Pay Instruction - Main.....	1813
Pay Instruction.....	1813
Reconciliation Adjustments.....	1813
Related Objects.....	1814
Pay Instruction - Log.....	1814
Pay Instruction Log.....	1814
Adding a Log Entry for a Pay Instruction.....	1815
Viewing the Log of a Pay Instruction.....	1815
Discrepancy Report Type.....	1816
Discrepancy Report Type List.....	1816
Discrepancy Report Type.....	1817
Defining a Discrepancy Report Type.....	1818
Defining Characteristics for a Discrepancy Report Type.....	1820
Editing a Discrepancy Report Type.....	1821
Deleting a Discrepancy Report Type.....	1822
Copying a Discrepancy Report Type.....	1822
Viewing the Discrepancy Report Type Details.....	1824
Discrepancy Report (Used for Searching).....	1824
Search Discrepancy Report.....	1824
Searching for a Discrepancy Report.....	1827
Creating a Discrepancy Report.....	1828
Viewing the Discrepancy Report Details.....	1829
Discrepancy Report (Used for Viewing).....	1829
Discrepancy Report - Main.....	1830
Discrepancy Report.....	1830
Discrepancy Line Items.....	1831
Discrepancy Line Item Related Objects.....	1832
Discrepancy Line Items Characteristics Zone.....	1833
Discrepancy Report - Log.....	1833
Discrepancy Report Log.....	1833
Editing a Discrepancy Line Item.....	1833
Deleting a Discrepancy Report.....	1835
Finalizing a Discrepancy Report.....	1835
Adding a Log Entry for a Discrepancy Report.....	1836
Viewing the Log of a Discrepancy Report.....	1836

## **Chapter XXIX: Self-Funded Pricing..... 1839**

Prerequisites.....	1840
Approval Workflow for the Self-Funded Pricing Rules.....	1840

Line Item Extendable Lookup.....	1841
Extendable Lookup Search.....	1842
Searching for the Line Item Extendable Lookup.....	1843
Viewing the Values of the Line Item Extendable Lookup.....	1843
Extendable Lookup (Line Item).....	1844
Extendable Lookup Value List.....	1844
Extendable Lookup Value.....	1845
Defining a Line Item.....	1847
Associating a Line Item with a Pricing Rule Type Category.....	1848
Editing a Line Item.....	1850
Copying a Line Item.....	1852
Deleting a Line Item.....	1854
Viewing the Line Item Details.....	1854
Claim Template Extendable Lookup.....	1855
Extendable Lookup Search.....	1856
Searching for the Claim Template Extendable Lookup.....	1857
Viewing the Values of the Claim Template Extendable Lookup.....	1857
Extendable Lookup (Claim Template).....	1858
Extendable Lookup Value List.....	1858
Extendable Lookup Value.....	1859
Defining a Claim Template.....	1861
Adding a Line Item in a Claim Template.....	1863
Defining the Default Markup or Markdown Values for the Line Items.....	1865
Editing a Claim Template.....	1867
Copying a Claim Template.....	1869
Deleting a Claim Template.....	1870
Viewing the Claim Template Details.....	1871
Rate Option Extendable Lookup.....	1872
Extendable Lookup Search.....	1872
Searching for the Rate Option Extendable Lookup.....	1873
Viewing the Values of the Rate Option Extendable Lookup.....	1874
Extendable Lookup (Rate Option).....	1874
Extendable Lookup Value List.....	1874
Extendable Lookup Value.....	1875
Defining a Rate Option.....	1877
Editing a Rate Option.....	1880
Copying a Rate Option.....	1883
Deleting a Rate Option.....	1885
Viewing the Rate Option Details.....	1886
Pricing Group.....	1887
Viewing the Pricing Groups of a Bill Group.....	1887
Defining a Pricing Group for a Bill Group.....	1888
Editing a Pricing Group of a Bill Group.....	1891
Deleting a Pricing Group of a Bill Group.....	1893
Copying a Pricing Group of a Bill Group.....	1894
Pricing Rule Type.....	1897
Pricing Rule Type List.....	1898
Pricing Rule Type.....	1900
Claim Pricing.....	1908
Defining a Claim Pricing Rule Type.....	1910
Adding Claim Templates in a Claim Pricing Rule Type.....	1913
Adding the Claim-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type.....	1914
Editing a Claim Pricing Rule Type.....	1915
Deleting a Claim Pricing Rule Type.....	1918
Viewing the Claim Pricing Rule Type Details.....	1918
Defining a Claim Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer.....	1919

Defining the Markup or Markdown Values for Line Items in a Claim Pricing Rule.....	1921
Defining the Markup or Markdown Values for Line Items for Each Rule in a Claim Pricing Rule.....	1923
Defining Characteristics for a Claim Pricing Rule.....	1925
Editing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	1926
Viewing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	1928
Deleting a Claim Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	1929
Defining a Claim Pricing Rule for a Bill Group.....	1929
Defining a Claim Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group.....	1932
Editing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	1935
Viewing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	1936
Deleting a Claim Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	1937
Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing.....	1938
Defining a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type.....	1940
Adding the SSL-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type.....	1943
Editing a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type.....	1945
Deleting a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type.....	1948
Viewing the Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type Details.....	1948
Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer.....	1949
Defining Accumulation Parameters in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule.....	1952
Defining Run-in Parameters in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule.....	1954
Defining Lasering and Exclusion Information in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule.....	1955
Defining Characteristics for a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule.....	1957
Editing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	1958
Viewing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	1960
Deleting a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	1961
Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group.....	1961
Defining Accumulation Criteria in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule.....	1964
Defining Claim Pricing Information in a Specific Stop Loss Pricing Rule.....	1966
Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group.....	1968
Editing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	1971
Viewing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	1972
Deleting a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	1973
Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing.....	1973
Defining a Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type.....	1976
Adding the ASL-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type.....	1979
Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type.....	1981
Deleting an Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type.....	1984
Viewing the Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type Details.....	1984
Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer.....	1985
Defining Accumulation Parameters in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule.....	1988
Defining Run-in Parameters in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule.....	1991
Defining Characteristics for an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule.....	1992
Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	1993
Viewing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	1996
Deleting an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	1996
Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group.....	1997
Defining Accumulation Criteria in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule.....	2000
Defining Claim Pricing Rules in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule.....	2002
Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group.....	2004
Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2007
Viewing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2008
Deleting an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2009
Retention Type Claim Based Pricing.....	2009
Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type.....	2011
Adding Claim Based Disposition Details in a Pricing Rule Type.....	2014

Editing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type.....	2015
Deleting a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type.....	2017
Viewing the Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type Details.....	2018
Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer.....	2019
Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule.....	2022
Editing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	2023
Deleting a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	2026
Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group.....	2027
Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule.....	2029
Editing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2030
Deleting a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2033
Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group.....	2033
Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group.....	2036
Viewing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	2037
Viewing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2037
Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing.....	2038
Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type.....	2040
Adding the Enrollment Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type.....	2042
Editing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type.....	2043
Deleting a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type.....	2045
Viewing the Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type Details.....	2046
Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer.....	2047
Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule.....	2050
Editing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	2051
Deleting a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	2053
Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group.....	2054
Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule.....	2057
Editing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2058
Deleting a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2060
Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group.....	2061
Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group.....	2064
Viewing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	2065
Viewing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2066
Flat Fee Pricing.....	2066
Defining a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type.....	2068
Adding the One-Time Flat Fee Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type.....	2071
Editing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type.....	2072
Deleting a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type.....	2075
Viewing the One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type Details.....	2075
Defining a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule for a Bill Group.....	2076
Defining Characteristics for a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule.....	2078
Editing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2079
Viewing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2081
Deleting a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2082
Defining a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type.....	2082
Adding the Recurring Flat Fee Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type.....	2085
Editing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type.....	2087
Deleting a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type.....	2090
Viewing the Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type Details.....	2090
Defining a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule for a Bill Group.....	2091
Defining Characteristics for a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule.....	2093
Editing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2094

Viewing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2096
Deleting a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2097
Defining a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type.....	2097
Adding the Recurring Flat Fee Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type.....	2100
Editing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type.....	2101
Deleting a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type.....	2104
Viewing the Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type Details.....	2105
Defining a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule for a Bill Group.....	2106
Defining Characteristics for a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule.....	2108
Editing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2109
Viewing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2111
Deleting a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2112
Ancillary Pricing.....	2112
Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type.....	2115
Adding a Related Pricing Rule Type in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type.....	2120
Mapping the Transaction Field in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type.....	2122
Associating an Algorithm with an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type.....	2126
Defining Additional Data in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type.....	2129
Adding a Price Item in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type.....	2132
Adding a Price Item Parameter in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type.....	2135
Defining the Ancillary-Specific Data in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type.....	2136
Defining Pricing Arrangements in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type.....	2138
Defining a Characteristic for a Ancillary Pricing Rule Type.....	2139
Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type.....	2140
Deleting an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type.....	2144
Viewing the Ancillary Pricing Rule Type Details.....	2145
Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer.....	2145
Defining Characteristics for an Ancillary Pricing Rule.....	2148
Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	2150
Deleting an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	2152
Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule for a Bill Group.....	2153
Defining Characteristics for an Ancillary Pricing Rule.....	2156
Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2158
Deleting an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Bill Group.....	2160
Discount Pricing.....	2161
Types of Discount Arrangement.....	2162
Discount Share.....	2162
Discount Guarantee.....	2162
Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type.....	2162
Associating Algorithms with a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type.....	2166
Defining Additional Data in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type.....	2169
Adding a Price Item in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type.....	2171
Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type.....	2174
Defining a Characteristic for a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type.....	2175
Defining the Discount Specific Data in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type.....	2176
Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type.....	2179
Deleting a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type.....	2182
Viewing the Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type Details.....	2183
Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer.....	2183
Adding the Discount Details in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule .....	2186
Defining the Discount Limits in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule.....	2187
Excluding a Network or Provider in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule.....	2189
Defining a Characteristic for a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule.....	2190
Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	2191
Deleting a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer.....	2193
Write-Off Charges during Post Runout.....	2194

Level Funding Pricing.....	2194
Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type.....	2198
Associating an Algorithm with a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type.....	2200
Defining Additional Data in a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type.....	2201
Adding a Price Item in a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type.....	2203
Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type.....	2206
Defining Characteristics for a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type.....	2208
Defining the Level Funded Specific Additional Data in a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type.....	2209
Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type.....	2213
Deleting a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type.....	2215
Viewing the Level Funded Pricing Rule Type Details.....	2216
Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer.....	2216
Defining Accumulation Parameters in a Level Funded Pricing Rule.....	2219
Defining the Final Settlement Rules in a Level Funded Pricing Rule.....	2221
Defining a Characteristic for a Level Funded Pricing Rule.....	2226
Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Bill Group.....	2227
Defining Accumulation Criteria in a Level Funded Pricing Rule.....	2230
Defining Claim Pricing Information in a Level Funded Pricing Rule.....	2233
Defining Ancillary Pricing Information in a Level Funded Pricing Rule.....	2236
Defining Discount Arrangement Pricing Information in a Level Funded Pricing Rule.....	2239
Defining Retention Type Claim Based and/or Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Information in a Level Funded Pricing Rule.....	2241
Defining a Characteristic for a Level Funded Pricing Rule.....	2242
Pricing Rule (Used for Viewing).....	2243
Claim.....	2244
Aggregate Stop-Loss.....	2246
Specific Stop-Loss.....	2252
Retention Type Claim Based.....	2258
Retention Type Enrollment Based.....	2259
Flat Fee.....	2260
Ancillary.....	2262
Discount Arrangement.....	2264
Level Funded.....	2267

## **Chapter XXX: Self-Funded Billing.....2273**

Pre-requisites.....	2275
Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters.....	2276
Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility.....	2278
Price Item Eligibility.....	2280
Self-Funded Billing Process.....	2281
Transaction Aggregation.....	2281
Stop Loss Calculation.....	2286
Bill Generation.....	2286
Bill Group Derivation.....	2287
Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Claim Pricing Rule Type Category).....	2290
Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Specific Stop-Loss and Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule Type Categories).....	2295
Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type Category).....	2308
Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type Category).....	2320
Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Ancillary Pricing Rule Type Category).....	2330
Bill After Date Determination.....	2339

**Appendix A: Most Commonly Used Tasks..... 2341**

- Changing the Layout..... 2342
  - Adding a Column to the Zone..... 2342
  - Rearranging Columns in the Zone..... 2342
  - Removing a Column from the Zone..... 2342

**Appendix B: Administration.....2345**

- UI Maps..... 2346
  - Creating Display UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group.....2346
  - Creating Input UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group.....2347
- Feature Configurations.....2348
  - Setting the C1\_ACCTINFO Feature Configuration.....2348
  - Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration..... 2349
  - Setting the C1\_AXENTITY Feature Configuration..... 2357
  - Setting the C1-BILLADJSQ Feature Configuration..... 2358
  - Setting the C1-BILLCYCLE Feature Configuration..... 2359
  - Setting the C1\_CMO Feature Configuration..... 2360
  - Setting the C1\_DIVFUNCT Feature Configuration..... 2361
  - Setting the C1\_EXCHRATE Feature Configuration..... 2362
  - Setting the C1\_EXP\_OVRD Feature Configuration.....2363
  - Setting the C1\_FINTRANOP Feature Configuration..... 2363
  - Setting the C1\_FM Feature Configuration.....2364
  - Setting the C1-PAYPORTAL Feature Configuration.....2371
  - Setting the C1\_PERACCT Feature Configuration.....2373
  - Setting the C1\_PER\_REL Feature Configuration.....2373
  - Setting the C1\_PPARM\_FLG Feature Configuration.....2374
  - Setting the C1\_PRASNORDR Feature Configuration.....2375
  - Setting the C1\_PR\_REC Feature Configuration.....2376
  - Setting the C1-PYREQSRT Feature Configuration.....2377
  - Setting the C1\_RLENG Feature Configuration..... 2378
  - Setting the C1-TXNDMYID Feature Configuration.....2378



# About this Document

---

This document lists and describes various features in Oracle Revenue Management and Billing which can be used in the Healthcare and Insurance domains. It describes all screens related to these features and explains how to perform various tasks through these screens.

## Intended Audience

---

This document is intended for the following audience:

- End-users
- System Administrators
- Consulting Team
- Implementation Team
- Development Team

## Organization of the Document

---

Each insurance feature is described in a separate chapter in this document. All screens related to the feature and tasks related to the screen are explained in each chapter. This document contains the following chapters:

Chapter Number	Chapter Name	Chapter Description
Chapter 1	Self-Funded Customer Management	Explains how to create customers and accounts for billing the self-funded plans.
Chapter 2	Customer 360° View	Explains how to view in-depth information about the person, account, or policy in the <b>Customer 360° View</b> screen. It explains how to create sort records for bill groups and derivation and pricing parameters for bill groups. It explains how to view the pricing rules of a parent customer and the pricing rules defined for a policy of a bill group. It also explains how to define, edit, and delete the different types of pricing rules of a parent customer and bill group. In addition, it explains how to view the detailed information about the bill.
Chapter 3	Pricing Management	Explains the different concepts of the pricing model supported in the application. It explains how to define a parameter, price item, price list, tiering criterion, variance parameter, and person to person relationship type sequence. It also explains how to define pricing for a price item, how to assign a price item to a person, account, or price list, and how to assign a price list to a person or account.
Chapter 4	Division	Describes the different types of division. It also explains how to define a division.

Chapter Number	Chapter Name	Chapter Description
Chapter 5	Approval Workflow	Describes the approval workflow process and explains how to perform various tasks involved in the process. It explains how to implement the approval workflow process for an entity, such as account, person, and so on. It explains how to define an approval workflow group, approval workflow chain, approval workflow criterion type, approval workflow group chain linkage, approval workflow reasons, and approval workflow settings.
Chapter 6	Rules Engine	Describes how the rules engine function. It explains how to define, execute, and maintain business rules separately from the application code.
Chapter 7	Alternate Sequential Bill Numbers	Explains how to generate alternate sequential bill numbers which are either unique throughout the system or within the division.
Chapter 8	Transaction Feed Management	Describes the transaction feed management process and its sub-processes. It explains how to execute each sub-process. It also explains how to view the details of various transactions uploaded in the system. In addition, it explains how to create a transaction source, transaction record type, transaction aggregation rule, aggregation schedule, and disaggregation request.
Chapter 9	Upload Validated Payment Data	Explains how to upload and validate the payment records before you move them to the staging area. It also explains how to create payment events and payments using the validated payment records.
Chapter 10	Freeze Payments on Notification	Explains how the system freezes or cancels the automatic payments, voids the refund requests and cancels the refund adjustments when the review comments are received from the auto clearing house.
Chapter 11	Trial Billing	Explains how to generate trial bills before the actual bill is generated for an account. It also explains how to view the trial bills in the system.
Chapter 12	GL Account Validation	Explains how to enable the static or dynamic GL account validation feature.
Chapter 13	Upload Validated Adjustment Data	Explains how to validate and upload an adjustment data file and create adjustments through an adjustment upload request.
Chapter 14	Payment Request	Explains how to create or transfer payments through a payment request.
Chapter 15	Account Receivable Central	Explains how to use the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen to search for a bill which you need to offset against another bill. It explains how to perform single, mass, and cross currency offset against one or more bills. It also enables you to create a hold request, refund request, write off request, and dispute request through this screen.
Chapter 16	Offset Request	Explains how to offset the bill's outstanding amount against one or more bills through an offset request. It explains how to create the offset request types and offset requests in the system.
Chapter 17	Funding Request	Describes how to change the automatic payment amount through the funding process. It explains how to create the funding request types and funding requests in the system.

Chapter Number	Chapter Name	Chapter Description
Chapter 18	Refund/Write Off Request	Describes how to refund a payment or credit bill or bill line item and write off a debit bill or bill line item through a refund or write off request, respectively. It explains how to create the refund or write off request types and refund or write off requests in the system.
Chapter 19	Hold Request	Describes how to hold some processes and/or bills at the account or person level for a time period through a hold request. It explains how to create the hold request types and hold requests in the system.
Chapter 20	Delinquency Central	Explains how to track the overdue processes of a delinquent account through the <b>Delinquency Central</b> screen. It also explains how to create a hold request, payment arrangement, and promise to pay for a delinquent account from this screen.
Chapter 21	Upload Request	Explains how to do the following through an upload request: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Update bill cycle of accounts</li> <li>• Update contract riders in contracts</li> <li>• Create hold requests, refund requests, write off requests, or billable charges</li> <li>• Reinstate the policies</li> <li>• Create sort records for bill groups</li> <li>• Create derivation and pricing parameters for bill groups</li> </ul>
Chapter 22	General Ledger (GL) Accounting Template	Describes how to override the distribution code used for creating FT GL entries using the <b>GL Accounting Template</b> feature. It explains how to create the GL accounting templates for each process and sub processes combination.
Chapter 23	Payment Agreement Request	Describes how to schedule payments in installments for a set of unpaid bills of an account through a payment agreement request. It explains how to create the payment agreement request types and payment agreement requests in the system.
Chapter 24	Inbound Message	Explains how to create the customer and membership inbound messages through the web services. It explains the XML format in which the customer and membership data should be available while calling the respective web service. It also explains how to create the inbound message types and how to process the inbound messages in the system.
Chapter 25	Policy-Membership Overview	Explains how to create the policy types and policy person roles in the system. It explains how to create the policies, policy plans, memberships in the system.
Chapter 26	Upload Lockbox Payment and Remittance Advices	Explains how to upload lockbox payment and remittance advices received in the <b>Electronic Data Exchange (EDI) 820</b> format. It also explains the format in which EDI 820 flat file should be uploaded in the system.

Chapter Number	Chapter Name	Chapter Description
Chapter 27	Deferred Revenue Recognition	Describes how to recognize the deferred revenue in the system. It explains how to create a deferred revenue recognition template for each distribution code and contract type combination. It also explains how to generate the schedule for a deferred revenue recognition. In addition, it explains how to edit the deferred revenue recognition schedule.
Chapter 28	Reconciliation	Describes how to reconcile pay instructions received from the external system against the bill segments based on the account identifier, policy number, plan number, member identifier, and coverage period combination. It explains the CSV and EDI 820 file formats in which you can upload the pay instructions. It also explains how to create reconciliation types, reconciliations, discrepancy report types, and discrepancy reports in the system.
Chapter 29	Self-Funded Pricing	Explains how to create the following in the system: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim, Specific Stop-Loss, Aggregate Stop-Loss, Retention Type Claim Based, Retention Type Enrollment Based, One-Time Flat Fees, Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fees, Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fees, Ancillary, Discount, and Level-Funding pricing rule types</li> <li>• Claim, Specific Stop-Loss, Aggregate Stop-Loss, Retention Type Claim Based, Retention Type Enrollment Based, Ancillary, and Level-Funding pricing rules for the parent customers and the policies of the bill groups</li> <li>• One-Time Flat Fees, Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fees, and Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fees pricing rules for the policies of the bill groups</li> <li>• Discount pricing rules for the parent customers</li> </ul>
Chapter 30	Self-Funded Billing	Explains the billing process for the self-funded plans.
Appendix A	Most Commonly Used Tasks	Lists and describes some of the common tasks that you may perform while using the application.
Appendix B	Administration	Describes how to create UI maps and set various feature configurations in the system.

## Conventions

---

The following conventions are used across this document:

Convention	Meaning
<b>boldface</b>	Boldface indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in the text.
<i>italic</i>	Italic indicates a document or book title.
Monospace	Monospace indicates information that an end-user needs to enter in the application.

## Related Documents

You can refer to the following documents:

Document Name	Description
<i>Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Version 2.6.0.1.0 Release Notes</i>	Provides a brief description about the new features, enhancements, UI and database level changes, supported platforms, framework upgrade, supported upgrades, and technology upgrade made in this release. It also highlights the discontinued features, bug fixes, and known issues in this release.
<i>ORMB - Transaction Feed Management - Batch Execution Guide</i>	Describes the sequence in which the batches must be executed while performing various tasks in the Transaction Feed Management module.
<i>Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide</i>	Lists and describes various ORMB batches.
<i>Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Installation Guide</i>	Lists the application server pre-requisites, supported platforms, and software and hardware requirements for installing the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing application. It explains how to install the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing application.
<i>Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Quick Installation Guide</i>	Provides high-level information on how to install the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing (ORMB) application and selected additional software.
<i>Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Database Administrator's Guide</i>	Provides information about the Oracle Database Server and Client required for installing the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing database. It explains how to install database with and without demo data. It provides database configuration guidelines including recommended settings for the Oracle Exadata Database machine.
<i>Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Server Administration Guide</i>	Explains the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing (ORMB) architecture and technical know-how required for configuring and using the ORMB application. It explains how to configure and deploy web and business application servers. In addition, it explains how to monitor client machines, web and/or business application servers, and database connections.
<i>Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Security Guide</i>	Lists the security features available in the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing application. It explains how to configure security for the Oracle Revenue Management and Billing application using the default security features.

## Change Log

Revision	Last Update	Updated Section	Comments
8.1	08-07-2019	Self-Funded Customer Management (formerly, known as Administrative Services Only (ASO) Customer Management)	Updated Information

Revision	Last Update	Updated Section	Comments
		Self-Funded Pricing (formerly, known as Administrative Services Only (ASO) Pricing)	Added Information Related to Discount and Level Funded Pricing Rules Types
		Policy-Membership Overview	Updated Information
		Customer 360° View	Updated Information
		Pricing Management	Updated Information Related to the Price Item, Parameter, Price List, and Price Item Pricing Screens
		Upload Validated Adjustment Data	Updated Information in the Status Transition Topics
		Payment Request	Updated Information in the Status Transition Topics
		Offset Request	Updated Information in the Status Transition Topics
		Refund/Write Off Request	Updated Information in the Status Transition Topics
		Hold Request	Updated Information in the Status Transition Topics
		Upload Request	Updated Information in the Status Transition Topics
		General Ledger (GL) Accounting Template	Updated Information in the Status Transition Topics
		Payment Agreement Request	Updated Information in the Status Transition Topics
		Funding Request	Updated Information in the Status Transition Topics
		Funding Request	Updated Information
8.2	18-07-2019	Policy-Membership Overview	Updated Information
8.3	26-07-2019	Self-Funded Pricing	Added Information
		Inbound Message	Updated Information
8.4	06-08-2019	Pricing Management	Updated Information
		Inbound Message	Updated Information
8.5	21-08-2019	Inbound Message	Updated Information
		Transaction Feed Management	Updated Information

Revision	Last Update	Updated Section	Comments
		Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration	Added Information
8.6	19-09-2019	Inbound Message	Updated Information
		Self-Funded Pricing	Added Section
8.7	17-10-2019	Inbound Message	Updated Information
		Pricing Management	Updated Information
8.8	21-08-2020	Upload Validated Adjustment Data	Updated Information





---

# Chapter 1

---

## Self-Funded Customer Management

---

### Topics:

- [Self-Funded Entities](#)

Self-funded health care, also known as Administrative Services Only (ASO), is a self insurance arrangement whereby an employer provides health or disability benefits to employees using the company's own funds. In self-funded health plan, employers (usually larger) operate their own health plan. However, in the fully-insured plan, the employer contracts an insurance company to cover the employees and dependents. Employers choose to self-insure because it allows them to save the profit margin that an insurance company adds to its premium for a fully-insured plan. However, self-insuring exposes the company to much larger risk in the event that more claims than expected must be paid.

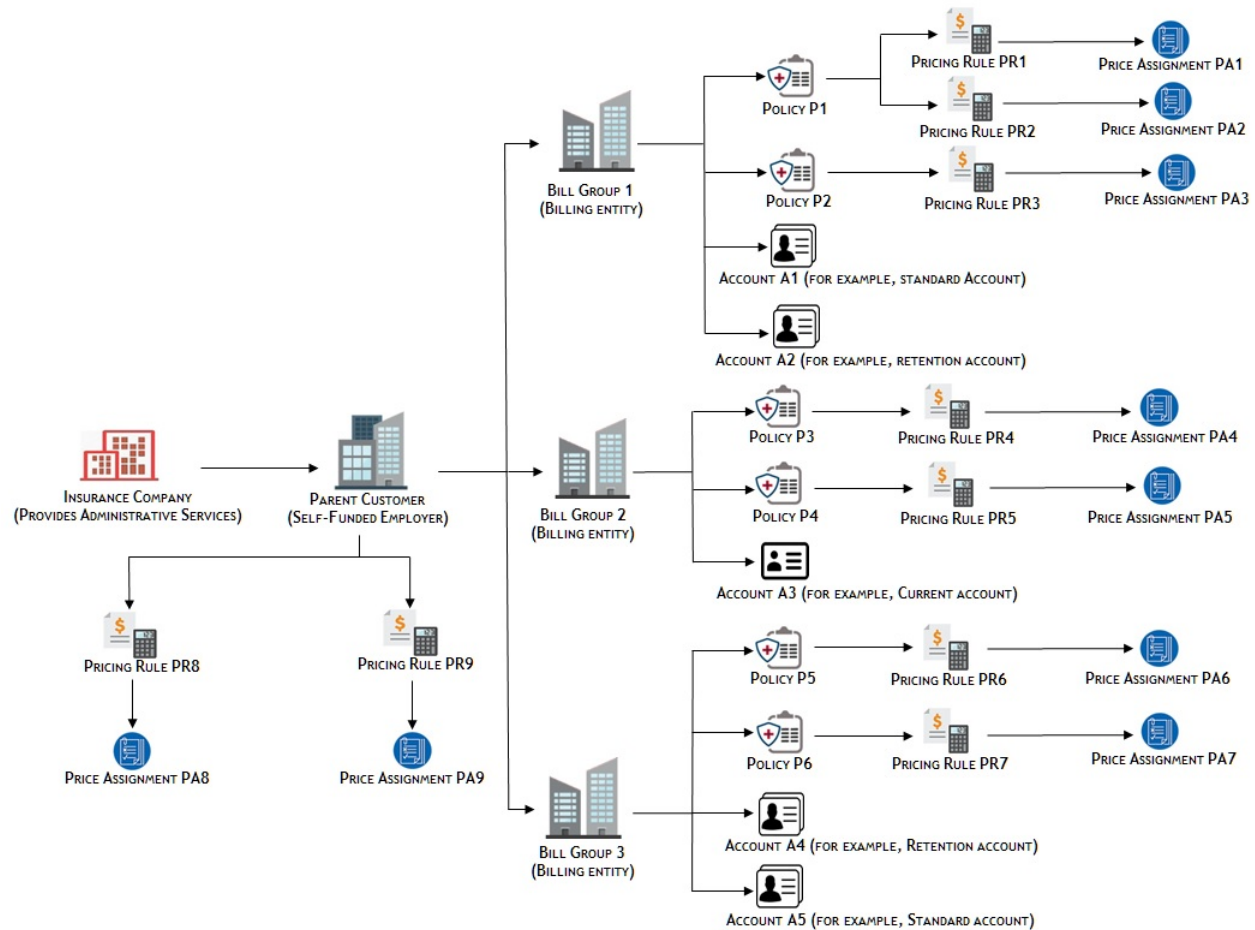
Oracle Revenue Management and Billing (ORMB) supports the following types of self-funding approach:

- **Fully Self-Funded** - In the fully self-funded approach, the employer retains all the risk and bears the claim costs irrespective of any limit.
- **Partially Self-Funded** - In the partially self-funded approach, the employer purchases reinsurance or stop loss coverage to pass the risk to insurance company.

The system enables you to create customers and accounts for the self-funded health care business. This chapter explains how to create different entities involved in the self-funded health care business.

## Self-Funded Entities

The following figure graphically represents the different entities involved in the self-funded health care business:



### Parent Customer

The self-funded employers must be defined as parent customers in the system. You can define a person as the parent customer by setting its person type to **Parent Customer**. You can create a parent customer from the user interface or through an ASO Customer inbound message.

### Bill Groups

The system allows you to define one or more bill groups for a parent customer. The claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions of the employees are billed to a bill group. Each bill group will handle the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions of employees based on the employee attributes, such as location, employment status, employment department, and so on. The system allows you to define the derivation and pricing parameters, such as source system, parameter 1, parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 for a bill group. These parameters are used to derive the bill group against which the claim, enrollment, and ancillary charges should be billed in the system. The derived bill group is also used for billing the claim based fees, specific stop-loss credits, aggregate stop-loss credits, discount, and level-funding charges.

You can define a person as the bill group by setting its person type to **Bill Group**. The bill groups should be defined as the child persons of the parent customer (i.e. self-funded employer) using the relationship type which is specified in the **Person Relationship Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. You can create a bill group from the user interface or through an ASO Customer inbound message.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters	<a href="#">Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</a> on page 2276
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Bill Group's Account

The claim charges, specific stop-loss credits, aggregate stop-loss credits, claim based fees, enrollment based fees, ancillary charges, discount, and level-funding charges are billed to the bill group's account. Therefore, every bill group should have at least one account in the system. You can create multiple accounts for a bill group. You can create an account for a bill group from the user interface or through an ASO Customer inbound message.

Depending on the employer's preference, the claim charges, specific stop-loss credits, aggregate stop-loss credits, claim based fees, enrollment based fees, ancillary charges, discount, and level-funding charges can be billed on the same or different accounts of the bill group. The system enables you to create different types of accounts (such as, standard and retention) for a bill group. You can specify the type of account by defining the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic for the account.

**Note:** At present, we have not shipped any predefined values for the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic type. You must define the predefined characteristic values as per the business requirements.

You can also set the priority for an account based on the invoice type while specifying the billing account information for a price item in a pricing rule type. For example,

Price Item	Priority	Invoice Type	Account
P1	10	Standard	A1
	20	Retention	A2
P2	10	Retention	A2
	20	Standard	A1

Now, when a claim transaction is mapped to P1, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic type is set to **Standard** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the standard account (A1) of the bill group for billing. However, if an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic type is set to **Standard** does not exist for the bill group, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic type is set to **Retention** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the retention account (A2) of the bill group for billing. If an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic type is set to **Retention** does not exist for the bill group, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

Similarly, when a claim transaction is mapped to P2, the system considers the account of the bill group which is available based on the priority. The system derives the billing account for only those price items for which the effective pricing rule is derived.

The system searches the account of the bill group based on the priority only when the **Invoice Type Characteristic Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration is set to **C1INVTYP**.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Self-Funded Policy

You can create a self-funded policy from the user interface or through an ASO Customer inbound message. If the self-funded policy information is given for a bill group in an ASO Customer inbound message, the system does the following:

- Associates the bill group with the policy using the policy person role which is specified in the **Bill Group Policy Person Role** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration
- Associates the parent customer with the policy using the policy person role which is specified in the **Parent Customer Policy Person Role** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration

## Price Items

Each service offered in the self-funded plan should be defined as a price item in the system. You must add the price item in a pricing rule type. The system then enables you to create a pricing rule for a price item using the respective pricing rule type.

You can define a price item and associate the required parameters with the price item from the user interface. You can use the price item parameters for defining multi parameter based pricing or for aggregating the transactions.

## Pricing Rule Types

You can create a pricing rule using the respective pricing rule type. The system enables you to create pricing rule types of the following categories for the self-funded plan from the user interface:

Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule Type Category	Sample Shipped with the Product
Claim	Claim	CLAIM
Retention Type Claim Based	Retention Type Claim Based	RETCLMBSD
Discount Share	Discount Arrangement	DISSHARE
Discount Guarantee	Discount Arrangement	DISGUAR
One-Time Flat Fees	Flat Fees	ONETIMEFLATFEES
Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fees	Flat Fees	RECFLATFEES_BP
Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fees	Flat Fees	RECFLATFEES_FREQ
Retention Type Enrollment Based	Retention Type Enrollment Based	RETENRLBSD
Ancillary	Ancillary	ANCILLARY
Specific Stop-Loss	Specific Stop-Loss	SSL
Aggregate Stop-Loss	Aggregate Stop-Loss	ASL
Enrollment Based Premium	Level Funded	LVLNRLPRE
Flat Rate Based Premium	Level Funded	LVLFLATPRE

## Pricing Rules

The self-funded plan may offer various services to the employer, such as claim administration, reinsurance or stop-loss, discount or level funding arrangement, and so on. Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to define pricing rules for various services offered in the self-funded plan. The below table lists the pricing rules which you can define for the following services offered in the self-funded plan:

Service	Pricing Rule	Created for....
Claim Administration	Claim	Parent Customer
		Bill Group's Policy where the Parent Customer is the Policy Holder
	Retention Type Claim Based	Parent Customer
		Bill Group's Policy where the Parent Customer is the Policy Holder
Claim Administration	Discount Share	Parent Customer
	Discount Guarantee	Parent Customer
	One-Time Flat Fees	Bill Group's Policy where the Parent Customer is the Policy Holder
	Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fees	Bill Group's Policy where the Parent Customer is the Policy Holder
	Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fees	Bill Group's Policy where the Parent Customer is the Policy Holder
Enrollment	Retention Type Enrollment Based	Parent Customer
		Bill Group's Policy where the Parent Customer is the Policy Holder
Ancillary, such as Laboratory, Radiology, Pharmacy, Physical Therapy, or Preventive Care	Ancillary	Parent Customer
		Bill Group's Policy where the Parent Customer is the Policy Holder
Stop-Loss	Specific Stop-Loss	Parent Customer
		Bill Group's Policy where the Parent Customer is the Policy Holder
	Aggregate Stop-Loss	Parent Customer

Service	Pricing Rule	Created for....
		Bill Group's Policy where the Parent Customer is the Policy Holder
Level Funding Arrangement	Enrollment Based Premium	Parent Customer
		Bill Group's Policy where the Parent Customer is the Policy Holder
	Flat Rate Based Premium	Parent Customer
		Bill Group's Policy where the Parent Customer is the Policy Holder

You can create the above mentioned self-funded pricing rules for a parent customer or for the policy of the bill group from the user interface and not through an ASO Customer inbound message.

The system creates a price assignment for each pricing rule. In case of the retention type claim and enrollment based pricing rules, the system creates multiple price assignments when different claim based or enrollment based fee is offered for employees with different set of employee attributes.

The system first searches for the pricing rule of a price item (i.e. service) at the bill group level. If the effective pricing rule for a price item is available at the bill group level, the system uses it for deriving the price assignment. However, if the effective pricing rule for a price item is not available at the bill group level, the system searches for the pricing rule of a price item at the parent customer level. If the effective pricing rule for a price item is available at the parent customer level, the system uses it for deriving the price assignment. However, if the effective pricing rule for a price item is not available at the bill group or parent customer level, the system does not consider the respective price item for billing.

## Price Assignments

The system creates a price assignment for each self-funded pricing rule. In case of the retention type claim and enrollment based pricing rules, the system creates multiple price assignments when different claim based or enrollment based fee is offered for employees with different set of employee attributes.

The system automatically creates a price assignment whenever you create a self-funded pricing rule. The system creates the price assignment in a price list and assigns the price list to the parent customer or bill group. The system creates multiple price assignments when you define a pricing rule for a policy of a bill group using a pricing group.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Pricing Group	<a href="#">Pricing Group</a> on page 1887

---

# Chapter

# 2

---

## Customer 360° View

---

### Topics:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Customer 360° View](#)
- [Customer 360° Information](#)
- [Bill Information](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides a new screen named **Customer 360° View** which enables you to quickly view in-depth information about the person. This screen can be used to view the 360° information of a person who is associated with the fully-insured or self-funded policy. It provides the following information:

- Basic details, characteristics, child persons, person hierarchy, person billing hierarchy, and the customer contacts of the person.
- Basic details, characteristics, administrative contracts, automatic payment options, billing and adjustment summary, financial and collections summary, and unpaid bills of the person's account.
- Consolidated view of the transactions (such as, billing, payment, payment cancellation, adjustment, adjustment cancellation, automatic payments sent to the auto clearing house for review, refund, write off, excess credit, and reconciliation) which are carried out for the person's account
- Basic details, related persons, and policy plans in the person's policy
- Basic and in-depth details of the pricing rules which are defined for a parent customer who is associated with the self-funded policy.
- Basic and in-depth details of the pricing rules which are defined for a self-funded policy of a bill group.
- Basic details of the pricing groups defined for a bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy.
- Basic details of the approval transactions which are created while defining, editing, and deleting the pricing rules of the parent customer and bill group.
- Basic details of the bill, adjustments which are swept onto the bill, activities (such as, payment, offset, refund, write off, or transfer) through which the bill is settled, high-level summary and details of the bill segments which are included in the bill, active hold requests due to which the bill is kept on hold, offset requests through which the bill is offset against another bill, and refund and write off requests through which the bill or its bill segment is either refunded or written off.

In other words, this feature allows you to drill-down to see or act on all current and historical revenue management and billing details. This allows you to professionally and efficiently handle customer inquiries and complaints at the first point of contact, raising your customer service from previously unattainable levels and reducing the associated time and cost.

## Prerequisites

To setup the Customer 360° View feature, you need do the following:

- Define the required divisions, customer classes, person types, person identifier types, account identifier types, policy types, and policy person roles in the system
- Define values for the **C1-SourceSystemLookup** extendable lookup
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Person**
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Account**
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Policy**
- Define values for the **Administrative Contract Type** and **On Account Contract Type** option types in the **C1\_CMO** feature configuration

**Note:** This prerequisite is not required when you are viewing the 360° information of a person who is associated with the self-funded policy.

- Define values for **Premium Amount SQI** and **Coverage End Date SQI** option types in the **C1-BILLADJSQ** feature configuration

**Note:** This prerequisite is not required when you are viewing the 360° information of a person who is associated with the self-funded policy.

- Define value for the **Person Relationship Type** option type in the **C1-ASOBLNG** feature configuration

**Note:** This prerequisite is not required when you are viewing the 360° information of a person who is associated with the fully-insured policy.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1_CMO</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1_CMO Feature Configuration</a> on page 2360
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349
How to setup the <b>C1-BILLADJSQ</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-BILLADJSQ Feature Configuration</a> on page 2358

## Customer 360° View

The **Customer 360° View** screen allows you to search for a person, its accounts, and policies using various search criteria. It contains the following zone:

- [360° Search](#) on page 52

### 360° Search

The **360° Search** zone allows you to search for a person, account, and policy using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a person, account, or policy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Policy</li> <li>• Person</li> <li>• Account</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Policy</b> option is selected.	
Policy Type	Used to search policies which are created using a particular policy type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Source System	Used to search policies which were created in a particular external system.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Policy Number	Used to search a policy with a particular policy number.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Policy ID	Used to search a particular policy.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Policy Person Role	Used to search policies where a person is assigned a particular person role.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Used to search a particular person. If you specify the person name while searching for an account, the system searches all accounts where the person is the main customer. However, if you specify the person name while searching for a policy, the system searches all policies where the person is the main customer.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You select the <b>Policy</b> or <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>You select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list and click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link available in the right side of the <b>360° Search</b> zone.</li> </ul>	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are searching for a policy using the policy person role.
Status	Used to search policies with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Canceled</li> <li>Pending Cancellation</li> <li>Pending</li> <li>Pending Reinstatement</li> <li>Pending Termination</li> <li>Pending Termination Overridden</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Reinstated</li> <li>Runout</li> <li>Terminated</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Start Date	Used to search policies which are effective from a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list and click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link available in the right side of the <b>360° Search</b> zone.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
End Date	Used to search policies which are effective till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list and click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link available in the right side of the <b>360° Search</b> zone.	
Characteristic Type	Used to search persons, accounts, or policies with a particular type of characteristic.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link available in the right side of the <b>360° Search</b> zone.	
Characteristic Value	Used to search persons, accounts, or policies with a particular characteristic.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are searching for a person, account, or policy using the characteristic type.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	
Division	Used to search persons or accounts which belong to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Customer Class	Used to search accounts or persons' whose accounts belong to a particular customer class.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person ID	Used to search a particular person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Identifier Type	Used to indicate the person identifier type based on which you want to search for a person.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
		<b>Note:</b> If you specify the person identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the person identifier type.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Identifier	Used to search a person with a particular identifier.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you specify the person identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the person identifier.
Person Type	Used to search persons of a particular type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business</li> <li>• Bill Group</li> <li>• Group</li> <li>• Broker</li> <li>• Person</li> <li>• Parent Customer</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list and click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link available in the right side of the <b>360° Search</b> zone.	
Address	Used to search persons with a particular address or accounts' whose main customer has a particular address.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list and click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link available in the right side of the <b>360° Search</b> zone.	
City	Used to search persons who belong to a particular city or accounts' whose main customer belongs to a particular city.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list and click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link available in the right side of the <b>360° Search</b> zone.	
Phone Number	Used to search a person with a particular phone number or accounts' whose main customer has a particular phone number.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list and click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link available in the right side of the <b>360° Search</b> zone.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Used to search a particular account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the account identifier type based on which you want to search for an account.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account Identifier	Used to search an account with a particular identifier.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:**

You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a person, account, or policy. One more search criterion is required when you are searching for a person or account using the division and/or customer class. Similarly, one more search criterion is required when you are searching for a policy using the policy type and/or source system.

If you have specified any other search criterion along with the person ID, account ID, or policy ID, the system ignores the additional search criterion and searches using the person ID, account ID, or policy ID, respectively.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description
Policy Information	Displays information about the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective policy. This column appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Main Customer	Indicates the main customer of the policy or account.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Source System	Displays the name of the external system in which the policy was created.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.

Column Name	Column Description
Policy Number	Displays the policy number.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy is effective.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
End Date	Displays the date till when the policy is effective.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Status	<p>Indicates the status of the policy. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Canceled</li> <li>• Pending Cancellation</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Pending Reinstatement</li> <li>• Pending Termination</li> <li>• Pending Termination Overridden</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> <li>• Reinstated</li> <li>• Runout</li> <li>• Terminated</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Policy</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Person Information	Displays information about the person. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.</p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Person Name	Displays the name of the person.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.

Column Name	Column Description
Person Type	Indicates the type of the person. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business</li> <li>• Bill Group</li> <li>• Group</li> <li>• Broker</li> <li>• Person</li> <li>• Parent Customer</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Primary Person Identifier Type	Indicates the primary identifier type associated with the person.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Primary Person Identifier	Displays the primary person identifier.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Account Information	Displays information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account. This column appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Division	Indicates the division to which the account belongs.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Customer Class	Indicates the customer class to which the account belongs.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Primary Account Identifier Type	Indicates the primary identifier type associated with the account.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Primary Account Identifier	Displays the primary account identifier.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.

Column Name	Column Description
Current Balance	Displays the total amount of funds in the account.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.

**Note:**

You can view the 360° information of the person, account, or policy by clicking the **View** () icon corresponding to the record in the **Search Results** section.

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a> on page 61
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching for a Policy</a> on page 62
How to view the 360° information of a person	<a href="#">Viewing the 360° Information of a Person</a> on page 63
How to view the 360° information of an account	<a href="#">Viewing the 360° Information of an Account</a> on page 65
How to view the 360° information of a policy	<a href="#">Viewing the 360° Information of a Policy</a> on page 66

**Searching for a Person****Prerequisites**

To search for a person, you should have:

- Divisions, customer classes, person types, and person identifier types defined in the application
- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Person**)

**Procedure**

To search for a person:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, click **Customer 360° View**.  
The **Customer 360° View** screen appears.
3. Select the **Person** option from the **Search By** list to indicate that you want to search for a person.
4. Enter the required search criteria in the **360° Search** zone.



**Note:**

You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a person. One more search criterion is required when you are searching for a person using the division and/or customer class.

The criteria are grouped as indicated by line separators between the criteria. Each group is independent from the other, and only one group is used at a time for searching. If you enter criteria in more than one group, the criteria from the former group is used for searching. For example, if you enter the person name (in the second criteria group) and person identifier (in the fourth criteria group), the system searches using the person name instead of the person identifier.


You must specify division and/or customer class when you are searching for a person using the city.

You must specify division, customer class, or any other criteria in the second group when you are searching for a person using the person type.

If you have specified any other search criterion along with the person ID, the system ignores the additional search criterion and searches for the person using the person ID.

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

The **Advanced Search** link appears in the right side of the **360° Search** zone. On clicking the **Advanced Search** link, additional fields appear in the zone which help you to refine the search.

If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

## 5. Click **Search**.

A list of persons that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Customer 360° View screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° View</a> on page 52
360° Search zone	<a href="#">360° Search</a> on page 52

## Searching for an Account

### Prerequisites

To search for an account, you should have:

- Divisions, customer classes, and account identifier types defined in the application
- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Account**)

### Procedure

To search for an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, click **Customer 360° View**.  
The **Customer 360° View** screen appears.
3. Select the **Account** option from the **Search By** list to indicate that you want to search for an account.

4. Enter the required search criteria in the **360° Search** zone.

**Note:**

You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an account. One more search criterion is required when you are searching for an account using the division and/or customer class.


The criteria are grouped as indicated by line separators between the criteria. Each group is independent from the other, and only one group is used at a time for searching. If you enter criteria in more than one group, the criteria from the former group is used for searching. For example, if you enter the person name (in the fourth criteria group) and account identifier (in the third criteria group), the system searches using the account identifier instead of the person name.

You must specify division and/or customer class when you are searching for an account using the city.

If you have specified any other search criterion along with the account ID, the system ignores the additional search criterion and searches for the account using the account ID.

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

The **Advanced Search** link appears in the right side of the **360° Search** zone. On clicking the **Advanced Search** link, additional fields appear in the zone which help you to refine the search.

If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Customer 360° View screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° View</a> on page 52
360° Search zone	<a href="#">360° Search</a> on page 52

**Searching for a Policy**

**Prerequisites**

To search for a policy, you should have:

- Policy types and policy person roles defined in the application
- Values defined for the **C1-SourceSystemLookup** extendable lookup
- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Policy**)

**Procedure**

To search for a policy:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, click **Customer 360° View**.  
The **Customer 360° View** screen appears.
3. Select the **Policy** option from the **Search By** list to indicate that you want to search for a policy.

4. Enter the required search criteria in the **360° Search** zone.

**Note:**


You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a policy. One more search criterion is required when you are searching for a policy using the policy type and/or source system.

If you have specified any other search criterion along with the policy ID, the system ignores the additional search criterion and searches for the policy using the policy ID.

You must specify the person name when you are searching for a policy using the policy person role.

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

The **Advanced Search** link appears in the right side of the **360° Search** zone. On clicking the **Advanced Search** link, additional fields appear in the zone which help you to refine the search.

If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of policies that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° View</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° View</a> on page 52
<b>360° Search</b> zone	<a href="#">360° Search</a> on page 52

## Viewing the 360° Information of a Person

### Prerequisites

To view the 360° information of a person, you should have:

- Value defined for the **Person Relationship Type** option type in the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration

**Note:** This prerequisite is not required when you are viewing the 360° information of a person who is associated with the fully-insured policy.

### Procedure

To view the 360° information of a person:

- Search for the person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen. It contains the following zones:

- [Person Information](#) on page 72
- [Person Characteristics](#) on page 74
- [Child Persons](#) on page 74
- [Person Hierarchy](#) on page 75

**Note:** The **Person Hierarchy** zone does not appear when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

- [Person Billing Hierarchy](#) on page 76

**Note:** The **Person Billing Hierarchy** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

- [Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters](#) on page 79

**Note:** The **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.


- [Bill Group Sorting](#) on page 81

**Note:** The **Bill Group Sorting** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

- [Customer Contacts](#) on page 82

3. View the basic details of the person in the **Person Information** zone.
4. View the characteristics defined for the person in the **Person Characteristics** zone.
5. View the child persons included in the person's hierarchy in the **Child Persons** zone.
6. View the accounts and policies where the person is the main customer and memberships where the person is the main subscriber in the **Person Hierarchy** zone.
7. If you are viewing the 360° information of a parent customer, view the bill groups of the parent customer and the bill groups' accounts and policies in the **Person Billing Hierarchy** zone. However, if you are viewing the 360° information of a bill group, view the accounts and policies of the bill group in the **Person Billing Hierarchy** zone.
8. View the derivation and pricing parameters defined for the bill group and sort ID combinations in the **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone.
9. View the sort IDs defined for the bill groups in the **Bill Group Sorting** zone.
10. View how and when the person was contacted in the **Customer Contacts** zone.
11. If required, you can view the details of the account to which the person is associated in the **Account** tab.

**Note:**

If you are viewing the 360° information of a parent customer, the following zones appears in the **Account** tab when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account in the **Bill Group Accounts** zone:

- Account Information
- Auto Pay Details
- Account Financial and Collections Summary
- Account Characteristics
- Open Bills
- Billed Vs Paid
- Timeline

12. If required, you can view the details of the policy to which the person is associated in the **Policy** tab.
13. If required, you can view the pricing information of a parent customer or bill group in the **Pricing** tab.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Person</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Person</a> on page 71
<b>Account</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Account</a> on page 83
<b>Policy</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Policy</a> on page 96
<b>Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
How to view the pricing information of a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing the Pricing Information of a Parent Customer</a> on page 67
How to view the pricing information of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing the Pricing Information of a Bill Group</a> on page 68
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

**Viewing the 360° Information of an Account****Prerequisites**


To view the 360° information of an account, you should have:

- Value defined for the **Person Relationship Type** option type in the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration
- Values defined for the **Administrative Contract Type** and **On Account Contract Type** option types in the **C1\_CMO** feature configuration
- Values defined for the **Premium Amount SQI** and **Coverage End Date SQI** option types in the **C1-BILLADJSQ** feature configuration

**Note:** The former prerequisite is not required when you are viewing the 360° information of a person who is associated with the fully-insured policy. The latter two prerequisites are not required when you are viewing the 360° information of a person who is associated with the self-funded policy.

**Procedure**

To view the 360° information of an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.

The **Account** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen. It contains the following zones:

- [Bill Group Accounts](#) on page 84

**Note:** The **Bill Group Accounts** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

- [Account Information](#) on page 85
- [Auto Pay Details](#) on page 87
- [Account Characteristics](#) on page 86
- [Administrative Contracts](#) on page 86

**Note:** The **Administrative Contracts** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is neither **Parent Customer** nor **Bill Group**.

- [Account Financial and Collections Summary](#) on page 87
- [Billing and Adjustment Summary](#) on page 88

**Note:** The **Billing and Adjustment Summary** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is neither **Parent Customer** nor **Bill Group**.

- [Open Bills](#) on page 89
  - [Billed Vs Paid](#) on page 90
  - [Timeline](#) on page 93
3. View the accounts of each bill group of the parent customer in the **Bill Group Accounts** zone.
  4. View the basic details of the account in the **Account Information** zone.
  5. View the automatic payment options defined for the account in the **Auto Pay Details** zone.
  6. View the characteristics defined for the account in the **Account Characteristics** zone.
  7. View the account's contracts which should be monitored closely for various administrative reasons in the **Administrative Contracts** zone.
  8. View the financial and collection details of the account in the **Account Financial and Collections Summary** zone.
  9. View the billing and adjustment summary of the account in the **Billing and Adjustment Summary** zone.
  10. View the unpaid bills of the account in the **Open Bills** zone.
  11. View various transactions of the account, such as bills, payments, adjustments, reconciliations, and so on, in the **Billed Vs Paid** zone.
  12. View the number of customer contacts, bills, and payments created for the account in a particular month in the **Timeline** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a> on page 61
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Account</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Account</a> on page 83
How to setup the <b>C1_CMO</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1_CMO Feature Configuration</a> on page 2360
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349
How to setup the <b>C1-BILLADJSQ</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-BILLADJSQ Feature Configuration</a> on page 2358

## Viewing the 360° Information of a Policy

### Procedure

To view the 360° information of a policy:

1. Search for the policy in the **Customer 360° View** screen.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the policy whose details you want to view.

The **Policy** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen. It contains the following zones:

- [Policy Information](#) on page 97
- [Packaged Savings Code](#) on page 98

**Note:** The **Packaged Savings Code** zone does not appear when you are viewing the 360° information of a person who is associated with a self-funded policy.

- [Policy Persons](#) on page 98
  - [Policy Plans](#) on page 98
3. View the basic details of the policy in the **Policy Information** zone.
  4. View the packaged savings (or discount) offered in the policy plan in the **Packaged Savings Code** zone.
  5. View the persons associated with the policy in the **Policy Persons** zone.
  6. View the plans defined in the policy in the **Policy Plans** zone.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching for a Policy</a> on page 62
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Policy</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Policy</a> on page 96

## **Viewing the Pricing Information of a Parent Customer**


### **Prerequisites**

To view the pricing information of a parent customer, you should have:

- Value defined for the **Person Relationship Type** option type in the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration

### **Procedure**

To view the pricing information of a parent customer:

1. Search for a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer** in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears. It contains the following zones:

- [Parent Customer Pricing Rules](#) on page 101
- [Bill Group Policy Pricing Rule Summary](#) on page 104
- [Bill Group Policy Information](#) on page 105
- [Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules](#) on page 107
- [Bill Group Pricing Groups](#) on page 111
- [Pricing Rule Approval Transactions](#) on page 112

4. View the pricing rules which are defined for the parent customer in the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone.
5. View the list of pricing rules which are defined for the self-funded policies of the bill groups in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rule Summary** zone.
6. View the details of the policies to which a bill group is associated in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone.
7. View the details of the pricing rules which are defined for a policy of a bill group in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.
8. View the details of the pricing groups which are defined for a bill group in the **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone.
9. View the approval transactions which are created while defining, editing, or deleting a pricing rule of the parent customer and **Pricing Rule Approval Transactions** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Viewing the Pricing Information of a Bill Group


### Prerequisites

To view the pricing information of a bill group, you should have:

- Value defined for the **Person Relationship Type** option type in the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration

### Procedure

To view the pricing information of a bill group:

1. Search for a person whose person type is set to **Bill Group** in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears. It contains the following zones:

- [Parent Customer Pricing Rule Summary](#) on page 105
  - [Bill Group Policy Information](#) on page 105
  - [Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules](#) on page 107
  - [Bill Group Pricing Groups](#) on page 111
  - [Pricing Rule Approval Transactions](#) on page 112
4. View a list of pricing rules which are defined for the parent customer in the **Parent Customer Pricing Rule Summary** zone.
  5. View the details of the policies to which the bill group is associated in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone.



6. View the details of the pricing rules which are defined for a policy of the bill group in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.
7. View the details of the pricing groups which are defined for the bill group in the **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone.
8. View the approval transactions which are created while defining, editing, or deleting the pricing rules of the bill group in the **Pricing Rule Approval Transactions** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Customer 360° Information

The following table provides information about the **Customer 360° Information** screen:

If you are viewing the 360° information of...	Then
A person who is associated with the fully-insured policy	<p>The <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen allows you to view:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Basic details, characteristics, child persons, hierarchy, and the customer contacts of the person.</li> <li>• Basic details, characteristics, administrative contracts, automatic payment options, billing and adjustment summary, financial and collections summary, and unpaid bills of the person's account.</li> <li>• Basic details, related persons, and policy plans in the person's policy.</li> </ul>

If you are viewing the 360° information of...	Then
A parent customer who is associated with the self-funded policy	<p>The <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen allows you to view:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Basic details, characteristics, child persons, billing hierarchy, and customer contacts of the parent customer.</li> <li>• Sort IDs of all effective child persons whose person type is set to <b>Bill Group</b> and who are related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the <b>Person Relationship Type</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration.</li> <li>• Derivation and pricing parameters defined for the bill group and sort ID combinations.</li> <li>• Accounts of all effective child persons whose person type is set to <b>Bill Group</b> and who are related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the <b>Person Relationship Type</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration.</li> <li>• Basic details, characteristics, automatic payment options, financial and collections summary, and unpaid bills of a particular bill group's account.</li> <li>• Basic details and policy persons of a self-funded policy where the parent customer is the policy holder.</li> <li>• Basic details of the pricing rules which are defined for the parent customer.</li> <li>• Summarized tree view listing each bill group of the parent customer and the bill groups' self-funded policies and pricing rules.</li> <li>• Basic details of the self-funded policies which are associated with each bill group of the parent customer.</li> <li>• Basic details of the pricing rules which are defined for the self-funded policies of each bill group.</li> <li>• Basic details of the active pricing groups which are defined for each bill group.</li> <li>• Basic information about the approval transactions which are created while defining, editing, and deleting the parent customer's and bill groups' pricing rules.</li> </ul>

If you are viewing the 360° information of...	Then
A bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy	<p>The <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen allows you to view:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Basic details, characteristics, child persons, billing hierarchy, and customer contacts of the bill group.</li> <li>• Basic details, characteristics, automatic payment options, financial and collections summary, and unpaid bills of the bill group's account.</li> <li>• Basic details and policy persons of a self-funded policy.</li> <li>• Summarized tree view listing the parent customer and pricing rules which are defined for the parent customer.</li> <li>• Basic details of the self-funded policies which are associated with the bill group.</li> <li>• Basic details of the pricing rules which are defined for the self-funded policies of the bill group.</li> <li>• Basic details of the active pricing groups which are defined for the bill group.</li> <li>• Basic information about the approval transactions which are created while defining, editing, and deleting the pricing rules of the bill group.</li> </ul>

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- [Customer 360° Information - Person](#) on page 71
- [Customer 360° Information - Account](#) on page 83
- [Customer 360° Information - Policy](#) on page 96
- [Customer 360° Information - Pricing](#) on page 99

**Note:** If a person does not have an account or policy, the data does not appear in the **Account** or **Policy** tab, respectively. And, if the pricing rules are not defined for the parent customer or bill group's policy, the data does not appear in the **Pricing** tab.

## Customer 360° Information - Person

The following table provides information about the **Person** tab:

If you are viewing the 360° information of...	Then...
A person who is associated with the fully-insured policy	The <b>Person</b> tab displays the basic details, characteristics, child persons, hierarchy, and customer contacts of the person.

If you are viewing the 360° information of...	Then...
A parent customer who is associated with the self-funded policy	<p>The <b>Person</b> tab displays the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Basic details, characteristics, child persons, billing hierarchy, and customer contacts of the parent customer.</li> <li>Sort IDs of all effective child persons whose person type is set to <b>Bill Group</b> and who are related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the <b>Person Relationship Type</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration.</li> <li>Derivation and pricing parameters defined for the bill group and sort ID combinations.</li> </ul>
A bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy	The <b>Person</b> tab displays the basic details, characteristics, child persons, billing hierarchy, and customer contacts of the bill group.

It contains the following zones:

- [Person Information](#) on page 72
- [Person Characteristics](#) on page 74
- [Child Persons](#) on page 74
- [Person Hierarchy](#) on page 75

**Note:** The **Person Hierarchy** zone does not appear when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

- [Person Billing Hierarchy](#) on page 76

**Note:** The **Person Billing Hierarchy** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

- [Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters](#) on page 79

**Note:** The **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

- [Bill Group Sorting](#) on page 81

**Note:** The **Bill Group Sorting** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

- [Customer Contacts](#) on page 82

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the 360° information of a person	<a href="#">Viewing the 360° Information of a Person</a> on page 63
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

### Person Information

The **Person Information** zone displays the details of the person. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays the basic information about the person. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Person Information	Displays information about the person. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the person.
Person Type	Indicates the type of the person. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business</li> <li>• Bill Group</li> <li>• Group</li> <li>• Broker</li> <li>• Person</li> <li>• Parent Customer</li> </ul>
Date of Birth	Displays the date when the person was born.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the respective data is available for the person.

- **Person Identifiers** - Lists various types of identification associated with the person. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Person Identifier Type	Indicates the person identifier type.
Person Identifier	Displays the value of the person identifier type.

- **Contact Information** - Displays the contact details of the person. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Country	Indicates the country where the person is located.
Address 1	Displays the first line of the person's address. It may contain details, such as house number and apartment name.
Address 2	Displays the second line of the person's address. It may contain details, such as street name.
Address 3	Displays the third line of the person's address. It may contain the landmark details.
Address 4	Displays the fourth line of the person's address.
House Type	Indicates the type of the house.
Number 1	Displays the numeric information, if any, related to the address.
Number 2	Displays the numeric information, if any, related to the address.

Field Name	Field Description
In City Limit	Indicates whether the person resides within the city limit or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
City	Displays the city where the person is located.
Geographic Code	Displays the geographic code of the address.
County	Displays the county where the person is located.
State	Indicates the state where the city or county is located.
Postal	Displays the postal or zip code of the address.
Email ID	Displays the e-mail ID of the person.

**Note:** The above mentioned fields appear in the **Contact Information** section only when the respective data is available for the person.

- **Phone Details** – Lists the phone details of the person. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Phone Type	Indicates the type of the phone number.
Phone Number	Displays the phone number of the person.

### Person Characteristics

The **Person Characteristics** zone lists the characteristics defined for the person. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the person.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
Description	Displays the description of the characteristic value. <div> <b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the type of characteristic value is set to <b>Predefined Value</b> or <b>Foreign Key Value</b>. </div>

You can filter the list using the **Characteristic Type** field available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (  ) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.


### Child Persons

The **Child Persons** zone lists the child persons included in the person's hierarchy. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Child Person Information	Displays information about the child person. <div> <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the child person. </div>

Column Name	Column Description
Relationship Type	Indicates how the child person is related to the parent person.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the child person is related to the parent person.
End Date	Displays the date till when the child person is related to the parent person.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

You can view the 360° information of a child person by clicking the **View** () icon corresponding to the child person in this zone.

You can filter the list using the **Relationship Type** field available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden.

You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

### **Person Hierarchy**

The **Person Hierarchy** zone lists the following in a tree view:

- Information string of accounts where the person is the main customer
- Information string of policies where the person is associated
- Information string of membership where the person is the main subscriber
- Information string of the parent persons

It does not appear when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**. It contains the following column:

Column Name	Column Description												
Hierarchy	<p>Displays information about the person, account, policy, membership, and parent person in a tree view. Each node in the tree view has a link. The following table indicates the information string that appears in various scenarios:</p> <table> <tr> <th>If...</th><th>Then...</th></tr> <tr> <td>The person is the main customer of an account</td><td>The account information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the account appears in the <b>Account</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.</td></tr> <tr> <td>The person is associated with a policy</td><td>The policy information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the policy appears in the <b>Policy</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.</td></tr> <tr> <td>The person is the main subscriber in a membership</td><td>The membership information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Membership Information</b> screen appears where you to view the details of the respective membership.</td></tr> <tr> <td>The person is associated with a policy and is the main subscriber in a membership of its policy plan</td><td>The policy information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the policy appears in the <b>Policy</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.</td></tr> <tr> <td>The person has a parent person</td><td>The person information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the person appears in the <b>Person</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.</td></tr> </table>	If...	Then...	The person is the main customer of an account	The account information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the account appears in the <b>Account</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.	The person is associated with a policy	The policy information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the policy appears in the <b>Policy</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.	The person is the main subscriber in a membership	The membership information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Membership Information</b> screen appears where you to view the details of the respective membership.	The person is associated with a policy and is the main subscriber in a membership of its policy plan	The policy information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the policy appears in the <b>Policy</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.	The person has a parent person	The person information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the person appears in the <b>Person</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.
If...	Then...												
The person is the main customer of an account	The account information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the account appears in the <b>Account</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.												
The person is associated with a policy	The policy information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the policy appears in the <b>Policy</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.												
The person is the main subscriber in a membership	The membership information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Membership Information</b> screen appears where you to view the details of the respective membership.												
The person is associated with a policy and is the main subscriber in a membership of its policy plan	The policy information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the policy appears in the <b>Policy</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.												
The person has a parent person	The person information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the person appears in the <b>Person</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.												

### Person Billing Hierarchy

The following table lists the information which appears in the **Person Billing Hierarchy** zone:

If you are viewing the 360° information of a...	Then...
Parent Customer	<p>The following information appears in a tree view:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Information string of each effective child person whose person type is set to <b>Bill Group</b>) and who is related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the <b>Person Relationship Type</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration</li> <li>Information string of each policy to which the bill group is associated.</li> <li>Information string of each account where the bill group is the main customer.</li> </ul>



If you are viewing the 360° information of a...	Then...
Bill Group	<p>The following information appears in a tree view:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Information string of each account where the bill group is the main customer.</li><li>• Information string of each policy to which the bill group is associated.</li><li>• Information string of the parent person</li></ul>

It appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**. It contains the following column:

Column Name	Column Description																
Hierarchy	<p>If you are viewing the 360° information of a parent customer, the following table indicates the information string that appears in various scenarios:</p> <table> <tr> <th>If...</th><th>Then...</th></tr> <tr> <td>The parent customer has a bill group</td><td>The person information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the bill group appears in the <b>Person</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.</td></tr> <tr> <td>A bill group is the main customer of an account</td><td>The account information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the account appears in the <b>Account</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.</td></tr> <tr> <td>A bill group is associated with a policy</td><td>The policy information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the policy appears in the <b>Policy</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.</td></tr> </table> <p>However, if you are viewing the 360° information of a bill group, the following table indicates the information string that appears in various scenarios:</p> <table> <tr> <th>If...</th><th>Then...</th></tr> <tr> <td>The bill group is the main customer of an account</td><td>The account information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the account appears in the <b>Account</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.</td></tr> <tr> <td>The bill group is associated with a policy</td><td>The policy information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the policy appears in the <b>Policy</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.</td></tr> <tr> <td>The bill group has a parent person</td><td>The person information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the parent customer appears in the <b>Person</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.</td></tr> </table>	If...	Then...	The parent customer has a bill group	The person information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the bill group appears in the <b>Person</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.	A bill group is the main customer of an account	The account information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the account appears in the <b>Account</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.	A bill group is associated with a policy	The policy information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the policy appears in the <b>Policy</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.	If...	Then...	The bill group is the main customer of an account	The account information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the account appears in the <b>Account</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.	The bill group is associated with a policy	The policy information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the policy appears in the <b>Policy</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.	The bill group has a parent person	The person information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the parent customer appears in the <b>Person</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.
If...	Then...																
The parent customer has a bill group	The person information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the bill group appears in the <b>Person</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.																
A bill group is the main customer of an account	The account information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the account appears in the <b>Account</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.																
A bill group is associated with a policy	The policy information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the policy appears in the <b>Policy</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.																
If...	Then...																
The bill group is the main customer of an account	The account information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the account appears in the <b>Account</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.																
The bill group is associated with a policy	The policy information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the policy appears in the <b>Policy</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.																
The bill group has a parent person	The person information string appears. It has a link. On clicking the link, the 360° information of the parent customer appears in the <b>Person</b> tab of the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.																

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters

An employer may have different bill groups. Each bill group will handle the claim and enrollment transactions of employees based on the employee attributes, such as location, employment status, employment department, and so on.

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define the derivation and pricing parameters, such as source system, parameter 1, parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 for the bill group and sort ID combination. These parameters are used to derive the bill group against which the claim and enrollment transactions should be billed in the system. For example, if you want bill group 1 to handle claim and enrollment transactions of employees who reside in the western location of city and belong to grade A and whose transactions are received from the X system, you need to define the derivation and pricing parameters for bill group 1 where the source system is set to X, parameter 1 is set to Western, and parameter 2 is set to Grade A. Similarly, if you want bill group 2 to handle claim and enrollment transactions of employees who reside in the eastern location of city and belong to grade A and whose transactions are received from the X system, you need to define the derivation and pricing parameters for bill group 2 where the source system is set to X, parameter 1 is set to Eastern, and parameter 2 is set to Grade A.

**Note:** In the above examples, the bill group is derived based on the specified attributes only when the source system, parameter 1, and parameter 2 are mapped to the appropriate transaction fields in the pricing rule type using which the pricing rules are defined for the bill group.

You can also define criteria for a rule in a pricing group using the parameters, such as source system, parameter 1, parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4. If a pricing rule is defined for a bill group using a pricing group, you can define more than one price in the pricing rule which is offered based on the attributes of the employees.

The derivation and pricing parameters for the bill group and sort ID combination are effective from a particular date. However, the effective date must fall within the date range defined for the sort ID of the bill group.

The **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone lists the derivation and pricing parameters defined for all effective child persons whose person type is set to **Bill Group** and who are related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the **Person Relationship Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. It appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

You can define and edit the derivation and pricing parameters for a bill group (who is effective child person of the parent customer) and sort ID combination through this zone. You can also upload the derivation and pricing parameters for one or more bill group and sort ID combinations at the same time using the **Upload Request** feature. You can upload the derivation and pricing parameters for a bill group and sort ID combination either from this zone or from the **Upload Request** screen. While creating an upload request for the derivation and pricing parameters, you need to specify the parent customer whose bill groups' derivation and pricing parameters you want to upload. Once the upload request is processed, the derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the bill group and sort ID combination in the system.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Group Information	Indicates the parent customer's bill group for whom the derivation and pricing parameters are defined. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this column which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill group (i.e. person).
Bill Group ID	Displays the bill group ID (i.e. person ID).
Source System	Indicates the source system from where the claim and enrollment transactions are received.
Parameter 1	Indicates the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.
Parameter 2	Indicates the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter 3	Indicates the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.
Parameter 4	Indicates the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.
Sort ID	Indicates the sort ID of the bill group.
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the derivation and pricing parameters are effective for the bill group and sort ID combination.
Status	Indicates the status of the derivation and pricing parameters defined for the bill group and sort ID combination. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>

In addition, it contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the derivation and pricing parameters of a bill group and sort ID combination.


If you want to edit the derivation and pricing parameters of all bill group and sort ID combinations, you need to select the check box corresponding to the column header in this zone, and then click the **Edit** button. However, if you want to edit the derivation and pricing parameters of one or more bill group and sort ID combination, you need to select the check box corresponding to the bill group and sort ID combination, and then click the **Edit** button.

**Note:**

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

If you select the check box corresponding to the column header in this zone, the system considers only those records which are present on the respective page for editing.

You can define the derivation and pricing parameters for a bill group (who is effective child person of the parent customer) and sort ID combination by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also upload the derivation and pricing parameters for one or more bill group (who is effective child person of the parent customer) and sort ID combinations by clicking the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Parameter 1**, **Parameter 2**, **Parameter 3**, **Parameter 4**, **Bill Group ID**, **Sort ID**, **Status**, and **Bill Group Name**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define the derivation and pricing parameters for a bill group and sort ID combination	<a href="#">Defining the Derivation and Pricing Parameters for a Bill Group and Sort ID Combination</a> on page 119
How to edit the derivation and pricing parameters of a bill group and sort ID combination	<a href="#">Editing the Derivation and Pricing Parameters of a Bill Group and Sort ID Combination</a> on page 122
How to create an upload request for the derivation and pricing parameters from the <b>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</b> zone	<a href="#">Creating a Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters Upload Request</a> on page 123

For more information on...	See...
How to create an upload request for the derivation and pricing parameters from the <b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Creating an Upload Request</a> on page 1406
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Bill Group Sorting

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define unique sort IDs for a bill group in a given date range. In future, the sort ID will be used to club transactions based on certain parameters and present them in the bill in the ascending or descending order. It may also be used to sort data while generating various reports.

The **Bill Group Sorting** zone lists the sort IDs defined for all effective child persons whose person type is set to **Bill Group** and who are related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the **Person Relationship Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLNG** feature configuration. It appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

You can define, edit, and delete a sort ID of a bill group (who is effective child person of the parent customer) through this zone. You can also upload a set of sort IDs for one or more bill groups (who are effective child persons of the parent customer) at the same time using the **Upload Request** feature. You can upload the sort IDs for bill groups either from this zone or from the **Upload Request** screen. While creating an upload request for bill group sort IDs, you need to specify the parent customer whose bill groups' sort IDs you want to upload. Once the upload request is processed, the sort ID is defined for the respective bill group in the system.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Group Information	Indicates the parent customer's bill group for whom the sort ID is defined. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this column which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill group (i.e. person).
Bill Group ID	Displays the bill group ID (i.e. person ID).
Sort ID	Displays the sort ID.
Description	Displays the description of the sort ID.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the sort ID is effective for the bill group.
End Date	Displays the date till when the sort ID is effective for the bill group.

In addition, it contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of a bill group's sort ID.
Delete	Used to delete a bill group's sort ID.  <b>Note:</b> You can delete a bill group's sort ID only when the derivation and pricing parameters are not yet defined for the bill group and sort ID combination.

If you want to edit or delete all sort IDs of effective bill groups, you need to select the check box corresponding to the column header in this zone, and then accordingly click the **Edit** or **Delete** button. However, if you want to edit or delete

one or more sort IDs of effective bill groups, you need to select the check box corresponding to the bill group and sort ID combination, and then accordingly click the **Edit** or **Delete** button.

**Note:**

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

If you select the check box corresponding to the column header in this zone, the system considers only those records which are present on the respective page for editing or deleting.

You can define a sort ID for a bill group (who is effective child person of the parent customer) by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also upload a set of sort IDs for one or more bill groups (who are effective child persons of the parent customer) by clicking the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can filter the list using the **Bill Group Name** field available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden.

You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (  ) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a sort ID for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Sort ID for a Bill Group</a> on page 113
How to edit a sort ID of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Sort ID of a Bill Group</a> on page 115
How to delete a sort ID of a bill group	<a href="#">Deleting a Sort ID of a Bill Group</a> on page 116
How to create an upload request for bill group sort ID from the <b>Bill Group Sorting</b> zone	<a href="#">Creating a Bill Group Sorting Upload Request</a> on page 117
How to create an upload request for bill group sort ID from the <b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Creating an Upload Request</a> on page 1406
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

### Customer Contacts

The **Customer Contacts** zone displays information about how and when the person was contacted. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Contact Date	Displays the date when the person was contacted.
Customer Contact Information	Displays information about the customer contact.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Customer Contact</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the customer contact.
Contact Type	Indicates how the person was contacted.
Comments	Displays additional information about the customer contact.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **On or Before Contact Date**, **Contact Class**, **Contact Type**, and **Show Open Contacts Only**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (  ) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

## Customer 360° Information - Account

The following table provides information about the **Account** tab:

If you are viewing the 360° information of...	Then...
A person who is associated with the fully-insured policy	The <b>Account</b> tab displays the basic details, characteristics, administrative contracts, automatic payment options, billing and adjustment summary, financial and collections summary, and unpaid bills of the account.
	<b>Note:</b> If the person has multiple accounts, the system, by default, picks and displays the details of any one of its account.
A parent customer who is associated with the self-funded policy	<p>The <b>Account</b> tab displays the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Accounts of all effective child persons whose person type is set to <b>Bill Group</b> and who are related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the <b>Person Relationship Type</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration.</li> <li>Basic details, characteristics, automatic payment options, financial and collections summary, and unpaid bills of a particular bill group's account.</li> </ul>
A bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy	The <b>Account</b> tab displays the basic details, characteristics, automatic payment options, financial and collections summary, and unpaid bills of the account.
	<b>Note:</b> If the bill group has multiple accounts, the system, by default, picks and displays the details of any one of its account.

It contains the following zones:

- [Bill Group Accounts](#) on page 84

**Note:** The **Bill Group Accounts** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

- [Account Information](#) on page 85
- [Auto Pay Details](#) on page 87
- [Account Characteristics](#) on page 86
- [Administrative Contracts](#) on page 86

**Note:** The **Administrative Contracts** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is neither **Parent Customer** nor **Bill Group**.

- [Account Financial and Collections Summary](#) on page 87
- [Billing and Adjustment Summary](#) on page 88

**Note:** The **Billing and Adjustment Summary** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is neither **Parent Customer** nor **Bill Group**.

- [Open Bills](#) on page 89
- [Billed Vs Paid](#) on page 90
- [Timeline](#) on page 93

### **Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
How to view the 360° information of an account	<a href="#">Viewing the 360° Information of an Account</a> on page 65
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

### **Bill Group Accounts**


The **Bill Group Accounts** zone lists the accounts of all effective child persons whose person type is set to **Bill Group** and who are related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the **Person Relationship Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. It appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Group Name	Displays the name of the bill group (i.e. person).
Account Information	Indicates the account to which the bill group is associated. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this column which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.
Mailing Address	Displays the mailing address of the bill group.
Bill Group ID	Displays the bill group ID (i.e. person ID).

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to an account, the following zones appear in the **Account** tab:

- Account Information
- Auto Pay Details
- Account Financial and Collections Summary
- Account Characteristics
- Open Bills
- Billed Vs Paid
- Timeline

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Bill Group Name** and **Account ID**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters**  icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

### **Related Topics**



For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Account Information

The **Account Information** zone displays the details of the account. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays the basic information about the account. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Account Information	<p>Displays information about the account. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.</p>
Management Group	<p>Indicates the account management group to which the account belongs.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account Management Group</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account management group.</p> <p>This field appears only when the respective data is available for the account.</p>

- **Contact Information** – Displays the contact details of the account's main customer. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Address Source	Indicates which address should be used to route the account's bills and/or quotes via the postal service.
Country	Indicates the country where the main customer is located.
Address 1	Displays the first line of the main customer's address. It may contain details, such as house number and apartment name.
Address 2	Displays the second line of the main customer's address. It may contain details, such as street name.
Address 3	Displays the third line of the main customer's address. It may contain the landmark details.
Address 4	Displays the fourth line of the main customer's address.
House Type	Indicates the type of the house.
Number 1	Displays the numeric information, if any, related to the address.
Number 2	Displays the numeric information, if any, related to the address.

Field Name	Field Description
In City Limit	Indicates whether the main customer resides within the city limit or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
City	Displays the city where the main customer is located.
Geographic Code	Displays the geographic code of the address.
County	Displays the county where the main customer is located.
State	Indicates the state where the city or county is located.
Postal	Displays the postal or zip code of the address.

**Note:** The above mentioned fields except **Address Source** appear in the **Contact Information** section only when the address source of the main customer is set to **Account Override** and the respective data is available for the account.

- **Account Identifiers** – Lists various types of identification associated with the account. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account Identifier Type	Indicates the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.

### Account Characteristics

The **Account Characteristics** zone lists the characteristics defined for the account. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the account.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
Description	Displays the description of the characteristic value.
	<p><b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the type of characteristic value is set to <b>Predefined Value</b> or <b>Foreign Key Value</b>.</p>

You can filter the list using the **Characteristic Type** field available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (  ) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Administrative Contracts

The **Administrative Contracts** zone lists the account's contracts which should be monitored closely for various administrative reasons. It appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is neither **Parent Customer** nor **Bill Group**. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Contract ID	Displays the contract ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.
Contract Type	Indicates the type of the contract.
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the contract balance is maintained.
Current Balance	Displays the current balance on the contract.

**Note:**

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

The data appears in this zone only when you have defined the value for the **Administrative Contract Type** option type in the **C1\_CMO** feature configuration.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1_CMO</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1_CMO Feature Configuration</a> on page 2360

**Auto Pay Details**

The **Auto Pay Details** zone lists the automatic payment options defined for the account. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Start Date	Displays the date from when the automatic payment option is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the automatic payment option is effective.
Auto Pay Source Code	Indicates the source of funds used to make the automatic payment. For example, debit or credit card.
Last Four Digits of Card	Displays the last four digits of the debit or credit card.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the external type of the auto pay source code's tender type is set to <b>Credit Card Withdrawal</b> .
Percentage	Indicates the percentage of automatic payment that must be made through the automatic payment option.
Priority	Indicates the order in which the automatic payment option should be considered for the effective date range.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

**Account Financial and Collections Summary**

The **Account Financial and Collections Summary** zone displays the financial and collection details of the account. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Collection Class	Indicates the collection class to which the account belongs.
Current Credit Rating	Indicates the account's credit rating which is effective on the current date.
Last Credit Review Date	Displays the date when the account's debt was last reviewed.
Last Payment Date	Displays the date when the last payment was made for the account.
	<b>Note:</b> The system considers the last payment which is in the <b>Frozen</b> status.
Last Payment Amount	Displays the amount of the last payment.
	<b>Note:</b> The system considers the last payment which is in the <b>Frozen</b> status.
Current Balance	Displays the current balance of the account.
Payoff Balance	Displays the payoff balance of the account.
Account on Hold	Indicates whether the account is on hold or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Account on Promise to Pay	Indicates whether any promise to pay is scheduled for the account on the current or future date. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Account on Payment Arrangement	Indicates whether any payment arrangement exists for the account. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Account on Payment Agreement	Indicates whether any active payment agreement request exists for the account. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>

### Billing and Adjustment Summary

The **Billing and Adjustment Summary** zone displays the billing and adjustment summary of the account. It appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is neither **Parent Customer** nor **Bill Group**. It contains the following sections:

- **Quote Billed Balance** – Displays information about the account's billed balance. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Past Due Billed Balance	Displays the sum of open financial transactions of the account that are listed on a bill with a past due date.
Future Due Billed Balance	Displays the sum of open financial transactions of the account that are listed on a bill with a future due date.
Quote Billed Balance	Displays the sum of past due billed balance and future due billed balance.

- **Future Adjustments and Retroactivity** – Displays information about the account’s future adjustments and retro activities. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Future Adjustments	Displays the sum of adjustment financial transactions of the account which are swept onto the next bill.
Future Retro Terms (Credits)	Displays the sum of canceled bill segment financial transactions of the account which are presented on the next bill.
Future Retro Adds (Debits)	<p>Displays the sum of membership premium billable charges which are not yet billed to the account.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The data appears in this field only when the values are defined for the <b>Premium Amount SQI</b> and <b>Coverage End Date SQI</b> option types in the <b>C1-BILLADJSQ</b> feature configuration.</p>
Future Balance with Adjustments & Debits/Credits	Displays the sum of quote billed balance, future adjustments, future retro terms (credits), and future retro adds (debits).

### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-BILLADJSQ</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-BILLADJSQ Feature Configuration</a> on page 2358


### Open Bills

The **Open Bills** zone lists the unpaid bills of the account. By default, the bills where the unpaid amount is greater than zero are listed in this zone. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description										
Bill Date	<p>Displays the date when the bill was generated.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The data in this column is presented in a different color depending on the age bucket in which the bill’s days past due falls. The following table lists the color used for presentation in various age buckets:</p> <table> <tr> <th>Age Bucket</th><th>Color</th></tr> <tr> <td>Age 0 to 30 DPD</td><td>Black</td></tr> <tr> <td>Age 31 to 60 DPD</td><td>Green</td></tr> <tr> <td>Age 61 to 90 DPD</td><td>Orange</td></tr> <tr> <td>Age &gt; 90 DPD</td><td>Red</td></tr> </table>	Age Bucket	Color	Age 0 to 30 DPD	Black	Age 31 to 60 DPD	Green	Age 61 to 90 DPD	Orange	Age > 90 DPD	Red
Age Bucket	Color										
Age 0 to 30 DPD	Black										
Age 31 to 60 DPD	Green										
Age 61 to 90 DPD	Orange										
Age > 90 DPD	Red										
Bill ID	<p>Displays the bill ID.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill.</p>										
Due Date	Displays the date when the bill is due for payment.										

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Amount	Displays the bill amount.
Bill Status	Indicates the status of the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Complete</li> </ul>
Unpaid Amount	Displays the unpaid amount of the bill.
Age Bucket	Indicates the age bucket in which the bill's days past due falls. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Age 0 to 30 DPD</li> <li>• Age 31 to 60 DPD</li> <li>• Age 61 to 90 DPD</li> <li>• Age &gt; 90 DPD</li> </ul>
Days Past Due	Displays the number of days past after the due date.
Overdue Process Information	Indicates the overdue process which is initiated for the bill and is currently in the <b>Active</b> status. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Overdue Process</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective overdue process.
Payment Agreement Request Information	Indicates the active payment agreement request in which the bill is included.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payment agreement request.

You can view additional information about the bill by clicking the **View** () icon corresponding to the bill in the **Open Bills** zone.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **On or Before Bill Date** and **Show All Bills**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

**Note:** If you select the **Show All Bills** option, the system lists all bills where the unpaid amount is greater than or equal to zero.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a bill	<a href="#">Viewing the Bill Details</a> on page 129

### **Billed Vs Paid**

The **Billed Vs Paid** zone lists the following transactions of the account:

- Bills which are created for the account
- Any excess credit which is made for the account
- Payments which are created or canceled for the account

- Adjustments which are created or canceled for the account
- Refund or Write Off adjustments which are created or canceled for the account
- Payment transfer to the reconciliation contract of the account
- Payment transfer from the reconciliation contract to the payor account's contract
- Reconciliations through which the account's bill segments are reconciled
- Automatic payments sent to the auto clearing house for review before freezing them

**Note:** The excess credit information for the account appears only when you have defined the value for the **On Account Contract Type** option type in the **C1\_CMO** feature configuration. Accordingly, the excess credit information (if any) on the respective contracts is listed in this zone.

It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Due Date	Displays the date when the bill is due for payment.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the transaction type is set to <b>Bill</b> .
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill. The data appears in this column only when the transaction type is set to <b>Bill</b> .

Column Name	Column Description																						
Transaction Date	<p>The following table indicates the date that appears depending on the type of the transaction:</p> <table> <tr> <th>If the transaction type is...</th><th>Then...</th></tr> <tr> <td>Bill</td><td>Date when the bill is generated for the account</td></tr> <tr> <td>Payment</td><td>Date when the payment is made for the account</td></tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment</td><td>Date when the adjustment is created for the account</td></tr> <tr> <td>Payment Cancellation</td><td>Date when the payment is canceled for the account</td></tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment Cancellation</td><td>Date when the adjustment is canceled for the account</td></tr> <tr> <td>Excess Credit (overpayment)</td><td>Date when the excess credit is made for the account</td></tr> <tr> <td>Reconciliation Contract</td><td>Date when the payment is transferred to the reconciliation contract of the account</td></tr> <tr> <td>Reconciliation Contract - Returned</td><td>Date when the payment made to the reconciliation contract of the account is canceled</td></tr> <tr> <td>Payment Transfer</td><td>Date when the pay instruction for the account is reconciled</td></tr> <tr> <td>Payment Transfer Cancellation</td><td>Date when the reconciliation is canceled</td></tr> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> The data does not appear in this column for automatic payments which are sent to the auto clearing house for review.</p>	If the transaction type is...	Then...	Bill	Date when the bill is generated for the account	Payment	Date when the payment is made for the account	Adjustment	Date when the adjustment is created for the account	Payment Cancellation	Date when the payment is canceled for the account	Adjustment Cancellation	Date when the adjustment is canceled for the account	Excess Credit (overpayment)	Date when the excess credit is made for the account	Reconciliation Contract	Date when the payment is transferred to the reconciliation contract of the account	Reconciliation Contract - Returned	Date when the payment made to the reconciliation contract of the account is canceled	Payment Transfer	Date when the pay instruction for the account is reconciled	Payment Transfer Cancellation	Date when the reconciliation is canceled
If the transaction type is...	Then...																						
Bill	Date when the bill is generated for the account																						
Payment	Date when the payment is made for the account																						
Adjustment	Date when the adjustment is created for the account																						
Payment Cancellation	Date when the payment is canceled for the account																						
Adjustment Cancellation	Date when the adjustment is canceled for the account																						
Excess Credit (overpayment)	Date when the excess credit is made for the account																						
Reconciliation Contract	Date when the payment is transferred to the reconciliation contract of the account																						
Reconciliation Contract - Returned	Date when the payment made to the reconciliation contract of the account is canceled																						
Payment Transfer	Date when the pay instruction for the account is reconciled																						
Payment Transfer Cancellation	Date when the reconciliation is canceled																						
Transaction Type	<p>Indicates the type of the transaction. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bill</li> <li>• Payment</li> <li>• Adjustment</li> <li>• Payment Cancellation</li> <li>• Adjustment Cancellation</li> <li>• Excess Credit (overpayment)</li> <li>• Reconciliation Contract</li> <li>• Reconciliation Contract - Returned</li> <li>• Payment Transfer</li> <li>• Payment Transfer Cancellation</li> </ul>																						



Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Description	Displays the description of the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the transaction type is set to <b>Adjustment</b> , <b>Adjustment Cancellation</b> , <b>Reconciliation Contract - Returned</b> , <b>Payment Transfer</b> , and <b>Payment Transfer Cancellation</b> . In addition, the data appears in this column when the automatic payments are sent to the auto clearing house for review before freezing them. The transaction description for such payments is set to <b>Pending Payment</b> .
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Unpaid Amount	Displays the unpaid amount of the bill.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the transaction type is set to <b>Bill</b> .
Payment Date	Displays the date when the payment is created or canceled for the account.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the transaction type is set to <b>Payment</b> , <b>Payment Cancellation</b> , or <b>Excess Credit (overpayment)</b> .
Tender Type	Indicates the type of tender through which the payment was made.
Check Number/External Reference ID	Displays the check number or external reference ID.
Transaction ID	Displays the payment, adjustment, or reconciliation ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment</b> , <b>Adjustment</b> , or <b>Reconciliation</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective transaction.

You can filter the list using the **On or Before Due Date** field available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (🔍) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1_CMO</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1_CMO Feature Configuration</a> on page 2360


### **Timeline**






The **Timeline** zone displays the following information in a graphical form:

- Number of customer contacts which are created for the account's main customer in a particular month
- Number of bills which are created for the account in a particular month
- Number of payments which are created for the account in a particular month

It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Month	Used to indicate the month till when you want to display the above stated information.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current month appears in this field.	
Year	Used to indicate the year till when you want to display the above stated information.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current year appears in this field.	

Depending on the month and year specified in the above fields, the data for the respective month and previous 11 months is presented in the grid. For example, if the Month and Year is set to April 2017, then the data for the May 2016, Jun 2016, Jul 2016, Aug 2016, Sep 2016, Oct 2016, Nov 2016, Dec 2016, Jan 2017, Feb 2017, Mar 2017, and Apr 2017 appears in the grid. To view the data for a different period, you must accordingly change the month and year and then click **Search** () icon.

You can use the **Previous 12 Months** () , **Previous Month** () , **Go To Today** () , **Next Month** () , and **Next 12 Months** () icons to change the values specified in the above mentioned fields.

The following table indicates the data and the manner in which the data is presented in the grid:

Row Name	Row Description						
Customer Contacts	A small icon appears for each customer contact which is created for the account’s main customer in the respective month. For example, if two customer contacts are created for the main customer in the month of Jan 2017 and one customer contact is created in the month of Feb 2017, then two icons appear in the Jan 2017 column and one icon appear in the Feb 2017 column. A text indicating the day of the month when the customer contact was created appears on the icon. The following table indicates the color in which the icon appears depending on the condition which is satisfied:						
	<table><tr><th>If the contact action on the customer contact type is...</th><th>Then the icon appears in...</th></tr><tr><td>Set to <b>Send Letter</b></td><td>Red</td></tr><tr><td>Set to <b>Action Algorithm</b></td><td>Yellow</td></tr></table>	If the contact action on the customer contact type is...	Then the icon appears in...	Set to <b>Send Letter</b>	Red	Set to <b>Action Algorithm</b>	Yellow
If the contact action on the customer contact type is...	Then the icon appears in...						
Set to <b>Send Letter</b>	Red						
Set to <b>Action Algorithm</b>	Yellow						
	On clicking the icon, the corresponding customer contact information appears at the bottom of this zone. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Customer Contact</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective customer contact.						
	<b>Note:</b> You can change the color in which the text appears on the icon and the color in which the icon appears when the above stated conditions are met through the <b>C1-TL-CC-EVT</b> algorithm.						

Row Name	Row Description										
Bills	<p>A small icon appears for each bill which is created for the account in the respective month. For example, if three bills are created for the account in the month of Jan 2017, two bills are created in the month of Feb 2017, and one bill is created in the month of Apr 2017, then three icons appear in the Jan 2017 column, two icons appear in the Feb 2017 column, and one icon appears in the Apr 2017 column. A text indicating the day of the month when the bill was due appears on the icon. You can either display the day of the due date or bill date on the icon depending on the requirement. The following table indicates the color in which the icon appears depending on the condition which is satisfied:</p> <table> <tr> <th>If the bill is...</th><th>Then the icon appears in...</th></tr> <tr> <td>Fully Matched</td><td>Green</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmatched</td><td>Red</td></tr> <tr> <td>Credit Note</td><td>Blue</td></tr> <tr> <td>Scheduled for billing in the next bill cycle</td><td>Black</td></tr> </table> <p>On clicking the icon, the corresponding bill information appears at the bottom of this zone. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you want to display the day of the due date on the icon, you must set the <b>Date To Use (D-Due Date, B-Bill Date)</b> parameter in the <b>C1-TL-OI-EVT</b> algorithm to <b>D</b>. However, if you want to display the day of the bill date on the icon, you must set the <b>Date To Use (D-Due Date, B-Bill Date)</b> parameter in the <b>C1-TL-OI-EVT</b> algorithm to <b>B</b>.</p> <p>You can change the color in which the text appears on the icon and the color in which the icon appears when the above stated conditions are met through the <b>C1-TL-OI-EVT</b> algorithm.</p>	If the bill is...	Then the icon appears in...	Fully Matched	Green	Unmatched	Red	Credit Note	Blue	Scheduled for billing in the next bill cycle	Black
If the bill is...	Then the icon appears in...										
Fully Matched	Green										
Unmatched	Red										
Credit Note	Blue										
Scheduled for billing in the next bill cycle	Black										

Row Name	Row Description												
Payments	<p>A small icon appears for each payment which is created for the account in the respective month. For example, if one payment is created for the account in the month of Aug 2016, three payments are created in the month of Dec 2016, and four payments are created in the month of Mar 2017, then one icon appears in the Aug 2016 column, three icons appear in the Dec 2016 column, and four icons appear in the Mar 2017 column. A text indicating the day of the month when the payment was created appears on the icon. The following table indicates the color in which the icon appears depending on the status of the payment:</p> <table> <tr> <th>Status</th><th>Color</th></tr> <tr> <td>Frozen</td><td>Green</td></tr> <tr> <td>Canceled</td><td>Red</td></tr> <tr> <td>Freezable</td><td>Blue</td></tr> <tr> <td>Error</td><td>Red</td></tr> <tr> <td>Incomplete</td><td>Yellow</td></tr> </table> <p>On clicking the icon, the corresponding payment information appears at the bottom of this zone. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payment.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can change the color in which the text appears on the icon and the color in which the icon appears in the different status through the <b>C1-TL-PY-EVT</b> algorithm.</p>	Status	Color	Frozen	Green	Canceled	Red	Freezable	Blue	Error	Red	Incomplete	Yellow
Status	Color												
Frozen	Green												
Canceled	Red												
Freezable	Blue												
Error	Red												
Incomplete	Yellow												

**Customer 360° Information - Policy**

The following table provides information about the **Policy** tab:

If you are viewing the 360° information of...	Then...
A person who is associated with the fully-insured policy	<p>The <b>Policy</b> tab displays the basic details, policy persons, packaged savings, and policy plans of the fully-insured policy.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the person is associated with multiple policies, the system, by default, picks and displays the details of any one of its policy.</p>
A parent customer who is associated with the self-funded policy	<p>The <b>Policy</b> tab displays the basic details and policy persons of the self-funded policy where the parent customer is the policy holder.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the parent customer is a policy holder in multiple policies, the system, by default, picks and displays the details of any one of its policy.</p>
A bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy	<p>The <b>Policy</b> tab displays the basic details and policy persons of the self-funded policy.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the bill group is associated with multiple policies, the system, by default, picks and displays the details of any one of its policy.</p>

It contains the following zones:

- [Policy Information](#) on page 97
- [Packaged Savings Code](#) on page 98

**Note:** The **Packaged Savings Code** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person who is associated with the fully-insured policy.

- [Policy Persons](#) on page 98
- [Policy Plans](#) on page 98

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view the 360° information of a policy	<a href="#">Viewing the 360° Information of a Policy</a> on page 66

### **Policy Information**

The **Policy Information** zone displays the details of the policy. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays the basic information about the policy. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Policy Information	Displays information about the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective policy.
Source System	Displays the name of the external system in which the policy is created.
Policy Number	Displays the policy number.
Status	Indicates the status of the policy.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the policy is effective.
Runout End Date	Displays the date when the runout period of the policy ends.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are viewing the 360° information of a person who is associated with a self-funded policy.
Runout Administration Fees	Indicates whether the administration fees must be charged when the claim transaction for the policy is processed in the runout period. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None</li> <li>• Percentage of Claim</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are viewing the 360° information of a person who is associated with a self-funded policy.  At present, this field is used only for the information purposes and is not considered during the billable charge creation for the claim transactions which are received in the runout period of the policy.

- **Characteristics** – Lists the characteristics defined for the policy. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the policy.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

### Packaged Savings Code

The **Packaged Savings Code** zone lists the packaged savings (or discount) offered in the policy plan. It appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person who is associated with the fully-insured policy. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Start Date	Displays the date from when the packaged savings is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the packaged savings is effective.
Packaged Savings Code	Displays the packaged savings code.
Description	Displays the description of the packaged savings.
Billable Charge Information	Indicates the billable charge which is created for the packaged savings.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Billable Charge</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective billable charge.


**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

### Policy Persons

The **Policy Persons** zone lists the persons associated with the policy. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Person Name	Indicates the person who is associated with the policy.
Policy Person Role	Indicates the role of the person with respect to the policy.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the person is associated with the policy.
End Date	Displays the date till when the person is associated with the policy.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

You can view the 360° information of a policy person by clicking the **View** () icon corresponding to the person in the **Policy Persons** zone.

### Policy Plans

The **Policy Plans** zone lists the policy plans defined in the policy. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Policy Plan Information	Displays information about the policy plan. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy Plan</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective policy plan.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy plan is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the policy plan is effective.
Plan	Indicates the price item associated with the policy plan.
Policy Plan Description	Displays the description of the price item.
No. of Subscribers	Indicates the number of main subscribers in the policy plan.
No. of Members	Indicates the number of members in the policy plan.
Contract ID	Indicates the contract which is created for the policy plan.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

## Customer 360° Information - Pricing

The following table provides information about the **Pricing** tab:

If you are viewing the 360° information of...	Then...
A person who is associated with the fully-insured policy	No data appears in the <b>Pricing</b> tab.
A parent customer who is associated with the self-funded policy	<p>The <b>Pricing</b> tab displays the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Basic details of the pricing rules which are defined for the parent customer.</li> <li>Summarized tree view listing each bill group of the parent customer and the bill groups' self-funded policies and pricing rules.</li> <li>Basic details of the self-funded policies which are associated with each bill group of the parent customer.</li> <li>Basic details of the pricing rules which are defined for the self-funded policies of each bill group.</li> <li>Basic details of the active pricing groups which are defined for each bill group.</li> <li>Basic information about the approval transactions which are created while defining, editing, and deleting the parent customer's and bill groups' pricing rules.</li> </ul>

If you are viewing the 360° information of...	Then...
A bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy	<p>The <b>Pricing</b> tab displays the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Summarized tree view listing the parent customer and pricing rules which are defined for the parent customer.</li> <li>Basic details of the self-funded policies which are associated with the bill group.</li> <li>Basic details of the pricing rules which are defined for the self-funded policies of the bill group.</li> <li>Basic details of the active pricing groups which are defined for the bill group.</li> <li>Basic information about the approval transactions which are created while defining, editing, and deleting the pricing rules of the bill group.</li> </ul>

It contains the following zones:

- [Parent Customer Pricing Rules](#) on page 101

**Note:** The **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone appears when you are viewing 360° information of a parent customer who is associated with the self-funded policy.

- [Parent Customer Pricing Rule Summary](#) on page 105

**Note:** The **Parent Customer Pricing Rule Summary** zone appears when you are viewing 360° information of a bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy.

- [Bill Group Policy Pricing Rule Summary](#) on page 104

**Note:** The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rule Summary** zone appears when you are viewing 360° information of a parent customer who is associated with the self-funded policy.

- [Bill Group Policy Information](#) on page 105

**Note:** The **Bill Group Policy Information** zone appears when you are viewing 360° information of a parent customer or bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy.

- [Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules](#) on page 107

**Note:** The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone appears when you are viewing 360° information of a parent customer or bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy.

- [Bill Group Pricing Groups](#) on page 111

**Note:** The **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone appears when you are viewing 360° information of a bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy.

- [Pricing Rule Approval Transactions](#) on page 112

**Note:** The **Pricing Rule Approval Transactions** zone appears when you are viewing 360° information of a parent customer or bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy.


### **Related Topics**




For more information on...	See...
How to view the pricing information of a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing the Pricing Information of a Parent Customer</a> on page 67
How to view the pricing information of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing the Pricing Information of a Bill Group</a> on page 68
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349


## Parent Customer Pricing Rules

The **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone lists the pricing rules which are defined for the parent customer. It appears when you are viewing 360° information of a parent customer who is associated with the self-funded policy. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description																		
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type using which the pricing rule is created.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective pricing rule type.																		
Pricing Rule Information	Displays information about the pricing rule.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Pricing Rule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective pricing rule.																		
Price Item Information	Indicates the price item for which the pricing rule is created.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price item.																		
Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing rule is effective.																		
End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing rule is effective.																		
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the following screen appears where you can edit the details of the respective pricing rule: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>If you are editing...</th><th>Then the following screen appears...</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>A claim pricing rule</td><td>Claim Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>A specific stop-loss pricing rule</td><td>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>An aggregate stop-loss pricing rule</td><td>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>A retention type claim based pricing rule</td><td>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>A retention type enrollment based pricing rule</td><td>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>An ancillary pricing rule</td><td>Ancillary Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>A discount arrangement pricing rule</td><td>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>A level funded pricing rule</td><td>Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	If you are editing...	Then the following screen appears...	A claim pricing rule	Claim Pricing Rule	A specific stop-loss pricing rule	Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule	An aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule	A retention type claim based pricing rule	Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule	A retention type enrollment based pricing rule	Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule	An ancillary pricing rule	Ancillary Pricing Rule	A discount arrangement pricing rule	Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule	A level funded pricing rule	Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule
If you are editing...	Then the following screen appears...																		
A claim pricing rule	Claim Pricing Rule																		
A specific stop-loss pricing rule	Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule																		
An aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule																		
A retention type claim based pricing rule	Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule																		
A retention type enrollment based pricing rule	Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule																		
An ancillary pricing rule	Ancillary Pricing Rule																		
A discount arrangement pricing rule	Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule																		
A level funded pricing rule	Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule																		

Column Name	Column Description
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the pricing rule.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a pricing rule only when it is not yet used in the system.
Price List Information	Indicates the price list which contains the price item pricing which is created through the pricing rule.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price List</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price list.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

You can define a new pricing rule for the parent customer by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Price Item**, **Start Date**, **Pricing Rule Type**, **End Date**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a claim pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Claim Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 1919
How to edit a claim pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1926
How to delete a claim pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Deleting a Claim Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1929
How to view the details of a claim pricing rule defined for a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1928
How to define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 1949
How to edit a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1958
How to delete a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Deleting a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1961
How to view the details of a specific stop-loss pricing rule defined for a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1960
How to define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 1985
How to edit an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1993

For more information on...	See...
How to delete an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Deleting an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1996
How to view the details of an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule defined for a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1996
How to define a retention type claim based pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2019
How to edit a retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2023
How to delete a retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Deleting a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2026
How to view the details of a retention type claim based pricing rule defined for a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2037
How to define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2047
How to edit a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2051
How to delete a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Deleting a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2053
How to view the details of a retention type enrollment based pricing rule defined for a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2065
How to define an ancillary pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2145
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2150
How to delete an ancillary pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Deleting an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2152
How to view the details of an ancillary pricing rule defined for a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a>
How to define a discount arrangement pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2183
How to edit a discount arrangement pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2191
How to delete a discount arrangement pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Deleting a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2193
How to view the details of a discount arrangement pricing rule defined for a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing the Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Details of a Parent Customer</a>

For more information on...	See...
How to define a level funded pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2216
How to edit a level funded pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a>
How to delete a level funded pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Deleting a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a>
How to view the details of a level funded pricing rule defined for a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing the Details of a Level Funded Pricing Rule Defined for a Policy of a Parent Customer</a>

**Bill Group Policy Pricing Rule Summary**

The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rule Summary** zone lists the following in a tree view:

- Information string of each effective child person whose person type is set to **Bill Group**) and who is related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the **Person Relationship Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLNG** feature configuration
- Information string of each policy to which the bill group is associated.
- Information string of each pricing rule defined for the bill group.

It appears when you are viewing 360° information of a parent customer who is associated with the self-funded policy. It contains the following column:

Column Name	Column Description																						
Hierarchy	Displays information about the bill group, policy, and pricing rule in a tree view. A pricing rule node has a link. On clicking the link, the following screen appears where you can edit the details of the respective pricing rule:																						
	<table><tr><th>On clicking...</th><th>Then the following screen appears...</th></tr><tr><td>A claim pricing rule</td><td>Claim Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>A specific stop-loss pricing rule</td><td>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>An aggregate stop-loss pricing rule</td><td>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>A retention type claim based pricing rule</td><td>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>A retention type enrollment based pricing rule</td><td>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>A one-time flat fee pricing rule</td><td>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>A bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule</td><td>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>A frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule</td><td>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>An ancillary pricing rule</td><td>Ancillary Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>A level funded pricing rule</td><td>Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule</td></tr></table>	On clicking...	Then the following screen appears...	A claim pricing rule	Claim Pricing Rule	A specific stop-loss pricing rule	Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule	An aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule	A retention type claim based pricing rule	Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule	A retention type enrollment based pricing rule	Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule	A one-time flat fee pricing rule	Flat Fee Pricing Rule	A bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule	Flat Fee Pricing Rule	A frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule	Flat Fee Pricing Rule	An ancillary pricing rule	Ancillary Pricing Rule	A level funded pricing rule	Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule
	On clicking...	Then the following screen appears...																					
	A claim pricing rule	Claim Pricing Rule																					
	A specific stop-loss pricing rule	Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule																					
	An aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule																					
	A retention type claim based pricing rule	Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule																					
	A retention type enrollment based pricing rule	Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule																					
	A one-time flat fee pricing rule	Flat Fee Pricing Rule																					
	A bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule	Flat Fee Pricing Rule																					
	A frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule	Flat Fee Pricing Rule																					
	An ancillary pricing rule	Ancillary Pricing Rule																					
	A level funded pricing rule	Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule																					

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Parent Customer Pricing Rule Summary

The **Parent Customer Pricing Rule Summary** zone lists the following in a tree view:

- Information string of an effective parent person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**
- Information string of each pricing rule which is defined for the parent customer

It appears when you are viewing 360° information of a bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy. It contains the following column:


Column Name	Column Description																		
Hierarchy	Displays information about the parent customer and its pricing rules in a tree view. A pricing rule node has a link. On clicking the link, the following screen appears where you can edit the details of the respective pricing rule:																		
	<table><tr><th>On clicking...</th><th>Then the following screen appears...</th></tr><tr><td>A claim pricing rule</td><td>Claim Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>A specific stop-loss pricing rule</td><td>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>An aggregate stop-loss pricing rule</td><td>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>A retention type claim based pricing rule</td><td>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>A retention type enrollment based pricing rule</td><td>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>An ancillary pricing rule</td><td>Ancillary Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>A discount arrangement pricing rule</td><td>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</td></tr><tr><td>A level funded pricing rule</td><td>Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule</td></tr></table>	On clicking...	Then the following screen appears...	A claim pricing rule	Claim Pricing Rule	A specific stop-loss pricing rule	Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule	An aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule	A retention type claim based pricing rule	Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule	A retention type enrollment based pricing rule	Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule	An ancillary pricing rule	Ancillary Pricing Rule	A discount arrangement pricing rule	Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule	A level funded pricing rule	Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule
	On clicking...	Then the following screen appears...																	
	A claim pricing rule	Claim Pricing Rule																	
	A specific stop-loss pricing rule	Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule																	
	An aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule																	
	A retention type claim based pricing rule	Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule																	
	A retention type enrollment based pricing rule	Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule																	
	An ancillary pricing rule	Ancillary Pricing Rule																	
	A discount arrangement pricing rule	Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule																	
A level funded pricing rule	Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule																		

## Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349


## Bill Group Policy Information

The **Bill Group Policy Information** zone appears when you are viewing 360° information of a parent customer or bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy. If you are viewing the 360° information of a parent customer, the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone lists the policies to which each bill group of the parent customer is associated. However, if you are viewing the 360° information of a bill group, the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone lists the policies to which the bill group is associated. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Group Information	Indicates the bill group to which the policy is associated.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill group (i.e. person).
Policy Information	Displays information about the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective policy.
Renew	On clicking the <b>Renew</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can renew the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Renew</b> icon appears only when the policy is in the <b>In Force/Active</b> status and it is not yet renewed.
Policy Number	Displays the policy number.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the policy is effective.
Status	Indicates the status of the policy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Runout</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> </ul>
Runout End Date	Displays the date when the runout period of the policy ends.
Renewal Date	Displays the date when the policy is renewed.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the policy is renewed.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

On clicking the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a bill group and policy combination, the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** and **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zones appear.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Bill Group Name**, **Policy Start Date**, and **Policy End Date**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.


#### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
<b>Bill Group Pricing Groups</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Pricing Groups</a> on page 111
How to view the pricing rules defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing the Pricing Rules Defined for a Policy of a Bill Group</a> on page 125

For more information on...	See...
How to view the pricing groups of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing the Pricing Groups of a Bill Group</a> on page 126


### Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules

The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone lists the pricing rules which are defined for a policy of a bill group. It appears when you are viewing 360° information of a parent customer or bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy. It contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description																						
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type using which the pricing rule is created.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective pricing rule type.																						
Pricing Rule Information	Displays information about the pricing rule.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Pricing Rule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective pricing rule.																						
Price Item Information	Indicates the price item for which the pricing rule is created.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price item.																						
Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing rule is effective.																						
End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing rule is effective.																						
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the following screen appears where you can edit the details of the respective pricing rule: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>If you are editing...</th><th>Then the following screen appears...</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>A claim pricing rule</td><td>Claim Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>A specific stop-loss pricing rule</td><td>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>An aggregate stop-loss pricing rule</td><td>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>A retention type claim based pricing rule</td><td>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>A retention type enrollment based pricing rule</td><td>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>A one-time flat fee pricing rule</td><td>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>A bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule</td><td>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>A frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule</td><td>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>An ancillary pricing rule</td><td>Ancillary Pricing Rule</td></tr> <tr> <td>A level funded pricing rule</td><td>Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	If you are editing...	Then the following screen appears...	A claim pricing rule	Claim Pricing Rule	A specific stop-loss pricing rule	Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule	An aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule	A retention type claim based pricing rule	Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule	A retention type enrollment based pricing rule	Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule	A one-time flat fee pricing rule	Flat Fee Pricing Rule	A bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule	Flat Fee Pricing Rule	A frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule	Flat Fee Pricing Rule	An ancillary pricing rule	Ancillary Pricing Rule	A level funded pricing rule	Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule
If you are editing...	Then the following screen appears...																						
A claim pricing rule	Claim Pricing Rule																						
A specific stop-loss pricing rule	Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule																						
An aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule																						
A retention type claim based pricing rule	Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule																						
A retention type enrollment based pricing rule	Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule																						
A one-time flat fee pricing rule	Flat Fee Pricing Rule																						
A bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule	Flat Fee Pricing Rule																						
A frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule	Flat Fee Pricing Rule																						
An ancillary pricing rule	Ancillary Pricing Rule																						
A level funded pricing rule	Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule																						

Column Name	Column Description
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the pricing rule.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a pricing rule only when it is not yet used in the system.
Pricing Group Information	Indicates the pricing group which is used while defining the pricing rule.
Price List Information	Indicates the price list which contains the price item pricing which is created through the pricing rule.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price List</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price list.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

By default, the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone does not appear in the **Pricing** tab of the **Customer 360° Information** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a bill group and policy combination in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone.

You can define a new pricing rule for the bill group by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Price Item**, **Start Date**, **Pricing Rule Type**, **End Date**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a claim pricing rule for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Claim Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 1929
How to edit a claim pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 1935
How to delete a claim pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Deleting a Claim Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 1937
How to view the details of a claim pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 1936
How to define a claim pricing rule for a policy of a bill group using a pricing group	<a href="#">Defining a Claim Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group</a> on page 1932
How to define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 1961
How to edit a specific stop-loss pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 1971
How to delete a specific stop-loss pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Deleting a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 1973






For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a specific stop-loss pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 1972
How to define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a policy of a bill group using a pricing group	<a href="#">Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group</a> on page 1968
How to define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 1997
How to edit an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2007
How to delete an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Deleting an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2009
How to view the details of an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2008
How to define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a policy of a bill group using a pricing group	<a href="#">Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group</a> on page 2004
How to define a retention type claim based pricing rule for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2027
How to edit a retention type claim based pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2030
How to delete a retention type claim based pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Deleting a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2033
How to view the details of a retention type claim based pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2037
How to define a retention type claim based pricing rule for a policy of a bill group using a pricing group	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group</a> on page 2033
How to define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2054
How to edit a retention type enrollment based pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2058
How to delete a retention type enrollment based pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Deleting a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2060
How to view the details of a retention type enrollment based pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2066

For more information on...	See...
How to define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a policy of a bill group using a pricing group	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group</a> on page 2061
How to define a one-time flat fees pricing rule for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2076
How to edit a one-time flat fees pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2079
How to delete a one-time flat fees pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Deleting a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2082
How to view the details of a one-time flat fees pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2081
How to define a bill period based recurring flat fees pricing rule for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2091
How to edit a bill period based recurring flat fees pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2094
How to delete a bill period based recurring flat fees pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Deleting a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2097
How to view the details of a bill period based recurring flat fees pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2096
How to define a frequency based recurring flat fees pricing rule for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2106
How to edit a frequency based recurring flat fees pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2109
How to delete a frequency based recurring flat fees pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Deleting a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2112
How to view the details of a frequency based recurring flat fees pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2111
How to define an ancillary pricing rule for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2153
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2158
How to delete an ancillary pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Deleting an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2160
How to view the details of an ancillary pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a>


For more information on...	See...
How to define an ancillary pricing rule for a policy of a bill group using a pricing group	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group</a>
How to define a level funded pricing rule for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2227
How to edit a level funded pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a>
How to delete a level funded pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Deleting a Level Funded Pricing Rule Defined for a Policy of a Bill Group</a>
How to view the details of a level funded pricing rule defined for a policy of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing the Details of a Level Funded Pricing Rule Defined for a Policy of a Bill Group</a>
How to define a level funded pricing rule for a policy of a bill group using a pricing group	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2227

## Bill Group Pricing Groups

The **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone lists the pricing groups which are defined for the bill group. By default, the active pricing groups are listed in this zone. It appears when you are viewing 360° information of a bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Group	Indicates the pricing group which is created for the bill group.
Status	Indicates the status of the pricing group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Pricing Group</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the pricing group.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the pricing group. <div> <b>Note:</b> You can delete a pricing group only when it is not yet used while defining a pricing rule for the bill group. </div>
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Pricing Group</b> screen appears where you can define a new pricing group using an existing pricing group.
Associated Price Items	Indicates the price items whose pricing is defined using the pricing group.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

By default, the **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone does not appear in the **Pricing** tab of the **Customer 360° Information** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a bill group in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone.

You can define a new pricing group for the bill group by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can filter the list using the **Show All** field available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (✕) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

**Note:** If you select the **Yes** option from the **Show All** list, the system lists both the active and inactive pricing groups in the **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a pricing group for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Pricing Group for a Bill Group</a> on page 1888
How to edit a pricing group of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Pricing Group of a Bill Group</a> on page 1891
How to copy a pricing group of a bill group	<a href="#">Copying a Pricing Group of a Bill Group</a> on page 1894
How to delete a pricing group of a bill group	<a href="#">Deleting a Pricing Group of a Bill Group</a> on page 1893

### Pricing Rule Approval Transactions

The **Pricing Rule Approval Transactions** zone lists the following information:

If you are viewing the 360° information of...	Then...
A parent customer who is associated with the self-funded policy	The <b>Pricing Rule Approval Transactions</b> zone lists the approval transactions which are created while defining, editing, and deleting the parent customer's and bill groups' pricing rules.
A bill group who is associated with the self-funded policy	The <b>Pricing Rule Approval Transactions</b> zone lists the approval transactions which are created while defining, editing, and deleting the pricing rules of the bill group.

It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Submitted On	Displays the date and time when the approval transaction is created by the submitter.
Approval Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Comparison: New versus Existing</b> screen appears where you can review and accordingly approve, reject, or revert the changes.
Pricing Level	Indicates whether the approval transaction is created for a pricing rule which is defined at the parent customer or bill group level. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Parent Customer</li> <li>Bill Group</li> </ul>
Person Name	Indicates the person for whom the pricing rule is created.
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type using which the pricing rule is created.
Price Item Information	Indicates the price item for which the pricing rule is created. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price item.

Column Name	Column Description
Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing rule is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing rule is effective.
Approval Status	Indicates the status of the approval transaction. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approved</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• Deleted</li> <li>• Inprocess</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Rejected</li> </ul>
Action	Indicates the type of action performed by the submitter on the pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add</li> <li>• Update</li> <li>• Delete</li> </ul>
Submitted By	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the pricing rule.
Assigned To	Indicates the user to whom the approval transaction is manually assigned for review.
Approved/Rejected By	Indicates the user who has approved or rejected the approval transaction.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Status**, **Assigned To**, and **Price Item**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (🔍) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

## Defining a Sort ID for a Bill Group

### Prerequisites

To define a sort ID for a bill group, you should have:

- Effective child persons whose person type is set to **Bill Group** and who are related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the **Person Relationship Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration

### Procedure

To define a sort ID for a bill group:

1. Search for a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer** in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** (👁️) icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Expand the **Bill Group Sorting** zone.

**Note:** The **Bill Group Sorting** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.


- Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Sorting** zone.


The **Bill Group Sorting** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer	Indicates the parent customer whose bill groups' sort IDs you want to define.

In addition, it contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Used to indicate the bill group for whom you want to define the sort ID.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The values appear in this list only when there are effective child persons whose person type is set to <b>Bill Group</b> and who are related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the <b>Person Relationship Type</b> parameter of the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration.	
Description	Used to specify the description for the sort ID.	Yes
Sort ID	Used to specify the sort ID.	Yes
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the sort ID is effective for the bill group.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The start date cannot be later than the end date.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the sort ID is effective for the bill group.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.	

- Enter the required details in the grid.
- If you want to define more than one sort ID for a bill group, click the **Add** (  ) icon and then repeat step 5.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a sort ID of a bill group, click the **Delete** (  ) icon corresponding to the bill group and sort ID combination.

- Click **Save**.

A sort ID is defined for the bill group.

**Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Person</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Person</a> on page 71

For more information on...	See...
<b>Bill Group Sorting</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Sorting</a> on page 81
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Editing a Sort ID of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To edit a sort ID of a bill group:

1. Search for a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer** in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Expand the **Bill Group Sorting** zone.

**Note:** The **Bill Group Sorting** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

4. In the **Bill Group Sorting** zone, select the check box corresponding to the bill group and sort ID combination whose details you want to edit.

**Note:** If you want to edit all sort IDs of effective bill groups, you need to select the check box corresponding to the column header. In such case, the system considers only those records which are present on the respective page for editing.

5. Click **Edit**.

The **Bill Group Sorting** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer	Indicates the parent customer whose bill groups' sort IDs you want to edit.

In addition, it contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Indicates the bill group whose sort ID you want to edit.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the sort ID.	Yes
Sort ID	Displays the sort ID.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the sort ID is effective for the bill group.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The start date cannot be later than the end date. The start date cannot be later than the effective date specified in the derivation and pricing parameters which are defined for the bill group and sort ID combination.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the sort ID is effective for the bill group.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The end date cannot be earlier than the start date. The end date cannot be earlier than the effective date specified in the derivation and pricing parameters which are defined for the bill group and sort ID combination.	

6. Modify the details of a bill group's sort ID, if required.

7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the bill group's sort ID are saved.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Person</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Person</a> on page 71
<b>Bill Group Sorting</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Sorting</a> on page 81

## Deleting a Sort ID of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To delete a sort ID of a bill group:

1. Search for a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer** in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Expand the **Bill Group Sorting** zone.

**Note:** The **Bill Group Sorting** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.



4. In the **Bill Group Sorting** zone, select the check box corresponding to the bill group and sort ID combination that you want to delete.

**Note:** If you want to delete all sort IDs of effective bill groups, you need to select the check box corresponding to the column header. In such case, the system considers only those records which are present on the respective page for deleting.

5. Click **Delete**.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the bill group's sort ID.

**Note:** You can delete a bill group's sort ID only when the derivation and pricing parameters are not yet defined for the bill group and sort ID combination.

6. Click **OK**.

The bill group's sort ID is deleted.


### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Person</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Person</a> on page 71
<b>Bill Group Sorting</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Sorting</a> on page 81

## **Creating a Bill Group Sorting Upload Request**

### **Procedure**

To create a bill group sorting upload request:

1. Search for a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer** in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Expand the **Bill Group Sorting** zone.

**Note:** The **Bill Group Sorting** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

4. Click the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Sorting** zone.

The **Select Upload Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Used to indicate the upload request type using which you want to create the upload request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those upload request types where the upload request business object with the <b>Upload Type</b> option type set to <b>BG</b> is selected.	


**Note:** The **Select Upload Request Type** screen appears only when there are multiple upload request types where the upload request business object with the **Upload Type** option type set to **BG** is selected. If there is only one such upload request type defined in the application, the **Bill Group Sorting Upload Request** screen appears.

5. Select the required upload request type from the respective field.
6. Click **OK**.

The **Bill Group Sorting Upload Request** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the upload request.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the upload request.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Indicates the upload request type using which the bill group sorting upload request will be created.	Not applicable
Parent Customer	Used to indicate the person for whom you want to create the bill group sorting upload request.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>By default, the parent customer's ID appears in this field. You can change the person, if required.</p> <p>The system allows you to create a bill group sorting upload request for a person whose person type is set to <b>Parent Customer</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Person Search</b> window appears.</p>	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Used to specify the name and path of the file that you want to upload.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can also click the <b>Browse</b> button corresponding to this field to browse to the location where the file is available in the system.	
Replace Existing File	Used to indicate whether you want to replace any existing file in the system. You must select this check box when you want to upload the same file once again.	No
Comments	Used to specify additional information about the upload request.	No

- Click the **Browse** button corresponding to the **File Name** field.

The **Choose File to Upload** dialog box appears.

- Browse to the location where the file that you want to upload is available in the system.

- Click **Open**.

The file name along with the path appears in the **File Name** field.

- Select the **Replace Existing File** check box depending on whether you want to upload the same file once again in the system.

- Define characteristics for the upload request, if required.

- Click **Save**.

A message appears indicating the number of records which are successfully uploaded. Then, a bill group sorting upload request is created in the **Draft** status. If the bill group ID is available in the record, the status of the record is set to **Pending**. However, if the system could not derive the bill group ID using the bill group identifier type and bill group identifier combination when the bill group ID is not specified in the record, the status of the record is set to **Invalid**.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Person</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Person</a> on page 71
<b>Bill Group Sorting</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Sorting</a> on page 81
How to define characteristics for an upload request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request</a> on page 1409

## Defining the Derivation and Pricing Parameters for a Bill Group and Sort ID Combination


### Prerequisites

To define the derivation and pricing parameters for a bill group and sort ID combination, you should have:

- Effective child persons whose person type is set to **Bill Group** and who are related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the **Person Relationship Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLNG** feature configuration
- Sort ID defined for the bill group
- Values defined for the **C1-SourceSystemLookup** extendable lookup

**Procedure**

To define the derivation and pricing parameters for a bill group and sort ID combination:

1. Search for a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer** in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Expand the **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone.

**Note:** The **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.


4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone.


The **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** screen appears. It contains the following field:


Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer	Indicates the parent customer whose bill groups’ derivation and pricing parameters you want to define.

In addition, it contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Source System	Used to indicate the source system from where the claim and enrollment transactions are received.	Yes
Parameter 1	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&) character in this field.	
Parameter 2	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&) character in this field.	
Parameter 3	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&) character in this field.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter 4	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&) character in this field.	
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the derivation and pricing parameters are effective for the bill group and sort ID combination.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The effective date must be within the date range of the sort ID defined for the bill group.	
Status	Indicates the status of the derivation and pricing parameters for the bill group and sort ID combination. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>Active</b> .	
Bill Group Information	Used to indicate the bill group for whom you want to define the derivation and pricing parameters.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The values appear in this list only when there are effective child persons whose person type is set to <b>Bill Group</b> and who are related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the <b>Person Relationship Type</b> parameter of the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration.	
Sort ID	Used to indicate the sort ID of the bill group for which you want to define the derivation and pricing parameters.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Sort ID Search</b> window appears.	

- Enter the required details in the grid.
- If you want to define the derivation and pricing parameters for more than one bill group and sort ID combination, click the **Add** (  ) icon and then repeat step 5.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove the derivation and pricing parameters of a bill group and sort ID combination, click the **Delete** (  ) icon corresponding to the bill group and sort ID combination.

- Click **Save**.

The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the bill group and sort ID combination.


### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Person</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Person</a> on page 71
<b>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</a> on page 79
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Editing the Derivation and Pricing Parameters of a Bill Group and Sort ID Combination

### Procedure

To edit the derivation and pricing parameters of a bill group and sort ID combination:

1. Search for a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer** in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Expand the **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone.

**Note:** The **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

4. In the **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone, select the check box corresponding to the bill group and sort ID combination whose details you want to edit.

**Note:** If you want to edit the derivation and pricing parameters of all bill group and sort ID combinations, you need to select the check box corresponding to the column header. In such case, the system considers only those records which are present on the respective page for editing.

5. Click **Edit**.

The **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer	Indicates the parent customer whose bill groups' derivation and pricing parameters you want to edit.

In addition, it contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Source System	Indicates the source system from where the claim and enrollment transactions are received.	Not applicable
Parameter 1	Indicates the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	Not applicable
Parameter 2	Indicates the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter 3	Indicates the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	Not applicable
Parameter 4	Indicates the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	Not applicable
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the derivation and pricing parameters are effective for the bill group and sort ID combination.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the derivation and pricing parameters for the bill group and sort ID combination. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Bill Group Information	Indicates the bill group for whom the derivation and pricing parameters are defined.	Not applicable
Sort ID	Indicates the sort ID of the bill group for which the derivation and pricing parameters are defined.	Not applicable

- If required, you can inactivate the derivation and pricing parameters of a bill group and sort ID combination.
- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the derivation and pricing parameters of a bill group and sort ID combination are saved.


### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Person</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Person</a> on page 71
<b>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</a> on page 79

## **Creating a Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters Upload Request**

### **Procedure**

To create a bill group derivation and pricing parameters upload request:

- Search for a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer** in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

- Expand the **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone.

**Note:** The **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone appears when you are viewing the 360° information of a person whose person type is set to **Parent Customer**.

- Click the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone.

The **Select Upload Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Used to indicate the upload request type using which you want to create the upload request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those upload request types where the upload request business object with the <b>Upload Type</b> option type set to <b>BL</b> is selected.	


**Note:** The **Select Upload Request Type** screen appears only when there are multiple upload request types where the upload request business object with the **Upload Type** option type set to **BL** is selected. If there is only one such upload request type defined in the application, the **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters Upload Request** screen appears.

5. Select the required upload request type from the respective field.
6. Click **OK**.

The **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters Upload Request** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the upload request.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the upload request.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Indicates the upload request type using which the bill group derivation and pricing parameters upload request will be created.	Not applicable
Parent Customer	Used to indicate the person for whom you want to create the bill group derivation and pricing parameters upload request.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>By default, the parent customer's ID appears in this field. You can change the person, if required.</p> <p>The system allows you to create a bill group derivation and pricing parameters upload request for a person whose person type is set to <b>Parent Customer</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Person Search</b> window appears.</p>	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Used to specify the name and path of the file that you want to upload.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can also click the <b>Browse</b> button corresponding to this field to browse to the location where the file is available in the system.	
Replace Existing File	Used to indicate whether you want to replace any existing file in the system. You must select this check box when you want to upload the same file once again.	No
Comments	Used to specify additional information about the upload request.	No

- Click the **Browse** button corresponding to the **File Name** field.

The **Choose File to Upload** dialog box appears.

- Browse to the location where the file that you want to upload is available in the system.
- Click **Open**.

The file name along with the path appears in the **File Name** field.

- Select the **Replace Existing File** check box depending on whether you want to upload the same file once again in the system.
- Define characteristics for the upload request, if required.
- Click **Save**.

A message appears indicating the number of records which are successfully uploaded. Then, a bill group derivation and pricing parameters upload request is created in the **Draft** status. If the bill group ID is available in the record, the status of the record is set to **Pending**. However, if the system could not derive the bill group ID using the bill group identifier type and bill group identifier combination when the bill group ID is not specified in the record, the status of the record is set to **Invalid**.

### Related Topics



For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Person</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Person</a> on page 71
<b>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</a> on page 79
How to define characteristics for an upload request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request</a> on page 1409

## Viewing the Pricing Rules Defined for a Policy of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To view the pricing rules defined for a policy of a bill group:

- Search for a bill group whose is associated with a self-funded policy in the **Customer 360° View** screen.

- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
- 3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
- 4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a bill group and policy combination whose details you want to view.  
The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** and **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zones appear.
- 5. View the pricing rules which are defined for the policy of the bill group in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.



Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Information</a> on page 105
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107

**Viewing the Pricing Groups of a Bill Group**

Procedure

To view the pricing groups of a bill group:

- 1. Search for a bill group whose is associated with a self-funded policy in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
- 3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
- 4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a bill group whose pricing groups you want to view.  
The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** and **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zones appear.
- 5. View the pricing groups which are defined for the bill group and are currently active in the **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99

For more information on...	See...
Bill Group Policy Information zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Information</a> on page 105
Bill Group Pricing Groups zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Pricing Groups</a> on page 111

## Renewing a Self-Funded Policy of a Bill Group

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to renew a self-funded policy which is associated with a bill group. You can renew a self-funded policy only when it is in the **In Force/Active** status and not yet renewed.

On renewing a self-funded policy, the base policy information is stamped in the renewed policy. Once a policy is renewed, you cannot edit the base policy's end date or manually change the status of the base policy to **Runout**. The system automatically changes the status of the base policy to **Runout** when the status of the renewed policy is changed to **Runout**.

### Procedure

To renew a self-funded policy of a bill group:


1. Search for a bill group who is associated with a self-funded policy in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

**View** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the **Renew** () icon in the **Renew** column corresponding to a policy of the bill group which you want to renew.

The **Policy** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the renewed policy.
- **Persons** - Used to associate or disassociate persons from the renewed policy.

**Note:** You cannot disassociate persons who are associated with the base policy using a policy person role which is specified in the **Bill Group Policy Person Role** or **Parent Customer Policy Person Role** option type of the **C1-ASOBLNG** feature configuration.

- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the renewed policy.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Base Policy Information	Indicates the policy which you want to renew.	Not applicable
Policy Type	Indicates the policy type using which the base policy is created.	Not applicable
Policy Number	Used to specify the policy number of the renewed policy.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the renewed policy.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the renewed policy is effective.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>By default, the start date is set to the base policy's end date plus one day. For example, if the base policy's end date is 12-31-2018, then by default, the renewed policy's start date is set to 01-01-2019.</p> <p>The start date cannot be later than the end date.</p> <p>The start date cannot be earlier than or equal to the base policy's end date.</p>	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the renewed policy is effective.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b> The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.</p>	
Runout End Date	Used to specify the date when the runout period of the renewed policy ends.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The runout end date cannot be earlier than the renewed policy's end date.</p> <p>You must specify the runout end date when you are renewing a self-funded policy.</p>	
Runout Administration Fees	Used to indicate whether the administration fees must be charged when the claim transaction for the policy is processed in the runout period. The valid values are:	No
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None</li> <li>• Percentage of Claim</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>At present, this field is used only for the information purposes and is not considered during the billable charge creation for the claim transactions which are received in the runout period of the policy.</p> <p>You must specify the runout administration fees when you are renewing a self-funded policy.</p>	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Copy Pricing Rules	<p>Used to indicate whether you want to copy the pricing rules of the base policy to the renewed policy. If you select the <b>Copy Pricing Rules</b> option, the system copies the following pricing rules of the base policy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>• Recurring Flat Fees</li> <li>• Ancillary</li> <li>• Level Funding</li> </ul>	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>While copying a pricing rule, the start and end dates of the new pricing rule are set to the renewed policy's start and end dates, respectively.</p> <p>If there are multiple pricing rules which are created using the same pricing rule type and are effective for the different date range, the system copies only one pricing rule from the base policy with the latest date range.</p>	

**Note:** The **Renew** icon appears only when the policy is in the **In Force/Active** status and it is not yet renewed.

5. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
6. Associate or disassociate persons from the renewed policy, if required.
7. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the renewed policy, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

The renewed policy is created in the **Pending** status. The renewal date is stamped corresponding to the base policy in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Information</a> on page 105
How to associate a person with a policy	<a href="#">Associating a Person with a Policy</a> on page 1673
How to define characteristics for a policy	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Policy</a> on page 1674
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349


## Viewing the Bill Details

## Procedure

To view the details of a bill:

1. Search for the account, whose bill details you want to view, in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.

The **Account** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. In the **Open Bills** zone, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the bill whose details you want to view.

The **Bill Information** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- [Bill Information](#) on page 131
  - [Adjustments](#) on page 132
  - [Settlement Activities](#) on page 132
  - [Bill Segment Summary](#) on page 132
  - [Bill Segment Details](#) on page 133
  - [Hold Details](#) on page 134
  - [Offset Details](#) on page 134
  - [Refund and Write Off Details](#) on page 135
4. View the basic details about the bill in the **Bill Information** zone.
  5. View the adjustments which are swept onto the bill in the **Adjustments** zone.
  6. View the activities, such as payment, transfer, offset, refund, or write off through which the bill is settled, in the **Settlement Activities** zone.
  7. View the bill segment information which is summarized based on the coverage period and plan/fee type combination in the **Bill Segment Summary** zone.
  8. View the details of the bill segments which are included in the bill in the **Bill Segment Details** zone.
  9. View the active hold requests due to which the bill is kept on hold in the **Hold Details** zone.
  10. View the offset requests through which the bill is offset against another bill in the **Offset Details** zone.
  11. View the refund and write off requests through which the bill or its bill segment is either refunded or written off in the **Refund and Write Off Details** zone.

## Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a> on page 61
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Account</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Account</a> on page 83
<b>Open Bills</b> zone	<a href="#">Open Bills</a> on page 89
<b>Bill Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Bill Information</a> on page 131

## Bill Information

---

The **Bill Information** screen allows you to view:

- Basic details of the bill
- Adjustments which are swept onto the bill
- Activities, such as payment, offset, refund, write off, or transfer through which the bill is settled
- High-level summary and details of the bill segments which are included in the bill
- Active hold requests due to which the bill is kept on hold
- Offset requests through which the bill is offset against another bill
- Refund and write off requests through which the bill or its bill segment is either refunded or written off

It contains the following zones:

- [Bill Information](#) on page 131
- [Adjustments](#) on page 132
- [Settlement Activities](#) on page 132
- [Bill Segment Summary](#) on page 132
- [Bill Segment Details](#) on page 133
- [Hold Details](#) on page 134
- [Offset Details](#) on page 134
- [Refund and Write Off Details](#) on page 135

## Bill Information

The **Bill Information** zone displays the details of the bill. It contains the following section:

- **Main** - Displays the basic information about the bill. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Bill Information	Displays information about the bill. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill.
Alternate Bill ID	Displays the alternate bill ID.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the respective data is available for the bill.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the bill is generated. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.

## Adjustments

The **Adjustments** zone lists the adjustments which are swept onto the bill. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Adjustment Information	Displays information about the adjustment.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective adjustment.
Contract Information	Indicates the contract against which the adjustment is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.

## Settlement Activities

You may settle a bill or its bill segment by making a payment, offsetting, refunding, writing off, or by reconciling against pay instructions. The **Settlement Activities** zone lists the activities related to the bill or its bill segment settlement. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Activity Date	Displays the date when the settlement activity was performed in the system.
Activity Type	Indicates the type of the settlement activity. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Payment</li> <li>• Offset</li> <li>• Refund</li> <li>• Write Off</li> <li>• Transfer</li> </ul>
Amount	Indicates the amount settled through the activity.
Related Object Information	Displays additional information about the settlement activity.
Related Object ID	Indicates the payment, offset request, refund request, write off request, or reconciliation adjustment which is created during settlement.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment, Offset Request, Refund Request, Write Off Request, or Adjustment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective activity.

## Bill Segment Summary

The system groups the bill segments with the same date range and plan/fee type combination and then provides the summarized information for each combination in the **Bill Segment Summary** zone. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Start Date	Displays the start date of the bill segment.



Column Name	Column Description
End Date	Displays the end date of the bill segment.
Policy Number	Indicates the policy for which the bill segment is generated.
Plan/Fee Type	Indicates the plan code or fee type for which the bill segment is generated.
Amount	Displays the bill segment amount.
Unpaid Amount	Displays the unpaid amount of the bill segment.


**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.


## Bill Segment Details

The **Bill Segment Details** zone displays the details of the bill segments which are included in the bill. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Start Date	Displays the start date of the bill segment.
End Date	Displays the end date of the bill segment.
Policy Number	Indicates the policy for which the bill segment is generated.
Plan/Fee Type	Indicates the plan code or fee type for which the bill segment is generated.
External Membership ID	Indicates the membership in which the member is included.
Member Primary ID	Displays the concatenated string consisting of primary identifier type and primary identifier of the member which are separated by a colon (:).
Member Name	Indicates the member for whom the bill segment is generated.
Coverage Tier	Indicates the coverage tier to which the membership belongs. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CHILDREN ONLY</li> <li>EMPLOYEE &amp; CHILD(REN)</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the <b>Coverage Tier (C1CVTIER)</b> characteristic type is defined for the membership.</p>
Status	Indicates the eligibility status of the member. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Cobra</li> <li>Retiree</li> <li>Terminated</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the <b>Eligibility Status Type (C1ELGSTA)</b> characteristic type is defined for the member.</p>
Amount	Displays the bill segment amount.
Unpaid Amount	Displays the unpaid amount of the bill segment.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

On clicking the **View** () icon corresponding to a bill segment, the **Bill Segment** screen appears where you can view the additional details of the respective bill segment.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Coverage Period Start Date** and **Coverage Period End Date**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

Hold Details

The **Hold Details** zone lists the active hold requests due to which the bill is kept on hold. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Hold Request Information	Displays information about the hold request.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Hold Request</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective hold request.
Status	Indicates the status of the hold request.
Entity	Indicates the type of the entity. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Person</li><li>• Account</li><li>• Bill</li></ul>
Entity Information	Indicates the entity for which the hold request is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> , <b>Account</b> , or <b>Bill</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective entity.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the entity is kept on hold.
End Date	Displays the date till when the entity is kept on hold.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

Offset Details

The **Offset Details** zone lists the offset requests through which the bill is offset against another bill. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Offset Request Information	Displays information about the offset request.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Offset Request</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective offset request.
Offset Amount	Indicates the bill amount which is offset against another bill.

Column Name	Column Description
Creation Mode	Indicates the mode in which the offset request is created. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Automatic</li> <li>Manual</li> </ul>


**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

## Refund and Write Off Details

The **Refund and Write Off Details** zone lists the refund and write off requests through which the bill or its bill segment is either refunded or written off. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the refund or write off request is created.
Refund/Write Off Request Information	Displays information about the refund or write off request. <div> <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Refund Request</b> or <b>Write Off Request</b> screen appears depending on whether the request is created for refund or write off. </div>
Refund/Write Off Amount	Displays the total refund or write off amount.
Status	Indicates the status of the refund or write off request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Approval In Progress</li> <li>Cancelled</li> <li>Deferred Processing</li> <li>Draft</li> <li>Processed</li> <li>Rejected</li> <li>Voided</li> </ul>
Action	Indicates whether the request is created for refund or write off. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refund</li> <li>Write Off</li> </ul>
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the refund or write off request is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. <div> <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account. </div>
Created By	Indicates the user who has created the refund or write off request.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

You can filter the list using the **Action** field available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

---

# Chapter

# 3

---

## Pricing Management

---

### Topics:

- [Types of Pricing](#)
- [Multi Parameter Based Pricing](#)
- [Price Assignment Search Mechanism](#)
- [Person Relationship Type Sequence](#)
- [Pricing Eligibility](#)
- [Persisting Interest Rate for Rate Type Price Items](#)
- [Persisting Fee for Fee Type Price Items](#)
- [Repricing](#)
- [Two-Dimensional Pricing](#)
- [Types of Price Item Bundle](#)
- [Parameter](#)
- [Price Item](#)
- [Price List](#)
- [Pricing \(Account\)](#)
- [Pricing \(Person\)](#)
- [Price Item Pricing \(Used for Viewing\)](#)
- [Pricing Simulation](#)
- [Eligible Price List](#)
- [Rate Definition](#)
- [Tiering Criterion](#)
- [Variance Parameter](#)
- [Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define prices for price item and services offered to the customers. These prices are either standard prices defined in the price lists or override prices that are specific to a customer or an account. The system allows you to define prices at various levels in a customer hierarchy (for example, at the account level, main customer level, or at the parent customer level). You can also define prices in the account's price list, main customer's price list, parent customer's price list, price list's parent price list. As prices can be defined at multiple places, the order in which the system searches for effective price item pricing will affect the price charged to the customer. The search order is configurable, and can vary with each division. You need to define the search order in the price assignment search algorithm (which is also known as crawling algorithm) and then attach the algorithm to the division. You can change the search order at any time.

You need to define the price assignment search algorithm using the C1\_PRASN algorithm type. The price assignment search algorithm is used while:

- Listing effective price item pricing for an account or a customer
- Fetching effective price item pricing while creating recurring and non-recurring bill segments
- Fetching effective post processing pricing while creating post processing bill segments
- Fetching effective price item pricing in the **Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** batch

For more information about the price assignment search algorithm, see [Price Assignment Search Mechanism](#) on page 143.

Since a global customer is not associated to any division, the system cannot determine the price assignment search order for a global customer. Hence, the default search order is defined for global customers through the **C1\_PRASNORDR** feature configuration. You can change this default search order, if required.

The prices that are specific to a customer or an account are referred to as customer agreed or account agreed prices, respectively. You can override these agreed prices. Customer agreed or account agreed prices are effective for a particular duration and do not expire until you manually specify the end date. However, if you set the **Expire Override Switch** option type of the **C1\_EXP\_OVRD** feature configuration to **Y**, the system will automatically expire an agreed pricing when the agreed pricing of a customer or an account without end date is overridden. If you do not want an agreed pricing to automatically expire when it is overridden, you must set the **Expire Override Switch** option type of the **C1\_EXP\_OVRD** feature configuration to **N**.

The system allows you to define the following types of pricing:

- Flat Pricing
- Tiered Pricing

For more information about the types of pricing, see [Types of Pricing](#) on page 139.

The price for a price item or service may differ depending upon various transaction, customer or account attributes. Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides a facility to define pricing for a price item based on multiple parameters. This multi parameter based pricing feature enables the price analyst to define price item and its parameters which influence pricing. You can then define pricing for the price item based on these parameters. Bundles are offered to customers to provide discounted rates. You can also define pricing for bundles based on multiple parameters. To enable the multi parameter based pricing feature, you must set the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1\_PPARM\_FLG)** feature configuration to **True**. For more information about the multi parameter based pricing feature, see [Multi Parameter Based Pricing](#) on page 139.

## Types of Pricing

The system allows you to define the following types of pricing:

- **Flat Pricing** — Used when you want to charge a fixed price per unit to the customer.
- **Tiered Pricing** — Used when standard flat pricing is not sufficient to meet the business needs. Through tiered pricing, you can offer more favorable pricing to the customers based on service quantity utilization. For example, CG Limited uses wire transfer services provided by a large bank. If CG Limited initiates up to 1,000 wire transfers, the fee charged by the bank will be \$5 per transfer. If CG Limited initiates more than 1,000 wire transfers, the fee will be \$3 per transfer. To introduce this flexibility in the pricing model, the following tiered pricing is defined:

Quantity Range	Rate (\$) per transfer
0 – 1000	5
1000+	3

You can define two types of tiered pricing:

- **Step Tiered Pricing** — The rate of the first tiering range is used to calculate the charge for the maximum quantity in the range, and for incremental service quantity utilization, the rate of the progressive tiering range is used. This happens till the utilized quantity is exhausted. For example, when you define the following step tiered pricing for Price Item A and the user consumes 60,000 units of the same, the system will charge the first 45,000 units at \$2 per unit and the remaining 15,000 units at \$1 per unit:

Quantity Range	Rate (\$) per unit
0 – 45000	2
45000+	1

- **Threshold Tiered Pricing** — The rate of the tiering range within which the service quantity utilization falls is used to calculate the charge for the entire volume. For example, when you define the following threshold tiered pricing for Price Item A and the user consumes 75,000 units of the same, the system will charge 75,000 units at \$1 per unit as the service quantity utilization falls within 45000+ tiering range:

Quantity Range	Rate (\$) per unit
0 – 45000	2
45000+	1

## Multi Parameter Based Pricing

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides a facility to define pricing for a price item based on multiple parameters. You can also define pricing for bundles based on multiple parameters. You can enable or disable the multi parameter based pricing feature by setting the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1\_PPARM\_FLG)** feature configuration. For more information, see [Setting the C1\\_PPARM\\_FLG Feature Configuration](#) on page 2374.

If the multi parameter based pricing feature is disabled, you can define pricing for a price item based on the variance parameter. If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can define pricing for a price item based on multiple parameters. For example:

Price Item A	Country	Currency
Pricing 1	US	USD

Price Item A	Country	Currency
Pricing 2	Germany	USD

Pricing 1 and Pricing 2 are defined for Price Item A based on two parameters — Country and Currency. Before you define pricing based on country and currency, you need to define these parameters in the system. Once you define these parameters, you need to associate them to the price item (i.e. Price item A).

Then, when you define Pricing 1 for Price item A, you need to set the following price item parameters:

- Country — US
- Currency — USD

Similarly, you need to define Pricing 2 with Country set to Germany and Currency set to USD.

The following table lists the tiering ranges defined in Pricing 1 where price item parameters are set to US, USD:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Price Item	Price Parameters	Item	From	To
10	2	Number of Transactions	Price Item A	US, USD		0	5000
20	1	Number of Transactions	Price Item A	US, USD		5000	

The following table lists the tiering ranges defined in Pricing 2 where price item parameters are set to Germany, USD:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Price Item	Price Parameters	Item	From	To
10	4	Number of Transactions	Price Item A	Germany, USD		0	1000
20	3	Number of Transactions	Price Item A	Germany, USD		1000	

Now, when the user performs 1500 transactions (in USD) of Price Item A in Germany, 12000 transactions (in USD) of Price Item A in US, the system creates two billable charges. In one billable charge (with Price Item A, US and USD combination), the system uses \$1 as the rate for calculating charges, and in another billable charge (with Price Item A, Germany and USD combination), the system uses \$3 as the rate for calculating charges.

Note that in this case the parameters based on which you have defined pricing and tiering ranges are same. You can use different parameters while defining pricing and tiering ranges, if required. You can also use another price item or bundle and its parameters while defining tiering ranges. For example:

The following table lists the tiering ranges of Pricing 1 defined for Price Item A where price item parameters are set to US, USD:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Price Item	Price Parameters	Item	From	To
10	2	Number of Transactions	Price Item B	Germany, USD		0	100
20	1	Number of Transactions	Price Item B	Germany, USD		100	200
30	0.5	Number of Transactions	Price Item B	Germany, USD		200	



Now, when the user performs 1500 transactions (in USD) of Price Item A in US, 200 transactions (in USD) of Price Item B in Germany, the system creates one billable charge. The system adds the transactions with the following combinations and then determines the range of Price Item A within which the total units (i.e. 200) fall:

- Price Item B, Germany, USD

In this case, the total units fall in the 100 – 200 range of Price Item A, and therefore the system uses \$1 as the rate for calculating charges (i.e.  $1500 \times 1 = 1500$ ).

Some parameters might be mandatory and some might be optional while defining price item pricing. You can define price item pricing based on these parameters at various levels, such as:

- Account Agreed
- Account Price List
- Account Inherited Price List
- Customer Agreed
- Customer Price List
- Customer Inherited Price List
- Parent Customer Agreed
- Parent Customer Price List
- Parent Customer Inherited Price List
- Default Price List
- Global Price List

As prices can be defined at multiple levels, the system first searches for exact match at all levels (using the search order). If the system finds the exact match at multiple levels, the price assignment at the higher precedence level is considered. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Pricing 1 is defined for Price Item A with the following parameters at the Account Agreed level:

Parameter	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Value
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	US
Currency	No	2	USD

Pricing 2 is defined for Price Item A with the following parameters at the Parent Customer Agreed level:

Parameter	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Value
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	US
Currency	No	2	USD

Pricing 3 is defined for Price Item A with the following parameters at the Account Price List level:

Parameter	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Value
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	US
Currency	No	2	—

Now, when the user performs transactions (with the type set to BT in US) of Price Item A in USD, the system searches for price with exact match (Type — BT, Country — US, and Currency — USD). The exact match is available at two levels — Account Agreed and Parent Customer Agreed. The system considers the price at the Account Agreed level because this level has higher precedence.

Depending on the search order defined for the division (to which the account belongs), the level with higher precedence changes. Accordingly, the price assignment at the higher precedence level is considered for calculating the charges.

If the system does not find the exact match at any level, it searches for the best fit match at all levels. Let us understand how the best fit match is determined with the help of an example.

Pricing 1 is defined for Price Item A with the following parameters:

Parameter	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Value
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	US
Currency	No	2	-

Pricing 2 is defined for Price Item A with the following parameters:

Parameter	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Value
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	-
Currency	No	2	USD

Pricing 3 is defined for Price Item A with the following parameters:

Parameter	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Value
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	-
Currency	No	2	-

Pricing 4 is defined for Price Item A with the following parameters:

Parameter	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Value
Type	Yes	—	BT
Country	No	1	US
Currency	No	2	GBP

The system has Pricing 1, Pricing 2, Pricing 3, and Pricing 4 defined for Price Item A. Now, when the user performs transactions (with the type set to BT in US) of Price Item A in USD, the system does not find price with exact match (Type — BT, Country — US, and Currency — USD). Therefore, it searches for the best fit match.

While searching for the best fit match, the system rules out the optional parameter with lowest priority (i.e. Currency) and checks whether the price (with Type — BT and Country — US) is available. If the price is available, the system considers the price as the best fit match. Therefore, in this case, Pricing 1 is considered as the best fit match.

Suppose, if the price (with Type — BT and Country — US) is not available, then the system rules out the optional parameter with next lowest priority (i.e. Country) and checks whether the price (with Type — BT and Currency — USD) is available. If the price is available, the system considers the price as the best fit match. In this case, Pricing 2 would be considered as the best fit match. If the system finds the best fit match with same weight at multiple levels, the price assignment at the higher precedence level is considered.

## Price Assignment Search Mechanism

The price assignment search algorithm searches effective price item pricing based on the following parameters:

- **Search Order** — Used to indicate the order in which the system must search effective price item pricing at various levels in the customer hierarchy. This is a mandatory parameter. The valid values are:

If you select the following value...	Then the effective price item pricing is searched at the following levels in the specified order...
AGREED_PRICELIST	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1. Account Agreed</b> — Means price item pricing is agreed for the account in the hierarchy.</li> <li><b>2. Account Price List</b> — Means price item pricing is defined within the price list which is assigned to the account.</li> <li><b>3. Account Inherited Price List</b> — Means price item pricing is inherited from the hierarchy defined for the price list which is assigned to the account.</li> <li><b>4. Customer Agreed</b> — Means price item pricing is agreed for the customer in the hierarchy.</li> <li><b>5. Customer Price List</b> — Means price item pricing is defined within the price list which is assigned to the customer.</li> <li><b>6. Customer Inherited Price List</b> — Means price item pricing is inherited from the hierarchy defined for the price list which is assigned to the customer.</li> <li><b>7. Parent Customer Agreed</b> — Means price item pricing is agreed for the parent customer in the hierarchy.</li> <li><b>8. Parent Customer Price List</b> — Means price item pricing is defined within the price list which is assigned to the parent customer.</li> <li><b>9. Parent Customer Inherited Price List</b> — Means price item pricing is inherited from the hierarchy defined for the price list which is assigned to the parent customer.</li> </ol>

If you select the following value...	Then the effective price item pricing is searched at the following levels in the specified order...
AGREED_FIRST	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1. Account Agreed</b> — Means price item pricing is agreed for the account in the hierarchy.</li> <li><b>2. Customer Agreed</b> — Means price item pricing is agreed for the customer in the hierarchy.</li> <li><b>3. Parent Customer Agreed</b> — Means price item pricing is agreed for the parent customer in the hierarchy.</li> <li><b>4. Account Price List</b> — Means price item pricing is defined within the price list which is assigned to the account.</li> <li><b>5. Account Inherited Price List</b> — Means price item pricing is inherited from the hierarchy defined for the price list which is assigned to the account.</li> <li><b>6. Customer Price List</b> — Means price item pricing is defined within the price list which is assigned to the customer.</li> <li><b>7. Customer Inherited Price List</b> — Means price item pricing is inherited from the hierarchy defined for the price list which is assigned to the customer.</li> <li><b>8. Parent Customer Price List</b> — Means price item pricing is defined within the price list which is assigned to the parent customer.</li> <li><b>9. Parent Customer Inherited Price List</b> — Means price item pricing is inherited from the hierarchy defined for the price list which is assigned to the parent customer.</li> </ol>

**Note:** In these price assignment search orders, the account agreed level has highest precedence and parent customer inherited price list level has lowest precedence.

- **Default Price List ID** — Used to indicate the default price list. If the effective price item pricing is not available at any level in the customer hierarchy, the system checks whether the default price list is specified in the price assignment search algorithm. If the default price list is specified in the algorithm, the system checks whether effective price item pricing is available in the default price list.
- **Global Price List** — Used to indicate whether the system should consider the price item pricing defined in the global price list. If the effective price item pricing is not available in the default price list or if the default price list is not specified in the price assignment search algorithm, the system checks whether it should consider the price item pricing defined in the global price list. The valid values are:
  - Y
  - N

Finally, if the effective price item pricing is not available in either default and/or global price list, an error message occurs indicating that the effective price item pricing is not available in the system.

- **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** — Used to indicate whether to prefer price item, regular bundle, or parent bundle pricing when the price item, regular bundle (to which the price item belongs), and parent (regular) bundle (i.e. to which the regular bundle belongs) are assigned at the same level. The valid values are:
  - Y
  - N

If the value of the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter is set to **Y**, the system first searches whether effective pricing is available for the price item. If the effective pricing is not available for the price item, then the system searches whether effective pricing is available for the regular bundle at the same level. If the effective pricing is not available for the regular bundle, then the system searches whether effective pricing is available for the parent bundle at the same level. However, if the value of the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter is set to **N**, the system first searches whether effective pricing is available for the parent bundle. If the effective pricing is not available for the parent bundle, then the system searches whether effective pricing is available for the regular bundle at the same level. If the effective pricing is not available for the regular bundle, then the system searches whether effective pricing is available for the price item at the same level.

- **Person Relationship Type Sequence Algorithm** — Used to attach an algorithm which is defined using the C1-CUSRLALGT algorithm type. The attached algorithm is used while searching effective price item pricing at the parent customer level. It indicates whether the system should search person to person relationship type sequence defined:
  - For the division, price item, and price item parameters combination
  - For the division
  - In the C1\_PER\_REL feature configuration

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence	<a href="#">Person Relationship Type Sequence</a> on page 145

## Person Relationship Type Sequence

When the price assignment search algorithm searches effective price item pricing at the parent customer level, the system determines the parent customer's person to person relationship type whose price item pricing should be considered. The person to person relationship type sequence indicates the order in which relationship type should be considered while searching for effective price item pricing at the parent customer level. For example, if a customer has two parents – Parent 1 with the relationship type set to “Subsidiary” and Parent 2 with the relationship type set to “Franchise Owner”, and the following person to person relationship type sequence is defined in the system:

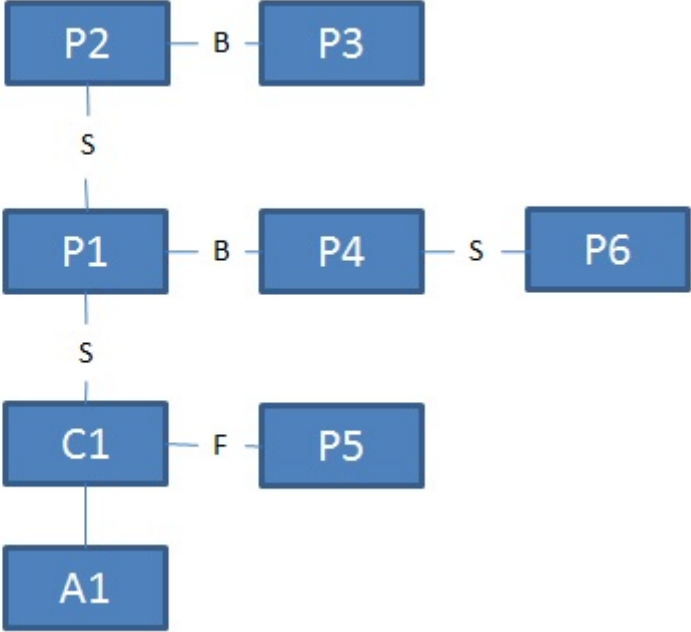
When the price assignment search algorithm searches effective price item pricing at the parent customer level, the system determines the parent customer's person to person relationship type whose price item pricing should be considered. The person to person relationship type sequence indicates the order in which relationship type should be considered while searching for effective price item pricing at the parent customer level. For example, if a customer has two parents – Parent 1 with the relationship type set to “Subsidiary” and Parent 2 with the relationship type set to “Franchise Owner”, and the following person to person relationship type sequence is defined in the system:

Sequence Number	Relationship Type
10	Subsidiary
20	Franchise Owner

In the above example, the system will inherit effective price item pricing (if available) from Parent 1 or within its hierarchy. If the effective price item pricing is not available in the Parent 1 hierarchy, the system will inherit effective price item pricing (if available) from Parent 2 or within its hierarchy. If the effective price item pricing is not available in the Parent 2 hierarchy, an error message occurs indicating that the effective price item pricing is not available.

While searching effective pricing at the parent customer level based on the person to person relationship type sequence, the system will use the depth first search mechanism. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Person To Person Relationship Type Sequence	
Sequence Number	Relationship Type
10	Subsidiary (S)
20	Branch (B)
30	Franchise Owner (F)



In the above example, if the effective pricing is not available at the account or customer level, the system will search effective pricing at the parent customer level in the following order:

- P1 (because the first relationship type in the sequence is Subsidiary)
- P2 (grandparent of P1 irrespective of the relationship type)
- P3 (because the second relationship type in the sequence is Branch)
- P4 (because the second relationship type in the sequence is Branch)
- P6 (grandparent of P4 irrespective of the relationship type)
- P5 (because the third relationship type in the sequence is Franchise Owner)

The system provides you the flexibility to define person to person relationship type sequence:

- For each division, price item, and price item parameters combination
- For each division
- In the C1\_PER\_REL feature configuration

The system will first check whether the person to person relationship type sequence is defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination. If the person to person relationship type sequence is defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination, the system will search effective price item pricing at the parent customer level based on the sequence defined for the combination. However, if the person to person relationship type sequence is not defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination, the system will check whether the person to person relationship type sequence is defined for the division. If the person to person relationship type sequence is defined for the division, the system will search effective price item pricing at the parent customer level based on the sequence defined for the division. However, if the person to person relationship type sequence is not defined for the division, the system will consider the person to person relationship type sequence defined in the C1\_PER\_REL feature configuration and accordingly search the effective price item pricing at the parent customer level.

To enable the system to search person to person relationship type sequence at different levels, you need to create an algorithm of the C1-CUSRLALGT algorithm type and attach it to the **Person Relationship Type Sequence Algorithm** parameter in the price assignment search algorithm. The C1-CUSRLALGT algorithm type has the following parameters:

- **Check on Division, Price Item and Price Item Parameters Combination** - Used to indicate whether you want the system to search person to person relationship type sequence defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination. This is a mandatory parameter. The valid values are:

- Y
- N

By default, the value is set to **N**.

- **Check on Division** - Used to indicate whether you want the system to search person to person relationship type sequence defined for the division. This is a mandatory parameter. The valid values are:

- Y
- N

By default, the value is set to **N**.

- **Check on Feature Configuration** – Used to indicate whether you want the system to consider the person to person relationship type sequence defined in the **C1\_PER\_REL** feature configuration. This is a mandatory parameter. The valid values are:

- **A** – Used when you want to consider all person to person relationship types defined in the feature configuration (in the specified sequence).
- **F** – Used when you want to only consider the person to person relationship type defined with the lowest sequence in the feature configuration.
- **N** – Used when you do not want to consider the person to person relationship type sequence defined in the **C1\_PER\_REL** feature configuration.

By default, the value is set to **F**.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence</b> screen	<a href="#">Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence</a> on page 449
How to set the C1_PER_REL feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1_PER_REL Feature Configuration</a> on page 2373

## Pricing Eligibility

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to define pricing eligibility criteria using the account, person, and product attributes while defining a price item pricing. For example, a bank offers a product named 12 Month Standard Certificate of Deposit (CD). The interest rate charged to a person for this product differs based on two parameters – Deposit Amount and Person Type (Preferred and Non-Preferred). The following table lists the interest rates offered for the 12 Month Standard Certificate of Deposit (CD) product:

Deposit Amount	Non-Preferred	Preferred
Less than \$5,000	0.13%	0.20%
Greater than \$5,000	0.15%	0.22%

Earlier, you were able to define different interest rates based on different parameters using the rate eligibility feature at the rate component level. Considering the above example, you had to define four rate components. The respective rate component would appear while defining price item pricing based on the following:

- The value defined for the **Deposit Amount** characteristic on the account

- The value defined for the **Customer Type** characteristic on the main customer

However, now, you can implement the above scenario using a single rate component instead of maintaining four different rate components. Now, while defining price item pricing, you need to define four different price components for a rate component. For each price component, you need to define the pricing eligibility criteria in the following manner:

Price Component	Rate	Pricing Criteria Eligibility	If True	If False
P1	0.13%	Deposit Amount > 5000	Check Next Condition	Return False
P1	0.13%	Person Type = Non-Preferred	Return True	Return False
P2	0.15%	Deposit Amount < 5000	Check Next Condition	Return False
P2	0.15%	Person Type = Non-Preferred	Return True	Return False
P3	0.20%	Deposit Amount > 5000	Check Next Condition	Return False
P3	0.20%	Person Type = Preferred	Return True	Return False
P4	0.22%	Deposit Amount < 5000	Check Next Condition	Return False
P4	0.22%	Person Type = Preferred	Return True	Return False

You can define pricing eligibility criteria only when the appropriate parameters are created in the system. These parameters must be mapped to either of the following:

- Account attributes, characteristics, usage amounts, or usage counters
- Person attributes, characteristics, usage amounts, or usage counters
- Product attributes or characteristics
- Service Quantity Identifier
- Custom algorithm which returns the appropriate value

In the above example, you can define the pricing eligibility criteria only when the following parameters are defined in the system:

Parameter	Source Entity	Source Type	Source Type Code	Value Type
Deposit Amount	Account	Usage Amount	Deposit Amount	Adhoc
Customer Type	Person	Characteristic	Person Type	Predefined

You can define pricing eligibility criteria for rate components whose tiering type is set to **Flat**, **Threshold**, or **Step**. Each criterion in the pricing eligibility criteria is executed in the specified sequence. If the value of the pricing eligibility criteria is **True**, the rate of the respective price component is passed to the rate component for further calculations.

## Persisting Interest Rate for Rate Type Price Items

While defining a price item, you can indicate whether the price item is available for pricing and billing or only for pricing. If the price item is available only for pricing, you can indicate the type of the price item. The valid values for the price item type are:

- Rate (i.e. Interest Rate)
- Fees



If the type of a price item is **Rate**, the system calculates and persist the rate for the price item. The rate is persisted only for the price item pricing which is either assigned or inherited by an account. If the account or person attributes are changed, the system allows you to recalculate and persist the interest rate for rate type price items. This process is known as **Repricing**.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Repricing	<a href="#">Repricing</a> on page 149

## Persisting Fee for Fee Type Price Items

While defining a price item, you can indicate whether the price item is available for pricing and billing or only for pricing. If the price item is available only for pricing, you can indicate the type of the price item. The valid values for the price item type are:

- Rate
- Fees

The input elements Pricing Frequency, Advance Pricing should be populated if **Price Item** is available for **Pricing Only**, **Price Item Type** is **Fees** and **Price Assignment Type** is **Post-Processing**.

If the type of a price item is **Fee**, the system calculates and persist the fee for the price item.

**Note:** The **Process Fees Request and Persist Fees for an Account (C1-ACFEE)** batch is used to calculate and persist the fees for the account. It must be executed when a user wants to store fees.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Repricing	<a href="#">Repricing</a> on page 149

## Repricing

If the account or person attributes are changed, the system allows you to recalculate and persist the interest rate for rate type price items. This process is known as **Repricing**. The **Repricing** process is triggered in the following scenarios when:

- You edit the attributes and characteristics of an account.
- You add or delete the usage amount and counter details of an account.
- You edit the attributes and characteristics of a person.
- You add or delete the usage amount and counter details of a person.
- You define or edit the price item pricing of an active price list which is assigned to an account or a person.
- You define, edit, override, or copy the price item pricing of an account or a person.
- You assign a price list to an account or a person, or edit the price list assignment details of an account or a person.

The system behaves in the following manner in the above scenarios:

Scenario	System Behaviour
On editing the attributes and characteristics of an account	<p>The system checks whether the account is eligible for repricing. If the account is eligible for repricing, the system checks whether a parameter for the account attribute or characteristic whichever is changed is already defined in the system. If the required parameters are available in the system, the system creates a repricing request for the account and effective date combination in the <b>CI_REPRC_REQ_DTL</b> table. On executing the <b>Process Repricing Request and Persist Pricing for an Account (C1-REPC2)</b> batch, you can recalculate and persist the rate for the account in the <b>CI_PRCE_CALC</b> table.</p>
	<p><b>Note:</b> On editing the account attributes, the effective date is set to the date when you edit the account attributes. However, on editing the account's characteristic, the effective date is set to the date from when the characteristic is effective for the account.</p>
On adding or deleting the usage amount and counter details of an account	<p>The system checks whether the account is eligible for repricing. If the account is eligible for repricing, the system checks whether a parameter for the usage amount or counter whichever is changed is already defined in the system. If the required parameters are available in the system, the system creates a repricing request for the account and effective date combination in the <b>CI_REPRC_REQ_DTL</b> table. On executing the <b>Process Repricing Request and Persist Pricing for an Account (C1-REPC2)</b> batch, you can recalculate and persist the rate for the account in the <b>CI_PRCE_CALC</b> table.</p>
	<p><b>Note:</b> The effective date is set to the date from when the usage amount or counter is effective for the account.</p>
On editing the attributes and characteristics of a person	<p>The system identifies all accounts which belong to the person and its child persons, and then checks whether the identified accounts are eligible for repricing. If one or more accounts are eligible for repricing, the system checks whether a parameter for the person attribute or characteristic whichever is changed is already defined in the system. If the required parameters are available in the system, the system creates a repricing request for the account and effective date combination in the <b>CI_REPRC_REQ_DTL</b> table. On executing the <b>Process Repricing Request and Persist Pricing for an Account (C1-REPC2)</b> batch, you can recalculate and persist the rate for the account in the <b>CI_PRCE_CALC</b> table.</p>
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Only accounts where the person and child person are the main customers are considered for repricing.</p> <p>On editing the person attributes, the effective date is set to the date when you edit the person attributes. However, on editing the person's characteristic, the effective date is set to the date from when the characteristic is effective for the person.</p>

Scenario	System Behaviour
On adding or deleting the usage amount and counter details of a person	<p>The system identifies all accounts which belong to the person and its child persons, and then checks whether the identified accounts are eligible for repricing. If one or more accounts are eligible for repricing, the system checks whether a parameter for the usage amount or counter whichever is changed is already defined in the system. If the required parameters are available in the system, the system creates a repricing request for the account and effective date combination in the <b>CI_REPRC_REQ_DTL</b> table. On executing the <b>Process Repricing Request and Persist Pricing for an Account (C1-REPC2)</b> batch, you can recalculate and persist the rate for the account in the <b>CI_PRCE_CALC</b> table.</p>
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Only accounts where the person and child person are the main customers are considered for repricing.</p> <p>The effective date is set to the date from when the usage amount or counter is effective for the person.</p>
On assigning a price list to an account or editing the price list assignment details of an account	<p>The system creates a repricing request for the account, price item, and effective date combination in the <b>CI_REPRC_REQ_DTL</b> table. If the price assignment end date and/or price list assignment end date is available, the system creates two repricing requests – one request where the effective date is set to the start date and another request where the effective date is set to the end date. The effective date is set to the price assignment start date or price list assignment start date depending on the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the Price Assignment Start Date is later than the Price List Assignment Start Date, then the effective date is set to Price Assignment Start Date.</li> <li>• If the Price Assignment Start Date is earlier than or equal to the Price List Assignment Start Date, then the effective date is set to Price List Assignment Start Date.</li> </ul> <p>However, the effective date is set to the price assignment end date or price list assignment end date depending on the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the Price Assignment End Date is earlier than the Price List Assignment End Date, then the effective date is set to Price Assignment End Date + 1 Day.</li> <li>• If the Price Assignment End Date is later than or equal to the Price List Assignment End Date, then the effective date is set to Price List Assignment End Date + 1 Day.</li> </ul> <p>On executing the <b>Process Repricing Request and Persist Pricing for an Account (C1-REPC2)</b> batch, you can recalculate and persist the rate for the account in the <b>CI_PRCE_CALC</b> table.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The system creates the repricing request for the account irrespective of whether the account is eligible for repricing or not.</p>

Scenario	System Behaviour
On assigning a price list to a person or editing the price list assignment details of a person	<p>The system identifies all accounts which belong to the person and its child persons, and then creates a repricing request for the account, price item, and effective date combination in the <b>CI_REPRC_REQ_DTL</b> table. If the price assignment end date and/or price list assignment end date is available, the system creates two repricing requests – one request where the effective date is set to the start date and another request where the effective date is set to the end date. The effective date is set to the price assignment start date or price list assignment start date depending on the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the Price Assignment Start Date is later than the Price List Assignment Start Date, then the effective date is set to Price Assignment Start Date.</li> <li>• If the Price Assignment Start Date is earlier than or equal to the Price List Assignment Start Date, then the effective date is set to Price List Assignment Start Date.</li> </ul> <p>However, the effective date is set to the price assignment end date or price list assignment end date depending on the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the Price Assignment End Date is earlier than the Price List Assignment End Date, then the effective date is set to Price Assignment End Date + 1 Day.</li> <li>• If the Price Assignment End Date is later than or equal to the Price List Assignment End Date, then the effective date is set to Price List Assignment End Date + 1 Day.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If the Price List Assignment Start Date and Price List Assignment End Date are earlier than the current date, repricing requests for the accounts are not created in the <b>CI_REPRC_REQ_DTL</b> table.</p> <p>On executing the <b>Process Repricing Request and Persist Pricing for an Account (C1-REPC2)</b> batch, you can recalculate and persist the rate for the account in the <b>CI_PRCE_CALC</b> table.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Only accounts where the person and child person are the main customers are considered for repricing.</p> <p>The system creates the repricing request for the account irrespective of whether the account is eligible for repricing or not.</p>
On defining, editing, overriding, or copying the price item pricing of an account	<p>The system creates a repricing request for the account, price item, and effective date combination in the <b>CI_REPRC_REQ_DTL</b> table. If the price assignment end date is specified, the system creates two repricing requests – one request where the effective date is set to the price assignment start date and another request where the effective date is set to the price assignment end date + 1 Day. On executing the <b>Process Repricing Request and Persist Pricing for an Account (C1-REPC2)</b> batch, you can recalculate and persist the rate for the account in the <b>CI_PRCE_CALC</b> table.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The system creates the repricing request for the account irrespective of whether the account is eligible for repricing or not.</p>

Scenario	System Behaviour
On defining, editing, overriding, or copying the price item pricing of a person	<p>The system identifies all accounts which belong to the person and its child persons, and then creates a repricing request for the account, price item, and effective date combination in the <b>CI_REPRC_REQ_DTL</b> table. If the price assignment end date is specified, the system creates two repricing requests – one request where the effective date is set to the price assignment start date and another request where the effective date is set to the price assignment end date + 1 Day. On executing the <b>Process Repricing Request and Persist Pricing for an Account (C1-REPC2)</b> batch, you can recalculate and persist the rate for the account in the <b>CI_PRCE_CALC</b> table.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Only accounts where the person and child person are the main customers are considered for repricing.</p> <p>The system creates the repricing request for the account irrespective of whether the account is eligible for repricing or not.</p>
On defining or editing the price item pricing of an active price list which is assigned to an account or a person	<p>The system creates an entry for the price item pricing in the <b>CI_REPRC_ENTITY_DTL</b> table. On executing the <b>Identify Accounts for Repricing (C1-REPC1)</b> batch, the system identifies the following in the specified order:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Price list on which the price item pricing is assigned</li> <li>2. Account or Person on which the price list is assigned</li> <li>3. All accounts which belong to the person and its child persons when the price list is assigned to a person</li> </ol> <p>Once the accounts are identified, the system checks whether the identified accounts are eligible for repricing. If one or more accounts are eligible for repricing, a repricing request is created for the account, price item, and effective date combination in the <b>CI_REPRC_REQ_DTL</b> table. If the price assignment end date is specified, the system creates two repricing requests – one request where the effective date is set to the price assignment start date and another request where the effective date is set to the price assignment end date + 1 Day. On executing the <b>Process Repricing Request and Persist Pricing for an Account (C1-REPC2)</b> batch, you can recalculate and persist the rate for the account in the <b>CI_PRCE_CALC</b> table.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Only accounts where the person and child person are the main customers are considered for repricing.</p>

For more information about the **Identify Accounts for Repricing (C1-REPC1)** and **Process Repricing Request and Persist Pricing for an Account (C1-REPC2)** batches, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

To enable the repricing feature, you need to do the following:

- Define an algorithm using the **C1-REPRCACCT** algorithm type and attach it to the **Audit** algorithm spot of the **C1-AccountBO** business object
- Define an algorithm using the **C1-REPRCACBC** algorithm type and attach it to the **Audit** algorithm spot of the **C1-ACCBALCNT** business object

- Define an algorithm using the **C1-REPRCPERS** algorithm type and attach it to the **Audit** algorithm spot of the **C1\_PERSON\_BO** business object
- Define an algorithm using the **C1-REPRCPEBC** algorithm type and attach it to the **Audit** algorithm spot of the **C1-PERBALCNT** business object
- Define an algorithm using the **C1\_PLASGNAUD** algorithm type and attach it to the **Audit** algorithm spot of the **C1\_PLASGNADD** and **C1\_PLASGNEDIT** business objects
- Define an algorithm using the **C1-PRCASGNAD** algorithm type and attach it to the **Audit** algorithm spot of the **C1\_PRICEASGN\_BO** business object
- Define an algorithm using the **C1-REPRCPLPA** algorithm type and attach it to the **Audit** algorithm spot of the **C1\_PRICEASGN\_BO** business object
- Define the required parameters for the account and person attributes, characteristics, usage amount and usage counter

## Two-Dimensional Pricing

---

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to define two-dimensional pricing for a price item. In the two-dimensional pricing, you can offer rates based on utilization of two service quantity identifiers (SQIs). For example, the rate for a price item can vary for each customer depending on the number of ATM transactions and current monthly balance as shown below: Current Monthly Balance Number of ATM Transactions 0-25 25-50 50-75 75-100 0-10000 2 1.9 1.8 1.7 10000-50000 1.6 1.5 1.4 1.3 50000-100000 1.2 1.1 1.0 0.9 100000-500000 0.8 0.7 0.6 0.5 The system allows you to define two-dimensional pricing in a grid which has X-axis and Y-axis. Both, the X-axis and Y-axis should contain service quantity identifiers (SQIs). The two-dimensional pricing is composed of threshold and step tiered pricing. The X-axis is a threshold tier and Y-axis is a step tier. On creating two-dimensional pricing, one price component is created for each X-axis and Y-axis combination. The step tier is stored as the tiering range whereas the threshold tier is stored as the eligibility criteria in the price component. Note that the tiering ranges and eligibility criteria are automatically created in the price component. You cannot manually add a tiering range and eligibility criteria in the price component. You can define two-dimensional pricing only when the tiering type of the rate components in the rate schedule is set to STEP. A new field named Pricing Rule Type is added in the Price Item Pricing screen. If you select the Two-Dimensional option from the Pricing Rule Type list, you can define two-dimensional pricing for the price item. However, if you do not select the Two-Dimensional option from the Pricing Rule Type list, you can define traditional flat, step, or tiered pricing for the price item. Besides selecting the Two-Dimensional option from the Pricing Rule Type list, you also need to select the Pricing Eligibility option while defining the two-dimensional pricing for the price item.

## Types of Price Item Bundle

---

The system allows you to define the following types of price item bundle:

- [Regular Bundle](#) on page 154
- [Phantom Bundle](#) on page 158
- [Ratio Bundle](#) on page 156

### Regular Bundle

In case of a regular bundle, pricing is defined at the bundle level. The system determines the rate by identifying the tiering range within which the total service quantities used for all price items in the bundle fall. Note that the rate is determined from the tiering range of the price component whose pricing eligibility criteria is met. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Bundle X, which is a regular bundle, contains the following three price items:

- Price Item A

- Price Item B
- Price Item C

The following tiered pricing is defined for Bundle X:

Quantity Range	Rate (\$) per unit
1 – 3000	3
3001 – 4000	2
4001 – 8000	1

**Note:** In the above example, the assumption is that there only one rate component, one price component within the rate component, and pricing eligibility criteria is not defined for the price component.

Now, when the user consumes 1500 units of Price Item A, 1000 units of Price Item B, and 2000 units of Price Item C, the system adds the quantities of services used for all price items in Bundle X (i.e. 1500+1000+2000=4500), and then determines the range within which the total units (i.e. 4500) fall. In this case, the total units fall in the 4001 – 8000 range, and therefore the system uses \$1 as the rate for calculating charges.

If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can define pricing for regular bundles based on multiple parameters. For example:

Bundle X	Country	Currency
Pricing 1	US	USD
Pricing 2	Germany	USD

Pricing 1 and Pricing 2 are defined for Bundle X based on two parameters — Country and Currency. Before you define pricing based on country and currency, you need to define these parameters in the system. Once you define these parameters, you need to associate them to the regular bundle (i.e. Bundle X) and then add price items (i.e. Price Item A, Price Item B, and Price Item C) to the bundle. Note that you can add a price item to a regular bundle only when the regular bundle and price item have same parameters associated with them for the specified date range. Therefore, before adding Price Item A, Price Item B, and Price Item C to Bundle X, you should ensure that Country and Currency are also associated with these price items.

Then, when you define Pricing 1 for Bundle X, you need to set the following price item parameters:

- Country — US
- Currency — USD

Similarly, you need to define Pricing 2 with Country set to Germany and Currency set to USD.

The following table lists the tiering ranges defined in Pricing 1 where price item parameters are set to US, USD:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Price Item	Price Parameters	Item	From	To
10	2	Number of Transactions	Bundle X	US, USD		0	500
20	1	Number of Transactions	Bundle X	US, USD		500	

The following table lists the tiering ranges defined in Pricing 2 where price item parameters are set to Germany, USD:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Price Item	Price Parameters	Item	From	To
10	4	Number of Transactions	Bundle X	Germany, USD		0	1000
20	3	Number of Transactions	Bundle X	Germany, USD		1000	

Now, when the user performs 500 transactions (in USD) of Bundle X in Germany, 1200 transactions (in USD) of Bundle X in US, the system creates two billable charges. In one billable charge (with Bundle X, US and USD combination), the system uses \$1 as the rate for calculating charges, and in another billable charge (with Bundle X, Germany and USD combination), the system uses \$4 as the rate for calculating charges.

Ratio Bundle

In case of a ratio bundle, pricing is not defined at the bundle level. Instead, pricing is defined separately for each price item in the bundle.

A ratio expresses the magnitude of quantities relative to each other. It has two factors — Numerator and Denominator. For ratio bundle, the ratio of price item quantities is used to determine the rate for volume based pricing. To determine within which range of ratio limit does the price item utilization falls, the ratio of price item quantities is used. Once the range limits are determined, the rate specified for that range is applied to the quantity of the price item used. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Bundle X, which is a ratio bundle, contains the following price items:

- Price Item A** — It has been added to the bundle using the price item relationship type as Numerator. It has the following tiered pricing defined in the system:

Quantity Range	Rate (\$) per unit
0 – 0.6	4
0.6 – 0.9	3
0.9+	2

- Price Item B** — It has been added to the bundle using the price item relationship type as Numerator. It has the following tiered pricing defined in the system:

Quantity Range	Rate (\$) per unit
0 – 0.6	5
0.6 – 0.9	4
0.9+	3

- Price Item C** — It has been added to the bundle using the price item relationship type as Denominator. It has the following tiered pricing defined in the system:

Quantity Range	Rate (\$) per unit
0 – 0.6	3
0.6 – 0.9	2
0.9+	1

Now, when the user consumes 500 units of Price Item A, 2500 units of Price Item B, and 4000 units of Price Item C, the system calculates the ratio of price item quantities (i.e. (500+2500)/4000=0.75). Once the ratio is calculated, the system determines the range of each price item within which the ratio (i.e. 0.75) falls. In this case, the ratio falls in the 0.6 – 0.9 range of Price Item A, B, and C. Therefore, the system uses \$3, \$4, and \$2, respectively, as the rate for calculating charges (i.e. ((500\*3)=1500, (2500\*4)=10000, and (4000\*2)=8000).

If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can determine the price item utilization in a ratio bundle based on multiple parameters. For example:

Bundle X	Country	Currency
Price Item A	US	USD



<b>Bundle X</b>	<b>Country</b>	<b>Currency</b>
Price Item B	Germany	USD
Price Item C	England	USD

Price Item A, Price Item B, and Price Item C are added in Bundle X. Price Item A, Price Item B, and Price Item C utilization in Bundle X is determined based on two parameters — Country and Currency. Before you add price item to a ratio bundle, you need to define these parameters in the system. Once you define these parameters, you need to associate them to the price items (i.e. Price Item A, Price Item B, and Price Item C) and then add these price items to the bundle (i.e. Bundle X).

While adding Price Item A to Bundle X, you need to set the following price item parameters:

- Country — US
- Currency — USD

Similarly, you need to add Price Item B to Bundle X with Country set to Germany and Currency set to USD, and Price Item C with Country set to England and Currency set to USD.

The following table lists the tiered pricing defined for Price Item A:

<b>Tier Sequence</b>	<b>Rate</b>	<b>Tiering Criteria</b>	<b>Price Item</b>	<b>Price Parameters</b>	<b>Item</b>	<b>From</b>	<b>To</b>
10	5	Number of Transactions	Bundle X			0	1.75
20	4	Number of Transactions	Bundle X			1.75	2.50
30	3	Number of Transactions	Bundle X			2.50	

The following table lists the tiered pricing defined for Price Item B:

<b>Tier Sequence</b>	<b>Rate</b>	<b>Tiering Criteria</b>	<b>Price Item</b>	<b>Price Parameters</b>	<b>Item</b>	<b>From</b>	<b>To</b>
10	5	Number of Transactions	Bundle X			0	3.5
20	4	Number of Transactions	Bundle X			3.5	

The following table lists the tiered pricing defined for Price Item C:

<b>Tier Sequence</b>	<b>Rate</b>	<b>Tiering Criteria</b>	<b>Price Item</b>	<b>Price Parameters</b>	<b>Item</b>	<b>From</b>	<b>To</b>
10	2	Number of Transactions	Bundle X			0	2.0
20	1	Number of Transactions	Bundle X			2.0	

Now, when the user performs 5000 transactions (in USD) of Price Item A in US, 6000 transactions (in USD) of Price Item B in Germany, and 5000 transactions (in USD) of Price Item C in England, the system creates three billable charges — one for each price item (i.e. Price Item A, Price Item B, and Price Item C). The system calculates the ratio of transactions with the following combinations and then determines the range of each price item within which the ratio (i.e. 2.2) falls:

- Price Item A, US, USD
- Price Item B, Germany, USD
- Price Item C, England, USD

In this case, the ratio falls in the 1.75 – 2.50 range of Price Item A, the 0 – 3.5 range of Price Item B, and in the 2.0 — Infinite range of Price Item C. Therefore, the system uses \$4, \$5, and \$1 as the rate for calculating charges (i.e.  $(5000*4)=20000$  ,  $(6000*5)=30000$  , and  $(5000*1)=5000$ ).

You can also add a price item more than once in a ratio bundle with different set of parameters. For example:

Bundle X	Relationship Type	Country	Currency
Price Item A	Numerator	US	USD
Price Item A	Numerator	England	USD
Price Item B	Numerator	Germany	USD
Price Item C	Denominator	England	USD
Price Item C	Denominator	US	USD

In this case, the system calculates the ratio of transactions with the following combinations and then determines the range of each price item (i.e. Price Item A, Price Item B, and Price Item C) within which the ratio falls:

- Price Item A, US, USD
- Price Item A, England, USD
- Price Item B, Germany, USD
- Price Item C, England, USD
- Price Item C, US, USD

Phantom Bundle

In case of a phantom bundle, pricing is not defined at the bundle level. Instead, pricing is defined separately for each price item in the bundle. The system determines the price by identifying the tiering range of each price item within which the total quantities of services used for all price items in the bundle fall. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Bundle A, which is a phantom bundle, contains the following two price items:

- **Price Item X** — The following tiered pricing is defined for Price Item X:

Quantity Range	Rate (\$) per unit
1 – 3000	3
3001 – 6000	2

- **Price Item Y** — The following tiered pricing is defined for Price Item Y:

Quantity Range	Rate (\$) per unit
1 – 5000	2
5001 – 10000	1

Now, when the user consumes 2500 units of Price Item X and 3500 units of Price Item Y, the system adds the quantities of services used for all price items in Bundle A (i.e. 2500+3500=6000), and then determines the range of each price item within which the total units (i.e. 6000) fall. In this case, the total units fall in the 3001 – 6000 range of Price Item X and the 5001 – 10000 range of Price Item Y, and therefore the system uses \$2 and \$1, respectively, as the rate for calculating charges (i.e. (2500\*2)= 5000 and (3500\*1)=3500). This helps the customer to take advantage of the lowest rate.

If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can determine the price item utilization in a phantom bundle based on multiple parameters. For example:

Bundle A	Country	Currency
Price Item X	US	USD
Price Item Y	Germany	USD

Price Item X and Price Item Y are added in Bundle A. Price Item X and Price Item Y utilization in Bundle A is determined based on two parameters — Country and Currency. Before you add price item to a phantom bundle, you need to define these parameters in the system. Once you define these parameters, you need to associate them to the price items (i.e. Price Item X and Price Item Y) and then add these price items to the bundle (i.e. Bundle A).

While adding Price Item X to Bundle A, you need to set the following price item parameters:

- Country — US
- Currency — USD

Similarly, you need to add Product Y to Bundle A with Country set to Germany and Currency set to USD.

The following table lists the tiered pricing defined for Price Item X:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Price Item	Price Parameters	Item	From	To
10	3	Number of Transactions	Bundle A			0	5000
20	2	Number of Transactions	Bundle A			5000	10000
30	1	Number of Transactions	Bundle A			10000	

The following table lists the tiered pricing defined for Price Item Y:

Tier Sequence	Rate	Tiering Criteria	Price Item	Price Parameters	Item	From	To
10	5	Number of Transactions	Bundle A			0	5000
20	4	Number of Transactions	Bundle A			5000	

Now, when the user performs 5000 transactions (in USD) of Price Item Y in Germany, 6000 transactions (in USD) of Price Item X in US, the system creates two billable charges — one for Price Item X and another for Price Item Y. The system adds the transactions with the following combinations and then determines the range of each price item within which the total units (i.e. 11000) fall:

- Price Item X, US, USD
- Price Item Y, Germany, USD

In this case, the total units fall in the 10000 – Infinite range of Price Item X and the 5000 – Infinite range of Price Item Y, and therefore the system uses \$1 and \$4, respectively, as the rate for calculating charges (i.e.  $(5000 \times 4) = 20000$  and  $(6000 \times 1) = 6000$ ).

You can also add a price item more than once in a phantom bundle with different set of parameters. For example:

Bundle A	Country	Currency
Price Item X	US	USD
Price Item X	Germany	USD
Price Item Y	Germany	USD
Price Item Y	US	USD

In this case, the system adds the transactions with the following combinations and then determines the range of each price item (i.e. Price Item X and Price Item Y) within which the total units fall:

- Price Item X, US, USD
- Price Item X, Germany, USD
- Price Item Y, Germany, USD

- Price Item Y, US, USD

**Parameter**

The pricing for a price item may differ depending upon various transaction, person, account, or product attributes. Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides a facility to define pricing for a price item based on multiple parameters. In addition, you can define the pricing, price list, and product eligibility criteria using one or more parameters.

Each parameter must be mapped to the following:

- **Source Entity** - Indicates the entity from where the parameter value is derived. A source entity can be account, person, product, transaction, service quantity identifier, or an algorithm.
- **Source Type** - Indicates the type of source from where the parameter value is derived. A source type can be field, characteristic, usage amount, or usage counter.
- **Source Type Code** - Indicates the source (such as, field, characteristic, usage amount, usage counter, SQI, or algorithm) from where the parameter value is derived.

The system allows you to define the following types of parameters:

- **Adhoc** - Used to store an adhoc value.
- **Predefined** - Used to store a predefined value. For example, you can create a parameter named **Country** where the value type is set to **Predefined** and the following predefined values are added in the parameter:

Parameter Value	Description
AUT	Austria
AUS	Australia
CAN	Canada
CHN	China

In such case, while defining the pricing for a price item using the **Country** parameter, you can use any one of the above mentioned parameter values.

- **Reference** - Used to store a value which is already present in a table. For example, you can create a parameter named **Country** where the value type is set to **Reference** and the reference entity is set to **CI\_COUNTRY\_L** (i.e. where the description of all countries is stored). In such case, while defining the pricing for a price item using the **Country** parameter, you can specify a country which is present in the **CI\_COUNTRY\_L** table in the parameter value.

**Parameter (Used for Searching)**

The **Parameter** screen allows you to define, edit, delete and copy a parameter. It contains the following zone:

- [Search Parameter](#) on page 160

**Search Parameter**

The **Search Parameter** zone allows you to search for a parameter using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:





- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	Used to search a particular parameter.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Value Type	Used to search parameters in which you can store a particular type of value. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adhoc</li> <li>• Predefined</li> <li>• Reference</li> </ul>	No
Source Entity	Used to search parameters whose value is derived from a particular entity. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account</li> <li>• Algorithm</li> <li>• Person</li> <li>• Product</li> <li>• Service Quantity Identifier</li> <li>• Transaction</li> </ul>	No
Source Type	Used to search parameters whose value is derived from a particular type of source. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Characteristic</li> <li>• Field</li> <li>• Usage Amount</li> <li>• Usage Counter</li> </ul>	No
Description	Used to search parameters with a particular description.	No

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter	Displays the parameter name.
Value Type	Indicates the type of value that you can store in the parameter. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adhoc</li> <li>• Predefined</li> <li>• Reference</li> </ul>
Description	Displays the description of the parameter.

Column Name	Column Description
Source Entity	Indicates the entity from where the parameter value is derived. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account</li> <li>• Algorithm</li> <li>• Person</li> <li>• Product</li> <li>• Service Quantity Identifier</li> <li>• Transaction</li> </ul>
Source Type	Indicates the type of source from where the parameter value is derived. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Characteristic</li> <li>• Field</li> <li>• Usage Amount</li> <li>• Usage Counter</li> </ul>
View	On clicking the <b>View</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Parameter</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parameter.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Parameter</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the parameter.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the parameter. <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You can delete a parameter only when the following conditions are met:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is not yet associated to any price item or price item bundle.</li> <li>• It is not yet used while defining the pricing, price list, or product eligibility criteria.</li> </ul> </div>
Copy	On clicking the <b>Copy</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Parameter</b> screen appears where you can define a new parameter using an existing parameter.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parameter	<a href="#">Searching for a Parameter</a> on page 163
How to edit a parameter	<a href="#">Editing a Parameter</a> on page 169
How to delete a parameter	<a href="#">Deleting a Parameter</a> on page 175
How to copy a parameter	<a href="#">Copying a Parameter</a> on page 176
How to view the details of a parameter	<a href="#">Viewing the Parameter Details</a> on page 182

## Searching for a Parameter

### Procedure

To search for a parameter:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Parameter**.  
The **Parameter** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Parameter** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of parameters that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Parameter</b> screen	<a href="#">Parameter (Used for Searching)</a> on page 160
<b>Search Parameter</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Parameter</a> on page 160

## Defining a Parameter

### Prerequisites

To define a parameter, you should have:

- Validation algorithm defined using the **C1\_PPARM\_VAL** algorithm type (in case you want to validate an adhoc parameter value)
- An algorithm defined using the **C1-PPARM-ENT** algorithm type (in case you want to use the algorithm while validating the pricing eligibility criteria)

### Note:

A sample algorithm type named **C1\_PPARM\_VAL** is shipped with the product. At present, it allows you to specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (\_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.

A sample algorithm type named **C1-PPARM-ENT** is shipped with the product. At present, it returns a boolean value true. You can build custom logic in this algorithm which returns a value. This value can then be compared against the parameter value specified in the pricing eligibility criteria.

### Procedure

To define a parameter:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.

- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Parameter**.

The **Parameter** screen appears.

- Click the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Parameter** screen.



The **Parameter** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	Used to specify the parameter name.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the parameter name.	
Source Entity	Used to indicate the entity from where the parameter value should be derived. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Account</li> <li>Algorithm</li> <li>Person</li> <li>Product</li> <li>Service Quantity Identifier</li> <li>Transaction</li> </ul>	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the parameter.	Yes
Source Type	Used to indicate the type of source from where the parameter value should be derived. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Characteristic</li> <li>Field</li> <li>Usage Amount</li> <li>Usage Counter</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Account</b> , <b>Person</b> , or <b>Product</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.  The <b>Usage Amount</b> and <b>Usage Counter</b> options do not appear in the <b>Source Type</b> list when the <b>Product</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.	
Value Type	Used to indicate the type of value that you want to store in the parameter. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adhoc</li> <li>Predefined</li> <li>Reference</li> </ul>	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)																																							
Source Type Code	Used to indicate the source, such as field, characteristic, usage amount, usage counter, SQI, or algorithm, from where the parameter value should be derived.	Yes																																							
	<b>Note:</b>  This field does not appear when the <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.  The following table indicates the values that are listed in the <b>Source Type Code</b> field depending on the source entity and source type combination:																																								
	<table><tr><th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th><th>Source Type Code</th></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Characteristic</td><td>Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Field</td><td>Lists all fields of the <b>CI_ACCT</b> table.</td></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Usage Amount</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Usage Counter</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Characteristic</td><td>Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Field</td><td>Lists all fields of the <b>CI_PER</b> table.</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Usage Amount</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Usage Counter</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Product</td><td>Characteristic</td><td>Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Product</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>Product</td><td>Field</td><td>Lists all fields of the <b>C1_PRODUCT</b> table.</td></tr><tr><td>Supplier</td><td>Characteristic</td><td>Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Supplier</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>Supplier</td><td>Field</td><td>Lists all fields of the <b>C1_SUPPLIER</b> table.</td></tr></table>		Source Entity	Source Type	Source Type Code	Account	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b> .	Account	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>CI_ACCT</b> table.	Account	Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.	Account	Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.	Person	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b> .	Person	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>CI_PER</b> table.	Person	Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.	Person	Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.	Product	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Product</b> .	Product	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>C1_PRODUCT</b> table.	Supplier	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Supplier</b> .	Supplier	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>C1_SUPPLIER</b> table.
	Source Entity		Source Type	Source Type Code																																					
	Account		Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b> .																																					
	Account		Field	Lists all fields of the <b>CI_ACCT</b> table.																																					
	Account		Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.																																					
	Account		Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.																																					
	Person		Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b> .																																					
	Person		Field	Lists all fields of the <b>CI_PER</b> table.																																					
	Person		Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.																																					
	Person		Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.																																					
	Product		Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Product</b> .																																					
Product	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>C1_PRODUCT</b> table.																																							
Supplier	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Supplier</b> .																																							
Supplier	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>C1_SUPPLIER</b> table.																																							

© 2010 Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th><th>Source Type Code</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Algorithm</td><td>—</td><td>Lists all algorithms which are defined using the <b>C1-PPARM-ENT</b> algorithm type.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Source Entity	Source Type	Source Type Code	Algorithm	—	Lists all algorithms which are defined using the <b>C1-PPARM-ENT</b> algorithm type.	
Source Entity	Source Type	Source Type Code						
Algorithm	—	Lists all algorithms which are defined using the <b>C1-PPARM-ENT</b> algorithm type.						
Validation Algorithm	<p>Used to indicate the algorithm using which you want to validate the adhoc parameter value.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Adhoc</b> option is selected from the <b>Value Type</b> list.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Validation Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	No						
Reference Entity	<p>Used to indicate the table whose primary key (column) you want to set as the reference entity.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Reference</b> option is selected from the <b>Value Type</b> list.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Reference Entity</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Reference Table Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>You can only specify a language table, where the <b>DESCR</b> column is available, in the <b>Reference Entity</b> field.</p>	Yes						
Field Name	<p>Indicates the column which is the primary key of the table. The parameter value is then validated against the primary column of the table.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Reference</b> option is selected from the <b>Value Type</b> list.</p>	Not applicable						

In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:



- **Parameter Values** - Used to define predefined values for the parameter. It contains the following fields in the grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Value	Used to specify the parameter value.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the predefined parameter value.	
Description	Used to specify the description for the parameter value.	Yes

**Note:**

The **Parameter Values** section appears only when the **Predefined** option is selected from the **Value Type** list.

At least one parameter value should be defined for a parameter where the value type is set to **Predefined**.

If you want to define more than one predefined value for the parameter, click the **Add** () icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a predefined value of the parameter, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the parameter value.

- **Parameter Usage** - Used to indicate where the parameter can be used in the system. It contains the following options:

Option Name	Option Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)										
Price Item	Used to indicate whether the parameter can be associated with a price item or price item bundle. If a parameter is associated with a price item or price item bundle, you can use the parameter while defining the price item pricing.	Yes (Conditional)										
	<b>Note:</b>  The following table lists the source entity and source type combinations when the <b>Price Item</b> option is disabled in the <b>Parameter Usage</b> section:	<b>Note:</b> You must select this option when you want to associate the parameter with a price item.										
	<table><tr><th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Usage Amount</td></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Usage Counter</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Usage Amount</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Usage Counter</td></tr></table>		Source Entity	Source Type	Account	Usage Amount	Account	Usage Counter	Person	Usage Amount	Person	Usage Counter
	Source Entity		Source Type									
	Account		Usage Amount									
Account	Usage Counter											
Person	Usage Amount											
Person	Usage Counter											
 The following table lists the source entity and source type combinations when the <b>Price Item</b> option does not appear in the <b>Parameter Usage</b> section:												
<table><tr><th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th></tr><tr><td>Algorithm</td><td>—</td></tr><tr><td>Service Quantity Identifier</td><td>—</td></tr></table>	Source Entity	Source Type	Algorithm	—	Service Quantity Identifier	—						
Source Entity	Source Type											
Algorithm	—											
Service Quantity Identifier	—											
Pricing Eligibility Criteria	Used to indicate whether the parameter can be used while defining the pricing eligibility criteria.	Yes (Conditional)										
	<b>Note:</b> This option does not appear when the <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> You must select this option when you want to define a pricing eligibility criteria using the parameter.										
Price List Eligibility Criteria	Used to indicate whether the parameter can be used while defining the price list eligibility criteria.	Yes (Conditional)										
	<b>Note:</b> This option does not appear when the <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> You must select this option when you want to define a price list eligibility criteria using the parameter.										

Option Name	Option Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product Eligibility Criteria	Used to indicate whether the parameter can be used while defining the product eligibility criteria.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This option does not appear when the <b>Algorithm</b> , <b>Service Quantity Identifier</b> , or <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> You must select this option when you want to define a product eligibility criteria using the parameter.

**Note:** You must select at least one option in the **Parameter Usage** section.

- Enter the required details in the **Parameter** screen depending on whether you want to create an adhoc, predefined, or reference parameter.
- Click **Save**.  
The parameter is defined.

**Note:** If a parameter is already defined using the source entity, source type, and source type code combination, the system will not allow you to define another parameter with the same combination.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Parameter</b> screen	<a href="#">Parameter (Used for Searching)</a> on page 160

### Editing a Parameter

#### Prerequisites

To edit a parameter, you should have:

- Validation algorithm defined using the **C1\_PPARM\_VAL** algorithm type (in case you want to validate an adhoc parameter value)
- An algorithm defined using the **C1-PPARM-ENT** algorithm type (in case you want to use the algorithm while validating the pricing eligibility criteria)


#### Note:

A sample algorithm type named **C1\_PPARM\_VAL** is shipped with the product. At present, it allows you to specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (\_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.

A sample algorithm type named **C1-PPARM-ENT** is shipped with the product. At present, it returns a boolean value true. You can build custom logic in this algorithm which returns a value. This value can then be compared against the parameter value specified in the pricing eligibility criteria.

### Procedure

To edit a parameter:



- Search for the parameter in the **Parameter** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the parameter whose details you want to edit.

The **Parameter** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	Displays the parameter name.	Not applicable
Source Entity	Used to indicate the entity from where the parameter value should be derived. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Account</li> <li>Algorithm</li> <li>Person</li> <li>Product</li> <li>Service Quantity Identifier</li> <li>Transaction</li> </ul>	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the parameter.	Yes
Source Type	<div>Used to indicate the type of source from where the parameter value should be derived. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Characteristic</li> <li>Field</li> <li>Usage Amount</li> <li>Usage Counter</li> </ul> </div> <div> <b>Note:</b>  This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b>, <b>Person</b>, or <b>Product</b> option from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.   The <b>Usage Amount</b> and <b>Usage Counter</b> options do not appear in the <b>Source Type</b> list when the <b>Product</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list. </div>	Yes
Value Type	Indicates the type of value that you can store in the parameter. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adhoc</li> <li>Predefined</li> <li>Reference</li> </ul>	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)																																										
Source Type Code	Used to indicate the source, such as, field, characteristic, usage amount, usage counter, SQI, or algorithm, from where the parameter value should be derived.	Yes																																										
	<b>Note:</b>  This field does not appear when the <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.  The following table indicates the values that are listed in the <b>Source Type Code</b> field depending on the source entity and source type combination:																																											
	<table><tr><th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th><th>Source Type Code</th></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Characteristic</td><td>Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Field</td><td>Lists all fields of the <b>CI_ACCT</b> table.</td></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Usage Amount</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Usage Counter</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Characteristic</td><td>Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Field</td><td>Lists all fields of the <b>CI_PER</b> table.</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Usage Amount</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Usage Counter</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Product</td><td>Characteristic</td><td>Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Product</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>Product</td><td>Field</td><td>Lists all fields of the <b>C1_PRODUCT</b> table.</td></tr><tr><td>Supplier</td><td>Characteristic</td><td>Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Supplier</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>Supplier</td><td>Field</td><td>Lists all fields of the <b>C1_SUPPLIER</b> table.</td></tr><tr><td>Supplier</td><td>Usage Amount</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr></table>		Source Entity	Source Type	Source Type Code	Account	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b> .	Account	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>CI_ACCT</b> table.	Account	Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.	Account	Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.	Person	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b> .	Person	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>CI_PER</b> table.	Person	Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.	Person	Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.	Product	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Product</b> .	Product	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>C1_PRODUCT</b> table.	Supplier	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Supplier</b> .	Supplier	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>C1_SUPPLIER</b> table.	Supplier	Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.
	Source Entity		Source Type	Source Type Code																																								
	Account		Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b> .																																								
	Account		Field	Lists all fields of the <b>CI_ACCT</b> table.																																								
	Account		Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.																																								
	Account		Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.																																								
	Person		Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b> .																																								
	Person		Field	Lists all fields of the <b>CI_PER</b> table.																																								
	Person		Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.																																								
	Person		Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.																																								
	Product		Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Product</b> .																																								
	Product		Field	Lists all fields of the <b>C1_PRODUCT</b> table.																																								
Supplier	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Supplier</b> .																																										
Supplier	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>C1_SUPPLIER</b> table.																																										
Supplier	Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.																																										

acle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
	<table> <tr> <th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th><th>Source Type Code</th></tr> <tr> <td>Algorithm</td><td>—</td><td>Lists all algorithms which are defined using the <b>C1-PPARM-ENT</b> algorithm type.</td></tr> </table>	Source Entity	Source Type	Source Type Code	Algorithm	—	Lists all algorithms which are defined using the <b>C1-PPARM-ENT</b> algorithm type.	
Source Entity	Source Type	Source Type Code						
Algorithm	—	Lists all algorithms which are defined using the <b>C1-PPARM-ENT</b> algorithm type.						
Validation Algorithm	<p>Used to indicate the algorithm using which you want to validate the adhoc parameter value.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Adhoc</b> option is selected from the <b>Value Type</b> list.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Validation Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	No						
Reference Entity	<p>Used to indicate the table whose primary key (column) you want to set as the reference entity.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Reference</b> option is selected from the <b>Value Type</b> list.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Reference Entity</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Reference Table Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>You can only specify a language table, where the <b>DESCR</b> column is available, in the <b>Reference Entity</b> field.</p>	Yes						
Field Name	<p>Indicates the column which is the primary key of the table. The parameter value is then validated against the primary column of the table.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Reference</b> option is selected from the <b>Value Type</b> list.</p>	Not applicable						

In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:

- **Parameter Values** - Used to define predefined values for the parameter. It contains the following fields in the grid:





Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Value	Used to specify the parameter value.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the predefined parameter value.	
Description	Used to specify the description for the parameter value.	Yes

**Note:**

The **Parameter Values** section appears only when the **Predefined** option is selected from the **Value Type** list.

At least one parameter value should be defined for a parameter where the value type is set to **Predefined**.

If you want to define more than one predefined value for the parameter, click the **Add** () icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a predefined value of the parameter, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the parameter value.

You cannot delete a predefined parameter value which is already used in the system.

- **Parameter Usage** - Used to indicate where the parameter can be used in the system. It contains the following options:

Option Name	Option Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)										
Price Item	Used to indicate whether the parameter can be associated with a price item or price item bundle. If a parameter is associated with a price item or price item bundle, you can use the parameter while defining the price item pricing.	Yes (Conditional)										
	<b>Note:</b>  The following table lists the source entity and source type combinations when the <b>Price Item</b> option is disabled in the <b>Parameter Usage</b> section:	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to associate the parameter with a price item.										
	<table><tr><th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Usage Amount</td></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Usage Counter</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Usage Amount</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Usage Counter</td></tr></table>		Source Entity	Source Type	Account	Usage Amount	Account	Usage Counter	Person	Usage Amount	Person	Usage Counter
	Source Entity		Source Type									
	Account		Usage Amount									
Account	Usage Counter											
Person	Usage Amount											
Person	Usage Counter											
 The following table lists the source entity and source type combinations when the <b>Price Item</b> option does not appear in the <b>Parameter Usage</b> section:												
<table><tr><th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th></tr><tr><td>Algorithm</td><td>—</td></tr><tr><td>Service Quantity Identifier</td><td>—</td></tr></table>	Source Entity	Source Type	Algorithm	—	Service Quantity Identifier	—						
Source Entity	Source Type											
Algorithm	—											
Service Quantity Identifier	—											
Pricing Eligibility Criteria	Used to indicate whether the parameter can be used while defining the pricing eligibility criteria.	Yes (Conditional)										
	<b>Note:</b> This option does not appear when the <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to define a pricing eligibility criteria using the parameter.										
Price List Eligibility Criteria	Used to indicate whether the parameter can be used while defining the price list eligibility criteria.	Yes (Conditional)										
	<b>Note:</b> This option does not appear when the <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to define a price list eligibility criteria using the parameter.										

Option Name	Option Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product Eligibility Criteria	Used to indicate whether the parameter can be used while defining the product eligibility criteria.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This option does not appear when the <b>Algorithm</b> , <b>Service Quantity Identifier</b> , or <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to define a product eligibility criteria using the parameter.

**Note:**

You must select at least one option in the **Parameter Usage** section.

If the parameter is already associated to a price item or used while defining the pricing, price list, or product eligibility criteria, you cannot deselect the respective option in the **Parameter Usage** section.

3. Modify the required details in the **Parameter** screen.
4. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the parameter are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parameter	<a href="#">Searching for a Parameter</a> on page 163

**Deleting a Parameter****Procedure**

To delete a parameter:

1. Search for the parameter in the **Parameter** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the parameter that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the parameter.

**Note:**

You can delete a parameter only when the following conditions are met:

- It is not yet associated to any price item or price item bundle.
- It is not yet used while defining the pricing, price list, or product eligibility criteria.

3. Click **OK**.

The parameter is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parameter	<a href="#">Searching for a Parameter</a> on page 163

Copying a Parameter

Instead of creating a parameter from scratch, you can define a new parameter using an existing parameter. This is possible through copying a parameter. When you copy a parameter, the predefined values, validation algorithm, and reference entity (depending upon the value type) are copied along with other parameter details. You can then edit the details, if required.

**Note:** You cannot change the type of value that you can store in the new parameter (which is created using an existing parameter).

Prerequisites

To copy a parameter, you should have:

- Parameter (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Validation algorithm defined using the **C1\_PPARM\_VAL** algorithm type (in case you want to validate an adhoc parameter value)
- An algorithm defined using the **C1-PPARM-ENT** algorithm type (in case you want to use the algorithm while validating the pricing eligibility criteria)


Note:

A sample algorithm type named **C1\_PPARM\_VAL** is shipped with the product. At present, it allows you to specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (\_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.

A sample algorithm type named **C1-PPARM-ENT** is shipped with the product. At present, it returns a boolean value true. You can build custom logic in this algorithm which returns a value. This value can then be compared against the parameter value specified in the pricing eligibility criteria.

Procedure

To copy a parameter:



1. Search for the parameter in the **Parameter** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** () icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the parameter whose copy you want to create.

The **Parameter** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	Used to specify the parameter name.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the parameter name.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Source Entity	Used to indicate the entity from where the parameter value should be derived. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Account</li> <li>Algorithm</li> <li>Person</li> <li>Product</li> <li>Service Quantity Identifier</li> <li>Transaction</li> </ul>	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the parameter.	Yes
Source Type	<div>Used to indicate the type of source from where the parameter value should be derived. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Characteristic</li> <li>Field</li> <li>Usage Amount</li> <li>Usage Counter</li> </ul> </div> <div> <b>Note:</b>  This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b>, <b>Person</b>, or <b>Product</b> option from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.   The <b>Usage Amount</b> and <b>Usage Counter</b> options do not appear in the <b>Source Type</b> list when the <b>Product</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list. </div>	Yes
Value Type	Indicates the type of value that you can store in the parameter. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Adhoc</li> <li>Predefined</li> <li>Reference</li> </ul>	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)																																													
Source Type Code	Used to indicate the source, such as, field, characteristic, usage amount, usage counter, SQI, or algorithm, from where the parameter value should be derived.	Yes																																													
	<b>Note:</b>  This field does not appear when the <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.  The following table indicates the values that are listed in the <b>Source Type Code</b> field depending on the source entity and source type combination:																																														
	<table><tr><th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th><th>Source Type Code</th></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Characteristic</td><td>Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Field</td><td>Lists all fields of the <b>CI_ACCT</b> table.</td></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Usage Amount</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Usage Counter</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Characteristic</td><td>Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Field</td><td>Lists all fields of the <b>CI_PER</b> table.</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Usage Amount</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Usage Counter</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Product</td><td>Characteristic</td><td>Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Product</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>Product</td><td>Field</td><td>Lists all fields of the <b>C1_PRODUCT</b> table.</td></tr><tr><td>Supplier</td><td>Characteristic</td><td>Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Supplier</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>Supplier</td><td>Field</td><td>Lists all fields of the <b>C1_SUPPLIER</b> table.</td></tr><tr><td>Supplier</td><td>Usage Amount</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr><tr><td>Supplier</td><td>Usage Counter</td><td>Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.</td></tr></table>		Source Entity	Source Type	Source Type Code	Account	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b> .	Account	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>CI_ACCT</b> table.	Account	Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.	Account	Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.	Person	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b> .	Person	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>CI_PER</b> table.	Person	Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.	Person	Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.	Product	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Product</b> .	Product	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>C1_PRODUCT</b> table.	Supplier	Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Supplier</b> .	Supplier	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>C1_SUPPLIER</b> table.	Supplier	Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.	Supplier	Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.
	Source Entity		Source Type	Source Type Code																																											
	Account		Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b> .																																											
	Account		Field	Lists all fields of the <b>CI_ACCT</b> table.																																											
	Account		Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.																																											
	Account		Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.																																											
	Person		Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b> .																																											
	Person		Field	Lists all fields of the <b>CI_PER</b> table.																																											
	Person		Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.																																											
	Person		Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.																																											
	Product		Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Product</b> .																																											
	Product		Field	Lists all fields of the <b>C1_PRODUCT</b> table.																																											
	Supplier		Characteristic	Lists all characteristics where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Supplier</b> .																																											
Supplier	Field	Lists all fields of the <b>C1_SUPPLIER</b> table.																																													
Supplier	Usage Amount	Lists all values defined for the <b>BAL_FLG</b> lookup field.																																													
Supplier	Usage Counter	Lists all values defined for the <b>CNT_FLG</b> lookup field.																																													

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
	<table border="1"> <tr> <th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th><th>Source Type Code</th></tr> <tr> <td>Algorithm</td><td>—</td><td>Lists all algorithms which are defined using the <b>C1-PPARM-ENT</b> algorithm type.</td></tr> </table>	Source Entity	Source Type	Source Type Code	Algorithm	—	Lists all algorithms which are defined using the <b>C1-PPARM-ENT</b> algorithm type.	
Source Entity	Source Type	Source Type Code						
Algorithm	—	Lists all algorithms which are defined using the <b>C1-PPARM-ENT</b> algorithm type.						
Validation Algorithm	<p>Used to indicate the algorithm using which you want to validate the adhoc parameter value.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Adhoc</b> option is selected from the <b>Value Type</b> list.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Validation Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	No						
Reference Entity	<p>Used to indicate the table whose primary key (column) you want to set as the reference entity.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Reference</b> option is selected from the <b>Value Type</b> list.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Reference Entity</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Reference Table Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>You can only specify a language table, where the <b>DESCR</b> column is available, in the <b>Reference Entity</b> field.</p>	Yes						
Field Name	<p>Indicates the column which is the primary key of the table. The parameter value is then validated against the primary column of the table.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Reference</b> option is selected from the <b>Value Type</b> list.</p>	Not applicable						

In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:

- **Parameter Values** - Used to define predefined values for the parameter. It contains the following fields in the grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Value	Used to specify the parameter value.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the predefined parameter value.	
Description	Used to specify the description for the parameter value.	Yes

**Note:**

The **Parameter Values** section appears only when the **Predefined** option is selected from the **Value Type** list.

At least one parameter value should be defined for a parameter where the value type is set to **Predefined**.

If you want to define more than one predefined value for the parameter, click the **Add** (+) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a predefined value of the parameter, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the parameter value.

- Parameter Usage** - Used to indicate where the parameter can be used in the system. It contains the following options:



Option Name	Option Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)										
Price Item	Used to indicate whether the parameter can be associated with a price item or price item bundle. If a parameter is associated with a price item or price item bundle, you can use the parameter while defining the price item pricing.	Yes (Conditional)										
	<b>Note:</b> The following table lists the source entity and source type combinations when the <b>Price Item</b> option is disabled in the <b>Parameter Usage</b> section:	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to associate the parameter with a price item.										
	<table><tr><th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Usage Amount</td></tr><tr><td>Account</td><td>Usage Counter</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Usage Amount</td></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Usage Counter</td></tr></table>		Source Entity	Source Type	Account	Usage Amount	Account	Usage Counter	Person	Usage Amount	Person	Usage Counter
	Source Entity		Source Type									
	Account		Usage Amount									
Account	Usage Counter											
Person	Usage Amount											
Person	Usage Counter											
The following table lists the source entity and source type combinations when the <b>Price Item</b> option does not appear in the <b>Parameter Usage</b> section:												
<table><tr><th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th></tr><tr><td>Algorithm</td><td>—</td></tr><tr><td>Service Quantity Identifier</td><td>—</td></tr></table>	Source Entity	Source Type	Algorithm	—	Service Quantity Identifier	—						
Source Entity	Source Type											
Algorithm	—											
Service Quantity Identifier	—											
Pricing Eligibility Criteria	Used to indicate whether the parameter can be used while defining the pricing eligibility criteria.	Yes (Conditional)										
	<b>Note:</b> This option does not appear when the <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to define a pricing eligibility criteria using the parameter.										
Price List Eligibility Criteria	Used to indicate whether the parameter can be used while defining the price list eligibility criteria.	Yes (Conditional)										
	<b>Note:</b> This option does not appear when the <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to define a price list eligibility criteria using the parameter.										

Option Name	Option Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product Eligibility Criteria	Used to indicate whether the parameter can be used while defining the product eligibility criteria.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This option does not appear when the <b>Algorithm</b> , <b>Service Quantity Identifier</b> , or <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to define a product eligibility criteria using the parameter.

**Note:** You must select at least one option in the **Parameter Usage** section.

3. Enter the required details in the **Parameter** screen depending on whether you want to create an adhoc, predefined, or reference parameter.
4. Click **Save**.
- The parameter is defined.

**Note:** If a parameter is already defined using the source entity, source type, and source type code combination, the system will not allow you to define another parameter with the same combination.


Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parameter	<a href="#">Searching for a Parameter</a> on page 163

Viewing the Parameter Details

Procedure

To view the details of a parameter:

1. Search for the parameter in the **Parameter** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon in the **View** column corresponding to the parameter whose details you want to view.
- The **Parameter** screen appears.
3. View the details of the parameter in the **Parameter** screen.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parameter	<a href="#">Searching for a Parameter</a> on page 163
<b>Parameter</b> screen	<a href="#">Parameter (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 182
<b>Parameter</b> zone	<a href="#">Parameters</a> on page 206

Parameter (Used for Viewing)

The **Parameter** screen allows you to view the details of a parameter. It contains the following zone:

- [Parameter](#) on page 183

## Parameter

The **Parameter** zone displays the details of the parameter. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic information about the parameter. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parameter	Displays the parameter name.
Description	Displays the description of the parameter.
Value Type	<p>Indicates the type of value that you can store in the parameter. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adhoc</li> <li>• Predefined</li> <li>• Reference</li> </ul>
Validation Algorithm	<p>Indicates the algorithm which is used to validate the adhoc parameter value.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Adhoc</b> option is selected from the <b>Value Type</b> list. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Algorithm</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective algorithm.</p>
Referenced Table	<p>Indicates the table whose primary key (i.e. column) is used to validate the parameter value.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Reference</b> option is selected from the <b>Value Type</b> list. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Table</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective table.</p>
Source Entity	<p>Indicates the entity from where the parameter value is derived. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account</li> <li>• Algorithm</li> <li>• Person</li> <li>• Product</li> <li>• Service Quantity Identifier</li> <li>• Transaction</li> </ul>

Field Name	Field Description
Source Type	<p>Indicates the type of source from where the parameter value is derived. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Characteristic</li> <li>• Field</li> <li>• Usage Amount</li> <li>• Usage Counter</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Account</b>, <b>Person</b>, or <b>Product</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.</p>
Source Type Code	<p>Indicates the source, such as field, characteristic, usage amount, usage counter, SQI, or algorithm, from where the parameter value is derived.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field does not appear when the <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.</p>

- **Parameter Usage** – Indicates where the parameter can be used in the system. It contains the following options:

Option Name	Option Description						
Price Item	<p>Indicates whether the parameter can be associated with a price item or price item bundle. If a parameter is associated with a price item or price item bundle, you can use the parameter while defining the price item pricing.</p> <p>The following table lists the source entity and source type combinations when the <b>Price Item</b> option does not appear in the <b>Parameter Usage</b> section:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Source Entity</th><th>Source Type</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Algorithm</td><td>—</td></tr> <tr> <td>Service Quantity Identifier</td><td>—</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Source Entity	Source Type	Algorithm	—	Service Quantity Identifier	—
Source Entity	Source Type						
Algorithm	—						
Service Quantity Identifier	—						
Pricing Eligibility Criteria	<p>Indicates whether the parameter can be used while defining the pricing eligibility criteria.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This option does not appear when the <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.</p>						
Price List Eligibility Criteria	<p>Indicates whether the parameter can be used while defining the price list eligibility criteria.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This option does not appear when the <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.</p>						
Product Eligibility Criteria	<p>Indicates whether the parameter can be used while defining the product eligibility criteria.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This option does not appear when the <b>Algorithm</b>, <b>Service Quantity Identifier</b>, or <b>Transaction</b> option is selected from the <b>Source Entity</b> list.</p>						

- **Parameter Values** - Lists the predefined values of the parameter. It contains the following columns in the grid:

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter Value	Displays the parameter value.
Description	Displays the description of the parameter value.

**Note:** The **Parameter Values** section appears only when the **Predefined** option is selected from the **Value Type** list.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Parameter</b> screen	<a href="#">Parameter (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 182

## Price Item

A bank may offer wide range of services to customers and accordingly charge them fees and/or interest for a service. You can define each charge as a price item in Oracle Revenue Management and Billing. Once a price item is defined, you can define pricing for the price item. The price item pricing can be a standard price defined in the price list or override price that is specific to a person or an account. The system allows you to define price item pricing at various levels in a person hierarchy (for example, at the account level, main customer level, or at the parent customer level). You can also define price item pricing in the account's price list, main customer's price list, parent customer's price list, and price list's parent price list.

You can associate one or more price items with each other, and thereby group them for various reasons, such as reporting, billing, and so on. You can also create a price item bundle and then add price items within the price item bundle. The main objective behind grouping price items or creating price item bundles is to offer discounts based on the volume across price items, facilitate minimum or maximum charge calculations across price items, or offer common price across price items. While associating a price item with the parent price item or adding a price item to the price item bundle, you need to specify how the two price items are related to each other.

The system allows you to define the following types of price item bundle:

- [Regular Bundle](#) on page 154
- [Phantom Bundle](#) on page 158
- [Ratio Bundle](#) on page 156

The system allows you to define price items and price item bundles which are available for only pricing or pricing and billing. If the price item is available for only pricing, you can indicate the type of the price item. The valid values are:

- Rate (i.e. Interest Rate)
- Fees

If the type of a price item is **Rate**, the system calculates and persist the rate for the price item. The rate is persisted only for the price item pricing which is either assigned or inherited by an account. You cannot define a price item bundle when it is available for only pricing and when the price item type is set to **Rate**. When you define a price item or price item bundle which is available for only pricing, the contract type defined in the **Default Contract Type** option type of the **Pricing Configuration (C1\_PRICING)** feature configuration is automatically associated with the price item or price item bundle.

You can associate a price item or price item bundle to one or more divisions. You can assign a price item or price item bundle to an account, person, or price list only when the account, person, or price list belongs to the division to which the price item or price item bundle is associated. You can define a set of characteristics for a price item or price item bundle which are common across divisions or specific to a division. You can associate one or more parameters to a price item. These parameters can then be used for aggregating transactions and defining the price item pricing. Note that you can associate parameters only to regular price item bundles and not to ratio and phantom price item bundles.

## Price Item (Used for Searching)

The **Price Item** screen allows you to search for a price item or price item bundle using various search criteria. It allows you to create and edit a price item or price item bundle. In addition, it allows you to copy a price item bundle only when **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1\_PPARM\_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **False**. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Price Item](#) on page 186

### Search Price Item

The **Search Price Item** zone allows you to search for a price item or price item bundle using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:


- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a price item or price item bundle using the price item details. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Price Item Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Price Item Details</b> option is selected.	
Price Item	Used to search a particular price item or price item bundle.	No
Description	Used to search a price item or price item bundle with a particular description.	No
Division	Used to search price items or price item bundles which are associated with a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Global Price List	Used to search price items or price item bundles which can be assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
Price Item Usage	Used to search price items or price item bundles which can be used for only pricing or pricing and billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pricing</li> <li>• Pricing and Billing</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Pricing and Billing</b> option is selected.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bundle	Used to indicate whether you want to search a price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
Price Item Type	Used to search a particular type of price items or price item bundles. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fees</li> <li>• Rate</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Pricing</b> option from the <b>Price Item Usage</b> list. </div>	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price item or price item bundle.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price Item Information	Displays information about the price item or price item bundle. <div> <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price item or price item bundle. </div>
Bundle Type	Indicates the type of the price item bundle. If the price item bundle is available for pricing and billing, the valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Phantom</li> <li>• Ratio</li> <li>• Regular</li> </ul> However, if the price item bundle is available for only pricing and the <b>Price Item Type</b> is set to <b>Fees</b> , the valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> </ul>
Price Item Type	Indicates the type of the price item or price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rate</li> <li>• Fees</li> </ul>
Price Item Usage	Indicates whether the price item or price item bundle is used for only pricing or pricing and billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pricing</li> <li>• Pricing and Billing</li> </ul>
Copy	On clicking the <b>Copy</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can create a new price item or price item bundle using an existing price item or price item bundle.

Column Name	Column Description
Price Item Assigned To	On clicking the <b>View</b> (🔍) icon in the <b>Price Item Assigned To</b> column, the <b>Price Item Assignments</b> screen appears where you can view the active price lists, persons, and accounts to which the price item or price item bundle is assigned.
Price Item Relationship	On clicking the <b>View</b> (🔍) icon in the <b>Price Item Relationship</b> column, the <b>Price Item Relationship</b> screen appears where you can view the list of the price items and price item bundles associated with the parent price item or added to the price item bundle.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
How to view the details of a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Viewing the Price Item or Price Item Bundle Details</a> on page 203
How to copy a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Copying a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 200
<b>Price Item Assignments</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Assignments</a> on page 227
<b>Price Item Relationship</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Relationship</a> on page 213

## Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle

### Prerequisites

To search for a price item or price item bundle, you should have:

- Divisions defined in the application
- Price items or price item bundles associated with the division to which the user belongs

### Procedure

To search for a price item or price item bundle:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Price Item**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Price Item** sub-menu.  
The **Price Item** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Price Item** zone depending on whether you want to search for a price item or price item bundle.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.



## 5. Click **Search**.

A list of price items or price item bundles that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price Item</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item (Used for Searching)</a> on page 186
<b>Search Price Item</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price Item</a> on page 186

## Defining a Price Item or Price Item Bundle

### Prerequisites

To define a price item or price item bundle, you should have:

- Contract types defined in the application
- Value defined for the **Default Contract Type** option type in the **Pricing Configuration (C1\_PRICING)** feature configuration

### Procedure

To define a price item or price item bundle:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Price Item**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Add** option from the **Price Item** sub-menu.

The **Price Item** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price item or price item bundle.
- Parameters** - Used to associate a parameter with the price item or price item bundle. These associated parameters are then used for aggregating transactions and/or for defining the price item pricing.

#### **Note:**

The **Parameters** section appears in the **Price Item** screen only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1\_PPARM\_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.


You cannot associate parameters to ratio and phantom price item bundles. Therefore, while defining the ratio and phantom price item bundles, the **Parameters** section does not appear in the **Price Item** screen.

- Divisions** - Used to associate the price item or price item bundle with one or more divisions. It also allows you to define division-specific SQIs and characteristics for the price item or price item bundle.
- Price Item Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics (which are applicable across divisions) for the price item or price item bundle.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to specify the price item or price item bundle.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Description	Used to specify the description for the price item or price item bundle.	Yes
Price Item Usage	Used to indicate whether the price item or price item bundle is used for only pricing or pricing and billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pricing</li> <li>Pricing and Billing</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Pricing and Billing</b> option is selected.	
Price Item Type	Used to indicate the type of the price item or price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rate</li> <li>Fees</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Fees</b> option is selected. This field appears only when you select the <b>Pricing</b> option from the <b>Price Item Usage</b> list. You cannot define a price item bundle when it is available for only pricing and when the price item type is set to <b>Rate</b> .	
Bundle	Used to indicate whether you want to define a price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>No</b> option is selected.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bundle Type	Used to indicate the type of the price item bundle. If the price item bundle is available for pricing and billing, the valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Phantom</li> <li>Ratio</li> <li>Regular</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Pricing and Billing</b> option from the <b>Price Item Usage</b> list and the <b>Yes</b> option from the <b>Bundle</b> list.  All the above mentioned values are available in the list when you are defining a price item bundle which is available for pricing and billing. However, when you are defining a price item bundle which is available for only pricing and when the price item type is set to <b>Fees</b> , you can only define a regular price item bundle. Therefore, by default, the value is set to <b>Regular</b> when you select the <b>Pricing</b> option from the <b>Price Item Usage</b> list and the <b>Yes</b> option from the <b>Bundle</b> list.  You cannot define a price item bundle when it is available for only pricing and when the price item type is set to <b>Rate</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are creating a price item bundle.
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the price item or price item bundle can be assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>No</b> option is selected.	
Contract Type	Used to indicate the contract type that you want to associate with the price item or price item bundle.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Pricing and Billing</b> option from the <b>Price Item Usage</b> list.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Contract Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Contract Type Search</b> window appears.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Price Item** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Price Item** screen.

4. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.

5. Associate parameters with the price item or price item bundle, if required.
6. Associate the price item or price item bundle to the required divisions.
7. Define the required division-specific SQIs for the price item or price item bundle.
8. Define division-specific characteristics for the price item or price item bundle, if required.
9. Define characteristics for the price item or price item bundle, if required.
10. Click **Save**.

The price item is defined.

**Note:** When you define a price item or price item bundle which is available for only pricing, the contract type defined in the **Default Contract Type** option type of the **Pricing Configuration (C1\_PRICING)** feature configuration is automatically associated to the price item or price item bundle.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
<b>Price Item</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item (Used for Searching)</a> on page 186
<b>Search Price Item</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price Item</a> on page 186
How to associate a price item or price item bundle with a parameter	<a href="#">Associating a Parameter with a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 192
How to associate a price item or price item bundle with a division	<a href="#">Associating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle with a Division</a> on page 195
How to associate a price item or price item bundle with an SQI in a particular division	<a href="#">Defining Division-Specific SQIs for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 198
How to define a characteristic for a price item or price item bundle in a particular division	<a href="#">Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 196
How to define a characteristic for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 199
How to set the <b>Pricing Configuration (C1_PRICING)</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1_PRICING Feature Configuration</a>

### **Associating a Parameter with a Price Item or Price Item Bundle**

#### **Prerequisites**

To associate a parameter with a price item or price item bundle, you should have:

- Parameters defined in the application (where the **Price Item** option is selected in the **Parameter Usage** section)


#### **Procedure**

To associate a parameter with a price item or price item bundle:

1. Click the **Parameters** or **Show All** link in the **Section** pane when you are defining, editing, or copying a price item or price item bundle.

The **Parameters** section appears. It contains the following fields in a grid:


<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Field Description</b>	<b>Mandatory (Yes or No)</b>
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the parameter is effective for the price item or price item bundle.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the parameter is effective for the price item or price item bundle.	No
Parameter	Used to indicate the parameter that you want to associate with the price item or price item bundle.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Search</b> window appears. In the <b>Parameter Search</b> window, the system allows you to search only those parameters where the parameter usage is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	
Business Label	Used to specify a business label for the parameter. If the business label is defined for a parameter, the business label appears instead of the parameter name.	No
Display Order	Used to indicate the order in which the parameter and its value should be displayed in the price item parameter information string across the application.	Yes
Parameter Usage	Used to indicate whether you want to use the parameter for aggregation and/or for defining the price item pricing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Aggregation</b> – Indicates that you want to use the parameter for aggregating transactions.</li> <li>• <b>Pricing</b> – Indicates that you want to use the parameter for aggregating transactions and defining the price item pricing.</li> </ul>	Yes
Mandatory	Used to indicate whether the parameter is mandatory while defining the price item pricing.	No
Priority	Used to indicate the priority in which optional parameters should be considered while determining best fit price for the price item or price item bundle.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is disabled when the <b>Mandatory</b> option is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Mandatory</b> option is not selected.


**Note:**

The **Parameters** section appears in the **Price Item** screen only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1\_PPARM\_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.

You cannot associate parameters to ratio and phantom price item bundles. Therefore, while defining, editing, or copying ratio and phantom price item bundles, the **Parameters** section does not appear in the **Price Item** screen.

- Enter the required details in the **Parameters** section.
- If you want to associate more than one parameter with the price item or price item bundle, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat steps 2.

**Note:**

However, if you want to remove a parameter from the price item or price item bundle, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the parameter. You can edit the parameter details and remove a parameter from the price item or price item bundle only when the parameter or any other parameter from the same date range is not yet used for aggregation or for defining the price item pricing.

You can add a parameter which will be used for aggregation (in other words, where the **Parameter Usage** field is set to **Aggregation**) anytime, whenever required. However, you can add a parameter which will be used for pricing (in other words, where the **Parameter Usage** field is set to **Pricing**) only when any other parameter from the same date range is not yet used for aggregation or for defining the price item pricing.

- Click **Save**.  
The parameters are associated with the price item or price item bundle.

**Note:** The priority for all parameters which are mandatory is set to 0.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 189
How to edit a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 210
How to copy a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Copying a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 200
How to define valid predefined parameter values for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining Valid Predefined Parameter Values for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 194

**Defining Valid Predefined Parameter Values for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle**


**Prerequisites**


To define valid predefined parameter values for a price item or price item bundle, you should have:


- Values defined for the predefined parameter which is associated with the price item or price item bundle


**Procedure**

To define valid predefined parameter values for a price item or price item bundle:

- Click the **Parameters** or **Show All** link in the **Section** pane when you are defining, editing, or copying a price item or price item bundle.  
The **Parameters** section appears.
- Click the **Add** () icon in the **Parameter** column corresponding to the predefined parameter for which you want to define valid values for the price item or price item bundle.  
The following field appears in the grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Value	Used to indicate the predefined parameter value which you can use for the price item or price item bundle while defining the pricing.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the valid predefined parameter value for a price item or price item bundle, the description of the valid predefined parameter value appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining valid predefined parameter values for the price item or price item bundle.</p>

3. Select the predefined parameter value from the respective field.
4. If you want to define more than one valid predefined parameter value for the price item or price item bundle, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a valid predefined parameter value from the price item or price item bundle, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the parameter value.

5. Click **Save**.

The valid predefined parameter values are defined for the price item or price item bundle.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to associate a parameter with a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Associating a Parameter with a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 192

## **Associating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle with a Division**

### Prerequisites

To associate a price item or price item bundle with a division, you should have:


- Divisions defined in the application


### Procedure


To associate a price item or price item bundle with a division:


1. Click the **Divisions** or **Show All** link in the **Section** pane when you are defining, editing, or copying a price item or price item bundle.

The **Divisions** section appears. It contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
SQIs	On clicking the <b>Add</b>  icon, you can define division-specific SQIs for the price item or price item bundle.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division Characteristics	On clicking the <b>Add</b> (  ) icon, you can define division-specific characteristics for the price item or price item bundle.	No
Division	Used to indicate the division to which you want to associate the price item or price item bundle.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	

- Enter the required details in the **Divisions** section.
- If you want to associate the price item or price item bundle with more than one division, click the **Add** (  ) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove the price item or price item bundle from a division, click the **Delete** (  ) icon corresponding to the division.

- Define division-specific SQIs for the price item or price item bundle, if required.
- Define division-specific characteristics for the price item or price item bundle, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The price item or price item bundle is associated to the division.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can associate a price item or price item bundle to a division using the **Division** screen.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 189
How to edit a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 210
How to copy a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Copying a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 200
How to define division-specific characteristics for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 196
How to define division-specific SQIs for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining Division-Specific SQIs for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 198

## Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle

### Prerequisites

To define division-specific characteristics for a price item or price item bundle, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Division/Price Item Combination**)
- Price items or price item bundles associated to the division to which the user belongs


### Procedure




To define division-specific characteristics for a price item or price item bundle:


1. Click the **Divisions** or **Show All** link in the **Section** pane when you are defining, editing, or copying a price item or price item bundle.


The **Divisions** section appears.

2. Click the **Add** () icon in the **Division Characteristics** column corresponding to the division for which you want to define division-specific price item or price item bundle characteristics.

The following fields appear in the grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item or price item bundle characteristic is effective for the division.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a division-specific characteristic for the price item or price item bundle.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.  <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Division/Price Item Combination</b> .	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a division-specific characteristic for the price item or price item bundle.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.  <b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a division-specific characteristic for the price item or price item bundle.

3. Enter the required details in the **Divisions** section.
4. If you want to define more than one division-specific characteristic for the price item or price item bundle, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a division-specific characteristic from the price item or price item bundle, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

5. Click **Save**.

The division-specific characteristics are defined for the price item or price item bundle.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 189
How to edit a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 210
How to copy a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Copying a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 200
How to associate a price item or price item bundle with a division	<a href="#">Associating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle with a Division</a> on page 195

## Defining Division-Specific SQIs for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle

### Prerequisites

To define division-specific SQIs for a price item or price item bundle, you should have:


- SQIs defined in the application
- Price items or price item bundles associated with the division to which the user belongs

### Procedure


To define division-specific SQIs for a price item or price item bundle:


1. Click the **Divisions** or **Show All** link in the **Section** pane when you are defining, editing, or copying a price item or price item bundle.


The **Divisions** section appears.

2. Click the **Add** () icon in the **SQIs** column corresponding to the division for which you want to define division-specific price item or price item bundle SQIs.

The following field appears in the grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
SQI	Used to indicate the SQI to which you want to associate the price item or price item bundle in the division.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to the <b>SQI</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Service Quantity Identifier Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On indicating the SQI, the description of the SQI appears corresponding to the <b>SQI</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a division-specific SQI for the price item or price item bundle.</p>

3. Enter the required details in the **Divisions** section.
4. If you want to define more than one division-specific SQI for the price item or price item bundle, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a division-specific SQI from the price item or price item bundle, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the SQI.

5. Click **Save**.

The division-specific SQIs are defined for the price item or price item bundle.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 189
How to edit a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 210
How to copy a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Copying a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 200
How to associate a price item or price item bundle with a division	<a href="#">Associating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle with a Division</a> on page 195

**Defining a Characteristic for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle****Prerequisites**

To define a characteristic for a price item or price item bundle, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Price Item**)

**Procedure**

To define a characteristic for a price item or price item bundle:

1. Click the **Price Item Characteristics** or **Show All** link in the **Section** pane when you are defining, editing, or copying a price item or price item bundle.

The **Price Item Characteristics** section appears. It contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price item or price item bundle.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price item or price item bundle.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price item or price item bundle.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price item or price item bundle.

2. Enter the required details in the **Price Item Characteristics** section.

- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the price item or price item bundle, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the price item or price item bundle, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the price item or price item bundle.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to define a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 189
How to edit a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 210
How to copy a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Copying a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 200

### **Copying a Price Item or Price Item Bundle**

Instead of creating a price item or price item bundle from scratch, you can create a new price item or price item bundle using an existing price item or price item bundle. This is possible through copying a price item or price item bundle. On copying a price item or price item bundle, the details including the parameters, divisions, division-specific characteristics, division-specific SQIs, and characteristics are copied to the new price item or price item bundle. You can then edit the details, if required.

### **Prerequisites**

To copy a price item or price item bundle, you should have:

- Price item or price item bundle (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Price item or price item bundle (whose copy you want to create) associated with the division to which the user belongs
- Contract types defined in the application
- Value defined for the **Default Contract Type** option type in the **Pricing Configuration (C1\_PRICING)** feature configuration

### **Procedure**

To copy a price item or price item bundle:

- Search for the price item or price item bundle in the **Price Item** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** (📄➡️📄) icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the price item or price item bundle using which you want to define a new price item or price item bundle.

The **Price Item** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** – Used to specify basic details about the price item or price item bundle.
- Parameters** – Used to associate a parameter with the price item or price item bundle. These associated parameters are then used for aggregating transactions and/or for defining the price item pricing.

**Note:**


The **Parameters** section appears in the **Price Item** screen only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1\_PPARM\_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.

You cannot associate parameters to ratio and phantom price item bundles. Therefore, while defining ratio and phantom price item bundles, the **Parameters** section does not appear in the **Price Item** screen.

- **Divisions** – Used to associate the price item or price item bundle with one or more divisions. It also allows you to define division-specific SQIs and characteristics for the price item or price item bundle.
- **Price Item Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics (which are applicable across divisions) for the price item or price item bundle.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to specify the price item or price item bundle.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the price item or price item bundle.	Yes
Price Item Usage	Used to indicate whether the price item or price item bundle is used for only pricing or pricing and billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pricing</li> <li>• Pricing and Billing</li> </ul>	Yes
Price Item Type	Used to indicate the type of the price item or price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rate</li> <li>• Fees</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b>  This field appears only when you select the <b>Pricing</b> option from the <b>Price Item Usage</b> list.  You cannot define a price item bundle when it is available for only pricing and when the price item type is set to <b>Rate</b>. </div>	Yes
Bundle	Used to indicate whether you want to define a price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bundle Type	Used to indicate the type of the price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Phantom</li> <li>Ratio</li> <li>Regular</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Pricing and Billing</b> option from the <b>Price Item Usage</b> list and the <b>Yes</b> option from the <b>Bundle</b> list.</p> <p>All the above mentioned values are available in the list when you are defining a price item bundle which is available for pricing and billing. However, when you are defining a price item bundle which is available for only pricing and when the price item type is set to <b>Fees</b>, you can only define a regular price item bundle. Therefore, by default, the value is set to <b>Regular</b> when you select the <b>Pricing</b> option from the <b>Price Item Usage</b> list and the <b>Yes</b> option from the <b>Bundle</b> list.</p> <p>You cannot define a price item bundle when it is available for only pricing and when the price item type is set to <b>Rate</b>.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are creating a price item bundle.</p>
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the price item or price item bundle can be assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
Contract Type	Used to indicate the contract type that you want to associate with the price item or price item bundle.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when you select the <b>Pricing and Billing</b> option from the <b>Price Item Usage</b> list.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Contract Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Contract Type Search</b> window appears.</p>	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Associate, edit, or disassociate parameters from the price item or price item bundle, if required.
- Associate or disassociate the price item or price item bundle from the required divisions.
- Define or remove the division-specific SQIs from the price item or price item bundle, if required.
- Define or remove the division-specific characteristics for the price item or price item bundle, if required.

8. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the price item or price item bundle, if required.
9. Click **Save**.

The new price item is defined.

**Note:**

When you define a new price item or price item bundle which is available for only pricing, the contract type defined in the **Default Contract Type** option type of the **Pricing Configuration (C1\_PRICING)** feature configuration is automatically associated to the price item or price item bundle.

The system allows you to add a price item to the new price item bundle only when:

- Price item and price item bundle (whose copy you are creating) are associated to the same contract type.
- Price item is associated with the division to which the price item bundle (whose copy you are creating) is associated.
- Another price item bundle with the same price item, relationship type, and date range combination does not exist in the system.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
How to associate a parameter with a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Associating a Parameter with a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 192
How to associate a price item or price item bundle with a division	<a href="#">Associating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle with a Division</a> on page 195
How to define division-specific SQIs for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining Division-Specific SQIs for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 198
How to define division-specific characteristics for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 196
How to define characteristics for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 199
How to set the <b>Pricing Configuration (C1_PRICING)</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1_PRICING Feature Configuration</a>

### **Viewing the Price Item or Price Item Bundle Details**

#### **Procedure**

To view the details of a price item or price item bundle:

1. Search for the price item or price item bundle in the **Price Item** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Price Item Information** column corresponding to the price item or price item bundle whose details you want to view.

The **Price Item** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- [Price Item](#) on page 205
- [Parameters](#) on page 206
- [Predefined Parameter Values for Price Item](#) on page 207

- [Divisions](#) on page 207
  - [Division-Specific Characteristics for Price Item](#) on page 208
  - [Division-Specific SQIs for Price Item](#) on page 208
  - [Price Item Relationship](#) on page 209
3. View the basic details and characteristics of the price item or price item bundle in the **Price Item** zone.
  4. View the parameters associated with the price item or price item bundle in the **Parameters** zone.
  5. View the valid predefined parameter values of the price item or price item bundle in the **Predefined Parameter Values for Price Item** zone.
  6. View the divisions to which the price item or price item bundle is associated in the **Divisions** zone.
  7. View the division-specific characteristics of the price item or price item bundle in the **Division-Specific Characteristics for Price Item** zone.
  8. View the division-specific SQIs of the price item or price item bundle in the **Division-Specific SQIs for Price Item** zone.
  9. View the price items or price item bundles related to the parent price item or price item bundle in the **Price Item Relationship** zone.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
<b>Price Item</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 204

## Price Item (Used for Viewing)

The **Price Item** screen allows you to view the details of the price item or price item bundle. It also allows you to edit the details of the price item or price item bundle. It contains the following zones:

- **Price Item** – Displays the basic details of the price item or price item bundle.
- **Parameters** – Lists the parameters which are associated with the price item or price item bundle.
- **Predefined Parameter Values for Price Item** – Lists the predefined parameter values which are valid for the price item or price item bundle.


**Note:** By default, the **Predefined Parameter Values for Price Item** zone does not appear in the **Price Item** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a parameter in the **Parameters** zone.

- **Divisions** – Lists the divisions to which the price item or price item bundle is associated.
- **Division-Specific Characteristics for Price Item** – Lists the characteristics which are defined for the price item or price item bundle in the respective division.

**Note:** By default, the **Division-Specific Characteristics for Price Item** zone does not appear in the **Price Item** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a division in the **Divisions** zone.

- **Division-Specific SQIs for Price Item** – Lists the SQIs to which the price item or price item bundle is associated in the respective division.



**Note:** By default, the **Division-Specific SQIs for Price Item** zone does not appear in the **Price Item** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a division in the **Divisions** zone.

- **Price Item Relationship** – Lists the price items or price item bundles which are associated with the parent price item or added in the price item bundle.

## Price Item

The **Price Item** zone displays the details of the price item or price item bundle. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic information about the price item or price item bundle. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Price Item	Displays information about the price item or price item bundle.
Description	Displays the description of the price item or price item bundle.
Price Item Usage	Indicates whether the price item or price item bundle is used for only pricing or pricing and billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pricing</li> <li>• Pricing and Billing</li> </ul>
Price Item Type	Indicates the type of the price item or price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rate</li> <li>• Fees</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Pricing</b> option from the <b>Price Item Usage</b> list.
Bundle	Indicates whether the price item is a bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Bundle Type	Indicates the type of the price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Phantom</li> <li>• Ratio</li> <li>• Regular</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Yes</b> option from the <b>Bundle</b> list.
Global Price List	Indicates whether the price item or price item bundle is assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Contract Type	Displays the contract type to which the price item or price item bundle is associated.

- **Price Item Characteristics** – Lists the characteristics defined for the price item or price item bundle. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price item or price item bundle.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following button:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the price item or price item bundle.

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the price item or price item bundle is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
<b>Price Item</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 204
How to edit a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 210

### Parameters

The **Parameters** zone lists the parameters to which the price item or price item bundle is associated. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the parameter is effective for the price item or price item bundle.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the parameter is effective for the price item or price item bundle.
Parameter	Indicates the parameter to which the price item or price item bundle is associated.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Parameter</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective parameter.
Business Label	Displays the business label of the parameter. If the business label is defined for a parameter, the business label appears instead of the parameter name.
Display Order	Indicates the order in which the parameter and its value should be displayed in the price item parameter information string across the application.

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter Usage	Indicates whether the parameter is used for aggregation and/or for defining the pricing of the price item or price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Aggregation</b> – Indicates that the parameter is used for aggregating transactions.</li> <li>• <b>Pricing</b> – Indicates that the parameter is used for aggregating transactions and defining the price item pricing.</li> </ul>
Mandatory	Indicates whether the parameter is mandatory while defining the price item pricing.
Priority	Indicates the priority in which optional parameters should be considered while determining best fit price for the price item or price item bundle.

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a parameter, the **Predefined Parameter Values for Price Item** zone appears where you can view the valid predefined parameter values of the price item or price item bundle.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price Item</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 204
<b>Predefined Parameter Values</b> zone	<a href="#">Defining Valid Predefined Parameter Values for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 194

#### Predefined Parameter Values for Price Item

The **Predefined Parameter Values for Price Item** zone lists the predefined parameter values which are valid for the price item or price item bundle. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter Value	Displays the predefined parameter value.
Description	Displays the description of the predefined parameter value.

By default, the **Predefined Parameter Values for Price Item** zone does not appear in the **Price Item** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a parameter in the **Parameters** zone.


#### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
<b>Price Item</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 204
<b>Parameters</b> zone	<a href="#">Parameters</a> on page 206

#### Divisions

The **Divisions** zone lists the divisions to which the price item or price item bundle is associated. It contains the following column:

Column Name	Column Description
Division	Indicates the division to which the price item or price item bundle is associated. <div> <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Division</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective division. </div>

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a division, the **Division-Specific Characteristics for Price Item** and **Division-Specific SQIs for Price Item** zones appear.

You can filter the list using the **Division** field available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters**  icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price Item</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 204
<b>Division-Specific Characteristics for Price Item</b> zone	<a href="#">Division-Specific Characteristics for Price Item</a> on page 208
<b>Division-Specific SQIs for Price Item</b> zone	<a href="#">Division-Specific SQIs for Price Item</a> on page 208

### **Division-Specific Characteristics for Price Item**

The **Division-Specific Characteristics for Price Item** zone lists the characteristics defined for a price item or price item bundle in a specific division. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the price item or price item bundle characteristic is effective for the division.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Characteristic Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

By default, the **Division-Specific Characteristics for Price Item** zone does not appear in the **Price Item** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a division in the **Divisions** zone.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price Item</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 204
<b>Divisions</b> zone	<a href="#">Divisions</a> on page 207

### **Division-Specific SQIs for Price Item**

The **Division-Specific SQIs for Price Item** zone lists the SQIs to which the price item or price item bundle is associated in a specific division. It contains the following column:

Column Name	Column Description
SQI	Indicates the SQI to which the price item or price item bundle is associated in the division.

By default, the **Division-Specific SQIs for Price Item** zone does not appear in the **Price Item** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a division in the **Divisions** zone.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price Item</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 204
<b>Divisions</b> zone	<a href="#">Divisions</a> on page 207

### Price Item Relationship

The **Price Item Relationship** zone lists the price items or price item bundles which are associated with the parent price item or added to the price item bundle. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price Item Information	Displays information about the price item or price item bundle.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price item.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item or price item bundle is associated with the parent price item or added to the price item bundle.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item or price item bundle is associated with the parent price item or added to the price item bundle.
Relationship Type	Indicates how the price item or price item bundle is related with the parent price item or price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bundle</li> <li>• Custom</li> <li>• Denominator</li> <li>• Numerator</li> <li>• Other</li> <li>• Price Item</li> <li>• Service</li> <li>• Service Group</li> </ul>
Bundle Type	Indicates the type of the price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Phantom</li> <li>• Ratio</li> <li>• Regular</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the associated price item is a bundle.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Price Item**, **Description**, **Effective Start Date**, and **Relationship Type**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (  ) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

You can associate or disassociate a price item or price item bundle from a parent price item and add or remove a price item or price item bundle from a price item bundle by clicking the **Add/Edit** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price Item</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 204
How to associate a price item or price item bundle with a parent price item	<a href="#">Associating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle with a Parent Price Item</a> on page 216
How to add a price item or price item bundle to a price item bundle	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item or Price Item Bundle to a Price Item Bundle</a> on page 219
How to disassociate a price item or price item bundle from a parent price item	<a href="#">Disassociating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle from a Parent Price Item</a> on page 224
How to remove a price item or price item bundle from a price item bundle	<a href="#">Removing a Price Item or Price Item Bundle from a Price Item Bundle</a> on page 225

## Editing a Price Item or Price Item Bundle

### Prerequisites

To edit a price item or price item bundle, you should have:

- Contract types defined in the application
- Value defined for the **Default Contract Type** option type in the **Pricing Configuration (C1\_PRICING)** feature configuration

### Procedure

To edit a price item or price item bundle:

1. Search for the price item or price item bundle in the **Price Item** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Price Item Information** column corresponding to the price item or price item bundle whose details you want to edit.  
The **Price Item** screen appears.
3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Price Item** zone.

The **Price Item** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the price item or price item bundle.
- **Parameters** – Used to associate a parameter with the price item or price item bundle. These associated parameters are then used for aggregating transactions and/or for defining the price item pricing.

#### Note:

The **Parameters** section appears in the **Price Item** screen only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1\_PPARM\_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.


You cannot associate parameters to ratio and phantom price item bundles. Therefore, while editing the ratio and phantom price item bundles, the **Parameters** section does not appear in the **Price Item** screen.

- **Divisions** – Used to associate the price item or price item bundle with one or more divisions. It also allows you to define division-specific SQIs and characteristics for the price item or price item bundle.
- **Price Item Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics (which are applicable across divisions) for the price item or price item bundle.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Displays the price item or price item bundle.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Description	Used to specify the description for the price item or price item bundle.	Yes
Price Item Usage	Used to indicate whether the price item or price item bundle is used for only pricing or pricing and billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pricing</li> <li>Pricing and Billing</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The system does not allow you to change the price item usage from <b>Pricing and Billing</b> to <b>Pricing</b> for a price item or price item bundle.	
Price Item Type	Used to indicate the type of price item or price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rate</li> <li>Fees</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Price Item Usage</b> field is set to <b>Pricing</b> .	
Bundle	Indicates whether the price item is a bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Bundle Type	Used to indicate the type of the price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Phantom</li> <li>Ratio</li> <li>Regular</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are editing a price item bundle.  <b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Pricing and Billing</b> option from the <b>Price Item Usage</b> list and the <b>Yes</b> option from the <b>Bundle</b> list.  All the above mentioned values are available in the list when you are editing a price item bundle which is available for pricing and billing. However, when you are editing a price item bundle which is available for only pricing and when the price item type is set to <b>Fees</b> , you can only define a regular price item bundle. Therefore, by default, the value is set to <b>Regular</b> when the <b>Pricing</b> option is selected from the <b>Price Item Usage</b> list and the <b>Yes</b> option from the <b>Bundle</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the price item or price item bundle can be assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
Contract Type	Used to indicate the contract type that you want to associate with the price item or price item bundle. <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Price Item Usage</b> field is set to <b>Pricing and Billing</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Contract Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Contract Type Search</b> window appears.</p> </div>	Yes

4. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
5. Associate or disassociate a parameter from the price item or price item bundle, if required.

**Note:**

You can edit the parameter details and remove a parameter from the price item or price item bundle only when the parameter or any other parameter from the same date range is not yet used for aggregation or for defining the price item pricing.

You can add a parameter which will be used for aggregation (in other words, where the **Parameter Usage** field is set to **Aggregation**) anytime, whenever required. However, you can add a parameter which will be used for pricing (in other words, where the **Parameter Usage** field is set to **Pricing**) only when any other parameter from the same date range is not yet used for aggregation or for defining the price item pricing.

6. Associate or disassociate the price item or price item bundle from the divisions, if required.

**Note:** If the price item or price item bundle is associated to a division to which you do not have access, then the corresponding row in the **Divisions** section is grayed out.

7. Define, edit, or remove division-specific SQIs from the price item or price item bundle, if required.
8. Define, edit, or remove division-specific characteristics from the price item or price item bundle, if required.
9. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the price item or price item bundle, if required.
10. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the price item or price item bundle are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
How to associate a price item or price item bundle with a parameter	<a href="#">Associating a Parameter with a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 192



For more information on...	See...
How to associate a price item or price item bundle with a division	<a href="#">Associating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle with a Division</a> on page 195
How to associate a price item or price item bundle with an SQI in a particular division	<a href="#">Defining Division-Specific SQIs for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 198
How to define a characteristic for a price item or price item bundle in a particular division	<a href="#">Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 196
How to define a characteristic for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 199
How to set the <b>Pricing Configuration (C1_PRICING)</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1_PRICING Feature Configuration</a>

## Price Item Relationship

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to associate two or more price items with each other, and thereby group them for various reasons, such as reporting, billing, and so on. In other words, you can define a price item to price item relationship. The price item to which a set of price items are associated is called a parent price item. You can also create a price item bundle and then add price items to the price item bundle. The main objective behind grouping price items or creating price item bundles is to offer discounts based on the volume across price items, facilitate minimum or maximum charge calculations across price items, or offer common price across price items.

While associating a price item with a parent price item or adding a price item to a price item bundle, you need to specify how the price item is related to the parent price item or price item bundle. You can add a price item to a price item bundle using the following relationship types:

- **Bundle** – Used while adding price items in the regular and phantom price item bundles.
- **Denominator** – Used while adding price items in the ratio price item bundles.
- **Numerator** – Used while adding price items in the ratio price item bundles.

However, you can associate a price item or price item bundle with a parent price item using the following relationship types:

- Other
- Custom
- Price Item
- Service
- Service Group

### Note:

You cannot add same set of price items using the same relationship type while defining two or more bundles with the same bundle type. For example, you cannot add P1 and P2 using the relationship type as Bundle while defining regular bundles named BUN1 and BUN2. However, you can use same set of price items while defining two or more price item to price item relationships.

If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can add same set of price item and price item parameter combination (using the same relationship type) in more than one bundle (having the same bundle type) provided the price item parameter values are different.

The **Price Item Relationship** screen allows you to view the price items that are already associated with the parent price item or added to the price item bundle. It also allows you to associate or disassociate a price item or price item bundle

from the parent price item, or add or remove a price item or price item bundle from the price item bundle. This screen consists of the following zone:

- [Assigned Price Items](#) on page 214

### Assigned Price Items

The **Assigned Price Items** zone lists the price items or price item bundles that are already associated with the parent price item or added to the price item bundle. You will not find any records in this zone if the parent price item does not have any price item or price item bundle associated with it or if the price item bundle does not have any price item or price item bundle added to it. It contains the following sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to search a particular price item or price item bundle which is associated with the parent price item or added to the price item bundle.	No
Description	Used to search price items or price item bundles with a particular description.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to search price items or price item bundles which are associated with the parent price item or added to the price item bundle from a particular date.	No
Relationship Type	Used to search price items or price item bundles which are related to the parent price item or added to the price item bundle using a particular relationship type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bundle</li> <li>• Custom</li> <li>• Denominator</li> <li>• Numerator</li> <li>• Other</li> <li>• Price Item</li> <li>• Service</li> <li>• Service Group</li> </ul>	No

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price Item Information	Displays information about the price item or price item bundle.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price item or price item bundle.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item or price item bundle is associated with the parent price item or added to the price item bundle.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item or price item bundle is associated with the parent price item or added to the price item bundle.

Column Name	Column Description
Relationship Type	<p>Indicates how the price item or price item bundle is related to the parent price item or price item bundle. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bundle</li> <li>• Custom</li> <li>• Denominator</li> <li>• Numerator</li> <li>• Other</li> <li>• Price Item</li> <li>• Service</li> <li>• Service Group</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Bundle</b> relationship type is used while adding price items in the regular and phantom price item bundles. The <b>Denominator</b> and <b>Numerator</b> relationship types are used while adding price items in the ratio price item bundles. And, all other relationship types, such as <b>Other</b>, <b>Custom</b>, <b>Price Item</b>, <b>Service</b>, and <b>Service Group</b> are used while associating price items to the parent price item.</p>
Price Item Parameters	Indicates the parameters based on which you want to determine pricing for the price item.

You can associate or disassociate a price item or price item bundle from a parent price item, or add or remove a price item or price item bundle from a price item bundle by clicking the **Add/Edit** link in the upper right corner of this zone.


### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price Item Relationship</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Relationship</a> on page 213
How to view the price items or price item bundles associated with a parent price item	<a href="#">Viewing the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Associated with a Parent Price Item</a> on page 216
How to view the price items or price item bundles added to a price item bundle	<a href="#">Viewing the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Added to a Price Item Bundle</a> on page 216
How to associate a price item or price item bundle with a parent price item	<a href="#">Associating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle with a Parent Price Item</a> on page 216
How to add a price item or price item bundle to a price item bundle	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item or Price Item Bundle to a Price Item Bundle</a> on page 219
How to disassociate a price item or price item bundle from a parent price item	<a href="#">Disassociating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle from a Parent Price Item</a> on page 224
How to remove a price item or price item bundle from a price item bundle	<a href="#">Removing a Price Item or Price Item Bundle from a Price Item Bundle</a> on page 225
How to filter the price items or price item bundles associated with a parent price item	<a href="#">Filtering the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Associated with a Parent Price Item</a> on page 225
How to filter the price items or price item bundles added to a price item bundle	<a href="#">Filtering the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Added to a Price Item Bundle</a> on page 226

## Viewing the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Associated with a Parent Price Item

### Procedure

To view the price items or price item bundles associated with a parent price item:

1. Search for the price item in the **Price Item** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Price Item Relationship** (  ) icon in the **Price Item Relationship** column corresponding to the price item whose relationship details you want to view.  
The **Price Item Relationship** screen appears.
3. View the price items or price item bundles that are associated with the parent price item in the **Assigned Price Items** zone.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price item	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
<b>Price Item Relationship</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Relationship</a> on page 213
<b>Assigned Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Assigned Price Items</a> on page 214

## Viewing the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Added to a Price Item Bundle

### Procedure

To view the price items or price item bundles added to a price item bundle:

1. Search for the price item bundle in the **Price Item** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Price Item Relationship** (  ) icon in the **Price Item Relationship** column corresponding to the price item bundle whose relationship details you want to view.  
The **Price Item Relationship** screen appears.
3. View the price items or price item bundles that are added to the price item bundle in the **Assigned Price Items** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price item bundle	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
<b>Price Item Relationship</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Relationship</a> on page 213
<b>Assigned Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Assigned Price Items</a> on page 214

## Associating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle with a Parent Price Item


### Prerequisites


To associate a price item or price item bundle with a parent price item, you should have:



- Parent price item associated with the division to which the user belongs
- Price item or price item bundle associated to at least one division to which the parent price item belongs.

### Procedure

To associate a price item or price item bundle with a parent price item:


1. Search for the parent price item in the **Price Item** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Price Item Relationship** () icon in the **Price Item Relationship** column corresponding to the parent price item to which you want to associate a price item or price item bundle.  
The **Price Item Relationship** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add/Edit** link in the upper right corner of the **Assigned Price Items** zone.  
The **Price Item Relationship** screen appears. It contains the following fields in a grid:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item or price item bundle that you want to associate with the parent price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.	
Relationship Type	Used to indicate how the price item or price item bundle is related with the parent price item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bundle</li> <li>• Custom</li> <li>• Denominator</li> <li>• Numerator</li> <li>• Other</li> <li>• Price Item</li> <li>• Service</li> <li>• Service Group</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can use the <b>Other</b> , <b>Custom</b> , <b>Price Item</b> , <b>Service</b> , or <b>Service Group</b> relationship type while associating a price item or price item bundle to the parent price item.	
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when you want to associate the price item or price item bundle with the parent price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.	
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when you want to associate the price item or price item bundle with the parent price item.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item Parameters	<p>Used to specify the parameters and their values based on which you want to determine pricing for the price item or price item bundle.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameters</b> screen appears.</p> <p>You must not use the <b>Price Item Parameters</b> field while associating a price item or price item bundle with a parent price item. This is because it is designed to be used while adding a price item or price item bundle to the ratio and phantom price item bundles.</p>	Not applicable
Characteristics	On clicking the <b>Add</b> (  ) icon, you can define relationship-specific characteristics for the price item or price item bundle.	Not applicable

4. Enter the required details in the **Price Item Relationship** screen.

**Note:** You can associate the same set of price items or price item bundles using the same relationship type to more than one parent price item. For example, you can associate the **P1** and **P2** price items using the **Service** relationship type to the **PP1** and **PP2** price items.

5. Define relationship-specific characteristics for the price item or price item bundle, if required.
6. If you want to associate more than one price item or price item bundle with the parent price item, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat the steps from 4 to 5.

**Note:** However, if you want to disassociate a price item or price item bundle from a parent price item, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the price item or price item bundle.

7. Click **Save**.

The price item or price item bundle is associated with the parent price item.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent price item	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
<b>Price Item Relationship</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Relationship</a> on page 213
<b>Assigned Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Assigned Price Items</a> on page 214
How to define relationship-specific characteristics for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining Relationship-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 223

## Adding a Price Item or Price Item Bundle to a Price Item Bundle

### Prerequisites

To add a price item or price item bundle to a price item bundle, you should have:


- Price item bundle (to which you want to add a price item or price item bundle) associated with the division to which the user belongs
- Price item bundle (to which you want to add a price item or price item bundle) and price item or price item bundle (which you want to add) associated to the same contract type
- Parameters associated with the price item or price item bundle (which you want to add) when you want to determine pricing for the price item based on the parameters in the ratio and phantom price item bundles
- Regular price item bundle (to which you want to add a price item or price item bundle) and price item or price item bundle (which you want to add) associated with the same parameters

**Note:** Not only the parameters, but also their details such as parameter usage, mandatory flag, and priority should be identical. Also, the date from when the parameters are effective for the price item bundle (to which you want to add a price item or price item bundle) should be earlier than or equal to the date from when the parameters are effective for the price item or price item bundle (which you want to add).


- Price item or price item bundle (which you want to add) associated to at least one division to which the price item bundle (to which you want to add a price item or price item bundle) belongs



### Procedure

To add a price item or price item bundle to a price item bundle:

1. Search for the price item bundle in the **Price Item** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon in the **Price Item Relationship** column corresponding to the price item bundle to which you want to add a price item or price item bundle. The **Price Item Relationship** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add/Edit** link in the upper right corner of the **Assigned Price Items** zone.

The **Price Item Relationship** screen appears. It contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item or price item bundle that you want to add to the price item bundle.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Relationship Type	Used to indicate how the price item or price item bundle is related to the price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bundle</li> <li>• Custom</li> <li>• Denominator</li> <li>• Numerator</li> <li>• Other</li> <li>• Price Item</li> <li>• Service</li> <li>• Service Group</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can use the <b>Bundle</b> relationship type while adding a price item or price item bundle in the regular and phantom price item bundles. However, you can use the <b>Denominator</b> and <b>Numerator</b> relationship type while adding a price item or price item bundle in the ratio price item bundles.	
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item or price item bundle is added to the price item bundle.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.	
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price item or price item bundle is added to the price item bundle.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	
Price Item Parameters	Used to specify the parameters and their values based on which you want to determine pricing for the price item or price item bundle.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .  The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameters</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameters</b> screen appears.	
Characteristics	On clicking the <b>Add</b> (  ) icon, you can define relationship-specific characteristics for the price item or price item bundle.	Not applicable

4. Enter the required details in the **Price Item Relationship** screen.




**Note:**


You can add a price item or price item bundle to a regular price item bundle only when the regular price item bundle (to which you want to add a price item or price item bundle) and price item or price item bundle (which you want to add) are associated with the same parameters for the specified date range.

You cannot add the same set of price items using the same relationship type to two or more price item bundles with the same bundle type. For example, you cannot add **P1** and **P2** using the **Bundle** relationship type to the **BUN1** and **BUN2** regular price item bundles.

If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can add the same set of price item and price item parameter combination (using the same relationship type) to more than one bundle (with the same bundle type) provided the price item parameter values are different.

You cannot add the same price item or price item bundle in numerator and denominator while defining a ratio price item bundle.

5. Define relationship-specific characteristics for the price item or price item bundle, if required.
6. If you want to add more than one price item or price item bundle to the price item bundle, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat the steps from 4 to 5.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price item or price item bundle from a price item bundle, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the price item or price item bundle.

7. Click **Save**.

The price item or price item bundle is added to the price item bundle.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price item bundle	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
<b>Price Item Relationship</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Relationship</a> on page 213
<b>Assigned Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Assigned Price Items</a> on page 214
How to set the parameters for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Setting the Parameters for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 221
How to define relationship-specific characteristics for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Defining Relationship-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 223


**Setting the Parameters for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle****Prerequisites**

To set the parameters for a price item or price item bundle, you should have:

- Parameters (where the **Parameter Usage** field is set to **Pricing**) associated with the price item or price item bundle

**Procedure**


To set the parameters for a price item or price item bundle:

1. Click the **Search** () icon corresponding to the **Price Item Parameters** field.

The **Price Item Parameters** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Price Item	Indicates the price item or price item bundle for which you want to set the parameters.
Description	Displays the description of the price item or price item bundle.

In addition, this screen contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item Parameter	Indicates the parameter which is associated with the price item or price item bundle.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> Here, the system displays the price item parameter where the <b>Parameter Usage</b> field is set to <b>Pricing</b> .	
Mandatory	Indicates whether the parameter is mandatory while defining the price item pricing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Priority	Indicates the priority in which optional parameters should be considered while determining best fit price for the price item or price item bundle.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> The priority for all parameters which are mandatory is set to 0.	
Parameter Value	Used to specify the parameter value.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If the parameter value type is <b>Predefined</b> or <b>Reference</b> , the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, you can search for a parameter value.  You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to determine pricing for the price item or price item bundle based on the parameter.

2. Enter the required details in the **Price Item Parameters** screen.
3. Click **OK**.

A comma-separated list of values appear in the **Price Item Parameters** column corresponding to the price item or price item bundle. The order in which parameter values appear in the price item parameter information string is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item).

**Note:** The value specified for a parameter whose value type is set to **Adhoc** is validated using the validation algorithm attached to the respective parameter.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a price item or price item bundle to a price item bundle	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item or Price Item Bundle to a Price Item Bundle</a> on page 219

## Defining Relationship-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle


### Prerequisites

To define relationship-specific characteristics for a price item or price item bundle, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Price Item Relationship**)


### Procedure


To define relationship-specific characteristics for a price item or price item bundle:

1. Click the **Add** (  ) icon in the **Characteristics** column corresponding to the price item or price item bundle for which you want to define relationship-specific characteristics.

A grid appears corresponding to the price item or price item bundle with the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the relationship-specific characteristic is effective for the price item or price item bundle.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a relationship-specific characteristic for the price item or price item bundle.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.  <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item Relationship</b> .	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a relationship-specific characteristic for the price item or price item bundle.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.  <b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a relationship-specific characteristic for the price item or price item bundle.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** grid.
3. If you want to define more than one relationship-specific characteristic for the price item or price item bundle, click the **Add** (  ) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a relationship-specific characteristic from the price item or price item bundle, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The relationship-specific characteristics are defined for the price item or price item bundle.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to associate a price item or price item bundle with a parent price item	<a href="#">Associating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle with a Parent Price Item</a> on page 216
How to add a price item or price item bundle to a price item bundle	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item or Price Item Bundle to a Price Item Bundle</a> on page 219

## **Disassociating a Price Item or Price Item Bundle from a Parent Price Item**



### **Prerequisites**

To disassociate a price item or price item bundle from a parent price item, you should have:

- Parent price item associated with the division to which the user belongs

### **Procedure**

To disassociate a price item or price item bundle from a parent price item:

1. Search for the parent price item in the **Price Item** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon in the **Price Item Relationship** column corresponding to the parent price item from which you want to disassociate a price item or price item bundle.  
The **Price Item Relationship** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add/Edit** link in the upper right corner of the **Assigned Price Items** zone.  
The **Price Item Relationship** screen appears.
4. Filter the price items or price item bundles associated to the parent price item, if required.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the price item or price item bundle that you want to disassociate from the parent price item.
6. Click **Save**.

The price item or price item bundle is disassociated from the parent price item.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent price item	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
<b>Price Item Relationship</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Relationship</a> on page 213
<b>Assigned Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Assigned Price Items</a> on page 214
How to filter the price items or price item bundles associated with the parent price item	<a href="#">Filtering the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Associated with a Parent Price Item</a> on page 225

## Removing a Price Item or Price Item Bundle from a Price Item Bundle



### Prerequisites

To remove a price item or price item bundle from a price item bundle, you should have:

- Price item bundle associated with the division to which the user belongs

### Procedure

To remove a price item or price item bundle from a price item bundle:

1. Search for the price item bundle in the **Price Item** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon in the **Price Item Relationship** column corresponding to the price item bundle from which you want to remove a price item or price item bundle. The **Price Item Relationship** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add/Edit** link in the upper right corner of the **Assigned Price Items** zone. The **Price Item Relationship** screen appears.
4. Filter the price items or price item bundles added to the price item bundle, if required.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the price item or price item bundle that you want to remove from the price item bundle.
6. Click **Save**.  
The price item or price item bundle is removed from the price item bundle.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price item bundle	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
<b>Price Item Relationship</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Relationship</a> on page 213
<b>Assigned Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Assigned Price Items</a> on page 214
How to filter the price items or price item bundles added to the price item bundle	<a href="#">Filtering the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Added to a Price Item Bundle</a> on page 226

## Filtering the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Associated with a Parent Price Item


### Prerequisites

To filter the price items or price item bundles associated with a parent price item, you should have:

- Parent price item associated with the division to which the user belongs

### Procedure

To filter the price items or price item bundles associated with a parent price item:

1. Search for the parent price item in the **Price Item** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon in the **Price Item Relationship** column corresponding to the parent price item whose details you want to view. The **Price Item Relationship** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Assigned Price Items** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

#### 4. Click **Search**.

The search results are filtered based on the specified criteria.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent price item	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
<b>Price Item Relationship</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Relationship</a> on page 213
<b>Assigned Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Assigned Price Items</a> on page 214

### Filtering the Price Items or Price Item Bundles Added to a Price Item Bundle

#### Prerequisites

To filter the price items or price item bundles added to a price item bundle, you should have:

- Price item bundle associated with the division to which the user belongs

#### Procedure

To filter the price items or price item bundles added to a price item bundle:

1. Search for the price item bundle in the **Price Item** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** (🔍) icon in the **Price Item Relationship** column corresponding to the price item bundle whose details you want to view.

The **Price Item Relationship** screen appears.

3. Enter the search criteria in the **Assigned Price Items** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

#### 4. Click **Search**.

The search results are filtered based on the specified criteria.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price item bundle	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
<b>Price Item Relationship</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Relationship</a> on page 213
<b>Assigned Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Assigned Price Items</a> on page 214

## Price Item Assignments

The **Price Item Assignments** screen allows you to view the active price lists, persons, and accounts where the price item or price item bundle is assigned. It contains the following zones:

- [Active Price Lists where Price Item is Assigned](#) on page 227
- [Persons to whom Price Item is Assigned](#) on page 227
- [Accounts where Price Item is Assigned](#) on page 228

### Active Price Lists where Price Item is Assigned

The **Active Price Lists where Price Item is Assigned** zone lists the active price lists where the pricing is defined for the price item or price item bundle. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price List Information	Displays information about the price list.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price List</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price list.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price list is effective.
Availability Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is available for assignment.
Availability End Date	Displays the date till when the price list is available for assignment.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price Item Assignments</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Assignments</a> on page 227
How to view the price lists, persons, or accounts where a price item is assigned	<a href="#">Viewing the Price Lists, Persons, or Accounts where a Price Item is Assigned</a> on page 228

### Persons to whom Price Item is Assigned

The **Persons to whom Price Item is Assigned** zone lists the persons where the pricing is defined for the price item or price item bundle. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Person ID	Indicates the person to whom the price item is assigned.
Person Information	Displays information about the person. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.
Price Assignment Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item is assigned to the person.
Price Assignment End Date	Displays the date till when the price item is assigned to the person.
Division	Indicates the division to which the person belongs.

Column Name	Column Description
Price Assignment ID	Indicates the price item pricing which is assigned to the person.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price Item Assignments</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Assignments</a> on page 227
How to view the price lists, persons, or accounts where a price item is assigned	<a href="#">Viewing the Price Lists, Persons, or Accounts where a Price Item is Assigned</a> on page 228

### **Accounts where Price Item is Assigned**

The **Accounts where Price Item is Assigned** zone lists the accounts where the pricing is defined for the price item or price item bundle. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Indicates the account where the price item is assigned.
Account Information	Displays information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.
Price Assignment Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item is assigned to the account.
Price Assignment End Date	Displays the date till when the price item is assigned to the account.
Division	Indicates the division to which the account belongs.
Price Assignment ID	Indicates the price item pricing which is assigned to the account.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price Item Assignments</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Assignments</a> on page 227
How to view the price lists, persons, or accounts where a price item is assigned	<a href="#">Viewing the Price Lists, Persons, or Accounts where a Price Item is Assigned</a> on page 228

### **Viewing the Price Lists, Persons, or Accounts where a Price Item is Assigned**

#### Prerequisites

To view the price lists, persons, or accounts where the price item or price item bundle is assigned, you should have:

- Price item or price item bundle assigned to a price list, person, or account

#### Procedure

To view the price lists, persons, or accounts where the price item or price item bundle is assigned:

1. Search for the price item or price item bundle in the **Price Item** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** (🔍) icon in the **Price Item Assigned To** column corresponding to the price item or price item bundle whose assignment details you want to view.



The **Price Item Assignments** screen appears.

3. View the price lists where the pricing is defined for the price item or price item bundle in the **Active Price Lists where Price Item is Assigned** zone.
4. View the accounts where the pricing is defined for the price item or price item bundle in the **Accounts where Price Item is Assigned** zone.
5. View the persons where the pricing is defined for the price item or price item bundle in the **Person to whom Price Item is Assigned** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price item or price item bundle	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
<b>Price Item Assignments</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Assignments</a> on page 227
<b>Active Price Lists where Price Item is Assigned</b> zone	<a href="#">Active Price Lists where Price Item is Assigned</a> on page 227
<b>Accounts where Price Item is Assigned</b> zone	<a href="#">Accounts where Price Item is Assigned</a> on page 228
<b>Person to whom Price Item is Assigned</b> zone	<a href="#">Persons to whom Price Item is Assigned</a> on page 227

## Price List

A price list allows you to define standard prices for a group of price items. In other words, a price list is a rate card for price items or services which are offered to the accounts or persons. You can create more than one price list. For example, you can create a price list for large, medium-sized, and small customers. You can also create a set of price lists for different regions. You can define two types of price lists — **Standard** and **Promotional**. You can also set eligibility criteria for the price list with effective start date, end date, and description. At present, there is no functionality associated with the price list type. The implementation team can use the price list type to define the custom logic as per the business requirements.

A price list and price item pricing within the price list are effective for a particular duration. You can define multiple pricing for the same price item and variance parameter or product parameters combination within a price list only when the price item pricing date range is different. You can assign the same price item in multiple price lists and define different pricing for the price item in each price list based on the business requirements.

The system enables you to specify the duration for which the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person. However, note that at present, the availability start and end dates are not used in the product while assigning a price list to an account or a person. If required, the implementation team can build the custom logic using the availability start and end dates in the product.

Once you create a price list, you have to assign price items to the price list and define pricing for each price item assigned to the price list. The price lists are then assigned to accounts or persons to indicate the prices that will be charged for various price items or services offered to them. You can assign multiple price lists to an account or a person for an overlapping date range. But, you need to specify the priority or order for the price list in which the pricing from the price list should be considered. You can also assign the same price list to multiple accounts or persons.

You can define whether the account or person can avail the price item pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. In other words, you can define whether the account or person can inherit price item pricing from the price list hierarchy.

The system allows you to create the following:

- **Default Price List** – You can create a price list and set it as a default price list for a particular division. To define a default price list for a division, you need to set the value for the **Default Price List ID** parameter in the price assignment search algorithm which is attached to the division. If the effective price item pricing is not available

at any level in the customer hierarchy, the system checks whether the default price list is specified in the price assignment search algorithm. If the default price list is specified in the algorithm, the system checks whether effective price item pricing is available in the default price list and accordingly uses the price item pricing. You can have the same price list as a the default price list for multiple divisions.

- **Global Price List** – You can create one global price list in the system. It is used only when the price item pricing is not available at any level in the customer hierarchy and in the default price list associated with the division. You can assign only those price items in the global price list whose the **Global Price List** option is set to **Yes**. The global price list is used while searching an effective price item pricing only when the **Global Price List** parameter in the price assignment search algorithm (attached to the division) is set to **Y**. Finally, if the effective price item pricing is not available in the default and/or global price list, an error message occurs indicating that the effective price item pricing is not available in the system.
- **Template Price List** – You can define a template price list and assign template price item pricing to a template price list. You cannot assign template price list to an account or a person. You can only create a copy of a template price item pricing which is assigned to a template price list. Once you create a copy of the template price item pricing, you can save the new price item pricing in either **Active** or **Proposed** status.

## Price List (Used for Searching)

The **Price List** screen allows you to search for a price list using various search criteria. It also allows you to define a price list. This screen consists of the following zones:


- [Search Price List](#) on page 230
- [Price List Price Items](#) on page 233

### Search Price List

The **Search Price List** zone allows you to search for a price list using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:





Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a price list using the price list details. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Price List Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Price List Details</b> option is selected.	
Price List ID	Used to search a particular price list.	No
Price List Description	Used to search a price list with a particular description.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to search price lists which are effective from a particular date.	No
Effective End Date	Used to search price lists which are effective till a particular date.	No
Price List Type	Used to search a particular type of price lists. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Promotional</li> <li>• Standard</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Standard</b> option is selected.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether you want to search a global price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
Availability Start Date	Used to search price lists which are available for assignment to an account or a person from a particular date. <div> <b>Note:</b> By default this field does not appear. This field appears only when you click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link in the upper right corner of the <b>Search Price List</b> zone. </div>	No
Availability End Date	Used to search price lists which are available for assignment to an account or a person till a particular date. <div> <b>Note:</b> By default this field does not appear. This field appears only when you click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link in the upper right corner of the <b>Search Price List</b> zone. </div>	No
Status	Used to search price lists with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Template</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b> By default this field does not appear. This field appears only when you click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link in the upper right corner of the <b>Search Price List</b> zone. </div>	No
Division	Used to search price lists which are associated with a particular division. <div> <b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list. </div>	No
Parent Price List	Used to search price lists which inherit pricing from a particular parent price list. <div> <b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price List Search</b> window appears.  By default this field does not appear. This field appears only when you click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link in the upper right corner of the <b>Search Price List</b> zone. </div>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Price List Effective Date	Used to search price lists that inherit pricing from a parent price list which is effective from a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default this field does not appear. This field appears only when you click the <b>Advanced Search</b> link in the upper right corner of the <b>Search Price List</b> zone.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price list.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description
Price List Information	Displays information about the price list.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price List</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price list.
Status	Indicates the status of the price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Template</li> </ul>
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price list is effective.
Availability Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person.
Availability End Date	Displays the date till when the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person.
Copy	On clicking the <b>Copy</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Price List</b> screen appears where you can create a new price list using an existing price list.
Price List Pricing	On clicking the <b>View</b> (  ) icon in the <b>Price List Pricing</b> column, the <b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can view and edit a list of price items pricing information assigned to the price list.
Price List Assigned To	On clicking the <b>View</b> (  ) icon in the <b>Price List Assigned To</b> column, the <b>Price List Assignments</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the persons and accounts to which the price list is assigned.
Eligible Accounts/ Persons	On clicking the <b>View</b> (  ) icon in the <b>Eligible Accounts/Persons</b> column, the <b>Entities Eligible for Price List Assignment</b> screen appears where you can search for a list of eligible accounts and persons to which you want to assign the price list in a particular division.

**Note:**

However, when you search for a price list by specifying the date (which can be current, past or future date) in the **Parent Price List Effective Date** field, the system retrieves the price lists that meet the search criteria along with the details of the parent price list that is effective on that date.

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

By default, the **Filter** area is visible. You can hide the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters**  icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

- On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the **Price List Information** field, the **Price List Price Items** zone appears where you can view a list of price items to which the price list is assigned.


**Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
<b>Price List Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Price Items</a> on page 255
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
How to view the details of a price list	<a href="#">Viewing the Price List Details</a> on page 248
How to view price items assigned to a price list	<a href="#">Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List</a> on page 235
How to copy a price list	<a href="#">Copying a Price List</a> on page 246
How to view accounts and persons where price list is assigned.	<a href="#">Viewing Persons and Accounts where Price List is Assigned</a> on page 304
How to view accounts and persons eligible for price list assignment.	<a href="#">Viewing Accounts and Persons Eligible for Price List Assignment</a>


**Price List Price Items**

The **Price List Price Items** zone lists price items that are assigned to the price list. You will not find any records in this zone if the price list does not have any price items assigned to it. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing	Displays the concatenated string consisting of the price item pricing information and pricing ID which are separated by a comma (,) for the price list.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can view the pricing information of the respective price item.
Pricing Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this column is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item).  <b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARAM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Status	Indicates the status of pricing for the price item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Inactive</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Template</li> </ul>
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective for the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective for the price list.
Price Assignment Type	Indicates the type of the price item pricing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> <li>• Regular</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Copy	On clicking the <b>Copy</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can define a new price item pricing using the existing price item pricing.

By default, the **Price List Price Items** zone does not appear in the **Price List** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the price list in the **Search Price List** zone.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Price Item** and **Effective Start Date**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view price items assigned to a price list	<a href="#">Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List</a> on page 235
How to remove a price item from the price list	<a href="#">Removing a Price Item Pricing from a Price List</a> on page 264
How to view price item pricing for the price list	<a href="#">View Price Item Pricing</a>

### Searching for a Price List

#### Prerequisites

To search for a price list, you should have:

- Divisions defined in the application

- Price list associated with the division to which the user belongs

### **Procedure**

To search for a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Price List**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Price List** sub-menu.  
The **Price List** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Price List** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price List</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 249
<b>Search Price List</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price List</a> on page 230

### **Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List**

#### **Prerequisites**


To view price items assigned to a price list, you should have:

- An algorithm defined using the **C1-PLPINFO** algorithm type and attached to **Pricelist Products Assignment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options – Framework** screen

### **Procedure**

To view price items assigned to a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Price List** screen.
2. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
<b>View the price items assigned to the price list in the price list screen</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Broadcast</b>  icon corresponding to the price list whose price items details you want to view.</li> <li>2. The <b>Price List Price Items</b> zone appears.</li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
View the price items assigned to the price list in the price list price item pricing screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Price List Information</b> column corresponding to the price list whose price items details you want to view.</li> <li>2. The <b>Price List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>1. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>View</b> (🔍) icon in the <b>Price List Pricing</b> column corresponding to the price list whose price items details you want to view.</li> <li>2. The <b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</li> </ol>

3. View the price items that are assigned to the price list in the **Price List Price Items** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Price List Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Price Items</a> on page 233
<b>Price List</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 249
<b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Price Item Pricing</a> on page 255

## Defining a Price List

### Procedure

To define a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Price List**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Price List** sub-menu.

The **Price List** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price list.
- **Hierarchy** - Used to associate the price list with one or more parent price lists for a specified duration.
- **Divisions** - Used to associate the price list with one or more divisions.
- **Eligibility Criteria** - Used to define one or more eligibility criteria for the price list.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define a list of characteristics (which are applicable across divisions) for the price list.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Description	Used to specify the description for the price list.	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price list is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current date appears in this field.	
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price list is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	
Price List Type	Used to indicate the type of the price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Promotional</li> <li>Standard</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Standard</b> option is selected.	
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the price list is a global price list or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
Availability Start Date	Used to the specify the date from when the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> At present, the availability start date is not used in the price item while assigning a price list to an account or a person. It is available for future use.	
Availability End Date	Used to the specify the date till when the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The availability end date cannot be earlier than the availability start date.  At present, the availability end date is not used in the price item while assigning a price list to an account or a person. It is available for future use.	
Validity Period (in Days)	Used to specify the period in days for which the price list is valid. It is used to calculate price list assignment validity end date while assigning the price list to an account or a person.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the price list. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Active</b> - Used to indicate that the price list is used for billing.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> - Used to indicate that the price list is used for quotations.</li> <li>• <b>Template</b> - Used to indicate that the price list is a template price list.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Active</b> option is selected.</p>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Price List** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Price List** screen.

4. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.

**Note:** By default the **Main** section is displayed.

5. Associate the price list with one or more parent price list, if required.
6. Associate the price list with one or more divisions, if required.
7. Define eligibility criteria for the price list, if required.
8. Define characteristics for the price list, if required.
9. Click **Save**.

The price list is defined.

**Note:** The price list ID is generated automatically when the price list is defined.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price List</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 249
<b>Price List</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List (Used for Searching)</a> on page 230
How to define the price list hierarchy	<a href="#">Defining the Price List Hierarchy</a> on page 238
How to associate a price list with a division	<a href="#">Associating a Price List with a Division</a> on page 241
How to define eligibility criteria for a price list	<a href="#">Defining Eligibility Criteria for a Price List</a> on page 242
How to define characteristics for a price list	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Price List</a> on page 240

### Defining the Price List Hierarchy

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define the price list hierarchy. It helps you to inherit the price item pricing from the parent price list if the price item pricing is not available in the price list (assigned to the account, person, or parent person). And, if the price item pricing is not available in the parent price list, the system will search for the price item pricing in the parent's parent price list (i.e. in the grandparent price list) and continue till it reaches the last level in the hierarchy.

In other words, when you define the price list hierarchy and assign the price list to an account or a person, the account or person can avail the price item pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned

price list. However, if the price item pricing is available on both the assigned and parent price lists, the system derives the price item pricing from the assigned price list.


You can define multiple parent price lists for a price list. But, only one parent price list is effective for a particular duration. Two or more price lists can have the same parent price list.


### Procedure

To define the price list hierarchy:


1. Click the **Hierarchy** or **Show All** link in the **Section** pane when you are defining, editing, or copying a price list.

The **Hierarchy** section appears. It contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Price List Effective From Date	Used to specify the date from when the price list inherits pricing from the parent price list.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The parent price list effective from date cannot be later than the parent price list effective to date and earlier than price list effective end date.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating the price list with a parent price list.
Parent Price List Effective To Date	Used to specify the date till when the price list inherits pricing from the parent price list.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The parent price list effective to date cannot be earlier than the parent price list effective from date and later than price list effective end date.	
Parent Price List	Used to specify the parent price list ID to which you want to associate the price list.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price List Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the parent price list, the description of the parent price list appears corresponding to the <b>Parent Price List</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating the price list with a parent price list.

2. Enter the required details in the **Hierarchy** section.
3. If you want to associate the price list with more than one parent price list, click the **Add**  icon corresponding to the parent price list and then repeat step 2.

#### Note:

However, If you want to remove a parent price list from the price list hierarchy, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the parent price list.

You can associate a price list with multiple parent price lists. But, only one parent price list is effective for a particular duration. Also, while associating a price list with a parent price list, you can only specify a price list which is effective during the specified duration.

4. Click **Save**.

The price list hierarchy is defined.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price list	<a href="#">Defining a Price List</a> on page 236
How to edit a price list	<a href="#">Editing a Price List</a> on page 253
How to copy a price list	<a href="#">Copying a Price List</a> on page 246

## **Defining a Characteristic for a Price List**

### **Prerequisites**

To define a characteristic for a price list, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Price List**)

### **Procedure**

To define a characteristic for a price list:

1. Click the **Characteristics** or **Show All** link in the **Section** pane when you are defining, editing, or copying a price list.

The **Characteristics** section appears. It contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price list.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price List</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the price list, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the price list, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristic is defined for the price list.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price list	<a href="#">Defining a Price List</a> on page 236
How to edit a price list	<a href="#">Editing a Price List</a> on page 253
How to copy a price list	<a href="#">Copying a Price List</a> on page 246

### **Associating a Price List with a Division**

You can assign a price list only to those accounts or persons which belong to the division to which the price list is associated. Therefore, you need to associate the price list with appropriate divisions.

#### **Prerequisites**

To associate a price list with a division, you should have:

- Divisions defined in the application

#### **Procedure**

To associate a price list with a division:

1. Click the **Divisions** or **Show All** link in the **Section** pane when you are defining, editing, or copying a price list.

The **Divisions** section appears. It contains the following field in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to indicate the division to which you want to associate the price list.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	

2. Select the required division from the list.
3. If you want to associate the price list with more than one division, click the **Add** (+) icon corresponding to the division and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove the price list from a division, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the division.

4. Click **Save**.

The price list is associated with the division.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can associate a price list with a division using the **Division** screen.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price list	<a href="#">Defining a Price List</a> on page 236
How to edit a price list	<a href="#">Editing a Price List</a> on page 253
How to copy a price list	<a href="#">Copying a Price List</a> on page 246

**Defining Eligibility Criteria for a Price List****Prerequisites**

To define eligibility criteria for a price list, you should have:



- The **Price List Eligibility Criteria** check box selected in the **Parameter Usage** section while defining the parameter





**Procedure**




To define eligibility criteria for a price list:

- Click the **Eligibility** or **Show All** link in the **Section** pane when you are defining, editing, or copying a price list.



The **Eligibility** section appears. It contains the following fields in a grid:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Criteria	On clicking the <b>Add</b> (  ) icon, you can associate eligibility criteria of parameters for the price list.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a parameter eligibility criteria for the price list.
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the eligibility criteria is effective for the price list.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining an eligibility criteria for the price list.
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the eligibility criteria is effective for the price list.	No
Description	Used to specify the description for the eligibility criteria.	Yes
Sequence Number	Used to indicate the order in which the parameter eligibility criteria for the price list should be executed.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you click the <b>Add</b> (  ) icon in the <b>Criteria</b> column corresponding to the eligibility criteria	Yes


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	<p>Used to indicate the parameter (on the left hand side) which is used in the pricing eligibility criteria.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the value for a parameter, the description of the parameter appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter</b> field.</p> <p>The parameter search results displays only those parameters where the <b>Price List Eligibility Criteria</b> check box is selected.</p> <p>This field appears only when you click the <b>Add</b> () icon in the <b>Criteria</b> column corresponding to the eligibility criteria</p>	Yes
Operator	<p>Used to specify the relational operator to define the relation between the parameter name and value.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you click the <b>Add</b> () icon in the <b>Criteria</b> column corresponding to the eligibility criteria</p>	Yes
Parameter Value Type	<p>Used to indicate whether the parameter (on the left hand side) must be compared against another parameter (on the right hand side) or directly against a parameter value. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Parameter</li> <li>Value</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you click the <b>Add</b> () icon in the <b>Criteria</b> column corresponding to the eligibility criteria</p>	Yes


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	<p>Used to indicate the parameter (on the right hand side) against which you want to compare the parameter (on the left hand side).</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On selecting <b>Parameter</b> from the <b>Parameter Value Type</b> column, a <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the value for a parameter, the description of the parameter appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter</b> field.</p> <p>The parameter search results displays only those parameters where the <b>Price List Eligibility Criteria</b> check box is selected.</p> <p>This field appears only when you click the <b>Add</b> () icon in the <b>Criteria</b> column corresponding to the eligibility criteria</p>	Yes
Parameter Value	Used to indicate the parameter value against which you want to compare the parameter (on the left hand side).	
Is True	<p>Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is true (satisfied). The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check Next Condition</b> – Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is False</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is True</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you click the <b>Add</b> () icon in the <b>Criteria</b> column corresponding to the eligibility criteria</p>	Yes




Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Is False	<p>Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is false (not satisfied). The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check Next Condition</b> – Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is False</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is True</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you click the <b>Add</b> (  ) icon in the <b>Criteria</b> column corresponding to the eligibility criteria</p>	Yes
Is Insufficient	<p>Used to indicate what should happen when the data is insufficient. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check Next Condition</b> – Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is False</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is True</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you click the <b>Add</b> (  ) icon in the <b>Criteria</b> column corresponding to the eligibility criteria</p>	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Eligibility** section.
- If you want to define more than one eligibility criteria for the price list, click the **Add** (  ) icon corresponding to the criteria and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove the eligibility criteria, click the **Delete** (  ) icon corresponding to the criteria.

- If you want to define more than one parameter eligibility criteria for the price list, click the **Add** (  ) icon corresponding to the parameter.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove the parameter eligibility criteria from the price list, click the **Delete** (  ) icon corresponding to the parameter.

- Click **Save**.

The eligibility criteria is defined for the price list.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price list	<a href="#">Defining a Price List</a> on page 236
How to edit a price list	<a href="#">Editing a Price List</a> on page 253
How to copy a price list	<a href="#">Copying a Price List</a> on page 246

## Copying a Price List

Instead of creating a price list from scratch, you can create a new price list using an existing price list. This is possible through copying a price list. On copying a price list, the details including the pricing parameters, divisions, characteristics, eligibility criteria, and the assigned price items are copied to the new price list. You can then edit the details, if required.


### Prerequisites

To copy a price list, you should have:

- Price list (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Price list (whose copy you want to create) associated with the division to which the user belongs

### Procedure

To copy a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Price List** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** () icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the price list using which you want to define a new price list.

The **Price List** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price list.
- **Hierarchy** - Used to associate the price list with one or more parent price lists for a specified duration.
- **Divisions** - Used to associate the price list with one or more divisions.
- **Eligibility Criteria** - Used to define one or more eligibility criteria for the price list.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define a list of characteristics (which are applicable across divisions) for the price list.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Description	Used to specify the description for the price list.	Yes
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price list is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.	
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price list is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Type	Used to indicate the type of the price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Promotional</li> <li>Standard</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Standard</b> option is selected.	
Global Price List	Used to Indicate whether the price list is a global price list or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
Availability Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> At present, the availability start date is not used in the price item while assigning a price list to an account or a person. It is available for future use.	
Availability End date	Used to specify the date till when the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The availability end date cannot be earlier than the availability start date.  At present, the availability end date is not used in the price item while assigning a price list to an account or a person. It is available for future use.	
Validity Period (in Days)	Used to specify the period in days for which the price list is valid. It is used to calculate price list assignment validity end date while assigning the price list to an account or a person.	Yes
Status	Used to indicate the status of the price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Active</b> - Used to indicate that the price list is used for billing.</li> <li><b>Proposed</b> - Used to indicate that the price list is used for quotations.</li> <li><b>Template</b> - Used to indicate that the price list is a template price list.</li> </ul>	Yes
Copy Pricing	Used to indicate whether you want to copy the pricing information to the price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All</li> <li>None</li> </ul>	Yes

3. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
4. Add, edit, or remove the parent price list details, if required.
5. Associate or disassociate the price list from the required divisions.
6. Define, edit, or remove eligibility criteria for the price list, if required.
7. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the price list, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

The new price list is defined.

**Note:** The price list ID is generated automatically when the price list is defined.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
How to define the price list hierarchy	<a href="#">Defining the Price List Hierarchy</a> on page 238
How to associate a price list with a division	<a href="#">Associating a Price List with a Division</a> on page 241
How to define eligibility criteria for the price list	<a href="#">Defining Eligibility Criteria for a Price List</a> on page 242
How to associate eligibility criteria of parameter for a price list	<a href="#">Associating Eligibility Criteria of Parameter for a Price List</a>
How to define characteristics for a price list	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Price List</a> on page 240

### **Viewing the Price List Details**

#### **Procedure**

To view the details of a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Price List** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Price List Information** column corresponding to the price list whose details you want to view.

The **Price List** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- [Price List](#) on page 249
  - [Eligibility Criteria](#) on page 250
  - [Price List Price Items](#) on page 233
3. View the basic details, hierarchy, divisions, and characteristics of the price list in the **Price List** zone.
  4. View the eligibility criteria to which the price list is associated in the **Eligibility Criteria** zone.
  5. View the price items that are assigned to the price list in the **Price List Price Items** zone.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Price List</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 249

## Price List (Used for Viewing)

The **Price List** screen allows you to view the details of a price list. It also allows you to edit a price list. It contains the following zones:

- **Price List** - Displays the basic details of the price list.
- **Eligibility Criteria** - Displays the eligibility criteria for the price list.
- **Price List Price Items** - Displays the price items that are assigned to the price list.

### Price List

The **Price List** zone displays the details of the price list. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays basic information about the price list. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Price List ID	Displays the price list ID.
Price List Description	Displays the description for the price list.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price list is effective.
Price List Type	Indicates the type of the price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Promotional</li> <li>• Standard</li> </ul>
Global Price List	Indicates whether the price list is a global price list or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Availability Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person.
Availability End date	Displays the date till when the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person.
Validity Period (in Days)	Displays the period in days for which the price list is valid. It is used to calculate price list assignment validity end date while assigning the price list to an account or a person.
Status	Indicates the status of the price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Active</b> – Indicates that the price list is used for billing.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> – Indicates that the price list is used for quotations.</li> <li>• <b>Template</b> – Indicates that the price list is a template price list.</li> </ul>

- **Hierarchy** - Lists the parent price list from where the price list inherits the price item pricing for a specified duration. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parent Price List	Displays the ID of the parent price list.
Parent Price List Effective From Date	Displays the date from when the price list can inherit pricing from the parent price list.

Column Name	Column Description
Parent Price List Effective To Date	Displays the date till when the price list can inherit pricing from the parent price list.

- **Divisions** - Lists the divisions to which the price list is associated. It contains the following column:

Column Name	Column Description
Division	Displays the division to which the price list is associated.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Division</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective division.

- **Characteristics** - Lists the characteristics that are associated with the price list. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price list.
Characteristic Type	Displays the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value for the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following button:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the price list.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the price list is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Price List screen	<a href="#">Price List (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 249
How to edit a price list	<a href="#">Editing a Price List</a> on page 253

### **Eligibility Criteria**

The **Eligibility Criteria** zone lists the criteria to which the price list is associated. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the eligibility criteria is effective for the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the eligibility criteria is effective for the price list.
Description	Displays the description for the eligibility criteria.
Sequence	Indicates the order in which the price list eligibility criteria should be executed.


Column Name	Column Description
Parameter	Indicates the parameter (on the left hand side) used in the pricing eligibility criteria.
Operator	Displays the relational operator to define the relation between the parameter name and value.
Parameter Value Type	Indicates whether the parameter (on the left hand side) must be compared against another parameter (on the right hand side) or directly against a parameter value.
Parameter	Indicates the parameter (on the right hand side) against which you want to compare the parameter (on the left hand side).
Parameter Value	Indicates the parameter value against which you want to compare the parameter (on the left hand side).
Is True	Indicates what happens when the condition is true (satisfied). The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check Next Condition</b> - Indicates that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is False</b> - Indicates that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is True</b> - Indicates that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>
Is False	Indicates what happens when the condition is false (not satisfied). The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check Next Condition</b> - Indicates that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is False</b> - Indicates that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is True</b> - Indicates that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>
Is Insufficient	Indicates what happens when the data is insufficient. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check Next Condition</b> - Indicates that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is False</b> - Indicates that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is True</b> - Indicates that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Price List screen	<a href="#">Price List (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 249

#### Price List Price Items

The **Price List Price Items** zone lists price items that are assigned to the price list. You will not find any records in this zone if the price list does not have any price items assigned to it. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing	Displays the concatenated string consisting of the price item pricing information and pricing ID which are separated by a comma (,) for the price list.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can view the pricing information of the respective price item.
Pricing Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this column is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item).
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Pricing Status	Indicates the status of pricing for the price item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Inactive</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Template</li> </ul>
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective for the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective for the price list.
Price Assignment Type	Indicates the type of the price item pricing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> <li>• Regular</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Copy	On clicking the <b>Copy</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can define a new price item pricing using the existing price item pricing.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Price Item** and **Effective Start Date**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

### **Related Topics**



For more information on...	See...
How to view price items assigned to a price list	<a href="#">Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List</a> on page 235
How to remove a price item from the price list	<a href="#">Removing a Price Item Pricing from a Price List</a> on page 264
How to view price item pricing for the price list	<a href="#">View Price Item Pricing</a>

## Editing a Price List

### Procedure

To edit a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Price List** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Price List Information** column corresponding to the price list whose details you want to edit.

The **Price List** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Price List** zone.

The **Price List** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price list.
- **Hierarchy** - Used to associate the price list with one or more parent price lists for a specified duration.
- **Divisions** - Used to associate the price list with one or more divisions.
- **Eligibility Criteria** - Used to define one or more eligibility criteria for the price list.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define a list of characteristics (which are applicable across divisions) for the price list.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Description	Used to specify the description for the price list.	Yes
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price list is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The system will not allow you to change the effective start date when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There is a price item assigned to the price list on that date.</li> <li>• The price list is assigned to an account or a person on that date.</li> </ul>	
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price list is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Type	Used to indicate the type of the price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Promotional</li> <li>Standard</li> </ul>	Yes
Global Price List	Used to indicate whether the price list is a global price list or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
Availability Start Date	Used to the specify the date from when the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person.  <b>Note:</b> At present, the availability start date is not used in the product while assigning a price list to an account or a person. It is available for future use.	No
Availability End Date	Used to the specify the date till when the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person.  <b>Note:</b> The availability end date cannot be earlier than the availability start date.  At present, the availability end date is not used in the product while assigning a price list to an account or a person. It is available for future use.	No
Validity Period (in Days)	Used to specify the period in days for which the price list is valid. It is used to calculate price list assignment validity end date while assigning the price list to an account or a person.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Active</b> – Used to indicate that the price list is used for billing. This value appears only when you are editing a proposed price list</li> <li><b>Proposed</b> – Used to indicate that the price list is used for quotations.</li> <li><b>Template</b> – Used to indicate that the price list is a template price list.</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of an <b>Active</b> and a <b>Template</b> price list.	Yes

4. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.

**Note:** By default the **Main** section is displayed.

5. Add, edit or remove parent price list from the price list hierarchy, if required.

- Associate or disassociate the price list from the divisions, if required.

**Note:** You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the **Division** list. If the price list is associated to a division to which you do not have access, then the **Divisions** section is grayed out.

- Define, edit, or remove eligibility criteria from the price list, if required
- Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the price list, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the price list is saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
How to define the price list hierarchy	<a href="#">Defining the Price List Hierarchy</a> on page 238
How to define characteristics for a price list	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Price List</a> on page 240
How to associate a price list with a division	<a href="#">Associating a Price List with a Division</a> on page 241
How to define eligibility criteria for the price list	<a href="#">Defining Eligibility Criteria for a Price List</a> on page 242

## Price List Price Item Pricing

Once a price list is created, you can either assign a price item to the price list and then define pricing for the price item, or you can copy an existing price item pricing and assign it to the price list. The **Price List Price Item Pricing** screen allows you to:

- View and filter the price items that are assigned to the price list
- Search and assign price items to the price list
- Copy a price item pricing and assign it to the price list



This screen consists of the following zones:


- [Price List Price Items](#) on page 255
- [Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing](#) on page 257

### Price List Price Items

The **Price List Price Items** zone lists the price items that are assigned to the price list. You will not find any records in this zone if the price list does not have any price items assigned to it. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing	Displays the concatenated string consisting of the price item pricing information and pricing ID which are separated by a comma (,) for the price list.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can view the pricing information of the respective price item.

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this column is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item).
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Pricing Status	Indicates the status of pricing for the price item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Inactive</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Template</li> </ul>
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective for the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective for the price list.
Price Assignment Type	Indicates the type of the price item pricing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, you can edit the price item pricing from the price list.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can remove the price item pricing from the price list.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> icon appears in this column only when the price list is not yet assigned to any account or person.  This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Price Item** and **Effective Start Date**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a price item pricing from the price list	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing</a>
How to remove a price item pricing from the price list	<a href="#">Removing a Price Item Pricing from a Price List</a> on page 264


## Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing


You can assign a price item or price item bundle to a price list and then define pricing for the price item or price item bundle, or you can copy an existing price item pricing and assign it to a price list. The **Search Price Item** zone allows you to search for a price item pricing which is assigned to an account, person, or a price list. You can then create a new price item pricing using an existing price item pricing through copying the price item pricing. Once you create a copy of an existing price item pricing, the new price item pricing is assigned to the price list. On copying a price item pricing, the pricing details including the price components, eligibility and tiering criteria for each price component, and characteristics are copied to the new price item pricing. You can then edit the details, if required.



The system allows you to create a copy of active, proposed, inactive, rejected, and template price item pricing. Once you create the copy of a template price item pricing, you can save the new price item pricing in either **Active** or **Proposed** status.

The **Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing** zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	<p>Used to indicate whether you want to search price item, pricing assigned to price list, override pricing for an account or a person, pricing assigned to a standard product version or a packaged product version. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Price Item</li> <li>• Price list Pricing</li> <li>• Account Override Pricing</li> <li>• Person Override Pricing</li> <li>• Standard Product Version</li> <li>• Packaged Product Version</li> <li>• Packaged Product Version - Add on Service</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Price Item</b> option is selected.</p>	Yes
Price Item	<p>Used to search a particular price item or price item bundle.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field when you select the <b>Price list Pricing</b>, <b>Account Override Pricing</b>, or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search by</b> list. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.</p>	No
Description	<p>Used to search price items or price item bundles with a particular description.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Global Price List	Used to search price items or price item bundles which can be assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Bundle	Used to indicate whether you want to search for price item bundles. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Price List ID	Used to search pricing of price items or price item bundles which are assigned to a particular price list.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price List Search</b> window appears. This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Effective Start Date	Used to search pricing of price items or price item bundles assigned to price lists which are effective from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> , <b>Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Pricing Status	Used to search pricing of price items or price item bundles with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Draft</li> <li>Inactive</li> <li>Pending in Approval</li> <li>Proposed</li> <li>Rejected</li> <li>Template</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> , <b>Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective End Date	Used to search pricing of price items or price item bundles assigned to price lists which are effective till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> , <b>Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Price Assignment Type	Used to search a particular type of the price item pricing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> <li>• Regular</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> , <b>Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account ID	Used to search pricing of price items or price item bundles which are assigned to a particular account.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears. This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person ID	Used to search pricing of price items or price item bundles which are assigned to a particular person.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Person Search</b> window appears. This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for the pricing of a price item or price item bundle.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The search results include only those price items or price item bundles that are associated with the division to which the price list belongs. It may also include price items or price item bundles that are already assigned to the price list in case those price items or price item bundles match the search criteria.

The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Assign	On clicking the <b>Assign</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can define a new price item pricing.
Price Item Information	Displays details of the price item or price item bundle.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price item or price item bundle.
Copy	On clicking the <b>Copy</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can define a new price item pricing using an existing price item pricing.
<b>Pricing</b>	Displays details of the price item pricing.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price item pricing.</p> <p>You can also perform the following actions on the price item pricing if the <b>Pricing Eligibility</b> check box is selected for the respective price item pricing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add</li> <li>• Edit</li> <li>• Submit for Validation</li> </ul>
Account Information	Indicates the account to which the price item pricing is assigned. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Account Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view or edit the details of the respective account.</p> <p>The account information string appears only when an algorithm defined using the <b>C1-AC-INFO</b> algorithm type is attached to the <b>Account Information</b> system event in the <b>Algorithms</b> tab of the <b>Installation Options – Framework</b> screen.</p>



Column Name	Column Description
Person Information	Indicates the person to which the price item pricing is assigned. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view or edit the details of the respective person.</p> <p>The person information string appears only when an algorithm defined using the <b>PERS-INFO</b> algorithm type is attached to the <b>Person Information</b> system event in the <b>Algorithms</b> tab of the <b>Installation Options – Framework</b> screen.</p>
Price List Information	Indicates the price list to which the price item pricing is assigned.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price List</b> screen appears where you can view or edit the details of the respective price list.</p>
Variance Parameter	Indicates the variance parameter which is used for defining the price item pricing.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b>.</p>
Pricing Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this column is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item or price item bundle).
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b>.</p>
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Status	<p>Indicates the status of the price item pricing. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Inactive</li> <li>• Pending in Approval</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Template</li> </ul>
Rate Schedule	<p>Indicates the rate schedule which is used for defining the price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Rate Schedule</b> screen appears where you can view or edit the details of the respective rate schedule.</p>
Price Assignment Usage	<p>Indicates whether the price item pricing is applicable to all customers or only to new customers. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AC</li> <li>• NC</li> </ul>
Price Assignment Type	<p>Indicates the type of the price item pricing. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> <li>• Regular</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b>.</p>
Price Item	<p>Displays the price item or price item bundle code.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can define the pricing for the respective price item or price item bundle.</p>
Description	Displays the description of the price item or price item bundle.
Global Price List	<p>Indicates whether the price item or price item bundle can be assigned to a global price list. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>
Unit of Measure	Indicates the unit of measure associated with the price item or price item bundle.
Bundle	<p>Indicates whether the price item is a bundle or not. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>

Column Name	Column Description
Owner ID	Displays the ID of the person for whose account the price list is created.
Party ID	Displays the third party ID.
Price List ID	Indicates the price list to which the price item pricing is assigned.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Price Assignment ID	Displays the price assignment ID.
Price Assignment Owner Type Flag	Displays whether price list or party is the owner of the price assignment.
Bundle Type	Indicates the type of the price item bundle. If the price item bundle is available for pricing and billing, the valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Phantom</li> <li>• Ratio</li> <li>• Regular</li> </ul> However, if the price item bundle is available for only pricing and the price item type is <b>Fees</b> then the valid value is <b>Regular</b> .
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Yes</b> option from the <b>Bundle</b> list.
Price Item Type	Indicates the type of the price item or price item bundle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rate</li> <li>• Fees</li> </ul>

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

By default, the **Filter** area is visible. You can hide the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (🗑️) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view price item pricing	<a href="#">View Price Item Pricing</a>
How to assign a price item to a price list	<a href="#">Assigning a Price Item to a Price List</a>
<b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Pricing</a>
How to copy a price item pricing and assign it to a price list	<a href="#">Copying a Price Item Pricing</a>
How to edit a price item pricing	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 388
How to view price items assigned to a price list	<a href="#">Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List</a>
How to edit a price list	<a href="#">Editing a Price List</a> on page 253

### Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List

#### Prerequisites



To view price items assigned to a price list, you should have:

- An algorithm defined using the **C1-PLPINFO** algorithm type and attached to **Pricelist Products Assignment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options – Framework** screen

### Procedure

To view price items assigned to a price list:

- Search for the price list in the **Price List** screen.
- Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
<b>View the price items assigned to the price list in the price list screen</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Broadcast</b>  icon corresponding to the price list whose price items details you want to view.</li> <li>The <b>Price List Price Items</b> zone appears.</li> </ol>
<b>View the price items assigned to the price list in the price list price item pricing screen</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Price List Information</b> column corresponding to the price list whose price items details you want to view.</li> <li>The <b>Price List</b> screen appears.</li> </ol>
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>View</b>  icon in the <b>Price List Pricing</b> column corresponding to the price list whose price items details you want to view.</li> <li>The <b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</li> </ol>

- View the price items that are assigned to the price list in the **Price List Price Items** zone.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Price List Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Price Items</a> on page 233
<b>Price List</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 249
<b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Price Item Pricing</a> on page 255

## Removing a Price Item Pricing from a Price List

### Procedure

To remove a price item from a price list:

- Search for the price list in the **Price List** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon from the **Price List Pricing** column corresponding to the price list from which you want to remove a price item.  
The **Price List Price Item Pricing** screen appears.
- Filter the list in the **Price List Price Items** zone, if required.

- Click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the price item that you want to remove from the price list.

A message appears confirming whether you want to remove the price item from the price list.

**Note:** The **Delete** icon appears in the **Delete** column only when the price list is not yet assigned to any account or person.

- Click **OK**.

The price item is removed from the price list.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234

## **Viewing a Price Item Pricing Details**

### **Procedure**

To view a price item pricing and assignment details:

- Search for the price list in the **Price List** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** (🔍) icon in the **Price List Pricing** column corresponding to the price list whose details you want to view.  
The **Price List Price Item Pricing** screen appears.
- Price assignments effective for the price list appears in the **Price List Price Items** zone.
- Filter the list in the **Price List Price Items** zone, if required.
- Click the link in the **Pricing** column to view the pricing details of the respective price item.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- [Price Item Pricing](#) on page 379
  - [Rate and Price Component Summary](#) on page 382
- View the basic details of price item pricing in the **Price Item Pricing** zone.
  - View the rate components, price components, tiering criteria, and pricing eligibility criteria of the price item pricing in the **Rate and Price Component Summary** zone.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Price Item Pricing</a> on page 255
<b>Price List Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Price Items</a> on page 233
<b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Pricing (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 378

## **Editing a Price Item Pricing of a Price List**

### **Prerequisites**



To edit a price item pricing of a price list, you should have:

- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application

- Rate schedules, rate versions, rate components defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the price item (in case you want to define price item pricing based on those parameters)

### **Procedure**

To edit a price item pricing of a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Price List** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon in the **Price List Pricing** column corresponding to the price list whose details you want to view.  
The **Price List Price Item Pricing** screen appears.
3. Price assignments effective for the price list appears in the **Price List Price Items** zone.
4. Click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the price item pricing whose details you want to edit.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price item pricing.
- **TFM Information** - Used to specify the transaction feed management information that you want to map to the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears in the **Price Item Pricing** screen only when the value for the **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type for **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** is **Pricing and Billing**.


- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the price item pricing.
- **Price Item and Parameter Information** - Used to associate parameters with the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears only when **Price Assignment Type** is **Regular**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item pricing is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.  If you change the effective start and end dates while editing a price item pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during that date range.  This field will be inactive if the price item pricing is already assigned to an account or a person.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price item pricing is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Regular</b> - Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment.</li> <li>• <b>Post Processing</b> - Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account.</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b>  The post processing bill segment is generated when the <b>Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)</b> characteristic is defined for the price item and when the price item is associated with another price item using the <b>Price Item</b> relationship type. </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing - Invoice Based</b> - Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>. </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing - Price Item Based</b> - Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>. </div>	Yes
Pricing Eligibility	<p>Used to select pricing eligibility criteria for price item pricing.</p> <div> <b>Note:</b> This field will be enabled for selection if the checkbox is not selected. If the checkbox appears selected then this field will be in read-only mode. </div>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Draft</b> - Indicates that the price assignment is created as a draft.</li> <li>• <b>Active</b> - Indicates that the price assignment is used for billing.</li> <li>• <b>Inactive</b> - Indicates that the price assignment is no longer used for billing.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> - Indicates that the price assignment is to be used for quotations.</li> <li>• <b>Rejected</b> - Indicates that the price assignment is rejected and should not be used for quotations.</li> <li>• <b>Template</b> - Indicates that the price assignment is a template price list.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If a price assignment is in <b>Active</b> status, you can change its status to <b>Inactive</b>. If a price assignment is in <b>Draft</b> status, you cannot change its status to <b>Proposed</b>.</p>	Yes
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.	Yes
Rate Schedule	<p>Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Rate schedules control how the bills for the price item will be calculated. The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> window appears.</p>	Yes
Pricing Rule Type	<p>Used to indicate the rule type which is used for price item pricing. The valid value is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two-Dimensional</li> </ul>	<p>Yes (Conditional)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are editing a two-dimensional pricing rule.</p>



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, <b>Yes</b> is selected.	
Price Assignment Usage	Used to indicate whether the price item pricing is applicable to all customers or only to new customers. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Customers</li> <li>• New Customers</li> </ul>	Yes
Pricing Frequency	Used to indicate pricing frequency for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> is defined as <b>Only Pricing</b> and <b>Price Item Type</b> is defined as <b>Fees</b> .	

5. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
6. Edit the TFM Information for the price item pricing, if required.
7. Define, edit or remove characteristics from the price item pricing, if required.
8. Define, edit or remove parameters from the price item pricing, if required.
9. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the price item pricing are saved.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Price Item Pricing</a> on page 255
<b>Price List Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Price Items</a> on page 233
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
How to define a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 383
How to define characteristics for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 341
How to define parameters for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 342
How to define TFM Information in a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 343

## **Assigning a Price Item to a Price List**

### **Prerequisites**



To assign a price item to a price list, you should have:

- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Rate schedules, rate versions, and rate components defined in the application

- Parameters associated with the price item (in case you want to define price item pricing based on multiple parameters)

### Procedure

To assign a price item to a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Price List** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon in the **Price List Pricing** column corresponding to the price list whose details you want to view.  
The **Price List Price Item Pricing** screen appears.
3. Search for the price item that you want to assign to the price list in the **Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing** zone by selecting the **Price Item** option from the **Search By** list.
4. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Assign** () icon in the **Assign** column corresponding to the price item that you want to assign to the price list.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price item pricing.
- TFM Information** - Used to specify the transaction feed management information that you want to map to the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears in the **Price Item Pricing** screen only when the value for the **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type for **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** field is **Pricing and Billing**.


- Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the price item pricing.
- Price Item and Parameter Information** - Used to associate parameters with the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears only when **Price Assignment Type** is **Processing**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item pricing is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current system date appears in this field. The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price item pricing is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Regular</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment.</li> <li>• <b>Post Processing</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The post processing bill segment is generated when the <b>Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)</b> characteristic is defined for the price item and when the price item is associated with another price item using the <b>Price Item</b> relationship type.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Invoice Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Price Item Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> </div>	Yes
Pricing Eligibility	Used to indicate whether you want to use the price item for pricing or not.	No
Pricing Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Draft</b> - Used to indicate that the price assignment is created as a draft.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> - Used to indicate that the price assignment is used for quotations.</li> <li>• <b>Template</b> - Used to indicate that the price assignment is a template price list.</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance based on which you want to define the price item pricing.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .	
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.	Yes
Rate Schedule	Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining price item pricing.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Rate schedules control how the bills for the price item will be calculated.  The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> window appears.	
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the rule type which is used for price item pricing. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Two-Dimensional</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a two-dimensional pricing rule.
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
Pricing Frequency	Used to indicate pricing frequency for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> is defined as <b>Only Pricing</b> and <b>Price Item Type</b> is defined as <b>Fees</b> .	
Advance Pricing	This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> field is set to <b>Pricing</b> , <b>Price Item Type</b> field is set to <b>Fees</b> and <b>Price Assignment Type</b> field is set to <b>Post Processing</b> . The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Usage	Used to indicate whether the price item pricing is applicable to all customers or only to new customers. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All Customers</li> <li>New Customers</li> </ul>	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define TFM Information for the price item pricing, if required.
- Define characteristics for the price item pricing, if required.
- Define parameters for the price item pricing, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The pricing is defined for the price item and assigned to the price list.

**Note:** A bundle cannot be assigned if its child price items are already assigned to a price list and vice versa, in the same date range.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Price Item Pricing</a> on page 255
<b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</a> on page 257
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
How to define a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 383
How to define characteristics for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 341
How to define parameters for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 342
How to define TFM Information in a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 343

### Copying a Price Item Pricing

Instead of creating a price item pricing from scratch, you can create a new price item pricing using an existing price item pricing. This is possible through copying a price item pricing. On copying a price item pricing, the details including the transaction feed management information, rate schedules, rate components, price components, tiering criteria, pricing eligibility criteria, parameters, and characteristics are copied to the new price item pricing. You can then edit the details, if required.

### Prerequisites

To copy a price item pricing, you should have:

- Price item pricing (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Rate schedules, rate versions, and rate components defined in the application
- Tiering criteria defined in the application
- Tiering setup for the rate components defined in the application

- Pricing eligibility defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the price item (in case you want to define price item pricing based on multiple parameters)

### **Procedure**

To copy a price item pricing:

1. Access the **Price List Price Item Pricing** screen.
2. In the **Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing** zone, select the required option from the **Search By** list. Do either of the following:


<b>If you want to...</b>	<b>Then...</b>
Copy a price item pricing that is assigned to a price list	Select <b>Price List Pricing</b> from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Copy a price item pricing that is assigned to an account	Select <b>Account Override Pricing</b> from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Copy a price item pricing that is assigned to a person	Select <b>Person Override Pricing</b> from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Copy a price item pricing that is assigned to a standard product version	Select <b>Standard Product Version</b> from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Copy a price item pricing that is assigned to a packaged product version	Select <b>Packaged Product Version</b> from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Copy a price item pricing that is assigned to a packaged product version - add on service	Select <b>Packaged Product Version - Add on Service</b> from the <b>Search By</b> list.

The fields in the **Search Criteria** section change depending on the option that you select from the **Search By** list.

3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing** zone to search for the price item pricing whose copy you want to create.
4. Click **Search**.

A list of price assignments that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

5.

In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** () icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the price item pricing whose copy you want to create and assign to the price list.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price item pricing.
- **TFM Information** - Used to specify the transaction feed management information that you want to map to the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears in the **Price Item Pricing** screen only when the value for the **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type for **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** is **Pricing and Billing**.

- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the price item pricing.
- **Price Item and Parameter Information** - Used to associate parameters with the price item pricing.


**Note:** This section appears only when **Price Assignment Type** is **Processing**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item pricing is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current system date appears in this field. The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price item pricing is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Regular</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment.</li> <li>• <b>Post Processing</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The post processing bill segment is generated when the <b>Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)</b> characteristic is defined for the price item and when the price item is associated with another price item using the <b>Price Item</b> relationship type.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Invoice Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Price Item Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> </div>	Yes
Pricing Eligibility	Used to indicate whether you want to use the price item for pricing or not.	No
Pricing Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Draft</b> - Used to indicate that the price assignment is created as a draft.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> - Used to indicate that the price assignment is used for quotations.</li> <li>• <b>Template</b> - Used to indicate that the price assignment is a template price list.</li> </ul>	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance based on which you want to define the price item pricing.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .	
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.	Yes
Rate Schedule	Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining price item pricing.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Rate schedules control how the bills for the price item will be calculated.  The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> window appears.	
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the rule type which is used for price item pricing. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Two-Dimensional</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a two-dimensional pricing rule.
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
Pricing Frequency	Used to indicate pricing frequency for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> is defined as <b>Only Pricing</b> and <b>Price Item Type</b> is defined as <b>Fees</b> .	
Advance Pricing	This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> field is set to <b>Pricing</b> , <b>Price Item Type</b> field is set to <b>Fees</b> and <b>Price Assignment Type</b> field is set to <b>Post Processing</b> . The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Usage	Used to indicate whether the price item pricing is applicable to all customers or only to new customers. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All Customers</li> <li>New Customers</li> </ul>	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define or edit TFM Information for the price item pricing, if required.
- Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the price item pricing, if required.
- Define, edit, or remove parameters from the price item pricing, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The price item pricing is defined and assigned to the respective price list.

**Note:**

The **Submit** button appears only when the **Pricing Status** is **Draft**.

The **Edit Price Components** button appears only when you are copying a price item pricing which is in the **Active**, **Proposed**, or **Template** status and which is not past dated. If the approval workflow is on, then the **Edit Price Components** button appears when you are editing a **Proposed** and **Template** price item pricing which is already approved.

A bundle cannot be assigned if its child price items are already assigned to a price list and vice versa, in the same date range.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can copy a price item pricing by clicking the **Copy** () icon from the **Copy** column corresponding to the price item pricing in the **Price List Price Items** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Price List Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Price Items</a> on page 233
<b>Price List</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 249
<b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Price Item Pricing</a> on page 255

## Price List Assignment

Once a price list is defined, you can assign it to accounts or persons to indicate the prices that will be charged for the price items or services offered to the accounts or persons. You can assign multiple price lists to an account or a person along with the priority or order in which the pricing should be considered. You can also define whether the account or person can avail the price item pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. In other words, you can define whether the account or person can inherit the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy.


For example, suppose you have PL1 (with priority 10) and PL2 (with priority 20) assigned to an account or a person. While determining pricing for a price item, the system will search for the price item pricing in PL1. If the system does

not find the price item pricing in PL1, it will search for the price item pricing in PL2. The system will behave in this manner only when the price list inheritance for PL1 is set to **No** during the price list assignment.

If the price list inheritance while assigning PL1 and PL2 to an account or a person is set to **Yes**, the system will search for the price item pricing in PL1. If the system does not find the price item pricing in PL1, it will search for the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy defined for PL1. However, if the system does not find the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy of PL1, it will then search for the price item pricing in PL2 (assigned to the account or person with priority 20). If the system still does not find the price item pricing in PL2, it will search for the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy defined for PL2.

The **Price List Assignment** screen allows you to search and assign a price list to an account or a person. It also allows you to view the price lists that are already assigned to an account or a person. It contains the following zones:

- [Price List Assignments](#) on page 279
- [Price List Price Items](#) on page 281


**Note:** By default, the **Price List Price Items** zone does not appear in the **Price List Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a price list in the **Price List Assignments** zone.

- [Search Price List for Assignment](#)

## Price List Assignments

The **Price List Assignments** zone allows you to search, view, edit, or filter price lists that are currently assigned to the account or person. You can also search for the price lists assigned to the account or person which are either inactive or expired. You will not find any records in this zone if the account or person does not have any price lists assigned to it. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for the current, inactive, or historical price list assignments. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Current Price List Assignments</li> <li>• Inactive Price List Assignments</li> <li>• Historical Price List Assignments</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Current Price List Assignments</b> option is selected.</p>	Yes
Price List ID	Used to search a particular price list assigned to an account or a person. <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price List ID</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price List Search</b> window appears.</p>	No
Price List Description	Used to search price list assigned to an account or a person having a particular description.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to search price lists which are assigned to the account or person from a particular date.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective End Date	Used to search price lists which are assigned to the account or person till a particular date.	No
Assignment Status	<p>Used to search price list assignments with a particular status. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Inactive</b> option is not available in the <b>Assignment Status</b> list when you have selected the <b>Current Price List Assignments</b> or <b>Historical Price List Assignments</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p> <p>This field is disabled, and by default, the <b>Inactive</b> option is selected when you select the <b>Inactive Price List Assignments</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Price List Inheritance	<p>Used to search price list assignments where the account or person inherits price item pricing from the price list hierarchy. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No</li> <li>• Yes</li> </ul>	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for price list assignments.

By default, the **Filter** area is visible. You can hide the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (  ) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price List Information	<p>Displays information about the price list which is assigned to the account or person.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price List</b> screen appears with the details of the respective price list.</p>
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is assigned to the account or person.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price list is assigned to the account or person.
Priority	Indicates the order in which the assigned price list must be considered while determining the price item pricing for the account or person.

Column Name	Column Description
Assignment Status	Indicates the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> </ul>
Price List Inheritance	Indicates whether the account or person can avail the price item pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the assigned price list. In other words, it indicates whether the account or person can inherit the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (✎) icon, the <b>Price List Assignment</b> screen appears where you can edit the price list assignment details.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

On clicking the **Broadcast** (📡) icon corresponding to the assigned price list, the **Price List Price Items** zone appears where you can view the price items assigned to the price list.


#### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
<b>Price List Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Price Items</a> on page 255
How to view price items assigned to the price list	<a href="#">Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List of an Account or a Person</a> on page 288
How to edit the price list assignment details of an account	<a href="#">Editing the Price List Assignment Details of an Account</a> on page 296
How to edit the price list assignment details of a person	<a href="#">Editing the Price List Assignment Details of a Person</a> on page 299
How to view price lists assigned to an account	<a href="#">Viewing Price Lists Assigned to an Account</a> on page 285
How to view price lists assigned to a person	<a href="#">Viewing Price Lists Assigned to a Person</a> on page 286


#### **Price List Price Items**

The **Price List Price Items** zone lists the price items that are assigned to the price list. You will not find any records in this zone if the price list does not have any price items assigned to it. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing	Displays the concatenated string consisting of the price item pricing information and pricing ID which are separated by a comma (,) for the price list. <div> <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can view the pricing information of the respective price item. </div>

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this column is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item).
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Pricing Status	Indicates the status of pricing for the price item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Inactive</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Template</li> </ul>
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective for the price list.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective for the price list.
Price Assignment Type	Indicates the type of the price assignment for price item pricing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Copy	On clicking the <b>Copy</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can define a new price item pricing using the existing price item pricing.

By default, the **Price List Price Items** zone does not appear in the **Price List Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the assigned price list in the **Price List Assignments** zone.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Price Item** and **Effective Start Date**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filter** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view price items assigned to a price list	<a href="#">Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List of an Account or a Person</a> on page 288

## Search Price List for Assignment

The **Search Price List for Assignment** zone allows you to search for a price list that you want to assign to the account or person. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search against all price lists or against those price lists which are already assigned to an account or a person. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Price List</li> <li>• Assigned Price List</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Price List</b> option is selected.	
Price List ID	Used to search a particular price list.	No
Price List Description	Used to search price lists with a particular description.	No
Effective Start Date	If you have selected the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list, this field is used to search price lists which are effective from a particular date onwards. However, if you have selected the <b>Assigned Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list, this field is used to search price lists which are assigned to an account or a person from a particular date onwards.	No
Effective End Date	If you have selected the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list, this field is used to search price lists which are effective till a particular date. However, if you have selected the <b>Assigned Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list, this field is used to search price lists which are assigned to an account or a person till a particular date.	No
Account ID	Used to search price lists assigned to a particular account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you have selected the <b>Assigned Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person ID	Used to search price lists assigned to a particular person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you have selected the <b>Assigned Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to search price lists with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Proposed</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you have selected the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Price List Type	Used to search a particular type of price lists. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Promotional</li> <li>• Standard</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you have selected the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Only Eligible Price Lists	Used to search only those price lists which are eligible for the account or person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you have selected the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Eligibility Date	Used to search price lists which are eligible for the account or person from a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you have selected the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.  By default, the current date appears in this field when the <b>Only Eligible Price Lists</b> option check box is selected. You can change the value, if required.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price list.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The search results include only those price lists that are associated with the division to which the account or person belongs. It may also include price lists that are already assigned to the account or person in case those price lists match the search criteria.

The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Assign	On clicking the <b>Assign</b>  icon, the <b>Price List Assignment</b> screen appears where you can assign the price list to the account or person.



Column Name	Column Description
Price List Information	Displays the concatenated string consisting of the price list ID and price list information separated by a comma (,).
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price List</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price list.
Account Information	Displays the information about the account.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.
Person Information	Displays the information about the person.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.
Effective Start Date	If you have selected the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list, the date from when the price list is effective appears in this column. However, if you have selected the <b>Assigned Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list, the date from when the price list is assigned to the account or person appears in this column.
Effective End Date	If you have selected the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list, the date till when the price list is effective appears in this column. However, if you have selected the <b>Assigned Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list, the date till when the price list is assigned to the account or person appears in this column.
Availability Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person.
Availability End Date	Displays the date till when the price list is available for assignment to an account or a person.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to assign a price list to an account	<a href="#">Assigning a Price List to an Account</a> on page 289
How to assign a price list to a person	<a href="#">Assigning a Price List to a Person</a> on page 292

## Viewing Price Lists Assigned to an Account

### Procedure

To view the price lists assigned to an account:


1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.

A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignment** menu option.

The **Price List Assignment** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- **Price List Assignments** - Lists the price lists that are already assigned to the account.
- **Price List Price Items** - Lists the price items that are assigned to the price list.

**Note:** By default, the **Price List Price Items** zone does not appear in the **Price List Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a price list in the **Price List Assignments** zone.

- **Search Price List for Assignment** - Enables you to search for a price list that you want to assign to the account.

4. Do either of the following:

If...	Then
If you want to view the price lists which are currently assigned to an account	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ensure that the <b>Current Price List Assignments</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>2. Enter the required search criteria and then click <b>Search</b>.</li> </ol> <p>The price lists which are currently assigned to the account appears in the search results.</p>
If you want to view the price lists assigned to an account which are inactive	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the <b>Inactive Price List Assignments</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>2. Enter the required search criteria and then click <b>Search</b>.</li> </ol> <p>The price lists assigned to the account which are inactive appears in the search results.</p>
If you want to view the price lists assigned to an account which are expired	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the <b>Historical Price List Assignments</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>2. Enter the required search criteria and then click <b>Search</b>.</li> </ol> <p>The price lists assigned to the account which are expired appears in the search results.</p>

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
<b>Price List Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Assignment</a> on page 278
<b>Price List Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Assignments</a> on page 279

### **Viewing Price Lists Assigned to a Person**

#### **Procedure**

To view the price lists assigned to a person:

1. Search for the person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.


2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignment** menu option.

The **Price List Assignment** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- **Price List Assignments** - Lists the price lists that are already assigned to the person.
- **Price List Price Items** - Lists the price items that are assigned to the price list.

**Note:** By default, the **Price List Price Items** zone does not appear in the **Price List Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a price list in the **Price List Assignments** zone.

- **Search Price List for Assignment** - Enables you to search for a price list that you want to assign to the person.

4. Do either of the following:

If...	Then
If you want to view the price lists which are currently assigned to a person	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ensure that the <b>Current Price List Assignments</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>2. Enter the required search criteria and then click <b>Search</b>.</li> </ol> <p>The price lists which are currently assigned to the person appears in the search results.</p>
If you want to view the price lists assigned to a person which are inactive	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the <b>Inactive Price List Assignments</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>2. Enter the required search criteria and then click <b>Search</b>.</li> </ol> <p>The price lists assigned to the person which are inactive appears in the search results.</p>
If you want to view the price lists assigned to a person which are expired	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the <b>Historical Price List Assignments</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>2. Enter the required search criteria and then click <b>Search</b>.</li> </ol> <p>The price lists assigned to the person which are expired appears in the search results.</p>

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
<b>Price List Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Assignment</a> on page 278

For more information on...	See...
Price List Assignments zone	<a href="#">Price List Assignments</a> on page 279

## Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List of an Account or a Person

### Prerequisites





To view the price items assigned to a price list of an account or a person, you should have:

- An algorithm defined using the **C1-PLPINFO** algorithm type and attached to **Pricelist Products Assignment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options – Framework** screen

### Procedure

To view the price items assigned to a price list of an account or a person:

- Do either of the following:

If you want to view...	Then...
Price items assigned to the price list of an account	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Search for the account in the <b>Customer 360° View</b> screen.</li> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Show Context Menu</b> () icon corresponding to the account whose <i>details</i> you want to view. A menu appears.</li> <li>Click the <b>Go To Price List Assignment</b> menu option. The <b>Price List Assignment</b> screen appears.</li> <li>In the <b>Price List Assignments</b> zone, click the <b>Broadcast</b> () icon corresponding to the assigned price list whose price items you want to view.</li> </ol>
Price items assigned to the price list of a person	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Search for the person in the <b>Customer 360° View</b> screen.</li> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Show Context Menu</b> () icon corresponding to the person whose <i>details</i> you want to view. A menu appears.</li> <li>Click the <b>Go To Price List Assignment</b> menu option. The <b>Price List Assignment</b> screen appears.</li> <li>In the <b>Price List Assignments</b> zone, click the <b>Broadcast</b> () icon corresponding to the assigned price list whose price items you want to view.</li> </ol>

The **Price List Price Items** zone appears.

- View the price items that are assigned to the price list in the **Price List Price Items** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
<b>Price List Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Assignment</a> on page 278
<b>Price List Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Assignments</a> on page 279
<b>Price List Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Price Items</a> on page 281

## Assigning a Price List to an Account


### Prerequisites

To assign a price list to an account, you should have:

- Price list defined in the application
- Price list associated with the division to which the account belongs

### Procedure


To assign a price list to an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the account to which you want to assign a price list.  
A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignment** menu option.

The **Price List Assignment** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- **Price List Assignments** - Lists the price lists that are already assigned to the account.
- **Price List Price Items** - Lists the price items that are assigned to the price list.

**Note:** By default, the **Price List Price Items** zone does not appear in the **Price List Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a price list in the **Price List Assignments** zone.

- **Search Price List for Assignment** - Enables you to search for a price list that you want to assign to the account.
4. In the **Search Price List for Assignment** zone, select the **Price List** or **Assigned Price List** option from the **Search By** list depending on whether you want to search against all price lists or against those price lists that are already assigned to an account.
  5. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Price List for Assignment** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.


6. Click **Search**.

A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Note:**

The search results include only those price lists that are associated with the division to which the account belongs. It may also include price lists that are already assigned to the account in case those price lists match the search criteria.

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Assign** () icon corresponding to the price list that you want to assign to the account.

The **Price List Assignment** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** - Used to specify basic information while assigning the price list to the account.
- Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the price list assignment.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Information	Indicates the account to which you want to assign the price list.	Not applicable
Price List Information	Displays information about the price list that you want to assign to the account.	Not applicable
Effective Date	<div>           Start           <div>             Used to specify the date from when you want to assign the price list to the account.             <div> <b>Note:</b> The price list assignment start date cannot be earlier than the price list effective start date or later than the price list effective end date.               </div> </div> </div>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)										
Effective End Date	<p>Used to specify the date till when you want to assign the price list to the account.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.</p> <p>If the validity period is specified for the price list, the price list assignment end date should be earlier than or equal to the following whichever is earlier:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Price list assignment validity end date (which is price list assignment start date + validity period)</li><li>• Price list effective end date</li></ul> <p>Let us understand this with the help of the following example:</p> <table><tr><td><b>Price List Effective Start Date</b></td><td>01-Jan-2015</td></tr><tr><td><b>Price List Effective End Date</b></td><td>31-Jan-2015</td></tr><tr><td><b>Validity Period</b></td><td>15 Days</td></tr><tr><td><b>Price List Assignment Start Date</b></td><td>15-Jan-2015</td></tr><tr><td><b>Price List Assignment Validity End Date</b></td><td>30-Jan-2015 (i.e. 15-Jan-2015 + 15 Days)</td></tr></table> <p>In the above example, the price list assignment end date must be earlier than or equal to the price list assignment validity end date because the price list assignment validity end date is earlier than the price list effective end date.</p>	<b>Price List Effective Start Date</b>	01-Jan-2015	<b>Price List Effective End Date</b>	31-Jan-2015	<b>Validity Period</b>	15 Days	<b>Price List Assignment Start Date</b>	15-Jan-2015	<b>Price List Assignment Validity End Date</b>	30-Jan-2015 (i.e. 15-Jan-2015 + 15 Days)	No
<b>Price List Effective Start Date</b>	01-Jan-2015											
<b>Price List Effective End Date</b>	31-Jan-2015											
<b>Validity Period</b>	15 Days											
<b>Price List Assignment Start Date</b>	15-Jan-2015											
<b>Price List Assignment Validity End Date</b>	30-Jan-2015 (i.e. 15-Jan-2015 + 15 Days)											
Priority	Used to specify the order in which the price list should be considered while determining the price item pricing for the account.	Yes										
Price List Inheritance	<p>Used to indicate whether the account can avail the price item pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the price list. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Yes</b> – Used to indicate that the account can inherit the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy.</li><li>• <b>No</b> – Used to indicate that the account cannot inherit the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy.</li></ul>	Yes										

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Assignment Status	Used to indicate the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Active</b> - Used to indicate that you want to use the price item pricing on the price list for billing.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> - Used to indicate that you want to use the price item pricing on the price list for quotations.</li> </ul>	Yes

8. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
9. Define a list of characteristics for the price list assignment, if required.
10. Click **Save**.

The price list is assigned to the account.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
<b>Price List Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Assignment</a> on page 278
<b>Search Price List for Assignment</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price List for Assignment</a> on page 283
How to define characteristics for a price list assignment	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment</a> on page 295

## **Assigning a Price List to a Person**


### **Prerequisites**

To assign a price list to a person, you should have:

- Price list defined in the application
- Price list associated with the division to which the person belongs


### **Procedure**

To assign a price list to a person:

1. Search for the person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the person to whom you want to assign a price list.  
A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignment** menu option.

The **Price List Assignment** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- **Price List Assignments** - Lists the price lists that are already assigned to the person.
- **Price List Price Items** - Lists the price items that are assigned to the price list.

**Note:** By default, the **Price List Price Items** zone does not appear in the **Price List Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a price list in the **Price List Assignments** zone.

- **Search Price List for Assignment** - Enables you to search for a price list that you want to assign to the person.



4. In the **Search Price List for Assignment** zone, select the **Price List** or **Assigned Price List** option from the **Search By** list depending on whether you want to search against all price lists or against those price lists which are already assigned to a person.
5. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Price List for Assignment** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.


6. Click **Search**.

A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Note:**

The search results include only those price lists that are associated with the division to which the person belongs. It may also include price lists that are already assigned to the person in case those price lists match the search criteria.

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

7. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Assign** () icon corresponding to the price list that you want to assign to the person.

The **Price List Assignment** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic information while assigning the price list to the person.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the price list assignment.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Information	Indicates the person to whom you want to assign the price list.	Not applicable
Price List Information	Displays information about the price list that you want to assign to the person.	Not applicable
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when you want to assign the price list to the person.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The price list assignment start date cannot be earlier than the price list effective start date or later than the price list effective end date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)										
Effective End Date	<p>Used to specify the date till when you want to assign the price list to the person.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.</p> <p>If the validity period is specified for the price list, the price list assignment end date should be earlier than or equal to the following whichever is earlier:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Price list assignment validity end date (which is price list assignment start date + validity period)</li><li>Price list effective end date</li></ul> <p>Let us understand this with the help of the following example:</p> <table><tr><td><b>Price List Effective Start Date</b></td><td>01-Jan-2015</td></tr><tr><td><b>Price List Effective End Date</b></td><td>31-Jan-2015</td></tr><tr><td><b>Validity Period</b></td><td>15 Days</td></tr><tr><td><b>Price List Assignment Start Date</b></td><td>15-Jan-2015</td></tr><tr><td><b>Price List Assignment Validity End Date</b></td><td>30-Jan-2015 (i.e. 15-Jan-2015 + 15 Days)</td></tr></table> <p>In the above example, the price list assignment end date must be earlier than or equal to the price list assignment validity end date because the price list assignment validity end date is earlier than the price list effective end date.</p>	<b>Price List Effective Start Date</b>	01-Jan-2015	<b>Price List Effective End Date</b>	31-Jan-2015	<b>Validity Period</b>	15 Days	<b>Price List Assignment Start Date</b>	15-Jan-2015	<b>Price List Assignment Validity End Date</b>	30-Jan-2015 (i.e. 15-Jan-2015 + 15 Days)	No
<b>Price List Effective Start Date</b>	01-Jan-2015											
<b>Price List Effective End Date</b>	31-Jan-2015											
<b>Validity Period</b>	15 Days											
<b>Price List Assignment Start Date</b>	15-Jan-2015											
<b>Price List Assignment Validity End Date</b>	30-Jan-2015 (i.e. 15-Jan-2015 + 15 Days)											
Priority	Used to specify the order in which the price list should be considered while determining the price item pricing for the person.	Yes										
Price List Inheritance	<p>Used to indicate whether the person can avail the price item pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the price list. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Yes</b> - Used to indicate that the person can inherit the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy.</li><li><b>No</b> - Used to indicate that the person cannot inherit the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy.</li></ul>	Yes										

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Assignment Status	Used to indicate the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Active</b> - Used to indicate that you want to use the price item pricing on the price list for billing.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> - Used to indicate that you want to use the price item pricing on the price list for quotations.</li> </ul>	Yes

8. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
9. Define a list of characteristics for the price list assignment, if required.
10. Click **Save**.

The price list is assigned to the person.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
<b>Price List Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Assignment</a> on page 278
<b>Search Price List for Assignment</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price List for Assignment</a> on page 283
How to define characteristics for a price list assignment	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment</a>

## **Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment**

### **Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a price list assignment, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Price List Assignment**)


### **Procedure**


To define characteristics for a price list assignment:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing the price list assignment details.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price list assignment.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list assignment.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price List Assignment</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list assignment.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list assignment.</p>

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the price list assignment, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the price list assignment, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the price list assignment.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to assign a price list to an account	<a href="#">Assigning a Price List to an Account</a> on page 289
How to assign a price list to a person	<a href="#">Assigning a Price List to a Person</a> on page 292
How to edit the price list assignment details of an account	<a href="#">Editing the Price List Assignment Details of an Account</a> on page 296
How to edit the price list assignment details of a person	<a href="#">Editing the Price List Assignment Details of a Person</a> on page 299

## **Editing the Price List Assignment Details of an Account**

### Procedure


To edit the price list assignment details of an account:

- Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to edit.  
A menu appears.
- Click the **Go To Price List Assignment** menu option.

The **Price List Assignment** screen appears. It contains the following zones:



- Price List Assignments** - Lists the price lists that are already assigned to the account.

- **Price List Price Items** - Lists the price items that are assigned to the price list.

**Note:** By default, the **Price List Price Items** zone does not appear in the **Price List Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a price list in the **Price List Assignments** zone.

- **Search Price List for Assignment** - Enables you to search for a price list that you want to assign to the account.

4. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Edit the details of the price list assignment which is currently effective	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the <b>Current Price List Assignments</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>2. Enter the required search criteria and then click <b>Search</b>.  The price lists which are currently assigned to the account appears in the search results.</li> <li>3. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Edit</b>  icon in the <b>Edit</b> column corresponding to the price list whose assignment details you want to edit.</li> </ol>
Edit the details of the price list assignment which is expired	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the <b>Historical Price List Assignments</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>2. Enter the required search criteria and then click <b>Search</b>.  The price lists assigned to the account which are expired appears in the search results.</li> <li>3. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Edit</b>  icon in the <b>Edit</b> column corresponding to the price list whose assignment details you want to edit.</li> </ol>

The **Price List Assignment** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic information while assigning the price list to the account.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the price list assignment.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Information	Indicates the account whose price list assignment details you want to edit.	Not applicable
Price List Information	Displays the information about the price list.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)										
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is assigned to the account.	Not applicable										
Effective End Date	<div>Used to specify the date till when you want to assign the price list to the account.</div> <div><b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date. If the validity period is specified for the price list, the price list assignment end date should be earlier than or equal to the following whichever is earlier:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Price list assignment validity end date (which is price list assignment start date + validity period)</li><li>Price list effective end date</li></ul>Let us understand this with the help of the following example:</div> <table><tr><td>Price List Effective Start Date</td><td>01-Jan-2015</td></tr><tr><td>Price List Effective End Date</td><td>31-Jan-2015</td></tr><tr><td>Validity Period</td><td>15 Days</td></tr><tr><td>Price List Assignment Start Date</td><td>15-Jan-2015</td></tr><tr><td>Price List Assignment Validity End Date</td><td>30-Jan-2015 (i.e. 15-Jan-2015 + 15 Days)</td></tr></table> <div>In the above example, the price list assignment end date must be earlier than or equal to the price list assignment validity end date because the price list assignment validity end date is earlier than the price list effective end date.</div>	Price List Effective Start Date	01-Jan-2015	Price List Effective End Date	31-Jan-2015	Validity Period	15 Days	Price List Assignment Start Date	15-Jan-2015	Price List Assignment Validity End Date	30-Jan-2015 (i.e. 15-Jan-2015 + 15 Days)	No
Price List Effective Start Date	01-Jan-2015											
Price List Effective End Date	31-Jan-2015											
Validity Period	15 Days											
Price List Assignment Start Date	15-Jan-2015											
Price List Assignment Validity End Date	30-Jan-2015 (i.e. 15-Jan-2015 + 15 Days)											
Priority	Used to specify the order in which the price list should be considered while determining the price item pricing for the account.	Yes										
Price List Inheritance	<div>Used to indicate whether the account can avail the price item pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the price list. The valid values are:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Yes</b> – Used to indicate that the account can inherit the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy.</li><li><b>No</b> – Used to indicate that the account cannot inherit the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy.</li></ul>	Yes										

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Assignment Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Active</b> - Used to indicate that you want to use the price item pricing on the price list for billing. This value appears only when you are editing an active and proposed price list assignment.</li> <li>• <b>Inactive</b> - Used to indicate that you no longer want to use the price list assignment. This value appears only when you are editing an active price list assignment.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> - Used to indicate that you want to use the price item pricing on the price list for quotations. This value appears only when you are editing a proposed price list assignment.</li> <li>• <b>Rejected</b> - Used to indicate that you want to reject the price list assignment. This value appears only when you are editing a proposed price list assignment.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a rejected price list assignment.</p>	Yes

5. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the price list assignment, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the price list assignment are saved.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
<b>Price List Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Assignment</a> on page 278
<b>Price List Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Assignments</a> on page 279
How to define characteristics for a price list assignment	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment</a> on page 295

### Editing the Price List Assignment Details of a Person

#### Procedure

To edit the price list assignment details of a person:

1. Search for the person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to edit.

A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Price List Assignment** menu option.

The **Price List Assignment** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- **Price List Assignments** - Lists the price lists that are already assigned to the person.

- **Price List Price Items** - Lists the price items that are assigned to the price list.
- **Search Price List for Assignment** - Enables you to search for a price list that you want to assign to the person.

4. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Edit the details of the price list assignment which is currently effective	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the <b>Current Price List Assignments</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>2. Enter the required search criteria and then click <b>Search</b>.  The price lists which are currently assigned to the person appears in the search results.</li> <li>3. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Edit</b> (✎) icon in the <b>Edit</b> column corresponding to the price list whose assignment details you want to edit.</li> </ol>
Edit the details of the price list assignment which is expired	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the <b>Historical Price List Assignments</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>2. Enter the required search criteria and then click <b>Search</b>.  The price lists assigned to the person which are expired appears in the search results.</li> <li>3. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Edit</b> (✎) icon in the <b>Edit</b> column corresponding to the price list whose assignment details you want to edit.</li> </ol>

The **Price List Assignment** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic information while assigning the price list to the person.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the price list assignment.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Information	Indicates the person whose price list assignment details you want to edit.	Not applicable
Price List Information	Displays the information about the price list.	Not applicable
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is assigned to the person.	Not applicable



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)										
Effective End Date	<div>Used to specify the date till when the price list is assigned to the person.</div> <div><b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date. If the validity period is specified for the price list, the price list assignment end date should be earlier than or equal to the following whichever is earlier:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Price list assignment validity end date (which is price list assignment start date + validity period)</li><li>Price list effective end date</li></ul>Let us understand this with the help of the following example:</div> <table><tr><td>Price List Effective Start Date</td><td>01-Jan-2015</td></tr><tr><td>Price List Effective End Date</td><td>31-Jan-2015</td></tr><tr><td>Validity Period</td><td>15 Days</td></tr><tr><td>Price List Assignment Start Date</td><td>15-Jan-2015</td></tr><tr><td>Price List Assignment Validity End Date</td><td>30-Jan-2015 (i.e. 15-Jan-2015 + 15 Days)</td></tr></table> <div>In the above example, the price list assignment end date must be earlier than or equal to the price list assignment validity end date because the price list assignment validity end date is earlier than the price list effective end date.</div>	Price List Effective Start Date	01-Jan-2015	Price List Effective End Date	31-Jan-2015	Validity Period	15 Days	Price List Assignment Start Date	15-Jan-2015	Price List Assignment Validity End Date	30-Jan-2015 (i.e. 15-Jan-2015 + 15 Days)	No
Price List Effective Start Date	01-Jan-2015											
Price List Effective End Date	31-Jan-2015											
Validity Period	15 Days											
Price List Assignment Start Date	15-Jan-2015											
Price List Assignment Validity End Date	30-Jan-2015 (i.e. 15-Jan-2015 + 15 Days)											
Priority	Used to specify the order in which the price list should be considered while determining the price item pricing for the person.	Yes										
Price List Inheritance	<div>Used to indicate whether the person can avail the price item pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the price list. The valid values are:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Yes</b> - Used to indicate that the person can inherit the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy.</li><li><b>No</b> - Used to indicate that the person cannot inherit the price item pricing from the price list hierarchy.</li></ul>	Yes										

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Assignment Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Active</b> - Used to indicate that you want to use the price item pricing on the price list for billing. This value appears only when you are editing an active and proposed price list assignment.</li> <li>• <b>Inactive</b> - Used to indicate that you no longer want to use the price list assignment. This value appears only when you are editing an active price list assignment.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> - Used to indicate that you want to use the price item pricing on the price list for quotations. This value appears only when you are editing a proposed price list assignment.</li> <li>• <b>Rejected</b> - Used to indicate that you want to reject the price list assignment. This value appears only when you are editing a proposed price list assignment.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a rejected price list assignment.</p>	Yes

5. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the price list assignment, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the price list assignment are saved.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
<b>Price List Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Assignment</a> on page 278
<b>Price List Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Assignments</a> on page 279
How to define characteristics for a price list assignment	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price List Assignment</a>

## Price List Assignments

The **Price List Assignments** screen allows you to view the price list assignments of a particular price list. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Persons to whom Price List is Assigned](#) on page 302
- [Accounts where Price List is Assigned](#) on page 303

### **Persons to whom Price List is Assigned**

The **Persons to whom Price List is Assigned** zone displays the details of the persons to whom the price list is assigned. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Person ID	Displays the person ID.
Person Information	Displays information about the person. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.
Price List Assignment Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is assigned to the person.
Price List Assignment End Date	Displays the date till when the price list is assigned to the person.
Division	Displays the division to which the person belongs.
Price List Assignment ID	Displays the price list assignment ID.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
How to view persons and accounts where price list is assigned	<a href="#">Viewing Persons and Accounts where Price List is Assigned</a> on page 304

#### **Accounts where Price List is Assigned**

The **Accounts where Price List is Assigned** zone displays the details of the accounts where the price list is assigned. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Displays the account ID.
Account Information	Displays information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.
Price List Assignment Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is assigned to the account.
Price List Assignment End Date	Displays the date till when the price list is assigned to the account.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.
Price List Assignment ID	Displays the price list assignment ID.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234

For more information on...	See...
How to view persons and accounts where price list is assigned	<a href="#">Viewing Persons and Accounts where Price List is Assigned</a> on page 304

## Viewing Persons and Accounts where Price List is Assigned

### Prerequisites

To view persons and accounts where price list is assigned, you should have:


- Persons and accounts created in the application
- Price list defined and assigned to the accounts and persons

### Procedure

To view persons and accounts where price list is assigned:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Price List**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Price List** sub-menu.  
The **Price List** screen appears.
4. You can search for a price list by entering the search criteria in the **Search Price List** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.  
A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the search results.
6. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon in the **Price List Assigned To** column corresponding to the price list whose details you want to view.  
The **Price List Assignments** screen appears.
7. You can view the list of persons and accounts where the price list is assigned in the **Price List Assignments** screen.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Accounts where Price List is Assigned</b> zone	<a href="#">Accounts where Price List is Assigned</a> on page 303
<b>Persons to whom Price List is Assigned</b> zone	<a href="#">Persons to whom Price List is Assigned</a> on page 302

## Entities Eligible for Price List Assignment

The **Entities Eligible for Price List Assignment** screen allows you to search for multiple eligible accounts or persons for price list assignment. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Eligible Accounts](#) on page 305

- [Eligible Persons](#) on page 305

## Eligible Accounts

The **Eligible Accounts** zone allows you to search the eligible accounts for price list assignment. Moreover, it also allows you to assign multiple eligible accounts to a price list. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to indicate the division whose accounts you want to search.	Yes
Effective Date	Used to indicate the date from when the accounts are eligible for price list assignment.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the date is set to the current date. You can change the date, if required.	
Account ID	Used to indicate the account ID.	No

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account Information	Displays information about the accounts that are eligible for price list assignment. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.
Assigned	Displays whether the account is assigned to the price list or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>

## Eligible Persons

The **Eligible Persons** zone allows you to search the eligible persons for price list assignment. Moreover, it also allows you to assign multiple eligible persons to a price list. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to indicate the division whose persons you want to search.	Yes
Effective Date	Used to indicate the date from when the persons are eligible for price list assignment.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the date is set to the current date. You can change the date, if required.	
Person ID	Used to indicate the person ID.	No

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Person Information	Displays information about the persons that are eligible for price list assignment. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.
Assigned	Displays whether the person is assigned to the price list or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
How to view the accounts and persons eligible for price list assignments	<a href="#">Viewing Accounts and Persons Eligible for Price List Assignment</a>
How to define characteristics for a Price List Assignment	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Price List Assignment</a> on page 309

## Assigning a Price List to One or More Eligible Accounts

### Prerequisites

To assign a price list to one or more eligible accounts, you should have:

- Price list defined in the application
- Accounts created in the application
- Price list should be associated with the division to which accounts belong.

### Procedure

To assign a price list to one or more eligible accounts:

1. Search for the eligible accounts in the **Eligible Accounts** zone of **Entities Eligible for Price List Assignment** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, select the one or more accounts that you want to assign to the price list by clicking the check box corresponding to each account.
3. Click the **Assign** button available in the upper left corner of this section.

The **Price List Assignment** screen appears. This screen contains the following two sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price list. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Information	Displays a concatenated string consisting of the price list information separated by a comma (,).	Not applicable
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price list is effective.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price list is effective.	No
Priority	Used to specify the order in which the price list should be considered while determining the price item pricing for the account.	No
Price List Inheritance	Used to indicate whether the account can avail the price item pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
Assignment Status	Used to indicate the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Proposed</li> </ul>	No
Priority Indicator	Used to set the priority of the price list assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Highest</b> - Used when you want the price list assignment to have the highest priority. It checks whether there are any other price list assignments for the account, derives the priority of each such price list assignment, and then sets the priority of the new price list assignment to the existing price list assignment with highest priority minus one.</li> <li>• <b>Lowest</b> - Used when you want the price list assignment to have the lowest priority. It checks whether there are any other price list assignments for the account, derives the priority of each such price list assignment, and then sets the priority of the new price list assignment to the existing price list assignment with lowest priority plus one.</li> </ul>	No

- **Characteristics** - Used to define a list of characteristics for the price list.

#### 4. Click **Save**.

The price list is assigned to the selected accounts.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Eligible Persons</b> zone	<a href="#">Eligible Persons</a> on page 305
<b>Eligible Accounts</b> zone	<a href="#">Eligible Accounts</a> on page 305

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a Price List Assignment	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Price List Assignment</a> on page 309

## Assigning a Price List to One or More Eligible Persons

### Prerequisites

To assign a price list to one or more eligible persons, you should have:

- Price list defined in the application
- Persons created in the application
- Price list should be associated with the division to which persons belong.

### Procedure

To assign a price list to one or more eligible persons:

1. Search for the eligible Persons in the **Eligible Persons** zone of **Entities Eligible for Price List Assignment** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, select the one or more persons to whom you want to assign the price list by clicking the check box corresponding to each person.
3. Click the **Assign** button available in the upper left corner of this section.

The **Price List Assignment** screen appears. This screen contains the following two sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price list. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Information	Displays a concatenated string consisting of the price list information separated by a comma (,).	Not applicable
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price list is effective.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price list is effective.	No
Priority	Used to specify the order in which the price list should be considered while determining the price item pricing for the person.	No
Price List Inheritance	Used to indicate whether the account can avail the price item pricing listed on the parent or grandparent price list if it is not available on the price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
Assignment Status	Used to indicate the status of the price list assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Proposed</li> </ul>	No



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Priority Indicator	<p>Used to set the priority of the price list assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Highest</b> - Used when you want the price list assignment to have the highest priority. It checks whether there are any other price list assignments for the person, derives the priority of each such price list assignment, and then sets the priority of the new price list assignment to the existing price list assignment with highest priority minus one.</li> <li>• <b>Lowest</b> - Used when you want the price list assignment to have the lowest priority. It checks whether there are any other price list assignments for the person, derives the priority of each such price list assignment, and then sets the priority of the new price list assignment to the existing price list assignment with lowest priority plus one.</li> </ul>	No

- **Characteristics** - Used to define a list of characteristics for the price list.

#### 4. Click **Save**.

The price list is assigned to the selected persons.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Eligible Persons</b> zone	<a href="#">Eligible Persons</a> on page 305
<b>Eligible Accounts</b> zone	<a href="#">Eligible Accounts</a> on page 305
How to define characteristics for a Price List Assignment	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Price List Assignment</a> on page 309

### **Defining a Characteristic for a Price List Assignment**

#### **Prerequisites**

To define a characteristic for a price list assignment, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Price List Assignment**)

#### **Procedure**


To define a characteristic for a price list assignment:


1. Click the **Characteristics** tab in the **Price List Assignment** screen when you are assigning a price list to multiple persons or accounts and also while editing the price list assignment details of multiple persons or accounts.

The **Characteristics** tab appears. It contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price list assignment.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list assignment.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price List Assignment</b> .	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list assignment.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears. On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price list assignment.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the price list assignment, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the price list assignment, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristic is defined for the price list assignment.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to assign a price list to a person	<a href="#">Assigning a Price List to a Person</a> on page 292
How to assign a price list to an account	<a href="#">Assigning a Price List to an Account</a> on page 289
How to edit the price list assignment details of a person	<a href="#">Editing the Price List Assignment Details of a Person</a> on page 299

## Pricing (Account)

The **Pricing (Account)** screen allows you to:

- View effective price assignments of an account
- View the details of an assigned or inherited price item pricing
- Search and assign price items or price item bundles to an account
- Edit or override a price item pricing
- Copy a price item pricing and assign it to an account

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Effective Price Assignments for Account](#) on page 311
- [Search Price Item](#) on page 316

## Effective Price Assignments for Account

The **Effective Price Assignments for Account** zone lists the price item pricing (i.e. price assignments) which are effective on the current date. In other words, it lists effective pricing for price items or price item bundles assigned to the account either directly or through the customer hierarchy. The order in which the price assignments are listed is controlled by the **Price Assignment Search** algorithm defined for the division to which the account belongs. If required, you can filter effective price assignments using various search criteria.

**Note:** If the effective pricing is available for the price item, regular bundle (to which the price item belongs), and parent (regular) bundle (i.e. to which the regular bundle belongs) at the same level, the system lists the pricing depending on the value defined for the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter in the price assignment search algorithm. If the value of the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter is set to **Y**, the system lists effective pricing which is available for the price item. If the effective pricing is not available for the price item, then the system lists effective pricing which is available for the regular bundle at the same level. If the effective pricing is not available for the regular bundle, then the system lists effective pricing which is available for the parent bundle at the same level. However, if the value of the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter is set to **N**, the system lists effective pricing which is available for the parent bundle. If the effective pricing is not available for the parent bundle, then the system lists effective pricing which is available for the regular bundle at the same level. If the effective pricing is not available for the regular bundle, then the system lists effective pricing which is available for the price item at the same level.


This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Indicates the account whose effective price assignments are listed in this zone.	Not applicable
Effective Pricing Date	Used to search price assignments which are effective on a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, this field is set to the system date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Assignment Level	<p>Used to search price assignments at a particular level in the customer hierarchy. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Account Agreed</b> – Means price item pricing is agreed for the account.</li> <li>• <b>Account Price List</b> – Means price item pricing is defined in the price list which is assigned to the account.</li> <li>• <b>Account Inherited Price List</b> – Means price item pricing is inherited from the parent price list hierarchy defined for the price list which is assigned to the account.</li> <li>• <b>Customer Agreed</b> – Means price item pricing is agreed for the main customer in the customer hierarchy.</li> <li>• <b>Customer Price List</b> – Means price item pricing is defined in the price list which is assigned to the main customer.</li> <li>• <b>Default Price List</b> – Means price item pricing defined in the price list is available in the default price list.</li> <li>• <b>Global Price List</b> – Means price item pricing defined in the price list is available in the global price list.</li> <li>• <b>Customer Inherited Price List</b> – Means price item pricing is inherited from the parent price list hierarchy defined for the price list which is assigned to the main customer.</li> <li>• <b>Parent Customer Agreed</b> – Means price item pricing is agreed for the parent customer in the customer hierarchy.</li> <li>• <b>Parent Customer Price List</b> – Means price item pricing is defined in the price list which is assigned to the parent customer.</li> <li>• <b>Parent Customer Inherited Price List</b> – Means price item pricing is inherited from the parent price list hierarchy defined for the price list which is assigned to the parent customer.</li> <li>• <b>Product Default Price List</b> – Means product defined in the price list is available in the default price list.</li> </ul>	No
Parent Person	Used to search price assignments which are inherited from a particular parent customer.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Status	<p>Used to search price assignments with a particular status. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Proposed</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Active</b> option is selected.</p>	No
Show Default and Global Pricing	<p>Used to search price assignments inherited from the default or global price list. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Yes</b> – Used when you want to search price assignments inherited from either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Product-specific default price list defined for the division</li> <li>Default price list defined for the division</li> <li>Global price list</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>No</b> – Used when you do not want to search price assignments inherited from either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Product-specific default price list defined for the division</li> <li>Default price list defined for the division</li> <li>Global price list</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>No</b> option is selected.</p>	No
Price Item	Used to search price assignments of a particular price item or price item bundle.	No
Description	Used to search price assignments of a price item or price item bundle having a particular description.	No
Search Type	<p>Used to search the price list using the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Best Fit</li> <li>Exact Match</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Exact Match</b> option is selected.</p>	No

**Note:** The **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Price Item** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a price item.


- Price Item Parameters** – The **Price Item Parameters** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	Used to search price assignments which are defined using a particular parameter.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .	
Parameter Value	Used to search price assignments which are defined using a particular parameter value.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .	

**Note:**


The **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Parameter** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a parameter.


You can only use those parameters where the source entity is set to **Transaction**.

The **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Parameter Value** field only when the value type of the parameter is **Predefined** or **Reference**. If the value type of the parameter is **Predefined** then on clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined parameter value. However, if the value type of the parameter is **Reference** then on clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a reference parameter value.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Information	Displays the concatenated string consisting of pricing information and pricing ID for the account.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>View Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears with the details of the respective price item pricing.
Price Item	Displays the price item or price item bundle code.
Pricing Parameters	Used to specify multiple parameters based on which you want to determine the pricing utilization.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .

Column Name	Column Description
Price Assignment Type	<p>Indicates the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> </ul>
Assignment Level	<p>Indicates the level at which the price item pricing is defined in the customer hierarchy. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account Agreed</li> <li>• Account Price List</li> <li>• Account Inherited Price List</li> <li>• Customer Agreed</li> <li>• Customer Price List</li> <li>• Default Price List</li> <li>• Global Price List</li> <li>• Customer Inherited Price List</li> <li>• Parent Customer Agreed</li> <li>• Parent Customer Price List</li> <li>• Parent Customer Inherited Price List</li> <li>• Product Default Price List</li> </ul>
Price List Information	Displays the information about the price list which is assigned to the account.
Rate Schedule	Indicates the rate schedule which is used for defining the price item pricing.
Edit	<p>On clicking the <b>Edit</b> () icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> icon appears only when the assignment level is <b>Account Agreed</b>.</p>

Column Name	Column Description
Override	<p>On clicking the <b>Override</b>  icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can override the price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You can override a price item pricing assigned at any level in the customer hierarchy. On overriding a price item pricing, a new price item pricing which is specific to the account is defined at the account level and is then called account agreed pricing.</p> <p>A customer agreed or account agreed price assignments are effective for a particular duration and do not expire until you specify the end date manually. However, if you set the <b>Expire Override Switch</b> option type of the <b>C1_EXP_OVRD</b> feature configuration to <b>Y</b>, the system will automatically expire an agreed pricing when the agreed pricing of a customer or an account without end date is overridden. If you do not want an agreed pricing to automatically expire when it is overridden, you must set the <b>Expire Override Switch</b> option type of the <b>C1_EXP_OVRD</b> feature configuration to <b>N</b>.</p>
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.
Parent Person	Displays the name of the parent or grandparent customer from whom the price item pricing is inherited.

**Note:** The number of records that can be displayed in the **Search Results** section is controlled via the **C1\_PR\_REC** feature configuration. You can change the number of records that can be displayed using the **Effective Pricing RecordSet Limit** option type of the **C1\_PR\_REC** feature configuration. For more information, refer to [Setting the C1\\_PR\\_REC Feature Configuration](#) on page 2376.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view effective price assignments of an account	<a href="#">Viewing Effective Price Assignments of an Account</a> on page 321
How to override a price item pricing	<a href="#">Overriding a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 422
How to edit a price item pricing	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing</a>
How to filter effective price assignments of an account	<a href="#">Filtering Effective Price Assignments of an Account</a> on page 322

## Search Price Item

You can either assign a price item to a price list and then define pricing for the price item, or you can copy an existing price item pricing and assign it to a price list. The **Search Price Item** zone allows you to search for a price item pricing which is assigned to an account, person, or a price list. You can then create a new price item pricing using an existing price item pricing through copying the price item pricing. Once you create a copy of an existing price item pricing, the new price item pricing is assigned to the price list. On copying a price item pricing, the pricing details including the price components, eligibility and tiering criteria for each price component, and characteristics are copied to the new price item pricing. You can then edit the details, if required.



The system allows you to create a copy of active, proposed, inactive, rejected, and template price item pricing. Once you create the copy of a template price item pricing, you can save the new price item pricing in either **Active** or **Proposed** status.

The **Search Price Item** zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to search whether you want to search price item pricing for a price item, account, person, or a price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Price Item</li> <li>• Price List Pricing</li> <li>• Account Override Pricing</li> <li>• Person Override Pricing</li> </ul>	Yes
Price Item	Used to search pricing for a particular price item or price item bundle.	No
Description	Used to search price items or price item bundles with a particular description.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No
Global Price List	Used to search price items or price item bundles which can be assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No
Bundle	Used to search whether the price item is a bundle or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No
Price List ID	Used to search the price list to which the price item pricing is assigned.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Start Date	Used to search price item pricing on price lists which are effective from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> , <b>Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Effective End Date	Used to search price item pricing on price lists which are effective till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> , <b>Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Pricing Status	Used to search price item pricing with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Template</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> , <b>Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Price Assignment Type	Used to search a particular type of the price item pricing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> , <b>Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account ID	Used to search pricing of price items which are assigned to a particular account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person ID	Used to search pricing of price items which are assigned to a particular person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	



**Note:**

You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price item or price item bundle.

The **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Price List ID**, **Price Item**, **Account ID**, and **Person ID** fields. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a price list, price item, an account, and person.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The search results include only those price items or price item bundles that are associated with the division to which the account belongs. It may also include price items or price item bundles that are already assigned to the account in case those price items or price item bundles match the search criteria.

The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Assign	On clicking the <b>Assign</b>  icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can define a new price item pricing.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Price Item Information	Displays details of the price item or price item bundle.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price item or price item bundle. This column appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Copy	On clicking the <b>Copy</b>  icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can define a new price item pricing using an existing price item pricing.
Pricing Information	Displays details of the price item pricing.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> , <b>Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.

Column Name	Column Description
Account Information	Indicates the account to which the price item pricing is assigned. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Account Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.</p> <p>The account information string appears only when an algorithm defined using the <b>C1-AC-INFO</b> algorithm type is attached to the <b>Account Information</b> system event in the <b>Algorithms</b> tab of the <b>Installation Options – Framework</b> screen.</p>
Person Information	Indicates the person to which the price item pricing is assigned. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.</p> <p>The person information string appears only when an algorithm defined using the <b>PERS-INFO</b> algorithm type is attached to the <b>Person Information</b> system event in the <b>Algorithms</b> tab of the <b>Installation Options – Framework</b> screen.</p>
Price List Information	Indicates the price list to which the price item pricing is assigned. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price List</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price list.</p>
Pricing Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this column is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item or price item bundle).
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b>.</p>
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b>, <b>Account Override Pricing</b>, or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>

Column Name	Column Description
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing, Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing, Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Rate Schedule	Indicates the rate schedule which is used for defining the price item pricing.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link <b>Rate Schedule</b> screen appears. This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing, Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Price Assignment Usage	Indicates whether the price item pricing is applicable to all customers or only to new customers. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Customers</li> <li>• New Customers</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing, Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Price Assignment Type	Indicates the type of the price item pricing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to assign a price item or price item bundle to an account	<a href="#">Assigning a Price Item or Price Item Bundle to an Account</a>
How to copy a price item pricing	<a href="#">Copying a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 326

## Viewing Effective Price Assignments of an Account


### Prerequisites

To view effective price assignments of an account, you should have:

- Price items or price item bundles assigned to the account either directly or through the customer hierarchy

**Procedure**

To view effective price assignments of an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.  
A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.  
The **Pricing (Account)** screen appears.
4. View the pricing for price items or price item bundles assigned to the account (either directly or through the customer hierarchy) in the **Effective Price Assignments for Account** zone.
5. Filter the effective price assignments of the account, if required.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a> on page 61
<b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Account)</a> on page 310
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Account</a> on page 311
How to filter effective price assignments of an account	<a href="#">Filtering Effective Price Assignments of an Account</a> on page 322


**Filtering Effective Price Assignments of an Account****Prerequisites**

To filter effective price assignments of an account, you should have:


- Price items or price item bundles defined in the application
- Parameters defined in the application (where the source entity is set to **Transaction**)
- Price items or price item bundles assigned to the account either directly or through the customer hierarchy


**Procedure**

To filter effective price assignments of an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.  
A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.  
The **Pricing (Account)** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Effective Price Assignments for Account** zone.

**Note:**

You can search for a price item, parameter, or parameter value by clicking the **Search** () icon corresponding to the respective field.

If you want to add more than one parameter in the search criteria, click the **Add** () icon and then enter the parameter name and its value. However, if you want to remove a parameter from the search criteria, click the

**Delete** () icon corresponding to the parameter.

You can only use those parameters where the source entity is set to **Transaction**.

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

### 5. Click **Search**.

A list of price assignments which are effective on the specified date and that meet the search criteria are listed in the **Effective Price Assignments for Account** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a> on page 61
<b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Account)</a> on page 310
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Account</a> on page 311

## Exporting Effective Price Assignments of an Account


### Prerequisites

To export effective price assignments of an account in the CSV format, you should have:

- Price items or price item bundles assigned to the account either directly or through the customer hierarchy

### Procedure

To export effective price assignments of an account in the CSV format:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.

A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

The **Pricing (Account)** screen appears.

4. Filter the effective price assignments of the account, if required.
5. Click the **Export to Excel** link in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to open or save the EffectivePricing.csv file.

6. Select the **Save As** option from the **Save** list.

The **Save As** dialog box appears.

7. Browse to the location where you want to save the file.
8. Enter the file name in the respective field, and click **Save**.

The search results are exported in the CSV format.

9. Open the CSV file in Microsoft Excel.

The sheet contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price Item	Displays the price item or price item bundle code.
Description	Displays the description of the price item or price item bundle.
Variance	<p>Indicates the variance parameter which is used for defining the price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b>.</p>
Price Item Parameters	<p>Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this column is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item). A tool tip appears when you hover over this column corresponding to the price item. It indicates the price item parameters and their values which are used for defining the price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b>.</p>
Price Assignment Type	<p>Indicates the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing — Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing — Price Item Based</li> </ul>
Assignment Level	<p>Indicates the level at which the price item pricing is defined in the customer hierarchy. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account Agreed</li> <li>• Account Price List</li> <li>• Account Inherited Price List</li> <li>• Customer Agreed</li> <li>• Customer Price List</li> <li>• Customer Inherited Price List</li> <li>• Parent Customer Agreed</li> <li>• Parent Customer Price List</li> <li>• Parent Customer Inherited Price List</li> </ul>



Column Name	Column Description
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.
	<b>Note:</b> The description appears only when the assignment level is <b>Account Price List</b> , <b>Account Inherited Price List</b> , <b>Customer Price List</b> , <b>Customer Inherited Price List</b> , <b>Parent Customer Price List</b> , or <b>Parent Customer Inherited Price List</b> .
Rate Description	Displays the description of the rate schedule which is used for defining the price item pricing.
Rate Component Information	Displays a comma-separated string which consists of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rate Component Sequence</li> <li>• Tiering Setup of the Rate Component</li> </ul>
Price Component Sequence	Indicates the sequence number of the price component.
Price Component Description	Displays the description of the price component.
Rate	Indicates the rate defined for the price component.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.
From	Displays the lower limit of the tiering range.
To	Displays the upper limit of the tiering range.
Price Assignment Usage	Indicates whether the price item pricing is applicable to all customers or only to the new customers. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AC</li> <li>• NC</li> </ul>
Price Assignment ID	Displays the price assignment ID.
Parent Level	Indicates the numerical level of the parent in the customer hierarchy from whom the price item pricing is inherited.
Price List ID	Indicates the price list from where the price item pricing is inherited.
Price List Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is effective.
Parent Person	Displays the name of the parent or grandparent customer from whom the price item pricing is inherited.
Parent Pricelist Level	Indicates the parent level when price item pricing is inherited from the price list hierarchy. If the pricing is inherited from the assigned price list, the parent price list level will be 0. However, if the pricing is inherited from the parent price list in the hierarchy, the parent price list level will be 1. And, if the pricing is inherited from the grandparent price list in the hierarchy, the parent price list level will be 2, and so on.

Column Name	Column Description
Ignore Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the price item is considered for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>
Aggregate Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the price item is aggregated for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>
Aggregation Schedule	Indicates the transaction aggregation cycle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Daily</li> <li>• Weekly</li> <li>• Monthly</li> <li>• Quarterly</li> <li>• Yearly</li> </ul>
Tiering Criterion	Indicates the tiering criterion which is used in the tiering range.
Tiering Price Item	Indicates whether the price item is billed individually or at the price item bundle level.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
<b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Account)</a> on page 310
<b>Effective Price Assignment</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Account</a> on page 311

## **Copying a Price Item Pricing**


### **Prerequisites**

To copy a price item pricing and assign it to an account, you should have:

- Account (to which you want to assign the price item pricing) defined in the application
- Account associated with the division to which the user belongs
- Price item pricing (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application

### **Procedure**

To copy a price item pricing and assign it to an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.  
A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.


The **Pricing (Account)** screen appears.

4. In the **Search Price Item** zone, select the required option from the **Search By** list to indicate whether you want to search price item pricing assigned to an account, person, or a price list.

The fields in the **Search Criteria** section change depending on the option that you select from the **Search By** list.

5. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Price Item** zone to search for the price item pricing whose copy you want to create and assign it to the account.
6. Click **Search**.

A list of price assignments that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

7. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** () icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the price item pricing whose copy you want to create.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears.

8. Modify the required pricing details.

**Note:**

If you change the effective start and end dates while copying a price item pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during that date range.

While copying a price item pricing, you can not only edit the existing tiering combination details, but can also add additional tiering combinations until the maximum tiering combinations limit is met.

If you are creating a copy of active, proposed, inactive, rejected, or template price item pricing, you can save the new price item pricing in the **Active** or **Proposed** status.

9. Edit the characteristics of the price item pricing, if required.
10. Click **Save**.

A new price item pricing is defined and assigned to the account.


### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a> on page 61
<b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Account)</a> on page 310
<b>Search Price Item</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price Item</a> on page 316
How to edit a price item pricing	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing</a>
How to edit characteristics of a price item pricing	<a href="#">Editing the Price Item Pricing Characteristics</a>

## **Viewing a Price Item Pricing**

### **Procedure**

To view a price item pricing and assignment details:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.

A menu appears.

- Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

The **Pricing (Account)** screen appears.

- Price assignments effective for the account appears in the **Effective Price Assignments for Account** zone.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Pricing Information** column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- Price Item Pricing** – Displays the price item pricing details. It contains the following sections:
  - Pricing Information** – Displays the pricing information of the price item.
  - TFM Information** – Displays the transaction feed management information of the price item.
  - Characteristics** – Displays the details of price item pricing characteristics.
  - Price Item and Parameter Information** – Displays the price item parameter details.
  - Record Actions** – Displays the record actions of the price item pricing.
  - Record Information** – Displays the record information of the price item pricing.
- Rate and Price Component Summary** – Displays the rate and price component summary of the price item.
- Rate Components** – Displays the rate components of the price item.
- Price Components** – Displays the details of price components of the price item.
- Tiering Criteria** – Displays the tiering criteria of the price item pricing.

**Note:** This zone appears only when **Tiering Type** for the rate component is **STEP** or **Threshold**

- Pricing Eligibility Criteria** – Displays the pricing eligibility criteria of the price item pricing.

**Note:** This zone appears only when eligibility checkbox is selected in the **Price Item Pricing** screen and details for pricing eligibility criteria is added in the **Price Component** screen.

- View the basic details of price item pricing in the **Price Item Pricing** zone.
- View the rate and price component summary of price item in the **Rate and Price Component Summary** zone.
- View the rate components of price item in the **Rate Components** zone.
- View the details of price components of price item in the **Price Components** zone.
- View the tiering criteria of price item pricing in the **Tiering Criteria** zone.
- View the pricing eligibility criteria of price item pricing in the **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a> on page 61
<b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Account)</a> on page 310
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Account</a> on page 311
<b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Pricing (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 378
<b>Price Item Pricing</b> zone	<a href="#">Price Item Pricing</a> on page 379
<b>Rate and Price Component Summary</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate and Price Component Summary</a> on page 382
<b>Rate Components</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate Components</a>

For more information on...	See...
Price Components zone	<a href="#">Price Components</a>
Tiering Criteria zone	<a href="#">Tiering Criteria</a>
Pricing Eligibility Criteria zone	<a href="#">Pricing Eligibility Criteria</a>

## Editing a Price Item Pricing of an Account

### Prerequisites

To edit a price item pricing of an account, you should have:

- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Rate schedules, rate versions, rate components defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the price item (in case you want to define price item pricing based on those parameters)

### Procedure

To edit a price item pricing of an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** (☰) icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.

A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

The **Pricing (Account)** screen appears.

4. Price assignments effective for the account appears in the **Effective Price Assignments for Account** zone.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the price item pricing whose details you want to edit.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the price item pricing.
- **TFM Information** – Used to specify the transaction feed management information about the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears in the **Price Item Pricing** screen only when the value for the **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type for **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** is **Pricing and Billing**.

- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the price item pricing.
- **Price Item and Parameter Information** – Used to define the parameter details segment for the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears only when **Price Assignment Type** is **Regular**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item pricing is effective.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.</p> <p>If you change the effective start and end dates while editing a price item pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during that date range.</p> <p>This field will be in read-only mode when the price assignment has been used.</p>	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price item pricing is effective.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.</p>	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Regular</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment.</li> <li>• <b>Post Processing</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The post processing bill segment is generated when the <b>Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)</b> characteristic is defined for the price item and when the price item is associated with another price item using the <b>Price Item</b> relationship type.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Invoice Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Price Item Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> </div>	Yes
Pricing Eligibility	<p>Used to select pricing eligibility criteria for price item pricing.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This field will be enabled for selection if the checkbox is not selected. If the checkbox appears selected then this field will be in read-only mode.</p> </div>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Draft</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is created as a draft.</li> <li>• <b>Active</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is used for billing.</li> <li>• <b>Inactive</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is no longer used for billing.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is used for quotations.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If a price assignment is in <b>Active</b> status, you can change its status to <b>Inactive</b>.</p> <p>If a price assignment is in <b>Draft</b> status, you cannot change its status to <b>Proposed</b>.</p>	Yes
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.	Yes
Rate Schedule	<p>Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Rate schedules control how the bills for the price item will be calculated.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> screen appears.</p>	Yes
Pricing Rule Type	<p>Used to indicate the pricing rule type. The valid value is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two-Dimensional</li> </ul>	<p>Yes (Conditional)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are editing a two-dimensional pricing rule.</p>
Print Zero	<p>Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, <b>Yes</b> is selected.</p>	Yes
Pricing Frequency	<p>Used to indicate pricing frequency for the price item.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> is defined as <b>Only Pricing</b> and <b>Price Item Type</b> is defined as <b>Fees</b>.</p>	Yes



6. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
7. Edit the TFM Information in a price item pricing, if required.
8. Edit the characteristics for a price item pricing, if required.
9. Edit the parameters for a price item pricing, if required.
10. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the price item pricing are saved.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a> on page 61
<b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Account)</a> on page 310
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Account</a> on page 311
How to define a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 383
How to define characteristics for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 341
How to define parameters for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 342
How to define TFM Information in a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 343

## **Overriding a Price Item Pricing of an Account**

### **Prerequisites**

To override a price item pricing of an account, you should have:

- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Rate schedules, rate versions, rate components defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the price item (in case you want to define price item pricing based on multiple parameters)

### **Procedure**

To override a price item pricing of an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** (☰) icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.  
A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.  
The **Pricing (Account)** screen appears.
4. Price assignments effective for the account appears in the **Effective Price Assignments for Account** zone.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Override** (🔧) icon in the **Override** column corresponding to the price item pricing whose details you want to override.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the price item pricing.

- **TFM Information** – Used to specify the transaction feed management information about the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears in the **Price Item Pricing** screen only when the value for the **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type for **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** is **Pricing and Billing**.

- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the price item pricing.
- **Price Item and Parameter Information** – Used to define the parameter details segment for the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears only when **Price Assignment Type** is **Regular**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item pricing is effective.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.</p> <p>If you change the effective start and end dates while overriding a price item pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during that date range.</p> <p>This field will be in read-only mode when the price assignment has been used.</p>	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price item pricing is effective.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.</p>	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Regular</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment.</li> <li>• <b>Post Processing</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account.</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b>  The post processing bill segment is generated when the <b>Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)</b> characteristic is defined for the price item and when the price item is associated with another price item using the <b>Price Item</b> relationship type. </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Invoice Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>. </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Price Item Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>. </div>	Yes
Pricing Eligibility	<p>Used to select pricing eligibility criteria for price item pricing.</p> <div> <b>Note:</b> This field will be in enabled for selection if the checkbox is not selected. If the checkbox appears selected then this field will be in read-only mode. </div>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Status	Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Draft</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is created as a draft.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is used for quotations.</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> If a price assignment is in <b>Draft</b> status, you cannot change its status to <b>Proposed</b> .	
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to override the price item pricing.	Yes
Rate Schedule	Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining price item pricing.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Rate schedules control how the bills for the price item will be calculated.  The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> screen appears.	
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two-Dimensional</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are overriding a two-dimensional pricing rule.
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, <b>Yes</b> is selected.	
Pricing Frequency	Used to indicate pricing frequency for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> is defined as <b>Only Pricing</b> and <b>Price Item Type</b> is defined as <b>Fees</b> .	

6. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
7. Modify the TFM Information in a price item pricing, if required.
8. Modify the characteristics for a price item pricing, if required.
9. Modify the parameters for a price item pricing, if required.

**Note:** If you change the effective end date while overriding a price item pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during the date range of start and end date.

**10. Click Save.**

The price item pricing is overridden.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a> on page 61
<b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Account)</a> on page 310
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Account</a> on page 311
How to define a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 383
How to define characteristics for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 341
How to define parameters for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 342
How to define TFM Information in a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 343

**Assigning a Price Item to an Account****Prerequisites**

To assign a price item to an account, you should have:

- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Rate schedules, rate versions, and rate components defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the price item (in case you want to define price item pricing based on multiple parameters)

**Procedure**

To assign a price item to an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** (☰) icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.  
A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.  
The **Pricing (Account)** screen appears.
4. Search for the price item that you want to assign to the account in the **Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing** zone.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Assign** (📌) icon in the **Assign** column corresponding to the price item that you want to assign to the account.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the price item pricing.
- **TFM Information** – Used to specify the transaction feed management information about the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears in the **Price Item Pricing** screen only when the value for the **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type for **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** is **Pricing and Billing**.

- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the price item pricing.
- **Price Item and Parameter Information** – Used to define the parameter details segment for the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears only when **Price Assignment Type** is **Processing**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item pricing is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current system date appears in this field. The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price item pricing is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Regular</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment.</li> <li>• <b>Post Processing</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The post processing bill segment is generated when the <b>Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)</b> characteristic is defined for the price item and when the price item is associated with another price item using the <b>Price Item</b> relationship type.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Invoice Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Price Item Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> </div>	Yes
Pricing Eligibility	Used to select pricing eligibility criteria for price item pricing.	No
Pricing Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Draft</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is created as a draft.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is used for quotations.</li> </ul>	Yes
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Schedule	Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining price item pricing.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Rate schedules control how the bills for the price item will be calculated.  The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> screen appears.	
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Two-Dimensional</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a two-dimensional pricing rule.
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, <b>Yes</b> is selected.	
Pricing Frequency	Used to indicate pricing frequency for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> is defined as <b>Only Pricing</b> and <b>Price Item Type</b> is defined as <b>Fees</b> .	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define TFM Information in a price item pricing, if required.
- Define characteristics for a price item pricing, if required.
- Define parameters for a price item pricing, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The pricing is defined for the price item.

**Note:** A bundle cannot be assigned if its child price items are already assigned to an account and vice versa, in the same date range.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Account)</a> on page 310
<b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price Item</a> on page 316
How to search for an account	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a> on page 61



For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 341
How to define parameters for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 342
How to define TFM Information in a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 343

## Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a price item pricing, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Price Item**)

### Procedure


To define characteristics for a price item pricing that is assigned to an account:

1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining a price item pricing.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price item pricing.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price item pricing.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item Pricing</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price item pricing.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price item pricing.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the price item pricing, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the price item pricing, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the price item pricing.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price item pricing	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 383
How to edit a price item pricing	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 388
How to override a price item pricing	<a href="#">Overriding a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 422

## **Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing**

### **Prerequisites**

To define parameters for a price item pricing, you should have:

- Parameters associated with the price item, in case, you want to define price item pricing based on multiple parameters

### **Procedure**


To define parameter details segment for a price item pricing that is assigned to an account:

1. Ensure that the **Price Item and Parameter Information** section is expanded when you are defining a price item pricing.

The **Price Item and Parameter Information** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Price Item	Indicates the price item or price item bundle whose pricing details are listed in this section.

In addition, this section contains a grid which has the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	Used to indicate the parameter that you want to associate with the price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> window appears. The parameter search results displays only those parameters where the <b>Price Item</b> check box is selected	Yes
Parameter Information	Displays a comma-separated string which contains of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Parameter Description</li> <li>Mandatory (Yes or No)</li> <li>Priority</li> </ul>	Not applicable

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Value	Used to specify the value of the parameter.	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Price Item and Parameter Information** section.
- If you want to define more than one parameter information for the price item pricing, click the **Add (+)** icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a parameter information from the price item pricing, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the parameter.

- Click **Save**.

The parameters are defined for the price item pricing.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price item pricing	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 383
How to edit a price item pricing	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 388
How to override a price item pricing	<a href="#">Overriding a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 422

## Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing

### Prerequisites

To define the TFM information in a price item pricing, you should have:

- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Aggregation or Rating Criteria data to be defined for the price item pricing

### Procedure

To define the TFM information in a price item pricing:

- Ensure that the **TFM Information** section is expanded when you are defining a price item pricing.

The **TFM Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Ignore Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the price item is considered for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
Aggregate Transactions	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the price item is aggregated for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Aggregation Schedule	Used to indicate the transaction aggregation cycle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Daily</li> <li>• Weekly</li> <li>• Monthly</li> <li>• Quarterly</li> <li>• Yearly</li> </ul>	Yes
Transaction Rating Criteria	Used to indicate how and when the transaction legs mapped to the price item are rated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggregate Transactions and Then Rate Aggregated SQs</li> <li>• Do Not Rate Transactions</li> <li>• Rate Transaction and Aggregate Calc Lines Across Transaction</li> </ul>	Yes

2. Enter the required details in the **TFM Information** section.

**Note:** **TFM Information** section appears when the value for **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type of **C1\_FM feature configuration** is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** is **Pricing and Billing**.

3. Click **Save**.

The transactions are defined for the price item pricing.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price item pricing for an account	<a href="#">Assigning a Price Item to an Account</a> on page 337
How to edit a price item pricing for an account	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing of an Account</a> on page 329
How to override a price item pricing for an account	<a href="#">Overriding a Price Item Pricing of an Account</a> on page 333
How to define a price item pricing for a person	<a href="#">Assigning a Price Item to a Person</a> on page 371
How to edit a price item pricing for a person	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing of a Person</a> on page 363
How to override a price item pricing for a person	<a href="#">Overriding a Price Item Pricing of a Person</a> on page 367
How to define a price item pricing for a price list	<a href="#">Assigning a Price Item to a Price List</a> on page 269
How to edit a price item pricing for a price list	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing of a Price List</a> on page 265

## **Pricing (Person)**

The **Pricing (Person)** screen allows you to:

- View effective price assignments of a person
- View the details of an assigned or inherited price item pricing
- Search and assign price items or price item bundles to a person

- Edit or override a price item pricing
- Copy a price item pricing and assign it to a person

You can also view effective price assignments of a global person (i.e. a person who is not associated to any division) in this screen. The pricing for all price items or price item bundles assigned to the global person either directly or through a price list appears in this screen. However, you will be able to view pricing for only those price items or price item bundles that are associated to the division to which you have access.

Since a global person is not associated to any division, the system cannot determine the price assignment search order for a global person. Hence, the default search order is defined for global persons through the **C1\_PRASNORDR** feature configuration. This feature configuration contains the **Price Assignment Algorithm** option type where you need to specify the algorithm which contains default search order for global persons. You can change this default search order, if required. The valid search order values are — **AGREED\_PRICELIST** and **AGREED\_FIRST**. You can also create a custom search order, if required.

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Effective Price Assignments for Person](#) on page 345
- [Search Price Item](#) on page 350

## Effective Price Assignments for Person

The **Effective Price Assignments for Person** zone lists the price item pricing (i.e. price assignments) which are effective on the current date. In other words, it lists effective pricing for price items or price item bundles assigned to the person either directly or through the customer hierarchy. The order in which the price assignments are listed is controlled by the **Price Assignment Search** algorithm defined for the division to which the person belongs. If required, you can filter effective price assignments using various search criteria.

**Note:** If the effective pricing is available for the price item, regular bundle (to which the price item belongs), and parent (regular) bundle (i.e. to which the regular bundle belongs) at the same level, the system lists the pricing depending on the value defined for the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter in the price assignment search algorithm. If the value of the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter is set to **Y**, the system lists effective pricing which is available for the price item. If the effective pricing is not available for the price item, then the system lists effective pricing which is available for the regular bundle at the same level. If the effective pricing is not available for the regular bundle, then the system lists effective pricing which is available for the parent bundle at the same level. However, if the value of the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter is set to **N**, the system lists effective pricing which is available for the parent bundle. If the effective pricing is not available for the parent bundle, then the system lists effective pricing which is available for the regular bundle at the same level. If the effective pricing is not available for the regular bundle, then the system lists effective pricing which is available for the price item at the same level.


This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person ID	Indicates the person whose effective price assignments are listed in this zone.	Not applicable
Effective Pricing Date	Used to search price assignments which are effective on a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, this field is set to the current date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Assignment Level	<p>Used to search price assignments at a particular level in the customer hierarchy. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Customer Agreed</b> – Means price item pricing is agreed for the main customer in the customer hierarchy.</li> <li>• <b>Customer Price List</b> – Means price item pricing is defined in the price list which is assigned to the main customer.</li> <li>• <b>Customer Inherited Price List</b> – Means price item pricing is inherited from the parent price list hierarchy defined for the price list which is assigned to the main customer.</li> <li>• <b>Default Price List</b> – Means price item pricing defined in the price list is available in the default price list.</li> <li>• <b>Global Price List</b> – Means price item pricing defined in the price list is available in the global price list.</li> <li>• <b>Parent Customer Agreed</b> – Means price item pricing is agreed for the parent customer in the customer hierarchy.</li> <li>• <b>Parent Customer Price List</b> – Means price item pricing is defined in the price list which is assigned to the parent customer.</li> <li>• <b>Parent Customer Inherited Price List</b> – Means price item pricing is inherited from the parent price list hierarchy defined for the price list which is assigned to the parent customer.</li> </ul>	No
Parent Person	Used to search price assignments which are inherited from a particular parent customer.	No
Pricing Status	<p>Used to search price assignments with a particular status. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Proposed</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Active</b> option is selected.</p>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Show Default and Global Pricing	<p>Used to indicate whether you want to search price assignments inherited from the default or global price list. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Yes</b> – Used when you want to search price assignments inherited from either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default price list defined for the division</li> <li>Global price list</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>No</b> – Used when you do not want to search price assignments inherited from either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default price list defined for the division</li> <li>Global price list</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>No</b> option is selected.</p>	No
Price Item	Used to search price assignments of a particular price item or price item bundle.	No
Description	Used to search price assignments of a price item or price item bundle having a particular description.	No
Search Type	<p>Used to search the price list using the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Best Fit</li> <li>Exact Match</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Exact Match</b> option is selected.</p>	No

**Note:** The **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Price Item** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a price item.

- Price Item Parameters** – The **Price Item Parameters** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	<p>Used to search price assignments which are defined using a particular parameter.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b>.</p>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Value	Used to search price assignments which are defined using a particular parameter value.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .	

**Note:**

The **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Parameter** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a parameter.



You can only use those parameters where the source entity is set to **Transaction**.

The **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Parameter Value** field only when the value type of the parameter is **Predefined** or **Reference**. If the value type of the parameter is **Predefined** then on clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined parameter value. However, if the value type of the parameter is **Reference** then on clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a reference parameter value.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Information	Displays the concatenated string consisting of pricing information and pricing ID for the person.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>View Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears with the details of the respective price item pricing.
Price Item	Displays the price item or price item bundle code.
Pricing Parameters	Used to specify multiple parameters based on which you want to determine the pricing utilization.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Price Assignment Type	Indicates the type of price assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> </ul>



Column Name	Column Description
Assignment Level	<p>Indicates the level at which the price item pricing is defined in the customer hierarchy. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Customer Agreed</li> <li>• Customer Price List</li> <li>• Customer Inherited Price List</li> <li>• Default Price List</li> <li>• Global Price List</li> <li>• Parent Customer Agreed</li> <li>• Parent Customer Price List</li> <li>• Parent Customer Inherited Price List</li> </ul>
Price List Information	Displays the information about the price list which is assigned to the account.
Rate Schedule	Indicates the rate schedule which is used for defining the price item pricing.
Edit	<p>On clicking the <b>Edit</b> () icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> icon appears only when the assignment level is <b>Customer Agreed</b>.</p>
Override	<p>On clicking the <b>Override</b> () icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can override the price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You can override a price item pricing assigned at any level in the customer hierarchy. On overriding a price item pricing, a new price item pricing which is specific to the account is defined at the account level and is then called account agreed pricing.</p> <p>A customer agreed or account agreed price assignments are effective for a particular duration and do not expire until you specify the end date manually. However, if you set the <b>Expire Override Switch</b> option type of the <b>C1_EXP_OVRD</b> feature configuration to <b>Y</b>, the system will automatically expire an agreed pricing when the agreed pricing of a customer or an account without end date is overridden. If you do not want an agreed pricing to automatically expire when it is overridden, you must set the <b>Expire Override Switch</b> option type of the <b>C1_EXP_OVRD</b> feature configuration to <b>N</b>.</p>
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.
Parent Person	Displays the name of the parent or grandparent customer from whom the price item pricing is inherited.

**Note:** The number of records that can be displayed in the **Search Results** section is controlled via the **C1\_PR\_REC** feature configuration. You can change the number of records that can be displayed using the **Effective Pricing RecordSet Limit** option type of the **C1\_PR\_REC** feature configuration. For more information, refer to [Setting the C1\\_PR\\_REC Feature Configuration](#) on page 2376.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view effective price assignments of a person	<a href="#">Viewing Effective Price Assignments of a Person</a> on page 355
How to override a price item pricing	<a href="#">Override Price Item Pricing</a>
How to edit a price item pricing	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing</a>
How to filter effective price assignments of a person	<a href="#">Filtering Effective Price Assignments of a Person</a> on page 356

**Search Price Item**

You can either assign a price item to a price list and then define pricing for the price item, or you can copy an existing price item pricing and assign it to a price list. The **Search Price Item** zone allows you to search for a price item pricing which is assigned to an account, person, or a price list. You can then create a new price item pricing using an existing price item pricing through copying the price item pricing. Once you create a copy of an existing price item pricing, the new price item pricing is assigned to the price list. On copying a price item pricing, the pricing details including the price components, eligibility and tiering criteria for each price component, and characteristics are copied to the new price item pricing. You can then edit the details, if required.

The system allows you to create a copy of active, proposed, inactive, rejected, and template price item pricing. Once you create the copy of a template price item pricing, you can save the new price item pricing in either **Active** or **Proposed** status.

The **Search Price Item** zone contains the following two sections:

- Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to search whether you want to search price item pricing for a price item, account, person, or a price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Price Item</li> <li>Price List Pricing</li> <li>Account Override Pricing</li> <li>Person Override Pricing</li> </ul>	Yes
Price Item	Used to search pricing for a particular price item or price item bundle.	No
Description	Used to search price items or price item bundles with a particular description. <div> <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. </div>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Global Price List	Used to search price items or price item bundles which can be assigned to a global price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Bundle	Used to search whether the price item is a bundle or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Price List ID	Used to search the price list to which the price item pricing is assigned.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Effective Start Date	Used to search price item pricing on price lists which are effective from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> , <b>Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Effective End Date	Used to search price item pricing on price lists which are effective till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> , <b>Account Override Pricing</b> , or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Status	<p>Used to search price item pricing with a particular status. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Template</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b>, <b>Account Override Pricing</b>, or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Price Assignment Type	<p>Used to search a particular type of the price item pricing. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b>, <b>Account Override Pricing</b>, or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Account ID	<p>Used to search pricing of price items which are assigned to a particular account.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Person ID	<p>Used to search pricing of price items which are assigned to a particular person.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No

**Note:**



You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price item or price item bundle.

The **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Price List ID**, **Price Item**, **Account ID**, and **Person ID** fields. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a price list, price item, an account, and person.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The search results include only those price items or price item bundles that are associated with the division to which the person belongs. However, if the person does not belong to any division, the search will be performed

against all price items or price item bundles defined in the system. It may also include price items or price item bundles that are already assigned to the person in case those price items or price item bundles match the search criteria.

The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Assign	<p>On clicking the <b>Assign</b> ( icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can define a new price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Price Item Information	<p>Displays details of the price item or price item bundle.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price item or price item bundle. This column appears only when you select the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Copy	<p>On clicking the <b>Copy</b> ( icon, the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears where you can define a new price item pricing using an existing price item pricing.</p>
Pricing Information	<p>Displays details of the price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b>, <b>Account Override Pricing</b>, or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Account Information	<p>Indicates the account to which the price item pricing is assigned. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Account Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account. The account information string appears only when an algorithm defined using the <b>C1-AC-INFO</b> algorithm type is attached to the <b>Account Information</b> system event in the <b>Algorithms</b> tab of the <b>Installation Options – Framework</b> screen.</p>

Column Name	Column Description
Person Information	Indicates the person to which the price item pricing is assigned. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.</p> <p>The person information string appears only when an algorithm defined using the <b>PERS-INFO</b> algorithm type is attached to the <b>Person Information</b> system event in the <b>Algorithms</b> tab of the <b>Installation Options – Framework</b> screen.</p>
Price List Information	Indicates the price list to which the price item pricing is assigned. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price List</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price list.</p>
Pricing Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this column is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item or price item bundle).
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b>.</p>
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing, Account Override Pricing, or Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing, Account Override Pricing, or Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing, Account Override Pricing, or Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>

Column Name	Column Description
Rate Schedule	Indicates the rate schedule which is used for defining the price item pricing.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link <b>Rate Schedule</b> screen appears.</p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b>, <b>Account Override Pricing</b>, or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Price Assignment Usage	Indicates whether the price item pricing is applicable to all customers or only to new customers. The valid values are:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Customers</li> <li>• New Customers</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List Pricing</b>, <b>Account Override Pricing</b>, or <b>Person Override Pricing</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Price Assignment Type	Indicates the type of the price item pricing. The valid values are:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b>.</p>

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to copy a price item pricing	<a href="#">Copying a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 360
How to assign a price item or price item bundle to a person	<a href="#">Assigning a Price Item or Price Item Bundle to a Person</a>

## Viewing Effective Price Assignments of a Person


### Prerequisites

To view effective price assignments of a person, you should have:

- Price items or price item bundles assigned to the person either directly or through the customer hierarchy

### Procedure

To view effective price assignments of a person:

1. Search for the person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

The **Pricing (Person)** screen appears.

4. View the pricing for price items or price item bundles assigned to the person (either directly or through the customer hierarchy) in the **Effective Price Assignments for Person** zone.
5. Filter the effective price assignments of the person, if required.

#### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Person)</a> on page 344
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Person</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Person</a> on page 345
How to filter effective price assignments of a person	<a href="#">Filtering Effective Price Assignments of a Person</a> on page 356

## **Filtering Effective Price Assignments of a Person**


### **Prerequisites**

To filter effective price assignments of a person, you should have:

- Price items or price item bundles defined in the application
- Parameters defined in the application (where the source entity is set to **Transaction**)
- Price items or price item bundles assigned to the person either directly or through the customer hierarchy


### **Procedure**


To filter effective price assignments of a person:

1. Search for the person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.  
A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.  
The **Pricing (Person)** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Effective Price Assignments for Person** zone.



**Note:**

You can search for a price item, parameter, or parameter value by clicking the **Search** () icon corresponding to the respective field.

If you want to add more than one parameter in the search criteria, click the **Add** () icon and then enter the parameter name and its value. However, if you want to remove a parameter from the search criteria, click the

**Delete** () icon corresponding to the parameter.

You can only use those parameters where the source entity is set to **Transaction**.

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

### 5. Click **Search**.

A list of price assignments which are effective on the specified date and that meet the search criteria are listed in the **Effective Price Assignments for Person** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Person)</a> on page 344
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Person</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Person</a> on page 345

## Exporting Effective Price Assignments of a Person


### Prerequisites

To export effective price assignments of a person in the CSV format, you should have:

- Price items or price item bundles assigned to the person either directly or through the customer hierarchy

### Procedure

To export effective price assignments of a person in the CSV format:

1. Search for the person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

The **Pricing (Person)** screen appears.

4. Filter the effective price assignments of the person, if required.
5. Click the **Export to Excel** link in the **Effective Price Assignment** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to open or save the EffectivePricing.csv file.

6. Select the **Save As** option from the **Save** list.

The **Save As** dialog box appears.

7. Browse to the location where you want to save the file.
8. Enter the file name in the respective field, and click **Save**.

The search results are exported in the CSV format.

9. Open the CSV file in Microsoft Excel.

The sheet contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price Item	Displays the price item or price item bundle code.
Description	Displays the description of the price item or price item bundle.
Variance	Indicates the variance parameter which is used for defining the price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .
Price Item Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this column is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item). A tool tip appears when you hover over this column corresponding to the price item. It indicates the price item parameters and their values which are used for defining the price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Price Assignment Type	Indicates the type of price assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing – Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing – Price Item Based</li> </ul>
Assignment Level	Indicates the level at which the price item pricing is defined in the customer hierarchy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Customer Agreed</li> <li>• Customer Price List</li> <li>• Customer Inherited Price List</li> <li>• Parent Customer Agreed</li> <li>• Parent Customer Price List</li> <li>• Parent Customer Inherited Price List</li> </ul>
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.  <b>Note:</b> The description appears only when the assignment level is <b>Customer Price List</b> , <b>Customer Inherited Price List</b> , <b>Parent Customer Price List</b> , or <b>Parent Customer Inherited Price List</b> .

Column Name	Column Description
Rate Description	Displays the description of the rate schedule which is used for defining the price item pricing.
Rate Component Information	Displays a comma-separated string which consists of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rate Component Sequence</li> <li>• Tiering Setup of the Rate Component</li> </ul>
Price Component Sequence	Indicates the sequence number of the price component.
Price Component Description	Displays the description of the price component.
Rate	Indicates the rate defined for the price component.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.
From	Displays the lower limit of the tiering range.
To	Displays the upper limit of the tiering range.
Price Assignment Usage	Indicates whether the price item pricing is applicable to all customers or only to the new customers. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AC</li> <li>• NC</li> </ul>
Price Assignment ID	Displays the price assignment ID.
Parent Level	Indicates the numerical level of the parent in the customer hierarchy from whom the price item pricing is inherited.
Price List ID	Indicates the price list from where the price item pricing is inherited.
Price List Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is effective.
Parent Person	Displays the name of the parent or grandparent customer from whom the price item pricing is inherited.
Parent Pricelist Level	Indicates the parent level when price item pricing is inherited from the price list hierarchy. If the pricing is inherited from the assigned price list, the parent price list level will be 0. However, if the pricing is inherited from the parent price list in the hierarchy, the parent price list level will be 1. And, if the pricing is inherited from the grandparent price list in the hierarchy, the parent price list level will be 2, and so on.
Ignore Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the price item is considered for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>

Column Name	Column Description
Aggregate Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the price item is aggregated for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>
Aggregation Schedule	Indicates the transaction aggregation cycle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Daily</li> <li>• Weekly</li> <li>• Monthly</li> <li>• Quarterly</li> <li>• Yearly</li> </ul>
Tiering Criterion	Indicates the tiering criterion which is used in the tiering range.
Tiering Price Item	Indicates whether the price item or price item bundle's total usage is considered for determining the rate.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Person)</a> on page 344
<b>Effective Price Assignment</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Person</a> on page 345
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>

## **Copying a Price Item Pricing**


### **Prerequisites**

To copy a price item pricing and assign it to a person, you should have:

- Person (to which you want to assign the price item pricing) defined in the application
- Person associated with the division to which the user belongs
- Price item pricing (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application

### **Procedure**

To copy a price item pricing and assign it to a person:

1. Search for the person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

The **Pricing (Person)** screen appears.


4. In the **Search Price Item** zone, select the required option from the **Search By** list to indicate whether you want to search price item pricing assigned to an account, person, or a price list.

The fields in the **Search Criteria** section change depending on the option that you select from the **Search By** list.

5. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Price Item** zone to search for the price item pricing whose copy you want to create and assign it to the person.

6. Click **Search**.

A list of price assignments that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

7. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** () icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the price item pricing whose copy you want to create.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears.

8. Modify the required pricing details.

**Note:**

If you change the effective start and end dates while copying a price item pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during that date range.

While copying a price item pricing, you can not only edit the existing tiering combination details, but can also add additional tiering combinations until the maximum tiering combinations limit is met.

If you are creating a copy of active, proposed, inactive, rejected, or template price item pricing, you can save the new price item pricing in the **Active** or **Proposed** status.

9. Edit the characteristics of the price item pricing, if required.

10. Click **Save**.

A new price item pricing is defined and assigned to the person.


### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Person)</a> on page 344
<b>Search Price Item</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price Item</a> on page 350
How to edit a price item pricing	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing</a>
How to edit characteristics of a price item pricing	<a href="#">Editing the Price Item Pricing Characteristics</a>

## **Viewing a Price Item Pricing**

### **Procedure**

To view a price item pricing and assignment details:

1. Search for the person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.  
A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.  
The **Pricing (Person)** screen appears.
4. Price assignments effective for the person appears in the **Effective Price Assignments for Person** zone.

5. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Pricing Information** column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- **Price Item Pricing** – Displays the price item pricing details. It contains the following sections:
  - **Pricing Information** – Displays the pricing information of the price item.
  - **TFM Information** – Displays the transaction feed management information of the price item.
  - **Characteristics** – Displays the details of price item pricing characteristics.
  - **Price Item and Parameter Information** – Displays the price item parameter details.
  - **Record Actions** – Displays the record actions of the price item pricing.
  - **Record Information** – Displays the record information of the price item pricing.
- **Rate and Price Component Summary** – Displays the rate and price component summary of the price item.
- **Rate Components** – Displays the rate components of the price item.
- **Price Components** – Displays the details of price components of the price item.
- **Tiering Criteria** – Displays the tiering criteria of the price item pricing.

**Note:** This zone appears only when **Tiering Type** for the rate component is **STEP** or **Threshold**

- **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** – Displays the pricing eligibility criteria of the price item pricing.

**Note:** This zone appears only when eligibility checkbox is selected in the **Price Item Pricing** screen and details for pricing eligibility criteria is added in the **Price Component** screen.

6. View the basic details of price item pricing in the **Price Item Pricing** zone.
7. View the rate and price component summary of price item in the **Rate and Price Component Summary** zone.
8. View the rate components of price item in the **Rate Components** zone.
9. View the details of price components of price item in the **Price Components** zone.
10. View the tiering criteria of price item pricing in the **Tiering Criteria** zone.
11. View the pricing eligibility criteria of price item pricing in the **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** zone.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Person)</a> on page 344
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Person</a> on page 345
<b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Pricing (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 378
<b>Price Item Pricing</b> zone	<a href="#">Price Item Pricing</a> on page 379
<b>Rate and Price Component Summary</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate and Price Component Summary</a> on page 382
<b>Rate Components</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate Components</a>
<b>Price Components</b> zone	<a href="#">Price Components</a>
<b>Tiering Criteria</b> zone	<a href="#">Tiering Criteria</a>
<b>Pricing Eligibility Criteria</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Eligibility Criteria</a>

## Editing a Price Item Pricing of a Person

### Prerequisites

To edit a price item pricing of a person, you should have:

- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Rate schedules, rate versions, rate components defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the price item (in case you want to define price item pricing based on those parameters)

### Procedure

To edit a price item pricing of a person:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** (☰) icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.

The **Pricing (Person)** screen appears.

4. Price assignments effective for the person appears in the **Effective Price Assignments for Person** zone.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the price item pricing whose details you want to edit.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the price item pricing.
- **TFM Information** – Used to specify the transaction feed management information about the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears in the **Price Item Pricing** screen only when the value for the **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type for **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** is **Pricing and Billing**.

- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the price item pricing.
- **Price Item and Parameter Information** – Used to define the parameter details segment for the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears only when **Price Assignment Type** is **Regular**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item pricing is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.  If you change the effective start and end dates while editing a price item pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during that date range.  This field will be in read-only mode when the price assignment has been used.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price item pricing is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Regular</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment.</li> <li>• <b>Post Processing</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account.</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b>            The post processing bill segment is generated when the <b>Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)</b> characteristic is defined for the price item and when the price item is associated with another price item using the <b>Price Item</b> relationship type.         </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Invoice Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.         </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Price Item Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.         </div>	Yes
Pricing Eligibility	<p>Used to select pricing eligibility criteria for price item pricing.</p> <div> <b>Note:</b> This field will be enabled for selection if the checkbox is not selected. If the checkbox appears selected then this field will be in read-only mode.         </div>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Draft</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is created as a draft.</li> <li>• <b>Active</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is used for billing.</li> <li>• <b>Inactive</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is no longer used for billing.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is used for quotations.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If a price assignment is in <b>Active</b> status, you can change its status to <b>Inactive</b>.</p> <p>If a price assignment is in <b>Draft</b> status, you cannot change its status to <b>Proposed</b>.</p>	Yes
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.	Yes
Rate Schedule	<p>Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Rate schedules control how the bills for the price item will be calculated.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> screen appears.</p>	Yes
Pricing Rule Type	<p>Used to indicate the pricing rule type. The valid value is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two-Dimensional</li> </ul>	<p>Yes (Conditional)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are editing a two-dimensional pricing rule.</p>
Print Zero	<p>Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, <b>Yes</b> is selected.</p>	Yes
Pricing Frequency	<p>Used to indicate pricing frequency for the price item.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> is defined as <b>Only Pricing</b> and <b>Price Item Type</b> is defined as <b>Fees</b>.</p>	Yes

6. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
7. Edit the TFM Information in a price item pricing, if required.
8. Edit the characteristics for a price item pricing, if required.
9. Edit the parameters for a price item pricing, if required.
10. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the price item pricing are saved.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Person)</a> on page 344
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Person</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Person</a> on page 345
How to define a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 383
How to define characteristics for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 341
How to define parameters for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 342
How to define TFM Information in a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 343

## **Overriding a Price Item Pricing of a Person**

### **Prerequisites**

To override a price item pricing of a person, you should have:

- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Rate schedules, rate versions, rate components defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the price item (in case you want to define price item pricing based on multiple parameters)

### **Procedure**

To override a price item pricing of a person:

1. Search for the person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** (☰) icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.  
A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.  
The **Pricing (Person)** screen appears.
4. Price assignments effective for the person appears in the **Effective Price Assignments for Person** zone.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Override** (🔧) icon in the **Override** column corresponding to the price item pricing whose details you want to override.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the price item pricing.

- TFM Information** – Used to specify the transaction feed management information about the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears in the **Price Item Pricing** screen only when the value for the **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type for **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** is **Pricing and Billing**.

- Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the price item pricing.
- Price Item and Parameter Information** – Used to define the parameter details segment for the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears only when **Price Assignment Type** is **Regular**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item pricing is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.  If you change the effective start and end dates while overriding a price item pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during that date range.  This field will be in read-only mode when the price assignment has been used.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price item pricing is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Regular</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment.</li> <li>• <b>Post Processing</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The post processing bill segment is generated when the <b>Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)</b> characteristic is defined for the price item and when the price item is associated with another price item using the <b>Price Item</b> relationship type.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Invoice Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Price Item Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> </div>	Yes
Pricing Eligibility	<p>Used to select pricing eligibility criteria for price item pricing.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This field will be in enabled for selection if the checkbox is not selected. If the checkbox appears selected then this field will be in read-only mode.</p> </div>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Status	Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Draft</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is created as a draft.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is used for quotations.</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> If a price assignment is in <b>Draft</b> status, you cannot change its status to <b>Proposed</b> .	
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to override the price item pricing.	Yes
Rate Schedule	Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining price item pricing.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Rate schedules control how the bills for the price item will be calculated.  The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> screen appears.	
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two-Dimensional</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are overriding a two-dimensional pricing rule.
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, <b>Yes</b> is selected.	
Pricing Frequency	Used to indicate pricing frequency for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> is defined as <b>Only Pricing</b> and <b>Price Item Type</b> is defined as <b>Fees</b> .	

6. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
7. Modify the TFM Information in a price item pricing, if required.
8. Modify the characteristics for a price item pricing, if required.
9. Modify the parameters for a price item pricing, if required.

**Note:** If you change the effective end date while overriding a price item pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during the date range of start and end date.

**10. Click Save.**

The price item pricing is overridden.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Person)</a> on page 344
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Person</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Person</a> on page 345
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
How to define a price item pricing	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 383
How to define characteristics for a price item pricing	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 341
How to define parameters for a price item pricing	<a href="#">Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 342
How to define TFM Information in a price item pricing	<a href="#">Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 343

**Assigning a Price Item to a Person****Prerequisites**

To assign a price item to a person, you should have:

- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Rate schedules, rate versions, and rate components defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the price item (in case you want to define price item pricing based on multiple parameters)

**Procedure**

To assign a price item to a person:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** (☰) icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.  
A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.  
The **Pricing (Person)** screen appears.
4. Search for the price item that you want to assign to the person in the **Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing** zone.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Assign** (📌) icon in the **Assign** column corresponding to the price item that you want to assign to the person.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the price item pricing.
- **TFM Information** – Used to specify the transaction feed management information about the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears in the **Price Item Pricing** screen only when the value for the **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type for **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** is **Pricing and Billing**.

- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the price item pricing.
- **Price Item and Parameter Information** – Used to define the parameter details segment for the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears only when **Price Assignment Type** is **Processing**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item pricing is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current system date appears in this field. The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price item pricing is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Regular</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment.</li> <li>• <b>Post Processing</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The post processing bill segment is generated when the <b>Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)</b> characteristic is defined for the price item and when the price item is associated with another price item using the <b>Price Item</b> relationship type.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Invoice Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Price Item Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> </div>	Yes
Pricing Eligibility	Used to select pricing eligibility criteria for price item pricing.	No
Pricing Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Draft</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is created as a draft.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> – Indicates that the price assignment is used for quotations.</li> </ul>	Yes
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Schedule	Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining price item pricing.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Rate schedules control how the bills for the price item will be calculated.  The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> screen appears.	
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Two-Dimensional</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a two-dimensional pricing rule.
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, <b>Yes</b> is selected.	
Pricing Frequency	Used to indicate pricing frequency for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> is defined as <b>Only Pricing</b> and <b>Price Item Type</b> is defined as <b>Fees</b> .	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define TFM Information in a price item pricing, if required.
- Define characteristics for a price item pricing, if required.
- Define parameters for a price item pricing, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The pricing is defined for the price item.

**Note:** A bundle cannot be assigned if its child price items are already assigned to a person and vice versa, in the same date range.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Person)</a> on page 344
<b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price Item</a> on page 350
How to search for an person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
How to define characteristics for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 341

For more information on...	See...
How to define parameters for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 342
How to define TFM Information in a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 343

## Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a price item pricing, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Price Item**)

### Procedure


To define characteristics for a price item pricing that is assigned to an account:

1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining a price item pricing.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price item pricing.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price item pricing.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item Pricing</b> . <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price item pricing.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the price item pricing. <b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears. On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the price item pricing, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the price item pricing, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the price item pricing.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price item pricing	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 383
How to edit a price item pricing	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 388
How to override a price item pricing	<a href="#">Overriding a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 422

## **Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing**

### **Prerequisites**

To define parameters for a price item pricing, you should have:

- Parameters associated with the price item, in case, you want to define price item pricing based on multiple parameters

### **Procedure**


To define parameter details segment for a price item pricing that is assigned to an account:

1. Ensure that the **Price Item and Parameter Information** section is expanded when you are defining a price item pricing.

The **Price Item and Parameter Information** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Price Item	Indicates the price item or price item bundle whose pricing details are listed in this section.

In addition, this section contains a grid which has the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	Used to indicate the parameter that you want to associate with the price item pricing.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> window appears. The parameter search results displays only those parameters where the <b>Price Item</b> check box is selected	
Parameter Information	Displays a comma-separated string which contains of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Parameter Description</li> <li>Mandatory (Yes or No)</li> <li>Priority</li> </ul>	Not applicable

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Value	Used to specify the value of the parameter.	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Price Item and Parameter Information** section.
- If you want to define more than one parameter information for the price item pricing, click the **Add (+)** icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a parameter information from the price item pricing, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the parameter.

- Click **Save**.

The parameters are defined for the price item pricing.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price item pricing	<a href="#">Defining a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 383
How to edit a price item pricing	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 388
How to override a price item pricing	<a href="#">Overriding a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 422

## Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing

### Prerequisites

To define the TFM information in a price item pricing, you should have:

- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Aggregation or Rating Criteria data to be defined for the price item pricing

### Procedure

To define the TFM information in a price item pricing:

- Ensure that the **TFM Information** section is expanded when you are defining a price item pricing.

The **TFM Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Ignore Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the price item is considered for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
Aggregate Transactions	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the price item is aggregated for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Aggregation Schedule	Used to indicate the transaction aggregation cycle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Daily</li> <li>• Weekly</li> <li>• Monthly</li> <li>• Quarterly</li> <li>• Yearly</li> </ul>	Yes
Transaction Rating Criteria	Used to indicate how and when the transaction legs mapped to the price item are rated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggregate Transactions and Then Rate Aggregated SQs</li> <li>• Do Not Rate Transactions</li> <li>• Rate Transaction and Aggregate Calc Lines Across Transaction</li> </ul>	Yes

2. Enter the required details in the **TFM Information** section.

**Note:** **TFM Information** section appears when the value for **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type of **C1\_FM feature configuration** is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** is **Pricing and Billing**.

3. Click **Save**.

The transactions are defined for the price item pricing.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price item pricing for an account	<a href="#">Assigning a Price Item to an Account</a> on page 337
How to edit a price item pricing for an account	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing of an Account</a> on page 329
How to override a price item pricing for an account	<a href="#">Overriding a Price Item Pricing of an Account</a> on page 333
How to define a price item pricing for a person	<a href="#">Assigning a Price Item to a Person</a> on page 371
How to edit a price item pricing for a person	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing of a Person</a> on page 363
How to override a price item pricing for a person	<a href="#">Overriding a Price Item Pricing of a Person</a> on page 367
How to define a price item pricing for a price list	<a href="#">Assigning a Price Item to a Price List</a> on page 269
How to edit a price item pricing for a price list	<a href="#">Editing a Price Item Pricing of a Price List</a> on page 265

## **Price Item Pricing (Used for Viewing)**

The **Price Item Pricing** screen allows you to view the details of the price item pricing. It also allows you to edit the details of the existing price item pricing. It contains the following zones:

- [Price Item Pricing](#) on page 379 zone
- [Rate and Price Component Summary](#) on page 382 zone

- [Two-Dimensional Pricing](#) on page 382 zone

**Note:** The **Two-Dimensional Pricing** zone appears only when the **Pricing Rule Type** is set to **Two-Dimensional**.

## Price Item Pricing

The **Price Item Pricing** zone displays the details of the price item pricing. It contains the following sections:

- **Pricing Information** – Displays basic information about the price item pricing. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing of the price item is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing of the price item is effective.
Price Assignment Type	<p>Indicates the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing</b> – Indicates that the pricing is used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account.</li> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Invoice Based</b> – Indicates that the pricing is used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment is done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This is not applicable for price items which are defined for <b>Pricing</b> and where the <b>Price Item Type</b> field is set to <b>Fees</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Price Item Based</b> – Indicates that the pricing is used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment is done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account.</li> <li>• <b>Regular</b> – Indicates that the pricing is used to generate regular bill segment.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This is not applicable for price items which are defined for <b>Pricing</b> and where the <b>Price Item Type</b> field is set to <b>Fees</b>.</p> <p>By default, the <b>Regular</b> option is selected in the <b>Bundle Type</b> field for price item which are applicable for <b>Pricing</b> and cannot be edited.</p> <p>The post processing bill segment is generated when the <b>Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)</b> characteristic is defined for the price item and when the price item is associated with another price item using the <b>Price Item</b> relationship type.</p>
Pricing Eligibility	Indicates whether the price item pricing is eligible for pricing assignment or not.

Field Name	Field Description
Pricing Status	<p>Indicates the pricing assignment status of the price item pricing. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Template</li> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> </ul>
Variance Parameter	<p>Indicates the variance based on which the price item pricing is defined.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b>.</p>
Pricing Currency	<p>Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Currency</b> screen appears where you can edit, add, or delete the details of the currency.</p>
Rate Schedule	<p>Indicates the rate schedule that is used to define the price item pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Rate Schedule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective rate schedule.</p>
Pricing Rule Type	<p>Indicates the pricing rule type. The valid value is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two-Dimensional</li> </ul>
Print Zero	<p>Indicates the zero pricing displayed in the bill. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Pricing Frequency	<p>Indicates the pricing frequency for the price item.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Price Item Usage</b> field is set to <b>Pricing</b> and <b>Price Item Type</b> field is set to <b>Fees</b>.</p>
Advance Pricing	<p>This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> field is set to <b>Pricing</b>, <b>Price Item Type</b> field is set to <b>Fees</b> and <b>Price Assignment Type</b> field is set to <b>Post Processing</b>. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Price Assignment Usage	<p>Indicates whether the price item pricing is applicable to all customers or only to new customers. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Customers</li> <li>• New Customers</li> </ul>



- **TFM Information** – Displays information about the transactions mapped to the price item pricing. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Ignore Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the price item pricing is considered for billing or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Do not Aggregate Switch	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the price item pricing is aggregated for billing or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Aggregation Schedule	Indicates the transaction aggregation cycle. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Daily</li> <li>• Weekly</li> <li>• Monthly</li> <li>• Quarterly</li> <li>• Yearly</li> </ul>
Transaction Rating Criteria	Indicates how and when the transaction legs mapped to the price item are rated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggregate Transactions and Then Rate Aggregated SQs</li> <li>• Do Not Rate Transactions</li> <li>• Rate Transaction and Aggregate Calc Lines</li> </ul>

**Note:**

**TFM Information** section appears when the value for **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type of **C1\_FM feature configuration** is set to **Y** and **Price Item Usage** field is set to **Pricing and Billing**.

**TFM Information** section does not appear when the **Price Item Usage** field is set to **Pricing** and the **Price Item Type** field is set to **Fees**, if so, then only the **Pricing Frequency** field appears.

- **Characteristics** – Lists the characteristics defined for the price item pricing. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the price item pricing.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Price Item and Parameter Information** – Displays information about the parameters associated with the price item pricing. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Price Item	Indicates the price item or price item bundle whose parameter details are listed in this section.

In addition, this section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter	Indicates the parameter that is associated with the price item pricing.
Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter.

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the price item pricing is in the <b>Draft</b> , or <b>Proposed</b> status.
Delete	Used to delete the price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the price item pricing is in the <b>Draft</b> , or <b>Proposed</b> status.
Submit	Used to submit the price item pricing for validation and processing.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit</b> button appears only when the price item pricing is in the <b>Draft</b> , or <b>Proposed</b> status.

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the price item pricing is defined in the application. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

## Rate and Price Component Summary

The **Rate and Price Component Summary** zone lists information about the following in a tree view:

- **Rate Component** defined for the rate schedule of the price item pricing
- **Price Component** defined for each **Rate Component**
- **Eligibility Criteria** defined for each **Price Component**

**Note:** This information appears only when eligibility check box is selected in the **Price Item Pricing** screen and details for eligibility criteria is added in the **Price Component** screen.

- **Tiering Criteria** defined for each **Price Component**

**Note:** This information appears only when the **Tiering Type** for the rate component is **STEP** or **Threshold**.

## Two-Dimensional Pricing

The **Two-Dimensional Pricing** zone displays the details of the two-dimensional pricing. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Pricing Information	Displays the concatenated string consisting of pricing information and pricing ID which are separated by a comma (,) for an account, person, or price list.

In addition, this section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description
Step Criterion	Displays the <b>Price Criteria</b> of the price component.
Threshold Parameter	Displays the parameter of the price component eligibility.
Tiering Range	Displays the tiering range of the pricing.

## Defining a Price Item Pricing

### Prerequisites


To define a price item pricing, you should have:



- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Rate schedules, rate versions, and rate components defined in the application
- Tiering criteria defined in the application
- Tiering setup for the rate components defined in the application
- Pricing eligibility defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the price item (in case you want to define price item pricing based on multiple parameters)

### Procedure

To define pricing for a price item:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Define pricing for a price item that you want to assign to a person	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Access the <b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen.</li> <li>2. Search for the price item or price item bundle that you want to assign to the person in the <b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone by selecting the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>3. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Assign</b>  icon in the <b>Assign</b> column corresponding to the price item that you want to assign to the person.</li> </ol>
Define pricing for a price item that you want to assign to an account	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Access the <b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen.</li> <li>2. Search for the price item or price item bundle that you want to assign to the person in the <b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone by selecting the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	<b>3.</b> In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Assign</b> (  ) icon in the <b>Assign</b> column corresponding to the price item that you want to assign to the account.
Define pricing for a price item that you want to assign to a price list	<b>1.</b> Access the <b>Price list Price Item Pricing</b> screen.  <b>2.</b> Search for the price item or price item bundle that you want to assign to the person in the <b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone by selecting the <b>Price Item</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.  <b>3.</b> In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Assign</b> (  ) icon in the <b>Assign</b> column corresponding to the price item that you want to assign to the price list.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price item pricing.
- **TFM Information** - Used to specify the transaction feed management information that you want to map to the price item pricing.


**Note:** This section appears in the **Price Item Pricing** screen only when the value for the **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type for **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** field is **Pricing and Billing**.

- **Characteristics** - Use to define characteristics for the price item pricing.
- **Price Item and Parameter Information** - Used to associate parameters with the price item pricing.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item pricing is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current system date appears in this field.  The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price item pricing is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing is used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account.</li> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Invoice Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing is used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment is done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This is not be applicable for price items which are defined for <b>Pricing</b> and where the <b>Price Item Type</b> field is set to <b>Fees</b>.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Price Item Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing is used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment is done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account.</li> <li>• <b>Regular</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing is used to generate regular bill segment.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> This is not be applicable for price items which are defined for <b>Pricing</b> and where the <b>Price Item Type</b> field is set to <b>Fees</b>.  By default, the <b>Regular</b> option is selected in the <b>Bundle Type</b> field for price items which are applicable for <b>Pricing</b> and cannot be edited.  The post processing bill segment is generated when the <b>Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)</b> characteristic is defined for the price item and when the price item is associated with another price item using the <b>Price Item Relationship Type</b>.</p> </div>	Yes
Pricing Eligibility	Used to indicate whether you want to use the price item for pricing or not.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Status	Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Template</li> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> <li>• Proposed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Draft</b> option is selected. You can edit the price item pricing only when it is in the <b>Draft</b> status.	
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance based on which you want to define the price item pricing.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .	
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.	Yes
Rate Schedule	Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining a price item pricing.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Rate schedules control how the bills for the price item will be calculated. The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> window appears.	
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the rule type which is used for price item pricing. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two-Dimensional</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you are defining a standard price item pricing, the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> field should be kept blank.	
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to define <b>Two-Dimensional</b> pricing for the price item or price item bundle.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, <b>Yes</b> is selected.	
Pricing Frequency	Used to indicate pricing frequency for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Price Item Usage</b> field is set to <b>Pricing</b> and <b>Price Item Type</b> field is set to <b>Fees</b> .	
Advance Pricing	This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> field is set to <b>Pricing</b> , <b>Price Item Type</b> field is set to <b>Fees</b> and <b>Price Assignment Type</b> field is set to <b>Post Processing</b> . The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
Price Assignment Usage	Used to indicate whether the price item pricing is applicable to all customers or only to new customers. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Customers</li> <li>• New Customers</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>All Customers</b> option is selected.	

2. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
3. Enter the transaction feed management information that you want to map to the price item pricing.
4. Define characteristics for the price item pricing, if required.
5. Associate parameters with the price item pricing, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

The price item pricing is defined.

**Note:** A bundle cannot be assigned if its child price items are already assigned to a price list, person, or an account, and vice versa, in the same date range.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Person)</a> on page 344
<b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Account)</a> on page 310
<b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Price Item Pricing</a> on page 255
<b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</a> on page 257

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 341
How to define parameters for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 342
How to define TFM Information in a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 343

## Editing a Price Item Pricing

### Prerequisites



To edit a price item pricing, you should have:

- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Rate schedules, rate versions, rate components defined in the application
- Tiering criteria defined in the application
- Tiering setup for the rate components defined in the application
- Pricing eligibility defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the price item (in case you want to define price item pricing based on those parameters)



### Procedure



To edit a price item pricing:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Edit pricing of a price item that is assigned to a person	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the person in the <b>Customer 360° View</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Show Context Menu</b> () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view. A menu appears.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Go To Effective Pricing</b> menu option. The <b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen appears.</li> <li>4. Price assignments effective for the person appears in the <b>Effective Price Assignments for Person</b> zone.</li> <li>5. You can edit the price item pricing through the following alternatives: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. First alternative, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In the <b>Search Results</b> section of <b>Effective Price Assignments for Person</b> zone, click the <b>Edit</b> () icon in the <b>Edit</b> column corresponding to the price item pricing whose details you want to edit.</li> </ul> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>



If you want to...	Then...
	<p>The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears to edit the pricing details of the price item.</p> <p>b. Second alternative,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section of <b>Effective Price Assignments for Person</b> zone, click the link in the <b>Pricing</b> column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to edit.</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Edit</b> button in the <b>Record Actions</b> section.</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears to edit the pricing details of the price item.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the price item pricing is in the <b>Draft</b> status.</p> </div>
<p>Edit pricing of a price item that is assigned to an account</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Search for the account in the <b>Customer 360° View</b> screen.</li> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Show Context Menu</b> () icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view. A menu appears.</li> <li>Click the <b>Go To Effective Pricing</b> menu option. The <b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen appears.</li> <li>Price assignments effective for the account appears in the <b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone.</li> <li>You can edit the price item pricing through the following alternatives: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>First alternative, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section of <b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone, click the <b>Edit</b> () icon in the <b>Edit</b> column corresponding to the price item pricing whose details you want to edit.</li> </ul> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	<p>The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears to edit the pricing details of the price item.</p> <p>b. Second alternative,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section of <b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone, click the link in the <b>Pricing</b> column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to edit.</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Edit</b> button in the <b>Record Actions</b> section.</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears to edit the pricing details of the price item.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the price item pricing is in the <b>Draft</b> status.</p> </div>
Edit pricing of a price item that is assigned to a price list	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Search for the price list in the <b>Price List</b> screen.</li> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>View</b> () icon in the <b>Price List Pricing</b> column corresponding to the price list whose details you want to edit.</li> </ol> <p>The <b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Price items assigned to the price list appears in the <b>Price List Price Items</b> zone.</li> <li>You can edit the price item pricing through the following alternatives:             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>First alternative,                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section of <b>Price List Price Items</b> zone, click the <b>Edit</b> () icon in the <b>Edit</b> column corresponding to the price item pricing whose details you want to edit.</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears to edit the pricing details of the price item.</p> </li> <li>Second alternative,</li> </ol> </li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section of <b>Price List Price Items</b> zone, click the link in the <b>Pricing</b> column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to view.</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Edit</b> button in the <b>Record Actions</b> section.</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears to edit the pricing details of a price item.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the price item pricing is in the <b>Draft</b> status.</p> </div>

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price item pricing.
- TFM Information** - Used to specify the transaction feed management information that you want to map to the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears in the **Price Item Pricing** screen only when the value for the **Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing** option type for **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y** and **Price Item Available For** field is **Pricing and Billing**.


- Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the price item pricing.
- Price Item and Parameter Information** - Used to associate parameters with the price item pricing.

**Note:** This section appears only when **Price Assignment Type** is **Processing**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item pricing is effective.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>By default, the current system date appears in this field.</p> <p>The effective start date cannot be later than the effective end date.</p>	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the price item pricing is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	
Price Assignment Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of price assignment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Regular</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate regular bill segment.</li> <li>• <b>Post Processing</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on usage accounts. The post processing bill segment is generated when you generate the bill for the usage account and not when you bill the usage account through an invoice account.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The post processing bill segment is generated when the <b>Post Processing Sequence (PPSEQ)</b> characteristic is defined for the price item and when the price item is associated with another price item using the <b>Price Item</b> relationship type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Invoice Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on an invoice account, and, as a result, the post processing bill segment is generated on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Post Processing – Price Item Based</b> – Used to indicate that the pricing must be used to generate post processing bill segment. This type of price assignment can be done on both invoice and usage accounts, but the post processing bill segment is generated only on the invoice account.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This will not be applicable for price item which are defined for <b>Only Pricing</b>.</p>	Yes
Pricing Eligibility	Used to indicate whether you want to use the price item for pricing or not.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Status	Used to indicate the status of the price assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Draft</b> - Used to indicate that the price assignment is created as a draft.</li> <li>• <b>Proposed</b> - Used to indicate that the price assignment is used for quotations.</li> <li>• <b>Template</b> - Used to indicate that the price assignment is a template price list.</li> </ul>	Yes
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance based on which you want to define the price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .	No
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.	Yes
Rate Schedule	Used to specify the rate schedule that you want to use while defining price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> Rate schedules control how the bills for the price item will be calculated.  The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> window appears.	Yes
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the rule type which is used for price item pricing. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two-Dimensional</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a two-dimensional pricing rule.
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
Pricing Frequency	Used to indicate pricing frequency for the price item.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> is defined as <b>Only Pricing</b> and <b>Price Item Type</b> is defined as <b>Fees</b> .	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Advance Pricing	This field appears only when <b>Price Item</b> field is set to <b>Pricing</b> , <b>Price Item Type</b> field is set to <b>Fees</b> and <b>Price Assignment Type</b> field is set to <b>Post Processing</b> . The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
Price Assignment Usage	Used to indicate whether the price item pricing is applicable to all customers or only to new customers. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Customers</li> <li>• New Customers</li> </ul>	Yes

2. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.

**Note:**

If you change the effective start and end dates while editing a price item pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during that date range.

3. Modify the TFM information that you want to map to the price item pricing, if required.
4. Define, edit or remove characteristics from the price item pricing, if required.
5. Define, edit or remove parameters from the price item pricing, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

**Note:**

If any value other than **Status** and **End Date** is updated then the price assignment for the price item is ended with **End Date** updated as the current system date and a new price assignment is generated for the price item with new price item pricing ID and start date as the current system date.

The **Submit** button appears only when the **Pricing Status** is **Draft**.

The **Edit Price Components** button appears only when you are editing a price assignment which is in the **Active**, **Proposed**, or **Template** status and which is not past dated; If the approval workflow is on, then the **Edit Price Components** button appears when you are editing a proposed and template price assignment which is already approved.

When the price assignment is in **Draft** status and,

- When the approval workflow is on and is in **Draft** status then it is changed to **Pending in Approval**.

When the price assignment is in **Draft** status and,

- When the approval workflow is off and is in **Draft** status then it is changed to **Active**.

The changes made to the price item pricing are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>360° Search</b> zone	<a href="#">360° Search</a>
How to search for a person.	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Person)</a> on page 344
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Person</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Person</a> on page 345
How to search for an account.	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
<b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Account)</a> on page 310
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Account</a> on page 311
<b>Search Price List</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price List</a> on page 230
How to search for a price list.	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Price Item Pricing</a> on page 255
<b>Price List Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Price Items</a> on page 255
<b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Pricing (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 378
How to define a price item pricing for an account.	<a href="#">Assigning a Price Item to an Account</a> on page 337
How to define a price item pricing for a person.	<a href="#">Assigning a Price Item to a Person</a> on page 371
How to define a price item pricing for a price list.	<a href="#">Assigning a Price Item to a Price List</a> on page 269
How to define characteristics for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 341
How to define parameters for a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining Parameters for a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 342
How to define TFM Information in a price item pricing.	<a href="#">Defining TFM Information in a Price Item Pricing</a> on page 343




## Deleting a Price Item Pricing

### Procedure



To delete a price item pricing:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to delete...	Then...
Price Item Pricing assigned to an account	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the account in the <b>Customer 360° View</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Show Context Menu</b> (☰) icon corresponding to the account whose details you want to view. A menu appears.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Go To Effective Pricing</b> menu option. The <b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen appears.</li> <li>4. Price assignments effective for the account appears in the <b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone.</li> <li>5. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Pricing</b> column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to view.</li> </ol>

If you want to delete...	Then...
	<p>The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</p> <p><b>Tip:</b> Alternatively, you can access the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for a price item in the <b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Assign</b> () icon corresponding to the price item.</li> <li>3. Enter the required details in the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen and click <b>Save</b>.</li> <li>4. The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</li> </ol>
Price Item Pricing assigned to a person	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the person in the <b>Customer 360° View</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Show Context Menu</b> () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view. A menu appears.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Go To Effective Pricing</b> menu option. The <b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen appears.</li> <li>4. Price assignments effective for the person appears in the <b>Effective Price Assignments for Person</b> zone.</li> <li>5. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Pricing</b> column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to view. The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</li> </ol> <p><b>Tip:</b> Alternatively, you can access the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for a price item in the <b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Assign</b> () icon corresponding to the price item.</li> <li>3. Enter the required details in the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen and click <b>Save</b>.</li> <li>4. The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</li> </ol>
Price Item Pricing assigned to a price list	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the price list in the <b>Price List</b> screen.</li> </ol>



If you want to delete...	Then...
	<p><b>2.</b> In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Price List Pricing</b> () icon corresponding to the price list whose <i>details</i> you want to view.</p> <p>The <b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</p> <p><b>3.</b> Price items assigned to the price list appears in the <b>Price List Price Items</b> zone.</p> <p><b>4.</b> In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Pricing</b> column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to view.</p> <p>The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</p> <p><b>Tip:</b> Alternatively, you can access the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen by:</p> <p><b>1.</b> Search for a price item in the <b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone.</p> <p><b>2.</b> In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Assign</b> () icon corresponding to the price item.</p> <p><b>3.</b> Enter the required details in the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen and click <b>Save</b>.</p> <p><b>4.</b> The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</p>

- 2.** Click the **Delete** button in the **Record Actions** zone.

**Note:**

When the price assignment is in **Draft** status then the **Delete** button appears.

When the price assignment is in **Draft** status and when the approval workflow is on and:

- If the approval workflow is in **Draft** status then it is changed to **Pending in Approval**.
- If the approval workflow is in **Proposed** status and,
  - If the price assignment is not approved for the first time then **Delete** button appears.
  - If the price assignment is approved then **Delete** button does not appear.
- When the approval workflow is in **Template** status and,
  - If the price assignment is not approved for the first time then **Delete** button appears.
  - If the price assignment is approved then **Delete** button does not appear.

When the price assignment is in **Draft** status, and when the approval workflow is off and is in **Draft** status then it is changed to **Active**.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the price item pricing.

- 3.** Click **OK**.

The price item pricing is deleted.

**Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
<b>360–Degree Search</b> zone	<a href="#">360° Search</a>
How to search for a person.	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
How to search for an account.	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
<b>Search Price List</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price List</a> on page 230
How to search for a price list.	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
How to view a price item pricing	<a href="#">Price Item Pricing (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 378
<b>Price Item Pricing</b> zone	<a href="#">Price Item Pricing</a> on page 379




## Submitting a Price Item Pricing



### Procedure

To submit pricing for a price item:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Submit pricing of a price item that is assigned to a person	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the person in the <b>Customer 360° View</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Show Context Menu</b> () icon corresponding to the person whose <i>details</i> you want to view. A menu appears.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Go To Effective Pricing</b> menu option. The <b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen appears.</li> <li>4. Price assignments effective for the person appears in the <b>Effective Price Assignments for Person</b> zone.</li> <li>5. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Pricing</b> column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to view. The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	<p><b>Tip:</b> Alternatively, you can access the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for a price item in the <b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Assign</b> () icon corresponding to the price item.</li> <li>3. Enter the required details in the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen and click <b>Save</b>.</li> <li>4. The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</li> </ol>
Submit pricing of a price item that is assigned to an account	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the person in the <b>Customer 360° View</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Show Context Menu</b> () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view. A menu appears.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Go To Effective Pricing</b> menu option. The <b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen appears.</li> <li>4. Price assignments effective for the person appears in the <b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone.</li> <li>5. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Pricing</b> column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to view. The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</li> </ol> <p><b>Tip:</b> Alternatively, you can access the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for a price item in the <b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Assign</b> () icon corresponding to the price item.</li> <li>3. Enter the required details in the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen and click <b>Save</b>.</li> <li>4. The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
Submit pricing of a price item that is assigned to a price list	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the price list in the <b>Price List</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Price List Pricing</b> () icon corresponding to the price list whose details you want to view.  The <b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</li> <li>3. Price items assigned to the price list appears in the <b>Price List Price Items</b> zone.</li> <li>4. In the <b>Search Results</b> section of <b>Price List Price Items</b> zone, click the link in the <b>Pricing</b> column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to view.  The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</li> </ol>
	<p><b>Tip:</b> Alternatively, you can access the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for a price item in the <b>Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing</b> zone.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Assign</b> () icon corresponding to the price item.</li> <li>3. Enter the required details in the <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen and click <b>Save</b>.</li> <li>4. The <b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen appears.</li> </ol>

2. Click the **Submit** button in the **Record Actions** section.

**Note:**

When the price assignment is in **Draft** status and when the approval workflow is on and:

- When the approval workflow is in **Draft** status then it is changed to **Pending in Approval**.
- When the approval workflow is in **Proposed** status and on clicking the **Submit** button, the status does not change and remains the same.
- When the approval workflow is in **Template** status and on clicking the **Submit** button, the status does not change and remains the same.

When the price assignment is in **Draft** status and when the approval workflow is off and:

- When the approval workflow is in **Draft** status then it is changed to **Active**.
- When the approval workflow is in **Proposed** status then on clicking the **Submit** button, the status does not change and remains the same.
- When the approval workflow is in **Template** status then on clicking the **Submit** button, the status does not change and remains the same.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>360° Search</b> zone	<a href="#">360° Search</a>
How to search for a person.	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
<b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Person)</a> on page 344
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Person</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Person</a> on page 345
How to search for an account.	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
<b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Account)</a> on page 310
<b>Effective Price Assignments for Account</b> zone	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Account</a> on page 311
<b>Search Price List</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price List</a> on page 230
How to search for a price list.	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Price List Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price List Price Item Pricing</a> on page 255
<b>Price List Price Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Price List Price Items</a> on page 255
<b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Pricing (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 378

**Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component of an Account****Prerequisites**

To define a price component for a rate component of an account, you should have:

- Rate component defined for the price item in the application

**Procedure**

To define price component for a rate component of an account:

1. Search for the account in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** (☰) icon in the **Account Information** column corresponding to the account whose details you want to view.  
A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.  
The **Pricing (Account)** screen appears.
4. Price assignments effective for the account appears in the **Effective Price Assignments for Account** zone.
5. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Pricing** column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Price Item Pricing** screen by:

- Searching for a price item in the **Search Price Item** or **Price Item Pricing** zone.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Assign** (📌) icon corresponding to the price item.
- Enter the required details in the **Price Item Pricing** screen and click **Save**.
- The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears.



For more information on...	See...
How to search for an account.	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
How to define a tiering criteria for a price component.	<a href="#">Defining a Tiering Criteria for a Price Component</a> on page 408
How to define pricing eligibility criteria for a price component.	<a href="#">Defining a Pricing Eligibility Criteria for a Price Component</a> on page 413

## Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component of a Person


### Prerequisites

To define a price component for a rate component of a person, you should have:

- Rate component defined for the price item in the application

### Procedure

To define price component for a rate component of a person:

1. Search for the person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon in the **Person Information** column corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

A menu appears.

3. Click the **Go To Effective Pricing** menu option.


The **Pricing (Person)** screen appears.


4. Price assignments effective for the person appears in the **Effective Price Assignments for Person** zone.

5. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Pricing** column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Price Item Pricing** screen by:

- Searching for a price item in the **Search Price Item or Price Item Pricing** zone.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Assign** () icon corresponding to the price item.
- Enter the required details in the **Price Item Pricing** screen and click **Save**.
- The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears.

6. In the **Rate and Price Component Summary** zone, click the **Add** () icon in the **Action** column corresponding to the **Rate Component** for which you want to define the **Price Component**.

The **Price Component** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Pricing Information	Displays the pricing ID and pricing information of the price item.
Rate Component Information	Displays information about the rate component.

In addition, this screen contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price component.
- **Tiering Criteria** - Used to specify the details of tiering criterion that are used in the tiering range.
- **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** - Used to specify the details of parameters used while defining the pricing eligibility criteria.


**Note:** You can define a **Price Component** for a **Rate Component** only when the **Pricing Status** of the **Price Item Pricing** is set to **Draft**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the sequence in which price component should be considered for the rate component while pricing.	Yes
Show Price Component	Used to indicate whether the price component should appear or not.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description of the price component.	Yes
Rate Value	Used to specify the rate defined for the price component.	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- If you want to define more than one price component for the rate component, click the

Add (  ) icon corresponding to the **Rate Component** and then repeat step 7.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price component from the rate component, click the **Delete** (  ) icon corresponding to the price component.

- Define a list of tiering criteria for the price component, if required.
- Define a list of pricing eligibility criteria for the price component, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The price component is defined for the rate component of a person.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>360–Degree Search</b> zone	<a href="#">360° Search</a>
How to search for a person.	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
How to define a tiering criteria for a price component.	<a href="#">Defining a Tiering Criteria for a Price Component</a> on page 408
How to define pricing eligibility criteria for a price component.	<a href="#">Defining a Pricing Eligibility Criteria for a Price Component</a> on page 413



## Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component of a Price List



### Prerequisites

To define a price component for a rate component of a price list, you should have:

- Rate component defined for the price item in the application

### Procedure

To define price component for a rate component of a price list:

1. Search for the price list in the **Price List** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price list whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Price List Price Item** zone appears.
3. In the **Price List Price Item** zone, click the link in the **Pricing** column corresponding to the price item whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears.
4. In the **Rate and Price Component Summary** zone, click the **Add**  icon in the **Action** column corresponding to the **Rate Component** for which you want to define the **Price Component**.

The **Price Component** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Pricing Information	Displays the pricing ID and pricing information of the price item.
Rate Component Information	Displays information about the rate component.


In addition, this screen contains the following sections:


- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the price component.
- **Tiering Criteria** - Used to specify the details of tiering criterion for the price component.
- **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** - Used to specify the details of parameters used while defining the pricing eligibility criteria for the price component.

**Note:** You can define a **Price Component** for the **Rate Component** only when the **Pricing Status** of the **Price Item Pricing** is set to **Draft**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the sequence in which price component should be considered for the rate component while pricing.	Yes
Show Price Component	Used to indicate whether the price component should appear or not.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description of the price component.	Yes
Rate Value	Used to specify the rate defined for the price component.	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- If you want to define more than one price component for the rate component, click the **Add** (  ) icon corresponding to the **Rate Component** and then repeat step 7.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price component from the rate component, click the **Delete** (  ) icon corresponding to the price component.

- Define a list of tiering criteria for the price component.
- Define a list of pricing eligibility criteria for the price component.
- Click **Save**.

The price component is defined for the rate component of a price list.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Search Price List</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price List</a> on page 230
How to search for a price list.	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
How to define a tiering criteria for a price component.	<a href="#">Defining a Tiering Criteria for a Price Component</a> on page 408
How to define pricing eligibility criteria for a price component.	<a href="#">Defining a Pricing Eligibility Criteria for a Price Component</a> on page 413

**Editing a Price Component of a Rate Component**


**Prerequisites**

To edit a price component of a rate component, you should have:

- Rate component defined for the price item in the application

**Procedure**

To edit a price component of a rate component:

- Ensure that the **Rate and Price Component Summary** zone is expanded in the **Price Item Pricing** screen.
- Click the **Edit** (  ) icon in the **Price Item Pricing** column corresponding to the price component whose details you want to edit.

The **Price Component** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Pricing Information	Displays the pricing ID and pricing information of the price item.
Rate Component Information	Displays information about the rate component.

In addition, this screen contains the following sections:

- Main** – Used to specify the basic details about the price component.
- Tiering Criteria** – Used to specify the details of tiering criteria for the price component.

- **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** – Used to specify the details of parameters which you want to consider while defining the pricing eligibility criteria for the price component.

**Note:** You can edit a **Price Component** of a **Rate Component** only when the **Pricing Status** of the **Price Item** **Pricing** is **Draft**.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the sequence in which price component should be considered for the rate component while pricing.	Yes
Show Price Component	Used to indicate whether the price component should appear or not.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description of the price component.	Yes
Rate Value	Used to specify the rate defined for the price component.	Yes

3. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
4. Define, edit, or remove tiering criteria from the price component, if required.
5. Define, edit, or remove pricing eligibility criteria from the price component, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

The price component is edited for a rate component.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>360° Search</b> zone	<a href="#">360° Search</a>
How to search for a person.	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
How to search for an account.	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
How to search for a price list.	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Search Price List</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price List</a> on page 230
<b>Rate Components</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate Components</a>
<b>Price Components</b> zone	<a href="#">Price Components</a>
How to define a price component for a rate component	<a href="#">Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component</a>
How to edit a tiering criteria for a price component.	<a href="#">Editing a Tiering Criteria of a Price Component</a> on page 410
How to edit a pricing eligibility criteria for a price component.	<a href="#">Editing a Pricing Eligibility Criteria of a Price Component</a> on page 417

## Deleting a Price Component of a Rate Component

**Procedure**

To delete a price component of a rate component:

1. Ensure that the **Rate and Price Component Summary** zone is expanded in the **Price Item Pricing** screen.
2. Click the **Delete**  icon in the **Action** column corresponding to the **Price Component** whose details you want to remove form the rate component.

**Note:** You can delete a **Price Component** of a **Rate Component** only when the **Pricing Status** of the **Price Item Pricing** is **Draft**.

A message appears confirming whether you want to remove the price component of the rate component.

3. Click **OK**.

The price component is removed from the rate component.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Rate and Price Component Summary</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate and Price Component Summary</a> on page 382
How to view price components of a rate component.	<a href="#">Viewing the Price Components of a Rate Component</a>
How to define a price component for a rate component.	<a href="#">Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component</a>

**Defining a Tiering Criteria for a Price Component**

**Prerequisites**

To define a tiering criteria for a price component, you should have:

- Tiering criteria defined in the application
- Tiering setup for the rate components defined in the application.



**Procedure**

To define a tiering criteria for a price component:


1. Ensure that the **Tiering Criteria** section is expanded in the **Price Component** screen when you are defining or editing a price component of a rate component.


The **Tiering Criteria** section contains the following columns:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the sequence in which tiering criteria should be considered.	Yes
Tiering Criterion	Used to select the tiering criterion which is used in the tiering range.	Yes
Lower Limit	Used to specify the lower limit of the pricing range.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The system provides you with the facility to specify the lower limit value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values in the tiering range.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upper Limit	<p>Used to specify the upper limit of the pricing range.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The system provides you with the facility to specify the upper limit value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values in the tiering range.</p> <p>When you define single tier with the maximum value as blank (for example, 0 to BLANK), the system will automatically replace the blank space with 999999999999999999.99.</p>	Yes
Price Item	<p>Used to indicate the price item or price item bundle whose total usage is considered for determining the rate. By default, the price item code for which you are defining the pricing appears in this field. You can specify any other price item or bundle code, if required.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Details</b> window appears.</p>	Yes
Price Parameters Item	<p>Used to specify the parameters based on which price item or price item bundle's total usage should be considered for determining the rate. By default, the parameters based on which you are defining the pricing appear in this field. You can specify any other parameters (where the <b>Pricing</b> flag is set to <b>Yes</b>), if required. However, note that you can only select parameters associated with the price item or price item bundle which is used for defining the tiering criteria.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Edit</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Edit</b> icon, the <b>Parameters Search</b> screen appears.</p>	No

- Enter the required details in the **Tiering Criteria** section.
- If you want to define more than one tiering criteria for the price component, click the

**Add** () icon corresponding to the tiering criteria and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a tiering criteria from the price component, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the tiering criteria.

4. Click **Save**.

The tiering criteria is defined for the price component.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>360° Search</b> zone	<a href="#">360° Search</a>
How to search for a person.	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
How to search for an account.	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
How to search for a price list.	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Search Price List</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price List</a> on page 230
<b>Rate and Price Component Summary</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate and Price Component Summary</a> on page 382
How to define a price component for a rate component of an Account	
How to define a price component for a rate component of a Person	
How to define a price component for a rate component of a Price List	

**Editing a Tiering Criteria of a Price Component**

**Prerequisites**

To edit a tiering criteria for a price component, you should have:

- Tiering criteria defined in the application
- Tiering setup for the rate components defined in the application.


**Procedure**


To edit a tiering criteria for a price component:

1. Ensure that the **Tiering Criteria** section is expanded in the **Price Component** screen when you are defining or editing a price component of a rate component.

The **Tiering Criteria** sections contains the following columns:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the sequence in which tiering criteria should be considered.	Yes
Tiering Criterion	Used to select the tiering criterion which is used in the tiering range.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Lower Limit	Used to specify the lower limit of the pricing range.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The system provides you with the facility to specify the lower limit value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values in the tiering range.	
Upper Limit	Used to specify the upper limit of the pricing range.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The system provides you with the facility to specify the upper limit value with a precision of up to 18 places before decimal and 18 places after decimal. This gives you the flexibility to specify very large and very low values in the tiering range.  When you define single tier with the maximum value as blank (for example, 0 to BLANK), the system will automatically replace the blank space with 9999999999999999.99.	
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item or price item bundle whose total usage is considered for determining the rate. By default, the price item code for which you are defining the pricing appears in this field. You can specify any other price item or bundle code, if required.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Details</b> window appears.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item Parameters	<p>Used to specify the parameters based on which the price item or price item bundle's total usage should be considered for determining the rate. By default, the parameters based on which you are defining the pricing appear in this field. You can specify any other parameters (where the <b>Pricing</b> flag is set to <b>Yes</b>), if required. However, note that you can only select parameters associated with the price item or price item bundle which is used for defining the tiering criteria.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Edit</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Edit</b> icon, the <b>Tier Parameters</b> screen appears.</p>	No

2. Modify the required details in the **Tiering Criteria** section.

3. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the tiering criteria is saved.

#### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
<b>360° Search</b> zone	<a href="#">360° Search</a>
How to search for a person.	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
How to search for an account.	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
How to search for a price list.	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Search Price List</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price List</a> on page 230
<b>Rate and Price Component Summary</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate and Price Component Summary</a> on page 382
How to define a price component for a rate component	<a href="#">Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component</a>
How to define a tiering criteria for a price component.	<a href="#">Defining a Tiering Criteria for a Price Component</a> on page 408
How to define a price component for a rate component of an Account	<a href="#">Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component of an Account</a> on page 401
How to define a price component for a rate component of a Person	<a href="#">Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component of a Person</a> on page 403
How to define a price component for a rate component of a Price List	<a href="#">Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component of a Price List</a> on page 405



## Deleting a Tiering Criteria of a Price Component

### Procedure

To delete a tiering criteria of a price component:

1. Ensure that the **Tiering Criteria** section is expanded in the **Price Component** screen when you are defining or editing a price component of a rate component.
2. Click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the **Tiering Criteria** whose details you want to remove from the price component.
3. Click **Save**.

The tiering criteria is removed from the price component.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Rate and Price Component Summary</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate and Price Component Summary</a> on page 382
How to define a tiering criteria for a price component.	<a href="#">Defining a Tiering Criteria for a Price Component</a> on page 408

## Defining a Pricing Eligibility Criteria for a Price Component

### Prerequisites

To define a pricing eligibility criteria for a price component, you should have:

- Pricing eligibility defined in the application


### Procedure


To define a pricing eligibility criteria for a price component:

1. Ensure that the **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** section is expanded in the **Price Component** screen when you are defining or editing a price component of a rate component.

The **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** section contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the order in which the criteria should be executed in the rule.	Yes


Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter	<p>Used to indicate the left hand side parameter which you want to use along with the price item for price determination.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARAM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>You must not specify any special character except underscore (_) in the parameter code. Otherwise, the status of the transaction is changed to <b>Error (ERROR)</b>.</p>	Yes
Operator	<p>Used to specify the relational operator to define the relation between the left hand side and right hand side parameters code. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt;</li> <li>• &lt;=</li> <li>• &lt;&gt;</li> <li>• =</li> <li>• &gt;</li> <li>• &gt;=</li> <li>• Between</li> <li>• In</li> <li>• Like</li> <li>• Not In</li> </ul>	Yes
Parameter Value Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of pricing eligibility. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Parameter</b> – Used to indicate the type of parameter.</li> <li>• <b>Value</b> – Used to indicate the type of value.</li> </ul>	Yes

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Value	<p>When the <b>Parameter</b> option is selected for the <b>Parameter Value Type</b> field then it is used to specify the right hand side parameter which you want to use along with the price item or price item bundle for price determination. When the <b>Value</b> option is selected for the <b>Parameter Value Type</b> field then it is used to specify the parameter value.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARAM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field only when the <b>Parameter</b> option is selected for the <b>Parameter Value Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>When the <b>Parameter</b> option is selected for the <b>Parameter Value Type</b> field then you must not specify any special character except underscore (_) in the parameter code. Otherwise, the status of the transaction is changed to <b>Error (ERROR)</b>.</p> <p>When the <b>Value</b> option is selected for the <b>Parameter Value Type</b> field then you can specify any special characters except ampersand (&amp;), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon (;) in the parameter value.</p>	Yes
Is True	<p>Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is true (satisfied). The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check Next Condition</b> – Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is False</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is True</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>	Yes

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Is False	Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is false (not satisfied). The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check Next Condition</b> – Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is False</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is True</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>	Yes
Is Insufficient	Used to indicate what should happen when the data is insufficient. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check Next Condition</b> – Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is False</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is True</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** section.
- If you want to define more than one pricing eligibility criteria for the price component, click the

Add (  ) icon corresponding to the pricing eligibility criteria and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a pricing eligibility criteria from the price component, click the **Delete** (  ) icon corresponding to the pricing eligibility criteria.

- Click **Save**.

The pricing eligibility criteria is defined for the price component.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>360° Search</b> zone	<a href="#">360° Search</a>
How to search for a person.	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
How to search for an account.	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
How to search for a price list.	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Search Price List</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price List</a> on page 230
<b>Rate and Price Component Summary</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate and Price Component Summary</a> on page 382
How to define a price component for a rate component of an Account	

For more information on...	See...
How to define a price component for a rate component of a Person	
How to define a price component for a rate component of a Price List	

## Editing a Pricing Eligibility Criteria of a Price Component

### Prerequisites

To edit a pricing eligibility criteria for a price component, you should have:


- Pricing eligibility defined in the application

### Procedure


To edit a pricing eligibility criteria for a price component:

1. Ensure that the **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** section is expanded in the **Price Component** screen when you are defining or editing a price component of a rate component.

The **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** sections contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the order in which the criteria should be executed in the rule.	Yes
Parameter	<p>Used to indicate the left hand side parameter which you want to use along with the price item for price determination.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARAM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>You must not specify any special character except underscore (_) in the parameter code. Otherwise, the status of the transaction is changed to <b>Error (ERROR)</b>.</p>	Yes

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Operator	<p>Used to specify the relational operator to define the relation between the left hand side and right hand side parameters code. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• &lt;</li> <li>• &lt;=</li> <li>• &lt;&gt;</li> <li>• =</li> <li>• &gt;</li> <li>• &gt;=</li> <li>• Between</li> <li>• In</li> <li>• Like</li> <li>• Not In</li> </ul>	Yes
Parameter Value Type	<p>Used to indicate the type of pricing eligibility. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Parameter</b> – Used to indicate the type of parameter.</li> <li>• <b>Value</b> – Used to indicate the type of value.</li> </ul>	Yes

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Value	<p>When the <b>Parameter</b> option is selected for the <b>Parameter Value Type</b> field then it is used to specify the right hand side parameter which you want to use along with the price item or price item bundle for price determination. When the <b>Value</b> option is selected for the <b>Parameter Value Type</b> field then it is used to specify the parameter value.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARAM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field only when the <b>Parameter</b> option is selected for the <b>Parameter Value Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>When the <b>Parameter</b> option is selected for the <b>Parameter Value Type</b> field then you must not specify any special character except underscore (_) in the parameter code. Otherwise, the status of the transaction is changed to <b>Error (ERROR)</b>.</p> <p>When the <b>Value</b> option is selected for the <b>Parameter Value Type</b> field then you can specify any special characters except ampersand (&amp;), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon (;) in the parameter value.</p>	Yes
Is True	<p>Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is true (satisfied). The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check Next Condition</b> – Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is False</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is True</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>	Yes

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Is False	Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is false (not satisfied). The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check Next Condition</b> – Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is False</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is True</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>	Yes
Is Insufficient	Used to indicate what should happen when the data is insufficient. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check Next Condition</b> – Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is False</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Is True</b> – Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>	Yes

2. Modify the required details in the **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** section.
3. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the pricing eligibility criteria is saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>360° Search</b> zone	<a href="#">360° Search</a>
How to search for a person.	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
How to search for an account.	<a href="#">Searching for an Account</a>
How to search for a price list.	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
<b>Search Price List</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Price List</a> on page 230
<b>Rate and Price Component Summary</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate and Price Component Summary</a> on page 382
How to define a price component for a rate component	<a href="#">Defining a Price Component for a Rate Component</a>
How to define a pricing eligibility criteria for a price component	<a href="#">Defining a Pricing Eligibility Criteria for a Price Component</a> on page 413
How to define a price component for a rate component of an Account	
How to define a price component for a rate component of a Person	




For more information on...	See...
How to define a price component for a rate component of a Price List	

## Deleting a Pricing Eligibility Criteria of a Price Component

### Procedure

To delete a pricing eligibility criteria of a price component:

1. Ensure that the **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** section is expanded in the **Price Component** screen when you are defining or editing a price component of a rate component.
2. Click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** whose details you want to remove from the price component.
3. Click **Save**.

The pricing eligibility criteria is removed from the price component.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Rate and Price Component Summary</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate and Price Component Summary</a> on page 382
How to define a pricing eligibility criteria for a price component.	<a href="#">Defining a Pricing Eligibility Criteria for a Price Component</a> on page 413

## Editing the Two-Dimensional Pricing

### Procedure


To edit a two-dimensional pricing:

1. Ensure that the **Two-Dimensional Pricing** zone is expanded in the **Price Item Pricing** screen when you are defining, editing, or copying a price item pricing.
2. Click the **Edit** link in the upper right corner of this zone.


The **Two-Dimensional Pricing** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Step Criterion** - Used to specify details about the tiering criteria.
- **Threshold Parameter** - Used to specify details about the eligibility criteria.

The **Step Criterion** section contains the following fields in a grid:


Field Name	Field Description
Step Criterion	Used to specify the tiering criteria for the price component.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Tiering Criterion Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the tiering criteria, the description of the tiering criteria appears below the <b>Step Criterion</b> field.</p>
Tiering Range	Used to specify the range for the tiering criteria of the price component.


The **Threshold Parameter** section contains the following field in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description
Threshold Parameter	Used to specify eligibility criteria range and rate for the price component.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the parameter, the description of the parameter appears below the <b>Threshold Parameter</b> field.</p>


3. Modify the required details in the **Two-Dimensional Pricing** screen.


- 4.

If you want to add more than one tiering range, click the **Add** () icon and then enter the specific range.

However, if you want to remove a tiering range, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the range that you want to remove.

5. If you want to add more than one eligibility criteria range for the threshold parameter, click the

**Add** () icon and then enter the eligibility criteria range.

However, if you want to remove the eligibility criteria range from the threshold parameter, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the eligibility criteria range.

6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the two-dimensional pricing are saved.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234

## Overriding a Price Item Pricing

### Prerequisites



To override a price item pricing, you should have:

- Transactions mapped to the price item defined in the application
- Rate schedules, rate versions, rate components defined in the application
- Tiering criteria defined in the application
- Tiering setup for the rate components defined in the application
- Pricing eligibility defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the price item (in case you want to define price item pricing based on multiple parameters)

### **Procedure**

To override a price item pricing:

1. Do either of the following:

<b>If you want to...</b>	<b>Then...</b>
Override price item pricing assigned to the person either directly or through the customer hierarchy or price list	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Access the <b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Effective Price Assignment</b> zone, click the <b>Override</b>  icon in the <b>Override</b> column corresponding to the price item pricing that you want to override.</li> </ol>
Override price item pricing assigned to the account either directly or through the customer hierarchy or price list	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Access the <b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Effective Price Assignment</b> zone, click the <b>Override</b>  icon in the <b>Override</b> column corresponding to the price item pricing that you want to override.</li> </ol>

The **Price Item Pricing** screen appears.

2. Modify the required pricing details.

#### **Note:**

If you change the effective start and end dates while overriding a price item pricing, you need to specify the parameters which are effective during that date range.

While overriding a price item pricing, you can not only edit the existing tiering combination details, but also add additional tiering combinations until the maximum tiering combinations limit is met.

3. Define, edit or remove the price assignment characteristics, if required.
4. Click **Save**.

The price item pricing is overridden.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
<b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#"><i>Price Item Pricing</i></a>
How to edit the characteristics of the price assignment	<a href="#"><i>Editing the Price Assignment Characteristics</i></a>

## Pricing Simulation

The **Pricing Simulation** screen allows you to:

- View pricing simulation details for account or price list
- View effective pricing information
- Search simulation details of account or price list

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Pricing](#) on page 424

Through the **Pricing Simulation** screen, you can navigate to the following screens:

- [Price Item \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 204
- [Simulation - Effective Pricing Information](#) on page 428

## Search Pricing

The **Search Pricing** zone allows you to search pricing for an account.

In case of bundles, the order in which the price item pricing is listed in this zone is based on the following condition:




- If the system finds pricing for price items that belong to a bundle before finding pricing for the bundle, then the system lists the pricing for price items that belong to the bundle, and not the pricing for the bundle. For example, let say, B0001 is a bundle, and contains C0001 and C0002 price items. If the system finds pricing for B0001, it validates whether the pricing for C0001 and C0002 has already been found. If yes, then the system lists the pricing for C0001 and C0002. If the system does not find pricing for C0001 and C0002 before finding pricing for B0001, it lists the pricing for B0001.




**Note:** If the effective pricing is available for the price item, regular bundle (to which the price item belongs), and parent (regular) bundle (i.e. to which the regular bundle belongs) at the same level, the system lists the pricing depending on the value defined for the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter in the price assignment search algorithm. If the value of the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter is set to **Y**, the system lists effective pricing which is available for the price item. If the effective pricing is not available for the price item, then the system lists effective pricing which is available for the regular bundle at the same level. If the effective pricing is not available for the regular bundle, then the system lists effective pricing which is available for the parent bundle at the same level. However, if the value of the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter is set to **N**, the system lists effective pricing which is available for the parent bundle. If the effective pricing is not available for the parent bundle, then the system lists effective pricing which is available for the regular bundle at the same level. If the effective pricing is not available for the regular bundle, then the system lists effective pricing which is available for the price item at the same level.

This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following two options:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for pricing using price list or account or person details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Price List</li><li>• Account /Person</li></ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, <b>Price List</b> option is selected.	


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List ID	Used to indicate Price List ID for which simulation must be created.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Price List ID</b> option is selected for the <b>Search By</b> field.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price List Search</b> screen appears.</p>	
Account ID	Used to specify the account for which simulation must be created.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Account</b> option is selected for the <b>Search By</b> field.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Account Search</b> screen appears.</p>	
Person ID	Used to specify the person for which simulation must be created. This field gets auto populated once the Account ID value is defined.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Person Search</b> screen appears.</p>	
Simulation Date	Used to search price simulations which are effective from a particular date onwards.	Yes
Pricing Status	Used to search price assignments with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Proposed</li> </ul>	No
Search Type	Used to indicate whether you want to search the price list using the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Best Fit</li> <li>Exact Match</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, <b>Exact Match</b> option is selected.	
Show Default and Global Pricing	Used to indicate whether the product is assigned to a default and global price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to specify the price items for pricing simulation.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> screen appears.	
Description	Used to search price assignments of a price item having a particular description.	No
View Type	Used to indicate whether you want to view summary or tiering details of price components. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Detail</b> — Used when you want to view the details of price component with pricing eligibility and tiering criteria.</li> <li>• <b>Summary</b> — Used when you want to view the summary of effective price component.</li> </ul>	No
Parameter	Used to specify multiple parameter codes based on which you want to define the pricing.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> . The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Search</b> screen appears.	
Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter or used to specify multiple parameter value.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field only when the value type for the <b>Parameter</b> is <b>Reference</b> or <b>Predefined</b> . If the value type of the <b>Parameter</b> is <b>Reference</b> then on clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Reference Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears. If the value type of the <b>Parameter</b> is <b>Predefined</b> then on clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.	

To add more than one **Parameter**, click the **Add**  icon and to delete the parameters click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the **Parameter** field.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

**Note:** If default Price List ID is added to the Price List Value and if **Yes** is selected for **Show Default and Global Pricing**, also if Price List is added to the product for selected account then **Search Results** section will display price list assignments for the value and product will be displayed along with the default price list assignments.

Column Name	Column Description
Price Item	Displays the price item code.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>View Price Item</b> screen appears with the details of the respective price item.
Description	Displays the description of the price item.
Variance Parameters	Indicates the variance parameter which is used for defining the price item pricing.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .
Price Item Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this field is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item). A tool tip appears when you hover over this column corresponding to the price item. It indicates the price item parameters and their values used for defining the price item pricing.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Price Assignment Type	Indicates the type of price assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing — Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing — Price Item Based</li> </ul>
Assignment Level	Indicates the level at which the price item pricing is defined in the customer hierarchy.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.
	<b>Note:</b> The description appears only when the pricing assignment type is Account Price List, or Account Inherited Price List.
Rate Description	Displays the description of the tiering setup of the rate component.
Simulate	On clicking the Simulate  icon, the <b>Simulation — Effective Pricing Information</b> screen appears where you can add the <b>Price Item SQIs</b> and <b>Pricing Eligibility Parameters</b> details that can be passed for pricing simulation.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the price item is <b>Rate</b> and <b>Fees</b> .
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing is effective.

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.
Parent Person	Displays the name of the parent or grandparent customer from whom the pricing is inherited.

**Note:**

The number of records that can be displayed in the **Search Results** section of the **Search Pricing** zone is controlled via the **C1\_PR\_REC** feature configuration. You can change the number of records that can be displayed using the **Effective Pricing RecordSet Limit** option type of the **C1\_PR\_REC** feature configuration. For more information, refer to [Setting the C1\\_PR\\_REC Feature Configuration](#) on page 2376.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view effective pricing of a simulation	<a href="#">Simulation - Effective Pricing Information</a> on page 428

## Simulation - Effective Pricing Information







The **Simulation — Effective Pricing Information** screen contains the following sections:

- **SQIs** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
SQI	Used to indicate the SQI that you want to associate with the price item.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you want to define more than one price item SQI, click the <b>Add</b> (+) icon corresponding to this field.</p> <p>If you want to remove a price item SQI, click the <b>Delete</b> (🗑️) icon corresponding to this field.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the search icon, the <b>Search for Service Quantity Identifier</b> screen appears.</p> <p>This field is required when you want to view the effective pricing simulation.</p>
Value	Used to indicate the SQI value that you want to associate with the price item.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you want to define more than one value, click the <b>Add</b> (+) icon corresponding to this field.</p> <p>If you want to remove a price item SQI value, click the <b>Delete</b> (🗑️) icon corresponding to this field.</p>

- **Pricing Eligibility Parameters** — This section contains the following fields:



Field Name	Field Description
Parameter	<p>Used to specify multiple parameter codes based on which you want to define the pricing</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to true.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the search icon, the <b>Parameter Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>If you want to define more than one parameter, click the <b>Add</b>  icon corresponding to this field.</p> <p>If you want to remove a parameter, click the <b>Delete</b>  icon corresponding to this field.</p>
Parameter Value	<p>Displays the value of the parameter or used to specify multiple parameter value.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field appears only when the value type for the <b>Parameter</b> is defined as <b>Reference</b> or <b>Predefined</b>. If the value type of the <b>Parameter</b> is <b>Reference</b>, then the <b>Reference Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears and if the value type of the <b>Parameter</b> is <b>Predefined</b>, then the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>If you want to define more than one value, click the <b>Add</b>  icon corresponding to this field.</p> <p>If you want to remove a parameter value, click the <b>Delete</b>  icon corresponding to this field.</p>

After providing the required information, when you click on **Simulate** button, the **Effective Pricing Information** zone appears where you can view the effective pricing simulation. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Rate Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Applicable Rate	Displays the rate applicable for which pricing is defined.
Contributing Price Components are	Displays how the price components are contributed.

**Note:** This section appears only when **Price Item Type** is **Rate** .

- **Fee Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Applicable Fee	Displays the fee applicable for which pricing is defined.
Contributing Price Components are	Displays how the price components are contributed.

**Note:** This section appears only when **Price Item Type** is **Fees** .

- **Price Item and Parameter Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Price Item	Displays the price item for which pricing is defined.
Description	Displays the description of the price item

The Parameter Information appears only when the **Multi Price Parameter** option type of the **Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1\_PPARM\_FLG)** feature configuration is set to **True**.

This segment contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parameter	Specifies multiple parameter codes associated with the price items based on which pricing is defined.
Parameter Information	Displays the parameter information with concatenated comma separated values.
Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter.

- **TFM Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Ignore Transaction	Displays whether the transactions mapped to the price item is considered for billing.
Aggregation Schedule	Displays the aggregation cycle.
Aggregation Transaction	Specifies whether the transactions mapped to the price item are aggregated for billing.
Rating Criteria	Specifies how and when you rate the transaction legs mapped to the price item.

**Note:** This section appears only when the **Price Item** is available for **Pricing and Billing**.

- **Pricing Information** — This section contains the following fields.

Field Name	Field Description
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective.
Pricing Currency	Specifies the currency in which you define the price item pricing.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective.
Pricing Status	Displays the status of price assignment.
Variance Parameter	Specifies the variance based on which price item pricing is defined.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .
Rate Schedule	Specifies the rate schedule used for defining price item pricing.

Field Name	Field Description
Price Assignment Type	Displays the type of price assignment.
Print Zero	Specifies whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill.
Apply To	Displays whether the price item pricing is applied to all customers or only to the new customers.
Pricing Frequency	Displays the frequency for pricing where <b>Price Item Type</b> is fees.
Advance Pricing	Displays only if <b>Price Item</b> is defined as <b>Pricing Only</b> , <b>Price Item Type</b> is defined as <b>Fees</b> and <b>Price Assignment Type</b> is defined as <b>Post Processing</b> . The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>

**Pricing Eligibility Criteria** and **Tiering Criteria** for each eligibility or tier range are displayed in following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Rate Component Sequence	Displays the sequence number of the rate component.
Tiering Type	Displays the tiering type of the rate component.
Price Component Sequence	Specifies the sequence of price component whose rate is used for calculation.
Price Component Description	Displays the description of the rate component.
Rate	Specifies the price for the price item.
Contributing Factor	Displays the availability of contributing factor.
Eligibility/Tier Details	On clicking the Add (+) icon, expandable details of <b>Tiering Criteria</b> and <b>Pricing Eligibility Criteria</b> are displayed.

When you click the Add (+) icon, if the price component is scheduled for Flat Rate then, only **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** segment appears. If the price component is scheduled for Step or Threshold then both the segments, **Tiering Criteria** and **Pricing Eligibility Criteria** appears.

**Tiering Criteria** segment contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Tiering Criteria	Displays the tiering criteria.
Price Item	Specifies whether the price item or bundle's total usage is considered for determining the rate.
Variance Parameter	Specifies the variance based on which price item or bundle's total usage is considered for determining the rate.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .

Field Name	Field Description
Price Item Parameters	Specifies the parameters based on which price item or bundle's total usage is considered for determining the rate.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
From	Specifies the lower limit of the tiering range.
To	Specify the upper limit of the tiering range.

**Pricing Eligibility Criteria** segment contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Sequence Number	Specifies the order in which the criteria should be executed in the rule.
Parameter	Specifies the left hand side parameter which you want to use along with the price item for price determination.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Operator	Specifies the relational operator to define the relation between the left hand side and right hand side parameters.
Parameter Value Type	Displays the type of pricing eligibility.
Parameter	Specifies the right hand side parameter which you want to use along with the price item for price determination.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Parameter Value	Specifies the parameter value.
Is True	Displays what should happen when the condition is true (satisfied).
Is False	Displays what should happen when the condition is false (not satisfied).
Is Sufficient	Displays what should happen when the data is insufficient.

This section contains the following links:

Link Name	Link Description
Expand All	Used to define all the <b>Tiering Criteria</b> and <b>Pricing Eligibility Criteria</b> segments.
Collapse All	Used to un-define the displayed <b>Tiering Criteria</b> and <b>Pricing Eligibility Criteria</b> segments.
Expand Only Contributing Factors	Used to define only those <b>Tiering Criteria</b> and <b>Pricing Eligibility Criteria</b> segments with contributing factors.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for effective price assignments for an account.	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Account</a> on page 311
How to view effective pricing of an account	<a href="#">Viewing Effective Price Assignments of an Account</a> on page 321
How to export effective price assignments of an account	<a href="#">Exporting Effective Price Assignments of an Account</a> on page 323
<b>Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">Price Item Pricing</a>
<b>View Price Item Pricing</b> screen	<a href="#">View Price Item Pricing</a>

## Searching Pricing Simulation for Account or Price List

### Prerequisites

To search pricing simulation for an account or price list, you should have:

- Price Item, Account or Person details defined in the application

### Procedure

To search pricing simulation for an account or price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Pricing Simulation**.  
The **Pricing Simulation** screen appears.
3. In the **Search Pricing** zone, select **Account** or **Price List** depending on what you want search pricing simulation.
4. Enter the additional search criteria, if required.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of pricing details that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Simulation</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Simulation</a> on page 424
<b>Search Pricing</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Pricing</a> on page 424

## Viewing Pricing Simulation

### Prerequisites

To view pricing simulation details of an account, you should have:

- Price items assigned to the account

**Procedure**

To view pricing simulation of an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Pricing Simulation**.  
The **Pricing Simulation** screen appears.
3. You can search for an account by entering the search criteria in the **Search Pricing** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search pricing details	<a href="#">Search Pricing</a> on page 424
<b>Pricing Simulation</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Simulation</a> on page 424
<b>Effective Pricing Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Simulation - Effective Pricing Information</a> on page 428

**Exporting Effective Price Simulation**

**Procedure**

To export effective price simulation for an account in the CSV format:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Pricing Simulation**.  
The **Pricing Simulation** screen appears.
3. You can search for an account by entering the search criteria in the **Search Pricing** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click the **Export to Excel** link in the **Search Pricing** zone.  
The **File Download** dialog box appears.
5. Click **Save**.  
The **Save As** dialog box appears.
6. Browse to the location where you want to save the file.
7. Enter the file name in the respective field, and click **Save**.  
The search results are exported in CSV format.

## 8. Open the CSV file in Microsoft Excel.

It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price Item	Displays the price item code.
Description	Displays the description of the price item.
Variance	Indicates the variance parameter which is used for defining the price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .
Price Item Parameters	Indicates the parameters which are used for defining the price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Price Assignment Type	Indicates the type of price assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular</li> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Post Processing — Invoice Based</li> <li>• Post Processing — Price Item Based</li> </ul>
Assignment Level	Indicates the level at which the price item pricing is defined in the customer hierarchy.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.  <b>Note:</b> The description appears only when the pricing assignment type is Account Price List, Customer Price List, or Parent Customer Price List.
Rate	Displays the price of the price item. It also indicates whether the price is a Flat, Threshold, or Step price. The price can be agreed pricing, price list pricing, or pricing inherited from the price list hierarchy. If the price is applicable only to new customers, an asterisk (*) symbol appears corresponding to the price.
Price Component Description	Displays the description of the price component whose rate is used for calculation.  <b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the rate corresponding to the price component in the price item pricing is used for calculation.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing assignment is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing assignment is effective.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.
From	Displays the lower limit of the tiering range.
To	Displays the upper limit of the tiering range.
Price Assignment Usage	Indicates whether the price assignment is applicable to all customers or only to the new customers.
Price Assignment ID	Displays the ID that is generated automatically when the price assignment is done.

Column Name	Column Description
Parent Level	Displays the numerical level of the parent in the hierarchy from whom the pricing is inherited.
Price List ID	Displays the price list ID from where the pricing is inherited.
Price List Start Date	Displays the date from when the price list is effective.
Parent Person	Displays the name of the parent or grandparent customer from whom the pricing is inherited.
Parent Pricelist Level	Indicates the parent level when pricing is inherited from the price list hierarchy. If the pricing is inherited from the assigned price list, the parent price list level will be 0. However, if the pricing is inherited from the parent price list in the hierarchy, the parent price list level will be 1. And, if the pricing is inherited from the grandparent price list in the hierarchy, the parent price list level will be 2, and so on.
Ignore Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the price item should be considered for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>
Aggregate Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the price item should be aggregated for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>
Aggregation Schedule	Indicates the aggregation cycle.
Tiering Criterion	Indicates the tiering criterion.
Tiering Price Item	Indicates whether the price item is billed individually or at the bundle level.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search an account	<a href="#">Searching for a Pricing Simulation Account</a>
Pricing Simulation screen	<a href="#">Pricing Simulation</a> on page 424

## Eligible Price List

The **Eligible Price List** screen allows you to:

- View eligible price list details for account or person
- View pricing simulation details of account or person

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Eligible Price Lists](#) on page 437
- [Pricing Simulation](#) on page 424



## Search Eligible Price Lists

The **Search Eligible Price List** zone allows you to search eligible price list for account and person. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Eligible Date	Used to specify the date on which the eligibility check need to be searched.	Yes
Person ID	Used to specify the person for which eligible price list to be searched.  <b>Note:</b> The Search (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the icon, the <b>Person Search</b> screen appears.	No
Account ID	Used to specify the account for which eligible price list to be searched.  <b>Note:</b> The Search (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the icon, the <b>Account Search</b> screen appears.	No
Status	Used to search eligible price list based on status.	Yes
Division	Used to search eligible price list based on division.	Yes
Parameter	Used to specify multiple parameter codes based on which you want to define the pricing.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>MultiPrice Parameter</b> option type of the <b>MultiParameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to True.  The Search (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the icon, the <b>Parameter Search</b> screen appears.	No
Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter or used to specify multiple parameter value.  <b>Note:</b> The Search (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field only when the value type for the <b>Parameter</b> is defined as <b>Reference</b> or <b>Predefined</b> . If the value type of the <b>Parameter</b> is <b>Reference</b> then on clicking the search icon, the <b>Reference Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears else if the value type of the <b>Parameter</b> is <b>Predefined</b> then on clicking the search icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.	No

**Note:** To add more than one **Parameter**, click the add (+) icon and to delete the parameters click the delete (🗑️) icon corresponding to this field.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price List ID	Displays the price list ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price List Price Item Assignments</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price list.
Price List Description	Displays the price list description.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price List Price Item Assignments</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price list.
Status	Indicates the status of the price list. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Proposed</li> </ul>
Availability Start Date	Used to search price lists which are available for assignment from a particular date.
Availability End Date	Used to search price lists which are available for assignment till a particular date.
Effective Start Date	Used to search price lists which are effective from a particular date.
Effective End Date	Used to search price lists which are effective till a particular date.
Simulate	On clicking the <b>Simulate</b> (🔄) icon, the <b>Pricing Simulation Screen</b> appears with the price list ID, account and person fields prepopulated.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a price list	<a href="#">Searching for a Price List</a> on page 234
How to view price items assigned to a price list	<a href="#">Viewing Price Items Assigned to a Price List</a> on page 235
How to view the details of a price list	<a href="#">Viewing the Price List Details</a> on page 248
How to create a price list	<a href="#">Defining a Price List</a> on page 236
How to edit a price list	<a href="#">Editing a Price List</a> on page 253
How to copy a price list	<a href="#">Copying a Price List</a> on page 246

## Rate Definition

Rate schedules, rate versions, and rate components are used to define the formulas to calculate the total amount charged to a customer for a product. Some examples of formulas are: price times the number of transactions used and a flat monthly charge plus a percentage of the average daily balance.

The rate is a formula with variables whose values are supplied by a user by setting up a price list or override price. For example, a rate might add a flat monthly charge and a percentage of the average daily balance to arrive at the amount

charged to the customer. This rate might be used to calculate the charge for multiple products, each product with its own flat amount and percentage. So, these two factors are defined as variables whose values must be entered by users when they setup price list or override price. In Oracle Revenue Management and Billing (ORMB), these variables are defined as rate components.

The system provides you with the ability to create tiered pricing in case standard flat pricing is not sufficient to meet the business needs. The **Rate Definition** screen allows you to indicate whether the rate component supports standard flat pricing or tiered pricing. It allows you to define, edit, and delete the tiering setup of a rate component. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Rate Schedule Components](#) on page 439
- [Create/Edit Rate Definition](#) on page 440

## Rate Schedule Components

The **Rate Schedule Components** zone allows you to select the rate schedule whose rate components' tiering setup you want to define or edit. This zone contains the following two sections:


- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Schedule	Used to select the rate schedule.	Yes

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the rate components of the rate schedule appear in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Rate Schedule	Displays the rate schedule.
Rate Component Sequence	Displays the sequence number of the rate component.
Rate Component Description	Displays the description of the rate component.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the rate version to which the rate component belongs is effective.
Tiering Type	Displays the tiering type.
Maximum Tiering Combinations	Displays the maximum number of tiering ranges supported by the rate component.  <b>Note:</b> Each tiering range supports more than one tiering criteria. For example, a rate component supports tiering based on two different criteria such as transaction volumes from a bundle and balances of the priced product. In such case, for a single rate, it is possible to enter separate tiering range information for each criterion and vary this information by product.
Rate Component Map Description	Displays the description of the tiering setup of the rate component.
Action	Indicates the action that can be performed on the rate component. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Add</b> — Allows you to define the tiering setup of the rate component</li> <li>• <b>Edit</b> — Allows you to edit the tiering setup of the rate component</li> </ul>

Column Name	Column Description
Rate Component Map ID	Displays the rate component map ID.
	<b>Note:</b> This ID is generated automatically when you define the tiering setup of the rate component.

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the rate component, the **Create/Edit Rate Definition** zone appears with the details of the respective rate component.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define tiering setup of a rate component	<a href="#">Defining Tiering Setup of a Rate Component</a> on page 441
How to edit tiering setup of a rate component	<a href="#">Editing Tiering Setup of a Rate Component</a> on page 442
How to delete tiering setup of a rate component	<a href="#">Deleting Tiering Setup of a Rate Component</a> on page 443

**Create/Edit Rate Definition**

The **Create/Edit Rate Definition** zone allows you to define and edit tiering setup of the rate component. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Schedule	Displays the code of the rate schedule.	Not applicable
Rate Component Description	Displays the description of the rate component.	Not applicable
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the rate version to which the rate component belongs is effective.	Not applicable
Rate Component Sequence	Displays the sequence number of the rate component.	Not applicable
Tiering Type	Used to specify the tiering type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• FLAT</li><li>• STEP</li><li>• THRESHOLD</li></ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is non-editable when you edit the tiering setup of the rate component.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Maximum Tiering Combinations	Used to specify the maximum number of tiering ranges supported by the rate component.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is non-editable when you: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select the tiering type as <b>FLAT</b> or <b>STEP</b></li> <li>• Edit the tiering setup of the rate component</li> </ul> By default, <b>0</b> appears in this field when you select the tiering type as <b>FLAT</b> , and <b>1</b> appears when you select the tiering type as <b>STEP</b> .	
Rate Component Map Description	Used to specify the description for the tiering setup of the rate component. For example, if you want the user to enter price per transaction for a tiering range, enter <i>Price Per Transaction</i> in the <b>Rate Component Map Description</b> field.	Yes

This zone contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description (When the Action is Add)	Button Description (When the Action is Edit)
Save	Used to create the tiering setup.	Used to save the changes made in this zone.
Delete	<b>Note:</b> This button is disabled when you define the tiering setup of the rate component.	Used to delete the tiering setup of the rate component.
		<b>Note:</b> You can delete the tiering setup only when the rate component is not yet used for any product pricing.
Cancel	Used to clear the fields in this zone.	Used to reset the changes made in this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define tiering setup of a rate component	<a href="#">Defining Tiering Setup of a Rate Component</a> on page 441
How to edit tiering setup of a rate component	<a href="#">Editing Tiering Setup of a Rate Component</a> on page 442
How to delete tiering setup of a rate component	<a href="#">Deleting Tiering Setup of a Rate Component</a> on page 443

## Defining Tiering Setup of a Rate Component

### Prerequisites

To define tiering setup of a rate component, you should have:

- Rate schedules defined in the application
- Rate components of the rate schedule defined in the application

### Procedure

To define tiering setup of a rate component:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.


A list appears.

- 2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Rate Definition**.

The **Rate Definition** screen appears.

- 3. Select the rate schedule in the **Rate Schedule Components** zone.
- 4. Click **Search**.

The rate components of the rate schedule appear as the search results.

- 5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the rate component whose tiering setup you want to define.  
The **Create/Edit Rate Definition** zone appears.

- 6. Select the tiering type from the list.
- 7. Enter the maximum number of tiering ranges supported by the rate component.

**Note:**  
The **Maximum Tiering Combinations** field is non-editable when you select the tiering type as **FLAT** or **STEP**.  
By default, **0** appears in the **Maximum Tiering Combinations** field when you select the tiering type as **FLAT**, and **1** appears when you select the tiering type as **STEP**.

- 8. Enter the description for the tiering setup of the rate component.  
For example, if you want the user to enter price per transaction for a tiering range, enter `Price Per Transaction` in the **Rate Component Map Description** field.
- 9. Click **Save**.  
The rate component map ID is generated automatically when you define the tiering setup of the rate component.

**Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
<b>Rate Definition</b> screen	<a href="#">Rate Definition</a> on page 438
<b>Rate Schedule Components</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate Schedule Components</a> on page 439
<b>Create/Edit Rate Definition</b> zone	<a href="#">Create/Edit Rate Definition</a> on page 440

**Editing Tiering Setup of a Rate Component**

**Procedure**

To edit tiering setup of a rate component:

- 1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- 2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Rate Definition**.  
The **Rate Definition** screen appears.
- 3. Select the rate schedule in the **Rate Schedule Components** zone.
- 4. Click **Search**.  
The rate components of the rate schedule appear as the search results.

5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the rate component whose tiering setup you want to edit.  
The **Create/Edit Rate Definition** zone appears.
6. Modify the details of the tiering setup.

**Note:** You can only modify the rate component map description.

7. Click **Save**.  
The changes made to the tiering setup are saved.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Rate Definition</b> screen	<a href="#">Rate Definition</a> on page 438
<b>Rate Schedule Components</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate Schedule Components</a> on page 439
<b>Create/Edit Rate Definition</b> zone	<a href="#">Create/Edit Rate Definition</a> on page 440

## Deleting Tiering Setup of a Rate Component

### Procedure

To delete tiering setup of a rate component:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Rate Definition**.  
The **Rate Definition** screen appears.
3. Select the rate schedule in the **Rate Schedule Components** zone.
4. Click **Search**.  
The rate components of the rate schedule appear as the search results.
5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the rate component whose tiering setup you want to delete.  
The **Create/Edit Rate Definition** zone appears.
6. Click **Delete**.

The tiering setup of the rate component is deleted, and the action that can be performed on the rate component changes from **Edit** to **Add** in the **Rate Schedule Components** zone.

**Note:**

The **Delete** button is disabled when you define the tiering setup of the rate component.

You can delete the tiering setup only when the rate component is not yet used for any product pricing.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Rate Definition</b> screen	<a href="#">Rate Definition</a> on page 438
<b>Rate Schedule Components</b> zone	<a href="#">Rate Schedule Components</a> on page 439

For more information on...	See...
Create/Edit Rate Definition zone	<a href="#">Create/Edit Rate Definition</a> on page 440

## Tiering Criterion

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing (ORMB) provides you with the ability to create tiered pricing in case standard flat pricing is not sufficient to meet the business needs. Through tiered pricing, you can offer more favorable pricing to the customers based on service quantity utilization.

Let us understand this with the help of an example. ABC company uses wire transfer services provided by a large bank. If ABC company initiates up to 1,000 wire transfers, the fee charged by the bank will be \$5 per transfer. If ABC company initiates more than 1,000 wire transfers, the fee will be \$3 per transfer. To introduce this flexibility in the pricing model, you will have to define tiered pricing with the following tiering ranges:

- If the number of wire transfers is greater than 0 and less than or equal to 1000, then charge \$5 per transfer to ABC company.
- If the number of wire transfers is greater than 1000, then charge \$3 per transfer to ABC company.

In the above example, number of wire transfers is the tiering criterion, 0 – 1000 and 1000 – BLANK are tiering ranges, and \$5 and \$3 are rates per transfer.

The **Tiering Criteria** screen allows you to create and edit a tiering criterion. This screen consists of the following zones:


- [Tiering Criterion List](#) on page 444
- [Edit Tiering Criterion](#) on page 444
- [Create Tiering Criterion](#) on page 445

### Tiering Criterion List

The **Tiering Criterion List** zone displays tiering criterion that are already defined in the system. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Tiering Criterion	Displays the code of the tiering criterion.
Description	Displays the description of the tiering criterion.
Service Quantity Identifier	Displays the Service Quantity Identifier (SQI) of the tiering criterion.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the tiering criterion, the **Edit Tiering Criterion** zone appears with the details of the respective tiering criterion.

### Edit Tiering Criterion

The **Edit Tiering Criterion** zone allows you to edit the tiering criterion. This zone contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Tiering Criterion	Displays the code of the tiering criterion.	Not applicable



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Description	Used to modify the description of the tiering criterion.	Yes
Service Quantity Identifier	Displays the Service Quantity Identifier (SQI) of the tiering criterion.	Not applicable

This zone contains the following two buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to save the changes made in this zone.
Cancel	Used to clear the changes made in this zone.

By default, the **Edit Tiering Criterion** zone does not appear in the **Tiering Criteria** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the tiering criterion in the **Tiering Criteria List** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a tiering criterion	<a href="#">Editing a Tiering Criterion</a> on page 446

## Create Tiering Criterion

The **Create Tiering Criterion** zone allows you to create tiering criterion. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Tiering Criterion	Used to specify the code that uniquely identifies the tiering criterion.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the tiering criterion.	Yes
Service Quantity Identifier	Used to specify the Service Quantity Identifier (SQI) for the tiering criterion.  <b>Note:</b> During billing, the rating engine uses the SQI to determine which service quantities are applied to tiers.	Yes

This zone contains the following two buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Save	Used to create the tiering criterion.
Cancel	Used to clear the fields in this zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a tiering criterion	<a href="#">Creating a Tiering Criterion</a> on page 445

## Creating a Tiering Criterion

#### Prerequisites

To create a tiering criterion, you should have:

- Service Quantity Identifiers (SQIs) defined in the application

**Procedure**

To create a tiering criterion:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Tiering Criterion**.  
The **Tiering Criterion** screen appears.
3. In the **Create Tiering Criterion** zone, enter the code that uniquely identifies the tiering criterion.
4. Enter the description for the tiering criterion.
5. Select the Service Quantity Identifier (SQI) that you want to associate with the tiering criterion.
6. Click **Save**.  
The tiering criterion is created.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Tiering Criterion</b> screen	<a href="#">Tiering Criterion</a> on page 444
<b>Create Tiering Criterion</b> zone	<a href="#">Create Tiering Criterion</a> on page 445

**Editing a Tiering Criterion**

**Procedure**

To edit a tiering criterion:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Tiering Criterion**.  
The **Tiering Criterion** screen appears.
3. In the **Tiering Criterion** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the tiering criterion whose details you want to edit.  
The **Edit Tiering Criterion** zone appears.
4. Modify the description of the tiering criterion, if required.
5. Click **Save**.  
The changes made to the tiering criterion are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Tiering Criterion</b> screen	<a href="#">Tiering Criterion</a> on page 444
<b>Edit Tiering Criterion</b> zone	<a href="#">Edit Tiering Criterion</a> on page 444

## Variance Parameter

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define pricing for a product based on the variance parameter. This helps you to maintain variance based pricing for a product. For example, you can define different product pricing for each country or currency, if required. Before you define product pricing based on a variance parameter, you need to define the variance parameter. The **Variance Parameter** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete a variance parameter. It also allows you to filter the variance parameters using a search criteria.

### Filtering the Variance Parameters

#### Procedure

To filter the variance parameters:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **V** and then click **Variance Parameter**.

The **Variance Parameter** screen appears. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria**— The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance parameter.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button corresponding to the **Variance Parameter** field, the search results are filtered based on the specified criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Variance Parameter	Displays the variance parameter.
Description	Displays the description of the variance parameter.

3. Enter the search criteria in the **Variance Parameter** field.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Variance Parameter** field.

The search results are filtered based on the specified criteria.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Variance Parameter</b> screen	<a href="#">Variance Parameter</a> on page 447

Defining a Variance Parameter

Procedure

To define a variance parameter:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **V** and then click **Variance Parameter**.

The **Variance Parameter** screen appears. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Variance Parameter	Used to specify the variance parameter.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the variance parameter.	Yes

3. Enter the required details.
4. If you want to define more than one variance parameter, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 4.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a variance parameter, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the variance parameter that you want to delete.

5. Click **Save**.

The variance parameter is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Variance Parameter</b> screen	<a href="#">Variance Parameter</a> on page 447

Editing a Variance Parameter

Procedure

To edit a variance parameter:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **V** and then click **Variance Parameter**.  
The **Variance Parameter** screen appears.
3. If required, you can filter the variance parameters in the **Variance Parameter** screen.

A list of variance parameters that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Variance Parameter	Displays the variance parameter.	Not applicable

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Description	Used to specify the description for the variance parameter.	Yes

4. Modify the required details.

5. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the variance parameter are saved.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Variance Parameter</b> screen	<a href="#">Variance Parameter</a> on page 447
How to filter the variance parameters	<a href="#">Filtering the Variance Parameters</a> on page 447

## Deleting a Variance Parameter

#### Procedure

To delete a variance parameter:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.


A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **V** and then click **Variance Parameter**.

The **Variance Parameter** screen appears.

3. If required, you can filter the variance parameters in the **Variance Parameter** screen.

A list of variance parameters that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

4. Click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the variance parameter that you want to delete.

5. Click **Save**.

The variance parameter is deleted.

**Note:** You can only delete a variance parameter which is not yet used.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Variance Parameter</b> screen	<a href="#">Variance Parameter</a> on page 447
How to filter the variance parameters	<a href="#">Filtering the Variance Parameters</a> on page 447

## Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides you the flexibility to define person to person relationship type sequence:

- For each division, price item, and price item parameters combination
- For each division
- In the C1\_PER\_REL feature configuration

The system will first check whether the person to person relationship type sequence is defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination. If the person to person relationship type sequence is defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination, the system will search effective price item pricing at the parent customer level based on the sequence defined for the combination. However, if the person to person relationship type sequence is not defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination, the system will check whether the person to person relationship type sequence is defined for the division. If the person to person relationship type sequence is defined for the division, the system will search effective price item pricing at the parent customer level based on the sequence defined for the division. However, if the person to person relationship type sequence is not defined for the division, the system will consider the person to person relationship type sequence defined in the C1\_PER\_REL feature configuration and accordingly search effective price item pricing at the parent customer level.

The **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete person to person relationship type sequence of:

- a division
- a division, price item, and price item parameters combination

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Price Item](#) on page 450
- [Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division](#) on page 451

## Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Price Item

The **Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Price Item** zone allows you to search person to person relationship type sequence defined for a division, price item, and price item parameters combination. You can also define, edit, and delete person to person relationship type sequence of a division, price item, and price item parameters combination.




This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to specify the price item code.	No
Price Item Description	Used to specify the description of the price item.	No
Division	Used to specify the division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching person to person relationship type sequence defined for a division, price item, and price item parameters combination.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price Item	Displays the price item code.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>View Price Item</b> screen appears with the details of the respective price item.
Description	Displays the description of the price item.
Price Item Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this field is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item).
Division	Indicates the division for which price item and price item parameters specific person to person relationship type sequence is defined.
View	On clicking the <b>View</b>  icon, the <b>Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division and Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view person to person relationship type sequence defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b>  icon, the <b>Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division and Price Item</b> screen appears where you can edit person to person relationship type sequence defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b>  icon, you can delete person to person relationship type sequence defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination.

You can define person to person relationship type sequence for a division, price item, and price item parameters combination by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search person to person relationship type sequence for a division, price item, and price item parameters combination	<a href="#">Searching Relationship Type Sequence for a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters</a> on page 452
How to view person to person relationship type sequence of a division, price item, and price item parameters combination	<a href="#">Viewing Relationship Type Sequence of a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters</a> on page 457
How to define person to person relationship type sequence for a division, price item, and price item parameters combination	<a href="#">Defining Relationship Type Sequence for a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters</a> on page 453
How to edit person to person relationship type sequence of a division, price item, and price item parameters combination	<a href="#">Editing Relationship Type Sequence of a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters</a> on page 455
How to delete person to person relationship type sequence of a division, price item, and price item parameters combination	<a href="#">Deleting Relationship Type Sequence of a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters</a> on page 456

## Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division

The **Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division** zone allows you to search person to person relationship type sequence defined for a division. You can also define, edit, and delete person to person relationship type sequence of a division.

This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Division	Indicates the division for which person to person relationship type sequence is defined.
Description	Displays the description of the division.
View	On clicking the <b>View</b> (🔍) icon, the <b>Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division</b> screen appears where you can view person to person relationship type sequence of the division.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (✎) icon, the <b>Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division</b> screen appears where you can edit person to person relationship type sequence of the division.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (🗑) icon, you can delete the person to person relationship type sequence of the division.

You can define person to person relationship type sequence for a division by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search person to person relationship type sequence for a division	<a href="#">Searching Relationship Type Sequence for a Division</a> on page 457
How to view person to person relationship type sequence of a division	<a href="#">Viewing Relationship Type Sequence of a Division</a> on page 461
How to define person to person relationship type sequence for a division	<a href="#">Defining Relationship Type Sequence for a Division</a> on page 458
How to edit person to person relationship type sequence of a division	<a href="#">Editing Relationship Type Sequence of a Division</a> on page 459
How to delete person to person relationship type sequence of a division	<a href="#">Deleting Relationship Type Sequence of a Division</a> on page 460

## **Searching Relationship Type Sequence for a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters**

### **Prerequisites**

To search person to person relationship type sequence for a division, price item, and price item parameters combination, you should have:



- Divisions defined in the application

### **Procedure**

To search person to person relationship type sequence for a division, price item, and price item parameters combination:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence**.  
The **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Price Item** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually whenever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of division, price item, and price item parameters combinations that meet the search criteria and for which person to person relationship type sequence is defined appears in the **Search Results** section.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence</b> screen	<a href="#">Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence</a> on page 449
<b>Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Price Item</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Price Item</a> on page 450

## **Defining Relationship Type Sequence for a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters**

### **Prerequisites**

To define person to person relationship type sequence for a division, price item, and price item parameters combination, you should have:

- Divisions defined in the application
- Price items associated with the division to which the user belongs
- Parameters associated with the price item
- Person relationship types defined in the application

### **Procedure**



To define person to person relationship type sequence for a division, price item, and price item parameters combination:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence**.

The **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence** screen appears.

- Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Price Item** zone.

The **Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division and Price Item** screen appears. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to indicate the division for which you want to define price item and price item parameters specific person to person relationship type sequence.	Yes
Price Item	Used to specify the price item code.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> screen appears.	
Price Item Parameters	Used to specify the price item parameters.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameters Search</b> screen appears.	


In addition, this screen contains the following section:


- Person Relationship Type Sequence** — This section allows you to define person to person relationship type sequence for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Used to indicate the sequence in which relationship type should be considered while searching for effective price item pricing at the parent customer level.	Yes
Relationship Type	Used to indicate the person to person relationship type.	Yes

- Enter the required details.

**Note:** You can search for a price item and price item parameters by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

- If you want to define more than one relationship type in the person to person relationship type sequence, click the **Add**  icon and then enter the details in the **Person Relationship Type Sequence** section.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a relationship type from the person to person relationship type sequence, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the relationship type.

- Click **Save**.

The person to person relationship type sequence is defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence</b> screen	<a href="#">Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence</a> on page 449
<b>Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Price Item</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Price Item</a> on page 450
How to search for a price item	<a href="#">Searching for a Price Item or Price Item Bundle</a> on page 188
How to set price item parameters	

## Editing Relationship Type Sequence of a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters


### Prerequisites

To edit person to person relationship type sequence of a division, price item, and price item parameters combination, you should have:

- Person relationship types defined in the application

### Procedure

To edit person to person relationship type sequence of a division, price item, and price item parameters combination:

1. Search person to person relationship type sequence for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination in the **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the division, price item, and price item parameters combination whose person to person relationship type sequence you want to edit.


The **Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division and Price Item** screen appears. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Indicates the division for which price item and price item parameters specific person to person relationship type sequence is defined.	Not applicable
Price Item	Displays the price item code.	Not applicable
Price Item Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this field is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item).	Not applicable

In addition, this screen contains the following section:

- **Person Relationship Type Sequence** — This section allows you to define person to person relationship type sequence for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Used to indicate the sequence in which relationship type should be considered while searching for effective price item pricing at the parent customer level.	Yes
Relationship Type	Used to indicate the person to person relationship type.	Yes

- If you want to define more than one relationship type in the person to person relationship type sequence, click the Add (  ) icon and then enter the details in the **Person Relationship Type Sequence** section.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a relationship type from the person to person relationship type sequence, click the **Delete** (  ) icon corresponding to the relationship type.

- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the person to person relationship type sequence are saved.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search person to person relationship type sequence for a division, price item, and price item parameters combination	<a href="#">Searching Relationship Type Sequence for a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters</a> on page 452

**Deleting Relationship Type Sequence of a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters**

**Procedure**

To delete person to person relationship type sequence of a division, price item, and price item parameters combination:

- Search person to person relationship type sequence for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination in the **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** (  ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the division, price item, and price item parameters combination whose person to person relationship type sequence you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the person to person relationship type sequence.

- Click **OK**.

The person to person relationship type sequence of the division, price item, and price item parameters combination is deleted.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search person to person relationship type sequence for a division, price item, and price item parameters combination	<a href="#">Searching Relationship Type Sequence for a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters</a> on page 452

## Viewing Relationship Type Sequence of a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters

### Procedure

To view person to person relationship type sequence of a division, price item, and price item parameters combination:

1. Search person to person relationship type sequence for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination in the **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon in the **View** column corresponding to the division, price item, and price item parameters combination whose person to person relationship type sequence you want to view.

The **Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division and Price Item** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Division	Indicates the division for which price item and price item parameters specific person to person relationship type sequence is defined.
Price Item	Displays the price item code.
Price Item Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. The order in which parameter values appear in this field is controlled by the display order (which is defined while associating a parameter with a price item).

In addition, this screen contains the following section:

- **Person Relationship Type Sequence** — This section allows you to view person to person relationship type sequence defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence Number	Indicates the sequence in which relationship type will be considered while searching for effective price item pricing at the parent customer level.
Relationship Type	Indicates the person to person relationship type.

3. View the person to person relationship type sequence defined for the division, price item, and price item parameters combination in the **Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division and Price Item** screen.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search person to person relationship type sequence for a division, price item, and price item parameters combination	<a href="#">Searching Relationship Type Sequence for a Division, Price Item, and Price Item Parameters</a> on page 452

## Searching Relationship Type Sequence for a Division

### Prerequisites

To search person to person relationship type sequence for a division, you should have:

- Divisions defined in the application

**Procedure**

To search person to person relationship type sequence for a division:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence**.  
The **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence** screen appears.
- Enter the search criteria in the **Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually whenever required.

- Click **Search**.  
A list of divisions that meet the search criteria and for which person to person relationship type sequence is defined appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence</b> screen	<a href="#">Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence</a> on page 449
<b>Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division</a> on page 451

**Defining Relationship Type Sequence for a Division**

**Prerequisites**

To define person to person relationship type sequence for a division, you should have:

- Divisions defined in the application

**Procedure**

To define person to person relationship type sequence for a division:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Main** menu, select **Pricing Management** and then click **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence**.  
The **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence** screen appears.
- Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division** zone.


The **Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division** screen appears. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to indicate the division for which you want to define person to person relationship type sequence.	Yes

In addition, this screen contains the following section:

- **Person Relationship Type Sequence** — This section allows you to define person to person relationship type sequence for the division. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Used to indicate the sequence in which relationship type should be considered while searching for effective price item pricing at the parent customer level.	Yes
Relationship Type	Used to indicate the person to person relationship type.	Yes

4. Enter the required details.
5. If you want to define more than one relationship type in the person to person relationship type sequence, click the Add (  ) icon and then enter the details in the **Person Relationship Type Sequence** section.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a relationship type from the person to person relationship type sequence, click the **Delete** (  ) icon corresponding to the relationship type.

6. Click **Save**.

The person to person relationship type sequence is defined for the division.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence</b> screen	<a href="#">Person Relationship Type Sequence</a> on page 145
<b>Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division</a> on page 451

## Editing Relationship Type Sequence of a Division

### Procedure

To edit person to person relationship type sequence of a division:

1. Search person to person relationship type sequence for the division in the **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** (  ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the division whose person to person relationship type sequence you want to edit.


The **Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division** screen appears. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Indicates the division for which person to person relationship type sequence is defined.	Not applicable

In addition, this screen contains the following section:

- Person Relationship Type Sequence** — This section allows you to define person to person relationship type sequence for the division. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Used to indicate the sequence in which relationship type should be considered while searching for effective price item pricing at the parent customer level.	Yes
Relationship Type	Used to indicate the person to person relationship type.	Yes

- If you want to define more than one relationship type in the person to person relationship type sequence, click the **Add** () icon and then enter the details in the **Person Relationship Type Sequence** section.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a relationship type from the person to person relationship type sequence, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the relationship type.

- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the person to person relationship type sequence are saved.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search person to person relationship type sequence for a division	<a href="#">Searching Relationship Type Sequence for a Division</a> on page 457

**Deleting Relationship Type Sequence of a Division**

**Procedure**

To delete person to person relationship type sequence of a division:

- Search person to person relationship type sequence for the division in the **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the division whose person to person relationship type sequence you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the person to person relationship type sequence.

- Click **OK**.

The person to person relationship type sequence of the division is deleted.

**Related Topics**




For more information on...	See...
How to search person to person relationship type sequence for a division	<a href="#">Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division</a> on page 451

## Viewing Relationship Type Sequence of a Division

### Procedure

To view person to person relationship type sequence of a division:

1. Search person to person relationship type sequence for the division in the **Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon in the **View** column corresponding to the division whose person to person relationship type sequence you want to view.

The **Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Division	Indicates the division for which person to person relationship type sequence is defined.

In addition, this screen contains the following section:

- **Person Relationship Type Sequence** — This section allows you to view person to person relationship type sequence defined for the division. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence Number	Indicates the sequence in which relationship type will be considered while searching for effective price item pricing at the parent customer level.
Relationship Type	Indicates the person to person relationship type.

3. View the person to person relationship type sequence defined for the division in the **Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division** screen.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search person to person relationship type sequence for a division	<a href="#">Search Person Relationship Type Sequence for Division</a> on page 451



---

# Chapter

# 4

---

## Division

---

### Topics:

- [Division Search](#)
- [Division](#)

The following two types of divisions are used while defining a contract type:

- **General Ledger (GL) Division** — GL divisions typically comprise of individual entities (for example, companies) in the general ledger. You must set up a GL division for each such entity. The GL division is used to define the accounting period for financial transactions linked to contracts. Contracts are associated with GL divisions through their contract type. The system uses accounting periods to prevent a user from creating financial transactions in the closed periods. It also uses accounting periods when it generates the flat file that contains the consolidated journal entry that is interfaced to the general ledger.
- **Division** — A division is associated with a jurisdiction. A jurisdiction is a geographic-oriented entity with unique business rules. For example, if you conduct business in California and Japan, each jurisdiction has different set of rules, and therefore you need to have a separate jurisdiction for each division. You must set up a division for each jurisdiction in which you conduct the business. For the Pricing Management functionality, setting up a division is mandatory, and the system must contain information about at least one division.

A division is associated with the following:

- **Person** — You may or may not associate person to a division. It is optional. But, when you are using division specific functionality, you have to associate person to a division while creating a local person.
- **Contract** — Contract is associated to a division through its contract type. The contract type controls multiple business rules which are defined for a given jurisdiction and contract type combination. In addition to controlling the business rules defined on the contract's contract type, the contract's division also controls the type of collection criteria used to determine if and how to collect overdue debt.
- **Account** — The division on account when combined with the account's customer class defines the jurisdiction that governs financial business rules (for example, the bill's due date, when and how late payment charges are calculated, etc.). It also allows you to assign To Do entries associated with the account to a given To Do role based on the account's division.

Division Search

The **Division Search** window allows you to search for a division. This screen contains the following two sections:

- Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the division code.	No
Description	Used to specify the description for the division.	No

- Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button corresponding to the respective field, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Division	Displays the division code.
Description	Displays the description of the division.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464

Searching for a Division

Procedure

To search for a division:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **D** and then click **Division**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Division** sub-menu.  
The **Division Search** window appears.
- Enter the code or description of the division in the **Search Criteria** section.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click the **Search** button corresponding to the respective field.  
A list of divisions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the division whose details you want to view or edit.  
The **Division** screen appears.

Related Topics

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465

## Division

The **Division** screen allows you to define and edit a division. This screen consists of the following tabs:

Tab Name	Tab Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Main	Used to define basic details for a division.	Yes
Access Groups	Used to define the users who have right to associate objects (such as persons, accounts, price items, price lists, etc.) with this division. The users can only view those divisions to which they have access in the <b>Division</b> list used across the application.	No
Price Items	Used to define which price items are available to persons or accounts in this division.  <b>Note:</b> Once the price item is created, you need to associate it with a division.	No
Price Lists	Used to define which price lists are available to persons or accounts in this division.  <b>Note:</b> Once the price list is created, you need to associate it with a division.  You can associate a price list with a division only when all price items in the price list are already associated with the division.	No
Languages	Used to limit the languages that you can select for a person's bills and correspondence in this division.	No
Invoice Currencies	Used to limit the invoice currencies that you can select for accounts in this division.  <b>Note:</b> Invoice currency is a currency in which the accounts in this division can be billed.	No
Person Identifier Types	Used to limit the person identifier types that you can select for persons in this division.	No

Tab Name	Tab Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Algorithms	<p>Used to associate algorithms with the division. Once a division is created, you must associate the <b>Price Assignment Search</b> algorithm to it. For the Banking functionality, this is required to ensure that the price item pricing is displayed in the correct order as defined by the algorithm. Each division can have unique hierarchy order or more than one division can have the same hierarchy order. The hierarchy order is also used in billing when the price determination is controlled by the sort order definition of the algorithm.</p> <p>You can define algorithms in the <b>Algorithm</b> screen. The search order is governed by the second parameter of the algorithm, and the valid values for the same are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>AGREED_PRICELIST</b> – If you use this search order, the price item pricing is searched in the following order: Account Agreed, Account Price List, Account Inherited Price List, Customer Agreed, Customer Price List, Customer Inherited Price List, Parent Customer Agreed, Parent Customer Price List, and Parent Customer Inherited Price List.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> In this search order, the account agreed level has highest precedence and parent customer inherited price list level has lowest precedence.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>AGREED_FIRST</b> - If you use this search order, the price item pricing is searched in the following order: Account Agreed, Customer Agreed, Parent Customer Agreed, Account Price List, Account Inherited Price List, Customer Price List, Customer Inherited Price List, Parent Customer Price List, and Parent Customer Inherited Price List.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><b>Note:</b> In this search order, the account agreed level has highest precedence and parent customer inherited price list level has lowest precedence.</p> </div>	No
Characteristics	Used to define characteristics for the division.	No
Bill Messages	Used to specify the bill messages that are valid for accounts in this division.	No
Party Char Types	Used to limit the characteristic types that you can select for persons and accounts in this division.	No
Bill Cycles	Used to limit the bill cycles that you can select for accounts in this division.	No
Account Identifier Types	Used to limit the account identifier types that you can select for accounts in this division.	No

Tab Name	Tab Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item Characteristics	Used to define division-specific characteristics for price items associated with this division.	No

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467
How to associate access groups with a division	<a href="#">Associating Access Groups with a Division</a> on page 470
How to associate price items with a division	<a href="#">Associating Price Items with a Division</a> on page 471
How to associate price lists with a division	<a href="#">Associating Price Lists with a Division</a> on page 472
How to associate languages with a division	<a href="#">Associating Languages with a Division</a> on page 473
How to associate invoice currencies with a division	<a href="#">Associating Invoice Currencies with a Division</a> on page 474
How to associate person identifier types with a division	<a href="#">Associating Person Identifier Types with a Division</a> on page 475
How to associate algorithms with a division	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Division</a> on page 475
How to define characteristics for a division	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Division</a> on page 479
How to associate bill messages with a division	<a href="#">Associating Bill Messages with a Division</a> on page 480
How to associate party characteristic types with a division	<a href="#">Associating Party Char Types with a Division</a> on page 481
How to associate bill cycles with a division	<a href="#">Associating Bill Cycles with a Division</a> on page 482
How to associate account identifier types with a division	<a href="#">Associating Account Identifier Types with a Division</a> on page 483
How to define division-specific characteristics for a price item	<a href="#">Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item</a> on page 484

## **Defining a Division**

### **Prerequisites**

To define a division, you should have:

- Work calendars, bill formats, bill route types, time zones, currencies, business objects, To Do types, and To Do roles defined in the application

### **Procedure**


To define a division:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **D** and then click **Division**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Division** sub-menu.





The **Division** screen appears. It contains the following tabs:

- Main
- Access Groups
- Price Items
- Price Lists
- Languages
- Invoice Currencies
- Person Identifier Types
- Algorithms
- Characteristics
- Bill Messages
- Party Char Types
- Bill Cycles
- Account Identifier Types
- Price Item Characteristics


The **Main** tab contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to specify the code that uniquely identifies the division.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price List Search</b> screen appears.	
Description	Used to specify the description for the division.	Yes
Work Calendar	Used to indicate the days on which this division operates. This calendar is used to ensure that the system calculated dates (for example, bill due date, credit and collection event dates, etc.) fall on a working day.	Yes
Status	Used to indicate the status of the division. You can use either of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Active</b> Indicates that the division can be used in the system</li> <li>• <b>Pending</b> Indicates that the division is still being defined</li> <li>• <b>Retired</b> Indicates that the division is no longer available for use</li> </ul>	Yes
Bill Format	Used to specify the default bill format for accounts in this division.	No
Bill Route Type	Used to specify the default bill route type for accounts in this division.	No



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Base Currency Code	Used when accounts in this division can be billed in a currency that is different from the currency required by the GL. The system generates GL entries in the currency defined for an account. If you specify the value in this field, the system will convert the GL amounts maintained in the accounts currency into this currency. The financial transactions in both the currencies will be maintained in the system.	No
Time Zone	Used to indicate the time zone in which this division operates.	No
Eligible for Accrual	Used to indicate whether the accounts belonging to the division are eligible for accrual.	No
Accrual Cycle	Used to indicate the accrual cycle for the division.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Accrual Cycle Search</b> screen appears.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> The field is required when the division is eligible for accrual.
Comments	Used to specify additional details about the division.	No
Business Object	Used to specify a business object that may govern additional rules related to this division.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Business Object Search</b> screen appears.	Yes
To Do Type	Used when you want the To Do entries (associated with accounts in this division) of a given To Do type must be assigned to the users with a given To Do role.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> screen appears.	No
To Do Role	Used when you want the To Do entries (associated with accounts in this division) of a given To Do type must be assigned to the users with a given To Do role.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Role for To Do Type</b> screen appears.	No

4. Enter the required details.

**Note:** You can search for a To Do type and To Do role by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

- If you want to add more than one To Do type and To Do role combination for a division, click the **Add** (+) icon and then enter the To Do type and To Do role.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a To Do type and To Do role combination from the division, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the combination.

- Associate access groups, price items, price lists, languages, invoice currencies, person identifier types, algorithms, bill messages, party characteristic types, bill cycles, and account identifier types with the division, if required.
- Define characteristics for the division, if required.
- Define division-specific characteristics for the price items, if required.
- Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The division is defined.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to associate access groups with a division	<a href="#">Associating Access Groups with a Division</a> on page 470
How to associate products with a division	<a href="#">Associating Price Items with a Division</a> on page 471
How to associate price lists with a division	<a href="#">Associating Price Lists with a Division</a> on page 472
How to associate languages with a division	<a href="#">Associating Languages with a Division</a> on page 473
How to associate invoice currencies with a division	<a href="#">Associating Invoice Currencies with a Division</a> on page 474
How to associate customer identifier types with a division	<a href="#">Associating Person Identifier Types with a Division</a> on page 475
How to associate algorithms with a division	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Division</a> on page 475
How to define characteristics for a division	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Division</a> on page 479
How to associate bill messages with a division	<a href="#">Associating Bill Messages with a Division</a> on page 480
How to associate party characteristic types with a division	<a href="#">Associating Party Char Types with a Division</a> on page 481
How to associate bill cycles with a division	<a href="#">Associating Bill Cycles with a Division</a> on page 482
How to associate account identifier types with a division	<a href="#">Associating Account Identifier Types with a Division</a> on page 483
How to define division-specific characteristics for a price item	<a href="#">Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item</a> on page 484

**Associating Access Groups with a Division**

**Prerequisites**

To associate access groups with a division, you should have:


- Access groups defined in the application

**Procedure**


To associate access groups with a division:


1. Search for the division to which you want to associate access groups.
2. Click the **Access Groups** tab in the **Division** screen..


The **Access Groups** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Access Group	Used to specify the access group code.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Access Group Search</b> window appears.	
Description	Displays the description of the access group.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> The description appears automatically when you specify the access group.	

3. Enter the access group code.

**Note:** You can search for an access group by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the field.

4. If you want to associate more than one access group with the division, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove an access group from the division, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the access group.

5. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The access groups are associated with the division.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467

## Associating Price Items with a Division

### Prerequisites

To associate products with a division, you should have:

- Products created in the application

### Procedure


To associate products with a division:


1. Search for the division to which you want to associate products.
2. Click the **Products** tab in the **Division** screen.


The **Products** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product	Used to specify the product code.	No
Description	Displays the description of the product.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> The description appears automatically when you specify the product code.	

3. Enter the product code.

**Note:** You can search for a product by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the field.

4. If you want to associate more than one product with the division, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a product from the division, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the product.

5. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The products are associated with the division.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467

## Associating Price Lists with a Division

### Prerequisites

To associate price lists with a division, you should have:


- Price lists created in the application

### Procedure

To associate price lists with a division:


1. Search for the division to which you want to associate price lists.
2. Click the **Price Lists** tab in the **Division** screen.


The **Price Lists** tab appears. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List ID	Used to specify the price list ID.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price List Search</b> window appears.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Description	Displays the description of the price list.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> The description appears automatically when you specify the price list ID.	

- Enter the price list ID.

**Note:** You can search for a price list by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the field.

- If you want to associate more than one price list with the division, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price list from the division, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the price list.

- Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The price lists are associated with the division.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467

## Associating Languages with a Division

### Prerequisites

To associate languages with a division, you should have:

- Languages defined in the application


### Procedure


To associate languages with a division:

- Search for the division to which you want to associate languages.
- Click the **Languages** tab in the **Division** screen.

The **Languages** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Language	Used to specify the language.	No

- Select the language from the list.
- If you want to associate more than one language with the division, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a language from the division, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the language.

- Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The languages are associated with the division.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467

## Associating Invoice Currencies with a Division

**Prerequisites**

To associate invoice currencies with a division, you should have:

- Currencies defined in the application

**Procedure**

To associate invoice currencies with a division:

- Search for the division in the **Division** screen.
- Click the **Invoice Currencies** tab.

The **Invoice Currencies** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Currency	Used to specify the currency.	No
Rounding Type	Used to indicate the rounding type for the currency. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Down</li> <li>Nearest</li> <li>Up</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional) <div> <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating a currency with the division. </div>

- Select the currency and its rounding type from the respective list.
- If you want to associate more than one invoice currency with the division, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove an invoice currency from the division, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the invoice currency.

- Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The invoice currencies are associated with the division.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464

For more information on...	See...
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467

## Associating Person Identifier Types with a Division

### Prerequisites

To associate person identifier types with a division, you should have:

- Person identifier types defined in the application

### Procedure

To associate person identifier types with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate person identifier types.
2. Click the **Person Identifier Types** tab in the **Division** screen.

The **Person Identifier Types** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Identifier Type	Used to specify the person identifier type.	No

3. Select the person identifier type from the list.
4. If you want to associate more than one person identifier type with the division, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a person identifier type from the division, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the person identifier type.

5. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The person identifier types are associated with the division.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467

## Associating Algorithms with a Division

### Prerequisites

To associate algorithms with a division, you should have:

- Algorithms defined in the application

### Procedure


To associate algorithms with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate algorithms.
2. Click the **Algorithms** tab in the **Division** screen.


The **Algorithms** tab appears. It contains the following fields:





Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division Algorithm Entity	<p>Used to indicate the entity to which you want to attach the algorithm. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Currency Conversion For Adjustments</b> — Used to attach a date or date and time based currency conversion algorithm which must be triggered during adjustment creation and FT GL creation for adjustments.</li> <li>• <b>Currency Conversion For Bill Segments</b> — Used to attach a date or date and time based currency conversion algorithm which must be triggered during bill segment generation and FT GL creation for bill segments.</li> <li>• <b>Currency Conversion For Payments</b> — Used to attach a date or date and time based currency conversion algorithm which must be triggered during payment and tender creation and during FT GL creation for payments.</li> <li>• <b>TFM - Currency Conversion</b> — Used to attach a date or date and time based currency conversion algorithm which must be triggered during the transaction aggregation process.</li> <li>• <b>Price Assignment Search</b> — Used to attach an algorithm which indicates the order in which the price item pricing must be determined while billing. It also indicates the order in which the price item pricing must be displayed on the <b>Pricing (Account)</b> and <b>Pricing (Person)</b> screens.</li> <li>• <b>Sequential Bill Number Generation</b> — Used to attach an algorithm which indicates how to sequence alternate bill numbers which are unique within the division.</li> <li>• <b>Usage Account Contract Mapping</b> — Used to attach an algorithm which must be triggered when you create a usage account. It checks whether the usage account satisfies any account selection template criteria defined for any active construct. If yes, it includes the usage account in the active construct provided no bills are generated for the construct.</li> <li>• <b>GL Account Validation</b> – Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered during dynamic GL account validation.</li> <li>• <b>TFM - Cancellation Pre-Processing</b> – Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when you execute the C1-TXCNC batch. This algorithm is used to undertake some preprocessing activities (such as cleaning data in any custom tables) during the cancellation process.</li> <li>• <b>TFM - Disaggregation Pre-Processing</b> - Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when you execute the C1-PDTXN batch. This algorithm is used to undertake some preprocessing activities (such as cleaning data in any custom tables) during the disaggregation process.</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the division.</p>

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TFM - Rollback Pre-Processing</b> - Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when you execute the C1-TXNRB batch. This algorithm is used to undertake some preprocessing activities (such as cleaning data in any custom tables) during the rollback process.</li> <li>• <b>TFM - Verify Pricing Post-Processing</b> — Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when you execute the C1-TXNVP batch. This algorithm is used to undertake some post-processing activities on a summary record in the CI_TXN_DTL_PRITM_SUMMARY table.</li> <li>• <b>TFM - Billable Charge Post-Processing</b> — Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when you execute the C1-TXNSQ and C1-TXNCU batches. This algorithm is used to undertake some post-processing activities on a billable charge.</li> <li>• <b>TFM - Price Item Derivation Post-Processing</b> — Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when you execute the C1-TXNIP batch. This algorithm is used to undertake some post-processing activities on the transaction legs.</li> <li>• <b>TFM - Rate Post-Processing</b> — Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when you execute the C1-TXNEX and C1-TXNSQ batches. This algorithm is used to undertake some preprocessing activities while determining rate for transaction legs.</li> <li>• <b>TFM - Rate Pre-Processing</b> — Used to attach an algorithm which is triggered when you execute the C1-TXNEX and C1-TXNSQ batches. This algorithm is used to undertake some post-processing activities after determining rate for transaction legs.</li> </ul>	
Sequence Number	Used to specify the order in which the algorithms with the same entity should be executed.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the division.
Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm code.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the division.
Description	Displays the description of the algorithm.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> The description appears automatically when you specify the algorithm code.	

3. Enter the required details.

**Note:** You can search for an algorithm by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the field.

4. If you want to associate more than one algorithm with the division, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove an algorithm from the division, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the algorithm.

5. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The algorithms are associated with the division.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467

## Defining Characteristics for a Division

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a division, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Division)

### Procedure

To define characteristics for a division:


1. Search for the division for which you want to define characteristics.
2. Click the **Characteristics** tab in the **Division** screen.


The **Characteristics** tab appears. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the division.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the division.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Division. <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the division.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the division.

- Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the division, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the division, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The characteristics are defined for the division.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467

## Associating Bill Messages with a Division

### Prerequisites

To associate bill messages with a division, you should have:

- Bill messages defined in the application


### Procedure

To associate bill messages with a division:


- Search for the division to which you want to associate bill messages.
- Click the **Bill Messages** tab in the **Division** screen.


The **Bill Messages** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when you want the bill message to appear on the bill.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating a bill message with the division.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
End Date	Used to specify the date till when you want the bill message to appear on the bill.	No
Bill Message	Used to specify the bill message that is valid for accounts in this division.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Bill Message Search</b> window appears.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating a bill message with the division.
Description	Displays the description of the bill message.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> The description appears automatically when you specify the message code.	

3. Enter the required details.

**Note:** You can search for a bill message by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the field.

4. If you want to associate more than one bill message with the division, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a bill message from the division, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the message code.

5. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The bill messages are associated with the division.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467

## Associating Party Char Types with a Division

### Prerequisites

To associate party char types with a division, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Division)

### Procedure

To associate party char types with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate party char types.
2. Click the **Party Char Types** tab in the **Division** screen.

The **Party Char Types** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Entity	Used to indicate whether the characteristic type is valid for a person or an account in this division.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating a party char type with the division.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Division.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating a party char type with the division.

3. Enter the required details.
4. If you want to associate more than one party char type with the division, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a party char type from the division, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the characteristic type.

5. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.
- The party char types are associated with the division.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467

**Associating Bill Cycles with a Division**

**Prerequisites**

To associate bill cycles with a division, you should have:

- Bill cycles defined in the application

**Procedure**

To associate bill cycles with a division:

1. Search for the division to which you want to associate bill cycles.
2. Click the **Bill Cycles** tab in the **Division** screen.

The **Bill Cycles** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Cycle	Used to specify the bill cycle.	No

3. Select the bill cycle from the list.

4. If you want to associate more than one bill cycle with the division, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a bill cycle from the division, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the bill cycle.

5. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The bill cycles are associated with the division.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467

## Associating Account Identifier Types with a Division

### Prerequisites

To associate account identifier types with a division, you should have:

- Account Identifier Types defined in the application

### Procedure

To associate account identifier types with a division:

- Search for the division to which you want to associate account identifier types.
- Click the **Account Identifier Types** tab in the **Division** screen.

The **Account Identifier Types** tab appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	No

- Select the account identifier type from the list.
- If you want to associate more than one account identifier type with the division, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove an account identifier type from the division, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the account identifier type.

5. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The account identifier types are associated with the division.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465

For more information on...	See...
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467

**Defining Division-Specific Characteristics for a Price Item**

**Prerequisites**

To define division-specific characteristics for a price item, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Division/Price Item Combination)
- Price item associated with the division to which the user belongs

**Procedure**

To define division-specific characteristics for a price item:

1. Search for the division for which you want to define price item characteristics.
2. Click the **Price Item Characteristics** tab in the **Division** screen.

The **Price Item Characteristics** tab appears. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price item	Displays the price item code.	Not applicable
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the price item characteristic is effective for the division.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a division-specific characteristic for the price item.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Division/Price Item Combination.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a division-specific characteristic for the price item.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a division-specific characteristic for the price item.


3. If the division has multiple price items associated with it, scroll to define characteristics for the required price item.


**Note:** You can use the **Previous** (⏮️) and **Next** (⏭️) buttons to scroll through the price items while defining their characteristics.

4. Enter the required details.



**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** () icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

5. If you want to define more than one division-specific characteristic for the price item, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 4.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a division-specific characteristic from the price item, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

6. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The division-specific characteristics are defined for the price item.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a division	<a href="#">Searching for a Division</a> on page 464
<b>Division</b> screen	<a href="#">Division</a> on page 465
How to define a division	<a href="#">Defining a Division</a> on page 467



---

# Chapter

# 5

---

## Approval Workflow

---

### Topics:

- [\*Most Commonly Used Terms\*](#)
- [\*Approval Workflow Process\*](#)
- [\*Prerequisites\*](#)
- [\*Approval Transaction\*](#)
- [\*Comparison: New versus Existing\*](#)
- [\*Approve Price Assignment\*](#)
- [\*Modify Price Assignment\*](#)
- [\*Resolve Price Assignment\*](#)
- [\*Approval Workflow Group \(Used for Searching\)\*](#)
- [\*Approval Workflow Group \(Used for Viewing\)\*](#)
- [\*Approval Workflow Chain \(Used for Searching\)\*](#)
- [\*Approval Workflow Chain \(Used for Viewing\)\*](#)
- [\*Approval Workflow Criterion Type \(Used for Searching\)\*](#)
- [\*Approval Workflow Criterion Type \(Used for Viewing\)\*](#)
- [\*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage \(Used for Searching\)\*](#)
- [\*Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage \(Used for Viewing\)\*](#)
- [\*Approval Workflow Setting \(Used for Searching\)\*](#)
- [\*Approval Workflow Setting \(Used for Viewing\)\*](#)
- [\*Approval Workflow Reason \(Used for Searching\)\*](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing may optionally be configured to use the approval workflow process whenever any addition, modification, or deletion is done manually by a user. The approval workflow process routes any changes made to the business objects (such as person, account, contract, division, and so on) to a group of people for approval. The approval workflow process allows you to manage and track all tasks involved in the approval process.

Approval workflow allows you to define the rules for requiring an approval step before the data changes are committed to the database. Once you establish the approval workflow rules, the application manages the business process flow for having data changes approved before they are reflected in the database.

The system provides you with a flexible set of options used to determine when approvals are required, and how the approval process is to be managed including:

- Turning approval on or off for individual business objects within the application
- Grouping business objects so that approval is required for the group rather than the individual business objects within the group
- Who should approve
- How many levels of approvals are required
- Different approval workflow chains based on different criteria

Once you have turned approval workflow on for an object, or a group of objects, the system will use the approval workflow configuration to manage the entire approval process including:

- Determining whether approval is required based on data changes submitted by a user
- Routing approval workflow requests to one or more qualified approvers
- Managing rejected data changes and sending these back to the submitter for resolution
- Committing the changes once all required approvals are received

- *Approval Workflow Reason  
(Used for Viewing)*



## Most Commonly Used Terms

---

Before you understand the approval workflow process, you must familiarize yourself with the following terms:

Term	Description
Submitter	A person who adds, modifies or deletes a business object, such as person, account, contract, and division is called a submitter.
Approver	A person who approves any changes made to a business object is called an approver.
Approval Workflow Group	A group of one or more business objects for which approval is required, under some or all conditions, when data changes are made.
Approval Workflow Chain	The approval workflow chain indicates how many levels of approvals are required to approve the changes made by the submitter.

## Approval Workflow Process

---

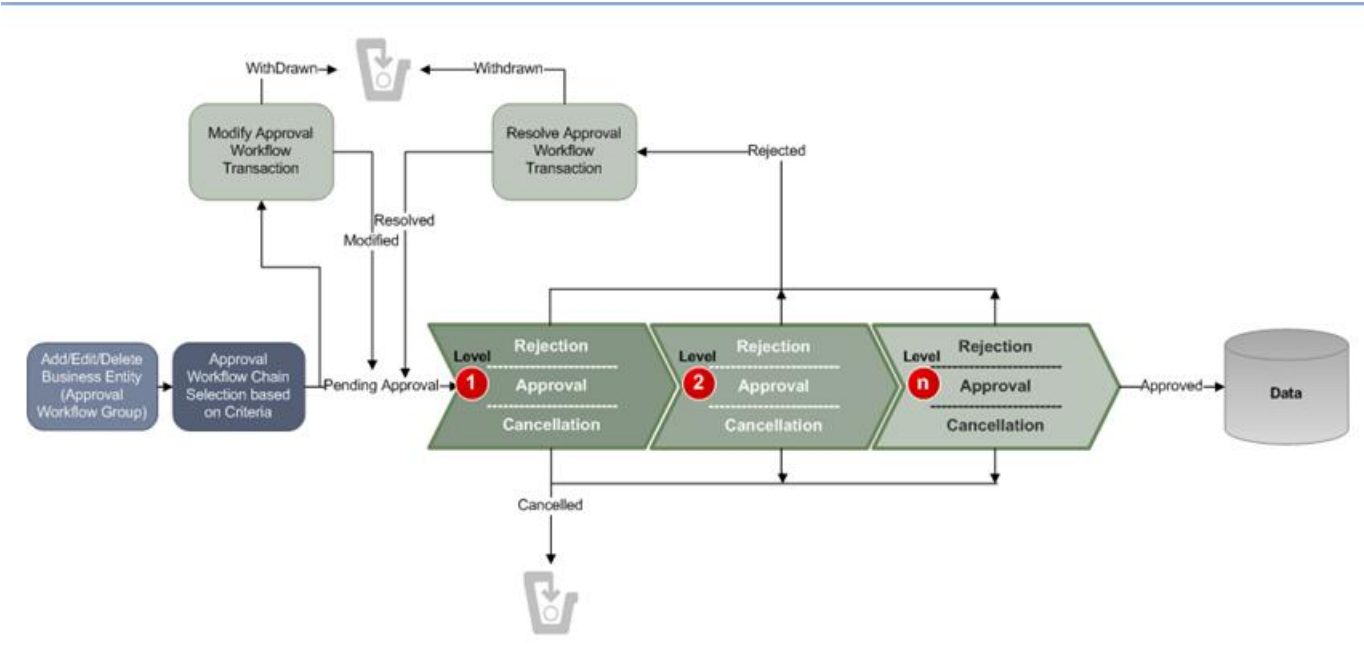
When a submitter adds, edits or deletes a business object (for example, an account) that belongs to an approval workflow group, the system checks whether approval workflow is activated for the approval workflow group. If the approval workflow is activated for the group, the system creates an approval workflow request. Every approval workflow request is uniquely identified in the system through the Approval Transaction ID.

The system identifies the approval workflow chain that must be used for approval depending on the pre-configured conditions or criteria. Based on the number of levels defined in the approval workflow chain, the request is sent to the approver at each level in the chain or hierarchy for approval. When the approver at the first level approves the request, a notification is sent to the approver at the second level for approval. This process continues till the approval is received from all levels in the hierarchy. Once the approvers at all levels approve the request, the changes are committed to the database.

However, if an approver at any level in the hierarchy rejects the request, a notification is sent to the submitter who has made the changes. The submitter then makes the required corrections based on the approver's comments and resubmits the changes for approval. In this case, the approval process starts once again from the beginning and not from the level at which the request was rejected.

The submitter also has the facility to modify the request before the approver at the first level in the hierarchy approves or rejects the request. Once the changes are made, the submitter submits the request for approval. The submitter also has the facility to cancel the request.

The following figure indicates the flow of the approval workflow process:



To implement the approval workflow process, you need to define the following:

- [Approval Workflow Group \(Used for Searching\)](#) on page 544
- [Approval Workflow Chain \(Used for Searching\)](#) on page 561
- [Approval Workflow Criterion Type \(Used for Searching\)](#) on page 568
- [Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage \(Used for Searching\)](#) on page 574
- [Approval Workflow Reason \(Used for Searching\)](#) on page 591
- [Approval Workflow Setting \(Used for Searching\)](#) on page 584

For price list, price item and price assignment, the approval workflow configuration is shipped with ORMB. The following groups are available in the system:

- **C1PRODUCT** – Contains the C1\_PRICEITEM\_BO business object
- **C1PRICELST** – Contains the C1\_F\_ADDPLBO business object
- **C1PRICEASG** – Contains the C1\_PRICECOMP and C1\_PRICEASGN\_BO business objects

After creating the approval workflow chains, you need to link these groups to the corresponding approval workflow chains. To setup the approval workflow process for price assignment, you need to do the following:

For Price Item	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. If a <b>Determine BO</b> algorithm is not specified for the <b>C1_PRICEITEM</b> maintenance object, create a <b>Determine BO</b> algorithm using the <b>F1-MOBO</b> algorithm type and specify <b>C1_PRICEITEM_BO</b> as the business object on this algorithm.</li><li>2. Attach this algorithm on the <b>Determine BO</b> algorithm spot of the <b>C1_PRICEITEM</b> MO.</li><li>3. Link the <b>C1PRODUCT</b> group to the appropriate approval workflow chain.</li><li>4. Activate the approval workflow for the <b>C1PRODUCT</b> group by setting the <b>Active</b> flag corresponding to the group in the <b>Approval Workflow Settings</b> screen to <b>Y</b>.</li></ol>
----------------	--

For Price List	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If a <b>Determine BO</b> algorithm is not specified for the <b>C1_PRICELIST</b> maintenance object, create a <b>Determine BO</b> algorithm using the <b>F1-MOBO</b> algorithm type and specify <b>C1_F_ADDPLBO</b> as the business object on this algorithm.</li> <li>2. Attach this algorithm on the <b>Determine BO</b> algorithm spot of the <b>C1_PRICELIST</b> MO.</li> <li>3. Link the <b>C1PRICELST</b> group to the appropriate approval workflow chain.</li> <li>4. Activate the approval workflow for the <b>C1PRICELST</b> group by setting the <b>Active</b> flag corresponding to the group in the <b>Approval Workflow Settings</b> screen to <b>Y</b>.</li> </ol>
For Price Assignments	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If a <b>Determine BO</b> algorithm is not specified for the <b>C1_PRICECOMP</b> maintenance object, create a <b>Determine BO</b> algorithm using the <b>F1-MOBO</b> algorithm type and specify <b>C1_PRICECOMP</b> as the business object on this algorithm.</li> <li>2. Attach this algorithm on the <b>Determine BO</b> algorithm spot of the <b>C1_PRICECOMP</b> MO.</li> <li>3. If a <b>Determine BO</b> algorithm is not specified for the <b>C1_PRICEASGN</b> maintenance object, create a <b>Determine BO</b> algorithm using the <b>F1-MOBO</b> algorithm type and specify <b>C1_PRICEASGN_BO</b> as the business object on this algorithm.</li> <li>4. Attach this algorithm on the <b>Determine BO</b> algorithm spot of the <b>C1_PRICEASGN</b> MO.</li> <li>5. Link the <b>C1PRICEASG</b> group to the appropriate approval workflow chain.</li> <li>6. Activate the approval workflow for the <b>C1PRICEASG</b> group by setting the <b>Active</b> flag corresponding to the group in the <b>Approval Workflow Settings</b> screen to <b>Y</b>.</li> </ol>

Similarly, for invoicing group, the approval workflow configuration is shipped with ORMB. The following groups are available in the system:

- **C1IGADD**
- **C1IGUPD**

After creating the approval workflow chains, you need to link these groups to the corresponding approval workflow chains, and activate the approval workflow for these groups by setting the following in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen:

- Set **Active** flag to **Yes**
- Set **Prevalidation** flag to **Yes**

**Note:** You must set the **Active** flag to **No** for both the groups in case you do not want to activate the approval workflow for invoicing group. If you set the **Active** flag to **Yes** for either of the groups, approval workflow is triggered when you add and/or edit an invoicing group.

## Prerequisites

You need to setup the following prerequisites to implement the approval workflow process:

- **Setup Feature Configuration for Approval Workflow** — If you create new Maintenance Objects (MOs) and want the access control for these MOs in the approval workflow transactions to be based on the access group and division, then you have to create a custom algorithm and attach it to the **Approval Transaction Entity Access Algorithms** option type of the **C1\_AXENTITY** feature configuration. Note that you will then have two access algorithms; one default algorithm (that is, **C1-APPTXN**) and another custom algorithm. For more information

about the **C1\_AXENTITY** feature configuration, see [Setting the C1\\_AXENTITY Feature Configuration](#) on page 2357.

- **Create and Attach Determine BO Algorithm** — To use approval workflow for a business object, check the corresponding maintenance object to see if a **Determine BO** algorithm is already attached to it. If not, create a **Determine BO** algorithm using the **F1-MOBO** algorithm type, and specify the appropriate business object name on the newly created algorithm. Attach this algorithm on the **Determine BO** algorithm spot of the maintenance object.
- **Attach Audit Algorithm to Business Objects** — To use the approval workflow process for a business object, you need to attach the **C1-APPTXNBAS** algorithm on the **Audit** algorithm spot of the business object. Unless you attach the audit algorithm to a business object, the approval workflow process will not be triggered for the respective business object. This step is only required when you are using the base panels. If you have created custom UI maps to enter or modify data for a specific business object, this step is not needed.
- **Attach Validation Algorithms to Business Objects** — The following algorithms are shipped with ORMB:

Business Object	Basic Validation Algorithm	Pending Transaction Validation Algorithm
C1-AppBOChain	C1-GRPCHNALG	C1-APPGRPCHL
C1-AppGrp	C1-GRPALG	C1-APPGROUPV
C1-ApprovalChainEligible	C1-ADMALG	C1-APGBYPORT
C1-ApprovalTransactionChain	C1-APCHALGO	C1-APCHNPEND

The basic validation algorithms are attached to the respective business objects, and then shipped with ORMB. However, the pending transaction validation algorithms are not attached to the respective business objects. If you want to restrict the users from either editing or deleting the approval workflow group, approval workflow settings, approval workflow chain, or approval workflow group chain linkage when the respective approval workflow requests are in the **Pending**, **Work-in-Progress**, or **Rejected** state, then you must attach the pending transaction validation algorithm on the **Validation** algorithm spot of the respective business object.

- **Set Colors for Highlighting during Comparison** — While approving, rejecting, or cancelling approval workflow requests where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data. By default, any modifications are highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions are highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see [Changing the Highlighting Colors](#).
- **Create To Do Types** — You need to create the To Do types that you want to use in the approval workflow process. Once the To Do type is created, you need to link it to the required To Do roles so that users belonging to the To Do role can view and work on the To Do type.
- **Create To Do Roles** — You need to create the To Do roles that you want to use in the approval workflow process. Once the To Do role is created, you need to add the users whom you want to assign this role.

**Note:** User who is withdrawing the approval workflow request must be assigned to the To Do role to which the approver at the first level in the hierarchy is assigned. Otherwise, the user will not be able to withdraw the approval workflow request.

- **Create Input UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group** — The system provides you with the ability to automatically generate an Input UI map, and associate it with the approval workflow group. Alternatively, you can create an Input UI map manually, and attach it to the approval workflow group. For more information on how to create an Input UI map manually, see [Creating Input UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group](#) on page 2347.
- **Create Display UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group** — The system provides you with the ability to automatically generate a Display UI map, and associate it with the approval workflow group. Alternatively, you can create a Display UI map manually, and attach it to the approval workflow group. For more information on



how to create a Display UI map manually, see [Creating Display UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group](#) on page 2346.

## Approval Transaction

If an approver at any level in the hierarchy rejects a request, a notification is sent to the submitters having the To Do role to resolve. The submitter then makes the required corrections based on the approver's comments, and resubmits the changes for approval. In this case, the approval process starts once again from the beginning, and not from the level at which the request was rejected.

The **Approval Transaction** screen allows you to resolve or withdraw a request. It consists of the following zones:

- [Search Approval Transaction](#)
- [Approval Transaction Log](#)

## Search Approval Transaction

The **Search Approval Transaction** zone allows you to search for an approval transaction using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for an approval transaction using the task or approval transaction details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Task Details</li> <li>• Approval Transaction Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Task Details</b> option is selected.	
Status	Used to search approval transactions with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approved</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Inprocess</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Deleted</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Approval Transaction Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Task	Used to search approval transactions with a particular task. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approve</li> <li>• Modify</li> <li>• Resolve</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Task Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to search approval transactions using the task details.
Approval Workflow Group	Used to search approval transactions created for the business objects that belong to a particular approval workflow group.	No
Division	Used to search approval transactions which belong to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Reference ID	Used to search approval transactions created for the business object with a particular reference ID.	No
Approval Transaction ID	Used to search for a particular approval transaction.	No
Created From	Used to search approval transactions which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
Created Until	Used to search approval transactions which are created till a particular date.	No
Action	Used to search approval transactions which are created while adding, updating, or deleting a business object.	No
Submitter ID	Used to search approval transactions which are created by a particular submitter.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears either when you select the <b>Task Details</b> from the <b>Search By</b> list and <b>Approve</b> option from the <b>Task</b> list or when you select the <b>Approval Transaction Details</b> from the <b>Search By</b> list and <b>Processing, Pending, or Deleted</b> option from the <b>Approval Transaction Status</b> list.  The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Submitter Id for Status</b> window appears.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approver ID	Used to search approval transactions which are rejected by a particular approver.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Approver ID</b> is displayed when the approval transaction is searched by <b>Task Details</b> and <b>Task</b> is <b>Resolve</b>. It is also displayed when the approval transaction is searched by <b>Approval Transaction Details</b> and Status is <b>Approved</b>, <b>Canceled</b>, or <b>Rejected</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Approver ID Search</b> window appears.</p>	


**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an approval transaction. One more search criterion is required when you are searching for an approval transaction using the **Task** field.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Approval Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID.
	<p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. The link appears when you select <b>Task Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. If the <b>Approve</b> option is selected from the <b>Task</b> list then on clicking the link, <b>Comparison: New versus Existing</b> window appears with the compared details of the new and existing approval transactions. If the <b>Modify</b> option is selected from the <b>Task</b> list then on clicking the link, <b>Modify/Resolve Price List Assignment</b> window appears to modify or resolve the details of price list assignment. If the <b>Resolve</b> option is selected from the <b>Task</b> list then on clicking the link, <b>Modify/Resolve Price List Assignment</b> window appears to modify or resolve the details of price list assignment.</p>
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the code of the approval workflow group.
Submitter Name	Displays the name of submitter who submits the approval transaction details list.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears either when you select the <b>Approve</b> or <b>Modify</b> option from the <b>Task</b> list or when you select the <b>Processing</b>, <b>Pending</b>, or <b>Deleted</b> option from the <b>Approval Transaction Status</b> list.</p>
Approver Name	Displays the name of an approver who approves an approval transaction details list.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears either when you select the <b>Resolve</b> option from the <b>Task</b> list or when you select the <b>Approved</b>, <b>Canceled</b>, or <b>Rejected</b> option from the <b>Approval Transaction Status</b> list.</p>

Column Name	Column Description
Submitted On	Displays the date and time on which approval transaction is submitted for approval.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears either when you select the <b>Approve</b> or <b>Modify</b> option from the <b>Task</b> list or when you select the <b>Approved</b> , <b>Pending</b> , or <b>Deleted</b> option from the <b>Approval Transaction Details</b> list.
Action	Indicates the various types of action. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add</li> <li>• Delete (DEL)</li> <li>• Update (UPD)</li> </ul>
Division	Displays the division to which the approval transaction belongs.
Status	Displays the status of approval transaction. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approved</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Processing</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Deleted</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears either when you select <b>Approval Transaction Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list of the search criteria.
To Do Type	Displays the type of <b>To Do</b> (notification) received for the approval transaction.
Approval Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the approval transaction.
Rejected On	Displays the date and time on which the transaction is rejected.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears either when you select the <b>Resolve</b> option from the <b>Task</b> list or when you select the <b>Rejected</b> , option from the <b>Approval Transaction Details</b> list.
Reject Reason	Displays the reason for which the approval transaction is rejected by the approver.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears either when you select the <b>Resolve</b> option from the <b>Task</b> list or when you select the <b>Rejected</b> option from the <b>Approval Transaction Details</b> list.
Canceled On	Displays the date and time on which the approval transaction is canceled by the user.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears when you select the <b>Cancelled</b> option from the <b>Approval Transaction Details</b> list.

Column Name	Column Description
Cancel Reason	Displays the reason for which the approval transaction is canceled by the user.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears either when you select the <b>Canceled</b> option from the <b>Approval Transaction Details</b> list.
Withdraw	Displays a link to withdraw an approval transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears either when you select the <b>Modify</b> or <b>Resolve</b> option from the <b>Task</b> list. It has a link and on clicking the link, a message appears to confirm the withdrawal of the respective approval transaction.

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the approval transaction the **Approval Transaction Log** zone appears with the approval transaction log details.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Transaction Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Transaction Log</a> on page 497
How to search for an approval transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Transaction</a> on page 498
How to view the log of an approval transaction	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of an Approval Transaction</a> on page 498

## Approval Transaction Log

The **Approval Transaction Log** zone displays the complete trail of submitter and approver actions performed on the approval transaction. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the approval transaction.
User Name	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the approval transaction.
Status	Displays the status of the approval transaction. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approved</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• InProcess</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Deleted</li> </ul>
View	It has a link. On clicking the <b>View</b> link, the <b>Comparison: New versus Existing</b> window appears where you can view the existing and new compared transactions”.
Status Reason	Displays the status reason of the approval transaction.
Comments	Displays additional information about the approval transaction.

By default, the **Banking Approval Transaction Log** zone does not appear. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the approval transaction in the **Approval Transaction** zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of an approval transaction	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of an Approval Transaction</a> on page 498

**Searching for an Approval Transaction****Procedure**

To search for an approval transaction:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approval Transaction**.  
The **Approval Transaction** screen appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Approval Transaction** sub-menu.  
The **Approval Transaction** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Approval Transaction** zone depending on whether you want to search for a task or approval transaction details.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.


5. Click **Search**.  
A list of task or approval transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Transaction</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Transaction</a> on page 493
<b>Search Approval Transaction</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Transaction</a> on page 493

**Viewing the Log of an Approval Transaction****Procedure**

To view the log of an approval transaction:

1. Search for the task or approval transaction details in the **Approval Transaction** screen.
2. In the Search Results section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the approval transaction whose log details you want to view.  
The **Approval Transaction Log** zone appears.
3. View the log details of the approval transactions in the **Approval Transaction Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Search Approval Transaction zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Transaction</a> on page 493
Approval Transaction Log zone	<a href="#">Approval Transaction Log</a> on page 497

## Comparison: New versus Existing

You have to define the reason codes which are used when the approval workflow request is either rejected or cancelled. The reason code helps to indicate the reason why a particular request was rejected or cancelled.

The **Comparison: New versus Existing** screen allows you to view the changes in the new approval transaction compared to the existing one. It contains the following sections:

- New
- Existing

Through this screen you can do the following:

- Approve an approval transaction
- Reject an Approval Transaction
- Cancel an approval transaction
- Modify an approval transaction
- Withdraw an Approval Transaction
- Resolve an approval transaction

## Approving an Approval Transaction

You can view the number of approval transactions which are pending for approval in the **Approval Transaction** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve, return to the submitter, revert to the original, or cancel the approval transaction based on the observations.

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve, return to the submitter, revert to the original or cancel an approval transaction submitted by you.

### Procedure

To approve an approval transaction:

1. Search for approval transactions with task details and status as Approve in the **Approval Transaction** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Approval Transaction ID** column corresponding to the approval transaction which you want to review.  
The **Comparison: New versus Existing** screen appears.
3. Review the compared existing and new approval transactions.
4. Click **Approve**.

A message appears with confirmation on transaction approved successfully.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **OK**.

The approval transaction is removed from the search results.

Note:

By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see [Setting the CI\\_AXENTITY Feature Configuration](#) on page 2357.

6. Review the changes and click **Approve** to accept the changes.

The changes in the approval transaction are approved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Search Approval Transaction zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Transaction</a> on page 493
Comparison: New versus Existing screen	<a href="#">Comparison: New versus Existing</a> on page 499
How to search for an approval transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Transaction</a> on page 498

**Rejecting an Approval Transaction**

**Prerequisites**

To return an approval transaction to its submitter, you should have:

- Rejection reasons defined in the application

Note:

While returning an approval transaction, you need to specify the reason why you want to return the approval transaction. You can select the appropriate rejection reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Rejected** status of the business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

The system will not allow you to approve, return or revert an approval transaction submitted by you.

**Procedure**

To reject an approval transaction:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Approval Transaction ID** column corresponding to the approval transaction which you want to review.  
The **Comparison: New versus Existing** screen appears.
- Review the compared existing and new approval transactions.
- Click Return to Submitter.” With stepresult, “The Rejection/Cancelation Reason window appears. It contains the following fie

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Reason	Used to search a particular approval workflow reason.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while rejecting the usage record.	Yes



5. Enter the required details.
6. Click **OK**.

The approval transaction is removed from the search results.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Search Approval Transaction zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Transaction</a> on page 493
Comparison: New versus Existing screen	<a href="#">Comparison: New versus Existing</a> on page 499
How to approve an approval transaction	<a href="#">Approving an Approval Transaction</a> on page 499
How to search for an approval transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Transaction</a> on page 498

## Canceling an Approval Transaction

### Prerequisites

To revert an approval transaction to its initial status, you should have:

- Cancellation reasons defined in the application

### **Note:**

While reverting an approval transaction, you need to specify the reason why you want to revert the approval transaction. You can select the appropriate cancellation reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Canceled** status of the business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

The system will not allow you to approve, return or revert an approval transaction submitted by you.

### Procedure

To cancel an approval transaction:

1. Search for approval transactions with task details and status as Approve in the **Approval Transaction** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Approval Transaction ID** column corresponding to the approval transaction which you want to review.  
The **Comparison: New versus Existing** screen appears.
3. Review the compared existing and new approval transactions.
4. Click **Revert to Original**.

The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Reason	Used to search a particular approval workflow reason.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while rejecting the usage record.	Yes

5. Enter the required details.

A **Comparison: New versus Existing** screen appears where you can view the changes in the new transaction as compared to the existing ones.

**Note:**

By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see [Setting the CI\\_AXENTITY Feature Configuration](#) on page 2357.

6. Click **OK**.

The approval transaction is removed from the search results.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Search Approval Transaction</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Transaction</a> on page 493
<b>Comparison: New versus Existing</b> screen	<a href="#">Comparison: New versus Existing</a> on page 499
How to approve an approval transaction	<a href="#">Approving an Approval Transaction</a> on page 499
How to search for an approval transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Transaction</a> on page 498

**Modifying an Approval Transaction****Prerequisites**

To modify an approval transaction, you should have:

- Characteristic Types defined in the application.

**Procedure**

To Modify an approval transaction:

1. Search for approval transactions with task details and status as Modify in the **Approval Transaction** screen.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approval Transaction**.

A screen appears where you can review the changes, and accordingly modify or resolve the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is **Update (UPD)**, you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.

3. Modify the required details.
4. Click **Save**.

The modifications made to the approval transaction are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Transaction</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Transaction</a> on page 493
<b>Search Approval Transaction</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Transaction</a> on page 493
How to search for an approval transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Transaction</a> on page 498

## Withdrawing an Approval Transaction

### Procedure

To withdraw an approval transaction:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the approval transaction which you want to withdraw.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to withdraw the approval transaction.
3. Click **OK**.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the approval transaction.
4. Click **OK**.  
The approval transaction is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Transaction</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Transaction</a> on page 493
<b>Search Approval Transaction</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Transaction</a> on page 493
How to search for an approval transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Transaction</a> on page 498

## Resolving an Approval Transaction

### Prerequisites

To resolve an approval transaction, you should have:

- Characteristic Types defined in the application.

### Procedure

To resolve an approval transaction:

1. Search for approval transactions with task details and status as Resolve in the **Approval Transaction** screen.  
A list appears.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Approval Transaction ID** column corresponding to the approval transaction which you want to resolve.  
A screen appears where you can review the changes, and accordingly modify or resolve the request based on your observations. In case where the submitter action is Update (UPD), you will be able to compare the existing and new data, and accordingly take an action.
3. Make the required changes.
4. Click **Save**.  
The changes resolve for the approval transaction are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Transaction</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Transaction</a> on page 493

For more information on...	See...
<b>Search Approval Transaction</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Transaction</a> on page 493
How to search for an approval transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Transaction</a> on page 498

## Approve Price Assignment

The **Approve Price Assignment** screen allows you to search for the price assignment requests that are pending in your workflow for approval. You can review the changes, and accordingly approve, reject or cancel the request based on your observations. It contains the following zones:

- [Search](#) on page 504
- [List of Price Assignments](#) on page 507
- [Approve Price Assignment - Comparison: New versus Existing](#) on page 508
- [Approval Transaction Log](#) on page 497

## Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for the price assignment requests that are pending in your workflow for approval. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for price assignments using the account, person, price list, submitter ID or transaction ID. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person</li> <li>• Account</li> <li>• Price List</li> <li>• Submitter ID</li> <li>• Approval Transaction ID</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Person</b> option is selected.	
Division	Used to search price assignments which are associated with a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.  This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Identifier Type	Used to specify the value for the person identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you enter the person identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the person identifier type.	
Person Identifier	Used to specify the ID linked to the person.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you specify the person identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the person identifier.
Account ID	Used to search price assignments which are created for a particular account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search price assignments of an account.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the account whose price assignments you want to view.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Price List Description	Used to search price lists with a particular description.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Submitter ID	Used to search for price assignment requests that are created by a particular submitter.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Submitter ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Transaction ID	This field appears only when you select the <b>Approval Transaction ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.  This field appears only when you select the <b>Transaction ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price assignment.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Displays the account ID.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Account Identifier Type	Indicates the account identifier type of the account for the price assignments.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Price List ID	
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Price List Description	Displays the description for the price list.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Person Identifier	
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Person Name	Displays the name of the person.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Division	Displays the division to which the account, person, or price list belongs.

Column Name	Column Description
Submitter ID	Displays the ID of the submitter.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Submitter ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Approval Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Approval Transaction ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account, person, price list, or submitter ID the **List of Price Assignments** zone appears with the list of price assignments.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 526
How to approve a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Approving a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 511
How to approve a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Approving a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 512
How to approve a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Approving a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 513
How to reject a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Rejecting a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 514
How to reject a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Rejecting a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 515
How to reject a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Rejecting a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 517
How to cancel a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Canceling a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 518
How to cancel a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Canceling a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 519
How to cancel a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Canceling a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 521


## List of Price Assignments

The **List of Price Assignments** zone lists price assignment requests specific to an account, a person, or a price list. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Approval Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction id.
	<b>Note:</b> The approval transaction id is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.
Submitter Name	Displays the name of the submitter.
Action	Indicates the type of action, such as <b>Add</b> , <b>Update (UPD)</b> , or <b>Delete (DEL)</b> performed by the submitter during price assignment.
Submitted On	Indicates the submitter who has created the price assignment request.

Column Name	Column Description
To Do Type	Displays the type of To Do (notification) received for the price assignment request.
Price Item	Displays the price item or price item code.
Description	Displays the description of the price item or price item code.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective.
Approval Transaction Information	Displays the additional information of an approval transaction.

**Note:**

By default, the **List of Price Assignments** zone does not appear in the **Approve Price Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account, person, or price list in the **Search** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Search Approve Price Assignment</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 504
<b>Comparison: New versus Existing</b> zone	<a href="#">Approve Price Assignment - Comparison: New versus Existing</a> on page 508
How to approve a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Approving a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 511
How to approve a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Approving a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 512
How to approve a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Approving a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 513
How to reject a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Rejecting a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 514
How to reject a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Rejecting a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 515
How to reject a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Rejecting a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 517
How to cancel a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Canceling a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 518
How to cancel a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Canceling a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 519
How to cancel a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Canceling a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 521

**Approve Price Assignment - Comparison: New versus Existing**

The **Comparison: New versus Existing** zone lists the existing and the new price assignments defined in the system. You can approve, cancel, reject a price assignment through this zone. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Approval Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction id.
Submitter ID	Displays the submitter id who has created the price assignment request.



Field Name	Field Description
Approval Transaction Information	Displays information about the approval transaction
Action	Indicates the action that can be performed on the price assignment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add – Allows you to define the tiering setup of the price assignment</li> <li>• DEL – Allows you to delete the tiering setup of the price assignment.</li> <li>• UPD – Allows you to upload the tiering setup of the price assignment.</li> </ul>


In addition to the above fields, this zone also contains the following two sections:

- **New** – It consists of the new approved price assignments.
- **Existing** – It consists of the existing or old price assignments.

In addition, this zone also contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Approve	Used to approve the price assignment.
Return to Submitter	Used to reject the price assignment.
Revert to Original	Used to cancel the price assignment.

**Note:**

By default, the **Comparison: New versus Existing** zone does not appear in the **Approve Price Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the approval transaction ID in the **List Of Price Assignments** zone.

The changes made are highlighted in both the sections for the respective fields. The fields change according to the price assignments.

You can click on **Approve** button, **Return to Submitter** button, or **Revert to Original** button to **Approve**, **Reject** or **Cancel** the price assignments, respectively.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Search Approve Price Assignment</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 504
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 526
How to approve a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Approving a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 511
How to approve a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Approving a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 512
How to approve a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Approving a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 513
How to reject a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Rejecting a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 514
How to reject a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Rejecting a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 515


For more information on...	See...
How to reject a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Rejecting a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 517
How to cancel a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Canceling a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 518
How to cancel a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Canceling a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 519
How to cancel a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Canceling a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 521

## Approval Transaction Log

The **Approval Transaction Log** zone displays the complete trail of submitter and approver actions performed on the approval transaction. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the approval transaction.
User Name	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the approval transaction.
Status	Indicates the status of the approval transaction. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approved</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Inprocess</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Initial</li> <li>• Deleted</li> </ul>
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the approval transaction was rejected or cancelled.
Comments	Displays the additional details entered by the approver on rejecting or cancelling the approval transaction.

### Note:

By default, the **Approval Transaction Log** zone does not appear in the **Approve Price Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the approval transaction ID in the **List Of Price Assignments** zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>List Of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 526

## Approving a Price Assignment for an Account

You can view the number of price assignments which are pending for approval in the **Approve Price Assignment** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve, reject or cancel the price assignment based on the observations.



**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve, reject or cancel a price assignment submitted by you.

### Procedure

To approve a price assignment for an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.  
The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.  
A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account whose price assignments you want to review for approval.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
6. In the **List of Price Assignments** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price assignment whose details you want to review and approve.  
The **Comparison: New Versus Existing** zone appears.

### **Note:**

By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see [Setting the CI\\_AXENTITY Feature Configuration](#) on page 2357.

Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

7. Review the compared existing and new approval transactions.  
A message appears indicating that the price assignment request is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy for approval. However, if you are the last approver in the hierarchy, a message appears indicating that the price assignment request is approved successfully.
8. Click **Approve**.  
A message appears with confirmation on transaction approved successfully.

**Tip:** Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to approve and then click **Approve**.

9. Click **OK**.

The approval transaction is removed from the **List of Price Assignments** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Approve Price Assignment</a> on page 504
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 504
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 507
<b>Comparison: New versus Existing</b> zone	<a href="#">Comparison: New versus Existing</a> on page 499

## Approving a Price Assignment for a Person

**Procedure**



To approve a price assignment for a person:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.  
The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.
3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria by selecting **Person** in the **Search By** field.

**Note:**

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

The **Search Results** appear only when **Person Identifier Type** and **Person Identifier** fields are entered.

4. Click **Search**.  
A list of persons that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the person whose price assignments you want to review for approval.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
6. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the **Transaction Id** in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, whose details you want to view and approve.  
The **Comparison: New Versus Existing** zone appears.

**Note:**

By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see [Setting the CI\\_AXENTITY Feature Configuration](#) on page 2357.

Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

- Review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and if they are accurate, then click **Approve**.

A message appears indicating that the price assignment request is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy for approval. However, if you are the last approver in the hierarchy, a message appears indicating that the price assignment request is approved successfully.

- Click **OK**.

A To Do (notification) is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy. You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval. In case you are the last approver in the hierarchy, the changes are committed to the database.

**Tip:** Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to approve, and then click **Approve**.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Approve Price Assignment</a> on page 504
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 504
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 507



## Approving a Price Assignment for a Price List

### Procedure

To approve a price assignment for a price list:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.  
The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.
- In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria by selecting either **Price List** in the **Search By** field.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.  
A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
- Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignments you want to review for approval.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
- Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the **Transaction Id** in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, whose details you want to view and approve.  
The **Comparison: New Versus Existing** zone appears.
- Review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and if they are accurate, then click **Approve**.

A message appears indicating that the price assignment request is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy for approval. However, if you are the last approver in the hierarchy, a message appears indicating that the price assignment request is approved successfully.

8. Click **OK**.

A To Do (notification) is sent to the approver at the next level in the hierarchy. You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval. In case you are the last approver in the hierarchy, the changes are committed to the database.

**Tip:** Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to approve, and then click **Approve**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Approve Price Assignment</a> on page 504
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 504
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 507



**Rejecting a Price Assignment for an Account**

**Procedure**

To reject a price assignment for an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.  
The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.
3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria by selecting either **Account** in the **Search By** field.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.  
A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account whose price assignments you want to review for approval.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
6. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the **Transaction Id** in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, whose details you want to view and approve.  
The **Comparison: New Versus Existing** zone appears.

**Note:**

By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see [Setting the CI\\_AXENTITY Feature Configuration](#) on page 2357.

Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

- Review the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics, and if they are not appropriate, then click **Return to Submitter**.

The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears.

**Tip:** Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to reject, and then click **Return to Submitter**.

- Select the reason for rejecting the price assignment request and enter the comments in the respective field.
- Click **OK**.

The **Approve** and **Revert to Original** buttons are disabled. You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow for approval.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Approve Price Assignment</a> on page 504
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 504
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 507

**Rejecting a Price Assignment for a Person**

You can view the number of price assignments which are pending for approval in the **Approve Price Assignment** screen. You can review, and accordingly approve, reject or cancel the price assignment based on the observations.

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve, reject or cancel a price assignment submitted by you.

**Procedure**



To reject a price assignment for a person:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.  
The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.
- Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.

A list of persons that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the person whose price assignments you want to review.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
6. In the **List of Price Assignments** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price assignment whose details you want to review.  
The **Comparison: New Versus Existing** zone appears.

**Note:**

By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see [Setting the C1\\_AXENTITY Feature Configuration](#) on page 2357.

Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

7. Review the compared existing and new approval transactions.

The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears. It contains following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reason Code	Used to specify the reason why the approval workflow request is rejected.	Yes
Rejection/Cancellation Comment	Used to specify additional information while rejecting/cancelling the approval workflow request.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to reject, and then click **Return to Submitter**.

8. Click **Return to Submitter**.

The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Reason	Used to search a particular approval workflow reason.	Yes
Comments	Used to add additional comments.	No

9. Enter the required details.

10. Click **OK**.

The approval transaction is removed from the **List of Price Assignments** zone.

**Note:** Alternatively, you can cancel the price assignment by selecting the check box corresponding to the price assignment which you want to cancel and then click the **Revert to Original** button in the **List of Price Assignments** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Approve Price Assignment</a> on page 504
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 504
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 507



For more information on...	See...
<b>Comparison: New versus Existing</b> zone	<a href="#">Comparison: New versus Existing</a> on page 499

## Rejecting a Price Assignment for a Price List

You can view the number of price assignments which are pending for approval in the **Approve Price Assignment** screen. You can review, and accordingly approve, reject or cancel the price assignment based on the observations.

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve, reject or cancel a price assignment submitted by you.

### Procedure

To reject a price assignment for a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

A list appears.

2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.


The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.

3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.


4. Click **Search**.

A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignments you want to review.

The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

6. In the **List of Price Assignments** zone, click the

**Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price assignment whose details you want to review.

The **Comparison: New Versus Existing** zone appears.

#### Note:

By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see [Setting the CI\\_AXENTITY Feature Configuration](#) on page 2357.

Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

7. Review the compared existing and new approval transactions.

The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears.

**Tip:** Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to reject, and then click **Return to Submitter**.

8. Click **Return to Submitter**.

The **Rejection/Cancelation Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Reason	Used to search a particular approval workflow reason.	Yes
Comments	Used to add additional comments.	No

9. Enter the required details.

The **Approve** and **Revert to Original** buttons are disabled.

10. Click **OK**.

The approval transaction is removed from the **List of Price Assignments** zone.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can reject the price assignment by selecting the check box corresponding to the price assignment which you want to reject and then click the **Return to Submitter** button in the **List of Price Assignments** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Approve Price Assignment</a> on page 504
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 504
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 507
<b>Comparison: New versus Existing</b> zone	<a href="#">Comparison: New versus Existing</a> on page 499

## Canceling a Price Assignment for an Account

You can view the number of price assignments which are pending for approval in the **Approve Price Assignment** screen. You can review, and accordingly approve, reject or cancel the price assignment based on the observations.


**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve, reject or cancel a price assignment submitted by you.

### Procedure


To cancel a price assignment for an account:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.  
The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.
- Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.  
A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
- Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account whose price assignments you want to review.

The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

6. In the **List of Price Assignments** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price assignment whose details you want to review.

The **Comparison: New Versus Existing** zone appears.

**Note:**

By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see [Setting the CI\\_AXENTITY Feature Configuration](#) on page 2357.

Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

7. Review the compared existing and new approval transactions.

The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears.

**Tip:** Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to reject, and then click **Revert to Original**.

8. Click **Revert to Original**.

The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Reason	Used to search a particular approval workflow reason.	Yes
Comments	Used to add additional comments.	No

9. Enter the required details.

10. Click **OK**.

The approval transaction is removed from the **List of Price Assignments** zone.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can cancel the price assignment by selecting the check box corresponding to the price assignment which you want to cancel and then click the **Revert to Original** button in the **List of Price Assignments** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Approve Price Assignment</a> on page 504
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 504
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 507
<b>Comparison: New versus Existing</b> zone	<a href="#">Comparison: New versus Existing</a> on page 499

## Canceling a Price Assignment for a Person

You can view the number of price assignments which are pending for approval in the **Approve Price Assignment** screen. You can review, and accordingly approve, reject or cancel the price assignment based on the observations.



**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve, reject or cancel a price assignment submitted by you.

**Procedure**

To cancel a price assignment for a person:

- 1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- 2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.  
The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.
- 3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- 4. Click **Search**.  
A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
- 5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account whose price assignments you want to review.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
- 6. In the **List of Price Assignments** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price assignment whose details you want to review.  
The **Comparison: New Versus Existing** zone appears.

**Note:**  
By default, any modifications will be highlighted in the Yellow (9933FF) color and new additions will be highlighted in the Purple (FFFF66) color. You can easily change these default colors. For more information on how to set the colors used for highlighting, see [Setting the CI\\_AXENTITY Feature Configuration](#) on page 2357.  
Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to view the details of the price assignment request.

- 7. Review the compared existing and new approval transactions.  
The **Rejection/Cancelation Reason** screen appears.

**Tip:** Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to reject, and then click **Revert to Original**.

- 8. Click **Revert to Original**.

The **Rejection/Cancelation Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Reason	Used to search a particular approval workflow reason.	Yes
Comments	Used to add additional comments.	No

- 9. Enter the required details.
- 10. Click **OK**.  
The approval transaction is removed from the **List of Price Assignments** zone.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can cancel the price assignment by selecting the check box corresponding to the price assignment which you want to cancel and then click the **Revert to Original** button in the **List of Price Assignments** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Approve Price Assignment</a> on page 504
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 504
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 507
<b>Comparison: New versus Existing</b> zone	<a href="#">Comparison: New versus Existing</a> on page 499

## Canceling a Price Assignment for a Price List

You can view the number of price assignments which are pending for approval in the **Approve Price Assignment** screen. You can review, and accordingly approve, reject or cancel the price assignment based on the observations.



**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve, reject or cancel a price assignment submitted by you.

### Procedure

To cancel a price assignment for a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Approve Price Assignment**.  
The **Approve Price Assignment** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.  
A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignments you want to review.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
6. In the **List of Price Assignments** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price assignment whose details you want to review.  
The **Comparison: New Versus Existing** zone appears.
7. Review the compared existing and new approval transactions.  
The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears.

**Tip:** Alternatively, in the **List of Price Assignments** zone, you can select the check box corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to cancel, and then click **Revert to Original**.

8. Click **Revert to Original**.

The **Rejection/Cancellation Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Reason	Used to search a particular approval workflow reason.	Yes
Comments	Used to add additional comments.	No

9. Enter the required details.

10. Click **OK**.

The approval transaction is removed from the **List of Price Assignments** zone.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can cancel the price assignment by selecting the check box corresponding to the price assignment which you want to cancel and then click the **Revert to Original** button in the **List of Price Assignments** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Approve Price Assignment</a> on page 504
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 504
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 507
<b>Comparison: New versus Existing</b> zone	<a href="#">Comparison: New versus Existing</a> on page 499

## Modify Price Assignment

The submitter has the facility to modify or withdraw a price assignment request before the approver at the first level in the hierarchy approves or rejects the request. Once the changes are made, the submitter submits the request for approval.

The **Modify Price Assignment** screen allows you to modify or withdraw a price assignment request. It contains the following zones:

- [Search](#) on page 522
- [List of Price Assignments](#) on page 537

### Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for the price assignment request using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for price assignments using the account, person, price list, submitter ID or transaction ID. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person</li> <li>• Account</li> <li>• Price List</li> <li>• Submitter ID</li> <li>• Approval Transaction ID</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Person</b> option is selected.	
Division	Used to search price assignments which are associated with a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list. This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search price assignments through which the person's record is created or updated in the system.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Identifier	Used to specify the value for the person identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> If you specify the person identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the person identifier.
Account ID	Used to search price assignments which are created for a particular account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search price assignments of an account.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
		<b>Note:</b> If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier	Used to specify the account whose price assignments you want to view.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Price List Description	Used to search price lists with a particular description.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Submitter ID	Used to search for price assignment requests that are created by a particular submitter.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Submitter ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Approval Transaction ID	Used to search the price assignment request using the approval transaction ID.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.  This field appears only when you select the <b>Approval Transaction ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	


**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price assignment.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Person Identifier	Indicates the person for whom the price assignment is created.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Submitter ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Person Name	Displays the name of the person.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Submitter ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Person Identifier Type	Displays the person identifier type.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Submitter ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Division	Displays the division to which the account, person, or price list belongs.



Column Name	Column Description
Account Information	Displays information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> or <b>Submitter ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.</p>
Account Identifier Type	Indicates the account identifier type of the account for the price assignments.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> or <b>Submitter ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> or <b>Submitter ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Price List ID	Displays the price list ID.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Price List Description	Displays the description for the price list.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a price list.</p>
Submitter ID	Displays the ID of the submitter.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Submitter ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account, person, price list, or submitter ID the **List of Price Assignments** zone appears with the list of price assignments.

#### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 526
How to modify a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Modifying a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 527
How to modify a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Modifying a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 528
How to modify a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Modifying a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 529

For more information on...	See...
How to withdraw a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 529
How to withdraw a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 530
How to withdraw a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 531

## List of Price Assignments

The **List of Price Assignments** zone lists price assignment requests specific to an account, a person, or a price list. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Approval Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID.
	<b>Note:</b> The approval transaction id is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.
Submitter Name	Indicates the submitter who has created the price assignment request.
Action	Indicates the type of action, such as <b>Add</b> , <b>Update (UPD)</b> , or <b>Delete (DEL)</b> , performed by the submitter during price assignment.
Submitted On	Displays the date and time when the price assignment request was created by the submitter.
To Do Type	Displays the type of To Do (notification) received for the price assignment request.
Price Item	Displays the price item or price item code.
Description	Displays the description of the price item or price item code.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the price item pricing is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the price item pricing is effective.
Approval Transaction Information	Displays information about the approval transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> This information string is generated using the <b>C1-APPTXNINF</b> algorithm.
Modify	It has a link. On clicking the <b>Modify</b> link, the <b>Modify/Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen appears where you can modify the price assignment.
Withdraw	It has a link. On clicking the <b>Withdraw</b> link, you can withdraw and remove the approval transaction from the list of price assignments.
View	It has a link. On clicking the <b>Log</b> link, you can view the approval transaction log details.

By default, the **List of Price Assignments** zone does not appear in the **Modify Price Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account, person, or price list in the **Search** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Modify Price Assignment Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 522
How to modify a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Modifying a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 527
How to modify a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Modifying a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 528
How to modify a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Modifying a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 529
How to withdraw a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 529
How to withdraw a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 530
How to withdraw a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 531

## Modifying a Price Assignment for an Account


You can view the number of price assignments which are pending for modification in the **Modify Price Assignment** screen. The modifier can review, and accordingly modify, withdraw or view log of the price assignment based on the observations.

### Procedure

To modify a price assignment for an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**.  
The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.  
A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account whose price assignments you want to review.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
6. Click the **Modify** link in the **Modify** column corresponding to the price assignment that you want to modify.  
The **Modify/Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.

**Note:** Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to modify the details of the price assignment request.

7. Make the required changes.
8. Modify the required details.

The changes made to the price assignment are saved.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Modify Price Assignment</a> on page 522
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 522
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 526


## **Modifying a Price Assignment for a Person**

### **Procedure**

To modify a price assignment for a person:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**.  
The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.
3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the person belongs or the person identification type and value.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.  
A list of persons that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the person whose price assignment requests you want to modify.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
6. Click the **Modify** link in the **Modify** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to modify.

The **Modify/Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears where you can modify the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics.

**Note:** Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to modify the details of the price assignment request.

7. Make the required changes.
8. Click **Save**.

The price assignment for a person is updated.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Modify Price Assignment</a> on page 522

For more information on...	See...
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 522
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 526


## Modifying a Price Assignment for a Price List

### Procedure

To modify a price assignment for a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**.  
The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.
3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.  
A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignment requests you want to modify.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
6. Click the **Modify** link in the **Modify** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want modify.  
The **Modify/Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears where you can modify the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics.

**Note:** Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to modify the details of the price assignment request.

7. Make the required changes.
8. Click **Save**.  
The price assignment for a price list is updated.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Modify Price Assignment</a> on page 522
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 522
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 526

## Withdrawing a Price Assignment for an Account

**Procedure**

To withdraw a price assignment for an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. Do the following:


If you want to...	Then...
Withdraw a price assignment request when it is in the Pending Approval status	From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Approval Workflow Management</b> and then click <b>Modify Price Assignment</b> . The <b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen appears.
Withdraw a price assignment request when it has been rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy	From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Approval Workflow Management</b> and then click <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> . The <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen appears.

3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the account belongs, account ID, or account identifier.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account whose price assignment requests you want to withdraw.

The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

**Note:** The system provides you with a facility to view the log of a price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** and **Resolve Price Assignment** screens before withdrawing a request.

6. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to withdraw.

A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the price assignment request.

7. Click **OK**.

You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Modify Price Assignment</a> on page 522
<b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Resolve Price Assignment</a> on page 533

**Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Person****Procedure**

To withdraw a price assignment for a person:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. Select the **Main** menu and do the following:


If you want to...	Then...
Withdraw a price assignment request when it is in the Pending Approval status	From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Approval Workflow Management</b> and then click <b>Modify Price Assignment</b> . The <b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen appears.
Withdraw a price assignment request when it has been rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy	From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Approval Workflow Management</b> and then click <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> . The <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen appears.

3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the person belongs or the person identification type and value.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of persons that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the person whose price assignment requests you want to withdraw.

The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

**Note:** The system provides you with a facility to view the log of a price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** and **Resolve Price Assignment** screens before withdrawing a request.

6. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to withdraw.

A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the price assignment request.

7. Click **OK**.

You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Modify Price Assignment</a> on page 522
<b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Resolve Price Assignment</a> on page 533

## Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Price List

### Procedure

To withdraw a price assignment for a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. Do the following:


If you want to...	Then...
Withdraw a price assignment request when it is in the Pending Approval status	From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Approval Workflow Management</b> and then click <b>Modify Price Assignment</b> . The <b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen appears.
Withdraw a price assignment request when it has been rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy	From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Approval Workflow Management</b> and then click <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> . The <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen appears.

3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignment requests you want to withdraw.

The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

**Note:** The system provides you with a facility to view the log of a price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** and **Resolve Price Assignment** screens before withdrawing a request.

6. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to withdraw.

A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the price assignment request.

7. Click **OK**.

You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Modify Price Assignment</a> on page 522
<b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Resolve Price Assignment</a> on page 533

## Viewing the Log of an Approval Transaction

### Procedure

To view the log of an approval transaction:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.



- From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**.


The **Modify Price Assignment** screen appears.

- In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.

A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

- Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignment requests you want to modify.

The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

- Click on **Log** link in the **View** column.

The **Approval Transaction Log** screen appears.

- View the log of an approval transaction, as required.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Modify Price Assignment</a> on page 522
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 522
<b>Approval Transaction Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Transaction Log</a> on page 497

## Resolve Price Assignment

If an approver at any level in the hierarchy rejects a price assignment request, a notification is sent to the submitter who has made the changes. The submitter then makes the required corrections based on the approver's comments, and resubmits the changes for approval. In this case, the approval process starts once again from the beginning, and not from the level at which the request was rejected.

The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen allows you to resolve or withdraw a price assignment request. It consists of the following zones:

- [Search](#) on page 533
- [List of Price Assignments](#) on page 537

### Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for the price assignment requests rejected by approvers and pending for you to resolve. It contains the following two sections:

- Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search price assignments using various details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person</li> <li>• Account</li> <li>• Price List</li> <li>• Submitter ID</li> <li>• Approver Transaction ID</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Person</b> option is selected.	
Division	Used to search price assignments which belong to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Person Identifier Type	Used to specify the identifier type based on which you want to search for price assignment requests of a person.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Identifier	Used to specify the ID linked to the person.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account ID	Used to search for price assignment requests created for an account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type of the account whose price assignment requests you want to search.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price List Description	Used to search for price assignment requests created for a price list.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price List</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Submitter ID	Used to search for price assignment requests that are created by a particular submitter.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Submitter ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Approval Transaction ID	Used to search the price assignment request using the approval transaction ID.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.  This field appears only when you select the <b>Approval Transaction ID</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a price assignments.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Person Identifier	Displays the ID linked to the person.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a person.
Person Name	Displays the name of the person.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a person.
Division	Displays the division to which the account, person, or price list belongs.
Account Information	Displays information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of an account.  It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.

Column Name	Column Description
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of an account.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of an account.
Price List ID	Displays the price list ID.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a price list.
Price List Description	Displays the description of the price list.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a price list.
Owner ID	Displays the ID of the person for whose account the approval workflow request is created.
Approval Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID.
	<b>Note:</b> The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.
Person Identifier Type	Displays the person identifier type.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you are searching for price assignment requests of a person.

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account, person, or price list, the **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to resolve a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Resolving a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 538
How to resolve a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Resolving a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 539
How to resolve a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Resolving a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 540
How to withdraw a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 540
How to withdraw a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 541
How to withdraw a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 542

## List of Price Assignments

The **List of Price Assignments** zone lists price assignment requests specific to an account, a person, or a price list. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Approval Transaction ID	Displays the approval transaction ID.
	<b>Note:</b> The approval transaction ID is generated automatically when the price assignment request is created.
Submitter Name	Indicates the submitter who has created the price assignment request.
Action	Indicates the type of action, such as <b>Add</b> , <b>Update (UPD)</b> , or <b>Delete (DEL)</b> performed by the submitter during price assignment.
Submitted On	Displays the date and time when the price assignment request was created by the submitter.
To Do Type	Displays the type of To Do (notification) received for the price assignment request.
Price Item	Displays the price item code.
Description	Displays the description of the product.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the product pricing is defined.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the product pricing is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the product pricing is effective.
Approver Name	Indicates the approver who has rejected the price assignment request.
Rejected On	Displays the date and time when the price assignment request was rejected by an approver.
Reject Reason	Indicates the reason why the price assignment request was rejected.
Rejection Comments	Displays the additional details entered by an approver on rejecting the price assignment request.
Approval Transaction Information	Displays information about the approval transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> This information string is generated using the <b>C1-APPTXNINF</b> algorithm.
Resolve	On clicking the <b>Resolve</b> link, you can modify the details of the price assignment request, and resubmit it for approval. On resubmitting, the approval workflow process starts once again from the first level in the hierarchy.
Withdraw	On clicking the <b>Withdraw</b> link, you can withdraw the price assignment request. Once you withdraw the request, no further action will be taken on the request.
View	On clicking the <b>Log</b> link, you can view the log of the price assignment request from the <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen before resolving or withdrawing a request.

By default, the **List of Price Assignments** zone does not appear in the **Resolve Price Assignment** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account, person, or price list in the **Search** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to resolve a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Resolving a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 538
How to resolve a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Resolving a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 539
How to resolve a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Resolving a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 540
How to withdraw a price assignment for an account	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 540
How to withdraw a price assignment for a person	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 541
How to withdraw a price assignment for a price list	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 542


## Resolving a Price Assignment for an Account

### Procedure

To resolve a price assignment for an account:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve Price Assignment**.  
The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.
3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the account belongs, account ID, or account identifier.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.  
A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account whose price assignment requests you want to resolve.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
6. Click the **Resolve** link in the **Resolve** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to resolve.  
The **Modify/Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears where you can modify the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics.

**Note:** Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to resolve the request and resubmit it for approval.

7. Make the required changes.
8. Click **Save**.  
The price assignment is updated and resubmitted for approval.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Resolve Price Assignment</a> on page 533
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 533
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 537


## Resolving a Price Assignment for a Person

### Procedure

To resolve a price assignment for a person:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve Price Assignment**.  
The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.
3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the person belongs or the person identification type and value.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.  
A list of persons that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the person whose price assignment requests you want to resolve.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
6. Click the **Resolve** link in the **Resolve** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to resolve.  
A screen appears where you can modify the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics.

**Note:** Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to resolve the request, and resubmit it for approval.

7. Make the required changes.
8. Click **Save**.  
The price assignment is updated and resubmitted for approval.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Resolve Price Assignment</a> on page 533
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 533
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 537


Resolving a Price Assignment for a Price List

Procedure

To resolve a price assignment for a price list:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Resolve Price Assignment**.  
The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.
- In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.  
A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.
- Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignment requests you want to resolve.  
The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.
- Click the **Resolve** link in the **Resolve** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to resolve.  
The **Modify/Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears where you can modify the pricing details, tiering ranges, and price assignment characteristics.

**Note:** Only those users who have access to the application services for each business object within the approval workflow group will be able to resolve the request, and resubmit it for approval.

- Make the required changes.
- Click **Save**.  
The price assignment is updated and resubmitted for approval.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Resolve Price Assignment</a> on page 533
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 533
<b>List of Price Assignments</b> zone	<a href="#">List of Price Assignments</a> on page 537

Withdrawing a Price Assignment for an Account

Procedure

To withdraw a price assignment for an account:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.



A list appears.

2. Do the following:


If you want to...	Then...
Withdraw a price assignment request when it is in the Pending Approval status	From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Approval Workflow Management</b> and then click <b>Modify Price Assignment</b> . The <b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen appears.
Withdraw a price assignment request when it has been rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy	From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Approval Workflow Management</b> and then click <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> . The <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen appears.

3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the account belongs, account ID, or account identifier.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the account whose price assignment requests you want to withdraw.

The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

**Note:** The system provides you with a facility to view the log of a price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** and **Resolve Price Assignment** screens before withdrawing a request.

6. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to withdraw.

A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the price assignment request.

7. Click **OK**.

You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Modify Price Assignment</a> on page 522
<b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Resolve Price Assignment</a> on page 533

## **Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Person**

### **Procedure**

To withdraw a price assignment for a person:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. Select the **Main** menu and do the following:


If you want to...	Then...
Withdraw a price assignment request when it is in the Pending Approval status	From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Approval Workflow Management</b> and then click <b>Modify Price Assignment</b> . The <b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen appears.
Withdraw a price assignment request when it has been rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy	From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Approval Workflow Management</b> and then click <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> . The <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen appears.

3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the division to which the person belongs or the person identification type and value.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of persons that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the person whose price assignment requests you want to withdraw.

The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

**Note:** The system provides you with a facility to view the log of a price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** and **Resolve Price Assignment** screens before withdrawing a request.

6. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to withdraw.

A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the price assignment request.

7. Click **OK**.

You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Modify Price Assignment</a> on page 522
<b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Resolve Price Assignment</a> on page 533

## **Withdrawing a Price Assignment for a Price List**

### **Procedure**

To withdraw a price assignment for a price list:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. Do the following:


If you want to...	Then...
Withdraw a price assignment request when it is in the Pending Approval status	From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Approval Workflow Management</b> and then click <b>Modify Price Assignment</b> . The <b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen appears.
Withdraw a price assignment request when it has been rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy	From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Approval Workflow Management</b> and then click <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> . The <b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen appears.

3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignment requests you want to withdraw.

The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

**Note:** The system provides you with a facility to view the log of a price assignment request from the **Modify Price Assignment** and **Resolve Price Assignment** screens before withdrawing a request.

6. Click the **Withdraw** link in the **Withdraw** column corresponding to the price assignment request that you want to withdraw.

A message box appears confirming whether you want to delete the price assignment request.

7. Click **OK**.

You will no longer be able to view this request in your workflow.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Modify Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Modify Price Assignment</a> on page 522
<b>Resolve Price Assignment</b> screen	<a href="#">Resolve Price Assignment</a> on page 533

## **Viewing the Log of an Approval Transaction**

### **Procedure**

To view the log of an approval transaction:


1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Approval Workflow Management** and then click **Modify Price Assignment**.  
The **Resolve Price Assignment** screen appears.

3. In the **Search** zone, enter the search criteria, such as the description of the price list.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of price lists that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the price list whose price assignment requests you want to modify.

The **List of Price Assignments** zone appears.

6. Click on **Log** link in the **View** column.

The **Approval Transaction Log** screen appears.

7. You can view the log of an approval transaction, as required.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Transaction</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Transaction</a> on page 493
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 533
<b>Approval Transaction Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Transaction Log</a> on page 497

## Approval Workflow Group (Used for Searching)

The **Approval Workflow Group** screen allows you to search for approval workflow group using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Approval Workflow Group \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 553

This screen consists of the following zone:

- [Search Approval Workflow Group](#) on page 544

For more information on...	See...
How to search an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 545
How to view the details of approval workflow group	<a href="#">Viewing the Approval Workflow Group Details</a> on page 546

## Search Approval Workflow Group

The **Search Approval Workflow Group** zone allows you to search for an approval workflow group using various search criteria. It contains the following sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Used to search a particular approval workflow group.	No
Description	Used to search approval workflow groups with a particular description.	No

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the approval workflow group.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow group.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Approval Workflow Group</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective approval workflow group.

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an Approval Workflow Group.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 545
How to view the details of an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Viewing the Approval Workflow Group Details</a> on page 546

## **Searching for an Approval Workflow Group**

### **Procedure**

To search for an approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.  
The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Approval Workflow Group** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of approval workflow groups that meet the search criteria appear in the **Search Results** section.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Search Approval Workflow Group screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group (Used for Searching)</a> on page 544
Search Approval Workflow Group zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 544

## Viewing the Approval Workflow Group Details

### Procedure

To view the details of an approval workflow group:

1. Search for the approval workflow group in the **Approval Workflow Group** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow group whose details you want to view.

The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears. It consists of the **Main** tab with the following zone:

- [Approval Workflow Group](#) on page 554

3. View the details of the approval workflow group in the **Approval Workflow Group** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 545
Approval Workflow Group screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group (Used for Searching)</a> on page 544
Approval Workflow Group zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 544

## Defining an Approval Workflow Group

### Prerequisites

To define an approval workflow group, you should have:

- Input and Display UI maps created in the application in case you want to use custom UI maps.
- Dependency, Approval, and Approval Post Processing algorithms defined in the application in case you want to use any of them.

**Note:** Before you define an approval workflow group for the User BO, you need to attach the **C1-APPTXNBAS** algorithm on the **Audit** algorithm spot of the business object belonging to the USER-SC MO, and not the USER MO.

### Procedure




To define an approval workflow group:



1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, Select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.  
The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of **Approval Workflow Group** screen.

The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears. It contains the following sections:



- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the approval workflow group.
- **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** - Used to add business objects and define group BO Relation for the approval workflow group.




The **Main** section contains the following:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Transaction Type	Used to indicate the transaction type to which the approval workflow group belongs.	Yes
Approval Workflow Group	Used to specify the approval workflow group.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the approval workflow group with a particular description.	Yes
Display UI Map	Used to specify the UI map that you want to use for viewing data of the business objects within the approval workflow group.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for a UI map, code, and an algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b> icon (  ) corresponding to the Display UI Map field.	
	<b>Note:</b> If you clear the <b>Display UI Map</b> field, you need to either manually specify the UI map or automatically regenerate the UI map by clicking the <b>Regenerate UI Maps</b> icon corresponding to the group in the <b>Approval Workflow Settings</b> screen.	
Input UI Map	Used to specify the UI map that you want to use for modifying data of the business objects within the approval workflow group.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for a UI map, code, and an algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b> icon (  ) corresponding to the Input UI Map field.	
	<b>Note:</b> If you clear the <b>Input UI Map</b> field, you need to either manually specify the UI map or automatically regenerate the UI map by clicking the <b>Regenerate UI Maps</b> icon corresponding to the group in the <b>Approval Workflow Settings</b> screen.	
Dependency Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered before creating the approval workflow group.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for a Input UI map, code, and an algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b> icon (  ) corresponding to the Dependency Algorithm field.	
	<b>Note:</b> This algorithm can be used to check all prerequisites before creating the approval workflow group.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Algorithm	<p>Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered after the approval workflow group is approved by the approver at the last level in the hierarchy. The following approval algorithms are shipped with ORMB:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>C1-APPPROD</b> - This approval algorithm is used for the C1PRODUCT group, which is shipped with ORMB.</li> <li>• <b>C1-APPPL</b> - This approval algorithm is used for the C1PRICELST group, which is shipped with ORMB.</li> <li>• <b>C1-APPPASG</b> - This approval algorithm is used for the C1PRICEASG group, which is shipped with ORMB.</li> <li>• <b>C1-APPALG</b> - This is a standard approval algorithm that you can use for approval workflow groups where custom logic is not required.</li> </ul> <p>You can also create your own approval algorithms for custom UIs.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can search for a Input UI map, code, and an algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b> icon () corresponding to the Approval Algorithm field.</p>	No
Approval Post Processing Algorithm	<p>Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered after the changes (which are approved by all approvers' in the hierarchy) are committed to the database.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can search for a Input UI map, code, and an algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b> icon () corresponding to the Approval Post Processing Algorithm field.</p>	No



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Creation Algorithm	<p>Used to specify the algorithm that will create approval workflow group. The following transaction creation algorithms are shipped with ORMB:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>C1-APPASGCR</b> - Used to create approval workflow group for price assignment.</li> <li>• <b>C1-AXPROD</b> - Used to create approval workflow group for price item.</li> <li>• <b>C1-AXUSR</b> - Used to create approval workflow group for user.</li> <li>• <b>C1-IGCREATE</b> - Used to create approval workflow group for invoicing group.</li> <li>• <b>C1-AXCREATE</b> - This is a standard transaction creation algorithm that you can use to create approval workflow group for most of the base objects.</li> </ul> <p>You can also create your own transaction creation algorithms for custom UIs.</p> <p>In case of the base UIs, this algorithm is only used while modifying or resolving a group. The initial approval transaction creation for base UIs takes place through the Audit algorithm attached on the business object.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can search for a Input UI map, code, and an algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b> icon  corresponding to the Transaction Creation Algorithm field.</p>	Yes
Data Retrieval Algorithm	<p>Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered to retrieve the original data of the business objects within the approval workflow group. This will help an approver to compare the original and new data in case where the submitter action is Update (UPD). The following data retrieval algorithms are shipped with ORMB:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>C1-APPIGDR</b> - Used to retrieve data for invoicing group.</li> <li>• <b>C1-AXPRICEOV</b> - Used to retrieve data for price assignment.</li> <li>• <b>C1_APPDATA</b> - This is a standard data retrieval algorithm that you can use to retrieve data for most of the base objects.</li> </ul> <p>You can also create your own data retrieval algorithms for custom UIs.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can search for a Input UI map, code, and an algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b> icon  corresponding to the Data Retrieval Algorithm field.</p>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Information Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm information.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for a Input UI map, code, and an algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b> icon (  ) corresponding to the Approval Post Processing Algorithm field.	
Compare Map	Used to specify the customized Display UI map that you want to use for the approval workflow group. It overrides the UI map specified in the <b>Display UI Map</b> field.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for a Input UI map, code, and an algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b> icon (  ) corresponding to the Approval Post Processing Algorithm field.	
Input Script	Used to specify the customized Input UI map that you want to use for the approval workflow group. It overrides the UI map specified in the <b>Input UI Map</b> field.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for a Input UI map, code, and an algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b> icon (  ) corresponding to the Approval Post Processing Algorithm field.	

- Enter the required details.
- Add business objects and group BO relation with the approval workflow group, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The approval workflow group is defined.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Workflow Group</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 553
<b>Approval Workflow Group</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 554
How to add business objects and group BO relation	<a href="#">Adding a Business Object</a>

## Adding a Business Object

### Prerequisites

To add a business object in the approval workflow group, you should have:

- Business object and approval workflow group created in the application.

### Procedure

To add a business object in the approval workflow group:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, Select **A**, and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.

The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.

3. Click the **Add** button in the page-title area of the **Approval Workflow Group** screen.


The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears. It contains following sections:


- **Main** - Used to specify basic details of the approval workflow group.
- **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** - Used to specify the fields that allow to define business and parent objects and link them with the approval workflow group.

The **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** section contains following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Business Object	Used to specify the Business Object Code that you want to include in the Approval Workflow Group.	Yes
Reference ID 1	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to display in the approval transaction information string.	Yes
Reference ID 2	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to display in the approval transaction information string.	Yes
Reference ID 3	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to display in the approval transaction information string.	Yes
Reference ID 4	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to display in the approval transaction information string.	Yes
Reference Foreign Key 1	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 2	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 3	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 4	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 5	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 6	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
List	Used to indicate whether the group contains one or multiple instance of the business object. For example, if you want to create a group that contains multiple account objects, you need to set this flag for the Account BO to True. If you want to create a group that contains single instance of the business object, you must set this flag for the business object to False.	Yes
Parent Business Object	Used to specify the parent business object. This should be one of the business objects within the group.	No
From Key	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the parent business object.	No
To Key	Used to specify the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the current business object.	No

**Note:** You can search for a business object and parent business object, by clicking the **Search**  icon placed corresponding to the **Business Object** field.

- If you want to define more than one business and parent business object for the approval workflow group, click the **Add**  icon placed corresponding to the field.
- Enter the required details in **Main** and **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** sections.
- Click **Save**

The business object is added in the approval workflow group.

**Note:** When you add business objects in an approval workflow group, you need to regenerate the Input and Display UI maps by clicking the **Regenerate UI Maps**  icon corresponding to the group in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen. You must do this only when you are using automatically generated UI maps, and not otherwise.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Workflow Group</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 553
<b>Approval Workflow Group</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 554

## Defining a Group BO Relation

### Prerequisites

To define a relationship between business object in the approval workflow group, you should have:

- Business objects added in the approval workflow group.

### Procedure

To define a relationship between business objects in the approval workflow group:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, Select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.  
The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.

3. Search for an approval workflow group in the **Approval Workflow Group** screen.
4. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow group.
5. The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears. It contains following sections:
  - **Main** - Used to specify basic details of the approval workflow group.
  - **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** - Used to specify the fields that allow to define business and parent objects, and link them with the approval workflow group.
6. Define and edit the approval workflow group details from the **Main** section, if required.
7. If you only want to define a business object, enter the required details in the **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** section.
8. If you want to define a group BO relation with the business object, enter the required details in the following fields.
  - a) **Parent Business Object**
  - b) **From Key**
  - c) **To Key**

**Note:** If you want to define more than one business or parent object, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2. However, if you want to remove a business or parent object, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the business or parent object field.

9. Click **Save**.

The business object is defined, and its relationship with the parent object is also defined in the approval workflow group.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Defining an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 546
How to define an approval workflow business object	<a href="#">Adding a Business Object</a>
How to define an approval workflow group BO object	<a href="#">Defining a Group BO Relation</a> on page 552

## **Approval Workflow Group (Used for Viewing)**

Once you define an approval workflow group, the **Approval Workflow Group** screen allows you to:

- Edit the details of an approval workflow group
- Edit the details of business objects and group business object relation
- Delete an approval workflow group
- Delete a business object and a group business object relation
- View the details of an approval workflow group

This screen consists of the following zone:

- [Approval Workflow Group](#) on page 554

## Approval Workflow Group

The **Approval Workflow Group** zone displays the details of the approval workflow group. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays basic information about the approval workflow group. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the name of the approval workflow group.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow group.
Display UI Map	Indicates the UI map that will be used for viewing data of the business objects within the approval workflow group.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>UI Map</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective UI Map.
Input UI Map	Indicates the UI map that will be used for modifying data of the business objects within the approval workflow group.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>UI Map</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective UI Map.
Dependency Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered before creating the approval workflow request.  <b>Note:</b> This algorithm can be used to check all prerequisites before creating the approval workflow request.
Approval Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered after the approval workflow request is approved by the approver at the last level in the hierarchy.
Approval Post Processing Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered after the changes (which are approved by all approvers in the hierarchy) are committed to the database.
Transaction Creation Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will create approval workflow requests.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Algorithm</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective algorithm.
Data Retrieval Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered to retrieve the original data of the business objects within the approval workflow group. This will help an approver to compare the original and new data in case where the submitter action is Update (UPD).  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Algorithm</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective algorithm.
Information Algorithm	Indicates the Approval Transaction information from the Approval Transactions that are created for a particular entity, based on the inputs of the XPath paths provided in the Reference IDs.
Compare Map	Indicates the customized Display UI map that you want to use for the approval workflow group. It overrides the UI map specified in the <b>Display UI Map</b> field.
Input Script	Indicates the customized Input UI map that you want to use for the approval workflow group. It overrides the UI map specified in the <b>Input UI Map</b> field.

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to define, edit the approval workflow group. It is also used to delete the business objects and group BO relation.
Delete	Used to delete an approval workflow group.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the approval workflow group is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

- **Business Objects And Group BO Relation** - The Business Objects And Group BO Relation contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the Business Object that you want to include in the Approval Workflow Group.
Reference ID 1	Indicates the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to display in the approval transaction information string.
Reference ID 2	Indicates the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to display in the approval transaction information string.
Reference ID 3	Indicates the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to display in the approval transaction information string.
Reference ID 4	Indicates the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to display in the approval transaction information string.
Reference Foreign Key 1	Indicates the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.
Reference Foreign Key 2	Indicates the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.
Reference Foreign Key 3	Indicates the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.
Reference Foreign Key 4	Indicates the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.
Reference Foreign Key 5	Indicates the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.
Reference Foreign Key 6	Indicates the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.

Field Name	Field Description
List	Indicates whether the group contains one or multiple instance of the business object. For example, if you want to create a group that contains multiple account objects, you need to set this flag for the Account BO to True. If you want to create a group that contains single instance of the business object, you must set this flag for the business object to False.
Parent Business Object	Indicates the parent business object. This should be one of the business objects within the group.
From Key	Indicates the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the parent business object.
To Key	Indicates the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the current business object.

## Editing an Approval Workflow Group

### Procedure

To edit an approval workflow group:

1. Search for the approval workflow group in the **Approval Workflow Group**.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow group whose details you want to edit.

The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Approval workflow Group** zone.

The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.

4. Modify the details of the approval workflow group, if required.
5. Define, edit, or remove business objects and group BO relation from the approval workflow group, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the approval workflow group are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 545
How to add a business object	<a href="#">Adding a Business Object</a> on page 550
How to define a Group BO Relation	<a href="#">Defining a Group BO Relation</a> on page 552

## Deleting an Approval Workflow Group

### Procedure

To delete an approval workflow group:

1. Search for the approval workflow group in the **Search Approval Workflow Group** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow group that you want to delete.
3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Approval Workflow Group** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the approval workflow group.

4. Click **OK**.



The approval workflow group is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 545

## Editing a Business Object

### Procedure

To edit a business object in the approval workflow group:

1. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group**.  
The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.
2. Search for an approval workflow group in the **Search Approval Workflow Group** zone.
3. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow group whose details you want to edit.
4. The **Approval Workflow Group** zone appears. Click the **Edit** button from **Record Action** sections.


The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears. It contains the following sections:


- **Main** - Used to specify the basic details of the approval workflow group.
- **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** - Used to specify the fields that allow to define business objects and link them with the approval workflow group

The **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** section contains following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Business Object	Displays the Business Object Code that is included in the Approval Workflow Group.	Yes
Reference ID 1	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow groups.	No
Reference ID 2	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow groups.	No
Reference ID 3	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow groups.	No
Reference ID 4	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use as criteria for searching approval workflow groups.	No
Reference Foreign Key 1	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 2	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reference Foreign Key 3	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 4	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 5	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 6	Displays the XPATH key of the field in the business object that you want to use for validating whether duplicate approval transaction exists in the system.	No
List	Indicates whether the group contains one or multiple instance of the business object. For example, if you want to create a group that contains multiple account objects, you need to set this flag for the Account BO to True. If you want to create a group that contains single instance of the business object, you must set this flag for the business object to False.	Yes
Parent Business Object	Used to specify the parent business object. This should be one of the business objects within the group.	No
From Key	Display the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the parent business object.	No
To Key	Display the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the current business object.	No

**Note:** You can search for a business object or parent business object by clicking the **Search**  icon placed corresponding to the **Business Object** and **Parent Business Object** field.

- If you want to define more than one business object or parent object for the approval workflow group, click the **Add**  icon placed corresponding to the field.
- Enter the required details in **Main** and **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** sections.
- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the business object in approval workflow group are saved.

**Note:** When you change business objects in an approval workflow group, you need to regenerate the Input and Display UI maps by clicking the **Regenerate UI Maps**  icon corresponding to the group in the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen. You must do this only when you are using automatically generated UI maps, and not otherwise.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Workflow Group</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group (Used for Searching)</a> on page 544
<b>Approval Workflow Group</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 544
How to delete a Business Object	<a href="#">Deleting a Business Object</a> on page 559

## Deleting a Business Object

### Procedure

To delete a business object in the approval workflow group:

1. Search for an approval workflow group in the **Approval Workflow Group** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow group.

The **Approval Workflow Group** zone appears.

3. In the View section of **Approval Workflow Group**, click the **Edit** button.

The **Approval Workflow Group** window appears.

4. In the **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the business object that you want to delete.
5. Click **Save**.

The business object is deleted from the approval workflow group.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Workflow Group</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group (Used for Searching)</a> on page 544
<b>Approval Workflow Group</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 544

## Editing a Group BO Relation

### Procedure

To edit the business object's relationship details in the approval workflow group:

1. If required, filter the approval workflow group in the **Approval Workflow Group** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow group.



The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears. It contains following two sections:

- **Main** - Displays the basic details of the approval workflow group.
- **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** - Displays the fields that allow to define or edit business objects, and link them with the approval workflow group.

3. If required, define and edit the approval workflow group details from the **Main** section.
4. The **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** section contains following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Business Object	Used to specify the business object that you want to add in the approval workflow group.	Yes
Reference ID 1	Used to indicate the XPATH key of the field that you want to concatenate in the approval transaction information string.	No
Reference ID 2	Used to indicate the XPATH key of the field that you want to concatenate in the approval transaction information string.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reference ID 3	Used to indicate the XPATH key of the field that you want to concatenate in the approval transaction information string.	No
Reference ID 4	Used to indicate the XPATH key of the field that you want to concatenate in the approval transaction information string.	No
Reference Foreign Key 1	Used to indicate the XPATH key of the field that you want to use while validating whether a duplicate approval transaction does not exist in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 2	Used to indicate the XPATH key of the field that you want to use while validating whether a duplicate approval transaction does not exist in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 3	Used to indicate the XPATH key of the field that you want to use while validating whether a duplicate approval transaction does not exist in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 4	Used to indicate the XPATH key of the field that you want to use while validating whether a duplicate approval transaction does not exist in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 5	Used to indicate the XPATH key of the field that you want to use while validating whether a duplicate approval transaction does not exist in the system.	No
Reference Foreign Key 6	Used to indicate the XPATH key of the field that you want to use while validating whether a duplicate approval transaction does not exist in the system.	No
List	Indicates whether the group contains one or multiple instance of the business object. For example, if you want to create a group that contains multiple account objects, you need to set this flag for the Account BO to True. If you want to create a group that contains single instance of the business object, you must set this flag for the business object to False.	Yes
Parent Business Object	Displays the parent business object. This should be one of the business objects within the group.	No
From Key	Displays the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the parent business object.	No
To Key	Displays the XPATH key of the field or list of fields in the current business object.	No

**Note:** You can search for a parent business object by clicking the **Search** () icon placed corresponding to the field. You can also define a new parent business object by clicking the **Add** () icon placed corresponding to the field.

5. Modify the required details in **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** section.
6. Click **Save**.


The changes made to business object's relationship are saved in the approval workflow group.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Search Approval Workflow Group</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group (Used for Searching)</a> on page 544
<b>Search Approval Workflow Group</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 544
How to edit a Business Object	<a href="#">Editing a Business Object</a> on page 557
How to edit a Group BO Relation	<a href="#">Editing a Group BO Relation</a> on page 559

**Deleting a Group BO Relation****Procedure**

To delete the business object's relationship details in the approval workflow group:

1. If required, filter the approval workflow group in the **Approval Workflow Group** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow group.
3. The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.
4. Click the **Edit** button in the **Record Actions** zone.  
The **Approval Workflow Group** screen appears.
5. In the **Business Objects and Group BO Relation** section, click the **Delete** () icon appearing next to the Business Object that you want to delete.
6. Click **Save**

The business object's relationship details are deleted from the approval workflow group.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Workflow Group</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group (Used for Searching)</a> on page 544
<b>Approval Workflow Group</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 544
How to delete a Business Object	<a href="#">Deleting a Business Object</a> on page 559
How to delete a Group BO Relation	<a href="#">Deleting a Group BO Relation</a> on page 561

**Approval Workflow Chain (Used for Searching)**

The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen allows you to search for approval workflow chain using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Approval Workflow Chain \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 565

This screen consists of the following zone:

- [Search Approval Workflow Chain](#) on page 561

**Search Approval Workflow Chain**

The **Search Approval Workflow Chain** zone allows you to search for an approval workflow chain using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Chain	Used to search a particular approval workflow chain.	No
Description	Used to search approval workflow chains with a particular description.	No

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Approval Workflow Chain	Displays the approval workflow chain.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow chain.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Approval Workflow Chain</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective approval workflow chain.

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an approval workflow chain.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow chain	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Chain</a> on page 562
How to view the details of an approval workflow chain	<a href="#">Viewing the Approval Workflow Chain Details</a> on page 563

## Searching for an Approval Workflow Chain

### Procedure

To search the approval workflow chain:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Chain**.

The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears.

3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Approval Workflow Chain** zone.

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of approval workflow chains that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Search Approval Workflow Chain zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Chain</a> on page 561

## Viewing the Approval Workflow Chain Details

### Procedure

To view the details of an approval workflow chain:

1. Search for the approval workflow chain in the **Approval Workflow Chain** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow chain whose details you want to view.

The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

- [Approval Workflow Chain](#) on page 565

3. View the details of the approval workflow chain in the **Approval Workflow Chain** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search an approval workflow chain	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Chain</a> on page 562

## Defining an Approval Workflow Chain

### Prerequisites

To define an approval workflow chain, you should have:

- The To Do role and To Do type defined in the application.
- Action algorithms defined in the application, in case you want to use any of them.

### Procedure

To define an approval workflow chain:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Chain**.  
The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Approval Workflow Chain** screen.  
The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears. It contains the following sections:
  - **Main** - Used to specify basic details of the approval workflow chain.
  - **Approval Levels** - Used to specify a level in the approval workflow chain.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Chain	Used to specify the approval workflow chain	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the approval workflow chain	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
To Do Role To Resolve	Used to specify the To Do Role to indicate the users who will receive a notification when the approval transactions are rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy.	Yes

- Enter the required details.
- Define approval levels for the approval workflow chain, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The approval workflow chain is defined.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Chain screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Chain (Used for Searching)</a> on page 561
Approval Workflow Chain zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Chain</a> on page 565
How to define Approval Levels for an approval workflow chain	<a href="#">Defining Approval Levels for an Approval Workflow Chain</a> on page 564

## Defining Approval Levels for an Approval Workflow Chain

### Prerequisites

To define approval levels in the approval workflow chain, you should have:



- The To Do Role and To Do Type defined in the application.
- Action algorithms defined in the application, in case you want to use any of them.

### Procedure


To define an approval levels for an approval workflow chain:



- Ensure that the **Approval Levels** section is expanded when you are defining or editing an approval workflow chain.

The **Approval Levels** section contains the following fields

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Action Algorithm	Used to specify the additional action that you want the system to perform apart from generating a notification when the approver approves or rejects the request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for an action algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Action Algorithm</b> field.	
Approver To Do Role	Used to specify the To Do role to indicate the users who will either approve or reject the request at this level in the hierarchy.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for an approver to do role by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Approver To Do Role</b> field.	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approver To Do Type	Used to specify the type of notification that you want to generate when the approver approves or rejects the request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for an approver to do type by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Approver To Do Type</b> field.	

- Enter the required details in the **Approval Levels** section.
- If you want to define more than one approval level for the approval workflow chain, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2. However, if you want to remove a approval level from the approval workflow chain, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the approval level.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow chain	<a href="#">Defining an Approval Workflow Chain</a> on page 563
How to edit an approval workflow chain	<a href="#">Editing an Approval Workflow Chain</a> on page 566

## Approval Workflow Chain (Used for Viewing)

Once you define an approval workflow chain, the **Approval Workflow Chain** screen allows you to:

- View the details of an approval workflow chain
- Edit an approval workflow chain
- Delete an approval workflow chain

This screen contains the following zone:

- [Approval Workflow Chain](#) on page 565

## Approval Workflow Chain

The **Approval Workflow Chain** zone displays the details of the approval workflow chain. It contains the following sections:

- Main** - Displays basic information about the approval workflow chain. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Approval Workflow Chain	Displays the approval workflow chain and levels.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow chain and levels.
To Do Role To Resolve	Displays the description of To Do Role role type.

- Approval Levels** - Displays the levels defined in the approval workflow chain.

Field Name	Field Description
Action Algorithm	Indicates the additional action that the system will perform apart from generating a notification when the approver approves or rejects the request.

Field Name	Field Description
Level	Indicates the level in the hierarchy.
Approver To Do Role	Indicates that the users with the specified To Do role will either approve or reject the request at this level in the hierarchy.
Approval To Do Type	Indicates the type of notification that will be generated when the approver approves or rejects the request.

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit and delete the approval workflow chain and approval levels.
Delete	Used to delete the approval workflow chain.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the approval workflow chain is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

## Editing an Approval Workflow Chain

### Procedure

To edit an approval workflow chain:

1. Search for an approval workflow chain in the **Search Approval Workflow Chain** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow chain whose details you want to edit.

The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Approval Workflow Chain**.

The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears.

- **Main** - Used to specify the basic details of the approval workflow chain. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Chain	Displays the approval workflow chain.	Yes
Description	Displays the description for the approval workflow chain.	Yes
To Do Role To Resolve	Displays the To Do role to indicate the users who will be sent a notification when the approval workflow request is rejected by an approver at any level in the hierarchy.	Yes

- **Approval Levels** - Used to specify a level in the approval workflow chain. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Action Algorithm	Displays the additional action that you want the system to perform apart from generating a notification when the approver approves or rejects the request.	Yes
Approver To Do Role	Displays the To Do role to indicate the users who will either approve or reject the request at this level in the hierarchy.	Yes
Approval To Do Type	Displays the type of notification that you want to generate when the approver approves or rejects the request.	Yes

4. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
5. Edit, or remove approval levels from the approval workflow chain, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the approval workflow chain screen are saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Workflow Chain</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Chain (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 565
<b>Approval Workflow Chain</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Chain</a> on page 565
How to define approval levels for an approval workflow chain	<a href="#">Defining an Approval Workflow Chain</a> on page 563

## **Deleting an Approval Workflow Chain**

### **Procedure**

To delete an approval workflow chain:

1. Search for the approval workflow chain in the **Search Approval Workflow Chain** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow chain that you want to delete.

The **Approval Workflow Chain** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Approval Workflow Chain** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the approval workflow chain.

4. Click **OK**.

The approval workflow chain is deleted.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow chain	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Chain</a> on page 562
<b>Approval Workflow Chain</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Chain (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 565
<b>Approval Workflow Chain</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Chain</a> on page 565

## Approval Workflow Criterion Type (Used for Searching)

The **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen allows you to search for an approval workflow criterion type using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Approval Workflow Criterion Type \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 571

This screen consists of the following zone:

- [Search Approval Workflow Criterion Type](#) on page 568

### Search Approval Workflow Criterion Type

The **Search Approval Workflow Criterion Type** zone allows you to search for an approval workflow criterion type using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Criterion Type	Used to search a particular approval workflow criterion type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the approval workflow criteria type.	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an approval workflow criterion type.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Approval Workflow Criterion Type	Displays the approval workflow criterion type.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow criterion type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow criterion type	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Criterion Type</a> on page 568
How to view the details of an approval workflow criterion type	<a href="#">Viewing the Approval Workflow Criterion Type Details</a> on page 569

### Searching for an Approval Workflow Criterion Type

#### Procedure

To search the approval workflow criterion type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Criterion Type**.  
The **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Approval Workflow Criterion Type** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

#### 4. Click **Search**

A list of approval workflow criterion types that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Criterion Type screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Criterion Type (Used for Searching)</a> on page 568
Approval Workflow Criterion Type zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Criterion Type</a> on page 568

## Viewing the Approval Workflow Criterion Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of an approval workflow criterion type:

1. If required, filter the approval workflow criterion type details in the **Search Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow criterion type whose details you want to view.

The **Approval Workflow Criterion** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

- [Approval Workflow Criterion Type](#) on page 571

3. View the details of the approval workflow criterion type in the **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search the approval workflow criterion type	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Criterion Type</a> on page 568
Approval Workflow Criterion Type screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Criterion Type (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 571
Approval Workflow Criterion Type zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Criterion Type</a> on page 571

## Defining an Approval Workflow Criterion Type

### Prerequisites

To define an approval workflow criterion type, you should have:

- Algorithm, Business object, and Field object defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define an approval workflow criterion type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

- From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Criterion Type**.



The **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen appears.


- Click the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen.

The **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen appears. It contains the following section:

- Main** - Used to specify basic details about the approval workflow criterion type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Criterion Type	Used to specify the approval workflow criterion type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the approval workflow criterion type.	Yes
Derived From	Used to indicate the option which triggers the approval workflow. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Algorithm</li> <li>Business Object</li> </ul>	Yes
Algorithm	Used to indicate the algorithm for which you want to define the approval workflow criterion type.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the Search icon, the Algorithm Search window appears.  This field appears only when you select the Algorithm option from the Derived From list.	Yes
Business Object	Used to indicate the business object for which you want to define the approval workflow criterion type.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the Search icon, the Business Object Search window appears.  This field appears only when you select the Business Object option from the Derived From list.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Field	Used to indicate the field that you want to use to define the criteria for associating approval workflow requests with the approval workflow chains.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to this field. On clicking the Search icon, the Field Search window appears.</p> <p>This field appears only when you select the Business Object option from the Derived From list.</p>	

4. Enter the required details.

5. Click **Save**.

The approval workflow criterion type is created.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Criterion Type screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Criterion Type (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 571
Search Approval Workflow Criterion Type zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Criterion Type</a> on page 568

## Approval Workflow Criterion Type (Used for Viewing)

Once you define an approval workflow criterion type, the **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen allows you to:

- Edit the details of an approval workflow criterion type
- Delete an approval workflow criterion type

This screen contains the following zone:

- [Approval Workflow Criterion Type](#) on page 571

## Approval Workflow Criterion Type

The **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** zone displays the details of the approval workflow criterion types. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays basic information about the approval workflow criterion type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Approval Workflow Criterion Type	Displays the approval workflow criterion type.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow criterion type.
Derived From	Indicates the criteria type that triggers the approval workflow. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Algorithm</li> <li>• Business Object</li> </ul>

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the approval workflow criterion type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Field	Indicates the field using which the criteria for associating approval workflow requests with the approval workflow chains will be defined.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Fields</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective field.

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the approval workflow criterion type.
Delete	Used to delete the approval workflow criterion type.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the approval workflow chain and levels is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

## Editing an Approval Workflow Criterion Type

### Procedure

To edit an approval workflow criterion type:

1. Search for the approval workflow criterion type in the **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow criterion type whose details you want to edit.

The **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen appears.




3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** zone.

The **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen appears. It contains the following section:

- **Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Criterion Type	Displays the approval workflow criterion type.	Yes
Description	Displays the description for the approval workflow criterion type.	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Derived From	Displays an option which triggers the approval workflow.	Yes
Algorithm	Displays the algorithm for which you want to define the approval workflow criterion type.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to this field. On clicking the Search icon, the Algorithm Search window appears</p> <p>This field appears only when you select the Algorithm option form the Derived From list.</p>	
Business Object	Displays the business object which is used to define the approval workflow criterion type.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to this field. On clicking the Search icon, the Business Object Search window appears.</p> <p>This field appears only when you select the Business Object option form the Derived From list.</p>	
Field	Displays the field which is used to define the criteria for associating approval workflow requests with the approval workflow chains.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon corresponding to the respective field. On clicking the Search icon, the Field Search window appears.</p> <p>This field appears only when you select the Business Object option form the Derived From list.</p>	

4. Modify the required details in the **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen.

5. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the approval workflow criterion type screen are saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow criterion type	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Criterion Type</a> on page 568
<b>Approval Workflow Criterion Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Criterion Type (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 571
<b>Approval Workflow Criterion Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Criterion Type</a> on page 571

## Deleting an Approval Workflow Criterion Type

### Procedure

To delete an approval workflow criterion type:

1. Search for the approval workflow criterion type in the **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow criterion type whose details you want to delete.

The **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Approval Workflow Criterion Type** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the approval workflow criterion type.

4. Click **OK**.

The approval workflow criterion type is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow criterion type	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Criterion Type</a> on page 568
<b>Approval Workflow Criterion Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Criterion Type (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 571
<b>Approval Workflow Criterion Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Criterion Type</a> on page 571

## Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage (Used for Searching)

The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen allows you to search for an approval workflow group chain linkage using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 580

This screen consists of the following zone:

- [Search Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage](#) on page 574

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow group chain linkage	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</a> on page 575
How to view the details of an approval workflow group chain linkage	<a href="#">Viewing the Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage Details</a> on page 576

## Search Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage

The **Search Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** zone allows you to search for an approval workflow group chain linkage using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Group Chain Linkage ID	Used to search a particular approval workflow group chain linkage.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Used to search a group chain linkage for which an approval workflow group is defined.	Yes
Approval Workflow Chain	Used to search a group chain linkage for which an approval workflow chain is defined.	Yes

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an approval workflow group chain linkage.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Group Chain Linkage ID	Displays the ID which is generated automatically when the link is created.
Approval Workflow Group	Indicates the approval workflow group for which the link is created. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</b> screen appears with the details of the respective business object.
Approval Workflow Chain	Indicates the approval workflow chain for which the link is created.
Field Approval Rule	Indicates whether you want to configure approval rule for one or more fields of the business objects which are included in the approval workflow group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval work group chain linkage	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</a> on page 575
How to view the details of an approval workflow group chain linkage	<a href="#">Viewing the Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage Details</a> on page 576

## Searching for an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage

### Procedure

To search an approval workflow group chain linkage:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage**.  
The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Group Chain Linkage** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

#### 4. Click **Search**.

A list of group chain linkages that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage (Used for Searching)</a> on page 574
<b>Search Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</a> on page 574

## Viewing the Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage Details

### Procedure

To view the details of an approval workflow chain linkage:

1. Search for the approval workflow group chain linkage in the **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Approval Workflow Group** column corresponding to the approval workflow chain whose details you want to view.

The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

- [Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage](#) on page 581
3. View the details of the approval workflow group chain linkage in the **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow group chain linkage	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</a> on page 575
<b>Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 580

## Defining an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage

### Prerequisites

To define an approval workflow group chain linkage, you should have:

- Business Object, Field, Criterion Type, Approval Workflow Group and Approval Workflow Chain defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define an approval workflow group chain linkage:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

- From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage**.



The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears.

- Click the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen.

The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** - Used to specify basic details about the approval workflow group chain linkage.
- Group Chain Linkage Criteria** - Used to define group chain linkage criteria for the approval workflow type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Used to indicate the approval workflow group.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for an approval workflow group type by clicking the Search (  ) icon corresponding to the field.	
Approval Workflow Chain	Used to indicate the approval workflow chain.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for an approval workflow chain by clicking the Search (  ) icon corresponding to the field.	
Field Approval Rule	Used to indicate whether you want to configure approval rule for one or more fields of the business objects which are included in the approval workflow group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes

- Enter the required details.
- Define group chain linkage criteria for the approval workflow, if required.
- Define field approval rule criteria for the approval workflow, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The approval workflow group chain linkage is created.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Workflow Chain Linkage</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage (Used for Searching)</a> on page 574
<b>Search Approval Workflow Chain Linkage</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</a> on page 574
How to define group chain linkage criteria for an approval workflow	<a href="#">Defining an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</a> on page 576

## Defining Group Chain Linkage Criteria for an Approval Workflow

### Prerequisites

To define group chain linkage criteria for an approval workflow, you should have:

- Approval Workflow Criterion Type defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define group chain linkage criteria for an approval workflow:

1. Ensure that the **Group Chain Linkage Criteria** section is expanded when you are defining or editing an approval workflow.

The **Group Chain Linkage Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Group Chain Linkage ID	Displays the Group Chain Linkage ID.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this field only when you are editing the details of an approval workflow criterion type.	
Criterion Type	Used to indicate the criteria type needed for defining the criterion.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The Search (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the Search icon, the Approval Workflow Chain Search window appears.	
Operator	Used to indicate the relational operator used to define the relation between the criterion type and criterion value.	Yes
Criterion Value	Used to specify the criterion value.	Yes

2. Enter the required details.
3. If you want to define more than one group chain linkage criteria for the approval workflow, click the **Add** (+) icon, and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a group chain linkage criteria from the approval workflow, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the group chain linkage criteria.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit an approval workflow group chain linkage	<a href="#">Editing an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</a> on page 583

## Defining a Field Approval Rule

### Prerequisites

To define a field approval rule for an approval workflow group chain linkage, you should have:

- Business Object, Field, and Approval Workflow Chain to be defined in the application.




## Procedure

To define a field approval rule for an approval workflow group chain linkage:

1. Ensure that the


**Field Approval Rule Criteria** section is expanded when you select the Yes option from the Field Approval Rule field of the M



The **Field Approval Rule Criteria** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence.	Used to indicate the order in which the rule criteria should be executed while adding or updating the field value.	Yes
Applicable For	Used to indicate whether the rule criteria should be considered while adding and/or updating the field value. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add</li> <li>• Update</li> <li>• Add and Update</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Used to indicate the business object in which the field is included.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Business Object</b> field. On clicking the search icon, the <b>Search Group Based Business Object</b> search window appears.	
Field	Used to indicate the field for which you want to define the approval rule criteria.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Field</b> search field. On clicking the search icon, the <b>Field Search</b> search window appears.	
Approval Workflow Chain	Used to indicate the approval workflow chain that you want to use for the field value approval.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Approval Workflow Chain</b> field. On clicking the search icon, the <b>Approval Workflow Chain Search</b> search window appears.	
Value Range	Used to indicate whether you want to define value based threshold limit for each approval level.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when the data type of the field is <b>Numeric</b> .	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hierarchical	Used to indicate whether multi-level or single-level approval is required while adding or updating the field value beyond the threshold limit.	No

If the **Value Range** check box is selected, a grid appears with the following set of fields:

Field	Field Description
Threshold Value	Used to specify the threshold value using which you want to control the approval hierarchy.
Approval Level	Used to indicate the approval level at which approval is required when the field value is within the threshold value.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Approval Level</b> field. On clicking the search icon, the <b>Approval Level Search</b> search window appears.
	<b>Note:</b> The search results will include all those levels which are defined in the approval workflow chain.
Approval Level Information	Displays additional information about the approval level.

- Enter the required details in the **Field Approval Rule Criteria** section.
- If you want to define more than one field approval rule criteria for the approval workflow chain linkage, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2. However, if you want to remove a field approval rule criteria from the approval workflow chain linkage, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the sequence field.
- Click **Save**.
 

The approval workflow field rule is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit an approval workflow group chain linkage	<a href="#">Editing an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</a> on page 583

Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage (Used for Viewing)

Once you define an approval workflow group chain linkage, the **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen allows you to:

- Edit an approval workflow group chain linkage
- Delete an approval workflow group chain linkage

This screen contains the following zone:

- [Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage](#) on page 581



For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of an approval workflow group chain linkage	<a href="#">Viewing the Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage Details</a> on page 576

## Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage

The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** zone displays the details of the approval workflow group chain linkage. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays basic information about the approval workflow group chain linkage. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the approval workflow group for which a link is created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Approval Workflow Group</b> screen appears with the details of the respective approval workflow group.
Approval Workflow Chain	Displays the approval workflow chain for which a link is created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Approval Workflow Chain</b> screen appears with the details of the respective approval workflow group.
Field Approval Rule	Indicates whether you want to configure approval rule for one or more fields of the business objects which are included in the approval workflow group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the approval workflow group chain linkage. Also used to define, edit, delete Group Chain Linkage Criteria and Field Approval Rule Criteria.
Delete	Used to delete the approval workflow group chain linkage.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following field:


Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the approval workflow chain linkage is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

- **Group Chain Linkage Criteria** - Lists the group chain linkage criteria..This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Group Chain Linkage ID	Displays the ID which is generated automatically when the link is created.


Column Name	Column Description
Criterion Type	Displays the criterion type needed for defining the criterion.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Approval Workflow Criterion Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective criterion type.
Operator	Indicates the relational operator used to define the relation between the criterion type and criterion value. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EQUALS</li> <li>IN</li> </ul>
Criterion Value	Displays the criterion value.

- **Field Approval Rule Criteria** - Lists the field approval rule criteria for approval workflow group chain linkage. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence	Indicates the order in which the rule criteria should be executed while adding or updating the field value.
Applicable For	Displays the rule criteria which should be considered while adding and/or updating the field value.
Business Object	Displays the business object in which the field is included.
Field	Displays the field for which you want to define the approval rule criteria.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Context Menu</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to the <b>Field</b> search field. On clicking the context menu icon, the <b>Go to Field</b> menu appears. On clicking the <b>Go to Field</b> menu item, the <b>Field</b> screen appears with the details of the respective field.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Field</b> screen appears with the details of the respective field.
Approval Workflow Chain	Indicates the approval workflow chain that you want to use for the field value approval.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Approval Workflow Chain</b> screen appears with the details of the respective approval workflow chain.
Value Range	Indicates whether you want to define value based threshold limit for each approval level.
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when the data type of the field is <b>Numeric</b> .

Column Name	Column Description
Hierarchical Approval	Indicates whether multi-level or single-level approval is required while adding or updating the field value beyond the threshold limit.
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when the <b>Value Range</b> check box is selected.

If the **Value Range** check box is selected, a grid appears with the following set of fields:

Field	Field Description
Threshold Value	Displays the threshold value using which you want to control the approval hierarchy.
Approval Level	Displays the approval level at which approval is required when the field value is within the threshold value.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Approval Level</b> field. On clicking the search icon, the <b>Approval Level Search</b> search window appears.
	<b>Note:</b> The search results will include all those levels which are defined in the approval workflow chain.
Approval Level Information	Displays additional information about the approval level.

## Editing an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage

### Prerequisites

To edit an approval workflow group chain linkage, you should have:

- Business Object, Field, Criterion Type, Approval Workflow Group, and Approval Workflow Chain defined in the application.

### Procedure

To edit an approval workflow group chain linkage:

1. Search for the Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage in the **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Approval Workflow Group** column corresponding to the approval workflow chain whose details you want to edit.  
The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears.
3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** zone.  
The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears.
4. Define or edit approval workflow group chain linkage, if required.
5. Define, edit or remove approval workflow criterion from the approval workflow group chain linkage, if required.
6. Define, edit or remove field approval rule criteria from the approval workflow group chain linkage, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the approval workflow group chain linkage screen are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search approval workflow group chain linkage	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</a> on page 575
<b>Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 580
<b>Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</a> on page 581

## Deleting an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage

### Procedure

To delete an approval workflow group chain linkage:

1. Search for an approval workflow group chain linkage in the **Search Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** zone.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Approval Workflow Group** column corresponding to the approval workflow chain that you want to delete.  
The **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** screen appears.
3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage** zone.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the approval workflow group chain linkage.
4. Click **OK**.  
The approval workflow group chain linkage is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow group chain linkage	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group Chain Linkage</a> on page 575

## Approval Workflow Setting (Used for Searching)

The **Approval Workflow Setting** screen allows you to search for approval workflow setting using various search criteria. It consists the following zone:

- [Search Approval Workflow Group](#) on page 584

Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Approval Workflow Setting \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 588

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow setting	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 585
How to view the details of approval workflow settings	<a href="#">Viewing the Approval Workflow Setting Details</a> on page 586

## Search Approval Workflow Group

The **Search Approval Workflow Group** zone allows you to search for an approval workflow group using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields::

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Used to search a particular approval workflow group.	Yes
Description	Used to search approval workflow group with a particular description.	Yes

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an approval workflow group.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the approval workflow group.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow group.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Approval Workflow Group</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective approval workflow group.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 545
How to view the details of approval workflow setting	<a href="#">Viewing the Approval Workflow Setting Details</a> on page 586

## Searching for an Approval Workflow Group

### Prerequisites

To search for an approval workflow group, you should have:

- Approval Workflow Group defined in the application.
- Active flag should be set to **Yes**

### Procedure

To search for an approval workflow group:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, Select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Setting**.  
The **Approval Workflow Setting** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Approval Workflow Group** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

#### 4. Click **Search**.

A list of approval workflow groups that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Workflow Setting</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Setting (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 588
<b>Search Approval Workflow Group</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 544

## Viewing the Approval Workflow Setting Details

### Procedure

To view the details of approval workflow setting:

1. Search for an approval workflow group in the **Approval Workflow Setting** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow group whose details you want to view.

The **Approval Workflow Settings** screen appears.

3. View the details of the approval workflow group in the **Approval Workflow Group Settings** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Workflow Group Settings</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Setting (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 588
<b>Approval Workflow Group Settings</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group Settings</a> on page 588
How to search for an approval workflow setting	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 585

## Defining Approval Workflow Group Settings

### Prerequisites

To define an approval workflow group setting, you should have:

- Approval Workflow Group defined in the application.
- Active flag set to **Yes**

### Procedure



To define an approval workflow group setting:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Setting**.  
The **Approval Workflow Settings** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen.

The **Approval Workflow Settings** screen appears. It contains the following section:

- **Main** - Used to specify the details for the approval workflow settings.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group	Used to specify the approval workflow group.	Yes
Approval Chain Selection Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered before creating the approval workflow request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This algorithm identifies the approval workflow chain that must be used for the approval workflow group.	
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for an approval chain selection algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Approval Chain Selection Algorithm</b> field.	
Prevalidation	Used to indicate whether validation must be done before the approval workflow request is created. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for a prevalidation by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Prevalidation</b> field.	
Approval Reason Required	Used to indicate whether you want the approver to add reason and comments while approving the approval transaction. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
Active	Used to indicate whether the approval workflow is required for the business objects in the approval workflow group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Yes</b> - Used when you want to activate the approval workflow for the business objects in the approval workflow group.</li> <li>• <b>No</b> - Used when you do not want to activate the approval workflow for the business objects in the approval workflow group.</li> <li>• <b>Conditional</b> - Used when you want to activate the approval workflow for business objects that satisfy particular criteria (for example, when the person or account belongs to a particular division). Note that, at present, this functionality works only for an approval workflow group which consists of a single business object.</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Conditional Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be used to determine the business objects for which the approval workflow must be activated.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Conditional</b> option is selected from the <b>Active</b> list.	

4. Enter the required details.

5. Click **Save**.

The approval workflow group setting is defined.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Workflow Group</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group (Used for Searching)</a> on page 544
<b>Search Approval Workflow Group</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 544

## Approval Workflow Setting (Used for Viewing)

Once the approval workflow group setting is defined, the **Approval Workflow Settings** screen allows you to:

- View the details of an approval workflow setting
- Edit the approval workflow group settings
- Delete an approval workflow group settings
- Regenerate approval workflow setting UI maps

This screen consists of the following zone:

- [Approval Workflow Group Settings](#) on page 588

For more information on...	See...
How to edit the approval workflow group settings	<a href="#">Editing Approval Workflow Group Settings</a> on page 590
How to delete an approval workflow group settings	<a href="#">Deleting Approval Workflow Group Settings</a> on page 590
How to regenerate UI Maps	<a href="#">Regenerating Input and Display UI Maps</a> on page 591

## Approval Workflow Group Settings

The **Approval Workflow Group Settings** zone displays the details of the approval workflow group settings. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays the basic information about the approval workflow group settings. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Approval Workflow Group	Displays the approval workflow group.



Field Name	Field Description
Approval Chain Selection Algorithm	Displays the algorithm that will be triggered after creating the approval workflow request.
	<b>Note:</b> This algorithm identifies the approval workflow chain that must be used for the approval workflow group.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Algorithm</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective approval chain selection algorithm.
Prevalidation	Indicates whether validation must be done before the approval workflow request is created. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Approval Reason Required	Indicates whether you want the approver to add reason and comments while approving the approval transaction. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Active	Indicates whether the approval workflow is required for the business objects in the approval workflow group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Yes</b> - Used when you want to activate the approval workflow for the business objects in the approval workflow group.</li> <li>• <b>No</b> - Used when you do not want to activate the approval workflow for the business objects in the approval workflow group.</li> <li>• <b>Conditional</b> - Used when you want to activate the approval workflow for business objects that satisfy particular criteria (for example, when the person or account belongs to a particular division). Note that, at present, this functionality works only for an approval workflow group which consists of a single business object.</li> </ul>
Conditional Algorithm	Displays the algorithm that will be used to determine the business objects for which the approval workflow must be activated.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Conditional</b> option is selected from the <b>Active</b> list.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Algorithm</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective conditional algorithm.

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the settings of the approval workflow group.
Delete	Used to delete the approval workflow group setting.
Regenerate UI Maps	Used to regenerate the approval workflow group setting UI Maps.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the approval workflow reason is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

## Editing Approval Workflow Group Settings

### Prerequisites

To edit approval workflow group settings, you should have:

- Approval Chain Selection Algorithm defined in the application.
- Prevalidation, Approval Reason Required, and Active flag defined in the application.
- Conditional Algorithm defined in the application

### Procedure

To edit approval workflow group settings:

1. Search for the approval workflow group in the **Approval Workflow Setting** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow group whose details you want to edit.

The **Approval Workflow Settings** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Approval Workflow Group Settings** zone.

The **Approval Workflow Group Settings** screen appears.

4. Edit the settings for the approval workflow group, if required.
5. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the approval workflow group settings are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 545
<b>Approval Workflow Settings</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Setting (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 588
<b>Approval Workflow Group Settings</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group Settings</a> on page 588

## Deleting Approval Workflow Group Settings

### Procedure

To delete approval workflow group settings:

1. Search for the approval workflow group in the **Approval Workflow Setting** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow group that you want to delete.

The **Approval Workflow Settings** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Approval Workflow Group Settings** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the approval workflow group settings.

4. Click **OK**.

The approval workflow setting is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 545
<b>Approval Workflow Settings</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Setting (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 588
<b>Approval Workflow Group Settings</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group Settings</a> on page 588

## Regenerating Input and Display UI Maps

### Procedure

To regenerate UI Maps for an approval workflow group setting:

1. Search for the approval workflow group in the **Approval Workflow Setting** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow group for which you want to regenerate UI maps.  
The **Approval Workflow Settings** screen appears.

3. Click the **Regenerate UI Maps** button in the **Approval Workflow Group Settings** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to replace the existing Input and Display UI Maps.

4. Click **OK**.

The Input and Display UI Maps are generated.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Searching for an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 545
<b>Approval Workflow Settings</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Setting (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 588
<b>Approval Workflow Setting</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Group Settings</a> on page 588

## Approval Workflow Reason (Used for Searching)

The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen allows you to search for an approval workflow reason using various search criteria. It also allows you to define an approval workflow reason. It contains the following zone:

- [Approval Workflow Reason List](#) on page 591

### Approval Workflow Reason List

The **Approval Workflow Reason List** zone lists the approval workflow reasons that are already defined in the system. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Reason	Used to search a particular approval workflow reason.	No
Description	Used to search approval workflow reasons with a particular description.	No

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Approval Workflow Reason	Displays the approval workflow reason.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow reason.
Reason Category	Indicates the category to which the approval workflow reason belongs. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approve</li> <li>• Cancel</li> <li>• Reject</li> </ul>

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to filter approval workflow reasons	<a href="#">Filtering the Approval Workflow Reasons</a> on page 592
How to view the details of an approval workflow reason	<a href="#">Viewing the Approval Workflow Reason Details</a> on page 593
How to define an approval workflow reason	<a href="#">Defining an Approval Workflow Reason</a> on page 593

## Filtering the Approval Workflow Reasons

### Procedure

To filter the approval workflow reasons:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Reason**.  
The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears.
3. Enter the required search criteria in the **Approval Workflow Reason List** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.  
The search results are filtered based on the specified criteria.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Approval Workflow Reason screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Reason (Used for Searching)</a> on page 591
Approval Workflow Reason List zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Reason List</a> on page 591

**Viewing the Approval Workflow Reason Details****Procedure**

To view the details of an approval workflow reason:

1. If required, filter the approval workflow reasons in the **Approval Workflow Reason** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow reason whose details you want to view.

The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

- [Approval Workflow Reason](#) on page 594

3. View the details of the approval workflow reason in the **Approval Workflow Reason** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to filter the approval workflow reasons	<a href="#">Filtering the Approval Workflow Reasons</a> on page 592
Approval Workflow Reason screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Reason (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 594

**Defining an Approval Workflow Reason****Prerequisites**

To define an approval workflow reason, you should have:

- Values defined for the **APPTXN\_REASON\_TYPE** lookup field

**Procedure**

To define an approval workflow reason:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Reason**.  
The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Approval Workflow Reason** screen.

The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Reason	Used to specify the approval workflow reason.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the approval workflow reason.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reason Category	Used to indicate the category to which the approval workflow reason belongs. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approve</li> <li>• Cancel</li> <li>• Reject</li> </ul>	Yes

4. Enter the required details in the **Approval Workflow Reason** screen.
5. Click **Save**.

The approval workflow reason is defined.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Approval Workflow Reason</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Reason (Used for Searching)</a> on page 591

## **Approval Workflow Reason (Used for Viewing)**

Once you define an approval workflow reason, the **Approval Workflow Reason** screen allows you to:

- View the details of an approval workflow reason
- Edit and delete an approval workflow reason

This screen contains the following zone:

- [Approval Workflow Reason](#) on page 594

## **Approval Workflow Reason**

The **Approval Workflow Reason** zone displays the details of the approval workflow reason. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays basic information about the approval workflow reason. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Approval Workflow Reason	Displays the approval workflow reason.
Description	Displays the description of the approval workflow reason.
Reason Category	Indicates the category to which the approval workflow reason belongs. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approve</li> <li>• Cancel</li> <li>• Reject</li> </ul>

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the approval workflow reason.
Delete	Used to delete the approval workflow reason.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the approval workflow reason is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit an approval workflow reason	<a href="#">Editing an Approval Workflow Reason</a> on page 595
How to delete an approval workflow reason	<a href="#">Deleting an Approval Workflow Reason</a> on page 596

## Editing an Approval Workflow Reason

### Prerequisites

To edit an approval workflow reason, you should have:

- Values defined for the **APPTXN\_REASON\_TYPE** lookup field

### Procedure

To edit an approval workflow reason:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Reason**.  
The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears.
3. If required, filter the approval workflow reasons in the **Approval Workflow Reason** screen.
4. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow reason whose details you want to edit.

The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears.

5. Click the **Edit** button in the **Approval Workflow Reason** zone.

The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Reason	Displays the approval workflow reason.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the approval workflow reason.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reason Category	Used to indicate the category to which the approval workflow reason belongs. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approve</li> <li>• Cancel</li> <li>• Reject</li> </ul>	Yes

6. Modify the required details in the **Approval Workflow Reason** screen.

7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the approval workflow reason are saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to filter the approval workflow reasons	<a href="#">Filtering the Approval Workflow Reasons</a> on page 592
<b>Approval Workflow Reason</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Reason (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 594
<b>Approval Workflow Reason</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Reason</a> on page 594

## **Deleting an Approval Workflow Reason**

### **Procedure**

To delete an approval workflow reason:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Approval Workflow Reason**.

The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears.

3. If required, filter the approval workflow reasons in the **Approval Workflow Reason** screen.

4. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the approval workflow reason that you want to delete.

The **Approval Workflow Reason** screen appears.

5. Click the **Delete** button in the **Approval Workflow Reason** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the approval workflow reason.

6. Click **OK**.

The approval workflow reason is deleted.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to filter the approval workflow reasons	<a href="#">Filtering the Approval Workflow Reasons</a> on page 592
<b>Approval Workflow Reason</b> screen	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Reason (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 594
<b>Approval Workflow Reason</b> zone	<a href="#">Approval Workflow Reason</a> on page 594



---

# Chapter

# 6

---

## Rules Engine

---

### Topics:

- [Rule Type \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Rule Type \(Used for Viewing\)](#)
- [Rule](#)
- [View Rule](#)
- [Rule Check](#)

A rules engine executes one or more business rules in a runtime production environment. It allows you to define, execute, and maintain these business rules separately from the application code. You can then use these business rules in any program to facilitate operational decisions at runtime. For example, you might use business rules in the Collection module to decide the collection strategy or in the Banking module to derive charges codes or price items for the transaction.

A rules engine allows you to classify these rules using the rule type. It also allows you to define the relationship between two or more rules and set the priority for each rule. When a calling program invokes these rules using the rule type, all effective rules with the specified rule type are executed, starting with the rule having highest priority. For example, a rule with the priority 10 will be executed before a rule with the priority 20.

Each rule contains one or more criteria. Depending on whether the criteria is satisfied, the system either executes the next criteria or indicates whether the rule is true or false. The rules engine allows you to define what should happen when the rule is true or false. In both the cases, you can enforce the system to either:

- Execute any dependent rule
- Execute a rule with the same rule type having lower priority
- Return the output parameters and their values to the calling program

You can define a criteria for a rule only using the input parameters that are defined for the rule type. Also, when the rule is true, you can only return the output parameters that are defined for the rule type to the calling programs. Therefore, in case you want to use any field in the rule, you have to associate it with the rule type as an input or output parameter.

A rules engine also allows you to execute preprocessing and postprocessing algorithms. A preprocessing algorithm is triggered before executing any criteria in the rule. It pre-processes the input parameters and then returns processed values against which the criteria is validated. A postprocessing algorithm is triggered after executing all criteria in the rule. It post-processes the output parameters and returns the updated values to the calling programs or dependent rules.

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides you with the Rule Check utility. It allows you to validate whether rules defined with a specific rule type get executed as expected. On validating, it indicates the sequence in which the rules were executed, the total execution time, and displays the output parameters of the rule that was successfully executed.

Normally, in the Transaction Feed Management feature, the transaction legs are created using the output parameters of the rule where the criteria returns **Rule**

**Is True** and the rule true action is set to **Success**. Oracle Revenue Management and Billing also enables you to accumulate the output parameters of all rules where the criteria returns **Rule Is True** irrespective of whether the rule true action is set to **Next Dependent**, **Next Rule by Priority**, or **Success**. This accumulation process continues until a rule is executed where the criteria returns **Rule Is True** and the rule true action is set to **Success**. Once the output parameters are accumulated, the transactions legs are created using these accumulated output parameters. You can enable the rule output accumulation feature for the Transaction Feed Management module by setting the **Rule Output Accumulation** option type in the **C1\_FM** feature configuration to **true**.

There might be situations when duplicate transaction legs are created through the rule output accumulation process. The system enables you to indicate whether duplicate transaction legs must be created during the transaction aggregation cycle through the rule output accumulation process. If the **Remove Duplicates from Accumulated Rule Output** option type in **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **true**, the system does not create duplicate transaction legs during the transaction aggregation cycle.

**Note:** The transaction legs with the same account ID, price item, variance parameter or price item parameters, and processing date are considered as duplicate transaction legs.

## Rule Type (Used for Searching)

A rule type can be used for defining rule based auto pay instructions or business rules for mapping transactions with the price items. If you want to use the rule type for defining rule based auto pay instructions, you must set the **Rule Type Usage** field to **Auto Pay**. However, if you want to use the rule type for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items, you must leave the **Rule Type Usage** field blank.

It is the rule type which helps the system to determine:

- Fields that can be used while defining criteria for business rules or rule based auto pay instructions
- Entities whose characteristics can be used while defining criteria for rule based auto pay instructions
- Algorithms which must be used for deriving information from the financial transaction
- Maximum number of rules that can be defined when the rule based auto pay instruction is created using the rule type

The **Rule Type** screen allows you to search for a rule type using various search criteria. It also allows you to define, edit, delete, and copy a rule type. It contains the following zone:

- [Search Rule Type](#) on page 599

## Search Rule Type





The **Search Rule Type** zone allows you to search for a rule type using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Used to search a particular rule type.	No
Description	Used to search rule types with a particular description.	No
Rule Type Usage	Used to indicate whether you want to search rule types which are used for defining rule based auto pay instructions or which are used for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto Pay</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> If you want to search rule types which are used for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items, you must leave this field blank.	

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Rule Type	Displays the rule type.
Description	Displays the description of the rule type.
Rule Type Usage	Indicates whether the rule type is used for defining rule based auto pay instructions or for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items.

Column Name	Column Description
View	On clicking the <b>View</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Rule Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rule type.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Rule Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the rule type.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the rule type.  <b>Note:</b> You can delete a rule type only when the rule based auto pay instructions or business rules are not yet defined using the rule type.
Copy	On clicking the <b>Copy</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Rule Type</b> screen appears where you can create a new rule type using an existing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a rule type	<a href="#">Searching for a Rule Type</a> on page 600
How to view the details of a rule type	<a href="#">Viewing the Rule Type Details</a> on page 611
How to edit a rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Rule Type</a> on page 606
How to delete a rule type	<a href="#">Deleting a Rule Type</a> on page 608
How to copy a rule type	<a href="#">Copying a Rule Type</a> on page 609

## Searching for a Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To search for a rule type, you should have:

- Values defined for the **C1\_RULE\_USAGE\_FLG** lookup field

### Procedure

To search for a rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Rule Type** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Rule Type** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of rule types that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Rule Type (Used for Searching)</a> on page 599
<b>Search Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Rule Type</a> on page 599

## Defining a Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define a rule type, you should have:

- Values defined for the **C1\_RULE\_USAGE\_FLG** lookup field

### Procedure

To define a rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the rule type.
- **Input and Output Parameters** - Used to define input and output parameters for the rule type.
- **Rule Criteria Characteristic Entities** - Used to indicate the entities whose characteristics you can use while defining rule based auto pay instructions using the rule type.

**Note:** This section appears only when you select the **Auto Pay** option from the **Rule Type Usage** list.

- **Rule Criteria Derivation Algorithms** - Used to attach algorithms which you want to use for deriving the following from the financial transaction:
  - Values of all those fields (such as, policy number, plan number, or price item) which are selected in the rule type as the input and output parameters
  - Characteristics of all those entities which are selected in the rule type as the rule criteria characteristic entities

**Note:** This section appears only when you select the **Auto Pay** option from the **Rule Type Usage** list.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type Usage	Used to indicate whether you want to use the rule type for defining rule based auto pay instructions or for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auto Pay</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> If you want to use the rule type for defining rule based auto pay instructions, you must set the rule type usage to <b>Auto Pay</b> . However, if you want to use the rule type for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items, you must leave this field blank.	
Description	Used to specify the description for the rule type.	Yes
Maximum Rule Count	Used to indicate the maximum number of rules that can be defined when the rule based auto pay instruction is created using the rule type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Auto Pay</b> option from the <b>Rule Type Usage</b> list.  The maximum rule count cannot be less than or equal to zero.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Rule Type** screen.

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define input and output parameters for the rule type.
- Associate one or more characteristic entities with the rule type, if required.

**Note:** You must specify at least one input or output parameter when you want to use the rule type for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items. However, you must specify at least one input or output parameter or associate at least one characteristic entity when you want to use the rule type for defining rule based auto pay instructions.

- Associate the rule criteria derivation algorithm when you want to use the rule type for defining rule based auto pay instructions.

**Note:** You must associate the rule criteria derivation algorithm with the rule type when the **Rule Type Usage** field is set to **Auto Pay**.

- Click **Save**.

The rule type is defined.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define input and output parameters for a rule type	<a href="#">Defining Input and Output Parameters for a Rule Type</a> on page 603

For more information on...	See...
How to associate a characteristic entity with a rule type	<a href="#">Associating a Characteristic Entity with a Rule Type</a> on page 604
How to associate an algorithm with a rule type	<a href="#">Associating an Algorithm with a Rule Type</a> on page 605

## Defining Input and Output Parameters for a Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define the input and output parameters for a rule type, you should have:


- Fields defined in the application
- Field search zone defined in the application


### Procedure

To define the input and output parameters for a rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Input and Output Parameters** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a rule type.

The **Input and Output Parameters** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to specify the sequence number for the input or output parameter.	Yes
Field	Used to indicate the field that you want to use as the input or output parameter.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.	Yes
Rule Input/Output	Used to indicate whether you want to use the field as input and/or output parameter while defining a business rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Input</li> <li>• Input and Output</li> <li>• Output</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Input</b> option is selected.  This field appears only when you do not select the <b>Auto Pay</b> option from the <b>Rule Type Usage</b> list.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search Zone	Used to indicate the search zone that you want to use for searching the field value while defining criteria for rule based auto pay instructions.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Zone Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>This field appears only when you select the <b>Auto Pay</b> option from the <b>Rule Type Usage</b> list.</p>	


2. Enter the required details in the **Input and Output Parameters** section.


**Note:**

At present, the following fields are only supported while defining a rule type where the **Rule Type Usage** field is set to **Auto Pay**:

- Policy Number
- Plan Number
- Price Item

If you want to use any other field while defining criteria for rule based auto pay instructions, the implementation team will have to develop the custom logic to implement the requirement.

3. If you want to define more than one input or output parameter for the rule type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove an input or output parameter from the rule type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the parameter.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Rule Type</a> on page 601
How to edit a rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Rule Type</a> on page 606
How to copy a rule type	<a href="#">Copying a Rule Type</a> on page 609

## Associating a Characteristic Entity with a Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To associate a characteristic entity with a rule type, you should have:

- Values defined for the **RULE\_CRITERIA\_ENTITY\_FLG** lookup field

### Procedure

To associate a characteristic entity with a rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Rule Criteria Characteristic Entities** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a rule type.

The **Rule Criteria Characteristic Entities** section contains the following fields in a grid:



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Entity	<p>Used to indicate the entity whose characteristics you want to use while defining criteria for rule based auto pay instructions. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adjustment</li> <li>• Billable Charge</li> <li>• Policy</li> <li>• Policy Plan</li> <li>• Price Item</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> At present, the characteristics of the above listed entities are only supported while defining criteria for rule based auto pay instructions. If you want to use characteristics of any other entity, the implementation team will have to develop the custom logic to implement the requirement.</p>	Yes

**Note:** This section appears only when you select the **Auto Pay** option from the **Rule Type Usage** list.

- Enter the required details in the **Rule Criteria Characteristic Entities** section.
- If you want to associate more than one characteristic entity with the rule type, click the **Add (+)** icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic entity from the rule type, click the **Delete (🗑)** icon corresponding to the characteristic entity.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Rule Type</a> on page 601
How to edit a rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Rule Type</a> on page 606
How to copy a rule type	<a href="#">Copying a Rule Type</a> on page 609

## Associating an Algorithm with a Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To associate an algorithm with a rule type, you should have:


- Rule criteria derivation algorithm defined using the **C1-APRCRIDER** algorithm type

### Procedure


To associate an algorithm with a rule type:


- Ensure that the **Rule Criteria Derivation Algorithms** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a rule type.

The **Rule Criteria Derivation Algorithms** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the order in which the algorithm should be executed.	Yes
Algorithm	<p>Used to attach an algorithm which you want to use for deriving the following from the financial transaction:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Values of all those fields (such as, policy number, plan number, or price item) which are selected in the rule type as the input and output parameters</li> <li>• Characteristics of all those entities which are selected in the rule type as the rule criteria characteristic entities</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	Yes

**Note:** This section appears only when you select the **Auto Pay** option from the **Rule Type Usage** list.

2. Enter the required details in the **Rule Criteria Derivation Algorithms** section.
3. If you want to associate more than one algorithm with the rule type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove an algorithm from the rule type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the algorithm.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Rule Type</a> on page 601
How to edit a rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Rule Type</a> on page 606
How to copy a rule type	<a href="#">Copying a Rule Type</a> on page 609

## Editing a Rule Type

### Procedure

To edit a rule type:

1. Search for the rule type in the **Rule Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the rule type whose details you want to edit.

The **Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the rule type.
- **Input and Output Parameters** - Used to define input and output parameters for the rule type.
- **Rule Criteria Characteristic Entities** - Used to indicate the entities whose characteristics you can use while defining rule based auto pay instructions using the rule type.

**Note:** This section appears only when you select the **Auto Pay** option from the **Rule Type Usage** list.

- **Rule Criteria Derivation Algorithms** - Used to attach algorithms which you want to use for deriving the following from the financial transaction:
  - Values of all those fields (such as, policy number, plan number, or price item) which are selected in the rule type as the input and output parameters
  - Characteristics of all those entities which are selected in the rule type as the rule criteria characteristic entities

**Note:** This section appears only when you select the **Auto Pay** option from the **Rule Type Usage** list.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Displays the rule type.	Not applicable
Rule Type Usage	Indicates whether the rule type is used for defining rule based auto pay instructions or for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the rule type.	Yes
Maximum Rule Count	<div>Used to indicate the maximum number of rules that can be defined when the rule based auto pay instruction is created using the rule type.</div> <div> <b>Note:</b>            This field appears only when the <b>Rule Type Usage</b> field is set to <b>Auto Pay</b>.            The maximum rule count cannot be less than or equal to zero.            You cannot reduce the maximum rule count when one or more auto pay instructions contain the specified number of rules.         </div>	No

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of a rule type by clicking the **Edit** link in the **Rule Type** zone.

3. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
4. Define, edit, or remove input or output parameters from the rule type, if required.

**Note:** You cannot edit or remove an input or output parameter from the rule type when it is used for defining criteria in a business rule or rule based auto pay instruction.

5. Associate or remove one or more characteristic entities from the rule type, if required.

**Note:**

You must specify at least one input or output parameter when you want to use the rule type for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items. However, you must specify at least one input or output parameter or associate at least one characteristic entity when you want to use the rule type for defining rule based auto pay instructions.

You cannot remove a characteristic entity from the rule type when it is used for defining criteria in a rule based auto pay instruction.

- Associate or remove one or more rule criteria derivation algorithm from the rule type, if required.

**Note:** You must associate the rule criteria derivation algorithm with the rule type when the **Rule Type Usage** field is set to **Auto Pay**.

- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the rule type are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a rule type	<a href="#">Searching for a Rule Type</a> on page 600
How to define input and output parameters for a rule type	<a href="#">Defining Input and Output Parameters for a Rule Type</a> on page 603
How to associate a characteristic entity with a rule type	<a href="#">Associating a Characteristic Entity with a Rule Type</a> on page 604
How to associate an algorithm with a rule type	<a href="#">Associating an Algorithm with a Rule Type</a> on page 605
<b>Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Rule Type</a> on page 611

**Deleting a Rule Type****Procedure**

To delete a rule type:

- Search for the rule type in the **Rule Type** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the rule type that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the rule type.

**Note:** You can delete a rule type only when the rule based auto pay instructions or business rules are not yet defined using the rule type.

- Click **OK**.

The rule type is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a rule type	<a href="#">Searching for a Rule Type</a> on page 600

## Copying a Rule Type

Instead of creating a rule type from scratch, you can create a new rule type using an existing rule type. This is possible through copying a rule type. On copying a rule type, the details including the input and output parameters, rule criteria characteristic entities, and rule criteria derivation algorithms are copied to the new rule type. You can then edit the details, if required.


### Prerequisites

To copy a rule type, you should have:

- Rule type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Values defined for the **C1\_RULE\_USAGE\_FLG** lookup field

### Procedure

To copy a rule type:

1. Search for the rule type in the **Rule Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** () icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the rule type whose copy you want to create.

The **Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the rule type.
- **Input and Output Parameters** - Used to define input and output parameters for the rule type.
- **Rule Criteria Characteristic Entities** - Used to indicate the entities whose characteristics you can use while defining rule based auto pay instructions using the rule type.

**Note:** This section appears only when you select the **Auto Pay** option from the **Rule Type Usage** list.

- **Rule Criteria Derivation Algorithms** - Used to attach algorithms which you want to use for deriving the following from the financial transaction:
  - Values of all those fields (such as, policy number, plan number, or price item) which are selected in the rule type as the input and output parameters
  - Characteristics of all those entities which are selected in the rule type as the rule criteria characteristic entities

**Note:** This section appears only when you select the **Auto Pay** option from the **Rule Type Usage** list.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type Usage	Used to indicate whether you want to use the rule type for defining rule based auto pay instructions or for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auto Pay</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> If you want to use the rule type for defining rule based auto pay instructions, you must set the rule type usage to <b>Auto Pay</b> . However, if you want to use the rule type for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items, you must leave this field blank.	
Description	Used to specify the description for the rule type.	Yes
Maximum Rule Count	Used to indicate the maximum number of rules that can be defined when the rule based auto pay instruction is created using the rule type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Auto Pay</b> option from the <b>Rule Type Usage</b> list.  The maximum rule count cannot be less than or equal to zero.	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define, edit, or remove input or output parameters from the rule type, if required.
- Associate or remove one or more characteristic entities from the rule type, if required.

**Note:** You must specify at least one input or output parameter when you want to use the rule type for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items. However, you must specify at least one input or output parameter or associate at least one characteristic entity when you want to use the rule type for defining rule based auto pay instructions.

- Associate the rule criteria derivation algorithm when you want to use the rule type for defining rule based auto pay instructions.

**Note:** You must associate the rule criteria derivation algorithm with the rule type when the **Rule Type Usage** field is set to **Auto Pay**.

- Click **Save**.

The new rule type is defined.

### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
How to search for a rule type	<a href="#">Searching for a Rule Type</a> on page 600
How to define input and output parameters for a rule type	<a href="#">Defining Input and Output Parameters for a Rule Type</a> on page 603
How to associate a characteristic entity with a rule type	<a href="#">Associating a Characteristic Entity with a Rule Type</a> on page 604

For more information on...	See...
How to associate an algorithm with a rule type	<a href="#">Associating an Algorithm with a Rule Type</a> on page 605

## Viewing the Rule Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a rule type:

1. Search for the rule type in the **Rule Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon in the **View** column corresponding to the rule type whose details you want to view.

The **Rule Type** screen appears.

3. View the details of the rule type in the **Rule Type** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a rule type	<a href="#">Searching for a Rule Type</a> on page 600
<b>Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Rule Type (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 611
<b>Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Rule Type</a>

## Rule Type (Used for Viewing)

The **Rule Type** screen allows you to view the details of the rule type. It contains the following zone:

- [Rule Type](#) on page 611

## Rule Type

The **Rule Type** zone displays the details of the rule type. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays basic information about the rule type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Rule Type	Displays the rule type.
Rule Type Usage	Indicates whether the rule type is used for defining rule based auto pay instructions or for defining business rules for mapping transactions with the price items.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the rule type usage is specified while defining the rule type.
Description	Displays the description of the rule type.
Maximum Rule Count	Indicates the maximum number of rules that can be defined when the rule based auto pay instruction is created using the rule type.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Rule Type Usage</b> field is set to <b>Auto Pay</b> .

- **Input and Output Parameters** - Lists the input and output parameters defined for the rule type. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence	Displays the sequence number of the input or output parameter.
Field	Indicates the field which is used as the input or output parameter.
Type	Indicates whether the field is used as input and/or output parameter while defining a business rule.
Search Zone	Indicates the search zone that is used for searching the field value while defining criteria for rule based auto pay instructions.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Zone</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the zone.

- **Rule Criteria Characteristic Entities** - This section contains the following column:

Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Entity	Indicates the entity whose characteristics can be used while defining criteria for rule based auto pay instructions. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adjustment</li> <li>• Billable Charge</li> <li>• Policy</li> <li>• Policy Plan</li> <li>• Price Item</li> </ul>

- **Rule Criteria Derivation Algorithms** - Lists the algorithms attached to the rule type. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence	Indicates the order in which the algorithm should be executed.
Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm attached to the rule type which derives the following from the financial transaction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Values of all those fields (such as, policy number, plan number, or price item) which are selected in the rule type as the input and output parameters</li> <li>• Characteristics of all those entities which are selected in the rule type as the rule criteria characteristic entities</li> </ul>

**Note:** The **Rule Criteria Characteristic Entities** and **Rule Criteria Derivation Algorithms** sections appear only when the **Rule Type Usage** field is set to **Auto Pay**.

You can edit the details of the rule type by clicking the **Edit** link in the upper-right corner of this zone.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Rule Type</a> on page 606



## Rule

The **Rule** screen allows you to define, edit, delete, and copy a rule. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search](#) on page 613




## Search


The **Search** zone allows you to search for a rule. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Code	Used to specify the rule code.	No
Rule Type	Used to specify the type of rule.	No
Description	Used to specify the description for the rule.	No
Rule Priority	Used to specify the priority of the rule.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the rule is effective.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Priority	Displays the priority of the rule.
Code	Displays the rule code.
Description	Displays the description of the rule.
Type	Displays the type of rule.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the rule is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the rule is effective.
Preprocessing Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered before executing the criteria in the rule. It pre-processes the input parameters and then returns processed values against which the criteria is validated.
Postprocessing Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered when the rule is true. It post-processes the output parameters and returns the updated values to the calling programs or dependent rules.
View	On clicking the <b>View</b> (  ) icon, the <b>View Rule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Edit Rule</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the rule.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the rule.
<b>Note:</b> You can delete a rule only if it is not used.	

Column Name	Column Description
Copy	On clicking the <b>Copy</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Copy Rule</b> screen appears where you can create a rule using an existing rule.

You can create a new rule by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a rule	<a href="#">Searching for a Rule</a> on page 614
How to view the details of a rule	<a href="#">Viewing the Rule Details</a> on page 627
How to define a rule	<a href="#">Defining a Rule</a> on page 614
How to edit a rule	<a href="#">Editing a Rule</a> on page 619
How to delete a rule	<a href="#">Deleting a Rule</a> on page 623
How to copy a rule	<a href="#">Copying a Rule</a> on page 624

## Searching for a Rule

### Procedure

To search for a rule:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Rule**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Rule** sub-menu.  
The **Rule** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of rules that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Rule</a> on page 613
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 613

## Defining a Rule

### Prerequisites

To define a rule, you should have:

- Rule types defined in the application
- Preprocessing and postprocessing algorithms, dependent rules, and parameters defined in the application in case you want to use any of them

### **Procedure**

To define a rule:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Rule**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Rule** sub-menu.

The **Add Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Code	Used to specify the rule code.	Yes
Rule Type	Used to specify the type of rule.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the rule.	Yes
Rule Priority	Used to specify the priority of the rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot define two rules with the same rule type and priority in the same duration.	
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the rule is effective.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the rule is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	
Preprocessing Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered before executing the criteria in the rule. It pre-processes the input parameters and then returns processed values against which the criteria is validated.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Postprocessing Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered when the rule is true. It post-processes the output parameters and returns the updated values to the calling programs or dependent rules.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	
Rule True Action	Used to indicate what should happen when all conditions in the rule are satisfied and returns <b>Rule is True</b> . The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> — Used to indicate that the dependent rule should be executed when the rule is true.</li> <li>• <b>Next Rule by Priority</b> — Used to indicate that the rule of the same rule type having lower priority should be executed when the rule is true.</li> <li>• <b>Success</b> — Used to indicate that no more rules should be executed when the rule is true. The output parameters and their values are returned to the calling programs.</li> </ul>	Yes
Dependent Rule	Used to specify the next dependent rule that must be executed when <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> is selected from the <b>Rule True Action</b> list.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you select <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> from the <b>Rule True Action</b> list.
Rule False Action	Used to indicate what should happen when any of the criteria in the rule is not satisfied and returns <b>Rule is False</b> . The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> — Used to indicate that the dependent rule should be executed when the rule is false.</li> <li>• <b>Next Rule by Priority</b> — Used to indicate that the rule of the same rule type having lower priority should be executed when the rule is false.</li> <li>• <b>Success</b> — Used to indicate that no more rules should be executed when the rule is false. The output parameters and their values are returned to the calling programs.</li> </ul>	Yes


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Dependent Rule	Used to specify the next dependent rule that must be executed when <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> is selected from the <b>Rule False Action</b> list.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you select <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> from the <b>Rule False Action</b> list.


In addition, it contains the following two sections:

- **Rule Output Parameters** — Used to specify the output parameters that must be returned to the calling programs or dependent rules when all conditions in the rule are satisfied. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Name	Used to specify the parameter.  <b>Note:</b> For more information about the output parameters that you can specify while defining a rule, see <a href="#">Transaction Validation and Initial Price Item Determination</a> .  The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Search Rule Type Field</b> window appears.	Yes
Parameter Value	Used to specify the value for the parameter.  <b>Note:</b> You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.	Yes

- **Criteria** — Used to define criteria for the rule. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Used to indicate the order in which the criteria should be executed in the rule.	Yes
Parameter Name	Used to indicate whether you want to specify a field or an algorithm as an input parameter. It also allows you to specify the field or algorithm name.  <b>Note:</b> If a business label is defined for a user defined field (that you have selected), the business label appears in the <b>Parameter Name</b> field.  The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Search Rule Type Field</b> window appears.	Yes
Operator	Used to specify the relational operator to define the relation between the parameter name and value.	Yes

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Value	Used to specify the parameter value.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b> You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&amp;), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Search Rule Type Field</b> window appears.</p>	
Is True	<p>Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is true (satisfied). The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check next condition</b> — Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is false</b> — Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is true</b> — Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>	Yes
Is False	<p>Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is false (not satisfied). The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check next condition</b> — Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is false</b> — Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is true</b> — Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>	Yes
Is Insufficient	<p>Used to indicate what should happen when the data is insufficient. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check next condition</b> — Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is false</b> — Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is true</b> — Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Add Rule** screen by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone in the **Rule** screen.

4. Enter the required details.

**Note:**

You can search for a parameter, dependent rule and an algorithm by clicking the **Search** (🔍) icon corresponding to the respective field.

If you want to associate more than one output parameter with the rule or define more than one criteria for the rule, click the **Add** (+) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove an output parameter or a criteria from the rule, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to it.

5. Click **Save**.

The rule is defined.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Rule</a> on page 613
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 613

**Editing a Rule****Prerequisites**

To edit a rule, you should have:

- Preprocessing and postprocessing algorithms, dependent rules, and parameters defined in the application in case you want to use any of them.

**Procedure**

To edit a rule:

1. Search for the rule in the **Rule** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the rule whose details you want to edit.

The **Edit Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Code	Used to specify the rule code.	Yes
Rule Type	Used to specify the type of rule.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the rule.	Yes
Rule Priority	Used to specify the priority of the rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot define two rules with the same rule type and priority in the same duration.	
Effective Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the rule is effective.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective End Date	Used to specify the date till when the rule is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The effective end date cannot be earlier than the effective start date.	
Preprocessing Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered before executing the criteria in the rule. It pre-processes the input parameters and then returns processed values against which the criteria is validated.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	
Postprocessing Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will be triggered when the rule is true. It post-processes the output parameters and returns the updated values to the calling programs or dependent rules.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	
Rule True Action	Used to indicate what should happen when all conditions in the rule are satisfied and returns <b>Rule is True</b> . The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> — Used to indicate that the dependent rule should be executed when the rule is true.</li> <li>• <b>Next Rule by Priority</b> — Used to indicate that the rule of the same rule type having lower priority should be executed when the rule is true.</li> <li>• <b>Success</b> — Used to indicate that no more rules should be executed when the rule is true. The output parameters and their values are returned to the calling programs.</li> </ul>	Yes
Dependent Rule	Used to specify the next dependent rule that must be executed when <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> is selected from the <b>Rule True Action</b> list.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you select <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> from the <b>Rule True Action</b> list.



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule False Action	Used to indicate what should happen when any of the criteria in the rule is not satisfied and returns <b>Rule is False</b> . The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Next Dependent Rule</b> — Used to indicate that the dependent rule should be executed when the rule is false.</li> <li><b>Next Rule by Priority</b> — Used to indicate that the rule of the same rule type having lower priority should be executed when the rule is false.</li> <li><b>Success</b> — Used to indicate that no more rules should be executed when the rule is false. The output parameters and their values are returned to the calling programs.</li> </ul>	Yes
Dependent Rule	Used to specify the next dependent rule that must be executed when <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> is selected from the <b>Rule False Action</b> list.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you select <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> from the <b>Rule False Action</b> list.



In addition, it contains the following two sections:

- **Rule Output Parameters** — Used to specify the output parameters that must be returned to the calling programs or dependent rules when all conditions in the rule are satisfied. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Name	Used to specify the parameter.  <b>Note:</b> For more information about the output parameters that you can specify while defining a rule, see <a href="#">Transaction Validation and Initial Price Item Determination</a> .  The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Search Rule Type Field</b> window appears.	Yes
Parameter Value	Used to specify the value for the parameter.  <b>Note:</b> You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.	Yes

- **Criteria** — Used to define criteria for the rule. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence Number	Used to indicate the order in which the criteria should be executed in the rule.	Yes

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Name	Used to indicate whether you want to specify a field or an algorithm as an input parameter. It also allows you to specify the field or algorithm name.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If a business label is defined for a user defined field (that you have selected), the business label appears in the <b>Parameter Name</b> field.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Search Rule Type Field</b> window appears.</p>	
Operator	Used to specify the relational operator to define the relation between the parameter name and value.	Yes
Parameter Value	Used to specify the parameter value.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b> You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&amp;), comma (,), underscore (_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Search Rule Type Field</b> window appears.</p>	
Is True	<p>Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is true (satisfied). The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check next condition</b> — Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is false</b> — Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is true</b> — Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>	Yes
Is False	<p>Used to indicate what should happen when the condition is false (not satisfied). The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check next condition</b> — Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is false</b> — Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is true</b> — Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>	Yes

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Is Insufficient	<p>Used to indicate what should happen when the data is insufficient. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check next condition</b> — Used to indicate that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is false</b> — Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is true</b> — Used to indicate that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Edit Rule** screen by clicking the **Edit** link in the **View Rule** screen.

3. Modify the required details.

**Note:** You can search for a parameter, dependent rule and an algorithm by clicking the **Search** (🔍) icon corresponding to the respective field.

4. Add or remove output parameters or criteria from the rule, if required.

**Note:** If you want to associate more than one output parameter with the rule or define more than one criteria for the rule, click the **Add** (+) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove an output parameter or a criteria from the rule, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to it.

5. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the rule are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Rule</a> on page 613
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 613

## Deleting a Rule

### Procedure

To delete a rule:

1. Search for the rule in the **Rule** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the rule that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the rule.

**Note:** You can delete a rule only if it is not used.

3. Click **OK**.

The rule is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Rule</a> on page 613
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 613

**Copying a Rule**

Instead of creating a rule from scratch, you can also create a new rule using an existing rule. You can do this by copying a rule. When you copy a rule, the output parameters and criteria defined for the original rule are copied to the new rule. You can then add or remove parameters or criteria from the new rule.

**Prerequisites**

To copy a rule, you should have:

- Rule (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Preprocessing and postprocessing algorithms, dependent rules, and parameters defined in the application in case you want to use any of them

**Procedure**

To copy a rule:


1. Search for the rule in the **Rule** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** () icon corresponding to the rule whose copy you want to create.



The **Copy Rule** screen appears.

3. Enter the new rule code and the description for the new rule.
4. Modify the required details.
5. Add or remove output parameters or criteria from the new rule.

**Note:**

You can specify any special characters except ampersand (&), comma (,), underscore (\_), equal to (=), tilde (~), and semi-colon(;) in the parameter value.

You can search for a parameter, dependent rule and an algorithm by clicking the **Search** () icon corresponding to the respective field.

If you want to associate more than one output parameter with the rule or define more than one criteria for the rule, click the **Add** () icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove an output parameter or a criteria from the rule, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to it.

For more information about the output parameters that you can specify while defining a rule, see [Transaction Validation and Initial Price Item Determination](#).

6. Click **Save**.

The new rule is defined.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Rule</a> on page 613

For more information on...	See...
Search zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 613
How to define a rule	<a href="#">Defining a Rule</a> on page 614

## View Rule

The **View Rule** screen allows you to view the details of a rule. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Rule Information](#) on page 625

### Rule Information

The **Rule Information** zone displays information about the rule. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Rule Code	Displays the rule code.
Rule Type	Indicates the type of rule.
Description	Displays the description of the rule.
Rule Priority	Indicates the priority of the rule.  <b>Note:</b> You can use the <b>Move Up</b> (↑) and <b>Move Down</b> (↓) icons corresponding to this field to view the details of a rule (having the same rule type) with a higher or lower priority. Note that this functionality is available only when you access the <b>View Rule</b> screen through the <b>Rule</b> screen.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the rule is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the rule is effective.
Preprocessing Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered before executing the criteria in the rule. It pre-processes the input parameters and then returns processed values against which the criteria is validated.
Postprocessing Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered after executing the criteria in the rule. It post-processes the output parameters and returns the updated values to the calling programs or dependent rules.
Rule True Action	Indicates what should happen when all conditions in the rule are satisfied and returns <b>Rule is True</b> .
Dependent Rule	Indicates the next dependent rule that must be executed when <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> is selected from the <b>Rule True Action</b> list.
Rule False Action	Indicates what should happen when any of the criteria in the rule is not satisfied and returns <b>Rule is False</b> .
Dependent Rule	Indicates the next dependent rule that must be executed when <b>Next Dependent Rule</b> is selected from the <b>Rule False Action</b> list.

In addition, it contains the following two sections:

- **Rule Output Parameters** — Lists the output parameters that must be returned to the calling programs or dependent rules when all conditions in the rule are satisfied. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter Name	Displays the name of the parameter. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to the <b>Field</b> screen.
Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter.

- **Criteria** — Lists the criteria defined in the rule. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence Number	Indicates the order in which the criteria should be executed in the rule.
Parameter Type	Indicates whether the input parameter is a field or an algorithm.
Parameter Name	Displays the field or algorithm name which is used as an input parameter.
Operator	Indicates the relational operator used to define the relation between the parameter name and value.
Parameter Value	Displays the parameter value.
Is True	Indicates what should happen when the condition is true (satisfied). The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check next condition</b> — Indicates that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is false</b> — Indicates that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is true</b> — Indicates that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>
Is False	Indicates what should happen when the condition is false (not satisfied). The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check next condition</b> — Indicates that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is false</b> — Indicates that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is true</b> — Indicates that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>
Is Insufficient	Indicates what should happen when the data is insufficient. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Check next condition</b> — Indicates that the condition with consecutive sequence number should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is false</b> — Indicates that the action specified in the <b>Rule False Action</b> field should be executed.</li> <li>• <b>Rule is true</b> — Indicates that the action specified in the <b>Rule True Action</b> field should be executed.</li> </ul>

The **Edit** link appears in the upper-right corner of the **Rule Information** zone. On clicking the **Edit** link, the **Edit Rule** screen appears where you can edit the details of the rule.


#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a rule	<a href="#">Viewing the Rule Details</a> on page 627

## Viewing the Rule Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a rule:

1. Search for the rule in the **Rule** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon in the **View** column corresponding to the rule whose details you want to view.

The **View Rule** screen appears.

3. View the details of the rule in the **Rule Information** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>View Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">View Rule</a> on page 625
<b>Rule Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Rule Information</a> on page 625
How to search for a rule	<a href="#">Searching for a Rule Type</a> on page 600

## Rule Check

The **Rule Check** screen allows you to validate whether rules of a particular rule type are executed as expected. On validating, it indicates the sequence in which all effective rules were executed, the total execution time, and the output parameters of the rule that was successfully executed. This screen consists of the following sections:

- Rule Type Input Parameters
- Rule Output Parameters
- Rule Execution

### Rule Type Input Parameters

The **Rule Type Input Parameters** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type.	Yes
Effective Date	Used when you want to execute the rules which are effective on a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the effective date, the system executes all rules which are effective on the system date.	
Parameter Name	Indicates the input parameter.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> The input parameters listed change depending on the rule type that you have selected.	
Parameter Value	Used to specify the value for the input parameter.	Yes

In addition, this section contains the **Check Rule** button. On clicking the button, you can validate the sequence in which the rules with the specified rule type are executed.

### **Rule Output Parameters**

The **Rule Output Parameters** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Status	Displays the status of the rule execution. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Success</b> — Indicates that one of the rule was successfully executed and returned the output parameters.</li> <li>• <b>Fail</b> — Indicates that none of the rules with the specified rule type were successfully executed.</li> <li>• <b>Error</b> — Indicates that an error occurred while executing a rule.</li> </ul>
Execution Time	Displays the total time taken to execute all effective rules with the specified rule type.
Error	Displays the error message indicating the error that occurred while executing a rule.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the status is <b>Error</b> .

In addition, this section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter Name	Displays the output parameter of the rule that was successfully executed.
Parameter Value	Displays the value of the output parameter.

### **Rule Execution**

The **Rule Execution** section indicates the sequence in which all effective rules with the specified rule type were executed. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Rule Code	Indicates the rule that was executed.
Rule Type	Indicates the type of rule.
Rule Priority	Indicates the priority of the rule.
Rule Status Flag	Indicates whether the rule was true or false.
Rule Next Action	Indicates the action that took place when the rule was true or false.

## **Rule Check**

The **Rule Check** zone allows you to validate whether rules of a particular rule type are executed as expected. It indicates the sequence in which all effective rules were executed along with the total execution time. This zone consists of the following sections:

- **Rule Type Input Parameters** — This sections contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type.	Yes
Effective Date	Used when you want to execute the rules which are effective on a particular date.	No



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter Name	Indicates the input parameter.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> The input parameters listed change depending on the rule type that you have selected.	
Parameter Value	Used to specify the value for the input parameter.	Yes

In addition, this section contains the **Check Rule** button. On clicking the button, you can validate the sequence in which the rules with the specified rule type are executed.

- **Rule Output Parameters** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Status	Displays the status of the rule execution. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Success</b> — Indicates that one of the rule was successfully executed and returned the output parameters.</li> <li>• <b>Fail</b> — Indicates that none of the rules with the specified rule type were successfully executed.</li> <li>• <b>Error</b> — Indicates that an error occurred while executing a rule.</li> </ul>
Execution Time	Displays the total time taken to execute a set of rules.
Error	Displays the error message indicating the error that occurred while executing a rule.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the status is <b>Error</b> .

In addition, this section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parameter Name	Displays the output parameter of the rule that was successfully executed.
Parameter Value	Displays the value of the output parameter.

- **Rule Execution** — Indicates the sequence in which the rules with the specified rule type were executed. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Rule Code	Displays the rule code.
Rule Type	Displays the type of rule.
Rule Priority	Displays the priority of the rule.
Rule Status Flag	Indicates whether the rule was true or false.
Rule Next Action	Indicates the action that took place when the rule was true or false.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Rule Check</b> screen	<a href="#">Rule Check</a> on page 627



---

# Chapter

# 7

---

## Alternate Sequential Bill Numbers

---

### Topics:

- [Sequential Bill Number Generation Algorithms](#)
- [Enabling the Alternate Sequential Bill Numbers Feature](#)

Each bill is uniquely identified by its bill ID. Bill ID is a random, system-generated number. In some locales, bills have an additional identifier known as alternate sequential bill number. Alternate sequential bill numbers are system-generated, sequential numbers. For example, the first bill generated by the system is assigned a sequential bill number of 1, the next bill is assigned a value of 2, and so on.

If you want to generate alternate sequential bill numbers, you must select the **Use Sequential Bill Numbers** check box in the **Billing** tab of the **Installation Options** screen. However, you can only generate alternate sequential bill numbers for bills that are complete and for which the alternate sequential bill numbers are not yet generated.

You can configure the application to generate alternate sequential bill numbers which are either unique throughout the system or within the division. The **Assign Sequential Bill Numbers (ASSGNSBN)** batch allows you to generate alternate sequential bill numbers for completed bills. You need to configure this batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. For more information about the batch, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

## Sequential Bill Number Generation Algorithms

The following table lists the sequential bill number generation algorithm types shipped with the product:

If you want to generate...	Then create algorithm using the following algorithm type....
Alternate sequential bill numbers unique throughout the system	<a href="#">C1_ALTBLLSYS</a> on page 632
Alternate sequential bill numbers unique within the division	<a href="#">C1_ALTBLDV</a> on page 635
Alternate sequential bill numbers unique throughout the system and in the required format using a set of parameters	<a href="#">C1_ALTBLSYS1</a> on page 632 <b>Note:</b> The alternate sequential bill number will be unique throughout the system only when you configure the algorithm parameters appropriately.
Alternate sequential bill numbers unique within the division and in the required format using a set of parameters	<a href="#">C1_ALTBLDIV1</a> on page 635 <b>Note:</b> The alternate sequential bill number will be unique within the division only when you configure the algorithm parameters appropriately.

### C1\_ALTBLLSYS

The **C1\_ALTBLLSYS** algorithm type is used to generate alternate bill ID for a completed bill. The alternate bill ID is sequenced using the sequence number, and is unique throughout the system. This algorithm type does not have any parameters.

### C1\_ALTBLSYS1

The **C1\_ALTBLSYS1** algorithm type is used to generate alternate bill ID for a completed bill. You can generate alternate bill ID in the required format using the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
'X'	Here, X stands for a separator. For example, ','. The separator must be enclosed within single quotes. It will act as a delimiter in the alternate sequential bill number.
CIS_DIVISION	The division to which the account belongs. It is retrieved from the bill. It should not be more than five characters.
BILL_CYC_CD	The bill cycle of the account for which the bill is generated. It is retrieved from the bill. It should not be more than four characters.

Parameter	Description
ACCT_IDENTIFIER=<Account_Identifier_Type>,<CharStartPosition>,<CharCount>	<p>Here, you need to specify the following information separated by a comma:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>&lt;Account_Identifier_Type&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the account identifier type whose value must be used to generate the alternate sequential bill number.</li> <li>• <b>&lt;CharStartPosition&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the starting position from where you want to extract the characters from the account identifier. If you do not specify the starting position, by default, it is set to zero (0) (i.e. from the first character).</li> <li>• <b>&lt;CharCount&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the number of characters that you want to extract from the account identifier. If you do not specify the count, by default, it is set to five.</li> </ul>
CHARACC=<Characteristic_Type>,<CharStartPosition>,<CharCount>	<p>Here, you need to specify the following information separated by a comma:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>&lt;Characteristic_Type&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the account's characteristic whose value must be used to generate the alternate sequential bill number.</li> <li>• <b>&lt;CharStartPosition&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the starting position from where you want to extract the characters from the characteristic value. If you do not specify the starting position, by default, it is set to zero (0) (i.e. from the first character).</li> <li>• <b>&lt;CharCount&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the number of characters that you want to extract from the characteristic value. If you do not specify the count, by default, it is set to five.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If the same characteristic is defined multiple times for an account, the characteristic value which is effective on the batch business date is considered.</p>

Parameter	Description
CHARPER=<Characteristic_Type>,<CharStartPosition>,<CharCount>	<p>Here, you need to specify the following information separated by a comma:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>&lt;Characteristic_Type&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the person's characteristic whose value must be used to generate the alternate sequential bill number.</li> <li>• <b>&lt;CharStartPosition&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the starting position from where you want to extract the characters from the characteristic value. If you do not specify the starting position, by default, it is set to zero (0) (i.e. from the first character).</li> <li>• <b>&lt;CharCount&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the number of characters that you want to extract from the characteristic value. If you do not specify the count, by default, it is set to five.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If the same characteristic is defined multiple times for an account, the characteristic value which is effective on the batch business date is considered.</p>
BILL_DT=MMddyy	<p>The date when the bill is created for the account. It should not be more than six characters. You can use the following patterns in the date format:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “yyyy” or “yy” for year</li> <li>• “MM” or “M” for month</li> <li>• “dd” or “d” for day</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The date format should either start or end with the year.</p>
SEQ_NBR	The sequence number generated by the database. It should not be more than 12 characters.
FIXED_SUFFIX=XX	Here, X stands for a letter or a group of letters that you want to add at the end of the alternate sequential bill number.
LEFT_PADDING_CHAR=ZERO LEFT_PADDING_CHAR=SPACE	or Indicates whether you want to add zero or space when the number of characters derived from the account's or person's characteristic value is less than the character count. The padding is added to the left.

You can specify the above mentioned parameters against any of the following parameters available in the **C1\_ALTBLSYS1** algorithm type:

- Field1
- Field2
- Field3
- Field4
- Field5
- Field6
- Field7

- Field8
- Field9
- Field10

None of these algorithm type parameters are mandatory. The system will concatenate the parameter values and then generate alternate bill ID in the required format. For example, if you created the algorithm using the following parameters:

- Field1 — CIS\_DIVISION
- Field2 — ‘|’
- Field3 — SEQ\_NBR
- Field4 — ‘-’
- Field5 — FIXED\_SUFFIX=01

In this case, the system will generate the alternate bill ID in the CIS\_DIVISION|SEQ\_NBR-01 format. For example, DIV1|12345678-01. If you want to generate unique alternate bill ID, we recommend you to use the **SEQ\_NBR** parameter while creating an algorithm using the **C1\_ALTBLSYS1** algorithm type.

Note that if you do not specify the value for any parameters while creating an algorithm using the **C1\_ALTBLSYS1** algorithm type, the system will generate the alternate bill ID using the sequence number.

While specifying the value for these parameters, you need to ensure that the length of the alternate bill ID should not exceed 30 characters. An algorithm named **C1\_ALTBLSYS1** is already shipped with the product. You can create custom algorithms using the **C1\_ALTBLSYS1** algorithm type to design the required alternate bill ID format using the above mentioned parameters.

## C1\_ALTBLDV

The **C1\_ALTBLDV** algorithm type is used to generate alternate bill ID for a completed bill which is unique within the division. For example, two bills (such as B1 and B2) belonging to the same division (such as D1) cannot have the same alternate bill ID. However, two bills (such as B1 and B2) belonging to different divisions, (such as D1 and D2) can have the same alternate bill ID.

This algorithm type contains the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Initial Bill Sequence Number	Used to specify the initial alternate bill ID that you want to use while sequencing.  <b>Note:</b> If you do not specify any value for this parameter, by default, the system will generate the initial alternate bill ID for sequencing.	No

## C1\_ALTBLDIV1

The **C1\_ALTBLDIV1** algorithm type is used to generate alternate bill ID for a completed bill. You can generate alternate bill ID in the required format using the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
‘X’	Here, X stands for a separator. For example, ‘.’. The separator must be enclosed within single quotes. It will act as a delimiter in the alternate sequential bill number.
CIS_DIVISION	The division to which the account belongs. It is retrieved from the bill. It should not be more than five characters.

Parameter	Description
BILL_CYC_CD	The bill cycle of the account for which the bill is generated. It is retrieved from the bill. It should not be more than four characters.
ACCT_IDENTIFIER=<Account_Identifier_Type>,<CharStartPosition>,<CharCount>	<p>Here, you need to specify the following information separated by a comma:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>&lt;Account_Identifier_Type&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the account identifier type whose value must be used to generate the alternate sequential bill number.</li> <li>• <b>&lt;CharStartPosition&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the starting position from where you want to extract the characters from the account identifier. If you do not specify the starting position, by default, it is set to zero (0) (i.e. from the first character).</li> <li>• <b>&lt;CharCount&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the number of characters that you want to extract from the account identifier. If you do not specify the count, by default, it is set to five.</li> </ul>
CHARACC=<Characteristic_Type>,<CharStartPosition>,<CharCount>	<p>Here, you need to specify the following information separated by a comma:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>&lt;Characteristic_Type&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the account's characteristic whose value must be used to generate the alternate sequential bill number.</li> <li>• <b>&lt;CharStartPosition&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the starting position from where you want to extract the characters from the characteristic value. If you do not specify the starting position, by default, it is set to zero (0) (i.e. from the first character).</li> <li>• <b>&lt;CharCount&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the number of characters that you want to extract from the characteristic value. If you do not specify the count, by default, it is set to five.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If the same characteristic is defined multiple times for an account, the characteristic value which is effective on the batch business date is considered.</p>



Parameter	Description
CHARPER=<Characteristic_Type>,<CharStartPosition>,<CharCount>	<p>Here, you need to specify the following information separated by a comma:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>&lt;Characteristic_Type&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the person's characteristic whose value must be used to generate the alternate sequential bill number.</li> <li>• <b>&lt;CharStartPosition&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the starting position from where you want to extract the characters from the characteristic value. If you do not specify the starting position, by default, it is set to zero (0) (i.e. from the first character).</li> <li>• <b>&lt;CharCount&gt;</b> - Used to indicate the number of characters that you want to extract from the characteristic value. If you do not specify the count, by default, it is set to five.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If the same characteristic is defined multiple times for an account, the characteristic value which is effective on the batch business date is considered.</p>
BILL_DT=MMddyy	<p>The date when the bill is created for the account. It should not be more than six characters. You can use the following patterns in the date format:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “yyyy” or “yy” for year</li> <li>• “MM” or “M” for month</li> <li>• “dd” or “d” for day</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The date format should either start or end with the year.</p>
FIXED_SUFFIX=XX	Here, X stands for a letter or a group of letters that you want to add at the end of the alternate sequential bill number.
LEFT_PADDING_CHAR=ZERO LEFT_PADDING_CHAR=SPACE	<p>or</p> <p>Indicates whether you want to add zero or space when the number of characters derived from the account's or person's characteristic value is less than the character count. The padding is added to the left.</p>

You can specify the above mentioned parameters against any of the following parameters available in the **C1\_ALTBLDIV1** algorithm type:

- Field1
- Field2
- Field3
- Field4
- Field5
- Field6
- Field7
- Field8
- Field9

- Field10

None of these algorithm type parameters are mandatory. The system will concatenate the parameter values and then generate alternate bill ID in the required format. For example, if you created the algorithm using the following parameters:

- Field1 — CIS\_DIVISION
- Field2 — ‘|’
- Field3 — BILL\_DT=MMddyy
- Field4 — ‘-’
- Field5 — FIXED\_SUFFIX=01

In this case, the system will generate the alternate bill ID in the CIS\_DIVISION|MMddyy-01 format. For example, DIV1|110501-01. Note that if you do not specify the value for any of these algorithm type parameters, the system will not generate the alternate bill ID for a completed bill.

While specifying the value for these parameters, you need to ensure that the length of the alternate bill ID should not exceed 30 characters. An algorithm named **C1\_ALTBLDIV1** is already shipped with the product. You can create custom algorithms using the **C1\_ALTBLDIV1** algorithm type to design the required alternate bill ID format using the above mentioned parameters.

## Enabling the Alternate Sequential Bill Numbers Feature

### Prerequisites

To enable the alternate sequential bill numbers feature, you should have:

- An algorithm created using the **C1\_ALTBLLSYS**, **C1\_ALTBLSYS1**, **C1\_ALTBLDV**, or **C1\_ALTBLDIV1** algorithm type depending on which you want to use for alternate sequential bill number generation

### Procedure

To enable the alternate sequential bill numbers feature:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **I** and then click **Installation Options**.  
The **Installation Options** screen appears.
3. Click the **Billing** tab.  
The **Billing** tab appears.
4. Select the **Use Sequential Bill Numbers** check box to indicate that you want to generate alternate sequential bill numbers for completed bills.  
The **Sequential Invoice** field is enabled.
5. Select the **System-wide** or **Division-specific** option from the **Sequential Invoice** list depending on whether you want alternate sequential bill numbers to be unique throughout the system or within the division.
6. Do either of the following:

If you want to generate...	Then
Alternate sequential bill numbers unique throughout the system	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Attach an algorithm created using the <b>C1_ALTBLLSYS</b> algorithm type to the <b>Sequence Generation Algorithm</b> field to indicate how the alternate bill numbers which are unique throughout the system should be sequenced.</li></ol>

If you want to generate...	Then
	<div> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Sequence Generation Algorithm</b> field is enabled only when you select the <b>System-wide</b> option from the <b>Sequential Invoice</b> list.</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Save</b> button in the <b>Page Title</b> area. The changes made to the installation options are saved.</li> </ol>
Alternate sequential bill numbers unique within the division	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Save</b> button in the <b>Page Title</b> area. The changes made to the installation options are saved.</li> <li>Search for the division, whose accounts' bills should have alternate sequential bill numbers unique within the division, in the <b>Division</b> screen. The <b>Division</b> screen appears.</li> <li>Click the <b>Algorithms</b> tab. The <b>Algorithms</b> tab appears.</li> <li>Select the <b>Sequential Bill Number Generation</b> option from the <b>Division Algorithm Entity</b> list.</li> <li>Enter the sequence number to indicate the order in which the algorithms with the same entity should be executed.</li> <li>Attach an algorithm created using the <b>C1_ALTBOLDV</b> algorithm type to the respective field to indicate how alternate bill numbers which are unique within the division should be sequenced.</li> <li>Click the <b>Save</b> button in the <b>Page Title</b> area. The changes made to the division are saved.</li> </ol>
Alternate sequential bill numbers unique throughout the system and in the required format using a set of parameters	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Attach an algorithm created using the <b>C1_ALTBLSYS1</b> algorithm type to the <b>Sequence Generation Algorithm</b> field to indicate how the alternate bill numbers which are unique throughout the system should be generated.</li> </ol> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Sequence Generation Algorithm</b> field is enabled only when you select the <b>System-wide</b> option from the <b>Sequential Invoice</b> list.</p> <p>The alternate sequential bill number will be unique throughout the system only when you configure the algorithm parameters appropriately.</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Save</b> button in the <b>Page Title</b> area. The changes made to the installation options are saved.</li> </ol>

If you want to generate...	Then
Alternate sequential bill numbers unique within the division and in the required format using a set of parameters	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Save</b> button in the <b>Page Title</b> area. The changes made to the installation options are saved.</li> <li>Search for the division, whose accounts' bills should have alternate sequential bill numbers unique within the division, in the <b>Division</b> screen. The <b>Division</b> screen appears.</li> <li>Click the <b>Algorithms</b> tab. The <b>Algorithms</b> tab appears.</li> <li>Select the <b>Sequential Bill Number Generation</b> option from the <b>Division Algorithm Entity</b> list.</li> <li>Enter the sequence number to indicate the order in which the algorithms with the same entity should be executed.</li> <li>Attach an algorithm created using the <b>C1_ALTBLDIV1</b> algorithm type to the respective field to indicate how the alternate bill numbers which are unique within the division should be generated.</li> </ol> <div> <b>Note:</b> The alternate sequential bill number will be unique within the division only when you configure the algorithm parameters appropriately. </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Save</b> button in the <b>Page Title</b> area. The changes made to the division are saved.</li> </ol>

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Alternate Sequential Bill Numbers	<a href="#">Alternate Sequential Bill Numbers</a> on page 631
Sequential Bill Number Generation Algorithms	<a href="#">Sequential Bill Number Generation Algorithms</a> on page 632

---

# Chapter

# 8

---

## Transaction Feed Management

---

### Topics:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Transaction Rating Before Billing](#)
- [Transaction Aggregation](#)
- [Transaction Aggregation Batch Processing](#)
- [Transaction Disaggregation](#)
- [Transaction Disaggregation Batch Processing](#)
- [Reseeding](#)
- [Transaction Cancellation](#)
- [Transaction Cancellation Batch Processing](#)
- [Transaction Rollback](#)
- [Feed Status Transition](#)
- [Transaction Status Transition](#)
- [Transaction Leg Status Transition](#)
- [Transaction Data File](#)
- [Error List](#)
- [Feed Management Dashboard](#)
- [View Billed Transactions](#)
- [Transaction Details](#)
- [Transaction Source](#)
- [Transaction Record Type](#)
- [Transaction Aggregation Rule](#)
- [Schedule](#)
- [Disaggregation Request](#)
- [Accumulation Data](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides you with a facility to upload banking and Administrative Services Only (ASO) transactions received from various product processors or applications for billing. You can use the **File Upload Interface** feature to upload transaction data files in the following formats:

- Comma Separated Values
- JavaScript Object Notation
- Fixed Position
- Pipe Separated Values
- Tilde Separated Values
- Extensible Markup Language

For more information on how to upload the data using the **File Upload Interface** feature, refer to the respective feature documentation. Once the transaction data is uploaded in the system, you need to:

- Validate Header Details
- Validate Transaction Details and Determine Initial Product
- Verify Price Item Pricing
- Rate Transactions Before Billing (if required)
- Create and Update Billable Charge with the SQI values
- Clean-up Unwanted Data

The system provides the flexibility to rate the transactions either prior to billing or during billing. Based on the business requirements, you can configure the system such that transactions mapped to some price item can be rated at a frequency which is different than the account's billing frequency. For example, daily, weekly, etc. During the transaction feed management process, each transaction goes through various statuses until it is billed to the person. For more information about the transaction statuses, see [Transaction Status Transition](#) on page 696.

The transaction feed management process includes the following sub-processes:

- [Transaction Aggregation](#)
- [Transaction Disaggregation](#) on page 678
- [Transaction Cancellation](#) on page 689
- [Transaction Rollback](#) on page 693

## Prerequisites

---

To setup the transaction feed management process, you need to do the following:

- Define the required transaction sources in the system
- Define the required transaction record types for each transaction source
- Associate the required SQIs with a price item —division combination
- Define the required transaction aggregation rule for each SQI
- Define the aggregation schedules in the system
- Define the required rules in the system to determine initial price item for transactions
- Attach a validation algorithm to each account identifier type (to ensure that the account identifier type and account identifier combination is unique in or across divisions)
- Attach the **Price Assignment Search** algorithm to each division
- Define the **TFM - Processing Date** characteristic for each division
- Create an algorithm of the **C1\_CURALGTFM** algorithm type and attach it to the **TFM - Currency Conversion** algorithm spot of the division for which you want to enable the currency conversion feature
- Define the required exchange rates for currency conversion
- Define values for the PAGE\_NUMBER lookup field
- Create an algorithm of the **C1\_RTCL\_POPC** algorithm type and attach it to the **TFM - Rate Post-Processing** algorithm spot of the required division

Besides this, you need to setup the following feature configurations:

- *Rule Engine (C1\_RLENG)*
- *Dummy Header (C1-TXNDMYID)*
- *Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1\_PPARM\_FLG)*
- *Feed Management (C1\_FM)*

## Transaction Rating Before Billing

---

The system provides the flexibility to rate the transaction legs either prior to billing or during billing. Based on the business requirements, you can configure the system such that transactions mapped to some price items can be rated at a frequency which is different than the account's billing frequency. For example, daily, weekly, etc. This will help to reduce the performance issues which are caused when large volume of transactions are rated at the time of billing.

The system offers the following ways in which a transaction leg can be priced, rated and billed:

1. **Rate the Transaction Leg During Billing** – In this approach, you can use either of the following ways:
  - a. Determine effective pricing for a transaction leg, create a billable charge for the transaction leg, and then determine the rate during billing.
  - b. Determine effective pricing for a transaction leg, create a billable charge for aggregated transaction legs, and then determine the rate during billing.
2. **Rate the Transaction Leg Prior to Billing** – In this approach, you can use either of the following ways:
  - a. Determine effective pricing and rate for a transaction leg, and accumulate pre-calculated charges in a pass through billable charge based on the distribution code, currency code, description on bill, aggregation

parameter group ID (which is created based on the rate component characteristics). The pass through billable charge is then billed during billing.

- b. Determine effective pricing for a transaction leg, aggregate the transaction legs, determine rate for aggregated service quantities, and then accumulate pre-calculated charges in a pass through billable charge based on the distribution code, currency code, description on bill, aggregation parameter group ID (which is created based on the rate component characteristics). The pass through billable charge is then billed during billing.
- c. Determine effective pricing and rate for a transaction leg and create a pass through billable charge for the transaction leg which is billed during billing.

**3. Ignore the Transaction Leg for Billing** – In this approach, you can use either of the following ways:

- a. Determine effective pricing for a transaction leg, but the billable charge is not created for the transaction leg.
- b. Determine effective pricing and rate for a transaction leg, but the billable charge is not created for the transaction leg.

**Note:**

Once the rate is determined for transaction legs, a set of rate component characteristics and their values are grouped. For example, if a price assignment has the following rate components, the system creates two groups — Group A and Group B:

- RC1, Char1=Y, Char2=Y
- RC2, Char1=N, Char2=Y
- RC3, Char1=Y, Char2=Y

Group A contains Char1=Y, Char2=Y and Group B contains Char1=N, Char2=Y. These groups are used for accumulating pre-calculated charges. A unique aggregation parameter group ID is generated for each group. If a group with a set of rate component characteristics and their values already exists in the system, a new group is not created. Instead, the existing group is used for accumulating pre-calculated charges. The aggregation parameter group ID is created only when you attach an algorithm of the **C1\_RTCL\_POPC** algorithm type on the **TFM - Rate Post-Processing** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. Note that the system invokes the algorithm which is attached on the derived account's division and not on the division to which the transaction belongs.

While defining a price item pricing, you need to specify the rating criteria which indicates how and when you want to rate the transaction legs. The valid values are:

- Do Not Rate Transactions (DNRT)
- Aggregate transactions and then rate aggregated SQs (AGTR)
- Rate individual transactions and aggregate calc lines across transactions (RITA)
- Rate Transactions (RITX)

Along with the **Rating Criteria** field, the **Ignore Transaction** and **Aggregate Transaction** fields help the system to determine how and when the corresponding transaction leg must be rated. The following table indicates how to configure the system in order to use the above mentioned ways:

Transaction Rating Approach and Way	Ignore Transaction (Yes or No)	Aggregate Transaction (Yes or No)	Rating Criteria	Batch in which the Rate is Determined
3a	Yes	Not applicable	Do Not Rate Transactions (DNRT)	Not applicable because ignored transactions are not considered for billing.

Transaction Rating Approach and Way	Ignore Transaction (Yes or No)	Aggregate Transaction (Yes or No)	Rating Criteria	Batch in which the Rate is Determined
3b	Yes	Not applicable	Rate Transactions (RITX)	Update Status (C1-TXNEX)
1b	No	Yes	Do Not Rate Transactions (DNRT)	Not applicable because the rate is determined during billing.
2b	No	Yes	Aggregate transactions and then rate aggregated SQs (AGTR)	Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)
2a	No	Yes	Rate individual transactions and aggregate calc lines across transactions (RITA)	Update Status (C1-TXNEX)
1a	No	No	Do Not Rate Transactions (DNRT)	Not applicable because the rate is determined during billing.
2c	No	No	Rate Transactions (RITX)	Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)

Let us understand the following transaction rating ways with the help of an example:

- 2a
- 2b
- 2c

The following table lists the account, price item, and price item parameters combination to which transaction T1 and T2 are mapped:

Transaction	Transaction Volume	Transaction Date	Account	Price Item	Price Item Parameter Group ID	Price Assignment ID	Aggregation Schedule
T1	300	01/01/2015	A1	P1	PG1	PA1	Monthly
T1	300	01/01/2015	A2	P1	PG1	PA2	Monthly
T2	200	15/01/2015	A1	P1	PG1	PA1	Monthly
T2	200	15/01/2015	A3	P1	PG1	PA3	Monthly

The following table lists the rate components available on the PA1, PA2, and PA3 price assignments:



Transaction	Price Assignment ID	Rate Component	Currency Code	Distribution Code	Description on Bill	Aggregation Parameter Group ID (Rate Component's Characteristics)
T1	PA1	RC1-0.1*Transaction Volume	USD	BK-AR1	XYZ	Char1=Y
T1	PA1	RC2-0.2*Transaction Volume	USD	BK-AR2	ABC	Char2=Y
T1	PA2	RC3-0.3*Transaction Volume	USD	BK-AR3	XYZ	Char1=Y
T1	PA2	RC4-0.2*Transaction Volume	USD	BK-AR4	ABC	Char2=Y
T2	PA1	RC1-0.1*Transaction Volume	USD	BK-AR1	XYZ	Char1=Y
T2	PA1	RC2-0.2*Transaction Volume	USD	BK-AR2	ABC	Char2=Y
T2	PA3	RC3-0.3*Transaction Volume	USD	BK-AR3	XYZ	Char1=Y
T2	PA3	RC4-0.2*Transaction Volume	USD	BK-AR3	XYZ	Char1=Y

Now, if you use **RITA (2a)** approach, the system will rate a transaction leg and accumulate pre-calculated charges in a pass through billable charge based on the distribution code, currency code, description on bill, aggregation parameter group ID, as shown in the following table:

Billable Charge	Start Date	End Date	Transaction Leg	Rate Component	Calculation Details	Pass Through Charge (\$)	Comments
BC1	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	T1– A1P1PG1– PA1, T2– A1P1PG1– PA1	RC1	$300 * 0.1 = 30$ , $200 * 0.1 = 20$	$30 + 20 = 50$	The pass through charge is calculated for each transaction leg and then accumulated because the distribution code, currency code, description on bill, and characteristics of the rate components are same.

Billable Charge	Start Date	End Date	Transaction Leg	Rate Component	Calculation Details	Pass Through Charge (\$)	Comments
BC1	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	T1– A1P1PG1– PA1, T2– A1P1PG1– PA1	RC2	$300 \times 0.2 = 60$ , $200 \times 0.2 = 40$	$60 + 40 = 100$	The pass through charge is calculated for each transaction leg and then accumulated because the distribution code, currency code, description on bill, and characteristics of the rate components are same.
BC2	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	T1– A2P1PG1– PA2	RC3	$300 \times 0.3 = 90$	90	The pass through charge is calculated for the transaction leg.
BC2	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	T1– A2P1PG1– PA2	RC4	$300 \times 0.2 = 60$	60	The pass through charge is calculated for the transaction leg.
BC3	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	T2– A3P1PG1– PA3	RC3, RC4	$200 \times 0.3 = 60$ , $200 \times 0.2 = 40$	$60 + 40 = 100$	The pass through charges are calculated for the transaction leg and then accumulated because the distribution code, currency code, description on bill, and characteristics of the rate components are same.

In the above example, the BC1 and BC2 will have two pass through lines, whereas the BC3 will have one pass through line.

Now, if you use **RITX (2c)** approach, the system will rate a transaction leg and calculate charges for each transaction leg in a separate pass through billable charge, as shown in the following table:

Billable Charge	Start Date	End Date	Transaction Leg	Rate Component	Calculation Details	Pass Through Charge (\$)	Comments
BC1	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	T1-A1P1PG1-PA1	RC1	$300 * 0.1 = 30$	30	The pass through charge is calculated for the transaction leg.
BC1	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	T1-A1P1PG1-PA1	RC2	$300 * 0.2 = 60$	60	The pass through charge is calculated for the transaction leg.
BC2	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	T1-A2P1PG1-PA2	RC3	$300 * 0.3 = 90$	90	The pass through charge is calculated for the transaction leg.
BC2	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	T1-A2P1PG1-PA2	RC4	$300 * 0.2 = 60$	60	The pass through charge is calculated for the transaction leg.
BC3	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	T2-A1P1PG1-PA1	RC1	$200 * 0.1 = 20$	20	The pass through charge is calculated for the transaction leg.
BC3	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	T2-A1P1PG1-PA1	RC2	$200 * 0.2 = 40$	40	The pass through charge is calculated for the transaction leg.
BC4	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	T2-A3P1PG1-PA3	RC3, RC4	$200 * 0.3 = 60$ , $200 * 0.2 = 40$	$60 + 40 = 100$	The pass through charges are calculated for the transaction leg and then accumulated because the distribution code, currency code, description on bill, and characteristics of the rate components are same.

In the above example, the BC1, BC2, and BC3 will have two pass through lines, whereas the BC4 will have one pass through line.

Now, if you use **AGTR (2b)** approach, the system will determine effective pricing for a transaction leg, aggregate the transaction legs, determine rate for aggregated service quantities, and then accumulate pre-calculated charges in a pass through billable charge based on the distribution code, currency code, description on bill, aggregation parameter group ID (which is created based on the rate component characteristics), as shown in the following table:

Account- Price Item- Price Item Parameter Group- Price Assignment- Aggregation Schedule	Total Transaction Volume	Billable Charge	Start Date	End Date	Rate Component	Calculation Details	Pass Through Charge (\$)	Comments
A1P1PG1- PA1- Monthly	300+200 = 500	BC1	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	RC1	500*0.1 = 50	50	The transaction volume of T1 and T2 legs having the same price item and price item parameters combination and whose transaction date falls between the aggregation schedule is first aggregated and then pass through charge is calculated for aggregated service quantities.

Account- Price Item- Price Item Parameter Group- Price Assignment- Aggregation Schedule	Total Transaction Volume	Billable Charge	Start Date	End Date	Rate Component	Calculation Details	Pass Through Charge (\$)	Comments
A1P1PG1- PA1- Monthly	300+200 = 500	BC1	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	RC2	500*0.2 = 100	100	The transaction volume of T1 and T2 legs having the same price item and price item parameters combination and whose transaction date falls between the aggregation schedule is first aggregated and then pass through charge is calculated for aggregated service quantities.
A2P1PG1- PA2- Monthly	300	BC2	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	RC3	300*0.3 = 90	90	The pass through charge is calculated for the transaction leg.
A2P1PG1- PA2- Monthly	300	BC2	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	RC4	300*0.2 = 60	60	The pass through charge is calculated for the transaction leg.

Account- Price Item- Price Item Parameter Group- Price Assignment- Aggregation Schedule	Total Transaction Volume	Billable Charge	Start Date	End Date	Rate Component	Calculation Details	Pass Through Charge (\$)	Comments
A3P1PG1- PA3- Monthly	200	BC3	01/01/2015	31/01/2015	RC3, RC4	$200 * 0.3 = 60,$ $200 * 0.2 = 40$	$60 + 40 = 100$	The pass through charges are calculated for the transaction leg and then accumulated because the distribution code, currency code, description on bill, and characteristics of the rate components are same.

In the above example, the BC1 and BC2 will have two pass through lines, whereas the BC3 will have one pass through line.

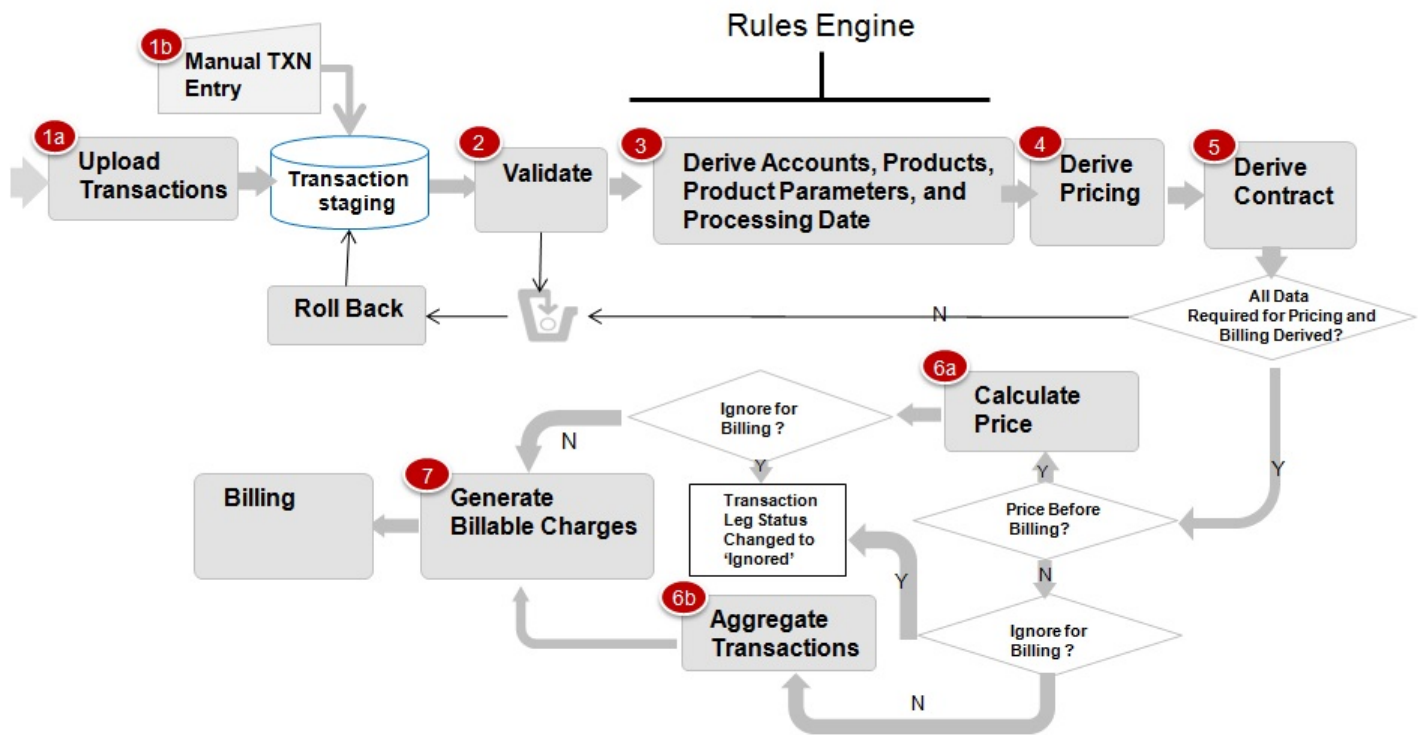
## Transaction Aggregation

---

The transaction aggregation process includes the following sub-processes:

- [Header Validation](#) on page 651
- [Transaction Validation and Initial Price Item Determination](#) on page 653
- [Price Item Pricing Verification](#) on page 664
- [Aggregation](#) on page 669
- [Clean Up](#) on page 673

The following figure graphically explains the transaction aggregation process:



## Header Validation

Once the file is uploaded in the system, you can execute the **Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)** batch to validate the file or header level information. It checks whether:

- Transaction Header ID and Transaction Source is available in the header.
- At least one transaction record is available in the file.
- The number of transaction records in the file matches the total transaction records in the header.
- The sum of transaction amount matches the total transaction amount in the header.
- The sum of transaction volume matches the total transaction volume in the header.
- File with the same header date and transaction header ID is not available in the system.
- External reference number is specified in each transaction record of the file.

If the file or header information is validated successfully, the status of the file or feed is changed to **Validated (VALI)** and the status of all transactions in the feed remains as **Uploaded (UPLD)**. However, if the header validation fails, the status of the feed and all transactions in the feed is changed to **Invalid (INVL)**.

The **Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)** batch is a multi-threaded batch. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to validate a particular transaction feed.	No

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used when you want to validate the transaction feeds which are received from a particular transaction source.	No
Checksum Validation Required	<p>Used to indicate whether the following should be validated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The number of transaction records in the file matches the total transaction records in the header.</li> <li>The sum of transaction amount matches the total transaction amount in the header.</li> <li>The sum of transaction volume matches the total transaction volume in the header.</li> </ul> <p>The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Y</li> <li>N</li> </ul>	No
Duplicate Check Required	<p>Used to indicate whether the following should be validated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>File with the same header date and external header ID is not available in the system.</li> </ul> <p>The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Y</li> <li>N</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The duplicate check is done only against the transaction feeds which are in the <b>Validated (VALID)</b> status and not against the transaction feeds which are in the <b>Uploaded (UPLD)</b> status.</p>	No
Allow Positive Transaction Volume in Header	<p>Used to indicate whether you want to allow positive value in the total transaction volume which is specified in the header record. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Y</li> <li>N</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>Y</b>.</p>	Yes
Allow Negative Transaction Volume in Header	<p>Used to indicate whether you want to allow negative value in the total transaction volume which is specified in the header record. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Y</li> <li>N</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>N</b>.</p>	Yes



Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Allow Zero Transaction Volume in Header	Used to indicate whether you want to allow zero value in the total transaction volume which is specified in the header record. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Y</li> <li>N</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to N.	
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

## Transaction Validation and Initial Price Item Determination

This process includes the following two sub-processes:

- **Transaction Validation** - In this sub-process, the transaction records are validated. The transaction level validations are done to check the integrity of the data. During the transaction validation, the system checks whether:
  - Transaction source is defined in the system.
  - Transaction record type is defined for the transaction source in the system.
  - Division and currencies are defined in the system.
  - The account with the specified account identifier, account identifier type and division exists in the system.

**Note:** This validation is done only when the **Transaction Detail Account Validation** option type of the **Feed Management (C1\_FM)** feature configuration is set to **Y**. If you set the **Transaction Detail Account Validation** option type of the **Feed Management (C1\_FM)** feature configuration to **N**, the system overrides the transaction's account identifier type, account identifier, and division with the first derived account's account identifier type, account identifier, and division, respectively.

- User ID (if available in the transaction information) is defined in the system.
- The value other than 'Y' or 'N' is not specified in the **Manual Switch** column.
- The value other than '+' or '-' is not specified in the **Credit/Debit Indicator** column.
- Transaction Amount is specified when Transaction Currency is specified, and vice versa.
- Additional Amount 1 is specified when Amount 1 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
- Additional Amount 2 is specified when Amount 2 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
- Additional Amount 3 is specified when Amount 3 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
- Additional Amount 4 is specified when Amount 4 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
- Additional Amount 5 is specified when Amount 5 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
- Additional Amount 6 is specified when Amount 6 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
- Additional Amount 7 is specified when Amount 7 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
- Additional Amount 8 is specified when Amount 8 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
- Additional Amount 9 is specified when Amount 9 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.
- Additional Amount 10 is specified when Amount 10 Currency Code is specified, and vice versa.

If the transaction information is invalid or incorrect (for example, division is invalid), the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**. But, if the transaction information is not available, the status of the transaction is changed to **Invalid (INVL)**.

- **Pricing Rule Type or Rule Type Determination** - If the transaction validation is successful, the system checks whether a primary pricing rule type is specified in the respective transaction record type. If a primary pricing rule type is specified in the transaction record type, the system calls the primary pricing rule type and invokes the algorithms which are attached to the following system events of the primary pricing rule type in the specified sequence:
  1. **Transaction Validation** - At present, the product has not shipped an algorithm type for the **Transaction Validation** system event. If required, you can create a custom algorithm type which validates the transaction before deriving the transaction legs.
  2. **Bill Group Derivation** - For more information, refer to the [Bill Group Derivation](#) on page 2287 section.
  3. **Account and Price Item Derivation** - Depending on the category to which the pricing rule type belongs, you need to attach different algorithm to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event. The following table lists the algorithms that you can attach to a primary pricing rule types with different category:

Pricing Rule Type Category	Algorithm	For more information on how the system derives the transaction legs, refer to...
Claim	C1_ACCPRIDRV	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Claim Pricing Rule Type Category)</a> on page 2290
Retention Type Enrollment Based	C1_ACCPRIDRV	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type Category)</a> on page 2320
Ancillary	C1_ACCPRIDRV	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Ancillary Pricing Rule Type Category)</a> on page 2330

Once the primary pricing rule type is called, the system calls the eligible related pricing rule types (if any) defined in the primary pricing rule type. Note that the related pricing rule types are called one by one in the specified sequence. The system invokes the algorithms which are attached to the following system events of the related pricing rule type in the specified sequence:

1. **Transaction Validation** - At present, the product has not shipped an algorithm type for the **Transaction Validation** system event. If required, you can create a custom algorithm type which validates the transaction before deriving the transaction legs.
2. **Account and Price Item Derivation** - Depending on the category to which the pricing rule type belongs, you need to attach different algorithm to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event. The following table lists the algorithms that you can attach to a related pricing rule type with different category:

Pricing Rule Type Category	Algorithm	For more information on how the system derives the transaction legs, refer to...
Specific Stop-Loss	C1_ACCPRISL	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Specific Stop-Loss and Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule Type Categories)</a> on page 2295
Aggregate Stop-Loss	C1_ACCPRISL	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Specific Stop-Loss and Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule Type Categories)</a> on page 2295

Pricing Rule Type Category	Algorithm	For more information on how the system derives the transaction legs, refer to...
Retention Type Claim Based	C1_ACCPRIDRV	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type Category)</a> on page 2308

However, if a primary pricing rule type is not specified in the transaction record type, the system determines the account which will bear the charges for the transaction and the price item and variance parameter or price item parameters to which the transaction will be mapped using rules which are invoked through the rule type. Depending on the transaction record type, a rule type is invoked for each transaction. The effective rules with the specified rule type are executed, starting with the rule having highest priority, until a rule is satisfied. For example, a rule with the priority 10 will be executed before a rule with the priority 20.

**Note:** The system determines rules which are effective based on the **TFM - Processing Date** characteristic defined for the division to which the transaction belongs. The system uses the **TFM - Processing Date** characteristic which is effective on the transaction date. If the **TFM - Processing Date** characteristic type is set to BATCH\_DT, the system executes rules which are effective on the batch business date. However, if the **TFM - Processing Date** characteristic type is set to TXN\_DT, the system executes rules which are effective on the transaction date. Note that the transaction date must be earlier than or equal to the batch business date. And, if the **TFM - Processing Date** characteristic is not defined for the division to which a transaction belongs, the system, by default, executes rules which are effective on the transaction date.

Each rule contains one or more conditions or criteria. For example, Rule A states that if the transaction record type is R001 and the division is New York, then set the following output parameters:

- ACCT\_NO1\_Val - Account 1
- DIVISION1\_VAL - D1
- PRODUCT1\_1\_Val - Price Item X

Here, Transaction Record Type = R001 and Division = New York are two conditions. If these two conditions in the rule are satisfied, then set three output parameters - ACCT\_NO1\_Val, DIVISION1\_VAL and PRODUCT1\_1\_Val. Now, when this rule is executed and the transaction satisfies this criteria, the transaction is mapped to Price Item X and Account 1 which belongs to D1 bears the charges for the transaction. In case, the rule has four output parameters (ACCT\_NO1\_Val set to Account 1, DIVISION1\_VAL set to D1, PRODUCT1\_1\_Val set to Price Item X, and PRODUCT1\_2\_Val set to Price Item Y), the transaction will be mapped to both the price items (i.e. Price Item X and Price Item Y) and Account 1 which belongs to D1 bears the charges for the transaction. A transaction can be mapped to one or more price items or to one or more price item and TOU (variance parameter) combinations. If the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled, you can map a transaction to one or more price item and price item parameters combinations. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Rule B states that if the transaction is performed in US and the transaction amount exceeds 1000 USD, then set the following output parameters:

- ACCT\_NO1\_Val - Account A
- DIVISION1\_VAL - D1
- PRODUCT1\_1\_Val - Price Item X
- PCD1\_1\_1\_VAL - Country
- PVL1\_1\_1\_VAL - US
- PCD1\_1\_2\_VAL - Currency
- PVL1\_1\_2\_VAL - USD
- PRODUCT1\_2\_Val - Price Item Y
- PCD1\_2\_1\_VAL - Country

- PVL1\_2\_1\_VAL - US
- PCD1\_2\_2\_VAL - Currency
- PVL1\_2\_2\_VAL - USD

Now, when this rule is executed and the transaction satisfies the criteria, Account A which belongs to D1 bears the charges for the transaction which is mapped to the following price item and price item parameters combinations:

- Price Item X, Country - US, Currency - USD
- Price Item Y, Country - US, Currency - USD

More than one account can bear the charges for a transaction and each account can belong to a different division. You can map a transaction to one or more price items, to one or more price item and TOU (variance parameter) combinations, or to one or more price item and price item parameters combinations. The system allows you to map price items for each account. For example, Rule C states that if the transaction is performed in UK and the transaction amount exceeds 1000 USD, then set the following output parameters:

- ACCT\_NO1\_Val - Account A
- DIVISION1\_VAL - D1
- PRODUCT1\_1\_Val - Price Item X
- PCD1\_1\_1\_VAL - Country
- PVL1\_1\_1\_VAL - UK
- PCD1\_1\_2\_VAL - Currency
- PVL1\_1\_2\_VAL - USD
- PRODUCT1\_2\_Val - Price Item Y
- PCD1\_2\_1\_VAL - Country
- PVL1\_2\_1\_VAL - UK
- PCD1\_2\_2\_VAL - Currency
- PVL1\_2\_2\_VAL - USD
- ACCT\_NO2\_Val - Account B
- DIVISION2\_VAL - D2
- PRODUCT2\_1\_Val - Price Item A
- PCD2\_1\_1\_VAL - Country
- PVL2\_1\_1\_VAL - US
- PCD2\_1\_2\_VAL - Currency
- PVL2\_1\_2\_VAL - USD

Now, when this rule is executed and the transaction satisfies the criteria, the transaction is mapped to the following price item and price item parameters combinations:

Charges Borne By	Division to which the account belongs...	Price Item	Country	Currency
Account A	D1	Price Item X	UK	USD
Account A	D1	Price Item Y	UK	USD
Account B	D2	Price Item A	US	USD

You can limit the maximum accounts that can bear the charges for a transaction, maximum price item that can be mapped to a transaction, and maximum parameters that can be used with each price item to determine price item pricing. For more information, see [Defining a Transaction Record Type](#) on page 794. You can also define rules to ignore transactions based on the transaction attributes. If the rule returns the **IGNORE\_SW** equal to **Y**, the status of the transaction is changed to **Ignored (IGNR)** and no further processing takes place on the transaction.

You can use the following output parameters while defining rules in the system:

Output Parameter	Naming Convention	Example	Description
Account Identifier	ACCT_NOX_Val	ACCT_NO1_Val, ACCT_NO2_Val, ACCT_NO3_Val, ....	Used to indicate the account which must bear the charges for the transaction.
Account Identifier Column Name	ACCT_NOX_Col	ACCT_NO1_Col, ACCT_NO2_Col, ACCT_NO3_Col, ...	Used to indicate the column from where the account identifier corresponding to the transaction (in the transaction details) must be picked.
Account Identifier Type	ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Val	ACCT_NO_TYPE1_Val, ACCT_NO_TYPE2_Val, ACCT_NO_TYPE3_Val, ...	Used to indicate the type of account identifier.
Account Identifier Type Column Name	ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Col	ACCT_NO_TYPE1_Col, ACCT_NO_TYPE2_Col, ACCT_NO_TYPE3_Col, ...	Used to indicate the column from where the account identifier type corresponding to the transaction (in the transaction details) must be picked.
Account Division	DIVISIONX_VAL	DIVISION1_VAL	Used to indicate the division to which the account belongs.
Account Division Column Name	DIVISIONX_COL	DIVISION1_COL	Used to indicate the column from where the division corresponding to the transaction (in the transaction details) must be picked.
Price Item Name	PRODUCTX_Y_Val	PRODUCT1_1_Val, PRODUCT2_1_Val, PRODUCT2_2_Val, ....	Used to indicate the price item to which the transaction must be mapped.
	<b>Note:</b> Here, X represents the account and Y represents the price item.		
Price Item Column Name	PRODUCTX_Y_Col	PRODUCT1_1_Col,, PRODUCT2_1_Col, PRODUCT2_2_Col, ...	Used to indicate the column from where the price item corresponding to the transaction (in the transaction details) must be picked.
	<b>Note:</b> Here, X represents the account and Y represents the price item.		

Output Parameter	Naming Convention	Example	Description
TOU	TOUX_Y_Val	TOU1_1_Val, TOU2_1_Val, TOU2_2_Val, ...	Used to indicate the variance parameter which you want to use along with the price item for price determination.
	<b>Note:</b> Here, X represents the account and Y represents the price item.		<b>Note:</b> This output parameter appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .
TOU Column Name	TOUX_Y_Col	TOU1_1_Col, TOU2_1_Col, TOU2_2_Col, ...	Used to indicate the column from where the variance parameter corresponding to the transaction (in the transaction details) must be picked.
	<b>Note:</b> Here, X represents the account and Y represents the price item.		<b>Note:</b> This output parameter appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .
Parameter Code	PCDX_Y_Z_VAL	PCD1_1_1_VAL, PCD1_2_1_VAL, PCD2_1_1_VAL, ...	Used to indicate the parameter which you want to use along with the price item for price determination.
	<b>Note:</b> At present, the system does not support the Parameter Code Column output parameter.		<b>Note:</b>  This output parameter appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .  You must not specify any special character except underscore (_) in the parameter code. Otherwise, the status of the transaction is changed to <b>Error (EROR)</b> .
	<b>Note:</b> Here, X represents the account, Y represents the price item, and Z represents the parameter.		

Output Parameter	Naming Convention	Example	Description
Parameter Value	PVLX_Y_Z_VAL	PVL1_1_1_VAL, PVL1_2_1_VAL, PVL2_1_1_VAL, ...	Used to specify the value for the parameter.
	<b>Note:</b> Here, X represents the account, Y represents the price item, and Z represents the parameter.		<b>Note:</b> This output parameter appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .  The parameter value must not contain the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols. Otherwise, the status of the transaction is changed to <b>Error (EROR)</b> .
Parameter Value Column Name	PVLX_Y_Z_COL	PVL1_1_1_COL, PVL1_2_1_COL, PVL2_1_1_COL, ...	Used to indicate the column from where the parameter value corresponding to the transaction (in the transaction details) must be picked.
	<b>Note:</b> Here, X represents the account, Y represents the price item, and Z represents the parameter.		<b>Note:</b> This output parameter appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .  The column from where the parameter value is picked must not contain the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols. Otherwise, the status of the transaction is changed to <b>Error (EROR)</b> .

Output Parameter	Naming Convention	Example	Description
Processing Date Type	PRCS_DTX_Y_TYP	PRCS_DT1_1_TYP, PRCS_DT1_2_TYP, PRCS_DT2_1_TYP, ...	<p>Used to indicate the date type using which you want to determine the effective price item parameters, pricing, and exchange rate. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TXN_DT</b> - Used when you want to determine price item parameters, pricing, and exchange rate which are effective on the transaction date.</li> <li>• <b>Batch_DT</b> - Used when you want to determine price item parameters, pricing, and exchange rate which are effective on the batch business date.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Note:</b> Here, X represents the account and Y represents the price item.</p>		
			<p><b>Note:</b> Based on the <b>TFM - Processing Date</b> characteristic defined for the division to which a transaction belongs, the system determines the rules, price item parameters, pricing, and exchange rate which are effective on the transaction or batch business date. The price item parameters, pricing, and exchange rate which are effective is determined for all account and price item combinations to which the transaction is mapped. If you want to use a custom processing date for a particular account and price item combination to which the transaction is mapped, you need to set the PRCS_DTX_Y_TYP output parameter. In other words, the PRCS_DTX_Y_TYP output parameter helps you to override the processing date for a particular account and price item combination. However, the overridden processing date is used only while determining effective price item parameters, pricing, and exchange rate.</p>



Output Parameter	Naming Convention	Example	Description
Processing Date	PRCS_DTX_Y_VAL	PRCS_DT1_1_VAL, PRCS_DT1_2_VAL, PRCS_DT2_1_VAL, ...	Used to specify a custom date on which you want to determine the effective price item parameters, pricing, and exchange rate.
	<b>Note:</b> Here, X represents the account and Y represents the price item.		<b>Note:</b> The custom date must be a date other than the transaction or batch business date.  Based on the <b>TFM - Processing Date</b> characteristic defined for the division to which a transaction belongs, the system determines the rules, price item parameters, pricing, and exchange rate which are effective on the transaction or batch business date. The price item parameters, pricing, and exchange rate which are effective is determined for all account and price item combinations to which the transaction is mapped. If you want to use a custom processing date for a particular account and price item combination to which the transaction is mapped, you need to set the PRCS_DTX_Y_VAL output parameter. In other words, the PRCS_DTX_Y_VAL output parameter helps you to override the processing date for a particular account and price item combination. However, the overridden processing date is used only while determining effective price item parameters, pricing, and exchange rate.
Ignore Transaction	IGNORE_SW		Used to ignore transactions based on the transaction attributes. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>

Once the transaction satisfies any rule (invoked through the rule type), one transaction leg is created for each account, division, price item, and variance parameter or price item parameters combination. Let us understand this with the help of an example. The following table lists the accounts and price items to which T1, T2, and T3 are mapped:

Transaction	Charges Borne By	Division to which the account belongs...	Price Item	Variance Parameter	Price Item Parameters
T1	A1	D1	P1	-	Country - US, Currency - USD
T1	A1	D1	P2	-	Country - Germany, Currency - USD
T1	A2	D2	P3	USD	-
T2	A1	D1	P1	-	Country - US, Currency - USD
T2	A2	D2	P2	USD	-
T3	A1	D1	P3	-	Country - Germany, Currency - USD

In such case, the system will create three legs for T1, two legs for T2, and one leg for T3. Each transaction leg will have its own status. The status of the transaction legs and transaction is changed to **Initial Price Item Determined (INPD)**. However, if a transaction does not satisfy any rule, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**.

**Note:**

During this sub-process, the system validates the following:

- Whether the price item parameters specified in the output parameters are effective for the price item on the processing date.
- Whether the mandatory price item parameter which is effective on the processing date is specified in the output parameter.
- Whether the parameter value is specified for all mandatory price item parameters which are effective on the processing date.

If any of the above validation fails, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)** and no transaction legs are created.

Once the transaction legs are created, the price item parameters of each transaction leg are grouped. For example, when a transaction is mapped to the following price item and price item parameters combinations, the system creates three groups - Group A, Group B, and Group C:

- Account A, Price Item X, Country - US, Currency - USD
- Account A, Price Item Y, Country - Germany, Currency - USD
- Account B, Price Item X, Country - England, Currency - USD

Group A contains Country - US, Currency - USD; Group B contains Country - Germany, Currency - USD; and Group C contains Country - England, Currency - USD.

A set of price item parameters are grouped only when the multi parameter based pricing feature is enabled. A group is used to determine the price item pricing. A unique group ID is generated for each group. If a group with a set of price item parameters already exists in the system, a new group is not created. Instead, the existing group is used for determining the price item pricing.

You can execute this process through a multi-threaded batch named **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)**. You can specify the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Batch Business Date	Used to identify the transactions for which you want to perform validation and determine price item. The system considers the transactions whose transaction date is earlier than or equal to the batch business date.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you do not specify any date, the batch business date is set to the current date.</p> <p>The batch business date used while executing the <b>C1-TXNIP</b> batch is stamped in the database. It is then used while executing all other consequent batches in the transaction aggregation cycle.</p>	
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to validate and derive price item for the transactions which are received in a particular transaction feed.	No
Transaction Source	Used when you want to validate and derive price item for the transactions which are received from a particular transaction source.	No
Division	Used when you want to validate and derive price item for the transactions belonging to a particular division.	No
Shuffle Work Unit	Used to indicate whether you want to shuffle the work units across threads to correct the uneven thread processing time. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>N</b> .	
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be transferred to the database.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

A log is generated if the **Logging Rules for Transaction Feed** option type in the **Rule Engine (C1\_RLENG)** feature configuration is set to **True**. This log indicates the rules that were executed for each transaction and whether each rule passed or failed during the execution.

**Note:**

You can aggregate transaction legs in a billable charge using aggregation parameters other than account ID, price item code, variance or price item parameters, aggregation start date, and aggregation end date. The additional aggregation parameters can be stamped in the form of aggregation parameter group ID while performing post-processing activities for each transaction leg. This aggregation parameter group ID will be used in subsequent batches during the transaction aggregation cycle. If you want to perform some post-processing activities on the transaction legs, you need to attach a post-processing algorithm on the **TFM - Price Item Derivation Post-Processing** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. Note that the system invokes the algorithm which is attached on the division to which the transaction belongs. This algorithm is triggered only for transactions which are in the **Initial Price Item Determined (INPD)** status. It is triggered before the price item parameter group is created.

A sample post-processing algorithm type named **C1\_PRDR\_POPC** is shipped with the price item. It does not have any business logic. If you want to undertake some post-processing activities for a transaction leg, you need to create custom algorithm type and attach the respective algorithm on the **TFM - Price Item Derivation Post-Processing** algorithm spot of the respective division. You can refer to the **C1\_PRDR\_POPC** algorithm type to understand the input parameters that must be passed to the custom algorithm type.

Once the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch is executed, the processing date is stamped against each transaction leg in the database. If a custom processing date is specified for a particular account and price item combination, the custom processing date is stamped against the respective transaction leg. Otherwise, the processing date defined for the division to which a transaction belongs is stamped against the legs of the respective transaction. The processing date which is stamped against a transaction leg in the database is used while executing all subsequent batches in the transaction aggregation cycle.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Rules Engine	<a href="#">Rules Engine</a> on page 597
How to define a rule	<a href="#">Defining a Rule</a> on page 614

**Price Item Pricing Verification**

In this process, the system behaves in the following manner:

If the Multi Parameter Based Pricing feature is...	Then...
Disabled	<p>The system checks whether effective pricing is available for the account, price item or regular bundle (to which the price item belongs) or parent (regular) bundle (to which the regular bundle belongs) and/or TOU combination on the processing date. The system searches for the price item, regular bundle or parent bundle pricing depending on the value defined for the <b>Prefer Price Item Over Bundle</b> parameter in the price assignment search algorithm (which is defined for the division to which the account belongs).</p> <p>If the price item belongs to a regular bundle and the effective pricing is available for the regular bundle at the account level, the system considers the regular bundle as the final price item and maps it to the transaction leg. If the effective pricing is not available for the regular bundle, the system checks whether the effective pricing is available for the parent bundle (if assigned) at the account level. If the effective pricing is available for the parent bundle, the system considers the parent bundle as the final price item and maps it to the transaction leg. If the effective pricing is not available for the price item, regular bundle, or parent bundle, the status of the transaction leg is changed to <b>Error (EROR)</b>. If the effective pricing is not available for one or more price items to which a transaction is mapped, the status of the transaction is also changed to <b>Error (EROR)</b>.</p>
Enabled	<p>The system checks whether effective pricing is available for the account, price item or regular bundle (to which the price item belongs) or parent (regular) bundle (to which the regular bundle belongs) and/or price item parameters (parameter group) combination on the processing date. The system searches for the price item, regular bundle or parent bundle pricing depending on the value defined for the <b>Prefer Price Item Over Bundle</b> parameter in the price assignment search algorithm (which is defined for the division to which the account belongs).</p> <p>The system searches for a price with exact match at all levels defined in the search order. If the exact match is available at two or more levels, the price assignment at the higher precedence level is considered for calculating the charges. But, if the system does not find the exact match at any level, it searches for the best fit match at all levels. For more information about best fit match, see <a href="#">Multi Parameter Based Pricing</a> on page 139. If the system finds the best fit match with same weight at multiple levels, the price assignment at the higher precedence level is considered for calculating the charges.</p> <p>If the price item belongs to a regular bundle and the exact or best fit price is available for the regular bundle at the account level, the system considers the regular bundle as the final price item and maps it to the transaction leg. If the exact or best fit price is not available for the regular bundle, the system checks whether the exact or best fit price is available for the parent bundle (if assigned) at the account level. If the exact or best fit price is available for the parent bundle, the system considers the parent bundle as the final price item and maps it to the transaction leg. If the exact or best fit price is not available for the price item, regular bundle, or parent bundle, the status of the transaction leg is changed to <b>Error (EROR)</b>. If the exact or best fit price is not available for one or more price items to which a transaction is mapped, the status of the transaction is also changed to <b>Error (EROR)</b>.</p>

**Note:**

The processing date which is stamped against a transaction leg is used to determine effective pricing for the transaction leg.

The order in which the system searches effective pricing for the price item, regular bundle, or parent (regular) bundle at the same level depends on the value defined for the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter in the price assignment search algorithm. If the value of the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter is set to **Y**, the system first searches whether effective pricing is available for the price item. If the effective pricing is not available for the price item, then the system searches whether effective pricing is available for the regular bundle at the same level. If the effective pricing is not available for the regular bundle, then the system searches whether effective pricing is available for the parent bundle at the same level. However, if the value of the **Prefer Price Item Over Bundle** parameter is set to **N**, the system first searches whether effective pricing is available for the parent bundle. If the effective pricing is not available for the parent bundle, then the system searches whether effective pricing is available for the regular bundle at the same level. If the effective pricing is not available for the regular bundle, then the system searches whether effective pricing is available for the price item at the same level.

In addition, the status of the transaction and transaction leg is changed to **Error (EROR)** when:

- There is no contract available with the specified contract type on the transaction date or when the contract is inactive.
- There are multiple effective contracts of the same contract type (available on the transaction date) in **Active**, **Pending Stop**, or **Stop** status.
- The **Price Assignment Search** algorithm is not defined for the division.
- The parameter values are either not defined or invalid in the **Price Assignment Search** algorithm on the processing date.
- The period in which the transaction date falls is not defined in the aggregation schedule.

Once the effective pricing is determined for the initial or final price item, the values of the following pricing attributes are retrieved:

- Ignore Transaction
- Aggregate Transaction
- Aggregation Schedule
- Rating Criteria
- Price Assignment ID
- Account ID (in case of account agreed and price list pricing)
- Person ID (in case of customer agreed and price list pricing)
- Price List ID (in case of price list pricing)
- Contract ID
- Regular Bundle Code
- Pricing Currency

In addition, the system invokes the algorithms attached to the following algorithm spots of the derived account's division in the specified sequence for the self-funded health care business:

1. **TFM - Contract Derivation** - You can attach an algorithm created using the **SA\_DERV\_POPC** algorithm type to this algorithm spot. If the account has multiple active contracts of the contract type which is associated with the price item, this algorithm derives the contract which is associated with the policy and maps it to the transaction leg. The manner in which the system derives the active contract for the account differs in the following scenarios:

If the effective pricing rule stamped against the transaction leg is defined at ...	Then...
The bill group level	The system first fetches the policy derived for the transaction and then derives the active contract which is associated with the policy.
The parent customer level	The system first fetches the bill group to which the account belongs and then the policy where the bill group is associated with the policy using the policy person role which is specified in the <b>Bill Group Policy Person Role</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration. Once the policy is derived, the system derives the active contract which is associated with the policy.

2. **TFM - Verify Pricing Post-Processing** - You can attach an algorithm created using the **C1-VRPR\_POPC** algorithm type to this algorithm spot. This algorithm removes the price assignment ID and price item parameter group ID from the summary ID column of each transaction leg.

You can execute this process through a multi-threaded batch named **Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)**. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to find the price item pricing for transactions which are received in a particular transaction feed.	No
Transaction Source	Used when you want to find the price item pricing for transactions which are received from a particular transaction source.	No
Division	Used when you want to find the price item pricing for transactions belonging to a particular division.	No
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Note that the **Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** batch does not change the status of the transaction and its legs. You need to execute the **Update Status (C1-TXNEX)** batch to update the status of the transaction and its legs. Besides updating the status, the **Update Status (C1-TXNEX)** batch determines the rate for transaction legs whose effective pricing has either of the following set of attributes:

- **Ignore Transaction** is set to **Yes** and **Rating Criteria** is set to **Rate Transactions (RITX)**
- **Ignore Transaction** is set to **No**, **Aggregate Transaction** is set to **Yes**, and **Rating Criteria** is set to **Rate individual transactions and aggregate calc lines across transactions (RITA)**

Each set of pricing attributes indicates how the transaction legs must be rated before billing. For more information about the different ways in which a transaction leg can be rated, see [Transaction Rating Before Billing](#) on page 642.

You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to change the status of transactions which are received in a particular transaction feed.	No

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used when you want to change the status of transactions which are received from a particular transaction source.	No
Division	Used when you want to change the status of transactions belonging to a particular division.	No
Shuffle Work Unit	Used to indicate whether you want to shuffle the work units across threads to correct the uneven thread processing time. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to N.	
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be transferred to the database.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

**Note:**

You must specify same parameters in the **Product Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** and **Update Status (C1-TXNEX)** batches. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

If you want to do some preprocessing activities before invoking the rates engine, you need to attach a preprocessing algorithm on the **TFM - Rate Pre-Processing** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. Note that the system invokes the algorithm which is attached on the derived account's division and not on the division to which the transaction belongs. A sample preprocessing algorithm type named **C1\_RTCL\_PRPC** is shipped with the product. It does not have any business logic. If you want to undertake some preprocessing activities before invoking the rates engine, you need to create custom algorithm type and attach the respective algorithm on the **TFM - Rate Pre-Processing** algorithm spot of the respective division. You can refer to the **C1\_RTCL\_PRPC** algorithm type to understand the input parameters that must be passed to the custom algorithm type.

If a transaction leg is ignored and not considered for billing, the status of the transaction leg is changed to **Ignored (IGNR)**, whereas the status of the transaction remains as **Initial Price Item Determined (INPD)**. However, if all legs of a transaction are ignored and not considered for billing, the status of the transaction and transaction legs is changed to **Ignored (IGNR)**.

You can store the price item pricing information, and thereby improve the **Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** batch performance. If you set the **Use Materialized Views** option type of the **C1\_FM** feature configuration to **true**, the system will store the product pricing information in the following tables:

- CI\_PRC\_AGRD
- CI\_PRC\_PL
- CI\_PRC\_INH\_PL

But, if you set the **Use Materialized Views** option type of the **C1\_FM** feature configuration to **false**, the system will not store the product pricing information in the above mentioned tables. If there are any pricing changes, you will have to update these tables before executing the **Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** batch. You can update the product pricing information in these tables by executing the **Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)** batch. Ideally, you must execute the **Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)** batch after you execute the **Flush All Caches (F1-FLUSH)** batch in the



transaction aggregation cycle. You can specify the following parameters while executing the **Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)** batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used when you want to update the price item pricing information of accounts belonging to a particular division.	No
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of persons whose regular and post-processing price item pricing information you want to update in each work unit.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Leg Status Transition	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Status Transition</a> on page 697
How to set the <b>C1_FM</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1_FM Feature Configuration</a> on page 2364

## Aggregation

Once the price item pricing verification is complete, you can aggregate the transaction legs, create a billable charge, and update the SQI values in the billable charge. In the aggregation process, the system behaves in the following manner:

If the Multi Parameter Based Pricing feature is...	Then...
Disabled	<p>The system checks the value defined in the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field. If the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>No</b>, the system creates one billable charge (with the <b>Billable</b> status) for each transaction leg. However, if the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>, the system creates one billable charge (with the <b>Billable</b> status) for all transactions legs having the same price item and TOU combination and whose transaction date falls between the aggregation schedule.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>During the billable charge creation, the system also considers the contract start and end dates along with the aggregation schedule. If the contract start date falls between the aggregation schedule, the billable charge start date is equal to the contract start date. If the contract start date is earlier than the aggregation schedule start date, the billable charge start date is equal to the aggregation schedule start date. If the contract end date is earlier than the aggregation schedule end date, the billable charge end date is equal to the contract end date. If the contract end date is later than the aggregation schedule end date, the billable charge end date is equal to the aggregation schedule end date. However, if the contract start date is later than the aggregation schedule end date or if the contract end date is earlier than the aggregation schedule start date, the status of the transaction leg is changed to <b>Error (EROR)</b>.</p> <p>If the aggregated billable charge already exists for the account, price item and TOU combination and there is no bill segment associated with the billable charge, the system will update the SQI values in the existing billable charge.</p>

If the Multi Parameter Based Pricing feature is...	Then...
Enabled	<p>The system checks the value defined in the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field. If the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>No</b>, the system creates one billable charge (with the <b>Billable</b> status) for each transaction leg. However, if the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>, the system creates one billable charge (with the <b>Billable</b> status) for all transaction legs having the same price item and price item parameters (parameter group) combination and whose transaction date falls between the aggregation schedule.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>During the billable charge creation, the system also considers the contract start and end dates along with the aggregation schedule. If the contract start date falls between the aggregation schedule, the billable charge start date is equal to the contract start date. If the contract start date is earlier than the aggregation schedule start date, the billable charge start date is equal to the aggregation schedule start date. If the contract end date is earlier than the aggregation schedule end date, the billable charge end date is equal to the contract end date. If the contract end date is later than the aggregation schedule end date, the billable charge end date is equal to the aggregation schedule end date. However, if the contract start date is later than the aggregation schedule end date or if the contract end date is earlier than the aggregation schedule start date, the status of the transaction leg is changed to <b>Error (EROR)</b>.</p> <p>If the aggregated billable charge already exists for the account, price item and price item parameters combination and there is no bill segment associated with the billable charge, the system will update the SQI values in the existing billable charge.</p>

The transaction aggregation is done based on the aggregation schedule defined in the price item pricing. You can use the following standard schedules or you can create your own custom schedules for aggregation:

- Daily
- Weekly
- Monthly
- Quarterly
- Yearly

Once the billable charge is created, the system aggregates the SQIs defined for the price item — division combination using the aggregation function and then updates the billable charge with the respective SQI values. If the aggregation function is based on the transaction amount or on any other user defined amount and the transaction or user defined currency is different from the pricing currency, the system does currency conversion if the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system. The processing date which is stamped against a transaction leg is used to determine effective exchange rate for the transaction leg.

Once the SQI values are updated in the billable charge, the rate is determined for the transaction leg whose effective pricing has either of the following set of attributes:

- **Ignore Transaction** is set to **No**, **Aggregate Transaction** is set to **Yes**, and **Rating Criteria** is set to **Aggregate transactions and then rate aggregated SQs (AGTR)**
- **Ignore Transaction** is set to **No**, **Aggregate Transaction** is set to **No**, and **Rating Criteria** is set to **Rate Transactions (RITX)**

Each set of pricing attributes indicates how the transaction legs must be rated before billing. For more information about the different ways in which a transaction leg can be rated, see [Transaction Rating Before Billing](#) on page 642.

**Note:** If you want to do some preprocessing activities while determining rate, you need to attach a preprocessing algorithm on the **TFM - Rate Pre-Processing** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. Note that the system invokes the algorithm which is attached on the derived account's division and not on the division to which the transaction belongs. A sample preprocessing algorithm type named **C1\_RTCL\_PRPC** is shipped with the price item. It does not have any business logic. If you want to undertake some preprocessing activities while determining rate for transaction legs, you need to create custom algorithm type and attach the respective algorithm on the **TFM - Rate Pre-Processing** algorithm spot of the respective division. You can refer to the **C1\_RTCL\_PRPC** algorithm type to understand the input parameters that must be passed to the custom algorithm type.

In addition, the system invokes the algorithm attached to the following algorithm spot of the derived account's division for the self-funded health care business:

- **TFM - Billable Charge Post Processing** - You can attach an algorithm created using the **C1\_BCHG\_POPC** algorithm type to this algorithm spot. This algorithm invokes the algorithm which is attached to the **Bill After Date Determination** system event of the respective pricing rule type. For more information, refer to the [Bill After Date Determination](#) on page 2339 section.

Once the billable charge is created and updated successfully, the status of the transaction leg is changed to **Completed (COMP)**. However, if the SQIs are not defined for the price item — division combination, the transaction aggregation rule is not defined for the SQI, or if the exchange rate is not available during currency conversion, the status of the transaction leg is changed to **Error (EROR)**. If all legs of a transaction are in the **Completed (COMP)** status, the status of the transaction is changed to **Completed (COMP)**. But, if any of the transaction leg is in the **Error (EROR)** status, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**.

You can execute this process through a multi-threaded batch named **Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)**. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to create the billable charges for transactions which are received in a particular transaction feed.	No
Transaction Source	Used when you want to create the billable charges for transactions which are received from a particular transaction source.	No
Division	Used when you want to create the billable charges for transactions belonging to a particular division.	No
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be transferred to the database.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

The **Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)** batch does not change the status of the transaction and its legs. You need to execute the **Mark Completion (C1-TXNCM)** batch to update the status of the transaction and its legs. Besides updating the status, the **Mark Completion (C1-TXNCM)** batch does the following with other legs when billable charge is not created for one or more transaction legs:

<b>Rate for other transaction leg is determined using the following set of pricing attributes...</b>	<b>Then....</b>
<b>Ignore Transaction</b> is set to <b>Yes</b> and <b>Rating Criteria</b> is set to <b>Rate Transactions (RITX)</b>	The corresponding calculation lines of the transaction leg are deleted.
<b>Ignore Transaction</b> is set to <b>No</b> , <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> is set to <b>No</b> , and <b>Rating Criteria</b> is set to <b>Rate Transactions (RITX)</b>	The corresponding billable charge and calculation lines of the transaction leg are deleted.
<b>Ignore Transaction</b> is set to <b>No</b> , <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> is set to <b>Yes</b> , and <b>Rating Criteria</b> is set to <b>Rate individual transactions and aggregate calc lines across transactions (RITA)</b>	The corresponding calculation lines of the transaction leg are deleted.
<b>Ignore Transaction</b> is set to <b>No</b> , <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> is set to <b>Yes</b> , and <b>Rating Criteria</b> is set to <b>Aggregate transactions and then rate aggregated SQs (AGTR)</b>	The corresponding billable charge and calculation lines are not deleted.
<b>Ignore Transaction</b> is set to <b>No</b> , <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> is set to <b>No</b> , and <b>Rating Criteria</b> is set to <b>Do Not Rate Transactions</b>	The corresponding non-aggregated billable charge is deleted.

You can specify either of the following parameters while executing the **Mark Completion (C1-TXNCM)** batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to change the status of transactions which are received in a particular transaction feed.	No
Transaction Source	Used when you want to change the status of transactions which are received from a particular transaction source.	No
Division	Used when you want to change the status of transactions belonging to a particular division.	No
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be transferred to the database.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

**Note:**

You must specify same parameters in the **Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)** and **Mark Completion (C1-TXNCM)** batches. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

If you want to perform some post-processing activities on a billable charge, you need to attach a post-processing algorithm on the **TFM - Billable Charge Post-Processing** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. This algorithm is triggered once the billable charge is created and SQIs are updated in the billable charge. Note that the system invokes the algorithm which is attached on the derived account's division and not on the division to which the transaction belongs. A sample post-processing algorithm type named **C1\_BCHG\_POPC** is shipped with the product. It does not have any business logic. If you want to undertake some post-processing activities on a billable charge, you need to create custom algorithm type and attach the respective algorithm on the **Feed Management Billable Charge Post-Processing** algorithm spot of the respective division. You can refer to the **C1\_BCHG\_POPC** algorithm type to understand the input parameters that must be passed to the custom algorithm type.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Leg Status Transition	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Status Transition</a> on page 697

## Clean Up

There might be situations when a transaction is mapped to one or more price items and due to some reasons a billable charge could not be created for one of the price item. And, therefore the status of the transaction is changed to **Error (EROR)**. In such case, you need to either recalculate SQIs in the aggregated billable charge or delete the aggregated billable charge depending on whether the aggregated billable charge includes transaction legs in the **Completed (COMP)** status. You can perform this clean up process through a multi-threaded batch named **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)**.

When the transaction legs in the **Error (EROR)** and **Completed (COMP)** statuses are aggregated together in a billable charge, the **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)** batch does the following:

Billable charge contain transaction legs with the following set of pricing attributes...	Then....
<b>Ignore Transaction</b> is set to <b>No</b> , <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> is set to <b>Yes</b> , and <b>Rating Criteria</b> is set to <b>Do Not Rate Transactions</b>	The SQIs are recalculated in the billable charge.
<b>Ignore Transaction</b> is set to <b>No</b> , <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> is set to <b>Yes</b> , and <b>Rating Criteria</b> is set to <b>Aggregate transactions and then rate aggregated SQs (AGTR)</b>	The SQIs are recalculated in the billable charge and the rate is determined for aggregated service quantities. Once the rate is determined, pass through charges are calculated and accumulated accordingly.
<b>Ignore Transaction</b> is set to <b>No</b> , <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> is set to <b>Yes</b> , and <b>Rating Criteria</b> is set to <b>Rate individual transactions and aggregate calc lines across transactions (RITA)</b>	The pass through charges are recalculated and accumulated accordingly.

However, when the transaction legs in the **Error (EROR)** status are only aggregated in a billable charge, the **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)** batch does the following:

Billable charge contain transaction legs with the following set of pricing attributes...	Then....
<b>Ignore Transaction</b> is set to <b>No</b> , <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> is set to <b>Yes</b> , and <b>Rating Criteria</b> is set to <b>Do Not Rate Transactions</b>	The aggregated billable charge is deleted.
<b>Ignore Transaction</b> is set to <b>No</b> , <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> is set to <b>Yes</b> , and <b>Rating Criteria</b> is set to <b>Aggregate transactions and then rate aggregated SQs (AGTR)</b>	The aggregated billable charge and the corresponding calculation lines are deleted.
<b>Ignore Transaction</b> is set to <b>No</b> , <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> is set to <b>Yes</b> , and <b>Rating Criteria</b> is set to <b>Rate individual transactions and aggregate calc lines across transactions (RITA)</b>	The aggregated billable charge is deleted.

**Note:**

If the aggregation function is based on the transaction amount or on any other user defined amount and the transaction or user defined currency is different from the pricing currency, the system does currency conversion if the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system. The processing date which is stamped against a transaction leg is used to determine effective exchange rate for the transaction leg.

The SQIs in an aggregated billable charge are recalculated only when the **SQ Recalculation Required** option type in the **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **Y**. If you set the **SQ Recalculation Required** option type in the **C1\_FM** feature configuration to **N**, the SQIs are not recalculated in an aggregated billable charge. We recommend you to recalculate SQIs in an aggregated billable charge when more than one account bears the charges for a transaction.

If you want to perform some post-processing activities on a billable charge, you need to attach a post-processing algorithm on the **TFM - Billable Charge Post-Processing** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. This algorithm is triggered once the billable charge is created and SQIs are updated in the billable charge. Note that the system invokes the algorithm which is attached on the derived account's division and not on the division to which the transaction belongs. A sample post-processing algorithm type named **C1\_BCHG\_POPC** is shipped with the product. It does not have any business logic. If you want to undertake some post-processing activities on a billable charge, you need to create custom algorithm type and attach the respective algorithm on the **TFM - Billable Charge Post-Processing** algorithm spot of the respective division. You can refer to the **C1\_BCHG\_POPC** algorithm type to understand the input parameters that must be passed to the custom algorithm type.

Besides the transaction aggregation process, the **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)** batch is also used during the following sub-processes:

- **Cancellation** — During the cancellation process, it deletes non-aggregated billable charges and recalculates SQIs in aggregated billable charges.
- **Disaggregation** — During the disaggregation process, it deletes an aggregated billable charge when all the corresponding transaction legs which were aggregated in the billable charge are deleted during disaggregation.

You can specify either of the following parameters while executing the **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)** batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to update or delete billable charges created for transactions which are received in a particular transaction feed.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This parameter is required when you set the request type to <b>CNCL</b> .
	<b>Note:</b> This parameter should not be used during the disaggregation process.	
Transaction Source	Used when you want to update or delete billable charges created for transactions which are received from a particular transaction source.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This parameter should not be used during the cancellation and disaggregation processes.	
Division	Used when you want to update or delete billable charges created for transactions belonging to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This parameter should not be used during the cancellation process.	

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Used when you want to update or delete billable charges created for transactions of a particular account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This parameter should be used only during the disaggregation process.	
Bill Cycle	Used when you want to update or delete billable charges created for transactions of accounts having a particular bill cycle.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This parameter should be used only during the disaggregation process.	
Disaggregate Transactions From Date	Used when you want to update or delete billable charges created for transactions which were performed from a particular date onwards.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This parameter should be used only during the disaggregation process.	
Request Type	Used to indicate the process during which you want to execute the batch. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CNCL</li> <li>• EROR</li> <li>• DISAGG</li> </ul>	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be transferred to the database.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Leg Status Transition	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Status Transition</a> on page 697
How to set the C1_FM feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1_FM Feature Configuration</a> on page 2364

## Transaction Aggregation Batch Processing

During the transaction aggregation process, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

1. Flush All Caches (F1-FLUSH)
2. Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)
3. Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)

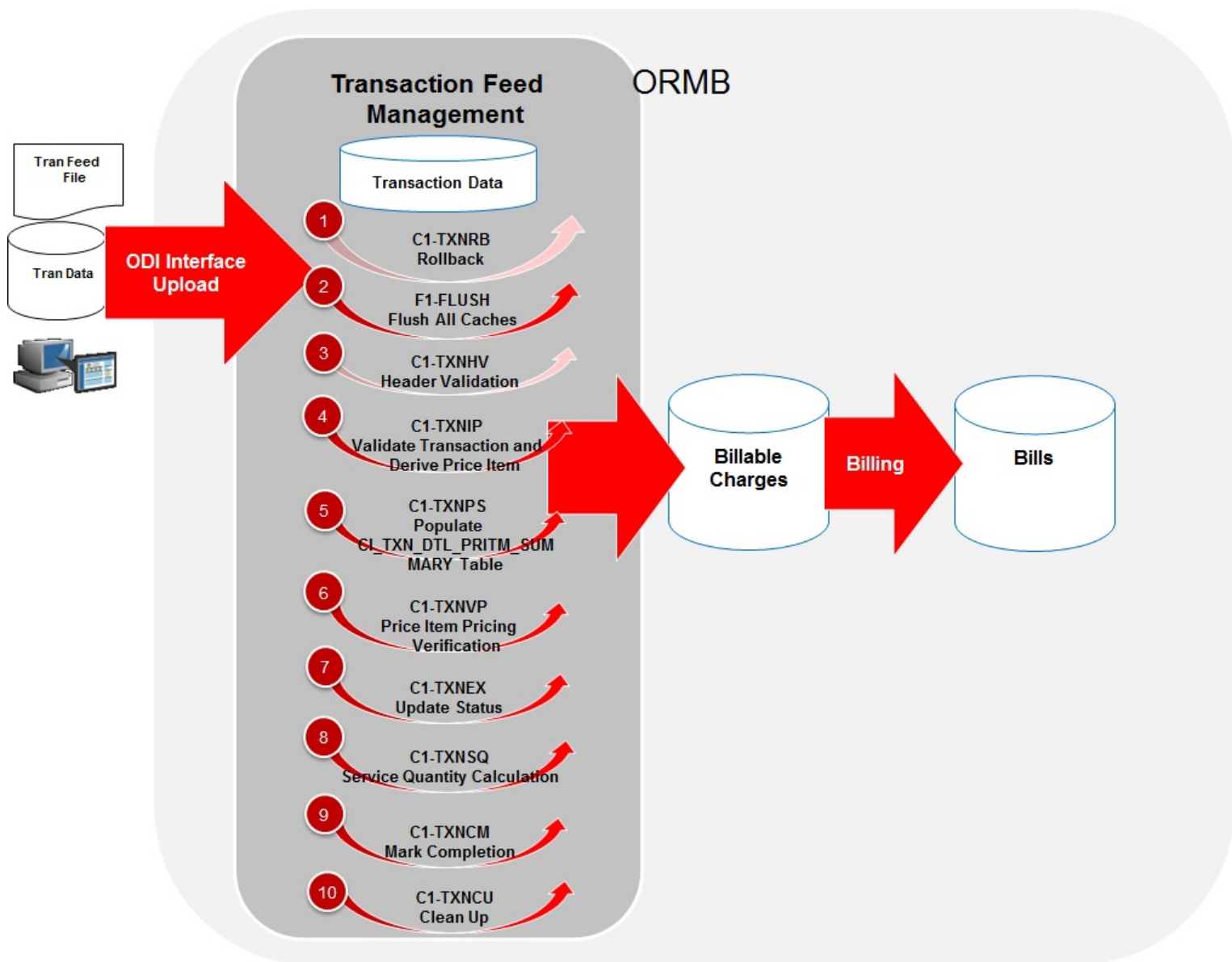
4. Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)
5. Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)
6. Update Status (C1-TXNEX)
7. Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)
8. Mark Completion (C1-TXNCM)
9. Clean Up (C1-TXNCU) with the **Request Type** parameter set to **EROR**

The **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch locks the **CI\_TXN\_DTL\_PRITM\_SUMMARY** table before inserting records to ensure that only unique records are inserted in this table. The locking mechanism results in performance issue when there is no or very little aggregation of transactions. Therefore, we recommend you to use an alternative transaction aggregation process when the aggregation ratio is low. You can enable the alternative transaction aggregation process by setting the **Use C1-TXNPS During Transaction Aggregation** option type in the **C1\_FM** feature configuration to **true**. In this alternative transaction aggregation process, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

1. Flush All Caches (F1-FLUSH)
2. Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)
3. Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)
4. Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)
5. Populate CI\_TXN\_DTL\_PRITM\_SUMMARY Table (C1-TXNPS)
6. Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)
7. Update Status (C1-TXNEX)
8. Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)
9. Mark Completion (C1-TXNCM)
10. Clean Up (C1-TXNCU) with the **Request Type** parameter set to **EROR**

The following figure graphically explains the sequence in which you need to execute the batches during the transaction aggregation process:





**Note:**

You need to remember the following points during the transaction aggregation process:

- Before you start the transaction aggregation process, you need to execute the **Flush All Caches (F1-FLUSH)** batch to clean the cache. This batch has one parameter named **Thread Pool** which allows you to clean cache of a particular thread pool. In case you want to reprocess the error transactions from the earlier cycle, you need to execute the **Rollback (C1-TXNRB)** batch.
- You can store the price item pricing information, and thereby improve the **Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** batch performance. If you set the **Use Materialized Views** option type of the **C1\_FM** feature configuration to **true**, the system will store the price item pricing information in the following tables:
  - CI\_PRC\_AGRD
  - CI\_PRC\_PL
  - CI\_PRC\_INH\_PL

But, if you set the **Use Materialized Views** option type of the **C1\_FM** feature configuration to **false**, the system will not store the price item pricing information in the above mentioned tables. If there are any pricing changes, you can update the price item pricing information in these tables by executing the **Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)** batch.

- The **Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)** batch is optional. You can directly execute the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch once the transactions are uploaded in the system.
- The system allows you to execute each batch consecutively. You can execute the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch consecutively with the same division and same parameters, or with the different division and different parameters. But, you cannot execute the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch consecutively with the same division and different parameters. For example, once you execute this batch with division as D1 and transaction source as S1, you cannot execute this batch again with division as D1 and transaction source as S2 until the former transaction aggregation cycle is complete.
- Once the **Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** batch is executed, you cannot execute the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch again with the same division and same parameters unless and until the transaction aggregation cycle is complete. Similarly, once the **Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)** batch is executed, you cannot execute the **Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** batch again with the same division and same parameters unless and until the transaction aggregation cycle is complete. This rule is applicable to all subsequent batches in the transaction aggregation cycle.
- During the transaction aggregation process, you must specify the same division and same parameters across each batch. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.
- If you have already executed the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch without any division, then you cannot execute this batch once again with a division unless and until the transaction aggregation cycle is complete.

Transaction Disaggregation

As the aggregation cycle is different from the billing cycle, there might be situations when due to pricing changes, the billable charges are no longer valid. In such cases, you need to disaggregate the transactions. In the following scenarios, the system automatically creates a disaggregation request in the CI\_TXN\_DISAGG\_REQ table:

If...	Then
A price item is assigned to an account	A disaggregation request is created for the account.

If...	Then
<p>The following values in the price item pricing assigned to an account is changed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Effective Start Date</li> <li>• Effective End Date</li> <li>• Aggregation Schedule</li> <li>• Ignore Transaction</li> <li>• Aggregate Transaction</li> <li>• Rating Criteria</li> <li>• Price Item Parameter</li> </ul>	A disaggregation request is created for the account.
A price item is assigned to a person	A disaggregation request is created for each account of the person and its child person.
<p>The following values in the price item pricing assigned to a person is changed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Effective Start Date</li> <li>• Effective End Date</li> <li>• Aggregation Schedule</li> <li>• Ignore Transaction</li> <li>• Aggregate Transaction</li> <li>• Rating Criteria</li> <li>• Price Item Parameter</li> </ul>	A disaggregation request is created for each account of the person and its child person.
A price list is assigned to an account.	A disaggregation request is created for the account.
<p>The following values in the price list assigned to an account is changed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Effective Start Date</li> <li>• Effective End Date</li> <li>• Priority</li> <li>• Price List Inheritance</li> </ul>	A disaggregation request is created for the account.
A price list is assigned to a person.	A disaggregation request is created for each account of the person and its child person.
<p>The following values in the price list assigned to a person is changed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Effective Start Date</li> <li>• Effective End Date</li> <li>• Priority</li> <li>• Price List Inheritance</li> </ul>	A disaggregation request is created for each account of the person and its child person.

However, there are various other scenarios for which you have to disaggregate the transactions. But, at the moment, the system does not automatically create a disaggregation request for these scenarios in the CL\_TXN\_DISAGG\_REQ table. You will have to create an appropriate disaggregation request in this table. The system allows you to create a

disaggregation request manually through the **Disaggregation Request** screen or through a batch named **Disaggregation Request Creation (C1-DISTG)**.

In the following scenarios, you have to create an appropriate disaggregation request for the account or person, respectively:

- Effective price item pricing assigned to an account is overridden.
- Variance parameter in the price item pricing assigned to an account is changed.
- A price list assignment has expired or a price list is no longer available to an account.
- Effective price item pricing assigned to a person is overridden.
- Variance parameter in the price item pricing assigned to a person is changed.
- A price list assignment has expired or a price list is no longer available to a person.
- A price item is added to a price list.
- The following details in the price item pricing assigned to a price list is changed:
  - Variance Parameter
  - Effective Start Date
  - Effective End Date
  - Aggregation Schedule
  - Ignore Transaction
  - Rating Criteria
  - Aggregate Transaction
- A new bundle is created.
- A price item is added to a bundle.
- A price item is removed from a bundle.
- A bundle is eliminated (that is, all its price item are removed).
- A price item is added.
- A price list hierarchy is changed.
- SQIs associated with a price item - division combination are changed.
- Transaction aggregation rule defined for an SQI is changed or deleted.
- Business rules used for initial price item mapping are changed.

At present, the system disaggregates transactions at the account level and not at the price item level. Let us understand this with the help of an example. The following table lists the accounts and price items to which T1 is mapped:

Transaction	Account	Price Item
T1	A1	P1
T1	A1	P2
T1	A2	P1
T1	A2	P2

Now, if the pricing of P1 assigned to A1 changes, the system creates a disaggregation request for A1 and identifies all transaction legs which are mapped to A1 for disaggregation. In this example, the system will consider the first two transaction legs - T1-A1-P1 and T1-A1-P2 - for disaggregation even if the pricing of P2 assigned to A1 has not changed.

The **Disaggregation Request Creation (C1-DISTG)** batch creates a disaggregation request for an account. When you create a disaggregation request for an account, the transactions mapped to the account are disaggregated. This batch is a multi-threaded batch. The multi-threading is based on account ID and chunks for multi-threading are created based on numerical distribution of account ID. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used when you want to create disaggregation request for accounts belonging to a particular division.	No
Person ID	Used when you want to create disaggregation request for accounts belonging to a particular person.	No
Bill Cycle	Used when you want to create disaggregation request for accounts having a particular bill cycle.	No
Disaggregate Transactions From Date	Used when you want to create disaggregation request for accounts for which transactions were performed from a particular date onwards.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Before you proceed with the disaggregation process, you need to ensure that there are no pending bills for the accounts whose transactions need to be disaggregated. If there are pending bills for these accounts, you need to first execute the **Pending Bill Segments Deletion (C1-BSEGD)** batch and then execute the **Pending Bill Deletion (C1-PNBD)** batch. While executing these batches in the specified order, ensure that you specify the same parameters in both these batches. For more information about these batches, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Execution Guide*.

**Note:** The **Pending Bill Deletion (C1-PNBD)** batch deletes those pending bills which are generated through the billing batches (i.e. **BILLING** or **C1-PNDBL**). It does not delete pending bills which are generated through the user interface. Also, it deletes regular pending bills and not adhoc pending bills.

Once a disaggregation request is either manually or automatically created for an account, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order to disaggregate transactions:

- **Identify Transactions for Disaggregation (C1-IDENT)** - This batch fetches disaggregation requests which are created for accounts from the CI\_TXN\_DISAGG\_REQ table. It identifies the transactions and the corresponding aggregated and non-aggregated billable charges for disaggregation. If the bill segment of a billable charge is in the **Pending Cancel** or **Frozen** status, the system will not identify the billable charge for deletion. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used when you want to identify the transactions of accounts belonging to a particular division for disaggregation.	No
Account ID	Used when you want to identify the transactions of a particular account for disaggregation.	No
Bill Cycle	Used when you want to identify the transactions of accounts having a particular bill cycle for disaggregation.	No

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Disaggregate Transactions From Date	Used when you want to identify the transactions which were performed from a particular date onwards for disaggregation.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.</p> <p>The aggregated billable charge, which is affected, should not contain a transaction leg whose transaction date is earlier than the date specified in this parameter. Otherwise, erroneous results will occur. Therefore, ensure that you specify the appropriate value for the <b>Disaggregate Transactions From Date</b> parameter.</p>	
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be transferred to the database.	Yes
Post-Processing Algorithm	Used to attach a post-processing algorithm. This algorithm is triggered once the transactions and corresponding billable charges are identified for disaggregation.	No
Exclude Canceled Billable Charges (Y or N)	Used to indicate whether you want to exclude the aggregated and non-aggregated billable charges which are in the <b>Canceled</b> status during the disaggregation process. The valid values are:	No
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you do not specify any value, by default, the parameter value is set to N.</p>	
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

- **Process Non-Aggregated Transactions (C1-PDTXN)** - This batch processes the identified transactions, deletes the required transaction legs, and changes the status of the transaction to **Uploaded (UPLD)**. If a non-aggregated billable charge exists for a transaction leg and the corresponding bill segment is in the **Cancel** status, then:
  - The billable charge is cancelled.
  - The corresponding transaction leg and calculation lines (if any) are deleted.
  - The status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.

However, if a non-aggregated billable charge exists for a transaction leg, but if the bill segment is not yet generated, then the billable charge, the corresponding calculation lines (if any), and transaction leg are deleted, and the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**. If a non-aggregated billable charge is in the **Cancel** status, then the corresponding transaction leg and calculation lines (if any) are deleted and the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**. If the rate is determined for a transaction leg which is in the **Ignored (IGNR)** status, the calculation lines are deleted along with the transaction leg during disaggregation.

If aggregated billable charge exists for a transaction leg, then the corresponding transaction legs and calculation lines (if any) are deleted and the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used when you want to disaggregate the transactions of accounts belonging to a particular division.	No
Account ID	Used when you want to disaggregate the transactions of a particular account.	No
Bill Cycle	Used when you want to disaggregate the transactions of accounts having a particular bill cycle.	No
Disaggregate Transactions From Date	Used when you want to disaggregate the transactions which were performed from a particular date onwards.  <b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be transferred to the database.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

**Note:**

If you want to undertake some preprocessing activities (such as cleaning data in any custom tables) during the disaggregation process, you need to attach a preprocessing algorithm on the **TFM - Disaggregation Pre-Processing** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. This algorithm is triggered when you execute the **Process Non-Aggregated Transactions (C1-PDTEXN)** batch. Note that the system invokes the algorithm which is attached on the derived account's division and not on the division to which the transaction belongs.

A sample preprocessing algorithm type named **C1\_DSAG\_PRPC** is shipped with the product. It does not have any business logic. If you want to undertake some preprocessing activities during the disaggregation process, you need to create custom algorithm type and attach the respective algorithm on the **TFM - Disaggregation Pre-Processing** algorithm spot of the respective division. You can refer to the **C1\_DSAG\_PRPC** algorithm type to understand the input parameters that must be passed to the custom algorithm type.

- **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)** - This batch deletes an aggregated billable charge when all the corresponding transaction legs which were aggregated in the billable charge are deleted during disaggregation. If an aggregated billable charge exists for a transaction leg and the corresponding bill segment is in the **Cancel** status, then:
  - The billable charge is cancelled.
  - The status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.

However, if an aggregated billable charge exists for a transaction leg, but if the bill segment is not yet generated, then the billable charge, and the corresponding calculation lines (if any) are deleted, and the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**. If an aggregated billable charge is in the **Cancel** status, then the corresponding calculation lines (if any) are deleted and the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.

While executing the **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)** batch during disaggregation, you must set the **Request Type** parameter to **DISAGG**. For more information about the parameters that you can specify while executing this batch, refer to [Clean Up](#) on page 673.

- **Update Disaggregation Request Status (C1-DRSUA)** - This batch changes the status of the disaggregation request in the **CI\_TXN\_DISAGG\_REQ** table to **COMPLETE**. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Used when you want to update the disaggregation requests' status of a particular account.	No
Division	Used when you want to update the disaggregation requests' status of accounts belonging to a particular division.	No
Bill Cycle	Used when you want to update the disaggregation requests' status of accounts having a particular bill cycle.	No
Disaggregate Transactions From Date	Used when you want to update the disaggregation requests' status of accounts whose transactions were performed from a particular date onwards and the bill segments created for these transactions are in the <b>Pending Cancel</b> or <b>Frozen</b> status.  <b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Update Status Algorithm	Used to attach a custom algorithm which indicates when the status of the disaggregation request in the <b>CI_TXN_DISAGG_REQ</b> table must be changed to <b>COMPLETE</b> .  <b>Note:</b> If an algorithm is specified in this parameter, the system uses the custom logic and not the in-built logic for updating the status of the disaggregation requests.	No
Exclude Canceled Billable Charges (Y or N)	Used to indicate whether you want to change the status of the disaggregation request to <b>COMPLETE</b> when the canceled billable charges are excluded during the disaggregation process. The valid values are:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> If you do not specify any value, by default, the parameter value is set to N.  You must specify the same value for this parameter while executing the <b>Identify Transactions for Disaggregation (C1-IDENT)</b> and <b>Update Disaggregation Request Status (C1-DRSUA)</b> batches during the disaggregation process. Otherwise, erroneous results will occur.	No



Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Leg Status Transition	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Status Transition</a> on page 697
How to create a disaggregation request manually	<a href="#">Creating a Disaggregation Request</a> on page 823

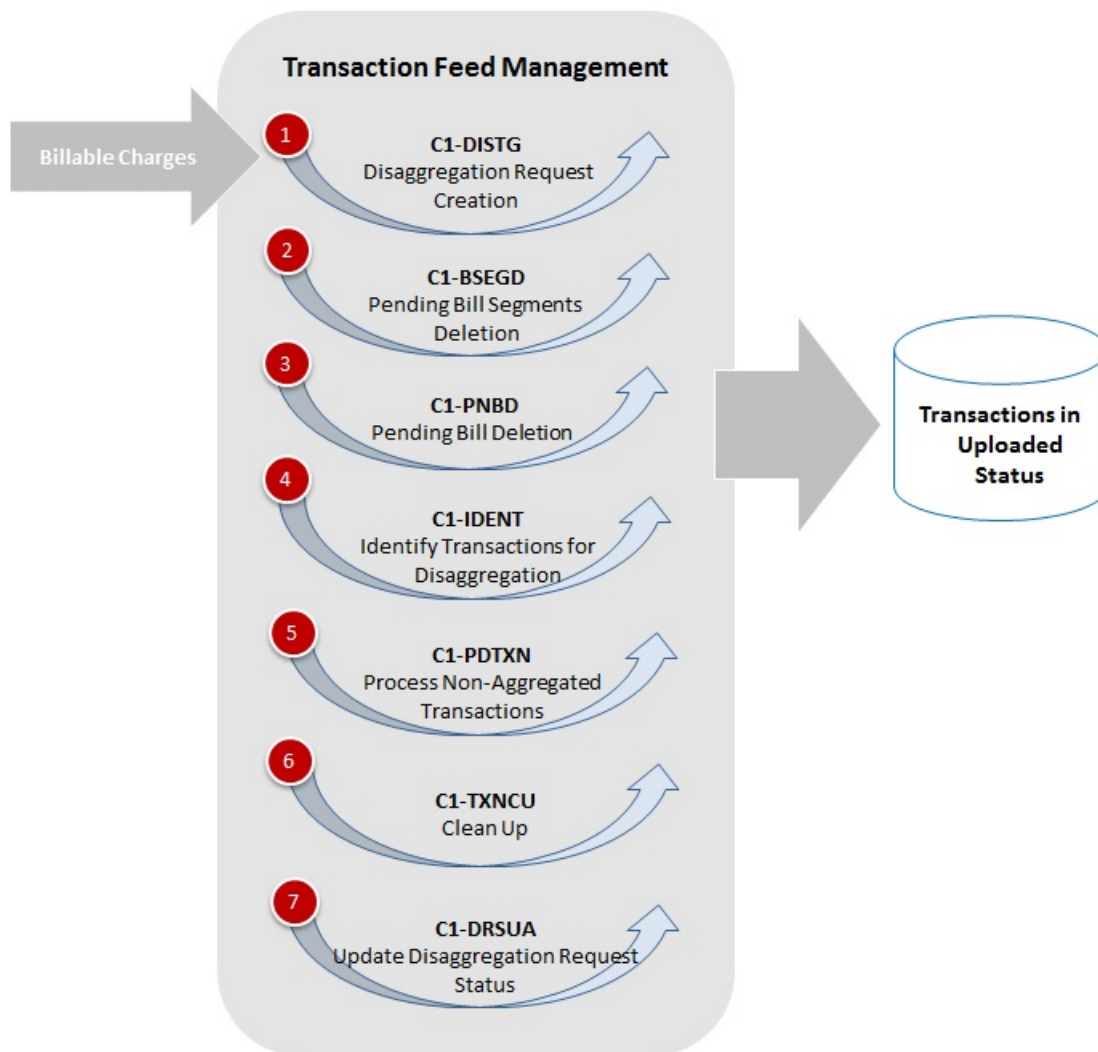
## **Transaction Disaggregation Batch Processing**

---

During the transaction disaggregation process, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

1. Disaggregation Request Creation (C1-DISTG)
2. Pending Bill Segments Deletion (C1-BSEGD)
3. Pending Bill Deletion (C1-PNBD)
4. Identify Transactions for Disaggregation (C1-IDENT)
5. Process Non-Aggregated Transactions (C1-PDTXN)
6. Clean Up (C1-TXNCU) with the **Request Type** parameter set to **DISAGG**
7. Update Disaggregation Request Status (C1-DRSUA)

The following figure graphically explains the sequence in which you need to execute the batches during the transaction disaggregation process:



## Reseeding

In the self-funded health care business, there might be situations when you may want to disaggregate the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions. The system enables you to disaggregate the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions until these transactions are not billed to the customer. If a transaction is billed to the customer, you cannot disaggregate the transaction using the normal transaction disaggregation process.

In the following scenarios, you may want to disaggregate the claim or ancillary transactions once these are billed to the customer:

- The changes are made to the specific stop-loss (SSL), aggregate stop-loss (ASL), discount arrangement, or level funded pricing rule which is used during the transaction aggregation process.
- A new pricing rule is created using a specific stop-loss (SSL) or aggregate stop-loss (ASL) pricing rule type which is added in the claim or ancillary pricing rule type using which the claim or ancillary transaction is processed.
- A new pricing rule is created using a discount arrangement pricing rule type which is added in the claim or ancillary pricing rule type using which the claim or ancillary transaction is processed.
- A new pricing rule is created using a level funded pricing rule type which is added in the claim or ancillary pricing rule type using which the claim or ancillary transaction is processed.

- A specific stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, discount arrangement, or level funded pricing rule type is added as related pricing rule type in the claim or ancillary pricing rule type using which the claim or ancillary transaction is processed.

The former scenario arises due to change in pricing rule, whereas the latter four scenarios arise due to the late setup. In such scenarios, you can create the **Accumulation Group Based Disaggregation Request** (also known as **Re seeding Request**) to disaggregate the claim and ancillary transactions. In the **Accumulation Group Based Disaggregation** (also known as **Re seeding**) feature, the system allows you to create the re seeding requests for the accounts using a parent accumulation group. At present, you can create the re seeding requests for the accounts only from the user interface and not through the **Disaggregation Request Creation (C1-DISTG)** batch.

While creating a re seeding request using the **Parent Accumulation Group** request type, you can specify the accumulation type (i.e. whether it is stop-loss or discount arrangement). If the accumulation type is set to **Stop Loss**, the system provides the **Disaggregate All Account** option. If you select the **Disaggregate All Account** option, the system considers accounts of all bill groups of the parent customer (for whom the parent accumulation group is created) and then creates a re seeding request for each such account. However, if you do not select the **Disaggregate All Account** option, the system considers accounts of only those bill groups where the parent accumulation group is used for creating the specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss pricing rules and then creates a re seeding request for each such account. In addition, the system creates a re seeding request for the ASSL and ASL Credit accounts which are specified in the specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss pricing rules, respectively. Note that the re seeding requests are created for the ASSL and ASL Credit accounts irrespective of whether the **Disaggregate All Account** option is selected or not.

However, if the accumulation type is set to **Discount Arrangement**, the system does not provide the **Disaggregate All Account** option. In this case, the system, by default, considers accounts of all bill groups of the parent customer (for whom the parent accumulation group is created) and then creates a re seeding request for each such account.

**Note:** In the late setup scenarios, you need to ensure that the pricing rules are created before you create the re seeding requests for accounts.

In the **Re seeding** process, you need to execute the following batches in the specified sequence:

1. **Identify Transactions for Disaggregation (C1-IDENT)** - It fetches the re seeding requests for accounts and then identifies the claim or ancillary transactions for disaggregation. If the re seeding request is created due to change in a pricing rule, the **BILLABLE\_CHG\_ACT\_CD** column corresponding to the specific stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, discount, or level-funded billable charges in the **CI\_DISAGG\_BCHG\_DETAIL** table is set to **Billable Charge is Part of Frozen Bill Segment (40)**. It indicates that no action must be taken on these billable charges. And, if the re seeding request is created due to the late setup scenarios, the claim or ancillary transaction and its legs are moved to the **CI\_TXN\_DETAIL\_STG** and **CI\_TXN\_DTL\_PRITM\_STG** tables, respectively. In addition, the status of the claim or ancillary transaction is changed to **Uploaded**. For more information about the parameters, refer to *ORMB - Transaction Feed Management - Batch Execution Guide*.
2. **Process Non-Aggregated Transactions (C1-PDTXN)** - If the re seeding request is created due to change in a pricing rule, it does the following:
  - The specific stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, discount arrangement, and stop-loss and discount specific level funded transaction legs, whose corresponding bill segments are in the **Frozen** or **Pending Cancel** status, are forcibly deleted from the **CI\_TXN\_DTL\_PRITM** table.
  - The specific stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, discount arrangement, and stop-loss and discount specific level funded transaction legs, whose corresponding bill segments are in a status other than **Frozen** or **Pending Cancel**, are moved to the **CI\_TXN\_DTL\_PRITM\_STG** table. And, the claim or ancillary transaction is moved to the **CI\_TXN\_DETAIL\_STG** table and its status is changed to **Uploaded**.

Irrespective of whether the re seeding request is created due to change in a pricing rule or the late setup scenarios, this batch does not perform any actions on the claim, claim based fee, and ancillary transaction legs and their billable charges. For more information about the parameters, refer to *ORMB - Transaction Feed Management - Batch Execution Guide*.

3. **Transaction Cleanup Batch (C1-TXNCU)** - While executing the **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)** batch during re seeding, you must set the **Request Type** parameter to **DISAGG**. For more information about the parameters, refer to *ORMB - Transaction Feed Management - Batch Execution Guide*.

- Update Disaggregation Request Status (C1-DRSUA)** - Once the claim or ancillary transaction is successfully disaggregated, the status of the reseeding request is changed to **COMPLETE**. For more information about the parameters, refer to *ORMB - Transaction Feed Management - Batch Execution Guide*.

When you re-aggregate the claim or ancillary transactions which were disaggregated due to late setup, the system creates the specific stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, discount arrangement, and stop-loss and discount specific level funded transaction legs and their billable charges. However, when you re-aggregate the claim or ancillary transactions which were disaggregated due to change in a pricing rule, the system creates the specific stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, discount arrangement, and stop-loss and discount specific level funded transaction legs and the billable charges for the delta amount (which resulted due to change in pricing).

If the accumulation type is set to **Stop Loss**, the system deletes the specific stop-loss transaction legs. In addition, it deletes the aggregate stop-loss transaction legs (if any), discount arrangement transaction legs (if any), and level funded transaction legs (if any) whose calculation is based on the specific stop-loss transaction legs.

However, if the accumulation type is set to **Discount Arrangement**, the system deletes the discount arrangement transaction legs. It deletes the specific stop-loss transaction legs (if any), aggregate stop-loss transaction legs (if any), and level funded transaction legs (if any) when the discount arrangement pricing rule is used in the specific stop-loss pricing rule. However, it deletes the aggregate stop-loss transaction legs (if any) and level funded transaction legs (if any) when the discount arrangement pricing rule is used in the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

For example, the CLAIM pricing rule type contains the SSL, ASL, DISCOUNT, and LEVEL FUNDED pricing rule types as the related pricing rule types, and the SSL and ASL pricing rules contain the following discount arrangement pricing rules:

Discount Rule	Arrangement Pricing	Included in the SSL Pricing Rule (Yes or No)	Included in the ASL Pricing Rule (Yes or No)
DISCOUNT1		Yes	No
DISCOUNT2		No	Yes

Now, if the reseeding request (where the accumulation type is set to **Stop Loss**) is created for an account due to change in the SSL pricing rule, the system behaves in the following manner for the C1 claim transaction:

Transaction Leg	Existing Transaction Leg Deleted (Yes or No)	New Transaction Leg Created (Yes or No)	Existing Billable Charge Deleted (Yes or No)	New Billable Charge Created for Delta Charges (Yes or No)
Claim	No	No	No	No
SSL	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
ASL	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
DISCOUNT	No	No	No	No
LEVEL FUNDED	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
DISCOUNT1	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
DISCOUNT2	Yes	Yes	No	Yes

However, if the reseeding request (where the accumulation type is set to **Discount Arrangement**) is created for an account due to change in the DISCOUNT2 pricing rule, the system behaves in the following manner for the C1 claim transaction:

Transaction Leg	Existing Transaction Leg Deleted (Yes or No)	New Transaction Leg Created (Yes or No)	Existing Billable Charge Deleted (Yes or No)	New Billable Charge Created for Delta Charges (Yes or No)
Claim	No	No	No	No
SSL	No	No	No	No
ASL	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
DISCOUNT	No	No	No	No
LEVEL FUNDED	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
DISCOUNT1	No	No	No	No
DISCOUNT2	Yes	Yes	No	Yes

Let us take another example where the related pricing rule types are not specified in the CLM1 pricing rule type. Therefore, the system just created claim-specific transaction legs and billable charges for the C2 claim transaction. These claim billable charges are then billed to the customer. Now, if you add the SSL and ASL pricing rule types as the related pricing rule types in the CLM1 pricing rule type and create a reseeding request (where the accumulation type is set to **Stop Loss**) for an account, the system behaves in the following manner for the C2 claim transaction when the transaction incurred and paid dates fall within the incurred and paid date ranges defined in the parent accumulation group:

Transaction Leg	Existing Transaction Leg Deleted (Yes or No)	New Transaction Leg Created (Yes or No)	Existing Billable Charge Deleted (Yes or No)	New Billable Charge Created for Delta Charges (Yes or No)
Claim	No	No	No	No
SSL	Not applicable	Yes	Not applicable	Yes
ASL	Not applicable	Yes	Not applicable	Yes
DISCOUNT1	Not applicable	Yes	Not applicable	Yes
DISCOUNT2	Not applicable	Yes	Not applicable	Yes

## Transaction Cancellation

There might be situations when incorrect transaction data file is uploaded in the system. In such cases, the system provides you with an ability to cancel the whole transaction feed. You can cancel a transaction feed either before the transaction aggregation process starts (that is, before executing the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch) or after the transaction aggregation process ends (that is, after executing the **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)** batch). In other words, you cannot cancel a transaction feed during the transaction aggregation process. Once the transaction feed is cancelled, the status of the feed and all transactions in the feed is changed to **Cancelled (CNCL)**.

The following table explains how the system behaves:

When you cancel a transaction feed for which...	Then
A bill (with the <b>Pending</b> status) is already generated in the system	The corresponding billable charges, bill segments, and bill are deleted. The corresponding transaction legs and their calculation lines (if any) are deleted, and the status of the transactions is changed to <b>Cancelled (CNCL)</b> .
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If a pending bill has a bill segment in the <b>Frozen</b> or <b>Pending Cancel</b> status, the system does not allow you to cancel the transaction feed.</p> <p>If a pending bill has a bill segment in the <b>Cancel</b> status, the system behaves in the following manner:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deletes all other bill segments which are not in the <b>Cancel</b> status.</li> <li>• The billable charge corresponding to the bill segment which is not in the <b>Cancel</b> status is deleted if the billable charge is in the <b>Billable</b> status and if the billable charge only includes transactions from the feed that you want to cancel.</li> <li>• The billable charge corresponding to the bill segment which is not in the <b>Cancel</b> status is not deleted or recalculated if the billable charge is in the <b>Cancelled</b> status.</li> <li>• The billable charge corresponding to the bill segment which is in the <b>Cancel</b> status is cancelled if the billable charge only includes transactions from the feed that you want to cancel.</li> <li>• The SQIs in the billable charge are recalculated if the billable charge includes transactions from multiple feeds.</li> </ul> <p>If a bill is created for transactions which are uploaded through multiple transaction feeds (for example, Feed A and Feed B and you want to cancel Feed A), then:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The bill and their corresponding bill segments are deleted.</li> <li>• The SQIs are recalculated in the corresponding billable charges.</li> <li>• The legs of transactions uploaded through Feed A and the corresponding calculation lines (if any) are deleted.</li> <li>• The status of the transactions uploaded through Feed A is changed to <b>Cancelled (CNCL)</b>.</li> <li>• The status of Feed A is changed to <b>Cancelled (CNCL)</b>.</li> <li>• The status of the transactions uploaded through Feed B remains the same (i.e. <b>Completed (COMP)</b> ).</li> </ul>
A bill (with the <b>Complete</b> status) already exists in the system	The system does not allow you to cancel the transaction feed.

When you cancel a transaction feed for which...	Then
A bill (with the <b>Complete</b> status) has all bill segments in the <b>Cancelled</b> status	The corresponding billable charges are cancelled. The corresponding transaction legs and their calculation lines (if any) are deleted, and the status of the transactions is changed to <b>Cancelled (CNCL)</b> .
A billable charge (with the <b>Billable</b> status) exists in the system	<p>The billable charge is deleted. The corresponding transaction legs and their calculation lines (if any) are deleted, and the status of the transactions is changed to <b>Cancelled (CNCL)</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>In case a billable charge is created for transactions uploaded through multiple transaction feeds (for example, Feed A and Feed B and you want to cancel Feed A), then:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The SQIs are recalculated in the billable charge.</li> <li>• The legs of transactions uploaded through Feed A and the corresponding calculation lines (if any) are deleted.</li> <li>• The status of the transactions uploaded through Feed A is changed to <b>Cancelled (CNCL)</b>.</li> <li>• The status of Feed A is changed to <b>Cancelled (CNCL)</b>.</li> <li>• The status of the transactions uploaded through Feed B remains the same (i.e. <b>Completed (COMP)</b> ).</li> </ul>
A billable charge (with the <b>Cancelled</b> status) exists in the system	The billable charge is not deleted. However, the corresponding transaction legs and their calculation lines (if any) are deleted and the status of the transactions is changed to <b>Cancelled (CNCL)</b> .

To cancel a transaction feed, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

1. **Pending Bill Deletion (C1-DELBL)** — This batch deletes the bills (with the **Pending** status) and their corresponding bill segments. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to delete bills which include charges for transactions which are received in a particular transaction feed.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be transferred to the database.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

2. **Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)** — This batch deletes non-aggregated and aggregated billable charges. An aggregated billable charge is deleted only when it includes legs of transactions from the feed that you want to cancel. If an aggregated billable charge includes legs of transactions from multiple feeds, the SQIs and calculation lines (if any) are recalculated in the aggregated billable charge. The corresponding calculation lines are deleted whenever an aggregated billable charge, which includes transaction legs whose rating criteria is set to **Aggregate transactions and then rate aggregated SQs (AGTR)**, is cancelled or deleted during the cancellation process. Note that while executing this batch, the **Request Type** parameter must be set to **CNCL**. For more information about the parameters that you can specify while executing this batch, refer to [Clean Up](#) on page 673.

3. **Cancellation (C1-TXCNC)** — This batch deletes the transaction legs. The corresponding calculation lines are deleted whenever an aggregated billable charge, which includes transaction legs whose rating criteria is set to **Rate individual transactions and aggregate calc lines across transactions (RITA)** or **Rate Transactions (RITX)**, is cancelled or deleted during the cancellation process. Finally, this batch changes the status of the feed and all transactions in the feed to **Cancelled (CNCL)**. You can specify either of the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to cancel a particular transaction feed.	Yes
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be transferred to the database.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

Note:

If you want to undertake some preprocessing activities (such as cleaning data in any custom tables) during the cancellation process, you need to attach a preprocessing algorithm on the **TFM - Cancellation Pre-Processing** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. This algorithm is triggered when you execute the **Cancellation (C1-TXCNC)** batch. Note that the system invokes the algorithm which is attached on the derived account's division and not on the division to which the transaction belongs.

A sample preprocessing algorithm type named **C1\_CNCL\_PRPC** is shipped with the product. It does not have any business logic. If you want to undertake some preprocessing activities during the cancellation process, you need to create custom algorithm type and attach the respective algorithm on the **TFM - Cancellation Pre-Processing** algorithm spot of the respective division. You can refer to the **C1\_CNCL\_PRPC** algorithm type to understand the input parameters that must be passed to the custom algorithm type.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Leg Status Transition	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Status Transition</a> on page 697

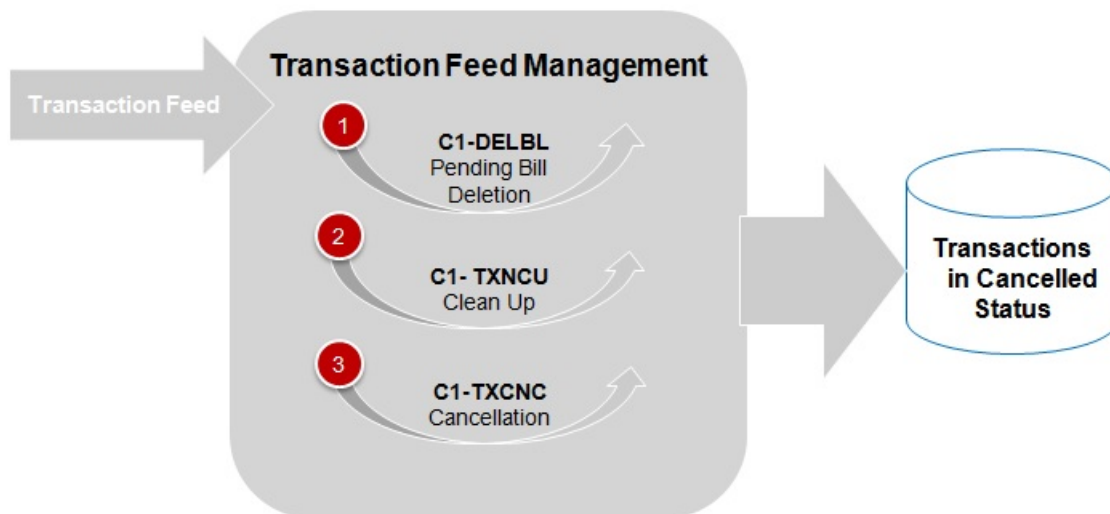
Transaction Cancellation Batch Processing

During the transaction cancellation process, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

1. Pending Bill Deletion (C1-DELBL)
2. Clean Up (C1-TXNCU) with the **Request Type** parameter set to **CNCL**
3. Cancellation (C1-TXCNC)

The following figure graphically explains the sequence in which you need to execute the batches during the transaction cancellation process:





## Transaction Rollback

In the transaction aggregation process, an error occurs when:

- Transaction validation fails.
- Transaction does not satisfy any rule invoked through the rule type.
- Effective pricing is not available for one or more price items to which a transaction is mapped.
- SQIs are not defined for the price item — division combination.
- Transaction aggregation rule is not defined for the SQL.
- Exchange rate is not available during currency conversion.
- There is no contract available with the specified contract type on the transaction date or when the contract is inactive.
- There are multiple effective contracts of the same contract type (available on the transaction date) in **Active**, **Pending Stop**, or **Stop** status.
- The **Price Assignment Search** algorithm is not defined for the division.
- The parameter values are either not defined or invalid in the **Price Assignment Search** algorithm on the processing date.
- The period in which the transaction date falls is not defined in the aggregation schedule.
- Price Item parameters specified in the output parameters are not effective for the price item on the processing date.
- Mandatory price item parameter which is effective on the processing date is not specified in the output parameter.
- Parameter value is not specified for all mandatory price item parameters which are effective on the processing date.

In such cases, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**. You can configure the required setup and then execute the following batches once again in the specified order:

1. Flush All Caches (F1-FLUSH)
2. Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)
3. Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)
4. Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)
5. Populate CI\_TXN\_DTL\_PRITM\_SUMMARY Table (C1-TXNPS)

**Note:** You must execute the **Populate C1\_TXN\_DTL\_PRITM\_SUMMARY Table (C1-TXNPS)** batch only when the **Use C1-TXNPS During Transaction Aggregation** option type in the **C1\_FM** feature configuration is set to **true**.

6. Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)
7. Update Status (C1-TXNEX)
8. Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)
9. Mark Completion (C1-TXNCM)
10. Clean Up (C1-TXNCU)

But, before you execute these batches, you need to rollback the transaction status to **Uploaded (UPLD)**. The system allows you to rollback transactions which are in the **Ignored (IGNR)** and **Error (EROR)** status. When you rollback a transaction, the corresponding transaction legs are deleted and the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**. On rolling back a transaction leg whose effective pricing has the **Ignore Transaction** field set to **Yes** and the **Rating Criteria** field set to **Rate Transactions (RITX)**, the corresponding calculation lines are also deleted along with the transaction leg. If you rollback a partially disaggregated transaction which is in the **Error (EROR)** status, the transaction legs which are in the **Error (EROR)** status are only deleted and the status of the transaction is changed to **Uploaded (UPLD)**.

You need to execute the **Rollback (C1-TXNRB)** batch to rollback transactions which are in the **Ignored (IGNR)** and **Error (EROR)** status. You can specify the following parameters while executing this batch:

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Status	Used to indicate whether you want to rollback transactions which are in the <b>Ignored</b> or <b>Error</b> status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IGNR</li> <li>EROR</li> </ul>	Yes
Transaction Header ID	Used when you want to rollback transactions which are received in a particular transaction feed.	No
Transaction Source	Used when you want to rollback transactions which are received from a particular transaction source.	No
Division	Used when you want to rollback transactions belonging to a particular division.	No
Rollback From Date	Used when you want to rollback transactions which were performed from a particular date onwards. <div> <b>Note:</b>  You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.  The rollback from date cannot be later than the rollback to date. </div>	No
Rollback To Date	Used when you want to rollback transactions which were performed till a particular date. <div> <b>Note:</b>  You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.  The rollback to date cannot be earlier than the rollback from date. </div>	No

Parameter Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Chunk Size	Used to specify the number of transactions you want to execute in each work unit.	Yes
Maximum Batch Count	Used to specify the maximum number of transactions after which the data must be transferred to the database.	Yes
Thread Pool Name	Used to specify the thread pool on which you want to execute the batch.	No

**Note:**

If you want to undertake some preprocessing activities (such as cleaning data in any custom tables) during the rollback process, you need to attach a preprocessing algorithm on the **Transaction Feed Management Rollback Preprocessing** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen. This algorithm is triggered when you execute the **Rollback (C1-TXNRB)** batch. Note that the system invokes the algorithm which is attached on the division to which the transaction belongs.

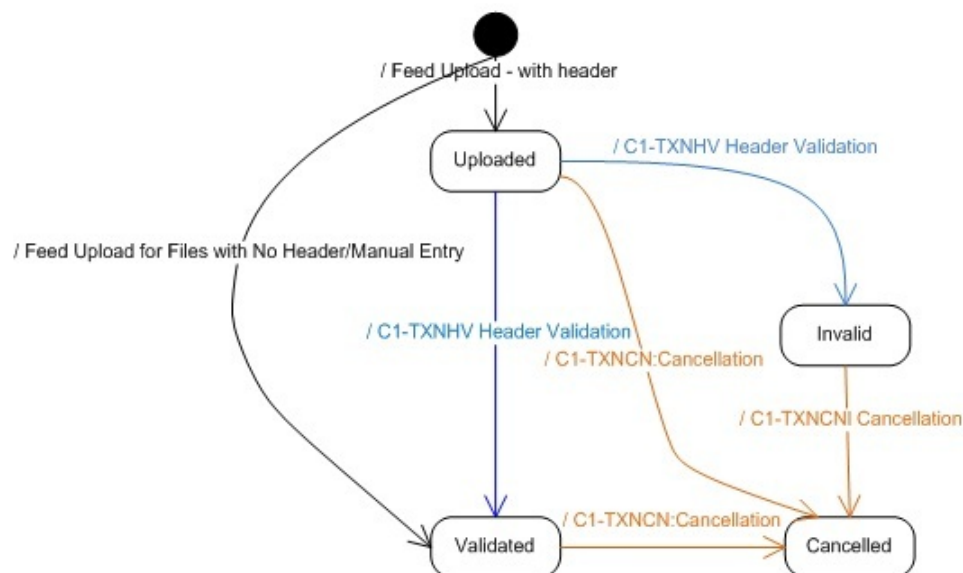
A sample preprocessing algorithm type named **C1\_ROBK\_PRPC** is shipped with the product. It does not have any business logic. If you want to undertake some preprocessing activities during the rollback process, you need to create custom algorithm type and attach the respective algorithm on the **TFM - Rollback Pre-Processing** algorithm spot of the respective division. You can refer to the **C1\_ROBK\_PRPC** algorithm type to understand the input parameters that must be passed to the custom algorithm type.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Leg Status Transition	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Status Transition</a> on page 697

## Feed Status Transition

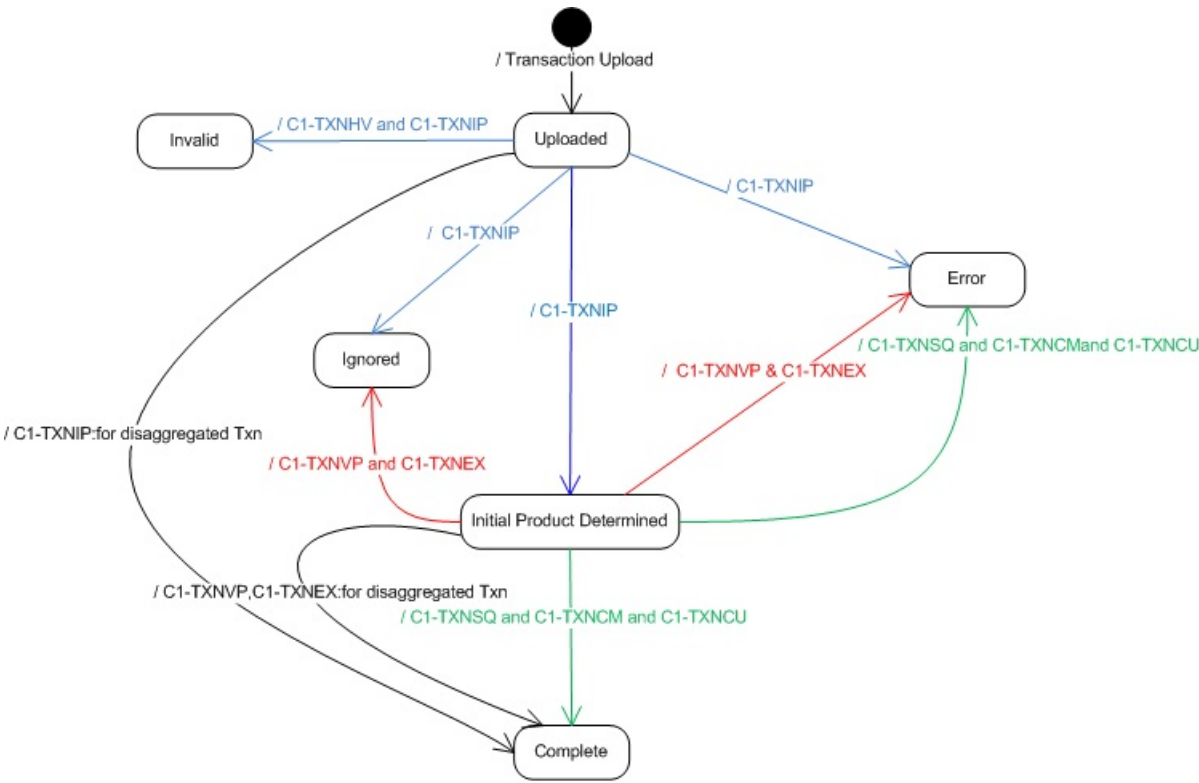
The following figure graphically indicates how a feed moves from one status to another during the transaction feed management process:



Transaction Status Transition

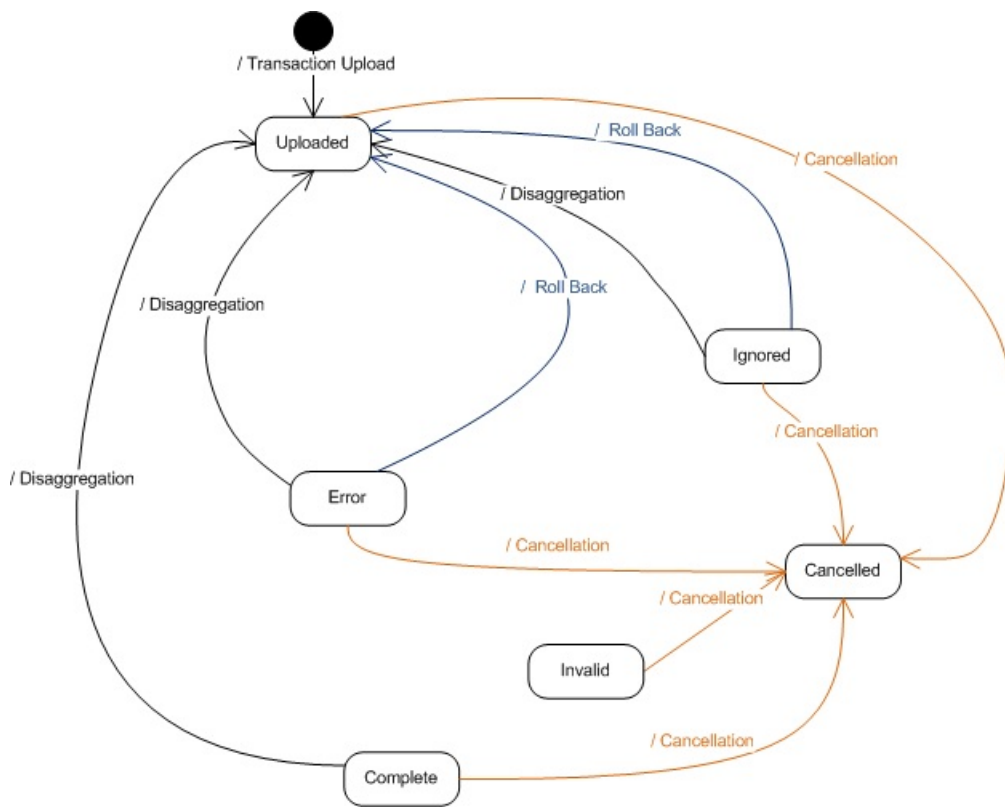
Aggregation

The following figure graphically indicates how a transaction moves from one status to another during the aggregation process:



Disaggregation, Rollback, and Cancellation

The following figure graphically indicates how a transaction moves from one status to another during the disaggregation, rollback, and cancellation processes:



## Transaction Leg Status Transition

This section explains how a transaction leg moves from one status to another during the following sub-processes:

- Transaction Aggregation

**Note:** This is the aggregation process for transactions that are recently uploaded or reaggregated after being fully disaggregated.

- Transaction Rollback
- Transaction Cancellation
- Transaction Disaggregation
- Transaction Reaggregation

**Note:** This is the aggregation process for transactions that are reaggregated after being partially disaggregated.

### Transaction Aggregation

The following table indicates how a transaction leg moves from one status to another during the aggregation process:

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Pre Event Transaction Status	Pre Event Transaction Leg Status	Post Event Transaction Status	Post Event Transaction Leg Status
1	C1-TXNIP	Transaction validation fails due to incomplete transaction data	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created	INVALID	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created
2	C1-TXNIP	Transaction validation fails due to invalid or incorrect transaction data	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created	ERROR	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created
3	C1-TXNIP	Transaction validation is successful but no product is derived	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created	ERROR	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created
4	C1-TXNIP	Transaction validation is successful and product is derived	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED
5	C1-TXNIP	Transaction validation is successful and the transaction is ignored by the rule based on the transaction attributes	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created	IGNORED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created
6	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	Effective pricing is not found for any of the transaction legs	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	ERROR	ERROR
7	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	<b>Ignore Transaction</b> flag is set to <b>Y</b> in the effective pricing for one or more transaction legs but not for all transaction legs	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	IGNORED (when <b>Ignore Transaction</b> flag is set to <b>Y</b> in the effective pricing) INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED (when <b>Ignore Transaction</b> flag is set to <b>N</b> in the effective pricing)
8	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	<b>Ignore Transaction</b> flag is set to <b>Y</b> in the effective pricing for all transaction legs	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	IGNORED	IGNORED

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Pre Event Transaction Status	Pre Event Transaction Leg Status	Post Event Transaction Status	Post Event Transaction Leg Status
9	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	<b>Ignore Transaction</b> flag is set to <b>N</b> in the effective pricing for all transaction legs	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED
10	C1-TXNSQ and C1-TXNCM	SQIs are not defined for the product — division combination, Transaction aggregation rule is not defined for the SQI, or Exchange rate is not available during currency conversion	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	ERROR	ERROR
11	C1-TXNSQ and C1-TXNCM	Billable charges are created successfully for all transaction legs	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	COMPLETED	COMPLETED

### **Transaction Rollback**

The following table indicates how a transaction leg moves from one status to another during the rollback process:

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Pre Event Transaction Status	Pre Event Transaction Leg Status	Post Event Transaction Status	Post Event Transaction Leg Status
1	C1-TXNRB	Transactions with the Error (EROR) status are rolled back	ERROR	ERROR	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created
2	C1-TXNRB	Transactions with the Ignored (IGNR) status are rolled back	IGNORED	IGNORED	UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transaction legs are not yet created

### **Transaction Cancellation**

The following table indicates how a transaction leg moves from one status to another during the cancellation process:

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Pre Event Transaction Status	Pre Event Transaction Leg Status	Post Event Transaction Status	Post Event Transaction Leg Status
1	C1-TXCNC	Transactions in any status are cancelled	UPLOADED, INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED, ERROR, COMPLETED, INVALID, or IGNORED	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED, ERROR, IGNORED, or COMPLETED	CANCELLED	CANCELLED

**Transaction Disaggregation**

The following table indicates how a transaction leg moves from one status to another during the disaggregation process:

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Pre Event Transaction Status	Pre Event Transaction Leg Status	Post Event Transaction Status	Post Event Transaction Leg Status
1	C1-DISTG	Transactions in the COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED status are disaggregated.	COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED  <b>Note:</b> The transactions in the ERROR or IGNORED status must have legs for disaggregation.	COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED	No change in the status	No change in the status
2	C1-DISTG	Transactions in the INVALID or CANCELLED status cannot be disaggregated. In addition, the newly uploaded transactions and fully disaggregated transactions which are in the UPLOADED status cannot be disaggregated.	CANCELLED, INVALID, or UPLOADED	Not applicable as the transactions will not have any legs in these statuses	No change in the status	Not applicable as the transactions will not have any legs in these statuses
3	C1-IDENT	Transactions in the COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED status are disaggregated.	COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED  <b>Note:</b> The transactions in the ERROR or IGNORED status must have legs for disaggregation.	COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED	No change in the status	No change in the status



Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Pre Event Transaction Status	Pre Event Transaction Leg Status	Post Event Transaction Status	Post Event Transaction Leg Status
4	C1-IDENT	Transaction has already been disaggregated and is in the UPLOADED status. The transaction legs which were not affected are moved in the staging table and the transaction legs which were affected are deleted. Now, if the effective pricing is changed for the account to which the transaction leg in the staging table is mapped, then that transaction leg must be disaggregated. Thus, disaggregation is done even though the transaction is in the UPLOADED status.	UPLOADED	UPLOADED	No change in the status	No change in the status
5	C1-PDTXN	Transactions in the COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED status are disaggregated.	COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED <b>Note:</b> The transactions in the ERROR or IGNORED status must have legs for disaggregation.	COMPLETED, ERROR, or IGNORED	UPLOADED	Transaction legs which are affected during disaggregation are deleted and the other legs which are not affected are moved to the staging table.

### **Transaction Reaggregation**

The following table indicates how a transaction leg moves from one status to another during the reaggregation process:

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Transaction Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Leg Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Status After Reaggregation	Transaction Leg Status After Reaggregation
1	C1-TXNIP	Transaction in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. It had four transaction legs – two in the COMPLETED status and other two in the IGNORED status. A transaction leg in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated due to change in the business rule (i.e. <b>IGNORE_SW</b> is set to <b>Y</b> ).	COMPLETED	COMPLETED, IGNORED	COMPLETED	Derived Leg: IGNORED  Existing Legs: COMPLETED and IGNORED
2	C1-TXNIP	Transaction in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. It had one transaction leg in the COMPLETED status and all other transaction legs in the IGNORED status. The leg in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated due to change in the business rule (i.e. <b>IGNORE_SW</b> is set to <b>Y</b> ).	COMPLETED	COMPLETED, IGNORED	IGNORED	Derived Leg: IGNORED  Existing Legs: IGNORED

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Transaction Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Leg Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Status After Reaggregation	Transaction Leg Status After Reaggregation
3	C1-TXNIP	Transaction in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. All the transaction legs were in the COMPLETED status. One of the transaction legs in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. During reaggregation, no product was derived for this transaction leg.	COMPLETED	COMPLETED	ERROR	Derived Leg: No new transaction leg was created  Existing Legs: COMPLETED
4	C1-TXNIP	Transaction in the ERROR status was disaggregated. It had no transaction legs. During reaggregation, no product was derived for the transaction.	ERROR	No Transaction Legs Exist	ERROR	Derived Leg: No new transaction leg was created  Existing Legs: None
5	C1-TXNIP	Transaction in the ERROR status was disaggregated. It had no transaction legs. During reaggregation, a product was derived for the transaction.	ERROR	No Transaction Legs Exist	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	Derived Leg: INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED  Existing Legs: None

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Transaction Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Leg Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Status After Reaggregation	Transaction Leg Status After Reaggregation
6	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	Transaction in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. It had four transaction legs – two in the COMPLETED status and other two in the IGNORED status. A transaction leg in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. During reaggregation, the effective pricing was not found for the transaction leg.	COMPLETED	COMPLETED, IGNORED	ERROR	Derived Leg: ERROR  Existing Legs: COMPLETED and IGNORED
7	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	Transaction in the ERROR status was disaggregated. It had no transaction legs. During reaggregation, the effective pricing is found for the transaction legs.	ERROR	No Transaction Legs Exist	INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED	Derived Legs: INITIAL PRODUCT DETERMINED  Existing Legs: None
8	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	Transaction in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. It had four transaction legs – two in the COMPLETED status and other two in the IGNORED status. A transaction leg in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated due to change in the effective pricing (i.e. <b>Ignore Transaction</b> flag is set to <b>Y</b> ).	COMPLETED	COMPLETED, IGNORED	COMPLETED	Derived Leg: IGNORED  Existing Legs: COMPLETED and IGNORED

Sr. No.	Batch	Event	Transaction Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Leg Status Before Disaggregation	Transaction Status After Reaggregation	Transaction Leg Status After Reaggregation
9	C1-TXNVP and C1-TXNEX	Transaction in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated. It had one transaction leg in the COMPLETED status and all other transaction legs in the IGNORED status. The leg in the COMPLETED status was disaggregated due to change in the effective pricing (i.e. <b>Ignore Transaction</b> flag is set to <b>Y</b> ).	COMPLETED	COMPLETED, IGNORED	IGNORED	Derived Leg: IGNORED Existing Legs: IGNORED
10	C1-TXNSQ and C1-TXNCM	While reaggregating transaction legs, SQIs are not defined for the product — division combination, Transaction aggregation rule is not defined for the SQL, or Exchange rate is not available during currency conversion.	COMPLETED, ERROR, IGNORED <b>Note:</b> There must be no legs for the transaction in the IGNORED status.	COMPLETED, ERROR	ERROR	Derived Legs: ERROR Existing Legs: No change in the status
11	C1-TXNSQ and C1-TXNCM	Billable charges are created successfully for all transaction legs which were earlier disaggregated and now reaggregated.	COMPLETED, ERROR, IGNORED <b>Note:</b> There must be no legs for the transaction in the IGNORED status.	COMPLETED, ERROR	COMPLETED	Derived Leg: COMPLETED Existing Legs: No change in the status

## Transaction Data File

You can upload a transaction data file in the following formats:

- Comma Separated Values
- JavaScript Object Notation
- Fixed Position
- Pipe Separated Values
- Tilde Separated Values
- Extensible Markup Language

Before uploading a transaction data file, you need to ensure that it contains the following:

- **File Header** - Every file must have one header record. It should contain the following details:

Header Data	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to specify the source from where the transactions are received.	Yes
Header Date (YYYYMMDD)	Used to specify the header date.	Yes
Transaction Header ID	Used to specify the external transaction header ID.	Yes
File Name	Used to specify the file name.	Yes
Number of Transactions	Used to specify the total number of transaction records in the file.	Yes
Total Transaction Volume	Used to specify the total transaction volume.	Yes
Total Transaction Amount	Used to specify the total transaction amount.	Yes

- **Transaction Record** - Every file must have one or more transaction records. It should contain the following details:

Record Data	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	Yes
Transaction Source	Used to specify the source from where the transaction is received.	Yes
Transaction Date (YYYYMMDD)	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	Yes
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	Yes
Customer Reference Number	Used to indicate the customer who has performed the transaction.	No
Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs.	Yes
Transaction Volume	Used to specify the transaction volume.	Yes
Transaction Amount	Used to specify the transaction amount.	Yes

Record Data	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Currency	Used to specify the currency in which the transaction was performed.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> If you specify a currency other than the pricing currency, the system will do the currency conversion when the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system.	
Credit/Debit Indicator	Used to indicate whether the transaction is a debit or a credit transaction. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plus (+)</li> <li>Minus (-)</li> </ul>	Yes
Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the account identifier type.	Yes
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which the transaction was performed.	Yes
UDF_NUM_1, UDF_NUM_2, UDF_NUM_3, ..., UDF_NUM_20	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No
UDF_AMT_1, UDF_AMT_2, UDF_AMT_3, ..., UDF_AMT_10	Used to specify additional transaction amount.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> The UDF_AMT_N is required when the corresponding UDF_CCY_N is specified.
UDF_CCY_1, UDF_CCY_2, UDF_CCY_3, ....., UDF_CCY_10	Used to specify additional transaction currency.  <b>Note:</b> If you specify a currency other than the pricing currency, the system will do the currency conversion when the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> The UDF_CCY_N is required when the corresponding UDF_AMT_N is specified.
UDF_DTTM_1, UDF_DTTM_2, ....., UDF_DTTM_5	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No
UDF_CHAR_1, UDF_CHAR_2, UDF_CHAR_3, ..., UDF_CHAR_50	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.  <b>Note:</b> If the data in these columns will be used for price item parameter mapping, you must not use the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols in these columns.	No

## Error List

The following table lists the errors that may occur while executing various batches in the transaction feed management process. It also indicates how you can resolve these errors.

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNHV	102	{Checksum Validation Required} field invalid.	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value other than 'Y', 'y', 'N' or 'n' is specified for the <b>Checksum Validation Required</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNHV	102	{Duplicate Check Required} field invalid.	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value other than 'Y', 'y', 'N' or 'n' is specified for the <b>Duplicate Check Required</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNHV	1314	The Transaction Source is mandatory.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The data is not available in the <b>Transaction Source</b> column.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNHV	1332	Sum of transaction records in the header does not match the total number of records in the file.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inappropriate file is uploaded in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNHV	1333	Sum of transaction volume in the header does not match the total transaction volume in the file.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inappropriate file is uploaded in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNHV	1334	Sum of transaction amount in the header does not match the total transaction amount in the file.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inappropriate file is uploaded in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNHV	1338	The Transaction Header ID already exists in the system. Please enter unique header ID.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The same file is uploaded multiple times in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNHV	1341	Exception occurred during the transaction header validation.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The data is not available in the required format.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNHV	1421	Transaction records does not exist in the file. Please check.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inappropriate file is uploaded in the system.</li> </ul>



Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNHV	1422	Sum of transaction records in the header cannot be zero. Please enter valid data in the header.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value available in the <b>Number of Transactions</b> column is less than or equal to zero.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNHV	1423	Sum of transaction volume in the header cannot be zero. Please enter valid data in the header.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value available in the <b>Total Transaction Volume</b> column is less than or equal to zero.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNHV	1663	Transaction Header External Id is missing.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The data is not available in the <b>Transaction Header ID</b> column.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNHV	1664	Header Transaction Amount should be greater than 0.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value available in the <b>Total Transaction Amount</b> column is less than or equal to zero.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is greater than the value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id }	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Header ID</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	106	Value { Given Transaction Source Code } too long for field { transactionSource }. Maximum length: 30. Found: { Length of given Transaction Source Code }	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Source</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	106	Value { Given Transaction Division } too long for field { division }. Maximum length: 5 Found: { Length of given Transaction Division }	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Division</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 5 characters.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	1301	The account with the specified identifier does not exist in the system. Enter a valid identifier.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The account with the specified account identifier is not found in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1302	UDF_CURRENCY_1 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_1 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_1</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1303	UDF_AMT_1 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_1 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The amount is not available in the <b>UDF_AMT_1</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1304	UDF_CURRENCY_2 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_2</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1305	UDF_AMT_2 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_2 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The amount is not available in the <b>UDF_AMT_2</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1306	UDF_CURRENCY_3 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_3 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_3</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1307	UDF_AMT_3 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_3 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The amount is not available in the <b>UDF_AMT_3</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1308	UDF_CURRENCY_4 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_4 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_4</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1309	UDF_AMT_4 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_4 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The amount is not available in the <b>UDF_AMT_4</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1310	UDF_CURRENCY_5 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_5 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_5</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	1311	UDF_AMT_5 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_5 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The amount is not available in the <b>UDF_AMT_5</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1312	UDF_CURRENCY_6 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_6 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_6</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1313	UDF_AMT_6 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_6 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The amount is not available in the <b>UDF_AMT_6</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1314	UDF_CURRENCY_7 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_7 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_7</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1315	UDF_AMT_7 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_7 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The amount is not available in the <b>UDF_AMT_7</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1316	UDF_CURRENCY_8 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_8 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_8</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1317	UDF_AMT_8 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_8 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The amount is not available in the <b>UDF_AMT_8</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1318	UDF_CURRENCY_9 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_9 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_9</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1319	UDF_AMT_9 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_9 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The amount is not available in the <b>UDF_AMT_9</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	1320	UDF_CURRENCY_10 is mandatory when UDF_AMT_10 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_10</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1321	UDF_AMT_10 is mandatory when UDF_CURRENCY_10 is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The amount is not available in the <b>UDF_AMT_10</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1347	Could not derive a price item from the rules engine.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There is some technical issue while executing the rule or while processing the rule output.</li> <li>No rules are effective on the processing date.</li> <li>The rule type is not defined for the transaction source and transaction record type combination in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1349	Division is invalid. Please enter a valid division for the transaction.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Division (to which the transaction belongs) is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1351	Transaction Currency is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency in which the transaction was performed is not available in the <b>Transaction Currency</b> column.</li> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1362	UDF Currency 1 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1363	UDF Currency 2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1364	UDF Currency 3 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	1365	UDF Currency 4 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1366	UDF Currency 5 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1377	Transaction currency is mandatory when transaction amount is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>Transaction Currency</b> column.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1378	Transaction amount is mandatory when transaction currency is specified. Enter the amount.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The amount is not available in the <b>Transaction Amount</b> column.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1379	The user does not exist in the system. Please enter a valid user ID.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The user is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1380	The value entered in the Credit/Debit Indicator column is incorrect. Enter either "+" or "-".	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value other than '+' or '-' is available in the <b>HOW_TO_USE_TXN_FLG</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1381	The value entered in the Manual Switch field is incorrect. Enter either "Y" or "N".	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value other than 'Y' or 'N' is available in the <b>MANUAL_SW</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is less than or equal to zero.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1636	Invalid batch run [%1] for [%2] division(s). %3  <b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for batch code; [%2] stands for division; [%3] stands for expected batch code	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute the C1-TXNVP, C1-TXNEX, C1-TXNSQ, C1-TXNCM or C1-TXNCU batch instead of the C1-TXNIP batch (which is first mandatory batch in the transaction aggregation cycle).</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	1637	Batch [%1] is already executed for [%2] division(s). Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for [%3] division(s).	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch once again with the same division (for example, D1) after executing any other batch in the transaction aggregation cycle which is already initiated for D1.</li> </ul>
		<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for batch code;</p> <p>[%2] and [%3] stands for division</p>		
C1-TXNIP	1638	Transaction Feed Management cycle for individual division(s) is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for processing [ALL] divisions.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch for all divisions before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for a particular division.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1639	Transaction Feed Management cycle for [ALL] divisions is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for individual division [%1].	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch for a particular division before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for all divisions.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for division		
C1-TXNIP	1646	Value for mandatory parameter is missing.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is defined for the mandatory price item parameter in the rule.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1647	Mandatory parameter is missing.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The mandatory price item parameter is not defined as the output parameter in the rule.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1648	Account Number derived by the rule is invalid.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is defined for either <b>Account Identifier (ACCT_NOX_Val)</b> or <b>Account Identifier Column Name (ACCT_NOX_Col)</b> output parameter in the rule.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	1649	Account Number type code derived by the rule is invalid.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is defined for either <b>Account Identifier Type (ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Val)</b> or <b>Account Identifier Type Column Name (ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Col)</b> output parameter in the rule.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1650	Division derived by the rule is invalid.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is defined for either <b>Account Division (DIVISIONX_VAL)</b> or <b>Account Division Column Name (DIVISIONX_COL)</b> output parameter in the rule.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1651	Not able to derive account ID.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The account with the specified account identifier type, account identifier, and division is not found in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1652	Product derived by the rule is invalid.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is defined for either <b>Product Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Val)</b> or <b>Product Column Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Col)</b> output parameter in the rule.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1653	Length of the derived product is greater than 10.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Product Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Val)</b> or <b>Product Column Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Col)</b> output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 10 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1654	Length of the derived variance parameter is greater than 8.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>TOU (TOUX_Y_Val)</b> or <b>TOU Column Name (TOUX_Y_Col)</b> output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 8 characters.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	1656	Length of the product parameter value derived by the rule is greater than 254.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Parameter Value (PVLX_Y_Z_VAL)</b> or <b>Parameter Value Column Name (PVLX_Y_Z_COL)</b> output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 254 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	1657	Length of the product parameter code derived by the rule is greater than 30.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Parameter Code (PCDX_Y_Z_VAL)</b> output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	2002	Transaction is in EROR due to one or more reasons.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There might be one or more reasons why the status of the transaction is set to <b>Error (EROR)</b>.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	2007	%1 cannot be blank.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The division to which the transaction belongs is not available in the <b>Division</b> column.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for division		
C1-TXNIP	2007	%1 cannot be blank.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No data exists in the <b>USER_ID</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table when the <b>MANUAL_SW</b> column is set to <b>Y</b>.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for user ID		
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency in which the transaction was performed is not available in the <b>CURRENCY_CD</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Currency Code”;		
		[%2] stands for “Transaction Amount”		



Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_1</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 1 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for “Additional Amount 1”		
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_2</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 2 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for “Additional Amount 2”		
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_3</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 3 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for “Additional Amount 3”		
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_4</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 4 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for “Additional Amount 4”		

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_5</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 5 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for “Additional Amount 5”		
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_6</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 6 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for “Additional Amount 6”		
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_7</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 7 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for “Additional Amount 7”		
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_8</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 8 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for “Additional Amount 8”		

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_9</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 9 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for “Additional Amount 9”		
C1-TXNIP	2011	%1 is mandatory when %2 is non-zero. Enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The currency is not available in the <b>UDF_CURRENCY_CD_10</b> column of the <b>CI_TXN_DETAIL</b> table.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 10 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for “Additional Amount 10”		
C1-TXNIP	2012	%1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Currency Code”; [%2] stands for transaction currency		
C1-TXNIP	2012	%1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 1 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_1		

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2012	% 1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 2 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_2		
C1-TXNIP	2012	% 1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 3 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_3		
C1-TXNIP	2012	% 1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 4 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_4		
C1-TXNIP	2012	% 1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 5 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_5		
C1-TXNIP	2012	% 1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 6 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_6		

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2012	%1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 7 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_7		
C1-TXNIP	2012	%1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 8 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_8		
C1-TXNIP	2012	%1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 9 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_9		
C1-TXNIP	2012	%1 %2 is invalid. Please enter a valid currency code.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currency is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for “Amount 10 Currency Code”; [%2] stands for UDF_CURRENCY_CD_10		
C1-TXNIP	2013	The user %1 does not exist in the system. Please enter a valid user ID.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The user is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for user ID		

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2014	<p>%1 derived using %2 by the rule is invalid.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for “Account Number”</p> <p>[%2] stands for the ACCT_NOX_Val or ACCT_NOX_Col output parameter</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is defined for either <b>Account Identifier (ACCT_NOX_Val)</b> or <b>Account Identifier Column Name (ACCT_NOX_Col)</b> output parameter in the rule.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	2014	<p>%1 derived using %2 by the rule is invalid.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for “Account Identifier Type”</p> <p>[%2] stands for the ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Val or ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Col output parameter</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is defined for either <b>Account Identifier Type (ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Val)</b> or <b>Account Identifier Type Column Name (ACCT_NO_TYPEX_Col)</b> output parameter in the rule.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	2014	<p>%1 derived using %2 by the rule is invalid.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for “Division”</p> <p>[%2] stands for the DIVISIONX_VAL or DIVISIONX_COL output parameter</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is defined for either <b>Account Division (DIVISIONX_VAL)</b> or <b>Account Division Column Name (DIVISIONX_COL)</b> output parameter in the rule.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	2014	<p>%1 derived using %2 by the rule is invalid.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for “Initial Product Code”</p> <p>[%2] stands for the PRODUCTX_Y_Val or PRODUCTX_Y_Col output parameter</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is defined for either <b>Product Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Val)</b> or <b>Product Column Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Col)</b> output parameter in the rule.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2015	Not able to derive account id for given Account Number %1, Account Number Type Code %2 and Division %3.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The account with the specified account identifier type, account identifier and division is not found in the system.</li> </ul>
		<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for account identifier;</p> <p>[%2] stands for account identifier type;</p> <p>[%3] stands for division</p>		
C1-TXNIP	2016	Length of the derived %1 using %2 by the rule is greater than %3.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Product Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Val)</b> or <b>Product Column Name (PRODUCTX_Y_Col)</b> output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.</li> </ul>
		<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for “Initial Product Code”;</p> <p>[%2] stands for PRODUCTX_Y_Val or PRODUCTX_Y_Col output parameter;</p> <p>[%3] stands for length of product code (i.e. 30)</p>		
C1-TXNIP	2016	Length of the derived %1 using %2 by the rule is greater than %3.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>TOU (TOUX_Y_Val)</b> or <b>TOU Column Name (TOUX_Y_Col)</b> output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 8 characters.</li> </ul>
		<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for “Variance Parameter”;</p> <p>[%2] stands for TOUX_Y_Val or TOUX_Y_Col output parameter;</p> <p>[%3] stands for length of variance parameter (i.e. 8)</p>		

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2016	<p>Length of the derived %1 using %2 by the rule is greater than %3.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for “Parameter”;</p> <p>[%2] stands for PCDX_Y_Z_VAL output parameter;</p> <p>[%3] stands for length of parameter (i.e. 30)</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Parameter Code (PCDX_Y_Z_VAL)</b> output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	2016	<p>Length of the derived %1 using %2 by the rule is greater than %3.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for “Parameter Value”;</p> <p>[%2] stands for PVLX_Y_Z_VAL or PVLX_Y_Z_COL output parameter;</p> <p>[%3] stands for length of parameter value (i.e. 254)</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Parameter Value Column Name (PVLX_Y_Z_COL)</b> output parameter in the rule exceeds the maximum length of 254 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	2017	<p>Mandatory parameter %1 is missing for %2 %3 and processing date %4.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for the product parameter code;</p> <p>[%2] stands for “Initial Product Code”</p> <p>[%3] stands for the product code</p> <p>[%4] stands for the processing date</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The mandatory product parameter is not defined as the output parameter in the rule.</li> </ul>



Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2018	Value for mandatory parameter %1 is missing for product %2 and processing date %3.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is defined for the mandatory product parameter in the rule.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for product parameter code; [%2] stands for product code; [%3] stands for processing date		
C1-TXNIP	2019	Value of the derived %1 %2 contains '~' or '='.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The parameter code or value contains the equal to (=) and tide (~) symbols.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for parameter code [%2] stands for parameter value		
C1-TXNIP	2037	Error during executing rules for transaction record type %1, transaction source %2 and processing date %3.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There is some technical issue while executing the rule or while processing the rule output.</li> <li>No rules are effective on the processing date.</li> <li>The rule type is not defined for the transaction source and transaction record type combination in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for transaction record type; [%2] stands for transaction source; [%3] stands for processing date		
C1-TXNIP	2043	Unable to derive Rule Type with Transaction Source %1 and Transaction Record Type %2.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The rule type is not defined for the transaction source and transaction record type combination in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for transaction source; [%2] stands for transaction record type		

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNIP	2087	Division %1 is invalid. Please enter a valid division for the transaction.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Division (to which the transaction belongs) is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for division		
C1-TXNVP	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNVP	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id }	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Header ID</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNVP	106	Value { Given Transaction Source Code } too long for field { transactionSource }. Maximum length: 30. Found: { Length of given Transaction Source Code }	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Source</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNVP	106	Value { Given Transaction Division } too long for field { division }. Maximum length: 5 Found: { Length of given Transaction Division }	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Division</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 5 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNVP	1636	Invalid batch run [%1] for [%2] division(s). %3	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute the C1-TXNVP batch before executing the C1-TXNIP batch (which is first mandatory batch in the transaction aggregation cycle).</li> <li>You are trying to execute the C1-TXNVP batch in between the C1-TXNCM and C1-TXNCU batches during the transaction aggregation cycle.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for batch code; [%2] stands for division; [%3] stands for expected batch code		
C1-TXNVP	1638	Transaction Feed Management cycle for individual division(s) is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for processing [ALL] divisions.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch for all divisions before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for a particular division.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNVP	1639	Transaction Feed Management cycle for [ALL] divisions is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for individual division [%1].	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch for a particular division before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for all divisions.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for division		
C1-TXNVP	1644	Transaction Feed Management cycle for division(s) [%1] is already in progress with filter [Source= %2, Header= %3] criteria. Filter criteria must be same for complete cycle.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch once again with the same division and different parameters.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for division; [%2] stands for transaction source; [%3] stands for transaction header ID		
C1-TXNEX	102	{ Chunk Size } field invalid	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is greater than the value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id }	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Header ID</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	106	Value { Given Transaction Source Code } too long for field { transactionSource }. Maximum length: 30. Found: { Length of given Transaction Source Code }	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Source</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNEX	106	Value { Given Transaction Division } too long for field { division }. Maximum length: 5 Found: { Length of given Transaction Division }	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Division</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 5 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	790	The selected Member account does not have active Contracts.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There are no contracts for the account in <b>Active</b>, <b>Pending Stop</b>, or <b>Stop</b> status on the transaction date.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	1336	Effective pricing is not available for the product. Please check.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The effective pricing is not available for the product.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	1392	Invalid configuration of Price Search Algorithm Parameters or Contracts or Schedule Periods.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The parameter values are either not defined or invalid in the <b>Price Assignment Search</b> algorithm (which is associated with the division).</li> <li>The period in which the transaction date falls is not defined in the aggregation schedule.</li> <li>There are multiple effective contracts of the same contract type (available on the transaction date) in <b>Active</b>, <b>Pending Stop</b>, or <b>Stop</b> status.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is less than or equal to zero.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	1588	No Schedule Period found for the transaction date.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The period in which the transaction date falls is not defined in the aggregation schedule.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	1611	Division specific Price Search Algorithm is not configured.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>Price Assignment Search</b> algorithm is not defined for the division.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNEX	1612	Price Search Algorithm parameters are not set or are invalid.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The parameter values are either not defined or invalid in the <b>Price Assignment Search</b> algorithm (which is associated with the division).</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	1613	Multiple contracts in Active, Pending Stop, Stop status exists for same contract type.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There are multiple effective contracts of the same contract type in <b>Active</b>, <b>Pending Stop</b>, or <b>Stop</b> status on the transaction date.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	1636	Invalid batch run [% 1] for [%2] division(s). %3 <div> <b>Note:</b>  [% 1] stands for batch code;  [% 2] stands for division;  [% 3] stands for expected batch code </div>	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute the C1-TXNEX batch before executing the C1-TXNIP batch (which is first mandatory batch in the transaction aggregation cycle).</li> <li>You are trying to execute the C1-TXNEX batch in between the C1-TXNCM and C1-TXNCU batches during the transaction aggregation cycle.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	1638	Transaction Feed Management cycle for individual division(s) is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for processing [ALL] divisions.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch for all divisions before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for a particular division.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	1639	Transaction Feed Management cycle for [ALL] divisions is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for individual division [% 1]. <div> <b>Note:</b> [% 1] stands for division </div>	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch for a particular division before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for all divisions.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNEX	1644	<p>Transaction Feed Management cycle for division(s) [%1] is already in progress with filter [Source= %2, Header= %3] criteria. Filter criteria must be same for complete cycle.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for division;</p> <p>[%2] stands for transaction source;</p> <p>[%3] stands for transaction header ID</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch once again with the same division and different parameters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNIP	2003	One or more Sub Transactions are in EROR state.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One or more transaction legs are in the <b>Error (EROR)</b> status.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	2006	<p>No active contract exists for account %1, product %2 and transaction date %3.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for derived account; [%2] stands for derived product; and [%3] stands for transaction date</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There is no contract with the specified contract type available on the transaction date.</li> <li>The contract is inactive.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	2020	<p>Invalid configuration of Price Search Algorithm Parameters or Contracts or Schedule Periods for division %1, account %2, product %3, transaction date %4 and processing date %5.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for derived division;</p> <p>[%2] stands for derived account;</p> <p>[%3] stands for derived product;</p> <p>[%4] stands for transaction date;</p> <p>[%5] stands for processing date</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The parameter values are either not defined or invalid in the <b>Price Assignment Search</b> algorithm (which is associated with the division).</li> <li>The period in which the transaction date falls is not defined in the aggregation schedule.</li> <li>There are multiple effective contracts of the same contract type (available on the transaction date) in <b>Active</b>, <b>Pending Stop</b>, or <b>Stop</b> status.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNEX	2021	Division specific Price Search Algorithm is not configured for division %1 and processing date %2.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>Price Assignment Search</b> algorithm is not defined for the derived division on the processing date.</li> </ul>
		<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for derived division;</p> <p>[%2] stands for processing date</p>		
C1-TXNEX	2022	Price Search Algorithm parameters are not set or are invalid for division %1 and processing date %2.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The parameter values are either not defined or invalid in the <b>Price Assignment Search</b> algorithm which is associated with the derived division on the processing date.</li> </ul>
		<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for derived division;</p> <p>[%2] stands for processing date</p>		
C1-TXNEX	2023	Effective pricing is not available for account %1, product %2, parameters %3 and processing date %4.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The effective pricing is not available for the account, product and product parameters combination on the processing date.</li> </ul>
		<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for derived account;</p> <p>[%2] stands for derived product;</p> <p>[%3] stands for derived product parameter;</p> <p>[%4] stands for processing date</p>		
C1-TXNEX	2024	No Schedule Period found for product %1, price assignment id %2 and transaction date %3.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The period in which the transaction date falls is not defined in the aggregation schedule (which is used in the product pricing).</li> </ul>
		<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for derived product;</p> <p>[%2] stands for price assignment ID;</p> <p>[%3] stands for transaction date</p>		

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNEX	2025	<p>Multiple contracts in Active, Pending Stop, Stop status exists for same contract type against account %1, product %2 and transaction date %3.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for derived account;</p> <p>[%2] stands for derived product;</p> <p>[%3] stands for transaction date</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There are multiple effective contracts of the same contract type in <b>Active, Pending Stop, or Stop</b> status on the transaction date.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNEX	2026	<p>No active contract exists for account %1, product %2 and transaction date %3.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for derived account;</p> <p>[%2] stands for derived product;</p> <p>[%3] stands for transaction date</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There are no contracts for the account in <b>Active, Pending Stop, or Stop</b> status on the transaction date.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNSQ	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is greater than the value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNSQ	102	{ Chunk Size } field invalid	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNSQ	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id }	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Header ID</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNSQ	106	Value { Given Transaction Source Code } too long for field { transactionSource }. Maximum length: 30. Found: { Length of given Transaction Source Code }	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Source</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.</li> </ul>



Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNSQ	106	Value { Given Transaction Division } too long for field { division }. Maximum length: 5 Found: { Length of given Transaction Division }	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Division</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 5 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNSQ	1388	Data configuration error for { ENV_ID }.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No data exists in the <b>ENV_ID</b> column of the <b>CI_INSTALLATION</b> table.</li> <li>The data available in the <b>ENV_ID</b> column of the <b>CI_INSTALLATION</b> table is not properly cached.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNSQ	1388	Data configuration error for { SQI Fragment }.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No data exists in the <b>SQL_FRAG</b>, <b>TXN_PRM</b>, <b>SQI_CD</b>, and <b>SQL_FUNC</b> columns of the <b>CI_TXN_SQI_FRAG</b> table.</li> <li>The data available in the <b>SQL_FRAG</b>, <b>TXN_PRM</b>, <b>SQI_CD</b>, and <b>SQL_FUNC</b> columns of the <b>CI_TXN_SQI_FRAG</b> table is not properly cached.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNSQ	1388	Data configuration error for { Price Item SQI }.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No data exists in the <b>PRICEITEM_CD</b>, <b>CIS_DIVISION</b>, and <b>SQI_CD</b> columns of the <b>CI_PRICEITEM_SQI</b> table.</li> <li>The data available in the <b>PRICEITEM_CD</b>, <b>CIS_DIVISION</b>, and <b>SQI_CD</b> columns of the <b>CI_PRICEITEM_SQI</b> table is not properly cached.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNSQ	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is less than or equal to zero.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNSQ	1636	Invalid batch run [%1] for [%2] division(s). %3  <b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for batch code; [%2] stands for division; [%3] stands for expected batch code	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute the C1-TXNSQ batch before executing the C1-TXNIP batch (which is first mandatory batch in the transaction aggregation cycle).</li> <li>You are trying to execute the C1-TXNSQ batch in between the C1-TXNCM and C1-TXNCU batches during the transaction aggregation cycle.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNSQ	1638	Transaction Feed Management cycle for individual division(s) is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for processing [ALL] divisions.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch for all divisions before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for a particular division.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNSQ	1639	Transaction Feed Management cycle for [ALL] divisions is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for individual division [%1].  <b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for division	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch for a particular division before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for all divisions.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNSQ	1644	Transaction Feed Management cycle for division(s) [%1] is already in progress with filter [Source= %2, Header= %3] criteria. Filter criteria must be same for complete cycle.  <b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for division; [%2] stands for transaction source; [%3] stands for transaction header ID	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch once again with the same division and different parameters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNSQ	2003	One or more Sub Transactions are in EROR state.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One or more transaction legs are in the <b>Error (EROR)</b> status.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNSQ	2026	SQIs not configured for product %1 and division %2.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The SQIs are not defined for the product — division combination.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for final product code; [%2] stands for derived division		
C1-TXNSQ	2027	Currency Conversion from Currency [%1] to Currency [%2] not successful.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The exchange rate is not available during currency conversion.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCM	102	{ Chunk Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCM	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is greater than the value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCM	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id }	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Header ID</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCM	106	Value { Given Transaction Source Code } too long for field { transactionSource }. Maximum length: 30. Found: { Length of given Transaction Source Code }	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Source</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCM	106	Value { Given Transaction Division } too long for field { division }. Maximum length: 5 Found: { Length of given Transaction Division }	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Division</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 5 characters.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNCM	1393	Either the transaction feed management setup is incomplete, or there is no active contract available.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The SQIs are not defined for the product — division combination.</li> <li>• The transaction aggregation rule is not defined for the SQL.</li> <li>• There is no contract with the specified contract type available in the system.</li> <li>• The contract is inactive.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCM	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is less than or equal to zero.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCM	1636	<p>Invalid batch run [% 1] for [%2] division(s). %3</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[% 1] stands for batch code;</p> <p>[%2] stands for division;</p> <p>[%3] stands for expected batch code</p> </div>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You are trying to execute the C1-TXNCM batch before executing the C1-TXNIP batch.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCM	1638	Transaction Feed Management cycle for individual division(s) is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for processing [ALL] divisions.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You are trying to execute this batch for all divisions before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for a particular division.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCM	1639	<p>Transaction Feed Management cycle for [ALL] divisions is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for individual division [% 1].</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> [% 1] stands for division</p> </div>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You are trying to execute this batch for a particular division before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for all divisions.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNCM	1644	<p>Transaction Feed Management cycle for division(s) [%1] is already in progress with filter [Source= %2, Header= %3] criteria. Filter criteria must be same for complete cycle.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for division;</p> <p>[%2] stands for transaction source;</p> <p>[%3] stands for transaction header ID</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch once again with the same division and different parameters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCM	2003	One or more Sub Transactions are in EROR state.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One or more transaction legs are in the <b>Error (EROR)</b> status.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCM	2026	<p>SQIs not configured for product %1 and division %2.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>[%1] stands for final product code;</p> <p>[%2] stands for derived division</p>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The SQIs are not defined for the product — division combination.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCM	2027	Currency Conversion from Currency [%1] to Currency [%2] not successful.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The exchange rate is not available during currency conversion.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	101	{ Disaggregation From Date } field missing	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is specified for the <b>Disaggregate Transactions From Date</b> parameter when the request type is set to DISAGG.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	101	{ Request Type } field missing	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is specified for the <b>Request Type</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	101	{ Transaction Header Id } field missing	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is specified for the <b>Transaction Header ID</b> parameter when the request type is set to CNCL.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Chunk Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is greater than the value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Request Type } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value other than 'EROR', 'CNCL' or 'DISAGG' is specified for the <b>Request Type</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Transaction Division } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value for the <b>Division</b> parameter is specified when the request type is set to CNCL.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Transaction Source Code } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value for the <b>Transaction Source</b> parameter is specified when the request type is set to CNCL.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Account Id } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value for the <b>Account ID</b> parameter is specified when the request type is set to CNCL.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Bill Cycle Code } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value for the <b>Bill Cycle</b> parameter is specified when the request type is set to CNCL.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Disaggregation From Date } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value for the <b>Disaggregate Transactions From Date</b> parameter is specified when the request type is set to CNCL.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Account Id } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value for the <b>Account ID</b> parameter is specified when the request type is set to EROR.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNCU	102	{Bill Cycle Code } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value for the <b>Bill Cycle</b> parameter is specified when the request type is set to EROR.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	102	{Disaggregation From Date } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value for the <b>Disaggregate Transactions From Date</b> parameter is specified when the request type is set to EROR.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	102	{Transaction Header Id } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value for the <b>Transaction Header ID</b> parameter is specified when the request type is set to DISAGG.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	102	{ Transaction Source Code } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value for the <b>Transaction Source</b> parameter is specified when the request type is set to DISAGG.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id}	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Header ID</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	106	Value { Given Transaction Source Code } too long for field { transactionSource }. Maximum length: 30. Found: { Length of given Transaction Source Code}	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Source</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 30 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	106	Value { Given Transaction Division } too long for field { division }. Maximum length: 5 Found: { Length of given Transaction Division}	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Division</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 5 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	1388	Data configuration error for { SQI Fragment }.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No data exists in the SQL_FRAG, TXN_PRM, SQI_CD, and SQL_FUNC columns of the CI_TXN_SQI_FRAG table.</li> <li>The data available in the SQL_FRAG, TXN_PRM, SQI_CD, and SQL_FUNC columns of the CI_TXN_SQI_FRAG table is not properly cached.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNCU	1388	Data configuration error for { Price Item SQI }.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No data exists in the PRICEITEM_CD, CIS_DIVISION, and SQI_CD columns of the CI_PRICEITEM_SQI table.</li> <li>The data available in the PRICEITEM_CD, CIS_DIVISION, and SQI_CD columns of the CI_PRICEITEM_SQI table is not properly cached.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	1391	Bill is completed hence cant cancel the header.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to cancel a transaction feed for which a bill with the <b>Complete</b> status already exists in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	1424	There are pending bills for the feed you want to cancel. Please execute the Pending Bill Deletion (C1-DELBL) batch.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>Pending Bill Deletion (C1-DELBL)</b> batch is not yet executed to delete the bills (generated for the feed) which are in the <b>Pending</b> status.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is less than or equal to zero.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	1636	Invalid batch run [%1] for [%2] division(s). %3 <div> <b>Note:</b>  [%1] stands for batch code;  [%2] stands for division;  [%3] stands for expected batch code </div>	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute the C1-TXNCU batch before executing the C1-TXNIP or C1-TXNCM batch.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNCU	1638	Transaction Feed Management cycle for individual division(s) is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for processing [ALL] divisions.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch for all divisions before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for a particular division.</li> </ul>



Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXNCU	1639	Transaction Feed Management cycle for [ALL] divisions is not yet complete. Please complete pending batch runs before starting new cycle for individual division [%1].	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch for a particular division before completing the transaction aggregation cycle which is initiated for all divisions.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for division		
C1-TXNCU	1644	Transaction Feed Management cycle for division(s) [%1] is already in progress with filter [Source= %2, Header= %3] criteria. Filter criteria must be same for complete cycle.	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to execute this batch once again with the same division and different parameters.</li> </ul>
		<b>Note:</b> [%1] stands for division; [%2] stands for transaction source; [%3] stands for transaction header ID		
C1-TXNRB	102	{ Chunk Size } field invalid	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNRB	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is greater than the value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNRB	102	{ Status Value } field invalid	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value other than 'ERROR' or 'IGNR' is specified for the <b>Transaction Status</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNRB	102	{ RollBack From Date } field invalid	11001	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The date specified in the <b>Rollback From Date</b> parameter is later than the date specified in the <b>Rollback To Date</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXNRB	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is less than or equal to zero.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-DELBL	101	{ Transaction Header Id } field missing	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is specified for the <b>Transaction Header ID</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-DELBL	102	{ Chunk Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>
C1-DELBL	106	Value { Given Transaction Header Id } too long for field { transactionHeaderId }. Maximum length: 14. Found: { Length of given Transaction Header Id }	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Transaction Header ID</b> parameter exceeds the maximum length of 14 characters.</li> </ul>
C1-DELBL	1391	Bill is completed or bill segment is frozen or pending-cancelled hence can not cancel the header.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to cancel a transaction feed for which a bill with the <b>Pending</b> status is already generated in the system. This pending bill has a bill segment in either <b>Frozen</b> or <b>Pending Cancel</b> status.</li> </ul>
C1-DELBL	1556	{ Maximum Batch Size } field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is less than or equal to zero.</li> </ul>
C1-TXCNC	101	{ Transaction Header Id } field missing	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No value is specified for the <b>Transaction Header ID</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-TXCNC	102	{ Chunk Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>
C1-TXCNC	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is greater than the value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-TXCNC	1391	Bill is completed or bill segment is frozen or pending-cancelled hence can not cancel the header.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to cancel a transaction feed for which a bill with the <b>Pending</b> status is already generated in the system. This pending bill has a bill segment in either <b>Frozen</b> or <b>Pending Cancel</b> status.</li> </ul>
C1-TXCNC	1424	There are pending bills for the feed you want to cancel. Please execute the Pending Bill Deletion (C1-DELBL) batch.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>Pending Bill Deletion (C1-DELBL)</b> batch is not yet executed to delete the bills (generated for the feed) which are in the <b>Pending</b> status.</li> </ul>
C1-TXCNC	1556	{Maximum Batch Size} field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is less than or equal to zero.</li> </ul>
C1-DISTG	102	{Division} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Division is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-DISTG	102	{ Billing Cycle Code } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bill cycle is not defined in the system.</li> </ul>
C1-IDENT	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>
C1-IDENT	1660	Disaggregate Transactions From Date would impose partial disaggregation for some billable charges	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The identified aggregated billable charges aggregate transactions whose transaction date falls before the disaggregate transactions from date.</li> </ul>
C1-DRSUA	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>
C1-DRSUA	102	{Chunk Size} field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>

Batch Name	Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
C1-PDTXN	102	{ Chunk Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter is less than or equal to one.</li> </ul>
C1-PDTXN	102	{ Maximum Batch Size } field invalid	11001	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is greater than the value specified for the <b>Chunk Size</b> parameter.</li> </ul>
C1-PDTXN	1556	{ Maximum Batch Size } field should be greater than zero	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The value specified for the <b>Maximum Batch Count</b> parameter is less than or equal to zero.</li> </ul>

## Feed Management Dashboard

The **Feed Management Dashboard** screen allows you to view the details of a transaction feed. It allows you to drill down and view:

- Transaction volume details of a feed at the division level
- Transactions in a feed which belong to a division
- Legs of a transaction
- SQIs which are associated with the price item-division combination to which a transaction is mapped
- Calculation lines generated for a transaction leg
- Characteristics defined for each calculation line

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search - Feed Level](#) on page 744
- [Division Level Information](#) on page 746
- [Transaction Level Information](#) on page 747
- [Transaction Leg Information](#) on page 748
- [Transaction Leg Service Quantity](#) on page 749
- [Transaction Leg Calculation Lines](#) on page 749
- [Transaction Leg Calc Line Characteristics](#) on page 751

### Search - Feed Level

The **Search - Feed Level** zone allows you to search for a transaction feed using various search criteria. You can view the details of a transaction feed which is already uploaded in the system. This zone contains the following two sections:

- Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Feed Header Date From	Used to search for transaction feeds having header date later than or equal to the specified date.	No
Feed Header Date To	Used to search for transaction feeds having header date earlier than or equal to the specified date.	No
Transaction Source	Used to search for transaction feeds received from a particular transaction source.	No
File Name	Used to search for a transaction feed based on the file name.	No
Feed Load Date From	Used to search for transaction feeds which are uploaded on or later than the specified date.	No
Feed Load Date To	Used to search for transaction feeds which are uploaded on or earlier than the specified date.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used to search for a transaction feed based on the header ID.	No

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
File Name	Displays the name of the file from where the transaction feed is uploaded.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction feed is received.
Transaction Header ID	Displays the transaction header ID.
	<b>Note:</b> The transaction header ID is generated automatically when the file is uploaded.
Transaction Header External ID	Displays the ID mentioned in the file header.
Feed Header Date	Displays the date mentioned in the file header.
Feed Load Date	Displays the date when the transaction feed was uploaded in the system.
Feed Status	Displays the status of the transaction feed. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Uploaded</b> - Indicates that the transaction feed is uploaded.</li> <li>• <b>Validated</b> - Indicates that the file header is validated.</li> <li>• <b>Cancelled</b> - Indicates that the transaction feed is cancelled.</li> <li>• <b>Invalid</b> - Indicates that the file header validation failed.</li> </ul>
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the file header validation failed.
Total Volume	Displays the total transaction volume of the feed.
Uploaded Volume	Displays the total transaction volume which is uploaded in the system.
INPD Volume	Displays the total transaction volume which is validated and for which price item is determined in the system.
Completed Volume	Displays the total transaction volume for which billable charges are created and completed in the system.

Column Name	Column Description
Error Volume	Displays the total transaction volume which could not pass through the validation, price item determination, or billable charge creation process.
Cancelled Volume	Displays the total transaction volume which is cancelled in the system.
Ignored Volume	Displays the total transaction volume which is ignored in the system.
Invalid Volume	Displays the total transaction volume which is invalid.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction feed	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Feed</a> on page 751

## Division Level Information


The **Division Level Information** zone allows you to drill down and view the transaction volume details of a feed at the division level. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used when you want to view the transaction volume details of a particular division received through the feed.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Division	Indicates the division.
Total Volume	Displays the total transaction volume of the division.
Uploaded Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) which is uploaded in the system.
INPD Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) which is validated and for which price item is determined in the system.
Completed Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) for which billable charges are created and completed in the system.
Error Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) which could not pass through the validation, price item determination, or billable charge creation process.
Cancelled Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) which is cancelled in the system.
Ignored Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) which is ignored in the system.
Invalid Volume	Displays the total transaction volume (of the division) which is invalid.

By default, the **Division Level Information** zone does not appear in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction feed in the **Search — Feed Level** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the division level details of a transaction feed	<a href="#">Viewing Division Level Details of a Transaction Feed</a> on page 752

## Transaction Level Information

The **Transaction Level Information** zone lists transactions in a feed which belong to a division. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to search transactions which are performed for a particular account.	No
Transaction Source	Used to search transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to search transactions with a particular record type.	No
Transaction Status	Used to search transactions with a particular status.	No
External Reference Number	Used to search a transaction with a particular external reference number.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Division	Indicates the division to which the transaction belongs.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the type of account identifier.
Account Identifier	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Credit/Debit Indicator	Indicates whether the transaction is a debit or credit transaction.

Column Name	Column Description
Customer Reference Number	Indicates the customer who performed the transaction.
Transaction Status	Indicates the status of the transaction.
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the validation, price item determination, or billable charge creation process failed.
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial price item for the transaction.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Rule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view the transaction details of a division	<a href="#">Viewing Transactions that Belong to a Division</a> on page 752


**Transaction Leg Information**

The **Transaction Leg Information** zone lists the legs of a transaction. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Indicates the transaction to which the transaction leg belongs.
Sequence	Displays the sequence number of transaction leg.
Account Identifier Type	Indicates the type of account identifier to which the transaction is mapped.
Account Identifier	Indicates the account which will bear the charges for the transaction.
Price Item	Indicates the price item to which the transaction is mapped.
Variance	Indicates the variance parameter which is used along with the price item for determining price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .
Price Item Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. It indicates the price item parameters and their values which are used along with the price item for determining price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .



Column Name	Column Description
Billable Charge ID	Indicates the billable charge which is created for the transaction leg.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the billable charge is created for the transaction leg. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Billable Charge</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the billable charge.
Transaction Calculation ID	Displays the transaction calculation ID.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the transaction leg is rated before billing.
Aggregation Parameter Group ID	Indicates the aggregation parameter group using which the transaction leg is aggregated in the billable charge.

By default, the **Transaction Leg Information** zone does not appear in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction in the **Transaction Level Information** zone.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the legs of a transaction	<a href="#">Viewing Legs of a Transaction</a> on page 752

## Transaction Leg Service Quantity

The **Transaction Leg Service Quantity** zone lists the SQIs which are associated with the price item-division combination to which a transaction is mapped. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
SQI	Indicates the service quantity identifier.
Daily Service Quantity	Displays the SQI value which is calculated using the transaction aggregation rule defined for the price item - division combination.

By default, the **Transaction Leg Service Quantity** zone does not appear in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction leg, which is rated before billing, in the **Transaction Leg Information** zone.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the SQIs calculated for a transaction leg	<a href="#">Viewing the SQIs Calculated for a Transaction Leg</a> on page 753

## Transaction Leg Calculation Lines

During the pass through charge calculation, a calculation line is created for each rate component. The **Transaction Leg Calculation Lines** zone lists the calculation lines created for a transaction leg. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Calculation ID	Displays the transaction calculation ID.
Sequence	Indicates the sequence in which the calculation line was created. It is the sequence of the rate component which is used in the rate schedule.
Price Component ID	Indicates the price component which is used during calculation.
Rate	Displays the rate which is used for calculation.
SQI	Indicates the service quantity identifier.
Billable Service Quantity	Displays the SQI value used by the rates engine for calculation.
Calculated Amount	Displays the calculated charge amount which is rounded off. This amount appears in the invoice currency.
Precise Calculated Amount	Displays the calculated charge amount. This amount appears in the invoice currency.
Exempt Amount	Displays the amount of the calculated charge that the person does not have to pay due to tax exemption.
Base Amount	Displays the total amount derived from the cross-referenced line(s) that the current line then used to calculate the charge amount.
Pricing Amount	Displays the calculated charge amount. This amount appears in the pricing currency.
Exchange Rate	Indicates the exchange rate which is used when the invoice currency is different from the pricing currency.
Print	Indicates whether information about the calculation line must be printed on the person's bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>
Description on Bill	Displays the summarized information about the calculation line that will be printed on the bill.
Distribution Code	Indicates the distribution code associated with the rate component.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing is defined.
Aggregation Parameter Group ID	Indicates the aggregation parameter group using which the transaction leg is aggregated in the billable charge.

By default, the **Transaction Leg Calculation Lines** zone does not appear in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction leg, which is rated before billing, in the **Transaction Leg Information** zone.


#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view the calculation lines of a transaction leg	<a href="#">Viewing the Calculation Lines of a Transaction Leg</a> on page 754

## Transaction Leg Calc Line Characteristics

The **Transaction Leg Calc Line Characteristics** zone lists the characteristics defined for each calculation line. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Calculation ID	Displays the transaction calculation ID.
Sequence	Indicates the sequence in which the calculation line was created. It is the sequence of the rate component which is used in the rate schedule.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

By default, the **Transaction Leg Calc Line Characteristics** zone does not appear in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction leg, which is rated before billing, in the **Transaction Leg Information** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view characteristics of a calculation line	<a href="#">Viewing Characteristics of a Calculation Line</a> on page 754

## Searching for a Transaction Feed

### Procedure

To search for a transaction feed:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Feed Management Dashboard**.  
The **Feed Management Dashboard** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search — Feed Level** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of transaction feeds that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Feed Management Dashboard</b> screen	<a href="#">Feed Management Dashboard</a> on page 744
<b>Search — Feed Level</b> zone	<a href="#">Search - Feed Level</a> on page 744

Viewing Division Level Details of a Transaction Feed

**Procedure**

To view the division level details of a transaction feed:

1. Search for the transaction feed in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction feed whose division level details you want to view.

The **Division Level Information** zone appears.

3. View the transaction volume details of each division in the **Division Level Information** zone.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction feed	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Feed</a> on page 751
<b>Division Level Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Division Level Information</a> on page 746


Viewing Transactions that Belong to a Division

**Procedure**

To view the transactions that belong to a division:

1. Search for the transaction feed in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction feed whose details you want to view.

The **Division Level Information** zone appears.

3. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the division whose transaction details you want to view.  
The **Transaction Level Information** zone appears.

4. View the list of the transactions that belong to the division in the **Transaction Level Information** zone.




**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction feed	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Feed</a> on page 751
<b>Division Level Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Division Level Information</a> on page 746
<b>Transaction Level Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Transaction Level Information</a> on page 747

Viewing Legs of a Transaction

**Procedure**

To view the legs of a transaction:

1. Search for the transaction feed in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction feed whose details you want to view.  
The **Division Level Information** zone appears.
3. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the division whose transactions you want to view.  
The **Transaction Level Information** zone appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction whose legs you want to view.  
The **Transaction Leg Information** zone appears.
5. View the details of transaction legs in the **Transaction Leg Information** zone.





#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction feed	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Feed</a> on page 751
<b>Division Level Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Division Level Information</a> on page 746
<b>Transaction Level Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Transaction Level Information</a> on page 747
<b>Transaction Leg Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Information</a> on page 748

## Viewing the SQIs Calculated for a Transaction Leg

#### Procedure

To view the SQIs calculated for a transaction leg:

1. Search for the transaction feed in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction feed whose details you want to view.  
The **Division Level Information** zone appears.
3. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the division whose transactions you want to view.  
The **Transaction Level Information** zone appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction whose legs you want to view.  
The **Transaction Leg Information** zone appears.
5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction leg (which is rated before billing) whose SQIs you want to view.  
The **Transaction Leg Service Quantity**, **Transaction Leg Calculation Lines**, and **Transaction Leg Calc Line Characteristics** zones appear.
6. View the SQIs calculated for the transaction leg in the **Transaction Leg Service Quantity** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction feed	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Feed</a> on page 751
<b>Division Level Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Division Level Information</a> on page 746

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Level Information zone	<a href="#">Transaction Level Information</a> on page 747
Transaction Leg Information zone	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Information</a> on page 748
Transaction Leg Service Quantity zone	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Service Quantity</a> on page 749


## Viewing the Calculation Lines of a Transaction Leg


### Procedure


To view the calculation lines of a transaction leg:

1. Search for the transaction feed in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction feed whose details you want to view.

The **Division Level Information** zone appears.

3. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the division whose transactions you want to view.
- The **Transaction Level Information** zone appears.

4. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction whose legs you want to view.
- The **Transaction Leg Information** zone appears.

5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction leg (which is rated before billing) whose calculation lines you want to view.

The **Transaction Leg Service Quantity**, **Transaction Leg Calculation Lines**, and **Transaction Leg Calc Line Characteristics** zones appear.

6. View the list of calculation lines generated for the transaction leg in the **Transaction Leg Calculation Lines** zone.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction feed	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Feed</a> on page 751
Division Level Information zone	<a href="#">Division Level Information</a> on page 746
Transaction Level Information zone	<a href="#">Transaction Level Information</a> on page 747
Transaction Leg Information zone	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Information</a> on page 748
Transaction Leg Calculation Lines zone	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Calculation Lines</a> on page 749




## Viewing Characteristics of a Calculation Line

### Procedure

To view the characteristics of a calculation line:

1. Search for the transaction feed in the **Feed Management Dashboard** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction feed whose details you want to view.

The **Division Level Information** zone appears.

3. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the division whose transactions you want to view.  
The **Transaction Level Information** zone appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction whose legs you want to view.  
The **Transaction Leg Information** zone appears.
5. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction leg (which is rated before billing) whose calculation lines you want to view.  
The **Transaction Leg Service Quantity**, **Transaction Leg Calculation Lines**, and **Transaction Leg Calc Line Characteristics** zones appear.
6. View the characteristics of each calculation line in the **Transaction Leg Calc Line Characteristics** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction feed	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Feed</a> on page 751
<b>Division Level Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Division Level Information</a> on page 746
<b>Transaction Level Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Transaction Level Information</a> on page 747
<b>Transaction Leg Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Information</a> on page 748
<b>Transaction Leg Calc Line Characteristics</b> zone	<a href="#">Transaction Leg Calc Line Characteristics</a> on page 751

## View Billed Transactions

The **View Billed Transactions** screen allows you to view the transactions which are billed to the person. This screen consists of the following zones:


- [Search Bill](#) on page 755
- [Bill Segments](#) on page 757
- [Transaction Details](#) on page 758
- [SQ Details](#) on page 759


You can also access this screen from the **Bill** screen by selecting the **Go To View Billed Transactions** option from the **Bill ID** context menu. The only difference is that the **Search Bill** zone does not appear when you access this screen from the **Bill** screen.

## Search Bill

The **Search Bill** zone allows you to search for a bill. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person ID	Used to search bills of a particular person.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Person Search</b> window appears.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Bill Search</b> window appears.	
Alternate Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill using the alternate bill ID.	No
Division	Used to search bills of accounts that belong to a particular division.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Primary Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search bills of a particular account.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Primary Account Identifier	Used when you want search bills of a particular account.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Primary Person Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search bills of a particular person.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> If you enter the person identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the person identifier type.
Primary Person Identifier	Used when you want search bills of a particular person.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> If you specify the person identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the person identifier.
Bill Completion From Date	Used to search bills which are completed on or later than the specified date.	No
Bill Completion To Date	Used to search bills which are completed on or earlier than the specified date.	No



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Status	Used to search bills with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Complete</li> <li>Pending</li> </ul>	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Bill Status	Displays the status of the bill.
Completion Date	Displays the date when the bill was completed.
Total Bill Amount	Displays the total amount billed to the person.
Invoice Currency	Displays the currency in which the amount is billed to the person.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the primary account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Indicates the account for which the bill is created.
Person Identifier Type	Displays the primary person identifier type.
Person Identifier	Indicates the person for whom the bill is created.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.
Alternate Bill ID	Displays the alternate bill ID.

### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Bill</a> on page 759
How to view the bill segments of a bill	<a href="#">Viewing the Bill Segments of a Bill</a> on page 760
How to view the transactions for which a bill segment is generated in a bill	<a href="#">Viewing Transactions for which the Bill Segment is Generated</a> on page 760

## Bill Segments

The **Bill Segments** zone lists the bill segments of a bill. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Segment ID	Displays the bill segment ID. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill Segment</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill segment.
Status	Indicates the status of the bill segment.

Column Name	Column Description
Start Date	Displays the start date of the bill segment.
End Date	Displays the end date of the bill segment.
Amount	Displays the amount of the bill segment.
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the bill segment is generated.
Price Item	Indicates the price item for which the bill segment is generated.
Variance Parameter	Indicates the variance parameter which is used along with the price item for determining price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .
Price Item Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. It indicates the price item parameters and their values which are used along with the price item for determining price item pricing.  <b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Rate Schedule	Indicates the rate schedule which is used for defining the price item pricing.
Billable Charge ID	Indicates the billable charge for which the bill segment is generated.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Billable Charge</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective billable charge.
Account Information	Indicates the member account (in the invoicing group) for which the bill segment is generated.
Invoice Construct ID	Indicates the construct through which the bill segment is generated.

By default, the **Bill Segments** zone does not appear in the **View Billed Transactions** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill in the **Search** zone.

#### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
How to view the bill segments of a bill	<a href="#">Viewing the Bill Segments of a Bill</a> on page 760

## Transaction Details

The **Transaction Details** zone lists the transactions for which the billable charge (corresponding to the bill segment) is created. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Initial Price Item	Indicates the price item to which the transaction is mapped.
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial price item for the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Rule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

By default, the **Transaction Details** zone does not appear in the **View Billed Transactions** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill segment in the **Bill Segments** zone.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the transactions for which a bill segment is generated in a bill	<a href="#">Viewing Transactions for which the Bill Segment is Generated</a> on page 760

## SQ Details

The **SQ Details** zone lists the SQIs calculated on the billable charge (corresponding to the bill segment). This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
SQI	Indicates the service quantity identifier.
Billable Service Quantity	Displays the SQI value used by the rates engine for calculation.

By default, the **SQ Details** zone does not appear in the **View Billed Transactions** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill segment in the **Bill Segments** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the SQIs calculated on the billable charge	<a href="#">Viewing SQIs Calculated on the Billable Charge</a> on page 761

## Searching for a Bill

### Procedure

To search for a bill:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

- From the **Main** menu, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **View Billed Transactions**.  
The **View Billed Transactions** screen appears.
- Enter the search criteria in the **Search Bill** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.  
A list of bills that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.


Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
View Billed Transactions screen	<a href="#">View Billed Transactions</a> on page 755
Search Bill zone	<a href="#">Search Bill</a> on page 755

Viewing the Bill Segments of a Bill

Procedure

To view the bill segments of a bill:

- Search for the bill in the **View Billed Transactions** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill whose bill segments you want to view.

The **Bill Segments** zone appears.

- View all bill segments of the bill in the **Bill Segments** zone.


Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Bill</a> on page 759
Bill Segments zone	<a href="#">Bill Segments</a> on page 757


Viewing Transactions for which the Bill Segment is Generated

Procedure

To view transactions for which the bill segment is generated:

- Search for the bill in the **View Billed Transactions** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill whose bill segments you want to view.

The **Bill Segments** zone appears.

- Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill segment whose details you want to view.  
The **Transaction Details** zone appears.
- View the list of transactions for which the billable charge (corresponding to the bill segment) is created.



#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Bill</a> on page 759
<b>Bill Segments</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Segments</a> on page 757
<b>Transaction Details</b> zone	<a href="#">Transaction Details</a> on page 758

## Viewing SQIs Calculated on the Billable Charge

#### Procedure

To view the SQIs calculated on the billable charge:

- Search for the bill in the **View Billed Transactions** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill whose bill segments you want to view.  
The **Bill Segments** zone appears.
- Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill segment whose billable charge details you want to view.  
The **SQ Details** zone appears.
- View the SQIs calculated on the billable charge in the **SQ Details** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Bill</a> on page 759
<b>Bill Segments</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Segments</a> on page 757
<b>SQ Details</b> zone	<a href="#">SQ Details</a> on page 759

## Transaction Details

The **Transaction Details** screen allows you to search for transactions using various search criteria. It also allows you to add and copy a transaction. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search](#) on page 761

### Search

The **Search** zone allows you to search for transactions using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The fields in the **Search Criteria** section change depending on the query option selected. You can select either of the following query options:
  - **Uploaded** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is recently uploaded in the system.
  - **Initial Price Item Determined** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction for which a price item is determined in the system.
  - **Ignored** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is ignored in the system.
  - **Error** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which could not pass through the validation, price item determination, or billable charge creation process.
  - **Cancelled** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is cancelled in the system.
  - **Completed** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction for which billable charge is completed in the system.
  - **Invalid** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is invalid.
- **Search Results** — The **Search Results** section displays the records based on the specified search criteria. The columns in the search results change depending on the query option selected.

You can also add a transaction manually by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to search for an uploaded transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an UPLD Transaction</a> on page 762
How to search for a transaction for which price item is determined	<a href="#">Searching for an INPD Transaction</a> on page 765
How to search for an ignored transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an IGNR Transaction</a> on page 773
How to search for an invalid transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an INVL Transaction</a> on page 776
How to search for a transaction with an error	<a href="#">Searching for an EROR Transaction</a> on page 771
How to search for a cancelled transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an CNCL Transaction</a> on page 769
How to search for a transaction for which billable charge is completed	<a href="#">Searching for an COMP Transaction</a> on page 767
How to add a transaction manually	<a href="#">Adding a Transaction</a> on page 782
How to view the details of a transaction	<a href="#">Viewing the Transaction Details</a> on page 780

## **Searching for an UPLD Transaction**

### **Procedure**

To search for an uploaded transaction:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.  
The **Transaction Details** screen appears.

3. Select the **Uploaded** option from the **Search By** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is recently uploaded in the system.

The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to search a transaction with a particular external reference number.	No
Division	Used to search transactions that belong to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Transaction Source	Used to search transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to search transactions with a particular record type.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to search transactions which are performed for a particular account.	No
Transaction Date	Used to search transactions which are performed on a particular date.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to search transactions which are uploaded in the system on a particular date.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used to search transactions which are uploaded through a particular transaction feed.	No
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Upload Date	Displays the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.
Transaction Header ID	Indicates the transaction feed through which the transaction was uploaded in the system.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Manual Entry	Indicates whether the transaction is manually added in the system. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Indicates the division to which the transaction belongs.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed. The string includes the account identifier type and account identifier.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

6. View the legs of the transaction in the **Transaction Legs** zone, if required.

**Note:** You can only view the legs of an uploaded transaction which is partially disaggregated.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Transaction Details</b> screen	<a href="#">Transaction Details</a> on page 761
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 761
How to view the legs of a transaction	<a href="#">Viewing the Transaction Legs</a> on page 778



## Searching for an INPD Transaction

### Procedure

To search for a transaction for which a price item is determined:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. From the **Main** menu, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.

The **Transaction Details** screen appears.

3. Select the **Initial Price Item Determined** option from the **Search By** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction for which a price item is determined in the system.

The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to search a transaction with a particular external reference number.	No
Division	Used to search transactions that belong to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Transaction Source	Used to search transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to search transactions with a particular record type.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to search transactions which are performed for a particular account.	No
Transaction Date	Used to search transactions which are performed on a particular date.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to search transactions which are uploaded in the system on a particular date.	No
Price Item	Used to search transactions which are mapped to a particular price item.	No
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all the input fields except the date fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

##### 5. Click **Search**.

A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Upload Date	Displays the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Indicates the division to which the transaction belongs.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed. The string includes the account identifier type and account identifier.
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial price item for the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Rule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

##### 6. View the legs of the transaction in the **Transaction Legs** zone, if required.

##### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Details screen	<a href="#">Transaction Details</a> on page 761

For more information on...	See...
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 761
How to view the legs of a transaction	<a href="#">Viewing the Transaction Legs</a> on page 778

## Searching for an COMP Transaction

### Procedure

To search for a transaction for which billable charge is completed:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. From the **Main** menu, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.

The **Transaction Details** screen appears.

3. Select the **Completed** option from the **Search By** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction for which billable charge is completed in the system.

The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to search a transaction with a particular external reference number.	No
Division	Used to search transactions that belong to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Transaction Source	Used to search transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to search transactions with a particular record type.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to search transactions which are performed for a particular account.	No
Transaction Date	Used to search transactions which are performed on a particular date.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to search transactions which are uploaded in the system on a particular date.	No
Billable Charge ID	Used to search transactions which are included in a particular billable charge.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Indicates the division to which the transaction belongs.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed. The string includes the account identifier type and account identifier.
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial price item for the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Rule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

6. View the legs of the transaction in the **Transaction Legs** zone, if required.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Transaction Details</b> screen	<a href="#">Transaction Details</a> on page 761
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 761
How to view the legs of a transaction	<a href="#">Viewing the Transaction Legs</a> on page 778

## Searching for an CNCL Transaction

### Procedure

To search for a cancelled transaction:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Main** menu, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.  
The **Transaction Details** screen appears.
- Select the **Cancelled** option from the **Search By** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is cancelled in the system.

The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to search a transaction with a particular external reference number.	No
Division	Used to search transactions that belong to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Transaction Source	Used to search transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to search transactions with a particular record type.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to search transactions which are performed for a particular account.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Date	Used to search transactions which are performed on a particular date.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to search transactions which are uploaded in the system on a particular date.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used to search transactions which are uploaded through a particular transaction feed.	No
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Upload Date	Displays the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.
Transaction Header ID	Indicates the transaction feed through which the transaction was uploaded in the system.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Manual Entry	Indicates whether the transaction is manually added in the system. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Indicates the division to which the transaction belongs.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed. The string includes the account identifier type and account identifier.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Transaction Details</b> screen	<a href="#">Transaction Details</a> on page 761
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 761

## Searching for an EROR Transaction

### Procedure

To search for a transaction with an error:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.  
The **Transaction Details** screen appears.
3. Select the **Error** option from the **Search By** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which could not pass through the validation, price item determination, or billable charge creation process.

The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to search a transaction with a particular external reference number.	No
Division	Used to search transactions that belong to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Transaction Source	Used to search transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to search transactions with a particular record type.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to search transactions which are performed for a particular account.	No
Transaction Date	Used to search transactions which are performed on a particular date.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to search transactions which are uploaded in the system on a particular date.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used to search transactions which are uploaded through a particular transaction feed.	No
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Upload Date	Displays the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Customer Reference Number	Indicates the person who performed the transaction.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.



Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Indicates the division to which the transaction belongs.
Error Message	<p>Indicates the reason why the validation and price item determination process failed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the error occurred while executing the <b>Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)</b> batch, a generic message appears indicating that the transaction is in the <b>Error (EROR)</b> status due to one or more reasons. You can view all error messages logged for the transaction in the <b>Transaction Error Messages</b> zone. However, if the error occurred while executing the <b>Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)</b> or <b>Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)</b> batch, a generic message appears indicating that one or more transaction legs are in the <b>Error (EROR)</b> status. You can view the error message corresponding to the transaction leg in the <b>Transaction Legs</b> zone.</p>
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed. The string includes the account identifier type and account identifier.
Rule	<p>Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial price item for the transaction.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Rule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.</p> <p>This column is blank when the error has occurred while determining initial price item for the transaction.</p>
Transaction Information	<p>Displays additional information about the transaction.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.</p>

- View the legs of the transaction in the **Transaction Legs** zone, if required.
- View the error messages logged for the transaction in the **Transaction Error Messages** zone, if required.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Transaction Details</b> screen	<a href="#">Transaction Details</a> on page 761
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 761
How to view the legs of a transaction	<a href="#">Viewing the Transaction Legs</a> on page 778
How to view the error messages logged for a transaction	<a href="#">Viewing Error Messages</a> on page 780

## Searching for an IGNR Transaction

**Procedure**

To search for an ignored transaction:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. From the **Main** menu, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.

The **Transaction Details** screen appears.

3. Select the **Ignored** option from the **Search By** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is ignored in the system.

The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to search a transaction with a particular external reference number.	No
Division	Used to search transactions that belong to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Transaction Source	Used to search transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to search transactions with a particular record type.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to search transactions which are performed for a particular account.	No
Transaction Date	Used to search transactions which are performed on a particular date.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to search transactions which are uploaded in the system on a particular date.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used to search transactions which are uploaded through a particular transaction feed.	No
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

##### 5. Click **Search**.

A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Upload Date	Displays the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.
Transaction Header ID	Indicates the transaction feed through which the transaction was uploaded in the system.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Indicates the division to which the transaction belongs.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed. The string includes the account identifier type and account identifier.
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial price item for the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Rule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

##### 6. View the legs of the transaction in the **Transaction Legs** zone, if required.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Transaction Details</b> screen	<a href="#">Transaction Details</a> on page 761
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 761
How to view the legs of a transaction	<a href="#">Viewing the Transaction Legs</a> on page 778

## Searching for an INVL Transaction

### Procedure

To search for an invalid transaction:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.  
The **Transaction Details** screen appears.
3. Select the **Invalid** option from the **Search By** list to indicate that you want to search for a transaction which is invalid.

The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Reference Number	Used to search a transaction with a particular external reference number.	No
Division	Used to search transactions that belong to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Transaction Source	Used to search transactions received from a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to search transactions with a particular record type.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search transactions of an account.	No
Account Identifier	Used to search transactions which are performed for a particular account.	No
Transaction Date	Used to search transactions which are performed on a particular date.	No
Transaction Upload Date	Used to search transactions which are uploaded in the system on a particular date.	No
Transaction Header ID	Used to search transactions which are uploaded through a particular transaction feed.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Disaggregated	Used to indicate whether you want to search transactions which were disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of transactions that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears with the details of the respective transaction.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Upload Date	Displays the date when the transaction was uploaded in the system.
Transaction Header ID	Indicates the transaction feed through which the transaction was uploaded in the system.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Disaggregation Status	Indicates whether the transaction was disaggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Division	Indicates the division to which the transaction belongs.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed. The string includes the account identifier type and account identifier.
Transaction Information	Displays additional information about the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the transaction.

Column Name	Column Description
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the transaction is invalid.
	<b>Note:</b> A generic message appears indicating that the error occurred due to one or more reasons. You can view all error messages logged for the transaction in the <b>Transaction Error Messages</b> zone.

- View the error messages logged for the transaction in the **Transaction Error Messages** zone, if required.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Transaction Details</b> screen	<a href="#">Transaction Details</a> on page 761
<b>Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 761
How to view the error messages logged for a transaction	<a href="#">Viewing Error Messages</a> on page 780

**Viewing the Transaction Legs**

**Procedure**

To view the legs of a transaction:

- Search for the transaction in the **Transaction Details** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction whose legs you want to view.

The **Transaction Legs** zone appears. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID.
Transaction Leg Status	Indicates the status of the transaction leg. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uploaded (UPLD)</li> <li>Initial Price Item Derived (INPD)</li> <li>Ignored (IGNR)</li> <li>Error (EROR)</li> <li>Completed (COMP)</li> </ul>
Account Information	Indicates the account which will bear the charges for the transaction. The string includes the account identifier type, account identifier, and division (to which the derived account belongs).
Initial Price Item Code	Indicates the initial price item to which the transaction is mapped.

Column Name	Column Description
Variance Parameter	Indicates the variance parameter which is used along with the final price item for determining price item pricing.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>False</b> .
Price Item Parameters	Displays a comma-separated list of parameter values. It indicates the price item parameters and their values which are used along with the final price item for determining price item pricing.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Multi Price Parameter</b> option type of the <b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing (C1_PPARM_FLG)</b> feature configuration is set to <b>True</b> .
Final Price Item Code	Indicates the final price item to which the transaction is mapped.
Rule	Indicates the rule which was met while determining initial price item for the transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Rule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rule.
Price Assignment ID	Indicates the effective pricing which is available for the account, price item or regular bundle (to which the price item belongs) or parent (regular) bundle (to which the regular bundle belongs) and/or variance parameter or price item parameters (parameter group) combination on the processing date.
Aggregate Transaction	Indicates whether the transaction leg is aggregated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Billable Charge ID	Indicates the billable charge in which the transaction leg is included for billing.
Division	Indicates the division to which the derived account belongs. The derived account means the account which will bear the charges for the transaction.
Sequence Number	Displays the sequence number of the transaction leg.
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the price item pricing verification or billable charge creation process failed.

**Note:**

The **Broadcast**  icon appears corresponding to an UPLD, INPD, IGNR, EROR and COMP transaction. This is because you can only view legs of an UPLD, INPD, IGNR, EROR and COMP transaction.

You can only view the legs of an uploaded transaction which is partially disaggregated.

### 3. View the details of the transaction legs in the **Transaction Legs** zone.

#### **Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
How to search for an uploaded transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an UPLD Transaction</a> on page 762

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction for which price item is determined	<a href="#">Searching for an INPD Transaction</a> on page 765
How to search for an ignored transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an IGNR Transaction</a> on page 773
How to search for a transaction with an error	<a href="#">Searching for an EROR Transaction</a> on page 771
How to search for a transaction for which billable charge is completed	<a href="#">Searching for an COMP Transaction</a> on page 767

Viewing Error Messages

Procedure

To view the error messages logged for a transaction:

1. Search for the transaction which is in the **Invalid (INVL)** or **Error (EROR)** status in the **Transaction Details** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the transaction whose error messages you want to view.

The **Transaction Error Messages** zone appears. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the transaction is in the <b>Invalid (INVL)</b> or <b>Error (EROR)</b> status.

**Note:** The **Transaction Error Messages** zone appears when the transactions are in the **Invalid (INVL)** status and when the errors occur while executing the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch. It does not appear when the errors occur while executing the **Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** or **Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)** batch.

3. View the error messages in the **Transaction Error Messages** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction with an error	<a href="#">Searching for an EROR Transaction</a> on page 771
How to search for an invalid transaction	<a href="#">Searching for an INVL Transaction</a> on page 776

Viewing the Transaction Details

Procedure

To view the details of a transaction:

1. Search for the transaction in the **Transaction Details** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Transaction ID** column corresponding to the transaction whose details you want to view.



The **Transaction Details** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Transaction ID	Displays the transaction ID.
	<b>Note:</b> The transaction ID is generated automatically when the transaction is uploaded or manually created in the system.
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source from where the transaction was received.
Division	Displays the division to which the transaction belongs.
Transaction Record Type	Displays the record type of the transaction.
Transaction Date	Displays the date when the transaction was performed.
Manual Entry	Indicates whether the transaction was manually entered in the system.
Credit/Debit Indicator	Indicates whether the transaction is a debit or credit transaction.
External Reference Number	Displays the external reference number of the transaction.
Customer Reference Number	Indicates the person who performed the transaction.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the type of account identifier.
Account Identifier	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Amount	Displays the transaction amount.
Transaction Currency	Indicates the currency in which the transaction was performed.
Transaction Volume	Displays the transaction volume.
Account ID	Indicates the account for which the transaction was performed.
Additional Amount 1, Additional Amount 2, ..., Additional Amount 10	Displays additional information about the transaction.
<b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	
Amount 1 Currency Code, Amount 2 Currency Code, ..., Amount 10 Currency Code	Displays additional information about the transaction.
<b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	

Field Name	Field Description
<div>Additional Date 1, Additional Date 2, ....., Additional Date 5</div> <div> <b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name. </div>	Displays additional information about the transaction.
<div>Additional Numeric Data 1, Additional Numeric Data 2, Additional Numeric Data 3, ....., Additional Numeric Data 20</div> <div> <b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name. </div>	
<div>Additional Data 1, Additional Data 2, Additional Data 3, ....., Additional Data 50</div> <div> <b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name. </div>	Displays additional information about the transaction.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to copy a transaction	<a href="#">Copying a Transaction</a> on page 785

Adding a Transaction

Prerequisites

To add a transaction manually, you should have:

- Divisions, account identifier types, transaction sources, transaction record types, and currencies defined in the application

Procedure

To add a transaction manually:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Main** menu, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Transaction Details**.  
The **Transaction Details** screen appears.
- Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search** zone.  
The **Transaction Details** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source from where the transaction was received.	Yes
Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	Yes
Transaction Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	Yes
Manual Entry	Indicates that the transaction is manually entered in the system.	Not applicable
Credit/Debit Indicator	Used to indicate whether the transaction is a debit or credit transaction.	Yes
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	No
Customer Reference Number	Used to indicate the person who performed the transaction.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the type of account identifier.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which the transaction was performed.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Transaction Amount	Used to specify the transaction amount.	Yes
Transaction Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which the transaction was performed.	Yes
Transaction Volume	Used to specify the transaction volume.	Yes
Additional Amount 1, Additional Amount 2, ..., Additional Amount 10	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> These fields appear only when you select the transaction source and record type from the respective list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are specifying the currency in the corresponding field.
	<b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Amount 1 Currency Code, Amount 2 Currency Code, ..., Amount 10 Currency Code	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	Yes (Conditional)
<b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	<b>Note:</b> These fields appear only when you select the transaction source and record type from the respective list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are specifying the amount in the corresponding field.
Additional Date 1, Additional Date 2, ..., Additional Date 5	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No
<b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	<b>Note:</b> These fields appear only when you select the transaction source and record type from the respective list.	
Additional Numeric Data 1, Additional Numeric Data 2, Additional Numeric Data 3, ....., Additional Numeric Data 20	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No
<b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	<b>Note:</b> These fields appear only when you select the transaction source and record type from the respective list.	
Additional Data 1, Additional Data 2, Additional Data 3, ..., Additional Data 50	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No
<b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.	<b>Note:</b> These fields appear only when you select the transaction source and record type from the respective list.	

4. Enter the required details.

5. Click **Save**.

The transaction is added in the system. If the following option types are set in the **Dummy Header (C1-TXNDMYID)** feature configuration, the header details including the header ID are generated automatically for the manually added transaction:

- Dummy File Name
- Dummy Header ID
- Dummy Transaction Source
- Dummy Header Date

**Note:** The header ID remains same for all transactions which are manually created on a particular date. You can cancel manually added transactions using the Transaction Header ID.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Details screen	<a href="#">Transaction Details</a> on page 761
Search zone	<a href="#">Search</a> on page 761
How to set the <b>Dummy Header (C1-TXNDMYID)</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-TXNDMYID Feature Configuration</a> on page 2378

## Copying a Transaction

Instead of adding a transaction from scratch, you can create a copy of similar transaction and then edit it accordingly.

### Prerequisites

To copy a transaction, you should have:

- Transaction (whose copy you want to create) available in the application
- Divisions, account identifier types, transaction sources, transaction record types, and currencies defined in the application

### Procedure

To copy a transaction:

1. Search for the transaction in the **Transaction Details** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Transaction ID** column corresponding to the transaction whose copy you want to create.

The **Transaction Details** screen appears. Note that the fields are in the read-only mode.

3. Click **Copy**.

The **Transaction Details** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source from where the transaction was received.	Yes
Division	Used to specify the division to which the transaction belongs.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the record type of the transaction.	Yes
Transaction Date	Used to specify the date when the transaction was performed.	Yes
Manual Entry	Indicates that the transaction is manually entered in the system.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Credit/Debit Indicator	Used to indicate whether the transaction is a debit or credit transaction.	Yes
External Reference Number	Used to specify the external reference number of the transaction.	No
Price Item Reference Number	Used to indicate the person who performed the transaction.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the type of account identifier.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> If you enter the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which the transaction was performed.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Transaction Amount	Used to specify the transaction amount.	Yes
Transaction Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which the transaction was performed.	Yes
Transaction Volume	Used to specify the transaction volume.	Yes
Additional Amount 1, Additional Amount 2, ..., Additional Amount 10	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are specifying the currency in the corresponding field.
<b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.		
Amount 1 Currency Code, Amount 2 Currency Code, ..., Amount 10 Currency Code	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are specifying the amount in the corresponding field.
<b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.		

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Additional Date 1, Additional Date 2, ....., Additional Date 5	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No
<b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.		
Additional Numeric Data 1, Additional Numeric Data 2, Additional Numeric Data 3, ....., Additional Numeric Data 20	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No
<b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.		
Additional Data 1, Additional Data 2, Additional Data 3, ....., Additional Data 50	Used to specify additional information about the transaction.	No
<b>Note:</b> If the business label is defined for any of these user defined fields, the business label appears instead of the field name.		

4. Enter the required details.

5. Click **Save**.

The new transaction is added in the system.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a transaction	<a href="#">Viewing the Transaction Details</a> on page 780

## Transaction Source

The **Transaction Source** screen allows you to define, edit, delete, and copy a transaction source. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Transaction Source](#) on page 788

## Search Transaction Source

The **Search Transaction Source** zone allows you to search for a transaction source. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to search a particular transaction source.	No
Description	Used to search transaction sources with a particular description.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source.
Description	Displays the description of the transaction source.
Account Identifier Type	Indicates the type of account identifier that will be received from the transaction source.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (✎) icon, the <b>Transaction Source</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the transaction source.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (🗑) icon, you can delete the transaction source. <b>Note:</b> You can only delete a transaction source which is not yet used.
Copy	On clicking the <b>Copy</b> (📄📄) icon, the <b>Transaction Source</b> screen appears where you can create a transaction source using an existing transaction source.

You can create a new transaction source by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction source	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Source</a> on page 788
How to define a transaction source	<a href="#">Defining a Transaction Source</a> on page 789
How to edit a transaction source	<a href="#">Editing a Transaction Source</a> on page 790
How to delete a transaction source	<a href="#">Deleting a Transaction Source</a> on page 790
How to copy a transaction source	<a href="#">Copying a Transaction Source</a> on page 791

## Searching for a Transaction Source

### Procedure

To search for a transaction source:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.



- From the **Admin** menu, select **T** and then click **Transaction Source**.

The **Transaction Source** screen appears.

- Enter the search criteria in the **Search Transaction Source** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.

A list of transaction sources that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Transaction Source</b> screen	<a href="#">Transaction Source</a> on page 787
<b>Search Transaction Source</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Transaction Source</a> on page 788

## Defining a Transaction Source

### Prerequisites

To define a transaction source, you should have:

- Account identifier types defined in the application

### Procedure

To define a transaction source:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

- From the **Admin** menu, select **T** and then click **Transaction Source**.

The **Transaction Source** screen appears.

- Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search Transaction Source** zone.

The **Transaction Source** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the transaction source.	
Description	Used to specify the description for the transaction source.	Yes
Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the type of account identifier that will be received from the transaction source.	Yes

- Enter the required details.
- Click **Save**.

The transaction source is defined.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Source screen	<a href="#">Transaction Source</a> on page 787
Search Transaction Source zone	<a href="#">Search Transaction Source</a> on page 788

**Editing a Transaction Source**


**Prerequisites**

To edit a transaction source, you should have:

- Account identifier types defined in the application

**Procedure**

To edit a transaction source:

- Search for the transaction source in the **Transaction Source** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the transaction source whose details you want to edit.

The **Transaction Source** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Displays the transaction source.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the transaction source.	Yes
Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the type of account identifier that will be received from the transaction source.	Yes

- Modify the required details.
- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the transaction source are saved.

**Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction source	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Source</a> on page 788

**Deleting a Transaction Source**

**Procedure**

To delete a transaction source:

- Search for the transaction source in the **Transaction Source** screen.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the transaction source that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the transaction source.

**Note:** You can only delete a transaction source which is not yet used.

3. Click **OK**.

The transaction source is deleted.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction source	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Source</a> on page 788

## **Copying a Transaction Source**

Instead of creating a transaction source from scratch, you can create a new transaction source using an existing transaction source. This is possible through copying a transaction source. Once you create a copy of a transaction source, the record types defined for the original transaction source are also copied to the new transaction source.


### **Prerequisites**

To copy a transaction source, you should have:

- Transaction source (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Account identifier types defined in the application

### **Procedure**

To copy a transaction source:

1. Search for the transaction source in the **Transaction Source** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** () icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the transaction source whose copy you want to create.

The **Transaction Source** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to specify the transaction source.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the transaction source.	
Description	Used to specify the description for the transaction source.	Yes
Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the type of account identifier that will be received from the transaction source.	Yes

3. Enter the required details.
4. Click **Save**.

The new transaction source is defined.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction source	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Source</a> on page 788

## Transaction Record Type

The **Transaction Record Type** screen allows you to define, edit, delete, and copy a transaction record type. While defining a transaction record type, you need to define a rule type. This rule type is invoked for transactions with the transaction source and record type combination. While defining a rule type, you can select the transaction detail fields that you want to use as input or output parameters in a rule.

Besides using the transaction detail fields, the system allows you to use fields which are not part of the standard transaction details. These fields are referred to as temporary fields and are defined similar to other fields, but are not associated with any ORMB tables. You need to associate temporary fields with the rule type while defining a transaction record type. Once associated, you can use the temporary field as input or output parameter while defining a rule using the rule type.

**Note:** At present, you can only associate a temporary field with a rule type, but cannot use the temporary field in a rule which is created using the rule type. The latter part of the functionality will be available in a future release of Oracle Revenue Management and Billing.

The **Transaction Record Type** screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Transaction Record Type](#) on page 792

### Search Transaction Record Type




The **Search Transaction Record Type** zone allows you to search for a transaction record type. This zone contains the following two sections:

- Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to search transaction record types defined for a particular transaction source.	No
Transaction Record Type	Used to search a particular transaction record type.	No
Description	Used to search transaction record types with a particular description.	No

- Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Transaction Record Type	Displays the transaction record type.
Description	Displays the description of the transaction record type.
Transaction Source	Indicates the transaction source for which the transaction record type is defined.

Column Name	Column Description
Rule Type	Indicates the rule type that is invoked for the transaction record type.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>View Rule Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective rule type.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Transaction Record Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the transaction record type.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the transaction record type.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a transaction record type when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is not yet used.</li> <li>• Rules are not yet defined using the rule type which is invoked by the transaction source and record type combination.</li> </ul>
Copy	On clicking the <b>Copy</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Transaction Record Type</b> screen appears where you can create a new transaction record type using an existing transaction record type.

You can create a new transaction record type by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction record type	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Record Type</a> on page 793
How to define a transaction record type	<a href="#">Defining a Transaction Record Type</a> on page 794
How to edit a transaction record type	<a href="#">Editing a Transaction Record Type</a> on page 799
How to delete a transaction record type	<a href="#">Deleting a Transaction Record Type</a> on page 805
How to copy a transaction record type	<a href="#">Copying a Transaction Record Type</a> on page 806

## Searching for a Transaction Record Type

### Procedure

To search for a transaction record type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **T** and then click **Transaction Record Type**.  
The **Transaction Record Type** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Transaction Record Type** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

The search results appear.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Record Type screen	<a href="#">Transaction Record Type</a> on page 792
Search Transaction Record Type zone	<a href="#">Search Transaction Record Type</a> on page 792

**Defining a Transaction Record Type**

**Prerequisites**


To define a transaction record type, you should have:



- Transaction sources defined in the application
- Validation algorithm defined using the C1-RULE-VAL algorithm type
- Transaction Information String algorithm defined using the C1-TXDETINFO algorithm type
- Fields (that you want to use as input or output parameter) defined in the application

**Procedure**

To define a transaction record type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **T** and then click **Transaction Record Type**.  
The **Transaction Record Type** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search Transaction Record Type** zone.  
The **Transaction Record Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to indicate the transaction source for which you want to define the transaction record type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Search Transaction Source</b> window appears.	
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the transaction record type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot specify any special character except underscore ( <b>_</b> ) in the transaction record type.	
Description	Used to specify the description for the transaction record type.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the rule type.	
Rule Type Description	Used to specify the description for the rule type.	Yes
Rule Validation Algorithm	<p>Used to specify the validation algorithm that will be triggered when a rule is defined using the rule type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This algorithm checks whether:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The values specified against the output parameters exist in the system</li> <li>• The same price item parameter (for example, PCD1_1_1_VAL) is not used multiple times for a division, account, and price item combination</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	No
Info String Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will generate the information string which appears in the <b>Transaction Information</b> column throughout the application.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b> This algorithm concatenates the fields (related to the transaction) and delimiters specified as parameters in the algorithm.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Maximum Accounts to be charged	<p>Used to indicate the maximum number of accounts which can bear the charges for a transaction. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 01</li> <li>• 02</li> <li>• 03</li> <li>• 04</li> <li>• 05</li> <li>• 06</li> <li>• 07</li> <li>• 08</li> <li>• 09</li> <li>• 10</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> At present, the system supports maximum 10 accounts which can bear the charges for a transaction.</p>	Yes
Maximum Price Items to be mapped	<p>Used to indicate the maximum number of price items to which a transaction can be mapped for each account. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 01</li> <li>• 02</li> <li>• 03</li> <li>• 04</li> <li>• 05</li> <li>• 06</li> <li>• 07</li> <li>• 08</li> <li>• 09</li> <li>• 10</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> At present, the system supports maximum 10 price items to which a transaction can be mapped for each account.</p>	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Maximum Price Item Parameters	<p>Used to indicate the maximum number of parameters that can be used with each price item to determine the price item pricing. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 00</li> <li>• 01</li> <li>• 02</li> <li>• 03</li> <li>• 04</li> <li>• 05</li> <li>• 06</li> <li>• 07</li> <li>• 08</li> <li>• 09</li> <li>• 10</li> <li>• 11</li> <li>• 12</li> <li>• 13</li> <li>• 14</li> <li>• 15</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> At present, the system supports maximum 15 parameters that can be used with each price item to determine the price item pricing.</p>	Yes


In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:

- **Input/Output Parameters** — Enables you to select the transaction detail fields that you can use as input or output parameter while defining a rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Input/Output	Used to indicate whether you want to use the transaction detail field as input or output parameter.	No
Transaction Field	Displays the transaction field name.	Not applicable
Business Label	<p>Used to specify a business label for the user defined fields.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The business label appears when you add, copy, or view a transaction in the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen. The label changes depending on the transaction source and record type combination that you have selected.</p>	No

**Note:** At present, you can use the following transaction fields as input or output parameter while defining a rule — Account Identifier (ACCT\_NBR), Account Identifier Type (ACCT\_NBR\_TYPE\_CD), Division (CIS\_DIVISION), Currency Code (CURRENCY\_CD), Customer Reference Number (CUST\_REF\_NBR), Do not Aggregate Switch (DO\_NOT\_AGG\_SW), External Reference Number (EXT\_TXN\_NBR), Credit/Debit Indicator (HOW\_TO\_USE\_TXN\_FLG), Manual Entry (MANUAL\_SW), Transaction Amount (TXN\_AMT), Transaction Date (TXN\_DTTM), Transaction Record Type (TXN\_REC\_TYPE\_CD), Transaction Source (TXN\_SOURCE\_CD), Transaction Upload Date (TXN\_UPLOAD\_DTTM), Transaction Volume (TXN\_VOL), Additional Amount 1 (UDF\_AMT\_1), Additional Amount 2 (UDF\_AMT\_2), Additional Amount 3 (UDF\_AMT\_3), Additional Amount 4 (UDF\_AMT\_4), Additional Amount 5 (UDF\_AMT\_5), Additional Amount 6 (UDF\_AMT\_6), Additional Amount 7 (UDF\_AMT\_7), Additional Amount 8 (UDF\_AMT\_8), Additional Amount 9 (UDF\_AMT\_9), Additional Amount 10 (UDF\_AMT\_10), Additional Data 1 (UDF\_CHAR\_1), Additional Data 2 (UDF\_CHAR\_2), Additional Data 3 (UDF\_CHAR\_3), Additional Data 4 (UDF\_CHAR\_4), Additional Data 5 (UDF\_CHAR\_5), Additional Data 6 (UDF\_CHAR\_6), Additional Data 7 (UDF\_CHAR\_7), Additional Data 8 (UDF\_CHAR\_8), Additional Data 9 (UDF\_CHAR\_9), Additional Data 10 (UDF\_CHAR\_10), Additional Data 11 (UDF\_CHAR\_11), Additional Data 12 (UDF\_CHAR\_12), Additional Data 13 (UDF\_CHAR\_13), Additional Data 14 (UDF\_CHAR\_14), Additional Data 15 (UDF\_CHAR\_15), Additional Data 16 (UDF\_CHAR\_16), Additional Data 17 (UDF\_CHAR\_17), Additional Data 18 (UDF\_CHAR\_18), Additional Data 19 (UDF\_CHAR\_19), Additional Data 20 (UDF\_CHAR\_20), Additional Data 21 (UDF\_CHAR\_21), Additional Data 22 (UDF\_CHAR\_22), Additional Data 23 (UDF\_CHAR\_23), Additional Data 24 (UDF\_CHAR\_24), Additional Data 25 (UDF\_CHAR\_25), Additional Data 26 (UDF\_CHAR\_26), Additional Data 27 (UDF\_CHAR\_27), Additional Data 28 (UDF\_CHAR\_28), Additional Data 29 (UDF\_CHAR\_29), Additional Data 30 (UDF\_CHAR\_30), Additional Data 31 (UDF\_CHAR\_31), Additional Data 32 (UDF\_CHAR\_32), Additional Data 33 (UDF\_CHAR\_33), Additional Data 34 (UDF\_CHAR\_34), Additional Data 35 (UDF\_CHAR\_35), Additional Data 36 (UDF\_CHAR\_36), Additional Data 37 (UDF\_CHAR\_37), Additional Data 38 (UDF\_CHAR\_38), Additional Data 39 (UDF\_CHAR\_39), Additional Data 40 (UDF\_CHAR\_40), Additional Data 41 (UDF\_CHAR\_41), Additional Data 42 (UDF\_CHAR\_42), Additional Data 43 (UDF\_CHAR\_43), Additional Data 44 (UDF\_CHAR\_44), Additional Data 45 (UDF\_CHAR\_45), Additional Data 46 (UDF\_CHAR\_46), Additional Data 47 (UDF\_CHAR\_47), Additional Data 48 (UDF\_CHAR\_48), Additional Data 49 (UDF\_CHAR\_49), Additional Data 50 (UDF\_CHAR\_50), Amount 1 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_1), Amount 2 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_2), Amount 3 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_3), Amount 4 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_4), Amount 5 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_5), Amount 6 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_6), Amount 7 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_7), Amount 8 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_8), Amount 9 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_9), Amount 10 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_10), Additional Date 1 (UDF\_DTTM\_1), Additional Date 2 (UDF\_DTTM\_2), Additional Date 3 (UDF\_DTTM\_3), Additional Date 4 (UDF\_DTTM\_4), Additional Date 5 (UDF\_DTTM\_5), Additional Numeric Data 1 (UDF\_NBR\_1), Additional Numeric Data 2 (UDF\_NBR\_2), Additional Numeric Data 3 (UDF\_NBR\_3), Additional Numeric Data 4 (UDF\_NBR\_4), Additional Numeric Data 5 (UDF\_NBR\_5), Additional Numeric Data 6 (UDF\_NBR\_6), Additional Numeric Data 7 (UDF\_NBR\_7), Additional Numeric Data 8 (UDF\_NBR\_8), Additional Numeric Data 9 (UDF\_NBR\_9), Additional Numeric Data 10 (UDF\_NBR\_10), Additional Numeric Data 11 (UDF\_NBR\_11), Additional Numeric Data 12 (UDF\_NBR\_12), Additional Numeric Data 13 (UDF\_NBR\_13), Additional Numeric Data 14 (UDF\_NBR\_14), Additional Numeric Data 15 (UDF\_NBR\_15), Additional Numeric Data 16 (UDF\_NBR\_16), Additional Numeric Data 17 (UDF\_NBR\_17), Additional Numeric Data 18 (UDF\_NBR\_18), Additional Numeric Data 19 (UDF\_NBR\_19), Additional Numeric Data 20 (UDF\_NBR\_20).

- **Temporary Fields** — Enables you to select non-transactional fields that you can use as input or output parameter while defining a rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Temporary Field	Used to indicate the non-transactional field that you want to use as input or output parameter.	No
	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Transaction Record Type Tempo Field Search</b> window appears.	



4. Enter the required details.

**Note:** You can search for a transaction source and algorithm by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

5. Select the check box corresponding to the transaction fields that you want to use as input or output parameters.
6. If required, you can select a non-transactional field as input or output parameter in the **Temporary Fields** section.

**Note:**

You can search for a field by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

If you want to add more than one temporary field to the transaction record type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 7. However, if you want to remove a temporary field from the transaction record type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the temporary field.

7. Click **Save**.

The transaction record type is defined.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Transaction Record Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Transaction Record Type</a> on page 792
<b>Search Transaction Record Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Transaction Record Type</a> on page 792

## Editing a Transaction Record Type


### Prerequisites

To edit a transaction record type, you should have:



- Validation algorithm defined using the C1-RULE-VAL algorithm type
- Transaction Information String algorithm defined using the C1-TXDETINFO algorithm type
- Fields (that you want to use as input or output parameter) defined in the application


### Procedure

To edit a transaction record type:

1. Search for the transaction record type in the **Transaction Record Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the transaction record type whose details you want to edit.

The **Transaction Record Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to indicate the transaction source for which you want to define the transaction record type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Search Transaction Source</b> window appears.	
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the transaction record type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the transaction record type.	
Description	Used to specify the description for the transaction record type.	Yes
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the rule type.	
Rule Type Description	Used to specify the description for the rule type.	Yes
Rule Validation Algorithm	Used to specify the validation algorithm that will be triggered when a rule is defined using the rule type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This algorithm checks whether: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The values specified against the output parameters exist in the system</li> <li>• The same price item parameter (for example, PCD1_1_1_VAL) is not used multiple times for a division, account, and price item combination</li> </ul> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Info String Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that will generate the information string which appears in the <b>Transaction Information</b> column throughout the application.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b> This algorithm concatenates the fields (related to the transaction) and delimiters specified as parameters in the algorithm.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	
Maximum Accounts to be charged	Used to indicate the maximum number of accounts which can bear the charges for a transaction. The valid values are:	Yes
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 01</li> <li>• 02</li> <li>• 03</li> <li>• 04</li> <li>• 05</li> <li>• 06</li> <li>• 07</li> <li>• 08</li> <li>• 09</li> <li>• 10</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> At present, the system supports maximum 10 accounts which can bear the charges for a transaction.</p>	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Maximum Price Items to be mapped	Used to indicate the maximum number of price items to which a transaction can be mapped for each account. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 01</li> <li>• 02</li> <li>• 03</li> <li>• 04</li> <li>• 05</li> <li>• 06</li> <li>• 07</li> <li>• 08</li> <li>• 09</li> <li>• 10</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> At present, the system supports maximum 10 price items to which a transaction can be mapped for each account.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Maximum Price Item Parameters	<p>Used to indicate the maximum number of parameters that can be used with each price item to determine the price item pricing. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 00</li> <li>• 01</li> <li>• 02</li> <li>• 03</li> <li>• 04</li> <li>• 05</li> <li>• 06</li> <li>• 07</li> <li>• 08</li> <li>• 09</li> <li>• 10</li> <li>• 11</li> <li>• 12</li> <li>• 13</li> <li>• 14</li> <li>• 15</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> At present, the system supports maximum 15 parameters that can be used with each price item to determine the price item pricing.</p>	Yes

In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:


- **Input/Output Parameters** — Enables you to select the transaction detail fields that you can use as input or output parameter while defining a rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Input/Output	Used to indicate whether you want to use the transaction detail field as input or output parameter.	No
Transaction Field	Displays the transaction field name.	Not applicable
Business Label	<p>Used to specify a business label for the user defined fields.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The business label appears when you add, copy, or view a transaction in the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen. The label changes depending on the transaction source and record type combination that you have selected.</p>	No

**Note:** At present, you can use the following transaction fields as input or output parameter while defining a rule — Account Identifier (ACCT\_NBR), Account Identifier Type (ACCT\_NBR\_TYPE\_CD), Division (CIS\_DIVISION), Currency Code (CURRENCY\_CD), Customer Reference Number (CUST\_REF\_NBR), Do not Aggregate Switch (DO\_NOT\_AGG\_SW), External Reference Number (EXT\_TXN\_NBR), Credit/Debit Indicator (HOW\_TO\_USE\_TXN\_FLG), Manual Entry (MANUAL\_SW), Transaction Amount (TXN\_AMT), Transaction Date (TXN\_DTTM), Transaction Record Type (TXN\_REC\_TYPE\_CD), Transaction Source (TXN\_SOURCE\_CD), Transaction Upload Date (TXN\_UPLOAD\_DTTM), Transaction Volume (TXN\_VOL), Additional Amount 1 (UDF\_AMT\_1), Additional Amount 2 (UDF\_AMT\_2), Additional Amount 3 (UDF\_AMT\_3), Additional Amount 4 (UDF\_AMT\_4), Additional Amount 5 (UDF\_AMT\_5), Additional Amount 6 (UDF\_AMT\_6), Additional Amount 7 (UDF\_AMT\_7), Additional Amount 8 (UDF\_AMT\_8), Additional Amount 9 (UDF\_AMT\_9), Additional Amount 10 (UDF\_AMT\_10), Additional Data 1 (UDF\_CHAR\_1), Additional Data 2 (UDF\_CHAR\_2), Additional Data 3 (UDF\_CHAR\_3), Additional Data 4 (UDF\_CHAR\_4), Additional Data 5 (UDF\_CHAR\_5), Additional Data 6 (UDF\_CHAR\_6), Additional Data 7 (UDF\_CHAR\_7), Additional Data 8 (UDF\_CHAR\_8), Additional Data 9 (UDF\_CHAR\_9), Additional Data 10 (UDF\_CHAR\_10), Additional Data 11 (UDF\_CHAR\_11), Additional Data 12 (UDF\_CHAR\_12), Additional Data 13 (UDF\_CHAR\_13), Additional Data 14 (UDF\_CHAR\_14), Additional Data 15 (UDF\_CHAR\_15), Additional Data 16 (UDF\_CHAR\_16), Additional Data 17 (UDF\_CHAR\_17), Additional Data 18 (UDF\_CHAR\_18), Additional Data 19 (UDF\_CHAR\_19), Additional Data 20 (UDF\_CHAR\_20), Additional Data 21 (UDF\_CHAR\_21), Additional Data 22 (UDF\_CHAR\_22), Additional Data 23 (UDF\_CHAR\_23), Additional Data 24 (UDF\_CHAR\_24), Additional Data 25 (UDF\_CHAR\_25), Additional Data 26 (UDF\_CHAR\_26), Additional Data 27 (UDF\_CHAR\_27), Additional Data 28 (UDF\_CHAR\_28), Additional Data 29 (UDF\_CHAR\_29), Additional Data 30 (UDF\_CHAR\_30), Additional Data 31 (UDF\_CHAR\_31), Additional Data 32 (UDF\_CHAR\_32), Additional Data 33 (UDF\_CHAR\_33), Additional Data 34 (UDF\_CHAR\_34), Additional Data 35 (UDF\_CHAR\_35), Additional Data 36 (UDF\_CHAR\_36), Additional Data 37 (UDF\_CHAR\_37), Additional Data 38 (UDF\_CHAR\_38), Additional Data 39 (UDF\_CHAR\_39), Additional Data 40 (UDF\_CHAR\_40), Additional Data 41 (UDF\_CHAR\_41), Additional Data 42 (UDF\_CHAR\_42), Additional Data 43 (UDF\_CHAR\_43), Additional Data 44 (UDF\_CHAR\_44), Additional Data 45 (UDF\_CHAR\_45), Additional Data 46 (UDF\_CHAR\_46), Additional Data 47 (UDF\_CHAR\_47), Additional Data 48 (UDF\_CHAR\_48), Additional Data 49 (UDF\_CHAR\_49), Additional Data 50 (UDF\_CHAR\_50), Amount 1 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_1), Amount 2 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_2), Amount 3 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_3), Amount 4 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_4), Amount 5 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_5), Amount 6 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_6), Amount 7 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_7), Amount 8 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_8), Amount 9 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_9), Amount 10 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_10), Additional Date 1 (UDF\_DTTM\_1), Additional Date 2 (UDF\_DTTM\_2), Additional Date 3 (UDF\_DTTM\_3), Additional Date 4 (UDF\_DTTM\_4), Additional Date 5 (UDF\_DTTM\_5), Additional Numeric Data 1 (UDF\_NBR\_1), Additional Numeric Data 2 (UDF\_NBR\_2), Additional Numeric Data 3 (UDF\_NBR\_3), Additional Numeric Data 4 (UDF\_NBR\_4), Additional Numeric Data 5 (UDF\_NBR\_5), Additional Numeric Data 6 (UDF\_NBR\_6), Additional Numeric Data 7 (UDF\_NBR\_7), Additional Numeric Data 8 (UDF\_NBR\_8), Additional Numeric Data 9 (UDF\_NBR\_9), Additional Numeric Data 10 (UDF\_NBR\_10), Additional Numeric Data 11 (UDF\_NBR\_11), Additional Numeric Data 12 (UDF\_NBR\_12), Additional Numeric Data 13 (UDF\_NBR\_13), Additional Numeric Data 14 (UDF\_NBR\_14), Additional Numeric Data 15 (UDF\_NBR\_15), Additional Numeric Data 16 (UDF\_NBR\_16), Additional Numeric Data 17 (UDF\_NBR\_17), Additional Numeric Data 18 (UDF\_NBR\_18), Additional Numeric Data 19 (UDF\_NBR\_19), Additional Numeric Data 20 (UDF\_NBR\_20).


- **Temporary Fields** — Enables you to select non-transactional fields that you can use as input or output parameter while defining a rule. It contains the following fields:





Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Temporary Field	Used to indicate the non-transactional field that you want to use as input or output parameter.	No
	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Transaction Record Type Tempo Field Search</b> window appears.	

### 3. Modify the required details.

#### Note:

You can search for an algorithm and field by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field. You can edit and remove an input or output parameter from a rule type only when it is not yet used in a rule (which is created using the rule type).

If you want to add more than one temporary field to the transaction record type, click the **Add**  icon and then specify the details in the **Temporary Fields** section. However, if you want to remove a temporary field from the transaction record type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the temporary field.

### 4. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the transaction record type are saved.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction record type	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Record Type</a> on page 793

## Deleting a Transaction Record Type

#### Procedure

To delete a transaction record type:

1. Search for the transaction record type in the **Transaction Record Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete**  icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the transaction record type that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the transaction record type.

**Note:** You can only delete a transaction record type which is not yet used.

### 3. Click **OK**.

The transaction record type is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction record type	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Record Type</a> on page 793

## Copying a Transaction Record Type

Instead of creating a transaction record type from scratch, you can create a new transaction record type using an existing transaction record type. This is possible through copying a transaction record type. Once you create a copy of a transaction record type, the input or output parameters and temporary fields are also copied to the new transaction record type. You can then edit the details, if required.


### Prerequisites

To copy a transaction record type, you should have:


- Transaction record type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Validation algorithm defined using the C1-RULE-VAL algorithm type
- Transaction Information String algorithm defined using the C1-TXDETINFO algorithm type
- Fields (that you want to use as input or output parameter) defined in the application



### Procedure

To copy a transaction record type:

1. Search for the transaction record type in the **Transaction Record Type** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Copy** () icon in the **Copy** column corresponding to the transaction record type whose copy you want to create.

The **Transaction Record Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Source	Used to indicate the transaction source for which you want to define the transaction record type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Search Transaction Source</b> window appears.	
Transaction Record Type	Used to specify the transaction record type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the transaction record type.	
Description	Used to specify the description for the transaction record type.	Yes
Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot specify any special character except underscore (_) in the rule type.	
Rule Type Description	Used to specify the description for the rule type.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Validation Algorithm	<p>Used to specify the validation algorithm that will be triggered when a rule is defined using the rule type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This algorithm checks whether:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The values specified against the output parameters exist in the system</li> <li>• The same price item parameter (for example, PCD1_1_1_VAL) is not used multiple times for a division, account, and price item combination</li> </ul> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	No
Info String Algorithm	<p>Used to specify the algorithm that will generate the information string which appears in the <b>Transaction Information</b> column throughout the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This algorithm concatenates the fields (related to the transaction) and delimiters specified as parameters in the algorithm.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	No
Maximum Accounts to be charged	<p>Used to indicate the maximum number of accounts which can bear the charges for a transaction. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 01</li> <li>• 02</li> <li>• 03</li> <li>• 04</li> <li>• 05</li> <li>• 06</li> <li>• 07</li> <li>• 08</li> <li>• 09</li> <li>• 10</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> At present, the system supports maximum 10 accounts which can bear the charges for a transaction.</p>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Maximum Price Items to be mapped	Used to indicate the maximum number of price items to which a transaction can be mapped for each account. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>01</li> <li>02</li> <li>03</li> <li>04</li> <li>05</li> <li>06</li> <li>07</li> <li>08</li> <li>09</li> <li>10</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> At present, the system supports maximum 10 price items to which a transaction can be mapped for each account.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Maximum Price Item Parameters	<p>Used to indicate the maximum number of parameters that can be used with each price item to determine the price item pricing. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 00</li> <li>• 01</li> <li>• 02</li> <li>• 03</li> <li>• 04</li> <li>• 05</li> <li>• 06</li> <li>• 07</li> <li>• 08</li> <li>• 09</li> <li>• 10</li> <li>• 11</li> <li>• 12</li> <li>• 13</li> <li>• 14</li> <li>• 15</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> At present, the system supports maximum 15 parameters that can be used with each price item to determine the price item pricing.</p>	Yes


In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:

- **Input/Output Parameters** — Enables you to select the transaction detail fields that you can use as input or output parameter while defining a rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Input/Output	Used to indicate whether you want to use the transaction detail field as input or output parameter.	No
Transaction Field	Displays the transaction field name.	Not applicable
Business Label	<p>Used to specify a business label for the user defined fields.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The business label appears when you add, copy, or view a transaction in the <b>Transaction Details</b> screen. The label changes depending on the transaction source and record type combination that you have selected.</p>	No

**Note:** At present, you can use the following transaction fields as input or output parameter while defining a rule — Account Identifier (ACCT\_NBR), Account Identifier Type (ACCT\_NBR\_TYPE\_CD), Division (CIS\_DIVISION), Currency Code (CURRENCY\_CD), Customer Reference Number (CUST\_REF\_NBR), Do not Aggregate Switch (DO\_NOT\_AGG\_SW), External Reference Number (EXT\_TXN\_NBR), Credit/Debit Indicator (HOW\_TO\_USE\_TXN\_FLG), Manual Entry (MANUAL\_SW), Transaction Amount (TXN\_AMT), Transaction Date (TXN\_DTTM), Transaction Record Type (TXN\_REC\_TYPE\_CD), Transaction Source (TXN\_SOURCE\_CD), Transaction Upload Date (TXN\_UPLOAD\_DTTM), Transaction Volume (TXN\_VOL), Additional Amount 1 (UDF\_AMT\_1), Additional Amount 2 (UDF\_AMT\_2), Additional Amount 3 (UDF\_AMT\_3), Additional Amount 4 (UDF\_AMT\_4), Additional Amount 5 (UDF\_AMT\_5), Additional Amount 6 (UDF\_AMT\_6), Additional Amount 7 (UDF\_AMT\_7), Additional Amount 8 (UDF\_AMT\_8), Additional Amount 9 (UDF\_AMT\_9), Additional Amount 10 (UDF\_AMT\_10), Additional Data 1 (UDF\_CHAR\_1), Additional Data 2 (UDF\_CHAR\_2), Additional Data 3 (UDF\_CHAR\_3), Additional Data 4 (UDF\_CHAR\_4), Additional Data 5 (UDF\_CHAR\_5), Additional Data 6 (UDF\_CHAR\_6), Additional Data 7 (UDF\_CHAR\_7), Additional Data 8 (UDF\_CHAR\_8), Additional Data 9 (UDF\_CHAR\_9), Additional Data 10 (UDF\_CHAR\_10), Additional Data 11 (UDF\_CHAR\_11), Additional Data 12 (UDF\_CHAR\_12), Additional Data 13 (UDF\_CHAR\_13), Additional Data 14 (UDF\_CHAR\_14), Additional Data 15 (UDF\_CHAR\_15), Additional Data 16 (UDF\_CHAR\_16), Additional Data 17 (UDF\_CHAR\_17), Additional Data 18 (UDF\_CHAR\_18), Additional Data 19 (UDF\_CHAR\_19), Additional Data 20 (UDF\_CHAR\_20), Additional Data 21 (UDF\_CHAR\_21), Additional Data 22 (UDF\_CHAR\_22), Additional Data 23 (UDF\_CHAR\_23), Additional Data 24 (UDF\_CHAR\_24), Additional Data 25 (UDF\_CHAR\_25), Additional Data 26 (UDF\_CHAR\_26), Additional Data 27 (UDF\_CHAR\_27), Additional Data 28 (UDF\_CHAR\_28), Additional Data 29 (UDF\_CHAR\_29), Additional Data 30 (UDF\_CHAR\_30), Additional Data 31 (UDF\_CHAR\_31), Additional Data 32 (UDF\_CHAR\_32), Additional Data 33 (UDF\_CHAR\_33), Additional Data 34 (UDF\_CHAR\_34), Additional Data 35 (UDF\_CHAR\_35), Additional Data 36 (UDF\_CHAR\_36), Additional Data 37 (UDF\_CHAR\_37), Additional Data 38 (UDF\_CHAR\_38), Additional Data 39 (UDF\_CHAR\_39), Additional Data 40 (UDF\_CHAR\_40), Additional Data 41 (UDF\_CHAR\_41), Additional Data 42 (UDF\_CHAR\_42), Additional Data 43 (UDF\_CHAR\_43), Additional Data 44 (UDF\_CHAR\_44), Additional Data 45 (UDF\_CHAR\_45), Additional Data 46 (UDF\_CHAR\_46), Additional Data 47 (UDF\_CHAR\_47), Additional Data 48 (UDF\_CHAR\_48), Additional Data 49 (UDF\_CHAR\_49), Additional Data 50 (UDF\_CHAR\_50), Amount 1 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_1), Amount 2 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_2), Amount 3 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_3), Amount 4 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_4), Amount 5 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_5), Amount 6 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_6), Amount 7 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_7), Amount 8 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_8), Amount 9 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_9), Amount 10 Currency Code (UDF\_CURRENCY\_CD\_10), Additional Date 1 (UDF\_DTTM\_1), Additional Date 2 (UDF\_DTTM\_2), Additional Date 3 (UDF\_DTTM\_3), Additional Date 4 (UDF\_DTTM\_4), Additional Date 5 (UDF\_DTTM\_5), Additional Numeric Data 1 (UDF\_NBR\_1), Additional Numeric Data 2 (UDF\_NBR\_2), Additional Numeric Data 3 (UDF\_NBR\_3), Additional Numeric Data 4 (UDF\_NBR\_4), Additional Numeric Data 5 (UDF\_NBR\_5), Additional Numeric Data 6 (UDF\_NBR\_6), Additional Numeric Data 7 (UDF\_NBR\_7), Additional Numeric Data 8 (UDF\_NBR\_8), Additional Numeric Data 9 (UDF\_NBR\_9), Additional Numeric Data 10 (UDF\_NBR\_10), Additional Numeric Data 11 (UDF\_NBR\_11), Additional Numeric Data 12 (UDF\_NBR\_12), Additional Numeric Data 13 (UDF\_NBR\_13), Additional Numeric Data 14 (UDF\_NBR\_14), Additional Numeric Data 15 (UDF\_NBR\_15), Additional Numeric Data 16 (UDF\_NBR\_16), Additional Numeric Data 17 (UDF\_NBR\_17), Additional Numeric Data 18 (UDF\_NBR\_18), Additional Numeric Data 19 (UDF\_NBR\_19), Additional Numeric Data 20 (UDF\_NBR\_20).

- **Temporary Fields** — Enables you to select non-transactional fields that you can use as input or output parameter while defining a rule. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Temporary Field	Used to indicate the non-transactional field that you want to use as input or output parameter.	No
	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Transaction Record Type Tempo Field Search</b> window appears.	



- Enter the required details.

**Note:** You can search for an algorithm by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

- Select the check box corresponding to the transaction fields that you want to use as input or output parameters.
- If required, you can select a non-transactional field as input or output parameter in the **Temporary Fields** section.

**Note:**

You can search for a field by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

If you want to add more than one temporary field to the transaction record type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 5. However, if you want to remove a temporary field from the transaction record type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the temporary field.

- Click **Save**.

The new transaction record type is defined.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a transaction record type	<a href="#">Searching for a Transaction Record Type</a> on page 793

## Transaction Aggregation Rule



The **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen allows you to define transaction aggregation rule for an SQL. You can also edit and delete the transaction aggregation rule of an SQL. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Transaction Aggregation Rules](#) on page 811

### Transaction Aggregation Rules

The **Transaction Aggregation Rules** zone lists transaction aggregation rules that are already defined in the system. You can define, edit, and delete a transaction aggregation rule through this zone.

This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
SQL Description	Displays the description of the service quantity identifier (SQI).
Aggregation Function	Indicates the formula used in the transaction aggregation rule defined for the SQI.
Function	Indicates the function used for aggregation.
Transaction Parameter	Indicates the transaction parameter used for aggregation.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Transaction Aggregation Rule</b> screen appears where you can edit the aggregation rule.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the transaction aggregation rule.

You can define transaction aggregation rule for an SQI by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. You can also change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define transaction aggregation rule for an SQI	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Aggregation Rule for an SQI</a> on page 812
How to edit transaction aggregation rule of an SQI	<a href="#">Editing Transaction Aggregation Rule of an SQI</a> on page 813
How to delete transaction aggregation rule of an SQI	<a href="#">Deleting Transaction Aggregation Rule of an SQI</a> on page 814

## Defining Transaction Aggregation Rule for an SQI

### Prerequisites

To define transaction aggregation rule for an SQI, you should have:

- SQI defined in the application

### Procedure

To define transaction aggregation rule for an SQI:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **T** and then click **Transaction Aggregation Rule**.  
The **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Transaction Aggregation Rules** zone.  
The **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
SQI	Used to indicate the SQI for which you want to define the transaction aggregation rule.	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Function	Used to indicate the function that you want to use for aggregation. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SUM()</li> <li>MIN()</li> <li>MAX()</li> <li>COUNT()</li> </ul>	Yes
Transaction Parameter	Used to indicate the transaction parameter that you want to use for aggregation. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>TXN_AMT</li> <li>TXN_VOL</li> <li>UDF_AMT_1, UDF_AMT_2, UDF_AMT_3, ..., UDF_AMT_10</li> <li>UDF_NBR_1, UDF_NBR_2, UDF_NBR_3, ..., UDF_NBR_20</li> </ul>	Yes

4. Enter the required details.

5. Click **Save**.

The transaction aggregation rule is defined for the SQI.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Transaction Aggregation Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Transaction Aggregation Rule</a> on page 811
<b>Transaction Aggregation Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Transaction Aggregation Rules</a> on page 811

## Editing Transaction Aggregation Rule of an SQI

### Procedure


To edit the transaction aggregation rule of an SQI:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **T** and then click **Transaction Aggregation Rule**.

The **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the SQI whose transaction aggregation rule you want to edit.

The **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
SQI	Indicates the SQI for which the transaction aggregation rule is defined.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Function	Used to indicate the function that you want to use for aggregation. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SUM()</li> <li>MIN()</li> <li>MAX()</li> <li>COUNT()</li> </ul>	Yes
Transaction Parameter	Used to indicate the transaction parameter that you want to use for aggregation. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>TXN_AMT</li> <li>TXN_VOL</li> <li>UDF_AMT_1, UDF_AMT_2, UDF_AMT_3, ..., UDF_AMT_10</li> <li>UDF_NBR_1, UDF_NBR_2, UDF_NBR_3, ..., UDF_NBR_20</li> </ul>	Yes

4. Modify the required details.

5. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the transaction aggregation rule are saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Transaction Aggregation Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Transaction Aggregation Rule</a> on page 811
<b>Transaction Aggregation Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Transaction Aggregation Rules</a> on page 811

## **Deleting Transaction Aggregation Rule of an SQI**

### **Procedure**


To delete the transaction aggregation rule of an SQI:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **T** and then click **Transaction Aggregation Rule**.

The **Transaction Aggregation Rule** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the SQI whose transaction aggregation rule you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the transaction aggregation rule.

4. Click **OK**.

The transaction aggregation rule is deleted.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Aggregation Rule screen	<a href="#">Transaction Aggregation Rule</a> on page 811
Transaction Aggregation Rules zone	<a href="#">Transaction Aggregation Rules</a> on page 811

## Schedule

The **Schedule** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete a schedule. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Schedule](#) on page 815




### Search Schedule

The **Search Schedule** zone allows you to search for a schedule. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Schedule	Used to search a particular schedule.	No
Description	Used to search schedules with a particular .description	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Schedule	Displays the schedule.
Description	Displays the description of the schedule.
View	On clicking the <b>View</b>  icon, the <b>View Schedule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the schedule.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b>  icon, the <b>Edit Schedule</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the schedule.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b>  icon, you can delete the schedule.
	<b>Note:</b> You can only delete a schedule which is not yet used.

You can create a new schedule by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a schedule	<a href="#">Searching for a Schedule</a> on page 816
How to view the details of a schedule	<a href="#">Viewing the Schedule Details</a> on page 816
How to define a schedule	<a href="#">Defining a Schedule</a> on page 817
How to edit a schedule	<a href="#">Editing a Schedule</a> on page 818

For more information on...	See...
How to delete a schedule	<a href="#">Deleting a Schedule</a> on page 819

## Searching for a Schedule

### Procedure

To search for a schedule:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **S** and then click **Schedule**.  
The **Schedule** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Schedule** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.  
The search results appear.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Schedule</b> screen	<a href="#">Schedule</a> on page 815
<b>Search Schedule</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Schedule</a> on page 815

## Viewing the Schedule Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a schedule:

1. Search for the schedule in the **Schedule** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon in the **View** column corresponding to the schedule whose details you want to view.  
The **View Schedule** screen appears.
3. View the details of the schedule in the **View Schedule** screen.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a schedule	<a href="#">Searching for a Schedule</a> on page 816

## Defining a Schedule

### Procedure

To define a schedule:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **S** and then click **Schedule**.

The **Schedule** screen appears.

3. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search Schedule** zone.

The **Add Schedule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Schedule	Used to specify the schedule code.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the schedule.	Yes

In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:

- **Schedule Periods** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the start date of the schedule period.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The start date cannot be later than the end date.	
End Date	Used to specify the end date of the schedule period.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.	


**Note:** At least one schedule period must be defined in the schedule. Also, ensure that the schedule periods do not have overlapping days.


- **Schedule Types** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Schedule Type	Used to indicate the functionality where you want to use the schedule. You can use a schedule for more than one functionality.	Yes

4. Enter the required details.

- 5.

If you want to define more than one period in the schedule, click the **Add** () icon and then specify the details.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a period from the schedule, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the period.

6. Click **Save**.

The schedule is defined.


Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Schedule screen	<a href="#">Schedule</a> on page 815
Search Schedule zone	<a href="#">Search Schedule</a> on page 815

Editing a Schedule

Procedure

To edit a schedule:

- Search for the schedule in the **Schedule** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the schedule whose details you want to edit.

The **Edit Schedule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Schedule	Displays the schedule code.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the schedule.	Yes

In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:

- Schedule Periods** — This section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the start date of the schedule period.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The start date cannot be later than the end date.	
End Date	Used to specify the end date of the schedule period.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.	


**Note:** At least one schedule period must be defined in the schedule. Also, ensure that the schedule periods do not have overlapping days.

- Schedule Types** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Schedule Type	Used to indicate the functionality where you want to use the schedule. You can use a schedule for more than one functionality.	Yes

3. Modify the required details.

4. If you want to define more than one period in the schedule, click the **Add** () icon and then specify the details.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a period from the schedule, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the period.

5. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the schedule are saved.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a schedule	<a href="#">Searching for a Schedule</a> on page 816

## Deleting a Schedule

### Procedure

To delete a schedule:

1. Search for the schedule in the **Schedule** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the schedule that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the schedule.

**Note:** You can only delete a schedule which is not yet used.

3. Click **OK**.

The schedule is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a schedule	<a href="#">Searching for a Schedule</a> on page 816

## Disaggregation Request

Through the **Disaggregation Request Creation (C1-DISTG)** batch, you can only create a disaggregation request for an account. However, from the **Disaggregation Request** screen, you can create a disaggregation request for a person and account. When you create a disaggregation request for a person, the system does not create the disaggregation request for the person. Instead, the system creates the disaggregation request for all accounts of the person (where the person is the main customer) and its child persons.

The **Disaggregation Request** screen allows you to search for disaggregation requests using various search criteria. It also allows you to create and delete a disaggregation request. This screen consists of the following zone:

- [Search Disaggregation Request](#) on page 820

Search Disaggregation Request

The **Search Disaggregation Request** zone allows you to search for disaggregation requests using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- Search Criteria** — The fields in the **Search Criteria** section change depending on the query option selected. You can select either of the following query options:
  - Person** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a disaggregation request created for a person.
  - Account** — Used to indicate that you want to search for a disaggregation request created for an account.
- Search Results** — The **Search Results** section displays the records based on the specified search criteria. The columns in the search results change depending on the query option selected.

You can create a disaggregation request manually by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a disaggregation request	<a href="#">Searching for a Disaggregation Request</a> on page 820
How to create a disaggregation request manually	<a href="#">Creating a Disaggregation Request</a> on page 823
How to delete a disaggregation request	<a href="#">Deleting a Disaggregation Request</a> on page 827

Searching for a Disaggregation Request

Procedure

To search for a disaggregation request:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
 A list appears.
- From the **Main** menu, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Disaggregation Request**.  
 The **Disaggregation Request** screen appears.
- Select the **Person** or **Account** option from the **Search By** list depending on whether you want to search for a disaggregation request created for a person or an account.

The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
PersonName	Used to search disaggregation requests which are created for a particular person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Request Date From	Used to search disaggregation requests which are created from a particular date onwards.	Yes
Request Date To	Used to search disaggregation requests which are created till a particular date.	Yes
Processing Date From	Used to search disaggregation requests which are processed from a particular date onwards.	No



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Processing Date To	Used to search disaggregation requests which are processed till a particular date.	No
Request Source	Used to search disaggregation requests which are created automatically, manually, or through the batch process. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AUTOMATIC</li> <li>BATCH</li> <li>MANUAL</li> </ul>	No
Request Status	Used to search disaggregation requests with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>COMPLETE</li> <li>PENDING</li> </ul>	No
Person ID	Used to search disaggregation requests which are created for a particular person.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No
Division	Used to search disaggregation requests which are created for persons or accounts that belong to a particular division.  <b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are searching for disaggregation requests created for an account.
Person Identifier Type	Used to select the person identifier type based on which you want to search disaggregation requests created for a person.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> If you enter person identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the person identifier type.
Person Identifier	Used when you want to search disaggregation requests created for a person.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> If you specify person identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the person identifier.
Account ID	Used to search disaggregation requests which are created for a particular account.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the account identifier type based on which you want to search disaggregation requests created for an account.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you enter account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used when you want to search disaggregation requests created for an account.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you specify account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.

- Enter the search criteria in the **Search Disaggregation Request** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.

A list of disaggregation requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Request ID	Displays the disaggregation request ID.
Request Date	Displays the date when the disaggregation request was created.
Status	Indicates the status of the disaggregation request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>COMPLETE</li> <li>PENDING</li> </ul>
Person ID	Indicates the person for whom the disaggregation request is created.
Person Information	Displays additional information about the person. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears with the details of the respective person.</p>
Account ID	Indicates the account for which the disaggregation request is created.
Account Information	Displays additional information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears with the details of the respective account.</p>
Processing Date	Displays the date when the disaggregation request was processed.

Column Name	Column Description
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> button, you can delete the disaggregation request.
	<b>Note:</b> You can only delete a disaggregation request which is in the <b>Pending</b> status.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Disaggregation Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Disaggregation Request</a> on page 819
<b>Search Disaggregation Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Disaggregation Request</a> on page 820

## Creating a Disaggregation Request

### Prerequisites

To create a disaggregation request manually, you should have:

- Divisions, person identifier types, account identifier types, bill cycles, and invoice currencies defined in the application
- Price list assigned to the person or account (in case you want to search a person or an account based on an assigned price list)

### Procedure

To create a disaggregation request manually:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Transaction Feed Management** and then click **Disaggregation Request**.  
The **Disaggregation Request** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Search Disaggregation Request** zone.

The **Add Disaggregation Request** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Request Type	Used to indicate whether you want to create disaggregation request for a person or an account. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account</li> <li>• Person</li> </ul>	Yes
Division	Used to specify the division to which the person or account belongs.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are creating a disaggregation request for an account.





Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Used to indicate the account for which you want to create a disaggregation request.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Request Type</b> list.	
Person ID	Used to indicate the person for whom you want to create a disaggregation request.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Request Type</b> list.	
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type based on which you want to search for an account.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Request Type</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you enter account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to indicate the account for which you want to create a disaggregation request.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Request Type</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you specify account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the account identifier.
Person Identifier Type	Used to specify the person identifier type based on which you want to search for a person.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Request Type</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you enter person identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the person identifier type.
Person Identifier	Used to indicate the person for whom you want to create a disaggregation request.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Request Type</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you specify person identifier type as a search criteria, you have to enter the person identifier.
Bill Cycle	Used when you want to search accounts having a particular bill cycle.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Request Type</b> list.	
Person Name	Used to specify the name of the person.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Invoice Currency	Used when you want to search accounts having a particular invoice currency.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Request Type</b> list.	
With Assigned Price List	Used when you want to search for a person or an account to which a particular price list is assigned.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to search for a person or an account based on an assigned price list.
Price List Assigned From	Used when you want to search for a person or an account based on an assigned price list which is effective within the specified date range.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to search for a person or an account based on an assigned price list.
Price List Assigned To	Used when you want to search for a person or an account based on an assigned price list which is effective within the specified date range.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to search for a person or an account based on an assigned price list.

- Select the **Person** or **Account** option from the **Request Type** list depending on whether you want to search for a person or an account.
- Enter the search criteria in the **Search** section.

**Note:**

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. By default, 20 records are displayed in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required.

You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** () , **Previous** () , **Next** () , and **Last** () to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

The values appear in the **Page Limit** list only when you define values for the **PAGE\_NUMBER** lookup field.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the '%' wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The '%' wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.





- Click **Search**.

A list of persons or accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account Identifier Type	Displays the primary account identifier type of the account.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when you search for an account.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the primary account identifier type.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when you search for an account.
Division	Displays the division to which the person or account belongs.
Person Identifier Type	Displays the primary person identifier type of the person.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when you search for a person.
Person Identifier	Displays the value of the primary person identifier type.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when you search for a person.
Person Name	Displays the name of the person.
With Assigned Price List	Displays the price list assigned to the person or account.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when you search for a person or an account based on an assigned price list.
Price List Assigned From	Displays the date from when the price list is assigned to the person or account.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when you search for a person or an account based on an assigned price list.
Price List Assigned To	Displays the date till when the price list is assigned to the person or account.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when you search for a person or an account based on an assigned price list.
Account Info	Displays additional information about the account.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when you search for an account.
Bill Cycle	Indicates the bill cycle defined for the account.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when you search for an account.

**Note:**

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. By default, 20 records are displayed in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required.

You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** () , **Previous** () , **Next** () , and **Last** () to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

The values appear in the **Page Limit** list only when you define values for the **PAGE\_NUMBER** lookup field.

7. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Create disaggregation request for one or more persons or accounts	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, select the check box corresponding to the person or account for which you want to create a disaggregation request.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Disaggregate</b>.  If you have selected an account, the disaggregation request is created for the account. However, if you have selected a person, the disaggregation request is created for each account of the person (where the person is the main customer) and its child person.</li> </ol>
Create disaggregation request for all persons or accounts that meet the search criteria	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Disaggregate All</b>.  A message appears confirming whether you want to create disaggregation requests for all persons or accounts that meet the search criteria.</li> <li>2. Click <b>OK</b>.  If the accounts are listed in the <b>Search Results</b> section, the disaggregation request is created for each account (listed on the respective page). However, if the persons are listed in the <b>Search Results</b> section, the disaggregation request is created for each account of the person (where the person is the main customer) and its child person.</li> </ol>

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Disaggregation Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Disaggregation Request</a> on page 819
<b>Search Disaggregation Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Disaggregation Request</a> on page 820

## Deleting a Disaggregation Request

### Procedure

To delete a disaggregation request:

1. Search for the disaggregation request in the **Disaggregation Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** button in the **Delete** column corresponding to the disaggregation request that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the disaggregation request.

**Note:**  
 You can only delete a disaggregation request which is in the **Pending** status.  
 If the disaggregation process is already started for a disaggregation request, we recommend you not to delete the disaggregation request from the system. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

3. Click **OK**.  
 The disaggregation request is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a disaggregation request	<a href="#">Searching for a Disaggregation Request</a> on page 820

**Accumulation Data**

The information will be available shortly!



---

# Chapter

# 9

---

## Upload Validated Payment Data

---

### Topics:

- [Payment Upload Process](#)
- [Prerequisites](#)
- [CSV File Format](#)
- [Payment Data File Status Transition](#)
- [Payment Record Status Transition](#)
- [Error Messages](#)
- [Payment Upload](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing until now provided you with an ability to interface payments from an external source, such as remittance processor. The system supported two mechanisms to upload payment data — one using which you can populate payment upload staging records and another using which you can populate payment event upload staging records. The system now enables you to validate the payment records before you move them to the staging area. The system provides the pre-staging area where you can upload and validate the payment records. The system provides a user interface which helps you to upload a payment data file in the pre-staging area. It also helps you to perform various tasks, such as:

- Track the status of the payment records and the payment data file
- Move the payment records to the staging area
- Cancel a payment data file
- View the log of a payment data file

You can upload a payment data file in the CSV format. You need to ensure that the CSV file is in the required format; otherwise the file will not be uploaded in the system. For more information about the CSV file format, see [CSV File Format](#) on page 833. At present, the system supports only the CSV file format. This is because the payment data mapping algorithm type shipped with the product is designed to support the CSV format. If you want to use any other file format, you need to define custom mapping algorithm type that supports the required file format.

The file type using which you upload a payment data file indicates the mapping and validation algorithms that you want to use for the payment data file. On uploading a payment data file, the mapping algorithm parses the CSV file and uploads the payments records in the pre-staging area. The validation process starts immediately after the file is uploaded in the system. During the validation process, the system and custom validations (if any) are executed. Once the validation process is complete, you can move the payment records from the pre-staging to staging area. Once the payment records are moved to the staging area, the system creates payment events, tenders, payments and payment segments through a batch process. For more information about the payment upload process, see [Payment Upload Process](#) on page 830.

During the payment upload process, a payment data file and each record of the file goes through various statuses until the payment events and payments are created. For more information about the payment data file and payment record statuses, see [Payment Data File Status Transition](#) on page 835 and [Payment Record Status Transition](#) on page 835, respectively.

## Payment Upload Process

---

The payment upload process includes the following sub-processes:

- [Upload Payment Records in the Pre-Staging Area](#) on page 830
- [Move Payment Records to the Staging Area](#) on page 831
- [Create Payment Events and Payments](#) on page 831

### Upload Payment Records in the Pre-Staging Area

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to validate the payment records before you move them to the staging area. You can upload and validate the payment records in the pre-staging area. You can upload a payment data file in the CSV format. You need to ensure that the CSV file is in the required format; otherwise the file will not be uploaded in the system. For more information about the CSV file format, see [CSV File Format](#) on page 833.

While uploading a payment data file, you need to specify the file type using which you want to upload the payment data file. The file type indicates the mapping and validation algorithms that you want to use for the payment data file. Therefore, while defining a file type using which you want to upload a payment data file, you need to:

- Set the feed type to **Payment Upload Data**
- Attach mapping algorithm which is created using the **C1-CSVUPLPAY** algorithm type
- Attach validation algorithm which is created using the **C1-PUPLVALID** algorithm type

On uploading a payment data file, the mapping algorithm does the following:

1. Validates whether the file is in the CSV format
2. Validates whether at least one payment record is available in the CSV file
3. Parses the flat file in the CSV format and maps the columns in the CSV file to various tables in the database
4. Uploads the payments records in the pre-staging area

The validation process starts immediately after the payment data file is uploaded in the system. During the validation process, the system and custom validations (if any) are executed. The system checks whether:

- The data is available in the **Tender ID**, **Tender Amount**, **Payment Amount**, **Date Received**, **Bank Account**, and **Payment Type** columns in the CSV file.
- The data is available in the **Match Type** and **Match Value** columns in the CSV file.

**Note:** This validation is done only when the **Is Match Type Validation Required (Y/N)** parameter is set to **Y** in the validation algorithm.

- The payee and payor accounts specified in the payment record exists in the system.
- The payee account with the specified account identifier type and account identifier combination exists in the system.
- A valid currency code is specified in the payment record.

**Note:** If the currency code is not specified, the currency is set to the payor account's invoice currency.

- The payment type (i.e. tender type) specified in the payment record exists in the system.
- The account identifier type specified in the payment record exists in the system.

**Note:** This validation is done only when the payee account ID is not specified in the payment record.

- The match type specified in the payment record exists in the system.

**Note:** This validation is done only when the **Is Match Type Validation Required (Y/N)** parameter is set to **Y** in the validation algorithm.

- The characteristic type specified in the payment record exists in the system.
- The characteristic value matches any predefined value when the characteristic value type is set to **Predefined Value**.
- The characteristic value is specified in the payment record when the characteristic type is specified and vice-versa.

You can upload a file by clicking the **Upload** link in the **Payment Upload** screen. On uploading a payment data file, the payment records are copied to the pre-staging area and the status of the payment data file is set to **Pending**. The validation process starts immediately after the payment data file is uploaded in the system. If a payment record is successfully validated, the status of the payment record is set to **Valid**. If a payment record contains incorrect or missing data, the status of the payment record is set to either **Invalid** or **Error** depending on the scenario. For more information about the scenarios when a payment record is set to the **Invalid** or **Error** status, see [Payment Record Status Transition](#) on page 835.

Once the validation process is completed, the status of the payment data file is changed to **Validated**. Once the payment records are uploaded and validated in the pre-staging area, you can do either of the following:

- Move the payment records to the staging area
- Cancel a payment data file
- Replace the existing payment data file

**Note:** If a payment data file contains an invalid record, you need to correct or add missing data in the CSV file and then upload the file once again. Unless, a payment data file has no invalid records, you cannot move any record of the payment data file to the staging area.

## Move Payment Records to the Staging Area

Once the payment records are uploaded and validated in the pre-staging area, you can move the records to the staging area. The system allows you to move only valid and error records of a payment data file to the staging area. If a payment data file contains an invalid record, you cannot move any record of the payment data file to the staging area. In such scenario, you need to correct the invalid payment records and upload the same file once again in the system. In addition, if you have cancelled a payment data file, you cannot move any records (including valid and error records) of the payment data file to the staging area.

You can move the payment records to the staging area by clicking the **Move to Staging** icon corresponding to the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen. The **Move to Staging** icon appears only when:

- The status of the payment data file is **Validated**.
- There are no invalid records in the payment data file.
- The **Disable Move to Staging** check box is not selected in the respective file type.

On clicking the **Move to Staging** icon, the payment records are copied (and not moved) from the pre-staging to staging area and the status of the payment data file is changed to **In Staging**. In addition, the status of the payment records in the pre-staging area is changed to **In Staging** and the status of the deposit control, tender control, and payment tender staging records is set to **Pending**. Once you move the payment records to the staging area, you can edit the payment staging records, if required.

## Create Payment Events and Payments

Once the payment records are moved to the staging area, the system creates payment events for the payment data file in the background when the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch is invoked. You can configure the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch is invoked, the

system checks whether there are any deposit control, tender control, payment tender, and payment staging records in the **Pending** status. If there are staging records in the **Pending** status, the system creates the following entities:

- Deposit Control
- Tender Control
- Payment Events
- Payment Tenders
- Payments
- Payment Segments
- Financial Transactions (when the payments are frozen)

The status of the deposit control, tender control, payment tender, and payment staging records is changed to **Complete**. If any error occurs while creating payment event for a payment record, the status of the deposit control, tender control, payment tender, and payment staging records is changed to **Error**. In addition, the status of the payment record in the pre-staging area is changed to **Error in Staging**.

Traditionally, the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch considered staging records which are in the **Error** or **Pending** status. If a staging record is in the **Error** status, the system used to reset the status to **Pending** and then further processed the staging record. This system behavior still exists for staging records which are not uploaded through the **Payment Upload** process. If the staging records are uploaded through the **Payment Upload** process, you need to manually correct the staging records and change the status of deposit control, tender control, payment tender, and payment staging records to **Pending**. The corrected staging records will then be processed when the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch is invoked at subsequent interval.

## Prerequisites

---

To setup the payment upload process, you need to do the following:

- Define the required match types with the appropriate payment distribution override and manual distribution algorithms.
- Define the required tender types in the system.
- Define the required currency codes in the system.
- Define the required tender sources in the system.
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Payment**.
- Create a mapping algorithm using the **C1-CSVUPLPAY** algorithm type.
- Create a validation algorithm using the **C1-PUPLVALID** algorithm type.
- Define the required file types where the feed type is set to **Payment Upload Data**.
- Assign the **PUPL To Do** type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do generated while executing the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch.
- Set the batch control type of the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch to **Timed** and define the following attributes:
  - Time Interval
  - Timer Active
  - User ID
  - Batch Language
  - Email Address

## CSV File Format

Before uploading a payment data file, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following columns:

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Used to specify the payee account ID.	Yes
Match Type	Used to specify the match type using which you want to match the payment.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the match value is specified.
Match Value	Used to specify the entity (such as bill, contract, and so on) against which you want to match the payment.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the match type is specified.
Tender ID	Used to specify the payment tender ID. <b>Note:</b> If the tender ID is same for two or more payment records, the system will create multiple payments against one tender. In other words, there will be multiple payments which are created through the payment event.	Yes
Tender Amount	Used to specify the tender amount. <b>Note:</b> You must not specify the value less than or equal to 0. The precision specified for the tender amount must not exceed the decimal places defined for the currency in the system.	Yes
Payment Amount	Used to specify the amount paid through the tender. <b>Note:</b> You must not specify the value less than or equal to 0. The precision specified for the payment amount must not exceed the decimal places defined for the currency in the system.	Yes
Date Received	Used to specify the date when the payment is made. <b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the MM/DD/YYYY format.	Yes
Bank Account	Used to specify the external source ID which is associated with the tender source.	Yes

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Type	Used to specify the type of tender through which the payment is made.	Yes
Check Number	Used to specify the check number if the payment is made through check.	No
Currency	Used to specify the currency in which the payment is made. <b>Note:</b> If the currency is not specified, it is set to the payor account's invoice currency.	No
Account ID Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the account identifier is specified.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the account for which the payment is made.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the account identifier type is specified.
Payment Char Type1, Payment Char Type2, ....., Payment Char Type5	Used to indicate the characteristic that must be defined for the payment.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the characteristic value is specified.
Payment Char Value1, Payment Char Value2, ....., Payment Char Value5	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the characteristic type is specified.
MICR ID	Used to specify the MICR code.	No
Payor ID	Used to specify the payor account ID. <b>Note:</b> If the payor account ID is not specified, the payor account ID is set to the payee account ID assuming that the payor and payee are the same.	No

**Note:**

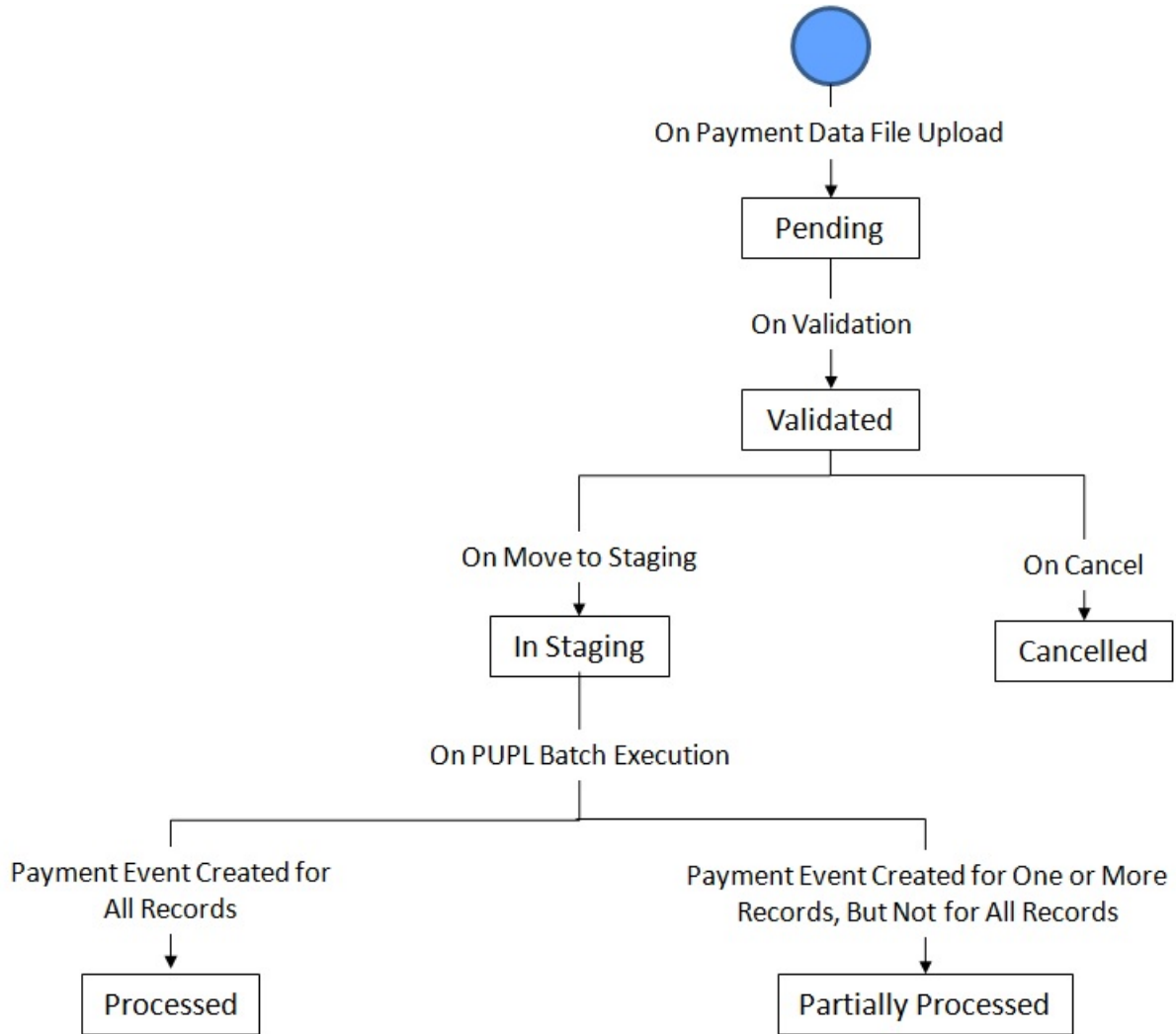
If a payment data file contains column names other than those mentioned in the above table, the system will not upload the payment data file.

If a payment data file contains more than 1000 payment records, the system will not allow you to upload the payment data file in the system. Therefore, ensure that a payment data file contains less than 1000 payment records.

## Payment Data File Status Transition

---

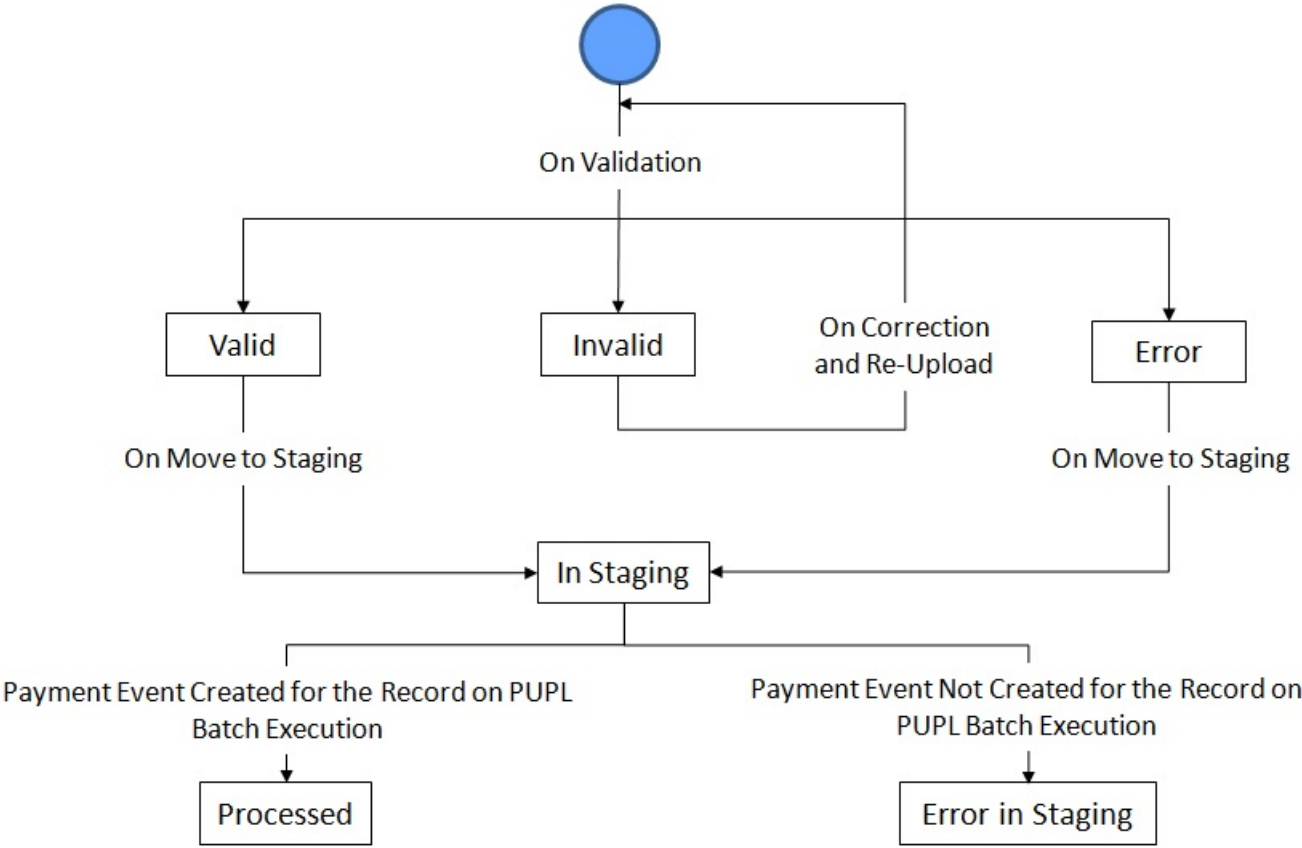
The following figure graphically indicates how a payment data file moves from one status to another during the payment upload process:



## Payment Record Status Transition

---

The following figure graphically indicates how a payment record moves from one status to another during the payment upload process:



The following table lists the scenarios when a payment record is set to **Invalid** or **Error** status:

Scenario	Payment Record Status
The system could not find the payee account ID for a given account identifier type and account identifier combination when the payee account ID is not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The payee account ID specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.	Invalid
The payee account ID, account identifier type, or account identifier are not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The match type is not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The match type specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.	Error
The match value is not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The currency code does not exist in the system.	Invalid
The tender amount is either zero or not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The payment amount is either zero or not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The bank account is not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The payment type (i.e. tender type) does not exist in the system.	Invalid



Scenario	Payment Record Status
The payment type is not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The tender ID is not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The date received is not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The payor account ID specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.	Invalid
The characteristic type specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.	Invalid
If a characteristic type is specified, but the characteristic value is not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
If a characteristic value is specified, but the characteristic type is not specified in the payment record.	Invalid
The characteristic value does not match any predefined value when the characteristic value type is set to <b>Predefined Value</b> .	Invalid

**Note:** The system does the match type and match value related validations only when the **Is Match Type Validation Required (Y/N)** parameter is set to **Y** in the validation algorithm.

## Error Messages

The following table lists the errors that may occur during the payment upload process. It also indicates how you can resolve these errors.

Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
80110	File cannot be reuploaded as some records have already been processed.	11111	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to replace an existing file whose payment records are already moved to the staging area and/or for which payment events are already created.</li> </ul>
1463	This file already exists in the system. Please check.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to upload a file which is already uploaded in the system without selecting the <b>Replace Existing File</b> check box.</li> </ul>
1465	Please upload a file in the CSV format.	17000	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to upload a file which is not in the CSV format.</li> </ul>
80113	Duplicate Header for column %1 in file.	11111	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The file has two or more columns with the same header.</li> </ul>

Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues																																				
80111	Length of value %1 too long for Field %2. Maximum length: %3 Found %4.	11111	<div>The possible issues could be:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The length of value specified in the column exceeds the maximum field length. The following table lists the maximum length of each field:</li></ul></div> <table><tr><th>Column Name</th><th>Maximum Length</th></tr><tr><td>Account ID</td><td>10</td></tr><tr><td>Match Type</td><td>8</td></tr><tr><td>Match Value</td><td>30</td></tr><tr><td>Tender ID</td><td>12</td></tr><tr><td>Tender Amount</td><td>15</td></tr><tr><td>Payment Amount</td><td>15</td></tr><tr><td>Date Received</td><td>10</td></tr><tr><td>Bank Account</td><td>30</td></tr><tr><td>Payment Type</td><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>Check Number</td><td>10</td></tr><tr><td>Currency</td><td>3</td></tr><tr><td>Account ID Type</td><td>8</td></tr><tr><td>Account Identifier</td><td>30</td></tr><tr><td>Payment Char Type1, Payment Char Type2, ....., Payment Char Type5</td><td>8</td></tr><tr><td>Payment Char Value1, Payment Char Value2, ....., Payment Char Value5</td><td>254</td></tr><tr><td>MICR ID</td><td>30</td></tr><tr><td>Payor ID</td><td>10</td></tr></table>	Column Name	Maximum Length	Account ID	10	Match Type	8	Match Value	30	Tender ID	12	Tender Amount	15	Payment Amount	15	Date Received	10	Bank Account	30	Payment Type	4	Check Number	10	Currency	3	Account ID Type	8	Account Identifier	30	Payment Char Type1, Payment Char Type2, ....., Payment Char Type5	8	Payment Char Value1, Payment Char Value2, ....., Payment Char Value5	254	MICR ID	30	Payor ID	10
Column Name	Maximum Length																																						
Account ID	10																																						
Match Type	8																																						
Match Value	30																																						
Tender ID	12																																						
Tender Amount	15																																						
Payment Amount	15																																						
Date Received	10																																						
Bank Account	30																																						
Payment Type	4																																						
Check Number	10																																						
Currency	3																																						
Account ID Type	8																																						
Account Identifier	30																																						
Payment Char Type1, Payment Char Type2, ....., Payment Char Type5	8																																						
Payment Char Value1, Payment Char Value2, ....., Payment Char Value5	254																																						
MICR ID	30																																						
Payor ID	10																																						

Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
80085	Invalid value for column: %1.	11111	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The payee account ID specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.</li> <li>• The match type specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.</li> <li>• The currency code does not exist in the system.</li> <li>• The account identifier type specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.</li> <li>• The tender amount is either zero or not specified in the payment record.</li> <li>• The payment amount is either zero or not specified in the payment record.</li> <li>• The bank account is not specified in the payment record.</li> <li>• The payment type (i.e. tender type) does not exist in the system.</li> <li>• The tender ID is not specified in the payment record.</li> <li>• The date received is not specified in the payment record.</li> <li>• The characteristic type specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.</li> <li>• The payor account ID specified in the payment record does not exist in the system.</li> </ul>
80100	Invalid Account Identifier and Account Identifier Type code combination.	11111	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The system could not find the payee account ID for a given account identifier type and account identifier combination when the payee account ID is not specified in the payment record.</li> </ul>

Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
80086	%1 has more decimal positions than currency code %2 supports (%3).	11111	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The precision specified for the tender amount exceeds the decimal places defined for the currency in the system.</li> <li>The precision specified for the payment amount exceeds the decimal places defined for the currency in the system.</li> </ul>
13601	Tender Source does not exist for External Source ID (%1)	11	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The tender source does not exist for the external source ID in the system.</li> </ul>
13603	Deposit control (%1/%2) Deposit Amount is not equal to sum of Tender Amounts	11	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The sum of tender control staging amount does not match the deposit control staging amount.</li> </ul>
13604	Deposit Control (%1/%2) Tender count does not equal the number of Tender controls	11	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The number of tender control staging records does not match the total tender controls specified in the deposit control staging record.</li> </ul>
13605	Tender control (%1/%2/%3) Total Tender Amount not equal to sum of Tender Amounts	11	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The sum of payment tender staging amount does not match the total tender amount specified in tender control staging record.</li> </ul>
13606	Tender control (%1/%2/%3) tender count does not equal the number of Tenders	11	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The number of payment tender staging records does not match the total number of tenders specified in the tender control staging record.</li> </ul>
13607	Suspense Contract does not exist for External Source ID (%1)	11	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The suspense contract is not defined for the tender source.</li> </ul>
13608	Many Tender Sources found for External Source ID (%1)	11	<p>The possible issues could be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There are multiple tender sources in the system with the same external source ID.</li> </ul>

Message Number	Error Message	Message Category	Possible Issues
13701	Pay Tender (%1/%2/%3/%4) Amount not equal to sum of Pay Amounts	11	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The sum of payment staging amount does not match the total amount specified in payment tender staging record.</li> </ul>
13705	Payment (%1/%2/%3/%4) Person ID (%5) exists on multiple accounts.	11	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There are multiple payment records having contracts with the same old account ID but their payee account ID is different.</li> </ul>
80194	File has no records to upload	11111	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are trying to upload a file without any payment records.</li> </ul>
80195	Incorrect header: %1	11111	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One or more column names in the payment data file are incorrect.</li> </ul>
80196	Maximum file name size allowed is 60 characters	11111	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The file name contains more than 60 characters.</li> </ul>
80199	Missing value for column %1	11111	The possible issues could be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The match type is not specified in the payment record.</li> <li>The match value is not specified in the payment record.</li> <li>The payment type is not specified in the payment record.</li> </ul>

## Payment Upload

The **Payment Upload** screen allows you to search for a payment data file using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can:

- Upload a payment data file
- Cancel a payment data file
- View the records uploaded through a payment data file
- View the log of a payment data file
- Move the payment records to the staging area
- Edit a payment staging record
- Replace an existing payment data file
- View the reasons why the payment record is in the **Error** or **Invalid** status

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Payment Data File](#) on page 842
- [Payment Data Records](#) on page 844
- [Payment Data File Log](#) on page 845

## Search Payment Data File

The **Search Payment Data File** zone allows you to search for a payment data file which is uploaded and/or processed in the system. This zone contains the following two sections:



- **Search Criteria** — the **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Name	Used to search a particular payment data file.	No
User ID	Used to search payment data files which are uploaded by a particular user.	No
Upload From Date	Used to search payment data files which are uploaded from a particular date onwards.  <b>Note:</b> By default, the date is set to the current date minus 7 days. You can change the date, if required.	No
To	Used to search payment data files which are uploaded till a particular date.  <b>Note:</b> By default, the date is set to the current date. You can change the date, if required.	No
File Type	Used to search payment data files which are uploaded using a particular file type.	No
File Status	Used to search payment data files with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• In Staging</li> <li>• Partially Processed</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Validated</li> </ul>	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a payment data file.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
File Name	Displays the name of the payment data file.
File Type	Indicates the type of the payment data file.
Upload Date	Displays the date and time when the payment data file was uploaded in the system.

Column Name	Column Description
Status	<p>Indicates the status of the payment data file. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cancelled</li> <li>In Staging</li> <li>Partially Processed</li> <li>Pending</li> <li>Processed</li> <li>Validated</li> </ul>
Total	Displays the total number of records that are uploaded through the payment data file.
Valid	Displays the number of records which are successfully validated in the system.
Invalid	Displays the number of records which could not pass through the validation process in the system.
Error	Displays the number of records where the data is incorrect.
In Staging	Displays the number of records which are copied from the pre-staging to staging area.
Processed	Displays the number of records for which payment events are created.
Staging Error	Displays the number of records for which payment events could not be created.
Cancel	<p>On clicking the <b>Cancel</b> (  ) icon, you can cancel the payment data file.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Cancel</b> icon appears only when the status of the payment data file is <b>Validated</b>. In other words, you cannot cancel a payment data file when its records are moved to the staging area or when the payment events are created for the payment data file.</p>
Move to Staging	<p>On clicking the <b>Move to Staging</b> (  ) icon, you can move the valid and error records of the payment data file to the staging area.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Move to Staging</b> icon appears only when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The status of the payment data file is <b>Validated</b>.</li> <li>There are no invalid records in the payment data file.</li> <li>The <b>Disable Move to Staging</b> check box is not selected in the respective file type.</li> </ul>

You can upload a payment data file by clicking the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of this zone. On clicking the **Broadcast** (  ) icon corresponding to the payment data file, the **Payment Data Records** and **Payment Data File Log** zones appear.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Upload</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Upload</a> on page 841

For more information on...	See...
How to upload a payment data file	<a href="#">Uploading a Payment Data File</a> on page 846
How to search for a payment data file	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Data File</a> on page 846
How to cancel a payment data file	<a href="#">Cancelling a Payment Data File</a> on page 849
How to replace an existing payment data file	<a href="#">Replacing an Existing File</a> on page 848
How to move the payment records to the staging area	<a href="#">Moving the Payment Records to the Staging Area</a> on page 849
How to edit a payment staging record	<a href="#">Editing a Payment Staging Record</a> on page 850
How to view the records of a payment data file	<a href="#">Viewing the Records of a Payment Data File</a> on page 851
How to view the log of a payment data file	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Payment Data File</a> on page 851

## Payment Data Records

The **Payment Data Records** zone lists the records of the payment data file. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payor Account ID	Indicates the account which made the payment.
Payee Account ID	Indicates the account for which the payment was made.
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the payment must be matched.
Match Value	Indicates the entity (such as bill, contract, and so on) against which the payment must be matched.
Pay Tender ID	Displays the payment tender ID.
Tender Amount	Displays the tender amount.
Payment Amount	Displays the amount paid through the tender.
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.
Date Received	Displays the date when the payment was made.
Bank Account	Displays the bank account from which the payment was made.
Tender Type	Indicates the type of tender through which the payment was made.
Check Number	Displays the check number if the payment was made through check.
MICR ID	Displays the MICR code.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment record. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Valid</li> <li>Invalid</li> <li>Error</li> <li>In Staging</li> <li>Processed</li> <li>Error in Staging</li> </ul>



Column Name	Column Description
Payment Event Information	Displays information about the payment event which is created for the payment record.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment Event</b> screen appears with the details of the respective payment event. The data appears in this column only when the status of the payment record is <b>Processed</b> .
Payment Staging Record	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (✎) icon, the <b>Payment Upload Staging</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the payment staging record.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> icon appears only when the status of the payment record is <b>In Staging</b> .
Error Message	On clicking the <b>View</b> (🔍) icon, the <b>Error Messages</b> window appears where you can view the reasons why the status of the payment record is <b>Invalid</b> or <b>Error</b> .
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>View</b> icon appears only when the status of the payment record is <b>Error</b> or <b>Invalid</b> .

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Payment Data Records** zone. By default, 20 records are displayed in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

By default, the **Payment Data Records** zone does not appear in the **Payment Upload** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** (📡) icon corresponding to the payment data file in the **Search Payment Data File** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the records of a payment data file	<a href="#">Viewing the Records of a Payment Data File</a> on page 851
How to view the reasons why the status of the payment record is <b>Invalid</b> or <b>Error</b>	<a href="#">Viewing the Error Messages</a> on page 852

## Payment Data File Log

The **Payment Data File Log** zone lists the complete trail of actions performed on the payment data file. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the payment data file.
Log Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the payment data file.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the payment data file.

By default, the **Payment Data File Log** zone does not appear in the **Payment Upload** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** (📡) icon corresponding to the payment data file in the **Search Payment Data File** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of a payment data file	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Payment Data File</a> on page 851

**Searching for a Payment Data File**

**Prerequisites**

To search for a payment data file, you should have:

- File types defined in the application (where the feed type is set to Payment Upload Data)

**Procedure**

To search for a payment data file:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Payment Upload**.  
The **Payment Upload** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Payment Data File** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.  
A list of payment data files that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Upload</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Upload</a> on page 841
<b>Search Payment Data File</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Payment Data File</a> on page 842

**Uploading a Payment Data File**

**Prerequisites**

To upload a payment data file, you should have:

- File types defined in the application (where the feed type is set to Payment Upload Data)
- Payment data in the required CSV file format

**Procedure**

To upload a payment data file:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Payment Upload**.  
The **Payment Upload** screen appears.

- Click the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of the **Search Payment Data File** zone.

The **Upload Payment Data File** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
File Type	Used to indicate the type of payment data file.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those file types where the feed type is set to <b>Payment Upload Data</b> .	
File Name	Used to specify the name and path of the payment data file that you want to upload.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can also click the <b>Browse</b> button corresponding to this field to browse to the location where the payment data file is available in the system.	
Replace Existing File	Used to indicate whether you want to replace any existing file in the system. You must select this check box when you want to upload the same file once again.	No

- Select the type of payment data file from the **File Type** list.
- Click the **Browse** button corresponding to the **File Name** field.

The **Choose File to Upload** dialog box appears.

- Browse to the location where the payment data file that you want to upload is available.
- Click **Open**.

The payment data file name and path appears in the **File Name** field.

- Click **Upload**.

A message appears indicating that the payment data file is uploaded successfully. If an error occurs while parsing, the payment data file is not uploaded in the system.

**Note:** If a payment data file contains more than 1000 payment records, the system will not allow you to upload the payment data file in the system. Therefore, ensure that a payment data file contains less than 1000 payment records.

- Click **OK** in the message box.

On uploading the payment data file, the payment records are copied to the pre-staging area and the status of the payment data file is set to **Pending**. The validation process starts immediately after the payment data file is uploaded in the system. If a payment record is successfully validated, the status of the payment record is set to **Valid**. If a payment record contains incorrect or missing data, the status of the payment record is set to either **Invalid** or **Error** depending on the scenario. For more information about the scenarios when a payment record is set to the **Invalid** or **Error** status, see [Payment Record Status Transition](#) on page 835.

Once the validation process is completed, the status of the payment data file is changed to **Validated**. If a payment data file contains an invalid record, you need to correct or add missing data in the CSV file and then upload the file once again. Unless, a payment data file has no invalid records, you cannot move any record of the payment data file to the staging area.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Upload</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Upload</a> on page 841

For more information on...	See...
<b>Search Payment Data File</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Payment Data File</a> on page 842

## Replacing an Existing File

### Prerequisites

To replace an existing payment data file, you should have:

- File types defined in the application (where the feed type is set to Payment Upload Data)
- Payment data in the required CSV file format

### Procedure

To replace an existing payment data file:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Payment Upload**.  
The **Payment Upload** screen appears.
3. Click the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of the **Search Payment Data File** zone.  
The **Upload Payment Data File** screen appears.
4. Select the type of payment data file from the **File Type** list.
5. Click the **Browse** button corresponding to the **File Name** field.  
The **Choose File to Upload** dialog box appears.
6. Browse to the location where the payment data file that you want to upload is available.
7. Click **Open**.  
The payment data file name and path appears in the **File Name** field.
8. Select the **Replace Existing File** check box.

**Note:** You can replace an existing file only when the payment data file is in the **Validated** status. In other words, you cannot replace a file whose payment records are already moved to the staging area and/or for which payment events are already created.

9. Click **Upload**.

A message appears indicating that the payment data file is uploaded successfully. If an error occurs while parsing, the payment data file is not uploaded in the system.

10. Click **OK** in the message box.

Once the payment data file is successfully uploaded, the status of the payment data file is set to **Pending**. The validation process starts immediately after the payment data file is uploaded in the system. If a payment record is successfully validated, the status of the payment record is changed to **Valid**. If a payment record contains incorrect or missing data, the status of the payment record is changed to either **Invalid** or **Error** depending on the scenario. For more information about the scenarios when a payment record is set to the **Invalid** or **Error** status, see [Payment Record Status Transition](#) on page 835. You can view the details of the uploaded payment data file and its records in the **Payment Upload** screen.

Once the validation process is completed, the payment records are copied to the pre-staging area and the status of the payment data file is changed to **Validated**. If a payment data file contains an invalid record, you need to

correct or add missing data in the CSV file and then upload the file once again. Unless, a payment data file has no invalid records, you cannot move any record of the payment data file to the staging area.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Upload</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Upload</a> on page 841
<b>Search Payment Data File</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Payment Data File</a> on page 842

## Cancelling a Payment Data File

There might be situations when incorrect payment data file is uploaded in the system. In such case, the system provides you with an ability to cancel the file. However, note that you can cancel a payment data file only when it is in the **Validated** status. In other words, you cannot cancel a payment data file when its records are moved to the staging area or when the payment events are created for the payment data file.

### Procedure

To cancel a payment data file:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Cancel** (  ) icon in the **Cancel** column corresponding to the payment data file that you want to cancel.

A message appears confirming whether you want to cancel the payment data file.

**Note:** The **Cancel** icon appears only when the status of the payment data file is **Validated**.

3. Click **OK**.

The status of the payment data file is changed to **Cancelled**.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Data File</a> on page 846

## Moving the Payment Records to the Staging Area

### Procedure

To move the payment records to the staging area:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Move to Staging** (  ) icon in the **Move to Staging** column corresponding to the payment data file whose records you want to move to the staging area.

A message appears confirming whether you want to move all payment records to the payment upload staging area.

**Note:**

The **Move to Staging** icon appears only when:

- The status of the payment data file is **Validated**.
- There are no invalid records in the payment data file.
- The **Disable Move to Staging** check box is not selected in the respective file type.

The system allows you to move only valid and error records of a payment data file to the staging area. If a payment data file contains an invalid record, you cannot move any record of the payment data file to the staging area.

3. Click **OK** in the message box.

A message appears indicating that the payment records are successfully copied from the pre-staging to staging area.

4. Click **OK** in the message box.

The status of the payment data file is changed to **In Staging**. In addition, the status of the payment records in the pre-staging area is changed to **In Staging** and the status of the deposit control, tender control, and payment tender staging records is set to **Pending**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Data File</a> on page 846

Editing a Payment Staging Record


You can edit a payment record only when it is moved from the pre-staging to staging area. On editing a payment record in the staging area, the system does not reflect the changes in the pre-staging area. It only reflects the changes in the staging area.

**Procedure**

To edit a payment staging record:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment data file whose staging records you want to edit.

The **Payment Data Records** and **Payment Data File Log** zones appear.

3. In the **Payment Data Records** zone, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Payment Staging Record** column corresponding to the payment record whose details you want to edit in the staging area.

The **Payment Upload Staging** screen appears. It contains the following tabs:

- **Tender Details** — Enables you to view and edit the tender control staging details.
- **Payment Advice** — Enables you to view and edit the payment staging details.
- **Payment Characteristics** — Enables you to view and edit the payment characteristic staging details.

**Note:** The **Edit** icon appears only when the status of the payment record is **In Staging**.

4. Modify the required details.
5. Click the **Save** link in the **Application** toolbar.

The changes made to the payment staging record are saved.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Data File</a> on page 846

## Viewing the Records of a Payment Data File

#### Procedure

To view the records of a payment data file:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment data file whose records you want to view.

The **Payment Data Records** and **Payment Data File Log** zones appear.

3. View the details of the payment records, which are uploaded through the payment data file, in the **Payment Data Records** zone.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Data File</a> on page 846
<b>Payment Data Records</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Data Records</a> on page 844

## Viewing the Log of a Payment Data File

#### Procedure

To view the log of a payment data file:

1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment data file whose log you want to view.

The **Payment Data Records** and **Payment Data File Log** zones appear.

3. View the actions performed on the payment data file in the **Payment Data File Log** zone.

#### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Data File</a> on page 846
<b>Payment Data File Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Data File Log</a> on page 845

Viewing the Error Messages

The system allows you to view the reasons why the payment record in a payment data file is in the **Error** or **Invalid** status.

Procedure

To view the error messages:

- 1. Search for the payment data file in the **Payment Upload** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment data file whose payment records are in the **Error** or **Invalid** status.

The **Payment Data Records** and **Payment Data File Log** zones appear.

- 3. In the **Payment Data Records** zone, click the **View**  icon in the **Error Message** column corresponding to the payment record which is in the **Error** or **Invalid** status.

The **Error Messages** window appears. It lists the reasons why the payment record is in the **Error** or **Invalid** status. If the payment record is in the **Invalid** status, you need to correct or add missing data in the CSV file and then upload the file once again. Unless, a payment data file has no invalid records, you cannot move any record of the payment data file to the staging area.

**Note:** The **View** icon appears only when the status of the payment record is **Error** or **Invalid**.

- 4. View the reasons in the **Error Messages** window.
- 5. Click **OK**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment data file	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Data File</a> on page 846
<b>Payment Data Records</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Data Records</a> on page 844



---

# Chapter

# 10

---

## Freeze Payments on Notification

---

### Topics:

- [Freeze Payments on Notification Process](#)
- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Automatic Payment or Refund Clearing Staging Record Status Transition](#)
- [EDI 824 File Format](#)
- [Sample EDI 824 File Format](#)
- [Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason](#)
- [Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing facilitates you to create automatic payments and refunds when the automatic payment option is enabled for an account. A clearing record is created for each automatic payment and refund in the system. You can then send the automatic payment and refund clearing records to the auto clearing house for verification. The system provides the mechanism to extract the automatic payment clearing records in a flat file. You can then send the flat file to the auto clearing house for verification. However, the implementation team will have to write the custom logic to extract the automatic refund clearing records in a file which you can then send to the auto clearing house for verification.

Once the auto clearing house reviews the automatic payment clearing records, the system allows you to upload review comments received in the EDI 824 file format. On uploading an EDI 824 file, an automatic payment clearing staging record is created for each valid automatic payment clearing ID. The data received from the auto clearing house is stored in the following staging tables:

- `CI_APAY_STAGE_UP`
- `CI_APAY_STAGE_UP_REM`
- `CI_APAY_STGUP_CHAR`

The implementation team will have to write the custom logic to upload review comments for automatic refund clearing records in the above mentioned staging tables. The review comments for automatic payment clearing records can be received in the form of reason (i.e. upload reason) and error codes (i.e. payment cancelation reason or NOC reason) which will help you to determine whether the automatic payment must be frozen or cancelled in the system. Similarly, the review comments for automatic refund clearing records can be received in the form of reason (i.e. upload reason) and error codes (i.e. void status reason) which will help you to determine whether the refund request must be voided and refund adjustments must be cancelled in the system.

Once the review comments are received from the auto clearing house, you can do the following:

- Freeze or cancel the automatic payments
- Void the refund requests and cancel the refund adjustments

For more detailed information about the freeze payments on notification process, see [Freeze Payments on Notification Process](#) on page 855.

The system allows you to define upload reasons, payment cancelation reasons, NOC reasons, and void status reasons. The system also allows you to edit and delete the automatic payment and refund clearing staging records through the user interface. However, you can edit an automatic payment or refund clearing staging record only when it is in the **Pending** or **Error** status, and you can

delete an automatic payment or refund clearing staging record only when it is in the **Pending** status. During the freeze payments on notification process, the automatic payment and refund clearing staging records go through various statuses in its lifecycle. For more information about the statuses, see [Automatic Payment or Refund Clearing Staging Record Status Transition](#) on page 859.

For more information on how to setup the freeze payments on notification process, see [Prerequisites](#) on page 858.

## Freeze Payments on Notification Process

---

The Freeze Payments on Notification process includes the following sub-processes:

1. [Creating Automatic Payments and Refunds](#) on page 855
2. [Generating a Flat File](#) on page 855
3. [Uploading Response from Auto Clearing House \(ACH\)](#) on page 855
4. [Freezing or Canceling Automatic Payments](#) on page 856
5. [Voiding Refund Requests and Canceling Refund Adjustments](#) on page 857
6. [Generating To Do Entries](#) on page 857
7. [Creating Tender Controls](#) on page 857

Note that during the freeze payments on notification process, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

1. Create Automatic Payments and Refunds (APAYCRET)
2. Activate Automatic Payments (ACTVTAPY)
3. Extract Automatic Payments (APAYACH)
4. Upload Response from Auto Clearing House (C1-APACK)
5. Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)
6. Cancel Automatic Refunds (AREFRA)
7. To Do Creation for Automatic Payment Exception Records (APAYUPTD)
8. Create Tender Controls for Automatic Payments (BALAPY)

For more information about these batches, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

### Creating Automatic Payments and Refunds

If you have configured the automatic payment option for an account, the system calculates the automatic payment amount and extract date during the bill completion and stamps these details against the bill in the **CI\_BILL\_ACH** table. The **Create Automatic Payments and Refunds (APAYCRET)** batch allows you to create automatic payment and refund request depending on whether the automatic payment amount is in debit or credit. It also creates a clearing record for each automatic payment and refund in the **CI\_APAY\_CLR\_STG** and **CI\_ADJ\_CLR\_STG** tables, respectively. For more information about the batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

### Generating a Flat File

Unless you activate a clearing record, you cannot extract the clearing record in a flat file. The **Activate Automatic Payments (ACTVTAPY)** batch allows you to activate a clearing record. It stamps the **APAYACH** batch control and incremental batch run number on the clearing record.

Once the clearing records are activated, you can extract the clearing records in a flat file. The **Extract Automatic Payments (APAYACH)** batch allows you to extract the clearing records with the latest batch run number in a flat file. The flat file is then sent to the auto clearing house for review. For more information about these batches, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

**Note:** At present, you cannot activate and extract the automatic refund clearing records using the **Activate Automatic Payments (ACTVTAPY)** and **Extract Automatic Payments (APAYACH)** batches, respectively. The implementation team will have to write the custom logic to activate and extract automatic refund clearing records in a flat file.

### Uploading Response from Auto Clearing House (ACH)

Once the auto clearing house reviews the automatic payment clearing records, the review comments can be shared in the EDI 824 file format. An EDI 824 file may contain the review comments for one or more automatic payment clearing records. You can upload these EDI 824 files and store the review comments in the staging area using the **Upload Response from Auto Clearing House (C1-APACK)** batch.

On uploading an EDI 824 file, the system checks whether the automatic payment clearing ID specified in each record exists in the system. If so, it creates an automatic payment clearing staging record for the automatic payment clearing

ID in the **CI\_APAY\_STAGE\_UP** table. If the acknowledgement code in the record is set to **TE** or **TR**, the system considers that the auto clearing house has rejected the automatic payment clearing record. The reason code (i.e. upload reason) specified in the **Reject Upload Reason** parameter of the **C1-APAY** algorithm is stored corresponding to the automatic payment clearing staging record in the **CI\_APAY\_STAGE\_UP\_REM** table. In addition, the error code (i.e. payment cancelation reason) is stored corresponding to the automatic payment clearing staging record in the **CI\_APAY\_STAGE\_UP\_REM** table.

However, if the acknowledgement code is blank or if the acknowledgement code is set to a value other than **TE** or **TR**, the system considers that the auto clearing house has accepted the automatic payment clearing record. The reason code (i.e. upload reason) specified in the **Success Upload Reason** parameter of the **C1-APAY** algorithm is stored corresponding to the automatic payment clearing staging record in the **CI\_APAY\_STAGE\_UP\_REM** table. In addition, the error code (i.e. NOC reason) is stored corresponding to the automatic payment clearing staging record in the **CI\_APAY\_STAGE\_UP\_REM** table. In this case, the record may contain more than one error code.

The status of the automatic payment clearing staging record is set to **Pending**. If the error code (i.e. payment cancelation reason or NOC reason) is invalid, the status of the automatic payment clearing staging record is set to **Error**. An exception is logged in the **CI\_APAY\_STGUP\_EXC** table. In addition, if the status of the NOC reason is **Inactive** in the system, the status of the automatic payment clearing staging record is set to **Error** and an exception is logged in the **CI\_APAY\_STGUP\_EXC** table.

The system sets the automatic payment distribution and freeze date (i.e. **APAY\_DIST\_FRZ\_DT**) for each automatic payment clearing record (for which automatic payment clearing staging record is added in the system) to the payment date (which is stored on the payment event). For more information about the batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

**Note:** An additional table named **CI\_APAY\_STGUP\_CHAR** is available which the implementation team can use to store additional information about the automatic payment clearing staging record in the form of characteristics.

To ensure that the EDI 824 files are uploaded successfully, you need to set the following parameters in an algorithm which is created using the **C1-APAY** algorithm type:

- **Line Separator** - Used to indicate the character specified in the EDI 824 files to represent the end of line.
- **Field Separator** - Used to indicate the character specified in the EDI 824 files to represent the end of data record.
- **Reject Upload Reason** - Used to indicate the upload reason which you want to use when the auto clearing house has rejected the automatic payment clearing record.
- **Success Upload Reason** - Used to indicate the upload reason which you want to use when the auto clearing house has accepted the automatic payment clearing record with or without Notice to Change (NOC).

**Note:** You must specify an upload reason which is already defined in the system.

For more information about the EDI 824 file format, see [EDI 824 File Format](#) on page 859.

## Freezing or Canceling Automatic Payments

Once the review comments are received in the form of reason and error codes for an automatic payment clearing record, you need to freeze or cancel the automatic payment based on the reason code. You can freeze or cancel automatic payments through the **Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)** batch.

On executing the **Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)** batch, the system checks whether the reason code (i.e. upload reason) and error code (i.e. payment cancelation reason or NOC reason) specified in the automatic payment clearing staging record exist in the system. This batch considers only those automatic payment clearing staging records which are in the **Pending** status and for which payment freeze date is specified in the automatic payment clearing record. If the reason code and error code exist in the system, the system executes the algorithms attached to the reason code in the specified sequence. If the type of reason code is **Cancel**, the attached algorithm cancels the automatic payment and payment event. If the type of reason code is **Success**, the attached algorithm freezes the automatic payment on the payment freeze date. However, if the type of reason code is **Success** and the error code is specified along with the reason code, the attached algorithm freezes the automatic payment on the payment freeze date, stores error codes (i.e.

NOC reasons) as payment tender characteristics and then creates a To Do entry to notify user about these NOC reasons. Finally, the status of the automatic payment clearing staging record is changed to **Complete**.

If the reason code and/or error code (i.e. upload reason, payment cancelation reason, or NOC reason) specified in the automatic payment clearing staging record does not exist in the system, the status of the automatic payment clearing staging record is changed to **Error**. In addition, if the status of the NOC reason is **Inactive** in the system, the status of the automatic payment clearing staging record is changed to **Error**. For more information about the batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

## Voiding Refund Requests and Canceling Refund Adjustments

Once the auto clearing house reviews the automatic refund clearing records and shares the review comments, the implementation team will have to store the review comments in the following staging tables:

- **CI\_APAY\_STAGE\_UP** – Used to store the automatic payment or refund clearing staging record for an automatic payment or refund clearing record, respectively. The status of the automatic payment or refund clearing staging record must be set to **Pending**.
- **CI\_APAY\_STAGE\_UP\_REM** – Used to store the reason and error codes of each automatic payment or refund clearing staging record.
- **CI\_APAY\_STGUP\_CHAR** – Used to store additional information about the automatic payment or refund clearing staging record in the form of characteristics.

The review comments must be received in the form of reason (i.e. upload reason) and error codes (i.e. void status reason) for an automatic refund clearing record. On executing the **Cancel Automatic Refunds (AREFRA)** batch, it checks whether the reason and error codes specified in the automatic refund clearing staging record exist in the system. If the reason and error codes exist in the system, the system executes the algorithms attached to the reason code in the specified sequence. If the type of reason code is **Cancel**, the attached algorithm changes the status of the refund request to **Voided** and the corresponding refund adjustments are canceled. If the type of reason code is **Success**, no changes are made to the refund request and refund adjustments. Finally, the status of the automatic refund clearing staging record is changed to **Complete**.

If the reason code and/or error code (i.e. upload reason, void status reason) specified in the automatic refund clearing staging record does not exist in the system, the status of the automatic refund clearing staging record is changed to **Error**.

## Generating To Do Entries

If an exception occurs while executing the **Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)** batch, you can notify the user about such exception. The **To Do Creation for Automatic Payment Exception Records (APAYUPTD)** batch allows you to create a To Do using the APAYUPTD To Do type when an exception is logged for an automatic payment clearing staging record in the **CI\_APAY\_STGUP\_EXC** table. The system creates one To Do entry for all exceptions that have occurred for an automatic payment clearing staging record. For more information about these batches, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

**Note:** At present, a To Do is not created when an exception is logged for an automatic refund clearing staging record in the **CI\_APAY\_STGUP\_EXC** table while executing the **Cancel Automatic Refunds (AREFRA)** batch.

## Creating Tender Controls

Once you freeze the automatic payments, you need to create tender and deposit controls. The **Create Tender Controls for Automatic Payments (BALAPY)** batch allows you to create tender and deposit controls for each automatic payment which is frozen, but not yet linked to any tender control. One tender control is created for the **APAYACH** batch control and batch run number combination. The payment tenders of these automatic payments are then linked to the tender control.

This batch also balances the open tender control records and changes the status of the tender and deposit controls, accordingly. For more information about the batch, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

## Prerequisites

---

To setup the freeze payments on notification process, you need to do the following:

- Define the automatic payment instructions for the account for which you want to enable the automatic payment option.

**Note:** You can either define non-rule based effective dated automatic payment instructions in the **Auto Pay** tab of the **Account** screen or define rule based effective dated automatic payment instructions through the **Auto Pay Rule** screen.

- Set the **Autopay Creation Option** field to **Freeze Payment on Notification** in the **Billing** tab of the **Installation Options** screen.
- Create an automatic payment creation algorithm using the **APAY-CREATE** algorithm type and attach it to the **Automatic Payment Creation** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options - Framework** screen.
- Create an automatic refund creation algorithm using the **C1-AREF-CRET** algorithm type and attach it to the **Automatic Adjustment Creation** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options - Framework** screen.
- Create a date calculation algorithm using the **APAY-DTCALC** algorithm type and attach it to the **Autopay Date Calculation Alg** spot of the auto pay route type which is specified on the account's automatic payment instruction.
- Define the required upload reasons in the system.
- Define the required payment cancelation reasons in the system.
- Define values for the **APAY\_UPL\_NOC\_LOOKUP** lookup field.

**Note:** The **APAY\_UPL\_NOC\_LOOKUP** lookup field is used to define NOC reasons. The NOC reason specified in the automatic payment clearing staging record must exist in this lookup field and its status must be **Active**. Otherwise, the status of the automatic payment clearing staging record is changed to **Error**.

- Define voided status reasons for the **C1-RefundReq** business object.
- Create an automatic payment success algorithm using the **C1-APAY-SUCC** algorithm type and attach it to the reason code where the reason type is set to **Success**.

**Note:** You must attach the automatic payment success algorithm to an upload reason which you want to use while freezing automatic payments.

- Create an automatic payment cancel algorithm using the **C1-APAY-CAN** algorithm type and attach it to the reason code where the reason type is set to **Cancel**.

**Note:** You must attach the automatic payment cancel algorithm to an upload reason which you want to use while canceling automatic payments.

- Create a void automatic refund algorithm using the **C1-AREF-VOID** algorithm type and attach it to the reason code where the reason type is set to **Cancel**.

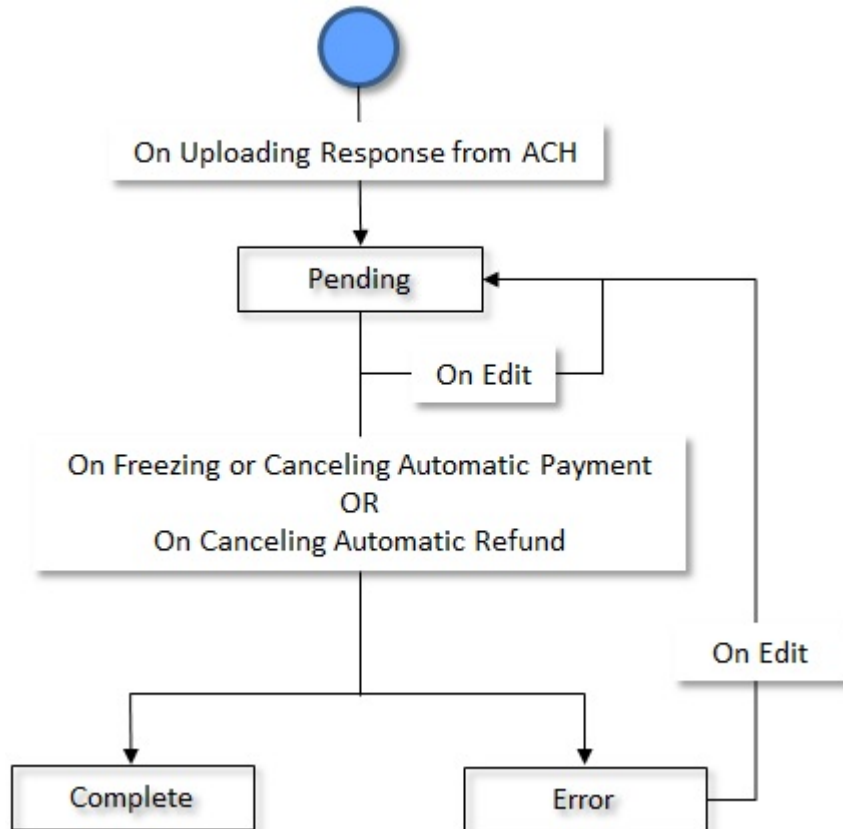
**Note:** You must attach the void automatic refund algorithm to an upload reason which you want to use while voiding automatic refunds.

- Create a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to **Payment Tender**. And, then specify this characteristic type as the value for the **Tender Characteristic Type** parameter in an algorithm which is created using the **C1-APAY-SUCC** algorithm type.

- Assign the **C1-ACH** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do entries generated when automatic payments are frozen with a Notice to Change (NOC).
- Assign the **APAYUPTD** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do entries generated when exceptions have occurred while executing the **Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)** batch.
- Define values for the following parameters in an algorithm which is created using the **C1-APAY** algorithm type:
  - Line Separator
  - Field Separator
  - Reject Upload Reason
  - Success Upload Reason

## Automatic Payment or Refund Clearing Staging Record Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how an automatic payment or refund clearing staging record moves from one status to another during the freeze payments on notification process:



## EDI 824 File Format

Before uploading the EDI 824 file, you need to ensure that the file contains the following tags and attributes:



Tag	Attribute	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
OTI	Reference Number	Used to specify the automatic payment clearing ID. It indicates the automatic payment clearing record for which the review comments are received from the auto clearing house.	Yes
OTI	Acknowledgement Code	Used to indicate whether the automatic payment clearing record is accepted or rejected by the auto clearing house. If you want to reject the automatic payment clearing record, you must specify <b>TE</b> or <b>TR</b> as the acknowledgement code. However, if you want to approve the automatic payment clearing record, you can either specify any value other than <b>TE</b> or <b>TR</b> or leave this attribute blank.	No
TED	Error Code	Used to indicate either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The payment cancellation reason when the automatic payment clearing record is rejected by the auto clearing house.</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> You must specify a payment cancellation reason which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This attribute is required when the automatic payment clearing record is rejected by the auto clearing house.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Notice to Change (NOC) reason when the automatic payment clearing record is accepted by the auto clearing house with a Notice to Change (NOC).</li> </ul>	
		<b>Note:</b> You must specify a NOC reason which is already defined in the <b>APAY_UPL_NOC_LOOKUP</b> lookup field.	
TED	Error Description	Used to specify the reason why the automatic payment clearing record is either rejected or accepted with a Notice to Change (NOC).	No

## Sample EDI 824 File Format

```

OTI*TR*TN*411302586842\
TED*WA01*WRONG ACCOUNT\
OTI*TF*TN*411302525641\
OTI*TO*TN*806152348038\
TED*BR01*Bill Reopened\
OTI*TO*TN*806152307159\
OTI*TE*TN*806152307229\
TED*WA01*WRONG ACCOUNT\

```

Here, TR, TF, TO, and TE are acknowledgement codes. TR and TE indicate that the automatic payment clearing records are rejected. And, TF and TO indicate that the automatic payment clearing records are accepted with or without a Notice to Change (NOC).



Here, 411302586842, 411302525641, 806152348038, 806152307159, and 806152307229 are automatic payment clearing records, and WA01 and BR01 are error codes. WA01 is a payment cancellation reason and BR01 is a NOC reason. The string “WRONG ACCOUNT” and “Bill Reopened” are error descriptions.

For more information about the EDI 824 file format, see [EDI 824 File Format](#) on page 859.

## Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason

Once the auto clearing house reviews the automatic payment and refund clearing records, an appropriate upload reason must be received for each clearing record. The upload reason indicates the following:

- Whether the automatic payment must be frozen or cancelled in the system
- Whether the automatic refund must be canceled in the system (i.e. the refund request must be voided and refund adjustments must be canceled)

The **Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason** screen allows you to define, edit, and delete an upload reason. It contains the following zone:

- [Upload Reasons](#) on page 861

## Upload Reasons

The **Upload Reasons** zone lists upload reasons that are already defined in the system. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Upload Reason	Displays the upload reason.
Reason Type	Indicates the type of upload reason. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancel</li> <li>• Success</li> </ul>
Eligible for Processing	Indicates whether the algorithms attached to the upload reason must be triggered while executing the <b>Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)</b> or <b>Cancel Automatic Refunds (AREFRA)</b> batch. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>
Description	Displays the description of the upload reason.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (✎) icon, the <b>Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the upload reason.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (🗑) icon, you can delete the upload reason.

You can define an upload reason by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an upload reason	<a href="#">Defining an Upload Reason</a> on page 862
How to edit an upload reason	<a href="#">Editing an Upload Reason</a> on page 864
How to delete an upload reason	<a href="#">Deleting an Upload Reason</a> on page 866

## Defining an Upload Reason

### Prerequisites

To define an upload reason, you should have:

- Automatic payment success algorithm defined using the **C1-APAY-SUCC** algorithm type
- Automatic payment cancel algorithm defined using the **C1-APAY-CAN** algorithm type
- Void automatic refund algorithm defined using the **C1-AREF-VOID** algorithm type

### Procedure

To define an upload reason:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason**.

The **Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason** screen appears.


3. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Upload Reasons** zone.

The **Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Reason	Used to specify the upload reason.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the upload reason.	Yes
Reason Type	Used to indicate the type of upload reason. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Cancel</b> — This type of upload reason indicates that you must cancel the automatic payment or refund in the system. In this case, the error code indicates the reason why the automatic payment is cancelled or the refund request is voided.</li> <li>• <b>Success</b> — This type of upload reason indicates that you must freeze the automatic payment on the payment freeze date. If the error code is specified, it indicates that you must freeze the automatic payment, and at the same time notify user that the automatic payment is accepted with a Notice to Change (NOC). The NOC reason is stored as payment tender characteristic in the system. You can specify more than one error code (i.e. NOC reasons) with this type of upload reason. On freezing an automatic payment, the user is notified about these NOC reasons through a To Do entry. The system creates one To Do entry using the <b>C1-ACH</b> To Do type for all NOC reasons specified in the automatic payment clearing staging record.</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Eligible for Processing	Used to indicate whether the algorithms attached to the upload reason must be triggered while executing the <b>Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)</b> or <b>Cancel Automatic Refunds (AREFRA)</b> batch.	No

In addition, this screen contains a grid where you can attach algorithms to the upload reason. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the order in which the algorithm must be triggered.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are attaching an algorithm to the upload reason.
Algorithm	Used to attach an algorithm to the upload reason. If the type of the upload reason is set to <b>Success</b> , you must attach the automatic payment success algorithm. However, if the type of the upload reason is set to <b>Cancel</b> , you must attach either automatic payment cancel or void automatic refund algorithm depending on whether the upload reason will be used for automatic payment or automatic refund cancelation.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Code Search</b> window appears. On specifying the algorithm code, the description of the algorithm appears corresponding to the <b>Algorithm</b> field.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are attaching an algorithm to the upload reason.

- Enter the required details in the **Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason** screen.

**Note:** If you want to attach more than one algorithm to the upload reason, click the **Add**  icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove an algorithm from the upload reason, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the algorithm.

- Click **Save**.

The upload reason is defined.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason</b> screen	<a href="#">Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason</a> on page 861
<b>Upload Reasons</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Reasons</a> on page 861

Editing an Upload Reason


Prerequisites

To edit an upload reason, you should have:

- Automatic payment success algorithm defined using the **C1-APAY-SUCC** algorithm type
- Automatic payment cancel algorithm defined using the **C1-APAY-CAN** algorithm type
- Void automatic refund algorithm defined using the **C1-AREF-VOID** algorithm type

Procedure

To edit an upload reason:


1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason**.  
The **Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason** screen appears.
3. In the **Upload Reasons** zone, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the upload reason whose details you want to edit.

The **Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason** screen appears. It contains the following fields:



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Reason	Displays the upload reason.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the upload reason.	Yes
Reason Type	Used to indicate the type of upload reason. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Cancel</b> — This type of upload reason indicates that you must cancel the automatic payment or refund in the system. In this case, the error code indicates the reason why the automatic payment is cancelled or the refund request is voided.</li> <li>• <b>Success</b> — This type of upload reason indicates that you must freeze the automatic payment on the payment freeze date. If the error code is specified, it indicates that you must freeze the automatic payment, and at the same time notify user that the automatic payment is accepted with a Notice to Change (NOC). The NOC reason is stored as payment tender characteristic in the system. You can specify more than one error code (i.e. NOC reasons) with this type of upload reason. On freezing an automatic payment, the user is notified about these NOC reasons through a To Do entry. The system creates one To Do entry using the <b>C1-ACH</b> To Do type for all NOC reasons specified in the automatic payment clearing staging record.</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Eligible for Processing	Used to indicate whether the algorithms attached to the upload reason must be triggered while executing the <b>Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)</b> or <b>Cancel Automatic Refunds (AREFRA)</b> batch.	No

In addition, this screen contains a grid where you can attach algorithms to the upload reason. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the order in which the algorithm must be triggered.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are attaching an algorithm to the upload reason.
Algorithm	Used to attach an algorithm to the upload reason. If the type of the upload reason is set to <b>Success</b> , you must attach the automatic payment success algorithm. However, if the type of the upload reason is set to <b>Cancel</b> , you must attach either automatic payment cancel or void automatic refund algorithm depending on whether the upload reason will be used for automatic payment or automatic refund cancelation.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Code Search</b> window appears. On specifying the algorithm code, the description of the algorithm appears corresponding to the <b>Algorithm</b> field.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are attaching an algorithm to the upload reason.

4. Modify the required details in the **Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason** screen.

**Note:** If you want to attach more than one algorithm to the upload reason, click the **Add**  icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove an algorithm from the upload reason, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the algorithm.

5. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the upload reason are saved.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason</b> screen	<a href="#">Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason</a> on page 861
<b>Upload Reasons</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Reasons</a> on page 861

## Deleting an Upload Reason

### Procedure

To delete an upload reason:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **A** and then click **Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason**.  
The **Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason** screen appears.
3. In the **Upload Reasons** zone, click the **Delete** (  ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the upload reason that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the upload reason.
4. Click **OK**.  
The upload reason is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason</b> screen	<a href="#">Automatic Payment and Refund Upload Reason</a> on page 861
<b>Upload Reasons</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Reasons</a> on page 861

## Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging

The **Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging** screen allows you to search for automatic payment or refund clearing records using various search criteria. In addition, you can:

- View the automatic payment or refund clearing staging records associated to a clearing record
- View the upload reason and payment cancelation reason or NOC reason specified in the automatic payment clearing staging record
- View the upload reason and void status reason specified in the automatic refund clearing staging record
- View the characteristics defined for the automatic payment or refund clearing staging record
- Edit an automatic payment or refund clearing staging record
- Delete an automatic payment or refund clearing staging record


This screen contains the following zones:

- [Search Clearing Record](#) on page 867
- [Associated Clearing Staging Records](#) on page 869
- [Clearing Staging Upload Reasons](#) on page 870
- [Clearing Staging Characteristics](#) on page 870

## Search Clearing Record

The **Search Clearing Record** zone allows you to search for automatic payment and refund clearing records using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — the **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for the automatic payment or refund clearing records. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic Payment</li> <li>• Automatic Refund</li> </ul>	Yes
Clearing ID	Used to search a particular clearing record.	No
Account ID	Used to search clearing records which are created for a particular account.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears.	No
Person Name	Used to search clearing records which are created for accounts of a particular person.	No
Extract From Date	Used to search clearing records that are extracted on or after a particular date.	No
Extract To Date	Used to search clearing records that are extracted on or before a particular date.	No
Bill ID	Used to search clearing records which are created against a bill.	No
Alternate Bill ID	Used to search clearing records which are created against a bill with the specified alternate bill ID.	No
Batch Control	Used to search clearing records where the <b>APAYACH</b> batch control is stamped. The valid value is <b>APAYACH</b> .	No
Batch Run Number	Used to search clearing records which are activated in a particular batch run.	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a clearing record.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Clearing ID	Displays the clearing ID.

Column Name	Column Description
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the clearing record is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Bill Information	Indicates the bill against which the clearing record is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Payment Amount	Displays the payment amount.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Automatic Payment</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Pay Tender ID	Displays the payment tender ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment Event</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective tender.  This column appears only when you select the <b>Automatic Payment</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Tender Status	Indicates the current status of the payment tender. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Valid</li> <li>Canceled</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Automatic Payment</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Extract Date	Displays the date when the clearing record is extracted in a flat file.
Payment Freeze Date	Displays the date when the automatic payment must be frozen in the system.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Automatic Payment</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
External Source ID	Indicates the tender source through which the payment was remitted.
Entity Type	Indicates the type of entity which is created for automatic refund. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refund Request</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Automatic Refund</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Entity ID	Displays the entity ID.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Automatic Refund</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.





Column Name	Column Description
Account Number	Indicates the bank account through which the automatic payment is made.
Batch Control	Indicates the batch control which is stamped on the clearing record.
Batch Run Number	Indicates the batch run in which the clearing record was activated.
Alternate Bill ID	Indicates the bill against which the clearing record is created.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a clearing record	<a href="#">Searching for a Clearing Record</a> on page 871

## Associated Clearing Staging Records

The **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone lists the automatic payment or refund clearing staging records which are added corresponding to the clearing record. You can edit and delete an automatic payment or refund clearing staging record through this zone. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Clearing Staging ID	Displays the clearing staging ID.
Clearing ID	Indicates the clearing record against which the clearing staging record is added.
Status	Indicates the status of the clearing staging record. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Complete</li> <li>• Error</li> </ul>
Edit	<p>On clicking the <b>Edit</b> () icon, the <b>Edit Clearing Staging Record</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the clearing staging record.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can edit a clearing staging record only when it is in the <b>Pending</b> or <b>Error</b> status.</p>
Delete	<p>On clicking the <b>Delete</b> () icon, you can delete the clearing staging record.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can delete a clearing staging record only when it is in the <b>Pending</b> status.</p>

By default, the **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone does not appear in the **Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the clearing record in the **Search Clearing Record** zone.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the clearing staging records associated to a clearing record	<a href="#">Viewing the Clearing Staging Records Associated to a Clearing Record</a> on page 871
How to edit a clearing staging record	<a href="#">Editing a Clearing Staging Record</a> on page 873
How to delete a clearing staging record	<a href="#">Deleting a Clearing Staging Record</a> on page 875

## Clearing Staging Upload Reasons

The **Clearing Staging Upload Reasons** zone lists the reason code (i.e. upload reason) and error code (i.e. payment cancellation reason, Notice to Change (NOC) reasons, or void status reason) specified in the automatic payment or refund clearing staging record. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence	Indicates the sequence in which the upload reason should be considered while freezing or canceling the automatic payment or while canceling the automatic refund.
Clearing Staging ID	Displays the clearing staging ID.
Clearing ID	Indicates the clearing record against which the clearing staging record is added.
Upload Reason	Indicates whether the auto clearing house has accepted or rejected the clearing record.
Cancel Reason	Indicates the reason why the auto clearing house has rejected the clearing record. If the clearing record is created for an automatic payment, the payment cancellation reason appears in this column. However, if the clearing record is created for an automatic refund, the void status reason appears in this column.
NOC Reason	Indicates the reason why the auto clearing house has accepted the clearing record with a Notice to Change (NOC).
NOC Reason Description	Displays the description of the NOC reason.

By default, the **Clearing Staging Upload Reasons** zone does not appear in the **Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the clearing staging record in the **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the upload reason specified in the clearing staging record	<a href="#">Viewing the Upload Reason Specified in the Clearing Staging Record</a> on page 872

## Clearing Staging Characteristics

The **Clearing Staging Characteristics** zone lists the characteristics defined for the automatic payment or refund clearing staging record. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Clearing Staging ID	Displays the clearing staging ID.
Clearing ID	Indicates the clearing record against which the clearing staging record is added.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the characteristic value.

By default, the **Clearing Staging Characteristics** zone does not appear in the **Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the clearing staging record in the **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the characteristics of the clearing staging record	<a href="#">Viewing the Characteristics of the Clearing Staging Record</a> on page 872

## Searching for a Clearing Record

### Procedure

To search for a clearing record:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging**.  
The **Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Clearing Record** zone depending on whether you want to search for automatic payment or refund clearing records.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of clearing records that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging</b> screen	<a href="#">Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging</a> on page 866
<b>Search Clearing Record</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Clearing Record</a> on page 867

## Viewing the Clearing Staging Records Associated to a Clearing Record

### Procedure

To view the clearing staging records associated to a clearing record:

1. Search for the clearing record in the **Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the clearing record whose associated clearing staging records you want to view.  
The **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone appears.
3. View the details of the clearing staging records in the **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone.

### Related Topics



For more information on...	See...
How to search for a clearing record	<a href="#">Searching for a Clearing Record</a> on page 871

For more information on...	See...
Associated Clearing Staging Records zone	<a href="#">Associated Clearing Staging Records</a> on page 869

## Viewing the Upload Reason Specified in the Clearing Staging Record

### Procedure

To view the upload reason specified in the clearing staging record:

1. Search for the clearing record in the **Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the clearing record whose associated clearing staging records you want to view.  
  
The **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone appears.
3. In the **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the clearing staging record whose details you want to view.  
  
The **Clearing Staging Upload Reasons** and **Clearing Staging Characteristics** zones appear.
4. View the reason and error codes specified in the clearing staging record in the **Clearing Staging Upload Reasons** zone.



### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a clearing record	<a href="#">Searching for a Clearing Record</a> on page 871
Associated Clearing Staging Records zone	<a href="#">Associated Clearing Staging Records</a> on page 869
Clearing Staging Upload Reasons zone	<a href="#">Clearing Staging Upload Reasons</a> on page 870

## Viewing the Characteristics of the Clearing Staging Record

### Procedure

To view the characteristics of the clearing staging record:

1. Search for the clearing record in the **Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the clearing record whose associated clearing staging records you want to view.  
  
The **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone appears.
3. In the **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the clearing staging record whose details you want to view.  
  
The **Clearing Staging Upload Reasons** and **Clearing Staging Characteristics** zones appear.
4. View the characteristics of the clearing staging record in the **Clearing Staging Characteristics** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a clearing record	<a href="#">Searching for a Clearing Record</a> on page 871
<b>Associated Clearing Staging Records</b> zone	<a href="#">Associated Clearing Staging Records</a> on page 869
<b>Clearing Staging Characteristics</b> zone	<a href="#">Clearing Staging Characteristics</a> on page 870

## Editing a Clearing Staging Record

### Prerequisites


To edit a clearing staging record, you should have:

- Upload reasons defined in the application
- NOC reasons defined in the **APAY\_UPL\_NOC\_LOOKUP** lookup field.
- Payment cancelation reasons defined in the application
- Reasons defined for the **Voided** status of the **C1-RefundReq** business object in the **Status Reason** screen


**Note:** You can edit a clearing staging record only when it is in the **Pending** or **Error** status. On editing a clearing staging record which is in the **Error** status, the status of the clearing staging record is changed to **Pending**. Also, the exceptions logged for the clearing staging record are deleted from the **CI\_APAY\_STGUP\_EXC** table.

### Procedure

To edit a clearing staging record:

1. Search for the clearing record in the **Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the clearing record whose associated clearing staging record you want to edit.

The **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone appears.

3. In the **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the clearing staging record whose details you want to edit.

The **Edit Clearing Staging Record** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Clearing Staging ID	Displays the clearing staging ID.	Not applicable
Clearing ID	Indicates the clearing record against which the clearing staging record is added.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates the status of the clearing staging record. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Complete</li> <li>• Error</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Upload Date	Used to specify the date when the clearing staging record was uploaded or added in the system.	Yes

In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:

- **Upload Reasons** — Used to add, edit, or remove the reason code (i.e. upload reason) and error (sub reason) codes from the clearing staging record. It contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Reason	Used to specify the upload reason. It indicates whether the auto clearing house has accepted or rejected the clearing record.	Yes
Reason Type	Used to indicate the type of upload reason. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancel</li> <li>• Success</li> </ul>	Yes
Sub Reason Code	Used to specify either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Payment cancellation reason or void status reason (for automatic refund) when the reason type is set to <b>Cancel</b></li> <li>• Notice to Change (NOC) reason when the reason type is set to <b>Success</b></li> </ul>	No
Sub Reason Description	Used to specify the description of the NOC reason.	No

**Note:** The upload reason, payment cancellation reason, void status reason, and NOC reasons must be already defined in the system. If you specify an invalid reason and sub reason codes, the status of the clearing staging record is changed to **Error** when you execute the **Freeze or Cancel Automatic Payments (APAYRA)** or **Cancel Automatic Refunds (AREFRA)** batch.

- **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the clearing staging record.
4. Modify the required details in the **Edit Clearing Staging Record** screen.

**Note:** If you want to add more than one reason or sub reason code, click the **Add** (+) icon in the **Upload Reasons** section and then specify the required details. However, if you want to remove a reason or sub reason code, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the reason.

5. Define characteristics for the clearing staging record, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the clearing staging record are saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a clearing record	<a href="#">Searching for a Clearing Record</a> on page 871
Associated Clearing Staging Records zone	<a href="#">Associated Clearing Staging Records</a> on page 869
How to define characteristics for a clearing staging record	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Clearing Staging Record</a> on page 874

## **Defining Characteristics for a Clearing Staging Record**

### **Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a clearing staging record, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Auto Payment Upload**)

### **Procedure**


To define characteristics for a clearing staging record:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are editing a clearing staging record.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the clearing staging record.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the clearing staging record.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Auto Payment Upload</b> .	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the clearing staging record.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the clearing staging record.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the clearing staging record, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the clearing staging record, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a clearing staging record	<a href="#">Editing a Clearing Staging Record</a> on page 873

## **Deleting a Clearing Staging Record**


### **Procedure**

To delete a clearing staging record:

1. Search for the clearing record in the **Automatic Payment and Refund Clearing Staging** screen.

- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the clearing record whose associated clearing staging record you want to delete.

The **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone appears.

- 3. In the **Associated Clearing Staging Records** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the clearing staging record that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the clearing staging record.

**Note:** You can delete a clearing staging record only when it is in the **Pending** status.

- 4. Click **OK**.

The clearing staging record is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a clearing record	<a href="#">Searching for a Clearing Record</a> on page 871
<b>Associated Clearing Staging Records</b> zone	<a href="#">Associated Clearing Staging Records</a> on page 869



---

# Chapter 11

---

## Trial Billing

---

### Topics:

- [Trial Bill \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Trial Bill \(Used for Viewing\)](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing facilitates you to generate trial bills before actual bill is generated for an account. This helps to review the trial bill and make the required corrections before the actual bill is generated. The Trial Billing feature is currently designed and developed for open item accounting and not for balance forward accounting.

The process of trial and actual billing is identical. The only difference is that you cannot freeze and complete the trial bills. Also, during trial billing, the account balance is not updated. It is updated only when the actual bill is generated. You can generate trial bill only in case of regular billing, and not in case of adhoc billing. The trial bills can be generated only through the batch process. To generate trial bills, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

1. **Pending Bill Generation (C1-PNDBL)** – This batch is used to generate pending trial or actual bills for accounts that meet the criteria.
2. **Bill Segment Generation (C1-BLGEN)** – This batch is used to generate bill segments for pending trial or actual bills.
3. **Bill Completion (C1-BLPPR)** – This batch is used to generate post-processing bill segments in the pending trial or actual bills during the bill completion process. The adjustments, if any, created on the accounts are swept onto the pending trial or actual bills. In addition, the bill routing information and bill messages are stamped on the pending trial or actual bills. If the adjustment currency is different from the account's invoice currency, the transfer adjustment is created on the pending actual bill. However, in case of pending trial bill, the currency conversion for adjustments is done, but the transfer adjustments are not created. Finally, the status of the actual bill is set to **Complete**, whereas the status of the trial bill remains as **Pending**.

**Note:** The adjustments which are in the **Freezable** status are not swept onto the trial bills. Only adjustments which are in the **Frozen** status are swept onto the trial bills.

The **Trial Bill** check box is added in the **Main** tab of the **Account** screen. If you leave the **Process All or Selected Accounts** parameter blank while executing the above batches, all accounts (that meet the criteria) irrespective of whether the **Trial Bill** check box is selected or not are considered for generating the trial bills. However, if the **Process All or Selected Accounts** parameter is set to **Y**, then only those accounts that meet the criteria and where the **Trial Bill** check box is selected are considered for generating the trial bills.

You can create an actual bill using a trial bill. While creating actual bills using trial bills, you need to specify the trial billing batch run number whose trial bills

you want to convert to the actual bills. To create actual bills using trial bills, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order:

1. **Pending Bill Generation (C1-PNDBL)** - This batch generates pending actual bill for accounts that meet the criteria.
2. **Bill Segment Generation (C1-BLGEN)** – This batch copies regular bill segments which are generated for the trial bill and stamps them onto the pending actual bill. It also copies the corresponding financial transactions (FTs).
3. **Bill Completion (C1-BLPPR)** – This batch copies post-processing bill segments which are generated for the trial bill and stamps them onto the pending actual bill. The bill routing information and bill messages are copied from the trial bill to the pending actual bill. The adjustment, if any, created on the account are swept onto the pending actual bill. They are not copied from the respective trial bill. If the adjustment currency is different from the account's invoice currency, the transfer adjustment is created on the pending actual bill. Finally, the status of the actual bill is set to **Complete**.

The actual bill ID, bill segment ID and FT ID are different from the trial bill ID, bill segment ID and FT ID, respectively. If an actual bill is created using a trial bill, the system will stamp the trial bill ID on the actual bill. This helps you to track the trial bill of an actual bill.

The system allows you to view a trial bill through a user interface. It also allows you to print the trial bill in the PDF format. You can print a trial bill only when Oracle Documaker is integrated with Oracle Revenue Management and Billing. For more information about the batches, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

## Trial Bill (Used for Searching)

The **Trial Bill** screen allows you to search for a trial bill using various search criteria. It contains the following zone:

- [Search Trial Bill](#) on page 879



Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Trial Bill \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 882

### Search Trial Bill

The **Search Trial Bill** zone allows you to search for trial bills using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The criteria are grouped as indicated by line separators between the criteria. Each group is independent from the other, and only one group is used at a time for searching. If you enter criteria in more than one group, the criteria from the first group is used for searching. For example, if you enter the criteria in the Account ID and Trial Bill Description fields (which are in different criteria groups), the system searches for trial bills using the account ID. The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a trial bill using the trial bill details. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Trial Bill Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Trial Bill Details</b> option is selected.	
Person ID	Used to search trial bills which are generated for a particular person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Person Search</b> window appears.	
Trial Bill ID	Used to search for a particular trial bill.	No
Account ID	Used to search trial bills which are generated for a particular account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears.	
Division	Used to search trial bills which are generated for accounts belonging to a particular division.	No
From Trial Bill Date	Used to search trial bills which are generated from a particular date onwards.	No
Invoice Currency	Used to search trial bills which are generated in a particular invoice currency.	No
To Trial Bill Date	Used to search trial bills which are generated till a particular date.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Batch Run Date	Used to search trial bills which are generated on a particular batch run date.	No
Trial Bill Description	Used to search trial bills which are generated in a particular batch run.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are searching for trial bills using the batch run date.

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a trial bill.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Trial Bill Information	Displays additional information about the trial bill. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Trial Bill</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective trial bill.
Current Charges	Displays the trial bill amount.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the trial bill is generated. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Person Name	Indicates the person for whom the trial bill is generated.
Division	Indicates the division to which the account belongs.
Batch Run Date	Displays the date when the batch is executed to generate the trial bill.
Batch Run Number	Indicates the batch run in which the trial bill is generated.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a trial bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Trial Bill</a> on page 880
How to view the details of a trial bill	<a href="#">Viewing the Trial Bill Details</a> on page 881

## Searching for a Trial Bill

### Prerequisites

To search for a trial bill, you should have:

- Divisions and currencies defined in the application

### Procedure

To search for a trial bill:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

- From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Trial Bill**.

The **Trial Bill** screen appears.

- Enter the search criteria in the **Search Trial Bill** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.

A list of trial bills that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Trial Bill</b> screen	<a href="#">Trial Bill (Used for Searching)</a> on page 879
<b>Search Trial Bill</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Trial Bill</a> on page 879

## Viewing the Trial Bill Details

#### Procedure

To view the details of a trial bill:

- Search for the trial bill in the **Trial Bill** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Trial Bill Information** column corresponding to the trial bill whose details you want to view.  
The **Trial Bill** screen appears.
- View the basic details of the trial bill in the **Trial Bill** zone.
- View the segments of the trial bill in the **Trial Bill Segments** zone.
- View the calc lines of a trial bill segment in the **Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines** zone.
- View the service quantity details of a trial bill segment in the **Trial Bill Segment SQ Details** zone.
- View the financial details of a trial bill segment in the **Trial Bill Segment Financial Details** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a trial bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Trial Bill</a> on page 880
<b>Trial Bill</b> screen	<a href="#">Trial Bill (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 882
<b>Trial Bill</b> zone	<a href="#">Trial Bill</a> on page 882
<b>Trial Bill Segments</b> zone	<a href="#">Trial Bill Segments</a> on page 883
<b>Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines</b> zone	<a href="#">Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines</a> on page 885
<b>Trial Bill Segment SQ Details</b> zone	<a href="#">Trial Bill Segment SQ Details</a> on page 886
<b>Trial Bill Segment Financial Details</b> zone	<a href="#">Trial Bill Segment Financial Details</a> on page 886

For more information on...	See...
How to view the segments of a trial bill	<a href="#">Viewing the Segments of a Trial Bill</a> on page 887
How to view the calc lines of a trial bill segment	<a href="#">Viewing the Calc Lines of a Trial Bill Segment</a> on page 888
How to view the service quantity details of a trial bill segment	<a href="#">Viewing the SQ Details of a Trial Bill Segment</a> on page 889
How to view the financial details of a trial bill segment	<a href="#">Viewing the Financial Details of a Trial Bill Segment</a> on page 890

**Trial Bill (Used for Viewing)**

The **Trial Bill** screen allows you to:

- View the details of a trial bill, such as the trial bill summary, trial bill messages, and trial bill characteristics
- View the segments of a trial bill
- View the calculation lines, service quantity details, and financial details of a trial bill segment

It contains the following zones:

- [Trial Bill](#) on page 882
- [Trial Bill Segments](#) on page 883
- [Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines](#) on page 885
- [Trial Bill Segment SQ Details](#) on page 886
- [Trial Bill Segment Financial Details](#) on page 886

**Trial Bill**

The **Trial Bill** zone displays the details of the trial bill. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** — This section provides basic information about the trial bill. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Trial Bill ID	Displays the trial bill ID.
Trial Bill Information	Displays additional information about the trial bill.
Trial Bill Description	Displays the description of the batch run in which the trial bill is generated.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the trial bill is generated. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<div> <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account. </div>

- **Trial Bill Summary** — This section summarizes the financial impact of the bill. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
New Charges	Displays the total amount of frozen bill segment financial transactions which are linked to the trial bill.
Adjustments	Displays the total amount of frozen and/or canceled adjustment financial transactions which are linked to the trial bill.
Corrections	Displays the total amount of canceled and/or rebilled bill segment financial transactions which are linked to the trial bill.
Total	Displays the sum of new charges, adjustments, and corrections.
No. of Bill Segments in Error	Indicates the number of bill segments in the trial bill which are in the <b>Error</b> status.

- **Trial Bill Messages** — This section lists the bill messages that are stamped on the trial bill. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Message Code	Displays the code that uniquely identifies the bill message.
Message on Bill	Displays the bill message.
Priority	Indicates the priority which determines the order in which the bill message must be printed on the trial bill.
Insert Code	Indicates whether the bill message must be sent separately along with the trial bill.

- **Characteristics** — This section lists characteristics defined for the trial bill. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

In addition, this zone contains a button named **Display Trial Bill** which allows you to print a trial bill in the PDF format.


### Related Topics



For more information on...	See...
How to print a trial bill in the PDF format	<a href="#">Printing a Trial Bill in the PDF Format</a> on page 887

## Trial Bill Segments

The **Trial Bill Segments** zone lists the segments of the trial bill. You can filter the trial bill segments using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Used to search trial bill segments which are generated for a particular usage account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears.	


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Contract Type	Used to search trial bill segments which are generated against a particular type of contract.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Contract Type Search</b> window appears.	
Trial Bill Segment Type	Used to search for a particular type of trial bill segments. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Post Processing</li> <li>• Regular</li> </ul>	No
Price Item	Used to search trial bill segments which are generated for a particular price item.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.	
Trial Bill Segment Status	Used to search trial bill segments in a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Error</li> <li>• Freezable</li> </ul>	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Trial Bill Segment ID	Displays the trial bill segment ID.
Status	Indicates the status of the trial bill segment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Error</li> <li>• Freezable</li> </ul>
Start Date	Displays the start date of the trial bill segment.
End Date	Displays the end date of the trial bill segment.
Calculated Amount (Pricing Currency)	Displays the trial bill segment amount in the pricing currency.
Price Item	Indicates the price item for which the trial bill segment is generated.
Pricing Parameters	Indicates the price item parameters which are used along with the price item for determining the price item pricing.
Rate Schedule	Indicates the rate schedule which is used for defining the price item pricing.
Price Assignment ID	Indicates the price item pricing which is used during calculation.



Column Name	Column Description
Billable Charge ID	Indicates the billable charge for which the trial bill segment is generated.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Billable Charge</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective billable charge.
Construct ID	Indicates the construct through which the trial bill segment is generated.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Construct</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective construct.

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the trial bill segment, the **Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines**, **Trial Bill Segment SQ Details**, and **Trial Bill Segment Financial Details** zones appear with the details of the respective trial bill segment.

#### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
How to view the segments of a trial bill	<a href="#">Viewing the Segments of a Trial Bill</a> on page 887

## Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines

The **Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines** zone lists the calculation lines which indicate how the system calculated the trial bill segment amount. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence No.	Indicates the sequence in which the calculation line is created while calculating the trial bill segment amount.
Description on Bill	Displays the summarized information about the calculation line that will be printed on the trial bill.
Calculated Amount (Pricing Currency)	Displays the calculated charge amount associated with the calculation line in the pricing currency.
Calculated Amount (Invoice Currency)	Displays the calculated charge amount associated with the calculation line in the invoice currency.
Print	Indicates whether information about the calculation line will be printed on the person's trial bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Appears in Summary	Indicates whether the calculation line amount will appear in the summary of the trial bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Exchange Rate	Indicates the exchange rate which is used when the invoice currency is different from the pricing currency.
Price Component ID	Indicates the price component which is used during calculation.

Column Name	Column Description
Service Quantity Identifier	Indicates the service quantity identifier (SQI) of the service quantity which is priced on the calculation line.
Billable Service Quantity	Displays the SQI value used by the rates engine for calculation.
Base Amount	Displays the total amount derived from the cross-referenced lines that the current line then used to calculate the charge amount.
Rate Component Sequence	Indicates the sequence of the rate component on the effective rate version which is used while calculating the line.
Exempt Amount	Displays the amount of the calculated charge that the person does not have to pay due to tax exemption.
Distribution Code	Indicates the distribution code associated with the rate component.

By default, the **Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines** zone does not appear in the **Trial Bill** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the trial bill segment in the **Trial Bill Segment** zone.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the calc lines of a trial bill segment	<a href="#">Viewing the Calc Lines of a Trial Bill Segment</a> on page 888

## Trial Bill Segment SQ Details

The **Trial Bill Segment SQ Details** zone lists the service quantity identifiers associated with the contract against which the trial bill segment is created. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
SQI	Indicates the service quantity identifier.
Billable Service Quantity	Displays the SQI value used by the rates engine for calculation.

By default, the **Trial Bill Segment SQ Details** zone does not appear in the **Trial Bill** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the trial bill segment in the **Trial Bill Segment** zone.

#### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
How to view the service quantity details of a trial bill segment	<a href="#">Viewing the SQ Details of a Trial Bill Segment</a> on page 889

## Trial Bill Segment Financial Details

The **Trial Bill Segment Financial Details** zone lists the distribution codes which indicate the GL accounts that will be affected by the trial bill segment financial transaction. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence No.	Indicates the sequence in which the distribution code will be considered for deriving the GL account.
Distribution Code	Indicates the distribution code associated with the rate component used for calculating the trial bill segment amount.

Column Name	Column Description
Amount	Displays the amount that will be debited or credited to the GL account.

By default, the **Trial Bill Segment Financial Details** zone does not appear in the **Trial Bill** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the trial bill segment in the **Trial Bill Segment** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the financial details of a trial bill segment	<a href="#">Viewing the Financial Details of a Trial Bill Segment</a> on page 890

## Printing a Trial Bill in the PDF Format

### Prerequisites

To print a trial bill in the PDF format, you should have:

- Oracle Documaker integrated with Oracle Revenue Management and Billing

### Procedure

To print a trial bill in the PDF format:

1. Search for the trial bill in the **Trial Bill** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Trial Bill Information** column corresponding to the trial bill that you want to print in the PDF format.

The **Trial Bill** screen appears.

3. Click the **Display Trial Bill** button in the **Trial Bill** zone.

The trial bill is printed in the PDF format.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a trial bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Trial Bill</a> on page 880
<b>Trial Bill</b> screen	<a href="#">Trial Bill (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 882
<b>Trial Bill</b> zone	<a href="#">Trial Bill</a> on page 882

## Viewing the Segments of a Trial Bill

### Procedure

To view the segments of a trial bill:

1. Search for the trial bill in the **Trial Bill** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Trial Bill Information** column corresponding to the trial bill whose details you want to view.

The **Trial Bill** screen appears.

3. View the segments of the trial bill in the **Trial Bill Segments** zone.
4. If required, you can filter the trial bill segments using various search criteria.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a trial bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Trial Bill</a> on page 880
<b>Trial Bill</b> screen	<a href="#">Trial Bill (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 882
<b>Trial Bill Segments</b> zone	<a href="#">Trial Bill Segments</a> on page 883
How to filter the trial bill segments	<a href="#">Filtering the Trial Bill Segments</a> on page 888

Filtering the Trial Bill Segments

Prerequisites

To filter the trial bill segments, you should have:

- Usage accounts, contract types, and price items defined in the application

Procedure

To filter the trial bill segments:

- Search for the trial bill in the **Trial Bill** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Trial Bill Information** column corresponding to the trial bill whose details you want to view.

The **Trial Bill** screen appears.

- Enter the search criteria in the **Trial Bill Segments** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.

The search results are filtered based on the specified criteria.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a trial bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Trial Bill</a> on page 880
<b>Trial Bill</b> screen	<a href="#">Trial Bill (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 882
<b>Trial Bill Segments</b> zone	<a href="#">Trial Bill Segments</a> on page 883

Viewing the Calc Lines of a Trial Bill Segment

Procedure

To view the calc lines of a trial bill segment:

- Search for the trial bill in the **Trial Bill** screen.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Trial Bill Information** column corresponding to the trial bill whose details you want to view.

The **Trial Bill** screen appears.

3. If required, you can filter the trial bill segments in the **Trial Bill Segments** zone.

4. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the trial bill segment whose details you want to view.

The **Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines**, **Trial Bill Segment SQ Details**, and **Trial Bill Segment Financial Details** zones appear.

5. View the calc lines of the trial bill segment in the **Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines** zone.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a trial bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Trial Bill</a> on page 880
<b>Trial Bill</b> screen	<a href="#">Trial Bill (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 882
How to filter the trial bill segments	<a href="#">Filtering the Trial Bill Segments</a> on page 888
<b>Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines</b> zone	<a href="#">Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines</a> on page 885

## **Viewing the SQ Details of a Trial Bill Segment**

#### **Procedure**

To view the service quantity details of a trial bill segment:

1. Search for the trial bill in the **Trial Bill** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Trial Bill Information** column corresponding to the trial bill whose details you want to view.

The **Trial Bill** screen appears.

3. If required, you can filter the trial bill segments in the **Trial Bill Segments** zone.

4. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the trial bill segment whose details you want to view.

The **Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines**, **Trial Bill Segment SQ Details**, and **Trial Bill Segment Financial Details** zones appear.

5. View the service quantity details of the trial bill segment in the **Trial Bill Segment SQ Details** zone.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a trial bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Trial Bill</a> on page 880
<b>Trial Bill</b> screen	<a href="#">Trial Bill (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 882
How to filter the trial bill segments	<a href="#">Filtering the Trial Bill Segments</a> on page 888
<b>Trial Bill Segment SQ Details</b> zone	<a href="#">Trial Bill Segment SQ Details</a> on page 886

## Viewing the Financial Details of a Trial Bill Segment

### Procedure

To view the financial details of a trial bill segment:

1. Search for the trial bill in the **Trial Bill** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Trial Bill Information** column corresponding to the trial bill whose details you want to view.

The **Trial Bill** screen appears.

3. If required, you can filter the trial bill segments in the **Trial Bill Segments** zone.
4. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the trial bill segment whose details you want to view.

The **Trial Bill Segment Calc Lines**, **Trial Bill Segment SQ Details**, and **Trial Bill Segment Financial Details** zones appear.

5. View the financial details of the trial bill segment in the **Trial Bill Segment Financial Details** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a trial bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Trial Bill</a> on page 880
<b>Trial Bill</b> screen	<a href="#">Trial Bill (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 882
How to filter the trial bill segments	<a href="#">Filtering the Trial Bill Segments</a> on page 888
<b>Trial Bill Segment Financial Details</b> zone	<a href="#">Trial Bill Segment Financial Details</a> on page 886

---

# Chapter 12

---

## GL Account Validation

---

### Topics:

- [Static GL Account Validation](#)
- [Dynamic GL Account Validation](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to validate the GL account statically and dynamically. The static GL account validation means you can validate the GL account while creating or editing a distribution code. And, the dynamic GL account validation means you can validate the GL account while assigning it to trial and actual financial transactions through the batch process.

For more information about static GL account validation and dynamic GL account validation, refer to [Static GL Account Validation](#) on page 892 and [Dynamic GL Account Validation](#) on page 892, respectively.

## Static GL Account Validation

---

If you want to validate the GL account while creating or editing a distribution code, you need to select the **Validate GL Account** check box in the **Distribution Code** screen. If the GL account is valid, the following string appears below the check box while saving the distribution code:

“GL Account is validated on YYYY-MM-DD”

And, if the GL account is invalid, the following string appears below the check box while saving the distribution code:

“GL Account is invalid”

If you want to enable the static GL account validation feature on the **Distribution Code** screen, you need to define an algorithm of the **C1-GLVAL** or **C1-GLVAL-COB** algorithm type and attach the algorithm to the **GL Account Validation** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options – Framework** screen. Both these algorithm types have one parameter named **GL Account Length**. You need to set the value of this parameter while creating the algorithm using the **C1-GLVAL** or **C1-GLVAL-COB** algorithm type. If you attach an algorithm of the **C1-GLVAL** algorithm type, the system checks whether the length of GL account is greater than or equal to the value defined in the **GL Account Length** parameter. If the length is greater than or equal to the specified length, the GL account is considered as valid. And, if the length is less than the specified length, the GL account is considered as invalid.

And, if you attach an algorithm of the **C1-GLVAL-COB** algorithm type, the system checks whether the length of GL account is equal to the value defined in the **GL Account Length** parameter. If the length is equal to the specified length, the GL account is considered as valid. And, if the length is less than or greater than the specified length, the GL account is considered as invalid.

## Dynamic GL Account Validation

---

If you want to validate GL account while assigning it to trial and actual financial transactions, you need to set the **Validate GL Account** parameter to **Y** while executing the batch. If the GL account is valid, the date when the GL account is validated is added in the GLA\_VAL\_DT column of the CI\_TRL\_FT\_GL or CI\_FT\_GL table, respectively, depending on whether the GL account is assigned to a trial or actual financial transaction.

If you want to enable the dynamic GL account validation feature in the C1-GLASN or GLASSGN2 batch, you need to define an algorithm of the **C1-GLVAL** or **C1-GLVAL-COB** algorithm type and attach the algorithm to either of the following:

- The **GL Account Validation** algorithm entity in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Division** screen
- The **GL Account Validation** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options – Framework** screen

If the GL account validation algorithm is defined at both these algorithm spots, the algorithm defined at the division level always takes precedence over the algorithm defined in the installation options during dynamic GL account validation.



---

# Chapter

# 13

---

## Upload Validated Adjustment Data

---

### Topics:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [CSV File Format](#)
- [Adjustment Upload Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Adjustment Upload Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-ADJUPLD](#)
- [Adjustment Upload Request](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing until now provided you with an ability to upload adjustment data received from an external source system and create adjustments using the **C1-ADUP1** and **C1-ADUP2** batches. However, there was no user interface available through which you can upload an adjustment data file and create adjustments from the adjustment records. Now, the system provides a user interface which helps you to upload an adjustment data file.

You can upload an adjustment data file in the CSV format. You need to ensure that the CSV file is in the required format; otherwise the file will not be uploaded in the system. At present, the system supports only the CSV file format. For more information about the CSV file format, see [CSV File Format](#) on page 895.

While uploading an adjustment data file, you need to specify the upload request type using which you want to upload the adjustment data file. It is the upload request type which helps the system to determine:

- Whether adjustments must be created in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background)
- Whether the size of the adjustment data file exceeds the maximum file size defined in the upload request type
- Whether the adjustment data file must be approved by the approver before creating adjustments

All records are validated before uploading an adjustment data file. During the validation process, the system and custom validations (if any) are executed. If there is any invalid record, the system does not allow you to upload the adjustment data file. The system indicates the reason why the adjustment record could not pass through the validation process. You need to first correct the adjustment record in the CSV file and then upload the adjustment data file.

An upload request of the specified upload request type is created when an adjustment data file is successfully uploaded in the system. You can track an adjustment data file through an upload request. During the adjustment upload process, an adjustment upload request goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. For more information about the adjustment upload request statuses, see [Adjustment Upload Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 896 and [Adjustment Upload Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 897.

Note that the lifecycle of an adjustment upload request is driven by the business object using which the adjustment upload request is created. An adjustment upload request business object named **C1-ADJUPLD** is shipped with the product. The adjustment upload feature explained in this section is documented based on the lifecycle and logic defined in the **C1-ADJUPLD** business object.

If required, the implementation team can create a custom adjustment upload request business object.

Once the adjustment upload request is created, you can perform various tasks, such as:

- Track the status of an adjustment upload request
- View the details of an adjustment upload request
- View all records of an adjustment data file
- Cancel an adjustment data file
- Create adjustments for an adjustment data file
- Submit the adjustment data file for approval
- Approve or reject an adjustment data file based on the observations

## Prerequisites

To setup the adjustment upload process, you need to do the following:

- Define the required upload request types in the system
- Create a defer algorithm using the **C1-UPLDEFEVL** algorithm type
- Create an algorithm using the **C1-MTCIALG** algorithm type if you want to create adjustments using the Contract match type
- Create an algorithm using the **C1-MTCTALG** algorithm type if you want to create adjustments using the Contract Type match type
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Upload Request Type
- Define cancellation and rejection reasons for the **C1-ADJUPLD** business object
- Assign the **C1-ADJUP** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do entries generated while submitting an upload request (i.e. an adjustment data file) for approval
- Set the batch control type of the **Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)** batch to **Timed** and define the following attributes:
  - Time Interval
  - Timer Active
  - User ID
  - Batch Language
  - Email Address

## CSV File Format

Before uploading an adjustment data file, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following columns:

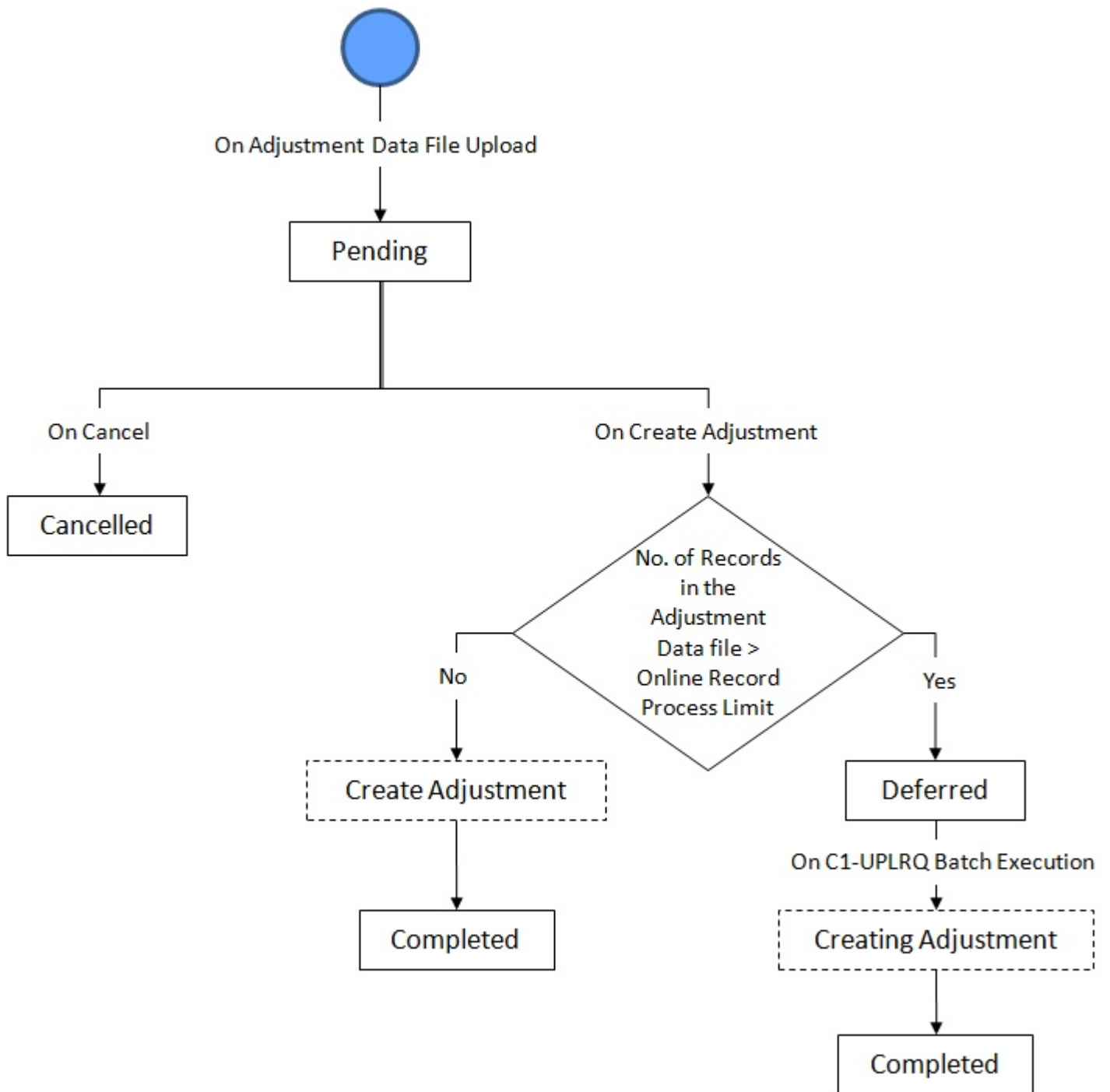
Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the match type is Contract Type and account ID is not specified.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the account identifier.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the match type is Contract Type and account ID is not specified.
Account ID	Used to indicate the account for which the adjustment must be created.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the match type is Contract Type and the account identifier type and account identifier are not specified.

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Match Type	Used to indicate the match type using which the adjustment must be created.	Yes
Match Value	Used to indicate the entity (such as contract, contract type, and so on) against which the adjustment must be created.	Yes
Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the adjustment must be created.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The adjustment type must be included in the adjustment type profile which is attached to the contract type.	
Adjustment Amount	Used to specify the adjustment amount.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The adjustment amount precision must match the precision (decimal positions) defined for the currency.	
Currency Code	Used to indicate the currency in which the adjustment must be created.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information about the adjustment.	No
Bill ID	Used to indicate the bill on which the adjustment must be created.	No
Arrears Date	Used to specify the date from when the amount is outstanding on the bill.	No
Char Type 1, Char Type 2, ....., Char Type 5	Used to indicate the characteristic that must be defined for the adjustment.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required if the characteristic value is specified.
Char Value 1, Char Value 2, ....., Char Value 5	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required if the characteristic type is specified.

**Note:** If an adjustment data file contains column names other than those mentioned in the above table, the system will not upload the adjustment data file.

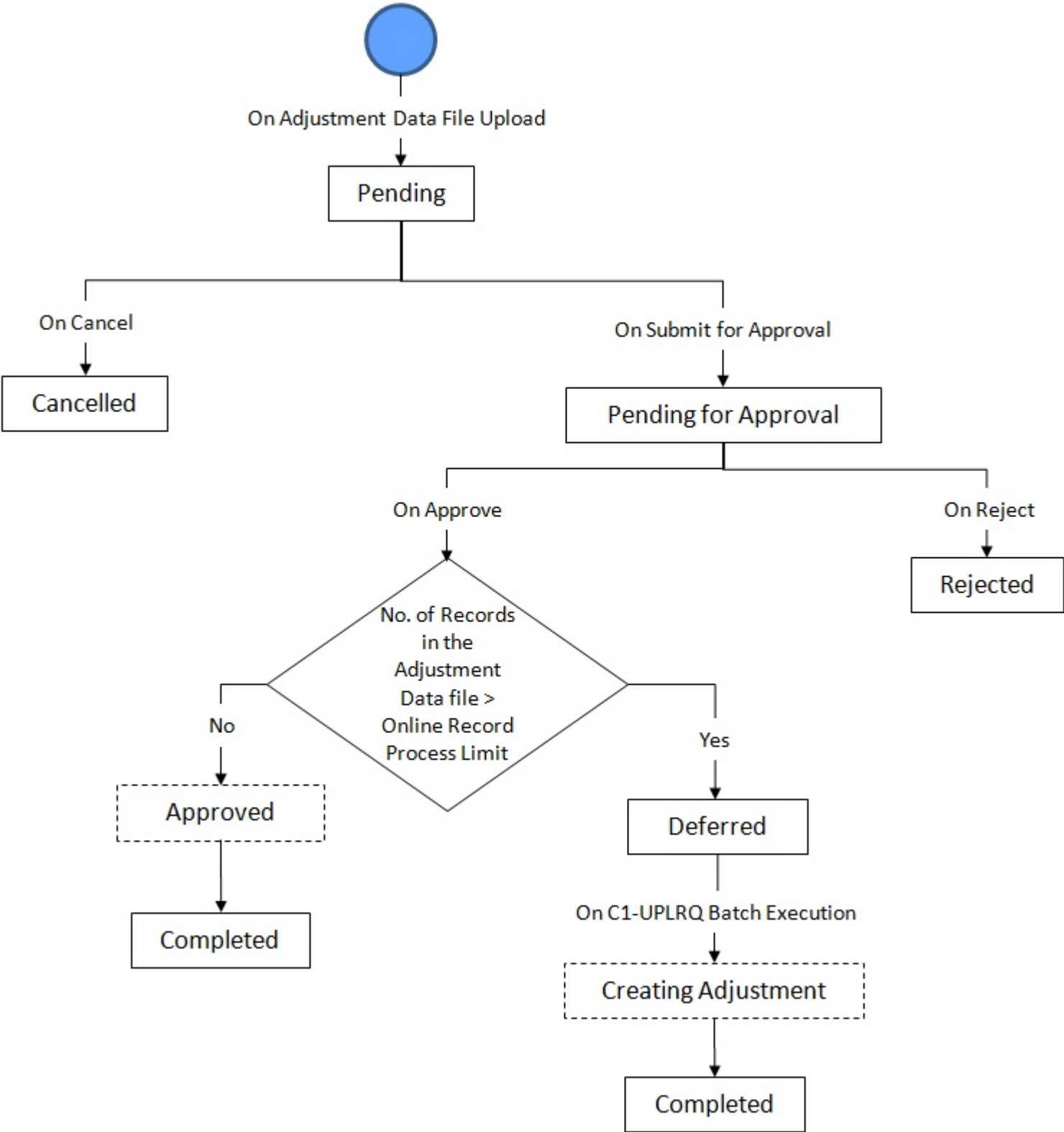
## Adjustment Upload Request (Without Approval) Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how an adjustment upload request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is off:



## Adjustment Upload Request (With Approval) Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how an adjustment upload request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is on:



### Algorithms Used in C1-ADJUPLD

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-ADJUPLD** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-FLREQ-INF	C1-FLREQ-INF	<p>This algorithm formats the upload request information that appears throughout the system for the BO. The algorithm formats the information as follows: Upload Request type description, Status description, ID. This algorithm generates the upload request information string which appears throughout the application. This algorithm concatenates the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upload Request Type Description</li> <li>• Upload Request Description</li> <li>• Upload Request ID</li> </ul>
Validation	C1-ADVALREQ	C1-ADVALREQ	<p>This algorithm will be called from a business service and is responsible for validating the uploaded CSV file and identify if any records are invalid. The validations to be performed are mentioned below: 1. Mandatory column data checks 2. Check for valid values for account, match type, match value, adjustment type, adjustment characteristics type, currency and amount. 3. This algorithm will also call the match type algorithm linked to the request type to derive and validate the value for contract ID. This algorithm validates the uploaded CSV file and identifies invalid records, if any. The validations performed are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Validating mandatory column data</li> <li>• Validating values for account, match type, match value, adjustment type, adjustment characteristics type, currency and amount.</li> <li>• Invoke the match type algorithm linked to the request type to derive and validate the value for contract ID.</li> </ul>

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-ADJUPLD** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	-	-	-	-
Cancelled	-	-	-	-
Create Adjustment	Enter	C1-ADJUPLDEF	C1-ADJUPLDEF	<p>This algorithm will evaluate if request processing should be done in real time or deferred for offline processing. This will be invoked by the Enter Status algorithm when the Request object enters 'CREATE' or 'APPROVED' status. This algorithm evaluates and creates adjustment. It evaluates, if request should be processed in real time or deferred for offline processing. This algorithm is triggered by the <b>Enter</b> status algorithm when the request object is changed to <b>Create</b> or <b>Approved</b> status.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Deferred	Monitor	C1-ADJ-MNTR	C1-ADJ-MNTR	This algorithm will be invoked from the Upload Request Monitor batch. This will be responsible for BO transition from 'Deferred' to 'Creating' status. This algorithm is triggered from the <b>Upload Request Monitor</b> batch. This algorithm transitions the business object status from <b>Deferred</b> to <b>Creating</b> .
Pending for Approval	Enter	C1-ADJUPAPVL	C1-ADJUPAPVL	This algorithm will be responsible of creating To Do for the approver to approve or reject the uploaded file data. To Do will be created using the To Do Type linked to the request type to the approver(s) who are associated with the To Do Role linked to the request type. This will be invoked by the Enter Status algorithm when the Request object enters 'SUBMITTED - Pending For Approver' status. This algorithm creates the To Do using the To Do Type for the approver to approve or reject the uploaded file data. This To Do Type is linked to the request type to the approver(s) associated with the To Do Role linked to the request type. This algorithm is triggered by the <b>Enter</b> status algorithm when the request object enters <b>Submitted - Pending For Approver</b> status.
Approved	Enter	C1-ADJUPDEF	C1-ADJUPDEF	This algorithm will evaluate if request processing should be done in real time or deferred for offline processing. This will be invoked by the Enter Status algorithm when the Request object enters 'CREATE' or 'APPROVED' status. This algorithm evaluates if request should be processed in real time or deferred for offline processing. This algorithm is triggered by the <b>Enter</b> status algorithm when the request object is changed to <b>Create</b> or <b>Approved</b> status.
Rejected	-	-	-	-
Completed	-	-	-	-
Creating Adjustment	Enter	C1-ADJCRTION	C1-ADJCRTION	This algorithm is responsible for creating Adjustment for the uploaded file. The adjustment ID will be updated back in the request table to link the request with the adjustments. This algorithm creates an adjustment for the uploaded file. In addition, the adjustment ID is stamped on the adjustment and on the corresponding financial transaction.



## Adjustment Upload Request

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen allows you to search for an adjustment upload request using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can:

- Upload an adjustment data file
- Cancel an adjustment data file
- View the details of an adjustment upload request
- View all adjustment records which are uploaded through an adjustment data file
- Create adjustments for an adjustment data file
- Submit an adjustment data file for approval
- Approve or reject an adjustment data file
- View the log of an adjustment upload request
- Add a log entry for an adjustment upload request

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Adjustment Upload Request](#) on page 901

## Search Adjustment Upload Request

The **Search Adjustment Upload Request** zone allows you to search for an adjustment upload request using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The fields in the **Search Criteria** section change depending on the query option selected. At present, there is only one query option named **Upload Request**. On selecting the **Upload Request** query option, the **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Used to search adjustment upload requests which are created using a particular upload request type.	No
Status	Used to search adjustment upload requests with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approved</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• Completed</li> <li>• Create Adjustment</li> <li>• Creating Adjustment</li> <li>• Deferred</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Pending For Approval</li> </ul>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload From Date	Used to search adjustment upload requests which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current date appears in this field.	
To	Used to search adjustment upload requests which are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current date appears in this field.	
File Name	Used to search an adjustment upload request which is created while uploading an adjustment data file.	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an adjustment upload request.

- Search Results** — On clicking the **Refresh** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Upload Date	Displays the date and time when the adjustment data file is uploaded in the system.
Upload Request Information	Displays information about the adjustment upload request.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment Upload Request</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective upload request.
Status	Indicates the status of the adjustment upload request.
Upload Request Type	Indicates the upload request type using which the adjustment data file is uploaded in the system.
File Name	Displays the name of the adjustment data file.

You can upload an adjustment data file by clicking the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 906
How to upload an adjustment data file	<a href="#">Uploading an Adjustment Data File</a> on page 906
How to view the details of an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Viewing the Adjustment Upload Request Details</a> on page 916

### Adjustment Upload Request

The **Adjustment Upload Request** zone displays the details of the adjustment upload request. This zone contains the following sections:

- Header** — This section provides basic information about the upload request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Upload Request Information	<p>Displays information about the adjustment upload request. The information string contains the following comma-separated values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upload Request Type Description</li> <li>• Status Description</li> <li>• Upload Request ID</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This information string is generated using the <b>C1-FLREQ-INF</b> algorithm which is attached to the <b>Information</b> system event in the adjustment upload request business object. If you want to display a different information string, you need to define a custom algorithm type and attach the algorithm in the adjustment upload request business object.</p>
Status	<p>Indicates the status of the adjustment upload request. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approved</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• Completed</li> <li>• Create Adjustment</li> <li>• Creating Adjustment</li> <li>• Deferred</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Pending for Approval</li> </ul>
Status Reason	<p>Indicates the reason why the adjustment data file is cancelled or rejected.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the adjustment upload request is in the <b>Cancelled</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.</p>
File Name	Displays the name of the adjustment data file for which the adjustment upload request is created.

- **Record Actions** — This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Cancel File	Used to cancel an adjustment data file.
	<p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Cancel File</b> button appears only when the adjustment upload request is in the <b>Pending</b> status.</p>

Button Name	Button Description
Create Adjustment	Used to create adjustments for the records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Create Adjustment</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The adjustment upload request is in the <b>Pending</b> status.</li> <li>The approval workflow process is not configured for the upload request type using which the adjustment data file is uploaded.</li> </ul>
Submit for Approval	Used to submit the adjustment data file for approval.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit for Approval</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The adjustment upload request is in the <b>Pending</b> status.</li> <li>The approval workflow process is configured for the upload request type using which the adjustment data file is uploaded.</li> </ul>
Approve	Used to approve the adjustment data file.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Approve</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The adjustment upload request is in the <b>Pending for Approval</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the adjustment data file.</li> </ul>
Reject	Used to reject the adjustment data file.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Reject</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The adjustment upload request is in the <b>Pending for Approval</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the adjustment data file.</li> </ul>

**Note:** The **Record Actions** section does not contain buttons when the status of the adjustment upload request is **Cancelled**, **Completed**, **Deferred**, or **Rejected**.

- **Record Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the adjustment upload request is created.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears with the details of the respective business object.
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the adjustment upload request status is updated.
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the adjustment upload request is created.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Viewing the Adjustment Upload Request Details</a> on page 916
How to cancel an adjustment data file	<a href="#">Cancelling an Adjustment Data File</a> on page 911
How to create adjustments for an adjustment data file	<a href="#">Creating Adjustments for an Adjustment Data File</a> on page 912
How to submit an adjustment data file for approval	<a href="#">Submitting an Adjustment Data File for Approval</a> on page 913
How to approve an adjustment data file	<a href="#">Approving an Adjustment Data File</a> on page 914
How to reject an adjustment data file	<a href="#">Rejecting an Adjustment Data File</a> on page 915

## Adjustment Data Records

The **Adjustment Data Records** zone lists the adjustment records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Adjustment Information	<p>Displays information about the adjustment that is created using the adjustment record.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The data appears in this column only when the status of the adjustment upload request is <b>Completed</b>.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment</b> screen appears with the details of the respective adjustment.</p> <p>The information string appears only when an algorithm of the <b>C1-ADI-INFO</b> algorithm type is attached to the <b>Adjustment Information</b> system event in the <b>Algorithms</b> tab of the <b>Installation Options — Framework</b> screen.</p>
Account Identifier Type	Indicates the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
Account ID	Indicates the account for which the adjustment must be created.
Adjustment Match Value	Indicates the contract against which the adjustment must be created.
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the adjustment must be created.
Adjustment Amount	Displays the adjustment amount.
Comments	Displays additional information about the adjustment.
Bill ID	Indicates the bill on which the adjustment must be created.
Arrears Date	Displays the date from when the amount is outstanding on the bill.
Char Type 1, Char Type 2, ....., Char Type 5	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the adjustment.
Char Value 1, Char Value 2, ....., Char Value 5	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Viewing the Adjustment Upload Request Details</a> on page 916
How to view the adjustment records uploaded through an adjustment data file	<a href="#">Viewing All Records of an Adjustment Data File</a> on page 917

**Searching for an Adjustment Upload Request**

**Prerequisites**

To search for an adjustment upload request, you should have:

- Upload request types defined in the application

**Procedure**

To search for an adjustment upload request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.  
A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **Adjustment Upload Request**.

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears.

4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Adjustment Upload Request** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of adjustment upload requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Adjustment Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 901
<b>Search Adjustment Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 901

**Uploading an Adjustment Data File**

**Prerequisites**

To upload an adjustment data file, you should have:

- Upload request types defined in the application
- Adjustment data in the required CSV file format

**Procedure**

To upload an adjustment data file:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

A list appears.

2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **Adjustment Upload Request**.

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears.

4. Click the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of the **Search Adjustment Upload Request** zone.

The **Upload Adjustment Data File** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Used to indicate the upload request type using which you want to upload the adjustment data file.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those upload request types which are in the <b>Active</b> status.	
Replace Existing File	Used to indicate whether you want to replace any existing file in the system. You must select this check box when you want to upload the same file once again.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can replace an existing file only when the adjustment upload request is in the <b>Pending</b> or <b>Cancelled</b> status.	
File Name	Used to specify the name and path of the adjustment data file that you want to upload.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can also click the <b>Browse</b> button corresponding to this field to browse to the location where the adjustment data file is available in the system.	

5. Select the upload request type using which you want to upload the adjustment data file.
6. Click the **Browse** button corresponding to the **File Name** field.
7. Browse to the location where the adjustment data file that you want to upload is available.
8. Click **Open**.

The **Choose File to Upload** dialog box appears.

The adjustment data file name and path appears in the **File Name** field.

9. Click **Submit**.

A grid appears which helps you to preview all records in the adjustment data file. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Errors	Indicates the reason why the adjustment record is invalid. If there are multiple reasons, the comma-separated list of error messages appears in this column.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you click the <b>Save</b> button.
Account Identifier Type	Indicates the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Indicates the account for which the adjustment must be created.
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the adjustment must be created.
Match Value	Indicates the entity (such as contract, contract type, and so on) against which the adjustment must be created.
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the adjustment must be created.
Adjustment Amount	Displays the adjustment amount.
Currency Code	Indicates the currency in which the adjustment must be created.
Comments	Displays additional information about the adjustment.
Bill ID	Indicates the bill on which the adjustment must be created.
Arrears Date	Displays the date from when the amount is outstanding on the bill.
Char Type 1	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the adjustment.
Char Value 1	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
Char Type 2	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the adjustment.
Char Value 2	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
Char Type 3	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the adjustment.
Char Value 3	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
Char Type 4	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the adjustment.
Char Value 4	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
Char Type 5	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the adjustment.
Char Value 5	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

**Note:** If you upload an adjustment data file which exceeds the maximum file size defined in the upload request type, the system will not allow you to upload the file.

#### 10. Click **Save**.

The validation process starts immediately. The adjustment record is considered as invalid when:

- Account ID, Account Identifier Type, Account Identifier, Adjustment Type, Currency, Bill ID, Characteristic Type, Characteristic Value, or Match Type is invalid.
- Match Type, Match Value, Adjustment Type, Adjustment Amount, Currency, or Characteristic Value is missing.
- Contract ID does not exist in the system.
- The contract is in the **Cancelled** status.
- Contract type does not exist in the system.
- Account Identifier Type, Account Identifier, or Account ID is missing when the match type is Contract Type.
- No active contract of the specified contract type is available.
- Adjustment amount precision does not match the precision (decimal positions) defined for the currency.
- The adjustment type is not included in the adjustment type profile which is attached to the contract type.
- The characteristic type is not associated with the adjustment type.



If there is an invalid record in the adjustment data file, you will not be able to upload the file.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Adjustment Upload Request screen	<a href="#">Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 901
Search Adjustment Upload Request zone	<a href="#">Search Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 901

## Replacing an Adjustment Data File

### Prerequisites

To replace an existing adjustment data file, you should have:

- Upload request types defined in the application
- Adjustment data in the required CSV file format

### Procedure

To replace an existing adjustment data file:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.  
A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.
3. From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **Adjustment Upload Request**.

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears.

4. Click the **Upload** link in the upper right corner of the **Search Adjustment Upload Request** zone.

The **Adjustment Upload Data File** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Used to indicate the upload request type using which you want to upload the adjustment data file.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those upload request types which are in the <b>Active</b> status.	
Replace Existing File	Used to indicate whether you want to replace any existing file in the system. You must select this check box when you want to upload the same file once again.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can replace an existing file only when the adjustment upload request is in the <b>Pending</b> or <b>Cancelled</b> status.	
File Name	Used to specify the name and path of the adjustment data file that you want to upload.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can also click the <b>Browse</b> button corresponding to this field to browse to the location where the adjustment data file is available in the system.	

5. Select the upload request type using which you want to upload the adjustment data file.
6. Select the **Replace Existing File** check box to indicate that you want to replace an existing adjustment data file.
7. Click the **Browse** button corresponding to the **File Name** field.

The **Choose File to Upload** dialog box appears.

8. Browse to the location where the adjustment data file that you want to upload is available.
9. Click **Open**.

The adjustment data file name and path appears in the **File Name** field.

10. Click **Submit**.

A grid appears which helps you to preview all records in the adjustment data file. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Errors	Indicates the reason why the adjustment record is invalid. If there are multiple reasons, the comma-separated list of error messages appears in this column.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you click the <b>Save</b> button.
Account Identifier Type	Indicates the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
Account ID	Indicates the account for which the adjustment must be created.
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the adjustment must be created.
Match Value	Indicates the entity (such as contract, contract type, and so on) against which the adjustment must be created.
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the adjustment must be created.
Adjustment Amount	Displays the adjustment amount.
Currency Code	Indicates the currency in which the adjustment must be created.
Comments	Displays additional information about the adjustment.
Bill ID	Indicates the bill on which the adjustment must be created.
Arrears Date	Displays the date from when the amount is outstanding on the bill.
Char Type 1	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the adjustment.
Char Value 1	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
Char Type 2	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the adjustment.
Char Value 2	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
Char Type 3	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the adjustment.
Char Value 3	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
Char Type 4	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the adjustment.
Char Value 4	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
Char Type 5	Indicates the characteristic that must be defined for the adjustment.
Char Value 5	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

**Note:** If you upload an adjustment data file which exceeds the maximum file size defined in the upload request type, the system will not allow you to upload the file.

#### 11. Click **Save**.

The validation process starts immediately. The adjustment record is considered as invalid when:

- Account ID, Account Identifier Type, Account Identifier, Adjustment Type, Currency, Bill ID, Characteristic Type, Characteristic Value, or Match Type is invalid.
- Match Type, Match Value, Adjustment Type, Adjustment Amount, Currency, or Characteristic Value is missing.
- Contract ID does not exist in the system.
- The contract is in the **Cancelled** status.
- Contract type does not exist in the system.
- Account Identifier Type, Account Identifier, or Account ID is missing when the match type is Contract Type.
- No active contract of the specified contract type is available.
- Adjustment amount precision does not match the precision (decimal positions) defined for the currency.
- The adjustment type is not included in the adjustment type profile which is attached to the contract type.
- The characteristic type is not associated with the adjustment type.

If there is an invalid record in the adjustment data file, you will not be able to upload the file.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Adjustment Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 901
<b>Search Adjustment Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 901

## Cancelling an Adjustment Data File

There might be situations when incorrect adjustment data file is uploaded in the system. In such case, the system provides you with an ability to cancel the file. However, note that you can cancel an adjustment data file only when the adjustment upload request is in the **Pending** status.

#### Prerequisites

To cancel an adjustment data file, you should have:

- Cancellation reasons defined in the application

**Note:** While cancelling an adjustment data file, you need to specify the reason why you want to cancel the adjustment data file. You can select the appropriate cancellation reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Cancelled** status of the **C1-ADJUPLD** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

#### Procedure

To cancel an adjustment data file:

1. Search for the adjustment upload request (which is created while uploading the file that you want to cancel) in the **Adjustment Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the adjustment data file that you want to cancel.

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears. It contains the following two tabs:

- Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
    - Adjustment Upload Request** – Displays the details of the adjustment upload request.
    - Adjustment Data Records** – Lists the adjustment records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file.
  - Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the adjustment upload request.
3. Click **Cancel File** in the **Adjustment Upload Request** zone.

The **Cancellation Information** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Cancellation Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to cancel the adjustment data file.	Yes

**Note:** The **Cancel File** button appears only when the adjustment upload request is in the **Pending** status.

4. Select the cancellation reason from the list.
5. Click **Save**.

The adjustment data file is cancelled. In addition, the status of the adjustment upload request is changed to **Cancelled**.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 906
<b>Adjustment Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 902

Creating Adjustments for an Adjustment Data File

Procedure

To create adjustments for an adjustment data file:

- Search for the adjustment upload request (which is created while uploading the file for which you want to create adjustments) in the **Adjustment Upload Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the adjustment data file for which you want to create adjustments.

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears. It contains the following two tabs:

- Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
    - Adjustment Upload Request** – Displays the details of the adjustment upload request.
    - Adjustment Data Records** – Lists the adjustment records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file.
  - Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the adjustment upload request.
3. Click **Create Adjustment** in the **Adjustment Upload Request** zone.

The Defer algorithm attached to the upload request type using which you have uploaded the adjustment data file is triggered. If the number of records in the adjustment data file does not exceed the online record process limit

(defined in the Defer algorithm), the system creates adjustments in the real time (i.e. immediately). In addition, the adjustment information string appears corresponding to each adjustment record in the **Adjustment Data Records** zone and the status of the adjustment upload request is changed to **Completed**. However, if the number of records in the adjustment data file exceeds the online record process limit, the system creates adjustments in the deferred mode and the status of the adjustment upload request is changed to **Deferred**.

**Note:**

Deferred mode means in the background when the **Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)** batch is invoked. You can configure the **Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)** batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the **Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)** batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any adjustment upload requests in the **Deferred** status. If there is an adjustment upload request in the **Deferred** status, the system creates adjustments for the adjustment data file. Once the adjustments are created, the adjustment information string appears corresponding to each adjustment record in the **Adjustment Data Records** zone and the status of the adjustment upload request is changed to **Completed**.

The **Create Adjustment** button appears only when:

- The adjustment upload request is in the **Pending** status.
- The approval workflow process is not configured for the upload request type using which the adjustment data file is uploaded.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 906
<b>Adjustment Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 902
<b>Adjustment Data Records</b> zone	<a href="#">Adjustment Data Records</a> on page 905

## Submitting an Adjustment Data File for Approval

### Procedure

To submit an adjustment data file for approval:

1. Search for the adjustment upload request (which is created while uploading the file that you want to submit for approval) in the **Adjustment Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the adjustment data file that you want to submit for approval.

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears. It contains the following two tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
    - **Adjustment Upload Request** – Displays the details of the adjustment upload request.
    - **Adjustment Data Records** – Lists the adjustment records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file.
  - **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the adjustment upload request.
3. Click **Submit for Approval** in the **Adjustment Upload Request** zone.

The status of the adjustment upload request is changed to **Pending for Approval**. A To Do is created using the **C1-ADJUP** To Do type. Users having a To Do role to which the **C1-ADJUP** To Do type is associated can view

the To Do from the **To Do List** screen. On clicking the **Submitted Message** link corresponding to the To Do, the **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears where you can review the records of the adjustment data file.

**Note:**  
The **Submit for Approval** button appears only when:

- The adjustment upload request is in the **Pending** status.
- The approval workflow process is configured for the upload request type using which the adjustment data file is uploaded.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Adjustment Upload Request zone	<a href="#">Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 902
How to search for an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 906

**Approving an Adjustment Data File**

**Procedure**

To approve an adjustment data file:

1. Search for the adjustment upload request (which is created while uploading the file that you want to review) in the **Adjustment Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the adjustment data file that you want to review.

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears. It contains the following two tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
    - **Adjustment Upload Request** – Displays the details of the adjustment upload request.
    - **Adjustment Data Records** – Lists the adjustment records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file.
  - **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the adjustment upload request.
3. Review the records of the adjustment data file in the **Adjustment Data Records** zone.
  4. If the adjustment data file is appropriate, then click **Approve** in the **Adjustment Upload Request** zone.

The Defer algorithm attached to the upload request type using which you have uploaded the adjustment data file is triggered. If the number of records in the adjustment data file does not exceed the online record process limit (defined in the Defer algorithm), the system creates adjustments in the real time (i.e. immediately). In addition, the adjustment information string appears corresponding to each adjustment record in the **Adjustment Data Records** zone and the status of the adjustment upload request is changed to **Completed**. However, if the number of records in the adjustment data file exceeds the online record process limit, the system creates adjustments in the deferred mode and the status of the adjustment upload request is changed to **Deferred**.

**Note:**

Deferred mode means in the background when the **Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)** batch is invoked. You can configure the **Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)** batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the **Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)** batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any adjustment upload requests in the **Deferred** status. If there is an adjustment upload request in the **Deferred** status, the system creates adjustments for the adjustment data file. Once the adjustments are created, the adjustment information string appears corresponding to each adjustment record in the **Adjustment Data Records** zone and the status of the adjustment upload request is changed to **Completed**.

The **Approve** button appears only when:

- The adjustment upload request is in the **Pending for Approval** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the adjustment data file.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 906
<b>Adjustment Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 902
<b>Adjustment Data Records</b> zone	<a href="#">Adjustment Data Records</a> on page 905

**Rejecting an Adjustment Data File****Prerequisites**

To reject an adjustment data file, you should have:

- Rejection reasons defined in the application

**Note:**

While rejecting an adjustment data file, you need to specify the reason why you want to reject the adjustment data file. You can select the appropriate rejection reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Rejected** status of the **C1-ADJUPLD** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

The system does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the adjustment data file.

**Procedure**

To reject an adjustment data file:

1. Search for the adjustment upload request (which is created while uploading the file that you want to review) in the **Adjustment Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the adjustment data file that you want to review.

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears. It contains the following two tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
  - **Adjustment Upload Request** – Displays the details of the adjustment upload request.
  - **Adjustment Data Records** – Lists the adjustment records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file.
- **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the adjustment upload request.

- Review the records of the adjustment data file in the **Adjustment Data Records** zone.
- If the adjustment data file is not appropriate, then click **Reject** in the **Adjustment Upload Request** zone.

The **Rejection Information** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rejection Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to reject the adjustment data file.	Yes

**Note:**  
 The **Reject** button appears only when:
 

- The adjustment upload request is in the **Pending for Approval** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the adjustment data file.

- Select the rejection reason from the list.
- Click **Save**.

The adjustment data file is rejected. In addition, the status of the adjustment upload request is changed to **Rejected**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Adjustment Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 902
<b>Adjustment Data Records</b> zone	<a href="#">Adjustment Data Records</a> on page 905
How to search for an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 906

**Viewing the Adjustment Upload Request Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of an adjustment upload request:

- Search for an adjustment upload request in the **Adjustment Upload Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the adjustment upload request whose details you want to view.

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears. It contains the following two tabs:

- Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
    - Adjustment Upload Request** – Displays the details of the adjustment upload request.
    - Adjustment Data Records** – Lists the adjustment records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file.
  - Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the adjustment upload request.
- View the details of the adjustment upload request in the **Adjustment Upload Request** zone.
  - View the list of adjustment records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file in the **Adjustment Data Records** zone.

**Related Topics**



For more information on...	See...
How to search for an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 906
Adjustment Upload Request zone	<a href="#">Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 902
Adjustment Data Records zone	<a href="#">Adjustment Data Records</a> on page 905

## Viewing All Records of an Adjustment Data File

### Procedure

To view all records of an adjustment data file:

1. Search for the adjustment upload request (which is created while uploading the file whose records you want to view) in the **Adjustment Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the adjustment data file whose records you want to view.

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears. It contains the following two tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
    - **Adjustment Upload Request** – Displays the details of the adjustment upload request.
    - **Adjustment Data Records** – Lists the adjustment records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file.
  - **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the adjustment upload request.
3. View the list of adjustment records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file in the **Adjustment Data Records** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 906
Adjustment Data Records zone	<a href="#">Adjustment Data Records</a> on page 905

## Viewing the Log of an Adjustment Upload Request

### Procedure

To view the log of an adjustment upload request:

1. Search for the adjustment upload request in the **Adjustment Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the adjustment upload request whose log you want to view.

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears. It contains the following two tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
  - **Adjustment Upload Request** – Displays the details of the adjustment upload request.

- **Adjustment Data Records** – Lists the adjustment records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file.
  - **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the adjustment upload request.
3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Upload Request Log** zone in the **Log** tab contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the adjustment upload request.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the adjustment upload request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the adjustment upload request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the adjustment upload request.
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the adjustment upload request was rejected or cancelled.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the adjustment upload request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Upload Request Log** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 906
How to add a log entry for an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for an Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 918

## Adding a Log Entry for an Adjustment Upload Request

### Procedure

To add a log entry for an adjustment upload request:

1. Search for the adjustment upload request in the **Adjustment Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the adjustment upload request whose log you want to edit.

The **Adjustment Upload Request** screen appears. It contains the following two tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
  - **Adjustment Upload Request** – Displays the details of the adjustment upload request.
  - **Adjustment Data Records** – Lists the adjustment records which are uploaded through the adjustment data file.
- **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the adjustment upload request.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Upload Request Log** zone.

The **Add Request Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Request Information	Displays information about the adjustment upload request.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the adjustment upload request.	Yes

5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.

6. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Upload Request Log** zone.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an adjustment upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Adjustment Upload Request</a> on page 906



---

# Chapter

# 14

---

## Payment Request

---

### Topics:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Payment Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Payment Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-PaymentRequest](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-PaymentTransferRequest](#)
- [Payment Request Type](#)
- [Payment Request \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Payment Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#)
- [Payment Event Summary](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing facilitates you to create and transfer payments through a payment request. While creating a payment creation or transfer request, you need to specify the payment request type using which you want to create the payment request. It is the payment request type which helps the system to determine:

- Whether to create payment transfer or payment creation request
- Whether payment events and payments must be created in real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode
- Whether payment creation or transfer instructions must be approved by the approver before freezing the payments

While creating a payment creation request, you need to specify the tender amount and match type details. However, while creating a payment transfer request, you need to specify the transfer amount and match type details. The **Payment Request** feature supports the following match types :

- By Bill Regular (Match Entity: Account)
- By Bill (Match Entity: Bill)
- By Bill Weighted (Match Entity: Account)
- By Bill Segments (Match Entity: Account)
- By Suspense Contract (Match Entity: Account)
- By Settlement ID (Match Entity: Account)

You can specify multiple match types along with the entity (such as account or bill) in the payment request. Depending on the match type and match entity selected, the entities (such as unpaid bills, bill segments, or contracts) of the account are considered against which you can match the tender or transfer (payment) amount. Once you update the payment amount against the required entities, you can distribute the tender or payment amount.

On distributing the tender amount, the payment event, payments, payment segments, and payment tender are created. The payments are created in the **Freezable** status. If any error occurs while creating a payment, the payment is created in the **Error** status. If all payments of a payment event are in the **Freezable** status, the status of the payment event is set to **Balanced**. However, if any payment of a payment event is in the **Error** status, the status of the payment event is set to **Unbalanced**. On distributing the payment amount (during transfer), the new payments are created in the **Freezable** status. If any error occurs while creating a new payment, the payment is created in the **Error** status. The status of the payment event is set to **Unbalanced**. The old payments in the payment event that you want to transfer remains in the **Frozen** or **Error** status.

The system allows you to view the pay segments of a payment and edit the pay segment amount, if required. You can edit the pay segment amount before submitting the payment request for approval or before freezing the payments. If the approval is not required for the payment request, you can directly freeze the payments created through the payment request. However, if the approval is required for the payment request, you need to submit the payment request for approval. Based on the observations, the approver might approve or reject the payment request. On approving a payment creation request or freezing the payments, the status of the payments is changed from **Freezable** to **Frozen**. However, on approving a payment transfer request or freezing the payments, the system does the following:

- Changes the status of the old payments which are in the **Frozen** status to **Cancelled**
- Deletes the old payments which are in the **Error** status
- Changes the status of the new payments which are in the **Freezable** status to **Frozen**
- Changes the status of the payment event to **Balanced** when there are no payments in the **Error** status

On rejecting a payment creation request, the payment event, payments, payment segments, and payment tender which are created through the payment creation request are deleted. However, on rejecting a payment transfer request, the new payments which are created through the payment transfer request are deleted.

During the payment request process, a payment creation or transfer request goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. For more information about the payment request statuses, see [Payment Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 924 and [Payment Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 925.

Note that the lifecycle of a payment creation and transfer requests is driven by the respective business object using which the payment creation and transfer requests are created. The **C1-PaymentRequest** and **C1-PaymentTransferRequest** business objects are shipped with the product. The payment request feature explained in this document is articulated based on the lifecycle and logic defined in the **C1-PaymentRequest** and **C1-PaymentTransferRequest** business objects.

For more information on how to setup the payment request process, see [Prerequisites](#) on page 923.

## Prerequisites

To setup the payment request process, you need to do the following:

- Define the following match types:

Match Type	Description	Payment Distribution Override Algorithm	Manual Distribution Algorithm	Entity Type	Match Type Search Zone	Entity Flag
BILLR	By Bill Regular	C1-PDOV-PYBL	C1-MD-BILL	Account	C1_ACCTSRCH	Bill
BILLW	By Bill Weighted	C1-PDOV-WTBS	C1-MD-BILL	Account	C1_ACCTSRCH	Bill
BILL-WO	By Bill Weighted Outstanding Amount	C1-PDOV-WTOA		Account	C1_ACCT_SRCH	Bill
BILLSEG	By Bill Segment	C1-PDOV-PYBS	C1-MD-BSEG	Account	C1_ACCTSRCH	Bill Segment
BYSATY	By Suspense Contract	C1-PDOV-SATY	C1-MD-ONSA	Account	C1_ACCTSRCH	Contract
SETT-ID	By Settlement ID	C1-PDOV-PYSL	C1-MD-SID	Account	C1_ACCTSRCH	Settlement
BYBILL	By Bill	C1-PDOV-PYBL or C1-PDOV-WTBS	C1-MDBYBILL	Bill	CI_BILL	Bill
BILL-BS	By Bill - Pay By Bill Segment Oldest	C1-PDOV-BSDT		Account	C1_ACCT_SRCH	Bill

**Note:** The **C1-PDOV-BSDT** algorithm for the bill match type BILL-BS is used to distribute the amount among the bill segments of the bill in the order of bill segment start date.

**Note:** The **C1-PDOV-WTOA** algorithm for the bill match type BILL-WOA performs the bill weighted calculation based on the unpaid amount on the bill segment.

- Create a defer algorithm using the **C1-PAY-COUNT** algorithm type
- Define the required payment request types in the system
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Payment Request Type**
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Payment Tender**
- Define rejected status reasons for the **C1-PaymentRequest** business object
- Define rejected status reasons for the **C1-PaymentTransferRequest** business object
- Define payment cancelation or transfer reasons through the **Payment Cancel Reason** screen

- Assign the **C1-PAYRQ** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting a payment request for approval
- Set the **Payment Portal Configuration (C1-PAYPORTAL)** feature configuration
- Set the **Payment Request-Sort Distribution data (C1-PYREQSRT)** feature configuration
- Set the batch control type of the **Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)** batch to **Timed** and define the following attributes:
  - Time Interval
  - Timer Active
  - User ID
  - Batch Language
  - Email Address

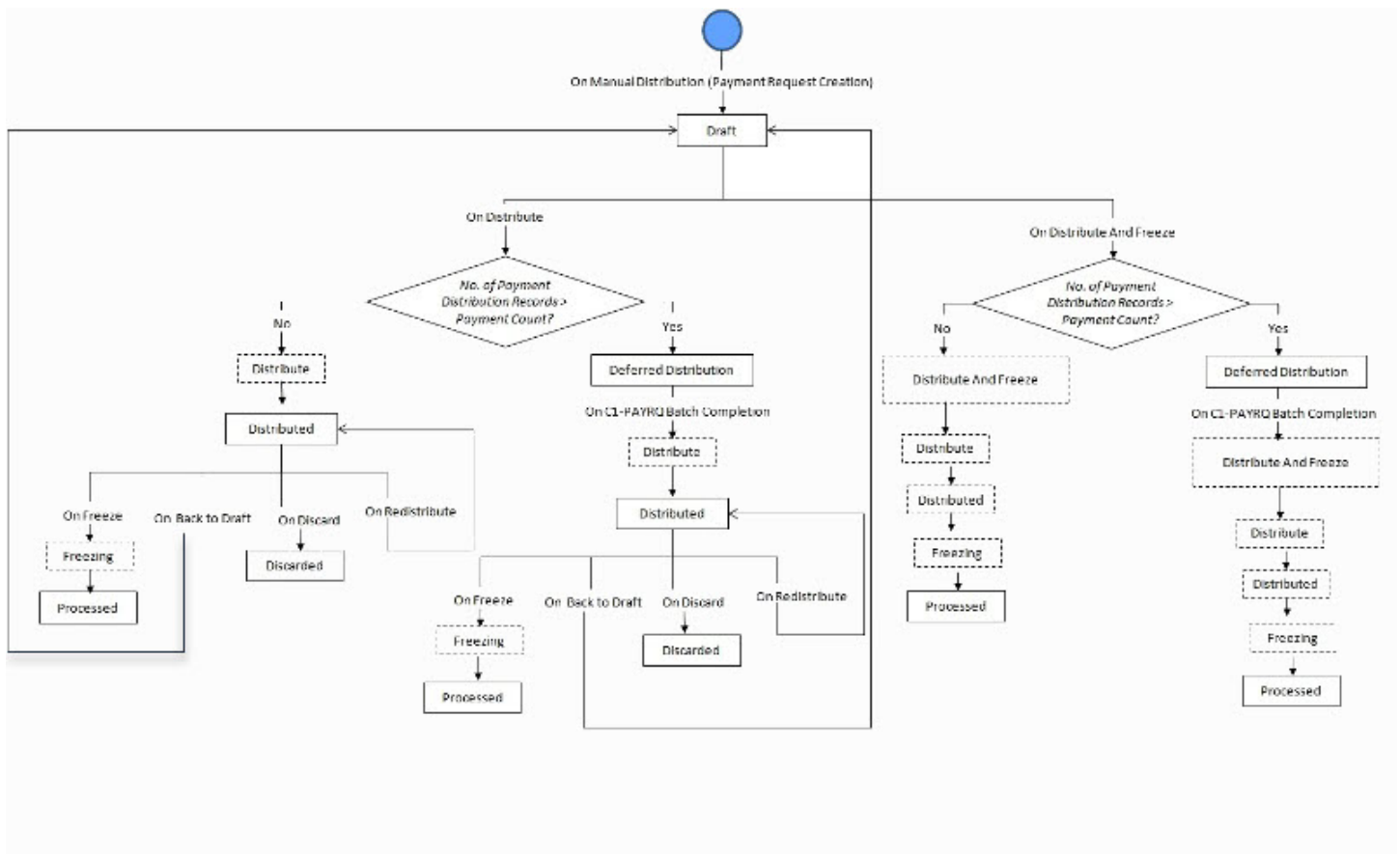
**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to set the C1-PAYPORTAL feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-PAYPORTAL Feature Configuration</a> on page 2371
How to set the C1-PYREQSRT feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-PYREQSRT Feature Configuration</a> on page 2377

**Payment Request (Without Approval) Status Transition**

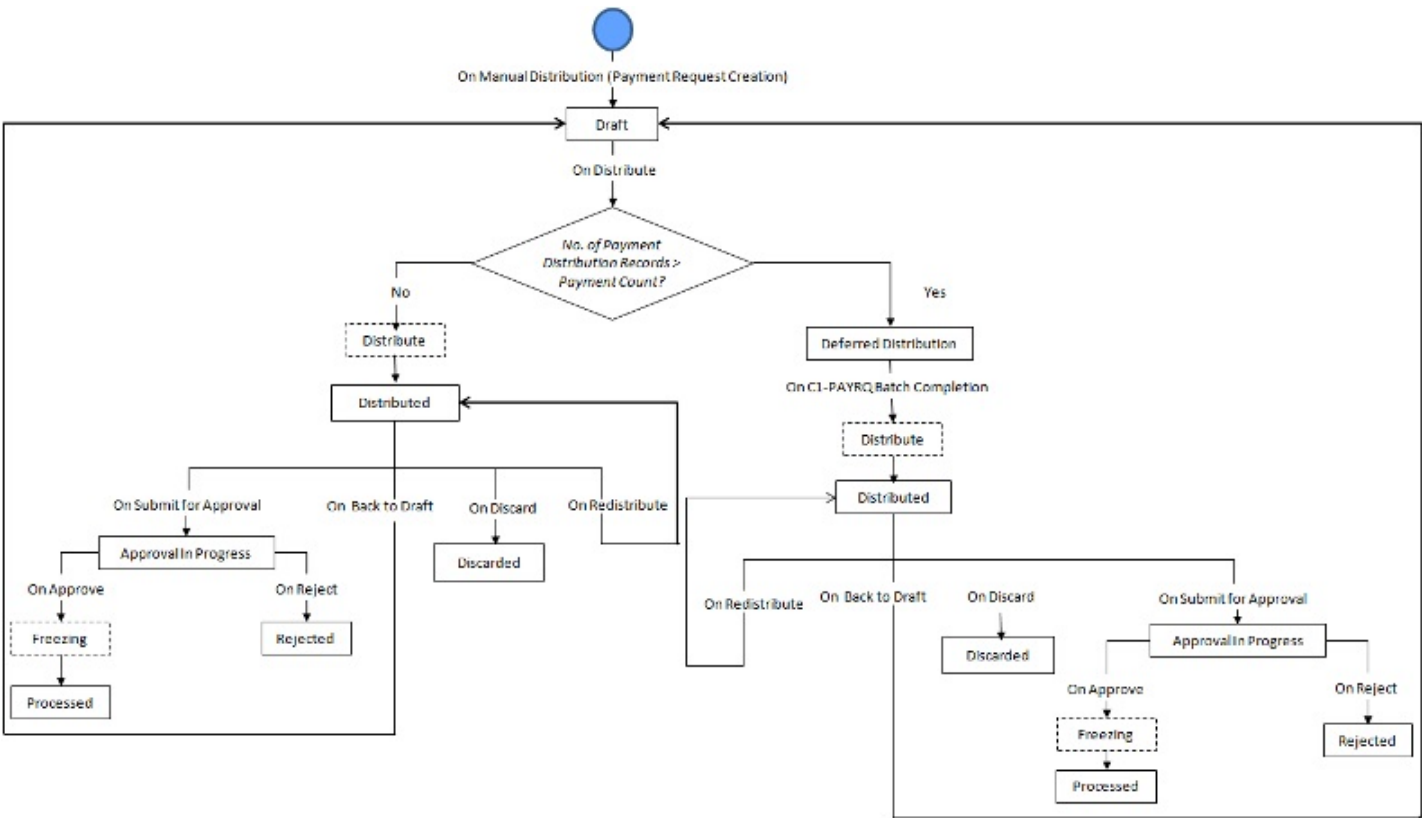
The following figure graphically indicates how a payment creation or transfer request moves from one status to another when the approval workflow is off:





## Payment Request (With Approval) Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a payment creation or transfer request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is on:



**Algorithms Used in C1-PaymentRequest**

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-PaymentRequest** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-PAYRQ-INF	C1-PAYRQ-INF	This algorithm generates the payment request information string which appears throughout the application. This algorithm concatenates the following fields: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Payment Request Type Description</li> <li>Payment Request Status Description</li> <li>Payment Request ID</li> </ul>
Post-Processing	C1-PAYREQPOS	C1-PAYREQPOS	This algorithm invokes the manual distribution algorithm of the match types that are newly added while editing a payment request. It also deletes the respective match type entities from the <b>C1_PAY_DISTRIBUTION</b> table when you remove a match type while editing a payment request.

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Validation	C1-PAYREQVAL	C1-PAYREQVAL	<p>This algorithm checks whether the mandatory data (such as payment date, payor account, tender type, tender amount, currency, match type, and match entity) is specified while creating a payment request. It also checks whether auto pay source, auto pay route type, and account number are specified when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> option is selected. This algorithm is triggered when you click the <b>Manual Distribution</b> button.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You do not specify the tender and auto pay details while creating a payment transfer request.</p>

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-PaymentRequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	C1-PAY-DFT	C1-PAY-DFT	This algorithm invokes the manual distribution algorithm of the match types that you have selected while creating a payment request.
Draft	Exit	C1-PAYDFTEXT	C1-PAYDFTEXT	This algorithm checks whether the sum of the distributed payment amount is equal to the tender or transfer amount. This algorithm is triggered when you click the <b>Distribute</b> button.
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-PAY-PFA	C1-PAY-PFA	This algorithm creates the To Do using the To Do type specified in the payment request type using which the payment request is created. The To Do is sent to the users with the approval To Do role specified in the payment request type.
Approval In Progress	Exit	C1-PAYPFAEXT	C1-PAYPFAEXT	This algorithm checks whether the approver is associated with the approval To Do role specified in the payment request type. It does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the payment request.
Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm type completes To Do entries that are linked to an object when the object exits a given state. The system finds all open To Do entries with drill keys for the current business object's primary key, and completes them, unless the To Do entry's type has been configured with an Exclude To Do Type Characteristic Type indicating that it should not be automatically completed.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approved	Enter	C1-PAY-APP	C1-PAY-APP	This algorithm changes the status of the payment request to <b>Freezing</b> when the approver clicks the <b>Approve</b> button.
Distribute	Enter	C1-PAY-DIST	C1-PAY-DIST	This algorithm invokes the defer algorithm specified in the payment request type using which the payment request is created. The defer algorithm checks whether the tender or transfer amount must be distributed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode. If the tender or transfer amount must be distributed in the real time, the status of the payment request is changed to <b>Distributed</b> . However., if the tender or transfer amount must be distributed in the deferred mode, the status of the payment request is changed to <b>Deferred Distribution</b> .
Deferred Distribution	Monitor	C1-PAY-MONT	C1-PAY-MONT	This algorithm is invoked from the <b>Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)</b> batch. It changes the status of the payment request from <b>Deferred Distribution</b> to <b>Distributed</b> .
Distributed	Enter	C1-PAYCREATE	C1-PAYCREATE	This algorithm creates the payment event, payments, payment segments, and payment tender. A payment is created for each record in the <b>C1_PAY_DISTRIBUTION</b> table where the payment amount is greater than or less than zero. The status of the payments is set to <b>Freezable</b> . If any error occurs while creating a payment, the status of the payment is set to <b>Error</b> . The payment event ID is updated corresponding to the payment request in the <b>C1_PAY_REQ</b> table. Finally, the status of the payment request is changed to <b>Distributed</b> .
Distributed	Exit	C1-FRZ-VALID	C1-FRZ-VALID	This algorithm is triggered when you click the <b>Submit for Approval</b> or <b>Freeze</b> button. It checks whether the sum of payment segment amount is equal to the payment amount for each payment.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Distributed	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm completes To Do entries that are linked to an object when the object exits a given state. The system finds all open To Do entries with drill keys for the current business object's primary key, and completes them, unless the To Do entry's type has been configured with an Exclude To Do Type Characteristic Type indicating that it should not be automatically completed.
Freezing	Enter	C1-PAY-V-FRZ	C1-PAY-V-FRZ	This algorithm validates whether payment already exists on the entity. It checks the unpaid amount of the entity.
Freezing	Enter	C1-PAY-FRZ	C1-PAY-FRZ	<p>This algorithm fetches the payment event created through the payment request. If you are freezing the payments of a payment creation request, this algorithm does the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changes the status of the payments which are in the <b>Freezable</b> status to <b>Frozen</b></li> <li>Changes the status of the payment event to <b>Balanced</b> when there are no payments in the <b>Error</b> status</li> </ul> <p>However, if you are freezing the payments of a payment transfer request, this algorithm does the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changes the status of the old payments which are in the <b>Frozen</b> status to <b>Cancelled</b></li> <li>Deletes the old payments which are in the <b>Error</b> status</li> <li>Changes the status of the new payments which are in the <b>Freezable</b> status to <b>Frozen</b></li> <li>Changes the status of the payment event to <b>Balanced</b> when there are no payments in the <b>Error</b> status</li> </ul>
Processed	-	-	-	-

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Rejected	Enter	C1-PAY-RJT	C1-PAY-RJT	This algorithm is triggered when the approver clicks the <b>Reject</b> button. If you are rejecting a payment creation request, this algorithm deletes the payment event, payments, payment segments, and payment tender which are created through the payment creation request. However, if you are rejecting a payment transfer request, this algorithm deletes the new payments which are created through the payment transfer request.
Discarded	Enter	C1-PAY-RJT	C1-PAY-RJT	This algorithm is triggered when the approver clicks the <b>Reject</b> button. If you are rejecting a payment creation request, this algorithm deletes the payment event, payments, payment segments, and payment tender which are created through the payment creation request. However, if you are rejecting a payment transfer request, this algorithm deletes the new payments which are created through the payment transfer request.
Distribute And Freeze	Enter	C1-ISFREEZE	C1-ISFREEZE	This algorithm invokes the distribute algorithm and set Flag in the payment request clob.

## Algorithms Used in C1-PaymentTransferRequest

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-PaymentTransferRequest** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-PAYRQ-INF	C1-PAYRQ-INF	<p>This algorithm generates the payment request information string which appears throughout the application. This algorithm concatenates the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Payment Request Type Description</li> <li>• Payment Request Status Description</li> <li>• Payment Request ID</li> </ul>
Post-Processing	C1-PAYREQPOS	C1-PAYREQPOS	This algorithm invokes the manual distribution algorithm of the match types that are newly added while editing a payment request. It also deletes the respective match type entities from the <b>C1_PAY_DISTRIBUTION</b> table when you remove a match type while editing a payment request.

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Validation	C1-PAYREQVAL	C1-PAYREQVAL	<p>This algorithm checks whether the mandatory data (such as payment date, payor account, tender type, tender amount, currency, match type, and match entity) is specified while creating a payment request. It also checks whether auto pay source, auto pay route type, and account number are specified when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> option is selected. This algorithm is triggered when you click the <b>Manual Distribution</b> button.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You do not specify the tender and auto pay details while creating a payment transfer request.</p>

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-PaymentTransferRequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	C1-PAY-DFT	C1-PAY-DFT	This algorithm invokes the manual distribution algorithm of the match types that you have selected while creating a payment request.
Draft	Exit	C1-PAYDFTEXT	C1-PAYDFTEXT	This algorithm checks whether the sum of the distributed payment amount is equal to the tender or transfer amount. This algorithm is triggered when you click the <b>Distribute</b> button.
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-PAY-PFA	C1-PAY-PFA	This algorithm creates the To Do using the To Do type specified in the payment request type using which the payment request is created. The To Do is sent to the users with the approval To Do role specified in the payment request type.
Approval In Progress	Exit	C1-PAYPFAEXT	C1-PAYPFAEXT	This algorithm checks whether the approver is associated with the approval To Do role specified in the payment request type. It does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the payment request.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm type completes To Do entries that are linked to an object when the object exits a given state. The system finds all open To Do entries with drill keys for the current business object's primary key, and completes them, unless the To Do entry's type has been configured with an Exclude To Do Type Characteristic Type indicating that it should not be automatically completed.
Approved	Enter	C1-PAY-APP	C1-PAY-APP	This algorithm changes the status of the payment request to <b>Freezing</b> when the approver clicks the <b>Approve</b> button.
Distribute	Enter	C1-PAY-DIST	C1-PAY-DIST	This algorithm invokes the defer algorithm specified in the payment request type using which the payment request is created. The defer algorithm checks whether the tender or transfer amount must be distributed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode. If the tender or transfer amount must be distributed in the real time, the status of the payment request is changed to <b>Distributed</b> . However., if the tender or transfer amount must be distributed in the deferred mode, the status of the payment request is changed to <b>Deferred Distribution</b> .
Deferred Distribution	Monitor	C1-PAY-MONT	C1-PAY-MONT	This algorithm is invoked from the <b>Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)</b> batch. It changes the status of the payment request from <b>Deferred Distribution</b> to <b>Distributed</b> .



Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Distributed	Enter	C1-PAYTRANS	C1-PAYTRANS	This algorithm is invoked when the status of the payment transfer request is changed to <b>Distributed</b> . A payment is created for each record in the <b>C1_PAY_DISTRIBUTION</b> table where the payment amount is greater than or less than zero. The status of the new payments is set to <b>Freezable</b> . If any error occurs while creating a payment, the status of the payment is set to <b>Error</b> . The payment event ID is updated corresponding to the payment request in the <b>C1_PAY_REQ</b> table. Finally, the status of the payment request is changed to <b>Distributed</b> .
Distributed	Exit	C1-FRZ-VALID	C1-FRZ-VALID	This algorithm is triggered when you click the <b>Submit for Approval</b> or <b>Freeze</b> button. It checks whether the sum of payment segment amount is equal to the payment amount for each payment.
Distributed	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm type completes To Do entries that are linked to an object when the object exits a given state. The system finds all open To Do entries with drill keys for the current business object's primary key, and completes them, unless the To Do entry's type has been configured with an Exclude To Do Type Characteristic Type indicating that it should not be automatically completed.
Freezing	Enter	C1-PAY-V-FRZ	C1-PAY-V-FRZ	This algorithm validates the payment that already exists on the entity. It checks the unpaid amount of the entity.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Freezing	Enter	C1-PAY-FRZ	C1-PAY-FRZ	<p>This algorithm fetches the payment event created through the payment request. If you are freezing the payments of a payment creation request, this algorithm does the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changes the status of the payments which are in the <b>Freezable</b> status to <b>Frozen</b></li> <li>• Changes the status of the payment event to <b>Balanced</b> when there are no payments in the <b>Error</b> status</li> </ul> <p>However, if you are freezing the payments of a payment transfer request, this algorithm does the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changes the status of the old payments which are in the <b>Frozen</b> status to <b>Cancelled</b></li> <li>• Deletes the old payments which are in the <b>Error</b> status</li> <li>• Changes the status of the new payments which are in the <b>Freezable</b> status to <b>Frozen</b></li> <li>• Changes the status of the payment event to <b>Balanced</b> when there are no payments in the <b>Error</b> status</li> </ul>
Processed	-	-	-	-
Rejected	Enter	C1-PAY-RJT	C1-PAY-RJT	<p>This algorithm is triggered when the approver clicks the <b>Reject</b> button. If you are rejecting a payment creation request, this algorithm deletes the payment event, payments, payment segments, and payment tender which are created through the payment creation request. However, if you are rejecting a payment transfer request, this algorithm deletes the new payments which are created through the payment transfer request.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Discarded	Enter	C1-PAY-RJT	C1-PAY-RJT	This algorithm is triggered when the approver clicks the <b>Reject</b> button. If you are rejecting a payment creation request, this algorithm deletes the payment event, payments, payment segments, and payment tender which are created through the payment creation request. However, if you are rejecting a payment transfer request, this algorithm deletes the new payments which are created through the payment transfer request.
Distribute And Freeze	Enter	C1-ISFREEZE	C1-ISFREEZE	This algorithm invokes the distribute algorithm and set Flag in payment request clob.
Cancel	-	-	-	-

## Payment Request Type

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define a payment request type using which you can create a payment request. A payment request of the specified payment request type is created when you manually distribute the tender or payment amount. It is the payment request type which helps the system to determine:



- Whether to create payment transfer or payment creation request
- Whether payment events and payments must be created in real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode
- Whether payment creation or transfer instructions must be approved by the approver before freezing payments

The **Payment Request Type** screen allows you to define, edit, copy, and delete a payment request type. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Payment Request Type List](#) on page 935
- [Payment Request Type](#) on page 936

## Payment Request Type List

The **Payment Request Type List** zone lists payment request types that are already defined in the system. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payment Request Type	Displays the payment request type.
Description	Displays the description of the payment request type.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Payment Request Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the payment request type.
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Payment Request Type</b> screen appears where you can define a payment request type using an existing payment request type.

Column Name	Column Description
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (🗑️) icon, you can delete the payment request type.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a payment request type only when you have not created a payment request using the payment request type.

On clicking the **Broadcast** (📡) icon corresponding to a payment request type, the **Payment Request Type** zone appears with the details of the respective payment request type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a payment request type	<a href="#">Defining a Payment Request Type</a> on page 938
How to edit a payment request type	<a href="#">Editing a Payment Request Type</a> on page 942
How to copy a payment request type	<a href="#">Copying a Payment Request Type</a> on page 945
How to delete a payment request type	<a href="#">Deleting a Payment Request Type</a> on page 948
How to view the details of a payment request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Payment Request Type Details</a> on page 949

## Payment Request Type

The **Payment Request Type** zone displays the details of the payment request type. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Main** — This section provides basic information about the payment request type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Payment Request Type	Displays the payment request type.
Payment Request Business Object	Indicates the business object that will be used to create the payment request. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Description	Displays the description of the payment request type.
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the payment request type.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>
Transfer	Indicates whether the payment request type will be used to create payment transfer or payment creation request.

Field Name	Field Description
Defer Algorithm	<p>Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered when you distribute tender or payment amount. This algorithm checks whether the number of payment distribution records in the payment request exceeds the payment count (defined in the Defer algorithm). If the number of payment distribution records in the payment request does not exceed the payment count, the system distributes tender or payment amount and accordingly creates payment event and payments in real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of payment distribution records in the payment request exceeds the payment count, the system distributes tender or payment amount in the deferred mode.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Number of payment distribution records = (Number of bill segments present in each bill fetched using the Bill Weighted, Bill Regular, and Bill match type algorithm) + (Number of bill segments fetched using the Bill Segment match type algorithm) + (Number of contracts fetched using the Suspense Contract match type algorithm) + (Number of settlements fetched using the Settlement match type algorithm)</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Algorithm</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective algorithm.</p>
Approval Required	Indicates whether approval is required while freezing payments of the payment requests which are created using the payment request type.
Approval To Do Type	<p>Indicates that To Do of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the payment request for approval.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Type</b> screen appears with the details of the respective To Do type.</p>
Approval To Do Role	<p>Indicates that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the payment request submitted for approval.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Role</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective To Do role.</p>

- **Characteristics** — This section lists the characteristics defined for the payment request type. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.


- **Record Actions** — This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the payment request type.

Button Name	Button Description
Delete	Used to delete the payment request type.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a payment request type only when you have not created a payment request using the payment request type.
Duplicate	Used to create a new payment request type using an existing payment request type.

- **Record Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the payment request type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

By default, the **Payment Request Type** zone does not appear in the **Payment Request Type** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a payment request type in the **Payment Request Type List** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a payment request type	<a href="#">Defining a Payment Request Type</a> on page 938
How to edit a payment request type	<a href="#">Editing a Payment Request Type</a> on page 942
How to copy a payment request type	<a href="#">Copying a Payment Request Type</a> on page 945
How to delete a payment request type	<a href="#">Deleting a Payment Request Type</a> on page 948
How to view the details of a payment request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Payment Request Type Details</a> on page 949

## Defining a Payment Request Type

### Prerequisites

To define a payment request type, you should have:

- Payment request business objects defined in the application
- Defer algorithm defined using the **C1-PAY-COUNT** algorithm type
- **C1-PAYRQ** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting a payment request for approval

### Procedure

To define a payment request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Payment Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Payment Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Request Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use to create the payment request type.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Business Object** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Payment Request Type** screen.

**Note:** The **Select Business Object** screen appears only when there are multiple payment request type business objects defined in the application. If there is only one payment request type business object defined in the application, the **Payment Request Type** screen appears.


4. Select the required payment request type business object from the respective field.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Payment Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the payment request type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the payment request type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Request Type	Used to specify the payment request type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the payment request type business object used while defining the payment request type.	Not applicable
Payment Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the payment request.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the payment request type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the payment request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the payment request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Transfer	Used to indicate whether the payment request type will be used to create payment transfer or payment creation request.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Defer Algorithm	<p>Used to attach an algorithm that will be triggered when you distribute tender or payment amount. This algorithm checks whether the number of payment distribution records in the payment request exceeds the payment count (defined in the Defer algorithm). If the number of payment distribution records in the payment request does not exceed the payment count, the system distributes tender or payment amount and accordingly creates payment event and payments in real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of payment distribution records in the payment request exceeds the payment count, the system distributes tender or payment amount in the deferred mode.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Number of payment distribution records = (Number of bill segments present in each bill fetched using the Bill Weighted, Bill Regular, and Bill match type algorithm) + (Number of bill segments fetched using the Bill Segment match type algorithm) + (Number of contracts fetched using the Suspense Contract match type algorithm) + (Number of settlements fetched using the Settlement match type algorithm)</p> <p>Deferred mode means in the background when the <b>Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)</b> batch is invoked. You can configure the <b>Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)</b> batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the <b>Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)</b> batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any payment requests in the <b>Deferred Distribution</b> status. If there is a payment request in the <b>Deferred Distribution</b> status, the system distributes tender or payment amount and accordingly creates payment event and payments.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	Yes
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required while freezing payments of the payment requests which are created using the payment request type.	No
Approval To Do Type	<p>Used to indicate that To Do of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the payment request for approval.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p>	<p>Yes (Conditional)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p>



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the payment request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.

6. Enter the required details.

**Note:** You can search for an algorithm and To Do type by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

7. Define characteristics for the payment request type, if required.  
8. Click **Save**.

The payment request type is defined.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request Type</a> on page 935
<b>Payment Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request Type List</a> on page 935
How to define characteristics for a payment request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Payment Request Type</a> on page 941

## Defining Characteristics for a Payment Request Type

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a payment request type, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Payment Request Type**)

### Procedure

To define characteristics for a payment request type:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a payment request type.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Payment Request Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment request type.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment request type.

2. Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the payment request type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the payment request type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a payment request type	<a href="#">Defining a Payment Request Type</a> on page 938
How to edit a payment request type	<a href="#">Editing a Payment Request Type</a> on page 942
How to copy a payment request type	<a href="#">Copying a Payment Request Type</a> on page 945

## Editing a Payment Request Type

### Prerequisites


To edit a payment request type, you should have:

- Payment request business objects defined in the application
- Defer algorithm defined using the **C1-PAY-COUNT** algorithm type
- **C1-PAYRQ** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting a payment request for approval

### Procedure

To edit a payment request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Payment Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Payment Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Payment Request Type** screen appears.


4. In the **Payment Request Type List** zone, click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the payment request type whose details you want to edit.

The **Payment Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the payment request type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the payment request type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Request Type	Displays the payment request type.	Not applicable
Business Object	Indicates the payment request type business object used while defining the payment request type.	Not applicable
Payment Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the payment request.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the payment request type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the payment request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the payment request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Transfer	Used to indicate whether the payment request type will be used to create payment transfer or payment creation request.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Defer Algorithm	<p>Used to attach an algorithm that will be triggered when you distribute tender or payment amount. This algorithm checks whether the number of payment distribution records in the payment request exceeds the payment count (defined in the Defer algorithm). If the number of payment distribution records in the payment request does not exceed the payment count, the system distributes tender or payment amount and accordingly creates payment event and payments in real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of payment distribution records in the payment request exceeds the payment count, the system distributes tender or payment amount in the deferred mode.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Number of payment distribution records = (Number of bill segments present in each bill fetched using the Bill Weighted, Bill Regular, and Bill match type algorithm) + (Number of bill segments fetched using the Bill Segment match type algorithm) + (Number of contracts fetched using the Suspense Contract match type algorithm) + (Number of settlements fetched using the Settlement match type algorithm)</p> <p>Deferred mode means in the background when the <b>Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)</b> batch is invoked. You can configure the <b>Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)</b> batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the <b>Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)</b> batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any payment requests in the <b>Deferred Distribution</b> status. If there is a payment request in the <b>Deferred Distribution</b> status, the system distributes tender or payment amount and accordingly creates payment event and payments.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	Yes
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required while freezing payments of the payment requests which are created using the payment request type.	No
Approval To Do Type	<p>Used to indicate that To Do of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the payment request for approval.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p>	<p>Yes (Conditional)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p>

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the payment request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Payment Request Type** zone to edit the details of the payment request type.

5. Modify the required details.

**Note:** You can search for an algorithm and To Do type by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the payment request type, if required.

7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the payment request type are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request Type</a> on page 935
<b>Payment Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request Type List</a> on page 935
<b>Payment Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request Type</a> on page 936
How to define characteristics for a payment request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Payment Request Type</a> on page 941

## Copying a Payment Request Type

Instead of creating a payment request type from scratch, you can create a new payment request type using an existing payment request type. This is possible through copying a payment request type. On copying a payment request type, the details including the characteristics are copied to the new payment request type. You can then edit the details, if required.

### Prerequisites

To copy a payment request type, you should have:

- Payment request type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Payment request business objects defined in the application
- Defer algorithm defined using the **C1-PAY-COUNT** algorithm type
- **C1-PAYRQ** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting a payment request for approval

### Procedure


To copy a payment request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Payment Request Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Payment Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Payment Request Type** screen appears.


- In the **Payment Request Type List** zone, click the **Duplicate**  icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the payment request type whose copy you want to create.

The **Payment Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** - Used to specify basic details about the payment request type.
- Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the payment request type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Request Type	Used to specify the payment request type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the payment request type business object used while defining the payment request type.	Not applicable
Payment Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the payment request.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the payment request type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the payment request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the payment request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Transfer	Used to indicate whether the payment request type will be used to create payment transfer or payment creation request.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Defer Algorithm	Used to attach an algorithm that will be triggered when you distribute tender or payment amount. This algorithm checks whether the number of payment distribution records in the payment request exceeds the payment count (defined in the Defer algorithm). If the number of payment distribution records in the payment request does not exceed the payment count, the system distributes tender or payment amount and accordingly creates payment event and payments in real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of payment distribution records in the payment request exceeds the payment count, the system distributes tender or payment amount in the deferred mode.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Number of payment distribution records = (Number of bill segments present in each bill fetched using the Bill Weighted, Bill Regular, and Bill match type algorithm) + (Number of bill segments fetched using the Bill Segment match type algorithm) + (Number of contracts fetched using the Suspense Contract match type algorithm) + (Number of settlements fetched using the Settlement match type algorithm)  Deferred mode means in the background when the <b>Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)</b> batch is invoked. You can configure the <b>Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)</b> batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the <b>Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)</b> batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any payment requests in the <b>Deferred Distribution</b> status. If there is a payment request in the <b>Deferred Distribution</b> status, the system distributes tender or payment amount and accordingly creates payment event and payments.	
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required while freezing payments of the payment requests which are created using the payment request type.	No
Approval To Do Type	Used to indicate that To Do of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the payment request for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the payment request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Duplicate** button in the **Payment Request Type** zone to create a copy of the payment request type.

- Enter the required details.

**Note:** You can search for an algorithm and To Do type by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

- Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the payment request type, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The new payment request type is defined.


### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request Type</a> on page 935
<b>Payment Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request Type List</a> on page 935
<b>Payment Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request Type</a> on page 936
How to define characteristics for a payment request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Payment Request Type</a> on page 941

## **Deleting a Payment Request Type**

### **Procedure**

To delete a payment request type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Payment Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Payment Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Payment Request Type** screen appears.
- In the **Payment Request Type List** zone, click the **Delete**  icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the payment request type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the payment request type.

**Note:** You can delete a payment request type only when you have not created a payment request using the payment request type.



**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Delete** button in the **Payment Request Type** zone to delete the payment request type.

5. Click **OK**.

The payment request type is deleted.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request Type</a> on page 935
<b>Payment Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request Type List</a> on page 935
<b>Payment Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request Type</a> on page 936

## Viewing the Payment Request Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a payment request type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Payment Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Payment Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Payment Request Type** screen appears.
- In the **Payment Request Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment request type whose details you want to view.  
The **Payment Request Type** zone appears.
- View the details of the payment request type in the **Payment Request Type** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request Type</a> on page 935
<b>Payment Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request Type List</a> on page 935
<b>Payment Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request Type</a> on page 936

## Payment Request (Used for Searching)

The **Payment Request** screen allows you to search for a payment creation or transfer request using various search criteria. It also allows you to create payment creation and transfer requests. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screens:

- [Payment Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 954

This screen consists of the following zones:



- [Search Payment Request](#) on page 950

## Search Payment Request

The **Search Payment Request** zone allows you to search for a payment request using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a payment request using request or payment details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Request Details</li> <li>• Payment Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected.	
On or Before Creation Date/Time	Used to search payment requests which are created till a particular date and time.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current date and time appears in this field.  This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Payment Request Status	Used to search payment requests with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Deferred Distribution</li> <li>• Discarded</li> <li>• Distribute And Freeze</li> <li>• Distributed</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Payment Request Type	Used to search payment requests which are created using a particular payment request type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
User ID	Used to search payment requests which are created by a particular user.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Payment Request ID	Used to search a particular payment request.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Payment Event ID	Used to search a payment request through which a payment event is created.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Payment Event Search</b> window appears.	
Payor Account ID	Used to search payment requests which are created for a particular payor account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears.	
Payor Name	Used to search payment requests which are created for a particular payor.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Payment Date	Used to search payment requests through which payments are created on a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a payment request.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the payment request was created in the system.
Payment Request Information	Displays information about the payment request. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment Request</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payment request.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Deferred Distribution</li> <li>• Distributed</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> </ul>
Payment Event Information	Displays information about the payment event which is created through the payment request. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment Event</b> screen appears with the details of the respective payment event.
Created By	Indicates the user who has created the payment request.
Payor Account Information	Displays information about the payor's account for which the payment request is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
How to create a payment request	<a href="#">Creating a Payment Creation Request</a> on page 962
How to view the details of a payment request	<a href="#">Viewing the Payment Request Details</a> on page 953

## Searching for a Payment Request

### Prerequisites

To search for a payment request, you should have:

- Payment request types defined in the application

### Procedure

To search for a payment request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

- From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Payment Request**.

A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Payment Request** sub-menu.

The **Payment Request** screen appears.

- Enter the search criteria in the **Search Payment Request** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.

A list of payment requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 949
<b>Search Payment Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Payment Request</a> on page 950

## Viewing the Payment Request Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a payment request:

- Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request whose details you want to view.

The **Payment Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
    - **Payment Request** – Displays the details of the payment request.
    - **Payment Distribution** – Lists the payment distribution records of the payment request.
  - **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the payment request.
- View the details of the payment request in the **Payment Request** zone.
  - View the payment distribution records of the payment request in the **Payment Distribution** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Distribution</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Distribution</a> on page 960

## Payment Request (Used for Viewing)

Once you create a payment creation or transfer request, the **Payment Request** screen allows you to:

- Edit the details of a payment request
- Edit the payment amount against each entity
- Delete a payment request
- View the details of a payment request
- Distribute the tender or payment amount
- Edit the amount of a payment segment
- Freeze the payments created through a payment request
- Submit a payment request for approval before freezing payments
- Approve or reject a payment request
- View the log of a payment request
- Add a log entry for a payment request

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
  - **Payment Request** – Displays the details of the payment request.
  - **Payment Distribution** – Lists the payment distribution records of the payment request.
- **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the payment request.

### Payment Request

The **Payment Request** zone displays the details of the payment request. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Main** — This section provides basic information about the payment request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Payment Request Information	Displays information about the payment request.
Payment Request Type	Indicates the payment request type using which the payment request is created. <div> <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment Request Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the payment request type.           </div>
Payment Request Status	Indicates the status of the payment request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Deferred Distribution</li> <li>• Distributed</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> </ul>

Field Name	Field Description
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the payment request is rejected.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Rejected</b> status. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Status Reason</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rejected reason.
Payor Account Information	Displays information about the payor's account for which the payment request is created.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are viewing the details of a payment creation request. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.
Payment Date	Displays the date when the payment event and payments are created.
Payment Event Information	Displays information about the payment event. If you are viewing the details of a payment creation request, this field displays information about the payment event which is created through the payment creation request. However, if you are viewing the details of a payment transfer request, this field displays information about the payment event whose payments you want to transfer.
	<b>Note:</b> This field does not appear when the payment request is in the <b>Rejected</b> status. If you are viewing the details of a payment creation request, this field does not appear when the payment creation request is in the <b>Draft</b> status. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment Event</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payment event.
Transfer Amount	Displays the total payment amount which you want to transfer.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are viewing the details of a payment transfer request.
Transfer Reason	Indicates the reason why you want to transfer the payment amount.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are viewing the details of a payment transfer request.

- **Tender Details** — This section provides details about the tender used in the payment request. This section appears only when you are viewing the details of a payment creation request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Tender Type	Indicates the type of tender through which the payment was made.
Tender Amount	Displays the tender amount.

Field Name	Field Description
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.
Check Number	Displays the check number if the payment is made through check.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the tender type is set to <b>Check</b> .
Auto Pay Route Type Code	Indicates when and how automatic payment request of the account is routed to a financial institution.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.
Schedule Extract Date	Displays the date when the automatic payment request is scheduled to be sent to a financial institution.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.
Auto Pay Source Code	Indicates the financial institution that receives the automatic payment request.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.
Distribution and Freeze Date	Displays the date when the automatic payment must be distributed and frozen in the system.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.
Account Number	Indicates the bank account number through which the automatic payment was made.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.
Expires On	Displays the date when the tender type will expire.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.
Name	Displays the name of the person as maintained in the financial institution's system.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.



Field Name	Field Description
Tender Control Information	Displays information about the tender control which is created when the payment event and payments are created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Distributed</b>, <b>Approval In Progress</b>, <b>Processed</b> , or <b>Rejected</b> status.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Tender Control</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective tender control.</p>
Deposit Control Information	Displays information about the deposit control which is created when the payment event and payments are created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Distributed</b>, <b>Approval In Progress</b>, <b>Processed</b>, or <b>Rejected</b> status.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Deposit Control</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective deposit control.</p>
Pay Tender ID	Displays the payment tender ID.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Processed</b> status.
Tender Status	Indicates the current status of the tender. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Valid</li> <li>Cancelled</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Processed</b> status.
MICR ID	Displays the MICR code on the payment.
Ext. Reference ID	Displays the external reference number of the payment on the payment upload interface record.
Person ID	Indicates the person's account ID mentioned in the payment upload interface record.
Name	Indicates the person mentioned in the payment upload interface record.

- **Characteristics** — This section lists the characteristics defined for the payment tender. It appears only when you are viewing the details of a payment creation request. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Match Types** — This section lists the match type details of the payment request. This section appears only when you are viewing the details of a payment creation request. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which you want to match the payment.
Match By	Indicates the bill or account (whose entities, such as unpaid bills, unpaid bill segments, settlement IDs, or contracts) must be considered while matching the payment.

- **Payor Account Details** — This section appears only when you are viewing the details of a payment transfer request. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payor Account Information	Displays information about the payor's account whose payments you want to transfer.

- **Payment Details** — This section appears only when you are viewing the details of a payment transfer request. It contains the **Show Payments** link. On clicking the link, the **Payment** screen appears where you can view the details of the payment that you want to transfer. In case, you want to transfer multiple payments, the **Payment Search** window appears with the list of payments selected for transfer. You can click the individual payment to view the details in the **Payment** screen. The **Show Payments** link does not appear when you are viewing the details of a payment transfer request which is in the **Processed** status. Instead, the following column appears in this section:

Column Name	Column Description
Payment(s)	Displays information about the payment which is cancelled.

- **Record Actions** — This section contains the following buttons:

Column Name	Column Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the payment request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Delete	Used to delete the payment request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Distribute	Used to distribute the tender or payment amount.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Distribute</b> button appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Submit for Approval	Used to submit the payment request for approval.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit for Approval</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The payment request is in the <b>Distributed</b> status.</li> <li>• The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected in the payment request type using which the payment request is created.</li> </ul>

Column Name	Column Description
Freeze	Used to freeze the payments which are created through the payment request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Freeze</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The payment request is in the <b>Distributed</b> status.</li> <li>The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is not selected in the payment request type using which the payment request is created.</li> </ul>
Approve	Used to approve the payment request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Approve</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The payment request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the payment request.</li> </ul>
Reject	Used to reject the payment request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Reject</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The payment request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the payment request.</li> </ul>
Back to Draft	Used to change the status of the payment request to <b>Draft</b> .
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Back to Draft</b> button appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Distributed</b> status.
Discard	Used to discard the payment creation or transfer request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Discard</b> button appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Distributed</b> status.
Distribute And Freeze	Used to distribute and freeze the payments at the same time.
	<b>Note:</b> the <b>Distribute And Freeze</b> button appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.

- **Record Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the payment request is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the payment request status is updated
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the payment request is created.

## Payment Distribution

The **Payment Distribution** zone lists the payment distribution records of the payment request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the payment was matched.
Payee Account ID	Indicates the account for which the payment was made.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.
Match Value	Indicates the entity (such as bill ID, bill segment ID, contract ID, or settlement ID) against which the payment was matched.
Match Entity	Indicates the type of entity against which the payment was matched. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bill</li> <li>• Bill Segment</li> <li>• Contract</li> <li>• Settlement</li> </ul>
Amount	Displays the entity amount. In case of contract, the entity amount would be zero.
Write Off Adjustment Amount	Indicates the amount which is either write up or down when the payment against the bill is within the tolerance limit.  <b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the match type is <b>Bill Weighted</b> and the payment amount is within the underpayment or overpayment tolerance limit. This column does not appear when the payment request is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.
Paid Amount	Displays the amount which is already paid against the entity.  <b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.
Unpaid Amount	Displays the amount which is eligible for payment against the entity.  <b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.
Payment Amount	Displays the payment amount. If the <b>Show Default</b> check box is not selected against a match type while creating the payment request, the payment amount against the respective match type entities is set to zero. However, if the <b>Show Default</b> check box is selected against a match type while creating the payment request, the payment amount appears against the respective match type entities. The tender amount is divided among the entities in the sequence of match types (where <b>Show Default</b> check box is selected) followed by the sequence of bill, bill segment, or contract start date. You can edit the payment amount, if required.
Payment Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.

Column Name	Column Description
Payment ID	Displays the payment ID.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment</b> screen appears with the details of the respective payment.</p> <p>This column does not appear when the payment request is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.</p>
Payment Status	<p>Indicates the status of the payment. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Canceled</li> <li>• Error</li> <li>• Freezable</li> <li>• Frozen</li> <li>• Incomplete</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column does not appear when the payment request is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.</p>
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the payment is in the <b>Error</b> status.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column does not appear when the payment request is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.</p>
Detail	On clicking the <b>Detail</b> button, the <b>Edit Payment Segment Amount</b> screen appears where you can edit the payment segment amount.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column does not appear when the payment request is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.</p> <p>The <b>Detail</b> button appears in the <b>Detail</b> column only when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The payment request is in the <b>Distributed</b> or <b>Approval In Progress</b> status</li> <li>• The payment is in the <b>Freezable</b> status.</li> </ul> <p>However, a user with the approval To Do role will not be able to edit the payment segment amount.</p>
Redistribute	On clicking the <b>Redistribute</b> button, you can redistribute the payment amount among the payment segments.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column appears only when the payment request is in the <b>Distributed</b> or <b>Distribute and Freeze</b> status.</p> <p>The <b>Redistribute</b> button appears in the <b>Redistribute</b> column only when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The payment request is in the <b>Distributed</b> or <b>Approval In Progress</b> status</li> </ul>

You can edit the payment amount by clicking the **Update Payment Amount** button in the upper right corner of this zone.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to edit the payment amount against each entity	<a href="#">Editing the Payment Amount</a> on page 968

## Creating a Payment Creation Request

### Prerequisites

To create a payment creation request, you should have:

- Payment request types defined in the application (where the **Transfer** check box is not selected)

### Procedure

To create a payment creation request:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Payment Request**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Add** option from the **Payment Request** sub-menu.

The **Select Payment Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Request Type	Used to indicate the payment request type using which you want to create the payment request.  <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those payment request types where the <b>Transfer</b> check box is not selected.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Payment Request Type** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Payment Request** screen.

- Select the required payment request type from the respective field.
- Click **OK**.

The **Payment Request** screen appears. It contains the following sections:


- Main** - Used to specify basic details about the payment request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Request Type	Indicates the payment request type using which you want to create the payment request.	Not applicable
Payor Account Information	Used to indicate the payor account for which you want to create the payment request.  <b>Note:</b> On specify the account ID, additional information about the account appears corresponding to this field.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Date	Used to specify the date when the payment was made.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current date appears in this field.	

- **Tender Details** - Used to specify the tender details in the payment request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Tender Type	Used to indicate the type of tender through which the payment was made.	Yes
Tender Amount	Used to specify the tender amount.	Yes
Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which the payment was made.	Yes
Check Number	Used to specify the check number if the payment is made through check.	No
Auto Pay Route Type Code	Used to indicate when and how automatic payment request of the account is routed to a financial institution.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	
Schedule Extract Date	Displays the date when the automatic payment request is scheduled to be sent to a financial institution.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	
Auto Pay Source Code	Used to indicate the financial institution that receives the automatic payment request.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	
Distribution and Freeze Date	Displays the date when the automatic payment must be distributed and freed in the system.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Number	Used to indicate the bank account number through which the automatic payment was made.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.
Expires On	Used to specify the date when the tender type will expire.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	
Name	Used to specify the name of the person as maintained in the financial institution's system.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	
MICR ID	Used to specify the MICR code on the payment.	No
Ext. Reference ID	Used to specify the external reference number of the payment on the payment upload interface record.	No
Person ID	Used to indicate the person's account ID mentioned in the payment upload interface record.	No
Name	Used to indicate the person mentioned in the payment upload interface record.	No
Tender Control ID	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Tender Control Search</b> window appears.	


**Note:** If the auto pay instructions are defined for the payor account, by default, the auto pay data appears in the **Auto Pay Route Type Code**, **Auto Pay Source Code**, **Account Number**, **Expires On**, and **Name** fields.

- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the payment tender. This section contains the following fields:




Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Payment Tender</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment tender.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment tender.



- **Match Types** - Used to define match types for the payment request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Match Type	Used to indicate the match type using which you want to match the payment.	Yes
Show Default	Used to indicate whether the default payment amount should be displayed against the match type entities.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Show Default</b> check box is selected when you select the match type.	
Entity	<p>Indicates the match type entity. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Account</b> — Enables you to select the account whose unpaid bills, unpaid bill segments, settlement IDs, or contracts must be considered while matching the payment.</li> <li>• <b>Bill</b> — Enables you to select the unpaid bill against which you want to match the payment.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears.</p>	Not applicable
Entity ID	Used to specify the account or bill ID depending on the match type entity.	Yes

6. Enter the required details.

**Note:**

You can search for a payor account, auto pay route type, auto pay source, and entity by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

If you want to specify more than one match type within the payment request, click the **Add**  icon in the **Match Types** section and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a match type from the payment request, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the match type.

- Define characteristics for the payment tender, if required.
- Click **Manual Distribution**.
 

The payment request is created and the status of the payment request is set to **Draft**. The **Payment Request** screen appears. Depending on the match type and match entity specified while creating the payment request, the following entities are listed in the **Payment Distribution** zone:

Match Type	Match Entity	Entities
By Bill Regular	Account	Unpaid bills of the account
By Bill Weighted	Account	Unpaid bills of the account
By Bill	Bill	Unpaid bill
By Bill Segments	Account	Unpaid bill segments
By Suspense Contract	Account	<div>Contracts of the account</div> <div> <b>Note:</b> Only contracts of the contract type where the <b>Eligible for Billing</b> flag is set to <b>No</b> and <b>Special Role</b> flag is set to <b>Suspense</b> are listed in the <b>Payment Distribution</b> zone. If no contracts with this specification exist for the account, the system checks whether there is any such contract type (where the <b>Eligible for Billing</b> flag is set to <b>No</b> and <b>Special Role</b> flag is set to <b>Suspense</b>) defined for the division to which the account belongs. If there is any such contract type defined for the division, the system creates the contract for the account using the respective contract type and the same is listed in <b>Payment Distribution</b> zone.           </div>
By Settlement	Account	Unpaid bill segments where the settlement account is stamped

If the **Show Default** check box is not selected against a match type while creating the payment request, the payment amount against the respective match type entities is set to zero. However, if the **Show Default** check box is selected against a match type, the payment amount appears against the respective match type entities. The tender amount is divided among the entities in the sequence of match types (where **Show Default** check box is selected) followed by the sequence of bill, bill segment, or contract start date. You can then edit the payment amount, if required.

**Note:**

If a payment request is already created for a payee account and is currently in progress, the system will not allow you to create another payment request for the payee account until the previous payment request is in the **Processed** or **Rejected** status.

The system does not allow you to create a payment request for a payee account when the respective match type entities (such as unpaid bills, unpaid bill segments, contracts, or settlement IDs do not exists for the payee account.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Search Payment Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Payment Request</a> on page 950
How to define characteristics for a payment tender	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Payment Tender</a> on page 967
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Distribution</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Distribution</a> on page 960

**Defining Characteristics for a Payment Tender****Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a payment tender, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Payment Tender**)

**Procedure**


To define characteristics for a payment tender:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a payment request.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Payment Tender</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment tender.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment tender.

2. Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the payment tender, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the payment tender, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to create a payment creation request	<a href="#">Creating a Payment Creation Request</a> on page 962
How to edit a payment request	<a href="#">Editing a Payment Request</a> on page 970

**Editing the Payment Amount**

**Procedure**

To edit the payment amount against each entity:

- Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request whose details you want to edit.

The **Payment Request** screen appears.

- Click the **Update Payment Amount** button in the upper right corner of the **Payment Distribution** zone.

The **Edit Payment Amount** screen appears. It contains the following two sections:

- Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section allows you to filter the payment distribution records using various search criteria. It contains the following fields:





Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Match Type	Used to search the entities which are considered using a particular match type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>All</b> option is selected.	
Entity ID	Used to search entities which belong to a particular account.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>All</b> option is selected.	
Match Value	Used to search for a particular entity (such as bill, bill segment, contract, or settlement ID).	No
Sort By	Used to sort entity information as per the match type defined in the <b>C1-PYREQSRT</b> feature configuration.	No

- Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the entity is considered.
Payee Information	Displays information about the account for which the payment was made.
Entity Information	Displays information about the entity against which the payment was matched.
Amount	Displays the entity amount. In case of contract, the entity amount would be zero.
Paid Amount	Displays the amount which is already paid against the entity.
Unpaid Amount	Displays the amount which is eligible for payment against the entity.
Payment Amount	Used to specify the payment amount.  <b>Note:</b> If the <b>Allow Overpayment</b> option type of the <b>C1-PAYPORTAL</b> feature configuration is set to <b>true</b> , you can specify the payment amount greater than the unpaid amount. In other words, you can make overpayment against an entity.
Payment Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.

In addition, the **Search Results** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Total Amount	Displays the tender or transfer amount.
Running Total	Displays the sum of payment amount specified against each entity.
Running Balance	Displays the difference between total amount and running total. The running balance is highlighted in the red color when the difference amount is non-zero.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Edit Payment Amount** screen. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** (  ), **Previous** (  ), **Next** (  ), and **Last** (  ) to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

4. Modify the payment amount against an entity, if required.

**Note:** The sum of payment amount should be equal to the tender or transfer (payment) amount.

5. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the payment request are saved.

6. Click **Close**.

The payment amount is updated in the **Payment Distribution** zone.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954

For more information on...	See...
Payment Distribution zone	<a href="#">Payment Distribution</a> on page 960

## Editing a Payment Request

### Procedure

To edit a payment request:


1. Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request whose details you want to edit.

The **Payment Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Payment Request** zone.

The **Payment Request** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the payment request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Request Information	Displays information about the payment request.	Not applicable
Payment Request Type	Indicates the payment request type using which the payment request is created.	Not applicable
Payor Account Information	Used to indicate the payor account for which you want to create the payment request.  <div> <b>Note:</b> On specify the account ID, additional information about the account appears corresponding to this field.   The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Account Search</b> screen appears. </div>	Yes
Payment Date	Used to specify the date when the payment was made.	Yes

- **Tender Details** - Used to specify the tender details in the payment request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Tender Type	Used to indicate the type of tender through which the payment was made.	Yes
Tender Amount	Used to specify the tender amount.	Yes
Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which the payment was made.	Yes
Check Number	Used to specify the check number if the payment is made through check.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Auto Pay Route Type Code	Used to indicate when and how automatic payment request of the account is routed to a financial institution.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.
Schedule Extract Date	Displays the date when the automatic payment request is scheduled to be sent to a financial institution.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	
Auto Pay Source Code	Used to indicate the financial institution that receives the automatic payment request.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.
Distribution and Freeze Date	Displays the date when the automatic payment must be distributed and freed in the system.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	
Account Number	Used to indicate the bank account number through which the automatic payment was made.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.
Expires On	Used to specify the date when the tender type will expire.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	
Name	Used to specify the name of the person as maintained in the financial institution's system.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a tender type where the <b>Generate Auto Pay</b> check box is selected.	
MICR ID	Used to specify the MICR code on the payment.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Ext. Reference ID	Used to specify the external reference number of the payment on the payment upload interface record.	No
Person ID	Used to indicate the person's account ID mentioned in the payment upload interface record.	No
Name	Used to indicate the person mentioned in the payment upload interface record.	No

**Note:** If the auto pay instructions are defined for the payor account, by default, the auto pay data appears in the **Auto Pay Route Type Code**, **Auto Pay Source Code**, **Account Number**, **Expires On**, and **Name** fields.

- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the payment tender. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Payment Tender</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment tender.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment tender.

- **Match Types** - Used to define match types for the payment request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Match Type	Used to indicate the match type using which you want to match the payment.	Yes
Show Default	Used to indicate whether the default payment amount should be displayed against the match type entities.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Show Default</b> check box is selected when you select the match type.	






Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Entity	Indicates the match type entity. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Account</b> — Enables you to select the account whose unpaid bills, unpaid bill segments, settlement IDs, or contracts must be considered while matching the payment.</li> <li><b>Bill</b> — Enables you to select the unpaid bill against which you want to match the payment.</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Entity ID	Used to specify the account or bill ID depending on the match type entity.	Yes

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the payment request is in the **Draft** status.

4. Modify the details of the payment request, if required.

**Note:**

You can search for a payor account, auto pay route type, auto pay source, and entity by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

If you want to specify more than one match type within the payment request, click the **Add**  icon in the **Match Types** section and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a match type from the payment request, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the match type.

You cannot edit an existing row in the **Match Types** section. If you want to edit the details of an existing row, you need to first remove the row and then add it again with the updated information.

5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the payment request, if required.

6. Click **Manual Distribution**.

The changes made to the payment request are saved. Depending on the information specified in the **Match Types** section, the entities are listed in the **Payment Distribution** zone. You can edit the payment amount against each entity, if required.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Distribution</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Distribution</a> on page 960
How to define characteristics for a payment tender	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Payment Tender</a> on page 967

## Deleting a Payment Request

### Procedure

To delete a payment request:

1. Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request that you want to delete.

The **Payment Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Payment Request** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the payment request.

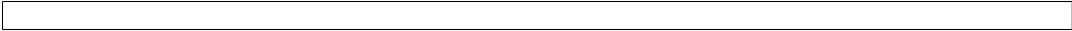
**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the payment request is in the **Draft** status.

4. Click **OK**.

The payment request is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request</a> on page 954



**Distributing the Tender or Payment Amount**

**Procedure**

To distribute the tender or payment amount:

1. Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request whose tender or payment amount you want to distribute.

The **Payment Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Distribute** button in the **Payment Request** zone.

The **Defer** algorithm attached to the payment request type using which you have created the payment request is triggered. This algorithm checks whether the number of payment distribution records in the payment request exceeds the payment count defined in the **Defer** algorithm. If the number of payment distribution records in the payment request does not exceed the payment count, the system distributes the tender or payment amount in real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of payment distribution records in the payment request exceeds the payment count, the system distributes the tender or payment amount in the deferred mode.

**Note:**

Number of payment distribution records = (Number of bill segments present in each bill fetched using the Bill Weighted, Bill Regular, and Bill match type algorithm) + (Number of bill segments fetched using the Bill Segment match type algorithm) + (Number of contracts fetched using the Suspense Contract match type algorithm) + (Number of settlements fetched using the Settlement match type algorithm)

Deferred mode means in the background when the **Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)** batch is invoked. You can configure the **Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)** batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the **Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)** batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any payment requests in the **Deferred Distribution** status. If there is a payment request in the **Deferred Distribution** status, the system distributes the tender or payment amount.

On distributing the tender amount, the payment event, payments, payment segments, and payment tenders are created. The payments are created in the **Freezable** status. If any error occurs while creating the payment, the payment is created in the **Error** status. If all payments of a payment event are in the **Freezable** status, the status of the payment event is set to **Balanced**. However, if any payment of a payment event is in the **Error** status, the status of the payment event is set to **Unbalanced**. On distributing the payment amount (during transfer), the new payments are created in the **Freezable** status. If any error occurs while creating the new payment, the payment is created in the **Error** status. The status of the payment event is set to **Unbalanced**. The old payments in the payment event that you want to transfer remains in the **Frozen** or **Error** status.

Once the tender or payment amount is successfully distributed, the status of the payment request is changed to **Distributed**.

**Note:**

The **Distribute** button appears only when the payment request is in the **Draft** status.

The sum of payment amount should be equal to the tender or transfer (payment) amount. Otherwise, the system will not allow you to distribute the tender or payment amount.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request</a> on page 954
How to edit the payment amount against each entity	<a href="#">Editing the Payment Amount</a> on page 968

## **Distributing and Freezing the Tender or Payment Amount**

### **Procedure**

To distribute and freeze the tender or payment amount:

1. Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request whose tender or payment amount you want to distribute and freeze.

The **Payment Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Distribute And Freeze** button in the **Payment Request** zone.

The Defer algorithm attached to the payment request type using which you have created the payment request is triggered. This algorithm checks whether the number of payment distribution records in the payment request exceeds the payment count defined in the Defer algorithm. If the number of payment distribution records in the payment request does not exceed the payment count, the system distributes and freezes the tender or payment amount in real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of payment distribution records in the payment request exceeds the payment count, the system distributes and freezes the tender or payment amount in the deferred mode.

**Note:**

Number of payment distribution records = (Number of bill segments present in each bill fetched using the Bill Weighted, Bill Regular, and Bill match type algorithm) + (Number of bill segments fetched using the Bill Segment match type algorithm) + (Number of contracts fetched using the Suspense Contract match type algorithm) + (Number of settlements fetched using the Settlement match type algorithm)

Deferred mode means in the background when the **Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)** batch is invoked. You can configure the **Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)** batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the **Payment Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAYRQ)** batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any payment requests in the **Deferred Distribution** status. If there is a payment request in the **Deferred Distribution** status, the system distributes the tender or payment amount.

On distributing and freezing the tender amount, the payment event, payments, payment segments, and payment tenders are created. The payments are created in the **Frozen** status. If any error occurs while creating the payment, the payment is created in the **Error** status. If all payments of a payment event are in the **Frozen** status, the status of the payment event is set to **Balanced**. However, if any payment of a payment event is in the **Error** status, the status of the payment event is set to **Unbalanced**. On distributing the payment amount (during transfer), the new payments are created in the **Frozen** status. If any error occurs while creating the new payment, the payment is created in the **Error** status. The status of the payment event is set to **Unbalanced**. The old payments in the payment event that you want to transfer remains in the **Frozen** or **Error** status.

Once the tender or payment amount is successfully distributed and frozen, the status of the payment request is changed to **Processed**.

**Note:**

The **Distribute And Freeze** button appears only when the payment request is in the **Draft** status.

The sum of payment amount should be equal to the tender or transfer (payment) amount. Otherwise, the system will not allow you to distribute the tender or payment amount.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request</a> on page 954
How to edit the payment amount against each entity	<a href="#">Editing the Payment Amount</a> on page 968

Redistributing the Tender or Payment Amount

**Procedure**

To redistribute the tender or payment amount:

1. Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request whose tender or payment amount you want to redistribute.  
The **Payment Request** screen appears.
3. In the **Payment Distribution** zone, click the **Redistribute** button in the **Redistribute** column corresponding to the payment distribution whose tender or payment amount you want to redistribute.

The required payment gets redistributed among the account's contracts.

**Note:** The **Redistribute** button appears only when the payment status is in **Incomplete**, **Error**, or **Freezable** status.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request</a> on page 954
How to edit the payment amount against each entity	<a href="#">Editing the Payment Amount</a> on page 968

## Editing the Payment Segment Amount

Before you freeze the payments, the system allows you to edit the pay segment amount of the payments which are in the **Freezable** status. You can edit the amount only when there are multiple pay segments in a payment.

### Procedure

To edit the payment segment amount:

1. Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request whose details you want to edit.

The **Payment Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Detail** button in the **Payment Distribution** zone.

The **Edit Payment Segment Amount** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Payment Event Information	Displays information about the payment event which is created through the payment request.
Payment Information	Displays information about the payment which is created through the payment event.
Payee Account Information	Displays information about the account for which the payment is made.
Match Value	Displays information about the entity against which the payment is matched.
Payment Amount	Displays the total payment amount.
Running Total	Displays the sum of payment amount specified against each pay segment.
Running Balance	Displays the difference between total payment amount and running total. The running balance is highlighted in the red color when the difference amount is non-zero.

In addition, this section contains the following columns:





Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sr No	Indicates the sequence number of the pay segment.	Not applicable

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Entity Information	Displays information about the entity (such as bill segment or contract) against which the pay segment is created.	Not applicable
Total Amount	Displays the entity amount. If the pay segment is created against a contract, the system considers all bill segments of the bill which are created against the contract and calculates the total bill segment amount.	Not applicable
Unpaid Amount	Displays the amount which is eligible for payment. If the pay segment is created against a contract, the system considers all bill segments of the bill which are created against the contract and calculates the total unpaid bill segment amount.	Not applicable
Payment Amount	Used to specify the payment amount that you want to distribute against the pay segment.  <b>Note:</b> This field is non-editable when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There is only one pay segment in a payment.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the pay segment amount.</li> </ul>	Yes
Payment Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.	Not applicable
Pay Segment ID	Displays the pay segment ID.	Not applicable

**Note:**

The **Detail** button appears in the **Detail** column only when:

- The payment request is in the **Distributed** or **Approval In Progress** status
- The payment is in the **Freezable** status.

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Edit Payment Segment Amount** screen. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** () , **Previous** () , **Next** () , and **Last** () to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

- Modify the payment amount against a pay segment, if required.

**Note:** The sum of payment segment amount should be equal to the payment amount.

- Click **Redistribute**.

The payment amount is redistributed among the pay segments.

**Note:** The **Redistribute** button is disabled when the **Payment Amount** field is non-editable.

- Click **Close**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Distribution</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Distribution</a> on page 960

## Freezing Payments Created Through a Payment Request

### Procedure

To freeze the payments created through a payment request:

1. Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request whose payments you want to freeze.

The **Payment Request** screen appears.

3. If required, you can edit the amount of a payment segment before freezing the payments.
4. Click the **Freeze** button in the **Payment Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If you are...	Then
Freezing the payments created through a payment creation request	The status of the payments which are in the <b>Freezable</b> status is changed to <b>Frozen</b> . In addition, the status of the payment request is changed to <b>Processed</b> .
Freezing the payments created through a payment transfer request	The status of the old payments which are in the <b>Frozen</b> status is changed to <b>Cancelled</b> . The old payments which are in the <b>Error</b> status are deleted. The status of the new payments which are in the <b>Freezable</b> status is changed to <b>Frozen</b> . The status of the payment event is changed to <b>Balanced</b> when there are no new payments in the <b>Error</b> status. In addition, the status of the payment request is changed to <b>Processed</b> .

### Note:

The **Freeze** button appears only when:

- The payment request is in the **Distributed** status.
- The **Approval Required** check box is not selected in the payment request type using which the payment request is created.

For each payment, ensure that the sum of payment segment amount is equal to the payment amount. Otherwise, the system will not allow you to freeze the payments created through the payment request.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954

For more information on...	See...
Payment Request zone	<a href="#">Payment Request</a> on page 954
How to edit the amount of a payment segment	<a href="#">Editing the Payment Segment Amount</a> on page 977

Submitting a Payment Request for Approval

**Procedure**

To submit a payment request for approval:

1. Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request that you want to submit for approval.  
The **Payment Request** screen appears.
3. If required, you can edit the amount of a payment segment before submitting the payment request for approval.
4. Click the **Submit for Approval** button in the **Payment Request** zone.

The status of the payment request is changed to **Approval In Progress**. A To Do is created using the **C1-PAYRQ** To Do type. Users having a To Do role to which the **C1-PAYRQ** To Do type is associated can view the To Do from the **To Do List** screen.

**Note:**

The **Submit for Approval** button appears only when:

- The payment request is in the **Distributed** status.
- The **Approval Required** check box is selected in the payment request type using which the payment request is created.

For each payment, ensure that the sum of payment segment amount is equal to the payment amount. Otherwise, the system will not allow you to submit the payment request for approval.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
Payment Request screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
Payment Request zone	<a href="#">Payment Request</a> on page 954
How to edit the amount of a payment segment	<a href="#">Editing the Payment Segment Amount</a> on page 977

Approving a Payment Request

You can view the number of payment requests which are pending for approval in the **Payment Request** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve or reject the payment request based on the observations.

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve or reject a payment request submitted by you.

**Procedure**



To approve a payment request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Approve a payment request through the <b>Payment Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the payment request in the <b>Payment Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Payment Request Information</b> column corresponding to the payment request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Approve a payment request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>. The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter <b>C1-PAYRQ</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field. The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> <li>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the payment request that you want to review.</li> </ol>

The **Payment Request** screen appears.

2. Review the payment request details.
3. Click the **Approve** button in the **Payment Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If you are...	Then
Approving a payment creation request	The status of the payments which are in the <b>Freezable</b> status is changed to <b>Frozen</b> . In addition, the status of the payment request is changed to <b>Processed</b> .
Approving a payment transfer request	The status of the old payments which are in the <b>Frozen</b> status is changed to <b>Cancelled</b> . The old payments which are in the <b>Error</b> status are deleted. The status of the new payments which are in the <b>Freezable</b> status is changed to <b>Frozen</b> . The status of the payment event is changed to <b>Balanced</b> when there are no new payments in the <b>Error</b> status. In addition, the status of the payment request is changed to <b>Processed</b> .

**Note:** The **Approve** button appears only when:

- The payment request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the payment request.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request</a> on page 954

**Rejecting a Payment Request**

**Prerequisites**

To reject a payment request, you should have:

- Rejection reasons defined in the application

**Note:**

While rejecting a payment request, you need to specify the reason why you want to reject the payment request. If you are rejecting a payment creation request, you can select the appropriate rejection reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Rejected** status of the **C1-PaymentRequest** business object in the **Status Reason** screen. However, if you are rejecting a payment transfer request, you can select the appropriate rejection reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Rejected** status of the **C1-PaymentTransferRequest** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

The system will not allow you to approve or reject a payment request submitted by you.

**Procedure**

To reject a payment request:

- Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Reject a payment request through the <b>Payment Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Search for the payment request in the <b>Payment Request</b> screen.</li> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Payment Request Information</b> column corresponding to the payment request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Reject a payment request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>.</li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	<p>The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>3. Enter <b>C1-PAYRQ</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</p> <p>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</p> <p>The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</p> <p>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</p> <p>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the payment request that you want to review.</p>

The **Payment Request** screen appears.

- Review the payment request details.
- If required, you can review the payment segment amount of each payment by clicking the **Detail** button in the **Detail** column corresponding to the payment in the **Payment Distribution** zone.
- Click the **Reject** button in the **Payment Request** zone.

The **Status Reason** window appears. It contains following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to reject the payment request.	Yes

**Note:** The **Reject** button appears only when:

- The payment request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the payment request.

- Select the rejection reason from the **Status Reason** list.
- Click **Save**.

If the approver rejects a payment creation request, the payment event, payments, payment segments, and payment tender which are created through the payment creation request are deleted. However, if the approver rejects a payment transfer request, the new payments which are created through the payment transfer request are deleted. In addition, the status of the payment creation or transfer request is changed to **Rejected**.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request</a> on page 954

Discarding a Payment Request

1. Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request which you want to discard.
3. Click the **Discard** button in the **Payment Request** zone.

**Note:**  

The **Discard** button appears only when the payment request is in **Distributed** status.

If the approver discards a payment creation request, the payment event, payments, payment segments, and payment tender which are created through the payment creation request are deleted. However, if the approver discards a payment transfer request, the new payments which are created through the payment transfer request are deleted. In addition, the status of the payment creation or transfer request is changed to **Discarded**.

Discarding a payment request is similar to rejecting a payment request. However, you can only reject a payment request, when approval workflow is on while creating a payment request but discarding a payment request can be done in both the cases, when the approval workflow is on or off.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Request</a> on page 954

Viewing the Log of a Payment Request

Procedure

To view the log of a payment request:

1. Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request whose log you want to view.

The **Payment Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
    - **Payment Request** – Displays the details of the payment request.
    - **Payment Distribution** – Lists the payment distribution records of the payment request.
  - **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the payment request.
3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Payment Request Log** zone in the **Log** tab contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the payment request.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the payment request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the payment request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the payment request.
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the payment request was rejected.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the payment request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Payment Request Log** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952
How to add a log entry for a payment request	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Payment Request</a> on page 985

## Adding a Log Entry for a Payment Request

### Procedure

To add a log entry for a payment request:

1. Search for the payment request in the **Payment Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request whose log you want to edit.

The **Payment Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
  - **Payment Request** – Displays the details of the payment request.
  - **Payment Distribution** – Lists the payment distribution records of the payment request.
- **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the payment request.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Payment Request Log** zone.

The **Add Payment Request Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Request Information	Displays information about the payment request.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the payment request.	Yes

- Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.
- Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Payment Request Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Request</a> on page 952

## Payment Event Summary

The **Payment Event Summary** screen allows you to search for a payment event using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can:

- View the payments created through a payment event
- View payment segments of a payment
- Transfer one or more payments of a payment event to another payee account
- Cancel a payment event
- Delete a payment event
- Cancel a payment of a payment event
- Delete a payment of a payment event
- Refund a payment which is matched against the suspense or excess credit contract



This screen consists of following zones:


- [Search Payment Event](#) on page 986
- [Payments](#) on page 989
- [Payment Segments](#) on page 991

### Search Payment Event

The **Search Payment Event** zone allows you to search for a payment event using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a payment event using the payor, payment event, tender, or contract details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Payor Account/Payment Event</li> <li>Tender Details</li> <li>Suspense/Excess Credit Contract</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Payor Account/Payment Event</b> option is selected.	
Payment Event ID	Used to search a particular payment event.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payor Account/Payment Event</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Payment Event Search</b> window appears.	
Payor Account ID	Used to search payment events which are created for a particular payor account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payor Account/Payment Event</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears.	
Payor Name	Used to search payment events which are created for a particular payor.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payor Account/Payment Event</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Payment Date	Used to search payment events which are created on a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payor Account/Payment Event</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Tender Type	Used to search payment events where a particular tender type is used.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Tender Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Check Number	Used to search a payment event which includes payments made through a particular check.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Tender Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
MICR ID	Used to search payment events which include payments made with a particular MICR code.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Tender Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Contract ID	Used to search payment events which include payments made against a particular suspense or excess credit contract.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Suspense/ Excess Credit Contract</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Contract Search</b> window appears.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a payment event.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payment Event Information	Displays additional information about the payment event.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment Event</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payment event.
Transfer	On clicking the <b>Transfer</b> button, you can transfer all payments (which are in either <b>Frozen</b> and <b>Error</b> status) of the payment event to another payee account.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Transfer</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One or more payments of the payment event are in the <b>Frozen</b> or <b>Error</b> status.</li> <li>• There is no payment transfer request which is currently in progress for the payment event.</li> </ul>



Column Name	Column Description
Cancel	<p>On clicking the <b>Cancel</b> button, you can cancel all payments (which are in the <b>Frozen</b> status) of the payment event.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Cancel</b> button appears only when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One or more payments of the payment event are in the <b>Frozen</b> status.</li> <li>One or more payments of the payment event are not in the <b>Freezable</b> or <b>Error</b> status.</li> <li>There is no payment transfer request which is currently in progress for the payment event.</li> </ul>
Delete	<p>On clicking the <b>Delete</b> button, you can delete the payment event.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the payments of a payment event are in the <b>Freezable</b>, <b>Error</b> or <b>Incomplete</b> status.</p>
Additional Information	Displays information about the status of the payment event.
Payment Date	Displays the date when the payment was made.
Payor Name	<p>Indicates the person who has made the payment.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.</p>
Payor Account ID	<p>Indicates the account which made the payment.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.</p>
Tender Amount	Displays the tender amount.
Payment Event ID	Displays the payment event ID.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment event	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Event</a> on page 991
How to transfer payments of a payment event	<a href="#">Creating a Payment Transfer Request</a> on page 992
How to cancel a payment event	<a href="#">Cancelling a Payment Event</a> on page 996
How to delete a payment event	<a href="#">Deleting a Payment Event</a> on page 997

## Payments

The **Payments** zone lists all payments created through the payment event. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payment ID	<p>Displays the payment ID.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment</b> screen appears with the details of the respective payment.</p>

Column Name	Column Description
Payee Account Information	Displays information about the account for which the payment was made. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Payment Amount	Displays the amount paid through the tender.
Payment Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.
Payment Status	Indicates the status of the payment. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Incomplete</li> <li>• Error</li> <li>• Freezable</li> <li>• Frozen</li> <li>• Canceled</li> </ul>
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the payment was matched.
Match Value	Indicates the entity (such as bill, bill segment, or contract) against which the payment was matched.
Error Message	Indicates the reason why the payment is in the <b>Error</b> status.
Payor Account ID	Indicates the account which made the payment.
Refund Amount	Displays the amount which is already refunded to the payor account.

In addition, this zone contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Transfer	Used to transfer the payment to another payee account.
	<b>Note:</b> You can transfer a payment only when it is in the <b>Frozen</b> or <b>Error</b> status.
Cancel	Used to cancel the payment.
	<b>Note:</b> You can cancel a payment only when it is in the <b>Frozen</b> status.
Delete	Used to delete the payment.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a payment only when it is in the <b>Freezable</b> or <b>Error</b> status.
Refund	Used to refund the payment amount to the payor account.
	<b>Note:</b> You can refund the payment amount to the payor account only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The payment is matched against the suspense or excess credit contract.</li> <li>• The payment is in the <b>Frozen</b> status.</li> </ul>

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view payments created through a payment event	<a href="#">Viewing Payments Created Through a Payment Event</a> on page 998
How to cancel a payment	<a href="#">Cancelling a Payment</a> on page 998
How to delete a payment	<a href="#">Deleting a Payment</a> on page 999
How to transfer a payment	<a href="#">Creating a Payment Transfer Request</a> on page 992
How to refund a payment	<a href="#">Creating a Refund Request</a> on page 1189

## Payment Segments

The **Payment Segments** zone lists payment segments of a payment. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pay Segment ID	Displays the payment segment ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Pay Segments</b> tab of the <b>Payment</b> screen appears where you view the details of the payment segment.
Contract Information	Displays information about the contract against which the payment segment is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.
Payment Amount	Displays the payment segment amount.
Match Event ID	Indicates the match event which is created for the payment segment.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Match Event</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective match event.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view payment segments of a payment	<a href="#">Viewing Payment Segments of a Payment</a> on page 999

## Searching for a Payment Event

### Prerequisites

To search for a payment event, you should have:

- Tender types defined in the application


### Procedure

To search for a payment event:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.  
A list appears.
2. Select the **Main Menu** option from the list.

- From the **Main Menu**, select **Financial** and then click **Payment Event Summary**.  
The **Payment Event Summary** screen appears.
- Enter the search criteria in the **Search Payment Event** zone.

**Note:**

You can search for a payment event and payor account by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.  
A list of payment events that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Event Summary</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Event Summary</a> on page 986
<b>Search Payment Event</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Payment Event</a> on page 986

**Creating a Payment Transfer Request**

The system allows you to transfer payments through a payment request. You can transfer all payments or individual payment of a payment event. You can only transfer payments which are in the **Frozen** or **Error** status.

**Prerequisites**

To create a payment transfer request, you should have:


- Payment request types defined in the application (where the **Transfer** check box is selected)
- Payment cancel reasons defined in the application (where the **Payment Transfer** check box is selected)

**Procedure**

To create a payment transfer request:

- Search for the payment event (whose payments you want to transfer) in the **Payment Event Summary** screen.
- Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Transfer all payments of a payment event	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Transfer</b> button in the <b>Transfer</b> column corresponding to the payment event whose payments you want to transfer.</li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	<p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Transfer</b> button appears only when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One or more payments of the payment event are in the <b>Frozen</b> or <b>Error</b> status.</li> <li>There is no payment transfer request which is currently in progress for the payment event.</li> </ul>
Transfer one or more payments of a payment event	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the <b>Broadcast</b>  icon corresponding to the payment event whose payments you want to view.  The <b>Payments</b> zone appears.</li> <li>Select the check box corresponding to the payments that you want to transfer.</li> <li>Click the <b>Transfer</b> button in the <b>Payments</b> zone.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note:</b> You can transfer a payment only when it is in the <b>Frozen</b> or <b>Error</b> status.</p>

The **Select Payment Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Request Type	Used to indicate the payment request type using which you want to create the payment request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those payment request types where the <b>Transfer</b> check box is selected.	

3. Select the required payment request type from the respective field.

4. Click **OK**.

- Main** - Used to specify basic details about the payment request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Request Type	Indicates the payment request type using which you want to create the payment request.	Not applicable
Payment Event Information	Displays information about the payment event whose payments you want to transfer.	Not applicable
Transfer Amount	Displays the total payment amount which you want to transfer.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Date	Used to specify the date when the payment was transferred.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current date appears in this field.	
Transfer Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to transfer the payments.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those payment cancel reasons where the <b>Payment Transfer</b> check box is selected.	

- **Payor Account Details** — This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payor Account Information	Displays information about the payor's account whose payments you want to transfer.

- **Payment Details** — This section contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description
Payment(s)	Displays information about the payment that you want to transfer.



- **Match Types** - Used to define match types for the payment request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Match Type	Used to indicate the match type using which you want to match the payment.	Yes
Show Default	Used to indicate whether the default payment amount should be displayed against the match type entities.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Show Default</b> check box is selected when you select the match type.	
Entity	Indicates the match type entity. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Account</b> — Enables you to select the account whose unpaid bills, unpaid bill segments, settlement IDs, or contracts must be considered while matching the payment.</li> <li>• <b>Bill</b> — Enables you to select the unpaid bill against which you want to match the payment.</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Entity ID	Used to specify the account or bill ID depending on the match type entity.	Yes

5. Enter the required details.

**Note:**

You can search for an entity (such as account or bill) by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

If you want to specify more than one match type within the payment request, click the **Add**  icon in the **Match Types** section and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a match type from the payment request, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the match type.

**6. Click Manual Distribution.**

The payment request is created and the status of the payment request is set to **Draft**. The **Payment Request** screen appears. Depending on the match type and match entity specified while creating the payment request, the following entities are listed in the **Payment Distribution** zone:

Match Type	Match Entity	Entities
By Bill Regular	Account	Unpaid bills of the account
By Bill Weighted	Account	Unpaid bills of the account
By Bill	Bill	Unpaid bill
By Bill Segments	Account	Unpaid bill segments
By Suspense Contract	Account	<div>Contracts of the account</div> <div> <b>Note:</b> Only contracts of the contract type where the <b>Eligible for Billing</b> flag is set to <b>No</b> and <b>Special Role</b> flag is set to <b>Suspense</b> are listed in the <b>Payment Distribution</b> zone. If no contracts with this specification exist for the account, the system checks whether there is any such contract type (where the <b>Eligible for Billing</b> flag is set to <b>No</b> and <b>Special Role</b> flag is set to <b>Suspense</b>) defined for the division to which the account belongs. If there is any such contract type defined for the division, the system creates the contract for the account using the respective contract type and the same is listed in <b>Payment Distribution</b> zone. </div>
By Settlement	Account	Unpaid bill segments where the settlement account is stamped

If the **Show Default** check box is not selected against a match type while creating the payment request, the payment amount against the respective match type entities is set to zero. However, if the **Show Default** check box is selected against a match type, the payment amount appears against the respective match type entities. The transfer amount is divided among the entities in the sequence of match types (where **Show Default** check box is selected) followed by the sequence of bill, bill segment, or contract start date. You can then edit the payment amount, if required.

**Note:**

If a payment request is already created for a payee account and is currently in progress, the system will not allow you to create another payment request for the payee account until the previous payment request is in the **Processed** or **Rejected** status.

The system does not allow you to create a payment request for a payee account when the respective match type entities (such as unpaid bills, unpaid bill segments, contracts, or settlement IDs) do not exist for the payee account.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment event	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Event</a> on page 991
<b>Payment Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 954
<b>Payment Distribution</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Distribution</a> on page 960
How to view the details of a payment transfer request	<a href="#">Viewing the Payment Request Details</a> on page 953
How to edit a payment transfer request	<a href="#">Editing a Payment Request</a> on page 970
How to delete a payment transfer request	<a href="#">Deleting a Payment Request</a> on page 973
How to edit the payment amount against each entity	<a href="#">Editing the Payment Amount</a> on page 968
How to distribute the tender or payment amount	<a href="#">Distributing the Tender or Payment Amount</a> on page 974
How to freeze the payments created through a payment transfer request	<a href="#">Freezing Payments Created Through a Payment Request</a> on page 979
How to approve a payment transfer request	<a href="#">Approving a Payment Request</a> on page 980
How to reject a payment transfer request	<a href="#">Rejecting a Payment Request</a> on page 982
How to edit the amount of a payment segment	<a href="#">Editing the Payment Segment Amount</a> on page 977
How to submit a payment transfer request for approval	<a href="#">Submitting a Payment Request for Approval</a> on page 980

**Cancelling a Payment Event****Prerequisites**

To cancel a payment event, you should have:

- Payment cancel reasons defined in the application

**Procedure**

To cancel a payment event:

1. Search for the payment event in the **Payment Event Summary** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Cancel** button in the **Cancel** column corresponding to the payment event that you want to cancel.

The **Cancel** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Cancel Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to cancel the payment event.	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bank	Used to indicate the bank which should be charged for the cancellation.	Yes
Bank Account	Used to indicate the bank account which should be charged for the cancellation.	Yes

**Note:** The **Cancel** button appears only when:

- One or more payments of the payment event are in the **Frozen** status.
- One or more payments of the payment event are not in the **Freezable** or **Error** status.
- There is no payment transfer request which is currently in progress for the payment event.

3. Select the cancel reason, bank, and bank account from the respective fields.
4. Click **OK**.

The payment tender and all payments in the payment event are cancelled.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment event	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Event</a> on page 991

## Deleting a Payment Event

You can delete a payment event only when the payment(s) of the payment event are in the **Freezable**, **Error**, or **Incomplete** status. On deleting a payment event, the payment event, payments, payment segments, and payment tender are deleted.

#### Procedure

To delete a payment event:

1. Search for the payment event in the **Payment Event Summary** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** button in the **Delete** column corresponding to the payment event that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the payment event.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the payments of a payment event are in the **Freezable**, **Error**, or **Incomplete** status.

3. Click **OK**.

The payment event is deleted.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment event	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Event</a> on page 991

Viewing Payments Created Through a Payment Event

Procedure

To view payments created through a payment event:

- Search for the payment event in the **Payment Event Summary** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment event whose payments you want to view.  
The **Payments** zone appears.
- View all payments created through the payment event in the **Payments** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment event	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Event</a> on page 991
<b>Payments</b> zone	<a href="#">Payments</a> on page 989

Cancelling a Payment


Prerequisites

To cancel a payment of a payment event, you should have:

- Payment cancel reasons defined in the application

Procedure

To cancel a payment of a payment event:

- Search for the payment event in the **Payment Event Summary** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment event whose payment you want to cancel.  
The **Payments** zone appears.
- Select the check box corresponding to the payment that you want to cancel.
- Click **Cancel** in the **Payments** zone.

The **Payment Cancel** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Cancel Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to cancel the payment.	Yes

**Note:** You can cancel a payment only when it is in the **Frozen** status.

- Select the cancel reason from the respective list.
- Click **OK**.

The status of the payment is changed to **Canceled**.


Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment event	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Event</a> on page 991
<b>Payments</b> zone	<a href="#">Payments</a> on page 989

## Deleting a Payment

### Procedure

To delete a payment of a payment event:

1. Search for the payment event in the **Payment Event Summary** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment event whose payment you want to delete.

The **Payments** zone appears.

3. Select the check box corresponding to the payment that you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete** in the **Payments** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the payment.

**Note:** You can delete a payment only when it is in the **Freezable** or **Error** status.

5. Click **OK**.

The payment is deleted.



### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment event	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Event</a> on page 991
<b>Payments</b> zone	<a href="#">Payments</a> on page 989

## Viewing Payment Segments of a Payment

### Procedure

To view payment segments of a payment:

1. Search for the payment event (whose payment details you want to view) in the **Payment Event Summary** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment event whose payments you want to view.  
The **Payments** zone appears.
3. Click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment whose payment segments you want to view.  
The **Payment Segments** zone appears.
4. View the payment segments of the payment in the **Payment Segments** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment event	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Event</a> on page 991
Payment Segments zone	<a href="#">Payment Segments</a> on page 991

---

# Chapter

# 15

---

## Account Receivable Central

---

### Topics:

- [Single Offset](#)
- [Mass Offset](#)
- [Cross Currency Offset](#)
- [Hold](#)
- [Refund](#)
- [Write Off](#)
- [Dispute](#)
- [Account Receivable Central](#)

The Account Receivable Central is a portal which facilitates user to perform Single/Mass/Cross Currency offset operation for a bill's outstanding amount with another bill or multiple bills. You can also refund/write off amount to the account using refund requests and write off requests respectively.

Account Receivable Central also enables to put bill(s) on hold for the funding purpose. It allows you to have a complete overview of the bills. Based on the search criteria, the system returns a list of bills that meet the search criteria.

Account Receivable Central is used for:

- **Single Offset** - Enables single debit bill to be offset against multiple credit bills in the same currency and vice versa.
- **Mass Offset** - Enables credit/debit bills to be offset against multiple debit and credit bills in the same currency.
- **Cross Currency Offset** - Enables single debit bills to be offset against multiple credit bills in currencies other than the bill selected for offset and vice versa.
- **Hold** - Enables bill(s) to be put on hold fully (the bill outstanding amount) or partially (the bill outstanding amount in partial) for a specific period for funding.
- **Refund** - Enables you to refund amount of credit bill or bill line item (credit bill segment or adjustment) to the account through a refund request.
- **Write Off** - Enables you to write off amount to the account through a write off request.
- **Dispute** - Enables you to dispute amount of credit/debit bill or bill item (credit/debit bill segment or adjustment) to the account through a dispute request.

The bill(s) for offsetting can belong to the same person or multiple persons depending upon the option **Allow Offsetting across Persons** set in the feature configuration **C1-OFFSETREQ** which allows offsetting in the system.

## Single Offset

Single Offset enables you to search and add bill to an offset request from the **Account Receivable Central** screen. Single Offset enables single debit bill to be offset against multiple credit bills in the same currency and vice versa. The offset request is created and an offset request ID is generated for the request.

You can search and select credit/debit bills (with outstanding amount) for offsetting belonging to the same or different person. All the selected bills with their outstanding balance are displayed. The display of bills is controlled by **C1-OFFSETREQ** feature configuration. The feature configuration identifies whether offsetting is allowed for bills across persons. To offset bills belonging to different persons, set the **Allow Offsetting Across Persons** option type to **Y**. The bills are displayed having same currency with the default offset amount on the offset request after adding the bills. You can select one or multiple or all the bills displayed and add to the offset request. After you add a debit bill from **Account Receivable Central**, you cannot add more debit bills to the offset request.

Upon adding a bill to the offset request, the default offset amount algorithm **C1-OFST-AMT** configured in the offset request type is invoked. The bills in the offset request are processed based on the logic of oldest bill first. The default offset amount is populated against the selected debit and credit bills. You can also edit the offset amount from the offset request, if required. The offset adjustments for offset requests are created and distributed based on the match type set in the offset distribution algorithm.

You can configure the offset request type to be submitted for offset distribution with or without approval. Upon submitting the offset request for approval, a To Do type is created and sent to the approver for offset request approval. The status of the offset request changes from **Submitted** to **Approval In Progress** in case of offset request with approval and in case of offset request without approval it changes to **Processed**. The approver can either approve or reject the offset request. Once the approver approves the offset request, selected bills are offset and adjustments are created for the bills. The status of the offset request changes from **Approval In Progress** to **Processed**. You can also view the details of the adjustment(s) created. However, if the approver rejects an offset request, a rejection reason should be provided.

A log maintained for offset requests logs complete trail of actions performed on offset request except the actions performed while editing the offset request. On submitting, the offset request status changes to **Processed** or **Approval In Progress** depending on the configuration of the offset request type and the **Unapply** button is enabled which cancels the adjustments. Upon cancelling the adjustments, the enter status algorithm cancels the offset adjustments and the status of the request changes to **Unapplied Offset**.

**Note:** The **Unapply** button appears only when the offset request is in the **Processed** status

Bill Information	Original Outstanding Amount	Offset Amount	Remaining Bill Balance	Comments
Bill 1	\$1200	—\$800	\$400	Bill 1 amount \$1200 is offset against Bill 2.
Bill 2	—\$1000	\$500	—\$500	From Bill 2, \$500 is offset against from Bill 1.
Bill 3	—\$300	\$300	0	From Bill 3, \$300 is offset against from Bill 1.

## Mass Offset

Mass offset functions is similar to single offset, the only difference is that mass offset enables credit/debit bills to be offset against multiple debit and credit bills in the same currency.

Upon selection of a debit/credit bill from **Account Receivable Central**, you can add more credit/debit bill(s) from the search bills result in offset request. You can filter the bills using the **Bill Type** filter on the bill search zone to select debit/credit bills to be added to the offset request. While offsetting the credit/debit amount across multiple bills, the oldest bill is offset first.

A log maintained for offset requests logs complete trail of actions performed on offset request. Once you submit the offset request, the offset request status changes to **Processed** or **Approval In Progress** depending on the configuration of the offset request type. When the offset request status changes to **Processed** adjustments are created and the **Unapply** button is enabled which cancels the adjustments. Upon unapplying the offset request, the enter status algorithm cancels the offset adjustments and the status of the request changes to **Unapplied Offset**.

Bill Information	Original Outstanding Amount	Offset Amount	Remaining Bill Balance	Comments
Bill 1	\$2000	—\$700	\$1300	The Offset amount \$400 is offset against Bill 2.
Bill 2	—\$400	\$400	0	Bill 2 is offset against \$400 from Bill Outstanding amount of Bill 1 i.e. \$2000.
Bill 3	—\$300	\$300	0	Bill 3 is offset against \$300 from Bill Outstanding amount of Bill 1 i.e. \$1600.

## Cross Currency Offset

Enables single debit bills to be offset against multiple credit bills in currencies other than the bill selected for offset and vice versa. Cross-currency offset enables you to offset credit/debit bills with different currencies. You can add credit/debit bills to the debit/credit bill added from **Account Receivable Central**. After you add a debit bill from **Account Receivable Central**, you cannot add more debit bills to the offset request. While offsetting the credit/debit amount across multiple bills, the oldest bill is offset first.

The **C1-OFFSUBENT** algorithm validates whether the sum of debit offset amount is equal to sum of credit offset amount for all bills selected in the offset request. After validation, status of the offset request changes to **Processed** or **Approval In Progress** depending on the configuration of the offset request type.

Bill Information	Outstanding Amount	Outstanding Amount (in Offset currency)	Offset Amount	Remaining Bill Balance	Comments
Bill 1	\$300	\$300	—\$130.1	\$169.9	Outstanding amount \$300 is offset against \$130.1 (£100). (Exchange rate: 1£=1.3\$)
Bill 2	—£100	—\$130.1	\$130.1	0	Outstanding amount £100 (\$130.1) of Bill 2 is offset against \$300 from Bill 1.

**Note:** In case of multiple exchange rates with same date and different timestamps, the latest timestamp is considered.

**Note:** The adjustments are created in the currency of the bill.

## Hold

Account Receivable Central enables bill(s) to be put on hold which belongs to a person's account or all accounts of a particular person. When a bill is put on hold, specific reason must be specified; no funding related activities can be performed for the specified period.

Funding related activities are put on hold from the start date of the hold request. The hold exists till the hold request release date; however you can also release individual bills.

You can only put bills on hold which has **Completed** status. When a person/account is on hold, all the subsequent bills under them are also on hold irrespective of bill status. You can select the bill amount in a bill to be put on hold i.e. you can put the particular bill on hold with partial or full bill amount.

Hold request type is used to define the hold request. In the hold request type, the **Hold Process** is set to **Funding**, which puts hold on only the funding activities of the selected bill belonging to a person or account.

## Refund

---

Enables you to refund amount of credit bill to account through a refund request. For creating a refund request you need to specify the refund request type using which you want to create the refund request. The refund request can be defined with (single level/multi-level) or without approval workflow. An approval profile should be defined for the approval workflow. While defining the refund request type, the adjustment type should be defined for creating refund adjustments.

## Write Off

---

Enables you to write off the amount to the account through a write off request. For creating a write off request you need to specify the write off request type. The write off request can be defined with (single level/multi-level) or without approval workflow. An approval profile should be defined for the approval workflow. While defining the write off request type, the adjustment type should be defined for creating write off adjustments.

## Dispute

---

Enables you to dispute amount of credit/debit bill to an account through a dispute request. For creating a dispute request you need to specify the dispute request type using which you want to create the dispute request. The dispute request can be defined with (single level/multi-level) or without approval workflow. An approval profile should be defined for the approval workflow. While defining the dispute request type, the adjustment type should be defined for creating dispute adjustments.

## Account Receivable Central

---

The **Account Receivable Central** screen allows you to search for bills using various search criteria. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Bill](#) on page 1004

Through the **Account Receivable Central** screen, you can navigate to the following screens:


- [Offset Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1039
- [Hold Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1273
- [Refund Request](#) on page 1179
- [Write Off Request](#) on page 1212
- [Dispute Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#)

## Search Bill

The **Search Bill** zone allows you to search for bills in the **Accounts Receivable Central** screen using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search bills using bill details, using account details or using person details whose account is linked to a particular bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Person Details</b></li> <li>• <b>Account Details</b></li> <li>• <b>Bill Details</b></li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Person Details</b> option is selected.	
Person ID	Used to select the person ID based on which you want to search for bills of a person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears.	
Person Hierarchy	Used to indicate whether to display hierarchy of the person linked to a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search for bills of a person.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you enter the person identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the person identifier type.
Person Identifier	Used to specify the value of the person identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you enter the person identifier type as a search criteria, you have to select the person identifier.
Bills on Hold	Used to indicate whether the bill is on hold. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No</li> <li>• Yes</li> </ul>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Balance	Used to search bills with a particular balance amount. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Equal to Zero</li> <li>• Greater Than Zero</li> <li>• Less Than Zero</li> <li>• Not Equal to Zero</li> </ul>	No
Pending Bills	Used to indicate whether the bill is pending.	No
Account ID	Used to search for bills of a particular account. <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type of the account whose bill you want to search. <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No
Account Identifier	Used to select the account identifier based on which you want to search for bills of a particular account. <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No
Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill. <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No
Alternate Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill using the alternate bill ID. <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No
Invoice Currency	Used to search for bills which are billed in a particular currency. <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	No
Bill Date From	Used to search bills which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
To	Used to search bills which are created till a particular date.	No
Bill Outstanding Amount From	Used to search bills with a particular minimum outstanding amount.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
To	Used to search bills with a particular maximum outstanding amount.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a bill when you select the **Person Details** or **Account Details** option from the **Search By** list.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the bill. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Original Bill Amount	Displays the bill amount when the bill was generated.
Outstanding Amount	Displays the current bill balance amount.
Bill Date	Used to specify the date on which the bill was generated.
Hold Amount	Displays the amount from the bill that is on hold.
Account Information	Displays additional information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. A tool tip appears when you hover over this column corresponding to the bill. It indicates the Current Balance, Excess Payment and Unapplied Payments and their values.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill.
Person Information	Displays additional information about the person. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.

This zone contains following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Single Offset	Used to add the selected bill with same currency to an offset request.
Mass Offset	Used to add the selected bills with same currency to an offset request.
Cross Currency Offset	Used to add the selected bills with different currency to an offset request.
Hold	Used to add the selected bill to hold request to be put on hold.
Write Off	Used to add the selected bill to a write off request.
Refund	Used to add the selected bill to a refund request.
Dispute	Used to add the selected bill to a dispute request.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Bill</a> on page 1009
How to view the details of a bill	<a href="#">Viewing the Bill Details</a> on page 1010

## Bill Information

The **Bill Information** screen allows you to view detail information of a particular bill.

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Hold Details](#) on page 1008
- [Offset Details](#) on page 1008
- [Garnishment Details](#) on page 1009
- [Bill Line Items](#) on page 1009

## Offset Details

The **Offset Details** zone displays details of the offset request. This zone contains following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Offset Request Information	Displays additional information about the offset request.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Offset Request</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective offset request.
Offset Amount	Displays the total offset amount.
Creation Mode	Displays the mode of creation for offset request . The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic</li> <li>• Manual</li> </ul>

## Hold Details

The **Hold Details** zone displays details of the hold request on a bill. This zone contains following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Hold Request Information	Displays additional information about the hold request.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Hold Request</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective hold request.
Status	Indicates the status of the hold request.
Entity	Displays the type of entity.
Hold Entity	Displays additional information about the bill which is put on hold.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the hold request.
End Date	Displays the end date of the hold request.

## Garnishment Details

The **Garnishment Details** zone displays details garnishment details of the offset request. This zone contains following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Garnishment Contract	Displays additional information about the contract created against the garnishment adjustments. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.
Garnishment Amount	Displays the total garnishment amount.

## Bill Line Items

The **Bill Line Items** zone displays information about the selected bill's bill line item. This zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Bill Line Item	Displays the bill line item (bill segment/adjustment) of the selected bills.
Bill Line Item Information	Displays the information about the bill line item.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill Segment</b> screen or <b>Adjustments</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill line item or adjustments.
Amount	Displays the amount of the bill line item.
Contract Information	Displays additional information about the contract against which the bill segment or adjustment is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a bill	<a href="#">Viewing the Bill Details</a> on page 1010

## Searching for a Bill

### Procedure

To search for a bill:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Account Receivable Central**.  
The **Account Receivable Central** screen appears.

3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Bill** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

**Note:** The wild card search for searching bill in the **Search Bill** zone is applicable only when you select the **Bill Details** option from the **Search By** list.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of bills that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Account Receivable Central screen	<a href="#">Account Receivable Central</a> on page 1004
Search Bill zone	<a href="#">Search Bill</a> on page 1004

**Viewing the Bill Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a bill:

1. Search for the bill in the **Account Receivable Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Show Context Menu** () icon corresponding to the bill whose details you want to view.  
  
A menu appears.
3. Click the **Go To Bill Information** menu option.  
  
The **Bill Information** screen appears.
4. View the details of the bills in the **Bill Information** screen.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Account Receivable Central screen	<a href="#">Account Receivable Central</a> on page 1004
Bill Information screen	<a href="#">Bill Information</a> on page 1008
How to search for a bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Bill</a> on page 1009

---

# Chapter

# 16

---

## Offset Request

---

### Topics:

- [Offset Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Offset Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-OffsetRequest](#)
- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Offset Request Type](#)
- [Offset Request \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Offset Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to offset credit and debit bill(s) from the account(s) belonging to different persons. While creating an offset request, you need to specify the offset request type using which you want to create the offset request. You can create an offset request from:

- **Account Receivables Central** screen
- **Offset Request** screen

You can offset the bills across from the account(s) belonging to same or different person. In an offset request you can offset debit bill(s) against credit bill(s) or vice-versa. You can also offset bills with same currency or different currencies.

The offset request type helps the system to determine:

- Whether adjustments must be created in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background).
- Whether the offset request must be approved before creating offset adjustments in the system.
- Default adjustment type using which offset adjustments must be created.
- The default offset amount whenever a new bill is added using **C1-OFST-AMT** algorithm.

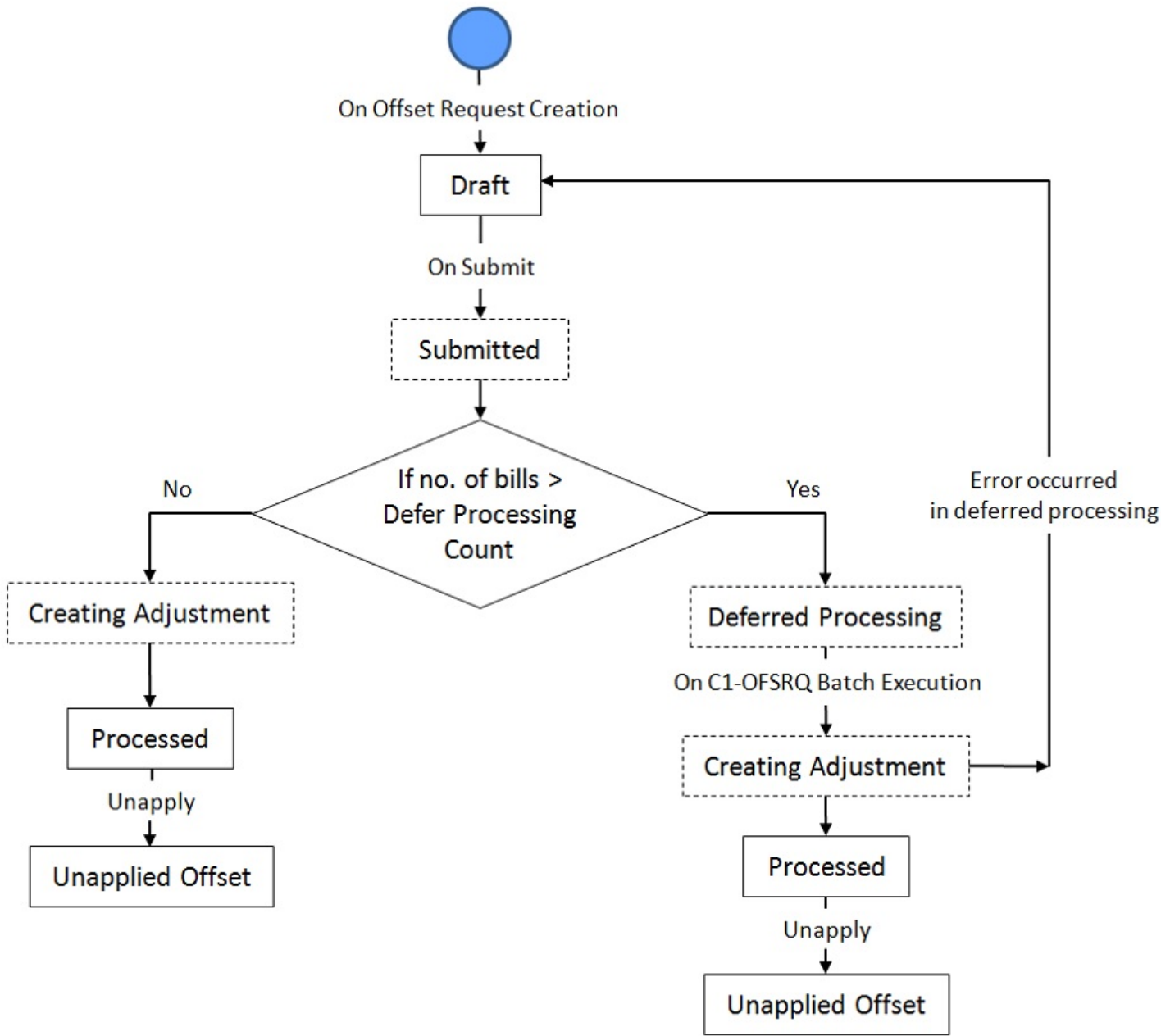
During the offset request process, an offset request goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. For more information about the offset request statuses, see [Offset Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 1012 and [Offset Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 1013.

Note that the lifecycle of an offset request is driven by business object using which the offset request is created. An offset request business object named **C1-OffsetRequest** is shipped with the product. The offset request feature explained in this document is articulated based on the lifecycle and logic defined in the **C1-OffsetRequest** business object.

For more information on how to setup the offset request process, see [Prerequisites](#) on page 1019.

## Offset Request (Without Approval) Status Transition

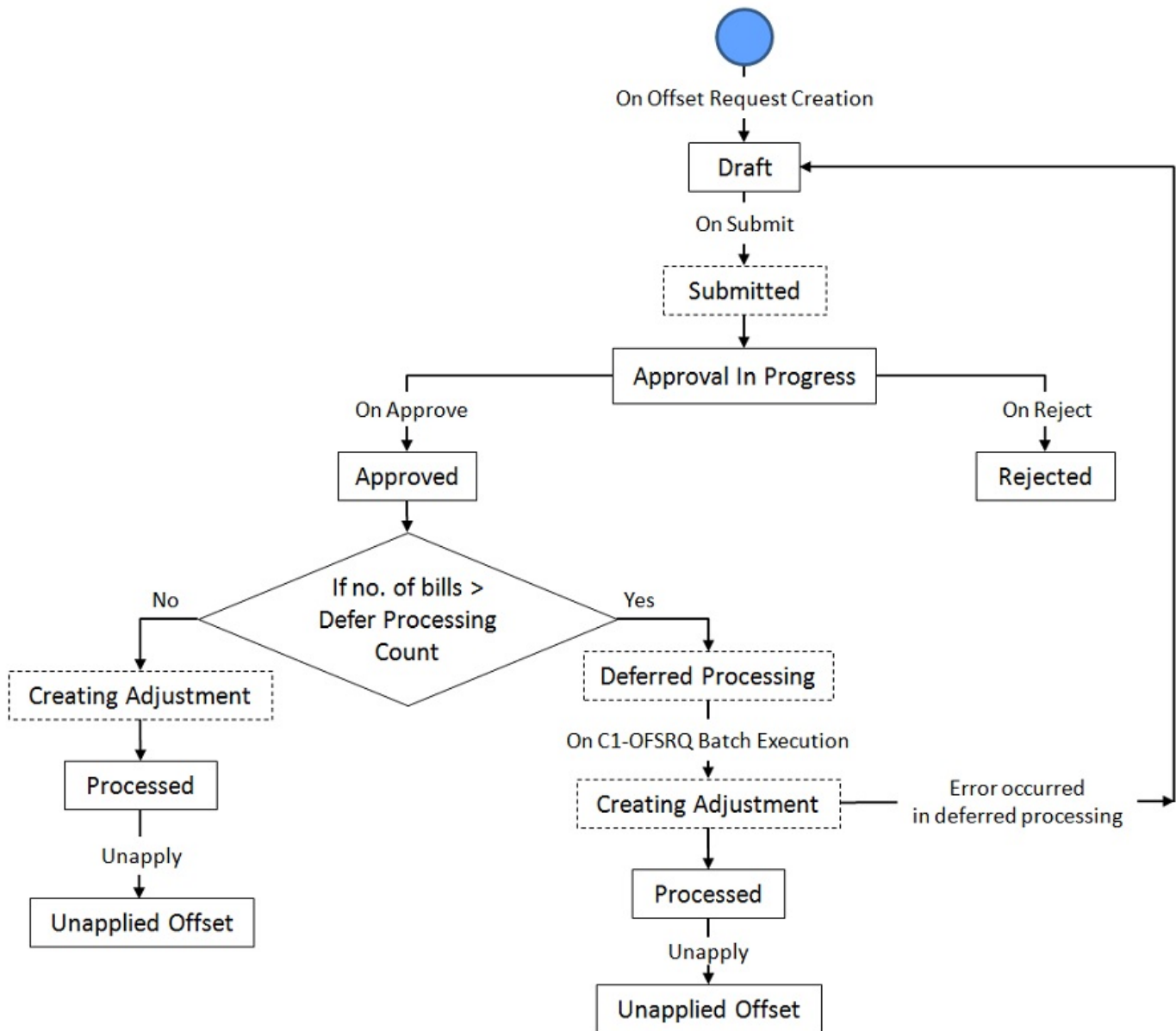
The following figure graphically indicates how an offset request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is off:





## Offset Request (With Approval) Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how an offset request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is on:



## Algorithms Used in C1-OffsetRequest

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-OffsetRequest** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-OFFST-INF	C1-OFFST-INF	<p>This algorithm generates the offset request information string which appears throughout the application. It concatenates the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Offset Request Type Description</li> <li>Offset Request Status Description</li> <li>Offset Request ID</li> </ul>

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-OffsetRequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	-	-	-
Submitted	Enter	C1-OFFSUBENT	C1-OFFSUBENT	<p>This algorithm checks the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the bill(s) under request has non-zero outstanding amount.</li> <li>The bill status is <b>Completed</b>.</li> <li>Offset amount overridden by the user is non-zero.</li> <li>Sum of all offset amounts for debit bills is equal to sum of all offset amounts for credit bills.</li> <li>At least one debit and one credit bill is selected in the offset request.</li> </ul>
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-OFFAPPENT	C1-OFFAPPENT	This algorithm creates To Do based on the Approval To Do Type configured in offset request type.
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-OFFAPPEXT	C1-OFFAPPEXT	This algorithm checks whether an approver is associated with the approval <b>To Do Role</b> specified in the offset request type. It does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the offset request.
Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm type completes To Do entries that are linked to an object when the object exits a given state. The system finds all open To Do entries with drill keys for the current business object's primary key, and completes them, unless the To Do entry's type has been configured with an Exclude To Do Type Characteristic Type indicating that it should not be automatically completed.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approved	Enter	C1-OFSAPRENT	C1-OFSAPRENT	This algorithm changes the status of the offset request to <b>Deferred Processing</b> or <b>Creating Adjustment</b> when the approver clicks the <b>Approve</b> button.
Rejected	-	-	-	-
Deferred Processing	Enter	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-AT-RQJ	This algorithm type transitions current state of the business object to the input Next Status or to the status related to the input Next Transition Condition. Only either of the soft parameters may be specified. If both soft parameters are not specified, the business object will be transitioned to the default next status specified on lifecycle. Algorithms of this algorithm type may be defined for any business object status as its monitor algorithm.
Creating Adjustment	Enter	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-AT-RQJ	This algorithm type transitions current state of the business object to the input Next Status or to the status related to the input Next Transition Condition. Only either of the soft parameters may be specified. If both soft parameters are not specified, the business object will be transitioned to the default next status specified on lifecycle. Algorithms of this algorithm type may be defined for any business object status as its monitor algorithm.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Creating Adjustment	Enter	C1-OFST-DIST	C1-OFST-DIST	<p>This algorithm is executed on submit or on approve of an offset request. It creates the transfer adjustments between bill segments/contracts of bills selected in an offset request using following two parameters for this algorithm:</p> <p><b>Parameter 1 - Match Type Code:</b> This should be the Match Type defined for payment override distribution in the system. If a bill selected for offsetting is already paid partially using some Match Type, then match events and amounts of offset adjustments follow the same pattern of distribution. However if no payment has been received against a bill, then the Match Type value which is defined as parameter which will be used for the offset distribution. It is assumed the payment and offset distribution of Match Type Code is maintained in the system.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
				<p><b>Parameter 2 - Match Type Entity Flag:</b> Valid values for this parameter are 'BILL',' BSEG' and 'SA'. This parameter defines the open item at which the match events are to be created. In case of unpaid bills, new match events will be created based on the value of this parameter. Based on the flag defined for Match Events are created as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If the Match Type Flag is 'BILL', then all FTs on a bill have the same Match Event.</li> <li>2. If the Match Type Flag is 'BSEG', then each line item (bill segment or adjustment) on the bill will have a unique match event.</li> <li>3. If the Match Type Flag is 'SA', then line items belonging to the same contract within a bill will have the same match event.</li> </ol> <p>Offset distribution is performed in steps given below:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Internal Offsetting within each bill: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This is done only if a bill has both debit and credit line items.</li> <li>• Internal offsetting happens either at contract level or bill line item level, based on the value of parameter 'Match Type Entity Flag'. If the value is 'BILL' or 'SA', then internal offsetting will be done at contract level and if it is 'BSEG', then internal offsetting is done at bill line item level.</li> <li>• In a bill starting from the highest priority (PAY_PRIORITY_FLG in contract type) credit contract with highest contract type priority/ bill line item, the balance will be offset with the highest priority debit contract/ bill line item by creating</li> </ul> </li> </ol>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
				<p>It determines an outstanding amount starting from the oldest bill, for each credit open item (i.e. bill and contract type / bill line item).</p> <p>It invokes Payment Distribution Algorithm Driver (which invokes Payment Distribution Override algorithm in the match type) to determine the distribution of this amount to the debit bill by passing debit Bill ID (starting from the oldest bill), Account ID of the Bill under offset and Match Type code.</p> <p>It creates transfer adjustments from credit bill to debit bill.</p> <p>If there exists balance on credit bill then it is distributed to the next debit bill.</p> <p>The above process is repeated for each credit bill until balance on each credit bill is exhausted.</p>
				<p><b>Note:</b> In case of offset of a partially paid bill, the match type to be defined should be same as the match type used during payment distribution.</p>
				<p><b>Note:</b> In case of a partially refunded or written off bill, the match type should have the same <b>Pay Dist Override Algorithm</b> at the bill segment / adjustments level.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Creating Adjustment		C1-UPD-HOLD	C1-UPD-HOLD	<p>This algorithm updates the hold amount or hold entity end date in hold request from the offset request. There are two scenarios:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the outstanding amount on the bill after offsetting is not zero and less than the current hold amount, the hold amount will be updated to the outstanding amount.</li> <li>• If the outstanding amount on the bill after offsetting is zero and the bill is present is some hold request which is active then the end date for the bill will be updated as the system date.</li> </ul> <p>This algorithm also inserts log entries in the offset request and hold request logs. When the hold details for a bill is updated, the bill ID will be stored as part of the offset request logs and the old hold amount/updated hold amount or the end date which is added to the hold entity will be stored as part of the hold request logs.</p>
Processed	-	-	-	-
Unapplied Offset	Enter	C1-UNAPOFST	C1-UNAPOFST	This algorithm cancels all offset adjustments in an offset request.

## Prerequisites

To setup the offset request process, you need to do the following:

- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Offset Request Type**
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Offset Request**
- Define unapplied offset and rejected status reasons for the **C1-OffsetRequest** business object
- Assign the **C1-OFSRQ** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting an offset request for approval
- Assign the **C1-OFSSB** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated when an error occurs in case of deferred processing.
- Set the **C1-OFFSETREQ** feature configuration.
- Define an algorithm of the **C1-ADI-INFO** algorithm type and attach to the **Adjustment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options — Framework** screen
- For the defined adjustment type, the **Print by Default** and **Impact Next Bill Balance** should be unchecked and the **A/P Request Type Code** leave this option blank.

- Define **Exchange Rate** for cross currency offset.
- Define the required offset request types in the system

## Offset Request Type

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define:

- **Offset Request Type** — It is used to create an offset request. You can define multiple offset request types in the system. An offset request type helps the system to determine:
  - Whether the offset request must be approved before creating offset adjustments in the system.
  - Default adjustment type using which offset adjustments must be created.
  - Whether adjustments must be created in real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background)
  - The default offset amount whenever a new bill is added using **C1-OFST-AMT** algorithm.

While defining an offset request type where approval workflow is required, you need to select the **Approval Required** check box. If the **Approval Required** check box is selected, the offset request (which is created using the offset request type) is sent for approval before creating the offset adjustments. However, if the **Approval Required** check box is not selected, the offset adjustments are created in real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background) on submitting an offset request.

**Note:** The offset adjustments are created in deferred mode if the number of bills in the offset request are more than the **Defer Processing Count** configured in the offset request type.

Let us understand an offset scenario with the help of some examples.

Bill 1, Bill 2 and Bill 3 are added to an offset request. You can update the offset amount in the offset request. Note that the offset amount must be less than the bill outstanding amount.

Bill Information	Bill Outstanding Amount	Offset Amount	Remaining Bill Balance	Comments
Bill 1	\$1500	—\$500	\$1000	Offset amount \$500 can be split to be offset against Bill 2 and Bill 3.
Bill 2	\$200	—\$200	0	Bill 2 is offset against \$200 from Bill Outstanding amount of Bill 1 i.e. \$1500.
Bill 3	\$300	—\$300	0	Bill 3 is offset against \$300 from Bill Outstanding amount of Bill 1 i.e. \$1500.

The offset request type is defined with or without approval and mapped to an adjustment type creating adjustments. You can cancel the offset adjustment by clicking the **Unapply** button in the **Offset Request** zone.




The **Offset Request Type** screen allows you to define, edit, delete, and copy an offset request type. This screen consists of the following zones:


- [Offset Request Type List](#) on page 1021
- [Offset Request Type](#) on page 1021



## Offset Request Type List

The **Offset Request Type List** zone lists offset request types that are already defined in the system. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Offset Request Type	Displays the offset request type.
Description	Displays the description of the offset request type.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Offset Request Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the offset request type.
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Offset Request Type</b> screen appears where you can define an offset request type using an existing offset request type.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the offset request type.  <b>Note:</b> You can delete an offset request type only when you have not created an offset request using the offset request type.

On clicking the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the offset request type, the **Offset Request Type** zone appears with the details of the respective offset request type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an offset request type	<a href="#">Defining an Offset Request Type</a> on page 1024
How to edit an offset request type	<a href="#">Editing an Offset Request Type</a> on page 1027
How to copy an offset request type	<a href="#">Copying Offset Request Type</a> on page 1031
How to delete an offset request type	<a href="#">Deleting an Offset Request Type</a> on page 1030
How to view the details of an offset request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Offset Request Details</a> on page 1038

## Offset Request Type

The **Offset Request Type** zone displays the details of the offset request type. This zone consists of the following sections:

- **Main** — This section provides basic information about The offset request type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Offset Request Type	Displays the offset request type.
Description	Displays the description of the offset request type.
Offset Request Business Object	Indicates the business object that will be used to create the offset request.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

Field Name	Field Description
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the offset request type.
Status	Indicates the status of the offset request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the offset adjustments must be created.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective adjustment type.
Default Offset Amount Algorithm	Indicates the default offset amount algorithm which calculates the offset amount.
Defer Processing Count	Displays the number of bills to determine if the offset request will be processed in deferred mode.  <b>Note:</b> If the number of bills is less than the <b>Defer Processing Count</b> , the offset request will be processed in real time (i.e. immediately).
Approval Required	Indicates whether approval is required while processing the offset adjustments using the offset request type.
Approval To Do Type	Indicates that the To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the offset request for approval.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.  It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Type</b> screen appears with the details of the respective To Do Type.
Approval To Do Role	Indicates that users with the specified To Do Role can only approve the offset request submitted for approval.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.  It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Role</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective To Do Role.
Submitter To Do Type	Indicates the To Do type for the submitter when the offset request moves to <b>Draft</b> status due to error while deferred processing..  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective To Do type.

Field Name	Field Description
Submitter To Do Role	Indicates the To Do role for the submitter when the offset request moves to <b>Draft</b> status due to error while deferred processing..
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Role</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective To Do role.

- **Characteristics** — This section lists the characteristics defined for the offset request type. It contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** — This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the offset request type.
Delete	Used to delete the offset request type.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a offset request type only when you have not created an offset request using the offset request type.
Duplicate	Used to create a new offset request type using an existing offset request type.

- **Record Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the offset request type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

By default, the **Offset Request Type** zone does not appear in the **Offset Request Type** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the offset request type in the **Offset Request Type List** zone.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define an offset request type	<a href="#">Defining an Offset Request Type</a> on page 1024
How to edit an offset request type	<a href="#">Editing an Offset Request Type</a> on page 1027
How to copy an offset request type	<a href="#">Copying Offset Request Type</a> on page 1031
How to delete an offset request type	<a href="#">Deleting an Offset Request Type</a> on page 1030
How to view the details of an offset request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Offset Request Type Details</a> on page 1034

## Defining an Offset Request Type

### Prerequisites

To define an offset request type, you should have:

- Offset request business objects defined in the application
- **C1-OFSRQ** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting an offset request for approval.
- **C1-OFSRQ** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while resubmitting an offset request or in case an error occurs in the deferred processing.

### Procedure

To define an offset request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **O** and then click **Offset Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Offset Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Offset Request Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use to create the offset request type.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Business Object** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Offset Request Type** screen.

**Note:** The **Select Business Object** screen appears only when there are multiple offset request type business objects defined in the application. If there is only one offset request type business object defined in the application, the **Offset Request Type** screen appears.



4. Select the required offset request type business object from the respective field.
5. Click **OK**.



The **Offset Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the offset request type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the offset request type.


The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Offset Request Type	Used to specify the offset request type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the offset request type.	Yes
Offset Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the offset request.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the offset request type.	No
Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the offset request type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a offset request type to <b>Inactive</b> if there are offset requests which are created using the offset request type and are currently in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Approval In Progress</b> or <b>Deferred Processing</b> status.</p>	Yes
Adjustment Type	<p>Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the offset adjustment must be created.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.</p>	Yes
Default Offset Amount Algorithm	<p>Used to attach an algorithm that will be triggered when you create adjustments. This algorithm calculates the default offset amount whenever a bill is added to an offset request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	Yes
Defer Processing Count	<p>Displays the number of bills to determine if the offset request will be processed in deferred mode.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the number of bills is less than the <b>Defer Processing Count</b>, the offset request will be processed in real time (i.e. immediately).</p>	No
Approval Required	Indicates whether approval is required while processing the offset adjustments using the offset request type.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval To Do Type	Used to Indicate the To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the offset request for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the offset request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Submitter To Do Type	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.	

6. Enter the required details depending on whether you want to define offset request type.

**Note:** You can search for an adjustment type by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

7. Define characteristics for the offset request type, if required.  
8. Click **Save**.

The offset request type is defined.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Offset Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Offset Request Type</a> on page 1020
<b>Offset Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Offset Request Type List</a> on page 1021
How to define characteristics for a offset request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Offset Request Type</a> on page 1026

## Defining Characteristics for an Offset Request Type

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for an offset request type, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Offset Request Type**)

### Procedure


To define characteristics for an offset request type:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying an offset request type.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Offset Request Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the offset request type.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the offset request type.

2. Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the offset request type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the offset request type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an offset request type	<a href="#">Defining an Offset Request Type</a> on page 1024
How to edit an offset request type	<a href="#">Editing an Offset Request Type</a> on page 1027
How to copy an offset request type	<a href="#">Copying Offset Request Type</a> on page 1031

## Editing an Offset Request Type

### Prerequisites

To edit an offset request type, you should have:

- Offset request business objects defined in the application
- **C1-OFSRQ** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting an offset request for approval.
- **C1-OFSRQ** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while resubmitting an offset request or in case an error occurs in the deferred processing.

**Procedure**

To edit an offset request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **O** and then click **Offset Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Offset Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Offset Request Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Offset Request Type List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the offset request type whose details you want to edit.




The **Offset Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the offset request type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the offset request type.


The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Offset Request Type	Used to specify the offset request type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the offset request type.	Yes
Offset Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the offset request.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the offset request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the offset request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Active</li><li>• Inactive</li></ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a offset request type to <b>Inactive</b> if there are offset requests which are created using the offset request type and are currently in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Approval In Progress</b> or <b>Deferred Processing</b> status.	




Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the offset adjustment must be created.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.	
Default Offset Amount Algorithm	Used to attach an algorithm that will be triggered when you create adjustments. This algorithm calculates the default offset amount whenever a bill is added to an offset request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	
Defer Processing Count	Displays the number of bills to determine if the offset request will be processed in deferred mode.	No
	<b>Note:</b> If the number of bills is less than the <b>Defer Processing Count</b> , the offset request will be processed in real time (i.e. immediately).	
Approval Required	Indicates whether approval is required while processing the offset adjustments using the offset request type.	No
Approval To Do Type	Used to Indicate the To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the offset request for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.	

**Note:** This field is required when the **Approval Required** check box is selected.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the offset request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Submitter To Do Type	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Offset Request Type** zone to edit the details of the offset request type.

5. Modify the details, if required.

**Note:** You can search for an adjustment type by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the offset request type, if required.

7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the offset request type are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Offset Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Offset Request Type</a> on page 1020
<b>Offset Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Offset Request Type List</a> on page 1021
<b>Offset Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Offset Request Type</a> on page 1021
How to define characteristics for an offset request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Offset Request Type</a> on page 1026

**Deleting an Offset Request Type**

**Procedure**

To delete an offset request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **O** and then click **Offset Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Offset Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Offset Request Type** screen appears.

4. In the **Offset Request Type List** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the offset request type that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the offset request type.

**Note:** You can delete an offset request type only when you have not defined an offset request using the offset request type.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Delete** button in the **Offset Request Type** zone to delete the offset request type.

5. Click **OK**.

The offset request type is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Offset Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Offset Request Type</a> on page 1020
<b>Offset Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Offset Request Type List</a> on page 1021
<b>Offset Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Offset Request Type</a> on page 1021

## Copying Offset Request Type

Instead of creating an offset request type from scratch, you can create a new offset request type using an existing offset request type. This is possible through copying an offset request type. On copying an offset request type, the details including the characteristics are copied to the new offset request type. You can then edit the details, if required.


### Prerequisites

To copy an offset request type, you should have:



- Offset request type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Offset request business objects defined in the application



### Procedure

To copy an offset request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **O** and then click **Offset Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Offset Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Offset Request Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Offset Request Type List** zone, click the **Duplicate** () icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the offset request type whose copy you want to create.  
The **Offset Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:
  - **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the offset request type.
  - **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the offset request type.


The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Offset Request Type	Used to specify the offset request type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the offset request type.	Yes
Offset Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the offset request.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the offset request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the offset request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a offset request type to <b>Inactive</b> if there are offset requests which are created using the offset request type and are currently in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Approval In Progress</b> or <b>Deferred Processing</b> status.	
Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the offset adjustment must be created.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.	
Default Offset Amount Algorithm	Used to attach an algorithm that will be triggered when you create adjustments. This algorithm calculates the default offset amount whenever a bill is added to an offset request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Defer Processing Count	Displays the number of bills to determine if the offset request will be processed in deferred mode.	No
	<b>Note:</b> If the number of bills is less than the <b>Defer Processing Count</b> , the offset request will be processed in real time (i.e. immediately).	
Approval Required	Indicates whether approval is required while processing the offset adjustments using the offset request type.	No
Approval To Do Type	Used to Indicate the To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the offset request for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the offset request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Submitter To Do Type	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Duplicate** button in the **Offset Request Type** zone to create a copy of the offset request type.

- Enter the required details.

**Note:** You can search for an adjustment type by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

- Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the offset request type, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The new offset request type is defined.


### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Offset Request Type screen	<a href="#">Offset Request Type</a> on page 1020
Offset Request Type List zone	<a href="#">Offset Request Type List</a> on page 1021
Offset Request Type zone	<a href="#">Offset Request Type</a> on page 1021
How to define characteristics for an offset request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Offset Request Type</a> on page 1026

## Viewing the Offset Request Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of an offset request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **O** and then click **Offset Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Offset Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Offset Request Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Offset Request Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the offset request type whose details you want to view.  
The **Offset Request Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the offset request type in the **Offset Request Type** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Offset Request Type screen	<a href="#">Offset Request Type</a> on page 1020
Offset Request Type List zone	<a href="#">Offset Request Type List</a> on page 1021
Offset Request Type zone	<a href="#">Offset Request Type</a> on page 1021

## Offset Request (Used for Searching)

The **Offset Request** screen allows you to search for an offset request using various search criteria. It also allows you to create an offset request. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screens:

- [Offset Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1039

This screen consists of the following zones:




- [Search Offset Request](#) on page 1034

### Search Offset Request

The **Search Offset Request** zone allows you to search for offset requests using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for an offset request using request details or bill details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Request Details</li> <li>• Bill Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected.	
Created From	Used to search offset requests which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
To	Used to search offset requests which are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Status	Used to search offset requests with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Deferred Processing</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Unapplied Offset</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
User ID	Used to search offset requests which are created by a particular user.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Offset Request Type	Used to search offset requests which are created using a particular offset request type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Offset Request ID	Used to search a particular offset request.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person ID	Used to search for offset requests in which bills of a particular person are selected for offsetting.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Person Search</b> window appears.	
Account ID	Used to search for offset requests in which bills of a particular account are selected for offsetting.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Person Search</b> window appears.	
Bill ID	Used to search offset requests with a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Bill Search</b> window appears.	
Alternate Bill ID	Used to search a particular offset request using the alternate bill ID.	
Bill Date From	Used to search offset requests with bills which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
To	Used to search offset requests with bills which are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	



**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an offset request.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the offset request is created.
Offset Request Information	Displays information about the offset request.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Offset Request</b> screen appears.
Offset Amount	Displays the total offset amount.
Status	Indicates the status of the offset request.
Created By	Indicates the user who has created the offset request.
Creation Mode	Displays the mode of offset request creation. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic</li> <li>• Manual</li> </ul>

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an offset request	<a href="#">Searching for an Offset Request</a> on page 1037
How to view the details of an offset request	<a href="#">Viewing the Offset Request Details</a> on page 1038
How to create an offset request	<a href="#">Creating an Offset Request</a> on page 1045

## Searching for an Offset Request

### Prerequisites

To search for an offset request, you should have:

- Offset request types defined in the application

### Procedure

To search for an offset request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Offset Request**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Offset Request** sub-menu.  
The **Offset Request** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Offset Request** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of offset requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Offset Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Offset Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1034
<b>Search Offset Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Offset Request</a> on page 1034

**Viewing the Offset Request Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of an offset request:

1. Search for the offset request in the **Offset Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Offset Request Information** column corresponding to the offset request whose details you want to view.

The **Offset Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the offset request. It contains the following zones:
    - **Offset Request** – Displays the details of the offset request.
    - **Selected Bills** – Lists the debit or credit bill line items to be offset.
    - **Search Bill** – Used to debit and credit bills that you want to offset. The bills in the search results added to the offset request can be viewed in the **Selected Bills** zone.
  - **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the offset request.
3. View the details of the offset request in the **Offset Request** zone.
  4. View the entities (such as credit or debit bills) which must be offset in the **Selected Bills** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Offset Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Offset Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1039
<b>Offset Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Offset Request</a> on page 1039
<b>Selected Bills</b> zone	<a href="#">Selected Bills</a> on page 1041
<b>Search Bill</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Bill</a> on page 1042
How to search for an offset request	<a href="#">Searching for an Offset Request</a> on page 1037

## Offset Request (Used for Viewing)

Once you create an offset request, the **Offset Request** screen allows you to:

- Edit the details of an offset request
- Edit the offset amount of the bills in the offset request
- Delete an offset request
- View the details of an offset request
- Submit an offset request for approval
- Approve or reject an offset request
- View the log of an offset request
- Add a log entry for an offset request

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
  - **Offset Request** – Displays the details of the offset request.
  - **Selected Bills** – Lists the selected bills added to the offset request.
  - **Search Bill** – Searches bills using search criteria.
- **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the offset request.

### Offset Request - Main

The **Main** tab on the **Offset Request** contains the following zones:

- [Offset Request](#) on page 1039
- [Selected Bills](#) on page 1041
- [Search Bill](#) on page 1042

### Offset Request

The **Offset Request** zone displays the details of the offset request. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Main** — This section provides basic information about the offset request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Offset Request Information	Displays information about the offset request.
Offset Request Type	Indicates the offset request type using which the offset request is created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Offset Request Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the offset request type.

Field Name	Field Description
Status	<p>Indicates the status of the offset request. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Approval In Progress</li> <li>Draft</li> <li>Deferred Processing</li> <li>Rejected</li> <li>Processed</li> <li>Unapplied Offset</li> </ul>
Adjustment Type	<p>Indicates the adjustment type using which offset adjustments are created for the offset request. By default, adjustment type defined in the offset request type is displayed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment Type</b> screen appears with the details of the respective offset request.</p>
Offset Amount	Displays the total debit offset amount.

- **Characteristics** — Lists the characteristics defined for the offset request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Effective Date	Indicates the date from when the characteristic is effective for the offset request.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** — This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	<p>Used to edit the details of the offset request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the offset request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.</p>
Delete	<p>Used to delete the offset request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the offset request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.</p>
Submit	<p>Used to submit the offset request for approval or create offset adjustments in case approval is not configured for the offset request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit</b> button appears only when the offset request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.</p>

Button Name	Button Description
Approve	Used to approve the offset request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Approve</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The offset request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the offset request.</li> </ul>
Reject	Used to reject the offset request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Reject</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The offset request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the offset request.</li> </ul>
Unapply	Used to unapply the offset request to cancel the offset adjustments.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Unapply</b> button appears only when the offset request is in the <b>Processed</b> status.


- **Record Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the offset request is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the offset request status is updated
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the offset request is created.

### Selected Bills

The **Selected Bills** zone lists the debit and credit bill(s) that you have added to the offset request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the bill. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Bill Date	Displays the date on which the bill was generated.
Outstanding Amount	Displays the outstanding amount of the bill.
	<b>Note:</b> After the offset request is processed, this field displays the new bill balance instead of <b>Remaining Bill Balance</b> .

Column Name	Column Description
Hold Amount	Displays the bill amount that has been put on hold.
	<b>Note:</b> After the offset request is processed, this field displays the new hold amount instead of <b>Updated Hold Amount</b> .
Offset Amount	Displays the amount that you want to offset.
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the amount which is eligible for offset appears in this field. You can edit the amount, if required. However, you cannot specify the amount greater than the eligible amount.
Remaining Bill Balance	Displays the difference between bill outstanding amount and offset amount.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the offset request status is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.
Updated Hold Amount	Displays the updated hold amount which is the hold amount before the offset request is processed.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the offset request status is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.
View Adjustments	Displays the details of adjustments created against the corresponding bill by clicking the <b>View</b> (  ) icon for the respective bill.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the offset request is in the <b>Processed</b> status.
Account Information	Displays information about the account.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID.

### Search Bill

The **Search Bill** zone allows you to search for a bill applicable for offset. This zone contains the following fields:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for an offset request using person, account, or bill details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person Details</li> <li>• Account Details</li> <li>• Bill Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Person Details</b> option is selected.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person ID	Used to search for bills which belong to a particular person.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. The <b>Allow Offsetting Across Persons</b> option in the <b>C1-OFFSETREQ</b> feature configuration is set to <b>Y</b> .	
Account ID	Used to search for bills which belong to a particular account.	
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Bill ID	Used to search for a particular bill.	
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Bills on Hold	Used to indicate whether the bills are on hold. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul>	
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Bill Balance	Used to indicate category for bill balance. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Equal to Zero</li> <li>Greater Than Zero</li> <li>Lesser Than Zero</li> <li>Not Equal to Zero</li> </ul>	
Bill Date From	Used to search bills applicable for the offset request which are created from a particular date onwards.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, date before 30 days of the current date appears in this field.	
Bill Date To	Used to search bills applicable for the offset request which are created till a particular date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current date appears in this field.	
Show Cross Currency Bills	Used to indicate whether the bills are cross currency bills.	Not applicable

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an offset request.


- Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Information	Display additional information about the bill. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Bill Date	Displays the date when the bill was completed.
Due Date	Displays the due date of the bill.
Outstanding Amount	Displays the total outstanding amount of the bill.
Hold Amount	Displays the amount from the bill that has been put on hold.
Outstanding Amount (Offset Currency)	Displays the outstanding amount of the bill in the native currency of the offset request.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only if the <b>Show Cross Currency Bills</b> option is checked.
Account Information	Display additional information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears with the details of the respective account.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to add a credit/debit bill to an offset request	<a href="#">Adding a Credit or Debit Bill to the Offset Request</a> on page 1049

**View Adjustments**

The **View Adjustments** screen appears when you click the **View**  icon under **View Adjustments** column in the **Selected Bills** zone on the **Offset Request** screen when the offset request is in **Processed** status. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Adjustment Information	Displays the additional information about the bill.
Adjustment Amount	Displays the adjustment amount.
From Bill	Displays the additional information about the bill from the which the offset request is created.
To Bill	Displays the additional information about the bill which is offset against a selected bill.

**Note:** The view icon for **View Adjustments** appears only when the offset request is in the **Processed** status.



## Offset Request - Log

The **Log** tab on the **Offset Request** contains the following zones:

- [Offset Request Log](#) on page 1045

### Offset Request Log

The **Offset Request Log** zone on the **Offset Request** screen lists the complete trail of actions performed on the offset request. It also logs the actions of To Do types, hold amount updated from offset request and error occurred in deferred processing of the offset request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the offset request.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the offset request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the offset request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the offset request.
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the offset request was rejected or unapplied offset.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the offset request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Offset Request Log** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of an offset request	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of an Offset Request</a> on page 1058

## Creating an Offset Request

### Prerequisites

To create an offset request, you should have:

- Offset request types defined in the application.

### Procedure


To create an offset request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Define an offset request from the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Financial</b> and then click <b>Account Receivable Central</b>.  The <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen appears.</li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Search for the bill in the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen.</li> <li>4. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, select the required bill and then click <b>Single Offset</b>, <b>Mass Offset</b>, or <b>Cross Currency Offset</b>, whichever is applicable.</li> </ol>
Define an offset request from the <b>Offset Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Financial</b> and then click <b>Offset Request</b>. A sub-menu appears.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Add</b> option from the <b>Offset Request</b> sub-menu.</li> </ol>

The **Add Offset Request** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Offset Request Type	Used to indicate the request type using which you want to create the offset request.	Yes
Bill	<p>Used to indicate the bill against which you want to create the offset request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> When you add the bill from <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen, this field is disabled.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Bill Search</b> window appears.</p>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Add Offset Request** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Offset Request** screen.

2. Select the required offset request type and bill from the respective fields.

**Note:** You can search for an account by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

3. Click **Save**.

The offset request is defined and the status of the offset request is set to **Draft**. The **Offset Request** screen appears where you can view the details of the offset request. It contains the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the offset request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Offset Request** – Displays the details of the offset request.
  - **Selected Bills** – Lists the bills with debit and credit line items of the account which must be offset.

- **Search Bill** — Used to search bills with debit and credit line items that you want to offset. This tab appears only when the offset request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the offset request.
4. Add debit and credit line items that you want to offset.
  5. Edit the offset amount of each entity, if required.
  6. Define characteristics for the offset request, if required.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Offset Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Offset Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1034
How to add a debit /credit bill to the offset request	<a href="#">Adding a Credit or Debit Bill to the Offset Request</a> on page 1049
How to edit an offset request	<a href="#">Editing an Offset Request</a> on page 1051
How to define characteristics for an offset request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Offset Request</a> on page 1047

## Defining Characteristics for an Offset Request

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for an offset request, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Offset Request**)

### Procedure

To define characteristics for an offset request:

1. Search for the offset request in the **Offset Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Offset Request Information** column corresponding to the offset request whose details you want to edit.

The **Offset Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Offset Request** zone.

The **Offset Request** screen appears.

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the offset request is in the **Draft** status.


4. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are editing the offset request.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the offset request.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the offset request.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Offset Request</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the offset request.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the offset request.

5. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

6. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the offset request, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 5.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the offset request, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an offset request	<a href="#">Searching for an Offset Request</a> on page 1037
How to create an offset request	<a href="#">Creating an Offset Request</a> on page 1045

## Filtering Credit and Debit Bills of an Offset Request


### Procedure

To filter bills of an offset request:

1. Search for the bills in the **Offset Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Offset Request Information** column corresponding to the offset request whose details you want to view.

The **Offset Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the offset request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Offset Request** – Displays the details of the offset request.
  - **Selected Bills** – Lists the debit and credit bill(s) to be offset.
  - **Search Bill** – Used to search bills with debit or credit bill(s) that you want to offset. The debit or credit bill(s) in the search results added to the offset request can be viewed in the **Selected Bills** zone.
- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the offset request.

You can filter the bills using **Bill Balance** search criteria available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (  ) icon in the upper right corner of the **Selected Bills** zone.

### 3. Click **Search**.

The search results are filtered based on the specified criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the bill. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Due Date	Displays the due date of the bill.
Outstanding Amount	Displays the outstanding amount of the bill.
	<b>Note:</b> After the offset request is processed, this field displays the new bill balance instead of <b>Remaining Bill Balance</b> .
Hold Amount	Displays the bill amount that has been put on hold.
	<b>Note:</b> After the offset request is processed, this field displays the new hold amount instead of <b>Updated Hold Amount</b> .
Offset Amount	Displays the amount that you want to offset.
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the amount which is eligible for offset appears in this field. You can edit the amount, if required. However, you cannot specify the amount greater than the remaining bill balance.
Remaining Bill Balance	Displays the difference between bill outstanding amount and the offset amount.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the offset request status is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.
Updated Hold Amount	Displays the updated hold amount.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the offset request status is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an offset request	<a href="#">Searching for an Offset Request</a> on page 1037

## Adding a Credit or Debit Bill to the Offset Request

You can add the credit/debit bills to an offset request. While adding a credit/debit bill to an offset request, you can either:

- Add selected credit/debit bill to the offset request from the **Account Receivable Central** screen only before creating the offset request.
- Add selected credit/debit bill(s) to the offset request from the **Offset Request** screen.

### **Prerequisites**

To add credit/debit bill(s) to the offset request, you should have:

- Completed bills for the account/person.

### **Procedure**

To add credit/debit bill(s) to the offset request:

1. Do either of the following:

<b>If you want to...</b>	<b>Then...</b>
Add a credit/debit bill from the <b>Offset Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the bills in the <b>Search Bill</b> zone on the <b>Offset Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. Select a bill and click the <b>Add</b> button.</li> </ol> <p>The selected bill(s) are added to the offset request. You can view the added bills in the <b>Offset Request</b> screen.</p>
Create single offset request	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the bill in the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen.</li> <li>2. From the search results, select a bill and click the <b>Single Offset</b> button.</li> </ol> <p>The selected bill is added to an offset request. You can view the added bill in the <b>Offset Request</b> screen.</p>
Create mass offset request	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the bills in the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen.</li> <li>2. From the search results, select a bill and click the <b>Mass Offset</b> button.</li> </ol> <p>The selected bill is added to an offset request and you can add more bills with same currency to the offset request from the <b>Search Bill</b> zone in the <b>Offset Request</b> screen. You can view the added bills in the <b>Offset Request</b> screen.</p>
Create cross currency offset request	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the bills in the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen.</li> <li>2. From the search results, select a bill and click the <b>Cross Currency Offset</b> button.</li> </ol> <p>The selected bills is added to an offset request and you can add more bills with different currencies to the offset request from the <b>Search Bill</b> zone in the <b>Offset Request</b> screen. You can view the added bills in the <b>Offset Request</b> screen.</p>

**Note:** You can add only one bill from **Account Receivable Central** screen. You cannot remove the bill added from the **Account Receivable Central** screen.

- After selecting the required fields in the **Add Offset Request** screen, the selected bill appears in the **Offset Request** screen.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create an offset request	<a href="#">Creating an Offset Request</a> on page 1045

## Editing an Offset Request

### Prerequisites

To edit an offset request, you should have:

- Adjustment types defined in the application

### Procedure

To edit an offset request:

- Search for the offset request in the **Offset Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Offset Request Information** column corresponding to the offset request whose details you want to edit.

The **Offset Request** screen appears.

- Click the **Edit** button in the **Offset Request** zone.

The **Offset Request** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** — Used to edit the offset details, such as the amount which must be offset and the adjustment type using which the offset adjustment must be created. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Offset Request Information	Displays information about the offset request.	Not applicable
Offset Request Type	Indicates the offset request type using which the offset request is created.	Not applicable
Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the offset adjustment must be created.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information about the offset request.	No

- Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the offset request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the offset request.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the offset request.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Offset Request</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the offset request.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the offset request.

- **Offset Details** — Used to edit the offset details, such as the amount which must be offset. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Total Debit Offset Amount	Displays the total debit amount of the all the bills added in the offset request.
Total Credit Offset Amount	Displays the total credit amount of the all the bills added in the offset request.
Total Offset Amount	Displays the total credit and debit amount of the all the bills added in the offset request.
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the bill.
Outstanding Amount	Displays the outstanding amount of the bill.
Due Date	Displays the due date of the bill.
Hold Amount	Displays the amount of the bill that has been put on hold.
Outstanding Amount (Offset Currency)	Displays the outstanding amount of the bill in the native currency of the offset request.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only in case of cross currency offset.
Offset Amount	Displays the amount that you want to offset.
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the amount which is eligible for offset appears in this field. You can edit the amount, if required. However, you cannot specify the amount greater than the eligible amount.
Remaining Bill Balance	Displays the difference between bill outstanding amount and the offset amount.
Updated Hold Amount	Displays the updated hold amount.



**Note:**

The **Edit** button appears only when the offset request is in the **Draft** status.

4. Modify the details of the offset request, if required.
5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics of the offset request, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the offset request are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Offset Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Offset Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1034
<b>Offset Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Offset Request</a> on page 1039
How to search for an offset request	<a href="#">Searching for an Offset Request</a> on page 1037
How to define characteristics for a offset request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Offset Request</a> on page 1047

**Deleting an Offset Request****Procedure**

To delete an offset request:

1. Search for the offset request in the **Offset Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Offset Request Information** column corresponding to the offset request that you want to delete.

The **Offset Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Offset Request** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the offset request.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the offset request is in the **Draft** status.

**Note:** This button is disabled if the bill is added to the offset request from the **Account Receivable Central** screen.

4. Click **OK**.

The offset request is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Offset Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Offset Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1034
<b>Offset Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Offset Request</a> on page 1039
How to search for an offset request	<a href="#">Searching for an Offset Request</a> on page 1037

Submitting an Offset Request

Prerequisites

To submit an offset request, you should have:

- Debit and credit bill(s) added in the offset request.

Procedure

To submit an offset request:

- Search for the offset request in the **Offset Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Offset Request Information** column corresponding to the offset request that you want to delete.

The **Offset Request** screen appears.

- Click the **Submit** button in the **Offset Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If...	Then
The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected in the offset request type using which the offset request is created	A To Do of the <b>C1-OFSRQ</b> To Do type is created and sent to the approver. The status of the offset request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> .
The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is not selected in the offset request type using which the offset request is created.	<div> The offset adjustments are created using the specified adjustment type and the status of the offset request is changed to <b>Processed</b>. </div> <div> <b>Note:</b> The offset adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status. If a match event is present for the bill line items, the existing match event is stamped on the offset adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. However, if the match events does not exist, a new match event is created and stamped on the offset adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. If you are doing a partial offset for any entity, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Open</b>. However, if the entire eligible amount is offset, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Balanced</b>. </div>

**Note:** The **Offset Amount** should be less than or equal to current **Outstanding Amount** of the bill.

**Note:** The **Submit** button appears only when the offset request is in the **Draft** status.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Offset Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Offset Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1034
<b>Offset Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Offset Request</a> on page 1039
How to search for an offset request	<a href="#">Searching for an Offset Request</a> on page 1037

## Approving an Offset Request

You can view the number of offset requests which are pending for approval in the **Offset Request** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve or reject the offset request based on the observations.

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve or reject an offset request submitted by you.

### Procedure

To approve an offset request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Approve an offset request through the <b>Offset Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the offset request in the <b>Offset Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Offset Request Information</b> column corresponding to the offset request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Approve an offset request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>. The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter <b>C1-OFSRQ</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field. The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> <li>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the offset request that you want to review.</li> </ol>

The **Offset Request** screen appears.

2. Review the offset request details.
3. Click the **Approve** button in the **Offset Request** zone.

If the number of bills in the offset request does not exceed the defer processing count (defined in the Offset Request Type), the system creates adjustments in the real time (i.e. immediately). In addition, the adjustment information string appears corresponding to each adjustment record in the **View Adjustments** screen and the status of the offset request is changed to **Processed**. However, if the number of bills in the offset request exceeds the defer processing count, the system creates adjustments in the deferred mode and the status of the adjustment offset request is changed to **Deferred Processing**.

**Note:** Deferred mode means in the background when the **Offset Request Periodic Monitor (C1-OFSRQ)** batch is invoked. When the **Offset Request Periodic Monitor (C1-OFSRQ)** batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any offset requests in the **Deferred Processing** status. If there is an offset request in the **Deferred Processing** status, the system creates adjustments for the offset request. Once the adjustments are created, the adjustment information string appears corresponding to each adjustment record in the **View Adjustments** screen and the status of the offset request is changed to **Processed**.

**Note:**

The **Approve** button appears only when:

- The offset request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the offset request.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Offset Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Offset Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1034
<b>Offset Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Offset Request</a> on page 1039
<b>View Adjustments</b>	<a href="#">View Adjustments</a> on page 1044
How to search for an offset request	<a href="#">Searching for an Offset Request</a> on page 1037

**Rejecting an Offset Request**

**Prerequisites**

To reject an offset request, you should have:

- Rejection reasons defined in the application

**Note:**

While rejecting an offset request, you need to specify the reason why you want to reject the offset request. You can select the appropriate rejection reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Rejected** status of the **C1-OffsetRequest** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

The system will not allow you to approve or reject an offset request submitted by you.

**Procedure**

To reject an offset request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Reject an offset request through the <b>Offset Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Search for the offset request in the <b>Offset Request</b> screen.</li><li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Offset Request Information</b> column corresponding to the offset request which you want to review.</li></ol>

If you want to...	Then...
Reject an offset request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>. The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter <b>C1-OFSRQ</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field. The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> <li>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the offset request that you want to review.</li> </ol>

The **Offset Request** screen appears.

2. Review the offset request details.
3. Click the **Reject** button in the **Offset Request** zone.

The **Reject Offset Request** window appears. It contains following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to reject the offset request.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while rejecting the offset request.	No

**Note:** The **Reject** button appears only when:

- The offset request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the offset request.

4. Select the rejection reason from the **Status Reason** list.
5. Click **Save**.

The status of the offset request is changed to **Rejected**.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Offset Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Offset Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1034
<b>Offset Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Offset Request</a> on page 1039

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an offset request	<a href="#">Searching for an Offset Request</a> on page 1037

Viewing the Log of an Offset Request

Procedure

To view the log of an offset request:

- 1. Search for the offset request in the **Offset Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Offset Request Information** column corresponding to the offset request whose log you want to view.

The **Offset Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the offset request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Offset Request** – Displays the details of the offset request.
  - **Selected Bills** – Lists the debit and credit bill line items which must be offset.
  - **Search Bill** – Used to search debit and credit bill line items that you want to offset.
- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the offset request.

- 3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Offset Request Log** zone in the **Log** tab contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the offset request.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the offset request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the offset request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the offset request.
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the offset request was rejected or cancelled.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the offset request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Offset Request Log** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an offset request	<a href="#">Searching for an Offset Request</a> on page 1037
How to add a log entry for an offset request	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for an Offset Request</a> on page 1058

Adding a Log Entry for an Offset Request

**Procedure**

To add a log entry for an offset request:

1. Search for the offset request in the **Offset Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Offset Request Information** column corresponding to the offset request whose log you want to edit.

The **Offset Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the offset request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Offset Request** – Displays the details of the offset request.
  - **Selected Bills** – Lists the debit and credit bill line items which must be offset.
  - **Search Bill** – Used to search debit and credit bill line items that you want to offset.
- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the offset request.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Offset Request Log** zone.

The **Add Request Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Request Information	Displays information about the offset request.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the offset request.	Yes

5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.
6. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Offset Request Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an offset request	<a href="#">Searching for an Offset Request</a> on page 1037

**Unapplying an Offset Request**

There might be situations when an incorrect offset request is processed in the system. In such case, the system provides you with an ability to unapply the offset request. However, you can unapply an offset request only when the offset request is in the **Processed** status.

**Prerequisites**

To unapply an offset request, you should have:

- Unapply reasons defined in the application

**Note:** While unapplying an offset request, you need to specify the reason why you want to unapply the offset request. You can select the appropriate unapply reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Unapplied Offset** status of the **C1-OffsetRequest** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

**Procedure**

To unapply an offset request:

- 1. Search for the offset request in the **Offset Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Offset Request Information** column corresponding to the offset request that you want to unapply.

The **Offset Request** screen appears.

- 3. Click the **Unapply** button in the **Offset Request** zone.

The **Unapply Reason** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to unapply the offset request.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while cancelling the offset request.	No

**Note:** The **Unapply** button appears only when the offset request is in the **Processed** status.

- 4. Select the unapply reason from the **Unapply Reason** list.
- 5. Click **Save**.

The status of the offset request is changed to **Unapplied Offset**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Offset Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Offset Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1034
<b>Offset Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Offset Request</a> on page 1039
How to search for an offset request	<a href="#">Searching for an Offset Request</a> on page 1037



---

# Chapter

# 17

---

## Funding Request

---

### Topics:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Funding Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Funding Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-FundingReq](#)
- [Funding Request Type](#)
- [Funding Request \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Funding Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides the automatic payment facility for an account. The system automatically calculates the automatic payment amount during the bill completion and stamps these details against the bill in the **CI\_BILL\_ACH** table. However, there might be situations when you would like to do the following before stamping the automatic payment amount against the bill in the **CI\_BILL\_ACH** table:

- Hold certain amount on the bill through a hold request
- Offset the bill against another bill through an offset request
- Transfer the amount on the credit bill to one or more garnishment contracts of the account

The system enables you to change the automatic payment amount through the funding process. The funding process supports all three automatic payment creation options (i.e. Create At Bill Completion, Create On Extract Date, and Freeze Payment on Notification).

While creating a funding request, you need to specify a funding request type using which you want to create the funding request. It is the funding request type which helps the system to determine:

- The business object using which the funding request should be created in the system.
- The currency in which the total debit and credit amount should be calculated.
- The account funding currency characteristic type which must be defined on the account. This characteristic indicates that the funding amount of the account's bills should be calculated in the specified currency.
- The default funding adjustment type using which the A/P adjustment should be created against a credit bill.

**Note:** In the **Default Funding Adjustment Type** field, you can only specify an adjustment type where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is set to **REFUND**.

- The default garnishment adjustment type using which the garnishment adjustment should be created when the amount from the credit bill is transferred to the garnishment contract of the account.

**Note:** In the **Default Garnishment Adjustment Type** field, you can only specify an adjustment type where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is not set to **REFUND**.

- Whether the approval is required for the funding request.

- An algorithm which helps to calculate the threshold range for a bill based on the number of payments made for the bill in the specified period.
- Whether a funding request must be processed in the deferred mode when the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count.
- The currency conversion algorithms which must be used while determining the approval hierarchy for the funding request.

**Note:** The **Funding Request (C1-FundingReq)** business object is shipped with the product.

Once you specify a funding request type, the funding request is created in the **Draft** status. You can then add one or more debit or credit bills in the funding request. Note that you can only add bills of those accounts for which the **Defer Auto Pay** option is selected on the customer class. Once the bills are added, you can submit a funding request. Before you submit a funding request, you can do the following:

- Hold certain amount on the bill through a hold request
- Offset the bill against another bill through an offset request
- Transfer the amount on the credit bill to one or more garnishment contracts of the account

**Note:** The garnishment contract is a contract which is created using a contract type where the **Special Role Flag** field is set to **Garnishment**.

The system calculates the funding amount in the following manner:

Bill Type	Funding Amount for the Bill
Debit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request)
Credit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request) – Garnishment Amount (set on the bill in the funding request)

You can delete, cancel, or submit a funding request which is in the **Draft** status. On canceling a funding request, the status of all records in the funding request is changed to **Excluded** and the status of the funding request is changed to **Canceled**. On submitting a funding request, the status of the funding request is changed to either **Deferred Processing** or **Create Funding** depending on whether the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count. Once the **Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)** batch is executed, it checks whether there are any funding requests in the **Deferred Processing** status. If so, it changes the status of the funding request to **Create Funding**.

Once the status of a funding request is changed to **Create Funding**, the system creates the A/P adjustment against a bill when the funding amount of the bill is in credit. It also creates non A/P adjustments using the garnishment adjustment type when the funding amount of a credit bill is transferred to the garnishment contracts of the account. However, if the funding amount of a bill is in debit, the funding amount is stamped as the automatic payment amount against the bill in the **CI\_BILL\_ACH** table. Then, on executing the **Create Automatic**

**Payments and Refunds (APAYCRET)** batch, the system creates automatic payment and payment event for such bill.

You can optionally configure the approval process for the funding request. If the **Approval Required** option is selected in the funding request type, the status of the funding request is changed to **Approval In Progress** on submitting the funding request. The system calculates the sum of total debit and credit amount in the funding request. Depending on whether the sum total is debit or credit, the system uses the debit or credit hierarchy in the approval profile (which is specified in the funding request type), respectively. If the sum total is less than the minimum threshold amount, the system automatically approves the funding request and changes the status of the funding request to either **Deferred Processing** or **Create Funding** depending on whether the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count. However, if the sum total is equal to or greater than the threshold amount specified at the first level in the approval hierarchy, the system creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the approval profile and assigns it to the users with the To Do role defined at the first level in the approval hierarchy.

Once the approver at the first level in the approval hierarchy approves the funding request, the system checks whether the sum total of the debit and credit amount is equal to or greater than the threshold amount specified at the next level in the approval hierarchy. If the sum total of the debit and credit amount is equal to or greater than the threshold amount specified at the next level in the approval hierarchy, the system changes the status of the funding request to **Approval In Progress**. However, if the sum total of the debit and credit amount is less than the threshold amount specified at the next level in the approval hierarchy, the system changes the status of the funding request to either **Deferred Processing** or **Create Funding** depending on whether the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count.

If an approver rejects a funding request, the status of the funding request is changed to **Rejected**. And, if an approver requests to resubmit a funding request for approval, the status of the funding request is changed to **Draft**. You can then edit the funding request and resubmit it for approval. The system allows the submitter to withdraw the funding request when it is in the **Approval In Progress** status. On withdrawing a funding request, the status of the funding request is changed to **Draft**.

If a funding request is created automatically through a custom batch, the system allows you to manually exclude some bills from the funding request when it is in the **Draft** status. You can exclude a bill from a funding request by changing its status to **Excluded**.

For more information on how to setup the funding request process, see [Prerequisites](#) on page 1064.

## Prerequisites

---

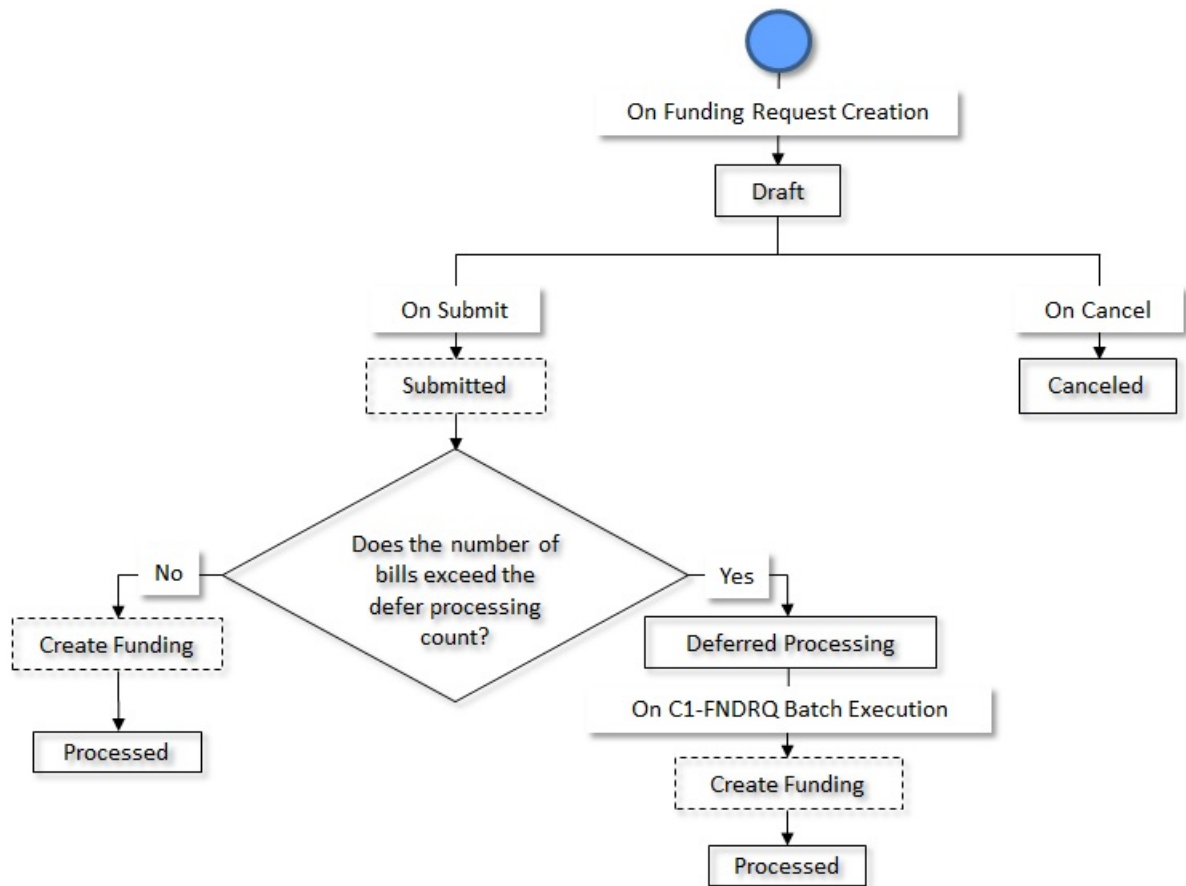
To setup the funding request process, you need to do the following:

- Define the required funding request types in the system
- Define the required funding adjustment types where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is set to **REFUND**
- Define the required garnishment adjustment types where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is not set to **REFUND**
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Funding Request Type**
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Funding Request**
- Define the required approval profiles with the debit and credit approval hierarchy in the system
- Specify the **C1-FNDAP** To Do type in the approval profile which you want to use in the funding request's approval process
- Specify the **C1-FNDSB** as the submitter To Do type in the funding request types
- Define the status reasons for the **Rejected** status of the **C1-FundingRequest** business object in the **Status Reason** screen
- Assign the **C1-FNDAP** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive a To Do while submitting a funding request for approval
- Assign the **C1-FNDSB** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive a To Do when an approver requests to resubmit the funding request for approval
- Select the **Defer Auto Pay** option on the customer class of the accounts for which you want to use the funding process
- Define the values for the **CAN\_RSN\_CD\_FLG** lookup field
- Define the **Funding Currency** characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to **Account**
- Define a currency conversion algorithm for payments using the **C1\_CURALGPY** algorithm type
- Define a currency conversion algorithm for adjustments using the **C1\_CURALGAD** algorithm type
- Attach the currency conversion algorithms to the **Currency Conversion For Adjustments** and **Currency Conversion For Payments** algorithm spots to the required divisions
- Set the batch control type of the **Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)** batch to **Timed** and define the following attributes:
  - Time Interval
  - Timer Active
  - User ID
  - Batch Language
  - Email Address

## Funding Request (Without Approval) Status Transition

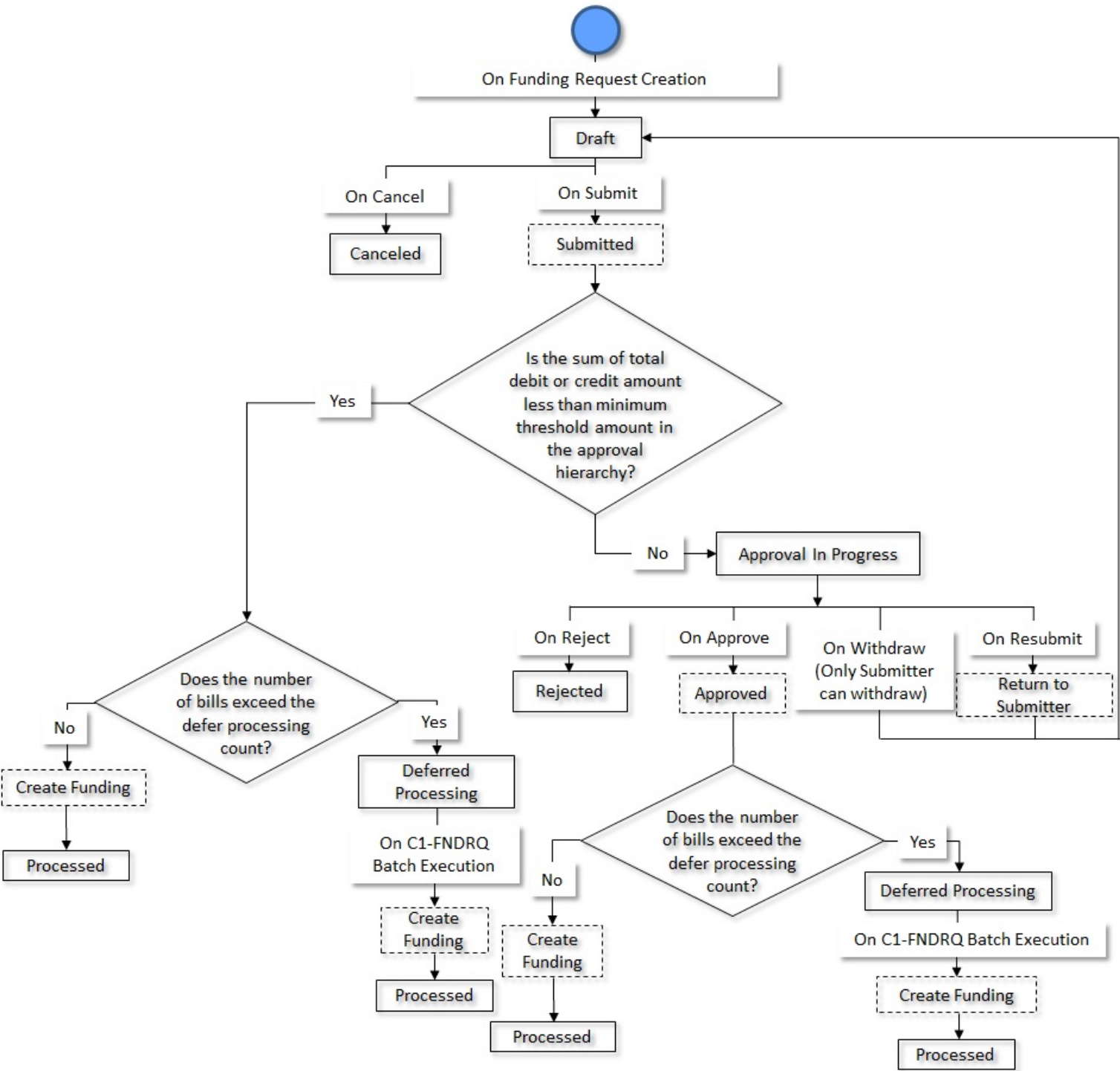
---

The following figure graphically indicates how a funding request moves from one status to another when the approval process is not configured in the funding request type:



## Funding Request (With Approval) Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a funding request moves from one status to another when the approval process is configured in the funding request type:



Algorithms Used in C1-FundingReq

The following table lists the algorithm which is attached to the C1-FundingReq business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-FUNDINFO	C1-FUNDINFO	Refer to <a href="#">C1-FUNDINFO</a> on page 1067

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-FundingReq** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	Refer to <a href="#">F1-TODOCOMPL</a> on page 1068
Submitted	Enter	C1-FUNDSUBMT	C1-FUNDSUBMT	Refer to <a href="#">C1-FUNDSUBMT</a> on page 1067
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-FUNDAPP	C1-FUNDAPP	Refer to <a href="#">C1-FUNDAPP</a> on page 1068
Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	Refer to <a href="#">F1-TODOCOMPL</a> on page 1068
Approved	Enter	C1-FUNDAPRVD	C1-FUNDAPRVD	Refer to <a href="#">C1-FUNDAPRVD</a> on page 1068
Rejected	-	-	-	-
Deferred Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-AT-RQJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068
Return to Submitter	Enter	C1-FNDRESUBM	C1-FNDRESUBM	Refer to <a href="#">C1-FNDRESUBM</a> on page 1069
Creating Funding	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-AT-RQJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068
Creating Funding	Enter	C1-FUNDVAL	C1-FUNDVAL	Refer to <a href="#">C1-FUNDVAL</a> on page 1069
Creating Funding	Enter	C1-FUNDAPAY	C1-FUNDAPAY	Refer to <a href="#">C1-FUNDAPAY</a> on page 1069
Creating Funding	Enter	C1-FUNDADJCR	C1-FUNDADJCR	Refer to <a href="#">C1-FUNDADJCR</a> on page 1069
Processed	-	-	-	-
Canceled	Enter	C1-FUNDCANCL	C1-FUNDCANCL	Refer to <a href="#">C1-FUNDCANCL</a> on page 1070

## C1-FUNDINFO

This algorithm generates the funding request information string which appears throughout the application. It concatenates the following fields separated by a comma in the specified order:

1. Funding Request Type Description
2. Funding Request Status Description
3. Funding Request ID

## C1-FUNDSUBMT

This algorithm is invoked when you submit a funding request. If the approval process is not configured in the funding request type, it changes the status of the funding request to either **Deferred Processing** or **Create Funding** depending on whether the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count. If the approval process is configured in the funding request type, it calculates the sum of total debit and credit amount in the funding request. Depending on whether the sum total is debit or credit, it uses the debit or credit hierarchy in the approval profile (which is specified in the funding request type), respectively. If the sum total is less than the minimum threshold amount in the approval hierarchy, the funding request is automatically approved by the system and the status of the funding request is changed to either **Deferred Processing** or **Create Funding** depending on whether the number of bills in the funding



request exceeds the defer processing count. However, if the sum total is equal to or greater than the threshold amount specified at the first level in the approval hierarchy, the status of the funding request is changed to **Approval In Progress**.

**Note:** If the **Currency Conversion Required** option is selected in the approval profile, the system does currency conversion when the sum total of the debit and credit amount is in a currency which is different from the installation options currency. During the currency conversion of the sum total which is in debit, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm specified in the **Currency Conversion Payment Algorithm** field of the funding request type. However, during the currency conversion of the sum total which is in credit, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm specified in the **Currency Conversion Adjustment Algorithm** field of the funding request type.

## C1-FUNDAPP

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the funding request is changed to **Approval In Progress**. It creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the approval profile and assigns it to the users with the To Do role defined at the first level in the approval hierarchy. In addition, a log entry is created for the funding request when the To Do is created.

**Note:** If a funding request needs approval from the subsequent level in the approval hierarchy, this algorithm creates a To Do and assigns it to the users with the To Do role defined at the subsequent level in the approval hierarchy.

## C1-FUNDAPRVD

This algorithm is invoked when you approve a funding request. It checks whether the sum total of the debit and credit amount is equal to or greater than the threshold amount specified at the next level in the approval hierarchy. If the sum total of the debit and credit amount is equal to or greater than the threshold amount specified at the next level in the approval hierarchy, the status of the funding request is changed to **Approval In Progress**. However, if the sum total of the debit and credit amount is less than the threshold amount specified at the next level in the approval hierarchy, the status of the funding request is changed to either **Deferred Processing** or **Create Funding** depending on whether the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count.

**Note:** If the **Currency Conversion Required** option is selected in the approval profile, the system does currency conversion when the sum total of the debit and credit amount is in a currency which is different from the installation options currency. During the currency conversion of the sum total which is in debit, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm specified in the **Currency Conversion Payment Algorithm** field of the funding request type. However, during the currency conversion of the sum total which is in credit, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm specified in the **Currency Conversion Adjustment Algorithm** field of the funding request type.

## F1-TODOCOMPL

This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the **Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion** characteristic is set to **Y** for the business object, the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.

## F1-AT-RQJ

This algorithm transitions the current status of the business object to the specified status. It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** – Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** – Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.



## C1-FNDRESUBM

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the funding request is changed to **Return to Submitter**. It changes the status of the funding request to **Draft**. The submitter can then make the required changes and resubmit the funding request for approval. In addition, it creates a To Do using the submitter To Do type which is specified in the funding request type. Once a To Do is created, it is assigned to all users with a submitter To Do role which is specified in the funding request type.

## C1-FUNDVAL

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the funding request is changed to **Create Funding**. It checks whether the funding amount of a debit bill is equal to the bill outstanding amount minus hold and offset amount set on the bill (i.e.  $\text{Funding Amount} = \text{Outstanding Bill Amount} - \text{Hold Amount} - \text{Offset Amount}$ ). Similarly, it checks whether the funding amount of a credit bill is equal to the bill outstanding amount minus hold, offset, and garnishment amount set on the bill (i.e.  $\text{Funding Amount} = \text{Outstanding Bill Amount} - \text{Hold Amount} - \text{Offset Amount} - \text{Garnishment Amount}$ ). If so, it executes the next algorithm. However, if the funding amount is incorrect, the status of the record in the funding request is changed to **Error**.

## C1-FUNDAPAY

If the funding amount of a bill is in debit, it stamps the funding amount as the automatic payment amount against the bill in the **CI\_BILL\_ACH** table. Then, on executing the **Create Automatic Payments and Refunds (APAYCRET)** batch, the system creates automatic payment and payment event for such bill.

It considers the records in the funding request which are in the **Pending** status. Once the **CI\_BILL\_ACH** table is updated, the status of the record in the funding request is changed to **Processed**. If any error occurs while updating the **CI\_BILL\_ACH** table, the status of the record in the funding request is changed to **Error**.

## C1-FUNDADJCR

If the funding amount of a bill is in credit, it creates the A/P adjustments using the funding adjustment type. It also creates non A/P adjustments using the garnishment adjustment type when the funding amount of a credit bill is transferred to the garnishment contracts of the account.

It considers the records in the funding request which are in the **Pending** status. Once the adjustments are created, the status of the record in the funding request is changed to **Processed**. If any error occurs while creating the adjustments, the status of the record in the funding request is changed to **Error**.

### Points to Note:

- The system uses the funding and garnishment adjustment types from the funding request.
- The main customer's address is used while creating the A/P adjustment for a credit bill.
- The garnishment adjustments are created against the garnishment contracts of the account. A garnishment contract is a contract which is created using a contract type where the **Special Role Flag** field is set to **Garnishment**.
- The system allows you to transfer funding amount to multiple garnishment contracts of the account. Accordingly, the number of non A/P adjustments will be created using the garnishment adjustment type.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Adjustment Type** - Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the adjustment should be created against the credit bill for internal offsetting.
- **Match Type Entity Flag** - Used to indicate the match type entity on which a new match event must be created when no payment exists for the credit bill. The valid values are:
  - **BILL** - Used when you want to create the same match event on all financial transactions of a bill.
  - **BSEG** - Used when you want to create a unique match event for each bill line item (such as, bill segment or adjustment).

- **SA** - Used when you want to create the same match event on the bill line items which are created against the same contract.

C1-FUNDCANCL

This algorithm is invoked when you cancel a funding request. It excludes all debit and credit bills from the funding request and changes the status of each record in the funding request to **Excluded**. In addition, the status of the funding request is changed to **Canceled**.

Funding Request Type

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define a funding request type using which you can create a funding request. It is the funding request type which helps the system to determine the following:

- The business object using which the funding request should be created in the system.
- The currency in which the funding amount should be calculated.
- The default funding adjustment type using which the A/P adjustment should be created against a credit bill on submitting the funding request.

**Note:** In the **Default Funding Adjustment Type** field, you can only specify an adjustment type where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is set to **REFUND**.

- The default garnishment adjustment type using which the garnishment adjustment should be created when the amount from the credit bill is moved to the garnishment contract of the account.

**Note:** In the **Default Garnishment Adjustment Type** field, you can only specify an adjustment type where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is not set to **REFUND**.


- Whether the approval is required for the funding request.
- An algorithm which helps to calculate the threshold range for a bill based on the number of payments made for the bill in the specified period.
- Whether a funding request must be processed in the deferred mode when the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count.



The **Funding Request Type** screen allows you to define, edit, delete, and copy a funding request type. It contains the following zones:


- [Funding Request Type List](#) on page 1070
- [Funding Request Type](#) on page 1071

Funding Request Type List

The **Funding Request Type List** zone lists the funding request types that are already defined in the system. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Funding Request Type	Displays the funding request type.
Description	Displays the description of the funding request type.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b>  icon, the <b>Funding Request Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the funding request type.

Column Name	Column Description
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Funding Request Type</b> screen appears where you can define a new funding request type using an existing funding request type.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the funding request type.  <b>Note:</b> You can delete a funding request type only when you have not created a funding request using the funding request type.

On clicking the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a funding request type, the **Funding Request Type** zone appears with the details of the respective funding request type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a funding request type	<a href="#">Editing a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1082
How to copy a funding request type	<a href="#">Copying a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1090
How to delete a funding request type	<a href="#">Deleting a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1089
How to view the details of a funding request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Funding Request Type Details</a> on page 1097

## Funding Request Type

The **Funding Request Type** zone displays the details of the funding request type. It contains of the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays the basic information about the funding request type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Funding Request Type	Displays the funding request type.
Description	Displays the description of the funding request type.
Funding Request Business Object	Indicates the business object that will be used to create the funding request. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the funding request type.
Status	Indicates the status of the funding request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>
Funding Amount Currency	Indicates the currency in which the total debit and credit amount should be calculated in the funding request. The total debit and credit amount appears in the <b>Statistics</b> section of the <b>Funding Request</b> zone.
Account Funding Currency Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type which should be defined on the account. This characteristic indicates that the funding amount of the account's bills should be converted in the specified currency.

Field Name	Field Description
Default Funding Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the funding adjustments must be created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective adjustment type.
Default Garnishment Adjustment Type	Indicates the garnishment adjustment type using which the garnishment adjustments must be created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment Type</b> screen appears with the details of the respective adjustment type.
Threshold Range Algorithm	Indicates the threshold range for a bill based on the payments done for the bill.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Algorithm</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective algorithm.
Defer Processing Count	Displays the number of bills to determine if the funding request will be processed in deferred mode.
	<b>Note:</b> If the number of bills is less than the <b>Defer Processing Count</b> , the funding request will be processed in real time (i.e. immediately).
Approval Required	Indicates whether approval is required while creating the funding adjustments using the funding request type.
Approval Profile	Indicates the approval profile which must be used to define approval hierarchy for the funding request type.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Approval Profile</b> field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Approval Profile</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective approval profile.
Submitter To Do Type	Indicates the To Do type for the submitter when the funding request type is resubmitted by the approver.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Submitter To Do Type</b> field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective To Do type.

Field Name	Field Description
Submitter To Do Role	Indicates the To Do role for the submitter when the funding request type is resubmitted by the approver.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Submitter To Do Role</b> field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Role</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective To Do role.</p>
Currency Conversion Adjustment Algorithm	Indicates the currency conversion algorithm. It is used while determining the approval hierarchy for a funding request when the sum total of the debit and credit amount (i.e. which is in credit) is different from the installation options currency.
Currency Conversion Payment Algorithm	Indicates the currency conversion algorithm. It is used while determining the approval hierarchy for a funding request when the sum total of the debit and credit amount (i.e. which is in debit) is different from the installation options currency.

- **Characteristics** - The **Characteristics** section lists the characteristics defined for the funding request type. It contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** - The **Record Actions** section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the funding request type.
Delete	Used to delete the funding request type.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a funding request type only when you have not created a funding request using the funding request type.
Duplicate	Used to create a new funding request type using an existing funding request type.

- **Record Information** - The **Record Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the funding request type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

By default, the **Funding Request Type** zone does not appear in the **Funding Request Type** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the funding request type in the **Funding Request Type List** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a funding request type	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1081
How to edit a funding request type	<a href="#">Editing a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1082
How to copy a funding request type	<a href="#">Copying a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1090
How to delete a funding request type	<a href="#">Deleting a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1089
How to view the details of a funding request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Funding Request Type Details</a> on page 1097

**Defining a Funding Request Type****Prerequisites**

To define a funding request type, you should have:

- Funding request type business objects defined in the application
- Funding request business objects defined in the application
- Currencies defined in the application
- Funding adjustment types defined in the application (where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is set to **REFUND**)
- Garnishment adjustment types defined in the application (where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is not set to **REFUND**)
- A threshold range algorithm defined using the **C1-FDRTTR** algorithm type
- Required approval profiles defined in the application
- A To Do role assigned to the **C1-FNDSB** To Do type in the application
- Funding currency characteristic type defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Account**)
- A currency conversion algorithm defined for payments and adjustments using the **C1\_CURALGPY** and **C1\_CURALGAD** algorithm type, respectively

**Procedure**

To define a funding request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Funding Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Funding Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Funding Request Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the funding request type.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Business Object** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Funding Request Type** screen.

**Note:** The **Select Business Object** screen appears only when there are multiple funding request type business objects defined in the application. If there is only one funding request type business object defined in the application, the **Funding Request Type** screen appears.

4. Select the required funding request type business object from the respective field.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Funding Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:



- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the funding request type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the funding request type.



The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Funding Request Type	Used to specify the funding request type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which you are defining the funding request type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the funding request type.	Yes
Funding Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the funding request.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the funding request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the funding request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a funding request type to <b>Inactive</b> when the corresponding funding request is in a status other than <b>Processed</b> or <b>Rejected</b> .	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Funding Amount Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which the total debit and credit amount should be calculated in the funding request. The total debit and credit amount appears in the <b>Statistics</b> section of the <b>Funding Request</b> zone.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b>  The list includes only those currencies which are defined in the system.  If the currency specified in this field is different from the bill's currency, the system does currency conversion before calculating the total debit and credit amount in the funding request. The total debit amount is the sum of funding amount of all bills whose funding amount is in debit. However, the total credit amount is the sum of funding amount and garnishment amount of all bills whose funding amount is in credit. While calculating the total debit amount, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Payments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division. However, while calculating the total credit amount, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Adjustments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division.	




Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Funding Currency Characteristic Type	<p>Used to indicate the characteristic type. This characteristic should be defined on the account. This characteristic indicates that the funding amount of the account's bills should be converted in the specified currency.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Account Funding Currency Characteristic Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Characteristic Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b>.</p> <p>The converted amount appears in the <b>Funding Currency Amount</b> column of the <b>Selected Bills</b> zone in the <b>Funding Request</b> screen.</p> <p>If the funding amount is in debit, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Payments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division. However, if the funding amount is in credit, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Adjustments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division.</p>	Yes
Default Funding Adjustment Type	<p>Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the A/P adjustment should be created against a credit bill on submitting the funding request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Default Funding Adjustment Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>In the <b>Default Funding Adjustment Type</b> field, you can only specify an adjustment type where the <b>A/P Request Type Code</b> field is set to <b>REFUND</b>.</p>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Default Garnishment Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the garnishment adjustment should be created when the amount from the credit bill is transferred to the garnishment contract of the account.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Default Garnishment Adjustment Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>In the <b>Default Garnishment Adjustment Type</b> field, you can only specify an adjustment type where the <b>A/P Request Type Code</b> field is not set to <b>REFUND</b>.</p>	
Threshold Range Algorithm	Used to attach an algorithm which helps to calculate the threshold range for a bill based on the number of payments made for the bill in the specified period.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You must specify an algorithm which is created using the <b>C1-FDRTTR</b> algorithm type in the <b>Threshold Range Algorithm</b> field.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Threshold Range Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Defer Processing Count	Used to indicate whether a funding request must be processed in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background) when the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You cannot specify a negative value in the <b>Defer Processing Count</b> field.</p> <p>Deferred mode means in the background when the <b>Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)</b> batch is invoked. You can configure the <b>Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)</b> batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. For more information about the <b>Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)</b> batch, refer to <i>Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide</i>.</p> <p>If the number of bills in a funding request does not exceed the defer processing count, the system will process the funding request in real time (i.e. immediately).</p>	
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether the approval is required before creating payments for debit bills and A/P adjustments for credit bills through the funding request.	No
Approval Profile	Used to indicate the approval profile using which the system should determine the debit or credit hierarchy level from where the approval is required. The system considers the debit or credit hierarchy level where the funding amount of the debit or credit bill falls within the threshold limit.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p>

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Submitter To Do Type	Used to indicate that To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when the approver rejects the funding request or raises the request for resubmitting the funding request.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the <b>C1-FNDSB To Do</b> type in the <b>Submitter To Do Type</b> field.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Submitter To Do Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.  This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.
Submitter To Do Role	Used to indicate that the users with the specified To Do role must receive a To Do when the approver rejects the funding request or raises the request for resubmitting the funding request.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.  The list includes only those To Do roles which are associated to the specified submitter To Do type.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.
Currency Conversion Adjustment Algorithm	Used to indicate the currency conversion algorithm. It is used while determining the approval hierarchy for a funding request when the sum total of the debit and credit amount (i.e. which is in credit) is different from the installation options currency.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Currency Conversion Adjustment Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Currency Conversion Required</b> option is selected in the approval profile.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Currency Conversion Payment Algorithm	Used to indicate the currency conversion algorithm. It is used while determining the approval hierarchy for a funding request when the sum total of the debit and credit amount (i.e. which is in debit) is different from the installation options currency.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Currency Conversion Payment Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Currency Conversion Required</b> option is selected in the approval profile.

6. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
7. Define characteristics for the funding request type, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

The funding request type is defined.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Funding Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request Type</a> on page 1070
How to define a characteristic for a funding request type	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1081

## Defining a Characteristic for a Funding Request Type

### Prerequisites

To define a characteristic for a funding request type, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Funding Request Type**)


### Procedure


To define a characteristic for a funding request type:

1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a funding request type.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Funding Request Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the funding request type.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the funding request type.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the funding request type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the funding request type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a funding request type	<a href="#">Defining a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1074
How to edit a funding request type	<a href="#">Editing a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1082
How to copy a funding request type	<a href="#">Copying a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1090

## Editing a Funding Request Type

### Prerequisites

To edit a funding request type, you should have:

- Funding request business objects defined in the application
- Currencies defined in the application
- Funding adjustment types defined in the application (where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is set to **REFUND**)

- Garnishment adjustment types defined in the application (where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is not set to **REFUND**)
- A threshold range algorithm defined using the **C1-FDRTTR** algorithm type
- Required approval profiles defined in the application
- A To Do role assigned to the **C1-FNDSB** To Do type in the application
- Funding currency characteristic type defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Account**)
- A currency conversion algorithm defined for payments and adjustments using the **C1\_CURALGPY** and **C1\_CURALGAD** algorithm type, respectively

### **Procedure**

To edit a funding request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Funding Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Funding Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Funding Request Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Funding Request Type List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the funding request type whose details you want to edit.

The **Funding Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:



- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the funding request type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the funding request type.



The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Funding Request Type	Displays the funding request type.	Not applicable
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which you are defining the funding request type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the funding request type.	Yes
Funding Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the funding request.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the funding request type.	No



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the status of the funding request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a funding request type to <b>Inactive</b> when the corresponding funding request is in a status other than <b>Processed</b> or <b>Rejected</b> .	
Funding Amount Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which the total debit and credit amount should be calculated in the funding request. The total debit and credit amount appears in the <b>Statistics</b> section of the <b>Funding Request</b> zone.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those currencies which are defined in the system.  If the currency specified in this field is different from the bill's currency, the system does currency conversion before calculating the total debit and credit amount in the funding request. The total debit amount is the sum of funding amount of all bills whose funding amount is in debit. However, the total credit amount is the sum of funding amount and garnishment amount of all bills whose funding amount is in credit. While calculating the total debit amount, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Payments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division. However, while calculating the total credit amount, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Adjustments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division.	




Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Funding Currency Characteristic Type	<p>Used to indicate the characteristic type. This characteristic should be defined on the account. This characteristic indicates that the funding amount of the account's bills should be converted in the specified currency.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Account Funding Currency Characteristic Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Characteristic Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b>.</p> <p>The converted amount appears in the <b>Funding Currency Amount</b> column of the <b>Selected Bills</b> zone in the <b>Funding Request</b> screen.</p> <p>If the funding amount is in debit, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Payments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division. However, if the funding amount is in credit, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Adjustments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division.</p>	Yes
Default Funding Adjustment Type	<p>Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the A/P adjustment should be created against a credit bill on submitting the funding request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Default Funding Adjustment Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>In the <b>Default Funding Adjustment Type</b> field, you can only specify an adjustment type where the <b>A/P Request Type Code</b> field is set to <b>REFUND</b>.</p>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Default Garnishment Adjustment Type	<p>Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the garnishment adjustment should be created when the amount from the credit bill is transferred to the garnishment contract of the account.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Default Garnishment Adjustment Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>In the <b>Default Garnishment Adjustment Type</b> field, you can only specify an adjustment type where the <b>A/P Request Type Code</b> field is not set to <b>REFUND</b>.</p>	Yes
Threshold Range Algorithm	<p>Used to attach an algorithm which helps to calculate the threshold range for a bill based on the number of payments made for the bill in the specified period.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You must specify an algorithm which is created using the <b>C1-FDRTTR</b> algorithm type in the <b>Threshold Range Algorithm</b> field.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Threshold Range Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Defer Processing Count	Used to indicate whether a funding request must be processed in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background) when the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You cannot specify a negative value in the <b>Defer Processing Count</b> field.</p> <p>Deferred mode means in the background when the <b>Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)</b> batch is invoked. You can configure the <b>Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)</b> batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. For more information about the <b>Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)</b> batch, refer to <i>Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide</i>.</p> <p>If the number of bills in a funding request does not exceed the defer processing count, the system will process the funding request in real time (i.e. immediately).</p>	
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether the approval is required before creating payments for debit bills and A/P adjustments for credit bills through the funding request.	No
Approval Profile	Used to indicate the approval profile using which the system should determine the debit or credit hierarchy level from where the approval is required. The system considers the debit or credit hierarchy level where the funding amount of the debit or credit bill falls within the threshold limit.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p>

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Submitter To Do Type	Used to indicate that To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when the approver rejects the funding request or raises the request for resubmitting the funding request.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the <b>C1-FNDSB To Do</b> type in the <b>Submitter To Do Type</b> field.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Submitter To Do Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.  This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.
Submitter To Do Role	Used to indicate that the users with the specified To Do role must receive a To Do when the approver rejects the funding request or raises the request for resubmitting the funding request.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.  The list includes only those To Do roles which are associated to the specified submitter To Do type.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.
Currency Conversion Adjustment Algorithm	Used to indicate the currency conversion algorithm. It is used while determining the approval hierarchy for a funding request when the sum total of the debit and credit amount (i.e. which is in credit) is different from the installation options currency.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Currency Conversion Adjustment Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Currency Conversion Required</b> option is selected in the approval profile.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Currency Conversion Payment Algorithm	Used to indicate the currency conversion algorithm. It is used while determining the approval hierarchy for a funding request when the sum total of the debit and credit amount (i.e. which is in debit) is different from the installation options currency.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Currency Conversion Payment Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Currency Conversion Required</b> option is selected in the approval profile.</p>

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of a funding request type by clicking the **Edit** button in the **Funding Request Type** zone.

5. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the funding request type, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the funding request type are saved.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Funding Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request Type</a> on page 1070
<b>Funding Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request Type List</a> on page 1070
<b>Funding Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request Type</a> on page 1071
How to define a characteristic for a funding request type	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1081

## Deleting a Funding Request Type

### Procedure

To delete a funding request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Funding Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Funding Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Funding Request Type** screen appears.

4. In the **Funding Request Type List** zone, click the **Delete** (  ) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the funding request type that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the funding request type.

**Note:** You can delete a funding request type only when you have not created a funding request using the funding request type.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a funding request type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Funding Request Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.

The funding request type is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Funding Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request Type</a> on page 1070
<b>Funding Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request Type List</a> on page 1070
<b>Funding Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request Type</a> on page 1071

**Copying a Funding Request Type**

Instead of creating a funding request type from scratch, you can create a new funding request type using an existing funding request type. This is possible through copying a funding request type. On copying a funding request type, the details including the characteristics are copied to the new funding request type. You can then edit the details, if required.

**Prerequisites**

To copy a funding request type, you should have:

- Funding request type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Funding request business objects defined in the application
- Currencies defined in the application
- Funding adjustment types defined in the application (where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is set to **REFUND**)
- Garnishment adjustment types defined in the application (where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is not set to **REFUND**)
- A threshold range algorithm defined using the **C1-FDRTTR** algorithm type
- Required approval profiles defined in the application
- A To Do role assigned to the **C1-FNDSB** To Do type in the application
- Funding currency characteristic type defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Account**)
- A currency conversion algorithm defined for payments and adjustments using the **C1\_CURALGPY** and **C1\_CURALGAD** algorithm type, respectively

**Procedure**

To copy a funding request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.


A list appears.

- From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Funding Request Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Funding Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Funding Request Type** screen appears.

- In the **Funding Request Type List** zone, click the **Duplicate** () icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the funding request type whose copy you want to create.

The **Funding Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:



- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the funding request type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the funding request type.



The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Funding Request Type	Used to specify the funding request type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which you are defining the funding request type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the funding request type.	Yes
Funding Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the funding request.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the funding request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the funding request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a funding request type to <b>Inactive</b> when the corresponding funding request is in a status other than <b>Processed</b> or <b>Rejected</b> .	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Funding Amount Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which the total debit and credit amount should be calculated in the funding request. The total debit and credit amount appears in the <b>Statistics</b> section of the <b>Funding Request</b> zone.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b>  The list includes only those currencies which are defined in the system.  If the currency specified in this field is different from the bill's currency, the system does currency conversion before calculating the total debit and credit amount in the funding request. The total debit amount is the sum of funding amount of all bills whose funding amount is in debit. However, the total credit amount is the sum of funding amount and garnishment amount of all bills whose funding amount is in credit. While calculating the total debit amount, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Payments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division. However, while calculating the total credit amount, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Adjustments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division.	




Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Funding Currency Characteristic Type	<p>Used to indicate the characteristic type. This characteristic should be defined on the account. This characteristic indicates that the funding amount of the account's bills should be converted in the specified currency.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Account Funding Currency Characteristic Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Characteristic Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b>.</p> <p>The converted amount appears in the <b>Funding Currency Amount</b> column of the <b>Selected Bills</b> zone in the <b>Funding Request</b> screen.</p> <p>If the funding amount is in debit, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Payments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division. However, if the funding amount is in credit, the system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Adjustments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division.</p>	Yes
Default Funding Adjustment Type	<p>Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the A/P adjustment should be created against a credit bill on submitting the funding request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Default Funding Adjustment Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>In the <b>Default Funding Adjustment Type</b> field, you can only specify an adjustment type where the <b>A/P Request Type Code</b> field is set to <b>REFUND</b>.</p>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Default Garnishment Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the garnishment adjustment should be created when the amount from the credit bill is transferred to the garnishment contract of the account.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Default Garnishment Adjustment Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>In the <b>Default Garnishment Adjustment Type</b> field, you can only specify an adjustment type where the <b>A/P Request Type Code</b> field is not set to <b>REFUND</b>.</p>	
Threshold Range Algorithm	Used to attach an algorithm which helps to calculate the threshold range for a bill based on the number of payments made for the bill in the specified period.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You must specify an algorithm which is created using the <b>C1-FDRTTR</b> algorithm type in the <b>Threshold Range Algorithm</b> field.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Threshold Range Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Defer Processing Count	Used to indicate whether a funding request must be processed in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background) when the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You cannot specify a negative value in the <b>Defer Processing Count</b> field.</p> <p>Deferred mode means in the background when the <b>Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)</b> batch is invoked. You can configure the <b>Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)</b> batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. For more information about the <b>Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)</b> batch, refer to <i>Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide</i>.</p> <p>If the number of bills in a funding request does not exceed the defer processing count, the system will process the funding request in real time (i.e. immediately).</p>	
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether the approval is required before creating payments for debit bills and A/P adjustments for credit bills through the funding request.	No
Approval Profile	Used to indicate the approval profile using which the system should determine the debit or credit hierarchy level from where the approval is required. The system considers the debit or credit hierarchy level where the funding amount of the debit or credit bill falls within the threshold limit.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p>

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Submitter To Do Type	Used to indicate that To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when the approver rejects the funding request or raises the request for resubmitting the funding request.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You must specify the <b>C1-FNDSB To Do</b> type in the <b>Submitter To Do Type</b> field.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Submitter To Do Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p>
Submitter To Do Role	Used to indicate that the users with the specified To Do role must receive a To Do when the approver rejects the funding request or raises the request for resubmitting the funding request.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p> <p>The list includes only those To Do roles which are associated to the specified submitter To Do type.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p>
Currency Conversion Adjustment Algorithm	Used to indicate the currency conversion algorithm. It is used while determining the approval hierarchy for a funding request when the sum total of the debit and credit amount (i.e. which is in credit) is different from the installation options currency.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Currency Conversion Adjustment Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Currency Conversion Required</b> option is selected in the approval profile.</p>

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Currency Conversion Payment Algorithm	Used to indicate the currency conversion algorithm. It is used while determining the approval hierarchy for a funding request when the sum total of the debit and credit amount (i.e. which is in debit) is different from the installation options currency.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Currency Conversion Payment Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Currency Conversion Required</b> option is selected in the approval profile.</p>

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can copy a funding request type by clicking the **Duplicate** button in the **Funding Request Type** zone.

5. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the funding request type, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The new funding request type is defined.

#### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
<b>Funding Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request Type</a> on page 1070
<b>Funding Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request Type List</a> on page 1070
<b>Funding Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request Type</a> on page 1071
How to define a characteristic for a funding request type	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Funding Request Type</a> on page 1081

## Viewing the Funding Request Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a funding request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Funding Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Funding Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Funding Request Type** screen appears.

4. In the **Funding Request Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the funding request type whose details you want to view.
- The **Funding Request Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the funding request type in the **Funding Request Type** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Funding Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request Type</a> on page 1070
<b>Funding Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request Type List</a> on page 1070
<b>Funding Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request Type</a> on page 1071

## Funding Request (Used for Searching)

The **Funding Request** screen allows you to search for a funding request using various search criteria. It also allows you to create a funding request. It contains the following zone:

- [Search Funding Request](#) on page 1098

Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Funding Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1103


## Search Funding Request

The **Search Funding Request** zone allows you to search for a funding request using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a funding request using the funding request or bill details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Request Details</li><li>• Bill Details</li></ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected.	
Created From	Used to search funding requests which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to search funding requests with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Approval In Progress</li> <li>Deferred Processing</li> <li>Draft</li> <li>Processed</li> <li>Rejected</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Created To	Used to search funding requests which are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
User ID	Used to search funding requests which are created by a particular user.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Funding Request Type	Used to search funding requests which are created using a particular funding request type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Name	Used to search funding requests which includes bills of a particular person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Funding Request ID	Used to search a particular funding request.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Creation Mode	Used to search funding requests which are created in a particular mode. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Automatic</li> <li>Manual</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill ID	Used to search funding requests which include a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Bill ID</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Bill Search</b> window appears.	
Bill Date From	Used to search funding requests which include bills that are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Alternate Bill ID	Used to search funding requests which include a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Bill Date To	Used to search funding requests which include bills that are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Division	Used to search funding requests which includes bills of accounts which belong to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.  You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a funding request.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Create Date Time	Displays the date and time when the funding request is created.
Funding Request Information	Displays information about the funding request.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Funding Request</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective funding request.



Column Name	Column Description
Status	Indicates the status of the funding request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Deferred Processing</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> </ul>
Total Debit Amount	Displays the total amount of the debit bills which are added in the funding request.
Total Credit Amount	Displays the total amount of the credit bills which are added in the funding request.
Created By	Indicates the user who has created the funding request.
Creation Mode	Indicates how the funding request is created. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic</li> <li>• Manual</li> </ul>

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101

## Searching for a Funding Request

### Prerequisites

To search for a funding request, you should have:

- Funding request types defined in the application

### Procedure

To search for a funding request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Funding Request**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Funding Request** sub-menu.  
The **Funding Request** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Funding Request** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of funding requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1098
<b>Search Funding Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Funding Request</a> on page 1098

**Viewing the Funding Request Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a funding request:

1. Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request whose details you want to view.

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

3. Ensure that the **Main** tab is selected.
4. View the details of the funding request in the **Funding Request** zone.
5. View the credit and/or debit bills added in the funding request in the **Selected Bills** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Funding Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request</a> on page 1104
<b>Selected Bills</b> zone	<a href="#">Selected Bills</a> on page 1111

**Creating a Funding Request**

**Prerequisites**

To create a funding request, you should have:

- Funding request types defined in the application

**Procedure**

To create a funding request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Funding Request**.  
A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Add** option from the **Funding Request** sub-menu.

The **Add Funding Request** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Funding Request Type	Used to indicate the funding request type using which you want to create the funding request.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Funding Request** screen.

- Select the required funding request type from the respective field.
- Click **OK**.

The funding request is created in the **Draft** status.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1098
How to add a debit or credit bill to the funding request	<a href="#">Adding a Debit or Credit Bill to a Funding Request</a> on page 1116
How to define a characteristic for a funding request	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Funding Request</a> on page 1121

## Funding Request (Used for Viewing)

The **Funding Request** screen allows you to:

- Edit the details of a funding request
- Delete or cancel a funding request
- View the details of a funding request
- Submit a funding request for processing
- Approve or reject a funding request
- Request the submitter to resubmit a funding request for approval
- Withdraw a funding request
- View the log of a funding request
- Add a log entry for a funding request

It consists of the following tabs:

- [Funding Request - Main](#) on page 1103
- [Funding Request - Bills](#) on page 1111
- [Funding Request - Log](#) on page 1115

### Funding Request - Main

The **Main** tab displays information about the funding request. It contains the following zones:

- [Funding Request](#) on page 1104

- [Search Bill](#) on page 1107

## Funding Request

The **Funding Request** zone displays the details of the funding request. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays basic information about the funding request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Funding Request Information	Displays information about the funding request.
Funding Request Type	Indicates the funding request type using which the funding request is created.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Funding Request Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective funding request type.
Status	Indicates the status of the funding request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Deferred Processing</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> </ul>
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the funding request is rejected.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the funding request is in the <b>Rejected</b> status. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Status Reason</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective status reason.
Funding Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the A/P adjustment is created against a credit bill.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective adjustment type.
Garnishment Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the garnishment adjustment is created when the amount from the credit bill is transferred to the garnishment contract of the account.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective adjustment type.
Comments	Displays additional information entered while rejecting the funding request.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the funding request is in the <b>Rejected</b> status.
Creation Mode	Indicates whether the funding request is created automatically or manually. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic</li> <li>• Manual</li> </ul>

- **Statistics** - Displays analytical information about the funding request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Total Records	Displays the total number of debit or credit bills which are added in the funding request.
Total Records Processed	Displays the total number of debit or credit bills for which payments or adjustments are successfully created in the system.
Total Records Excluded	Displays the total number of debit or credit bills which are excluded from the automatic funding request.
Total Records In Error	Displays the total number of debit or credit bills for which payments or adjustments was not successfully created in the system.
Total Payment Incoming Events Created	Displays the total number of payment events created against the debit bills in the funding request.
Total Adjustments Created	Displays the total number of adjustments created against the credit bills in the funding request.
Total Credit Funding Amount	Displays the sum of funding amount and garnishment amount of all bills whose funding amount is in credit. The sum total is calculated in the funding amount currency which is specified in the funding request type.
	<b>Note:</b> If the credit bill's currency is different from the funding amount currency, the system does the currency conversion before calculating the sum total. The system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Adjustments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division.
Total Debit Funding Amount	Displays the sum of funding amount of all bills whose funding amount is in debit. The sum total is calculated in the funding amount currency which is specified in the funding request type.
	<b>Note:</b> If the debit bill's currency is different from the funding amount currency, the system does the currency conversion before calculating the sum total. The system uses the currency conversion algorithm attached to the <b>Currency Conversion For Payments</b> algorithm spot of the account's division.

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the funding request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the funding request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Delete	Used to delete the funding request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the funding request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.

Button Name	Button Description
Submit	Used to submit the funding request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit</b> button appears only when the funding request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Cancel	Used to cancel the funding request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Cancel</b> button appears only when the funding request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Approve	Used to approve the funding request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Approve</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The funding request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the funding request.</li> </ul>
Reject	Used to reject the funding request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Reject</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The funding request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the funding request.</li> </ul>
Re Submit	Used to request for resubmitting the funding request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Re Submit</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The funding request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the funding request.</li> </ul>
Withdraw	Used to withdraw the funding request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Withdraw</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The funding request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the submitter To Do role is viewing the funding request.</li> </ul>

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the funding request is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the funding request status is updated
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the funding request is created.

- **Characteristics** - Lists the characteristics defined for the funding request. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the funding request.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a funding request	<a href="#">Editing a Funding Request</a> on page 1119
How to delete a funding request	<a href="#">Deleting a Funding Request</a> on page 1122
How to submit a funding request	<a href="#">Submitting a Funding Request</a> on page 1124
How to cancel a funding request	<a href="#">Cancelling a Funding Request</a> on page 1123
How to approve a funding request	<a href="#">Approving a Funding Request</a> on page 1126
How to reject a funding request	<a href="#">Rejecting a Funding Request</a> on page 1128
How to request for resubmitting a funding request	<a href="#">Requesting to Resubmit a Funding Request</a> on page 1130
How to withdraw a funding request	<a href="#">Withdrawing a Funding Request</a> on page 1131

### Search Bill

The **Search Bill** zone allows you to search for a bill using various search criteria. It appears only when the funding request is in the **Draft** status and the creation mode is set to **Manual**. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a bill using the person, account, or bill details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bill Details</li> <li>• Account Details</li> <li>• Person Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected.	
Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Bill ID</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Bill Search</b> window appears.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Date From	Used to search bills which are created from a particular date onwards.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list. By default, the current date appears in this field.	
Alternate Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Bill Date To	Used to search bills which are created till a particular date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list. By default, the current date appears in this field.	
Bill Balance	Used to indicate whether you want to search bills with debit or credit balance. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Credit</li> <li>• Debit</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Bill Due Date From	Used to search bills which are due from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Division	Used to search bills of accounts which belong to a particular division.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list. This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Due Date To	Used to search bills which are due till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account ID	Used to search bills of a particular account.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Account Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Account Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Person ID	Used to search bills which belong to a particular person.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Person Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>Person Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>The person name is not specified in the search criteria.</li> </ul>
Person Name	Used to search bills which are created for accounts of a particular person.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Person Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>Person Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.</li> <li>The person ID is not specified in the search criteria.</li> </ul>
Country	Used to search bills of persons who reside in a particular country.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Person Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a bill.

- Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description						
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the bill. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.						
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill.						
Due Date	Displays the date when the bill is due for payment.						
Outstanding Amount	Displays the unpaid amount of the bill.						
Hold Amount	Displays the amount of the bill which is kept on hold through a hold request.						
Funding Amount	Displays the bill amount which can be used for the funding process. It is calculated in the following manner:						
	<table><tr><th>Bill Type</th><th>Funding Amount for the Bill</th></tr><tr><td>Debit Bill</td><td>Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request)</td></tr><tr><td>Credit Bill</td><td>Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request) – Garnishment Amount (set on the bill in a funding request)</td></tr></table>	Bill Type	Funding Amount for the Bill	Debit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request)	Credit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request) – Garnishment Amount (set on the bill in a funding request)
	Bill Type	Funding Amount for the Bill					
	Debit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request)					
Credit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request) – Garnishment Amount (set on the bill in a funding request)						
Person Name	Indicates the person to whom the bill belongs. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.						
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.						
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID.						
Defer Auto Pay	Indicates whether the <b>Defer Auto Pay</b> option is selected on the customer class of the account for which the bill is created. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>N</li><li>Y</li></ul>						

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

In addition, this section contains the following button:

Button Name	Button Description
Add	Used to add a bill to the funding request.

A check box appears corresponding to each bill. On selecting the check box, you can add the bill to the funding request. You can also select multiple bills at the same time. In addition, you can select the check box corresponding to the column header. This allows you to add all bills listed in the respective page to the funding request.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a debit or credit bill to a funding request	<a href="#">Adding a Debit or Credit Bill to a Funding Request</a> on page 1116

## Funding Request - Bills

The **Bills** tab lists the bills which are added in the funding request. It contains the following zones:

- [Currency Statistics](#) on page 1111
- [Selected Bills](#) on page 1111
- [Funding Payment Details](#) on page 1114

**Note:** This zone appears only when the funding request is in the **Processed** status and the funding amount of the bill is in debit.

- [Funding Adjustments](#) on page 1115

**Note:** This zone appears only when the funding request is in the **Processed** status and the funding amount of the bill is in credit.

## Currency Statistics

A funding request might include bills in different currencies. The **Currency Statistics** zone lists the sum total of various amount of bills which are created in the same currency. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Currency Code	Indicates the currency in which the sum total is calculated.
	<b>Note:</b> Here, the system lists those currencies in which the bills added to the funding request are created.
Total Outstanding Amount	Displays the sum of outstanding amount of all bills which are created in the respective currency.
Total Hold Amount	Displays the sum of hold amount of all bills which are created in the respective currency.
Total Garnishment Amount	Displays the sum of garnishment amount of all bills which are created in the respective currency.
Total Debit Funding Amount	Displays the sum of funding amount (which is in debit) of all bills which are created in the respective currency.
Total Credit Funding Amount	Displays the sum of funding amount (which is in credit) of all bills which are created in the respective currency.

## Selected Bills

The **Selected Bills** zone lists the debit and credit bills which are added to the funding request. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Date	Displays the date when the bill is created.
Person Identifier	Displays the primary identifier of the person for whom the bill is created.
Person Country	Indicates the country where the person is located.

Column Name	Column Description						
Invoice Account Identifier	Displays the primary identifier of the account for which the bill is created.						
Funding Amount	<p>Displays the bill amount which can be used for the funding process. It is calculated in the following manner:</p> <table> <tr> <th>Bill Type</th><th>Funding Amount for the Bill</th></tr> <tr> <td>Debit Bill</td><td>Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request)</td></tr> <tr> <td>Credit Bill</td><td>Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request) – Garnishment Amount (set on the bill in a funding request)</td></tr> </table> <p><b>Note:</b> The funding amount is calculated in the bill's currency.</p>	Bill Type	Funding Amount for the Bill	Debit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request)	Credit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request) – Garnishment Amount (set on the bill in a funding request)
Bill Type	Funding Amount for the Bill						
Debit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request)						
Credit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request) – Garnishment Amount (set on the bill in a funding request)						
Currency Code	Indicates the currency in which the funding amount is calculated.						
Hold Amount	Displays the amount of the bill which is kept on hold through a hold request.						
Offset Amount	Displays the amount of the bill which is offset against another bill through an offset request.						
Garnishment Amount	Displays the amount of the credit bill which is transferred to the garnishment contracts of the account through the funding request.						
Original Outstanding Amount	Displays the original outstanding amount when the bill was added in the funding request.						
Bill ID	<p>Displays the bill ID.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill.</p>						
Open Bills	<p>Indicates whether there are any unpaid bills of the person. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>						
Garnishment Contract	<p>Indicates whether the garnishment contract exists for the account. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column appears only when the funding request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.</p> <p>The data appears in this column only when a credit bill is added to the funding request.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Edit Garnishment Details</b> screen appears where you can transfer the funding amount from the credit bill to one or more garnishment contracts of the account.</p>						

Column Name	Column Description
Garnishment	<p>On clicking the <b>View</b> (🔍) icon, the <b>View Garnishment Details</b> screen appears where you can view the funding amount transferred to the different garnishment contracts of the account.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column does not appear when the funding request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.</p> <p>The <b>View</b> (🔍) icon appears in this column only when the funding request is in the <b>Processed</b> status.</p>
Record Status	<p>Indicates the status of the bill record in the funding request. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Excluded</li> <li>• Invalid</li> <li>• Masked</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Valid</li> <li>• Error</li> </ul>
Threshold Range	Indicates the threshold range for a bill which is calculated based on the number of payments made for the bill in the specified period.
Person Name	Indicates the person whose bill is added in the funding request.
Bill Information	Displays the information about the bill.
Split Banking	<p>Indicates whether the split automatic payment feature is used for the account. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>
Funding Currency Amount	Displays the funding amount which is converted in the funding currency defined on the account.


**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

In addition, this section contains the following button:


Button Name	Button Description
Delete	<p>Used to delete a bill from the funding request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the funding request is created manually and it is in the <b>Draft</b> status.</p>
Edit	<p>Used to exclude a debit or credit bill from the funding request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the funding request is created automatically and it is in the <b>Draft</b> status.</p>

Button Name	Button Description
Hold	Used to create a hold request for one or more bills. However, you cannot select more than 20 bills. On activating or releasing a hold request, the funding amount is automatically updated in the funding request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Hold</b> button appears only when the funding request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Offset	Used to create an offset request for a bill. On processing or unapplying an offset request, the funding amount is automatically updated in the funding request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Offset</b> button appears only when the funding request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.

A check box appears corresponding to each bill when the funding request is in the **Draft** status. On selecting the check box, you can delete the bill from the funding request. You can also select multiple bills at the same time. In addition, you can select the check box corresponding to the column header. This allows you to delete all bills listed in the respective page from the funding request.

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a debit or credit bill, the **Funding Payment Details** or **Funding Adjustments** zone appears, respectively.

**Note:** The **Broadcast** icon does not appear when the funding request is in the **Draft** status.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Bill ID**, **Alternate Bill ID**, **Record Status**, **Bill Balance**, **Funding Amount From**, **Person ID**, **Funding Amount To**, **Currency**, **Funding Amount Threshold Range**, and **Country**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters**  icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to delete a debit or credit bill from a funding request	<a href="#">Deleting a Debit or Credit Bill from a Funding Request</a> on page 1117
<b>Funding Payment Details</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Payment Details</a> on page 1114
<b>Funding Adjustments</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Adjustments</a> on page 1115
How to transfer the funding amount of a credit bill to a garnishment contract	<a href="#">Transferring the Funding Amount of a Credit Bill to a Garnishment Contract</a> on page 1132
How to view the garnishment details of a credit bill	<a href="#">Viewing the Garnishment Details of a Credit Bill</a> on page 1133
How to exclude a debit or credit bill from a funding request	<a href="#">Excluding a Bill from a Funding Request</a> on page 1117

### **Funding Payment Details**

The **Funding Payment Details** zone lists the payment events which are created for a debit bill through the funding request. It appears only when the funding request is in the **Processed** status. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payment Event Information	Displays information about the payment event.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment Event</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payment event.
Payment Amount	Displays the amount for which automatic payment is created.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

### Funding Adjustments

The **Funding Adjustments** zone lists the funding and garnishment adjustments which are created for a credit bill through the funding request. It appears only when the funding request is in the **Processed** status. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Adjustment Information	Displays information about the funding or garnishment adjustment.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective adjustment.
Adjustment Amount	Displays the adjustment amount.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

## Funding Request - Log

The **Log** tab contains the following zone:

- [Funding Request Log](#) on page 1115

### Funding Request Log

The **Funding Request Log** zone lists the complete trail of actions performed on the funding request. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the funding request.
Details	Displays the details of the action performed on the funding request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the funding request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is created when the action is performed on the funding request.
	<b>Note:</b> At present, no data appears in this column. The implementation team can build the custom logic to meet the business requirements.

Column Name	Column Description
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the funding request was rejected by the approver.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the funding request is in the <b>Rejected</b> status.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the funding request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Funding Request Log** zone.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of a funding request	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Funding Request</a> on page 1135
How to add a log entry for a funding request	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Funding Request</a> on page 1136

## **Adding a Debit or Credit Bill to a Funding Request**

In a funding request, you can only add the debit or credit bills of the accounts for which the **Defer Auto Pay** option is selected on the respective customer class.

### **Procedure**

To add a debit or credit bill to a funding request:

1. Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request whose details you want to edit.

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

3. Ensure that the **Main** tab is selected.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Bill** zone.

#### **Note:**

The **Search Bill** zone appears only when the funding request is in the **Draft** status.

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of bills that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

6. Select the check box corresponding to a bill that you want to add to the funding request.
7. Click the **Add** button in the **Search Bill** zone.

A message appears indicating that the bill is added to the funding request.

**Note:** You can only add a debit or credit bill of an account for which the **Defer Auto Pay** option is selected on the respective customer class.



8. Click **OK**.

The bill is added to the funding request. The status of the bill record in the funding request is set to **Pending**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Search Bill</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Bill</a> on page 1107
How to create a funding request	<a href="#">Creating a Funding Request</a> on page 1102

## Deleting a Debit or Credit Bill from a Funding Request

**Procedure**

To delete a debit or credit bill from a funding request:

1. Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request whose details you want to edit.  
The **Funding Request** screen appears.
3. Click the **Bills** tab.  
The **Bills** tab appears.
4. In the **Selected Bills** zone, select the check box corresponding to a bill that you want to delete from the funding request.
5. Click the **Delete** button in the **Selected Bills** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the bill from the funding request.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the funding request is in the **Draft** status.

6. Click **OK**.

The debit or credit bill is deleted from the funding request.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Selected Bills</b> zone	<a href="#">Selected Bills</a> on page 1111

## Excluding a Bill from a Funding Request

If the funding request is manually created through the user interface, you add or delete bills from the funding request when it is in the **Draft** status. However, if the funding request is automatically created through a custom logic, the system allows you to exclude the required bills from the funding request when it is in the **Draft** status. In such case, the status of the record in the funding request is changed to **Excluded**. The excluded bills can then be included in some other funding request.

**Prerequisites**

To exclude a bill from a funding request, you should have:

- Values defined for the **CAN\_RSN\_CD\_FLG** lookup field

**Procedure**

To exclude a bill from a funding request:

1. Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request whose details you want to edit.  
The **Funding Request** screen appears.
3. Click the **Bills** tab.  
The **Bills** tab appears.
4. In the **Selected Bills** zone, select the check box corresponding to a bill that you want to exclude from the funding request.
5. Click the **Edit** button in the **Selected Bills** zone.

The **Edit Funding Request Details** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Funding Request Information	Displays the information about the funding request.

In addition, this screen contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
Bill Information	Displays the information about the bill.	Not applicable						
Garnishment Amount	Displays the funding amount which is transferred to the garnishment contracts of the account.	Not applicable						
Funding Amount	<div>Displays the bill amount which can be used for the funding process. It is calculated in the following manner:</div> <table><tr><th>Bill Type</th><th>Funding Amount for the Bill</th></tr><tr><td>Debit Bill</td><td>Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request)</td></tr><tr><td>Credit Bill</td><td>Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request) – Garnishment Amount (set on the bill in a funding request)</td></tr></table>	Bill Type	Funding Amount for the Bill	Debit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request)	Credit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request) – Garnishment Amount (set on the bill in a funding request)	Not applicable
Bill Type	Funding Amount for the Bill							
Debit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request)							
Credit Bill	Outstanding Bill Amount – Hold Amount (set on the bill in a hold request) – Offset Amount (set on the bill in an offset request) – Garnishment Amount (set on the bill in a funding request)							

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the status of the record in the funding request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Excluded</li> <li>Invalid</li> <li>Masked</li> <li>Pending</li> <li>Processed</li> <li>Valid</li> </ul>	Yes
Cancel Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to exclude the bill from the funding request.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those values which are defined in the <b>CAN_RSN_CD_FLG</b> lookup field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to exclude the bill from the funding request.

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the creation mode of the funding request is set to **Automatic** and the funding request is in the **Draft** status.

6. Select the **Excluded** option from the **Status** field.
7. Select the required cancel reason from the respective field.
8. Click **Save**.

The bill is excluded from the funding request. The status of the bill record in the funding request is set to **Excluded**.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Selected Bills</b> zone	<a href="#">Selected Bills</a> on page 1111

## Editing a Funding Request

### Prerequisites

To edit a funding request, you should have:

- Funding adjustment types defined in the application (where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is set to **REFUND**)
- Garnishment adjustment types defined in the application (where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is not set to **REFUND**)

### Procedure

To edit a funding request:

1. Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request whose details you want to edit.



The **Funding Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Funding Request** zone.

The **Edit Funding Request** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the funding request.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define a characteristic for the funding request.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Funding Request Information	Displays information about the funding request.	Not applicable
Funding Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the A/P adjustment should be created against a credit bill.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Funding Adjustment Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>In the <b>Funding Adjustment Type</b> field, you can only specify an adjustment type where the <b>A/P Request Type Code</b> field is set to <b>REFUND</b>.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required while creating an A/P adjustment against a credit bill.</p>
Garnishment Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the garnishment adjustment should be created when the amount from the credit bill is transferred to the garnishment contract of the account.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Garnishment Adjustment Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>In the <b>Garnishment Adjustment Type</b> field, you can only specify an adjustment type where the <b>A/P Request Type Code</b> field is not set to <b>REFUND</b>.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required while creating garnishment adjustments for a credit bill.</p>
Comments	Used to specify additional information about the funding request.	No

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the funding request is in the **Draft** status.

4. Modify the details of the funding request, if required.
5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the funding request, if required.

6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the funding request are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Funding Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request</a> on page 1104
How to define a characteristic for a funding request	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Funding Request</a> on page 1121

## Defining a Characteristic for a Funding Request

### Prerequisites

To define a characteristic for a funding request, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Funding Request**)


### Procedure


To define a characteristic for a funding request:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are editing a funding request.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the funding request.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the funding request.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Funding Request</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the funding request.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.</p> <p>On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the funding request.</p>

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the funding request, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the funding request, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a funding request	<a href="#">Editing a Funding Request</a> on page 1119

## Deleting a Funding Request

### Procedure

To delete a funding request:

- Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request that you want to delete.

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

- Click the **Delete** button in the **Funding Request** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the funding request.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the funding request is in the **Draft** status.

- Click **OK**.

The funding request is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Funding Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request</a> on page 1104

## Cancelling a Funding Request

### Prerequisites

To cancel a funding request, you should have:

- Reasons defined for the **Canceled** status of the **C1-FundingRequest** business object in the **Status Reason** screen

### Procedure

To cancel a funding request:

- Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request that you want to cancel.

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

- Click the **Cancel** button in the **Funding Request** zone.

The **Funding Request** window appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to cancel the funding request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those reasons which are defined for the <b>Canceled</b> status of the <b>C1-FundingRequest</b> business object in the <b>Status Reason</b> screen.	

**Note:** The **Cancel** button appears only when the funding request is in the **Draft** status.

- Select the cancellation reason from the **Status Reason** list.
- Click **Save**.

The status of all records in the funding request is changed to **Excluded** and the status of the funding request is changed to **Canceled**. The excluded bills can then be included in some other funding request.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Funding Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request</a> on page 1104

## Submitting a Funding Request

### Prerequisites

To submit a funding request, you should have:

- At least one debit or credit bill in the funding request
- Funding and garnishment adjustment types defined in the funding request
- Funding adjustment type defined in the application (where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is set to **REFUND**)
- Garnishment adjustment type defined in the application (where the **A/P Request Type Code** field is not set to **REFUND**)

### Procedure

To submit a funding request:

1. Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request that you want to submit.

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Submit** button in the **Funding Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:



If...	Then...						
The <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected in the funding request type using which the funding request is created	It calculates the sum of total debit and credit amount in the funding request. Depending on whether the sum total is debit or credit, it uses the debit or credit hierarchy in the approval profile (which is specified in the funding request type), respectively. Depending on the sum total amount, the system behaves in the following manner:						
	<table><tr><th>If...</th><th>Then...</th></tr><tr><td>The sum total is less than the minimum threshold amount in the approval hierarchy</td><td>The system automatically approves the funding request and changes the status of the funding request to either <b>Deferred Processing</b> or <b>Create Funding</b> depending on whether the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count.</td></tr><tr><td>The sum total is equal to or greater than the threshold amount specified at the first level in the approval hierarchy</td><td>The system changes the status of the funding request to <b>Approval In Progress</b>. It creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the approval profile and assigns it to the users with the To Do role defined at the first level in the approval hierarchy. In addition, it creates a log entry for the funding request when the To Do is created.</td></tr></table>	If...	Then...	The sum total is less than the minimum threshold amount in the approval hierarchy	The system automatically approves the funding request and changes the status of the funding request to either <b>Deferred Processing</b> or <b>Create Funding</b> depending on whether the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count.	The sum total is equal to or greater than the threshold amount specified at the first level in the approval hierarchy	The system changes the status of the funding request to <b>Approval In Progress</b> . It creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the approval profile and assigns it to the users with the To Do role defined at the first level in the approval hierarchy. In addition, it creates a log entry for the funding request when the To Do is created.
	If...	Then...					
	The sum total is less than the minimum threshold amount in the approval hierarchy	The system automatically approves the funding request and changes the status of the funding request to either <b>Deferred Processing</b> or <b>Create Funding</b> depending on whether the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count.					
The sum total is equal to or greater than the threshold amount specified at the first level in the approval hierarchy	The system changes the status of the funding request to <b>Approval In Progress</b> . It creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the approval profile and assigns it to the users with the To Do role defined at the first level in the approval hierarchy. In addition, it creates a log entry for the funding request when the To Do is created.						

If...	Then...
The <b>Approval Required</b> option is not selected in the funding request type using which the funding request is created	<p>The system changes the status of the funding request to either <b>Deferred Processing</b> or <b>Create Funding</b> depending on whether the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count.</p> <p>Once the <b>Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)</b> batch is executed, it checks whether there are any funding requests in the <b>Deferred Processing</b> status. If so, it changes the status of the funding request to <b>Create Funding</b>.</p> <p>Once the status of a funding request is changed to <b>Create Funding</b>, the system creates the A/P adjustment against a bill when the funding amount of the bill is in credit. It also creates non A/P adjustments using the garnishment adjustment type when the funding amount of a credit bill is transferred to the garnishment contracts of the account. However, if the funding amount of a bill is in debit, the funding amount is stamped as the automatic payment amount against the bill in the <b>CI_BILL_ACH</b> table. Then, on executing the <b>Create Automatic Payments and Refunds (APAYCRET)</b> batch, the system creates automatic payment and payment event for such bill.</p>
	<p><b>Note:</b> The funding and garnishment adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status.</p>

**Note:** The **Submit** button appears only when the funding request is in the **Draft** status.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Funding Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request</a> on page 1104

**Approving a Funding Request**

You can view the number of funding requests which are pending for approval in the **Funding Request** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve, reject, or ask the submitter to resubmit the funding request based on the observations.

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve, reject or resubmit a funding request submitted by you.

**Procedure**

To approve a funding request:

- Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Approve a funding request through the <b>Funding Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the funding request in the <b>Funding Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Funding Request Information</b> column corresponding to the funding request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Approve a funding request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>. The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter <b>C1-FNDAP</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field. The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> <li>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the funding request that you want to review.</li> </ol>

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

2. Review the details in the **Funding Request** screen.
3. If the information in the funding request is accurate, then click the **Approve** button in the **Funding Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If...	Then...
The sum total of the debit and credit amount is equal to or greater than the threshold amount specified at the next level in the approval hierarchy	The system changes the status of the funding request to <b>Approval In Progress</b> . It creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the approval profile and assigns it to the users with the To Do role defined at the next level in the approval hierarchy. In addition, it creates a log entry for the funding request when the To Do is created.

If...	Then...
The sum total of the debit and credit amount is less than the threshold amount specified at the next level in the approval hierarchy	<p>The system changes the status of the funding request to either <b>Deferred Processing</b> or <b>Create Funding</b> depending on whether the number of bills in the funding request exceeds the defer processing count.</p> <p>Once the <b>Funding Request Periodic Monitor (C1-FNDRQ)</b> batch is executed, it checks whether there are any funding requests in the <b>Deferred Processing</b> status. If so, it changes the status of the funding request to <b>Create Funding</b>.</p> <p>Once the status of a funding request is changed to <b>Create Funding</b>, the system creates the A/P adjustment against a bill when the funding amount of the bill is in credit. It also creates non A/P adjustments using the garnishment adjustment type when the funding amount of a credit bill is transferred to the garnishment contracts of the account. However, if the funding amount of a bill is in debit, the funding amount is stamped as the automatic payment amount against the bill in the <b>CI_BILL_ACH</b> table. Then, on executing the <b>Create Automatic Payments and Refunds (APAYCRET)</b> batch, the system creates automatic payment and payment event for such bill.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The funding and garnishment adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status.</p>

**Note:** The **Approve** button appears only when:

- The funding request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the funding request.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Funding Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request</a> on page 1104

**Rejecting a Funding Request**

**Prerequisites**

To reject a funding request, you should have:

- Reasons defined for the **Rejected** status of the **C1-FundingRequest** business object in the **Status Reason** screen

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve, reject or resubmit a funding request submitted by you.

**Procedure**

To reject a funding request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Reject a funding request through the <b>Funding Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the funding request in the <b>Funding Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Funding Request Information</b> column corresponding to the funding request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Reject a funding request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>. The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter <b>C1-FNDAP</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field. The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> <li>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the funding request that you want to review.</li> </ol>

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

2. Review the details in the **Funding Request** screen.
3. If the information in the funding request is incorrect, then click the **Reject** button in the **Funding Request** zone.

The **Reject Funding Request** window appears. It contains following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to reject the funding request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those reasons which are defined for the <b>Rejected</b> status of the <b>C1-FundingRequest</b> business object in the <b>Status Reason</b> screen.	
Comments	Used to specify additional information while rejecting the funding request.	No

**Note:** The **Reject** button appears only when:

- The funding request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the funding request.

4. Select the rejection reason from the **Status Reason** list.
5. Click **Save**.

The status of the funding request is changed to **Rejected**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Funding Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request</a> on page 1104

**Requesting to Resubmit a Funding Request**

**Procedure**

To request for resubmitting a funding request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Request for resubmitting a funding request through the <b>Funding Request</b> screen	<div><div>1. Search for the funding request in the <b>Funding Request</b> screen.</div><div>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Funding Request Information</b> column corresponding to the funding request which you want to review.</div></div>
Request for resubmitting a funding request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<div><div>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</div><div>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>.  The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</div><div>3. Enter <b>C1-FNDAP</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</div><div>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field.  The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</div></div>

If you want to...	Then...
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> <li>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the funding request that you want to review.</li> </ol>

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

2. Review the details in the **Funding Request** screen.
3. If the information in the funding request is incomplete and you want the submitter to make the required changes and resubmit the request, click the **Re Submit** button in the **Funding Request** zone.

The **Resubmit Funding Request** window appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Comments	Used to specify the changes which the submitter should make in the funding request before resubmitting it for approval.	Yes

**Note:** The **Re Submit** button appears only when:

- The funding request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the funding request.

4. Enter the comments in the respective field and then click **Save**.

A To Do is created using the submitter To Do type and assigned to all users with a submitter To Do role specified in the funding request type. In addition, the status of the funding request is changed to **Draft**.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Funding Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request</a> on page 1104

## Withdrawing a Funding Request

### Prerequisites

To withdraw a funding request, you should have:

- Submitter To Do role (which is specified in the funding request type) associated with the **C1-FNDAP** To Do type

### Procedure

To withdraw a funding request:

1. Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.

- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request that you want to withdraw.

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

- 3. If you want to make some changes in the funding request which is already sent for approval, click the **Withdraw** button in the **Funding Request** zone.

The status of the funding request is changed to **Draft**. The submitter can then make the required changes and resubmit the funding request for approval. The To Do for approver is automatically closed when the submitter withdraws the funding request. Note that the To Do for approver is automatically closed only when the submitter To Do role is associated with the To Do type specified in the approval profile.

**Note:** The **Withdraw** button appears only when:

- The funding request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the submitter To Do role is viewing the funding request.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Funding Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request</a> on page 1104

**Transferring the Funding Amount of a Credit Bill to a Garnishment Contract**

**Prerequisites**

To transfer the funding amount of a credit bill to a garnishment contract, you should have:

- At least one garnishment contract on the account

**Note:** The garnishment contract is a contract which is created using a contract type where the **Special Role Flag** field is set to **Garnishment**.

**Procedure**

To transfer the funding amount of a credit bill to a garnishment contract:

1. Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request whose details you want to edit.  
The **Funding Request** screen appears.
3. Click the **Bills** tab.  
The **Bills** tab appears.
4. In the **Selected Bills** zone, click the link on the value **Y** in the **Garnishment Contract** column corresponding to a credit bill whose funding amount you want to transfer to a garnishment contract.  
The **Edit Garnishment Details** screen appears. It contains the following field:



Field Name	Field Description
Bill Information	Indicates the credit bill whose funding amount you want to transfer to a garnishment contract of the account.

In addition, this screen contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Garnishment Contract	Used to indicate the garnishment contract of the account.	Yes
Garnishment Amount	Used to specify the amount that you want to transfer to the garnishment contract.	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Edit Garnishment Details** screen.
- If you want to transfer the funding amount of the credit bill to more than one garnishment contract of the account, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 5.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a garnishment record from the funding request, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the garnishment record.

- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the funding request are saved.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Selected Bills</b> zone	<a href="#">Selected Bills</a> on page 1111

## Viewing the Garnishment Details of a Credit Bill

### Procedure

To view the garnishment details of a credit bill:

- Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request whose details you want to view.

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

- Click the **Bills** tab.

The **Bills** tab appears.

- In the **Selected Bills** zone, click the **Broadcast** (📡) icon in the **Garnishment** column corresponding to the credit bill whose garnishment details you want to view.

The **View Garnishment Details** screen appears. It contains the following field:


Field Name	Field Description
Bill Info	Indicates the credit bill whose garnishment details you are viewing.

In addition, this screen contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Garnishment Contract	Indicates the garnishment contract of the account against which amount from the credit bill is transferred.
Garnishment Amount	Displays the amount which is transferred to the garnishment contract.

**Note:**

The **Garnishment** column does not appear when the funding request is in the **Draft** status.

The **View**  icon appears in the **Garnishment** column only when the funding request is in the **Processed** status.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Selected Bills</b> zone	<a href="#">Selected Bills</a> on page 1111

**Viewing the Payments Created Through a Funding Request**

**Procedure**


To view the payments created through a funding request:

- 1. Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request whose details you want to view.

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

- 3. Click the **Bills** tab.

The **Bills** tab appears.

- 4. In the **Selected Bills** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a debit bill whose payment details you want to view.

The **Funding Payments Details** zone appears.

**Note:** The **Broadcast**  icon appears only when the funding request is in the **Processed** status.

- 5. View the payments created for the debit bill through the funding request in the **Funding Payments Details** zone.

**Note:** The data appears in the **Funding Payments Details** zone only when the **Create Automatic Payments and Refunds (APAYCRET)** batch is executed to create the automatic payment and payment event for the debit bill. For more information about the batch, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Selected Bills</b> zone	<a href="#">Selected Bills</a> on page 1111
<b>Funding Payments Details</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Payment Details</a> on page 1114

## Viewing the Adjustments Created Through a Funding Request

### Procedure

To view the adjustments created through a funding request:


1. Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request whose details you want to view.

The **Funding Request** screen appears.


3. Click the **Bills** tab.

The **Bills** tab appears.

4. In the **Selected Bills** zone, click the **Broadcast**

 icon corresponding to a credit bill whose adjustment details you want to view.

The **Funding Adjustments** zone appears.

**Note:** The **Broadcast**  icon appears only when the funding request is in the **Processed** status.

5. View the A/P adjustments and garnishment adjustments (if any) created for the credit bill through the funding request in the **Funding Adjustments** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Selected Bills</b> zone	<a href="#">Selected Bills</a> on page 1111
<b>Funding Adjustments</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Adjustments</a> on page 1115

## Viewing the Log of a Funding Request

**Procedure**

To view the log of a funding request:

- 1. Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request whose log you want to view.

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

- 3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

- 4. View the complete trail of actions performed on the funding request in the **Funding Request Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101
How to add a log entry for a funding request	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Funding Request</a> on page 1136
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1103
<b>Funding Request Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Funding Request Log</a> on page 1115

**Adding a Log Entry for a Funding Request**

**Procedure**

To add a log entry for a funding request:

- 1. Search for the funding request in the **Funding Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Funding Request Information** column corresponding to the funding request whose log you want to edit.

The **Funding Request** screen appears.

- 3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

- 4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Funding Request Log** zone.

The **Add Request Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Request Information	Displays information about the funding request.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the funding request.	Yes

- 5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.
- 6. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Funding Request Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a funding request	<a href="#">Searching for a Funding Request</a> on page 1101

For more information on...	See...
<b>Funding Request</b> screen	<a href="#"><i>Funding Request (Used for Viewing)</i></a> on page 1103
<b>Funding Request Log</b> zone	<a href="#"><i>Funding Request Log</i></a> on page 1115



---

# Chapter

# 18

---

## Refund/Write Off Request

---

### Topics:

- [Refund Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Refund Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Write Off Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Write Off Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-RefundReq](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-WORequest](#)
- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Refund/Write Off Request Type](#)
- [Refund/Write Off Request](#)
- [Refund Request](#)
- [Write Off Request](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to refund and write off amount to the account. If the amount received from the payor account is matched against the suspense or excess credit contract, the system facilitates you to refund the amount to the payor. In addition, you can refund the amount of a credit bill line item, such as credit bill segment or adjustment, if required. To refund the amount to the account holder, you need to create refund adjustments through a refund request. While creating a refund request, you need to specify the refund request type using which you want to create the refund request. It is the refund request type which helps the system to determine:

- Whether the refund request must be approved before creating refund adjustments in the system
- Approval profile using which the refund request must be approved
- Whether multi-level or single-level approval is required while creating refund adjustments in the system
- Tolerance limit for refund (i.e. minimum refund amount)
- Adjustment type using which the write up adjustment must be created when the total refund amount is less than the minimum refund amount
- Default adjustment type using which refund adjustments must be created

The system allows you to create refund adjustments only using those adjustment types where A/P request type is defined. Once the refund adjustments are created, the A/P Extract process will extract the information and accordingly refund the amount to the payor. During the refund request process, a refund request goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. For more information about the refund request statuses, see [Refund Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 1141 and [Refund Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 1141.

Note that the lifecycle of a refund request is driven by the business object using which the refund request is created. A refund request business object named **C1-RefundReq** is shipped with the product. The refund request feature explained in this document is articulated based on the lifecycle and logic defined in the **C1-RefundReq** business object.

Similarly, the system facilitates you to write off the amount to the account through a write off request. While creating a write off request, you need to specify the write off request type using which you want to create the write off request. It is the write off request type which helps the system to determine:

- Whether the write off request must be approved before creating write off adjustments in the system
- Approval profile using which the write off request must be approved

- Whether multi-level or single-level approval is required while creating write off adjustments in the system
- Default adjustment type using which write off adjustments must be created

The system allows you to create write off adjustments only using those adjustment types where A/P request type is not defined. During the write off request process, a write off request goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. For more information about the write off request statuses, see [Write Off Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 1142 and [Write Off Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 1143.

Note that the lifecycle of a write off request is driven by the business object using which the write off request is created. A write off request business object named **C1-WORequest** is shipped with the product. The write off request feature explained in this document is articulated based on the lifecycle and logic defined in the **C1-WORequest** business object.

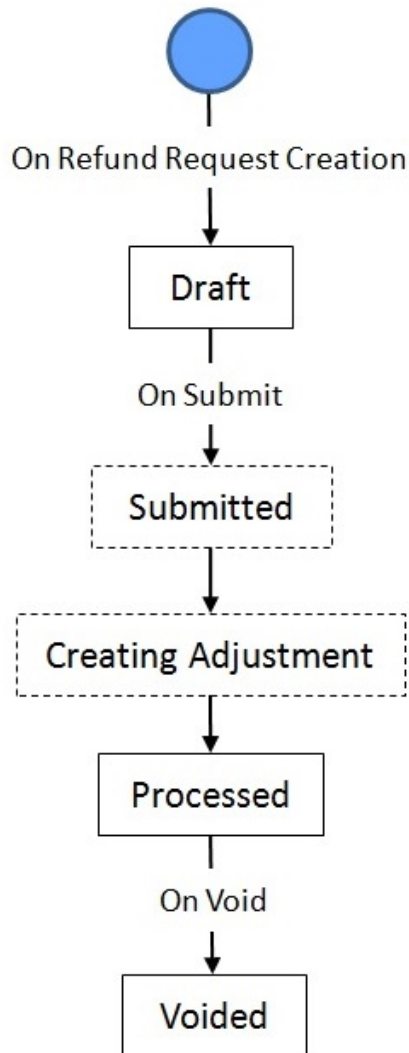
For more information on how to setup the refund and write off request processes, see [Prerequisites](#) on page 1153.



## Refund Request (Without Approval) Status Transition

---

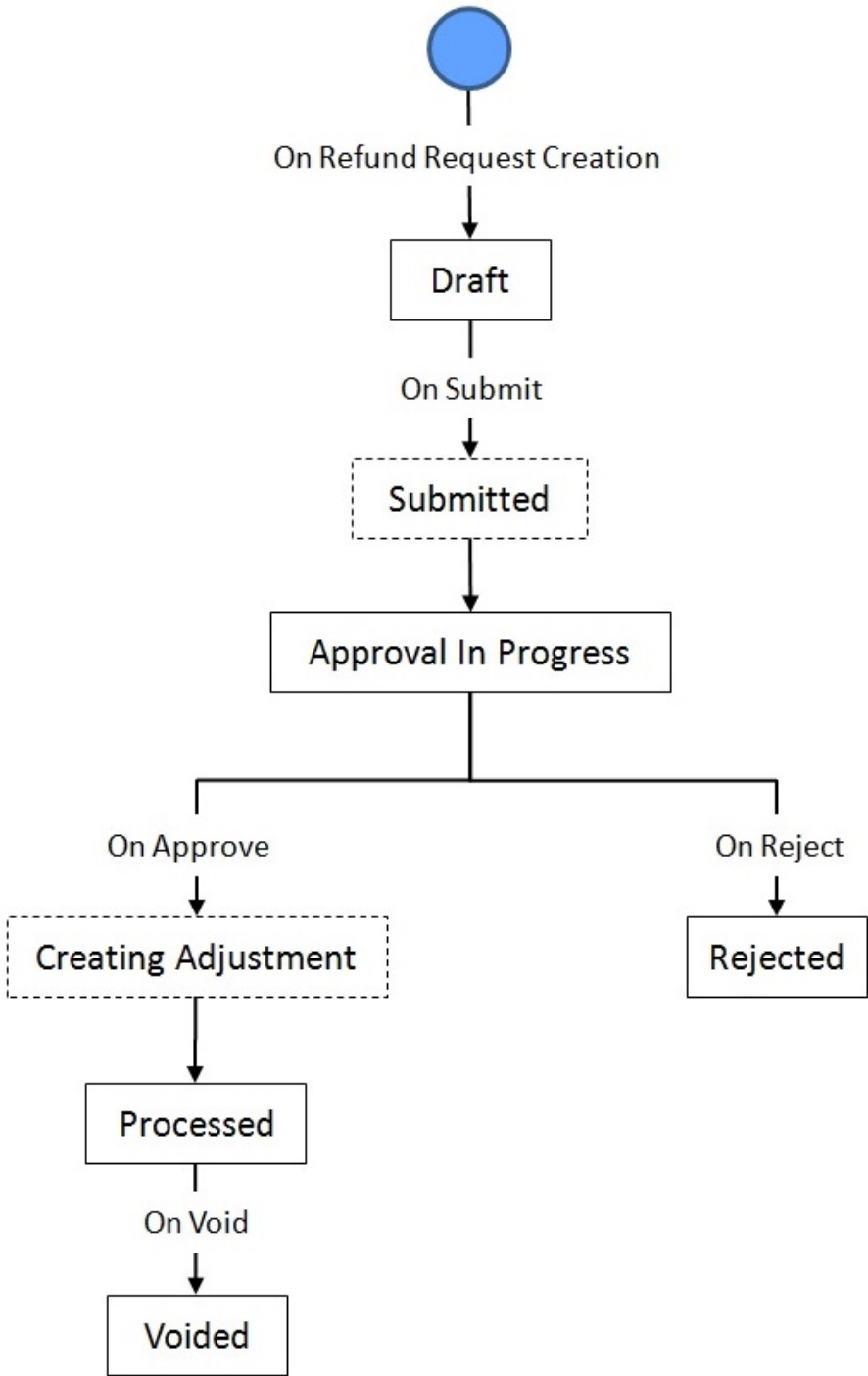
The following figure graphically indicates how a refund request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is off:



## Refund Request (With Approval) Status Transition

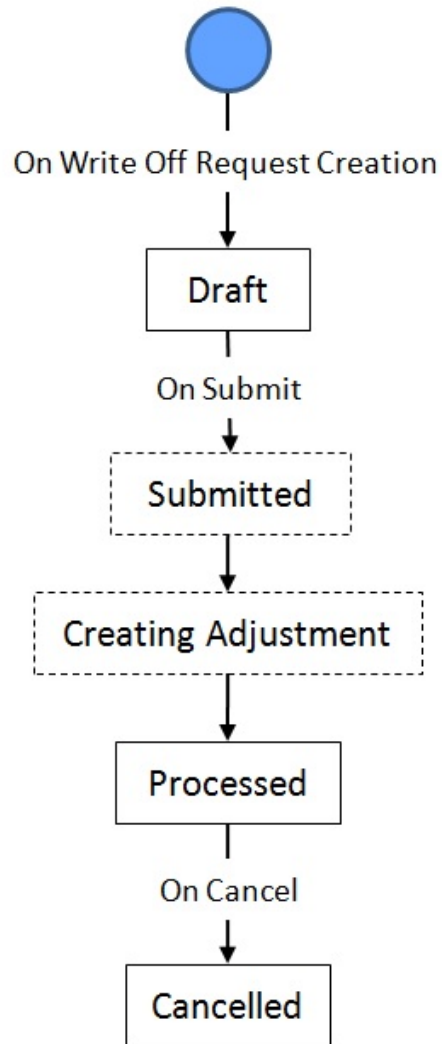
---

The following figure graphically indicates how a refund request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is on:



### Write Off Request (Without Approval) Status Transition

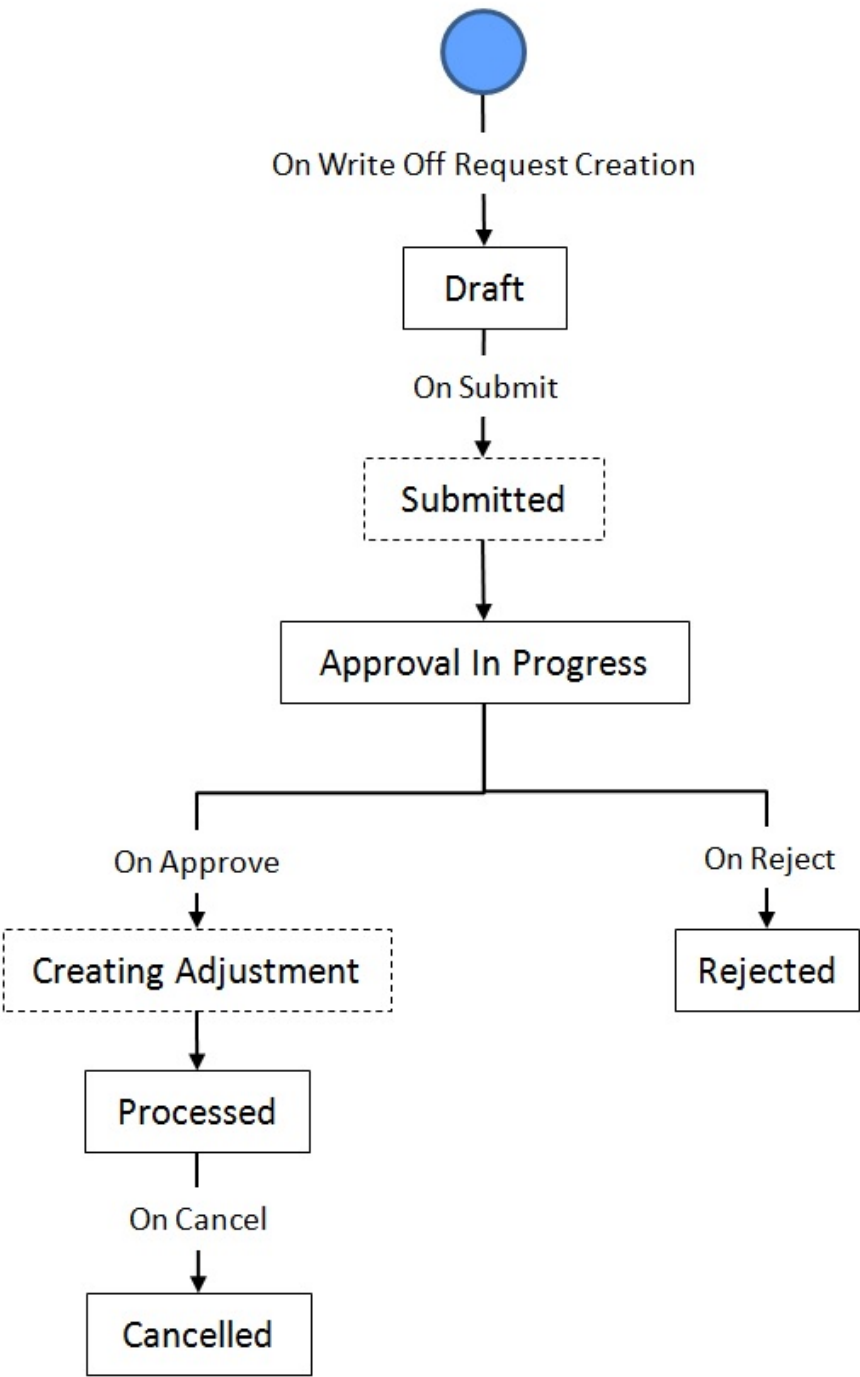
The following figure graphically indicates how a write off request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is off:



## Write Off Request (With Approval) Status Transition

---

The following figure graphically indicates how a write off request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is on:



### Algorithms Used in C1-RefundReq

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-RefundReq** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-REFREQINF	C1-REFREQINF	<p>This algorithm generates the refund and write off request information string which appears throughout the application. It concatenates the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refund or Write Off Request Type Description</li> <li>• Refund or Write Off Request Status Description</li> <li>• Refund or Write Off Request ID</li> </ul>
Post-Processing	C1-REFWOPOSP	C1-REFWOPOSP	<p>This algorithm recalculates and updates the total refund amount in the <b>Refund Request</b> zone when you change the refund amount against an entity while editing a refund request.</p>
Validation	C1-REFUNDVAL	C1-REFUNDVAL	<p>This algorithm validates the following for each entity that you have selected in the refund request:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The mandatory data, such as refund amount and adjustment type, is specified.</li> <li>• The refund amount is not less than zero.</li> <li>• The refund amount is not greater than the entity amount.</li> <li>• The refund amount is not greater than the eligible refund amount.</li> <li>• The partial refund is not done at the payment event or bill level.</li> </ul>

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-RefundReq** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	C1-REF-DFT	C1-REF-DFT	<p>This algorithm fetches the account's main customer's name and address and displays in the <b>Refund Request</b> zone. In addition, when you refund the payments from the <b>Payment Event Summary</b> screen, this algorithm does the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The total eligible refund amount is calculated and accordingly displayed in the <b>Refund Request</b> screen.</li> <li>• The default refund adjustment type specified in the refund request type is fetched and displayed against the selected payment event or payments.</li> <li>• On selecting a payment event for refund, if all payments in the payment event are matched against the same suspense or excess credit contract, the payment event is added in the <b>Refund Details</b> zone. However, if the payments in the payment event are matched against different suspense or excess credit contracts, the payments of the payment event are added in the <b>Refund Details</b> zone.</li> </ul>
Submitted	Enter	C1-REFUNDSUB	C1-REFUNDSUB	<p>This algorithm checks the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whether the approval is required for the refund request. If the approval is required for a refund request, the status of the refund request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b>. However, if the approval is not required for a refund request, the status of the refund request is changed to <b>Creating Adjustment</b>.</li> <li>• At least one entity, such as payment event, payment, or credit bill line item (such as credit bill segment or adjustment) is selected in the refund request.</li> <li>• Whether the approval profile attached to the refund request type has the credit hierarchy and C1-REFRQ To Do type defined.</li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-REFUNDAPP	C1-REFUNDAPP	<p>This algorithm creates the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A To Do using the To Do type specified in the approval profile which is attached to the refund request type. The To Do is sent to the appropriate users in the approval hierarchy depending on whether hierarchical approval is required or not.</li> <li>• A log entry is added when a To Do is created using the To Do type.</li> </ul>
Approved	Enter	C1-REFAPPRVD	C1-REFAPPRVD	<p>This algorithm is triggered when the approver clicks the <b>Approve</b> button. It checks whether the approval is required from users at the next level in the approval hierarchy. If the approval is required from the next level in the approval hierarchy, the status of the refund request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> and the algorithm attached to the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status is invoked. If further approval is not required, the status of the refund request is changed to <b>Creating Adjustment</b>.</p>
Rejected	-	-	-	-

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Creating Adjustment	Enter	C1-REFADJCRI	C1-REFADJCRI	<p>This algorithm does the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Creates the refund adjustments for the refund request. These refund adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status. The adjustment ID is displayed corresponding to the entity in the <b>Refund Details</b> zone.</li> <li>Stamps the bill ID of credit line item on the adjustment and the corresponding financial transaction.</li> <li>If a match event is present for the credit bill line item and for payments which are matched against the excess credit contract, the existing match event is stamped on the refund or write up adjustment and the corresponding financial transaction. However, when a match event is not present for payments which are matched against the suspense contract or if the match event does not exist, a new match event is created and stamped on the refund or write up adjustment and the corresponding financial transaction.</li> <li>If you are doing a partial refund for any entity, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Open</b>. However, if you are refunding the entire eligible amount, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Balanced</b>.</li> <li>The details of the refund adjustments are added in the <b>A/P Check Request (CL_ADJ_APREQ)</b> table.</li> <li>If a write up adjustment is created, the write up adjustment type specified in the refund request type is displayed corresponding to the entity in the <b>Refund Details</b> zone.</li> </ul>
Processed	-	-	-	-



Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Voided	Enter	C1-REFVOID	C1-REFVOID	<p>This algorithm is invoked on click of the <b>Void</b> button for a refund request which is in processed state.</p> <p>The algorithm cancels all the frozen adjustments created for the refund request.</p> <p>The algorithm fetches the adjustment cancel reason required for cancelling the adjustments in the status reason characteristics (<b>F1_BUS_OBJ_STATUS_RSN_CHAR</b> table). If the reason is not found, it will use the status reason selected by the user</p>

## Algorithms Used in C1-WORequest

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-WORequest** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-REFREQINF	C1-REFREQINF	<p>This algorithm generates the refund and write off request information string which appears throughout the application. It concatenates the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refund or Write Off Request Type Description</li> <li>Refund or Write Off Request Status Description</li> <li>Refund or Write Off Request ID</li> </ul>
Post-Processing	C1-WOPOSP	C1-WOPOSP	<p>This algorithm recalculates and updates the total write off amount in the <b>Write Off Request</b> zone when you change the write off amount against an entity while editing a write off request.</p>

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Validation	C1-WOBOVAL	C1-WOBOVAL	<p>This algorithm validates the following for each entity that you have selected in the write off request:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The mandatory data, such as write off amount and adjustment type, is specified.</li> <li>• The write off amount is not less than zero.</li> <li>• The write off amount is not greater than the entity amount.</li> <li>• The write off amount is not greater than the eligible write off amount.</li> <li>• The partial write off is not done at the bill level.</li> <li>• The A/P Request Type is not defined in the selected adjustment type.</li> </ul>

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-WORequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	-	-	-	-
Submitted	Enter	C1-WOSUBMIT	C1-WOSUBMIT	<p>This algorithm checks the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whether the approval is required for the write off request. If the approval is required for a write off request, the status of the write off request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b>. However, if the approval is not required for a write off request, the status of the write off request is changed to <b>Creating Adjustment</b>.</li> <li>• At least one debit bill line item (such as debit bill segment or adjustment) is selected in the write off request.</li> <li>• Whether the approval profile attached to the write off request type has the debit hierarchy and C1-WOREQ To Do type defined.</li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-WOAPPROVL	C1-WOAPPROVL	<p>This algorithm creates the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A To Do using the To Do type specified in the approval profile which is attached to the write off request type. The To Do is sent to the appropriate users in the approval hierarchy depending on whether hierarchical approval is required or not.</li> <li>• A log entry is added when a To Do is created using the To Do type.</li> </ul>
Approved	Enter	C1-WOAPPROVD	C1-WOAPPROVD	<p>This algorithm is triggered when the approver clicks the <b>Approve</b> button. It checks whether the approval is required from users at the next level in the approval hierarchy. If the approval is required from the next level in the approval hierarchy, the status of the write off request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> and the algorithm attached to the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status is invoked. If further approval is not required, the status of the write off request is changed to <b>Creating Adjustment</b>.</p>
Rejected	-	-	-	-

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Creating Adjustment	Enter	C1-WOADCRT	C1-WOADCRT	<p>This algorithm does the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Creates the write off adjustments for the write off request. These write off adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status. The adjustment ID is displayed corresponding to the entity in the <b>Write Off Details</b> zone.</li> <li>Stamps the bill ID of debit line item on the adjustment and the corresponding financial transaction.</li> <li>If a match event is present for the debit bill line item, the existing match event is stamped on the write off adjustment and the corresponding financial transaction. However, if the match event does not exist, a new match event is created and stamped on the write off adjustment and the corresponding financial transaction.</li> <li>If you are doing a partial write off for any entity, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Open</b>. However, if the entire eligible amount is written off, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Balanced</b>.</li> </ul>
Processed	-	-	-	-
Cancelled	Enter	C1-WOCANCEL	C1-WOCANCEL	<p>This algorithm is invoked on click of the <b>Cancel</b> button for a write off request which is in the <b>Processed</b> state.</p> <p>This algorithm cancels all the frozen adjustments created for the write off request.</p> <p>The algorithm fetches the adjustment cancel reason required for cancelling the adjustments in the status reason characteristics (<b>F1_BUS_OBJ_STATUS_RSN_CHAR</b> table). If the reason is not found, it will use the status reason selected by the user.</p>

## Prerequisites

---

To setup the refund request process, you need to do the following:

- Define the required adjustment types (for creating refund adjustments) where A/P request type is defined
- Define the required adjustment types (for creating write up adjustments) where A/P request type is not defined
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Refund Write Off Request Type**
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Refund Write Off Request**
- Define voided and rejected status reasons for the **C1-RefundReq** business object
- Assign the **C1-REFRQ** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting a refund request for approval
- Define the required approval profiles with the credit hierarchy and **C1-REFRQ** To Do type
- Define an algorithm of the **C1-ADI-INFO** algorithm type and attach to the **Adjustment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options — Framework** screen
- Define the required refund request types in the system

To setup the write off request process, you need to do the following:

- Define the required adjustment types (for creating write off adjustments) where A/P request type is not defined
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Refund Write Off Request Type**
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Refund Write Off Request**
- Define cancelled and rejected status reasons for the **C1-WOREquest** business object
- Assign the **C1-WOREQ** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting a write off request for approval
- Define the required approval profiles with the debit hierarchy and **C1-WOREQ** To Do type
- Define an algorithm of the **C1-ADI-INFO** algorithm type and attach to the **Adjustment Information** system event in the **Algorithms** tab of the **Installation Options — Framework** screen
- Define the required write off request types in the system

## Refund/Write Off Request Type

---

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define:

- **Refund Request Type** — It is used to create a refund request. You can define multiple refund request types in the system. A refund request type helps the system to determine:
  - Whether the refund request must be approved before creating refund adjustments in the system
  - Approval profile using which the refund request must be approved
  - Whether multi-level or single-level approval is required while creating refund adjustments in the system
  - Tolerance limit for refund (i.e. minimum refund amount)
  - Adjustment type using which the write up adjustment must be created when the total refund amount is less than the minimum refund amount
  - Default adjustment type using which refund adjustments must be created

- **Write Off Request Type** — It is used to create a write off request. You can define multiple write off request types in the system. A write off request type helps the system to determine:
  - Whether the write off request must be approved before creating write off adjustments in the system
  - Approval profile using which the write off request must be approved
  - Whether multi-level or single-level approval is required while creating write off adjustments in the system
  - Default adjustment type using which write off adjustments must be created

While defining a refund or write off request type where approval workflow is required, you need to select the **Approval Required** check box. If the **Approval Required** check box is selected, the refund or write off request (which is created using the refund or write off request type) is sent for approval before creating the refund or write off adjustments. However, if the **Approval Required** check box is not selected, the refund or write off adjustments are created immediately on submitting a refund or write off request. The approval process is configured through the approval profile. The approval profile allows you to define the approval hierarchy. You can define a debit and credit hierarchy in the approval profile using the threshold amount. The debit approval hierarchy is used for approving write off request and credit approval hierarchy is used for approving refund request. Therefore, while defining an approval profile for refund, you need to define credit hierarchy and set the To Do Type to **C1-REFRQ**. However, while defining an approval profile for write off, you need to define debit hierarchy and set the To Do Type to **C1-WOREQ**.

You can define an approval hierarchy where users with different To Do role at each level can approve or reject the refund or write off request. For example, you can define an approval profile called A1 with two levels of approval. At the first level, a user with the *Manager* To Do role will approve or reject the refund or write off request, and at the second level, a user with the *Senior Manager* To Do role will approve or reject the refund or write off request. On submitting a refund or write off request where approval is required, a notification in the form of To Do is sent to all users with the To Do role defined at the first level in the hierarchy. Once the request is approved at the first level, a notification is sent to all users with the To Do role defined at the next level in the hierarchy. This process continues till the approval is received from all levels in the hierarchy. Once users at all levels approve the refund or write off request, the refund or write off adjustments are created. However, if an approver at any level in the hierarchy rejects the request, the refund or write off adjustments are not created.

The approval hierarchy is controlled by the threshold amount. For example, you define an approval profile called A1 with two levels of approval — First Level (Threshold Amount: 300, To Do Role: *Manager*) and Second Level (Threshold Amount: 500, To Do Role: *Senior Manager*). Now, if the total refund or write off amount is equal to 300 or less than 500, then the approval is required only from the first level in the hierarchy and not from the second level in the hierarchy. However, if the total refund or write off amount is equal to or greater than 500, then the approval is required from the first level and then from the second level in the hierarchy. But, if the total refund or write off amount is less than 300, then the approval is not required from any levels in the hierarchy. The system will automatically approve the refund or write off request and create the refund or write off adjustments.

The system supports both single-level and multi-level approval process while approving refund or write off request. If the **Hierarchical Approval** check box is selected while defining a refund or write off request type, the approval hierarchy defined in the approval profile is followed based on the threshold limit. However, if the **Hierarchical Approval** check box is not selected while defining a refund or write off request type, the approval is required only from the approval level where the total refund or write off amount falls within the threshold limit. Let us understand this with the help of some examples.

### **Example 1**

Refund Request Type	Approval Profile	Approval Hierarchy	Hierarchical Approval	
R1	Refund Analyst	<u>Credit Hierarchy</u>	Yes	
		Threshold Amount		To Do Role
		\$500		Senior Analyst
		\$750		Manager
		\$1500		Senior Manager
R2	Refund Analyst	<u>Credit Hierarchy</u>	No	
		Threshold Amount		To Do Role
		\$500		Senior Analyst
		\$750		Manager
		\$1500		Senior Manager

The following table indicates how the system will behave in different refund scenarios:

Refund Request	Refund Request Type	Total Refund Amount (\$)	Comments
RR1	R1	200	This refund request is automatically approved by the system because the total refund amount is less than \$500.
RR2	R1	750	<p>The To Do is sent for approval to the following users in the specified order:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Users with the Senior Analyst To Do role</li> <li>2. Users with the Manager To Do role</li> </ol> <p>This is because the total refund amount is either equal to \$750 or less than \$1500 and hierarchical approval is required.</p>
RR3	R1	2000	<p>The To Do is sent for approval to the following users in the specified order:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Users with the Senior Analyst To Do role</li> <li>2. Users with the Manager To Do role</li> <li>3. Users with the Senior Manager To Do role</li> </ol> <p>This is because the total refund amount is greater than \$1500 and hierarchical approval is required.</p>
RR4	R2	200	This refund request is automatically approved by the system because the total refund amount is less than \$500.

Refund Request	Refund Request Type	Total Refund Amount (\$)	Comments
RR5	R2	750	The To Do is sent for approval to users with the Manager To Do role. This is because the total refund amount is either equal to \$750 or less than \$1500 and hierarchical approval is not required.
RR6	R2	2000	The To Do is sent for approval to users with the Senior Manager To Do role. This is because the total refund amount is greater than \$1500 and hierarchical approval is not required.

**Example 2**

Write Off Request Type	Approval Profile	Approval Hierarchy	Hierarchical Approval
W1	Write Off Analyst	<b>Debit Hierarchy</b>	Yes
		Threshold Amount	
		\$100	
		\$200	
		\$300	
W2	Write Off Analyst	<b>Debit Hierarchy</b>	No
		Threshold Amount	
		\$100	
		\$200	
		\$300	

The following table indicates how the system will behave in different write off scenarios:

Write Off Request	Write Off Request Type	Total Write Off Amount (\$)	Comments
WO1	W1	90	This write off request is automatically approved by the system because the total write off amount is less than \$100.
WO2	W1	250	The To Do is sent for approval to the following users in the specified order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Users with the Senior Analyst To Do role</li> <li>Users with the Manager To Do role</li> </ol> This is because the total write off amount is either equal to \$200 or less than \$300 and hierarchical approval is required.






Write Off Request	Write Off Request Type	Total Write Off Amount (\$)	Comments
WO3	W1	500	<p>The To Do is sent for approval to the following users in the specified order:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Users with the Senior Analyst To Do role</li> <li>2. Users with the Manager To Do role</li> <li>3. Users with the Senior Manager To Do role</li> </ol> <p>This is because the total write off amount is greater than \$300 and hierarchical approval is required.</p>
WO4	W2	90	This write off request is automatically approved by the system because the total write off amount is less than \$100.
WO5	W2	250	The To Do is sent for approval to users with the Manager To Do role. This is because the total write off amount is either equal to \$200 or less than \$300 and hierarchical approval is not required.
WO6	W2	500	The To Do is sent for approval to users with the Senior Manager To Do role. This is because the total write off amount is greater than \$300 and hierarchical approval is not required.


The **Refund/Write Off Request Type** screen allows you to define, edit, delete, and copy a refund and write off request type. This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Refund/Write Off Request Type List](#) on page 1157
- [Refund/Write Off Request Type](#) on page 1158

## Refund/Write Off Request Type List

The **Refund/Write Off Request Type List** zone lists refund and write off request types that are already defined in the system. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Refund/Write Off Request Type	Displays the refund or write off request type.
Description	Displays the description of the refund or write off request type.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Refund/Write Off Request Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the refund and write off request type.
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Refund/Write Off Request Type</b> screen appears where you can define a refund and write off request type using an existing refund and write off request type.
Delete	<p>On clicking the <b>Delete</b> () icon, you can delete the refund or write off request type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can delete a refund or write off request type only when you have not created a refund or write off request using the refund or write off request type.</p>

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to refund or write off request type, the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** zone appears with the details of the respective refund or write off request type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Defining a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1160
How to edit a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Editing a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1164
How to copy a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Copying a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1168
How to delete a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Deleting a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1168
How to view the details of a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Refund or Write Off Request Type Details</a> on page 1172

## Refund/Write Off Request Type

The **Refund/Write Off Request Type** zone displays the details of the refund or write off request type. This zone consists of the following sections:

- **Main** — This section provides basic information about the refund or write off request type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Refund/Write Off Request Type	Displays the refund or write off request type.
Refund/Write Off Request Business Object	Indicates the business object that will be used to create the refund or write off request.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears with the details of the respective business object.
Description	Displays the description of the refund or write off request type.
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the refund or write off request type.
Status	Indicates the status of the refund or write off request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>
Action	Indicates whether the request type is created for refund or write off. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refund</li> <li>• Write Off</li> </ul>
Minimum Refund Amount	Displays the minimum refund amount.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Refund</b> .

Field Name	Field Description
Write Up Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the write up adjustment must be created when the total refund amount is less than the minimum refund amount.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Refund</b> .
Approval Required	Indicates whether approval is required while creating the refund or write off adjustments using the refund or write off request type.
Approval Profile	Indicates the approval profile which must be used to define approval hierarchy for the refund or write off request type.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.  It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Approval Profile</b> screen appears with the details of the respective approval profile.
Hierarchical Approval	Indicates whether multi-level or single approval is required while creating the refund or write off adjustments using the refund or write off request type.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the refund or write off adjustments must be created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment Type</b> screen appears with the details of the respective adjustment type.

- **Characteristics** — This section lists the characteristics defined for the refund or write off request type. It contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** — This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the refund or write off request type.
Delete	Used to delete the refund or write off request type.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a refund or write off request type only when you have not created a refund or write off request using the refund or write off request type.
Duplicate	Used to create a new refund or write off request type using an existing refund or write off request type.

- **Record Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the refund or write off request type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

By default, the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** zone does not appear in the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the refund or write off request type in the **Refund/Write Off Request Type List** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Defining a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1160
How to edit a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Editing a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1164
How to copy a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Copying a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1168
How to delete a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Deleting a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1168
How to view the details of a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Refund or Write Off Request Type Details</a> on page 1172

## Defining a Refund or Write Off Request Type

### Prerequisites

To define a refund or write off request type, you should have:

- Refund or Write Off request business objects defined in the application
- Approval profiles defined in the application
- Adjustment types with and without A/P request type defined in the application

### Procedure

To define a refund or write off request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Refund/Write Off Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Refund/Write Off Request Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use to create the refund or write off request type.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Business Object** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** screen.

**Note:** The **Select Business Object** screen appears only when there are multiple refund and write off request type business objects defined in the application. If there is only one refund and write off request type business object defined in the application, the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** screen appears.

4. Select the required refund and write off request type business object from the respective field.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Refund/Write Off Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the refund or write off request type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the refund or write off request type.


The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Refund/Write Off Request Type	Used to specify the refund or write off request type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the refund and write off request type business object used while defining the refund or write off request type.	Not applicable
Refund/Write Off Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the refund or write off request.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the refund or write off request type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the refund or write off request type.	No
Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the refund or write off request type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a refund or write off request type to <b>Inactive</b> if there are refund or write off requests which are created using the refund or write off request type and are currently in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</p>	Yes
Action	<p>Used to indicate whether the request type is created for refund or write off. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refund</li> <li>• Write Off</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Minimum Refund Amount	Used to specify the minimum refund amount. This field is used to define tolerance limit for refund. If the total refund amount in a refund request is less than the minimum refund amount, the system creates a write up adjustment. However, if the total refund amount in a refund request is equal to or greater than the minimum refund amount, the system creates a refund adjustment.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Refund</b> .	
Write Up Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the write up adjustment must be created when the total refund amount is less than the minimum refund amount.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Refund</b> .  You can create write up adjustments only using those adjustment types where A/P request type is not defined.	
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required while creating the refund or write off adjustments using the refund or write off request type.	No
Approval Profile	Used to indicate the approval profile which must be used to define approval hierarchy for the refund or write off request type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	
Hierarchical Approval	Used to indicate whether multi-level or single-level approval is required while creating the refund or write off adjustments using the refund or write off request type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Refund Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the refund adjustments must be created. This default adjustment type appears when you select the payments or credit bill line items for refund. You can then change the adjustment type, if required, while editing a refund request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Refund</b> . The list includes only those adjustment types where A/P request type is defined.	
Write Off Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the write off adjustments must be created. This default adjustment type appears when you select the debit bill line items for write off. You can then change the adjustment type, if required, while editing a write off request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Write Off</b> . You can create write off adjustments only using those adjustment types where A/P request type is not defined.	

6. Enter the required details depending on whether you want to define refund or write off request type.

**Note:** You can search for an adjustment type by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

7. Define characteristics for the refund or write off request type, if required.  
 8. Click **Save**.

The refund or write off request type is defined.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Refund/Write Off Request Type screen	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1153
How to define characteristics for a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1163

## Defining Characteristics for a Refund or Write Off Request Type

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a refund or write off request type, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Refund Write Off Request Type**)

### Procedure


To define characteristics for a refund or write off request type:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a refund or write off request type.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Refund Write Off Request Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the refund or write off request type.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the refund or write off request type.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** () icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the refund or write off request type, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the refund or write off request type, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Defining a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1160
How to edit a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Editing a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1164
How to copy a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Copying a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1168

## Editing a Refund or Write Off Request Type

### Prerequisites

To edit a refund or write off request type, you should have:

- Refund or Write Off request business objects defined in the application



- Approval profiles defined in the application
- Adjustment types with and without A/P request type defined in the application

### **Procedure**

To edit a refund or write off request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.


A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Refund/Write Off Request Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

3. Click the **Search** option from the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Refund/Write Off Request Type** screen appears.

4. In the **Refund/Write Off Request Type List** zone, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the refund or write off request type whose details you want to edit.

The **Refund/Write Off Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the refund or write off request type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the refund or write off request type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Refund/Write Off Request Type	Displays the refund or write off request type.	Not applicable
Business Object	Indicates the refund and write off request type business object used while defining the refund or write off request type.	Not applicable
Refund/Write Off Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the refund or write off request.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the refund or write off request type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the refund or write off request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the refund or write off request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a refund or write off request type to <b>Inactive</b> if there are refund or write off requests which are created using the refund or write off request type and are currently in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Action	Indicates whether the request type is created for refund or write off. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refund</li> <li>Write Off</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Minimum Refund Amount	Used to specify the minimum refund amount. This field is used to define tolerance limit for refund. If the total refund amount in a refund request is less than the minimum refund amount, the system creates a write up adjustment. However, if the total refund amount in a refund request is equal to or greater than the minimum refund amount, the system creates a refund adjustment.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Refund</b> .	Yes
Write Up Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the write up adjustment must be created when the total refund amount is less than the minimum refund amount.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Refund</b> .  You can create write up adjustments only using those adjustment types where A/P request type is not defined.	Yes
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required while creating the refund or write off adjustments using the refund or write off request type.	No
Approval Profile	Used to indicate the approval profile which must be used to define approval hierarchy for the refund or write off request type.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hierarchical Approval	Used to indicate whether multi-level or single-level approval is required while creating the refund or write off adjustments using the refund or write off request type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	
Refund Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the refund adjustments must be created. This default adjustment type appears when you select the payments or credit bill line items for refund. You can then change the adjustment type, if required, while editing a refund request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Refund</b> . The list includes only those adjustment types where A/P request type is defined.	
Write Off Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the write off adjustments must be created. This default adjustment type appears when you select the debit bill line items for write off. You can then change the adjustment type, if required, while editing a write off request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Write Off</b> . You can create write off adjustments only using those adjustment types where A/P request type is not defined.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** zone to edit the details of the refund or write off request type.

5. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.

**Note:** You can search for an adjustment type by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the refund or write off request type, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the refund or write off request type are saved.


Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Refund/Write Off Request Type screen	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1153
Refund/Write Off Request Type List zone	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type List</a> on page 1157
Refund/Write Off Request Type zone	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1158
How to define characteristics for a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1163

Deleting a Refund or Write Off Request Type

Procedure

To delete a refund or write off request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Refund/Write Off Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Refund/Write Off Request Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Refund/Write Off Request Type List** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the refund or write off request type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the refund or write off request type.

**Note:** You can delete a refund or write off request type only when you have not defined a refund or write off request using the refund or write off request type.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Delete** button in the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** zone to delete the refund or write off request type.

5. Click **OK**.  
The refund or write off request type is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Refund/Write Off Request Type screen	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1153
Refund/Write Off Request Type List zone	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type List</a> on page 1157
Refund/Write Off Request Type zone	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1158

Copying a Refund or Write Off Request Type

Instead of creating a refund or write off request type from scratch, you can create a new refund or write off request type using an existing refund or write off request type. This is possible through copying a refund or write off request type. On copying a refund or write off request type, the details including the characteristics are copied to the new refund or write off request type. You can then edit the details, if required.

**Prerequisites**

To copy a refund or write off request type, you should have:

- Refund or Write Off request type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Refund or Write Off request business objects defined in the application
- Approval profiles defined in the application
- Adjustment types with and without A/P request type defined in the application

**Procedure**

To copy a refund or write off request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.


A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Refund/Write Off Request Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

3. Click the **Search** option from the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Refund/Write Off Request Type** screen appears.

4. In the **Refund/Write Off Request Type List** zone, click the **Duplicate**  icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the refund or write off request type whose copy you want to create.

The **Refund/Write Off Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the refund or write off request type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the refund or write off request type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Refund/Write Off Request Type	Used to specify the refund or write off request type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the refund and write off request type business object used while defining the refund or write off request type.	Not applicable
Refund/Write Off Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the refund or write off request.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the refund or write off request type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the refund or write off request type.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the refund or write off request type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a refund or write off request type to <b>Inactive</b> if there are refund or write off requests which are created using the refund or write off request type and are currently in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</p>	Yes
Action	<p>Used to indicate whether the request type is created for refund or write off. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refund</li> <li>Write Off</li> </ul>	Yes
Minimum Refund Amount	<p>Used to specify the minimum refund amount. This field is used to define tolerance limit for refund. If the total refund amount in a refund request is less than the minimum refund amount, the system creates a write up adjustment. However, if the total refund amount in a refund request is equal to or greater than the minimum refund amount, the system creates a refund adjustment.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Refund</b>.</p>	Yes
Write Up Adjustment Type	<p>Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the write up adjustment must be created when the total refund amount is less than the minimum refund amount.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Refund</b>.</p> <p>You can create write up adjustments only using those adjustment types where A/P request type is not defined.</p>	Yes
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required while creating the refund or write off adjustments using the refund or write off request type.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Profile	Used to indicate the approval profile which must be used to define approval hierarchy for the refund or write off request type.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	
Hierarchical Approval	Used to indicate whether multi-level or single-level approval is required while creating the refund or write off adjustments using the refund or write off request type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	
Refund Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the refund adjustments must be created. This default adjustment type appears when you select the payments or credit bill line items for refund. You can then change the adjustment type, if required, while editing a refund request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b>  This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Refund</b> .  The list includes only those adjustment types where A/P request type is defined.	
Write Off Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the write off adjustments must be created. This default adjustment type appears when you select the debit bill line items for write off. You can then change the adjustment type, if required, while editing a write off request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b>  This field appears only when the <b>Action</b> field is set to <b>Write Off</b> .  You can create write off adjustments only using those adjustment types where A/P request type is not defined.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Duplicate** button in the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** zone to create a copy of the refund or write off request type.

5. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.

**Note:** You can search for an adjustment type by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the refund or write off request type, if required.

7. Click **Save**.

The new refund or write off request type is defined.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Refund/Write Off Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1153
<b>Refund/Write Off Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type List</a> on page 1157
<b>Refund/Write Off Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1158
How to define characteristics for a refund or write off request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Refund or Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1163

**Viewing the Refund or Write Off Request Type Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a refund or write off request type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Refund/Write Off Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Refund/Write Off Request Type** screen appears.
- In the **Refund/Write Off Request Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the refund or write off request type whose details you want to view.  
The **Refund/Write Off Request Type** zone appears.
- View the details of the refund or write off request type in the **Refund/Write Off Request Type** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Refund/Write Off Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1153
<b>Refund/Write Off Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type List</a> on page 1157
<b>Refund/Write Off Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request Type</a> on page 1158



## Refund/Write Off Request

The **Refund/Write Off Request** screen allows you to search for a refund and write off request using various search criteria. It also allows you to create a refund and write off requests. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screens:

- [Refund Request](#) on page 1179
- [Write Off Request](#) on page 1212

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Refund/Write Off Request](#) on page 1173

### Search Refund/Write Off Request

The **Search Refund/Write Off Request** zone allows you to search for refund and write off requests using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	<p>Used to indicate whether you want to search for a refund or write off request using request, payment, or bill details. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Request Details</b> — Used when you want to search for refund and/or write off requests.</li> <li>• <b>Payment Details</b> — Used when you want to search for refund requests.</li> <li>• <b>Bill Details</b> — Used when you want to search for refund and/or write off requests.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected.</p>	Yes
Action	<p>Used to indicate whether you want to search for refund or write off requests. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refund</li> <li>• Write Off</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> or <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Refund/Write Off Request Type	Used to search refund or write off requests which are created using a particular refund or write off request type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. The refund or write off request types are listed only when you set the <b>Action</b> field to either <b>Refund</b> or <b>Write Off</b> .	
Status	Used to search refund or write off requests with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Voided</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. The <b>Voided</b> status is applicable while searching for refund requests and the <b>Cancelled</b> status is applicable while searching for write off requests.	
User ID	Used to search refund or write off requests which are created by a particular user.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Created From	Used to search refund or write off requests which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
To	Used to search refund or write off requests which are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current date appears in this field. This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Refund/Write Off Request ID	Used to search a particular refund or write off request.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Payment Event ID	Used to search refund requests which includes a particular payment event for refund.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Payor Account ID	Used to search refund requests which are created for a particular payor account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Payor Name	Used to search refund requests which are created for a particular payor.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Payment Date	Used to search refund requests which includes payments made on a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
MICR ID	Used to search refund requests which includes payments made with a particular MICR code.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Check Number	Used to search refund request which includes payment made through a particular check.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Bill ID	Used to search refund or write off requests which includes bill segments or adjustments of a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Date From	Used to search refund or write off requests which includes bill segments or adjustments of bills which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
To	Used to search refund or write off requests which includes bill segments or adjustments of bills which are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current date appears in this field. This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a refund or write off request.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the refund or write off request is created.
Refund/Write Off Request Information	Displays information about the refund or write off request.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Refund Request</b> or <b>Write Off Request</b> screen appears depending on whether the request is for refund or write off.
Status	Indicates the status of the refund or write off request.
Action	Indicates whether the request is created for refund or write off. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refund</li> <li>• Write Off</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> or <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Refund/Write Off Amount	Displays the total refund or write off amount.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> or <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Refund Amount	Displays the total refund amount.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Payment Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.

Column Name	Column Description
Account Information	Displays additional information about the account for which the refund or write off request is created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Created By	Indicates the user who has created the refund or write off request.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a refund or write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
How to view the details of a refund request	<a href="#">Viewing the Refund Request Details</a> on page 1178
How to view the details of a write off request	<a href="#">Viewing the Write Off Request Details</a> on page 1178
How to create a refund request	<a href="#">Creating a Refund Request</a> on page 1189
How to create a write off request	<a href="#">Creating a Write Off Request</a> on page 1220

## Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request

### Prerequisites

To search for a refund or write off request, you should have:

- Refund or Write Off request types defined in the application

### Procedure

To search for a refund or write off request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Refund/Write Off Request**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Refund/Write Off Request** sub-menu.  
The **Refund/Write Off Request** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Refund/Write Off Request** zone depending on whether you want to search for a refund or write off request.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of refund or write off requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Refund/Write Off Request screen	<a href="#">Refund/Write Off Request</a> on page 1173
Search Refund/Write Off Request zone	<a href="#">Search Refund/Write Off Request</a> on page 1173

Viewing the Refund Request Details

Procedure

To view the details of a refund request:

1. Search for the refund request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the refund request whose details you want to view.

The **Refund Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the refund request. It contains the following zones:
    - **Refund Request** – Displays the details of the refund request.
    - **Refund Details** – Lists the entities, such as payment events, payments, and/or credit bill line items (such as credit bill segments and adjustments), of the account which must be refunded.
  - **Payments** — Used to search payment events or individual payments that you want to refund. This tab appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Bills** — Used to search bills with credit line items, such as credit bill segments and adjustments, that you want to refund. This tab appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the refund request.
3. View the details of the refund request in the **Refund Request** zone.
  4. View the entities (such as payment events, payments, or credit bill line items) which must be refunded in the **Refund Details** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Refund Request screen	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1179
Refund Request zone	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1180
Refund Details zone	<a href="#">Refund Details</a> on page 1182
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177

Viewing the Write Off Request Details

Procedure

To view the details of a write off request:

1. Search for the write off request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the write off request whose details you want to view.

The **Write Off Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the write off request. It contains the following zones:
    - **Write Off Request** – Displays the details of the write off request.
    - **Write Off Details** – Lists the debit bill line items, such as debit bill segments and adjustments, of the account which must be written off.
  - **Bills** — Used to search bills with debit line items, such as debit bill segments and adjustments, that you want to write off. This tab appears only when the write off request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the write off request.
3. View the details of the write off request in the **Write Off Request** zone.
  4. View the entities (such as debit bill segments and adjustments) which must be written off in the **Write Off Details** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Write Off Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1212
<b>Write Off Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1213
<b>Write Off Details</b> zone	<a href="#">Write Off Details</a> on page 1215
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177

## Refund Request

Once you create a refund request, the **Refund Request** screen allows you to:

- Edit and delete a refund request
- View the details of a refund request
- Submit a refund request for approval
- Approve or reject a refund request
- View the log of a refund request
- Add a log entry for a refund request
- Void a refund request

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the refund request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Refund Request** – Displays the details of the refund request.
  - **Refund Details** – Lists the entities, such as payment events, payments, and/or credit bill line items (such as credit bill segments and adjustments), of the account which must be refunded.
  - **Bill Line Items** — Displays the details of the bill which must be refunded.

**Note:** This zone appears when you click the Broadcast  icon corresponding to the entity type as **Bill** in the **Refund Details** zone.

- **Bills** — Used to search bills with credit line items, such as credit bill segments and adjustments, that you want to refund. It contains the following zones:
  - **Search Bills** — Lists completed bills of the account which are either with credit balance or have one or more credit line items, such as bill segments and adjustments. You can filter the bills using various search criteria.
  - **Bill Line Items** — Lists the debit and credit bill segments and adjustments of the bill.

This tab appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.

- **Payments** — Used to search payment events or individual payments that you want to refund. It contains the following zones:
  - **Search Payment Event** — Lists the payment events which are created for the account. You can filter the payment events using various search criteria.
  - **Payments** — Lists all payments created through the payment event.

This tab appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.

- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the refund request.

Refund Request - Main

The **Main** tab displays information about the refund request. It contains the following zones:

- [Refund Request](#) on page 1180
- [Refund Details](#) on page 1182
- [Bill Line Items](#) on page 1183

Refund Request

The **Refund Request** zone displays the details of the refund request. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Main** — This section provides basic information about the refund request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Refund Request Information	Displays information about the refund request.
Refund Request Type	Indicates the refund request type using which the refund request is created. <div><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Refund/Write Off Request Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the refund request type.</div>
Status	Indicates the status of the refund request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Draft</li><li>• Approval In Progress</li><li>• Rejected</li><li>• Processed</li><li>• Voided</li></ul>



Field Name	Field Description
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the refund request is rejected or voided.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the refund request is in the <b>Rejected</b> or <b>Voided</b> status. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Status Reason</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rejected or voided reason.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the refund request is created.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.
Person Name	Indicates the person for whom the refund request is created.
Override Address	Indicates whether the account's mailing address is overridden.
Address 1	Displays the house number and apartment name.
Address 2	Displays the street name.
Address 3	Indicates the landmark, if available.
Address 4	Displays the village, town, or city name.
City	Displays the city name.
State	Displays the state name.
Country	Displays the country name.
Postal	Displays the postal or zip code.
Comments	Displays additional information about the refund request.
Total Refund Amount	Displays the total refund amount.

- **Characteristics** — Lists the characteristics defined for the refund request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Effective Date	Indicates the date from when the characteristic is effective for the refund request.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** — This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the refund request.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the refund request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.

Button Name	Button Description
Delete	Used to delete the refund request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the refund request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Submit	Used to submit the refund request for approval.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit</b> button appears only when the refund request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Approve	Used to approve the refund request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Approve</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The refund request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the refund request.</li> </ul>
Reject	Used to reject the refund request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Reject</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The refund request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the refund request.</li> </ul>
Void	Used to void the refund request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Void</b> button appears only when the refund request is in the <b>Processed</b> status.

- **Record Information** — This section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the refund request is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the refund request status is updated
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the refund request is created.

### Refund Details

The **Refund Details** zone lists the payment events, payments, and credit bill line items (such as bill segments and adjustments) that you have added to the refund request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Entity ID	Displays the entity ID.
Entity Type	Indicates whether the entity is a payment event, payment, bill, bill segment, or an adjustment.

Column Name	Column Description
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the entity was created.
Entity Amount	Displays the entity amount.
Refund Amount	<p>Displays the amount that must be refunded.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the amount which is eligible for refund appears in this column. You can edit the amount, if required. However, you cannot specify the amount greater than the eligible amount.</p>
Contract Information	<p>Displays additional information about the contract against which the bill segment or adjustment is created or against which the payment is matched. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.</p>
Adjustment Type	<p>Indicates the adjustment type using which the refund adjustment must be created.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the adjustment type specified in the refund request type appears in this column. You can change the adjustment type, if required, by editing the refund request.</p>
Adjustment Information	<p>Displays information about the refund adjustment.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective adjustment.</p> <p>The data appears in this column only when the status of the refund request is <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p>The information string appears only when an algorithm of the <b>C1-ADI-INFO</b> algorithm type is attached to the <b>Adjustment Information</b> system event in the <b>Algorithms</b> tab of the <b>Installation Options — Framework</b> screen.</p>

**Note:** On clicking the Broadcast  icon corresponding to the entity type as **Bill**, the **Bill Line Items** zone appears with the details of the respective bill.

In addition to above columns, this screen contains following buttons:


Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of bill line items.
Delete	Used to delete the bill line items.

### Bill Line Items

The **Bill Line Items** zone lists the debit and credit bill segments and adjustments of the bill. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID.

Column Name	Column Description
Entity ID	Displays the bill segment or adjustment ID.
Entity Type	Indicates whether the entity is a bill, bill segment or an adjustment.
Currency	Displays the currency in which the entity was created.
Entity Amount	Displays the bill segment or adjustment amount.
Request Amount	Displays the bill segment or adjustment amount which is eligible for refund. In other words, it means entity amount minus amount refunded.
	<b>Note:</b> If the bill segment or adjustment has debit balance, the eligible amount for refund would be zero.
Contract Information	Displays additional information about the contract against which the bill segment or adjustment is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the refund adjustment must be created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective adjustment type.
Adjustment Information	Displays information about the refund adjustment.

By default, the **Bill Line Items** zone does not appear in the **Main** tab. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill in the **Refund Details** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a credit bill line item to the refund request	<a href="#">Adding a Credit Bill Line Item to the Refund Request</a> on page 1196

## Refund Request - Bills


The **Bills** tab allows you to search bills with credit line items, such as credit bill segments and adjustments, that you want to refund. It contains the following zones:

- [Search Bills](#) on page 1184
- [Bill Line Items](#) on page 1186

### Search Bills

The **Search Bills** zone lists completed bills of the account which are either with credit balance or have one or more credit line items, such as bill segments and adjustments. You can filter the bills using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a bill using bill or bill and price item details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bill Details</li> <li>Bill and Price Item Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected.	
Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill.	No
Bill Date From	Used to search bills which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
To	Used to search bills which are created till a particular date.	No
Price Item	Used to search bills which are created for a particular price item.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select <b>Bill and Price Item Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. You can search for a price item by clicking the <b>search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.	

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID.
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the bill. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Amount	Displays the total bill amount.

If you want to refund a bill with credit balance and all credit line items, you need to select the check box corresponding to the bill and then click the **Add** button in the **Search Results** section. All credit bill segments and adjustments of the bill are added in the **Refund Details** zone on the **Main** tab. However, if you select a bill (with credit balance) which contains one or more debit line items or if you select a bill (with debit balance) which contains one or more credit line items, the system will not allow you to add the credit line items by directly adding the bill. In such case, you need to individually select the credit bill segments and adjustments of the bill and then add them to the refund request.

**Note:** If a refund request is currently in progress for a credit bill segment or adjustment of a bill, those bills of the account are not listed in the **Search Bills** zone. In addition, a bill with all debit line items are not listed in the **Search Bills** zone.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to add a credit bill line item to the refund request	<a href="#">Adding a Credit Bill Line Item to the Refund Request</a> on page 1196

### Bill Line Items

The **Bill Line Items** zone lists the debit and credit bill segments and adjustments of the bill. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Entity ID	Displays the bill segment or adjustment ID.
Entity Type	Indicates whether the entity is a bill segment or an adjustment.
Entity Information	Displays additional information about the bill segment or adjustment. If the entity is a bill segment, the context menu appears in the column which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. If the entity is a bill segment, the <b>Bill Segment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill segment on clicking the link. However, if the entity is an adjustment, the <b>Adjustment</b> screen appears with the details of the respective adjustment on clicking the link.
Entity Amount	Displays the bill segment or adjustment amount.
Eligible Amount	Displays the bill segment or adjustment amount which is eligible for refund. In other words, it means entity amount minus amount refunded.
	<b>Note:</b> If the bill segment or adjustment has debit balance, the eligible amount for refund would be zero.
Amount Refunded	Displays the amount which is already refunded to the account.
Contract Information	Displays additional information about the contract against which the bill segment or adjustment is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.

You can select one or more credit bill segments or adjustments and click the **Add** button in this zone to add selected credit bill segments or adjustments to the refund request.

By default, the **Bill Line Items** zone does not appear in the **Bills** tab. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill in the **Search Bills** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a credit bill line item to the refund request	<a href="#">Adding a Credit Bill Line Item to the Refund Request</a> on page 1196

## Refund Request - Payments

The **Payments** tab allows you to search payment events or individual payments that you want to refund. It contains the following zones:

- [Search Payment Event](#) on page 1187
- [Payments](#) on page 1188

### Search Payment Event

The **Search Payment Event** zone lists the payment events which are created for the account. You can filter the payment events using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate that you want to search for a payment event using the payment details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Payment Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Payment Details</b> option is selected.	
Payment Event ID	Used to search a particular payment event.	No
Suspense/Excess Credit Contract	Used to search payment events which include payments made against a particular suspense or excess credit contract.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The suspense and excess credit contracts are listed only when these contracts are associated with the account	
Check Number	Used to search a payment event which includes payment made through a particular check.	No
Payment Date	Used to search payment events which include payments created from a particular date onwards.	No
To	Used to search payment events which include payments created till a particular date.	No
MICR ID	Used to search payment events which include payments made with a particular MICR code.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payment Event Information	Displays additional information about the payment event.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment Event</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payment event.
Payment Date	Displays the date when the payments were created.
Tender Amount	Displays the tender amount.
Payment Event ID	Displays the payment event ID.

If you want to refund all payments of a payment event, you need to select the check box corresponding to the payment event and then click the **Add** button in the **Search Results** section. If all payments in the payment event are matched against the same suspense or excess credit contract, the payment event is added in the **Refund Details**

zone on the **Main** tab. However, if the payments in the payment event are matched against different suspense or excess credit contracts, the payments of the payment event are added in the **Refund Details** zone.

**Note:** If a refund request is currently in progress for a payment event or for any payment of a payment event, those payments events of the account are not listed in the **Search Payment Event** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a payment event to the refund request	<a href="#">Adding a Payment Event to the Refund Request</a> on page 1193

### **Payments**

The **Payments** zone lists only those payments which are created through the payment event and are currently in the **Frozen** status. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payment ID	Displays the payment ID.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payment.
Payee Account Information	Displays additional information about the account for which the payment was made.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.
Payment Amount	Displays the payment amount.
Payment Currency	Indicates the currency in which the payment was made.
Payment Status	Indicates the status of the payment.
Match Type	Indicates the match type using which the payment was matched.
Match Value	Indicates the entity (such as bill, contract, and so on) against which the payment was matched.
Amount Refunded	Displays the amount which is already refunded to the payor account.

You can select one or more payments and click the **Add** button in this zone to add selected payments to the refund request.

By default, the **Payments** zone does not appear in the **Payments** tab. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment event in the **Search Payment Event** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a payment to the refund request	<a href="#">Adding a Payment to the Refund Request</a> on page 1194

## **Refund Request - Log**

The **Log** tab contains the following zone:

- [Refund Request Log](#) on page 1189



## Refund Request Log

The **Refund Request Log** zone lists the complete trail of actions performed on the refund request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the refund request.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the refund request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the refund request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the refund request.
Status Reason	Displays the status reason of action performed on the refund request.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the refund request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Refund Request Log** zone.

The **Add Request Log** window appears. Enter **Log Details** and click **Save**. The refund request log is added.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of a refund request	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Refund Request</a> on page 1209

## Creating a Refund Request

### Prerequisites

To create a refund request, you should have:

- Refund request types defined in the application

### Procedure

To create a refund request:


1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Define a refund request from the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Main</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Financial</b> and then click <b>Account Receivable Central</b>.</li> <li>3. Search for the bill in the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen.</li> <li>4. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, select the required bill and then click <b>Refund</b>.</li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	<b>Note:</b> Only one bill at a time is allowed to select for <b>Refund Request</b> from the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen.
Define a refund request from the <b>Refund Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Main</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Financial</b> and then click <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b>. A sub-menu appears.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Add</b> option from the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> sub-menu.</li> </ol>

The **Select Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Action	<p>Displays the type of request (refund or write off) to be created.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is pre-populated if the refund request is created from the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen. This field is editable if the refund request is created from the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> screen.</p>	Not applicable
Refund/Write Off Request Type	<p>Used to indicate the request type using which you want to create the refund or write off request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The refund request types are listed when you set the <b>Action</b> field to <b>Refund</b> and the write off request types are listed when you set the <b>Action</b> field to <b>Write Off</b>.</p>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account	Used to indicate the account for which you want to create the refund or write off request.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field is pre-populated if the refund request is created from the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen.</p> <p>This field is editable if the refund request is created from the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> screen.</p> <p>You can search for an account by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the respective field.</p>	

**Tip:**

Alternatively, you can access the **Select Request Type** screen:

- By clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
- By selecting the payment which you want to refund in the **Payment Event Summary** screen and then clicking the **Refund** button. Note that the system will allow you to refund only those payments which are in the **Frozen** status and matched against the suspense or excess credit contract.

2. Select the required refund request type from the respective field.

3. Click **Save**.

The refund request is defined and the status of the refund request is set to **Draft**. The **Refund Request** screen appears where you can view the details of the refund request. It contains the following tabs:

**Note:** The refund request can be created only for bill with outstanding amount lesser than zero.

- **Main** – Displays information about the refund request. It contains the following zones:
    - **Refund Request** – Displays the details of the refund request.
    - **Refund Details** – Lists the entities, such as payment events, payments, and/or credit bill line items (such as credit bill segments and adjustments), of the account which must be refunded.
  - **Payments** — Used to search payment events or individual payments that you want to refund. This tab appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Bills** — Used to search bills with credit line items, such as credit bill segments and adjustments, that you want to refund. This tab appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the refund request.
4. Add payment events, payments, or credit bill line items that you want to refund.
  5. Edit the refund amount of each entity, if required.
  6. Define characteristics for the refund request, if required.
  7. Override the address if you want to sent the refund to an address other than the account's main customer address.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Refund Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1179
<b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen	<a href="#">Account Receivable Central</a> on page 1004
How to add a payment event to the refund request	<a href="#">Adding a Payment Event to the Refund Request</a> on page 1193
How to add a payment to the refund request	<a href="#">Adding a Payment to the Refund Request</a> on page 1194
How to add a credit bill line item to the refund request	<a href="#">Adding a Credit Bill Line Item to the Refund Request</a> on page 1196
How to edit a refund request	<a href="#">Editing a Refund Request</a> on page 1198
How to define characteristics for a refund request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Refund Request</a> on page 1192

**Defining Characteristics for a Refund Request**

**Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a refund request, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Refund Write Off Request**)

**Procedure**

To define characteristics for a refund request:

- Search for the refund request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the refund request whose details you want to edit.

The **Refund Request** screen appears.

- Click the **Edit** button in the **Refund Request** zone.

The **Edit Refund Request** screen appears.

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.


- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are editing the refund request.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the refund request.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the refund request.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Refund Write Off Request</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the refund request.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the refund request.

5. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

6. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the refund request, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 5.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the refund request, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
How to create a refund request	<a href="#">Creating a Refund Request</a> on page 1189

## Adding a Payment Event to the Refund Request

### Prerequisites

To add a payment event to the refund request, you should have:

- Payments made by the account for which you need to create the refund request

### Procedure

To add a payment event to the refund request:

1. Click the **Payments** tab in the **Refund Request** screen.

The **Payments** tab appears.

2. Filter the payment events, if required, in the **Search Payment Event** zone.

**Note:** You can only refund payments, which are matched against suspense or excess credit contracts, to the payor account. Therefore, you can only view payment events which includes payments matched against suspense or excess credit contracts. If a refund request is currently in progress for a payment event or for any payment of a payment event, those payments events of the account are not listed in the **Search Payment Event** zone.

3. Select the check box corresponding to the payment event, whose payments you want to refund, in the **Search Results** section.

**Note:** You can add more than one payment event to the refund request at the same time.

4. Click **Add**.

A message appears indicating that the selected payment events are added to the refund request.

5. Click **OK**.

Note that the entity is added in the **Refund Details** zone on the **Main** tab.

**Note:**  
 You can only refund payments which are in the **Frozen** status.  
  
 If all payments in the payment event are matched against the same suspense or excess credit contract, the payment event is added in the **Refund Details** zone. However, if the payments in the payment event are matched against different suspense or excess credit contracts, the payments of the payment event are added in the **Refund Details** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a refund request	<a href="#">Creating a Refund Request</a> on page 1189

Adding a Payment to the Refund Request

Prerequisites

To add a payment to the refund request, you should have:

- Payments made by the account for which you need to create the refund request

Procedure

To add a payment to the refund request:

1. Click the **Payments** tab in the **Refund Request** screen.

The **Payments** tab appears.

2. Filter the payment events, if required, in the **Search Payment Event** zone.

**Note:** You can only refund payments, which are matched against suspense or excess credit contracts, to the payor account. Therefore, you can only view payment events which includes payments matched against suspense or excess credit contracts. If a refund request is currently in progress for a payment event or for any payment of a payment event, those payments events of the account are not listed in the **Search Payment Event** zone.

3. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment event whose payments you want to view.

The **Payments** zone appears.

4. Select the check box corresponding to the payment that you want to refund.

**Note:** You can add more than one payment to the refund request at the same time.

5. Click **Add**.

A message appears indicating that the selected payments are added to the refund request.

6. Click **OK**.

Note that the payments are added in the **Refund Details** zone on the **Main** tab.

**Note:** You can only refund payments which are in the **Frozen** status.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to create a refund request	<a href="#">Creating a Refund Request</a> on page 1189

**Adding a Credit Bill to the Refund Request**

You can refund the credit bills to the account.

**Prerequisites**

To add a credit bill to the refund request, you should have:

- Completed bills for the account with one or more credit line items

**Procedure**

To add a credit bill to the refund request:

1. Click the **Bills** tab in the **Refund Request** screen.  
The **Bills** tab appears.
2. Filter the bills, if required, in the **Search Bills** zone.

**Note:** If a refund request is currently in progress for a credit bill segment or adjustment of a bill, those bills of the account are not listed in the **Search Bills** zone. In addition, a bill with all debit line items are not listed in the **Search Bills** zone.

3. Do either of the following:

If...	Then...
A bill has all credit line items and you want to add the credit bill to the refund request	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the <b>Search Bills</b> zone, select the bills that you want to refund.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Add</b> button available at the upper left corner of the <b>Search Bills</b> zone.</li> </ol>
	<b>Note:</b> Default adjustment type selected in the write off request type should be non A/P.
A bill has credit balance and one or more debit line items and you want to add the credit bill to the refund request	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the <b>Search Bills</b> zone, select the bills that you want to refund.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Add</b> button available at the upper left corner of the <b>Search Bills</b> zone.</li> </ol>
	<b>Note:</b> Default adjustment type selected in the write off request type should be non A/P.

4. Click **Add**.

A message appears indicating that the selected bills are added to the refund request.

**Note:** If you select a bill (with credit balance) which contains one or more debit line items or if you select a bill (with debit balance) which contains one or more credit line items, the system will not allow you to add the credit line items by directly adding the bill. In such case, you need to individually select the credit bill segments and adjustments of the bill and then add them to the refund request.

5. Click **OK**.

Note that all the credit bill segments or adjustments of the bills are added in the **Refund Details** zone on the **Main** tab.

**Note:**  
Irrespective of whether you select a credit bill, or credit bill segments or adjustments, the credit bill segments or adjustments are added in the **Refund Details** zone. The credit bill is not added to the **Refund Details** zone.  
The system will not allow you to add a debit line item to the **Refund Details** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to create a refund request	<a href="#">Creating a Refund Request</a> on page 1189

**Adding a Credit Bill Line Item to the Refund Request**

You can refund the credit bill line items, such as bill segments and adjustments, to the account. While adding a credit bill line item to the refund request, you can either:

- Directly add all credit line items of a bill to the refund request by adding the bill which has all bill segments and adjustments in credit
- Individually add a credit bill segment or adjustment of a bill (with one or more credit line items) to the refund request

**Prerequisites**

To add a credit bill line item to the refund request, you should have:

- Completed bills for the account with one or more credit line items

**Procedure**




To add a credit bill line item to the refund request:

1. Click the **Bills** tab in the **Refund Request** screen.  
The **Bills** tab appears.
2. Filter the bills, if required, in the **Search Bills** zone.

**Note:** If a refund request is currently in progress for a credit bill segment or adjustment of a bill, those bills of the account are not listed in the **Search Bills** zone. In addition, a bill with all debit line items are not listed in the **Search Bills** zone.

3. Do either of the following:



If...	Then...
A bill has all credit line items and you want to add a particular credit bill line item to the refund request	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the <b>Search Bills</b> zone, click the <b>Broadcast</b>  icon corresponding to the bill whose line items you want to view. The <b>Bill Line Items</b> zone appears.</li> <li>2. Select the check box corresponding to the credit bill segment or adjustment that you want to refund.</li> </ol>
A bill has credit balance and one or more debit line items	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the <b>Search Bills</b> zone, click the <b>Broadcast</b>  icon corresponding to the bill whose line items you want to view. The <b>Bill Line Items</b> zone appears.</li> <li>2. Select the check box corresponding to the credit bill segment or adjustment that you want to refund.</li> </ol>
A bill has debit balance and one or more credit line items	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the <b>Search Bills</b> zone, click the <b>Broadcast</b>  icon corresponding to the bill whose line items you want to view. The <b>Bill Line Items</b> zone appears.</li> <li>2. Select the check box corresponding to the credit bill segment or adjustment that you want to refund.</li> </ol>

4. Click **Add**.

A message appears indicating that the selected bill segments or adjustments are added to the refund request.

**Note:** If you select a bill (with credit balance) which contains one or more debit line items or if you select a bill (with debit balance) which contains one or more credit line items, the system will not allow you to add the credit line items by directly adding the bill. In such case, you need to individually select the credit bill segments and adjustments of the bill and then add them to the refund request.

5. Click **OK**.

Note that the credit bill segments or adjustments are added in the **Refund Details** zone on the **Main** tab.

**Note:**

Irrespective of whether you select a credit bill, or credit bill segments or adjustments, the credit bill segments or adjustments are added in the **Refund Details** zone. The credit bill is not added to the **Refund Details** zone.

The system will not allow you to add a debit line item to the **Refund Details** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to create a refund request	<a href="#">Creating a Refund Request</a> on page 1189

Editing a Refund Request

Prerequisites

To edit a refund request, you should have:

- Adjustment types with A/P request type defined in the application

Procedure

To edit a refund request:

- Search for the refund request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the refund request whose details you want to edit.  
The **Refund Request** screen appears.

- Click the **Edit** button in the **Refund Request** zone.

The **Edit Refund Request** screen appears. It contains the following section:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Refund Request Information	Displays information about the refund request.	Not applicable
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the refund request is created.	Not applicable
Person Name	Used to indicate the person for whom the refund request is created.	No
Override Address	Used to indicate whether the account's mailing address must be overridden.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the account's main customer's address appears in the following fields — Address 1, Address 2, Address 3, Address 4, City, Country, State, and Postal. You can override the address in these fields, if required.	
Address 1	Used to specify the house number and apartment name.	No
Address 2	Used to specify the street name.	No
Address 3	Used to specify any landmark, if available.	No
Address 4	Used to specify the village, town, or city name.	No
City	Used to specify the city name.	No
Country	Used to specify the country name.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
State	Used to specify the state name.	No
Postal	Used to specify the postal or zip code.	No
Comments	Used to specify additional information about the refund request.	No

In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:

- **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the refund request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the refund request.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the refund request.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Refund Write Off Request</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the refund request.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the refund request.

4. Modify the details of the refund request, if required.
5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the refund request, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the refund request are saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
<b>Refund Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1179
<b>Refund Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1180
How to define characteristics for a refund request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Refund Request</a> on page 1192

Editing the Refund Details

Prerequisites

To edit the refund details, you should have:


- Adjustment types with A/P request type defined in the application

Procedure

To edit the refund details:


- Search for the refund request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the refund request whose bill line item details you want to edit.

The **Refund Request** screen appears. You can edit the bill line items by either of the following ways:


If...	Then
Select the bill whose details you want to edit in the <b>Refund Details</b> zone and click the <b>Edit</b> button available in the upper left corner of this zone.	The <b>Edit Request Details</b> screen appears.
In the <b>Refund Details</b> zone, click the <b>Broadcast</b>  icon corresponding to the bill whose line items details you want to edit.	The <b>Bill Line Items</b> zone appears.
	<div>Note: This zone appears only when the Entity Type is <b>Bill</b>.</div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the bill line item whose details you want to edit in the <b>Bill Line Items</b> zone and click the <b>Edit</b> button available in the upper left corner of this zone.</li> </ol> <p>The <b>Edit Request Details</b> screen appears.</p>

**Note:** A bill line item from the refund request can be edited only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.

The **Edit Request Details** screen contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Request ID	Displays the refund request ID.	Not applicable
Account Information	Displays additional information about the account.	Not applicable
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type of the refund request type.  You can search for an adjustment type by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.	No


In addition to these fields, this screen contains following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Entity Type	Indicates the entity type. The valid values are <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adjustments</li> <li>• Bill</li> <li>• Bill Segment</li> <li>• Payment Event</li> <li>• Payment</li> </ul>
Entity ID	Displays the entity ID.
Entity Amount	Displays the entity amount.
Currency	Displays the currency in which the entity was created.
Request Amount	Displays the amount that must be refunded.
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the refund adjustment must be created. <div> <b>Note:</b>  You can search for an account by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field. </div>
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID.





In addition to the above columns, the screen has following button:

Button Name	Button Description
Override	Used to override an adjustment type of the refund request.

**Note:**

In the **Bill Line Items** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill line item which you want to delete

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. By default, 10 records are displayed in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required.

You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** () , **Previous** () , **Next** () , and **Last** () to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

The values appear in the **Page Limit** list only when you define values for the **PAGE\_NUMBER** lookup field.

3. Modify the details of the bill line items.

4. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the refund bill line items are saved.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Refund Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1179

For more information on...	See...
Refund Request zone	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1180
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177

Deleting a Refund Request

Procedure

To delete a refund request:

- 1. Search for the refund request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the refund request that you want to delete.

The **Refund Request** screen appears.

- 3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Refund Request** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the refund request.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.

- 4. Click **OK**.

The refund request is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
Refund Request screen	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1179
Refund Request zone	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1180

Deleting a Bill from the Refund Request

Procedure

To delete a bill from the refund request:

- 1. Search for the refund request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the refund request whose bill you want to delete.

The **Refund Request** screen appears.

- 3. In the **Refund Details** zone, select the bills and click the **Delete** button available in the upper left corner of this zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the bill from the refund request.

**Note:** You can delete bill from the refund request only when the request is in the **Draft** status.

- 4. Click **OK**.

The selected bill gets deleted from the refund request.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Refund Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1179
<b>Refund Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1180
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177

## Deleting a Bill Line Item from the Refund Request

### Procedure

To delete a bill line item from the refund request:

1. Search for the refund request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the refund request whose bill line items you want to delete.

The **Refund Request** screen appears.

3. In the **Refund Details** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill whose line items details you want to delete.

The **Bill Line Items** zone appears.

4. In the **Bill Line Items** zone, select the bill line items which you want to delete and click the **Delete** button available in the upper left corner of this zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the bill line items from the refund request.

#### **Note:**

You can delete a bill line item from the refund request only when the request is in the **Draft** status.

5. Click **OK**.

The selected bill line items gets deleted from the refund request.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Refund Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1179
<b>Refund Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1180
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177

## Submitting a Refund Request

### Prerequisites

To submit a refund request, you should have:

- Payment events, payments, or credit bill line items added in the refund request

**Procedure**

To submit a refund request:

1. Search for the refund request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the refund request that you want to submit.

The **Refund Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Submit** button in the **Refund Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If...	Then...
The <b>Approval Required</b> and <b>Hierarchical Approval</b> check boxes are selected in the refund request type using which the refund request is created	A To Do of the <b>C1-REFRQ</b> To Do type is created and sent to the approver at the first level in the approval hierarchy, and the status of the refund request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> .
The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected, but the <b>Hierarchical Approval</b> check box is not selected in the refund request type using which the refund request is created	A To Do of the <b>C1-REFRQ</b> To Do type is created and sent to the approver at the hierarchy level where the total refund amount falls within the threshold limit. In addition, the status of the refund request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> .
The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is not selected in the refund request type using which the refund request is created	The refund adjustments are created using the specified adjustment types and the status of the refund request is changed to <b>Processed</b> .
	<b>Note:</b> The refund adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status. If a match event is present for the credit bill line items (such as bill segments and adjustments) and for the payments which are matched against the excess credit contract, the existing match event is stamped on the refund adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. However, when a match event is not present for the payments which are matched against the suspense contract or if the match events does not exist, a new match event is created and stamped on the refund adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. If you are doing a partial refund for any entity, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Open</b> . However, if you are refunding the entire eligible amount, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Balanced</b> .



If...	Then...
The total refund amount is less than minimum refund amount	The write up adjustment is created using the write up adjustment type specified in the refund request type. In addition, the status of the refund request is changed to <b>Processed</b> .
	<b>Note:</b> The write up adjustment is created in the <b>Frozen</b> status. If a match event is present for the credit bill line items (such as bill segments and adjustments) and for the payments which are matched against the excess credit contract, the existing match event is stamped on the write up adjustment and on the corresponding financial transaction. However, when a match event is not present for the payments which are matched against the suspense contract or if the match events does not exist, a new match event is created and stamped on the write up adjustment and on the corresponding financial transaction. If you are doing a partial refund for any entity, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Open</b> . However, if you are refunding the entire eligible amount, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Balanced</b> .
The total refund amount is less than the minimum threshold amount	The refund request is automatically approved by the system and refund adjustments are created using the specified adjustment types. In addition, the status of the refund request is changed to <b>Processed</b> .
	<b>Note:</b> The refund adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status. If a match event is present for the credit bill line items (such as bill segments and adjustments) and for the payments which are matched against the excess credit contract, the existing match event is stamped on the refund adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. However, when a match event is not present for the payments which are matched against the suspense contract or if the match events does not exist, a new match event is created and stamped on the refund adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. If you are doing a partial refund for any entity, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Open</b> . However, if you are refunding the entire eligible amount, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Balanced</b> .

**Note:** The **Submit** button appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
<b>Refund Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1179

For more information on...	See...
<b>Refund Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1180

**Approving a Refund Request**

You can view the number of refund requests which are pending for approval in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve or reject the refund request based on the observations.

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve or reject a refund request submitted by you.

**Procedure**

To approve a refund request:

- Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Approve a refund request through the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Search for the refund request in the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> screen.</li> <li>In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Refund/Write Off Request Information</b> column corresponding to the refund request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Approve a refund request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>.  The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>Enter <b>C1-REFRQ</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</li> <li>Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field.  The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> <li>Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the refund request that you want to review.</li> </ol>

The **Refund Request** screen appears.

- Review the refund request details.
- Click the **Approve** button in the **Refund Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If...	Then
The <b>Hierarchical Approval</b> check box is selected in the refund request type using which the refund request is created and the total refund amount is greater than the threshold amount specified at the next level in the approval hierarchy	A To Do of the <b>C1-REFRQ</b> To Do type is created and sent to the approver at the next level in the approval hierarchy, and the status of the refund request remains as <b>Approval In Progress</b> .
The <b>Hierarchical Approval</b> check box is selected in the refund request type using which the refund request is created and the total refund amount is less than the threshold amount specified at the next level in the approval hierarchy	<p>The refund adjustments are created using the specified adjustment types and the status of the refund request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The refund adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status. If a match event is present for the credit bill line items (such as bill segments and adjustments) and for the payments which are matched against the excess credit contract, the existing match event is stamped on the refund adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. However, when a match event is not present for the payments which are matched against the suspense contract or if the match events does not exist, a new match event is created and stamped on the refund adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. If you are doing a partial refund for any entity, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Open</b>. However, if you are refunding the entire eligible amount, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Balanced</b>.</p>
The <b>Hierarchical Approval</b> check box is not selected in the refund request type using which the refund request is created	<p>The refund adjustments are created using the specified adjustment types and the status of the refund request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The refund adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status. If a match event is present for the credit bill line items (such as bill segments and adjustments) and for the payments which are matched against the excess credit contract, the existing match event is stamped on the refund adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. However, when a match event is not present for the payments which are matched against the suspense contract or if the match events does not exist, a new match event is created and stamped on the refund adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. If you are doing a partial refund for any entity, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Open</b>. However, if you are refunding the entire eligible amount, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Balanced</b>.</p>

**Note:** The **Approve** button appears only when:

- The refund request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the refund request.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
<b>Refund Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1179
<b>Refund Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1180

**Rejecting a Refund Request**

**Prerequisites**

To reject a refund request, you should have:

- Rejection reasons defined in the application

**Note:**

While rejecting a refund request, you need to specify the reason why you want to reject the refund request. You can select the appropriate rejection reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Rejected** status of the **C1-RefundReq** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

The system will not allow you to approve or reject a refund request submitted by you.

**Procedure**

To reject a refund request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Reject a refund request through the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Search for the refund request in the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> screen.</li><li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Refund/Write Off Request Information</b> column corresponding to the refund request which you want to review.</li></ol>
Reject a refund request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li><li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>.  The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li></ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Enter <b>C1-REFRQ</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field. The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> <li>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the refund request that you want to review.</li> </ol>

The **Refund Request** screen appears.

2. Review the refund request details.
3. Click the **Reject** button in the **Refund Request** zone.

The **Reject Refund Request** window appears. It contains following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to reject the refund request.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while rejecting the refund request.	No

**Note:** The **Reject** button appears only when:

- The refund request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the refund request.

4. Select the rejection reason from the **Status Reason** list.
5. Click **Save**.

The status of the refund request is changed to **Rejected**.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
<b>Refund Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1179
<b>Refund Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1180

## Viewing the Log of a Refund Request

### Procedure

To view the log of a refund request:

- 1. Search for the refund request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the refund request whose log you want to view.

The **Refund Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the refund request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Refund Request** – Displays the details of the refund request.
  - **Refund Details** – Lists the entities, such as payment events, payments, and/or credit bill line items (such as credit bill segments and adjustments), of the account which must be refunded.
  - **Bill Line Items** — Displays the details of the bill which must be refunded.

Note:

This zone appears when you click the Broadcast  icon corresponding to the entity type as **Bill** in the **Refund Details** zone.

- **Payments** — Used to search payment events or individual payments that you want to refund. This tab appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Bills** — Used to search bills with credit line items, such as credit bill segments and adjustments, that you want to refund. This tab appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the refund request.
- 3. Click the **Log** tab.
  - 4. View the log of the refund request in the **Refund Request Log** zone.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the refund request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Refund Request Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
How to add a log entry for a refund request	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Refund Request</a> on page 1210
<b>Refund Request Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Refund Request Log</a> on page 1189

**Adding a Log Entry for a Refund Request**

**Procedure**

To add a log entry for a refund request:

- 1. Search for the refund request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the refund request whose log you want to edit.

The **Refund Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the refund request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Refund Request** – Displays the details of the refund request.

- **Refund Details** – Lists the entities, such as payment events, payments, and/or credit bill line items (such as credit bill segments and adjustments), of the account which must be refunded.
  - **Payments** — Used to search payment events or individual payments that you want to refund. This tab appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Bills** — Used to search bills with credit line items, such as credit bill segments and adjustments, that you want to refund. This tab appears only when the refund request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the refund request.
- Click the **Log** tab.
- The **Log** tab appears.

- Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Refund Request Log** zone.

The **Add Request Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Request Information	Displays information about the refund request.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the refund request.	Yes

- Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.
  - Click **Save**.
- The log entry is added in the **Refund Request Log** zone.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177

## **Voiding a Refund Request**

There might be situations when incorrect refund request is processed in the system. In such case, the system provides you with an ability to void or cancel the refund request. However, note that you can void a refund request only when the refund request is in the **Processed** status.

#### **Prerequisites**

To void a refund request, you should have:

- Void reasons defined in the application

**Note:** While voiding a refund request, you need to specify the reason why you want to void the refund request. You can select the appropriate void reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Voided** status of the **C1-RefundReq** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

#### **Procedure**

To void a refund request:

- Search for the refund request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the refund request that you want to void.

The **Refund Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Void** button in the **Refund Request** zone.

The **Void Reason** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to void the refund request.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while voiding the refund request.	No

**Note:** The **Void** button appears only when the refund request is in the **Processed** status.

4. Select the void reason from the **Status Reason** list.
5. Click **Save**.

The status of the refund request is changed to **Voided**.

**Note:** The **C1-REFVOID** algorithm cancels all the frozen adjustments created for the refund request which is in the **Processed** state.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a refund request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
<b>Refund Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1179
<b>Refund Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Refund Request</a> on page 1180

# Write Off Request

Once you create a write off request, the **Write Off Request** screen allows you to:


- Edit and delete a write off request
- View the details of a write off request
- Submit a write off request for approval
- Approve or reject a write off request
- View the log of a write off request
- Add a log entry for a write off request
- Cancel a write off request

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the write off request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Write Off Request** – Displays the details of the write off request.
  - **Write Off Details** – Lists the debit bill line items (such as debit bill segments and adjustments) of the account which must be written off.
  - **Bill Line Items** — Displays the details of the bill which must be written off.



**Note:**

This zone appears when you click the Broadcast  icon corresponding to the entity type as **Bill** in the **Write Off Details** zone.

- **Bills** — Used to search bills with debit line items, such as debit bill segments and adjustments, that you want to write off. It contains the following zones:
  - **Search Bills** — Lists completed bills of the account which are either with debit balance or have one or more debit line items, such as bill segments and adjustments. You can filter the bills using various search criteria.
  - **Bill Line Items** — Lists the debit and credit bill segments and adjustments of the bill.

This tab appears only when the write off request is in the **Draft** status.

- **Log** — Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the write off request.

## Write Off Request - Main

The **Main** tab displays information about the write off request. It contains the following zones:

- [Write Off Request](#) on page 1213
- [Write Off Details](#) on page 1215
- [Bill Line Items](#) on page 1216

## Write Off Request

The **Write Off Request** zone displays the details of the write off request. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Main** — This section provides basic information about the write off request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Write Off Request Information	Displays information about the write off request.
Write Off Request Type	Indicates the write off request type using which the write off request is created.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Refund/Write Off Request Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the write off request type.
Status	Indicates the status of the write off request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> </ul>

Field Name	Field Description
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the write off request is rejected or cancelled.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the write off request is in the <b>Rejected</b> or <b>Cancelled</b> status. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Status Reason</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rejected or cancelled reason.
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the write off request is created.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.
Comments	Displays additional information about the write off request.
Total Write Off Amount	Displays the total write off amount.

- **Characteristics** — Lists the characteristics defined for the write off request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Effective Date	Indicates the date from when the characteristic is effective for the write off request.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** — This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the write off request.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the write off request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Delete	Used to delete the write off request.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the write off request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Submit	Used to submit the write off request for approval.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit</b> button appears only when the write off request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Approve	Used to approve the write off request.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Approve</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The write off request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>• A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the write off request.</li> </ul>

Button Name	Button Description
Reject	Used to reject the write off request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Reject</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The write off request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the write off request.</li> </ul>
Cancel	Used to cancel the write off request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Cancel</b> button appears only when the write off request is in the <b>Processed</b> status.

- **Record Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the write off request is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the write off request status is updated
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the write off request is created.


### Write Off Details

The **Write Off Details** zone lists the debit bill line items (such as bill segments and adjustments) that you have added to the write off request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Entity ID	Displays the entity ID.
Entity Type	Indicates whether the entity is a bill, bill segment or an adjustment.
Currency	Indicates the currency in which the entity was created.
Entity Amount	Displays the entity amount.
Write Off Amount	Displays the amount that must be written off.
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the amount which is eligible for write off appears in this column. You can edit the amount, if required. However, you cannot specify the amount greater than the eligible amount.
Contract Information	Displays additional information about the contract against which the bill segment or adjustment is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.

Column Name	Column Description
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the write off adjustment must be created.
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the adjustment type specified in the write off request type appears in this column. You can change the adjustment type, if required, by editing the write off request.
Adjustment Information	Displays information about the write off adjustment.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective adjustment.</p> <p>The data appears in this column only when the status of the write off request is <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p>The information string appears only when an algorithm of the <b>C1-ADI-INFO</b> algorithm type is attached to the <b>Adjustment Information</b> system event in the <b>Algorithms</b> tab of the <b>Installation Options — Framework</b> screen.</p>

**Note:**

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the entity type as **Bill**, the **Bill Line Items** zone appears with the details of the respective bill.

In addition to above columns, this screen contains following buttons:


Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of bill line items.
Delete	Used to delete the bill line items.

**Bill Line Items**

The **Bill Line Items** zone lists the debit and credit bill segments and adjustments of the bill. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID.
Entity ID	Displays the bill segment or adjustment ID.
Entity Type	Indicates whether the entity is a bill, bill segment or an adjustment.
Currency	Displays the currency in which the entity was created.
Entity Amount	Displays the bill segment or adjustment amount.
Request Amount	Displays the bill segment or adjustment amount which is eligible for refund. In other words, it means entity amount minus amount refunded.
	<b>Note:</b> If the bill segment or adjustment has debit balance, the eligible amount for refund would be zero.

Column Name	Column Description
Contract Information	Displays additional information about the contract against which the bill segment or adjustment is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the refund adjustment must be created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective adjustment type.
Adjustment Information	Displays information about the refund adjustment.

By default, the **Bill Line Items** zone does not appear in the **Main** tab. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill in the **Write Off Details** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a debit bill line item to the write off request	<a href="#">Adding a Debit Bill Line Item to the Write Off Request</a> on page 1225

## Write Off Request - Bills

The **Bills** tab allows you to search bills with debit line items, such as debit bill segments and adjustments, that you want to write off. It contains the following zones:


- [Search Bill](#)
- [Bill Line Items](#) on page 1218

### Search Bills

The **Search Bills** zone lists completed bills of the account which are either with debit balance or have one or more debit line items, such as bill segments and adjustments. You can filter the bills using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate that you want to search for a bill using the bill details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bill Details</li> <li>• Bill and Price Item Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected.	
Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill.	No
Bill Date From	Used to search bills which are created from a particular date onwards.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
To	Used to search bills which are created till a particular date.	No
Price Item	Used to search bills which are created for a particular price item.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select <b>Bill and Price Item Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. You can search for a price item by clicking the <b>search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.	No

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results are filtered based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID.
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the bill. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Amount	Displays the total bill amount.

If you want to write off a bill with debit balance and all debit line items, you need to select the check box corresponding to the bill and then click the **Add** button in the **Search Results** section. All debit bill segments and adjustments of the bill are added in the **Write Off Details** zone on the **Main** tab. However, if you select a bill (with debit balance) which contains one or more credit line items or if you select a bill (with credit balance) which contains one or more debit line items, the system will not allow you to add the debit line items by directly adding the bill. In such case, you need to individually select the debit bill segments and adjustments of the bill and then add them to the write off request.

**Note:** If a write off request is currently in progress for a debit bill segment or adjustment of a bill, those bills of the account are not listed in the **Search Bills** zone. In addition, a bill with all credit line items are not listed in the **Search Bills** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a debit bill line item to the write off request	<a href="#">Adding a Debit Bill Line Item to the Write Off Request</a> on page 1225

### **Bill Line Items**

The **Bill Line Items** zone lists the debit and credit bill segments and adjustments of the bill. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Entity ID	Displays the bill segment or adjustment ID.

Column Name	Column Description
Entity Type	Indicates whether the entity is a bill segment or an adjustment.
Entity Information	Displays additional information about the bill segment or adjustment. If the entity is a bill segment, the context menu appears in the column which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. If the entity is a bill segment, the <b>Bill Segment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill segment on clicking the link. However, if the entity is an adjustment, the <b>Adjustment</b> screen appears with the details of the respective adjustment on clicking the link.
Entity Amount	Displays the bill segment or adjustment amount.
Eligible Amount	Displays the bill segment or adjustment amount which is eligible for write off. In other words, it means entity amount minus amount written off.
	<b>Note:</b> If the bill segment or adjustment has credit balance, the eligible amount for write off would be zero.
Amount Written Off	Displays the amount which is already written off to the account.
Contract Information	Displays additional information about the contract against which the bill segment or adjustment is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.

You can select one or more debit bill segments or adjustments and click the **Add** button in this zone to add selected debit bill segments or adjustments to the write off request.

By default, the **Bill Line Items** zone does not appear in the **Bills** tab. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill in the **Search Bills** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to add a debit bill line item to the write off request	<a href="#">Adding a Debit Bill Line Item to the Write Off Request</a> on page 1225

## Write Off Request - Log

The **Log** tab contains the following zone:

- [Write Off Request Log](#) on page 1219

### Write Off Request Log

The **Write Off Request Log** zone lists the complete trail of actions performed on the write off request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the write off request.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the write off request.

Column Name	Column Description
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the write off request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the write off request.
Status Reason	Displays the status reason of action performed on the write off request.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the write off request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Write Off Request Log** zone.

The **Add Request Log** window appears. Enter **Log Details** and click **Save**. The write off request log is added.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of a write off request	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Write Off Request</a> on page 1236

## Creating a Write Off Request

### Prerequisites

To create a write off request, you should have:

- Write off request types defined in the application

### Procedure

To create a write off request:


1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Define a write off request from the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Main</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Financial</b> and then click <b>Account Receivable Central</b>.</li> <li>3. Search for the bill in the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen.</li> <li>4. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, select the required bill and then click <b>Write Off</b>.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note:</b> Only one bill at a time is allowed to select for <b>Write Off Request</b> from the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen.</p>
Define a write off request from the <b>Write Off Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Main</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Financial</b> and then click <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b>.</li> </ol>



If you want to...	Then...
	<p>A sub-menu appears.</p> <p>3. Click the <b>Add</b> option from the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> sub-menu.</p>

The **Select Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Action	<p>Displays the type of request (refund or write off) to be created.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field is pre-populated if the write off request is created from the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen.</p> <p>This field is editable if the write off request is created from the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> screen.</p>	Yes
Refund/Write Off Request Type	<p>Used to indicate the request type using which you want to create the refund or write off request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The refund request types are listed when you set the <b>Action</b> field to <b>Refund</b> and the write off request types are listed when you set the <b>Action</b> field to <b>Write Off</b>.</p>	Yes
Account	<p>Used to indicate the account for which you want to create the refund or write off request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field is pre-populated if the write off request is created from the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen.</p> <p>This field is editable if the write off request is created from the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> screen.</p> <p>You can search for an account by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the respective field.</p>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Request Type** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.

2. Select the required write off request type and account from the respective fields.
3. Click **Save**.

The write off request is defined and the status of the write off request is set to **Draft**. The **Write Off Request** screen appears with the details of the write off request. It contains the following tabs:

**Note:** The write off request can be created only for bill with outstanding amount greater than zero.

- **Main** – Displays information about the write off request. It contains the following zones:
    - **Write Off Request** – Displays the details of the write off request.
    - **Write Off Details** – Lists the debit bill line items (such as debit bill segments and adjustments) of the account which must be written off.
  - **Bills** — Used to search bills with debit line items, such as debit bill segments and adjustments, that you want to write off. This tab appears only when the write off request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the write off request.
4. Add debit bill line items that you want to write off.
  5. Edit the write off amount of each entity, if required.
  6. Define characteristics for the write off request, if required.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Write Off Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1212
<b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen	<a href="#">Account Receivable Central</a> on page 1004
How to add a debit bill line item to the write off request	<a href="#">Adding a Debit Bill Line Item to the Write Off Request</a> on page 1225
How to edit a write off request	<a href="#">Editing a Write Off Request</a> on page 1226
How to define characteristics for a write off request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Write Off Request</a> on page 1222

**Defining Characteristics for a Write Off Request**

**Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a write off request, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Refund Write Off Request**)

**Procedure**

To define characteristics for a write off request:

1. Search for the write off request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the write off request whose details you want to edit.  
 The **Write Off Request** screen appears.
3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Write Off Request** zone.  
 The **Edit Write Off Request** screen appears.


**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the write off request is in the **Draft** status.


4. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are editing the write off request.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the write off request.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the write off request.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Refund Write Off Request</b> .	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the write off request.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the write off request.

5. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

6. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the write off request, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 5.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the write off request, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
How to create a write off request	<a href="#">Creating a Write Off Request</a> on page 1220

## Adding a Debit Bill to the Write Off Request

### Prerequisites

To add a debit bill to the write off request, you should have:

- Completed bills for the account with one or more debit line items

### Procedure

To add a debit bill to the write off request:

- Click the **Bills** tab in the **Write Off Request** screen.

The **Bills** tab appears.

- Filter the bills, if required, in the **Search Bills** zone.

**Note:** If a write off request is currently in progress for a debit bill segment or adjustment of a bill, those bills of the account are not listed in the **Search Bills** zone. In addition, a bill with all credit line items are not listed in the **Search Bills** zone.

- Do either of the following:

If...	Then...
A bill has all debit line items and you want to add the debit bill to the write off request	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Search Bills</b> zone, select the bills that you want to write off.</li> <li>Click the <b>Add</b> button available at the upper left corner of the <b>Search Bills</b> zone.</li> </ol>
	<b>Note:</b> Default adjustment type selected in the write off request type should be non A/P.
A bill has debit balance and one or more credit line items and you want to add the debit bill to the write off request	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the <b>Search Bills</b> zone, select the bills that you want to write off.</li> <li>Click the <b>Add</b> button available at the upper left corner of the <b>Search Bills</b> zone.</li> </ol>
	<b>Note:</b> Default adjustment type selected in the write off request type should be non A/P.

- Click **Add**.

A message appears indicating that the selected bills are added to the write off request.

**Note:** If you select a bill (with credit balance) which contains one or more debit line items or if you select a bill (with debit balance) which contains one or more credit line items, the system will not allow you to add the debit line items by directly adding the bill. In such case, you need to individually select the debit bill segments and adjustments of the bill and then add them to the write off request.

- Click **OK**.

Note that the debit bill segments or adjustments are added in the **Write Off Details** zone on the **Main** tab.

**Note:**  
 Irrespective of whether you select a debit bill, or debit bill segments or adjustments, the debit bill segments or adjustments are added in the **Write Off Details** zone. The debit bill is not added to the **Write Off Details** zone.  
 The system will not allow you to add a credit line item to the **Write Off Details** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a write off request	<a href="#">Creating a Write Off Request</a> on page 1220

## Adding a Debit Bill Line Item to the Write Off Request

You can write off the debit bill line items, such as bill segments and adjustments, of the account. While adding a debit bill line item to the write off request, you can either:

- Directly add all debit line items of a bill to the write off request by adding the bill which has all bill segments and adjustments in debit
- Individually add a debit bill segment or adjustment of a bill (with one or more debit line items) to the write off request

### Prerequisites

To add a debit bill line item to the write off request, you should have:

- Completed bills for the account with one or more debit line items

### Procedure

To add a debit bill line item to the write off request:




1. Click the **Bills** tab in the **Write Off Request** screen.

The **Bills** tab appears.

2. Filter the bills, if required, in the **Search Bills** zone.

**Note:** If a write off request is currently in progress for a debit bill segment or adjustment of a bill, those bills of the account are not listed in the **Search Bills** zone. In addition, a bill with all credit line items are not listed in the **Search Bills** zone.

3. Do any of the following:

If...	Then...
A bill has all debit line items and you want to add a particular debit bill line item to the write off request	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the <b>Search Bills</b> zone, click the <b>Broadcast</b>  icon corresponding to the bill whose line items you want to view. The <b>Bill Line Items</b> zone appears.</li> <li>2. Select the check box corresponding to the debit bill segment or adjustment that you want to write off.</li> </ol>
A bill has debit balance and one or more credit line items	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the <b>Search Bills</b> zone, click the <b>Broadcast</b>  icon corresponding to the bill whose line items you want to view. The <b>Bill Line Items</b> zone appears.</li> <li>2. Select the check box corresponding to the debit bill segment or adjustment that you want to write off.</li> </ol>
A bill has credit balance and one or more debit line items	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the <b>Search Bills</b> zone, click the <b>Broadcast</b>  icon corresponding to the bill whose line items you want to view. The <b>Bill Line Items</b> zone appears.</li> </ol>

If...	Then...
	2. Select the check box corresponding to the debit bill segment or adjustment that you want to write off.

4. Click **Add**.

A message appears indicating that the selected bill segments or adjustments are added to the write off request.

**Note:** If you select a bill (with credit balance) which contains one or more debit line items or if you select a bill (with debit balance) which contains one or more credit line items, the system will not allow you to add the debit line items by directly adding the bill. In such case, you need to individually select the debit bill segments and adjustments of the bill and then add them to the write off request.

5. Click **OK**.

Note that the debit bill segments or adjustments are added in the **Write Off Details** zone on the **Main** tab.

**Note:**  
Irrespective of whether you select a debit bill, or debit bill segments or adjustments, the debit bill segments or adjustments are added in the **Write Off Details** zone. The debit bill is not added to the **Write Off Details** zone.  
The system will not allow you to add a credit line item to the **Write Off Details** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to create a write off request	<a href="#">Creating a Write Off Request</a> on page 1220

**Editing a Write Off Request**

**Prerequisites**

To edit a write off request, you should have:

- Adjustment types without A/P request type defined in the application

**Procedure**

To edit a write off request:

1. Search for the write off request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the write off request whose details you want to edit.

The **Write Off Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Write Off Request** zone.

The **Edit Write Off Request** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Write Off Request Information	Displays information about the write off request.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Information	Indicates the account for which the write off request is created.	Not applicable
Comments	Used to specify additional information about the write off request.	No

In addition, this screen contains the following two sections:

- **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the write off request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the write off request.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the write off request.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Refund Write Off Request</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the write off request.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the write off request.

4. Modify the details of the write off request, if required.
5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the write off request, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the write off request are saved.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
<b>Write Off Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1212
<b>Write Off Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1213
How to define characteristics for a write off request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Write Off Request</a> on page 1222

## Editing the Write Off Details

### Prerequisites

To edit the write off details, you should have:


- Adjustment types with A/P request type defined in the application

### Procedure

To edit the write off details:


1. Search for the write off request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the write off request whose bill line item details you want to edit.

The **Write Off Request** screen appears. You can edit the bill line items of the write off request by using either of the following ways:

If...	Then...
Select the bill whose details you want to edit in the <b>Write Off Details</b> zone and click the <b>Edit</b> button available in the upper left corner of this zone.	The <b>Edit Request Details</b> screen appears.
In the <b>Write Off Details</b> zone, click the <b>Broadcast</b>  icon corresponding to the bill whose line items details you want to edit.	The <b>Bill Line Items</b> zone appears.
	<b>Note:</b> This zone appears only when the Entity Type is <b>Bill</b> .  <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select the bill line item whose details you want to edit in the <b>Bill Line Items</b> zone and click the <b>Edit</b> button available in the upper left corner of this zone.  The <b>Edit Request Details</b> screen appears.</li></ol>


**Note:** A bill line item from the write off request can be edited only when the write off request is in the **Draft** status.

The **Edit Request Details** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Request ID	Displays the write off request ID.	Not applicable
Account Information	Displays additional information about the account.	Not applicable
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type of the write off request type.  You can search for an adjustment type by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.	No

In addition to these fields, this screen contains following columns:







Column Name	Column Description
Entity Type	Indicates the entity type. The valid values are <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adjustments</li> <li>• Bill</li> <li>• Bill Segment</li> <li>• Payment Event</li> <li>• Payment</li> </ul>
Entity ID	Displays the entity ID.
Entity Amount	Displays the entity amount.
Currency	Displays the currency in which the entity was created.
Request Amount	Displays the amount that must be write off.
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the write off adjustment must be created. <div> <b>Note:</b>  You can search for an account by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field. </div>
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID.

In addition to the above columns, the screen has following button:

Button Name	Button Description
Override	Used to override an adjustment type of the write off request.

**Note:**

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. By default, 10 records are displayed in the **Search Results** section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required.

You can use the navigation buttons, such as **First** () , **Previous** () , **Next** () , and **Last** () to navigate between pages. You can also select the page to which you want to navigate from the **Go To** list.

The values appear in the **Page Limit** list only when you define values for the **PAGE\_NUMBER** lookup field.

3. Modify the details of the bill line items.

4. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the write off bill line items are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Write Off Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1212
<b>Write Off Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1213
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177

Deleting a Write Off Request

Procedure

To delete a write off request:

- 1. Search for the write off request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the write off request that you want to delete.

The **Write Off Request** screen appears.

- 3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Write Off Request** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the write off request.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the write off request is in the **Draft** status.

- 4. Click **OK**.

The write off request is deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
<b>Write Off Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1212
<b>Write Off Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1213

Deleting a Bill from the Write Off Request

Procedure

To delete a bill from the write off request:

- 1. Search for the write off request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the write off request whose bill you want to delete.

The **Write Off Request** screen appears.

- 3. In the **Write Off Details** zone, select the bills and click the **Delete** button available in the upper left corner of this zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the bill from the write off request.

**Note:** You can delete bill from the write off request only when the request is in the **Draft** status.

- 4. Click **OK**.

The selected bill gets deleted from the write off request.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Write Off Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1212
<b>Write Off Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1213
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177

## Deleting a Bill Line Item from the Write Off Request

### Procedure

To delete a bill line item from the write off request:

1. Search for the write off request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the write off request whose bill line items you want to delete.

The **Write Off Request** screen appears.

3. In the **Write Off Details** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the bill whose line items details you want to delete.

The **Bill Line Items** zone appears.

4. In the **Bill Line Items** zone, select the bill line items which you want to delete and click the **Delete** button available in the upper left corner of this zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the bill line items from the write off request.

**Note:** You can delete a bill line items from the write off request only when the request is in the **Draft** status.

5. Click **OK**.

The selected bill line items gets deleted from the write off request.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Write Off Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1212
<b>Write Off Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1213
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177

## Submitting a Write Off Request

### Prerequisites

To submit a write off request, you should have:

- Debit bill line items added in the write off request

### Procedure

To submit a write off request:

1. Search for the write off request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the write off request that you want to submit.

The **Write Off Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Submit** button in the **Write Off Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If...	Then
The <b>Approval Required</b> and <b>Hierarchical Approval</b> check boxes are selected in the write off request type using which the write off request is created	A To Do of the <b>C1-WOREQ</b> To Do type is created and sent to the approver at the first level in the approval hierarchy, and the status of the write off request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> .
The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected, but the <b>Hierarchical Approval</b> check box is not selected in the write off request type using which the write off request is created	A To Do of the <b>C1-WOREQ</b> To Do type is created and sent to the approver at the hierarchy level where the total write off amount falls within the threshold limit. In addition, the status of the write off request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> .
The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is not selected in the write off request type using which the write off request is created	<p>The write off adjustments are created using the specified adjustment types and the status of the write off request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The write off adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status. If a match event is present for the debit bill line items (such as bill segments and adjustments), the existing match event is stamped on the write off adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. However, if the match events does not exist, a new match event is created and stamped on the write off adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. If you are doing a partial write off for any entity, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Open</b>. However, if the entire eligible amount is written off, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Balanced</b>.</p>
The total write off amount is less than the minimum threshold amount	<p>The write off request is automatically approved by the system and write off adjustments are created using the specified adjustment types. In addition, the status of the write off request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The write off adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status. If a match event is present for the debit bill line items (such as bill segments and adjustments), the existing match event is stamped on the write off adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. However, if the match events does not exist, a new match event is created and stamped on the write off adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. If you are doing a partial write off for any entity, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Open</b>. However, if the entire eligible amount is written off, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Balanced</b>.</p>

**Note:** The **Submit** button appears only when the write off request is in the **Draft** status.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
<b>Write Off Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1212
<b>Write Off Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1213

## **Approving a Write Off Request**

You can view the number of write off requests which are pending for approval in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve or reject the write off request based on the observations.

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve or reject a write off request submitted by you.

### **Procedure**

To approve a write off request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Approve a write off request through the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the write off request in the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Refund/Write Off Request Information</b> column corresponding to the write off request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Approve a write off request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>. The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter <b>C1-WOREQ</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field. The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the write off request that you want to review.

The **Write Off Request** screen appears.

- Review the write off request details.
- Click the **Approve** button in the **Write Off Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If...	Then...
The <b>Hierarchical Approval</b> check box is selected in the write off request type using which the write off request is created and the total write off amount is greater than the threshold amount specified at the next level in the approval hierarchy	A To Do of the <b>C1-WOREQ</b> To Do type is created and sent to the approver at the next level in the approval hierarchy, and the status of the write off request remains as <b>Approval In Progress</b> .
The <b>Hierarchical Approval</b> check box is selected in the write off request type using which the write off request is created and the total write off amount is less than the threshold amount specified at the next level in the approval hierarchy	<p>The write off adjustments are created using the specified adjustment types and the status of the write off request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The write off adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status. If a match event is present for the debit bill line items (such as bill segments and adjustments), the existing match event is stamped on the write off adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. However, if the match events does not exist, a new match event is created and stamped on the write off adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. If you are doing a partial write off for any entity, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Open</b>. However, if the entire eligible amount is written off, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Balanced</b>.</p>
The <b>Hierarchical Approval</b> check box is not selected in the write off request type using which the write off request is created	<p>The write off adjustments are created using the specified adjustment types and the status of the write off request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The write off adjustments are created in the <b>Frozen</b> status. If a match event is present for the debit bill line items (such as bill segments and adjustments), the existing match event is stamped on the write off adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. However, if the match events does not exist, a new match event is created and stamped on the write off adjustments and on the corresponding financial transactions. If you are doing a partial write off for any entity, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Open</b>. However, if the entire eligible amount is written off, the corresponding match event status is set to <b>Balanced</b>.</p>

**Note:** The **Approve** button appears only when:

- The write off request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the write off request.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
<b>Write Off Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1212
<b>Write Off Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1213

## Rejecting a Write Off Request

### Prerequisites

To reject a write off request, you should have:

- Rejection reasons defined in the application

### **Note:**

While rejecting a write off request, you need to specify the reason why you want to reject the write off request. You can select the appropriate rejection reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Rejected** status of the **C1-WORequest** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

The system will not allow you to approve or reject a write off request submitted by you.

### Procedure

To reject a write off request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Reject a write off request through the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the write off request in the <b>Refund/Write Off Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Refund/Write Off Request Information</b> column corresponding to the write off request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Reject a write off request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>.  The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	<p><b>3.</b> Enter <b>C1-WOREQ</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</p> <p><b>4.</b> Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</p> <p>The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</p> <p><b>5.</b> Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</p> <p><b>6.</b> Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the write off request that you want to review.</p>

The **Write Off Request** screen appears.

- Review the write off request details.
- Click the **Reject** button in the **Write Off Request** zone.

The **Reject Write Off Request** window appears. It contains following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to reject the write off request.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while rejecting the write off request.	No

**Note:** The **Reject** button appears only when:

- The write off request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the write off request.

- Select the rejection reason from the **Status Reason** list.
- Click **Save**.

The status of the write off request is changed to **Rejected**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
<b>Write Off Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1212
<b>Write Off Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1213

**Viewing the Log of a Write Off Request**

**Procedure**

To view the log of a write off request:



1. Search for the write off request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the write off request whose log you want to view.

The **Write Off Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the write off request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Write Off Request** – Displays the details of the write off request.
  - **Write Off Details** – Lists the debit bill line items (such as debit bill segments and adjustments) of the account which must be written off.
  - **Bill Line Items** — Displays the details of the bill which must be written off.

**Note:**

This zone appears when you click the Broadcast  icon corresponding to the entity type as **Bill** in the **Write Off Details** zone.

- **Bills** — Used to search bills with debit line items, such as debit bill segments and adjustments, that you want to write off. This tab appears only when the write off request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the write off request.
3. Click the **Log** tab
  4. View the log of the write off request in the **Write Off Request Log** zone.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the write off request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Write Off Request Log** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
How to add a log entry for a write off request	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Write Off Request</a> on page 1237
<b>Write Off Request Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Write Off Request Log</a> on page 1219

## Adding a Log Entry for a Write Off Request

### Procedure

To add a log entry for a write off request:

1. Search for the write off request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the write off request whose log you want to edit.

The **Write Off Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the write off request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Write Off Request** – Displays the details of the write off request.
  - **Write Off Details** – Lists the debit bill line items (such as debit bill segments and adjustments) of the account which must be written off.

- **Bills** — Used to search bills with debit line items, such as debit bill segments and adjustments, that you want to write off. This tab appears only when the write off request is in the **Draft** status.
  - **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the write off request.
3. Click the **Log** tab.
- The **Log** tab appears.
4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Write Off Request Log** zone.

The **Add Request Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Request Information	Displays information about the write off request.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the write off request.	Yes

5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.
  6. Click **Save**.
- The log entry is added in the **Write Off Request Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177

**Cancelling a Write Off Request**

There might be situations when incorrect write off request is processed in the system. In such case, the system provides you with an ability to cancel the write off request. However, note that you can cancel a write off request only when the write off request is in the **Processed** status.

**Prerequisites**

To cancel a write off request, you should have:

- Cancel reasons defined in the application

**Note:** While cancelling a write off request, you need to specify the reason why you want to cancel the write off request. You can select the appropriate cancel reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Cancelled** status of the **C1-WORequest** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

**Procedure**

To cancel a write off request:

1. Search for the write off request in the **Refund/Write Off Request** screen.
  2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Refund/Write Off Request Information** column corresponding to the write off request that you want to cancel.
- The **Write Off Request** screen appears.
3. Click the **Cancel** button in the **Write Off Request** zone.

The **Cancel Reason** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to cancel the write off request.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while cancelling the write off request.	No

**Note:** The **Cancel** button appears only when the write off request is in the **Processed** status.

- Select the cancel reason from the **Status Reason** list.
- Click **Save**.

The status of the write off request is changed to **Cancelled**.

**Note:** The **C1-WOCANCEL** algorithm cancels all the frozen adjustments created for the write off request which is in the **Processed** state.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a write off request	<a href="#">Searching for a Refund or Write Off Request</a> on page 1177
<b>Write Off Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1212
<b>Write Off Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Write Off Request</a> on page 1213



---

# Chapter 19

---

## Hold Request

---

### Topics:

- [Hold Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Hold Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-HoldRequest](#)
- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Hold Request Type](#)
- [Hold Request \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Hold Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to hold the amount for Person, Account or Bills. Hold is a way to prevent certain types of activities from taking place for a customer over a given period of time. The activities that need to be on Hold vary according to the reason for hold, such as due to a climate disaster the collection activity remains on Hold until disaster period is over.

Hold Request is a object which contains list of processes to be kept on hold for certain entities such as account, person, and bill for certain period of time. The hold period is defined as the duration between Hold Request Start Date and End Date. Each Hold Request contains an entity and processes on hold. There could exists multiple hold requests for an entity for different hold reasons and processes.

Following are the hold request entities:

- **Person:** If the person is on hold then all entities linked to that person where the person is financially responsible, such as accounts and its bills will be on hold.
- **Account:** If the account is on hold then all the bills of that account will be on hold.
- **Bill:** A bill will be on complete or partial hold.

In Hold Request, following mentioned processes can be on hold:

- **Auto Pay** — If the auto payment process is on hold then, then auto pay for the bills of the account added in hold request will be on hold till the request is released. However, you can do the manual payments. On activation of the hold request, **Defer Auto Pay Date** field (in Account screen) is populated with some future date. If billing process is on hold then auto payment process would also go on hold.
- **Bill Generation** — If the bill generation process is on hold then, then new bills will not be created for the account added in hold request till request is released. On activation of the hold request, **Bill After** date field (in Account screen) is populated with either hold request end date or some future date until that date billing is kept on hold. Whenever hold request is released for billing process then **Bill After** date field will be populated as system date.

**Note:** During the tenure of a hold request if customer does not require pending bills to be used for bill generation, bill in pending for accounts under hold are identified during activation of hold request which can be deleted by execution of the **C1-DELBI** batch . For more information about the batch, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*

- **Overdue** — If the overdue process is on hold then bills associated with accounts in the hold request will be on hold for overdue process. It means existing overdue will be cancelled. New overdue process will get created once hold request is released. On activation of the hold request, **Postpone Credit Review** field (in Account screen) is populated with either hold request end date or some future date. When hold request is released, **Postpone Credit Review** field would be set as system date. If the overdue process is on hold then request for policy termination due to non payment will be on hold.
- **Funding** — A list of bills identified for a full bill amount or a partial bill amount will be kept on hold for a funding process.

**Note:**

For Funding process, Person, Bill, and Account entities can be put on hold. However, for processes like Auto pay, Bill Generation, and Overdue, only Account entity can be put on hold.

Processes and Entities start dates and end dates are expected to be within the limit of Hold Request Start Date and End Date.

You need to specify the hold request type while creating a hold request. Hold request type helps the system to determine:

- Whether to allow the partial hold for bill or not
- Whether hold request must be approved by the approver before keeping entities and processes on hold

It is possible for a given entity, such as a person or account, to be affected by hold request with differing periods or at differing levels. For example, if there is a hold request added for a person manually and another hold request is there due to some other reason for an account belongs to the person who is already on hold. The system assumes that both hold requests are in effect for the account and that the period of accounts starts from the start of the earlier hold request record (for the account) until the later of the two release dates.

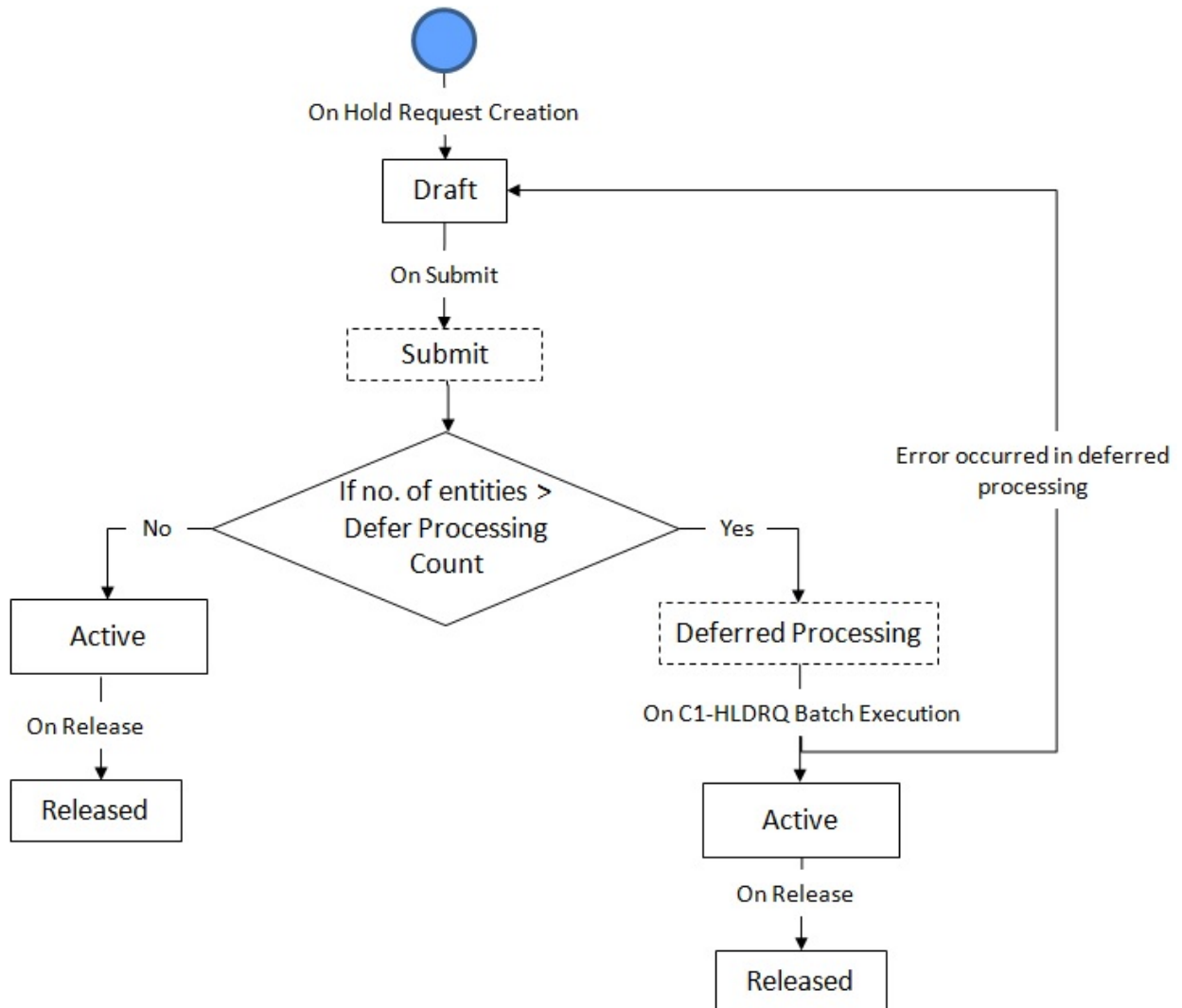
During the hold request process, a hold request goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. For more information about the hold request statuses, see [Hold Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 1243 and [Hold Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 1243

Note that the lifecycle of a hold request is driven by the business object using which the hold request is created. A hold request business object named **C1-HoldRequest** is shipped with the product. The hold request feature explained in this document is articulated based on the lifecycle and logic defined in the **C1-HoldRequest** business object. In addition, you can configure the search feature by setting **Fkref** feature configuration for each entity, such as person, account and bill.

For more information on how to setup the hold request processes, see [Prerequisites](#) on page 1250.

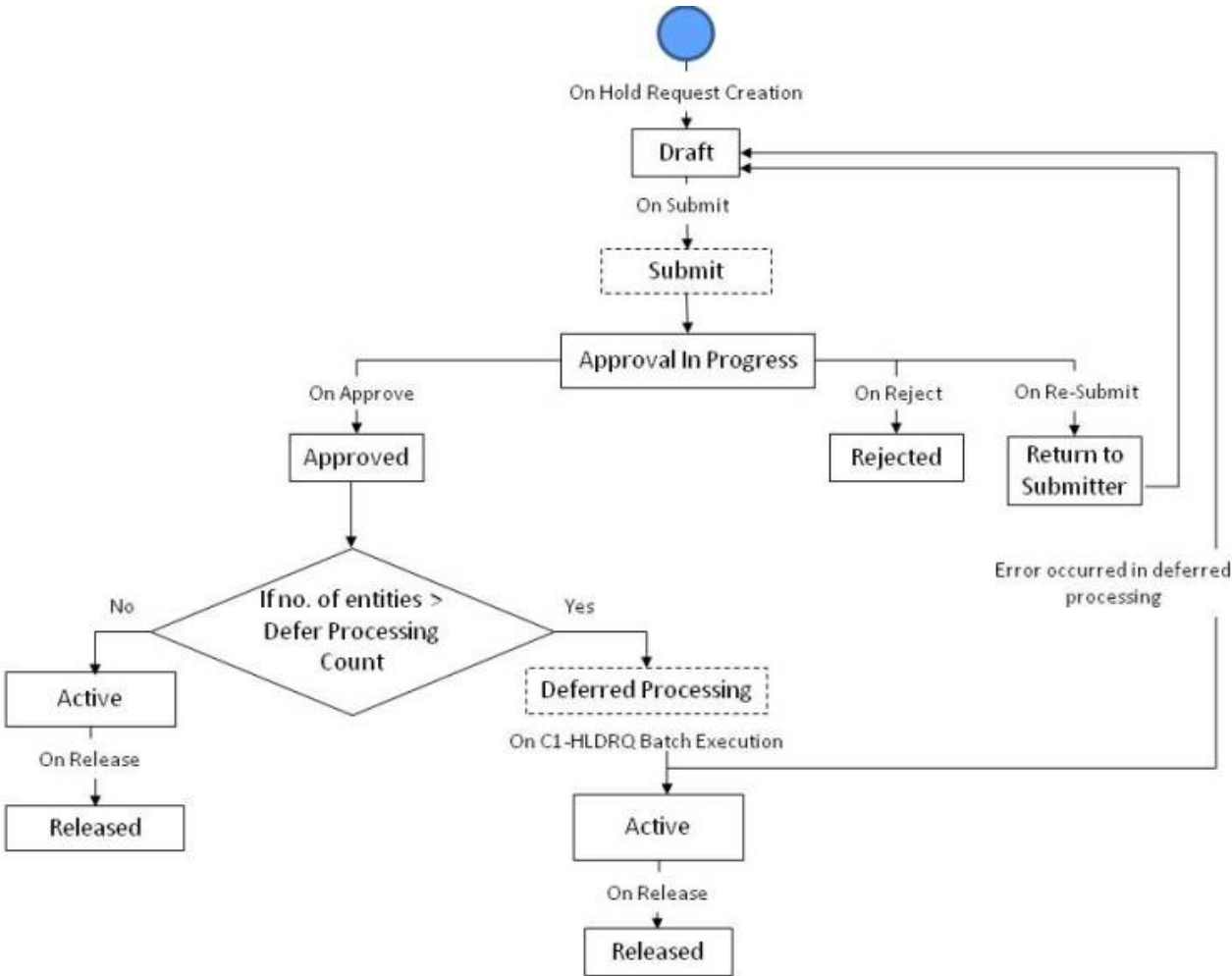
## Hold Request (Without Approval) Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a hold request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is off:



## Hold Request (With Approval) Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a hold request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is on:



## Algorithms Used in C1-HoldRequest

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-HoldRequest** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-HOLD-INF	C1-HOLD-INF	<div>This algorithm generates hold request information string which appears throughout the application. This algorithm concatenates the following fields:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hold Request Type</li><li>• Status</li><li>• Entity</li><li>• Hold Request ID</li></ul>



System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Validation	C1-HLDVALDN	C1-HLDVALDN	<p>This algorithm validates following during different statuses:</p> <p>For <b>Draft</b> status, it checks the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At least one Process is present in the request. Entity selection is optional</li> <li>No duplicate entity and process is allowed in a single request.</li> <li>Same entity cannot be placed on hold with the same <b>Hold Reason</b> in multiple Hold Requests.</li> <li>Request start date is earlier than or equal to process and entity start date.</li> <li>Request End Date is later than or equal to process and entity end date.</li> <li>At least one process start date is earlier than or equal to any entity start date.</li> <li>At least one process end date is later than or equal to any entity end date.</li> <li>For Bill and Person entity, <b>Bill Generation</b>, <b>Overdue</b>, and <b>Auto Pay</b> processes cannot be selected as the hold processes in a hold request.</li> <li>For Bill entity, it checks if hold amount is less than or equal to bill outstanding amount</li> <li>For Bill entity, to add a new bill to the request, the selected bill should be with a non-zero outstanding amount.</li> <li>Each Entities start date should lie within at least one process start date and end date in a request.</li> </ul> <p>For <b>Active</b> state following are some additional validations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hold Process or Entities cannot be deleted.</li> <li>Hold Request or Entity or Process Start Date cannot be modified.</li> <li>Hold Reason cannot be modified</li> <li>Hold Request or Process or Entity End Date can be updated as either equal or greater than system date.</li> <li>Process can be added with start date as system date.</li> <li>Entity cannot be added in hold request.</li> <li>If entity or process end date is in past then it cannot be updated.</li> </ul>

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-HoldRequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	C1-HLDARCTR	C1-HLDARCTR	This algorithm transitions the request to active status when the request is created from <b>Account Receivable Central</b> and <b>Delinquency Control</b> .
Draft	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm type completes To Do entries that are linked to an object when the object exits a given state. The system finds all open To Do entries with drill keys for primary key of the current business object, and completes them, unless the To Do entry's type has been configured with an Exclude To Do Type Characteristic Type indicating that it should not be automatically completed.
Submit	Enter	C1-HOLDSUBMT	C1-HOLDSUBMT	This algorithm checks the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Whether the approval is required for the hold request. If the approval is required for a hold request, the status of the hold request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b>. However, if the approval is not required for a hold request, the status of the hold request is changed to <b>Active</b> or <b>Deferred Processing</b> depending on the Defer Processing Count specified in the hold request type.</li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Active	Enter	C1-HOLDACTV	C1-HOLDACTV	<p>This algorithm is invoked on Active button and validates following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Entities Start Date is on or after Hold Request Start Date</li> <li>Entities End Date is on or before Hold Request End Date</li> <li>For an Entity Bill, Hold Amount is not more than bill outstanding amount or Bill outstanding amount is not equal to zero.</li> <li>Updates and processes entities start date to system date.</li> <li>It updates following mentioned date to minimum of Entity End Date or Process End Date: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bill After Date - For Bill Generation Process.</li> <li>Postpone Credit review Date Until- For Overdue Process.</li> <li>Defer Auto Pay Date - For Auto pay process.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Parameter-Alert Type</b>-Using this Alert Type alerts are shown in the dashboard. A alert will have hyperlink which will enable user to navigate to <b>Alerts</b> tab on account.</li> <li>Start Dates and End Dates of Alert types are maintained based on the Hold Requests associated with the account.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If entity end date is empty, process end date will be considered. If process end date and entity is empty, Hold Request End Date will be considered.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Deferred Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-AT-RQJ	This algorithm type transitions business object current state to the input Next Status or to the status related to the input Next Transition Condition. Only one of the soft parameters may be specified. If both soft parameters are not specified, the business object will be transitioned to the default next status specified on lifecycle. Algorithms of this algorithm type may be defined for any business object status as its monitor algorithm.
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-HOLDAPP	C1-HOLDAPP	This algorithm creates To Do based on 'Approval To Do Type configured in Hold Request Type.
Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm type completes To Do entries that are linked to an object when the object exits a given state. The system finds all open To Do entries with drill keys for the current business object's primary key, and completes them, unless the To Do entry's type has been configured with an Exclude To Do Type Characteristic Type indicating that it should not be automatically completed.
Approved	Enter	C1-HOLDAPRVD	C1-HOLDAPRVD	This algorithm is triggered when the approver clicks the <b>Approve</b> button. It checks whether the approval is required from users at the next level in the approval profile hierarchy. If the approval is required from the next level in the approval hierarchy, the status of the hold request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> . If further approval is not required, the status of the hold request is changed to <b>Active</b> or <b>Deferred Processing</b> depending on the Defer Processing Count specified in the hold request type.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Return to Submitter	Enter	C1-HLDRESUBM	C1-HLDRESUBM	This algorithm is triggered when the approver clicks the <b>Re Submit</b> button. A To Do is created and sent to the submitter. It transitions the status of the hold request from <b>Approval In Progress</b> to <b>Draft</b> . The submitter can make required changes to the request details and submit it again. The To Do Type and To Do Role for submitter is specified in hold request type.
Rejected	-	-	-	-
Released	Enter	C1-RELENTITY	C1-RELENTITY	<p>This algorithm is invoked on <b>Release</b> button and updates following date to system date for all entities in the Hold Request:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bill After Date - For Bill Generation Process</li> <li>• Postpone Credit review Date Until- For Overdue Process</li> <li>• Defer Auto Pay Date - For Auto pay process</li> <li>• Parameter-Alert Type-Using this Alert Type alerts are shown in the dashboard. A alert will have hyperlink which will enable user to navigate to Alerts tab on account</li> <li>• Start Dates and End Dates of Alert types are maintained based on the Hold Requests associated with the account.</li> </ul>
Released	Enter	C1-RLSHOLD	C1-RLSHOLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked on click of <b>Release</b> button in hold request and updates the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hold Request End Date is updated to System Date</li> <li>• Processes End Date is updated to System Date</li> <li>• Entities End Date is updated to System Date</li> <li>• Hold request status is changed to <b>Released</b> after <b>Hold Release Reason</b> is accepted.</li> </ul>

## Prerequisites

---

To setup the hold request process, you need to do the following:

- Define the release status reasons for the **C1-HoldRequest** business object
- Define the required hold reasons in the system
- Define rejected status reasons for the **C1-HoldRequest** business object
- Assign the **C1-HLDAP** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting a hold request for approval
- Assign the **C1-HOLSB** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while resubmitting a hold request
- Define the required hold request types in the system
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Hold Request**
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Hold Request Type**
- Set the batch control type of the **Hold Request Periodic Monitor (C1-HLDRQ)** and **Hold Request Monitor (C1-HLMON)** batches to Timed and define the following attributes:
  - Time Interval
  - Timer Active
  - User ID
  - Batch Language
  - Email Address

**Note:** For more information about the batch, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*

## Hold Request Type

---

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define a hold request type using which you can create a hold request.




The **Hold Request Type** screen allows you to define, edit, copy, and delete a hold request type. This screen consists of the following zones:


- [Hold Request Type List](#) on page 1250
- [Hold Request Type](#) on page 1251

### Hold Request Type List

The **Hold Request Type List** zone lists hold request types that are already defined in the system. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Hold Request Type	Displays the hold request type.
Description	Displays the description of the hold request type.

Column Name	Column Description
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Hold Request Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the hold request type.
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Hold Request Type</b> screen appears where you can define a hold request type using an existing hold request type.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the hold request type.  <b>Note:</b> You can delete a hold request type only when you have not created a hold request using the hold request type.

On clicking the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the hold request type, the **Hold Request Type** zone appears with the details of the respective hold request type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a hold request type	<a href="#">Defining a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1253
How to edit a hold request type	<a href="#">Editing a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1257
How to copy a hold request type	<a href="#">Copying a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1260
How to delete a hold request type	<a href="#">Deleting a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1259
How to view the details of a hold request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Hold Request Type Details</a> on page 1263

## Hold Request Type

The **Hold Request Type** zone displays the details of the hold request type. This zone consists of the following sections:

- **Main** — This section provides basic information about the hold request type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Hold Request Type	Displays the hold request type.
Description	Displays the description of the hold request type.
Hold Request Business Object	Indicates the business object that will be used to create the hold request.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the hold request type.
Status	Indicates the status of the hold request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>
Allow Partial Hold for Bill	Indicates whether the partial hold amount is allowed for a bill.

Field Name	Field Description
Defer Processing Count	Displays the number of entities to determine if the hold request will be processed in deferred mode.
	<b>Note:</b> If the number of entities is less than the <b>Defer Processing Count</b> , the hold request will be processed in real time (i.e. immediately).
Approval Required	Indicates whether approval is required while creating the hold request using hold request type.
Approval To Do Type	Indicates that To Do of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the hold request for approval.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.  It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Type</b> screen appears with the details of the respective To Do type.
Approval To Do Role	Indicates that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the hold request submitted for approval.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.  It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Role</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective To Do role.
Submitter To Do Type	Indicates the To Do type of the submitter.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective To Do type.
Submitter To Do Role	Indicates the To Do role of the submitter.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Role</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective To Do role.

- **Hold Processes** —This section displays the list of processes to be kept on hold for the hold request type.
- **Characteristics** — This section lists the characteristics defined for the hold request type. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.


- **Record Actions** — This section contains the following buttons:



Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the hold request type.
Delete	Used to delete the hold request type. <b>Note:</b> You can delete a hold request type only when you have not created a hold request using the hold request type.
Duplicate	Used to create a new hold request type using an existing hold request type.

- **Record Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the hold request type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

By default, the **Hold Request Type** zone does not appear in the **Hold Request Type** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the hold request type in the **Hold Request Type List** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a hold request type	<a href="#">Defining a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1253
How to edit a hold request type	<a href="#">Editing a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1257
How to copy a hold request type	<a href="#">Copying a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1260
How to delete a hold request type	<a href="#">Deleting a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1259
How to view the details of a hold request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Hold Request Type Details</a> on page 1263

## Defining a Hold Request Type

### Prerequisites

To define a hold request type, you should have:

- Hold request business objects defined in the application

### Procedure

To define a hold request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **H** and then click **Hold Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Hold Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Request Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use to create the hold request type.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Business Object** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Hold Request Type** screen.

**Note:** The **Select Business Object** screen appears only when there are multiple hold request type business objects defined in the application. If there is only one hold request type business object defined in the application, the **Hold Request Type** screen appears.

- Select the required hold request type business object from the respective field.
- Click **OK**.

The **Hold Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the hold request type.
- **Hold Processes** — Used to define the processes to hold for the hold request type.
- **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the hold request type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Request Type	Used to specify the hold request type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the hold request type business object used while defining the hold request type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the hold request type.	Yes
Hold Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the hold request.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the hold request type.	No
Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the hold request type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a hold request type to <b>Inactive</b> if there are hold requests which are created using the hold request type and are currently in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</p>	Yes
Allow Partial Hold for Bill	Used to indicate whether the partial hold amount will be accepted for a bill.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Defer Processing Count	Used to indicate the number of entities to determine if the hold request will be processed in deferred mode.	No
	<b>Note:</b> If the number of entities is less than the <b>Defer Processing Count</b> , the hold request will be processed in real time (i.e. immediately).  Defer processing count should be a numerical value without decimal points.	
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required while creating the hold request using hold request type.	No
Approval To Do Type	Used to indicate that To Do of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the hold request for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the hold request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	
Submitter To Do Type	Used to indicate the To Do type for the submitter.	No
Submitter To Do Role	Used to indicate the To Do role for the submitter.	No

**Note:**

**Deferred** mode means in the background when the **Hold Request Periodic Monitor (C1-HLDRQ)** batch is invoked. You can configure the **Hold Request Periodic Monitor (C1-HLDRQ)** batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the **Hold Request Periodic Monitor (C1-HLDRQ)** batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any hold requests in the **Deferred** status. If there is an hold request in the **Deferred** status, then its status is changed to **Active**.

6. Enter the required details.

**Note:** You can search for **To Do Type** by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

7. Define processes to hold for the hold request type.

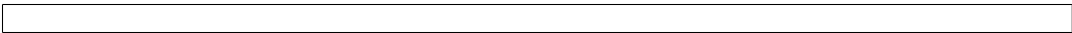
Note:

At least one hold process needs to be selected for defining a hold request type.

8. Define characteristics for the hold request type, if required.
9. Click **Save**.
- The hold request type is defined.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Hold Request Type screen	<a href="#">Hold Request Type</a> on page 1250
Hold Request Type List zone	<a href="#">Hold Request Type List</a> on page 1250
How to define characteristics for a hold request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1256



Defining Characteristics for a Hold Request Type

Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a hold request type, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Hold Request Type**)

Procedure


To define characteristics for a hold request type:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a hold request type.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Hold Request Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the hold request type.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the hold request type.

2. Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** () icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the hold request type, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the hold request type, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a hold request type	<a href="#">Defining a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1253
How to edit a hold request type	<a href="#">Editing a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1257
How to copy a hold request type	<a href="#">Copying a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1260

## Editing a Hold Request Type


### Prerequisites

To edit a hold request type, you should have:

- Hold request business objects defined in the application

### Procedure

To edit a hold request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **H** and then click **Hold Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Hold Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Hold Request Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Hold Request Type List** zone, click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the hold request type whose details you want to edit.

The **Hold Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the hold request type.
- **Hold Processes** — Used to define the processes to hold for the hold request type.
- **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the hold request type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Request Type	Displays the hold request type.	Not applicable
Business Object	Indicates the hold request type business object used while defining the hold request type.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Description	Used to specify the description for the hold request type.	Yes
Hold Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the hold request.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the hold request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the hold request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a hold request type to <b>Inactive</b> if there are hold requests which are created using the hold request type and are currently in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.	
Allow Partial Hold for Bill	Used to indicate whether the partial hold amount will be accepted for a bill.	Yes
Defer Processing Count	Used to indicate the number of entities to determine if the hold request will be processed in deferred mode.	No
	<b>Note:</b> If the number of entities is less than the <b>Defer Processing Count</b> , the hold request will be processed in real time (i.e. immediately).  Defer processing count should be a numerical value without decimal points.	
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required while creating the hold request using hold request type.	No
Approval To Do Type	Used to indicate that To Do of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the hold request for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the hold request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected
Submitter To Do Type	Used to indicate the To Do type for the submitter.	No
Submitter To Do Role	Used to indicate the To Do role for the submitter.	No

**Note:**

**Deferred** mode means in the background when the **Hold Request Periodic Monitor (C1-HLDRQ)** batch is invoked. You can configure the **Hold Request Periodic Monitor (C1-HLDRQ)** batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the **Hold Request Periodic Monitor (C1-HLDRQ)** batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any hold requests in the **Deferred** status. If there is an hold request in the **Deferred** status, then its status is changed to **Active**.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Hold Request Type** zone to edit the details of the hold request type.

5. Modify the details, if required.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the hold request type, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the hold request type are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Hold Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request Type</a> on page 1250
<b>Hold Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request Type List</a> on page 1250
<b>Hold Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request Type</a> on page 1251
How to define characteristics for a hold request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1256

**Deleting a Hold Request Type****Procedure**

To delete a hold request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **H** and then click **Hold Request Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

- 3. Click the **Search** option from the **Hold Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Hold Request Type** screen appears.

- 4. In the **Hold Request Type List** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the hold request type that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the hold request type.

**Note:** You can delete a hold request type only when you have not defined a hold request using the hold request type.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Delete** button in the **Hold Request Type** zone to delete the hold request type.

- 5. Click **OK**.

The hold request type is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Hold Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request Type</a> on page 1250
<b>Hold Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request Type List</a> on page 1250
<b>Hold Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request Type</a> on page 1251

**Copying a Hold Request Type**

Instead of creating a hold request type from scratch, you can create a new hold request type using an existing hold request type. This is possible through copying a hold request type. On copying a hold request type, the details including the characteristics are copied to the new hold request type. You can then edit the details, if required.

**Prerequisites**

To copy a hold request type, you should have:

- Hold request type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Hold request business objects defined in the application

**Procedure**

To copy a hold request type:

- 1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.


A list appears.

- 2. From the **Admin** menu, select **H** and then click **Hold Request Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

- 3. Click the **Search** option from the **Hold Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Hold Request Type** screen appears.

- 4. In the **Hold Request Type List** zone, click the **Duplicate** () icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the hold request type whose copy you want to create.

The **Hold Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:



- **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the hold request type.
- **Hold Processes** — Used to define the processes to hold for the hold request type.
- **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the hold request type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Request Type	Used to specify the hold request type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the hold request type business object used while defining the hold request type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the hold request type.	Yes
Hold Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the hold request.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the hold request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the hold request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot change the status of a hold request type to <b>Inactive</b> if there are hold requests which are created using the hold request type and are currently in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.	
Allow Partial Hold for Bill	Used to indicate whether the partial hold amount will be accepted for a bill.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Defer Processing Count	used to indicate the number of bills to determine if the hold request will be processed in deferred mode.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Deferred mode means in the background when the <b>Hold Request Periodic Monitor (C1-HLDRQ)</b> batch is invoked. You can configure the <b>Hold Request Periodic Monitor (C1-HLDRQ)</b> batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the <b>Hold Request Periodic Monitor (C1-HLDRQ)</b> batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any hold requests in the <b>Deferred</b> status. If there is an hold request in the <b>Deferred</b> status, then its status is changed to <b>Active</b>.</p> <p>If the number of bills is less than the Defer Processing Count, the hold request will be processed in real time (i.e. immediately).</p> <p>Defer processing count should be a numerical value without decimal points.</p>	
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required while creating the hold request using hold request type.	No
Approval To Do Type	Used to indicate that To Do of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the hold request for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the hold request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected
Submitter To Do Type	Used to indicate the To Do type for the submitter.	No
Submitter To Do Role	Used to indicate the To Do role for the submitter.	No

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Duplicate** button in the **Hold Request Type** zone to create a copy of the hold request type.

5. Enter the required details.
6. Define, edit or remove processes from the hold request type, if required.
7. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the hold request type, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

The new hold request type is defined.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Hold Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request Type</a> on page 1250
<b>Hold Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request Type List</a> on page 1250
<b>Hold Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request Type</a> on page 1251
How to define characteristics for a hold request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Hold Request Type</a> on page 1256

## Viewing the Hold Request Type Details

#### Procedure

To view the details of a hold request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **H** and then click **Hold Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Hold Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Hold Request Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Hold Request Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the hold request type whose details you want to view.  
The **Hold Request Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the hold request type in the **Hold Request Type** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Hold Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request Type</a> on page 1250
<b>Hold Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request Type List</a> on page 1250
<b>Hold Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request Type</a> on page 1251

## Hold Request (Used for Searching)

The **Hold Request** screen allows you to search for a hold request using various search criteria. It also allows you to create a hold request. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Hold Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1273

This screen consists of the following zone:


- [Search Hold Request](#) on page 1264



## Search Hold Request

The **Search Hold Request** zone allows you to search for hold requests using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a hold request using request or bill details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Request Details</li> <li>• Bill Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected.	
Hold Request Type	Used to search hold requests which are created using a particular hold request type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Hold Process	Used to search hold requests which are created using a particular hold process.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Status	Used to search hold requests with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Released</li> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Deferred Processing</li> <li>• Rejected</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Used to search hold requests which are created for a particular account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. You can search for an account by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.	
Entity	Used to search hold request with a particular entity. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account</li> <li>• Person</li> <li>• Bill</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
User ID	Used to search hold requests which are created by a particular user.	
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Start Date	Used to search hold requests which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
End Date	Used to search hold requests which are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Hold Request ID	Used to search a particular hold request.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person ID	Used to search hold requests which are created for a particular person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. You can search for a person by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.	
Bill ID	Used to search hold requests which includes bill segments or adjustments of a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. You can search for a bill by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.	
Bill Date From	Used to search hold requests which includes bill segments or adjustments of bills which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
To	Used to search hold requests which includes bill segments or adjustments of bills which are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a hold request.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the hold request is created.
Hold Request Information	Displays information about the hold request.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Hold Request</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective hold request.

Column Name	Column Description
Status	Indicates the status of the hold request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Draft</li> <li>Released</li> </ul>
Start Date	Displays the date when the hold request is created.
End Date	Displays the date when the hold request is released.
Hold Processes	Displays the hold processes using which hold request is created.
Hold Reason	Displays the hold reason for the hold request.
Created By	Indicates the user who has created the hold request.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
How to view the details of a hold request	<a href="#">Viewing the Hold Request Details</a> on page 1268
How to create a hold request	<a href="#">Creating a Hold Request</a> on page 1268

## **Searching for a Hold Request**

### **Prerequisites**

To search for a hold request, you should have:

- Hold request types defined in the application

### **Procedure**

To search for a hold request:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Hold Request**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Hold Request** sub-menu.  
The **Hold Request** screen appears.
- Enter the search criteria in the **Search Hold Request** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.

A list of hold requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Hold Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1264
<b>Search Hold Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Hold Request</a> on page 1264

Viewing the Hold Request Details

Procedure

To view the details of a hold request:

- 1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request whose details you want to view.

The **Hold Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the hold request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Hold Request** – Displays the details of the hold request.
  - **Hold Entities** – Lists the entities, such as person, accounts, or bills that are on hold request.
  - **Search Account** — Searches the accounts to be put on hold.

Note: This zone appears only when hold request is for **Account** and its status is **Draft**.

- **Search Bill** — Searches the bills to be put on hold.

Note: This zone appears only when hold request is for **Bill** and its status is **Draft**.

- **Search Person** — Searches the persons to be put on hold.

Note: This zone appears only when hold request is for **Person** and its status is **Draft**.

- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the hold request.

- 3. View the details of the hold request in the **Hold Request** zone.
- 4. View the hold request entities (such as person, accounts, or bills) in the **Hold Entities** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Hold Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1264
<b>Hold Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request</a> on page 1274
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267

Creating a Hold Request

Prerequisites

To create a hold request, you should have:

- Hold request types defined in the application.



**Procedure**

To create a hold request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Define a hold request from the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Financial</b> and then click <b>Account Receivable Central</b>. The <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen appears.</li> <li>3. Search for the bill in the <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen.</li> <li>4. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, select the required bill and then click <b>Hold</b>.</li> </ol> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> Bills are selected to be on hold from <b>Account Receivable Central</b>. Only one bill at a time is allowed to select for <b>Hold Request</b> from <b>Account Receivable Central</b></p> </div>
Define a hold request from the <b>Delinquency Central</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Credit &amp; Collection</b> and then click <b>Delinquency Central</b>. The <b>Delinquency Central</b> screen appears.</li> <li>3. Search for the overdue process in the <b>Delinquency Central</b> screen.</li> <li>4. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, select the required overdue process and then click <b>Create Hold Request</b>.</li> </ol> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> Accounts are selected to be on hold from <b>Delinquency Central</b> screen Only one account at a time is allowed to select for <b>Hold Request</b> from <b>Delinquency Central</b> screen.</p> </div>
Define a hold request from the <b>Hold Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>Financial</b> and then click <b>Hold Request</b>. A sub-menu appears.</li> <li>Click the <b>Add</b> option from the <b>Hold Request</b> sub-menu.</li> </ol>

The **Add Hold Request** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Request Type	Used to indicate the request type using which you want to create the hold request.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Add Hold Request** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Hold Request** screen.

- Select the required hold request type from the respective fields.
- Click **OK**.


The hold request is defined and the status of the hold request is set to **Draft**. The **Hold Request** screen appears where you can view the details of the hold request. It contains the following sections:

- Main** – Used to specify basic details about the hold request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Request Type	Indicates the hold request type using which you want to create the hold request.	Not applicable
Start Date	<p>Used to specify the date from when the hold request is effective.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The hold request start date cannot be later than the hold request end date. By default, system date appears in this field.</p>	Yes
End Date	<p>Used to specify the date till when the hold request is effective.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The hold request end date cannot be earlier than the hold request start date.</p>	Yes
Hold Reason	<p>Used to indicate the reason why you want to hold the entity.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The hold reason must exist in the <b>HOLD_REASON_FLG</b> lookup field and its status must be <b>Active</b>.</p>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Entity	Used to indicate the type of the entity for which you want to create the hold request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Account</li> <li>Bill</li> <li>Person</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> If bill is kept on hold using <b>Account Receivable Central</b> screen, then this field will display <b>Bill</b> as an entity and <b>Hold Entities</b> section will display information about this bill.	
Comments	Used to specify the additional information about hold request.	No

- **Hold Entities** — Used to specify details of the selected hold entity. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Entity ID	Used to specify the hold entity ID.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for an entity ID by clicking the <b>search</b>  icon corresponding to the field  If the hold entity is account, you must specify the account ID in this field. If the hold entity is person, you must specify the person ID in this field. And, if the hold entity is bill, you must specify the bill ID in this field.  .	
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when you want to hold the entity.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, system date appears in this field  The hold entity start date must be between the hold request start and end dates and between at least one process's start and end dates.  The hold entity start date cannot be later than the hold entity end date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
End Date	Used to specify the date till when you want to hold the entity.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The hold entity end date must be between hold request start and end dates and between the process's start and end dates. The hold entity end date cannot be earlier than the hold entity start date.	
Hold Amount	Displays the amount which is kept on hold.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the hold entity is <b>Bill</b> .	

- **Hold Processes** — Used to indicate the processes to be on hold for the hold request. By default, processes are defined on the hold request type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Process	Used to indicate the process that needs to be kept on hold.	Yes
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when process is to be on hold for the hold request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, system date appears in this field The hold process start date must be between the hold request start and end dates.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the process is to be on hold.	No

- **Characteristics** — Used to define the characteristics for the hold request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the hold request.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the hold request.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Hold Request</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the hold request.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the hold request.

#### 4. Enter the required details

**Note:**

Processes and Entities start dates and end dates are expected to be within the limit of Hold Request Start Date and End date.

You can search for a hold entity by clicking the **search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

5. Add entities and processes for the hold request.
6. Define characteristics for the hold request, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The hold request is created and the status of the hold request is set to **Draft**. The **Hold Request** screen appears with the details of hold request.

**Note:** It is recommended that user should set the **C1-HLMON** batch every time the hold request is generated. Otherwise, alert would be shown in the dashboard which may not give the proper representation of active hold requests.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Hold Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1264
How to edit a hold request	<a href="#">Editing a Hold Request</a> on page 1289
How to define characteristics for a hold request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Hold Request</a> on page 1288

## Hold Request (Used for Viewing)

Once you create a hold request, the **Hold Request** screen allows you to:

- Add entities in a hold request
- Add processes in a hold request

- Edit the details of a hold request
- Edit the hold amount against each entity. This is valid for only bill.
- Delete a hold request
- View the details of a hold request
- Submit a hold request for approval
- Approve or reject a hold request
- Resubmit a hold request for approval
- Activate and Release a hold request
- View the log of a hold request
- Add a log entry for a hold request

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the hold request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Hold Request** – Displays the details of the hold request.
  - **Hold Entities** – Lists the entities, such as person, accounts, or bills that are on hold request.
  - **Search Account** — Searches the accounts to be put on hold.

**Note:** This zone appears only when hold request is for **Account** and its status is **Draft**.

- **Search Bill** — Searches the bills to be put on hold.

**Note:** This zone appears only when hold request is for **Bill** and its status is **Draft**.

- **Search Person** — Searches the persons to be put on hold.

**Note:** This zone appears only when hold request is for **Person** and its status is **Draft**.

- **Log** — Lists complete trail of actions performed on the hold request. This tab contains the following zone:
  - **Hold Request Log** — Displays the actions performed on the hold request.

## Hold Request - Main

The **Main** tab on the **Hold Request** contains the following zones:

- [Hold Request](#) on page 1274
- [Hold Entities](#) on page 1276
- [Search Account](#) on page 1278

**Note:** This zone appears only when hold request is for **Account** and its status is **Draft** .

- [Search Bill](#) on page 1281

**Note:** This zone appears only when hold request is for **Bill** and its status is **Draft** .

- [Search Person](#) on page 1282

**Note:** This zone appears only when hold request is for **Person** and its status is **Draft** .

## Hold Request

The **Hold Request** zone displays the details of the hold request. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Main** — This section provides basic information about the hold request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Hold Request Information	Displays information about the hold request.
Hold Request Type	Indicates the hold request type using which the hold request is created.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Hold Request Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the hold request type.
Status	Indicates the status of the hold request.
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the hold request is released.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the hold request is in the <b>Released</b> status. It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Status Reason</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the released reason.
Start Date	Displays the date when the hold request is created.
End Date	Displays the date when the hold request is released.
Hold Reason	Displays the reason of hold request.
Entity	Displays the hold request entity.
Comments	Displays the additional information for a hold request.

- **Hold Processes** — Lists the processes that are on hold in the hold request. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Hold Process	Lists the processes that are on hold.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the process is to be on hold for hold request.
End Date	Displays the date till when the process is to be on hold for hold request.

- **Characteristics** — Lists the characteristics defined for the hold request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when hold request is effective.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** — This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the hold request.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the hold request is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Active</b> status.

Button Name	Button Description
Delete	Used to delete the hold request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the hold request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Submit	Used to activate the hold request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit</b> button appears only when the hold request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Re Submit	Used to re-submit the hold request.
	<b>Note:</b> the <b>Re Submit</b> button appears only when the hold request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.
Approve	Used to approve the hold request.
	<b>Note:</b> the <b>Approve</b> button appears only when the hold request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.
Reject	Used to reject the hold request.
	<b>Note:</b> the <b>Reject</b> button appears only when the hold request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.
Release	Used to release the hold request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Release</b> button appears only when the hold request is in the <b>Active</b> status.

- **Record Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the hold request is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the hold request status is updated.
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the hold request is created.

### Hold Entities

The **Hold Entities** zone on the **Hold Request** screen lists the entities that are on hold request. This zone contains the following columns:



Column Name	Column Description
Person Information	Displays information about the person. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears with details of the respective person.
Account Information	Displays information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears with details of the respective account.
Bill Information	Displays information about the bill. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with details of the respective bill.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the entity is on hold.
End Date	Displays the date till when the entity is on hold.
	<b>Note:</b> When hold request for entity is released, then its end date gets updated to the release date only when its end date lies between the hold request start date and end date .
Hold Amount	Displays the amount on hold.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the entity bill is on hold.
Bill After Date	Displays the date after which bills can be generated.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the entity account is on hold.
Postpone Credit Review Until	Displays the date till when overdue process is to be on hold.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the entity account is on hold.
Defer Auto Pay Date	Displays the date from when auto pay process is to be put on deferred mode.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the entity account is on hold.

**Note:**

You can directly edit the start and end date of the hold entities by selecting the corresponding column and then click the **Edit** button available on the upper left corner of the **Hold Entities** zone.

You can directly delete the hold entities by selecting the corresponding column and then click the **Delete** button available on the upper left corner of the **Hold Entities** zone.

**Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of an hold request	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Hold Request</a> on page 1299


For more information on...	See...
Search Account	<a href="#">Search Account</a> on page 1278
Search Bill	<a href="#">Search Bill</a> on page 1281
Search Person	<a href="#">Search Person</a> on page 1282

## Search Account

The **Search Account** zone searches for accounts to add in a hold request. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Search Criteria** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	<p>Used to indicate whether you want to search for accounts using account or policy details.</p> <p>The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account Details</li> <li>• Policy Details</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Account Details</b> option is selected.</p>	Yes
Account ID	<p>Used to search for a particular account.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. You can search for an account by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.</p>	No
Address Source	<p>Used to indicate the source of address. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account Override</li> <li>• Mailing Location on Account</li> <li>• Person</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Division	<p>Used to search for accounts which belong to a particular division.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Customer Class	<p>Used to indicate the customer class to which the account belongs.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Cycle	Used to indicate the bill cycle of the account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Price Item	Used to search a particular price item.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. You can search for a price item by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.	
Policy Plan Number	Used to indicate the plan number of the policy.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Policy Type	Used to indicate the type of policy.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Source System	Used to indicate the name of the external system from where the policy originated.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Policy Number	Used to indicate the policy number.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Status	Used to indicate the status of the policy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• In Force/ Active</li> <li>• Pending Cancellation</li> <li>• Pending Resinstatement</li> <li>• Pending Termination</li> <li>• Reinstate</li> <li>• Terminated</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Start Date	Used to indicate the date from when the policy is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Policy End Date	Used to indicate the date till when the policy is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Characteristic Type/Value	Used to indicate the characteristic Type/ Value associated with the policy.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
State	Used to indicate the state name.	No
County	Used to indicate the county name.	No
Postal	Used to indicate the postal or zip code.	No

**Note:**

You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for accounts.

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account Information	Displays the account information.
Country	Displays the country name.
State	Displays the state name.
County	Displays the county name.
Postal	Displays the postal or zip code.
Customer Class	Displays the customer class of the account.
Division	Displays the division to which the account belongs.
Entity ID	Displays the entity ID.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search Accounts	<a href="#">Searching Accounts</a> on page 1284
How to view the log of a hold request	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Hold Request</a> on page 1299

## Search Bill

The **Search Bill** zone searches for bills to add in a hold request. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Search Criteria** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Displays the value as Bill Details.	Not applicable
Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for a bill by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.	
Alternate Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill using the alternate bill ID.	No
Show All Bills	Used to search all the bills having non-zero as well as zero amount.	No
	<b>Note:</b> If this field is not selected then, only non-zero amount bills are displayed in search results.	
Bill Date From	Used to search bills which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current system date appears in this field.	
To	Used to search bills which are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the current system date appears in this field.	
Address Source	Used to indicate the source of address. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account Override</li> <li>• Mailing Location on Account</li> <li>• Person</li> </ul>	No
State	Used to indicate the state name.	No
County	Used to indicate the county name.	No
Postal	Used to indicate the postal or zip code.	No

**Note:**

You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for bills.

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Information	Displays the bill information.
Account Information	Displays the account information.
Country	Displays the country name.
State	Displays the state name.
County	Displays the county name.
Postal	Displays the postal or zip code.
Entity ID	Displays the entity ID.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search Bills	<a href="#">Searching Bills</a> on page 1285
How to view the log of a hold request	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Hold Request</a> on page 1299

**Search Person**

The **Search Person** zone searches for persons to add in a hold request. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Search Criteria** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Displays the value as Person Details.	Not applicable
Person ID	Used to search a particular person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for a person by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.	
State	Used to indicate the state name.	No
County	Used to indicate the county name.	No
Postal	Used to indicate the postal or zip code.	No

**Note:**

You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for persons.

ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Person Information	Displays the person information.
Person Identifier Type	Displays the identifier type of the person linked to the account.
Person Identifier	Displays the ID of the person linked to the account.
Country	Displays the country name.
State	Displays the state name.
County	Displays the county name.
Postal	Displays the postal or zip code.
Entity ID	Displays the entity ID.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search Persons	<a href="#">Searching Persons</a> on page 1284
How to view the log of a hold request	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Hold Request</a> on page 1299

**Hold Request - Log**

The **Log** tab on the **Hold Request** screen contains the following zone:

- [Hold Request Log](#) on page 1283

**Hold Request Log**

The **Hold Request Log** zone on the **Hold Request** screen lists the complete trail of actions performed on the hold request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the hold request.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the hold request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the hold request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the hold request.

Column Name	Column Description
Status Reason	Displays the status reason of action performed on the hold request.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the hold request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Hold Request Log** zone.

The **Add Hold Request Log** window appears. Enter **Log Details** and click **Save**. The hold request log is added.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of a hold request	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Hold Request</a> on page 1299

**Searching Persons**

**Prerequisites**

To search persons, you should have:

- Persons created in the application

**Procedure**

To search for persons:

1. Search the hold requests for **Persons** that are having **Draft** status.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request whose details you want to search.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Person** zone.
4. Click **Search**.

A list of persons that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Hold Request</b> Screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1273
<b>Hold Request</b> Zone	<a href="#">Hold Request</a> on page 1274
Adding Persons in a Hold Request	<a href="#">Adding Persons in a Hold Request</a> on page 1285

**Searching Accounts**

**Prerequisites**

To search accounts, you should have:

- Accounts created in the application

**Procedure**

To search for accounts:

1. Search the hold requests for **Account** that are having **Draft** status.



2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the *hold request* whose details you want to search.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Account** zone.
4. Click **Search**.

A list of accounts that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Hold Request</b> Screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1273
<b>Hold Request</b> Zone	<a href="#">Hold Request</a> on page 1274
Adding Accounts in a Hold Request	<a href="#">Adding Accounts in a Hold Request</a> on page 1286

## Searching Bills

#### Prerequisites

To search bills, you should have:

- Bills generated in the application

#### Procedure

To search for bills:

1. Search the hold requests for **Bill** that are having **Draft** status.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the *hold request* whose details you want to search.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Bill** zone.
4. Click **Search**.

A list of bills that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Hold Request</b> Screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1273
<b>Hold Request</b> Zone	<a href="#">Hold Request</a> on page 1274
Adding Bills in a Hold Request	<a href="#">Adding Bills in a Hold Request</a> on page 1287

## Adding Persons in a Hold Request

#### Procedure

To add persons in a hold request:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen which are having **Person** as a hold entity and **Draft as** status.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request whose details you want to view.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Ensure the **Search Person** zone is expanded.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Person** zone.

In the **Search Results** section, list of persons meeting the search criteria are displayed.

5. Select the persons which you want to add in the hold request and then click the **Add** button available in the upper left corner.

Selected persons are added in the hold request.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
How to create a hold request	<a href="#">Creating a Hold Request</a> on page 1268
Search Person zone	<a href="#">Search Person</a> on page 1282
How to search for persons in a Hold Request Screen	<a href="#">Searching Persons</a> on page 1284

**Adding Accounts in a Hold Request**

**Procedure**

To add accounts in a hold request:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen which are having **Account** as a hold entity and **Draft as** status.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request whose details you want to view.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Ensure the **Search Account** zone is expanded.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Account** zone.

In the **Search Results** section, list of accounts meeting the search criteria are displayed.

5. Select the accounts which you want to add in the hold request and then click the **Add** button available in the upper left corner.

Selected accounts are added in the hold request.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
How to create a hold request	<a href="#">Creating a Hold Request</a> on page 1268

For more information on...	See...
Search Account Zone	<a href="#">Search Account</a> on page 1278
How to search for accounts in a hold request	<a href="#">Searching Accounts</a> on page 1284

## Adding Bills in a Hold Request

### Procedure

To add bills in a hold request:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen which are having **Bill** as a hold entity and **Draft** as status.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request whose details you want to view.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Ensure the **Search Bill** zone is expanded.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Bill** zone.

In the **Search Results** section, list of bills meeting the search criteria are displayed.

5. Select the bills which you want to add in the hold request and then click the **Add** button available in the upper left corner.

Selected bills are added in the hold request.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
How to create a hold request	<a href="#">Creating a Hold Request</a> on page 1268
Search Bill Zone	<a href="#">Search Bill</a> on page 1281
How to search for bills in a hold request	<a href="#">Searching Bills</a> on page 1285

## Adding Processes in a Hold Request

### Prerequisites

To add processes in a hold request, you should have:

- Hold processes defined in the application.

### Procedure

To add processes in a hold request:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request whose details you want to edit.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Hold Request** zone.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the hold request is in the **Draft** or **Active** status.

4. Ensure that the **Hold Processes** section is expanded when you are editing the hold request.
5. Select the required hold processes from the **Hold Process** field.
6. If you want to define more than one hold process for the hold request, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 5.

**Note:**

However, if you want to remove a hold process from the hold request, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the hold process.

Once we create active hold request for accounts on Overdue process, all existing active overdue processes will be inactive for those account.

7. Enter the required details.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
How to create a hold request	<a href="#">Creating a Hold Request</a> on page 1268

**Defining Characteristics for a Hold Request**

**Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a hold request, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Hold Request**)

**Procedure**

To define characteristics for a hold request:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request whose details you want to edit.
- The **Hold Request** screen appears.
3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Hold Request** zone.
- The **Hold Request** screen appears.

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the Hold request is in the **Draft** or **Active** status.

4. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are editing the hold request.
5. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search** (🔍) icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

6. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the hold request, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 5.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the hold request, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
How to create a hold request	<a href="#">Creating a Hold Request</a> on page 1268

## Editing a Hold Request

### Procedure

To edit a hold request:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request whose details you want to edit.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Hold Request** zone.

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the hold request is in the **Draft** or **Active** status.

The **Hold Request** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the hold request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Request Information	Displays information about the hold request.	Not applicable
Hold Request Type	Displays the hold request type using which the hold request is created.	Not applicable
Start Date	Used to specify the date till when you want to hold the entity.  <b>Note:</b> The hold entity end date must be between hold request start and end dates and between the process's start and end dates. The hold entity end date cannot be earlier than the hold entity start date.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the hold request is effective.  <b>Note:</b> The hold request end date cannot be earlier than the hold request start date.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to hold the entity.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The hold reason must exist in the <b>HOLD_REASON_FLG</b> lookup field and its status must be <b>Active</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field cannot be edited if hold request is in <b>Active</b> status.
Entity	Displays the hold entity.	Not applicable
Comments	Used to specify the additional information about hold request.	No

- **Hold Processes** — Used to specify the processes on hold in the hold request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Process	Used to indicate the process that needs to be kept on hold.	Yes
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when process is to be on hold for the hold request.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is not editable when hold request is in <b>Active</b> status. The hold process start date must be between the hold request start and end dates.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the hold process is to be on hold.	No

- **Characteristics** — Used to define characteristics for the hold request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the hold request.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the hold request.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Hold Request</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the hold request.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the hold request.

4. Modify the details of the hold request, if required.

**Note:**

If you want to specify more than one hold processes, click the **Add** (+) icon corresponding to the process and then specify the details.

However, if you want to remove a hold process from the hold request, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the process.

5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the hold request, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the hold request are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
<b>Hold Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1264
<b>Hold Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request</a> on page 1274
How to define characteristics for a hold request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Hold Request</a> on page 1288

## Editing Hold Request Entities

### Procedure

To edit a hold request entities:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request whose details you want to edit.  
The **Hold Request** screen appears.
3. Select the entities that you want to edit in the **Hold Entities** zone and click the **Edit** button available in the upper left corner.

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the hold request is in the **Draft** or **Active** status.

The **Edit Hold Request Entities** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Request Information	Displays information about hold request.	Not applicable
Start Date	Displays the start date of hold request.	Not applicable
End Date	Displays the end date of hold request.	Not applicable

It also contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Entity ID	Displays the entity ID.	Not applicable
Entity Information	Displays the information about the entity.	Not applicable
Start Date	Used to indicate the date from when the entity is on hold.  <b>Note:</b> This field is not editable when hold request is in <b>Active</b> status.	Yes
End Date	Used to indicate the date till when the entity is on hold.	No
Hold Amount	Used to indicate the hold amount for bill.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only hold request is for bill.	Yes

4. Modify the details of the hold entities, if required.
5. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the hold entities are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
<b>Hold Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1264
<b>Hold Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request</a> on page 1274
How to define characteristics for a hold request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Hold Request</a> on page 1288

## Deleting Hold Request Entities

### Procedure

To delete hold request entities:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen.



2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the *hold request* whose details you want to delete.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Select the entities to delete in the **Hold Entities** zone and click the **Delete** button available in the upper left corner.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the hold entity.

**Note:**

The **Delete** button appears only when the hold request is in the **Draft** or **Active** status.

4. Click **OK**.

The hold entities are deleted.

**Note:** No deletion is allowed on entities of hold requests which are in active status and are added from **Account Receivable Central** or **Delinquency Central**.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
<b>Hold Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1264
<b>Hold Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request</a> on page 1274
How to define characteristics for a hold request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Hold Request</a> on page 1288

## Deleting a Hold Request

### Procedure

To delete a hold request:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the *hold request* that you want to delete.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Hold Request** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the hold request.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the hold request is in the **Draft** status.

4. Click **OK**.

The hold request is deleted.

**Note:**

You can delete a hold request only when its status is **Draft**.

Bills added from ARC cannot be deleted from the **Hold Request** screen.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
<b>Hold Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1264
<b>Hold Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request</a> on page 1274

**Submitting a Hold Request**

**Prerequisites**

To submit a hold request, you should have:

- Hold Request Types, Hold Processes and Hold Entities defined in the request.

**Procedure**

To submit a hold request:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request that you want to submit.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Submit** button in the **Hold Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If...	Then
The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected in the hold request type using which the hold request is created.	A To Do of the <b>C1-HLDAP</b> To Do type is created and sent to the approver and the status of the hold request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> .
The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is not selected in the hold request type using which the hold request is created.	The hold request is created using the specified hold request types and the status of the hold request is changed to <b>Active</b> or <b>Deferred Processing</b> as specified in the hold request type.

**Note:**

The **Submit** button appears only when the hold request is in the **Draft** status.

Once the request is activated, the **Release** button appears in the **Record Actions** section.

If hold request start date is in past and its status is draft then, on activation of the hold request, the start date is changed to the system date.

For Active hold request, **C1-DELBI** batch will delete all pending bill segments and bills under account for bill generation process.

For more information about the **Delete Pending Bill segments and Bills (C1-DELBI) batch**, refer to Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
<b>Hold Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1264
<b>Hold Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request</a> on page 1274

## Approving a Hold Request

You can view the number of hold requests which are pending for approval in the **Hold Request** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve, reject or resubmit the hold request based on the observations.

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve, reject or resubmit a hold request submitted by you.

### Procedure

To approve a hold request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Approve a hold request through the <b>Hold Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the hold request in the <b>Hold Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Hold Request Information</b> column corresponding to the hold request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Approve a hold request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>. The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter <b>C1-HLDAP</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field. The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> <li>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the hold request that you want to review.</li> </ol>

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

2. Review the hold request details.

3. Click the **Approve** button in the **Hold Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If you are...	Then...
Approving a Hold request	The status of the hold request is changed to <b>Active</b> or <b>Deferred Processing</b> as specified in the hold request type.

**Note:**  
The **Approve** button appears only when the hold request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.  
You can also resubmit the hold request if any changes are required in the hold request. Upon clicking the **Resubmit** button, provide the comments to make the required changes for the hold request.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Hold Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1264
<b>Hold Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request</a> on page 1274
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267

**Releasing a Hold Request**

**Procedure**

To release a hold request:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request whose details you want to edit.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Release** button in the **Hold Request** zone.

The **Release Reason** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Release Reason	Used to indicate the reason for releasing the hold request.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify the additional comments on the release reason	No

4. Ensure the required release reason.
5. click **Save**.

The hold request is released.

**Note:**

The **Release** button appears only when the hold request is in the **Active** status.

Once the hold request is in **Released** status, the **End Date** of processes and entities gets updated.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
How to create a hold request	<a href="#">Creating a Hold Request</a> on page 1268

**Rejecting a Hold Request****Prerequisites**

To reject a hold request, you should have:

- Rejection reasons defined in the application

**Note:**

While rejecting a hold request, you need to specify the reason why you want to reject the hold request. You can select the appropriate rejection reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Rejected** status of the **C1-HoldRequest** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

The system will not allow you to approve, reject or resubmit a hold request submitted by you.

**Procedure**

To reject a hold request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Reject a hold request through the <b>Hold Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the hold request in the <b>Hold Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Hold Request Information</b> column corresponding to the hold request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Reject a hold request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>.  The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter <b>C1-HLDAP</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</li> </ol>

If you want to	Then
	<p>The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</p> <p>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</p> <p>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the hold request that you want to review.</p>

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

- 2. Review the hold request details.
- 3. Click the **Reject** button in the **Hold Request** zone.

The **Reject Hold Request** window appears. It contains following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to reject the hold request.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while rejecting the hold request.	No

**Note:** The **Reject** button appears only when:

- The hold request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the hold request.

- 4. Select the rejection reason from the **Status Reason** list.
- 5. Click **Save**.

The status of the hold request is changed to **Rejected**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
<b>Hold Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1264
<b>Hold Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request</a> on page 1274

**Resubmitting a Hold Request**

**Prerequisites**

To resubmit a hold request, you should have:

- Entities added in the hold request which is submitted for approval.

While resubmitting, To Do will be sent to the submitter of the request using the submitter To Do Role mapped on the hold request type and the request will be moved to Draft status. The submitter can do necessary changes and re submit the request. Log will be maintained when the approver sends the request back to submitter.

**Procedure**

To resubmit a hold request:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request that you want to resubmit.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Re Submit** button in the **Hold Request** zone.

The **Resubmit Hold Request** screen appears.

**Note:** The **Re Submit** button appears only when the hold request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.

A To Do of the **C1-HOLSB** To Do type is created and sent to the request submitter using the submitter TO DO Role and the status of the hold request is changed to **Draft**.

4. Enter the comments in the respective field and click **Save**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
<b>Hold Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1264
<b>Hold Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Hold Request</a> on page 1274
How to submit a hold request	<a href="#">Submitting a Hold Request</a> on page 1294

**Viewing the Log of a Hold Request****Procedure**

To view the log of a hold request:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request whose log you want to view.

The **Hold Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the hold request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Hold Request** – Displays the details of the hold request.
  - **Hold Entities** – Lists the hold entities records of the hold request.
  - **Search Account** – Searches the accounts to be put on hold.

**Note:** This zone appears only when hold request is for **Account** and its status is **Draft**.

- **Search Bill** – Searches the bills to be put on hold.

**Note:** This zone appears only when hold request is for **Bill** and its status is **Draft**.

- **Search Person** – Searches the persons to be put on hold.

**Note:** This zone appears only when hold request is for **Person** and its status is **Draft**.

- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the hold request. This tab contains the following zone:
  - **Hold Request Log** – Displays the trail of actions performed on the particular hold request.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Hold Request Log** zone in the **Log** tab contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the hold request.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the hold request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the hold request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the hold request.
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the hold request was rejected or voided.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the hold request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Hold Request Log** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267
How to add a log entry for a hold request	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Hold Request</a> on page 1300

## Adding a Log Entry for a Hold Request

### Procedure

To add a log entry for a hold request:

1. Search for the hold request in the **Hold Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Hold Request Information** column corresponding to the hold request whose log you want to edit.

The **Hold Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the hold request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Hold Request** – Displays the details of the hold request.
  - **Hold Entities** – Lists the hold entities records of the hold request.
  - **Search Account** – Searches the accounts to be put on hold.

**Note:** This zone appears only when hold request is for **Account** and its status is **Draft**.

- **Search Bill** – Searches the bills to be put on hold.



**Note:** This zone appears only when hold request is for **Bill** and its status is **Draft**.

- **Search Person** – Searches the persons to be put on hold.

**Note:** This zone appears only when hold request is for **Person** and its status is **Draft**.

- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the hold request. This tab contains the following zone:
  - **Hold Request Log** – Displays the trail of actions performed on the particular hold request.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Hold Request Log** zone.

The **Add Hold Request Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Request Information	Displays information about the hold request.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the hold request.	Yes

5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.

6. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Hold Request Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a hold request	<a href="#">Searching for a Hold Request</a> on page 1267



---

# Chapter

# 20

---

## Delinquency Central

---

### Topics:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Delinquency Central \(Used for Viewing\)](#)
- [Overdue Process Information for Account: {Account ID}](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides a complete overview of the overdue bills belonging to the delinquent accounts of a particular person using the **Delinquency Central**. User can review the overdue bills and perform following actions from the delinquency central:

- Initiate customer contact
- Initiate hold on overdue process
- Create payment arrangement for an account
- Create promise to pay for person's account

The Delinquency Central assists you in identifying all the overdue processes, overdue bills & delinquent accounts using an overdue monitoring process.

For more information on how to setup the delinquency central, see [Prerequisites](#) on page 1304.

## Prerequisites

---

To setup delinquency central, you need to do the following:

- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to overdue event.
- Define the overdue event type and overdue process template in the system.
- Promise To Pay type defined in the application.
- Customer contact type defined in the application.
- Hold request type defined in the application.

## Delinquency Central (Used for Viewing)

---

The **Delinquency Central** screen allows you to:

- Search for an overdue process
- View the details of an overdue process
- View the details of an overdue event
- Create customer contact
- Create a hold request for an overdue process
- Create a payment arrangement for an account
- Create a promise to pay for a person’s account
- Create a payment agreement request for an account

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Overdue Process](#)
- [Overdue Events](#)

### Search Overdue Process

The **Search Overdue Process** zone allows you to search for overdue processes using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for overdue processes using person, account, bill or overdue process. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Person</li><li>• Account</li><li>• Bill</li><li>• Overdue Process</li></ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Person</b> option is selected.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person ID	Used to search for overdue processes which belong to a particular person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Identifier Type	Used to search for overdue processes with a particular person identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Identifier	Used to search for overdue processes with a specific value of the person identifier type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account ID	Used to search for overdue processes created for a particular account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account Identifier Type	Used to search for overdue processes with a particular account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account Identifier	Used to search for overdue processes with a particular account identifier.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Bill ID	Used to search for overdue processes with a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Alternate Bill ID	Used to search for overdue processes using an alternate bill ID.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type / Value	Used to search for overdue processes with a particular characteristic type and its value.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Overdue Process Template	Used to search for overdue processes with a particular overdue process template.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Overdue Process</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Start Date	Used to search for overdue processes with a particular start date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Overdue Process</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
End Date	Used to search overdue process with a particular end date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Overdue Process</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Status	Used to search for overdue processes with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Overdue Process</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
On Hold	Used to search for overdue processes that are on hold.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Overdue Process</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Overdue Amount From	Used to search for overdue processes with a particular lower limit of the overdue amount.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Overdue Process</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
To	Used to search for overdue processes with a particular higher limit of the overdue amount.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Overdue Process</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type / Value	Used to search for overdue processes with a particular characteristic type and value.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Overdue Process</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

- In addition to above search parameters, the screen consists of following fields in the **Person Details** or **Account Details** section:


Column Name	Column Description
Main Customer	Displays the name of the main customer to whom the account belongs.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Person Name	Displays the name of the person to whom the account belongs.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Person Identifier Type	Displays the person identifier type.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Person Identifier	Displays the value of the person identifier type.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Overdue	Displays whether the person account(s)/bill(s) are overdue. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Number of Active Overdue processes	Displays the number of overdue processes linked to the person's account that are in active status.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.


Column Name	Column Description
Number of Hold(s) on Account(s)	Displays the number of hold requests on the particular account.
Number of Overdue Bills	Displays the total number of bills that are overdue.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Total Overdue Amount	Displays the total overdue amount for an account.
Last Payment Date	Displays date of the last payment made by the person.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Last Payment Amount	Displays the amount last paid by the person.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Number Of Payment Arrangements	Displays the number of payment arrangements for the person's account.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Total Number of Overdue Process on Hold	Displays the total number of overdue process that are on hold.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Number of Promise To Pay	Displays the number of promise to pay belonging to the person.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Number of Broken Promise To Pay	Displays the total number of promise to pay that are broken.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person</b> or <b>Account</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Overdue Process	Display additional information about the overdue process.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Overdue Process</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the overdue process.
Overdue Process Template	Displays the template that was used to create overdue process's events.



Column Name	Column Description
Account Information	Display additional information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears with the details of the account.
Person Information	Display additional information about the person. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears with the details of the person.
Overdue Amount	Displays the overdue amount under that overdue process.
On Hold	Displays whether the overdue process is on hold.
Overdue Process Details	On clicking the <b>View</b>  icon, the <b>Overdue Process Details</b> screen appears where you can view details of the overdue process.

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the overdue process, the **Overdue Events** zone appears with the details of the respective overdue process.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Overdue Events</b> screen	<a href="#">Overdue Events</a> on page 1309
How to search for a bill	<a href="#">Searching for a Bill</a> on page 1315
How to view events of an overdue process	<a href="#">Viewing Events of an Overdue Process</a> on page 1310
How to view details of an overdue process	<a href="#">Viewing the Overdue Process Details</a> on page 1311

## Overdue Events

The **Overdue Events** zone displays the details of the events of the overdue process on the **Delinquency Central** screen.

Column Name	Column Description
Event	Displays information about the event of the overdue process.
Event Status	Displays the status of the event.
Dependency on Other Events	Displays whether the event is dependent on other events. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul>
Trigger Date	Displays the trigger date of the event.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Delinquency Central</b> screen	<a href="#">Delinquency Central (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1304
How to view events of an overdue process	<a href="#">Viewing Events of an Overdue Process</a> on page 1310

Searching for an Overdue Process

Prerequisites

To search for an overdue process, you should have:

- Overdue process defined in the application.

Procedure

To search for an overdue process:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar
- From the **Main** menu, select **Credits & Collection** and then click **Delinquency Central**.

The **Delinquency Central** screen appears.

- Enter the search criteria in the **Search Overdue Process** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.

A list of overdue processes that meet the search criteria appear in the **Search Results** section.


Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Delinquency Central</b> screen	<a href="#">Delinquency Central (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1304
<b>Search Overdue Process</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Overdue Process</a> on page 1304

Viewing Events of an Overdue Process

Procedure

To view events of an overdue process:

- Search for the overdue process in the **Delinquency Central** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the overdue process whose event details you want to view.

The **Overdue Events** zone appears.

- View the overdue event details of the overdue process in the **Overdue Events** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Delinquency Central</b> screen	<a href="#">Delinquency Central (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1304
<b>Overdue Events</b> screen	<a href="#">Overdue Events</a> on page 1309
How to search for an overdue process	<a href="#">Searching for an Overdue Process</a> on page 1310

## Viewing the Overdue Process Details

### Procedure

To view the details of an overdue process:

1. Search for the overdue process in the **Delinquency Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Overdue Process Information** column corresponding to the overdue process whose details you want to view.

The **Overdue Process** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays the basic details of the overdue process.
  - **Events** – Displays the events details of the overdue process.
  - **Log** – Displays a complete trail of actions performed on the overdue process.
  - **Characteristics** – Displays the characteristics of the overdue process.
3. View the event details of the overdue process in the **Overdue Process** screen.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Delinquency Central</b> screen	<a href="#">Delinquency Central (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1304
How to search for an overdue process	<a href="#">Searching for an Overdue Process</a> on page 1310

## Overdue Process Information for Account: {Account ID}

The **Overdue Process Information for Account: {Account ID}** screen allows you to view detail information of the account which is linked to the overdue process.

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Person Information](#) on page 1311
- [Overdue Bills](#) on page 1313
- << insert Payment Agreement page here ... >>
- [Hold Details](#) on page 1313
- [Payment Arrangement](#) on page 1313
- [Promise To Pay](#) on page 1312
- [Account Information](#) on page 1312
- [Customer Contact Details](#) on page 1312

### Person Information

The **Person Information** zone displays details of the person whose account is linked to the overdue process. This zone contains following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Person Name	Displays the name of the person whose account is linked to the overdue process.
Phone Number	Displays the phone number of the person.
Address	Displays the address of the person.

## Account Information

The **Account Information** zone displays the details of the account that is linked with the overdue process. This zone contains following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Displays the account ID.
Account Identifier Type	Displays the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
Last Payment Date	Displays the date of the last payment made from the account that is linked with the overdue process.
Last Payment Amount	Displays the amount last paid from the account.

## Customer Contact Details

The **Customer Contact Details** zone displays the contact details of the customer whose account is linked with the overdue process. This zone contains following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Contact Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the customer was contacted.
Customer Contact Information	Displays additional information about the customer contact.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Customer Contact</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective customer contact.
Preferred Contact Method	Displays the preferred method of contacting the customer.
Comments	Displays the comments that are placed against each customer.

## Promise To Pay

The **Promise To Pay** zone displays promise to pay created for an account which is linked to the overdue process. This zone contains following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Promise To Pay Information	Displays additional information of promise to pay.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Promise To Pay</b> screen appears where you can view the details of promise to pay.
Scheduled Amount	Displays the amount to be paid on the <b>Scheduled Date</b> .
Scheduled Date	Displays the date when the payment is expected as per promise to pay.

Column Name	Column Description
Status	Displays the status of promise to pay.
Created By	Displays the user ID who has created the promise to pay.

## Hold Details

The **Hold Details** zone displays the details of the person whose account is linked to the overdue process. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Hold Request Information	Displays additional information about the hold request.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Hold Request</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the hold request.
Status	Displays the status of the hold request.
Entity	Displays the hold request entity.
Entity Information	Displays the information about the entity on hold.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> , <b>Bill</b> or <b>Person</b> screen appears, where you can view details of the respective account, bill or person.
Start Date	Displays the date when the hold request is created.
End Date	Displays the end date of the hold request.

## Overdue Bills

The **Overdue Bills** zone displays details of the overdue bills. This zone contains following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the bill.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective bill.
Original Bill Amount	Displays the bill amount when the bill was generated.
Due Date	Displays the due date of the bill.
Overdue Amount	Displays the amount that is overdue in the bill.
Days Past Due	Displays the number of days past after the bill date.

## Payment Arrangement

The **Payment Arrangement** zone displays the details of the payment arrangement that is created for an account linked to the overdue process. This zone contains following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Contract Information	Displays the payment arrangement contract information . In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.
Payoff Balance	Displays the total amount that is paid against the payment arrangement contract.
Arrange Amount	Displays the amount that is paid in installments as per the payment arrangement contract.
Number of Installments	Displays the number of installments used to calculate the <b>Arrange Amount</b> .

## Search Bill

The **Search Bill** zone allows you to search for a bill. This zone contains the following fields:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Used to specify the name of the person for whom the bill is generated.	No
Person ID	Used to specify the person ID.	No
Bills of Persons in Hierarchy	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a bills generated against a person's hierarchy.	No
Bill Cycle	Used to indicate bills where a particular bill cycle is defined.	No
Bill Currency	Used to indicate the bill currency.	No
Billing Method	Used to indicate the billing method. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ad-Hoc Billing</li> <li>• Regular Billing</li> </ul>	No
Bill ID	Used to specify the bill ID.	No
Alternate Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill using the alternate bill ID.	No
Account ID	Used to indicate the account against which the bill is generated.	No
On or After Bill Date	Used to specify the date when the bill was completed.	No
Account Identifier Type	Used to search for bills where the account against which it is generated, a particular account identifier type is defined.	No
Account Identifier	Used to search for a bill generated against an account with a particular account identifier.	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for the bill.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Person Name	Displays the name of the person against whom the bill is generated.
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID.
Bill Status	Displays the status of the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Complete</li> </ul>
Bill Date	Displays the date when the bill was completed.
Due Date	Displays the due date of the bill.
Current Charges	Displays the bill amount.
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the bill.

## Searching for a Bill

### Procedure

To search for a bill:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Credits & Collections** and then click **Delinquency Central**.  
The **Delinquency Central** screen appears.
3. Select the **Bill** option from the **Search By** list.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of bills that meet the search criteria appear in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Delinquency Central</b> screen	<a href="#">Delinquency Central (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1304
<b>Search Overdue Process</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Overdue Process</a>

## Adding the Customer Contact Details

### Procedure

To add customer contact details:

1. Search for an overdue process in the **Delinquency Central** screen.

- In the **Search Results** section , select the check box corresponding to the overdue process linked to the account for which you want to add the customer contact.
- Click **Contact Customer**.  
The **Customer Contact** screen appears.
- Enter the required details.  
The fields **Person ID**, **Contact Date/Time** and **User ID** are auto-populated.
- Click **Save**.  
The customer is contacted based on the value set for **Preferred Contact Method** field on the **Customer Contact** screen.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Delinquency Central</b> screen	<a href="#">Delinquency Central (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1304

**Creating a Hold Request for an Overdue Process**

**Procedure**

To create a hold request for an overdue process:

- Search for an overdue process in the **Delinquency Central** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, select the check box corresponding to the **Overdue Process Information** column for whom you want to create a hold request for an overdue process.
- Click **Create Hold Request** button.

The **Add Hold Request** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory
Hold Request Type	Used to indicate the hold request type that is used for creating a hold request.	Yes

- Select the required hold request type from the **Hold Request Type** field.
- Click **OK**.

The **Hold Request** screen appears.

- Enter the required details for an overdue process.
- Click **Save**.

A hold request is defined for an overdue process where the status of the hold request is set as **Draft**.

**Note:**

The **Hold Request** screen appears where you can view the details of the hold request.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Delinquency Central</b> screen	<a href="#">Delinquency Central (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1304



For more information on...	See...
<b>Hold Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Hold Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1264
How to search for an overdue process	<a href="#">Searching for an Overdue Process</a> on page 1310

## Creating a Payment Arrangement for an Overdue Process

### Procedure

To create a payment arrangement for an overdue process:

1. Search for the overdue process in the **Delinquency Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, select the check box corresponding to the **Overdue Process Information** column for whom you want to create a payment arrangement for an overdue process.
3. Click the **Create Payment Arrangement** button.

The **Payment Arrangement** screen appears. It contains the following tabs:

- **Main**
- **History**

4. Enter the required details in the **Payment Arrangement** screen.
5. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Payment Arrangement** screen.

A payment arrangement is created with the respective payment arrangement contract.

**Note:** The **Payment Arrangement** screen appears with the details of the payment arrangement.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Delinquency Central</b> screen	<a href="#">Delinquency Central (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1304
How to search for an overdue process	<a href="#">Searching for an Overdue Process</a> on page 1310

## Defining a Promise To Pay for an Overdue Process

### Procedure

To create a promise to pay for an overdue process:

1. Search for the overdue process in the **Delinquency Central** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, select the check box corresponding to the **Overdue Process Information** column for whom you want to define a promise to pay for an overdue process.
3. Click the **Create Promise To Pay** button.

A message appears confirming that the promise to pay will be created for the account for which the overdue process is initiated.

4. Click **OK**.

The **Promise To Pay** screen appears.

5. Enter the required details in the **Promise To Pay** screen.
6. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Promise To Pay** screen.

A promise to pay is created with the scheduled payment details.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Delinquency Central</b> screen	<a href="#">Delinquency Central (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1304
<b>Promise To Pay</b> screen	<a href="#">Promise To Pay</a>
How to search for an overdue process	<a href="#">Searching for an Overdue Process</a> on page 1310

---

# Chapter 21

---

## Upload Request

---

### Topics:

- [Upload Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Upload Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-BillCycleUpdateUplReq](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-ContractRiderUpdateUplReq](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-HoldUploadRequest](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-RefundUploadRequest](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-WriteOffUploadRequest](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-BillableChargeUploadRequest](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-ReinstatementUploadRequest](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-BillGrpSortUploadRequest](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-BillLevelUploadRequest](#)
- [CSV File Format for Account Bill Cycle Upload Request](#)
- [CSV File Format for Contract Rider Upload Request](#)
- [CSV File Format for Billable Charge Upload](#)
- [CSV File Format for Hold Upload Request](#)
- [CSV File Format for Refund Request Upload](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides a generic upload feature which enables you to upload various types of data. The system enables you to upload data for the following using the **Upload Request** feature:

- Billable Charge (Adhoc and Regular)
- Hold Request
- Refund Request
- Write Off Request
- Policy Reinstatement
- Bill Group Sort ID
- Derivation and Pricing Parameters for a Bill Group and Sort ID Combination

It also enables you to update the following information:

- Contract rider of a contract
- Bill cycle of an account

While uploading data for the above supported entities, you need to specify the upload request type using which you want to upload the file. It is the upload request type which helps the system to determine:

- Whether the file must be approved by the approver before creating or updating the entities
- Which business object must be used for creating the upload request
- Which business object must be used for creating or updating entities through an upload request
- Which foreign key reference must be used for generating information string for the entity
- A set of fields using which you can search records uploaded through an upload request

You can upload a data file in the CSV format. You cannot upload data for more than one entity type through the same CSV file. For example, you cannot upload data for billable charges and hold requests using a single CSV file. An upload request of the specified upload request type is created when the file is successfully uploaded in the system. You can track a file through an upload request.

Once an upload request is created, the status of the upload request is set to **Draft**. The status of each record uploaded through an upload request is set to **Pending**. However, if the mandatory data is not available or data required for deriving

- [CSV File Format for Write Off Request Upload](#)
- [CSV File Format for Reinstatement Upload Request](#)
- [CSV File Format for Bill Group Sorting Upload Request](#)
- [CSV File Format for Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters Upload Request](#)
- [Upload Request Type](#)
- [Upload Request \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Upload Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#)

mandatory data is incorrect in the record, the status of record is set to **Invalid**. You can then edit, delete, or validate the upload request. During the validation process, the system and custom validations (if any) are executed. The status of each record is changed to **Valid** or **Invalid** depending on whether the record was validated successfully or not.

Once the upload request is validated, you can either cancel or submit the upload request for further processing. On submitting an upload request, the system checks whether the number of valid records in the uploaded file exceed the online record process limit defined in the Defer Upload Request algorithm. If the number of valid records in the uploaded file does not exceed the online record process limit, the system creates or updates the entities in the real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of valid records in the uploaded file exceeds the online record process limit, the system creates or updates the entities in the deferred mode (i.e. when the **Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)** batch is invoked).

You can optionally configure the system to use the approval workflow process for an upload request. If the **Approval Required** flag is set to **Yes** in an upload request type, then on submitting the respective upload request, the approval workflow process creates a To Do for the approver to review the upload request. Once the approver approves the upload request, the system checks whether the number of valid records in the uploaded file exceed the online record process limit defined in the Defer Upload Request algorithm. If the number of valid records in the uploaded file does not exceed the online record process limit, the system creates or updates the entities in the real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of valid records in the uploaded file exceeds the online record process limit, the system creates or updates the entities in the deferred mode (i.e. when the **Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)** batch is invoked. However, if the approver rejects the upload request, the status of the upload request is set to **Rejected**.

During the upload process, an upload request goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. Note that the lifecycle of an upload request is driven by the business object using which the upload request is created. In this release, we have shipped the following upload request business objects:

- Update Bill Cycle Upload Request (C1-BillCycleUpdateUpReq)
- Billable Charge Upload Request (C1-BillableChargeUploadRequest)
- Update Contract Rider Upload Request (C1-ContractRiderUpdateUpReq)
- Hold Request Upload Request (C1-HoldUploadRequest)
- Refund Request Upload Request (C1-RefundUploadRequest)
- Write Off Request Upload Request (C1-WriteOffUploadRequest)
- Reinstatement Upload Request (C1-ReinstatementUploadRequest)
- Bill Group Sorting Upload Request (C1-BillGrpSortUploadRequest)
- Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters Upload Request (C1-BillLevelUploadRequest)

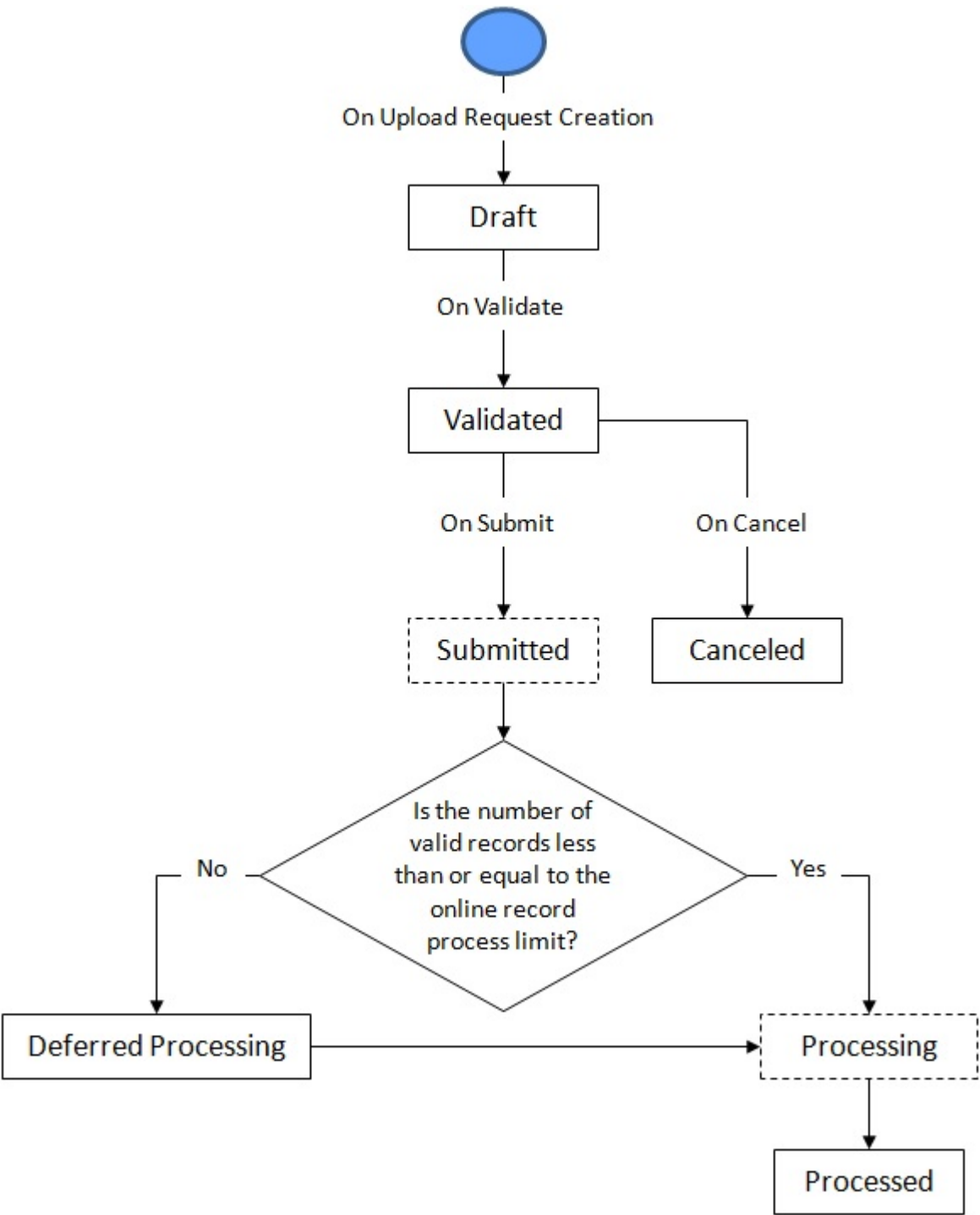
During the upload request process, an upload request creation goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. For more information about the upload request statuses, see [Upload Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 1322 and [Upload Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 1323.

**Note:** The lifecycle of an upload request creation is driven by the respective business object using which the request is created. The upload request feature explained in this document is articulated based on the lifecycle and logic defined in the business objects.

For more information on how to setup the upload request process, see [Prerequisites](#) on page 1324.

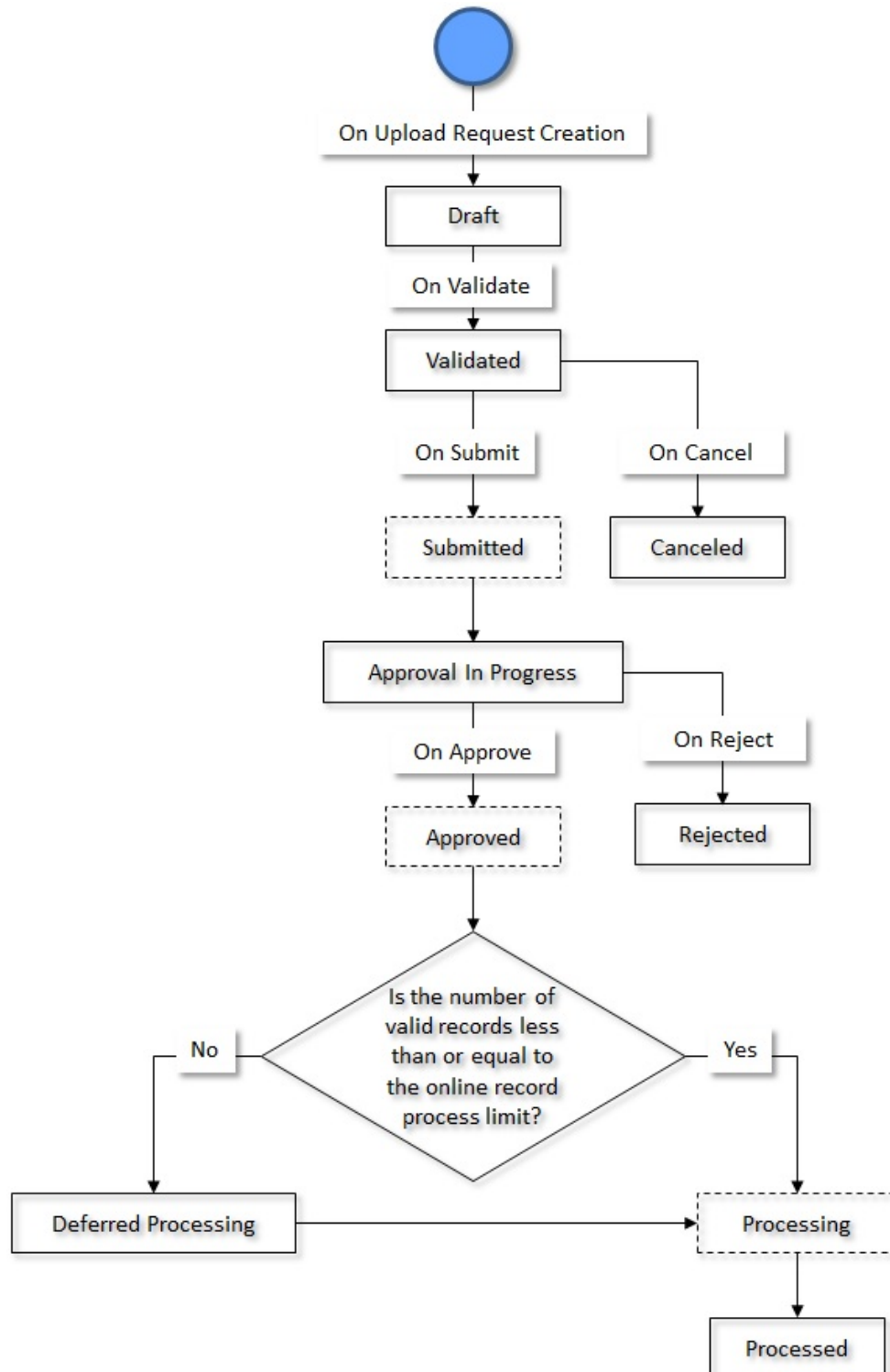
### Upload Request (Without Approval) Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how an upload request moves from one status to another when the approval workflow is off:



## Upload Request (With Approval) Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how an upload request moves from one status to another when the approval workflow is on:



## Prerequisites

---

To setup the upload request process, you need to do the following:

- Define the required upload request types in the system.
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Upload Request Type**.
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Upload Request**.
- Define the values for the following parameters in the **C1-REN-VALID** algorithm:
  - Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request
  - Policy Reinstatement Status for Reason Verification
- Define the value for the **Online Record Process Limit** parameter in the **C1-DEFERUPLD** algorithm.
- Define the value for the **Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request** parameter in the **C1-REN-PROC** algorithm.
- Assign the **C1-BCUUR** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do for approving a bill cycle update upload request.
- Assign the **C1-CRUUR** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do for approving a contract rider update upload request.
- Assign the **C1-HLDUR** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do for approving a hold upload request.
- Assign the **C1-REFUR** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do for approving a refund upload request.
- Assign the **C1-WOUR** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do for approving a write off upload request.
- Assign the **C1-BCUR** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do for approving a billable charge upload request.
- Assign the **C1-RPUR** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do for approving a reinstatement upload request.
- Create a To Do type named **C1-BGSRT** using the following information:
  - **Navigation Option** - c1upldrqTabMenu
  - **Sort Keys** - Define the following sort keys for the To Do type:

Sort Key	Use as Default	Sort Order
Upload Request ID	Yes	Descending

- **Drill Keys** - Define the following drill keys for the To Do type:

Table Name	Field Name
C1_UPLOAD_REQ	Upload Request ID

- Assign the **C1-BGSRT** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do for approving a bill group sorting upload request.
- Create a To Do type named **C1-BGDVP** using the following information:
  - **Navigation Option** - c1upldrqTabMenu



- **Sort Keys** - Define the following sort keys for the To Do type:

Sort Key	Use as Default	Sort Order
Upload Request ID	Yes	Descending

- **Drill Keys** - Define the following drill keys for the To Do type:

Table Name	Field Name
C1_UPLOAD_REQ	Upload Request ID

- Assign the **C1-BGDVP** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive the To Do for approving a bill group derivation and pricing parameters upload request.
- Set the batch control type of the **Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)** batch to **Timed** and define the following attributes:
  - Time Interval
  - Timer Active
  - User ID
  - Batch Language
  - Email Address

## Algorithms Used in C1-BillCycleUpdateUplReq

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-BillCycleUpdateUplReq** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	C1-BCU-DERIV	C1-BCU-DERIV	<p>This algorithm reads the data in the <b>BO_DATA_AREA</b> column of the <b>C1_UPL_REQUEST</b> table and accordingly inserts the records in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table. In addition, the status of each record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is set to <b>Pending</b>.</p> <p>It derives the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination whenever the account ID is not specified in the record. Once the account ID is derived, the corresponding record is updated in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table. If the system could not derive the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination, the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is changed to <b>Invalid</b>.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Validated	Enter	C1-BCU-VALID	C1-BCU-VALID	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the <b>Validate</b> button. It validates the records which are in the <b>Pending</b> status. It checks whether the account ID and bill cycle specified in the record are valid. If the account ID and bill cycle are valid and if the bill cycle is associated with the division to which the account belongs, the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is changed to <b>Valid</b>.</p> <p>If the account ID is invalid, it derives the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination and updates the record accordingly. In addition, it changes the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table to <b>Valid</b>. However, if the system could not derive the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination, or if the bill cycle is invalid, or if the bill cycle is not associated with the division to which the account belongs, the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is changed to <b>Invalid</b>.</p> <p>It also checks whether there are two or more records with the same account ID. If so, it validates and changes the status of one record to <b>Valid</b> and the status of the remaining records is changed to <b>Invalid</b>.</p>
Submitted	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Submitted	Enter	C1-UPLSUBENT	C1-UPLSUBENT	This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the <b>Submit</b> button. It checks whether the approval is required for the upload request. If the approval is required for an upload request, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> . However, if the approval is not required for an upload request, the status of the upload request remains in the <b>Submitted</b> status.
Submitted	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-UPLAPPENT	C1-UPLAPPENT	This algorithm creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the upload request type. The To Do is sent to the appropriate users with the To Do role which is specified in the upload request type. In addition, a log entry is added when a To Do is created using the To Do type.
Approval In Progress	Exit	C1-UPLAPPEXT	C1-UPLAPPEXT	This algorithm checks whether the approver is associated with the approval To Do role specified in the upload request type. If not, it does not allow the approver to approve or reject the upload request. In addition, it does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the upload request.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the <b>Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion</b> characteristic is defined for the business object, then the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.
Approved	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Approved	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Deferred Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Processing	Enter	C1-BCU-PROC	C1-BCU-PROC	<p>This algorithm fetches a list of records which are in the <b>Valid</b> status. For each valid record, the system reads the account ID and bill cycle, and updates the bill cycle information of the account using the entity business object defined in the upload request type. If the record is successfully processed, the status of the record is changed to <b>Processed</b>. However, if the record could not be processed successfully due to any reason, the status of the record is changed to <b>Error</b>. Finally, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p>
Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>

## Algorithms Used in C1-ContractRiderUpdateUplReq

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-ContractRiderUpdateUplReq** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	C1-CR-DERIV	C1-CR-DERIV	<p>This algorithm reads the data in the <b>BO_DATA_AREA</b> column of the <b>C1_UPL_REQUEST</b> table and accordingly inserts the records in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table. In addition, the status of each record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is set to <b>Pending</b>.</p> <p>It derives the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination whenever the account ID is not specified in the record. Once the account ID is derived, the corresponding record is updated in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table. If the system could not derive the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination, the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is changed to <b>Invalid</b>.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Validated	Enter	C1-CR-VALID	C1-CR-VALID	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the <b>Validate</b> button. It validates the records which are in the <b>Pending</b> status. It checks whether the account ID, contract ID, contract type, and bill factor specified in the record are valid. If the account ID, contract ID, contract type, and bill factor are valid, if the specified contract belongs to the account, and if the <b>Contract Rider Applicability</b> flag on the bill factor is set to <b>Y</b>, the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is changed to <b>Valid</b>.</p> <p>If the account ID is invalid, it derives the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination and updates the record accordingly. In addition, it changes the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table to <b>Valid</b>. However, if the system could not derive the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination, or if the bill factor is invalid, or if the specified contract does not belong to the account, or if the <b>Contract Rider Applicability</b> flag on the bill factor is set to <b>N</b>, the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is changed to <b>Invalid</b>.</p> <p>It also checks whether there are two or more records with the same account ID and contract type combination. If so, it validates and changes the status of one record to <b>Valid</b> and the status of the remaining records is changed to <b>Invalid</b>.</p>
Submitted	Enter	C1-UPLSUBENT	C1-UPLSUBENT	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the <b>Submit</b> button. It checks whether the approval is required for the upload request. If the approval is required for an upload request, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b>. However, if the approval is not required for an upload request, the status of the upload request remains in the <b>Submitted</b> status.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Submitted	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Submitted	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-UPLAPPENT	C1-UPLAPPENT	<p>This algorithm creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the upload request type. The To Do is sent to the appropriate users with the To Do role which is specified in the upload request type. In addition, a log entry is added when a To Do is created using the To Do type.</p>



Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approval In Progress	Exit	C1-UPLAPPEXT	C1-UPLAPPEXT	This algorithm checks whether the approver is associated with the approval To Do role specified in the upload request type. If not, it does not allow the approver to approve or reject the upload request. In addition, it does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the upload request.
Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the <b>Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion</b> characteristic is defined for the business object, then the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.
Approved	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approved	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Deferred Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Processing	Enter	C1-CR-PROC	C1-CR-PROC	This algorithm fetches a list of records which are in the <b>Valid</b> status. For each valid record, the system reads the account ID and contract ID, and updates the contract rider information of the contract using the entity business object defined in the upload request type. If the contract ID is not specified in the record, then the system derives the active contract of the specified contract type on the account, and then updates the contract rider information of the contract. If the record is successfully processed, the status of the record is changed to <b>Processed</b> . However, if the record could not be processed successfully due to any reason, the status of the record is changed to <b>Error</b> . Finally, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Processed</b> .
Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>

## Algorithms Used in C1-HoldUploadRequest

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-HoldUploadRequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	C1-HLD-DERIV	C1-HLD-DERIV	<p>This algorithm reads the data in the <b>BO_DATA_AREA</b> column of the <b>C1_UPL_REQUEST</b> table and accordingly inserts the records in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table. In addition, the status of each record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is set to <b>Pending</b>.</p> <p>If the hold entity is <b>ACCT</b> and the entity ID is not specified in the record, it derives the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination. Similarly, if the hold entity is <b>PERS</b> and the entity ID is not specified in the record, it derives the person ID using the person identifier type and person identifier combination. Once the account ID or person ID is derived, the corresponding record is updated in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table. If the system could not derive the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination or if the system could not derive the person ID using the person identifier type and person identifier combination, the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is changed to <b>Invalid</b>.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Validated	Enter	C1-HLD-VALID	C1-HLD-VALID	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the <b>Validate</b> button. It validates the records which are in the <b>Pending</b> status. It checks whether the data provided for creating a hold request is valid. If the entity ID and hold data are valid, the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is changed to <b>Valid</b>.</p> <p>If the hold entity is <b>ACCT</b> and the entity ID is invalid, it derives the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination and updates the record accordingly. Similarly, if the hold entity is <b>PERS</b> and the entity ID is invalid, it derives the person ID using the person identifier type and person identifier combination and updates the record accordingly. In addition, it changes the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table to <b>Valid</b>. However, if the system could not derive the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination, or if the system could not derive the person ID using the person identifier type and person identifier combination, or if the hold data is invalid, the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is changed to <b>Invalid</b>.</p>
Submitted	Enter	C1-UPLSUBENT	C1-UPLSUBENT	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the <b>Submit</b> button. It checks whether the approval is required for the upload request. If the approval is required for an upload request, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b>. However, if the approval is not required for an upload request, the status of the upload request remains in the <b>Submitted</b> status.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Submitted	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Submitted	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-UPLAPPENT	C1-UPLAPPENT	<p>This algorithm creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the upload request type. The To Do is sent to the appropriate users with the To Do role which is specified in the upload request type. In addition, a log entry is added when a To Do is created using the To Do type.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approval In Progress	Exit	C1-UPLAPPEXT	C1-UPLAPPEXT	This algorithm checks whether the approver is associated with the approval To Do role specified in the upload request type. If not, it does not allow the approver to approve or reject the upload request. In addition, it does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the upload request.
Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the <b>Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion</b> characteristic is defined for the business object, then the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.
Approved	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approved	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Deferred Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>



Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Processing	Enter	C1-HLD-PROC	C1-HLD-PROC	<p>This algorithm fetches a list of records which are in the <b>Valid</b> status. For each valid record with a unique combination of the hold request type, start date, end date, hold reason, hold entity, hold entity start date, hold entity end date, comments, hold process details, and hold characteristic details, it creates one hold request using the entity business object defined in the upload request type. However, if there are multiple entity IDs with the same combination, all are added in the same hold request. The hold request is created in the <b>Draft</b> status and then transitioned to <b>Submit</b>.</p> <p>From the <b>Submit</b> status, the status of the hold request is either changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> or <b>Active</b> depending on whether the <b>Approval Required</b> flag is set to <b>Yes</b>. If the number of bills of the entities which are kept on hold through the hold request does not exceed the defer processing count (defined in the hold request type), the status of the hold request is changed to <b>Active</b>. However, if the number of bills of the entities which are kept on hold through the hold request exceeds the defer processing count, the status of the hold request is changed to <b>Deferred Processing</b>. If the record is successfully processed, the status of the record is changed to <b>Processed</b>. However, if the record could not be processed successfully due to any reason, the status of the record is changed to <b>Error</b>. Finally, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next Status</li> <li>Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>

## Algorithms Used in C1-RefundUploadRequest

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-RefundUploadRequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Validated	Enter	C1-RF-VALID	C1-RF-VALID	This algorithm validates the data uploaded in an upload request for creating refund requests before the request is submitted for processing.
Draft	Enter	C1-RF-DERIV	C1-RF-DERIV	This algorithm reads the <b>BO_DATA_AREA</b> in the request's primary table, derives additional data that is required for creating refund requests and inserts the records in <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table.
Submitted	Enter	C1-UPLSUBENT	C1-UPLSUBENT	This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the <b>Submit</b> button. It checks whether the approval is required for the upload request. If the approval is required for an upload request, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> . However, if the approval is not required for an upload request, the status of the upload request remains in the <b>Submitted</b> status.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Submitted	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Submitted	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-UPLAPPENT	C1-UPLAPPENT	<p>This algorithm creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the upload request type. The To Do is sent to the appropriate users with the To Do role which is specified in the upload request type. In addition, a log entry is added when a To Do is created using the To Do type.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approval In Progress	Exit	C1-UPLAPPEXT	C1-UPLAPPEXT	This algorithm checks whether the approver is associated with the approval To Do role specified in the upload request type. If not, it does not allow the approver to approve or reject the upload request. In addition, it does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the upload request.
Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the <b>Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion</b> characteristic is defined for the business object, then the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.
Approved	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approved	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Deferred Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Processing	Enter	C1-RF-PROC	C1-RF-PROC	<p>This algorithm fetches the list of records that are in <b>Valid</b> status for a given request ID and invokes the entity business object for creating the refund requests. If successfully processed, then the record status will be updated to <b>Processed</b>, otherwise the record status will be updated to <b>Error</b> and error details will be logged in the exception table.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>

## Algorithms Used in C1-WriteOffUploadRequest

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-WriteOffUploadRequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	C1-WO-DERIV	C1-WO-DERIV	This algorithm reads the <b>BO_DATA_AREA</b> in the request's primary table, derives additional data that is required for creating write off requests and inserts the records in <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table.
Submitted	Enter	C1-UPLSUBENT	C1-UPLSUBENT	This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the <b>Submit</b> button. It checks whether the approval is required for the upload request. If the approval is required for an upload request, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> . However, if the approval is not required for an upload request, the status of the upload request remains in the <b>Submitted</b> status.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Submitted	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Submitted	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-UPLAPPENT	C1-UPLAPPENT	<p>This algorithm creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the upload request type. The To Do is sent to the appropriate users with the To Do role which is specified in the upload request type. In addition, a log entry is added when a To Do is created using the To Do type.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approval In Progress	Exit	C1-UPLAPPEXT	C1-UPLAPPEXT	This algorithm checks whether the approver is associated with the approval To Do role specified in the upload request type. If not, it does not allow the approver to approve or reject the upload request. In addition, it does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the upload request.
Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the <b>Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion</b> characteristic is defined for the business object, then the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.
Approved	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>



Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approved	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Deferred Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Processing	Enter	C1-WO-PROC	C1-WO-PROC	<p>This algorithm fetches the list of records that are in <b>Valid</b> status for a given request ID and invokes the entity business object for creating the write off requests. If successfully processed, then the record status will be updated to <b>Processed</b>, otherwise the record status will be updated to <b>Error</b> and error details will be logged in the exception table.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next Status</li> <li>Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>

## Algorithms Used in C1-BillableChargeUploadRequest

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-BillableChargeUploadRequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	C1-CRTUPLDTL	C1-CRTUPLDTL	This algorithm reads the data in the <b>BO_DATA_AREA</b> column of the <b>C1_UPL_REQUEST</b> table and accordingly inserts the records in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table. In addition, the status of each record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is set to <b>Pending</b> .
Draft	Enter	C1-BC-DERIV	C1-BC-DERIV	This algorithm reads the <b>BO_DATA_AREA</b> in the request's primary table, derives additional data that is required for creating billable charges and inserts the records in <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table.
Validated	Enter	C1-BC-VALID	C1-BC-VALID	This algorithm validates the data upload in an upload request for creating billable charges before the request is submitted for processing.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Submitted	Enter	C1-UPLSUBENT	C1-UPLSUBENT	This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the <b>Submit</b> button. It checks whether the approval is required for the upload request. If the approval is required for an upload request, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> . However, if the approval is not required for an upload request, the status of the upload request remains in the <b>Submitted</b> status.
Submitted	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Submitted	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>

Status		System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approval Progress	In	Enter	C1-UPLAPPENT	C1-UPLAPPENT	This algorithm creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the upload request type. The To Do is sent to the appropriate users with the To Do role which is specified in the upload request type. In addition, a log entry is added when a To Do is created using the To Do type.
Approval Progress	In	Exit	C1-UPLAPPEXT	C1-UPLAPPEXT	This algorithm checks whether the approver is associated with the approval To Do role specified in the upload request type. If not, it does not allow the approver to approve or reject the upload request. In addition, it does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the upload request.
Approval Progress	In	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the <b>Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion</b> characteristic is defined for the business object, then the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approved	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Approved	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Deferred Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next Status</li> <li>Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Processing	Enter	C1-BC-PROC	C1-BC-PROC	<p>This algorithm fetches the list of records that are in <b>Valid</b> status for a given request ID and invokes the entity business object for creating billable charge on the contract. If successfully created, then the record status will be updated to <b>Processed</b>, otherwise the record status will be updated to <b>Error</b> and error details will be logged in the exception table.</p>
Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next Status</li> <li>Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>

## Algorithms Used in C1-ReinstatementUploadRequest

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-ReinstatementUploadRequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	C1-CRTUPLDTL	C1-CRTUPLDTL	This algorithm reads the data in the <b>BO_DATA_AREA</b> column of the <b>C1_UPL_REQUEST</b> table and accordingly inserts the records in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table. In addition, the status of each record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is set to <b>Pending</b> .
Draft	Enter	C1-REN-DERIV	C1-REN-DERIV	This algorithm reads the data in the <b>BO_DATA_AREA</b> column of the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table and then derives the policy ID using the source system and policy number combination whenever the policy ID is not specified in the record. Once the policy ID is derived, the corresponding record is updated in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table. If the system could not derive the policy ID using the source system and policy number combination, the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is changed to <b>Invalid</b> .

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Validated	Enter	C1-REN-VALID	C1-REN-VALID	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the <b>Validate</b> button. It validates the records which are in the <b>Pending</b> status. It checks whether the policy ID and reinstatement reason specified in the record is valid. If the policy ID and reinstatement reason are valid, the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is changed to <b>Valid</b>.</p> <p>If the policy ID is invalid, it derives the policy ID using the source system and policy number combination and updates the record accordingly. In addition, it changes the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table to <b>Valid</b>. However, if the system could not derive the policy ID using the source system and policy number combination, or if the reinstatement reason is invalid, the status of the record in the <b>C1_UPLOAD_REQ_DTLS</b> table is changed to <b>Invalid</b>.</p> <p>It also checks whether there are two or more policies with the same policy ID. If so, it validates and changes the status of one record to <b>Valid</b> and the status of the remaining records is changed to <b>Invalid</b>. It contains the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> – Used to specify the status to which you want to transition the policy when the reinstatement upload request is processed.</li> <li>• <b>Policy Reinstatement Status for Reason Verification</b> – Used to validate the reinstatement reason. The reason should be a valid reason for the specified status.</li> </ul>



Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Submitted	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next Status</li> <li>Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Submitted	Enter	C1-UPLSUBENT	C1-UPLSUBENT	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the <b>Submit</b> button. It checks whether the approval is required for the upload request. If the approval is required for an upload request, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b>. However, if the approval is not required for an upload request, the status of the upload request remains in the <b>Submitted</b> status.</p>
Submitted	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Online Record Process Limit</b> – Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul>
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-UPLAPPENT	C1-UPLAPPENT	<p>This algorithm creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the upload request type. The To Do is sent to the appropriate users with the To Do role which is specified in the upload request type. In addition, a log entry is added when a To Do is created using the To Do type.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approval In Progress	Exit	C1-UPLAPPEXT	C1-UPLAPPEXT	This algorithm checks whether the approver is associated with the approval To Do role specified in the upload request type. If not, it does not allow the approver to approve or reject the upload request. In addition, it does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the upload request.
Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the <b>Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion</b> characteristic is defined for the business object, then the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.
Approved	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Submitted</b> or <b>Approved</b>. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Processing</b>. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Online Record Process Limit</b> – Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).</li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approved	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Deferred Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>
Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Processing	Enter	C1-REN-PROC	C1-REN-PROC	<p>This algorithm fetches a list of records which are in the <b>Valid</b> status. For each valid record, the system reads the policy ID and reinstatement reason, and reinstates the policy using the entity business object defined in the upload request type. On reinstating the policy, the status of the policy is changed as mentioned in this algorithm. If the record is successfully processed, the status of the record is changed to <b>Processed</b>. However, if the record could not be processed successfully due to any reason, the status of the record is changed to <b>Error</b>. Finally, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p>It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> - Used to specify the status to which you want to transition the policy when the reinstatement upload request is processed.</li> </ul>

## Algorithms Used in C1-BillGrpSortUploadRequest

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-BillGrpSortUploadRequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	C1-BLSRTUPLD	C1-BLSRTUPLD	Refer to <a href="#">C1-BLSRTUPLD</a> on page 1361.
Draft	Enter	C1-BLSRTDERV	C1-BLSRTDERV	Refer to <a href="#">C1-BLSRTDERV</a> on page 1361.
Validated	Enter	C1-BLSRTVALD	C1-BLSRTVALD	Refer to <a href="#">C1-BLSRTVALD</a> on page 1361.
Canceled	—	—	—	—
Submitted	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
Submitted	Enter	C1-UPLSUBENT	C1-UPLSUBENT	Refer to <a href="#">C1-UPLSUBENT</a> on page 1362.
Submitted	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	Refer to <a href="#">C1-DEFERUPLD</a> on page 1362.
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-UPLAPPENT	C1-UPLAPPENT	Refer to <a href="#">C1-UPLAPPENT</a> on page 1362.
Approval In Progress	Exit	C1-UPLAPPEXT	C1-UPLAPPEXT	Refer to <a href="#">C1-UPLAPPEXT</a> on page 1362.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	Refer to <a href="#">F1-TODOCOMPL</a> on page 1068.
Approved	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
Approved	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	Refer to <a href="#">C1-DEFERUPLD</a> on page 1362.
Rejected	—	—	—	—
Deferred Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
Processing	Enter	C1-BLSRTPROC	C1-BLSRTPROC	Refer to <a href="#">C1-BLSRTPROC</a> on page 1363.
Processed	—	—	—	—

## C1-BLSRTUPLD

This algorithm reads the data in the **BO\_DATA\_AREA** column of the **C1\_UPL\_REQUEST** table and accordingly inserts the records in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table. In addition, the status of each record in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table is set to **Pending**.

## C1-BLSRTDERV

This algorithm reads the data in the **BO\_DATA\_AREA** column of the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table and then derives the bill group (person) ID using the bill group (person) identifier type and bill group (person) identifier combination whenever the bill group ID is not specified in the record. Once the bill group ID is derived, the corresponding record is updated in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table. If the system could not derive the bill group ID using the bill group identifier type and bill group identifier combination, the status of the record in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table is changed to **Invalid**.

## C1-BLSRTVALD

This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the **Validate** button. It validates the records which are in the **Pending** status. It checks the following:

- The parent customer's person type is set to **Parent Customer** in the system.
- All mandatory information is available in the bill group sort record.
- The end date is not earlier than the start date and the start date is not later than the end date.
- Either the bill group (person) identifier type and bill group (person) identifier or the bill group (person) ID is available in the bill group sort record.
- The bill group identifier type is available when the bill group identifier is specified and vice versa.
- A bill group with the specified bill group ID exists in the system.
- The bill group is the child person of the parent customer.
- The bill group's person type is set to **Bill Group** in the system.
- The relationship between the bill group and parent customer is effective on the system date.
- The bill group is related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the **Person Relationship Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLNG** feature configuration.
- A duplicate record with the bill group ID and sort ID combination does not exist in the **C1\_BILL\_LVL** table.

- A duplicate record with the bill group ID and sort ID combination does not exist in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table.

If the above mentioned validations are successful, the status of the record in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table is changed to **Valid**. However, if any of the above validation fails, the status of the record in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table is changed to **Invalid**.

## F1-AT-RQJ

This algorithm transitions the current status of the business object to the specified status. It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** – Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** – Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

## C1-UPLSUBENT

This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the **Submit** button. It checks whether the approval is required for the upload request. If the approval is required for an upload request, the status of the upload request is changed to **Approval In Progress**. However, if the approval is not required for an upload request, the status of the upload request remains in the **Submitted** status.

## C1-DEFERUPLD

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to **Submitted** or **Approved**. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to **Processing**. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to **Deferred Processing**.

It contains the following parameter:

- **Online Record Process Limit** – Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).

## C1-UPLAPPENT

This algorithm creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the upload request type. The To Do is sent to the appropriate users with the To Do role which is specified in the upload request type. In addition, a log entry is added when a To Do is created using the To Do type.

## C1-UPLAPPEXT

This algorithm checks whether the approver is associated with the approval To Do role specified in the upload request type. If not, it does not allow the approver to approve or reject the upload request. In addition, it does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the upload request.

## F1-TODOCOMPL

This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the **Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion** characteristic is set to **Y** for the business object, the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.

## C1-BLSRTPROC

This algorithm fetches a list of records which are in the **Valid** status. For each valid record with a unique combination of the bill group (person) ID and sort ID, it creates one bill group sort record using the entity business object defined in the upload request type. If the record is successfully processed, the status of the record is changed to **Processed**. However, if the record could not be processed successfully due to any reason, the status of the record is changed to **Error**. Finally, the status of the upload request is changed to **Processed**.

## Algorithms Used in C1-BillLevelUploadRequest

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-BillLevelUploadRequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Enter	C1-BLVUPLDTL	C1-BLVUPLDTL	Refer to <a href="#">C1-BLVUPLDTL</a> on page 1364.
Draft	Enter	C1-BLVLDERIV	C1-BLVLDERIV	Refer to <a href="#">C1-BLVLDERIV</a> on page 1364.
Validated	Enter	C1-BLVLVALID	C1-BLVLVALID	Refer to <a href="#">C1-BLVLVALID</a> on page 1364.
Canceled	—	—	—	—
Submitted	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
Submitted	Enter	C1-UPLSUBENT	C1-UPLSUBENT	Refer to <a href="#">C1-UPLSUBENT</a> on page 1362.
Submitted	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	Refer to <a href="#">C1-DEFERUPLD</a> on page 1362.
Approval Progress	In Enter	C1-UPLAPPENT	C1-UPLAPPENT	Refer to <a href="#">C1-UPLAPPENT</a> on page 1362.
Approval Progress	In Exit	C1-UPLAPPEXT	C1-UPLAPPEXT	Refer to <a href="#">C1-UPLAPPEXT</a> on page 1362.
Approval Progress	In Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	Refer to <a href="#">F1-TODOCOMPL</a> on page 1068.
Approved	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
Approved	Enter	C1-DEFERUPLD	C1-DEFERUPLD	Refer to <a href="#">C1-DEFERUPLD</a> on page 1362.
Rejected	—	—	—	—
Deferred Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
Processing	Enter	C1-BLVLVLPRO	C1-BLVLVLPRO	Refer to <a href="#">C1-BLVLVLPRO</a> on page 1365.
Processed	—	—	—	—

## C1-BLVUPLDTL

This algorithm reads the data in the **BO\_DATA\_AREA** column of the **C1\_UPL\_REQUEST** table and accordingly inserts the records in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table. In addition, the status of each record in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table is set to **Pending**.

## C1-BLVLDERIV

This algorithm reads the data in the **BO\_DATA\_AREA** column of the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table and then derives the bill group (person) ID using the bill group (person) identifier type and bill group (person) identifier combination whenever the bill group ID is not specified in the record. Once the bill group ID is derived, the corresponding record is updated in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table. If the system could not derive the bill group ID using the bill group identifier type and bill group identifier combination, the status of the record in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table is changed to **Invalid**.

## C1-BLVLVALID

This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the **Validate** button. It validates the records which are in the **Pending** status. It checks the following:

- The parent customer's person type is set to **Parent Customer** in the system.
- All mandatory information is available in the bill group derivation and pricing parameters record.
- Either the bill group (person) identifier type and bill group (person) identifier or the bill group (person) ID is available in the bill group derivation and pricing parameters record.
- The bill group identifier type is available when the bill group identifier is specified and vice versa.
- The number of characters specified in each field does not exceed the maximum field length.
- A bill group with the specified bill group ID exists in the system.
- The bill group is the child person of the parent customer.
- The bill group's person type is set to **Bill Group** in the system.
- The relationship between the bill group and parent customer is effective on the system date.
- The bill group is related to the parent customer using the relationship type which is specified in the **Person Relationship Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration.
- A duplicate record with the source system, parameter 1, parameter 2, parameter 3, parameter 4, and effective date combination does not exist in the **C1\_BILL\_LVL** table.
- A duplicate record with the source system, parameter 1, parameter 2, parameter 3, parameter 4, and effective date combination does not exist in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table.
- The source system exists in the extendable lookup which is specified in the **Source System Extendable Lookup** parameter.
- The bill group sort record with the bill group ID and sort ID combination already exists in the system.
- The effective date specified in the record is within the date range of the effective bill group sort record.

If the above mentioned validations are successful, the status of the record in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table is changed to **Valid**. However, if any of the above validation fails, the status of the record in the **C1\_UPLOAD\_REQ\_DTLS** table is changed to **Invalid**.

It contains the following parameter:

- **Source System Extendable Lookup** – Used to specify the source system extendable lookup business object. The bill group derivation and pricing parameters records should contain the source system which is already defined in this extendable lookup.



## F1-AT-RQJ

This algorithm transitions the current status of the business object to the specified status. It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** – Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** – Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

## C1-UPLSUBENT

This algorithm is invoked when the user clicks the **Submit** button. It checks whether the approval is required for the upload request. If the approval is required for an upload request, the status of the upload request is changed to **Approval In Progress**. However, if the approval is not required for an upload request, the status of the upload request remains in the **Submitted** status.

## C1-DEFERUPLD

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the upload request is changed to **Submitted** or **Approved**. It checks whether the upload request must be processed in the real time (i.e. immediately) or in the deferred mode (i.e. in the background). If the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to **Processing**. However, if the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit, the system changes the status of the upload request to **Deferred Processing**.

It contains the following parameter:

- **Online Record Process Limit** – Used to indicate the maximum number of valid records you can process in the real time (i.e. immediately).

## C1-UPLAPPENT

This algorithm creates a To Do using the To Do type specified in the upload request type. The To Do is sent to the appropriate users with the To Do role which is specified in the upload request type. In addition, a log entry is added when a To Do is created using the To Do type.

## C1-UPLAPPEXT

This algorithm checks whether the approver is associated with the approval To Do role specified in the upload request type. If not, it does not allow the approver to approve or reject the upload request. In addition, it does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the upload request.

## F1-TODOCOMPL

This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the **Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion** characteristic is set to **Y** for the business object, the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.

## C1-BLVVLVPRO

This algorithm fetches a list of records which are in the **Valid** status. For each valid record with a unique combination of the source system, parameter 1, parameter 2, parameter 3, parameter 4, and effective date, it creates one bill group derivation and pricing parameters record using the entity business object defined in the upload request type. If the record

is successfully processed, the status of the record is changed to **Processed**. However, if the record could not be processed successfully due to any reason, the status of the record is changed to **Error**. Finally, the status of the upload request is changed to **Processed**.

### CSV File Format for Account Bill Cycle Upload Request

Before uploading the account bill cycle file, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following columns:

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the account ID is not specified.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the identifier of the account whose bill cycle you want to update.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the account ID is not specified.
Account ID	Used to indicate the account whose bill cycle you want to update.	No
	<b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the account ID, the system derives the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination.	
Bill Cycle	Used to specify the bill cycle.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a valid bill cycle which is associated with the division to which the account belongs.	

### CSV File Format for Contract Rider Upload Request

Before uploading a contract rider file, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following columns:

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the account ID and contract ID are not specified.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the identifier of the account whose contract you want to update.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the account ID and contract ID are not specified.

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Used to indicate the account whose contract you want to update.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the account identifier type, account identifier, and contract ID are not specified.
Contract Type	Used to indicate the type of the contract whose details you want to update.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a contract type which already exists in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the contract ID is not specified.
Contract ID	Used to indicate the contract whose contract rider information you want to update.	No
	<b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the contract ID, the system derives the active contract using the account ID and contract type combination.	
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the bill factor is effective for the contract.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The start date cannot be later than the end date.	
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the bill factor is effective for the contract.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.	
Bill Factor	Used to specify the bill factor.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a valid bill factor where the <b>Contract Rider Applicability</b> flag is set to <b>Y</b> .	

## CSV File Format for Billable Charge Upload

Before uploading a billable charge file, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following columns:

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the <b>Account ID</b> is not specified.

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier	Used to specify the account identifier of the account for which you want to create the billable charge.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the <b>Account ID</b> is not specified.
Account ID	Used to specify the account for which you want to create the billable charge.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the <b>Account Identifier Type</b> and <b>Account Identifier</b> is not specified.
Contract ID	Used to specify the contract against which you want to create the billable charge.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when you want to create the billable charge against a specific contract on the account. If this data is not specified then billable charge is created against a contract with highest priority.
Start Date	Used to specify the start date of billable charge.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the end date of billable charge.	Yes
Charge Type	Used to specify the charge type for which you want to create a billable charge.	No
Description On Bill	Used to specify description for a billable charge.	Yes
Recurring Flag	Used to indicate whether recurring bill segments must be created at the intervals defined in the bill period or at the set policy invoice frequency. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BP</li> <li>FR</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required if <b>Frequency</b> or <b>Bill Period</b> is specified.
Frequency	Used to specify the invoice frequency at which the recurring bill segments must be created.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required if <b>Recurring Flag</b> is FR.
Bill Period	Used to specify the bill period that you want to use for specifying the intervals at which the recurring bill segments must be created.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required if <b>Recurring Flag</b> is BP.
Bill After	Used to specify the date after which the bill must be generated for the billable charge.	No
Adhoc Bill	Used to indicate whether the billable charge should be considered during adhoc or regular billing.	No

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Description on Bill1, Description on Bill2, ....., Description on Bill5	Used to specify description for the billable charge lines.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the charge amount is specified.
Currency1, Currency2, ....., Currency5	Used to specify the currency in which the amount is charged.  <b>Note:</b> If you specify a currency other than the account's invoice currency, the system will do the currency conversion if the appropriate exchange rate is available in the system.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the charge amount is specified.
Amount1, Amount2, ....., Amount5	Used to specify the charge amount.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the description on bill or currency is specified.
Show On Bill1, Show on Bill2, ....., Show On Bill5	Used to indicate whether the charge should appear on the person's printed bill or not. The valid values are:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>true</li> <li>false</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> By default, the value will be set to <b>true</b> if the column does not contain any value.	No
Summary1, Summary2, ....., Summary5	Used to indicate whether the charge should be included in the summary line or not. The valid value are:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>true</li> <li>false</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> By default, the value will be set to <b>true</b> if the column does not contain any value.	No
Memo Only1, Memo Only2, ....., Memo Only5	Used to indicate whether the charge should be included in the bill amount or not. The valid values are:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>true</li> <li>false</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> By default, the value will be set to <b>false</b> if the column does not contain any value.	No

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
GL Distribution Code1, GL Distribution Code2, ....., GL distribution Code5	Used to specify the distribution code which indicates the GL account associated with the charge.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>false</b> is specified in the <b>Memo Only</b> column corresponding to the bill line description.
Price Item	Used to specify the price item code.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Variance Parameter</b> or, <b>Price Item Parameter</b> and <b>Price Item Parameter Value</b> is specified.
Variance Parameter	Used to indicate the variance that must be used along with the price item for determining the price item pricing.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Price Item</b> is specified and <b>Price Item Parameter</b> and <b>Price Item Parameter Value</b> are not specified.
Price Item Parameter1, Price Item Parameter2, ....., Price Item Parameter15	Used to indicate the price item parameter that must be used along with the price item for determining the price item pricing.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If the data in these columns will be used for price item parameter mapping, you must not use the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols in these columns.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Price Item</b> is specified and <b>Variance Parameter</b> is not specified.
Price Item Parameter Value1, Price Item Parameter Value2, ....., Price Item Parameter Value15	Used to specify the parameter value.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If the data in these columns will be used for price item parameter mapping, you must not use the equal to (=) and tilde (~) symbols in these columns.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Price Item</b> is specified and <b>Variance Parameter</b> is not specified.
SQI1, SQI2, ....., SQI5	Used to indicate the service quantity identifier that must be used for calculating the price item charges.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the service quantity is specified.
SQI Value1, SQI Value2, ....., SQI Value5	Used to specify the number of units of the service quantity.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the SQI is specified.

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date1, Effective Date2, ....., Effective Date20	Used to indicate the effective date of the characteristics.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Char Type</b> or <b>Char Val</b> is specified.
Char Type1, Char Type2, ....., Char Type20	Used to indicate the characteristic that must be defined for the billable charge.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Effective Date</b> or <b>Char Val</b> is specified.
Char Value1, Char Value2, ....., Char Value20	Used to specify the value of the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Effective Date</b> or <b>Char Type</b> is specified.

## CSV File Format for Hold Upload Request

Before uploading a hold request file, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following columns:

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Request Type	Used to specify the hold request type.  <b>Note:</b> You must specify a valid hold request type which is in the <b>Active</b> status.	Yes
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the hold request is effective.  <b>Note:</b> The hold request start date cannot be later than the hold request end date.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the hold request is effective.  <b>Note:</b> The hold request end date cannot be earlier than the hold request start date.	Yes
Hold Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to hold the entity.  <b>Note:</b> The hold reason must exist in the <b>HOLD_REASON_FLG</b> lookup field and its status must be <b>Active</b> .	Yes

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Entity	Used to indicate the type of the entity for which you want to create the hold request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ACCT</li> <li>• BILL</li> <li>• PERS</li> </ul>	Yes
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the hold entity is <b>ACCT</b> and the entity ID is not specified.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the identifier of the account for which you want to create the hold request.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the hold entity is <b>ACCT</b> and the entity ID is not specified.
Person Identifier Type	Used to specify the person identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the hold entity is <b>PERS</b> and the entity ID is not specified.
Person Identifier	Used to specify the identifier of the person for which you want to create the hold request.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the hold entity is <b>PERS</b> and the entity ID is not specified.
Hold Entity ID	Used to specify the entity ID. <b>Note:</b> If the hold entity is <b>ACCT</b> , you must specify the account ID in this field. If the hold entity is <b>PERS</b> , you must specify the person ID in this field. And, if the hold entity is <b>BILL</b> , you must specify the bill ID in this field.  If you do not specify the account ID, the system derives the account ID using the account identifier type and account identifier combination. Similarly, if you do not specify the person ID, the system derives the person ID using the person identifier type and person identifier combination.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the hold entity is <b>BILL</b> .
Comments	Used to specify additional information about the hold request.	No



Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Entity Start Date	Used to specify the date from when you want to hold the entity.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The hold entity start date must be between the hold request start and end dates and between at least one process's start and end dates.  The hold entity start date cannot be later than the hold entity end date.	
Hold Entity End Date	Used to specify the date till when you want to hold the entity.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The hold entity end date must be between hold request start and end dates and between the process's start and end dates.  The hold entity end date cannot be earlier than the hold entity start date.	
Hold Funding	Used to indicate whether you want to hold the funding process for the entity. The valid values are:	No
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> You can hold the funding process only when the hold entity is <b>PERS</b> or <b>BILL</b> .	
Hold Funding Start Date	Used to specify the date from when you want to hold the funding process.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The hold funding start date must be between the hold request start and end dates.  The hold funding start date cannot be later than the hold funding end date.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the funding process must be kept on hold.
Hold Funding End Date	Used to specify the date till when you want to hold the funding process.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The hold funding end date must be between the hold request start and end dates.  The hold funding end date cannot be earlier than the hold funding start date.	

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Overdue	Used to indicate whether you want to hold the overdue process for the entity. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Y</li> <li>N</li> </ul>	No
Hold Overdue Start Date	Used to specify the date from when you want to hold the overdue process.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The hold overdue start date must be between the hold request start and end dates. The hold overdue start date cannot be later than the hold overdue end date.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the overdue process must be kept on hold.
Hold Overdue End Date	Used to specify the date till when you want to hold the overdue process.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The hold overdue end date must be between the hold request start and end dates. The hold overdue end date cannot be earlier than the hold overdue start date.	
Hold Bill Generation	Used to indicate whether you want to hold the bill generation process for the entity. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Y</li> <li>N</li> </ul>	No
Hold Bill Generation Start Date	Used to specify the date from when you want to hold the bill generation process.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The hold bill generation start date must be between the hold request start and end dates. The hold bill generation start date cannot be later than the hold bill generation end date.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the bill generation process must be kept on hold.
Hold Bill Generation End Date	Used to specify the date till when you want to hold the bill generation process.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The hold bill generation end date must be between the hold request start and end dates. The hold bill generation end date cannot be earlier than the hold bill generation start date.	

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Hold Auto Pay	Used to indicate whether you want to hold the automatic payment process for the entity. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Y</li> <li>N</li> </ul>	No
Hold Autopay Start Date	Used to specify the date from when you want to hold the automatic payment process. <div> <b>Note:</b>  The hold autopay start date must be between the hold request start and end dates.  The hold autopay start date cannot be later than the hold autopay end date. </div>	Yes (Conditional) <div> <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the automatic payment process must be kept on hold. </div>
Hold Autopay End Date	Used to specify the date till when you want to hold the automatic payment process. <div> <b>Note:</b>  The hold autopay end date must be between the hold request start and end dates.  The hold autopay end date cannot be earlier than the hold autopay start date. </div>	No
Effective Date1, Effective Date2, ....., Effective Date5	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the hold request.	Yes (Conditional) <div> <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the characteristic type or characteristic value is specified. </div>
Char Type1, Char Type2, ....., Char Type5	Used to indicate the characteristic that must be defined for the hold request. <div> <b>Note:</b> You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Hold Request</b>. </div>	Yes (Conditional) <div> <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the effective date or characteristic value is specified. </div>
Char Val1, Char Val2, ....., Char Val5	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional) <div> <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the effective date or characteristic type is specified. </div>

## CSV File Format for Refund Request Upload

Before uploading a refund request file, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following columns:

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Refund Request Type	Used to specify the refund request type.	Yes
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the <b>Account ID</b> is not specified.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the account identifier of the account for which you want to create the refund request.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the <b>Account ID</b> is not specified.
Account ID	Used to specify the account for which you want to create the refund request.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the <b>Account Identifier Type</b> and <b>Account Identifier</b> are not specified.
Entity Type	Used to specify the entity type.	Yes
Entity ID	Used to specify the entity ID.	Yes
Adjustment Type	Used to specify the adjustment type using which the refund adjustments are created.	No
Refund Amount	Used to specify the amount that you want to refund.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify the comments which are added on the refund request.	No
Effective Date1, Effective Date2, ....., Effective Date5	Used to indicate the effective date of the characteristics.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Char Type</b> or <b>Char Val</b> is specified.
Char Type1, Char Type2, ....., Char Type5	Used to indicate the characteristic that must be defined for the refund request.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Effective Date</b> or <b>Char Val</b> is specified.
Char Val1, Char Val2, ....., Char Val5	Used to specify the value of the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Effective Date</b> or <b>Char Type</b> is specified.

## CSV File Format for Write Off Request Upload

Before uploading a write off request file, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following columns:

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Write Off Request Type	Used to specify the write off request type.	Yes
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the <b>Account ID</b> is not specified.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the account identifier of the account for which you want to create the write off request.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the <b>Account ID</b> is not specified.
Account ID	Used to specify the account for which you want to create the write off request.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when the <b>Account Identifier Type</b> and <b>Account Identifier</b> are not specified.
Entity Type	Used to specify the entity type.	Yes
Entity ID	Used to specify the entity ID.	Yes
Adjustment Type	Used to specify the adjustment type using which the write off adjustments are created.	No
Write Off Amount	Used to specify the amount that you want to write off.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify the comments which are added on the write off request.	No
Effective Date1, Effective Date2, ....., Effective Date5	Used to indicate the effective date of the characteristics.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Char Type</b> or <b>Char Val</b> is specified.
Char Type1, Char Type2, ....., Char Type5	Used to indicate the characteristic that must be defined for the write off request.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Effective Date</b> or <b>Char Val</b> is specified.
Char Val1, Char Val2, ....., Char Val5	Used to specify the value of the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required when <b>Effective Date</b> or <b>Char Type</b> is specified.

## CSV File Format for Reinstatement Upload Request

Before uploading a policy reinstatement file, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following columns:

Column Name	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy ID	Used to indicate the policy which you want to reinstate.	No
	<b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the policy ID, the system derives the policy ID using the source system and policy number combination.	
Source System	Used to indicate the external system from where the policy is originated.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the policy ID is not specified.
Policy Number	Used to indicate the policy number.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the policy ID is not specified.
Reinstatement Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to reinstate the policy.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a reason which is defined for the status specified in the <b>Policy Reinstatement Status for Reason Verification</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.	

## CSV File Format for Bill Group Sorting Upload Request

Before uploading a bill group sorting file, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following values in the specified order separated by a comma:

Sr. No.	Value	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
1	Bill Group ID	Used to indicate the bill group (i.e. person) for whom you want to define the sort ID.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> You must specify an effective child person of the parent customer for whom you are creating the bill group sorting upload request. In addition, note that you must specify a child person whose person type is set to <b>Bill Group</b> and who is related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the <b>Person Relationship Type</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the bill group (i.e. person) identifier type and bill group (i.e. person) identifier are not specified.
2	Bill Group Identifier Type	Used to specify the bill group (i.e. person) identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
			<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the bill group (i.e. person) ID is not specified.

Sr. No.	Value	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
3	Bill Group Identifier	Used to specify identifier of the bill group (i.e. person) for whom you want to define the sort ID.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the bill group (i.e. person) ID is not specified.	
4	Sort ID	Used to specify the sort ID.	Yes
5	Description	Used to specify the description for the sort ID.	Yes
6	Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the sort ID is effective for the bill group.	Yes
		<b>Note:</b> The start date cannot be later than the end date.	
7	End Date	Used to specify the date till when the sort ID is effective for the bill group.	No
		<b>Note:</b> The end date cannot be earlier than the start date.	

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## CSV File Format for Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters Upload Request

Before uploading a bill group derivation and pricing parameters file, you need to ensure that the CSV file contains the following values in the specified order separated by a comma:

Sr. No.	Value	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
1	Source System	Used to indicate the source system from where the claim and enrollment transactions are received.	Yes
		<b>Note:</b> You must specify a source system which already exists in the extendable lookup which is specified in the <b>Source System Extendable Lookup</b> parameter of the <b>C1-BLVLVALID</b> algorithm.	
2	Parameter 1	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	Yes
		<b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&) character in the parameter 1.	

Sr. No.	Value	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
3	Parameter 2	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	No
		<b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&) character in the parameter 2.	
4	Parameter 3	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	No
		<b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&) character in the parameter 3.	
5	Parameter 4	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	No
		<b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&) character in the parameter 4.	
6	Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the derivation and pricing parameters are effective for the bill group and sort ID combination.	Yes
		<b>Note:</b> The effective date must be within the date range of the sort ID defined for the bill group.	
7	Bill Group ID	Used to indicate the bill group (i.e. person) for whom you want to define the derivation and pricing parameters.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> You must specify an effective child person of the parent customer for whom you are creating the bill group derivation and pricing parameters upload request. In addition, note that you must specify a child person whose person type is set to <b>Bill Group</b> and who is related to the parent customer using a relationship type which is specified in the <b>Person Relationship Type</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration.	
8	Bill Group Identifier Type	Used to specify the bill group (i.e. person) identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
			<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the bill group (i.e. person) ID is not specified.
9	Bill Group Identifier	Used to specify identifier of the bill group (i.e. person) for whom you want to define the derivation and pricing parameters.	Yes (Conditional)
			<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the bill group (i.e. person) ID is not specified.



Sr. No.	Value	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
10	Sort ID	Used to indicate the sort ID of the bill group for which you want to define the derivation and pricing parameters.	Yes

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Upload Request Type

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define an upload request type using which you can upload a file. An upload request of the specified upload request type is created on uploading the file. It is the upload request type which helps the system to understand how to process the file. If you upload a file which exceeds the maximum file size, the system will not allow you to upload the file.

The **Adjustment Upload Request Type (C1-AdjRequestType)** business object is used for the maintenance of upload request types for uploading CSV data. Configurations like upload file size, approval workflow can be configured using this object. If you are going to upload adjustment data files using an upload request type, you need to specify the match types (using which the adjustments must be created) in the upload request type. At present, the following two match types are shipped with the product:

- Contract
- Contract Type

You can also define custom match types, if required. You must use the **ADJ\_MATCH\_TYPE** lookup field to add a new match type. You need to attach an algorithm to each match type to determine the contract against which the adjustment must be created. At present, the following algorithm types and sample algorithms are shipped with the product:

Match Type	Algorithm Type	Sample Algorithm	Algorithm Description
Contract	C1-MTCIALG	C1-MTCIALG	This algorithm fetches contract ID for each adjustment record where the match type is set to <b>Contract (CONT)</b> .
Contract Type	C1-MTCTALG	C1-MTCTALG	This algorithm fetches contract ID based on the contract type and account ID for each adjustment record where the match type is set to <b>Contract Type (CNTY)</b> . If there are multiple active contracts of the specified contract type on the account, the contract ID with the latest start date will be fetched.

The **Upload Request Type (C1-UplRequestType)** business object will be used for the maintenance of upload request types for uploading CSV data. Configurations like upload file size, approval workflow can be configured using this object. The system enables you to upload data for the following using the **Upload Request** feature:

- Billable Charge (Adhoc and Regular)
- Hold Request
- Refund Request
- Write Off Request
- Policy Reinstatement

- Bill Group Sort ID
- Derivation and Pricing Parameters for a Bill Group and Sort ID Combination

It also enables you to update the following information:

- Contract rider of a contract
- Bill cycle of an account

It is the upload request type which helps the system to determine:

- Whether the file must be approved by the approver before creating or updating the entities
- Which business object must be used for creating the upload request
- Which business object must be used for creating or updating entities through an upload request
- Which foreign key reference must be used for generating information string for the entity
- A set of fields using which you can search records uploaded through an upload request





You can also define custom algorithm types and algorithms, if required. The **Upload Request Type** screen allows you to define, edit, copy, and delete an upload request type. This screen consists of the following zones:


- [Upload Request Type List](#) on page 1382
- [Upload Request Type](#) on page 1383

**Parent topic:** [Upload Request](#) on page 1319

### Upload Request Type List

The **Upload Request Type List** zone lists upload request types that are already defined in the system. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Upload Request Type	Displays the upload request type.
Description	Displays the description of the upload request type.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Upload Request Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the upload request type.
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Upload Request Type</b> screen appears where you can define an upload request type using an existing upload request type.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the upload request type. <b>Note:</b> You can delete an upload request type only when you have not uploaded a file (i.e. created an upload request) using the upload request type.
Mapping	On clicking the <b>Mapping</b> (  ) icon, the mapping screen appears where you can map the columns of CSV file with the upload request type.

On clicking the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to an upload request type, the **Upload Request Type** zone appears with the details of the respective upload request type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an upload request type	<a href="#">Defining an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1386

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for an upload request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1392
How to edit an upload request type	<a href="#">Editing an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1393
How to copy an upload request type	<a href="#">Copying an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1397
How to delete an upload request type	<a href="#">Deleting an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1397
How to map an upload request type	<a href="#">Mapping an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1401
How to view the details of an upload request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Upload Request Type Details</a> on page 1403

## Upload Request Type

The **Upload Request Type** zone displays the details of the upload request type. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Main** – This section provides basic information about the upload request type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Upload Request Type	Displays the upload request type.
Upload Request Business Object	<p>Indicates the business object that will be used to create the upload request. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.</p>
Description	Displays the description of the upload request type.
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the upload request type.
Status	<p>Indicates the status of the upload request type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>
File Size (KB)	<p>Displays the maximum size of file (in kilobytes) that you can upload using the upload request type. If you upload a file which exceeds the maximum file size, the system will not allow you to upload the file.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you create upload request type using <b>Adjustment Upload Request Type</b> business object.</p>

Field Name	Field Description
Defer Algorithm	<p>Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered when you create entities (for example, adjustments) or approve the uploaded file (for example, adjustment data file). This algorithm checks whether the number of records in the uploaded file exceeds the online record process limit. If the number of records in the uploaded file does not exceed the online record process limit, the system creates the entities in the real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of records in the uploaded file exceeds the online record process limit, the system creates the entities (for example, adjustments) in the real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of records in the uploaded file exceeds the online record process limit, the system creates the entities (for example, adjustments) in the deferred mode.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when you create upload request type using <b>Adjustment Upload Request Type</b> business object.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Algorithm</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective algorithm.</p> <p>In <b>Upload Request Type</b>, online and deferred mode is used for processing the file if approval is not required. The defer algorithm is invoked if the number of records to be processed on the respective business object is more than the count specified on the algorithm then the status for number of records is changed from <b>Validated</b> to <b>Deferred Processing</b> else the status is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p>
Approval Required	Indicates whether approval is required for a file which is uploaded using the upload request type.
Approval To Do Type	<p>Indicates that the To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the upload request for approval.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Type</b> screen appears with the details of the respective To Do type.</p>
Approval To Do Role	<p>Indicates that users with the specified To Do role can only approve or reject the upload request submitted for approval.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p> <p>On selecting the <b>To Do Type</b>, the <b>To Do Roles</b> configured on the <b>To Do Type</b> is populated.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Role</b> screen appears with the details of the respective To Do role.</p>

Field Name	Field Description
FK Reference	<p>Indicates the foreign key reference which specifies the created upload request type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when you create upload request type using <b>Upload Request Type</b> business object.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Foreign Key Reference</b> screen appears with the details of the respective foreign key.</p>

In addition, this section has the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Match Type	<p>Indicates the match type using which the adjustments must be created when you upload a file using the upload request type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contract</li> <li>Contract Type</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Match Type</b> column is displayed for <b>Adjustment Upload Request</b> Business Object.</p>
Algorithm	<p>Indicates the algorithm that will be triggered when you upload an adjustment data file. This algorithm determines the contract against which the adjustment must be created.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Algorithm</b> screen appears with the details of the respective algorithm. The <b>Algorithm</b> column is displayed for <b>Adjustment Upload Request</b> Business Object.</p>

- **Characteristics** – This section lists the characteristics defined for the upload request type. It contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the upload request type.
Delete	<p>Used to delete the upload request type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can delete an upload request type only when you have not uploaded a file (i.e. created an upload request) using the upload request type.</p>
Duplicate	Used to create a new upload request type using an existing upload request type.

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the upload request type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

By default, the **Upload Request Type** zone does not appear in the **Upload Request Type** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to an upload request type in the **Upload Request Type List** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an upload request type	<a href="#">Defining an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1386
How to define characteristics for an upload request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1392
How to edit an upload request type	<a href="#">Editing an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1393
How to copy an upload request type	<a href="#">Copying an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1397
How to delete an upload request type	<a href="#">Deleting an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1397
How to map an upload request type	<a href="#">Mapping an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1401
How to view the details of an upload request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Upload Request Type Details</a> on page 1403

## Defining an Upload Request Type

### Prerequisites

To define an upload request type, you should have:

- Upload request business objects defined in the application
- Defer algorithm for adjustment is defined using the **C1-UPLDEFEVL** algorithm type
- Defer algorithm for upload is defined using the **C1-DEFERUPLD** algorithm type
- Algorithm defined using the **C1-MTCIALG** algorithm type when you want to create adjustment using the **Contract** match type
- **C1-ADJUP** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do while submitting an adjustment upload request for approval
- **C1-BCUUR** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do while submitting a bill cycle update upload request for approval
- **C1-CRUUR** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do while submitting a contract rider update upload request for approval
- **C1-HLDUR** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do while submitting a hold upload request for approval
- **C1-REFUR** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do while submitting a refund upload request for approval
- **C1-WOUR** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do while submitting a write off upload request for approval

- **C1-BCUR** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do while submitting a billable charge upload request for approval
- **C1-RPUR** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do while submitting a reinstatement upload request for approval
- **C1-BGSRT** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do while submitting a bill group sorting upload request for approval
- **C1-BGDVP** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do while submitting a bill group derivation and pricing parameters upload request for approval

### **Procedure**

To define an upload request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **U** and then click **Upload Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Upload Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use to create the upload request type.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Business Object** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Upload Request Type** screen.

**Note:** The **Select Business Object** screen appears only when there are multiple upload request type business objects defined in the application. If there is only one upload request type business object defined in the application, the **Upload Request Type** screen appears.

4. Select the required upload request type business object from the respective field.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Upload Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:


- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the upload request type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the upload request type.



The **Main** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Used to specify the upload request type.	Yes
Upload Request Type Business Object	Indicates the upload request type business object used while defining the upload request type.	Not applicable
Upload Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the upload request.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the upload request type.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the upload request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the upload request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Active</li><li>Inactive</li></ul>	Yes
File Size (KB)	Used to specify the maximum size of file (in kilobytes) that you can upload using the upload request type. If you upload a file which exceeds the maximum file size, the system will not allow you to upload the file.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears when <b>Adjustment Upload Request Type</b> business object is selected.	




Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Defer Algorithm	<p>Used to attach an algorithm that will be triggered when you create entities (for example, adjustments) or approve the uploaded file (for example, adjustment data file). This algorithm checks whether the number of records in the uploaded file exceeds the online record process limit (defined in the Defer algorithm). If the number of records in the uploaded file does not exceed the online record process limit, the system creates the entities (for example, adjustments) in the real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of records in the uploaded file exceeds the online record process limit, the system creates the entities (for example, adjustments) in the deferred mode.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Deferred mode means in the background when the <b>Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)</b> batch is invoked. You can configure the <b>Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)</b> batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the <b>Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)</b> batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any upload requests in the <b>Deferred</b> status. If there is an upload request in the <b>Deferred</b> status, the system creates the entities (for example, adjustments).</p> <p>This field appears when <b>Adjustment Upload Request Type</b> business object is selected.</p> <p>In <b>Upload Request Type</b>, online and deferred mode is used for processing the file if approval is not required. The defer algorithm is invoked if the number of records to be processed on the respective business object is more than the count specified on the algorithm then the status for number of records is changed from <b>Validated</b> to <b>Deferred Processing</b> else the status is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)																					
Entity Business Object	Used to indicate for creating Business Object of the entity using the upload request type.	No																					
	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Business Object Search</b> window appears.  This field appears when <b>Upload Request Type</b> business object is selected.																						
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required for a file which is uploaded using the upload request type.	No																					
Approval To Do Type	Used to indicate that To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the upload request for approval.	Yes (Conditional)																					
	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.  The following table lists the To Do type using which the To Do must be generated for the different upload requests:	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.																					
	<table><tr><th>Upload Request</th><th>To Do Type</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment</td><td>C1-ADJUP</td></tr><tr><td>Bill Cycle Update</td><td>C1-BCUUR</td></tr><tr><td>Billable Charge</td><td>C1-BCUR</td></tr><tr><td>Contract Rider Update</td><td>C1-CRUUR</td></tr><tr><td>Hold Request</td><td>C1-HLDUR</td></tr><tr><td>Refund Request</td><td>C1-REFUR</td></tr><tr><td>Write Off Request</td><td>C1-WOUR</td></tr><tr><td>Policy Reinstatement</td><td>C1-RPUR</td></tr><tr><td>Bill Group Sorting</td><td>C1-BGSRT</td></tr><tr><td>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</td><td>C1-BGDVP</td></tr></table>		Upload Request	To Do Type	Adjustment	C1-ADJUP	Bill Cycle Update	C1-BCUUR	Billable Charge	C1-BCUR	Contract Rider Update	C1-CRUUR	Hold Request	C1-HLDUR	Refund Request	C1-REFUR	Write Off Request	C1-WOUR	Policy Reinstatement	C1-RPUR	Bill Group Sorting	C1-BGSRT	Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters
Upload Request	To Do Type																						
Adjustment	C1-ADJUP																						
Bill Cycle Update	C1-BCUUR																						
Billable Charge	C1-BCUR																						
Contract Rider Update	C1-CRUUR																						
Hold Request	C1-HLDUR																						
Refund Request	C1-REFUR																						
Write Off Request	C1-WOUR																						
Policy Reinstatement	C1-RPUR																						
Bill Group Sorting	C1-BGSRT																						
Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters	C1-BGDVP																						




Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the upload request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
FK Reference	Used to indicate the FK Reference code to display the entity information. <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Foreign Key Search</b> window appears. This field appears when <b>Upload Request Type</b> business object is selected.	No

In addition, this section contains the following fields in the grid:

**Note:** This field appears when **Adjustment Upload Request Type** business object is selected.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Match Type	Used to indicate the match type using which you want to create adjustments when you upload a file using the upload request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contract</li> <li>Contract Type</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you select the <b>Adjustment Upload Request</b> option from the <b>Upload Request Business Object</b> list.
Algorithm	Used to attach an algorithm that will be triggered when you upload an adjustment data file. This algorithm determines the contract against which the adjustment must be created. <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you select the match type from the respective field.

6. Enter the required details.

<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You can search for an algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the respective field.</p> <p>If you want to associate more than one match type with the upload request type, click the <b>Add</b>  icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a match type from the upload request type, click the <b>Delete</b>  icon corresponding to the match type.</p>
---

7. Define characteristics for the upload request type, if required.

8. Click **Save**.

The upload request type is defined.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Upload Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request Type</a> on page 1381
<b>Upload Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request Type List</a> on page 1382
How to define characteristics for an upload request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1392

**Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request Type**

**Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for an upload request type, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Upload Request Type)

**Procedure**


To define characteristics for an upload request type:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying an upload request type.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Upload Request Type.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the upload request type.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the upload request type.

2. Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the upload request type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the upload request type, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an upload request type	<a href="#">Defining an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1386
How to edit an upload request type	<a href="#">Editing an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1393
How to copy an upload request type	<a href="#">Copying an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1397

## Editing an Upload Request Type


### Prerequisites

To edit an upload request type, you should have:

- Upload request business objects defined in the application
- Defer algorithm for adjustment is defined using the **C1-UPLDEFEVL** algorithm type
- Defer algorithm for upload is defined using the **C1-DEFERUPLD** algorithm type
- Algorithm defined using the **C1-MTCIALG** algorithm type when you want to create adjustment using the Contract match type
- Algorithm defined using the **C1-MTCTALG** algorithm type when you want to create adjustment using the Contract Type match type
- **C1-ADJUP** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do entries generated while submitting an adjustment upload request for approval
- **C1-UPLAPPENT** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting an upload request for approval

### Procedure

To edit an upload request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **U** and then click **Upload Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. In the **Upload Request Type List** zone, click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the upload request type whose details you want to edit.



The **Upload Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:


- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the upload request type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the upload request type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Displays the upload request type.	Not applicable
Upload Request Type Business Object	Indicates the upload request type business object used while defining the upload request type.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Business Object	Used to specify the business object that you want to use while creating the upload request.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the upload request type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the upload request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the upload request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Active</li><li>• Inactive</li></ul>	Yes
File Size (KB)	Used to specify the maximum size of file (in kilobytes) that you can upload using the upload request type. If you upload a file which exceeds the maximum file size, the system will not allow you to upload the file.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears when the business object is <b>Adjustment Upload Request Type</b> .	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Defer Algorithm	<p>Used to attach an algorithm that will be triggered when you create entities (for example, adjustments) or approve the uploaded file (for example, adjustment data file). This algorithm checks whether the number of records in the uploaded file exceeds the online record process limit (defined in the Defer algorithm). If the number of records in the uploaded file does not exceed the online record process limit, the system creates the entities (for example, adjustments) in the real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of records in the uploaded file exceeds the online record process limit, the system creates the entities (for example, adjustments) in the deferred mode.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Deferred mode means in the background when the <b>Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)</b> batch is invoked. You can configure the <b>Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)</b> batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the <b>Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)</b> batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any upload requests in the <b>Deferred</b> status. If there is an upload request in the <b>Deferred</b> status, the system creates the entities (for example, adjustments).</p> <p>This field appears when the business object is <b>Adjustment Upload Request Type</b>.</p>	Yes
Entity Business Object	<p>Used to indicate for creating Business Object of the entity using the upload request type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Business Object Search</b> window appears.</p>	No
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required for a file which is uploaded using the upload request type.	No
Approval To Do Type	<p>Used to indicate that To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the upload request for approval.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.</p>	<p>Yes (Conditional)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p>

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the upload request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
FK Reference	Used to indicate the FK Reference code to display the entity information. <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Foreign Key Search</b> window appears. This field appears when the business object is <b>Upload Request Type</b> .	No




In addition, this section contains the following fields in the grid:

**Note:** The below section appears when the business object is **Adjustment Upload Request Type**.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Match Type	Used to indicate the match type using which you want to create adjustments when you upload a file using the upload request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contract</li> <li>Contract Type</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you select the <b>Adjustment Upload Request</b> option from the <b>Upload Request Business Object</b> list.
Algorithm	Used to attach an algorithm that will be triggered when you upload an adjustment data file. This algorithm determines the contract against which the adjustment must be created.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you select the match type from the respective field.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Upload Request Type** zone to edit the details of the upload request type.

#### 4. Modify the required details.

<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You can search for an algorithm by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the respective field.</p> <p>If you want to associate more than one match type with the upload request type, click the <b>Add</b>  icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a match type from the upload request type, click the <b>Delete</b>  icon corresponding to the match type.</p>
---

#### 5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the upload request type, if required.



6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the upload request type are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Upload Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request Type</a> on page 1381
<b>Upload Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request Type List</a> on page 1382
<b>Upload Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request Type</a> on page 1383
How to define characteristics for an upload request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1392

## Deleting an Upload Request Type

### Procedure

To delete an upload request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **U** and then click **Upload Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. In the **Upload Request Type List** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the upload request type that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the upload request type.

**Note:** You can delete an upload request type only when you have not uploaded a file (i.e. created an upload request) using the upload request type.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Delete** button in the **Upload Request Type** zone to delete the upload request type.

4. Click **OK**.

The upload request type is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Upload Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request Type</a> on page 1381
<b>Upload Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request Type List</a> on page 1382
<b>Upload Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request Type</a> on page 1383

## Copying an Upload Request Type

Instead of creating an upload request type from scratch, you can create a new upload request type using an existing upload request type. This is possible through copying an upload request type. On copying an upload request type, the details including the match types (only for adjustments) and characteristics are copied to the new upload request type. You can then edit the details, if required.


### Prerequisites

To copy an upload request type, you should have:

- Upload request type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Upload request business objects defined in the application
- Defer algorithm defined using the **C1-UPLDEFEV** algorithm type
- Defer algorithm for upload is defined using the **C1-DEFERUPLD** algorithm type
- Algorithm defined using the **C1-MTCIALG** algorithm type when you want to create adjustment using the Contract match type
- Algorithm defined using the **C1-MTCTALG** algorithm type when you want to create adjustment using the Contract Type match type
- **C1-ADJUP** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do entries generated while submitting an upload request for approval
- **C1-UPLAPPENT** To Do type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting an upload request for approval

### Procedure

To copy an upload request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **U** and then click **Upload Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. In the **Upload Request Type List** zone, click the **Duplicate**  icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the upload request type whose copy you want to create.




The **Upload Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the upload request type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the upload request type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Used to specify the upload request type.	Yes
Upload Request Type Business Object	Indicates the upload request type business object used while defining the upload request type (whose copy you want to create).	Not applicable
Upload Request Business Object	Used to specify the business object that you want to use while creating the upload request.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the upload request type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the upload request type.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the status of the upload request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
File Size (KB)	Used to specify the maximum size of file (in kilobytes) that you can upload using the upload request type. If you upload a file which exceeds the maximum file size, the system will not allow you to upload the file. <div> <b>Note:</b> This field appears when the business object is <b>Adjustment Upload Request Type</b>. </div>	Yes
Defer Algorithm	Used to attach an algorithm that will be triggered when you create entities (for example, adjustments) or approve the uploaded file (for example, adjustment data file). This algorithm checks whether the number of records in the uploaded file exceeds the online record process limit (defined in the Defer algorithm). If the number of records in the uploaded file does not exceed the online record process limit, the system creates the entities (for example, adjustments) in the real time (i.e. immediately). However, if the number of records in the uploaded file exceeds the online record process limit, the system creates the entities (for example, adjustments) in the deferred mode. <div> <b>Note:</b>  Deferred mode means in the background when the <b>Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)</b> batch is invoked. You can configure the <b>Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)</b> batch such that it is executed at regular intervals. When the <b>Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)</b> batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any upload requests in the <b>Deferred</b> status. If there is an upload request in the <b>Deferred</b> status, the system creates the entities (for example, adjustments).  This field appears when the business object is <b>Adjustment Upload Request Type</b>. </div>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Entity Business Object	Used to indicate to create the copy of Business Object of the entity using the upload request type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Business Object Search</b> window appears. This field appears when the business object is <b>Upload Request Type</b> .	
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required for a file which is uploaded using the upload request type.	No
Approval To Do Type	Used to indicate that To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the upload request for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the upload request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
FK Reference	Used to indicate the FK Reference code to display the entity information.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Foreign Key Search</b> window appears. This field appears when the business object is <b>Upload Request Type</b> .	

In addition, this section contains the following fields in the grid:

**Note:** The below section appears when the business object is **Adjustment Upload Request Type**.



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Match Type	Used to indicate the match type using which you want to create adjustments when you upload a file using the upload request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contract</li> <li>Contract Type</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you select the <b>Adjustment Upload Request</b> option from the <b>Upload Request Business Object</b> list.
Algorithm	Used to attach an algorithm that will be triggered when you upload an adjustment data file. This algorithm determines the contract against which the adjustment must be created.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you select the match type from the respective field.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Duplicate** button in the **Upload Request Type** zone to create a copy of the upload request type.

4. Enter the required details.

**Note:**

You can search for an algorithm by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

If you want to associate more than one match type with the upload request type, click the **Add**  icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a match type from the upload request type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the match type.

5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the upload request type, if required.

6. Click **Save**.

The new upload request type is defined.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Upload Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request Type</a> on page 1381
<b>Upload Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request Type List</a> on page 1382
<b>Upload Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request Type</a> on page 1383
How to define characteristics for an upload request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request Type</a> on page 1392

## Mapping an Upload Request Type

### Prerequisites

To map an upload request type, you should have:

- Upload request type (whose columns you want to map with the CSV file) defined in the application
- Upload request business objects defined in the application

**Note:** Once an upload request type is used for creating an upload request, then mapping for the same cannot be edited. Duplicating the upload request type will not duplicate the mapping data. You have to add the mapping details manually after duplicating an upload request type.

**Procedure**

To map an upload request type:

- 1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- 2. From the **Admin** menu, select **U** and then click **Upload Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- 3. In the **Upload Request Type List** zone, click the **Mapping** icon in the **Mapping** column corresponding to the upload request type whose columns you want to map with the CSV file.

The **Upload Request Type Mapping** screen appears. It contains the following field:

**Note:** The **Mapping** icon is applicable only for upload request type created using **Upload Request Type (C1-UplRequestType)** business object, and it is not applicable for upload request type created using **Adjustment Upload Request Type (C1-AdjRequestType)** business object.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Indicates the upload request type.	Not applicable

The **Upload Request Type Mapping** screen also contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
CSV Column Header	Used to specify the rows correspond to the columns in CSV file.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This column is required when you search the <b>Data Records</b> zone in the <b>Upload Request</b> screen.
Use for Searching	Used to indicate whether the defined <b>CSV Column Header</b> is searchable or not.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> Upto 10 rows can be selected as searchable rows.	<b>Note:</b> This column is required to be selected to be shown in the <b>Data Records</b> zone in the <b>Upload Request</b> screen
Sequence Number	Used to specify the sequence of the searchable fields.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> Searchable rows should have sequence less than or equal to 10.	<b>Note:</b> This column is required to be selected to be shown sequentially in the <b>Data Records</b> zone in the <b>Upload Request</b> screen

- 4. Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you want to add more than one column names mapped to the upload request type, click the **Add** (+) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove a column name mapped to the upload request type, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the column header.

5. Click **Save**.

The columns are mapped to the CSV files for upload request type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Upload Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request Type</a> on page 1381
<b>Upload Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request Type List</a> on page 1382
<b>Upload Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request Type</a> on page 1383

## Viewing the Upload Request Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of an upload request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **U** and then click **Upload Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Upload Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Upload Request Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Upload Request Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast** (📡) icon corresponding to the upload request type whose details you want to view.  
The **Upload Request Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the upload request type in the **Upload Request Type** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Upload Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request Type</a> on page 1381
<b>Upload Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request Type List</a> on page 1382
<b>Upload Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request Type</a> on page 1383

## Upload Request (Used for Searching)

The **Upload Request** screen allows you to upload, validate and process the transaction data. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Upload Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1410

This screen consists of the following zone:

- [Search Upload Request](#) on page 1404

Search Upload Request

The **Search Upload Request** zone allows you to search for a upload request using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for an upload request using <b>Request Details</b> .	Yes
Upload Date From	Used to search upload requests which are created from a particular date.	No
To	Used to search upload requests which are created till a particular date.	No
Status	Used to search upload requests with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Approval In Progress</li><li>• Canceled</li><li>• Deferred Processing</li><li>• Draft</li><li>• Processed</li><li>• Rejected</li><li>• Validated</li></ul>	No
Upload Request Type	Used to search upload requests which are created using a particular upload request type.	No
User ID	Used to search upload requests which are created by a particular user.	No
Upload Request ID	Used to search a particular upload request.	No
File Name	Used to search a particular file name.	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an upload request.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Upload Date	Displays the date and time when the upload request was created in the system.
Payment Request Information	Displays information about the upload request. <div><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Upload Request</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective upload request.</div>



Column Name	Column Description
Status	Indicates the status of the upload request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Canceled</li> <li>• Deferred Processing</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Validated</li> </ul>
Upload Request Type	Displays the upload request type using which the upload request is created.
Entity Business Object	Displays the business object code of the entity.
File Name	Displays the uploaded file name.
Total Records	Displays the total number of records in the uploaded csv file.
Created By	Indicates the user who has created the upload request.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Upload Request</a> on page 1405
How to view the details of an upload request	<a href="#">Viewing the Upload Request Details</a> on page 1406
How to create an upload request	<a href="#">Creating an Upload Request</a> on page 1406
How to define characteristics for an upload request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request</a> on page 1409

## **Searching for an Upload Request**

### **Prerequisites**

To search for an upload request, you should have:

- Upload request types defined in the application

### **Procedure**

To search for an upload request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Tools** and then click **Upload Request**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Upload Request** sub-menu.  
The **Upload Request** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Upload Request** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of upload requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1403
<b>Search Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Upload Request</a> on page 1404

**Viewing the Upload Request Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of an upload request:

1. Search for the upload request in the **Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the upload request whose details you want to view.

The **Upload Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
    - **Upload Request** – Displays the details of the upload request.
    - **Data Records** – Lists the details of data records uploaded in the csv file.
  - **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the upload request.
3. View the details of the upload request in the **Upload Request** zone.
  4. View the data records in the csv file of the upload request in the **Data Records** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Upload Request</a> on page 1405
<b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1410
<b>Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request</a> on page 1410
<b>Data Records</b> zone	<a href="#">Data Records</a> on page 1413

**Creating an Upload Request**

**Prerequisites**

To create an upload request, you should have:

- Upload request types defined in the application

### **Procedure**

To create an upload request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Tools** and then click **Upload Request**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Upload Request** sub-menu.

The **Select Upload Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	<p>Used to indicate the upload request type using which you want to create the upload request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The following upload request types are shipped with the product:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ADJ_UPL_REQ_TYPE_APVL</li> <li>• ADJ_UPL_REQ_TYPE_WO_APVL</li> <li>• BC_UPL_REQ_TYPE</li> <li>• BILL_CYCLE_UPD_UPL_REQ_TYPE</li> <li>• BILL_LVL_UPL_REQ_TYPE</li> <li>• BILL_SRT_UPL_REQ_TYPE</li> <li>• HOLD_UPL_REQ_TYPE</li> <li>• REFUND_UPL_REQ_TYPE</li> <li>• REIN_UPL_REQ_TYPE</li> <li>• SA_RIDER_UPD_UPL_REQ_TYPE</li> <li>• WO_UPL_REQ_TYPE</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Upload Request Type** screen by clicking the **Upload** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Upload Request** screen.


**Note:** The **Select Upload Request Type** screen appears only when there are multiple upload request types defined in the application. If there is only one upload request type defined in the application, the **{XXX} Upload Request** screen appears.

4. Select the required upload request type from the respective field.
5. Click **OK**.

The **{XXX} Upload Request** screen appears. Here, {XXX} changes depending on the upload request type that you have selected. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the upload request.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the upload request.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Indicates the upload request type using which the upload request will be created.	Not applicable
Parent Customer	<p>Used to indicate the person for whom you want to create the bill group sorting or bill group derivation and pricing parameters upload request.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when you are creating an upload request using an upload request type where the upload request business object is set to <b>C1-BillGrpSortUploadRequest</b> or <b>C1-BillLevelUploadRequest</b>.</p> <p>The system allows you to create a bill group sorting or bill group derivation and pricing parameters upload request for a person whose person type is set to <b>Parent Customer</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Person Search</b> window appears.</p>	Yes
File Name	<p>Used to specify the name and path of the file that you want to upload.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can also click the <b>Browse</b> button corresponding to this field to browse to the location where the file is available in the system.</p>	Yes
Replace Existing File	Used to indicate whether you want to replace any existing file in the system. You must select this check box when you want to upload the same file once again.	No
Comments	Used to specify additional information about the upload request.	No

- Click the **Browse** button corresponding to the **File Name** field.

The **Choose File to Upload** dialog box appears.

- Browse to the location where the file that you want to upload is available in the system.
- Click **Open**.

The file name along with the path appears in the **File Name** field.

- Select the **Replace Existing File** check box depending on whether you want to upload the same file once again in the system.
- Define characteristics for the upload request, if required.

**11. Click Save.**

A message appears indicating the number of records which are successfully uploaded. Then, an upload request is created in the **Draft** status. If the required identifier (such as account ID, person ID, policy ID, or bill group ID) is available in the record, the status of the record is set to **Pending**. However, if the required identifier could not be derived from the system, the status of the record is set to **Invalid**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1403
How to define characteristics for an upload request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request</a> on page 1409

**Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request****Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for an upload request, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Upload Request**)

**Procedure**


To define characteristics for an upload request:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing an upload request.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the upload request.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the upload request.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.  <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Upload Request</b> .	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the upload request.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.  <b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the upload request.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the upload request, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the upload request, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to create an upload request	<a href="#">Creating an Upload Request</a> on page 1406
How to edit an upload request	<a href="#">Editing an Upload Request</a> on page 1415

**Upload Request (Used for Viewing)**

Once you create an upload request, the **Upload Request** screen allows you to:

- Edit the details of an upload request
- Delete an upload request
- View the details of an upload request
- Validate an upload request
- Cancel an upload request
- Submit an upload request
- Approve or reject an upload request
- View the data uploaded to a request
- View the log of an upload request
- Add a log entry for an upload request

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- Main** – This tab contains the following two zones:
  - Upload Request** – Displays the details of the upload request.
  - Data Records** – Lists the data records of the upload request.
- Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the upload request.

**Upload Request - Main**

The **Main** tab contains the following zones:

- [Upload Request](#) on page 1410
- [Data Records](#) on page 1413

**Upload Request**

The **Upload Request** zone displays the details of the upload request. This zone contains the following sections:

- Main** – This section provides basic information about the upload request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Upload Request Information	Displays information about the upload request.
Upload Request Type	Indicates the upload request type using which the upload request is created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Upload Request Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the upload request type.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Approved</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• Deferred Processing</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Submitted</li> <li>• Validated</li> </ul>
File Name	Displays name of the uploaded file.

- **Statistics** – This section lists the statistics of records in the upload request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Total Records	Displays total number of records in CSV file.
Valid Records	Displays the count of valid data records.
Error Records	Displays the count of data records in error status.
Pending Records	Displays the count of data records pending after successful derivation.
Invalid Records	Displays the count of data records after unsuccessful derivation.
Processed Records	Displays the count of data records after processing.

- **Characteristics** – This section lists the characteristics defined for the upload request. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Indicates the date from when the characteristic is effective for the upload request.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:

Column Name	Column Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the upload request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears when the upload request is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Validated</b> status.
Delete	Used to delete the upload request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the upload request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Validate	Used to validate the upload request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Validate</b> button appears only when the upload request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Cancel	Used to cancel the upload request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Cancel</b> button appears only when the upload request is in the <b>Validated</b> status.
Submit	Used to submit the upload request for approval.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The upload request is in the <b>Validated</b> status.</li> <li>The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected in the upload request type using which the upload request is created.</li> </ul>
Approve	Used to approve the upload request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Approve</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The upload request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the upload request.</li> </ul>
Reject	Used to reject the upload request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Reject</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The upload request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the upload request.</li> </ul>

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the upload request is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.



Field Name	Field Description
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the upload request status is updated
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the upload request is created.


### Data Records

The **Data Records** zone lists the data records of the upload request. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search Criteria 1, Search Criteria 2, ....., Search Criteria 10	Used to search for data from the CSV file with respect to the field.	No
<b>Note:</b> We have used generic field labels here. However, these labels will change depending on the mapping defined in the respective upload request type.		
Record Status	Used to indicate whether you want to search data records for an upload request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Error</li> <li>• Invalid</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Valid</li> </ul>	No

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
View	On clicking the <b>View</b>  icon, the <b>Data Record Details</b> window appears where you can view the details of the data records.
Search Result 1, Search Result 2, ....., Search Result 10	Displays data from the CSV file.
<b>Note:</b> We have used generic field labels here. However, these labels will change depending on the mapping defined in the respective upload request type.	

Column Name	Column Description
Record Status	Indicates the status of the data record. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Error</li> <li>Invalid</li> <li>Pending</li> <li>Processed</li> <li>Valid</li> </ul>
Message(s)	Displays message for the data record respective to it's status.
Entity ID	Displays entity ID of the upload request. <b>Note:</b> The entity ID is displayed only for data records with <b>Processed</b> status.
Entity Information	Displays entity information for the <b>FK Reference</b> selected in <b>Upload Request Type</b> screen. <b>Note:</b> The entity information is displayed only for data records with <b>Processed</b> status.

**Note:** By default the **Search Results** section displays data records for all the statuses though data is not added or selected to any of the fields and are searched through the **Search Criteria** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view details against each data record.	<a href="#">Viewing the Data Record Details</a> on page 1426

## Upload Request - Log

The **Log** tab contains the following zone:

- [Upload Request Log](#) on page 1414

### Upload Request Log

The **Upload Request Log** zone on the **Upload Request** screen lists the complete trail of actions performed on the upload request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the upload request.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the upload request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the upload request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the upload request.
Status Reason	Displays the status reason of action performed on the upload request.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the upload request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Upload Request Log** zone.

The **Add Upload Request Log** window appears. Enter **Log Details** and click **Save**. The upload request log is added.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of an upload request	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of an Upload Request</a> on page 1427
How to add the log for an upload request	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for an Upload Request</a> on page 1428

## Editing an Upload Request

### Procedure

To edit an upload request:

1. Search for the upload request in the **Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the upload request whose details you want to edit.

The **Upload Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Upload Request** zone.

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the upload request is in the **Draft** or **Validated** status.

The entity **Upload Request** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the upload request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Type	Displays the upload request type using which the upload request is created.	Not applicable
File Name	Displays name of the uploaded CSV file.	Not applicable
Comments	Used to indicate the comments for upload request.	No

- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the upload request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the upload request.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the upload request.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.  <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Upload Request</b> .	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the Upload request.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the Upload request.

4. Modify the details of the upload request, if required.
5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the upload request, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the upload request are saved.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Upload Request</a> on page 1405
<b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1410
<b>Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request</a> on page 1410
How to define characteristics for an upload request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Upload Request</a> on page 1409

## Deleting an Upload Request

### Procedure

To delete an upload request:

1. Search for the upload request in the **Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the upload request that you want to delete.

The **Upload Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Upload Request** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the upload request.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the upload request is in the **Draft** status.

4. Click **OK**.

The upload request is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Upload Request</a> on page 1405
<b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1410

For more information on...	See...
<b>Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request</a> on page 1410

## Validating an Upload Request

### Prerequisites

To validate an upload request, you should have:

- Upload Request Types defined in the request.

### Procedure

To validate an upload request:

1. Search for the upload request in the **Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the upload request that you want to validate.

The **Upload Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Validate** button in the **Upload Request** zone.

**Note:** The **Validate** button appears only when the upload request is in the **Draft** status.

For more information about the **Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)** batch, refer to Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide.

The status of the upload request is changed to **Validated**.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Upload Request</a> on page 1405
<b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1410
<b>Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request</a> on page 1410

## Cancelling an Upload Request

### Prerequisites

To cancel an upload request, you should have:

- Cancellation reasons defined in the application

**Note:** While cancelling an upload request, you need to specify the reason why you want to cancel the upload request. You can select the appropriate cancellation reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Canceled** status of the **C1-UplRequestType** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

### Procedure

To cancel an upload request:

1. Search for the upload request in the **Upload Request** screen.

- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the upload request that you want to cancel.

The **Upload Request** screen appears.

- 3. Click the **Cancel** button in the **Upload Request** zone.

The **Cancel Reason** window appears. It contains following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Cancel Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to cancel the upload request.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while cancelling the upload request.	No

**Note:** The **Cancel** button appears only when the upload request is in the **Validated** status.

- 4. Select the cancellation reason from the **Cancel Reason** list.
- 5. Click **Save**.

The status of the upload request is changed to **Canceled**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Upload Request</a> on page 1405
<b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1410
<b>Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request</a> on page 1410

**Submitting an Upload Request**

**Procedure**

To submit an upload request:

- 1. Search for the upload request in the **Upload Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the upload request that you want to submit.

The **Upload Request** screen appears.

- 3. Click the **Submit** button in the **Upload Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If...	Then...																				
<p>The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected in the upload request type using which the upload request is created</p>	<p>A To Do of the specified To Do type is created and sent to the approver for approval. The following table lists the To Do type using which the To Do is created for the different upload requests:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Upload Request</th><th>To Do Type</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Bill Cycle Update</td><td>C1-BCUUR</td></tr> <tr> <td>Billable Charge</td><td>C1-BCUR</td></tr> <tr> <td>Contract Rider Update</td><td>C1-CRUUR</td></tr> <tr> <td>Hold Request</td><td>C1-HLDUR</td></tr> <tr> <td>Refund Request</td><td>C1-REFUR</td></tr> <tr> <td>Write Off Request</td><td>C1-WOUR</td></tr> <tr> <td>Policy Reinstatement</td><td>C1-RPUR</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Group Sorting</td><td>C1-BGSRT</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</td><td>C1-BGDVP</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>In addition, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b>.</p>	Upload Request	To Do Type	Bill Cycle Update	C1-BCUUR	Billable Charge	C1-BCUR	Contract Rider Update	C1-CRUUR	Hold Request	C1-HLDUR	Refund Request	C1-REFUR	Write Off Request	C1-WOUR	Policy Reinstatement	C1-RPUR	Bill Group Sorting	C1-BGSRT	Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters	C1-BGDVP
Upload Request	To Do Type																				
Bill Cycle Update	C1-BCUUR																				
Billable Charge	C1-BCUR																				
Contract Rider Update	C1-CRUUR																				
Hold Request	C1-HLDUR																				
Refund Request	C1-REFUR																				
Write Off Request	C1-WOUR																				
Policy Reinstatement	C1-RPUR																				
Bill Group Sorting	C1-BGSRT																				
Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters	C1-BGDVP																				

If...	Then...																				
<p>The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is not selected in the upload request type using which the upload request is created and the number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit defined in the <b>C1-DEFERUPLD</b> algorithm.</p>	<p>The following table lists the behavior for the different upload requests:</p> <table> <tr> <th>Upload Request</th><th>Behaviour</th></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Cycle Update</td><td>The bill cycle information is updated for the accounts.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Billable Charge</td><td>The billable charges are created.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Contract Rider Update</td><td>The contract rider information is updated for the contracts.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Hold Request</td><td>The hold requests are created.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Refund Request</td><td>The refund requests are created.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Write Off Request</td><td>The write off requests are created.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Policy Reinstatement</td><td>The policies are reinstated and the status of the policies is changed to the one defined in the <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Group Sorting</td><td>The sort ID is defined for the respective bill group.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</td><td>The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the respective bill group and sort ID combination.</td></tr> </table> <p>In addition, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p>	Upload Request	Behaviour	Bill Cycle Update	The bill cycle information is updated for the accounts.	Billable Charge	The billable charges are created.	Contract Rider Update	The contract rider information is updated for the contracts.	Hold Request	The hold requests are created.	Refund Request	The refund requests are created.	Write Off Request	The write off requests are created.	Policy Reinstatement	The policies are reinstated and the status of the policies is changed to the one defined in the <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.	Bill Group Sorting	The sort ID is defined for the respective bill group.	Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters	The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the respective bill group and sort ID combination.
Upload Request	Behaviour																				
Bill Cycle Update	The bill cycle information is updated for the accounts.																				
Billable Charge	The billable charges are created.																				
Contract Rider Update	The contract rider information is updated for the contracts.																				
Hold Request	The hold requests are created.																				
Refund Request	The refund requests are created.																				
Write Off Request	The write off requests are created.																				
Policy Reinstatement	The policies are reinstated and the status of the policies is changed to the one defined in the <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.																				
Bill Group Sorting	The sort ID is defined for the respective bill group.																				
Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters	The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the respective bill group and sort ID combination.																				



If...	Then...																				
The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is not selected in the upload request type using which the upload request is created and the number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit defined in the <b>C1-DEFERUPLD</b> algorithm	<p>The system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>. When the <b>Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)</b> batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any upload requests in the <b>Deferred Processing</b> status. If there is an upload request in the <b>Deferred Processing</b> status, the system behaves in the following manner for the different upload requests:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Upload Request</th><th>Behaviour</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Bill Cycle Update</td><td>The bill cycle information is updated for the accounts.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Billable Charge</td><td>The billable charges are created.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Contract Rider Update</td><td>The contract rider information is updated for the contracts.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Hold Request</td><td>The hold requests are created.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Refund Request</td><td>The refund requests are created.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Write Off Request</td><td>The write off requests are created.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Policy Reinstatement</td><td>The policies are reinstated and the status of the policies is changed to the one defined in the <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Group Sorting</td><td>The sort ID is defined for the respective bill group.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</td><td>The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the respective bill group and sort ID combination.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>In addition, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p>	Upload Request	Behaviour	Bill Cycle Update	The bill cycle information is updated for the accounts.	Billable Charge	The billable charges are created.	Contract Rider Update	The contract rider information is updated for the contracts.	Hold Request	The hold requests are created.	Refund Request	The refund requests are created.	Write Off Request	The write off requests are created.	Policy Reinstatement	The policies are reinstated and the status of the policies is changed to the one defined in the <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.	Bill Group Sorting	The sort ID is defined for the respective bill group.	Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters	The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the respective bill group and sort ID combination.
Upload Request	Behaviour																				
Bill Cycle Update	The bill cycle information is updated for the accounts.																				
Billable Charge	The billable charges are created.																				
Contract Rider Update	The contract rider information is updated for the contracts.																				
Hold Request	The hold requests are created.																				
Refund Request	The refund requests are created.																				
Write Off Request	The write off requests are created.																				
Policy Reinstatement	The policies are reinstated and the status of the policies is changed to the one defined in the <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.																				
Bill Group Sorting	The sort ID is defined for the respective bill group.																				
Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters	The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the respective bill group and sort ID combination.																				

**Note:**

The **Submit** button appears only when the upload request is in the **Validated** status.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1410

For more information on...	See...
<b>Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request</a> on page 1410
How to search for an upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Upload Request</a> on page 1405

## Approving an Upload Request

You can view the number of upload requests which are pending for approval in the **Upload Request** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve or reject the upload request based on the observations.

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve or reject an upload request submitted by you.

### Procedure

To approve an upload request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Approve a upload request through the <b>Upload Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the upload request in the <b>Upload Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Upload Request Information</b> column corresponding to the upload request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Approve a upload request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>. The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter the required To Do type in the respective field.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field. The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> <li>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the upload request that you want to review.</li> </ol>

The **Upload Request** screen appears.

2. Review the upload request details.
3. Click the **Approve** button in the **Upload Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If...	Then...																				
The number of valid records in the upload request does not exceed the online record process limit defined in the <b>C1-DEFERUPLD</b> algorithm	<p>The following table lists the behavior for the different upload requests:</p> <table> <tr> <th>Upload Request</th><th>Behavior</th></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Cycle Update</td><td>The bill cycle information is updated for the accounts.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Billable Charge</td><td>The billable charges are created.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Contract Rider Update</td><td>The contract rider information is updated for the contracts.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Hold Request</td><td>The hold requests are created.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Refund Request</td><td>The refund requests are created.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Write Off Request</td><td>The write off requests are created.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Policy Reinstatement</td><td>The policies are reinstated and the status of the policies is changed to the one defined in the <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Group Sorting</td><td>The sort ID is defined for the respective bill group.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</td><td>The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the respective bill group and sort ID combination.</td></tr> </table> <p>In addition, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p>	Upload Request	Behavior	Bill Cycle Update	The bill cycle information is updated for the accounts.	Billable Charge	The billable charges are created.	Contract Rider Update	The contract rider information is updated for the contracts.	Hold Request	The hold requests are created.	Refund Request	The refund requests are created.	Write Off Request	The write off requests are created.	Policy Reinstatement	The policies are reinstated and the status of the policies is changed to the one defined in the <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.	Bill Group Sorting	The sort ID is defined for the respective bill group.	Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters	The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the respective bill group and sort ID combination.
Upload Request	Behavior																				
Bill Cycle Update	The bill cycle information is updated for the accounts.																				
Billable Charge	The billable charges are created.																				
Contract Rider Update	The contract rider information is updated for the contracts.																				
Hold Request	The hold requests are created.																				
Refund Request	The refund requests are created.																				
Write Off Request	The write off requests are created.																				
Policy Reinstatement	The policies are reinstated and the status of the policies is changed to the one defined in the <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.																				
Bill Group Sorting	The sort ID is defined for the respective bill group.																				
Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters	The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the respective bill group and sort ID combination.																				

If...	Then...																				
The number of valid records in the upload request exceeds the online record process limit defined in the <b>C1-DEFERUPLD</b> algorithm	<p>The system changes the status of the upload request to <b>Deferred Processing</b>. When the <b>Upload Request Periodic Monitor (C1-UPLRQ)</b> batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any upload requests in the <b>Deferred Processing</b> status. If there is an upload request in the <b>Deferred Processing</b> status, the system behaves in the following manner for the different upload requests:</p> <table><tr><th>Upload Request</th><th>Behavior</th></tr><tr><td>Bill Cycle Update</td><td>The bill cycle information is updated for the accounts.</td></tr><tr><td>Billable Charge</td><td>The billable charges are created.</td></tr><tr><td>Contract Rider Update</td><td>The contract rider information is updated for the contracts.</td></tr><tr><td>Hold Request</td><td>The hold requests are created.</td></tr><tr><td>Refund Request</td><td>The refund requests are created.</td></tr><tr><td>Write Off Request</td><td>The write off requests are created.</td></tr><tr><td>Policy Reinstatement</td><td>The policies are reinstated and the status of the policies is changed to the one defined in the <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.</td></tr><tr><td>Bill Group Sorting</td><td>The sort ID is defined for the respective bill group.</td></tr><tr><td>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</td><td>The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the respective bill group and sort ID combination.</td></tr></table> <p>In addition, the status of the upload request is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p>	Upload Request	Behavior	Bill Cycle Update	The bill cycle information is updated for the accounts.	Billable Charge	The billable charges are created.	Contract Rider Update	The contract rider information is updated for the contracts.	Hold Request	The hold requests are created.	Refund Request	The refund requests are created.	Write Off Request	The write off requests are created.	Policy Reinstatement	The policies are reinstated and the status of the policies is changed to the one defined in the <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.	Bill Group Sorting	The sort ID is defined for the respective bill group.	Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters	The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the respective bill group and sort ID combination.
Upload Request	Behavior																				
Bill Cycle Update	The bill cycle information is updated for the accounts.																				
Billable Charge	The billable charges are created.																				
Contract Rider Update	The contract rider information is updated for the contracts.																				
Hold Request	The hold requests are created.																				
Refund Request	The refund requests are created.																				
Write Off Request	The write off requests are created.																				
Policy Reinstatement	The policies are reinstated and the status of the policies is changed to the one defined in the <b>Policy Status after Processing Reinstatement Upload Request</b> parameter of the <b>C1-REN-VALID</b> algorithm.																				
Bill Group Sorting	The sort ID is defined for the respective bill group.																				
Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters	The derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the respective bill group and sort ID combination.																				

**Note:** The **Approve** button appears only when:

- The upload request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the upload request.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1410
<b>Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request</a> on page 1410
How to search for an upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Upload Request</a> on page 1405

## Rejecting an Upload Request

### Prerequisites

To reject an upload request, you should have:

- Rejection reasons defined in the application

### **Note:**

While rejecting an upload request, you need to specify the reason why you want to reject the upload request. You can select the appropriate rejection reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Rejected** status of the **C1-UplRequestType** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

The system will not allow you to approve or reject an upload request submitted by you.

### Procedure

To reject an upload request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Reject an upload request through the <b>Upload Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the upload request in the <b>Upload Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Upload Request Information</b> column corresponding to the upload request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Reject an upload request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>. The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter the required To Do type in the respective field.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field. The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> </ol>

If you want to	Then
	6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the upload request that you want to review.

The **Upload Request** screen appears.

- 2. Review the upload request details.
- 3. Click the **Reject** button in the **Upload Request** zone.

The **Reject Upload Request** window appears. It contains following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to reject the upload request.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while rejecting the upload request.	No

**Note:** The **Reject** button appears only when:

- The upload request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the upload request.

- 4. Select the rejection reason from the **Status Reason** list.
- 5. Click **Save**.

The status of the upload request is changed to **Rejected**.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Upload Request</a> on page 1405
<b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Upload Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1410
<b>Upload Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Upload Request</a> on page 1410

**Viewing the Data Record Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a data record:

- 1. Search for the data record in the **Data Records** zone in the **Upload Request** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon in the **View** column corresponding to the data record whose details you want to view.

The **Data Record Details** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Sr. No.	Displays the sequential number of data.

Field Name	Field Description
CSV Column Header	Displays name of the column in uploaded CSV file.
CSV Column Value	Displays value in the column in uploaded CSV file.

3. View the details of the data record in the **Data Record Details** window.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Data Record</b> zone	<a href="#">Data Records</a> on page 1413

## Viewing the Log of an Upload Request

### Procedure

To view the log of an upload request:

1. Search for the upload request in the **Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the upload request whose log you want to view.

The **Upload Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the upload request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Upload Request** – Displays the details of the upload request.
  - **Data Records** – Lists the data records of the upload request.
- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the upload request. This tab contains the following zone:
  - **Upload Request Log** – Displays the trail of actions performed on the particular upload request.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Upload Request Log** zone in the **Log** tab contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the upload request.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the upload request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the upload request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the upload request.
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the upload request was rejected.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the upload request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Upload Request Log** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an Upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Upload Request</a> on page 1405
How to add a log entry for an Upload request	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for an Upload Request</a> on page 1428

## Adding a Log Entry for an Upload Request

### Procedure

To add a log entry for an upload request:

1. Search for the upload request in the **Upload Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Upload Request Information** column corresponding to the upload request whose log you want to edit.

The **Upload Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the upload request. It contains the following zones:
  - **Upload Request** – Displays the details of the upload request.
  - **Data Records** – Lists the data records of the upload request.
- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the upload request. This tab contains the following zone:
  - **Upload Request Log** – Displays the trail of actions performed on the particular upload request.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Upload Request Log** zone.

The **Add Upload Request Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Upload Request Information	Displays information about the upload request.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the upload request.	Yes

5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.
6. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Upload Request Log** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an upload request	<a href="#">Searching for an Upload Request</a> on page 1405



---

# Chapter

# 22

---

## General Ledger (GL) Accounting Template

---

### Topics:

- [GL Accounting Template \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [GL Accounting Template \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1- GLAT](#)
- [Prerequisites](#)
- [GL Accounting Template \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [GL Accounting Template \(Used for Viewing\)](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing until now created FT GL entries while generating the financial transactions for adjustments, payments, and bill segments. The FT GL entries were created using the distribution codes from the adjustment type, rate component, billable charge pass through line, or contract type depending on the type of financial transaction. Now, the system enables you to override the distribution code used for creating FT GL entries using the GL Accounting Template feature.

The system allows you to define a GL Accounting template for each process and sub processes combination for a date range. Based on the parameters defined in the **FT Generation** algorithms, the system either uses the standard process or GL Accounting Template for FT GL creation. The GL Accounting template for the specified process and sub processes combination which is effective on the accounting date is used for FT GL creation.

There should be at least one debit and credit lines in the GL Accounting template. You can define maximum 10 lines in the GL Accounting template. Each line should contain the following information:

- Whether the line should be used to create a debit FT GL entry or credit FT GL entry
- Conditional algorithm (created using the **C1-GLATLC** algorithm type) to indicate whether the line should be used to create the FT GL entry or not
- Distribution code to indicate the GL Account against which the FT GL entry should be created
- User defined amount, such as Amount 01, Amount 02, or Amount 03

The line with the Amount 01 user defined amount is used to create balancing FT GL entry against the contract type. The line with the Amount 02, Amount 03, ..., and Amount 10 user defined amount is used to create FT GL entries for bill segment calculation lines, non-calculated adjustments, adjustment calculation lines, or payments. In case of bill segments and calculated adjustments, the lines with the Amount 02, Amount 03, ..., Amount 10 user defined amount are mapped to calculation line amounts based on the rate component sequence.

You can optionally configure the system to use the approval workflow process while activating or deactivating the GL Accounting templates. If you want to enable the approval workflow process, you need to define algorithms using the following algorithm types:

- C1-GLATAPPEN
- C1-GLATSUB

If the **Approval Required (Y or N)** parameter in an algorithm created using the **C1-GLATSUB** algorithm type is set to **Y**, then on submitting or deactivating the GL Accounting template, the approval workflow process creates a To Do

for the approver to review the GL Accounting template. Once the approver approves a GL Accounting template, the status of the GL Accounting template is set to **Active** or **Inactive**.

We are supporting the following process and sub processes combinations while creating the GL Accounting template:

Process	BS	AD	PS
Sub Process 1	Contract Type	Adjustment Type	Bank Account
Sub Process 2	Division	Contract Type	Contract Type
Sub Process 3	Rate Schedule	Division	Division
Sub Process 4	-	-	-
Sub Process 5	-	-	-

For example, you can define the following the GL Accounting templates using the above supported process and sub processes combinations:

GL Accounting Template	Process	Sub Process 1	Sub Process 2	Sub Process 3
GLAT1	BS	CT1	D1	RS1
GLAT2	BS	CT2	D1	RS1
GLAT3	BS	CT3	D2	RS2
GLAT4	PS	BA1	CT1	D1
GLAT5	PS	BA2	CT2	D2
GLAT6	AD	AT1	CT1	D1
GLAT7	AD	AT1	CT2	D2

While creating the GL Accounting template for BS and AD processes, you need to ensure that the line with the Amount 1 user defined amount is a debit line. However, while creating the GL Accounting template for PS process, you need to ensure that the line with the Amount 1 user defined amount is a credit line.

Based on the customer requirements, you can define GL Accounting template for various custom process and sub processes combinations.

The **Create Additional FT GL Entries** parameter is added in the **Assign GL Account to Financial Transaction (C1-GLASN)** and **Assign GL Account to Financial Transaction (GLASSGN2)** batches. If you set this parameter to **Y**, the **C1-GLCE** algorithm is invoked. Based on the parameters defined in the algorithm, the system checks whether there is a GL Accounting template which is effective on the accounting date for the specified process and sub processes combination. If the effective GL Accounting template is available, the system creates additional FT GL entries for the financial transactions. If the financial transaction's currency is different from the division's base currency, the algorithm will create FT GL extension for the respective financial transaction.

Two new parameters are added in the **ADJT-NM**, **ADJT-AC**, **ADJT-TA**, **ADJT-TC**, **ADJT-AD**, **ADJT-GL**, **PSEG-NM**, **PSEG-AC**, **PSEG-CA**, **BSBF-BA**, **BSBF-LO** algorithm types:

- **Use GL Accounting Template (Y or N)** - Indicates whether the FT GL entries should be created using the lines in the GL Accounting template. The valid values are **Y** and **N**.
- **Show the GL Accounting Template Error When Header Record Not Found (Y or N)** - Indicates whether you want to show error message when the effective GL Accounting template is not available for the process and sub processes combination. If you set the value of this parameter to **N**, the algorithm uses the standard process for FT GL creation when the effective GL Accounting template is not available.

The following table explains how the algorithms created using the following algorithm types create FT GL entries:

Algorithm Type	Use GL Accounting Template (Y or N)	Calculated Adjustment Distribution Code Source (AT - Adjustment Type, CL - Calc Lines)	Algorithm Behaviour
ADJT-NM, ADJT-AC, ADJT-TA, ADJT-TC, ADJT-AD, and ADJT-GL	N	CL	Creates FT GL for the adjustment calculation line using the distribution code on the respective rate component and the balancing FT GL using the distribution code on contract type.
ADJT-NM, ADJT-AC, ADJT-TA, ADJT-TC, ADJT-AD, and ADJT-GL	Y	CL	Creates debit and credit FT GL entries using the lines in the GL Accounting template.
ADJT-NM, ADJT-AC, ADJT-TA, ADJT-TC, ADJT-AD, and ADJT-GL	N	AT	Creates FT GL for the adjustment using the distribution code on the respective adjustment type and the balancing FT GL using the distribution code on contract type.
ADJT-NM, ADJT-AC, ADJT-TA, ADJT-TC, ADJT-AD, and ADJT-GL	Y	AT	Creates debit and credit FT GL entries using the lines in the GL Accounting template.

If the **Use GL Accounting Template (Y or N)** parameter is set to **N** in the algorithms created using the **PSEG-NM**, **PSEG-AC**, and **PSEG-CA** algorithm types, the system creates FT GL for the payment segment using the distribution code on the respective payment segment type and the balancing FT GL using the distribution code on contract type. However, if the **Use GL Accounting Template (Y or N)** parameter is set to **Y**, the system creates debit and credit FT GL entries using the lines in the GL Accounting template.

If the **Use GL Accounting Template (Y or N)** parameter is set to **N** in the algorithms created using the **BSBF-BA** and **BSBF-LO** algorithm types, the system behaves in the following manner:

If the bill segment is...	Then, the system...
Created from a billable charge with SQI and/or price item details	Creates FT GL for the bill segment calculation line using the distribution code on the respective rate component and the balancing FT GL using the distribution code on contract type.
Created from a pass through billable charge	Creates FT GL for the pass through line using the distribution code on the respective pass through line and the balancing FT GL using the distribution code on contract type.
Created from a billable charge with pass through charges, SQI, and price item details	Creates... <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FT GL for the bill segment calculation line using the distribution code on the respective rate component</li> <li>• FT GL for the pass through line using the distribution code on the respective pass through line</li> <li>• Balancing FT GL using the distribution code on contract type</li> </ul>
A post processing bill segment	Creates FT GL for the post processing FT using the distribution code on the respective rate component and the balancing FT GL using the distribution code on contract type.

However, if the **Use GL Accounting Template (Y or N)** parameter is set to **Y** in the algorithms created using the **BSBF-BA** and **BSBF-LO** algorithm types, the system behaves in the following manner:

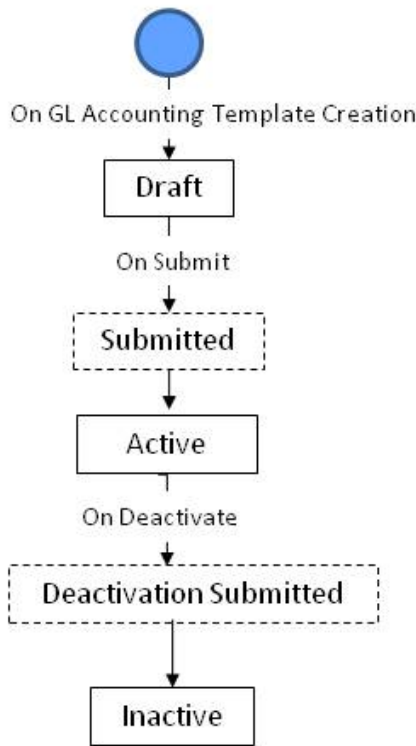
If the bill segment is...	Then, the system...
Created from a billable charge with SQI and/or price item details	Creates debit and credit FT GL entries using the lines in the GL Accounting template.
Created from a pass through billable charge	Does not use the GL Accounting template. It creates FT GL for the pass through line using the distribution code on the respective pass through line and the balancing FT GL using the distribution code on contract type.

If the bill segment is...	Then, the system...
Created from a billable charge with pass through charges, SQL, and price item details	<p>Creates...</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FT GL for bill segment calculation line using the lines in the GL Accounting template.</li> <li>• FT GL for the pass through line using the distribution code on the respective pass through line.</li> <li>• Balancing FT GL using the line in the GL Accounting template.</li> </ul>
A post processing bill segment	Creates debit and credit FT GL entries using the lines in the GL Accounting template.

## GL Accounting Template (Without Approval) Status Transition

---

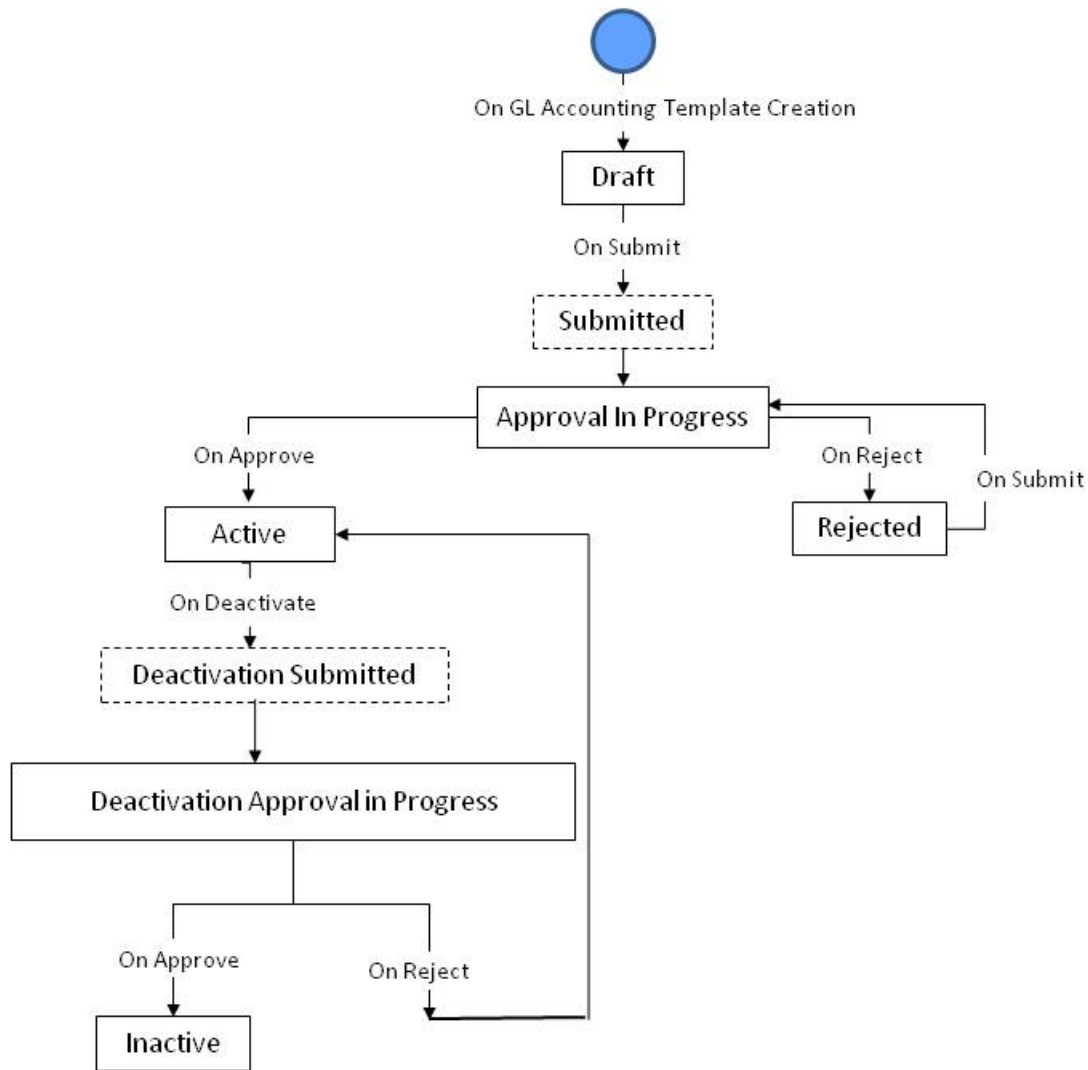
The following figure graphically indicates how a GL Accounting Template moves from one status to another when approval workflow is off:



## GL Accounting Template (With Approval) Status Transition

---

The following figure graphically indicates how a GL Accounting Template moves from one status to another when approval workflow is on:



## Algorithms Used in C1- GLAT

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-GLAT** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-GLAT-INF	C1-GLAT-INF	This algorithm generates the GLAT information string which appears throughout the application. This algorithm concatenates the following fields: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>GLAT Description</li> <li>GLAT Status Description</li> <li>GLAT ID</li> </ul>

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-GLAT** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm type completes To Do entries that are linked to an object when the object exits a given state. The system finds all open To Do entries with drill keys for the current business object's primary key, and completes them, unless the To Do entry's type has been configured with an Exclude To Do Type Characteristic Type indicating that it should not be automatically completed.
Submitted	Enter	C1-GLATSUB	C1-GLATSUB	This algorithm checks the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If soft parameter value is set to Y then approval workflow will be triggered.</li> </ul>
Approval in Progress	Enter	C1-GLATAPPEN	C1-GLATAPPEN	This algorithm creates the To Do based on the Approval To Do Type configured in algorithm.
Approval in Progress	Exit	C1-GLATAPPEX	C1-GLATAPPEX	This algorithm checks whether an approver is associated with the approval To Do Role specified in the <b>C1-GLATAAPEN</b> Algorithm. It does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the GLAT request.
Approval in Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm type completes To Do entries that are linked to an object when the object exits a given state. The system finds all open To Do entries with drill keys for the current business object's primary key, and completes them, unless the To Do entry's type has been configured with an Exclude To Do Type Characteristic Type indicating that it should not be automatically completed.
Active	-	-	-	-
Deactivation Submitted	Enter	C1-GLATSUB	C1-GLATSUB	This algorithm checks the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If soft parameter value is set to Y then approval workflow will be triggered.</li> </ul>
Deactivation Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-GLATAPPEN	C1-GLATAPPEN	This algorithm creates the To Do based on the Approval To Do Type configured in algorithm.



Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Deactivation Approval In Progress	Exit	C1-GLATAPPEX	C1-GLATAPPEX	This algorithm checks whether an approver is associated with the approval To Do Role specified in the <b>C1-GLATAAPEN</b> Algorithm. It does not allow the submitter to approve or reject the GLAT request.
Deactivation Approval In Progress	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm type completes To Do entries that are linked to an object when the object exits a given state. The system finds all open To Do entries with drill keys for the current business object's primary key, and completes them, unless the To Do entry's type has been configured with an Exclude To Do Type Characteristic Type indicating that it should not be automatically completed.
Rejected	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	This algorithm type completes To Do entries that are linked to an object when the object exits a given state. The system finds all open To Do entries with drill keys for the current business object's primary key, and completes them, unless the To Do entry's type has been configured with an Exclude To Do Type Characteristic Type indicating that it should not be automatically completed.
Inactive	-	-	-	-

## Prerequisites

To setup the GL Accounting Template, you need to do the following:

- Define rejected status reasons for the **C1-GLAT** business object
- Define deactivated status reasons for the **C1-GLAT** business object
- Assign the **C1-GLAT** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting a template for approval
- Define the required algorithms, for approval and To Do type role and configurations

## GL Accounting Template (Used for Searching)

The **GL Accounting Template** screen allows you to search for a template using various search criteria. It also allows you to create template. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [GL Accounting Template \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1443

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search GL Accounting Template](#) on page 1438
- [GL Accounting Template Lines](#) on page 1439

Search GL Accounting Template

The **Search GL Accounting Template** zone allows you to search for GL accounting templates using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** — The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Template ID	Used to search a particular template.	No
Description	Used to specify the description of a template.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the template. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Draft</li><li>• Approval In Progress</li><li>• Deactivation Approval In Progress</li><li>• Active</li><li>• Inactive</li><li>• Rejected</li></ul>	No
Process	Used to search a particular process.	No
Sub Process 1	Used to search a particular Sub Process 1.	No
Sub Process 2	Used to search a particular Sub Process 2.	No
Sub Process 3	Used to search a particular Sub Process 3.	No
Sub Process 4	Used to search a particular Sub Process 4.	No
Sub Process 5	Used to search a particular Sub Process 5.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to search templates which are effective from a particular date.	No
Effective End Date	Used to search templates which are effective till a particular date.	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a template.

- **Search Results** — On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Process	Displays the process.
GL Accounting Template Request Information	Displays information about the template. <div><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>GL Accounting Template</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective template.</div>
Description	Displays the description of process.

Column Name	Column Description
Sub Process 1	Displays the Sub Process 1.
Sub Process 2	Displays the Sub Process 2.
Sub Process 3	Displays the Sub Process 3.
Sub Process 4	Displays the Sub Process 4.
Sub Process 5	Displays the Sub Process 5.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the template is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the template is effective.
Status	Displays the status of template.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Searching for a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1440
How to view the details of a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Viewing the GL Accounting Template Details</a> on page 1440
How to create a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Creating a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1441
GL Accounting Template Lines zone	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template Lines</a> on page 1439

## GL Accounting Template Lines

The **GL Accounting Template Lines** zone displays the details of the template lines. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Credit/Debit	Displays whether the template lines are of credit or debit.
Conditional Algorithm	Displays the algorithm that specified that template line is valid or not.
Distribution Code	Displays the distribution code which indicates the template associated with the charge.
User Defined Amount Field	Displays the amount to be used in a template line.

**Note:** By default, the **GL Accounting Template Lines** zone does not appear in the **GL Accounting Template** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the template in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Searching for a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1440
How to view the details of a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Viewing the GL Accounting Template Details</a> on page 1440
How to create a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Creating a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1441
Search GL Accounting Template zone	<a href="#">Search GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1438

## Searching for a GL Accounting Template

### Procedure

To search for a GL Accounting template:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **G** and then click **GL Accounting Template**.  
The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search GL Accounting Template** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.  
A list of templates that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
GL Accounting Template screen	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1437
Search GL Accounting Template zone	<a href="#">Search GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1438

## Viewing the GL Accounting Template Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a GL Accounting Template:

1. Search for the template in the **GL Accounting Template** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **GL Accounting Template Information** column corresponding to the template whose details you want to view.

The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the template. It contains the following zone:
  - **GL Accounting Template** – Displays the details of the template.
- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the template. This tab contains the following zone:
  - **GL Accounting Template Log** – Displays the trail of actions performed on the particular template.

3. View the details of the template in the **GL Accounting Template** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> screen	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1437
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> zone	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1444
How to search for a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Searching for a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1440
How to view a GL Accounting Template Lines	<a href="#">Viewing the GL Accounting Template Lines Details</a> on page 1441

## Viewing the GL Accounting Template Lines Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a GL Accounting Template Lines:

1. Search for the template in the **GL Accounting Template** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the template in the **Search Results** section.

The **GL Accounting Template Lines** zone appears in the **GL Accounting Template** screen.

3. View the details of the template lines in the **GL Accounting Template Lines** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> screen	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1437
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> zone	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1444
<b>GL Accounting Template Lines</b> zone	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template Lines</a> on page 1439

## Creating a GL Accounting Template

### Prerequisites

To create a GL Accounting template, you should have:

- Conditional Algorithms and Distribution codes defined in the application.

### Procedure

To create a GL Accounting template:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **G** and then click **GL Accounting Template**.  
The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **GL Accounting Template** screen.

The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the template. This section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Process	Used to specify a particular process.	Yes
Description	Used to indicate the description of a process.	Yes
Sub Process 1	Used to specify a Sub Process 1.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required if <b>Process</b> is <b>Bill Segment or Payment Segment or Adjustments</b>
Sub Process 2	Used to specify a Sub Process 2.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required if <b>Process</b> is <b>Bill Segment or Payment Segment or Adjustments</b>
Sub Process 3	Used to specify a Sub Process 3.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required if <b>Process</b> is <b>Bill Segment or Payment Segment or Adjustments.</b>
Sub Process 4	Used to specify a Sub Process 4.	No
Sub Process 5	Used to specify a Sub Process 5.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to specify date for a template which is effective from a particular date.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to specify date for a template which is effective till a particular date.	No

- **GL Accounting Template Lines** —Used to specify the template lines in a GL accounting template. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence No	Used to specify the sequence number.	Yes
Credit/Debit	Used to indicate whether template lines are of credit or debit.	Yes
Conditional Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm which specifies that template line is valid or not.	No
Distribution Code	Used to indicate the distribution code which indicates the template associated with the charge.	Yes
User Defined Amount Field	Used to indicate the amount to be used in a template line.	Yes

#### 4. Enter the required details

**Note:**

You can search for a conditional algorithm and distribution code by clicking the **search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

At least one credit and one debit line is required while defining a template.

System will not allow to add a template having same set of process, sub processes and effective date. If there is a template already created and its status is Inactive, then only template can be created with same set of process, sub processes and effective date.

Each conditional line must have unique User Defined Amount Field value.

5. Add template lines for a template defined.

6. Click **Save**.

The GL Accounting template is created and the status of the template is set to **Draft**. The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears with the details of template.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> screen	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1437
How to edit a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Editing a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1446

## GL Accounting Template (Used for Viewing)

---

Once you create a template, the **GL Accounting Template** screen allows you to:

- View the details of a template
- Edit the details of a template
- Delete a template
- Submit a template for approval
- Approve or reject a template
- Deactivate a template

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the template. It contains the following zone:
  - **GL Accounting Template** – Displays the details of the template.
- **Log** — Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the template. This tab contains the following zone:
  - **GL Accounting Template Log** – Displays the trail of actions performed on the particular template.

### GL Accounting Template - Main

The **Main** tab on the **GL Accounting Template** contains the following zone:

[GL Accounting Template](#) on page 1444

**GL Accounting Template**

The **GL Accounting Template** zone displays the details of the template. This zone contains the following sections:

- Main** — This section provides basic information about the GL Accounting template. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
GL Accounting Template Information	Displays information about the template
Status	Indicates the status of the template.
Process	Displays the process.
Description	Displays the description of the process.
Sub Process 1	Displays the Sub Process 1.
Sub Process 2	Displays the Sub Process 2.
Sub Process 3	Displays the Sub Process 3.
Sub Process 4	Displays the Sub Process 4.
Sub Process 5	Displays the Sub Process 5.
Effective Start Date	Displays the date from when the template is effective.
Effective End Date	Displays the date till when the template is effective.

- GL Accounting Template Lines** — Lists the GL Accounting template lines. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence No	Displays the sequence number.
Credit/Debit	Displays whether the template lines are of credit or debit.
Conditional Algorithm	Displays the algorithm that specified that template line is valid or not.
Distribution Code	Displays the distribution code which indicates the template associated with the charge.
User Defined Amount Field	Displays the amount to be used in a template line.

- Record Actions** — This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the template.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the template is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.
Delete	Used to delete the template.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the template is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.



Button Name	Button Description
Submit	Used to activate the template.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit</b> button appears only when the template is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.
Approve	Used to approve the template.
	<b>Note:</b> the <b>Approve</b> button appears only when the template is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> or <b>Deactivation Approval In Progress</b> status.
Reject	Used to reject the template.
	<b>Note:</b> the <b>Reject</b> button appears only when the template is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> or <b>Deactivation Approval In Progress</b> status.
Deactivate	Used to deactivate the active template.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Deactivate</b> button appears only when the template is in the <b>Active</b> status.

- **Record Information** — This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the template is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

## GL Accounting Template - Log

The **Log** tab on the **GL Accounting Template** screen contains the following zone:

[GL Accounting Template Log](#) on page 1445

### GL Accounting Template Log

The **GL Accounting Template Log** zone on the **GL Accounting Template** screen lists the complete trail of actions performed on the GL Accounting template. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the template.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the template.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the template.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the template.
Status Reason	Displays the status reason of action performed on the template.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the template by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **GL Accounting Template Log** zone.

The **Add GL Accounting Template Log** window appears. Enter **Log Details** and click **Save**. The GL Accounting Template log is added.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1453

**Editing a GL Accounting Template**

**Procedure**

To edit a GL Accounting Template:

- 1. Search for the template in the **GL Accounting Template** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **GL Accounting Template Information** column corresponding to the template whose details you want to edit.

The **GL Accounting Template** screen for editing appears.

- 3. Click the **Edit** button in the **GL Accounting Template** zone.

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the template is in the **Draft** or **Rejected** status.

The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** — Used to specify basic details about the template. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Process	Used to specify a particular process.	Yes
Description	Used to indicate the description of a process.	Yes
Sub Process 1	Used to specify a Sub Process 1.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required if <b>Process</b> is <b>Bill Segment or Payment Segment or Adjustments</b>
Sub Process 2	Used to specify a Sub Process 2.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required if <b>Process</b> is <b>Bill Segment or Payment Segment or Adjustments</b>
Sub Process 3	Used to specify a Sub Process 3.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required if <b>Process</b> is <b>Bill Segment or Payment Segment or Adjustments.</b>

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sub Process 4	Used to specify a Sub Process 4.	No
Sub Process 5	Used to specify a Sub Process 5.	No
Effective Start Date	Used to specify date for a template which is effective from a particular date.	Yes
Effective End Date	Used to specify date for a template which is effective till a particular date.	No

- **GL Accounting Template Lines** — Used to specify the template lines in a GL accounting template. This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence No	Used to specify the sequence number.	Yes
Credit/Debit	Used to indicate whether template lines are of credit or debit.	Yes
Conditional Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm which specifies that template line is valid or not.	No
Distribution Code	Used to indicate the distribution code which indicates the template associated with the charge.	Yes
User Defined Amount Field	Used to indicate the amount to be used in a template line.	Yes

**Note:**

If you want to specify more than one template lines, click the **Add** (+) icon corresponding to the sequence No and then specify the details.

However, if you want to remove a template line from the template, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the sequence No.

You can search for a conditional algorithm and distribution code by clicking the **search** (🔍) icon corresponding to the respective field.

At least one credit and one debit line is required while defining a template.

4. Modify the details of the template, if required.

5. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the GL Accounting template are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Searching for a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1440
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> screen	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1437
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> zone	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1444

Deleting a GL Accounting Template

**Procedure**

To delete a GL Accounting Template:

1. Search for the template in the **GL Accounting Template** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **GL Accounting Template Information** column corresponding to the template that you want to delete.

The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **GL Accounting Template** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the template.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the template is in the **Draft** or **Rejected** status.

4. Click **OK**.

The GL Accounting template is deleted.

**Note:**  
 You can delete a template only when its status is **Draft**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Searching for a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1440
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> screen	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1437
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> zone	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1444

Submitting a GL Accounting Template

**Prerequisites**

To submit a GL Accounting Template, you should have:

- Process and GL Accounting template lines defined in the template.

**Procedure**

To submit a GL Accounting Template:

1. Search for the template in the **GL Accounting Template** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **GL Accounting Template Information** column corresponding to the template that you want to submit.

The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears.

3. Click the **Submit** button in the **GL Accounting Template** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If...	Then...
Approval Required Flag is set to Yes in the <b>C1-GLATSUB</b> algorithm.	A To Do of the <b>C1-GLAT</b> To Do type is created and sent to the approver and the status of the template is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> .
Approval Required Flag is set to No in the <b>C1-GLATSUB</b> algorithm.	The template is created using the specified process and the status of the template is changed to <b>Active</b> .

**Note:**

The **Submit** button appears only when the template is in the **Draft** or **Rejected** status.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Searching for a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1440
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> screen	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1437
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> zone	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1444
How to edit a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Editing a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1446
How to delete a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Deleting a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1448

**Approving a GL Accounting Template**

You can view the number of GL Accounting templates which are pending for approval in the **GL Accounting Template** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve or reject the template based on the observations.

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve or reject a template submitted by you.

**Procedure**

To approve a template:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to...	Then...
Approve a GL Accounting Template through the <b>GL Accounting template</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the template in the <b>GL Accounting template</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>GL Accounting Template Information</b> column corresponding to the template which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Approve a GL Accounting Template from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>.</li> </ol>

If you want to...	Then...
	<p>The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>3. Enter <b>C1-GLAT</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</p> <p>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</p> <p>The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</p> <p>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</p> <p>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the GL Accounting template that you want to review.</p>

The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears.

- 2. Review the template details.
- 3. Click the **Approve** button in the **GL Accounting Template** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If you are...	Then...
Approving a GL Accounting template	The status of the template is changed to <b>Active</b> as specified in the GL Accounting template.

**Note:** The **Approve** button appears only when the template is in the **Approval In Progress** or **Deactivation Approval In Progress** status.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Searching for a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1440
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> screen	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1437
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> zone	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1444

**Rejecting a GL Accounting Template**

**Prerequisites**

To reject a GL Accounting template, you should have:

- Rejection reasons defined in the application

**Note:**

While rejecting a GL Accounting template, you need to specify the reason why you want to reject the template. You can select the appropriate rejection reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Rejected** status of the **C1-GLAT** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

The system will not allow you to approve or reject a template submitted by you.

**Procedure**

To reject a GL Accounting template

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Reject a GL Accounting template through the <b>GL Accounting Template</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the template in the <b>GL Accounting Template</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>GL Accounting Template Information</b> column corresponding to the template which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Reject a GL Accounting template from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>.  The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter <b>C1-GLAT</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field.  The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> <li>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the template that you want to review.</li> </ol>

The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears.

2. Review the template details.
3. Click the **Reject** button in the **GL Accounting Template** zone.

The **Reject GLAT Request** window appears. It contains following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to reject the template	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Comments	Used to specify additional information while rejecting the template.	No

**Note:** The **Reject** button appears only when:

- The template is in the **Approval In Progress** or **Deactivation Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the template.

4. Select the rejection reason from the **Status Reason** list.

5. Click **Save**.

The status of the template is changed to **Rejected**.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Searching for a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1440
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> screen	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1437
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> zone	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1444
How to approve a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Approving a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1449

## Deactivating a GL Accounting Template

### Prerequisites

To deactivate a GL Accounting template, you should have:

- Deactivation reasons defined in the application.

### **Note:**

While deactivating a GL Accounting template, you need to specify the reason why you want to deactivate the template. You can select the appropriate deactivation reason only when you have defined the reasons for the deactivation status of the **C1-GLAT** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

### Procedure

To deactivate a GL Accounting template:

1. Search for the template in the **GL Accounting Template** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **GL Accounting Template Information** column corresponding to the template that you want to deactivate.

The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears.

3. Click the **Deactivate** button in the **GL Accounting Template** zone.

**Note:** The **Deactivate** button appears only when the template is in the **Active** status.

The **Deactivate GLAT Request** window appears. It contains the following fields:



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason for deactivating a template	Yes
Comments	Used to specify the additional comments on the deactivation of template.	No

4. Click **OK**.

The GL Accounting template status is changed to **Deactivation Approval In Progress**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Searching for a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1440
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> screen	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1437
<b>GL Accounting Template</b> zone	<a href="#">GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1444

## Viewing the Log of a GL Accounting Template

**Procedure**

To view the log of a GL Accounting template:

1. Search for the template in the **GL Accounting template** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **GL Accounting Template Information** column corresponding to the template whose log you want to view.

The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the template. It contains the following zone:
  - **GL Accounting Template** – Displays the details of the template.
- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the template. This tab contains the following zone:
  - **GL Accounting Template Log** – Displays the trail of actions performed on the particular template.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **GL Accounting Template Log** zone in the **Log** tab contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the template.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the template.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the template.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the template.
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the template was rejected or voided.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the template by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **GL Accounting Template Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Searching for a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1440
How to add a log entry for a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1454

**Adding a Log Entry for a GL Accounting Template**

**Procedure**

To add a log entry for a GL Accounting Template:

1. Search for the template in the **GL Accounting Template** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **GL Accounting Template Information** column corresponding to the template whose log you want to edit.

The **GL Accounting Template** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about the template. It contains the following zone:
  - **GL Accounting Template** – Displays the details of the template.
- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the template. This tab contains the following zone:
  - **GL Accounting Template Log** – Displays the trail of actions performed on the particular template.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **GL Accounting Template Log** zone.

The **Add GL Accounting Template Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
GL Accounting Template Information	Displays information about the template.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the template.	Yes

5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.
6. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **GL Accounting Template Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a GL Accounting Template	<a href="#">Searching for a GL Accounting Template</a> on page 1440

---

# Chapter

# 23

---

## Payment Agreement Request

---

### Topics:

- [Payment Agreement Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Payment Agreement Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#)
- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-PaymentAgreementRequest](#)
- [Payment Agreement Request Type](#)
- [Payment Agreement Request \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Payment Agreement Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing provides the ability to schedule payments in installments for a set of unpaid bills of an account through a payment agreement request. Let us understand this with the help of an example. The following bills of the account A1 are unpaid:

- B1 (Bill Amount – 100\$, Unpaid Amount - 75\$)
- B2 (Bill Amount – 250\$, Unpaid Amount – 125\$)
- B3 (Bill Amount – 150\$, Unpaid Amount – 150\$)

Through a payment agreement request, you can schedule payments for these three bills in various installments. For example, you can schedule the following payments for the account A1:

Schedule Date	Schedule Amount
01-Jan-2017	100
15-Jan-2017	100
01-Feb-2017	100
15-Feb-2017	50

While creating a payment agreement request, you need to specify the payment agreement request type using which you want to create the payment agreement request. It is the payment agreement request type which helps the system to determine:

- The business object using which the payment agreement request should be created
- Whether the approval is required for the payment agreement request

You can only add completed bills of the account which are unpaid in a payment agreement request. Once a payment agreement request is created for an account, the status of the payment agreement request is set to **Draft**. You can then edit or delete the payment agreement request, if required. Once you add the unpaid bills of the account, you can submit the payment agreement request. On submitting a payment agreement request, the status of the payment agreement request is set to **Active**.

You can optionally configure the system to use the approval workflow process for a payment agreement request. If the **Approval Required** flag is set to **Yes** in a payment agreement request type, then on submitting the respective payment agreement request, the approval workflow process creates a To Do for the approver to review the payment agreement request. Once the approver approves the payment agreement request, the status of the payment agreement request is set to **Active**. The approver can approve, reject, or resubmit the payment

agreement request. When the payment agreement request is resubmitted to the submitter, the status of the payment agreement request is set to **Draft**.

Even if the approval workflow is configured for a payment agreement request type, you can skip the approval workflow for a payment agreement request. The system enables you to skip the approval workflow for a payment agreement request until you exceed the maximum limit defined in the **C1-PASUBMIT** algorithm. You can define the following parameters in the **C1-PA-SUBMIT** algorithm:

- Number of days to consider in past to check whether any payment agreement request with a particular status exist in the specified duration (for example, 365)
- Maximum number of payment agreement requests which can be activated without approval (for example, 1)
- Status in which payment agreement request should exist in the specified duration (for example, Broken Promise)

In the above example, on clicking the **Submit** button, the system will check how many payment agreement requests for the account in the last 365 days exist in the **Broken Promise** status. If the system finds one or more than one payment agreement requests in the **Broken Promise** status in the last 365 days, the approval workflow process creates a To Do for the approver to review the payment agreement request. However, if the system does not find any payment agreement request in the **Broken Promise** status in the last 365 days, the payment agreement request is not sent for approval and the status of the payment agreement request is directly changed to **Active**.

When the **Payment Agreement Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAREQ)** batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any payment agreement requests in the **Active** status. If there is a payment agreement request in the **Active** status, the system checks whether the total unpaid amount of the bills is equal to zero and whether each bill is fully matched. If so, the status of the payment agreement request is changed to **Kept Promise**. However, if the total unpaid amount of the bills is not equal to zero, the system checks whether the current date is later than the schedule date and does not fall within the grace period. If so, the system checks whether total unpaid amount is greater than the total future schedule amount. If so, the status of the payment agreement request is changed to **Broken Promise**. However, if the current date is earlier than the schedule date or falls within the grace period, or the total unpaid amount is less than the total future schedule amount, the status of payment agreement request remains in **Active**. The system enables you to edit a payment agreement request which is in the **Active** status.

While defining a payment agreement request, you need to specify the payment method through which the payment will be done and whether the payment will be done through the payor or third party payor account. If the **Auto Pay** flag is set to **Yes** for a payment method, you need to also specify the automatic payment option using which the automatic payment should be created on the schedule date. One more batch named **Generate Auto Pay for Payment Agreement (C1-APPAB)** is introduced in this release. When the **Generate Auto Pay for Payment Agreement (C1-APPAB)** batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any payment agreement requests in the **Active** status. If so, whether the account for which the payment agreement request is created is eligible for automatic payment and the defer auto pay date (if any) defined for the account is earlier than the batch business date. If so, the system checks whether the extract date of the unpaid bill (with the earliest due date) is earlier than the schedule date.

If so, the system creates the automatic payment for the unpaid bill on the schedule date. However, if the account is not eligible for automatic payment, or the defer auto pay date is equal to or later than batch business date, or the extract date is equal to or later than the schedule date, the automatic payment is not generated for the account.

During the payment agreement request process, a payment agreement request creation goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. For more information about the payment agreement request statuses, see [Payment Agreement Request \(Without Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 1458 and [Payment Agreement Request \(With Approval\) Status Transition](#) on page 1459. If the payment agreement request type is without approval then payment agreement status will automatically move from draft to active. The approval configuration algorithm **C1-PA-APPEXT** decides whether the request will be sent for approval or not. If the payment agreement request type is with approval then payment agreement will be sent for approval depending on:

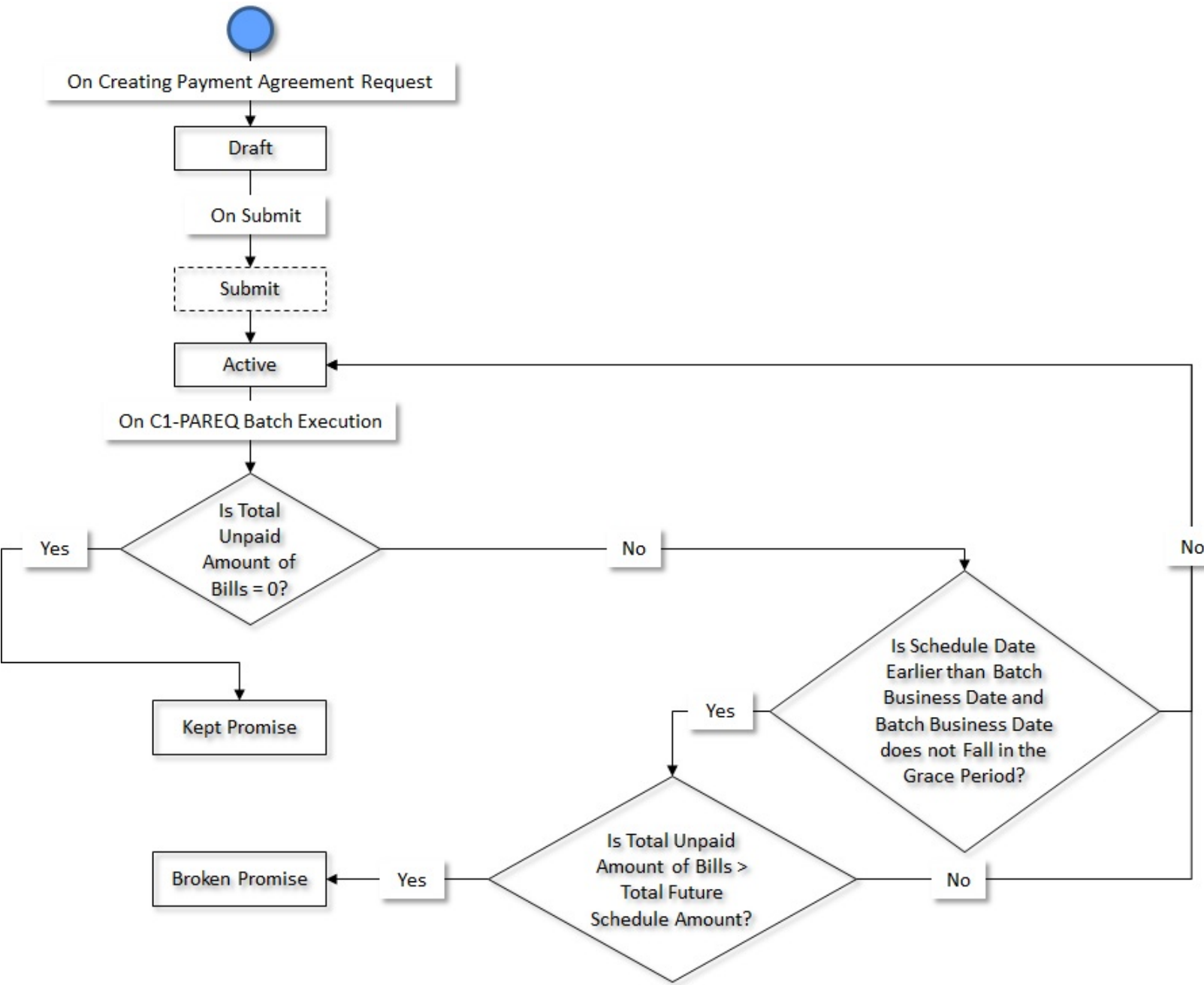
- The number of days checked for approval workflow
- Payment agreement statuses (active, broken, kept) to be considered
- The maximum number of payment agreements allowed

**Note:** The lifecycle of a payment agreement request creation is driven by the respective business object using which the request is created. The payment agreement request feature explained in this document is articulated based on the lifecycle and logic defined in the business objects.

For more information on how to setup the payment agreement request process, see [Prerequisites](#) on page 1460.

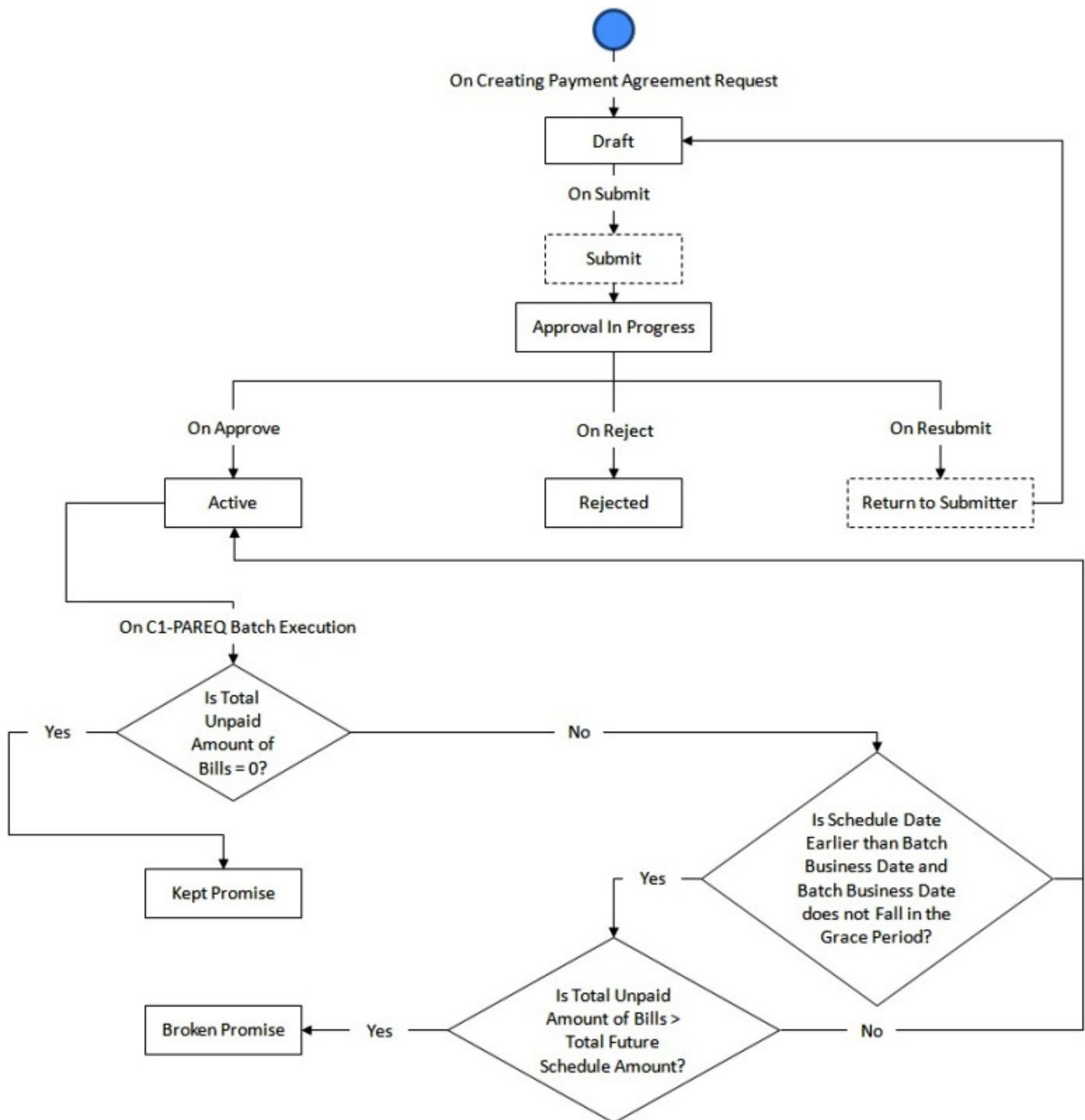
## Payment Agreement Request (Without Approval) Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a payment agreement request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is off:



## Payment Agreement Request (With Approval) Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a payment agreement request moves from one status to another when approval workflow is on:



## Prerequisites

To setup the payment agreement request process, you need to do the following:

- Define the required payment agreement request types in the system
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Payment Agreement Request**
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Payment Agreement Request Type**
- Define the required pay methods for **Payment Agreement Request**
- Define the required third party payors for **Payment Agreement Request**
- Create an algorithm using the **C1-PA-INFO** algorithm type if you want to create Payment Agreement Requests using the payment agreement request information.
- Define the kept promise status reason for the **C1-PaymentAgreementRequest** business object
- Define the broken promise status reason for the **C1-PaymentAgreementRequest** business object
- Defined rejected status reason for the **C1-PaymentAgreementRequest** business object
- Assign the **C1-PAREQ** To Do type to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting or resubmitting a payment agreement request for approval
- The **Payment Agreement Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAREQ)** batch process to monitor the payment agreement request and move the request to next stage

## Algorithms Used in C1-PaymentAgreementRequest

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-PaymentAgreementRequest** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-PA-INFO	C1-PA-INFO	Refer to <a href="#">C1-PA-INFO</a>
Pre-Processing	C1-PA-PRE	C1-PA-PRE	<a href="#">C1-PA-PRE</a>
Validation	C1-PA-VAL	C1-PA-VAL	<a href="#">C1-PA-PRE</a>

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-PaymentAgreementRequest** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Submit	Enter	C1-PA-SUBMIT	C1-PA-SUBMIT	<a href="#">C1-PA-SUBMIT</a>
Approval In Progress	Enter	C1-PA-APPENT	C1-PA-APPENT	<a href="#">C1-PA-APPENT</a>
Approval In Progress	Exit	C1-PA-APPEXT	C1-PA-APPEXT	<a href="#">C1-PA-APPEXT</a>
Return to Submitter	Enter	C1-PA-RESUB	C1-PA-RESUB	<a href="#">C1-PA-RESUB</a>
Active	Monitor	C1-PA-MONTR	C1-PA-MONTR	<a href="#">C1-MONTR</a>
Active	Enter	C1-PA-ACTENT	C1-PA-ACTENT	<a href="#">C1-ACTENT</a>



## Payment Agreement Request Type

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define, edit, copy and delete a payment agreement request type using which you can pay current unpaid debt bills in multiple installments whose payment amount is greater than zero. A payment agreement provide flexibility in payment of installment amount and schedule of payment.




The **C1-PaymentAgreementRequest** business object is created for payment agreement maintenance.


The **Payment Agreement Request Type** screen consists of the following zones:

- [Payment Agreement Request Type List](#) on page 1461
- [Payment Agreement Request Type](#) on page 1462

### Payment Agreement Request Type List

The **Payment Agreement Request Type List** zone lists payment agreement request types that are already defined in the system. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Payment Agreement Request Type	Displays the payment agreement request type.
Description	Displays the description of the payment agreement request type.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Payment Agreement Request Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the payment agreement request type.
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Payment Agreement Request Type</b> screen appears where you can define a payment agreement request type using an existing payment agreement request type.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the payment agreement request type.  <b>Note:</b> You can delete a payment agreement request type only when you have not created a payment agreement request using the payment agreement request type.

On clicking the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a payment agreement request type, the **Payment Agreement Request Type** zone appears with the details of the respective payment agreement request type.

#### Related Topics



For more information on...	See...
How to define a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Defining a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1465
How to define characteristics for a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1467
How to edit a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Editing a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1468
How to copy a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Copying a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1471
How to delete a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Deleting a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1471
How to view the details of a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Payment Agreement Request Type Details</a> on page 1474

### Payment Agreement Request Type

The **Payment Agreement Request Type** zone displays the details of the payment agreement request type. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Main** – This section provides basic information about the payment agreement request type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Payment Agreement Request Type	Displays the payment agreement request type.
Description	Displays the description of the payment agreement request type.
Payment Agreement Request Business Object	Indicates the business object that will be used to create the payment agreement request. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. <div><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.</div>
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the payment agreement request type.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment agreement request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Active</li><li>• Inactive</li></ul>
Status Change Notification Type	Indicates the notification type on the status change of payment agreement request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Alert</li><li>• To Do</li><li>• Both</li></ul>
Approval Required	Indicates whether approval is required while creating payment agreement request using the payment agreement request type.

Field Name	Field Description
Approval To Do Type	<p>Indicates that the To Do entry of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the payment agreement request for approval.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Type</b> screen appears with the details of the respective To Do type.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.</p>
Approval To Do Role	<p>Indicates that users with the specified To Do role can only approve or reject the payment agreement request submitted for approval.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Role</b> screen appears with the details of the respective To Do role.</p>
Submitter To Do Type	<p>Indicates the To Do type for the submitter when the payment agreement request type is resubmitted by the approver.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Type</b> screen appears with the details of the respective To Do type.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.</p>

Field Name	Field Description
Submitter To Do Role	Indicates the To Do role of the submitter when the payment agreement request type is resubmitted by the approver.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Role</b> screen appears with the details of the respective To Do role.</p>

- **Characteristics** – This section lists the characteristics defined for the payment agreement request type. It contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes Or No)
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.	No
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.	No

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the payment agreement request type.
Delete	Used to delete the payment agreement request type.
	<p><b>Note:</b> You can delete a payment agreement request type only when you have not created a payment agreement request using the payment agreement request type.</p>
Duplicate	Used to create a new payment agreement request type using an existing payment agreement request type.

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the payment agreement request type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.</p>

By default, the **Payment Agreement Request Type** zone does not appear in the **Payment Agreement Request Type** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a payment agreement request type in the **Payment Agreement Request Type List** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Defining a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1465

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1467
How to edit a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Editing a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1468
How to copy a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Copying a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1471
How to delete a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Deleting a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1471
How to view the details of a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Viewing the Payment Agreement Request Type Details</a> on page 1474

## Defining a Payment Agreement Request Type

### Prerequisites

To define a payment agreement request type, you should have:

- Payment agreement request business objects defined in the application
- The Payment Agreement Request Information algorithm is defined using the **C1-PA-INFO** algorithm type
- **C1-PAREQ** To Do Type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting a payment agreement request for approval.

### Procedure

To define a payment agreement request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Payment Agreement Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Payment Agreement Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Agreement Request Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use to create the payment agreement request type.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Business Object** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Payment Agreement Request Type** screen.

**Note:** The **Select Business Object** screen appears only when there are multiple payment agreement request type business objects defined in the application. If there is only one payment agreement request type business object defined in the application, the **Payment Agreement Request Type** screen appears.

4. Select the required payment agreement request type business object from the respective field.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Payment Agreement Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the payment agreement request type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the payment agreement request type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Agreement Request Type	Used to specify the payment agreement request type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the payment agreement request type business object used while defining the payment agreement request type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the payment agreement request type.	Yes
Payment Agreement Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while creating the payment agreement request.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the payment agreement request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the payment agreement request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Status Change Notification Type	Used to indicate the notification type on the status change of payment agreement request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alert</li> <li>To Do</li> <li>Both</li> </ul>	No
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required for creating payment agreement request using the payment agreement request type.	No
Approval To Do Type	Used to indicate that To Do of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the payment agreement request for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the payment agreement request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.
		The list will include only those To Do roles which are associated with the To Do type specified in the <b>Approval To Do Type</b> field.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Submitter To Do Type	Used to indicate the To Do type for the submitter when the payment agreement request is resubmitted by the approver.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected.
Submitter To Do Role	Used to indicate the To Do role for the submitter when the payment agreement request is resubmitted by the approver.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required only when the <b>Approval Required</b> option is selected. The list will include only those To Do roles which are associated with the To Do type specified in the <b>Submitter To Do</b> field.

- Enter the required details.
- Define characteristics for the payment agreement request type, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The payment agreement request type is defined.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Agreement Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1461
<b>Payment Agreement Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type List</a> on page 1461
How to define characteristics for a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1467

## Defining Characteristics for a Payment Agreement Request Type

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a payment agreement request type, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Payment Agreement Request Type)

### Procedure


To define characteristics for a payment agreement request type:


- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a payment agreement request type.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Payment Agreement Request Type.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment agreement request type.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment agreement request type.

- Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the payment agreement request type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the payment agreement request type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Defining a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1465
How to edit a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Editing a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1468
How to copy a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Copying a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1471

## Editing a Payment Agreement Request Type

### Prerequisites

To edit a payment agreement request type, you should have:

- Payment agreement request business objects defined in the application
- The Payment Agreement Request Information algorithm is defined using the **C1-PA-INFO** algorithm type
- C1-PAREQ** To Do Type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting a payment agreement request for approval.

### Procedure

To edit a payment agreement request type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.




- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Payment Agreement Request Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Payment Agreement Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Payment Agreement Request Type** screen appears.



- In the **Payment Agreement Request Type List** zone, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the payment agreement request type whose details you want to edit.

The **Payment Agreement Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the payment agreement request type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the payment agreement request type.


The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Agreement Request Type	Displays the payment agreement request type.	Not applicable
Business Object	Indicates the payment agreement request type business object used while defining the payment agreement request type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the payment agreement request type.	Yes
Upload Request Business Object	Used to specify the business object that you want to use while creating the payment agreement request.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the payment agreement request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the payment request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Status Change Notification Type	Used to indicate the notification type on the status change of payment agreement request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alert</li> <li>• To Do</li> <li>• Both</li> </ul>	No
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required for editing payment agreement request using the payment agreement request type.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval To Do Type	Used to indicate that To Do of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the payment agreement request for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the upload request submitted for approval.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Submitter To Do Type	Used to indicate the To Do type for the submitter when the payment agreement request is resubmitted by the approver.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Submitter To Do Role	Used to indicate the To Do role for the submitter when the payment agreement request is resubmitted by the approver.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Payment Agreement Request Type** zone to edit the details of the payment agreement request type.

5. Modify the required details.

**Note:** You can search for a **Approval To Do Type** and **Submitter To Do Type** by clicking the **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the payment agreement request type, if required.

7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the payment agreement request type are saved.

**Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Agreement Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1461
<b>Payment Agreement Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type List</a> on page 1461

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Agreement Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1462
How to define characteristics for a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1467

## Deleting a Payment Agreement Request Type

### Procedure

To delete a payment agreement request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Payment Agreement Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Payment Agreement Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Payment Agreement Request Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Payment Agreement Request Type List** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the payment agreement request type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the payment agreement request type.

**Note:** You can delete a payment agreement request type only when you have not created a payment agreement request using the payment agreement request type.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Delete** button in the **Payment Agreement Request Type** zone to delete the payment agreement request type.

5. Click **OK**.  
The payment agreement request type is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Agreement Request Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1461
<b>Payment Agreement Request Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type List</a> on page 1461
<b>Payment Agreement Request Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1462

## Copying a Payment Agreement Request Type

Instead of creating a payment agreement request type from scratch, you can create a new payment agreement request type using an existing payment agreement request type. This is possible through copying a payment agreement request type. On copying a payment agreement request type, the details including the characteristics are copied to the new payment agreement request type. You can then edit the details, if required.

### Prerequisites

To copy a payment agreement request type, you should have:

- Payment agreement request type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Payment agreement request business objects defined in the application

- The Payment Agreement Request Information algorithm is defined using the **C1-PA-INFO** algorithm type
- **C1-PAREQ** To Do Type assigned to a To Do role whose users must receive To Do generated while submitting a payment agreement request for approval

### **Procedure**

To copy a payment agreement request type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.


A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Payment Agreement Request Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

3. Click the **Search** option from the **Payment Agreement Request Type** sub-menu.

The **Payment Agreement Request Type** screen appears.



4. In the **Payment Agreement Request Type List** zone, click the **Duplicate** () icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the payment agreement request type whose copy you want to create.

The **Payment Agreement Request Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the payment agreement request type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the payment agreement request type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Agreement Request Type	Used to specify the payment agreement request type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the payment agreement request type business object used while defining the payment agreement request type (whose copy you want to create).	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the payment agreement request type.	Yes
Payment Agreement Request Business Object	Used to specify the business object that you want to use while creating the payment agreement request.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the payment agreement request type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the payment agreement request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Change Notification Type	Used to indicate the notification type on the status change of payment agreement request type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alert</li> <li>To Do</li> <li>Both</li> </ul>	No
Approval Required	Used to indicate whether approval is required while creating payment agreement request using the payment agreement request type.	Yes
Approval To Do Type	Used to indicate that To Do of the specified To Do type must be created when you submit the payment agreement request for approval.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Approval To Do Role	Used to indicate that users with the specified To Do role can only approve the payment agreement request submitted for approval.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Submitter To Do Type	Used to indicate the To Do type for the submitter when the payment agreement request is resubmitted by the approver.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>To Do Type Search</b> window appears.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.
Submitter To Do Role	Used to indicate the To Do role for the submitter when the payment agreement request is resubmitted by the approver.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Duplicate** button in the **Payment Agreement Request Type** zone to create a copy of the payment agreement request type.

5. Enter the required details.

- 6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the payment agreement request type, if required.
- 7. Click **Save**.

The new payment agreement request type is defined.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Payment Agreement Request Type screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1461
Payment Agreement Request Type List zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type List</a> on page 1461
Payment Agreement Request Type zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1462
How to define characteristics for a payment agreement request type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1467

**Viewing the Payment Agreement Request Type Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a payment agreement request type:

- 1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- 2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Payment Agreement Request Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- 3. Click the **Search** option from the **Payment Agreement Request Type** sub-menu.  
The **Payment Agreement Request Type** screen appears.
- 4. In the **Payment Agreement Request Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment agreement request type whose details you want to view.  
The **Payment Agreement Request Type** zone appears.
- 5. View the details of the payment agreement request type in the **Payment Agreement Request Type** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Payment Agreement Request Type screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1461
Payment Agreement Request Type List zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type List</a> on page 1461
Payment Agreement Request Type zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request Type</a> on page 1462

**Payment Agreement Request (Used for Searching)**

The **Payment Agreement Request** screen allows you to search for a payment agreements for unpaid bills by searching through Bill ID or through Payment Agreement Request ID. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screens:

- [Payment Agreement Request \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1483

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Search Payment Agreement Request](#) on page 1475




- [Bill Details](#) on page 1478

## Search Payment Agreement Request

The **Search Payment Agreement Request** zone allows you to search for a payment agreement request using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a payment agreement request using request or bill details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Request Details</li> <li>• Bill Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Request Details</b> option is selected.	
Payment Agreement Request ID	Used to search a particular payment agreement request.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Created From	Used to search payment agreement requests which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
To	Used to search payment agreement requests which are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Payment Agreement Request Type	Used to search payment agreement requests which are created using a particular payment agreement request type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	<p>Used to search payment agreement requests with a particular status. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Broken Promise</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Kept Promise</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Return to Submitter</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Account ID	<p>Used to search for unpaid bills of a particular account.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. You can search for a account ID by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.</p>	No
Person ID	<p>Used to search the person ID based on which you want to search for bills of a person.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Request Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. You can search for a person ID by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.</p>	No
Bill ID	<p>Used to search a particular bill.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list. You can search for a bill by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the field.</p>	No
Bill Date From	<p>Used to search bills which are created from a particular date onwards.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
To	Used to search bills which are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Alternate Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill using the alternate bill ID.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Bill Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a payment agreement request.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the payment agreement request was created in the system.
Payment Agreement Request Information	Displays information about the payment agreement request.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payment agreement request.
Schedule Amount	Displays the amount that the customer has agreed to pay on the scheduled date.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment agreement request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Broken Promise</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Kept Promise</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Return to Submitter</li> </ul>
Last Updated Date/Time	Displays the most recent updated date and time of the payment agreement request.
Total Unpaid Amount	Displays the total unpaid amount for debit bills.
	<b>Note:</b> <b>Total Unpaid Amount</b> should be equal to total <b>Schedule Amount</b> .
Person Information	Displays information about the person. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.

Column Name	Column Description
Account Information	Displays information about the account. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478
How to create a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Creating a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1480
How to view the details of a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Viewing the Payment Agreement Request Details</a> on page 1479

## Bill Details

The **Bill Details** zone lists unpaid debt bill details. You will not find any records in this zone if the payment agreement request list does not have any unpaid bills assigned to it. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Information	Indicates the bill against which the payment agreement request is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Original Bill Amount	Displays the bill amount when the bill was generated.
Current Bill Balance	Displays the outstanding amount.
Due Date	Displays the due date of the bill.

By default, the **Bill Details** zone does not appear in the **Payment Agreement Request** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment agreement request in the **Search Payment Agreement Request** zone.

You can change the layout of this zone. For more information on how to change the layout, see [Changing the Layout](#) on page 2342.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view bills added in the payment agreement request	<a href="#">Viewing the Bills Added in the Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1479

## Searching for a Payment Agreement Request

### Prerequisites

To search for a payment agreement request, you should have:

- Payment agreement request types defined in the application

### Procedure

To search for a payment agreement request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Credit & Collection** and then click **Payment Agreement Request**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Payment Agreement Request** sub-menu.  
The **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Payment Agreement Request** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of payment agreement requests that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1474
<b>Search Payment Agreement Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1475

## Viewing the Bills Added in the Payment Agreement Request

### Procedure

To view the bills added in the payment agreement request:

1. Search for the payment agreement request in the **Payment Agreement Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the payment agreement request whose bill details you want to view.

The **Bill Details** zone appears.

**Note:** Bill are added in **Search Bills** zone on the **Bills** tab.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Creating a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1480

## Viewing the Payment Agreement Request Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a payment agreement request:

1. Search for the payment agreement request in the **Payment Agreement Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Agreement Request Information** column corresponding to the payment agreement request whose details you want to view.

The **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following three zones:
    - **Payment Agreement Request** – Displays the details of the payment agreement request.
    - **Bill Details** – Lists the unpaid bill details of the payment agreement request.
    - **Payment Schedule** – Lists the payment scheduled for unpaid bill amount of the payment agreement request.
  - **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the payment request.
3. View the details of the payment agreement request in the **Payment Agreement Request** zone.
  4. View the bill details of the unpaid amount bills of payment agreement request in the **Bill Details** zone.
  5. View the payment schedule details of payment agreement request in the **Payment Schedule** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1483
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1484
<b>Bill Details</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Details</a> on page 1486
<b>Payment Schedule</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Schedule</a> on page 1487

**Creating a Payment Agreement Request**

**Prerequisites**

To create a payment agreement request, you should have:


- Payment agreement request types defined in the application

**Procedure**

To create a payment agreement request:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Credit & Collection** and then click **Payment Agreement Request**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Payment Agreement Request** sub-menu.

The **Add Payment Agreement Request** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Agreement Request Type	Used to indicate the payment agreement request type using which you want to create the payment agreement request.	Yes
Account ID	Used to search for unpaid bills of a particular account.  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Add Payment Agreement Request** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Payment Agreement Request** screen.

- Select the required payment agreement request type and account ID from the respective fields.
- Click OK.

The **Payment Request** screen appears.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Search Payment Agreement Request zone	<a href="#">Search Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1475
Payment Agreement Request screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1474

## Defining Characteristics for a Payment Agreement Request

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a payment agreement request:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Payment Agreement Request**)

### Procedure

To define characteristics for a Payment Agreement Request:


- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are editing, submitting, approving, rejecting or resubmitting a payment agreement.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to indicate the date from when the characteristic is effective for the payment agreement request.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment agreement request.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Payment Agreement Request.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment agreement request.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment agreement request.

- Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the payment agreement request, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the payment agreement request, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Creating a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1480
How to edit a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Editing a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1489

## Defining Payment Schedule for a Payment Agreement Request

### Prerequisites

To define payment schedule for a payment agreement request:


- Scheduled date, sum of installments for overdue or unpaid bills defined in the application for which the payment is scheduled is set to **Payment Agreement Request**

### Procedure


To define payment schedule for a Payment Agreement Request:


- Ensure that the **Payment Schedule** section is expanded when you are editing, submitting, approving, rejecting or resubmitting a payment agreement.


The **Payment Schedule** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Schedule Date	Used to indicate the date schedule for the payment.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a payment schedule for the payment agreement request.
Schedule Amount	Used to indicate the amount scheduled for overdue or unpaid bills to be paid in installments.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select a <b>Schedule Date</b> for the payment schedule.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required only when you select a <b>Schedule Date</b> for the payment schedule.
Auto Pay ID	Used to indicate the auto pay id of the payor.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select auto pay method option for <b>Pay Method</b> .  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Auto Pay ID Search</b> window appears.	

- Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a auto pay method option for **Pay Method**, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Auto Pay ID** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a **Payor Account ID**.

- If you want to define more than one payment schedule for the payment agreement request, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a payment schedule from the payment agreement request, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the payment schedule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to create a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Creating a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1480
How to edit a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Editing a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1489

## Payment Agreement Request (Used for Viewing)

Once you create a payment agreement request type, the **Payment Agreement Request** screen allows you to:

- Edit the details of a payment agreement request along with bill details and payment schedule

- Delete a payment agreement request
- View the details of a payment agreement request
- View the bills added in a payment agreement request
- Define a payment schedule in a payment agreement request
- Submit a payment agreement request for approval
- Approve or reject a payment agreement request
- Resubmit a payment agreement request
- Filter an overdue bills of an account
- Add an overdue bill in a payment agreement request
- View the log of a payment agreement request
- Add a log entry for a payment agreement request

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following three zones:
  - **Payment Agreement Request** – Displays the details of the payment agreement request.
  - **Bill Details** – Lists the bill details of the payment agreement request.
  - **Payment Schedule** – Lists the payment schedule details of the bills for the payment agreement request.
- **Bills** – This tab lists the unpaid bill amount details for the same account.

**Note:** This tab will be displayed only when the payment agreement is in **Draft** status.

- **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the payment agreement request.

Payment Agreement Request - Main

The **Main** tab on the **Payment Agreement Request** contains the following zones:

- [Payment Agreement Request](#) on page 1484
- [Bill Details](#) on page 1486
- [Payment Schedule](#) on page 1487

Payment Agreement Request

The **Payment Agreement Request** zone displays the details of the payment agreement request. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Main** – This section provides basic information about the payment agreement request. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Payment Agreement Request Information	Displays information about the payment agreement request.
Payment Agreement Request Type	Indicates the payment agreement request type using which the payment agreement request is created. <div><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment Agreement Request Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the payment agreement request type.</div>



Field Name	Field Description
Account Information	Displays information about the account for which the payment agreement request is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.
Status	Indicates the status of the payment agreement request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Approval In Progress</li> <li>• Broken Promise</li> <li>• Kept Promise</li> <li>• Rejected</li> </ul>
Payor Account ID	Displays the payment agreement requests which are created for a particular payor account. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.
Pay Method	Displays the method of payment of amount.
Total Unpaid Amount	Displays the unpaid amount for selected bills.
Total Future Schedule Amount	Displays the total schedule amount.

- **Characteristics** – This section lists the characteristics defined for the payment of selected bills. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the payment agreement request.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:

Column Name	Column Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the payment agreement request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the payment agreement request is in the <b>Active</b> or <b>Draft</b> status.
Delete	Used to delete the payment agreement request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the payment agreement request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.

Column Name	Column Description
Submit	Used to submit the payment agreement request for approval.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit</b> button appears only when the payment agreement request is in the <b>Draft</b> status.
Approve	Used to approve the payment agreement request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Approve</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The payment agreement request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the payment agreement request.</li> </ul>
Reject	Used to reject the payment agreement request.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Reject</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The payment agreement request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the payment agreement request.</li> </ul>
Resubmit	Used to change the status of the payment agreement request to <b>Draft</b> .
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Resubmit</b> button appears only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The payment agreement request is in the <b>Approval In Progress</b> status.</li> <li>A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the payment agreement request.</li> </ul>

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the payment agreement request is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the payment agreement request status is updated.
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the payment agreement request is created.

### Bill Details

The **Bill Details** zone displays the bill details of the payment agreement request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the bill. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Bill Amount	Displays the bill amount when the bill was generated.
Due Date	Displays the due date of the bill.
Unpaid Amount	Displays the amount which is eligible for payment against the bill.
Overdue Process Information	Displays the overdue process information about the bill.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Overdue Process</b> screen appears with details of the overdue process of the bill.

This zone contains the **Delete** button. This button appears when the payment agreement request is in the **Draft** status. It is used to delete bills of payment agreement request.

**Note:** One payment agreement request will have complete status debit bills of only one account. All bills under one payment agreement will be of same currency. Once payment agreement request is active, bills added under the request cannot be deleted.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

### Payment Schedule

The **Payment Schedule** zone displays the payments scheduled for the bills of the payment agreement request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Schedule Date	Displays the schedule date for payment of bills amount in installments.
Schedule Amount	Displays the scheduled amount for bills payment in installments.
Auto Pay ID	Displays the automatic payment ID.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

## Payment Agreement Request - Bills

The **Bills** tab on the **Payment Agreement Request** contains the following zone:


- [Search Bills](#) on page 1487

**Note:** This tab is appears when the payment agreement request is in the **Draft** status.

### Search Bills

The **Search Bills** zone allows you to search for all overdue bills for the account of a payment agreement request using various search criteria. This zone contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a payment agreement request using bill details.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected.	
Bill ID	Used to search for a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Bill Search</b> window appears.	
Bill Date From	Used to search bills which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
To	Used to search bills which are created till a particular date.	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for the bill details.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID.
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the bill. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Unpaid Amount	Displays the amount which is eligible for payment agreement request against the bill.
Overdue Process Information	Displays the overdue process information for the bill.

This zone contains the **Add** button. It is used to add bill details of payment agreement request.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

**Note:** One payment agreement request will have complete status debit bills of only one account. All bills under one payment agreement will be of same currency. Bills which are part of another payment agreement request and which is not in completed status will not be available for selection.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478
How to create a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Creating a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1480

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Viewing the Payment Agreement Request Details</a> on page 1479

## Payment Agreement Request - Log

The **Log** tab on the **Payment Agreement Request** screen contains the following zone:

- [Payment Agreement Request Log](#) on page 1489

### Payment Agreement Request Log

The **Payment Agreement Request Log** zone on the **Payment Agreement Request** screen lists the complete trail of actions performed on the payment agreement request. This zone contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the payment agreement request.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the payment agreement request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the payment agreement request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the payment agreement request.
Status Reason	Displays the status reason of action performed on the payment agreement request.
Old Payment Schedule	Displays the details of old payment schedule.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the payment agreement request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Payment Agreement Request Log** zone.

The **Add Payment Agreement Request Log** window appears. Enter **Log Details** and click **Save**. The payment agreement request log is added.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1500
How to add the log for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1501

## Editing a Payment Agreement Request

### Procedure

To edit a payment agreement request:

1. Search for the payment agreement request in the **Payment Agreement Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Agreement Request Information** column corresponding to the payment agreement request whose details you want to edit.

The **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Payment Agreement Request** zone.


**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the payment agreement request is in the **Active** or **Draft** status.

The **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the payment agreement request. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Agreement Request Information	Displays information about the payment agreement request.	Not applicable
Payment Agreement Request Type	Indicates the payment agreement request type using which the payment agreement request is created.	Not applicable
Account Information	Used to indicate the account for which you want to create the payment agreement request.	Yes
Third Party Payor	Used to specify the third party payor.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The values appears for selection only if the third party payor check box is selected.	
Payor Account ID	Displays the account ID of selected <b>Third Party Payor</b> .	Not applicable
Pay Method	Used to indicate the payment method.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The valid values differ with respect to the description added for respective pay method in the <b>Pay Method</b> screen.	
Comments	Used to specify additional details about the payment agreement request.	No
Total Unpaid Amount	Displays the sum of unpaid amount of the bills.	Not applicable
Total Future Schedule Amount	Displays the sum of future schedule amount.	Not applicable

- **Bill Details** – Used to specify the bill details in the payment agreement request. This section contains the following column:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill ID	Used to search a particular bill.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Bill Search</b> window appears. Bill details are displayed corresponding to the searched bill id.	

If you want to define more than one bill details for the payment agreement request, click the **Add** (+) icon.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a bill detail from the payment agreement request, click the **Delete** (🗑) icon corresponding to the bill ID.

- **Payment Schedule** – Used to specify the payment schedule details in the payment agreement request. This screen contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Schedule Date	Used to specify the schedule date for payment of schedule amount in the form of installments.	Yes
Schedule Amount	Used to specify the schedule amount to be paid in terms of installments.	Yes
Auto Pay ID	Used to search for auto pay ID.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field can be edited only when the <b>Pay Method</b> is selected for electronic payment of schedule amount. The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to the field. Auto pay details are displayed corresponding to the searched auto pay id.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining an electronic payment for <b>Pay Method</b> .

If you want to define more than one payment schedules for the payment agreement request, click the **Add** (+) icon.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a payment schedule from the payment agreement request, click the **Delete** (🗑) icon corresponding to the schedule date.

- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the payment tender. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the payment agreement request.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment agreement request.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Payment Agreement Request</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment agreement request.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the payment agreement request.

4. Add or modify the details of the payment agreement request, if required.
5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the payment agreement request, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the payment agreement request are saved.

**Note:** Approval is not required for modifications done on an active payment agreement request.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1483
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1484
How to define characteristics for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1481

## Deleting a Payment Agreement Request

### Procedure

To delete a payment agreement request:

1. Search for the payment agreement request in the **Payment Agreement Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Agreement Request Information** column corresponding to the payment request that you want to delete.

The **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Payment Agreement Request** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the payment agreement request.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the payment agreement request is in the **Draft** status.

4. Click **OK**.

The payment agreement request is deleted.

#### Related Topics



For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1483
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1484
<b>Bill Details</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Details</a> on page 1486
<b>Payment Schedule</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Schedule</a> on page 1487

## Submitting a Payment Agreement Request

### Prerequisites

To submit a payment agreement request, you should have:

- Payment Agreement Request Types defined in the request.

### Procedure

To submit a payment agreement request:

1. Search for the payment agreement request in the **Payment Agreement Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Agreement Request Information** column corresponding to the payment agreement request that you want to submit.

The **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears.

3. Click the **Submit** button in the **Payment Agreement Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If...	Then
The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is selected in the payment agreement request type using which the payment agreement request is created.	A To Do of the <b>To Do Type</b> is created for the payment agreement request entity and sent to the approver. Status of the payment agreement request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> . <b>C1-PAREQ</b> is the to do type for Payment Agreement Request.
The <b>Approval Required</b> check box is not selected in the payment agreement request type using which the payment agreement request is created.	The payment agreement request is created using the specified payment agreement request types and the status of the payment agreement request is changed to as specified in the payment agreement request type.

### **Note:**

The **Submit** button appears only when the payment agreement request is in the **Draft** status.

For more information about the **Payment Agreement Request Periodic Monitor (C1-PAREQ)** batch, refer to Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1483

For more information on...	See...
Payment Agreement Request zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1484

Removing an Overdue Bill from a Payment Agreement Request

Prerequisites

To remove an overdue bill from a payment agreement request, you should have:

- Bill details should be available to be removed from payment agreement request

Procedure

To delete a bill detail from payment agreement request:

1. Search for the payment agreement request in the **Payment Agreement Request** screen which is in **Draft** status.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Agreement Request Information** column corresponding to the payment agreement request whose details you want to view.

By default, the **Main** tab of the **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears.

3. List of bill details are displayed in the **Bill Details** zone.
4. Select the check box corresponding to the bill which you want to delete from the payment agreement request.

You can delete more than one bill from the payment agreement request at the same time.

5. Click **Delete**.

A message appears indicating that selected bills have been successfully deleted from the payment agreement request.

6. Click **OK**.

Note that the bill is added in the **Search Bills** zone in the **Bills** tab.

**Note:** Bills in **Active** status cannot be deleted.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478
How to create a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Creating a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1480
Bill Details zone	<a href="#">Bill Details</a> on page 1486
Search Bills zone	<a href="#">Search Bills</a> on page 1487

Approving a Payment Agreement Request

You can view the number of payment agreement requests which are pending for approval in the **Payment Agreement Request** screen. The approver can review, and accordingly approve or reject the payment agreement request based on the observations.

**Note:** The system will not allow you to approve or reject a payment agreement request submitted by you.

Procedure

To approve a payment agreement request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Approve a payment agreement request through the <b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the payment agreement request in the <b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Payment Agreement Request Information</b> column corresponding to the payment agreement request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Approve a payment agreement request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>. The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter the to do type <b>C1-PAREQ</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field for the entity payment agreement request.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field. The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> <li>6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the payment agreement request that you want to review.</li> </ol>

The **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears.

2. Review the payment agreement request details.
3. Click the **Approve** button in the **Payment Agreement Request** zone.

The system behaves in the following manner:

If you are...	Then
Approving a payment agreement request	The status of the payment agreement request is changed to <b>Approval In Progress</b> as specified in the payment agreement request type.

**Note:** The **Approve** button appears only when:

- The payment agreement request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the payment agreement request.

## Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1483
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1484
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478

## Rejecting a Payment Agreement Request

### Prerequisites

To reject a payment agreement request, you should have:

- Rejection reasons defined in the application

### **Note:**

While rejecting a payment agreement request, you need to specify the reason why you want to reject the payment agreement request. You can select the appropriate rejection reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Rejected** status of the **C1-PaymentAgreementRequest** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

The system will not allow you to approve or reject a payment agreement request submitted by you.

### Procedure

To reject a payment agreement request:

1. Do either of the following:

If you want to	Then
Reject a payment agreement request through the <b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Search for the payment agreement request in the <b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Search Results</b> section, click the link in the <b>Payment Agreement Request Information</b> column corresponding to the payment request which you want to review.</li> </ol>
Reject a payment agreement request from the <b>To Do List</b> screen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Menu</b> link in the <b>Application</b> toolbar. A list appears.</li> <li>2. From the <b>Main</b> menu, select <b>To Do</b> and then click <b>To Do List</b>. The <b>To Do Type for User Search</b> window appears.</li> <li>3. Enter the to do type <b>C1-PAREQ</b> in the <b>To Do Type</b> field for the entity payment agreement request.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Search</b> button corresponding to the <b>To Do Type</b> field. The <b>To Do List</b> screen appears.</li> <li>5. Select the <b>Open</b> option from the <b>Filter by</b> list to view all unassigned To Dos.</li> </ol>

If you want to	Then
	6. Click the link in the <b>Message</b> column corresponding to the To Do of the payment agreement request that you want to review.

The **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears.

- Review the payment agreement request details.
- Click the **Reject** button in the **Payment Agreement Request** zone.

The **Reject Payment Request** window appears. It contains following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to reject the payment agreement request.	Yes
Comments	Used to specify additional information while rejecting the payment agreement request.	No

**Note:** The **Reject** button appears only when:

- The payment agreement request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.
- A user with the approval To Do role is reviewing the payment agreement request.

- Select the rejection reason from the **Status Reason** list.
- Click **Save**.

The status of the payment agreement request is changed to **Rejected**.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1483
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1484

## Resubmitting a Payment Agreement Request

### Prerequisites

To resubmit a payment agreement request, you should have:

- Entities added in the payment agreement request which is submitted for approval.

### Procedure

To resubmit a payment agreement request:

- Search for the payment agreement request in the **Payment Agreement Request** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Agreement Request Information** column corresponding to the payment agreement request that you want to resubmit.

The **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears.

- Click the **Resubmit** button in the **Payment Agreement Request** zone.

The **Resubmit Payment Agreement Request** screen appears.

**Note:** The **Resubmit** button appears only when the payment agreement request is in the **Approval In Progress** status.

A To Do of the **C1-PAREQ** To Do type is created and sent to the request submitter using the submitter TO DO Role and the status of the payment agreement request is changed to **Draft**.

4. Enter the comments in the respective field and click **Save**.


**Note:** While resubmitting, To Do will be sent to the submitter of the request using the submitter To Do Role mapped on the payment agreement request type and the request will be moved to Draft status. The submitter can do necessary changes and re submit the request. Log will be maintained when the approver sends the request back to submitter.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1483
<b>Payment Agreement Request</b> zone	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1484
How to submit a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Submitting a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1493

**Filtering Overdue Bills of an Account**

The **Search Bills** zone lists bills that are overdue for an account. You will not find any records in this zone if the payment agreement request does not have overdue bills in the account. This zone contains the following fields as search criteria:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a payment agreement request using bill details.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Bill Details</b> option is selected.	
Bill ID	Used to search for a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Bill Search</b> window appears.	
Bill Date From	Used to search bills which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
To	Used to search bills which are created till a particular date.	No

By default, the **Search Bills** zone appears in the **Bills** tab of **Payment Agreement Request** screen. By default, the **Filter** area is visible. You can hide the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

By default, the search results section displays the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill ID	Displays the bill ID.

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Information	Displays additional information about the bill. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill</b> screen appears with the details of the respective bill.
Unpaid Amount	Displays the amount which is eligible for payment agreement request against the bill.
Overdue Process Information	Displays the overdue process information for the bill.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Bills</b> tab	<a href="#">Payment Agreement Request - Bills</a> on page 1487
<b>Bill Details</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Details</a> on page 1486
How to add an overdue bill in a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Adding an Overdue Bill in a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1499

## Adding an Overdue Bill in a Payment Agreement Request

### Prerequisites

To add an overdue bill in a payment agreement request, you should have:

- Overdue bills should be available for accounts to add in payment agreement request

### Procedure

To add an overdue bill in a payment agreement request:

**Note:** A bill with outstanding amount greater than zero which is not part of an overdue process will be allowed to be added in a payment agreement request. While a bill with negative outstanding amount will not be allowed to be added in a payment agreement request.

1. Search for the payment agreement request in the **Payment Agreement Request** screen which is in **Draft** or **Active** status.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Agreement Request Information** column corresponding to the payment agreement request whose details you want to view.  
The **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears.
3. Click the **Bills** tab.  
The **Bills** tab appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Bills** zone.  
In the **Search Results** section, list of bills meeting the search criteria are displayed.
5. Select the check box corresponding to the bill which you want to add to the payment agreement request from the **Search Results** section.  
You can add more than one bill to the payment agreement request at the same time.
6. Click **Add**.  
A message appears indicating that selected bills have been successfully added to the payment agreement request.
7. Click **OK**.

Note that the bill is added in the **Bill Details** zone in the **Main** tab.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478
How to create a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Creating a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1480
<b>Search Bills</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Bills</a> on page 1487
<b>Bill Details</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Details</a> on page 1486

Viewing the Log of a Payment Agreement Request

Procedure

To view the log of a payment agreement request:

1. Search for the payment agreement request in the **Payment Agreement Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Agreement Request Information** column corresponding to the payment agreement request whose log you want to view.

The **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following three zones:
  - **Payment Agreement Request** – Displays the details of the payment agreement request.
  - **Bill Details** – Lists the bill details of the payment agreement request.
  - **Payment Schedule** – Lists the payment schedule details of the bills for the payment agreement request.
- **Bills** – This tab lists the unpaid bill amount details for the same account.

**Note:** This tab will be displayed only when the payment agreement is in **Draft** status.

- **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the payment agreement request.
3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Payment Agreement Request Log** zone in the **Log** tab contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the payment agreement request.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the payment agreement request.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the payment agreement request.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the payment agreement request.
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the payment agreement request was rejected.
Old Payment Schedule	Displays the details of old payment schedule.



**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the payment agreement request by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Payment Agreement Request Log** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478
How to add a log entry for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1501

## Adding a Log Entry for a Payment Agreement Request

### Procedure

To add a log entry for a payment agreement request:

1. Search for the payment agreement request in the **Payment Agreement Request** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Payment Agreement Request Information** column corresponding to the payment agreement request whose log you want to edit.

The **Payment Agreement Request** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – This tab contains the following three zones:
  - **Payment Agreement Request** – Displays the details of the payment agreement request.
  - **Bill Details** – Lists the bill details of the payment agreement request.
  - **Payment Schedule** – Lists the payment schedule details of the bills for the payment agreement request.
- **Bills** – This tab lists the unpaid bill amount details for the same account.

**Note:** This tab will be displayed only when the payment agreement is in **Draft** status.

- **Log** – This tab lists the complete trail of actions performed on the payment agreement request.
3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Payment Agreement Request Log** zone.

The **Add Payment Agreement Request Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Payment Agreement Request Information	Displays information about the payment agreement request.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the payment agreement request.	Yes

5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.
6. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Payment Agreement Request Log** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a payment agreement request	<a href="#">Searching for a Payment Agreement Request</a> on page 1478

---

# Chapter

# 24

---

## Inbound Message

---

**Topics:**

- [Customer Inbound Message](#)
- [Membership Inbound Message](#)
- [ASO Customer Inbound Message](#)
- [Inbound Message Type](#)
- [Inbound Message \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Inbound Message \(Used for Viewing\)](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to create the following inbound messages through the respective inbound web services:

Inbound Message	Inbound Web Service
<a href="#">Customer Inbound Message</a> on page 1504	<a href="#">CI-CustomerStructureInboundMessage</a> on page 1632
<a href="#">Membership Inbound Message</a> on page 1542	<a href="#">CI-MembershipInboundMessage</a> on page 1633
<a href="#">ASO Customer Inbound Message</a> on page 1572	<a href="#">CI-ASOCustomerInboundMessage</a> on page 1633

## Customer Inbound Message

---

On calling the **C1-CustomerStructureInboundMessage** web service, a customer inbound message is created in the **Pending** status. When the **Customer Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-CUSIN)** batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any customer inbound messages in the **Pending** status. If there is a customer inbound message in the **Pending** status, the system validates the customer inbound message. If a customer inbound message is successfully validated, it is processed further and the following entities are created or updated in the system based on the available information:

- Person
- Account
- Contract
- Policy
- Policy Plan
- Packaged Savings
- Billable Charges (for packaged savings and/or non-eligibility based fees)

In addition, the system enables you to submit the customer inbound messages for validation and processing from the user interface. On submitting a customer inbound message, the system validates the customer inbound message. If a customer inbound message is successfully validated, it is processed further and the required entities are created or updated in the system based on the available information.

Once all required entities are created or updated in the system, the status of the customer inbound message is changed to **Processed**. If any error occurs while validating or processing a customer inbound message, the status of the customer inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. The system enables you to either reprocess or void a rejected customer inbound message. The system can reprocess a customer inbound message only when its status is changed to **Pending**. Using the **Retry** option, you can change the status of the customer inbound message from **Rejected** to **Pending**. The **Customer Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-CUSIN)** batch will then reconsider the customer inbound message for validation and processing.

You can also configure the system such that the batch can automatically retry to process the rejected customer inbound messages. However, it will attempt to retry only when the **Maximum Retry** parameter in the **Retry for To Dos (C1-TODORETRY)** algorithm is set to a value greater than zero. Also, the maximum number of times the batch can attempt to retry and reprocess a customer inbound message depends on the value defined in the **Maximum Retry** parameter.

### Prerequisites

To use the customer inbound message feature, you need to do the following:

- Define the required customer inbound message types in the system.
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Inbound Message Type**.
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Inbound Message**.
- Define values for the required parameters in the **C1-CINMSGVAL**, **C1-CINMSGPRC**, **C1-TODORETRY**, and **C1-TDCRINMSG** algorithms.
- Define the **Policy Plan BO (C1PPLNBO)** characteristics for the policy type which is specified in the **C1-CINMSGPRC** algorithm.
- Define predefined values for the **C1PRBASE**, **C1PRSRSN**, **C1INVHLD**, **C1STISSE**, **C1PRTNRL**, **C1PRDCAT**, **C1RATCOV**, and **C1PSNINT** characteristic types.
- Define values for the **C1-SourceSystemLookup** extendable lookup.

- Define values for the **PER\_OR\_BUS\_FLG**, **ADDRESS\_TYPE\_FLG**, **EXT\_TYPE\_FLG**, **BILL\_ADDR\_SRCE\_FLG**, and **RATE\_COVRG\_CNTRACT\_TYPE** lookup fields.
- Define the required person identifier types, account identifier types, characteristic types, person relationship types, phone types, customer classes, bill cycles, divisions, bill route types, hold request types, service quantity identifiers, contract types, and policy person roles in the application.
- Define values for the **C1BC\_OPT\_TYP\_FLG** lookup field.

**Note:** You can then set the value for the option type (defined in the **C1BC\_OPT\_TYP\_FLG** lookup field) in the **C1-BILLCYCLE** feature configuration.

- Define values for the option types in the **C1-BILLCYCLE** feature configuration.
- Define values for the **C1\_INVOICE\_DAY\_BILL\_PERIOD\_FLG** lookup field.

**Note:** Each lookup field value should be mapped to a valid bill period which exists in the system. You must then define this lookup field value as a predefined value for the **C1OFFRST** characteristic type. The system will then use the bill period configured for the respective invoice day when the **C1OFFRST** characteristic is defined for the account.

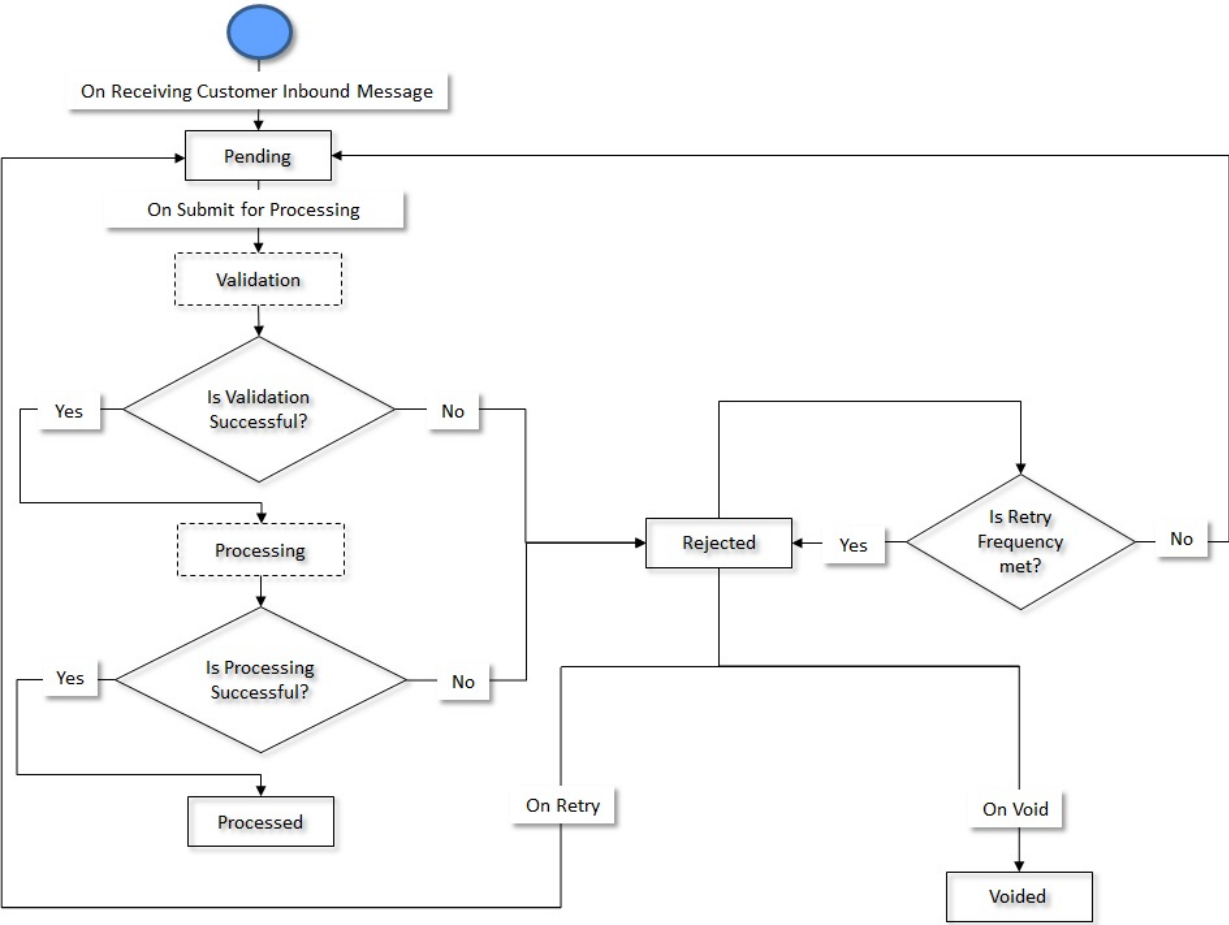
- Define predefined values for the **C1OFFRST** characteristic type.
- Set the batch control type of the **Customer Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-CUSIN)** batch to **Timed** and define the following attributes:
  - Time Interval
  - Timer Active
  - User ID
  - Batch Language
  - Email Address
- Define the required status reasons for the status to which a policy must be transitioned on policy termination and map each status reason to a prime source reason (which is a predefined value in the **C1PRSRSN** characteristic type).
- Define the required status reasons for the status to which a policy must be transitioned on policy reinstatement and map each status reason to a prime source reason (which is a predefined value in the **C1PRSRSN** characteristic type).
- Define bill cancel reasons which you want to use on packaged savings and premium bill segment cancelation during the policy or membership termination.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-BILLCYCLE</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-BILLCYCLE Feature Configuration</a> on page 2359

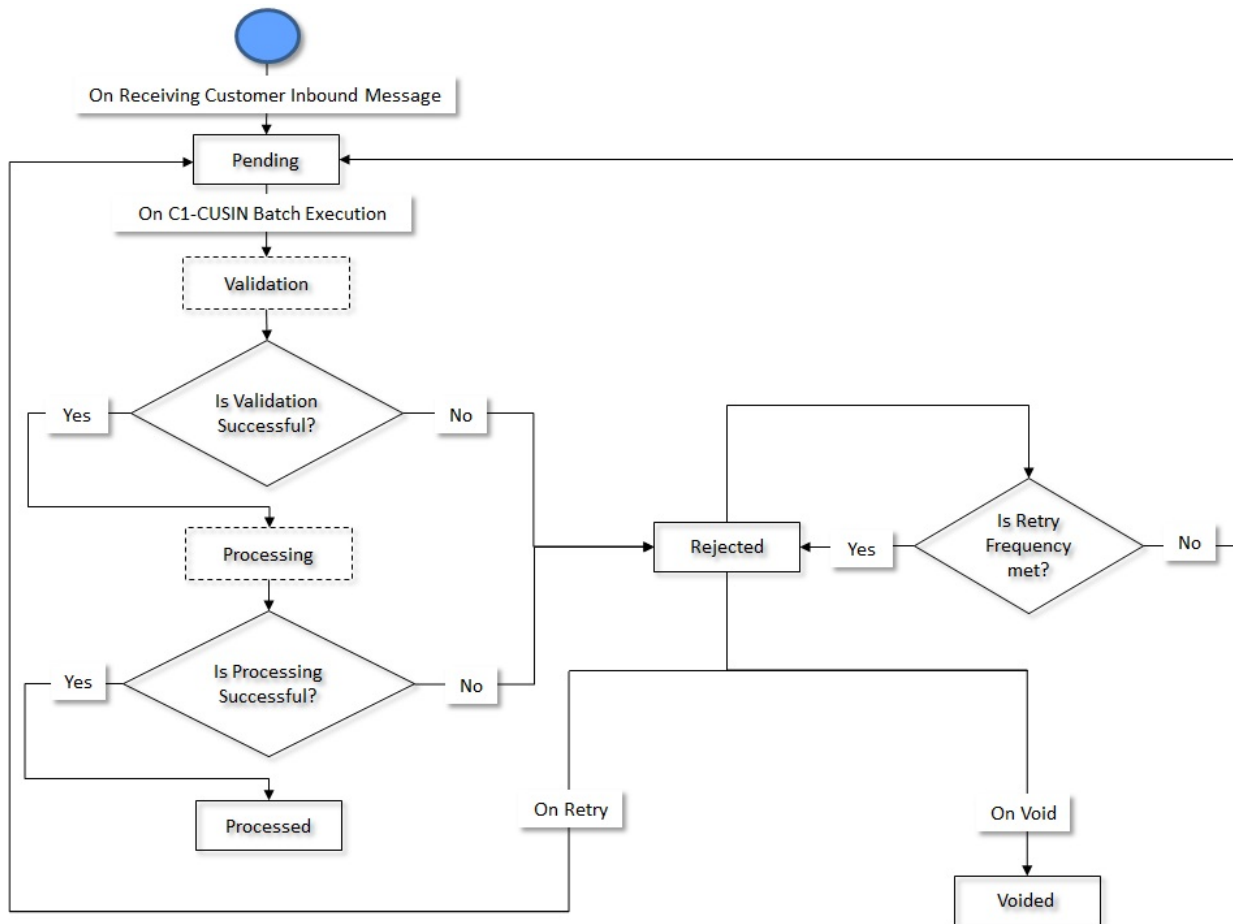
## Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through User Interface

The following figure graphically indicates how a customer inbound message moves from one status to another when it is validated and processed through the user interface:



**Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through a Batch Process**

The following figure graphically indicates how a customer inbound message moves from one status to another when it is validated and processed through the **Customer Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-CUSIN)** batch:



## Algorithms Used in C1-CustomerInboundMessage

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-CustomerInboundMessage** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Pending	Monitor	C1-AT-RQJ	C1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">C1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1508.
Validation	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
	Enter	C1-CINMSGVAL	C1-CINMSGVAL	Refer to <a href="#">C1-CINMSGVAL</a> on page 1508.
Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
	Enter	C1-CINMSGPRC	C1-CINMSGPRC	Refer to <a href="#">C1-CINMSGPRC</a> on page 1509.
Rejected	Monitor	C1-TODORETRY	C1-TODORETRY	Refer to <a href="#">C1-TODORETRY</a> on page 1518.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
	Enter	C1-TDCRINMSG	F1-TDCREATE	Refer to <a href="#">C1-TDCRINMSG</a> on page 1518.
Processed	-	-	-	-
Voided	-	-	-	-

### C1-AT-RQJ

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the customer or membership inbound message is changed to **Pending**. If the **isRetried** flag in the inbound message is set to **true**, it resets the flag to **false**.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** – Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** – Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

**Note:** At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

### F1-AT-RQJ

This algorithm transitions the current status of the business object to the specified status. It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** – Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** – Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

### C1-CINMSGVAL

This algorithm is invoked when the **Customer Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-CUSIN)** batch is executed and when you click the **Submit for Processing** button. It validates the customer inbound message which is in the **Pending** status. It checks the following:

- Whether the primary identifier is specified for the person.
- Whether the bill group information exist when the policy information is specified in the customer inbound message.
- Whether the bill cycle is specified in the bill group information.
- Whether the **Invoice Day** characteristic type (as mentioned in the **Invoice Day Characteristic Type** parameter) exists in the bill group information and a valid value is specified for this characteristic type.

If any of the above validation fails, the status of the customer inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. In addition, the appropriate log entry is added which you can view in the **Inbound Message Log** zone.

This algorithm contains the following parameters:



Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Next Status	Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.	No
Next Transition Condition	Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.	No
Invoice Day Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the invoice day for the account. This type of characteristic is defined on the account. The system then fetches the bill period mapped to the invoice day in the <b>C1_INVOICE_DAY_BILL_PERIOD_FLG</b> lookup field.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1OFFRST</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b> .	

### C1-CINMSGPRC

This algorithm is invoked once a customer inbound message is successfully validated. It processes the customer inbound message and accordingly creates or updates a person, account, contract, policy, policy plan, packaged savings, and billable charges for packaged savings. If requested, it also terminates, reinstates, or renews a fully-insured policy.

If the processing fails due to any reason, the status of the customer inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. In addition, the appropriate log entry is added which you can view in the **Inbound Message Log** zone.

This algorithm contains the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Next Status	Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.	No
Next Transition Condition	Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>F1OK</b> .	
Hold Reason Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the reason why the account must be kept on hold. This type of characteristic is defined on the account.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1INVHLD</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b> .	

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Franchise Person Relationship Type	Used to specify the person relationship type. If the parent person's relationship type in the customer inbound message matches to this parameter value, the system will add the person's account and contract details in the parent person's statement construct.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>BILLING</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a person relationship type which is already defined in the system.	
Packaged Savings Contract Type	Used to specify the contract type using which you want to create the packaged savings contract for accounts. This contract is then used to create packaged savings billable charges.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>PACKSAV</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a contract type which is already defined in the system.	
Policy Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the policy ID. This type of characteristic is defined on the billable charge. The system then uses this characteristic to derive the packaged savings billable charge which you want to update.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1POLICY</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Billable Charge</b> .	
Policy Plan Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the policy plan ID. This type of characteristic is defined on the contract. The system then uses this characteristic to derive the contract which you want to update.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1POLPLN</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Contract</b> .	

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Plan Code Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the policy plan number. This type of characteristic is defined on the price item. The system then uses this characteristic to derive the price item which you want to update.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1HPLNID</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	
Coverage Type Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the coverage type. This type of characteristic is defined on the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1PRDCAT</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	
Rate Coverage Type Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the rate coverage type. This type of characteristic is defined on the price item. The system then uses this characteristic to derive the price item which you want to update.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1RATCOV</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	
Policy Person Role	Used to specify the policy person role which you want to use while adding main customer in a policy.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>DEP</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a policy person role which is already defined in the system.	
Description on Bill	Used to specify the description that you want to display on the packaged savings billable charge.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>Package Savings BC</b> .	

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Start Date Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the date from when the policy is effective. This type of characteristic is defined on the policy.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1PPSTDT</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy</b> .	
Policy End Date Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the date till when the policy is effective. This type of characteristic is defined on the policy. The system uses this characteristic while reinstating the policy.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1PPENDT</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy</b> .	
Base Policy Indicator Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to indicate whether the policy is a base policy. This type of characteristic is defined on the policy.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1PRBASE</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy</b> .	
Invoice Day Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the invoice day for the account. This type of characteristic is defined on the account. The system fetches the bill period mapped to the invoice day in the <b>C1_INVOICE_DAY_BILL_PERIOD_FLG</b> lookup field while creating packaged savings billable charges for accounts.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1OFFRST</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b> .	

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
State of Issue Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to indicate whether the members are eligible for the state assessment fee. This type of characteristic is defined on the policy.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1STISSE</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy</b> .	
Days to Calculate Hold Request End Date	Used to specify the number of days. It is used to calculate the hold request end date (which is hold request start date + specified number of days).	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>5</b> .	
Proration Rule Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to indicate how premium must be prorated. This type of characteristic is defined on the policy.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1PRTNRL</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy</b> .	
Policy Plan Business Object Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the business object using which the policy plan must be created. This type of characteristic is defined on the policy type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1PPLNBO</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy Type</b> .	
External Source System Status Reason Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the external source system status reason. Each status reason configured for a policy status is mapped to an external source system status reason. The system uses this characteristic to derive the status reason configured in ORMB while reinstating or terminating the policy.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1PRSRSN</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Status Reason</b> .	

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Plan Effective Date Characteristic Type	<p>Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the date from when the policy plan is effective. This type of characteristic is defined on the policy plan.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1PLEFDT</b>. You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy Plan</b>.</p>	Yes
Policy Type	<p>Used to indicate the policy type. The system derives the policy business object (using which the policy must be created) from the policy type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>INDIVIDUAL</b>. You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a policy type which is already defined in the system.</p>	No
Account Identifier Type	<p>Used to indicate the account identifier type against which you want to store the account number.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1_F_ANO</b>. You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify an account identifier type which is already defined in the system.</p>	No
Membership Characteristic Type	<p>Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the membership ID. This type of characteristic is defined on the billable charge. The system uses this characteristic to derive the packaged savings billable charges whose corresponding bill segments must be canceled on the policy termination.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1MMBRSH</b>. You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Billable Charge</b>.</p>	Yes
Add Days to Billable Charge End Date	Used to specify the number of days. It is used to calculate the billable charge end date (which is billable charge existing end date + specified number of days).	No

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Segment Cancel Reason	Used to indicate the cancel reason which you want to use during packaged savings bill segment cancelation on the policy termination.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>MASS</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a bill cancel reason which is already defined in the system.	
Member Count Service Quantity Identifier	Used to indicate the service quantity identifier (SQI) against which you want to store the number of members in the policy plan. The system uses this SQI while creating the premium billable charges.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>MEMCOUNT</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a service quantity identifier which is already defined in the system.	
Non-Eligibility Based Contract Type	Used to specify the contract type using which you want to create the non-eligibility based contract. The system then uses this contract to create non-eligibility based billable charges.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>NEBFEEES</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a contract type which is already defined in the system.	
Franchise Indicator Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to indicate whether the parent person is a franchise. This type of characteristic is defined on the person.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1FRANCD</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b> .	

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to indicate the product to which the price item is mapped. This type of characteristic is defined on the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1PRODUC</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	
Plan Activity Date Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the plan activity date. This type of characteristic is defined on the policy plan.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1PLACDT</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy Plan</b> .	
Non Integrated Packaged Savings Indicator Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to indicate whether the packaged savings is non-integrated. This type of characteristic is defined on the billable charge.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1PSNINT</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Billable Charge</b> .	
Override Collection Class Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the collection class. This type of characteristic is defined on the person. The system then uses this characteristic to override the collection class of all accounts where the person is the main customer.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1OVCOLL</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b> .	



Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Override Postpone Credit Review Date Characteristic Type	<p>Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the postpone credit review date. This type of characteristic is defined on the person. The system then uses this characteristic to override the postpone credit review date of all accounts where the person is the main customer.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>CIOVRWDT</b>. You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</p>	Yes
Lock Box Characteristic Type	<p>Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the person ID. This type of characteristic is defined on the account.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1LCKBX</b>. You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b>.</p>	Yes
Auto Pay Route Type Characteristic Type	<p>Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the auto pay route type. This type of characteristic is defined on the person. The system then uses this characteristic of a person to update auto pay route type for all accounts where the person is linked to the accounts through the <b>C1LCKBX</b> characteristic.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1APAYRT</b>. You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</p>	Yes
Hold Request Type	<p>Used to specify the hold request type using which you want to create the hold request for an account.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>DIASTER</b>. You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a hold request type which is already defined in the system.</p>	No

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item Business Object	Used to specify the business object using which you want to create a price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1_PRICEITEM_BO</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a business object which is already defined in the system.	
Address Business Object	Used to specify the business object using which you want to create an address.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1-Address</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a business object which is already defined in the system.	

### C1-TODORETRY

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the customer or membership inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. It checks whether the maximum retry attempts are met. If the retry attempt is less than or equal to the value defined in the **Maximum Retry** parameter, the status of the inbound message is changed to **Pending**. However, if the retry attempt is greater than the value defined in the **Maximum Retry** parameter, the status of the inbound message remains as **Rejected**.

**Note:** This algorithm is invoked only when the customer or membership inbound message is validated and processed through the batch process.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Maximum Retry** – Used to specify the maximum number of times the inbound message can be revalidated and reprocessed on failure.
- **Maximum Retry Element Name** – This parameter is not used at the moment.

If you do not specify any value for the **Maximum Retry** parameter, the system uses the value defined in the **To Do Maximum Retries** status option (which is defined in the lifecycle of the **C1-CustomerInboundMessage** and **C1-MemberInboundMessage** business object) to check whether the maximum retry attempts are met. If the value is not specified for the **To Do Maximum Retries** status option, the system does not allow revalidating and reprocessing an inbound message, and the status of the inbound message remains as **Rejected**.

### C1-TDCRINMSG

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the customer or membership inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. It creates a To Do using the specified To Do type and assigns it to users with the specified To Do role.

It contains the following parameters:

- **To Do Type** - Used to specify the type of notification that you want to generate when the inbound message validation or processing fails.
- **To Do Role** - Used to specify the To Do role to indicate the users to whom you want to send the notification when the inbound message validation or processing fails.

The rest of the parameters, such as **To Do Type Element Name**, **To Do Role Element Name**, **Message Category**, **Message Number**, **Characteristic Type For Log Entry**, **To Do Sort Keys Retriever Script**, **Discard Cancel Terminate Reason Element**, **Discard Cancel Terminate Reason**, **Retry Frequency**, and **Retry Frequency Element Name**, are not used at the moment.

## Customer Inbound Message XML Format

**Note:** We recommend you to refer the Customer Inbound Message schema in parallel while understanding the below mentioned tags. This will help you to understand how the tags are nested in the schema.

Before calling the **C1-CustomerStructureInboundMessage** inbound web service, you need to ensure that the customer inbound message contains the following tags:

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)												
schema	Used to specify the tags of a customer inbound message.	Yes												
characteristics	You can use this tag within the following tags:	No												
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the characteristics tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>schema</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the customer inbound message.</td></tr><tr><td>customerData</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the person.</td></tr><tr><td>billGroup</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the bill group (i.e. account).</td></tr><tr><td>policyData</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the policy.</td></tr><tr><td>plan</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the policy plan.</td></tr></table>		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristics tag is...	schema	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the customer inbound message.	customerData	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the person.	billGroup	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the bill group (i.e. account).	policyData	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the policy.	plan	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the policy plan.
	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the characteristics tag is...											
	schema		Used to specify a list of characteristics for the customer inbound message.											
	customerData		Used to specify a list of characteristics for the person.											
	billGroup		Used to specify a list of characteristics for the bill group (i.e. account).											
	policyData		Used to specify a list of characteristics for the policy.											
	plan		Used to specify a list of characteristics for the policy plan.											
inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify a characteristic for the customer inbound message.	No												
adhocCharacteristicValue	Used to specify the value for the adhoc characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)												
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing an adhoc characteristic of the customer inbound message.												

Tag Name	Tag Description		Mandatory (Yes or No)
characteristicType	You can use this tag within the following tags:		Yes (Conditional)
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristicType tag is...	<div>Note: This data is required while defining or editing a characteristic of the respective entity.</div>
	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the characteristic type. Here, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Inbound Message</b> .	
	characteristicsList	Used to specify the characteristic type. If you are defining a characteristic for a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Customer</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.               </li> <li> <b>Bill Group</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b>.               </li> <li> <b>Policy</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy</b>.               </li> <li> <b>Policy Plan</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy Plan</b>.               </li> </ul>	

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)										
effectiveDate	You can use this tag within the following tags:	No										
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the effectiveDate tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>inboundMessageCharacteristic</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the customer inbound message.</td></tr><tr><td>characteristicsList</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the respective entity (i.e. customer, bill group (i.e. account), policy, or policy plan).</td></tr></table>		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the effectiveDate tag is...	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the customer inbound message.	characteristicsList	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the respective entity (i.e. customer, bill group (i.e. account), policy, or policy plan).				
	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the effectiveDate tag is...									
	inboundMessageCharacteristic		Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the customer inbound message.									
	characteristicsList		Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the respective entity (i.e. customer, bill group (i.e. account), policy, or policy plan).									
<b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format. If you do not specify the effective date, the system uses the below mentioned date while defining a characteristic for the following:												
<table><tr><th>Entity</th><th>Effective Date</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Earliest Policy Effective Date</td><td>A person might have multiple policies. For example, P1 effective from 01-01-2016 and P2 effective from 01-01-2017. In such case, the system uses the effective date of the policy which is the earliest (i.e. P1) while defining characteristic for the person.</td></tr><tr><td>Policy</td><td>Policy Effective Date</td><td>The system uses the date from when the policy is effective while defining characteristic for the policy.</td></tr><tr><td>Plan</td><td>Plan Effective Date</td><td>The system uses the date from when the policy plan is effective in the policy while defining characteristic for the policy plan.</td></tr></table>	Entity	Effective Date	Description	Person	Earliest Policy Effective Date	A person might have multiple policies. For example, P1 effective from 01-01-2016 and P2 effective from 01-01-2017. In such case, the system uses the effective date of the policy which is the earliest (i.e. P1) while defining characteristic for the person.	Policy	Policy Effective Date	The system uses the date from when the policy is effective while defining characteristic for the policy.	Plan	Plan Effective Date	The system uses the date from when the policy plan is effective in the policy while defining characteristic for the policy plan.
Entity	Effective Date	Description										
Person	Earliest Policy Effective Date	A person might have multiple policies. For example, P1 effective from 01-01-2016 and P2 effective from 01-01-2017. In such case, the system uses the effective date of the policy which is the earliest (i.e. P1) while defining characteristic for the person.										
Policy	Policy Effective Date	The system uses the date from when the policy is effective while defining characteristic for the policy.										
Plan	Plan Effective Date	The system uses the date from when the policy plan is effective in the policy while defining characteristic for the policy plan.										

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
characteristicValue	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the characteristicValue tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>inboundMessageCharacteristic</td><td>Used to specify the value for the predefined characteristic type.</td></tr><tr><td>characteristicsList</td><td>Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristicValue tag is...	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the value for the predefined characteristic type.	characteristicsList	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a characteristic of the respective entity.
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristicValue tag is...						
	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the value for the predefined characteristic type.						
characteristicsList	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.							
characteristicValueForeignKey1	Used to specify the first value for the foreign key characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)						
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a foreign key characteristic of the customer inbound message.						
characteristicValueFK2	Used to specify the second value for the foreign key characteristic type.	No						
characteristicValueFK3	Used to specify the third value for the foreign key characteristic type.	No						
characteristicValueFK4	Used to specify the fourth value for the foreign key characteristic type.	No						
characteristicValueFK5	Used to specify the fifth value for the foreign key characteristic type.	No						
customerStructureMessage	Used to specify the details of the customer including the header information for the customer inbound message.	Yes						
headerData	Used to specify the header information for the customer inbound message.	Yes						

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)								
messageType	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes								
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the messageType tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>schema</td><td>Indicates the inbound message type using which the customer inbound message is created in the system.<div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div></td></tr><tr><td>headerData</td><td>Used to specify the inbound message type using which the customer inbound message should be created in the system.</td></tr></table>		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the messageType tag is...	schema	Indicates the inbound message type using which the customer inbound message is created in the system. <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>	headerData	Used to specify the inbound message type using which the customer inbound message should be created in the system.		
	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the messageType tag is...							
	schema		Indicates the inbound message type using which the customer inbound message is created in the system. <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>							
	headerData		Used to specify the inbound message type using which the customer inbound message should be created in the system.							
<b>Note:</b> You must specify a valid customer inbound message type which is in the <b>Active</b> status.										
messageBatchID	Used to indicate the external batch job or batch run number through which the customer inbound message is created.	Yes								
sourceSystem	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes								
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the sourceSystem tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>schema</td><td>Indicates the external system from where the customer inbound message is received.<div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div></td></tr><tr><td>headerData</td><td>Used to indicate the external system from where the customer inbound message is received.</td></tr><tr><td>policyData</td><td>Used to indicate the source system from where the policy is originated.</td></tr></table>		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the sourceSystem tag is...	schema	Indicates the external system from where the customer inbound message is received. <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>	headerData	Used to indicate the external system from where the customer inbound message is received.	policyData	Used to indicate the source system from where the policy is originated.
	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the sourceSystem tag is...							
	schema		Indicates the external system from where the customer inbound message is received. <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>							
	headerData		Used to indicate the external system from where the customer inbound message is received.							
	policyData		Used to indicate the source system from where the policy is originated.							
<b>Note:</b> You must specify a source system which is already defined in the <b>C1-SourceSystemLookup</b> extendable lookup. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.										

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
sourceSystemTransID	Used to indicate the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the customer inbound message.	No						
sourceSystemSourceID	Used to specify the external source system ID.	Yes						
bo	<div>You can use this tag within the following tags:</div> <table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the bo tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>schema</td><td><div>Indicates the business object using which the customer inbound message is created in the system.</div><div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div></td></tr><tr><td>headerData</td><td><div>Used to indicate the business object using which the customer inbound message should be created in the system. The valid value is:</div><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>C1- CustomerInboundMessage</li></ul></td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the bo tag is...	schema	<div>Indicates the business object using which the customer inbound message is created in the system.</div> <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>	headerData	<div>Used to indicate the business object using which the customer inbound message should be created in the system. The valid value is:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>C1- CustomerInboundMessage</li></ul>	Yes
If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the bo tag is...							
schema	<div>Indicates the business object using which the customer inbound message is created in the system.</div> <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>							
headerData	<div>Used to indicate the business object using which the customer inbound message should be created in the system. The valid value is:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>C1- CustomerInboundMessage</li></ul>							
transactionType	<div>Used to indicate the type of the transaction. The valid values are:</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>CHNG</b> - Used when you want to update the details of a person, account, contract, fully-insured policy, policy plan, packaged savings, and billable charge.</li><li><b>NEW</b> - Used when you want to create a person, account, contract, fully-insured policy, policy plan, packaged savings, and billable charge.</li><li><b>REIN</b> - Used when you want to reinstate a fully-insured policy.</li><li><b>TERM</b> - Used when you want to terminate a fully-insured policy.</li></ul>	Yes						
externalTransactionType	Used to specify the corresponding transaction type used in the external source system.	No						
customerStructureData	Used to specify the customer information, such as details of the person, bill group (i.e. account), fully-insured policy, and policy plan.	Yes						



Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
customerData	Used to specify the details of the person.	Yes (Conditional)						
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a person.						
customerName	Used to specify the name of the person.	Yes (Conditional)						
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a person.						
customerType	Used to indicate the type of the person.	Yes (Conditional)						
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a value which is already defined in the <b>PER_OR_BUS_FLG</b> lookup field. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a person.						
Id	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the Id tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>customerData</td><td>Used to specify the identification details of the person.</td></tr><tr><td>billGroup</td><td>Used to specify the identification details of the bill group (i.e. account).</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the Id tag is...	customerData	Used to specify the identification details of the person.	billGroup	Used to specify the identification details of the bill group (i.e. account).	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the respective information.
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the Id tag is...						
	customerData	Used to specify the identification details of the person.						
	billGroup	Used to specify the identification details of the bill group (i.e. account).						
<b>Note:</b> You must specify one primary identifier for a person and account.								
IDType	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the IDType tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>Id</td><td>Used to specify the person or account identifier type.</td></tr><tr><td>parentSection</td><td>Used to specify the person identifier type.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the IDType tag is...	Id	Used to specify the person or account identifier type.	parentSection	Used to specify the person identifier type.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required in the following scenarios: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>While defining or editing the identification details of a person and account.</li><li>While defining or editing a person to person relationship.</li></ul>
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the IDType tag is...						
	Id	Used to specify the person or account identifier type.						
	parentSection	Used to specify the person identifier type.						
<b>Note:</b> You must specify a person or account identifier type which is already defined in the system.								

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
IDValue	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the IDValue tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>Id</td><td>Used to specify the person or account identifier.</td></tr><tr><td>parentSection</td><td>Used to indicate the person with whom you want to establish the person to person relationship.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the IDValue tag is...	Id	Used to specify the person or account identifier.	parentSection	Used to indicate the person with whom you want to establish the person to person relationship.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required in the following scenarios: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>While defining or editing the identification details of a person and account.</li><li>While defining or editing a person to person relationship.</li></ul>
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the IDValue tag is...						
	Id	Used to specify the person or account identifier.						
	parentSection	Used to indicate the person with whom you want to establish the person to person relationship.						
isPrimary	Used to indicate whether the person or account identifier is a primary identifier. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Y</li><li>N</li></ul>	No						
	<b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the value, by default, it is set to N.							
parentSection	Used to specify the details of the parent person with whom you want to establish the person’s relationship.	No						
relationshipType	Used to indicate how the parent person is related to the person.	Yes (Conditional)Yes (Conditional)						
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a person relationship type which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a person to person relationship.						
isFranchiseBillingIndicator	Used to indicate whether the parent person is the franchise. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Y - If you specify the value as Y, the system will create the parent-child relationship and add the person’s account or contract details in the parent person’s existing statement construct.</li><li>N - If you specify the value as N, the system will end the parent-child relationship and the person’s account or contract details in the parent person’s existing statement construct.</li></ul>	No						
characteristicsList	Used to specify a characteristic for the respective entity (such as person, bill group (i.e. account), policy, or policy plan).	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a characteristic of the respective entity.						

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
address	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the address tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>customerData</td><td>Used to specify the address of the person.</td></tr><tr><td>billGroup</td><td>Used to specify the address of the account.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the address tag is...	customerData	Used to specify the address of the person.	billGroup	Used to specify the address of the account.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the address of the respective entity.
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the address tag is...						
	customerData	Used to specify the address of the person.						
billGroup	Used to specify the address of the account.							
addressEffDate	Used to specify the date from when the address is effective.	Yes (Conditional)						
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.  If you do not specify the date, by default, the system sets the effective date to the date when the address is created in the system through the customer inbound message.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while editing the address of the respective entity.						
addressType	Used to indicate the type of address. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>MAIN</b> - Indicates that the address is the person’s mailing address. You can use this address type while specifying the address for the person and account.</li><li><b>SEAS</b> - Indicates that the address is the person’s seasonal address. You can use this address type while specifying the address for the person.</li><li><b>OVRD</b> - Indicates that the address is the account’s override address. You can use this address type while specifying the address for the account.</li></ul>	Yes (Conditional)						
	<b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the address type, by default, it is set to <b>MAIN</b> .  You must specify an address type which is already defined in the <b>ADDRESS_TYPE_FLG</b> lookup field. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while editing the address of the respective entity.						
MailingName	Used to specify the name using which the person should be addressed in the mail communication. The system also uses the mailing name in the bills, letters, quotes, and statements.	No						

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
address1	Used to specify the first line of the address. It may contain details, such as the house number.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the address of the respective entity.
address2	Used to specify the second line of the address. It may contain details, such as the apartment name.	No
address3	Used to specify the third line of the address. It may contain details, such as the street name.	No
city	Used to specify the city name.	No
state	Used to indicate the state where the city is located.	No
zip	Used to specify the zip code of the address.	No
country	Used to indicate the country where the person or account is located.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the address of the respective entity.
attentionName	Used to specify the fourth line of the address. It may contain the landmark details.	No
email	You can use this tag within the following tags:	
	<b>If this tag is used within...</b>	<b>Then the purpose of the email tag is...</b>
	customerData	Used to specify the email ID of the person.
	billGroup	Used to specify the email ID of the account’s main customer.
phones	You can use this tag within the following tags:	
	<b>If this tag is used within...</b>	<b>Then the purpose of the phones tag is...</b>
	customerData	Used to specify the phone details of the person.
	billGroup	Used to specify the phone details of the account’s main customer.
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the phone details of the respective entity.

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
phoneType	Used to indicate the type of phone.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a phone type which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the phone details of the respective entity.
phoneValue	Used to specify the phone number of the person or account's main customer.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the phone details of the respective entity.
billGroup	Used to specify the account details of a person.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a bill group (i.e. account).
customerClass	Used to indicate the customer class to which the account belongs.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a customer class which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a bill group (i.e. account).
billCycle	Used to indicate the bill cycle for the account.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a bill cycle which is already defined in the system and added in the <b>C1-BILLCYCLE</b> feature configuration.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a bill group (i.e. account).
division	Used to indicate the division to which the account belongs.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a division which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a bill group (i.e. account).
billRouteType	Used to indicate how the account's bill must be sent to the main customer.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a bill route type which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a bill group (i.e. account).
billGroupID	Used to specify the account number. It is stored as the primary account identifier in the system.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The system stores the value against the account identifier type which is specified in the <b>Account Identifier Type</b> parameter of the <b>C1-CINMSGPRC</b> algorithm.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a bill group (i.e. account).
bankNumber	Used to indicate the bank account number through which the automatic payment must be done.	No

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
depositoryFinancialInstitution	Used to indicate the depository financial institution.	No
accountType	Used to indicate the type of the account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify an account type which is already defined in the <b>EXT_TYPE_FLG</b> lookup field. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.	
billAddressSource	Used to indicate whether the account's bill must be sent to the main customer's mailing address or to the main customer's account override address. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PER</li> <li>• ACOV</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a bill group (i.e. account).	
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a value which is already defined in the <b>BILL_ADDR_SRCE_FLG</b> lookup field. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.	
billToName	Used to specify the name using which you want to override the main customer's mailing name.	No
policyData	Used to specify the details of the fully-insured policy.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a fully-insured policy.
policyNumber	Used to specify the policy number.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a fully-insured policy.

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
endDate	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the endDate tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>policyData</td><td>Used to specify the date till when the policy is effective.</td></tr><tr><td>packageSavings</td><td>Used to specify the date till when the packaged savings is effective on the policy. This date is then used as the end date of the billable charge.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the endDate tag is...	policyData	Used to specify the date till when the policy is effective.	packageSavings	Used to specify the date till when the packaged savings is effective on the policy. This date is then used as the end date of the billable charge.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a fully-insured policy.
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the endDate tag is...						
	policyData	Used to specify the date till when the policy is effective.						
	packageSavings	Used to specify the date till when the packaged savings is effective on the policy. This date is then used as the end date of the billable charge.						
<b>Note:</b> The end date cannot be earlier than the start date. You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.								
renewalDate	Used to specify the date when you want to renew the fully-insured policy.	Yes (Conditional)						
	<b>Note:</b> On renewing a fully-insured policy, the status of the policy is changed to the status which is specified in the <b>Status on Policy Renewal</b> field of the respective inbound message type.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while renewing a fully-insured policy.						
policyName	Used to specify the description for the fully-insured policy.	Yes (Conditional)						
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a fully-insured policy.						
terminateDate	Used to specify the date when you want to terminate the fully-insured policy.	Yes (Conditional)						
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format. The termination date cannot be earlier than the policy start date. On terminating a fully-insured policy, the status of the policy is changed to the status which is specified in the <b>Status on Policy Termination</b> field of the respective inbound message type.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while terminating a fully-insured policy.						

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
statusReason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to terminate or reinstate the fully-insured policy.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a reason which is defined for the respective status specified in the inbound message type.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while terminating or reinstating a fully-insured policy.
policyEffectiveDate	Used to specify the date from when the policy is effective.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The policy start date cannot be later than the policy end date.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a fully-insured policy.
packageSavings	Used to specify a list of packaged savings offered on the policy.	No
packageSavings	Used to specify the packaged savings offered on the policy.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The packaged savings is configured as a price item in the system. You must specify a price item which is already defined in the system.  On processing the customer inbound message, one billable charge is created for each packaged savings offered on the policy. The policy ID is stored as a characteristic on such billable charge.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the packaged savings offered on the fully-insured policy.
startDate	Used to specify the date from when the packaged savings is offered on the policy. This date is then used as the start date of the billable charge.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The start date cannot be later than the end date.  You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the packaged savings offered on the fully-insured policy.



Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
nonintegratedInd	Used to indicate whether the packaged savings is non-integrated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Y</li> <li>N</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The value is stored as a characteristic on the billable charge. The system stores the value against the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Non Integrated Packaged Savings Indicator Characteristic Type</b> parameter of the <b>C1-CINMSGPRC</b> algorithm.  If you do not specify the value, by default, it is set to N.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while editing the packaged savings offered on the fully-insured policy.
plan	Used to specify the details of the policy plan.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a policy plan.
planCode	Used to specify the plan number.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The value is stored as a characteristic on the price item. The system stores the value against the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Plan Code Characteristic Type</b> parameter of the <b>C1-CINMSGPRC</b> algorithm.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a policy plan.
coverageType	Used to specify the coverage type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The value is stored as a characteristic on the price item. The system stores the value against the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Coverage Type Characteristic Type</b> parameter of the <b>C1-CINMSGPRC</b> algorithm.	
productCode	Used to indicate the product to which the price item is mapped.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The value is stored as a characteristic on the price item. The system stores the value against the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Product Characteristic Type</b> parameter of the <b>C1-CINMSGPRC</b> algorithm.	

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
rateCoverageType	Used to specify the contract type using which the contract should be created for the policy plan. The system checks whether a price item already exists where the specified rate coverage type, coverage type, and plan code are defined on the price item as characteristics. If a price item exists with these characteristics, the system maps the price item to the policy plan. However, if a price item does not exist with these characteristics, the system create a new price item, concatenates the rate coverage type and plan code to generate the price item code, and then maps the price item to the policy plan.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You must specify a value which is already defined in the <b>RATE_COVRG_CNTRACT_TYPE</b> lookup field. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.</p> <p>The value is stored as a characteristic on the price item. The system stores the value against the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Rate Coverage Type Characteristic Type</b> parameter of the <b>C1-CINMSGPRC</b> algorithm.</p> <p>A new price item is created using the business object which is specified in the <b>Price Item Business Object</b> parameter of the <b>C1-CINMSGPRC</b> algorithm.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a policy plan.</p>
planEffectiveDate	Used to specify the date from when the policy plan is effective.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The value is also stored as a characteristic on the policy plan. The system stores the value against the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Plan Effective Date Characteristic Type</b> parameter of the <b>C1-CINMSGPRC</b> algorithm.</p> <p>The policy plan start date cannot be later than the policy plan end date.</p> <p>The policy plan start date cannot be earlier than the policy start date or later than the policy end date.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a policy plan.</p>
planEndDate	Used to specify the date till when the policy plan is effective.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The policy plan end date cannot be earlier than the policy plan start date.</p> <p>The policy plan end date cannot be earlier than the policy start date or later than the policy end date.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a policy plan.</p>

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
planActivityDate	Used to specify the date when the activity is scheduled for the policy plan.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The value is stored as a characteristic on the policy plan. The system stores the value against the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Plan Activity Date Characteristic Type</b> parameter of the <b>C1-CINMSGPRC</b> algorithm.	

The following table lists and describes the tags which are available in the customer inbound message schema, but should not be included in the XML file:

Tag Name	Tag Description						
c1InboundMessage	Displays the inbound message ID.						
boStatus	Displays the status of the customer inbound message.						
statusReason	Indicates the reason why the status of the customer inbound message is changed.						
c1ExternalTransactionId	Indicates the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the customer inbound message.						
c1ExternalBatchId	Indicates the external batch job or batch run number through which the customer inbound message is created.						
c1ExternalSourceId	Displays the external source system ID.						
person	At present, this tag is not supported in a customer inbound message.						
statusDateTime	Displays the date and time when the status of the customer inbound message is changed in the system.						
creationDateTime	Displays the date and time when the customer inbound message is created in the system.						
version	<p>This tag appears within the following parent tags:</p> <table> <tr> <th>Parent Tag</th><th>Then the purpose of the version tag is...</th></tr> <tr> <td>schema</td><td>Displays the version of the customer inbound message.</td></tr> <tr> <td>inboundMessageCharacteristic</td><td>Displays the version of the characteristic defined for the customer inbound message.</td></tr> </table>	Parent Tag	Then the purpose of the version tag is...	schema	Displays the version of the customer inbound message.	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Displays the version of the characteristic defined for the customer inbound message.
Parent Tag	Then the purpose of the version tag is...						
schema	Displays the version of the customer inbound message.						
inboundMessageCharacteristic	Displays the version of the characteristic defined for the customer inbound message.						
searchCharacteristicValue	At present, this tag is not supported in a customer inbound message.						
messageID	Displays the inbound message ID.						
status	Displays the status of the customer inbound message.						
createDateTime	Displays the date and time when the customer inbound message is created in the system.						
ORMBcreateDateTime	Displays the date and time when the customer inbound message is created in the system.						

Tag Name	Tag Description
policyStatus	Indicates the status of the policy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• In Force/Active</li><li>• Pending Cancellation</li><li>• Canceled</li><li>• Pending Reinstatement</li><li>• Reinstated</li><li>• Pending Termination</li><li>• Terminated</li></ul>
toDoRetry	Displays the information about the retry option used for the customer inbound message. <div><b>Note:</b> This information appears at the bottom of the inbound message in the <b>Inbound Message Content</b> zone once the customer inbound message is validated and processed either through the user interface or batch process.</div>
retryDateTime	Displays the date and time when the retry option is used to change the status of the customer inbound message from <b>Rejected</b> to <b>Pending</b> .
numberOfRetries	Indicates the number of times the retry option is used for the customer inbound message.
currentErrorState	Indicates the status to which the customer inbound message is transitioned when its validation or processing fails. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• REJECTED</li></ul>
isRetried	Indicates whether the retry option is used to change the status of the customer inbound message. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• true</li><li>• false</li></ul>

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Customer Inbound Message Schema	<a href="#">Customer Inbound Message Schema</a> on page 1536
Sample Customer Inbound Message	<a href="#">Sample Customer Inbound Message</a> on page 1539
How to setup the <b>C1-BILLCYCLE</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-BILLCYCLE Feature Configuration</a> on page 2359

**Customer Inbound Message Schema**

```
<schema>
  <c1InboundMessage></c1InboundMessage>
  <messageType></messageType>
  <bo></bo>
  <boStatus></boStatus>
  <statusReason></statusReason>
  <sourceSystem></sourceSystem>
  <c1ExternalTransactionId></c1ExternalTransactionId>
```

```

<clExternalBatchId></clExternalBatchId>
<clExternalSourceId></clExternalSourceId>
<person></person>
<statusDateTime></statusDateTime>
<creationDateTime></creationDateTime>
<version></version>
<characteristics>
  <inboundMessageCharacteristic>
    <adhocCharacteristicValue></adhocCharacteristicValue>
    <characteristicType></characteristicType>
    <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
    <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
    <characteristicValueForeignKey1></characteristicValueForeignKey1>
    <characteristicValueFK2></characteristicValueFK2>
    <characteristicValueFK3></characteristicValueFK3>
    <characteristicValueFk4></characteristicValueFk4>
    <characteristicValueFK5></characteristicValueFK5>
    <searchCharacteristicValue></searchCharacteristicValue>
    <version></version>
  </inboundMessageCharacteristic>
</characteristics>
<customerStructureMessage>
  <headerData>
    <messageType></messageType>
    <messageID></messageID>
    <messageBatchID></messageBatchID>
    <sourceSystem></sourceSystem>
    <sourceSystemTransID></sourceSystemTransID>
    <sourceSystemSourceID></sourceSystemSourceID>
    <bo></bo>
    <status></status>
    <createDateTime></createDateTime>
    <ORMBcreateDateTime></ORMBcreateDateTime>
    <transactionType></transactionType>
    <externalTransactionType></externalTransactionType>
  </headerData>
  <customerStructureData>
    <customerData>
      <customerName></customerName>
      <customerType></customerType>
      <Id>
        <IDType></IDType>
        <IDValue></IDValue>
        <isPrimary></isPrimary>
      </Id>
      <parentSection>
        <IDType></IDType>
        <IDValue></IDValue>
        <relationshipType></relationshipType>
        <isFranchiseBillingIndicator></
isFranchiseBillingIndicator>
      </parentSection>
      <characteristics>
        <characteristicsList>
          <characteristicType></characteristicType>
          <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
          <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
        </characteristicsList>
      </characteristics>
      <address>
        <addressEffDate></addressEffDate>
        <addressType></addressType>
        <MailingName></MailingName>
        <address1></address1>

```

```

        <address2></address2>
        <address3></address3>
        <city></city>
        <state></state>
        <zip></zip>
        <country></country>
        <attentionName></attentionName>
    </address>
    <email></email>
    <phones>
        <phoneType></phoneType>
        <phoneValue></phoneValue>
    </phones>
</customerData>
<billGroup>
    <customerClass></customerClass>
    <billCycle></billCycle>
    <division></division>
    <billRouteType></billRouteType>
    <billGroupID></billGroupID>
    <bankNumber></bankNumber>
    <depositoryFinancialInstitution></
depositoryFinancialInstitution>
    <accountType></accountType>
    <billAddressSource></billAddressSource>
    <Id>
        <IDType></IDType>
        <IDValue></IDValue>
        <isPrimary></isPrimary>
    </Id>
    <address>
        <addressEffDate></addressEffDate>
        <billToName></billToName>
        <address1></address1>
        <address2></address2>
        <address3></address3>
        <city></city>
        <state></state>
        <zip></zip>
        <country></country>
        <attentionName></attentionName>
    </address>
    <characteristics>
        <characteristicsList>
            <characteristicType></characteristicType>
            <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
            <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
        </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
    <phones>
        <phoneType></phoneType>
        <phoneValue></phoneValue>
    </phones>
    <email></email>
</billGroup>
<policyData>
    <policyNumber></policyNumber>
    <sourceSystem></sourceSystem>
    <endDate></endDate>
    <renewalDate></renewalDate>
    <policyName></policyName>
    <terminateDate></terminateDate>
    <policyStatus></policyStatus>
    <statusReason></statusReason>

```

```

    <policyEffectiveDate></policyEffectiveDate>
    <characteristics>
      <characteristicsList>
        <characteristicType></characteristicType>
        <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
        <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
      </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
    <packageSavings>
      <packageSavings></packageSavings>
      <startDate></startDate>
      <endDate></endDate>
      <nonintegratedInd></nonintegratedInd>
    </packageSavings>
    <plan>
      <planCode></planCode>
      <coverageType></coverageType>
      <productCode></productCode>
      <rateCoverageType></rateCoverageType>
      <planEffectiveDate></planEffectiveDate>
      <planEndDate></planEndDate>
      <planActivityDate></planActivityDate>
      <rateEffectiveDate></rateEffectiveDate>
      <rateActivityDate></rateActivityDate>
      <characteristics>
        <characteristicsList>
          <characteristicType></characteristicType>
          <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
          <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
        </characteristicsList>
      </characteristics>
    </plan>
  </policyData>
</customerStructureData>
</customerStructureMessage>
<toDoRetry>
  <retryDateTime></retryDateTime>
  <numberOfRetries></numberOfRetries>
  <currentErrorState></currentErrorState>
  <isRetried></isRetried>
</toDoRetry>
</schema>

```

## Sample Customer Inbound Message

Using the below example, you can do the following:

- Create the customer and bill groups (i.e. accounts) for a fully-insured health care business
- Create a fully-insured policy along with package savings and policy plan

Customer	Bill Group (i.e. Account)	Policy	Policy Plan
Williams, Tom	126535	WT1256678	HCBILLING1

```

<schema>
  <characteristics>
    <inboundMessageCharacteristic>
      <adhocCharacteristicValue></adhocCharacteristicValue>
      <characteristicType>C1-EXTBTCT</characteristicType>
      <effectiveDate>2017-01-01</effectiveDate>
      <characteristicValue>DATAEXT11</characteristicValue>
      <characteristicValueForeignKey1></characteristicValueForeignKey1>
      <characteristicValueFK2></characteristicValueFK2>
    </inboundMessageCharacteristic>
  </characteristics>
</schema>

```

```

        <characteristicValueFK3></characteristicValueFK3>
        <characteristicValueFK4></characteristicValueFK4>
        <characteristicValueFK5></characteristicValueFK5>
    </inboundMessageCharacteristic>
</characteristics>
<customerStructureMessage>
    <headerData>
        <messageType>C1-CUSTOMER-INB-MSG-TYPE</messageType>
        <messageBatchID>211</messageBatchID>
        <sourceSystem>SMALLPRIME</sourceSystem>
        <sourceSystemTransID>01P200</sourceSystemTransID>
        <sourceSystemSourceID>00100</sourceSystemSourceID>
        <bo>C1-CustomerInboundMessage</bo>
        <transactionType>NEW</transactionType>
        <externalTransactionType>NEW</externalTransactionType>
    </headerData>
    <customerStructureData>
        <customerData>
            <customerName>Williams, Tom</customerName>
            <customerType>B</customerType>
            <parentSection>
                <IDType>SSN</IDType>
                <IDValue>987-65-4320</IDValue>
                <relationshipType>BILLING</relationshipType>
                <isFranchiseBillingIndicator>Y</
isFranchiseBillingIndicator>
            </parentSection>
            <characteristics>
                <characteristicsList>
                    <characteristicType>C1FRANCD</characteristicType>
                    <characteristicValue>123</characteristicValue>
                </characteristicsList>
            </characteristics>
            <email>williams.tom@example.com</email>
            <Id>
                <IDType>SSN</IDType>
                <IDValue>987-65-4321</IDValue>
                <isPrimary>Y</isPrimary>
            </Id>
            <address>
                <addressEffDate>2017-01-01</addressEffDate>
                <addressType>MAIN</addressType>
                <MailingName>Tom</MailingName>
                <address1>Apartment 213</address1>
                <address2>Rockaway Valley Road</address2>
                <city>Boonton</city>
                <state>NJ</state>
                <zip>07005</zip>
                <country>USA</country>
                <attentionName>Near Canterbury Road Junction</
attentionName>
            </address>
            <phones>
                <phoneType>BUSN</phoneType>
                <phoneValue>(862) 555-0145</phoneValue>
            </phones>
            <phones>
                <phoneType>FAX</phoneType>
                <phoneValue>(862) 555-0100</phoneValue>
            </phones>
        </customerData>
        <billGroup>
            <customerClass>HC</customerClass>
            <billCycle>INM1</billCycle>
        </billGroup>
    </customerStructureData>
</customerStructureMessage>

```



```

<division>930</division>
<billRouteType>POSTAL</billRouteType>
<billGroupID>126535</billGroupID>
<billAddressSource>PER</billAddressSource>
<characteristics>
  <characteristicsList>
    <characteristicType>C1INVHLD</characteristicType>
    <characteristicValue>CMDR</characteristicValue>
  </characteristicsList>
  <characteristicsList>
    <characteristicType>C1OFFRST</characteristicType>
    <characteristicValue>1</characteristicValue>
  </characteristicsList>
</characteristics>
<phones>
  <phoneType>FAX</phoneType>
  <phoneValue>(862) 555-0123</phoneValue>
</phones>
<email>williams.tom@example123.com</email>
</billGroup>
<policyData>
  <policyNumber>WT1256678</policyNumber>
  <sourceSystem>SMALLPRIME</sourceSystem>
  <endDate>2017-12-31</endDate>
  <policyName>Medicare Policy</policyName>
  <policyEffectiveDate>2017-01-01</policyEffectiveDate>
  <characteristics>
    <characteristicsList>
      <characteristicType>C1PRBASE</characteristicType>
      <characteristicValue>Y</characteristicValue>
      <effectiveDate>2017-01-01</effectiveDate>
    </characteristicsList>
    <characteristicsList>
      <characteristicType>C1PRTNRL</characteristicType>
      <characteristicValue>D</characteristicValue>
      <effectiveDate>2017-01-01</effectiveDate>
    </characteristicsList>
    <characteristicsList>
      <characteristicType>C1STISSE</characteristicType>
      <characteristicValue>NJ</characteristicValue>
    </characteristicsList>
  </characteristics>
  <packageSavings>
    <packageSavings>XXD01</packageSavings>
    <startDate>2017-01-01</startDate>
    <endDate>2017-02-28</endDate>
  </packageSavings>
  <plan>
    <planCode>HCBILLING1</planCode>
    <coverageType>CMB</coverageType>
    <productCode>PS1</productCode>
    <rateCoverageType>CMM</rateCoverageType>
    <planEffectiveDate>2017-01-01</planEffectiveDate>
    <planEndDate>2017-12-31</planEndDate>
    <planActivityDate>2017-01-01</planActivityDate>
    <characteristics>
      <characteristicsList>
        <characteristicType>C1CHRGLN</characteristicType>
        <characteristicValue>CASH</characteristicValue>
      </characteristicsList>
      <characteristicsList>
        <characteristicType>C1PLDESC</characteristicType>
        <characteristicValue>CHOICE+INS</
characteristicValue>

```

```

        </characteristicsList>
      </characteristics>
    </plan>
  </policyData>
</customerStructureData>
</customerStructureMessage>
</schema>

```

## Membership Inbound Message

On calling the **C1-MembershipInboundMessage** web service, a membership inbound message is created in the **Pending** status. When the **Membership Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-MEMIN)** batch is invoked, the system checks whether there are any membership inbound messages in the **Pending** status. If there is a membership inbound message in the **Pending** status, the system validates the membership inbound message. If a membership inbound message is successfully validated, it is processed further and the following entities are created or updated in the system based on the available information in the membership inbound message:

- Membership
- Main Subscriber
- Dependent Person
- Billable Charge (for membership premium)

In addition, the system enables you to submit the membership inbound messages for validation and processing from the user interface. On submitting a membership inbound message, the system validates the membership inbound message. If a membership inbound message is successfully validated, it is processed further and the required entities are created or updated in the system based on the available information.

Once all required entities are created or updated in the system, the status of the membership inbound message is changed to **Processed**. If any error occurs while validating or processing a membership inbound message, the status of the membership inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. The system enables you to either reprocess or void a rejected membership inbound message. The system can reprocess a membership inbound message only when its status is changed to **Pending**. Using the **Retry** option, you can change the status of the membership inbound message from **Rejected** to **Pending**. The **Membership Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-MEMIN)** batch will then reconsider the membership inbound message for validation and processing.

You can also configure the system such that the batch can automatically retry to process the rejected membership inbound messages. However, it will attempt to retry only when the **Maximum Retry** parameter in the **Retry for To Dos (C1-TODORETRY)** algorithm is set to a value greater than zero. Also, the maximum number of times the batch can attempt to retry and reprocess a membership inbound message depends on the value defined in the **Maximum Retry** parameter.

## Prerequisites

To use the membership inbound message feature, you need to do the following:

- Define the required membership inbound message types in the system.
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Inbound Message Type**.
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Inbound Message**.
- Define values for the required parameters in the **C1-INMEMEVAL**, **C1-INMEMEPRC**, **C1-TODORETRY**, and **C1-TDCRINMSG** algorithms.
- Define the **Membership BO (C1MEMBRO)** characteristic for the policy type which is specified in the **C1-CINMSGPRC** algorithm.
- Define predefined values for the **C1RATCOV**, **C1TRNCAT**, **C1INAPPC**, **C1CVTIER**, and **C1PRODTY** characteristic types.

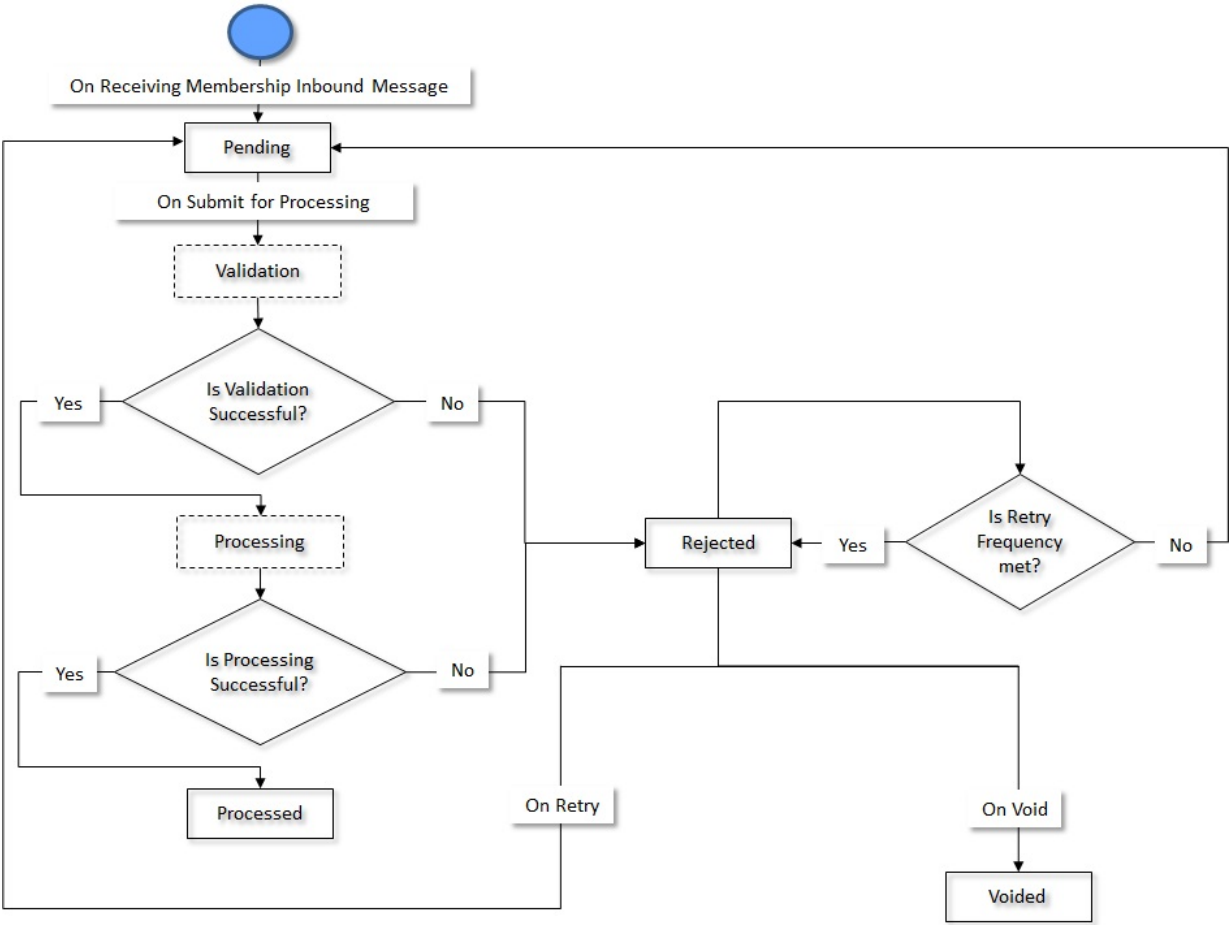
- Define values for the **C1-SourceSystemLookup** extendable lookup.
- Define values for the **PER\_OR\_BUS\_FLG**, **ADDRESS\_TYPE\_FLG**, and **RATE\_COVRG\_CNTRACT\_TYPE** lookup fields.
- Define the required person identifier types, account identifier types, characteristic types, phone types, service quantity identifiers, and contract relationship types in the application.
- Define values for the **C1\_INVOICE\_DAY\_BILL\_PERIOD\_FLG** lookup field.

**Note:** Each lookup field value should be mapped to a valid bill period which exists in the system. You must then define this lookup field value as a predefined value for the **C1OFFRST** characteristic type. The system will then use the bill period configured for the respective invoice day when the **C1OFFRST** characteristic is defined for the account.

- Define predefined values for the **C1OFFRST** characteristic type.
- Set the batch control type of the **Membership Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-MEMIN)** batch to **Timed** and define the following attributes:
  - Time Interval
  - Timer Active
  - User ID
  - Batch Language
  - Email Address
- Define bill cancel reasons which you want to use on premium bill segment cancelation during the membership termination.

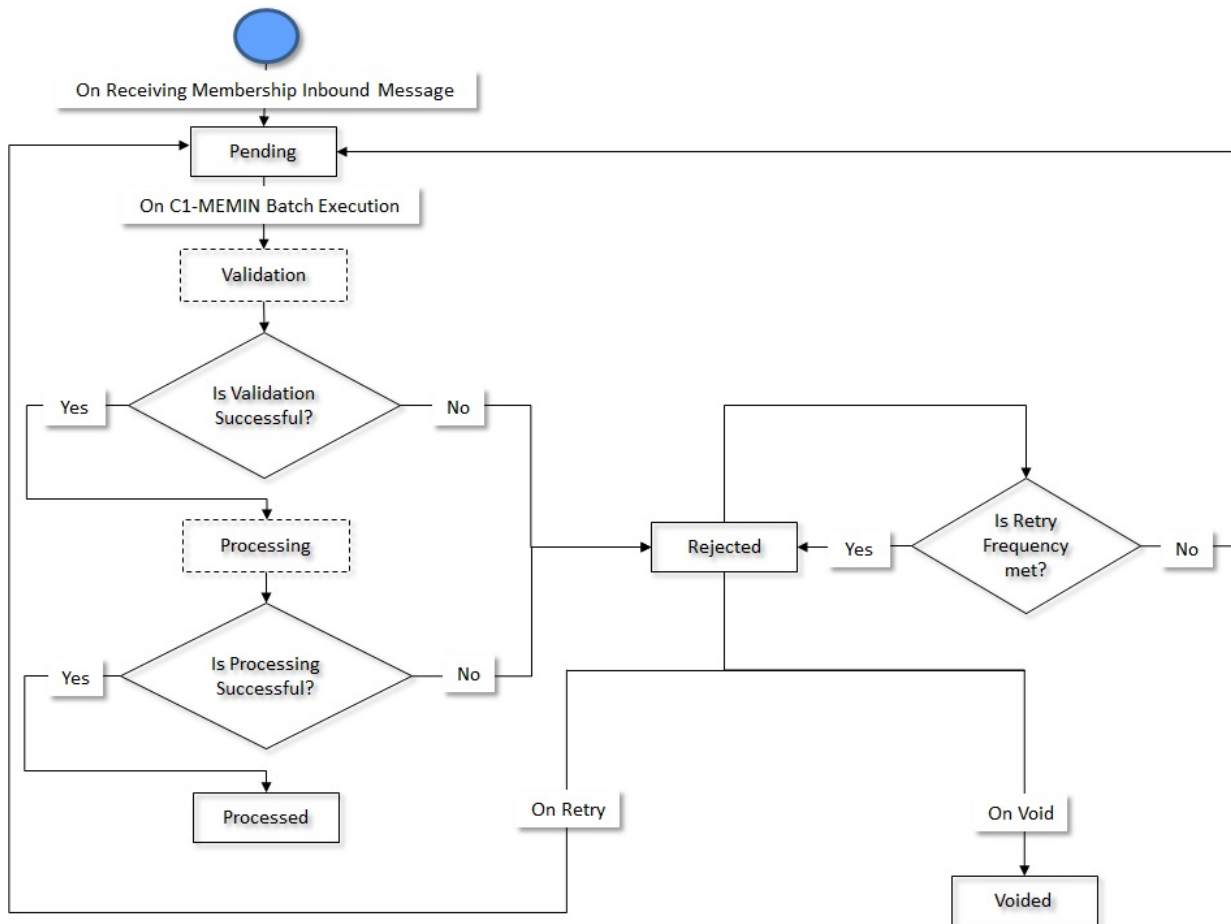
## Membership Inbound Message Status Transition through User Interface

The following figure graphically indicates how a membership inbound message moves from one status to another when it is validated and processed through the user interface:



**Membership Inbound Message Status Transition through a Batch Process**

The following figure graphically indicates how a membership inbound message moves from one status to another when it is validated and processed through the **Membership Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-MEMIN)** batch:



## Algorithms Used in C1-MemberInboundMessage

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-MemberInboundMessage** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Pending	Monitor	C1-AT-RQJ	C1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">C1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1508.
Validation	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
	Enter	C1-INMEMEVAL	C1-INMEMEVAL	Refer to <a href="#">C1-INMEMEVAL</a> on page 1546.
Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
	Enter	C1-INMEMEPRC	C1-INMEMEPRC	Refer to <a href="#">C1-INMEMEPRC</a> on page 1547.
Rejected	Monitor	C1-TODORETRY	C1-TODORETRY	Refer to <a href="#">C1-TODORETRY</a> on page 1518.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
	Enter	C1-TDCRINMSG	F1-TDCREATE	Refer to <a href="#">C1-TDCRINMSG</a> on page 1518.
	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	Refer to <a href="#">F1-TODOCOMPL</a> on page 1068.
Processed	-	-	-	-
Voided	-	-	-	-

### C1-AT-RQJ

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the customer or membership inbound message is changed to **Pending**. If the **isRetried** flag in the inbound message is set to **true**, it resets the flag to **false**.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** – Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** – Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

**Note:** At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

### F1-AT-RQJ

This algorithm transitions the current status of the business object to the specified status. It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** – Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** – Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

### C1-INMEMEVAL

This algorithm is invoked when the **Membership Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-MEMIN)** batch is executed and when you click the **Submit for Processing** button. It validates the membership inbound message which is in the **Pending** status. It checks the following:

- Whether the primary identifier is specified for the person.
- Whether the policy with the specified policy number and source system combination exists in the system.
- Whether the policy plan exists in the policy.
- Whether the bill group ID (i.e. account identifier) is specified in the member plan coverage information.
- Whether the **Plan Code** characteristic type (as mentioned in the **Plan Code Characteristic Type** parameter) exists in the member plan coverage information.
- Whether the **Rate Coverage Type** characteristic type (as mentioned in the **Rate Coverage Type Characteristic Type** parameter) exists in the member plan coverage information and a valid value is specified for this characteristic type.

If any of the above validation fails, the status of the membership inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. In addition, the appropriate log entry is added which you can view in the **Inbound Message Log** zone.

This algorithm contains the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Next Status	Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.	No
Next Transition Condition	Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.	No
Plan Code Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the policy plan number. This type of characteristic is defined on the price item. The system uses this characteristic to derive the price item.  <b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1HPLNID</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	Yes
Rate Coverage Type Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the rate coverage type. This type of characteristic is defined on the price item. The system uses this characteristic to derive the price item.  <b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1RATCOV</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	Yes
Account Identifier Type	Used to indicate the account identifier type. The system derives the account using the account identifier type and account identifier combination.  <b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1_F_ANO</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify an account identifier type which is already defined in the system.	No

### C1-INMEMEPRC

This algorithm is invoked once a membership inbound message is successfully validated. It processes the membership inbound message and accordingly does the following:

- Adds or updates a membership in a policy plan
- Adds a dependent in a membership
- Updates the details of the main subscriber or dependent person
- Creates main subscriber or dependent person

- Associates a contract with a membership
- Creates a membership premium billable charge for a coverage period

If the processing fails due to any reason, the status of the membership inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. In addition, the appropriate log entry is added which you can view in the **Inbound Message Log** zone.

This algorithm contains the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Next Status	Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.	No
Next Transition Condition	Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.	No
Subscriber Member Business Object	Used to specify the business object using which you want to create the main subscriber or dependent person in the system.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1-HCCustomer</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a business object which is already defined in the system.	
Description on Bill	Used to specify the description that you want to display on the premium billable charge.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>Premium</b> .	
Premium Amount Service Quantity Identifier	Used to indicate the service quantity identifier (SQI) against which you want to store the premium amount. The system uses this SQI while creating the premium billable charges.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>PREMAMT</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a service quantity identifier which is already defined in the system.	
Recurring Flag	Used to indicate that you want to create recurring bill segments at the intervals defined in the bill period.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>BP</b> .	



Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Plan Code Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the policy plan number. This type of characteristic is defined on the price item. The system uses this characteristic to derive the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1HPLNID</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	
Rate Coverage Type Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the rate coverage type. This type of characteristic is defined on the price item. The system uses this characteristic to derive the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1RATCOV</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	
Policy Plan Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the policy plan ID. This type of characteristic is defined on the contract. The system uses this characteristic to derive the active contract associated with the memberships of the policy plan.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1POLPLN</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Contract</b> .	

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Main Subscriber Characteristic Type	<p>Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to indicate whether the person is the main subscriber in a membership. This type of characteristic is defined on the person. The system checks whether the value for this characteristic (specified in the membership inbound message) matches the value specified in the <b>Main Subscriber Characteristic Value</b> parameter. If so, it considers the person as the main subscriber. Otherwise, the person is considered as a dependent person.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1DEPCD</b>. You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</p>	Yes
Main Subscriber Characteristic Value	<p>Used to specify the value for the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Main Subscriber Characteristic Type</b> parameter.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>MEM</b>.</p>	No
Account Identifier Type	<p>Used to indicate the account identifier type. The system derives the account using the account identifier type and account identifier combination.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1_F_ANO</b>. You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify an account identifier type which is already defined in the system.</p>	No
Bill Segment Cancel Reason	<p>Used to indicate the cancel reason which you want to use during premium bill segment cancelation on the membership termination.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>MASS</b>. You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a bill cancel reason which is already defined in the system.</p>	No

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Invoice Day Characteristic Type	<p>Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the invoice day for the account. This type of characteristic is defined on the account. The system fetches the bill period mapped to the invoice day in the <b>C1_INVOICE_DAY_BILL_PERIOD_FLG</b> lookup field while creating premium billable charges for accounts.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1OFFRST</b>. You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b>.</p>	Yes
Membership Characteristic Type	<p>Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the membership ID. This type of characteristic is defined on the billable charge. The system uses this characteristic to derive premium billable charges whose corresponding bill segments must be canceled due to change in membership coverage period.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>CIMMBRSH</b>. You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Billable Charge</b>.</p>	Yes
Membership Business Object Characteristic Type	<p>Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the business object using which the membership must be created. This type of characteristic is defined on the policy type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1MEMBRO</b>. You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy Type</b>.</p>	Yes

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Type Category Characteristic Type	<p>Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to indicate the type of the transaction (i.e. whether the transaction is related to premium, fee, and so on). This type of characteristic is defined on the billable charge. The system uses this characteristic to derive premium billable charges.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1TRNCAT</b>. You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Billable Charge</b>.</p>	Yes
Transaction Type Category Characteristic Value	<p>Used to specify the value for the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Transaction Type Category Characteristic Type</b> parameter.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>CMPREM</b>.</p>	No
Inactive Policy Plan Characteristic Type	<p>Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to indicate whether the policy plan is inactive. This type of characteristic is defined on the contract. The system uses this characteristic to derive contracts associated with the memberships of policy plan .</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1INAPPC</b>. You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Contract</b>.</p>	Yes
Coverage Tier Characteristic Type	<p>Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to indicate the coverage tier to which the membership belongs. This type of characteristic is defined on the membership.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1CVTIER</b>. You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Membership</b>.</p>	Yes

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Membership Termination Status	Used to indicate the status to which you want to transition the membership when the membership is terminated.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>TERMINATE</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a status which is already defined in the lifecycle of the <b>C1-Membership</b> business object.	
Medical Rate Coverage Type	Used to specify a medical contract type. The system evaluates whether the rate coverage type specified in the membership inbound message is a medical contract type using this parameter value.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>M</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a value which is already defined in the <b>RATE_COVRG_CNTRACT_TYPE</b> lookup field.	
Policy Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the policy ID. This type of characteristic is defined on the billable charge. The system uses this characteristic to derive the packaged savings billable charge when the membership coverage period is changed.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1POLICY</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Billable Charge</b> .	
Product Type Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to indicate the type of the product. This type of characteristic is defined on the price item. The system uses this characteristic to derive packaged savings billable charges whose corresponding bill segments must be canceled due to change in membership coverage period.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1PRODTY</b> . You can change the characteristic type, if required. However, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	

Parameter	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Product Type Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Product Type Characteristic Type</b> parameter.	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>PACKSAV</b> .	
Policy Status	Used to specify the status of the policy. If the parameter value is specified and if the parameter value matches the policy status, the system validates whether the membership start and end dates fall within the policy plan start and end dates.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a status which is already defined in the lifecycle of the <b>C1-Policy</b> business object.	
Address Business Object	Used to specify the business object using which you want to create an address.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the parameter value is set to <b>C1-Address</b> . You can change the parameter value, if required. However, you must specify a business object which is already defined in the system.	

### C1-TODORETRY

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the customer or membership inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. It checks whether the maximum retry attempts are met. If the retry attempt is less than or equal to the value defined in the **Maximum Retry** parameter, the status of the inbound message is changed to **Pending**. However, if the retry attempt is greater than the value defined in the **Maximum Retry** parameter, the status of the inbound message remains as **Rejected**.

**Note:** This algorithm is invoked only when the customer or membership inbound message is validated and processed through the batch process.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Maximum Retry** – Used to specify the maximum number of times the inbound message can be revalidated and reprocessed on failure.
- **Maximum Retry Element Name** – This parameter is not used at the moment.

If you do not specify any value for the **Maximum Retry** parameter, the system uses the value defined in the **To Do Maximum Retries** status option (which is defined in the lifecycle of the **C1-CustomerInboundMessage** and **C1-MemberInboundMessage** business object) to check whether the maximum retry attempts are met. If the value is not specified for the **To Do Maximum Retries** status option, the system does not allow revalidating and reprocessing an inbound message, and the status of the inbound message remains as **Rejected**.

### C1-TDCRINMSG

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the customer or membership inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. It creates a To Do using the specified To Do type and assigns it to users with the specified To Do role.

It contains the following parameters:

- **To Do Type** - Used to specify the type of notification that you want to generate when the inbound message validation or processing fails.
- **To Do Role** - Used to specify the To Do role to indicate the users to whom you want to send the notification when the inbound message validation or processing fails.

The rest of the parameters, such as **To Do Type Element Name**, **To Do Role Element Name**, **Message Category**, **Message Number**, **Characteristic Type For Log Entry**, **To Do Sort Keys Retriever Script**, **Discard Cancel Terminate Reason Element**, **Discard Cancel Terminate Reason**, **Retry Frequency**, and **Retry Frequency Element Name**, are not used at the moment.

## F1-TODOCOMPL

This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the **Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion** characteristic is set to **Y** for the business object, the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.

## Membership Inbound Message XML Format

### Note:

We recommend you to refer the Membership Inbound Message schema in parallel while understanding the below mentioned tags. This will help you to understand how the tags are nested in the schema.

If a characteristic is defined for a person using the characteristic type specified in the **Main Subscriber Characteristic Type** parameter of the **C1-INMEMEPRC** algorithm and its value is set to the one specified in the **Main Subscriber Characteristic Value** parameter of the **C1-INMEMEPRC** algorithm, then the person is added as the main subscriber in the membership. Otherwise, the person is added as a dependent person in the membership.

Before calling the **C1-MembershipInboundMessage** inbound web service, you need to ensure that the membership inbound message contains the following tags:

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)								
schema	Used to specify the tags of a membership inbound message.	Yes								
characteristics	<div>You can use this tag within the following tags:</div> <table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the characteristics tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>schema</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the membership inbound message.</td></tr><tr><td>memberData</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the person.</td></tr><tr><td>memberPlanCoverages</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the membership.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristics tag is...	schema	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the membership inbound message.	memberData	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the person.	memberPlanCoverages	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the membership.	No
If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristics tag is...									
schema	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the membership inbound message.									
memberData	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the person.									
memberPlanCoverages	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the membership.									
inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify a characteristic for the membership inbound message.	No								

Tag Name	Tag Description		Mandatory (Yes or No)
adhocCharacteristicValue	Used to specify the value for the adhoc characteristic type.		Yes (Conditional)
			<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing an adhoc characteristic of the membership inbound message.
characteristicType	You can use this tag within the following tags:		Yes (Conditional)
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristicType tag is...	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a characteristic of the respective entity.
	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the characteristic type. Here, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Inbound Message</b> .	
	characteristicsList	Used to specify the characteristic type. If you are defining a characteristic for a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Person</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</li> <li><b>Membership</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Membership</b>.</li> </ul>	



Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)							
effectiveDate	You can use this tag within the following tags:	No							
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the effectiveDate tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>inboundMessageCharacteristic</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the membership inbound message.</td></tr><tr><td>characteristicsList</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the respective entity (i.e person or membership).</td></tr></table>		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the effectiveDate tag is...	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the membership inbound message.	characteristicsList	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the respective entity (i.e person or membership).	
	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the effectiveDate tag is...						
	inboundMessageCharacteristic		Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the membership inbound message.						
	characteristicsList		Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the respective entity (i.e person or membership).						
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format. If you do not specify the effective date, the system uses the below mentioned date while defining a characteristic for the following:								
<table><tr><th>Entity</th><th>Effective Date</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>Person</td><td>Earliest Policy Effective Date</td><td>A person might have multiple policies. For example, P1 effective from 01-01-2016 and P2 effective from 01-01-2017. In such case, the system uses the effective date of the policy which is the earliest (i.e. P1) while defining characteristic for the person.</td></tr><tr><td>Membership</td><td>Membership Start Date</td><td>The system uses the date from when the membership is effective in the policy plan while defining characteristic for the membership.</td></tr></table>	Entity	Effective Date	Description	Person	Earliest Policy Effective Date	A person might have multiple policies. For example, P1 effective from 01-01-2016 and P2 effective from 01-01-2017. In such case, the system uses the effective date of the policy which is the earliest (i.e. P1) while defining characteristic for the person.	Membership	Membership Start Date	The system uses the date from when the membership is effective in the policy plan while defining characteristic for the membership.
Entity	Effective Date	Description							
Person	Earliest Policy Effective Date	A person might have multiple policies. For example, P1 effective from 01-01-2016 and P2 effective from 01-01-2017. In such case, the system uses the effective date of the policy which is the earliest (i.e. P1) while defining characteristic for the person.							
Membership	Membership Start Date	The system uses the date from when the membership is effective in the policy plan while defining characteristic for the membership.							

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
characteristicValue	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the characteristicValue tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>inboundMessageCharacteristic</td><td>Used to specify the value for the predefined characteristic type.</td></tr><tr><td>characteristicsList</td><td>Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristicValue tag is...	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the value for the predefined characteristic type.	characteristicsList	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a characteristic of the respective entity.
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristicValue tag is...						
	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the value for the predefined characteristic type.						
characteristicsList	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.							
characteristicValueForeignKey	Used to specify the first value for the foreign key characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)						
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a foreign key characteristic of the membership inbound message.						
characteristicValueFK2	Used to specify the second value for the foreign key characteristic type.	No						
characteristicValueFK3	Used to specify the third value for the foreign key characteristic type.	No						
characteristicValueFK4	Used to specify the fourth value for the foreign key characteristic type.	No						
characteristicValueFK5	Used to specify the fifth value for the foreign key characteristic type.	No						
eligibilityStructureMessage	Used to specify the details of the membership including the header information for the membership inbound message.	Yes						
headerData	Used to specify the header information for the membership inbound message.	Yes						
messageType	Used to specify the inbound message type using which the membership inbound message should be created in the system.	Yes						
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a valid membership inbound message type which is in the <b>Active</b> status.							
messageBatchID	Used to indicate the external batch job or batch run number through which the membership inbound message is created.	Yes						

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
sourceSystem	<div>You can use this tag within the following tags:</div> <table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the sourceSystem tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>headerData</td><td>Used to indicate the external system from where the membership inbound message is received.</td></tr><tr><td>policyData</td><td>Used to indicate the source system from where the policy is originated.</td></tr></table> <div><b>Note:</b> You must specify a source system which is already defined in the <b>C1-SourceSystemLookup</b> extendable lookup. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.</div>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the sourceSystem tag is...	headerData	Used to indicate the external system from where the membership inbound message is received.	policyData	Used to indicate the source system from where the policy is originated.	Yes
If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the sourceSystem tag is...							
headerData	Used to indicate the external system from where the membership inbound message is received.							
policyData	Used to indicate the source system from where the policy is originated.							
sourceSystemTransID	Used to indicate the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the customer inbound message.	No						
sourceSystemSourceID	Used to specify the external source system ID.	Yes						
bo	<div>You can use this tag within the following tags:</div> <table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the bo tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>schema</td><td><div>Indicates the business object using which the membership inbound message is created in the system.</div><div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div></td></tr><tr><td>headerData</td><td><div>Used to indicate the business object using which the membership inbound message should be created in the system. The valid value is:</div><div><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>C1-MemberInboundMessage</li></ul></div></td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the bo tag is...	schema	<div>Indicates the business object using which the membership inbound message is created in the system.</div> <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>	headerData	<div>Used to indicate the business object using which the membership inbound message should be created in the system. The valid value is:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>C1-MemberInboundMessage</li></ul></div>	Yes
If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the bo tag is...							
schema	<div>Indicates the business object using which the membership inbound message is created in the system.</div> <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>							
headerData	<div>Used to indicate the business object using which the membership inbound message should be created in the system. The valid value is:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>C1-MemberInboundMessage</li></ul></div>							
eligibilityStructureData	Used to specify the details of a membership, such as the membership period, main subscriber, dependents, membership contracts, and membership premium for a coverage period.	Yes						

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
memberData	Used to specify the details of the main subscriber or dependent person.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a main subscriber or dependent person.
customerName	Used to specify the name of the main subscriber or dependent person.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a main subscriber or dependent person.
customerType	Used to indicate the type of the person.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a value which is already defined in the <b>PER_OR_BUS_FLG</b> lookup field. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a main subscriber or dependent person.
memberId	Used to specify the external membership ID.	No
relationship	If you are specifying the details of a main subscriber, then this tag is used to indicate how the main subscriber is related to the membership. However, if you are specifying the details of a dependent person, then this tag is used to indicate how the dependent person is related to the main subscriber.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a contract relationship type which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a main subscriber or dependent person.
Id	Used to specify the identification details of the person.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify one primary identifier for a person.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the respective information.

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)								
IDType	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)								
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the IDType tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>Id</td><td>Used to specify the person identifier type.</td></tr><tr><td>newPrimaryID</td><td>Used to specify the primary person identifier type.</td></tr><tr><td>mainSubscriber</td><td>Used to specify the person identifier type.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the IDType tag is...	Id	Used to specify the person identifier type.	newPrimaryID	Used to specify the primary person identifier type.	mainSubscriber	Used to specify the person identifier type.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the respective information.
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the IDType tag is...								
	Id	Used to specify the person identifier type.								
	newPrimaryID	Used to specify the primary person identifier type.								
	mainSubscriber	Used to specify the person identifier type.								
<b>Note:</b> You must specify a person identifier type which is already defined in the system.										
IDValue	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)								
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the IDValue tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>Id</td><td>Used to specify the person identifier.</td></tr><tr><td>newPrimaryID</td><td>Used to specify the primary person identifier.</td></tr><tr><td>mainSubscriber</td><td>Used to indicate the main subscriber who is related to the dependent person.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the IDValue tag is...	Id	Used to specify the person identifier.	newPrimaryID	Used to specify the primary person identifier.	mainSubscriber	Used to indicate the main subscriber who is related to the dependent person.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the respective information.
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the IDValue tag is...								
	Id	Used to specify the person identifier.								
	newPrimaryID	Used to specify the primary person identifier.								
	mainSubscriber	Used to indicate the main subscriber who is related to the dependent person.								
isPrimary	Used to indicate whether the person identifier is a primary identifier. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Y</li><li>N</li></ul>	No								
	<b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the value, by default, it is set to N.									
newPrimaryID	Used when you want to change the primary identifier of the main subscriber or dependent person.	No								
mainSubscriber	Used to specify the primary identifier of the main subscriber.	Yes (Conditional)								
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when you are adding dependent person in a membership.								

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
characteristicsList	Used to specify a characteristic for the respective entity (i.e. person or membership)	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a characteristic of the respective entity.
address	Used to specify the address details of the main subscriber or dependent person.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the address of a main subscriber or dependent person.
addressEffDate	Used to specify the date from when the address is effective for the main subscriber or dependent person.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.  If you do not specify the date, by default, the system sets the effective date to the date when the address is created in the system through the membership inbound message.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while editing the address of a main subscriber or dependent person.
addressType	Used to indicate whether the address is the person's mailing or seasonal address. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>MAIN</b> - Indicates that the address is the person's mailing address.</li> <li><b>SEAS</b> - Indicates that the address is the person's seasonal address.</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the address type, by default, it is set to <b>MAIN</b> .  You must specify an address type which is already defined in the <b>ADDRESS_TYPE_FLG</b> lookup field. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while editing the address of a main subscriber or dependent person.
MailingName	Used to specify the override mailing name for the main subscriber or dependent person.	No
address1	Used to specify the first line of the address. It may contain details, such as the house number.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the address of a main subscriber or dependent person.

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
address2	Used to specify the second line of the address. It may contain details, such as the apartment name.	No
address3	Used to specify the third line of the address. It may contain details, such as the street name.	No
city	Used to specify the city name.	No
state	Used to indicate the state where the city is located.	No
zip	Used to specify the zip code of the address.	No
country	Used to indicate the country where the main subscriber or dependent person is located.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the address of a main subscriber or dependent person.
attentionName	Used to specify the fourth line of the address. It may contain the landmark details.	No
phones	Used to specify the phone details of the main subscriber or dependent person.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the phone details of a main subscriber or dependent person.
phoneType	Used to indicate the type of the phone.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a phone type which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the phone details of a main subscriber or dependent person.
phoneValue	Used to specify the phone number of the main subscriber or dependent person.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the phone details of a main subscriber or dependent person.
policyData	Used to specify information about the policy and its plan for which you want to define or edit the membership.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a membership.

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
policyNumber	Used to specify the policy number.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a membership.
memberPlanCoverages	Used to specify the details of the membership.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a membership.
billGroup	Used to indicate the account on which you want to create the membership premium billable charges.	No
planCode	Used to specify the plan number.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The value is stored as a characteristic on the price item. The system stores the value against the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Plan Code Characteristic Type</b> parameter of the <b>C1-INMEMEPRC</b> algorithm.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a membership.
coverageType	Used to specify the coverage type.	No
rateCoverageType	Used to specify the contract type. The system finds the contract of the specified contract type on the account and associates it with the membership.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a contract type which is already defined in the <b>RATE_COVRG_CNTRACT_TYPE</b> lookup field. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.  The value is stored as a characteristic on the price item. The system stores the value against the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Rate Coverage Type Characteristic Type</b> parameter of the <b>C1-INMEMEPRC</b> algorithm.  The system derives the price item where the specified rate coverage type and plan code are defined as characteristics. The system then derives the policy plan using the derived policy ID and price item. It also checks whether the start date of the policy plan is earlier than or equal to the membership start date and the policy plan end date is later than or equal to the membership end date.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a membership.



Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
startDate	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)									
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the startDate tag is...</th></tr><tr><td rowspan="2">memberPlanCoverages</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the membership is effective.</td></tr><tr><td><div><b>Note:</b> The membership start date cannot be later than the membership end date.  The membership start date cannot be earlier than the policy plan start date or later than policy plan end date.</div></td></tr><tr><td>premiumRateList</td><td>Used to specify the start date of the coverage period.</td></tr><tr><td></td><td><div><b>Note:</b> The coverage period start date cannot be earlier than the membership start date and later than the coverage period end date.</div></td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the startDate tag is...	memberPlanCoverages	Used to specify the date from when the membership is effective.	<div><b>Note:</b> The membership start date cannot be later than the membership end date.  The membership start date cannot be earlier than the policy plan start date or later than policy plan end date.</div>	premiumRateList	Used to specify the start date of the coverage period.		<div><b>Note:</b> The coverage period start date cannot be earlier than the membership start date and later than the coverage period end date.</div>	<div><b>Note:</b> This data is required in the following scenarios:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• While defining or editing a membership</li><li>• While creating or editing a membership premium billable charge</li></ul></div>
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the startDate tag is...									
	memberPlanCoverages	Used to specify the date from when the membership is effective.									
<div><b>Note:</b> The membership start date cannot be later than the membership end date.  The membership start date cannot be earlier than the policy plan start date or later than policy plan end date.</div>											
premiumRateList	Used to specify the start date of the coverage period.										
	<div><b>Note:</b> The coverage period start date cannot be earlier than the membership start date and later than the coverage period end date.</div>										

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
endDate	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the endDate tag is...</th></tr><tr><td rowspan="2">memberPlanCoverages</td><td>Used to specify the date till when the membership is effective.  <b>Note:</b> The membership end date cannot be earlier than the membership start date.  The membership end date cannot be earlier than the policy plan start date or later than policy plan end date.</td></tr><tr><td>premiumRateList</td><td>Used to specify the end date of the coverage period.  <b>Note:</b> The coverage period end date cannot be later than the membership end date and earlier than the coverage period start date.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the endDate tag is...	memberPlanCoverages	Used to specify the date till when the membership is effective.  <b>Note:</b> The membership end date cannot be earlier than the membership start date.  The membership end date cannot be earlier than the policy plan start date or later than policy plan end date.	premiumRateList	Used to specify the end date of the coverage period.  <b>Note:</b> The coverage period end date cannot be later than the membership end date and earlier than the coverage period start date.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required in the following scenarios: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>While defining or editing a membership</li><li>While creating or editing a membership premium billable charge</li></ul>
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the endDate tag is...						
	memberPlanCoverages	Used to specify the date till when the membership is effective.  <b>Note:</b> The membership end date cannot be earlier than the membership start date.  The membership end date cannot be earlier than the policy plan start date or later than policy plan end date.						
premiumRateList		Used to specify the end date of the coverage period.  <b>Note:</b> The coverage period end date cannot be later than the membership end date and earlier than the coverage period start date.						
productCode	Used to indicate the product to which the price item is mapped.	No						
premiumRates	Used to specify the premium details of the membership.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This data is required while creating or editing a membership premium billable charge.						
premiumRateList	Used to specify the premium for a coverage period.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This data is required while creating or editing a membership premium billable charge.						
premiumAmount	Used to specify the premium amount for the coverage period.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This data is required while creating or editing a membership premium billable charge.						

The following table lists and describes the tags which are available in the membership inbound message schema, but should not be included in the XML file:

Tag Name	Tag Description						
c1InboundMessage	Displays the inbound message ID.						
c1InboundMessageType	Indicates the inbound message type using which the membership inbound message is created in the system.						
boStatus	Displays the status of the membership inbound message.						
statusReason	Indicates the reason why the status of the membership inbound message is changed.						
c1SourceSystem	Indicates the external system from where the membership inbound message is received.						
c1ExternalTransactionId	Indicates the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the membership inbound message.						
c1ExternalBatchId	Indicates the external batch job or batch run number through which the membership inbound message is created.						
c1ExternalSourceId	Displays the external source system ID.						
person	At present, this tag is not supported in a membership inbound message.						
statusDateTime	Displays the date and time when the status of the membership inbound message is changed in the system.						
creationDateTime	Displays the date and time when the membership inbound message is created in the system.						
version	<p>This tag appears within the following parent tags:</p> <table> <tr> <th>Parent Tag</th><th>Then the purpose of the version tag is...</th></tr> <tr> <td>schema</td><td>Displays the version of the membership inbound message.</td></tr> <tr> <td>inboundMessageCharacteristic</td><td>Displays the version of the characteristic defined for the membership inbound message.</td></tr> </table>	Parent Tag	Then the purpose of the version tag is...	schema	Displays the version of the membership inbound message.	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Displays the version of the characteristic defined for the membership inbound message.
Parent Tag	Then the purpose of the version tag is...						
schema	Displays the version of the membership inbound message.						
inboundMessageCharacteristic	Displays the version of the characteristic defined for the membership inbound message.						
searchCharacteristicValue	At present, this tag is not supported in the membership inbound message.						
messageID	Displays the inbound message ID.						
status	Displays the status of the membership inbound message.						
createDateTime	Displays the date and time when the membership inbound message is created in the system.						
ORMBcreateDateTime	Displays the date and time when the membership inbound message is created in the system.						

Tag Name	Tag Description
toDoRetry	Displays the information about the retry option used for the membership inbound message.
	<b>Note:</b> This information appears at the bottom of the inbound message in the <b>Inbound Message Content</b> zone once the membership inbound message is validated and processed either through the user interface or batch process.
retryDateTime	Displays the date and time when the retry option is used to change the status of the membership inbound message from <b>Rejected</b> to <b>Pending</b> .
numberOfRetries	Indicates the number of times the retry option is used for the membership inbound message.
currentErrorState	Indicates the status to which the membership inbound message is transitioned when its validation or processing fails. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>REJECTED</li></ul>
isRetried	Indicates whether the retry option is used to change the status of the membership inbound message. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>true</li><li>false</li></ul>

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Membership Inbound Message Schema	<a href="#">Membership Inbound Message Schema</a> on page 1568
Sample Membership Inbound Message	<a href="#">Sample Membership Inbound Message</a> on page 1570

Membership Inbound Message Schema

```
<schema>
  <clInboundMessage></clInboundMessage>
  <clInboundMessageType></clInboundMessageType>
  <bo></bo>
  <boStatus></boStatus>
  <statusReason></statusReason>
  <clSourceSystem></clSourceSystem>
  <clExternalTransactionId></clExternalTransactionId>
  <clExternalBatchId></clExternalBatchId>
  <clExternalSourceId></clExternalSourceId>
  <person></person>
  <statusDateTime></statusDateTime>
  <creationDateTime></creationDateTime>
  <version></version>
  <characteristics>
    <inboundMessageCharacteristic>
      <adhocCharacteristicValue></adhocCharacteristicValue>
      <characteristicType></characteristicType>
      <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
      <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
      <characteristicValueForeignKey1></characteristicValueForeignKey1>
      <characteristicValueFK2></characteristicValueFK2>
      <characteristicValueFK3></characteristicValueFK3>
      <characteristicValueFk4></characteristicValueFk4>
```

```

        <characteristicValueFK5></characteristicValueFK5>
        <searchCharacteristicValue></searchCharacteristicValue>
        <version></version>
    </inboundMessageCharacteristic>
</characteristics>
<eligibilityStructureMessage>
    <headerData>
        <messageType></messageType>
        <messageID></messageID>
        <messageBatchID></messageBatchID>
        <sourceSystem></sourceSystem>
        <sourceSystemTransID></sourceSystemTransID>
        <sourceSystemSourceID></sourceSystemSourceID>
        <bo></bo>
        <status></status>
        <createDateTime></createDateTime>
        <ORMBcreateDateTime></ORMBcreateDateTime>
    </headerData>
    <eligibilityStructureData>
        <memberData>
            <customerName></customerName>
            <customerType></customerType>
            <memberId></memberId>
            <relationship></relationship>
            <Id>
                <IDType></IDType>
                <IDValue></IDValue>
                <isPrimary></isPrimary>
            </Id>
            <newPrimaryID>
                <IDType></IDType>
                <IDValue></IDValue>
            </newPrimaryID>
            <mainSubscriber>
                <IDType></IDType>
                <IDValue></IDValue>
            </mainSubscriber>
            <characteristics>
                <characteristicsList>
                    <characteristicType></characteristicType>
                    <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
                    <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
                </characteristicsList>
            </characteristics>
            <address>
                <addressEffDate></addressEffDate>
                <addressType></addressType>
                <MailingName></MailingName>
                <address1></address1>
                <address2></address2>
                <address3></address3>
                <city></city>
                <state></state>
                <zip></zip>
                <country></country>
                <attentionName></attentionName>
            </address>
            <phones>
                <phoneType></phoneType>
                <phoneValue></phoneValue>
            </phones>
        </memberData>
        <policyData>
            <policyNumber></policyNumber>

```

```

        <sourceSystem></sourceSystem>
        <memberPlanCoverages>
            <billGroup></billGroup>
            <planCode></planCode>
            <coverageType></coverageType>
            <rateCoverageType></rateCoverageType>
            <startDate></startDate>
            <endDate></endDate>
            <productCode></productCode>
            <characteristics>
                <characteristicsList>
                    <characteristicType></characteristicType>
                    <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
                    <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
                </characteristicsList>
            </characteristics>
            <premiumRates>
                <premiumRateList>
                    <startDate></startDate>
                    <endDate></endDate>
                    <premiumAmount></premiumAmount>
                </premiumRateList>
            </premiumRates>
        </memberPlanCoverages>
    </policyData>
</eligibilityStructureData>
</eligibilityStructureMessage>
<toDoRetry>
    <retryDateTime></retryDateTime>
    <numberOfRetries></numberOfRetries>
    <currentErrorState></currentErrorState>
    <isRetried></isRetried>
</toDoRetry>
</schema>
```

Sample Membership Inbound Message

Using the below example, you can do the following:

- Add a member to an existing membership
- Create a pass-through billable charge for membership premium

Policy	Policy Plan	Main Subscriber of Membership	Dependent Member
WT1256678	WXXPL	Williams, Garry (COREG=76578)	Williams, John

```

<eligibilityStructureMessage>
    <headerData>
        <messageType>C1-MEMBERSHIP-INB-MSG-TYPE</messageType>
        <messageID>PGPRIME6600</messageID>
        <messageBatchID>250</messageBatchID>
        <sourceSystem>SMALLPRIME</sourceSystem>
        <sourceSystemTransID>01P300</sourceSystemTransID>
        <sourceSystemSourceID>00100</sourceSystemSourceID>
        <bo>C1-MemberInboundMessage</bo>
        <status>PENDING</status>
        <createDateTime>2015-01-01-14.06.01</createDateTime>
        <ORMBcreateDateTime>2015-05-28-15.06.01</ORMBcreateDateTime>
    </headerData>
</eligibilityStructureData>
```

```

<memberData>
  <customerName>Williams, John</customerName>
  <customerType>P</customerType>
  <memberId>233443533285</memberId>
  <relationship>MEM</relationship>
  <newPrimaryID></newPrimaryID>
  <mainSubscriber>
    <IDType>COREG</IDType>
    <IDValue>76578</IDValue>
  </mainSubscriber>
  <characteristics>
    <characteristicsList>
      <characteristicType>C1-GENDR</characteristicType>
      <characteristicValue>MALE</characteristicValue>
    </characteristicsList>
    <characteristicsList>
      <characteristicType>C1DEPCD</characteristicType>
      <characteristicValue>MEM</characteristicValue>
    </characteristicsList>
    <characteristicsList>
      <characteristicType>C1MARSTA</characteristicType>
      <characteristicValue>M</characteristicValue>
    </characteristicsList>
    <characteristicsList>
      <characteristicType>C1_BRTDT</characteristicType>
      <characteristicValue>1981-09-30</characteristicValue>
    </characteristicsList>
  </characteristics>
  <Id>
    <IDType>COREG</IDType>
    <IDValue>67788</IDValue>
    <isPrimary>Y</isPrimary>
  </Id>
  <address>
    <addressEffDate>2017-01-01</addressEffDate>
    <addressType>MAIN</addressType>
    <address1>Apartment 405</address1>
    <address2>Rockaway Valley Road</address2>
    <city>Boonton</city>
    <state>NJ</state>
    <zip>07005</zip>
    <country>USA</country>
    <attentionName>Near Canterbury Road Junction</attentionName>
  </address>
  <phones>
    <phoneType>FAX</phoneType>
    <phoneValue>(862) 555-0199</phoneValue>
  </phones>
</memberData>
<policyData>
  <policyNumber>WT1256678</policyNumber>
  <sourceSystem>SMALLPRIME</sourceSystem>
  <memberPlanCoverages>
    <billGroup>126535</billGroup>
    <planCode>WXXPL</planCode>
    <rateCoverageType>CMM</rateCoverageType>
    <startDate>2017-01-01</startDate>
    <endDate>2017-09-25</endDate>
    <characteristics>
      <characteristicsList>
        <characteristicType>C1CVTIER</characteristicType>
        <characteristicValue>EC</characteristicValue>
        <effectiveDate>2017-01-01</effectiveDate>
      </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
  </memberPlanCoverages>
</policyData>

```

```

        </characteristics>
        <premiumRates>
            <premiumRateList>
                <startDate>2017-01-01</startDate>
                <endDate>2017-09-25</endDate>
                <premiumAmount>500</premiumAmount>
            </premiumRateList>
        </premiumRates>
    </memberPlanCoverages>
</policyData>
</eligibilityStructureData>
</eligibilityStructureMessage>

```

## ASO Customer Inbound Message

On calling the **C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage** web service, you can create an ASO customer inbound message using an ASO customer inbound message type. You can create an ASO customer inbound message type using the **ASO Customer Inbound Message Type (C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType)** business object. The ASO customer inbound message type helps the system to determine:

- **Inbound Message Business Object** - The business object using which the ASO customer inbound message should be created in the system. You must specify the **ASO Customer Inbound Message (C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage)** business object in the ASO customer inbound message type.
- **Person Business Object** - The business object using which the person should be created in the system. You must specify the **Health Care Customer (C1-HCCustomer)** business object in the ASO customer inbound message type.
- **Account Business Object** - The business object using which the account should be created in the system. You must specify the **Health Care Account (C1-HCAccount)** business object in the ASO customer inbound message type.
- **Policy Type** - The policy type indicates the policy business object using which the policy should be created in the system. You must specify the **ASO Policy (C1-ASOPolicy)** business object in the policy type.
- **Policy Plan Business Object** - The business object using which the policy plan should be created in the system. You must specify the **Policy Plan (C1-PolicyPlan)** business object in the ASO customer inbound message type.

The **C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage** web service enables you to do the following:

- Create or edit a parent customer
- Create or edit the bill groups of the parent customer
- Create or edit the accounts of a bill group
- Create or edit auto pay instructions of an account
- Create or edit the self-funded policies of a bill group
- Create or edit the plans of a self-funded policy

The following table describes how the system behaves when the respective entity information is given in an ASO customer inbound message:

Entity	System Behavior
Parent Customer	The system creates the person whose person type is set to <b>PG</b> .
Bill Group	The system creates the person whose person type is set to <b>BG</b> . The bill group is related to the parent customer using the person relationship type which is specified in the <b>Person Relationship Type</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration.



Entity	System Behavior
Account	While creating an account, the system defines the <b>Invoice Type</b> characteristic for the account. It stores the account type given in the account information in the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Invoice Type Characteristic Type</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration.
Policy	<p>If the policy information is given for a bill group, the system creates the self-funded policy using the policy type which is specified in the ASO customer inbound message type. In addition, it does the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Associates the bill group with the policy using the policy person role which is specified in the <b>Bill Group Policy Person Role</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration</li> <li>Associates the parent customer with the policy using the policy person role which is specified in the <b>Parent Customer Policy Person Role</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration</li> </ul>
Policy Plan	The system creates the plan for the self-funded policy.

On calling the **C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage** web service, an ASO customer inbound message is created in the **Pending** status. When the **Customer Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-CUSIN)** batch is executed, the system checks whether there are any ASO customer inbound messages in the **Pending** status. If there is an ASO customer inbound message in the **Pending** status, the system validates the ASO customer inbound message. If an ASO customer inbound message is successfully validated, it is processed further and the entities are either created or updated in the system based on the available information.

Alternatively, the system enables you to submit the ASO customer inbound messages for validation and processing from the user interface. On submitting an ASO customer inbound message, the system validates the ASO customer inbound message. If an ASO customer inbound message is successfully validated, it is processed further and the required entities are created or updated in the system based on the available information.

Once all required entities are created or updated in the system, the status of the ASO customer inbound message is changed to **Processed**. If any error occurs while validating or processing an ASO customer inbound message, the status of the ASO customer inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. The system enables you to either reprocess or void a rejected ASO customer inbound message. The system can reprocess an ASO customer inbound message only when its status is changed to **Pending**. Using the **Retry** option, you can change the status of the ASO customer inbound message from **Rejected** to **Pending**. The **Customer Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-CUSIN)** batch will then reconsider and reprocess the ASO customer inbound message.

You can also configure the system such that the batch can automatically retry to process the rejected ASO customer inbound messages. However, it will attempt to retry only when the **Maximum Retry** parameter in the **Retry for To Dos (C1-TODORETRY)** algorithm is set to a value greater than zero. Also, the maximum number of times the batch can attempt to retry and reprocess an ASO customer inbound message depends on the value defined in the **Maximum Retry** parameter.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Prerequisites

To use the ASO customer inbound message feature, you need to do the following:

- Define the required ASO customer inbound message types in the system.
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Inbound Message Type**.

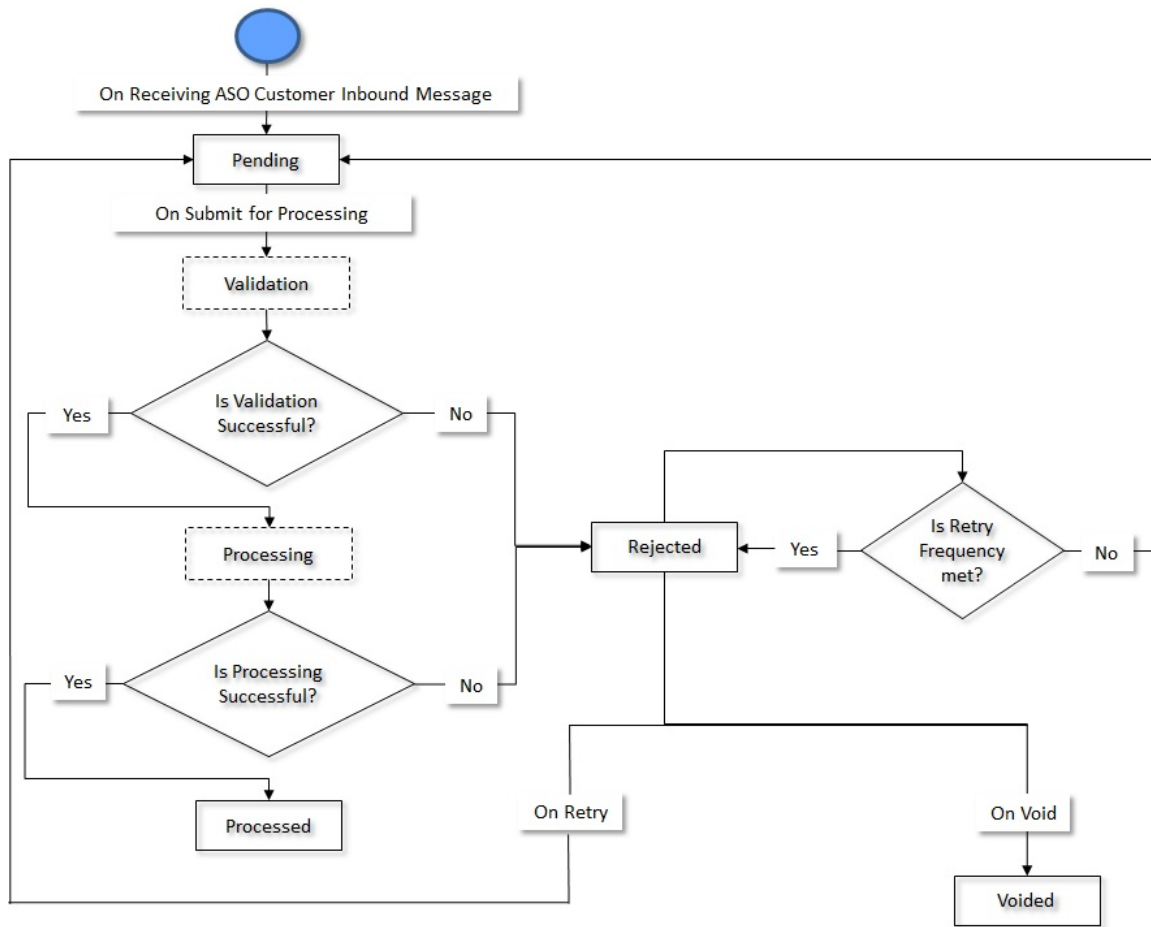
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Inbound Message**.
- Define the values for the required parameters in the **C1-ASOCINVAL**, **C1-ASOCINPRC**, **C1-TODORETRY**, and **C1-TDCRINMSG** algorithms.
- Define the values for the **C1-SourceSystemLookup** extendable lookup.
- Define the values for the **ADDRESS\_TYPE\_FLG** and **RUNOUT\_ADM\_OPT\_FLG** lookup fields.
- Set the values for the following option types in the **C1-ASOBLNG** feature configuration:
  - Person Relationship Type
  - Bill Group Policy Person Role
  - Parent Customer Policy Person Role
  - Invoice Type Characteristic Type
- Define the required divisions, person identifier types, account identifier types, phone types, person relationship types, customer classes, bill cycles, bill route types, auto pay route types, auto pay sources, policy person roles, price items, and characteristic types in the application.
- Set the batch control type of the **Customer Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-CUSIN)** to **Timed** and define the following attributes:
  - Time Interval
  - Timer Active
  - User ID
  - Batch Language
  - Email Address

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

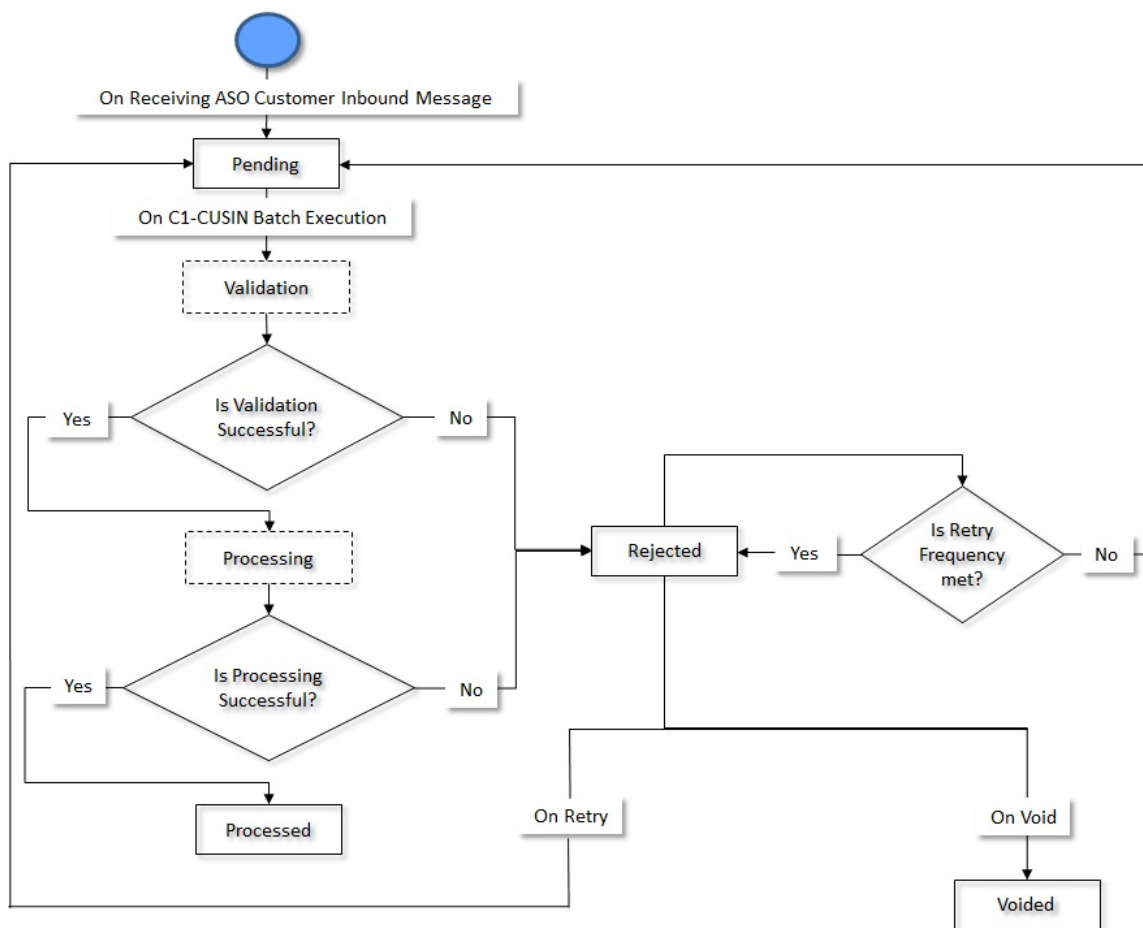
**ASO Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through User Interface**

The following figure graphically indicates how an ASO customer inbound message moves from one status to another when it is validated and processed through the user interface:



### ASO Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through a Batch Process

The following figure graphically indicates how an ASO customer inbound message moves from one status to another when it is validated and processed through the **Customer Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-CUSIN)** batch:



## Algorithms Used in C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Pending	Monitor	C1-AT-RQJ	C1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">C1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1508.
Validation	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
	Enter	C1-ASOCINVAL	C1-ASOCINVAL	Refer to <a href="#">C1-ASOCINVAL</a> on page 1577.
Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068.
	Enter	C1-ASOCINPRC	C1-ASOCINPRC	Refer to <a href="#">C1-ASOCINPRC</a> on page 1578.
Rejected	Monitor	C1-TODORETRY	C1-TODORETRY	Refer to <a href="#">C1-TODORETRY</a> on page 1518.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
	Enter	C1-TDCRINMSG	F1-TDCREATE	Refer to <a href="#">C1-TDCRINMSG</a> on page 1518.
Processed	-	-	-	-
Voided	-	-	-	-

### C1-AT-RQJ

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the customer or membership inbound message is changed to **Pending**. If the **isRetried** flag in the inbound message is set to **true**, it resets the flag to **false**.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** – Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** – Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

**Note:** At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

### F1-AT-RQJ

This algorithm transitions the current status of the business object to the specified status. It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** – Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** – Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

### C1-ASOCINVAL

This algorithm is invoked when you execute the **Customer Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-CUSIN)** batch or click the **Submit for Processing** button in the **Inbound Message** screen. It validates the ASO customer inbound message which is in the **Pending** status. It checks the following:

- Whether the parent customer information exists in the ASO customer inbound message.
- Whether the primary identifier is specified for the parent customer and bill group.
- Whether multiple primary identifiers are not specified for the parent customer and bill group.
- Whether the expiration year and month are specified in the account's auto pay details when the **Expiration Date Required** option is selected for the tender type which is specified in the auto pay source.
- Whether the expiration year is not earlier than 1755.
- Whether the expiration month lies between 1 and 12.

If the validation fails due to any reason, the status of the ASO customer inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. In addition, the appropriate log entry is added which you can view in the **Inbound Message Log** zone.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** - Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.

- **Next Transition Condition** - Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

**Note:** At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

### C1-ASOCINPRC

This algorithm is invoked once an ASO customer inbound message is successfully validated. It processes the ASO customer inbound message and accordingly creates or updates a person (parent customer and bill group), account (including automatic payment options), policy and policy plan.

If the processing fails due to any reason, the status of the ASO customer inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. In addition, the appropriate log entry is added which you can view in the **Inbound Message Log** zone.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** - Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** - Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

**Note:** At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

### C1-TODORETRY

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the customer or membership inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. It checks whether the maximum retry attempts are met. If the retry attempt is less than or equal to the value defined in the **Maximum Retry** parameter, the status of the inbound message is changed to **Pending**. However, if the retry attempt is greater than the value defined in the **Maximum Retry** parameter, the status of the inbound message remains as **Rejected**.

**Note:** This algorithm is invoked only when the customer or membership inbound message is validated and processed through the batch process.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Maximum Retry** – Used to specify the maximum number of times the inbound message can be revalidated and reprocessed on failure.
- **Maximum Retry Element Name** – This parameter is not used at the moment.

If you do not specify any value for the **Maximum Retry** parameter, the system uses the value defined in the **To Do Maximum Retries** status option (which is defined in the lifecycle of the **C1-CustomerInboundMessage** and **C1-MemberInboundMessage** business object) to check whether the maximum retry attempts are met. If the value is not specified for the **To Do Maximum Retries** status option, the system does not allow revalidating and reprocessing an inbound message, and the status of the inbound message remains as **Rejected**.

### C1-TDCRINMSG

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the customer or membership inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. It creates a To Do using the specified To Do type and assigns it to users with the specified To Do role.

It contains the following parameters:

- **To Do Type** - Used to specify the type of notification that you want to generate when the inbound message validation or processing fails.
- **To Do Role** - Used to specify the To Do role to indicate the users to whom you want to send the notification when the inbound message validation or processing fails.

The rest of the parameters, such as **To Do Type Element Name**, **To Do Role Element Name**, **Message Category**, **Message Number**, **Characteristic Type For Log Entry**, **To Do Sort Keys Retriever Script**, **Discard Cancel Terminate Reason Element**, **Discard Cancel Terminate Reason**, **Retry Frequency**, and **Retry Frequency Element Name**, are not used at the moment.

## ASO Customer Inbound Message XML Format

**Note:** We recommend you to refer the ASO Customer Inbound Message schema in parallel while understanding the below mentioned tags. This will help you to understand how the tags are nested in the schema.

Before calling the **C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage** inbound web service, you need to ensure that the ASO customer inbound message contains the following tags:

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
schema	Used to specify the tags of an ASO customer inbound message.	Yes						
bo	Used to indicate the business object using which the ASO customer inbound message should be created in the system. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage</li></ul>	Yes						
messageType	<div>You can use this tag within the following tags:</div> <table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the messageType tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>schema</td><td>Indicates the ASO customer inbound message type using which the ASO customer inbound message is created in the system.<div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div></td></tr><tr><td>headerData</td><td>Used to specify the ASO customer inbound message type using which the ASO customer inbound message should be created in the system.</td></tr></table> <div><b>Note:</b> You must specify a valid ASO customer inbound message type which is in the <b>Active</b> status.</div>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the messageType tag is...	schema	Indicates the ASO customer inbound message type using which the ASO customer inbound message is created in the system. <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>	headerData	Used to specify the ASO customer inbound message type using which the ASO customer inbound message should be created in the system.	Yes
If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the messageType tag is...							
schema	Indicates the ASO customer inbound message type using which the ASO customer inbound message is created in the system. <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>							
headerData	Used to specify the ASO customer inbound message type using which the ASO customer inbound message should be created in the system.							

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
sourceSystem	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes									
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the sourceSystem tag is...</th></tr><tr><td rowspan="2">schema</td><td>Indicates the external system from where the ASO customer inbound message is received.</td></tr><tr><td><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</td></tr><tr><td>headerData</td><td>Used to indicate the external system from where the ASO customer inbound message is received.</td></tr><tr><td>policyData</td><td>Used to indicate the source system from where the policy is originated.</td></tr></table>		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the sourceSystem tag is...	schema	Indicates the external system from where the ASO customer inbound message is received.	<b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.	headerData	Used to indicate the external system from where the ASO customer inbound message is received.	policyData	Used to indicate the source system from where the policy is originated.
	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the sourceSystem tag is...								
	schema		Indicates the external system from where the ASO customer inbound message is received.								
			<b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.								
	headerData		Used to indicate the external system from where the ASO customer inbound message is received.								
	policyData		Used to indicate the source system from where the policy is originated.								
<b>Note:</b> You must specify a source system which is already defined in the <b>C1-SourceSystemLookup</b> extendable lookup. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.											
externalTransactionId	You can use this tag within the following tags:	No									
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the externalTransactionId tag is...</th></tr><tr><td rowspan="2">schema</td><td>Indicates the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the ASO customer inbound message.</td></tr><tr><td><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</td></tr><tr><td>headerData</td><td>Used to indicate the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the ASO customer inbound message.</td></tr></table>		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the externalTransactionId tag is...	schema	Indicates the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the ASO customer inbound message.	<b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.	headerData	Used to indicate the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the ASO customer inbound message.		
	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the externalTransactionId tag is...								
	schema		Indicates the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the ASO customer inbound message.								
			<b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.								
headerData	Used to indicate the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the ASO customer inbound message.										



Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
externalBatchId	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the externalBatchId tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>schema</td><td>Indicates the external batch job or batch run number through which the ASO customer inbound message is created.<div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div></td></tr><tr><td>headerData</td><td>Used to indicate the external batch job or batch run number through which the ASO customer inbound message is created.</td></tr></table>		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the externalBatchId tag is...	schema	Indicates the external batch job or batch run number through which the ASO customer inbound message is created. <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>	headerData	Used to indicate the external batch job or batch run number through which the ASO customer inbound message is created.
	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the externalBatchId tag is...					
	schema		Indicates the external batch job or batch run number through which the ASO customer inbound message is created. <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>					
headerData	Used to indicate the external batch job or batch run number through which the ASO customer inbound message is created.							
externalSourceId	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes						
<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the externalSourceId tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>schema</td><td>Displays the external source system ID.<div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div></td></tr><tr><td>headerData</td><td>Used to specify the external source system ID.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the externalSourceId tag is...	schema	Displays the external source system ID. <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>	headerData	Used to specify the external source system ID.	
If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the externalSourceId tag is...							
schema	Displays the external source system ID. <div><b>Note:</b> The system refers the value from within the <b>headerData</b> tag.</div>							
headerData	Used to specify the external source system ID.							

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)														
characteristics	You can use this tag within the following tags:	No														
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the characteristics tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>schema</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the ASO customer inbound message.</td></tr><tr><td>parentCustomerData</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the parent customer.</td></tr><tr><td>billGroupData</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the bill group.</td></tr><tr><td>accountData</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the account.</td></tr><tr><td>policyData</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the policy.</td></tr><tr><td>planData</td><td>Used to specify a list of characteristics for the policy plan.</td></tr></table>		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristics tag is...	schema	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the ASO customer inbound message.	parentCustomerData	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the parent customer.	billGroupData	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the bill group.	accountData	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the account.	policyData	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the policy.	planData	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the policy plan.
	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the characteristics tag is...													
	schema		Used to specify a list of characteristics for the ASO customer inbound message.													
	parentCustomerData		Used to specify a list of characteristics for the parent customer.													
	billGroupData		Used to specify a list of characteristics for the bill group.													
	accountData		Used to specify a list of characteristics for the account.													
	policyData		Used to specify a list of characteristics for the policy.													
planData	Used to specify a list of characteristics for the policy plan.															
inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify a characteristic for the ASO customer inbound message.	No														
adhocCharacteristicValue	Used to specify the value for the adhoc characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)														
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing an adhoc characteristic of the health care inbound message.														

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
characteristicType	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the characteristicType tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>inboundMessageCharacteristic</td><td>Used to specify the characteristic type. Here, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Inbound Message</b>.</td></tr><tr><td>characteristicsList</td><td>Used to specify the characteristic type. If you are defining a characteristic for a:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Parent Customer</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</li><li>• <b>Bill Group</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</li><li>• <b>Account</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b>.</li><li>• <b>Policy</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy</b>.</li><li>• <b>Policy Plan</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy Plan</b>.</li></ul></td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristicType tag is...	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the characteristic type. Here, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Inbound Message</b> .	characteristicsList	Used to specify the characteristic type. If you are defining a characteristic for a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Parent Customer</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</li><li>• <b>Bill Group</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</li><li>• <b>Account</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b>.</li><li>• <b>Policy</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy</b>.</li><li>• <b>Policy Plan</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy Plan</b>.</li></ul>	<div>Note: This data is required while defining or editing a characteristic of the respective entity.</div>
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristicType tag is...						
	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the characteristic type. Here, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Inbound Message</b> .						
characteristicsList	Used to specify the characteristic type. If you are defining a characteristic for a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Parent Customer</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</li><li>• <b>Bill Group</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Person</b>.</li><li>• <b>Account</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b>.</li><li>• <b>Policy</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy</b>.</li><li>• <b>Policy Plan</b> - You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy Plan</b>.</li></ul>							

Copyright © 2020, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
effectiveDate	<div>You can use this tag within the following tags:</div> <table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the effectiveDate tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>inboundMessageCharacteristic</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the ASO customer inbound message.</td></tr><tr><td>characteristicsList</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the respective entity (i.e. parent customer, bill group, account, policy, or policy plan).</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the effectiveDate tag is...	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the ASO customer inbound message.	characteristicsList	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the respective entity (i.e. parent customer, bill group, account, policy, or policy plan).	Yes (Conditional)
		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the effectiveDate tag is...					
		inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the ASO customer inbound message.					
		characteristicsList	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the respective entity (i.e. parent customer, bill group, account, policy, or policy plan).					
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a characteristic of the respective entity.						
<b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.								
characteristicValue	<div>You can use this tag within the following tags:</div> <table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the characteristicValue tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>inboundMessageCharacteristic</td><td>Used to specify the value for the predefined characteristic type.</td></tr><tr><td>characteristicsList</td><td>Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristicValue tag is...	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the value for the predefined characteristic type.	characteristicsList	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the characteristicValue tag is...					
		inboundMessageCharacteristic	Used to specify the value for the predefined characteristic type.					
		characteristicsList	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.					
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a characteristic of the respective entity.						
characteristicValueForeignKey	Used to specify the first value for the foreign key characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)						
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a foreign key characteristic of the health care inbound message.						
characteristicValueFK2	Used to specify the second value for the foreign key characteristic type.	No						
characteristicValueFK3	Used to specify the third value for the foreign key characteristic type.	No						

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)								
characteristicValueFK4	Used to specify the fourth value for the foreign key characteristic type.	No								
characteristicValueFK5	Used to specify the fifth value for the foreign key characteristic type.	No								
customerStructureMessage	Used to specify the details of the customer including the header information for the ASO customer inbound message.	Yes								
headerData	Used to specify the header information for the ASO customer inbound message.	Yes								
parentCustomerData	Used to specify the details of the parent customer.	Yes								
parentCustomerName	Used to specify the name of the parent customer.	Yes (Conditional)								
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a parent customer.								
division	<div>You can use this tag within the following tags:<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the division tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>parentCustomerData</td><td>Used to indicate the division to which the parent customer belongs.</td></tr><tr><td>billGroupData</td><td>Used to indicate the division to which the bill group belongs.</td></tr><tr><td>accountData</td><td>Used to indicate the division to which the account belongs.</td></tr></table></div> <div><b>Note:</b> You must specify a division which is already defined in the system.</div>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the division tag is...	parentCustomerData	Used to indicate the division to which the parent customer belongs.	billGroupData	Used to indicate the division to which the bill group belongs.	accountData	Used to indicate the division to which the account belongs.	No
If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the division tag is...									
parentCustomerData	Used to indicate the division to which the parent customer belongs.									
billGroupData	Used to indicate the division to which the bill group belongs.									
accountData	Used to indicate the division to which the account belongs.									

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)								
identifiers	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)								
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the identifiers tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>parentCustomerData</td><td>Used to specify the identification details for the parent customer.</td></tr><tr><td>billGroupData</td><td>Used to specify the identification details for the bill group.</td></tr><tr><td>accountData</td><td>Used to specify the identification details for the account.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the identifiers tag is...	parentCustomerData	Used to specify the identification details for the parent customer.	billGroupData	Used to specify the identification details for the bill group.	accountData	Used to specify the identification details for the account.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the respective information.
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the identifiers tag is...								
	parentCustomerData	Used to specify the identification details for the parent customer.								
	billGroupData	Used to specify the identification details for the bill group.								
	accountData	Used to specify the identification details for the account.								
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify one primary identifier for a person and account.									
idType	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)								
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the idType tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>identifiers</td><td>Used to specify the person or account identifier type.</td></tr><tr><td>relatedPersons</td><td>Used to specify the person identifier type.</td></tr><tr><td>policyPersons</td><td>Used to specify the person identifier type.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the idType tag is...	identifiers	Used to specify the person or account identifier type.	relatedPersons	Used to specify the person identifier type.	policyPersons	Used to specify the person identifier type.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required in the following scenarios: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>While defining or editing the identification details of a parent customer, bill group, and account.</li><li>While defining or editing a person to person relationship.</li><li>While associating a person with a policy.</li></ul>
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the idType tag is...								
	identifiers	Used to specify the person or account identifier type.								
	relatedPersons	Used to specify the person identifier type.								
	policyPersons	Used to specify the person identifier type.								
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify an identifier type which is already defined in the system.									

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)								
idValue	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)								
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the idValue tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>identifiers</td><td>Used to specify the person or account identifier.</td></tr><tr><td>relatedPersons</td><td>Used to indicate the person who is related to the parent customer.</td></tr><tr><td>policyPersons</td><td>Used to indicate the person to whom you want to associate the policy.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the idValue tag is...	identifiers	Used to specify the person or account identifier.	relatedPersons	Used to indicate the person who is related to the parent customer.	policyPersons	Used to indicate the person to whom you want to associate the policy.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the respective information.
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the idValue tag is...								
	identifiers	Used to specify the person or account identifier.								
	relatedPersons	Used to indicate the person who is related to the parent customer.								
policyPersons	Used to indicate the person to whom you want to associate the policy.									
isPrimary	Used to indicate whether the person or account identifier is a primary identifier. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Y</li><li>• N</li></ul> <b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the value, by default, it is set to N.	No								
address	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)								
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the address tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>parentCustomerData</td><td>Used to specify the address of the parent customer.</td></tr><tr><td>billGroupData</td><td>Used to specify the address of the bill group.</td></tr><tr><td>accountData</td><td>Used to specify the address of the account.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the address tag is...	parentCustomerData	Used to specify the address of the parent customer.	billGroupData	Used to specify the address of the bill group.	accountData	Used to specify the address of the account.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the address of the respective entity.
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the address tag is...								
	parentCustomerData	Used to specify the address of the parent customer.								
	billGroupData	Used to specify the address of the bill group.								
accountData	Used to specify the address of the account.									
addressEffDate	Used to specify the date from when the address is effective.	Yes (Conditional)								
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format. If you do not specify the date, by default, the system sets the effective date to the date when the address is created in the system through the ASO customer inbound message.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while editing the address of a person or account.								

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
addressType	Used to indicate the type of address. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>MAIN</b> - Indicates that the address is the person's mailing address. You can use this address type while specifying the address for the person and account.</li> <li><b>SEAS</b> - Indicates that the address is the person's seasonal address. You can use this address type while specifying the address for the person.</li> <li><b>OVRD</b> - Indicates that the address is the account's override address. You can use this address type while specifying the address for the account.</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the address type, by default, it is set to <b>MAIN</b> .  You must specify an address type which is already defined in the <b>ADDRESS_TYPE_FLG</b> lookup field. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while editing the address of a person or account.
mailingName	Used to specify the name using which the parent customer or bill group should be addressed in the mail communication. The system also uses the mailing name in the bills, letters, quotes, and statements.	No
address1	Used to specify the first line of the address. It may contain details, such as the house number.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining and editing the address of a person and account.
address2	Used to specify the second line of the address. It may contain details, such as the apartment name.	No
address3	Used to specify the third line of the address. It may contain details, such as the street name.	No
attentionName	Used to specify the fourth line of the address. It may contain the landmark details.	No
city	Used to specify the city name.	No
state	Used to indicate the state where the city is located.	No
zip	Used to specify the zip code of the address.	No
country	Used to indicate the country where the parent customer, bill group, or account is located.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the address of a person or account.



Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
email	You can use this tag within the following tags:	No						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the email tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>parentCustomerData</td><td>Used to specify the e-mail ID of the parent customer.</td></tr><tr><td>billGroupData</td><td>Used to specify the e-mail ID of the bill group.</td></tr></table>		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the email tag is...	parentCustomerData	Used to specify the e-mail ID of the parent customer.	billGroupData	Used to specify the e-mail ID of the bill group.
	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the email tag is...					
	parentCustomerData		Used to specify the e-mail ID of the parent customer.					
billGroupData	Used to specify the e-mail ID of the bill group.							
phones	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the phones tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>parentCustomerData</td><td>Used to specify the phone details of the parent customer.</td></tr><tr><td>billGroupData</td><td>Used to specify the phone details of the bill group.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the phones tag is...	parentCustomerData	Used to specify the phone details of the parent customer.	billGroupData	Used to specify the phone details of the bill group.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the phone details of a person.
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the phones tag is...						
	parentCustomerData	Used to specify the phone details of the parent customer.						
billGroupData	Used to specify the phone details of the bill group.							
phoneType	Used to indicate the type of phone.	Yes (Conditional)						
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a phone type which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the phone details of a person.						
phoneValue	Used to specify the phone number of the parent customer or bill group.	Yes (Conditional)						
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the phone details of a person.						
relatedPersons	Used to list persons with whom you want to establish the parent customer's relationship.	Yes (Conditional)						
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a person to person relationship.						
personRelationshipType	Used to indicate how the person is related to the parent customer.	Yes (Conditional)						
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a person relationship type which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while creating a person to person relationship.						

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)														
startDate	You can use this tag within the following tags:	Yes (Conditional)														
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the startDate tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>relatedPersons</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the person is related to the parent customer.</td></tr><tr><td>billGroupData</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the bill group is related to the parent customer.</td></tr><tr><td>autoPayDetails</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the auto pay instruction is effective.</td></tr><tr><td>policyData</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the policy is effective.</td></tr><tr><td>policyPersons</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the person is associated with the policy.</td></tr><tr><td>planData</td><td>Used to specify the date from when the policy plan is effective.</td></tr></table>	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the startDate tag is...	relatedPersons	Used to specify the date from when the person is related to the parent customer.	billGroupData	Used to specify the date from when the bill group is related to the parent customer.	autoPayDetails	Used to specify the date from when the auto pay instruction is effective.	policyData	Used to specify the date from when the policy is effective.	policyPersons	Used to specify the date from when the person is associated with the policy.	planData	Used to specify the date from when the policy plan is effective.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the respective information.
	If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the startDate tag is...														
	relatedPersons	Used to specify the date from when the person is related to the parent customer.														
	billGroupData	Used to specify the date from when the bill group is related to the parent customer.														
	autoPayDetails	Used to specify the date from when the auto pay instruction is effective.														
	policyData	Used to specify the date from when the policy is effective.														
	policyPersons	Used to specify the date from when the person is associated with the policy.														
	planData	Used to specify the date from when the policy plan is effective.														
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.															

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)														
endDate	You can use this tag within the following tags:	No														
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the endDate tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>relatedPersons</td><td>Used to specify the date till when the person is related to the parent customer.</td></tr><tr><td>billGroupData</td><td>Used to specify the date till when the bill group is related to the parent customer.</td></tr><tr><td>autoPayDetails</td><td>Used to specify the date till when the auto pay instruction is effective.</td></tr><tr><td>policyData</td><td>Used to specify the date till when the policy is effective.</td></tr><tr><td>policyPersons</td><td>Used to specify the date till when the person is associated with the policy.</td></tr><tr><td>planData</td><td>Used to specify the date till when the policy plan is effective.</td></tr></table>		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the endDate tag is...	relatedPersons	Used to specify the date till when the person is related to the parent customer.	billGroupData	Used to specify the date till when the bill group is related to the parent customer.	autoPayDetails	Used to specify the date till when the auto pay instruction is effective.	policyData	Used to specify the date till when the policy is effective.	policyPersons	Used to specify the date till when the person is associated with the policy.	planData	Used to specify the date till when the policy plan is effective.
	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the endDate tag is...													
	relatedPersons		Used to specify the date till when the person is related to the parent customer.													
	billGroupData		Used to specify the date till when the bill group is related to the parent customer.													
	autoPayDetails		Used to specify the date till when the auto pay instruction is effective.													
	policyData		Used to specify the date till when the policy is effective.													
	policyPersons		Used to specify the date till when the person is associated with the policy.													
	planData		Used to specify the date till when the policy plan is effective.													
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.															

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
financialRelationshipSw	You can use this tag within the following tags:	No						
	<table><tr><th>If this tag is used within...</th><th>Then the purpose of the financialRelationshipSw tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>relatedPersons</td><td>Used to indicate whether the related person is financially responsible for the parent customer. The valid values are:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>true</li><li>false</li></ul></td></tr><tr><td>billGroupData</td><td>Used to indicate whether the bill group is financially responsible for the parent customer. The valid values are:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>true</li><li>false</li></ul></td></tr></table>		If this tag is used within...	Then the purpose of the financialRelationshipSw tag is...	relatedPersons	Used to indicate whether the related person is financially responsible for the parent customer. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>true</li><li>false</li></ul>	billGroupData	Used to indicate whether the bill group is financially responsible for the parent customer. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>true</li><li>false</li></ul>
	If this tag is used within...		Then the purpose of the financialRelationshipSw tag is...					
	relatedPersons		Used to indicate whether the related person is financially responsible for the parent customer. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>true</li><li>false</li></ul>					
	billGroupData		Used to indicate whether the bill group is financially responsible for the parent customer. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>true</li><li>false</li></ul>					
<b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the value, by default, it is set to <b>false</b> .								
characteristicsList	Used to specify a characteristic for the respective entity (i.e. parent customer, bill group, account, policy, or policy plan).	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a characteristic of the respective entity.						
billGroupData	Used to specify the details of the bill group.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a bill group.						
seqNo	Used to indicate the order in which the bill group should be created in the system.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a bill group.						

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)														
billGroupName	Used to specify the name of the bill group.	Yes (Conditional)														
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a bill group.														
accountData	Used to specify the account details of the bill group.	Yes (Conditional)														
	<b>Note:</b> The system, by default, adds the bill group (for whom the account information is given in the ASO customer inbound message) as the main customer of the account. While linking the bill group as main customer of the account, the system sets the following attributes:	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing an account.														
	<table><tr><th>Attribute Name</th><th>Attribute Value</th></tr><tr><td>Financially Responsible</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>Account Relationship Type</td><td>Main Customer</td></tr><tr><td>Receive Copy of Bill</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>Bill Format</td><td>Detailed</td></tr><tr><td>Receives Notification</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>Number of Bill Copies</td><td>1</td></tr></table>	Attribute Name	Attribute Value	Financially Responsible	Y	Account Relationship Type	Main Customer	Receive Copy of Bill	Y	Bill Format	Detailed	Receives Notification	Y	Number of Bill Copies	1	
	Attribute Name	Attribute Value														
	Financially Responsible	Y														
	Account Relationship Type	Main Customer														
	Receive Copy of Bill	Y														
	Bill Format	Detailed														
	Receives Notification	Y														
	Number of Bill Copies	1														
accountType	Used to indicate the type of account. This information is stored as a characteristic for the account.	Yes (Conditional)														
	<b>Note:</b> The value is stored in the characteristic type which is specified in the <b>Invoice Type Characteristic Type</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration.  You must specify a value which is already defined in the predefined characteristic type.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing an account.														
customerClass	Used to indicate the customer class to which the account belongs.	Yes (Conditional)														
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a customer class which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining an account.														
billCycle	Used to indicate the bill cycle for the account.	No														
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a bill cycle which is already defined in the system.															

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
billRouteType	Used to indicate how the account's bill must be sent to the main customer.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a bill route type which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining the bill routing information for the main customer.
billAddressSource	Used to indicate whether the account's bill must be sent to the main customer's mailing address or to the main customer's account override address. The valid values are:	Yes (Conditional)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PER</li> <li>• ACOV</li> </ul>	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining the bill routing information for the main customer.
autoPayDetails	Used to specify the auto pay instruction for the account.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing an auto pay instruction of an account.
priority	Used to indicate the priority in which the auto pay instruction should be considered when multiple auto pay instructions are effective on the bill's due date.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The priority cannot be less than or equal to zero.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing an auto pay instruction of an account.
percentage	Used to indicate the percentage in which the payment must be split between two or more auto pay sources having the same priority.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing the split auto pay instruction for an account.
autoPayMethod	Used to indicate how you want to process the automatic payment request. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>C1DD</b> - Indicates that you want to directly debit the main customer's bank account.</li> <li>• <b>C1PA</b> - Indicates that you want to send a payment advice to the main customer.</li> </ul>	No

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
autoPayRouteType	Used to indicate when and how automatic payment request of the account is routed to a financial institution.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify an auto pay route type which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing an auto pay instruction of an account.
autoPaySourceCode	Used to indicate the financial institution that receives the automatic payment request.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify an auto pay source which is already defined in the system.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing an auto pay instruction of an account.
accountNumber	Used to indicate the bank account number through which the automatic payment must be done.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing an auto pay instruction of an account.
expiryMonth	Used to specify the month when the tender type of the auto pay source will expire.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the month in the MM format.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the <b>Expiration Date Required</b> option is selected for the tender type which is specified in the auto pay source.
expiryYear	Used to specify the year when the tender type of the auto pay source will expire.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify the year in the YYYY format.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the <b>Expiration Date Required</b> option is selected for the tender type which is specified in the auto pay source.
name	Used to specify the name of the person as it appears in the financial institution's system.	No
maxWithdrawalAmount	Used to specify the maximum amount that can be automatically debited from the bank account. It is used to set the limit on the withdrawal amount.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The maximum withdrawal amount cannot be less than zero.	

Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
comments	Used to specify additional information about the auto pay instruction.	No
policyData	Used to specify the details of the self-funded policy.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a self-funded policy.
policyNumber	Used to specify the policy number.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a self-funded policy.
policyDescription	Used to specify the description for the self-funded policy	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a self-funded policy.
runOutEndDate	Used to specify the date when the runout period of the self-funded policy ends. <b>Note:</b> The runout end date cannot be earlier than the policy end date. You must specify the date in the YYYY-MM-DD format.	No
runOutAdminOption	Used to indicate whether the administration fees must be charged when the claim transaction for the self-funded policy is processed in the runout period. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>NROA</li><li>PERC</li></ul> <b>Note:</b> At present, this data is used only for the information purposes and is not considered during the billable charge creation for the claim transactions which are received in the runout period of the policy. You must specify a value which is already defined in the <b>RUNOUT_ADM_OPT_FLG</b> lookup field. It must be in the <b>Active</b> status.	No



Tag Name	Tag Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
policyPersons	Used to associate a person with the policy.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required while associating a person with the policy.
policyPerRole	Used to indicate the role of the person in the policy. <b>Note:</b> You must specify a policy person role which is already defined in the system.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required while associating a person with the policy.
planData	Used to specify the details of the policy plan.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a policy plan.
planNumber	Used to specify the plan number.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a policy plan.
planCode	Used to specify the price item which you want to associate with the policy plan. <b>Note:</b> You must specify a price item which is already defined in the system.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining or editing a policy plan.

The following table lists and describes the tags which are available in the ASO customer inbound message schema, but should not be included in the XML file:

Tag Name	Tag Description
InboundMessage	Displays the inbound message ID.
boStatus	Displays the status of the ASO customer inbound message.
statusReason	Indicates the reason why the status of the ASO customer inbound message is changed.
person	At present, this tag is not supported in an ASO customer inbound message.
statusDateTime	Displays the date and time when the status of the ASO customer inbound message is changed in the system.
creationDateTime	Displays the date and time when the ASO customer inbound message is created in the system.
searchCharacteristicValue	At present, this tag is not supported in an ASO customer inbound message.

Tag Name	Tag Description						
version	<div>This tag appears within the following parent tags:<table><tr><th>Parent Tag</th><th>Then the purpose of the version tag is...</th></tr><tr><td>schema</td><td>Displays the version of the ASO customer inbound message.</td></tr><tr><td>inboundMessageCharacteristic</td><td>Displays the version of the characteristic defined for the ASO customer inbound message.</td></tr></table></div>	Parent Tag	Then the purpose of the version tag is...	schema	Displays the version of the ASO customer inbound message.	inboundMessageCharacteristic	Displays the version of the characteristic defined for the ASO customer inbound message.
Parent Tag	Then the purpose of the version tag is...						
schema	Displays the version of the ASO customer inbound message.						
inboundMessageCharacteristic	Displays the version of the characteristic defined for the ASO customer inbound message.						
toDoRetry	<div>Displays the information about the retry option used for the ASO customer inbound message.<div><b>Note:</b> This information appears at the bottom of the inbound message in the <b>Inbound Message Content</b> zone once the ASO customer inbound message is validated and processed either through the user interface or batch process.</div></div>						
retryDateTime	Displays the date and time when the retry option is used to change the status of the ASO customer inbound message from <b>Rejected</b> to <b>Pending</b> .						
numberOfRetries	Indicates the number of times the retry option is used for the ASO customer inbound message.						
currentErrorState	<div>Indicates the status to which the ASO customer inbound message is transitioned when its validation or processing fails. The valid value is:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>REJECTED</li></ul></div>						
isRetried	<div>Indicates whether the retry option is used to change the status of the ASO customer inbound message. The valid values are:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>true</li><li>false</li></ul></div>						

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
ASO Customer Inbound Message Schema	<a href="#">ASO Customer Inbound Message Schema</a> on page 1598
Sample ASO Customer Inbound Message	<a href="#">Sample ASO Customer Inbound Message</a> on page 1602
How to setup the C1-ASOBLLNG feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

ASO Customer Inbound Message Schema

```
<schema>
  <clInboundMessage></clInboundMessage>
  <bo></bo>
  <boStatus></boStatus>
  <statusReason></statusReason>
  <messageType></messageType>
```

```

<sourceSystem></sourceSystem>
<externalTransactionId></externalTransactionId>
<externalBatchId></externalBatchId>
<externalSourceId></externalSourceId>
<person></person>
<statusDateTime></statusDateTime>
<creationDateTime></creationDateTime>
<version></version>
<characteristics>
  <inboundMessageCharacteristic>
    <adhocCharacteristicValue></adhocCharacteristicValue>
    <characteristicType></characteristicType>
    <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
    <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
    <characteristicValueForeignKey1></characteristicValueForeignKey1>
    <characteristicValueFK2></characteristicValueFK2>
    <characteristicValueFK3></characteristicValueFK3>
    <characteristicValueFk4></characteristicValueFk4>
    <characteristicValueFK5></characteristicValueFK5>
    <searchCharacteristicValue></searchCharacteristicValue>
    <version></version>
  </inboundMessageCharacteristic>
</characteristics>
<customerStructureMessage>
  <headerData>
    <messageType></messageType>
    <sourceSystem></sourceSystem>
    <externalTransactionId></externalTransactionId>
    <externalBatchId></externalBatchId>
    <externalSourceId></externalSourceId>
  </headerData>
  <parentCustomerData>
    <parentCustomerName></parentCustomerName>
    <division></division>
    <identifiers>
      <idType></idType>
      <idValue></idValue>
      <isPrimary></isPrimary>
    </identifiers>
    <address>
      <addressEffDate></addressEffDate>
      <addressType></addressType>
      <mailingName></mailingName>
      <address1></address1>
      <address2></address2>
      <address3></address3>
      <attentionName></attentionName>
      <city></city>
      <state></state>
      <zip></zip>
      <country></country>
    </address>
    <email></email>
    <phones>
      <phoneType></phoneType>
      <phoneValue></phoneValue>
    </phones>
    <relatedPersons>
      <idType></idType>
      <idValue></idValue>
      <personRelationshipType></personRelationshipType>
      <startDate></startDate>
      <endDate></endDate>
      <financialRelationshipSw></financialRelationshipSw>
    </relatedPersons>
  </parentCustomerData>
</customerStructureMessage>

```

```

</relatedPersons>
<characteristics>
  <characteristicsList>
    <characteristicType></characteristicType>
    <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
    <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
  </characteristicsList>
</characteristics>
<billGroupData>
  <seqNo></seqNo>
  <billGroupName></billGroupName>
  <division></division>
  <startDate></startDate>
  <endDate></endDate>
  <financialRelationshipSw></financialRelationshipSw>
  <identifiers>
    <idType></idType>
    <idValue></idValue>
    <isPrimary></isPrimary>
  </identifiers>
  <address>
    <addressEffDate></addressEffDate>
    <addressType></addressType>
    <mailingName></mailingName>
    <address1></address1>
    <address2></address2>
    <address3></address3>
    <attentionName></attentionName>
    <city></city>
    <state></state>
    <zip></zip>
    <country></country>
  </address>
  <email></email>
  <phones>
    <phoneType></phoneType>
    <phoneValue></phoneValue>
  </phones>
  <characteristics>
    <characteristicsList>
      <characteristicType></characteristicType>
      <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
      <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
    </characteristicsList>
  </characteristics>
  <accountData>
    <accountType></accountType>
    <customerClass></customerClass>
    <billCycle></billCycle>
    <division></division>
    <billRouteType></billRouteType>
    <identifiers>
      <idType></idType>
      <idValue></idValue>
      <isPrimary></isPrimary>
    </identifiers>
    <billAddressSource></billAddressSource>
    <address>
      <addressEffDate></addressEffDate>
      <addressType></addressType>
      <address1></address1>
      <address2></address2>
      <address3></address3>
      <attentionName></attentionName>
    </address>
  </accountData>
</billGroupData>

```

```

        <city></city>
        <state></state>
        <zip></zip>
        <country></country>
    </address>
    <autoPayDetails>
        <priority></priority>
        <startDate></startDate>
        <endDate></endDate>
        <percentage></percentage>
        <autoPayMethod></autoPayMethod>
        <autoPayRouteType></autoPayRouteType>
        <autoPaySourceCode></autoPaySourceCode>
        <accountNumber></accountNumber>
        <expiryMonth></expiryMonth>
        <expiryYear></expiryYear>
        <name></name>
        <maxWithdrawalAmount></maxWithdrawalAmount>
        <comments></comments>
    </autoPayDetails>
    <characteristics>
        <characteristicsList>
            <characteristicType></characteristicType>
            <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
            <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
        </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
</accountData>
<policyData>
    <policyNumber></policyNumber>
    <sourceSystem></sourceSystem>
    <startDate></startDate>
    <endDate></endDate>
    <policyDescription></policyDescription>
    <runOutEndDate></runOutEndDate>
    <runOutAdminOption></runOutAdminOption>
    <policyPersons>
        <idType></idType>
        <idValue></idValue>
        <startDate></startDate>
        <endDate></endDate>
        <policyPerRole></policyPerRole>
    </policyPersons>
    <characteristics>
        <characteristicsList>
            <characteristicType></characteristicType>
            <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
            <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
        </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
    <planData>
        <planNumber></planNumber>
        <planCode></planCode>
        <startDate></startDate>
        <endDate></endDate>
        <characteristics>
            <characteristicsList>
                <characteristicType></characteristicType>
                <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
                <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
            </characteristicsList>
        </characteristics>
    </planData>
</policyData>

```

```
        </billGroupData>
      </parentCustomerData>
    </customerStructureMessage>
    <toDoRetry>
      <retryDateTime></retryDateTime>
      <numberOfRetries></numberOfRetries>
      <currentErrorState></currentErrorState>
      <isRetried></isRetried>
    </toDoRetry>
  </schema>
```

Sample ASO Customer Inbound Message

Using the below example, you can do the following:

- Create the parent customer and bill groups for the self-funded health care business
- Create the accounts for the bill groups
- Create the self-funded policies for the bill groups

Parent Customer	Bill Group	Account	Policy
UK OIL AND GAS CORP	UK OIL AND GAS ACRE	Standard	Active Employee Health Care Policy
		Retention	Retiree Employee Health Care Policy
	UK OIL AND GAS COBRA	Standard	Active COBRA Employee Health Care Policy
		Retention	Retiree COBRA Employee Health Care Policy

```
<schema>
  <bo>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage</bo>
  <characteristics>
    <inboundMessageCharacteristic>
      <adhocCharacteristicValue></adhocCharacteristicValue>
      <characteristicType>C1-EXTBTCT</characteristicType>
      <effectiveDate>2019-01-01</effectiveDate>
      <characteristicValue>DATAEXT4</characteristicValue>
      <characteristicValueForeignKey1></characteristicValueForeignKey1>
      <characteristicValueFK2></characteristicValueFK2>
      <characteristicValueFK3></characteristicValueFK3>
      <characteristicValueFk4></characteristicValueFk4>
      <characteristicValueFK5></characteristicValueFK5>
    </inboundMessageCharacteristic>
  </characteristics>
  <customerStructureMessage>
    <headerData>
      <messageType>C1-ASO-CUSTOMER-INB-MSG-TYPE</messageType>
      <sourceSystem>SMALLPRIME</sourceSystem>
      <externalTransactionId>675380</externalTransactionId>
      <externalBatchId>898663</externalBatchId>
      <externalSourceId>656565</externalSourceId>
    </headerData>
    <parentCustomerData>
      <parentCustomerName>UK OIL AND GAS CORP</parentCustomerName>
      <division>HC</division>
      <identifiers>
        <idType>EIN</idType>
```

```

        <idValue>98-7654325</idValue>
        <isPrimary>Y</isPrimary>
    </identifiers>
    <address>
        <addressEffDate>2019-01-01</addressEffDate>
        <addressType>MAIN</addressType>
        <mailingName>UK OIL AND GAS CORP</mailingName>
        <address1>West Park</address1>
        <address2>West Street</address2>
        <address3>River Side</address3>
        <attentionName></attentionName>
        <city>Belford</city>
        <state>Northumberland</state>
        <zip>NE707DT</zip>
        <country>UK</country>
    </address>
    <email>ukoandg@example.com</email>
    <phones>
        <phoneType>BUSN</phoneType>
        <phoneValue>01668-255-255</phoneValue>
    </phones>
    <relatedPersons>
        <idType></idType>
        <idValue></idValue>
        <personRelationshipType></personRelationshipType>
        <startDate></startDate>
        <endDate></endDate>
        <financialRelationshipSw></financialRelationshipSw>
    </relatedPersons>
    <characteristics>
        <characteristicsList>
            <characteristicType>PER_CAT</characteristicType>
            <characteristicValue>EMPOLYER</characteristicValue>
            <effectiveDate>2019-01-01</effectiveDate>
        </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
    <billGroupData>
        <seqNo>1</seqNo>
        <billGroupName>UK OIL AND GAS ACRE</billGroupName>
        <division>HC</division>
        <startDate>2019-01-01</startDate>
        <endDate>2019-12-31</endDate>
        <financialRelationshipSw>false</financialRelationshipSw>
        <identifiers>
            <idType>EIN</idType>
            <idValue>98-7654326</idValue>
            <isPrimary>Y</isPrimary>
        </identifiers>
        <address>
            <addressEffDate>2019-01-01</addressEffDate>
            <addressType>MAIN</addressType>
            <mailingName>UK OIL AND GAS ACTIVE</mailingName>
            <address1>High Park</address1>
            <address2>High Street</address2>
            <address3>Lake Side</address3>
            <attentionName></attentionName>
            <city>Winchester</city>
            <state>Hampshire</state>
            <zip>SO206HR</zip>
            <country>UK</country>
        </address>
        <email>ukoandga@example.com</email>
        <phones>
            <phoneType>BUSN</phoneType>

```

```

        <phoneValue>01962-556-0122</phoneValue>
    </phones>
    <characteristics>
        <characteristicsList>
            <characteristicType>PER_CAT</characteristicType>
            <characteristicValue>OTHER</characteristicValue>
            <effectiveDate>2019-01-01</effectiveDate>
        </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
    <accountData>
        <accountType>Standard</accountType>
        <customerClass>HC</customerClass>
        <billCycle>BK01</billCycle>
        <division>HC</division>
        <billRouteType>POSTAL</billRouteType>
        <identifiers>
            <idType>ACCT_NM</idType>
            <idValue>Standard Account</idValue>
            <isPrimary>true</isPrimary>
        </identifiers>
        <billAddressSource>PER</billAddressSource>
        <address>
            <addressEffDate>2019-01-01</addressEffDate>
            <addressType></addressType>
            <address1></address1>
            <address2></address2>
            <address3></address3>
            <attentionName></attentionName>
            <city></city>
            <state></state>
            <zip></zip>
            <country></country>
        </address>
        <autoPayDetails>
            <priority></priority>
            <startDate></startDate>
            <endDate></endDate>
            <percentage></percentage>
            <autoPayMethod></autoPayMethod>
            <autoPayRouteType></autoPayRouteType>
            <autoPaySourceCode></autoPaySourceCode>
            <accountNumber></accountNumber>
            <expiryMonth></expiryMonth>
            <expiryYear></expiryYear>
            <name></name>
            <maxWithdrawalAmount></maxWithdrawalAmount>
            <comments></comments>
        </autoPayDetails>
        <characteristics>
            <characteristicsList>
                <characteristicType></characteristicType>
                <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
                <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
            </characteristicsList>
        </characteristics>
    </accountData>
    <accountData>
        <accountType>Retention</accountType>
        <customerClass>HC</customerClass>
        <billCycle>BK02</billCycle>
        <division>HC</division>
        <billRouteType>POSTAL</billRouteType>
        <identifiers>
            <idType>ACCT_NM</idType>

```



```

        <idValue>Retention Account</idValue>
        <isPrimary>true</isPrimary>
    </identifiers>
    <billAddressSource>ACOV</billAddressSource>
    <address>
        <addressEffDate>2019-01-01</addressEffDate>
        <addressType>OVRD</addressType>
        <address1>Central Park</address1>
        <address2>Central Park Street</address2>
        <address3>Near Street Bank</address3>
        <attentionName></attentionName>
        <city>Stamford</city>
        <state>Lincolnshire</state>
        <zip>06903</zip>
        <country>UK</country>
    </address>
    <autoPayDetails>
        <priority></priority>
        <startDate></startDate>
        <endDate></endDate>
        <percentage></percentage>
        <autoPayMethod></autoPayMethod>
        <autoPayRouteType></autoPayRouteType>
        <autoPaySourceCode></autoPaySourceCode>
        <accountNumber></accountNumber>
        <expiryMonth></expiryMonth>
        <expiryYear></expiryYear>
        <name></name>
        <maxWithdrawalAmount></maxWithdrawalAmount>
        <comments></comments>
    </autoPayDetails>
    <characteristics>
        <characteristicsList>
            <characteristicType></characteristicType>
            <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
            <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
        </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
</accountData>
<policyData>
    <policyNumber>AP235100</policyNumber>
    <sourceSystem>SMALLPRIME</sourceSystem>
    <startDate>2019-01-01</startDate>
    <endDate>2019-12-31</endDate>
    <policyDescription>Active Employee Health Care Policy</
policyDescription>
    <runOutEndDate>2020-03-31</runOutEndDate>
    <runOutAdminOption>NROA</runOutAdminOption>
    <policyPersons>
        <idType></idType>
        <idValue></idValue>
        <startDate></startDate>
        <endDate></endDate>
        <policyPerRole></policyPerRole>
    </policyPersons>
    <characteristics>
        <characteristicsList>
            <characteristicType></characteristicType>
            <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
            <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
        </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
</policyData>
<policyData>

```

```

    <policyNumber>AP235101</policyNumber>
    <sourceSystem>SMALLPRIME</sourceSystem>
    <startDate>2019-01-01</startDate>
    <endDate>2019-12-31</endDate>
    <policyDescription>Retiree Employee Health Care Policy</
policyDescription>
    <runOutEndDate>2020-03-31</runOutEndDate>
    <runOutAdminOption>PERC</runOutAdminOption>
    <policyPersons>
      <idType></idType>
      <idValue></idValue>
      <startDate></startDate>
      <endDate></endDate>
      <policyPerRole></policyPerRole>
    </policyPersons>
    <characteristics>
      <characteristicsList>
        <characteristicType></characteristicType>
        <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
        <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
      </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
  </policyData>
</billGroupData>
<billGroupData>
  <seqNo>2</seqNo>
  <billGroupName>UK OIL AND GAS COBRA</billGroupName>
  <division>HC</division>
  <startDate>2019-01-01</startDate>
  <endDate>2019-12-31</endDate>
  <financialRelationshipSw>>false</financialRelationshipSw>
  <identifiers>
    <idType>EIN</idType>
    <idValue>98-765-4320</idValue>
    <isPrimary>Y</isPrimary>
  </identifiers>
  <address>
    <addressEffDate>2019-01-01</addressEffDate>
    <addressType>MAIN</addressType>
    <mailingName>UK OIL AND GAS COBRA</mailingName>
    <address1>City Park</address1>
    <address2>City Street</address2>
    <address3>River Side</address3>
    <attentionName></attentionName>
    <city>Oakham</city>
    <state>Rutland</state>
    <zip>01005</zip>
    <country>UK</country>
  </address>
  <email>ukoandgc@example.com</email>
  <phones>
    <phoneType>BUSN</phoneType>
    <phoneValue>01572-556-012</phoneValue>
  </phones>
  <characteristics>
    <characteristicsList>
      <characteristicType>PER_CAT</characteristicType>
      <characteristicValue>OTHER</characteristicValue>
      <effectiveDate>2019-01-01</effectiveDate>
    </characteristicsList>
  </characteristics>
  <accountData>
    <accountType>Standard</accountType>
    <customerClass>HC</customerClass>
  </accountData>
</billGroupData>

```

```

<billCycle>BK01</billCycle>
<division>HC</division>
<billRouteType>POSTAL</billRouteType>
<identifiers>
  <idType>ACCT_NM</idType>
  <idValue>Standard Account</idValue>
  <isPrimary>true</isPrimary>
</identifiers>
<billAddressSource>PER</billAddressSource>
<address>
  <addressEffDate>2019-01-01</addressEffDate>
  <addressType></addressType>
  <address1></address1>
  <address2></address2>
  <address3></address3>
  <attentionName></attentionName>
  <city></city>
  <state></state>
  <zip></zip>
  <country></country>
</address>
<autoPayDetails>
  <priority></priority>
  <startDate></startDate>
  <endDate></endDate>
  <percentage></percentage>
  <autoPayMethod></autoPayMethod>
  <autoPayRouteType></autoPayRouteType>
  <autoPaySourceCode></autoPaySourceCode>
  <accountNumber></accountNumber>
  <expiryMonth></expiryMonth>
  <expiryYear></expiryYear>
  <name></name>
  <maxWithdrawalAmount></maxWithdrawalAmount>
  <comments></comments>
</autoPayDetails>
<characteristics>
  <characteristicsList>
    <characteristicType></characteristicType>
    <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
    <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
  </characteristicsList>
</characteristics>
</accountData>
<accountData>
  <accountType>Retention</accountType>
  <customerClass>HC</customerClass>
  <billCycle>BK02</billCycle>
  <division>HC</division>
  <billRouteType>POSTAL</billRouteType>
  <identifiers>
    <idType>ACCT_NM</idType>
    <idValue>Retention Account</idValue>
    <isPrimary>true</isPrimary>
  </identifiers>
  <billAddressSource>ACOV</billAddressSource>
  <address>
    <addressEffDate>2019-01-01</addressEffDate>
    <addressType>OVRD</addressType>
    <address1>Corporate Park</address1>
    <address2>Central Avenue</address2>
    <address3>Near Federal Bank</address3>
    <attentionName></attentionName>
    <city>Dartmouth</city>

```

```

        <state>Devon</state>
        <zip>02714</zip>
        <country>UK</country>
    </address>
    <autoPayDetails>
        <priority></priority>
        <startDate></startDate>
        <endDate></endDate>
        <percentage></percentage>
        <autoPayMethod></autoPayMethod>
        <autoPayRouteType></autoPayRouteType>
        <autoPaySourceCode></autoPaySourceCode>
        <accountNumber></accountNumber>
        <expiryMonth></expiryMonth>
        <expiryYear></expiryYear>
        <name></name>
        <maxWithdrawalAmount></maxWithdrawalAmount>
        <comments></comments>
    </autoPayDetails>
    <characteristics>
        <characteristicsList>
            <characteristicType></characteristicType>
            <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
            <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
        </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
</accountData>
<policyData>
    <policyNumber>AP235102</policyNumber>
    <sourceSystem>SMALLPRIME</sourceSystem>
    <startDate>2019-01-01</startDate>
    <endDate>2019-12-31</endDate>
    <policyDescription>Active COBRA Employee Health Care
Policy</policyDescription>
    <runOutEndDate>2020-03-31</runOutEndDate>
    <runOutAdminOption>NROA</runOutAdminOption>
    <policyPersons>
        <idType></idType>
        <idValue></idValue>
        <startDate></startDate>
        <endDate></endDate>
        <policyPerRole></policyPerRole>
    </policyPersons>
    <characteristics>
        <characteristicsList>
            <characteristicType></characteristicType>
            <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
            <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
        </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
</policyData>
<policyData>
    <policyNumber>AP235103</policyNumber>
    <sourceSystem>SMALLPRIME</sourceSystem>
    <startDate>2019-01-01</startDate>
    <endDate>2019-12-31</endDate>
    <policyDescription>Retiree COBRA Employee Health Care
Policy</policyDescription>
    <runOutEndDate>2020-03-31</runOutEndDate>
    <runOutAdminOption>PERC</runOutAdminOption>
    <policyPersons>
        <idType></idType>
        <idValue></idValue>
        <startDate></startDate>

```

```

        <endDate></endDate>
        <policyPerRole></policyPerRole>
    </policyPersons>
    <characteristics>
        <characteristicsList>
            <characteristicType></characteristicType>
            <characteristicValue></characteristicValue>
            <effectiveDate></effectiveDate>
        </characteristicsList>
    </characteristics>
    </policyData>
</billGroupData>
</parentCustomerData>
</customerStructureMessage>
</schema>

```

## Inbound Message Type

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define an inbound message type using which you can create an inbound message through an inbound web service. The following table describes the significance of the respective inbound message type:

Inbound Message Type	Helps the system to determine...
Customer Inbound Message Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Inbound Message Business Object</b> - The business object using which the inbound message should be created in the system.</li> <li>• <b>Person Business Object</b> - The business object using which a person should be created when the customer inbound message is processed.</li> <li>• <b>Account Business Object</b> - The business object using which an account should be created when the customer inbound message is processed.</li> <li>• <b>Hold Request Business Object</b> - The business object using which the hold request should be created when the <b>Invoice Hold Reason</b> characteristic is defined for an account in the customer inbound message.</li> <li>• <b>Status on Policy Termination</b> - The status to which the policy should be transitioned when the policy termination request is processed through the customer inbound message.</li> <li>• <b>Status on Policy Reinstatement</b> - The status to which the policy should be transitioned when the policy reinstatement request is processed through the customer inbound message.</li> <li>• <b>Status on Policy Renewal</b> - The status to which the policy should be transitioned when the policy renewal request is processed through the customer inbound message.</li> </ul>
Membership Inbound Message Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Inbound Message Business Object</b> - The business object using which the inbound message should be created in the system.</li> </ul>




Inbound Message Type	Helps the system to determine...
ASO Customer Inbound Message Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Inbound Message Business Object</b> - The business object using which the inbound message should be created in the system.</li> <li>• <b>Person Business Object</b> - The business object using which a person should be created when the ASO customer inbound message is processed.</li> <li>• <b>Account Business Object</b> - The business object using which an account should be created when the ASO customer inbound message is processed.</li> <li>• <b>Policy Type</b> - The policy type using which a policy should be created when the ASO customer inbound message is processed.</li> <li>• <b>Policy Plan Business Object</b> - The business object using which a policy plan should be created when the ASO customer inbound message is processed.</li> </ul>


The **Inbound Message Type** screen allows you to define, edit, copy, and delete an inbound message type. It contains the following zones:

- [Inbound Message Type List](#) on page 1610
- [Inbound Message Type](#) on page 1611

## Inbound Message Type List

The **Inbound Message Type List** zone lists the inbound message types that are already defined in the system. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Inbound Message Type	Displays the inbound message type.
Description	Displays the description of the inbound message type.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Inbound Message Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the inbound message type.
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Inbound Message Type</b> screen appears where you can define a new inbound message type using an existing inbound message type.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the inbound message type.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete an inbound message type only when an inbound message is not created using the inbound message type.

On clicking the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to an inbound message type, the **Inbound Message Type** zone appears with the details of the respective inbound message type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit an inbound message type	<a href="#">Editing an Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1620
How to copy an inbound message type	<a href="#">Copying an Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1623
How to delete an inbound message type	<a href="#">Deleting an Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1627
How to view the details of an inbound message type	<a href="#">Viewing the Inbound Message Type Details</a> on page 1614

## Inbound Message Type

The **Inbound Message Type** zone displays the details of the inbound message type. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic information about the inbound message type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Inbound Message Type	Displays the inbound message type.
Person Business Object	<p>Indicates the business object using which a person is created when the customer or ASO customer inbound message is processed. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.</p> <p>This field appears only when you are viewing the details of an inbound message type which is created using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> or <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.</p>
Account Business Object	<p>Indicates the business object using which an account is created when the customer or ASO customer inbound message is processed. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.</p> <p>This field appears only when you are viewing the details of an inbound message type which is created using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> or <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.</p>
Policy Type	<p>Indicates the policy type using which a policy is created when the ASO customer inbound message is processed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective policy type.</p> <p>This field appears only when you are viewing the details of an inbound message type which is created using the <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.</p>

Field Name	Field Description
Policy Plan Business Object	<p>Indicates the business object using which a policy plan is created when the ASO customer inbound message is processed. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.</p> <p>This field appears only when you are viewing the details of an inbound message type which is created using the <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.</p>
Hold Request Business Object	<p>Indicates the business object using which a hold request is created for an account when the customer inbound message is processed. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.</p> <p>This field appears only when you are viewing the details of an inbound message type which is created using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p>
Status on Policy Termination	<p>Indicates the status to which the policy is transitioned when the policy termination request is processed through the customer inbound message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are viewing the details of an inbound message type which is created using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p>
Status on Policy Reinstatement	<p>Indicates the status to which the policy is transitioned when the policy reinstatement request is processed through the customer inbound message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are viewing the details of an inbound message type which is created using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p>
Status on Policy Renewal	<p>Indicates the status to which the policy is transitioned when the policy renewal request is processed through the customer inbound message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are viewing the details of an inbound message type which is created using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p>



Field Name	Field Description
Inbound Message Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the inbound message is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Description	Displays the description of the inbound message type.
Status	Indicates the status of the inbound message type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the inbound message type.

- **Characteristics** – Lists the characteristics defined for the inbound message type. It contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the inbound message type.
Delete	Used to delete the inbound message type.  <b>Note:</b> You can delete an inbound message type only when an inbound message is not created using the inbound message type.
Duplicate	Used to create a new inbound message type using an existing inbound message type.

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the inbound message type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

By default, the **Inbound Message Type** zone does not appear in the **Inbound Message Type** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to an inbound message type in the **Inbound Message Type List** zone.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit an inbound message type	<a href="#">Editing an Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1620
How to copy an inbound message type	<a href="#">Copying an Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1623
How to delete an inbound message type	<a href="#">Deleting an Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1627
How to view the details of an inbound message type	<a href="#">Viewing the Inbound Message Type Details</a> on page 1614

## Viewing the Inbound Message Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of an inbound message type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **I** and then click **Inbound Message Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Inbound Message Type** sub-menu.  
The **Inbound Message Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Inbound Message Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the inbound message type whose details you want to view.  
The **Inbound Message Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the inbound message type in the **Inbound Message Type** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Inbound Message Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1609
<b>Inbound Message Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type List</a> on page 1610
<b>Inbound Message Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1611

## Defining an Inbound Message Type

### Prerequisites

The following table lists the prerequisites for defining various inbound message types:

If you want to define a..	Then, you should have...
Customer Inbound Message Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Customer inbound message type business objects defined in the application</li> <li>• Customer inbound message business objects defined in the application</li> <li>• Person, account, and hold request business objects defined in the application</li> <li>• Status defined for the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object to which a policy must be transitioned on policy termination</li> <li>• Status defined for the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object to which a policy must be transitioned on policy renewal</li> <li>• Status defined for the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object to which a policy must be transitioned on policy reinstatement</li> </ul>
Membership Inbound Message Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Membership inbound message type business objects defined in the application</li> <li>• Membership inbound message business objects defined in the application</li> </ul>
ASO Customer Inbound Message Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ASO customer inbound message type business objects defined in the application</li> <li>• ASO customer inbound message business objects defined in the application</li> <li>• Person, account, and policy plan business objects defined in the application</li> <li>• Policy types defined in the application</li> </ul>

### **Procedure**

To define an inbound message type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **I** and then click **Inbound Message Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Inbound Message Type** sub-menu.  
The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)								
Inbound Message Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the inbound message type. The following table lists the business objects using which you can create the respective inbound message type:	Yes								
	<table><tr><th>Inbound Message Type</th><th>Business Object</th></tr><tr><td>Customer Inbound Message Type</td><td>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</td></tr><tr><td>Membership Inbound Message Type</td><td>C1-MemberInboundMessageType</td></tr><tr><td>ASO Customer Inbound Message Type</td><td>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</td></tr></table>		Inbound Message Type	Business Object	Customer Inbound Message Type	C1-CustomerInboundMessageType	Membership Inbound Message Type	C1-MemberInboundMessageType	ASO Customer Inbound Message Type	C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType
	Inbound Message Type		Business Object							
	Customer Inbound Message Type		C1-CustomerInboundMessageType							
	Membership Inbound Message Type		C1-MemberInboundMessageType							
ASO Customer Inbound Message Type	C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType									

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Inbound Message Type** screen.

- 4. Select the **ASO Customer Inbound Message Type**, **Customer Inbound Message Type**, or **Membership Inbound Message Type** business object to create the respective inbound message type.
- 5. Click **OK**.

The **Inbound Message Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the inbound message type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the inbound message type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Inbound Message Type	Used to specify the inbound message type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which you are defining the inbound message type.	Not applicable
Person Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create a person when the customer or ASO customer inbound message is processed. <div><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> or <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.</div>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create an account when the customer or ASO customer inbound message is processed.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> or <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.	
Policy Type	Used to indicate the policy type using which you want to create a policy when the ASO customer inbound message is processed.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.	
Policy Plan Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create a policy plan when the ASO customer inbound message is processed.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.	
Hold Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create a hold request for an account when the customer inbound message is processed.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.	
Status on Policy Termination	Used to indicate the status to which the policy must be transitioned when the policy termination request is processed through the customer inbound message.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.  You must specify a status which is already defined in the lifecycle of the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status on Policy Reinstatement	<p>Used to indicate the status to which the policy must be transitioned when the policy reinstatement request is processed through the customer inbound message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p> <p>You must specify a status which is already defined in the lifecycle of the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object.</p>	Yes
Status on Policy Renewal	<p>Used to indicate the status to which the policy must be transitioned when the policy renewal request is processed through the customer inbound message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p> <p>You must specify a status which is already defined in the lifecycle of the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object.</p>	Yes
Inbound Message Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the respective inbound message.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the inbound message type.	Yes
Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the inbound message type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the inbound message type.	No

6. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
7. Define characteristics for the inbound message type, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

The inbound message type is defined.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Inbound Message Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1609
How to define a characteristic for an inbound message type	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for an Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1619

## Defining a Characteristic for an Inbound Message Type

### Prerequisites

To define a characteristic for an inbound message type, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Inbound Message Type**)


### Procedure


To define a characteristic for an inbound message type:

1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying an inbound message type.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Inbound Message Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required while defining a characteristic for the inbound message type.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required while defining a characteristic for the inbound message type.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the inbound message type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the inbound message type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an inbound message type	<a href="#">Defining an Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1614

For more information on...	See...
How to edit an inbound message type	<a href="#">Editing an Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1620
How to copy an inbound message type	<a href="#">Copying an Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1623

## Editing an Inbound Message Type


### Prerequisites

The following table lists the prerequisites for editing various inbound message types:

If you want to define a..	Then, you should have...
Customer Inbound Message Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Customer inbound message business objects defined in the application</li> <li>Person, account, and hold request business objects defined in the application</li> <li>Status defined for the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object to which a policy must be transitioned on policy termination</li> <li>Status defined for the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object to which a policy must be transitioned on policy renewal</li> <li>Status defined for the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object to which a policy must be transitioned on policy reinstatement</li> </ul>
Membership Inbound Message Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Membership inbound message business objects defined in the application</li> </ul>
ASO Customer Inbound Message Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ASO customer inbound message business objects defined in the application</li> <li>Person, account, and policy plan business objects defined in the application</li> <li>Policy types defined in the application</li> </ul>

### Procedure

To edit an inbound message type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **I** and then click **Inbound Message Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Inbound Message Type** sub-menu.  
The **Inbound Message Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Inbound Message Type List** zone, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the Inbound message type whose details you want to edit.

The **Inbound Message Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the inbound message type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the inbound message type.



The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Inbound Message Type	Displays the inbound message type.	Not applicable
Business Object	Indicates the business object which is used while defining the inbound message type.	Not applicable
Person Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create a person when the customer or ASO customer inbound message is processed.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> or <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.	Yes
Account Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create an account when the customer or ASO customer inbound message is processed.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> or <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.	Yes
Policy Type	Used to indicate the policy type using which you want to create a policy when the ASO customer inbound message is processed.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.	Yes
Policy Plan Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create a policy plan when the ASO customer inbound message is processed.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.	Yes
Hold Request Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create a hold request for an account when the customer inbound message is processed.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status on Policy Termination	<p>Used to indicate the status to which the policy must be transitioned when the policy termination request is processed through the customer inbound message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p> <p>You must specify a status which is already defined in the lifecycle of the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object.</p>	Yes
Status on Policy Reinstatement	<p>Used to indicate the status to which the policy must be transitioned when the policy reinstatement request is processed through the customer inbound message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p> <p>You must specify a status which is already defined in the lifecycle of the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object.</p>	Yes
Status on Policy Renewal	<p>Used to indicate the status to which the policy must be transitioned when the policy renewal request is processed through the customer inbound message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p> <p>You must specify a status which is already defined in the lifecycle of the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object.</p>	Yes
Inbound Message Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the respective inbound message.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the inbound message type.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the status of the inbound message type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the inbound message type.	No

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of an inbound message type by clicking the **Edit** button in the **Inbound Message Type** zone.

5. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the inbound message type, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the inbound message type are saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Inbound Message Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1609
<b>Inbound Message Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type List</a> on page 1610
<b>Inbound Message Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1611
How to define a characteristic for an inbound message type	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for an Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1619

## **Copying an Inbound Message Type**

Instead of creating an inbound message type from scratch, you can create a new inbound message type using an existing inbound message type. This is possible through copying an inbound message type. On copying an inbound message type, the details including the characteristics are copied to the new inbound message type. You can then edit the details, if required.


#### **Prerequisites**

The following table lists the prerequisites for copying various inbound message types:

If you want to define a..	Then, you should have...
Customer Inbound Message Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Customer inbound message type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application</li> <li>• Customer inbound message business objects defined in the application</li> <li>• Person, account, and hold request business objects defined in the application</li> <li>• Status defined for the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object to which a policy must be transitioned on policy termination</li> <li>• Status defined for the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object to which a policy must be transitioned on policy renewal</li> <li>• Status defined for the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object to which a policy must be transitioned on policy reinstatement</li> </ul>
Membership Inbound Message Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Membership inbound message type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application</li> <li>• Membership inbound message business objects defined in the application</li> </ul>
ASO Customer Inbound Message Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ASO customer inbound message type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application</li> <li>• ASO customer inbound message business objects defined in the application</li> <li>• Person, account, and policy plan business objects defined in the application</li> <li>• Policy types defined in the application</li> </ul>

### **Procedure**

To copy an inbound message type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **I** and then click **Inbound Message Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Inbound Message Type** sub-menu.  
The **Inbound Message Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Inbound Message Type List** zone, click the **Duplicate** () icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the inbound message type whose copy you want to create.  
The **Inbound Message Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:
  - **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the inbound message type.
  - **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the inbound message type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Inbound Message Type	Used to specify the inbound message type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the business object which is used while defining the inbound message type.	Not applicable
Person Business Object	<p>Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create a person when the customer or ASO customer inbound message is processed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> or <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.</p>	Yes
Account Business Object	<p>Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create an account when the customer or ASO customer inbound message is processed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> or <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.</p>	Yes
Policy Type	<p>Used to indicate the policy type using which you want to create a policy when the ASO customer inbound message is processed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.</p>	Yes
Policy Plan Business Object	<p>Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create a policy plan when the ASO customer inbound message is processed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-ASOCustomerInboundMsgType</b> business object.</p>	Yes
Hold Request Business Object	<p>Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create a hold request for an account when the customer inbound message is processed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status on Policy Termination	<p>Used to indicate the status to which the policy must be transitioned when the policy termination request is processed through the customer inbound message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p> <p>You must specify a status which is already defined in the lifecycle of the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object.</p>	Yes
Status on Policy Reinstatement	<p>Used to indicate the status to which the policy must be transitioned when the policy reinstatement request is processed through the customer inbound message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p> <p>You must specify a status which is already defined in the lifecycle of the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object.</p>	Yes
Status on Policy Renewal	<p>Used to indicate the status to which the policy must be transitioned when the policy renewal request is processed through the customer inbound message.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when you are defining an inbound message type using the <b>C1-CustomerInboundMessageType</b> business object.</p> <p>You must specify a status which is already defined in the lifecycle of the <b>C1-POLICY</b> business object.</p>	Yes
Inbound Message Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the respective inbound message.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the inbound message type.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the status of the inbound message type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the inbound message type.	No

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can copy an inbound message type by clicking the **Duplicate** button in the **Inbound Message Type** zone.

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the inbound message type, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The new inbound message type is defined.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Inbound Message Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1609
<b>Inbound Message Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type List</a> on page 1610
<b>Inbound Message Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1611
How to define a characteristic for an inbound message type	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for an Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1619

## Deleting an Inbound Message Type

### Procedure

To delete an inbound message type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **I** and then click **Inbound Message Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Inbound Message Type** sub-menu.  
The **Inbound Message Type** screen appears.
- In the **Inbound Message Type List** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the Inbound message type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the inbound message type.

**Note:** You can delete an inbound message type only when an inbound message is not created using the inbound message type.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete an inbound message type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Inbound Message Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.

The inbound message type is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Inbound Message Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1609
<b>Inbound Message Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type List</a> on page 1610
<b>Inbound Message Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message Type</a> on page 1611

**Inbound Message (Used for Searching)**

The **Inbound Message** screen allows you to search for an inbound message using various search criteria. It contains the following zone:

- [Search Inbound Message](#) on page 1628

Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Inbound Message \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1634

**Search Inbound Message**

The **Search Inbound Message** zone allows you to search for an inbound message using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for an inbound message using the inbound message or person details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Message Details</li><li>• Person Details</li></ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Message Details</b> option is selected.	
Inbound Message ID	Used to search a particular inbound message.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Message Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	<p>Used to search inbound messages with a particular status. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Voided</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Message Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Source System	<p>Used to search inbound messages which are received from a particular external system.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Message Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Created From	<p>Used to search inbound messages which are created from a particular date onwards.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Message Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
External Source ID	<p>Used to search inbound messages which are received from a particular external source system.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Message Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Created To	<p>Used to search inbound messages which are created till a particular date.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Message Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
External Transaction ID	<p>Used to search the inbound message which was a result of a particular transaction in the external source system.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Message Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
User ID	<p>Used to search inbound messages which are created by a particular user.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Message Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
External Batch ID	Used to search inbound messages which are created through a particular batch job.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Message Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Inbound Message Type	Used to search inbound messages which are created using a particular inbound message type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Message Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Name	Used to search inbound messages through which a particular person and its related entities are created or updated in the system.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Person Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Identifier Type	Used to indicate the person identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Person Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you specify the person identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the person identifier type.
Person Identifier	Used to search inbound messages through which a particular person and its related entities are created or updated in the system.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Person Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you specify the person identifier type as a search criteria, you have to specify the person identifier.

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an inbound message.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Inbound Message Information	Displays information about the inbound message.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Inbound Message</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective inbound message.
Status	Indicates the status of the inbound message. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Processed</li> <li>• Rejected</li> <li>• Voided</li> </ul>

Column Name	Column Description
Inbound Message Type	Indicates the inbound message type using which the inbound message is created.
Source System	Indicates the source system from where the inbound message is received.
External Transaction ID	Indicates the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the inbound message.
External Source ID	Displays the external source system ID.
External Batch ID	Indicates the batch job in the external source system through which the inbound message is created.
Person Information	Indicates the person whose record is created or updated in the system through the inbound message. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.
Created By	Indicates the user who has created the inbound message.  <b>Note:</b> This column appears only when the <b>Message Details</b> option is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.
Creation Date	Displays the date when the inbound message is created in the system.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Search Results** section. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an inbound message	<a href="#">Searching for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1631
How to view the details of an inbound message	<a href="#">Viewing the Inbound Message Details</a> on page 1633

## Searching for an Inbound Message

### Prerequisites

To search for an inbound message, you should have:

- Inbound message types defined in the application
- Values defined for the **C1-SourceSystemLookup** extendable lookup
- Person identifier types defined in the application

### Procedure

To search for an inbound message:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Integration** and then click **Inbound Message**.  
The **Inbound Message** screen appears.

- Enter the search criteria in the **Search Inbound Message** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

- Click **Search**.

A list of inbound messages that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1628
<b>Search Inbound Message</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Inbound Message</a> on page 1628

## **Creating an Inbound Message**

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to create the following inbound messages by calling the respective inbound web service:

Inbound Message	Inbound Web Service
<a href="#">Customer Inbound Message</a> on page 1504	<a href="#">C1-CustomerStructureInboundMessage</a> on page 1632
<a href="#">Membership Inbound Message</a> on page 1542	<a href="#">C1-MembershipInboundMessage</a> on page 1633
<a href="#">ASO Customer Inbound Message</a> on page 1572	<a href="#">C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage</a> on page 1633

You cannot create the above inbound messages from the user interface. However, you can define, edit, and remove a characteristic from the above inbound messages from the user interface. You can delete and submit the above inbound messages for validation and processing from the user interface and through a batch process.

### **C1-CustomerStructureInboundMessage**

The **C1-CustomerStructureInboundMessage** inbound web service enables you to create or update a person, account, contract, policy, policy plan, packaged savings, and billable charge for packaged savings. It also allows you to terminate, reinstate, or renew a policy. In addition, it allows you to hold an account for a given time period. However, only the bill generation process is kept on hold when the hold request is created for an account through a customer inbound message.

On calling the **C1-CustomerStructureInboundMessage** inbound web service, a customer inbound message is created in the **Pending** status. A customer inbound message goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. You can search for a customer inbound message through the **Inbound Message** screen.

Before calling the **C1-CustomerStructureInboundMessage** inbound web service, you need to ensure that the prerequisites are setup as mentioned in [Prerequisites](#) on page 1504.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1628
Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through User Interface	<a href="#">Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through User Interface</a> on page 1505
Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through a Batch Process	<a href="#">Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through a Batch Process</a> on page 1506

## C1-MembershipInboundMessage

The **C1-MembershipInboundMessage** inbound web service enables you to create or update a membership in a policy plan, add or remove dependents from a membership, create or update the main subscriber or dependent person, associate a contract with a membership, add membership premium for a coverage period, or create billable charges for membership premium.

On calling the **C1-MembershipInboundMessage** inbound web service, a membership inbound message is created in the **Pending** status. A membership inbound message goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. You can search for a membership inbound message through the **Inbound Message** screen.

Before calling the **C1-MembershipInboundMessage** inbound web service, you need to ensure that the prerequisites are setup as mentioned in [Prerequisites](#) on page 1542.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1628
Membership Inbound Message Status Transition through User Interface	<a href="#">Membership Inbound Message Status Transition through User Interface</a> on page 1543
Membership Inbound Message Status Transition through a Batch Process	<a href="#">Membership Inbound Message Status Transition through a Batch Process</a> on page 1544

## C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage

The **C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage** inbound web service enables you to create or update a parent customer and its bill groups. In addition, it allows you to create or update an account and self-funded policy for a bill group.

On calling the **C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage** inbound web service, an ASO customer inbound message is created in the **Pending** status. An ASO customer inbound message goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. You can search for an ASO customer inbound message through the **Inbound Message** screen.

Before calling the **C1-ASOCustomerInboundMessage** inbound web service, you need to ensure that the prerequisites are setup as mentioned in [Prerequisites](#) on page 1573

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1628
ASO Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through User Interface	<a href="#">ASO Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through User Interface</a> on page 1574
ASO Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through a Batch Process	<a href="#">ASO Customer Inbound Message Status Transition through a Batch Process</a> on page 1575

## Viewing the Inbound Message Details

### Procedure

To view the details of an inbound message:

1. Search for the inbound message in the **Inbound Message** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Inbound Message Information** column corresponding to the inbound message whose details you want to view.

The **Inbound Message** screen appears.

3. Ensure that the **Main** tab is selected.

4. View the details of the inbound message in the **Inbound Message** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an inbound message	<a href="#">Searching for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1631
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1634
<b>Inbound Message</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message</a> on page 1634

## Inbound Message (Used for Viewing)

Once an inbound message is created, the **Inbound Message** screen allows you to:

- View the details of the inbound message
- Edit the details of the inbound message
- Delete the inbound message
- Submit the inbound message for validation and processing
- Resubmit the inbound message for validation and processing on failure
- Void the inbound message
- View the content of the inbound message
- View the log of the inbound message
- Add a log entry for the inbound message

The **Inbound Message** screen contains the following tabs:

- [Inbound Message - Main](#) on page 1634
- [Inbound Message - Message](#) on page 1636
- [Inbound Message - Log](#) on page 1637

### Inbound Message - Main

The **Main** tab displays information about the inbound message. It contains the following zone:

- [Inbound Message](#) on page 1634

#### Inbound Message

The **Inbound Message** zone displays the details of the inbound message. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic information about the inbound message. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Inbound Message Information	Displays information about the inbound message.
Status	Indicates the status of the inbound message. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Pending</li><li>• Processed</li><li>• Rejected</li><li>• Voided</li></ul>

Field Name	Field Description
Inbound Message Type	Indicates the inbound message type using which the inbound message is created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Inbound Message Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective inbound message type.
Source System	Indicates the external source system from where the inbound message is received.
External Transaction ID	Indicates the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the inbound message.
External Batch ID	Indicates the external batch job through which the inbound message is created.
External Source ID	Displays the external source system ID.

- **Characteristics** – Lists the characteristics defined for the inbound message. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the inbound message.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to define, edit, or remove characteristics from the inbound message.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the inbound message is in the <b>Pending</b> or <b>Rejected</b> status.
Delete	Used to delete the inbound message.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the inbound message is in the <b>Pending</b> status.
Submit for Processing	Used to submit the inbound message for validation and processing.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit for Processing</b> button appears only when the inbound message is in the <b>Pending</b> status.
Retry	Used when you want to change the status of the inbound message from <b>Rejected</b> to <b>Pending</b> so that the inbound message can be considered once again for validation and processing.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Retry</b> button appears only when the inbound message is in the <b>Rejected</b> status.
Void	Used to cancel the inbound message.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Void</b> button appears only when the inbound message is in the <b>Rejected</b> status.

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the inbound message is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the status of the inbound message is updated.
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the inbound message is created.

## Inbound Message - Message

The **Message** tab displays the content of the inbound message in the XML format. It contains the following zone:

- [Inbound Message Content](#) on page 1636

### Inbound Message Content

The **Inbound Message Content** zone displays the content of the inbound message in the XML format. By default, each tag in the inbound message is expanded. You can collapse the tag whenever required.

For more information about the tags, refer to the respective XML format section:

Inbound Message	XML Format
Customer Inbound Message	<a href="#">Customer Inbound Message XML Format</a> on page 1519
Membership Inbound Message	<a href="#">Membership Inbound Message XML Format</a> on page 1555
ASO Customer Inbound Message	<a href="#">ASO Customer Inbound Message XML Format</a> on page 1579

Once the inbound message is validated and processed either from the user interface or through a batch process, the following tags appear at the bottom of the inbound message in the **Inbound Message Content** zone:

Tag Name	Tag Description
toDoRetry	Displays the information about the retry option used for the inbound message.
retryDateTime	Displays the date and time when the retry option is used to change the status of the inbound message from <b>Rejected</b> to <b>Pending</b> .
numberOfRetries	Indicates the number of times the retry option is used for the inbound message.
currentErrorState	Indicates the status to which the inbound message is transitioned when its validation or processing fails. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• REJECTED</li> </ul>
isRetried	Indicates whether the retry option is used to change the status of the inbound message. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true</li> <li>• false</li> </ul>

### Related Topics



For more information on...	See...
How to view the content of an inbound message	<a href="#">Viewing the Content of an Inbound Message</a> on page 1643

## Inbound Message - Log

The **Log** tab contains the following zone:

- [Inbound Message Log](#) on page 1637

### Inbound Message Log

The **Inbound Message Log** zone lists the complete trail of actions performed on the inbound message. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the inbound message.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the inbound message.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the inbound message.
Log Type	Indicates the type of the log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is created when the action is performed on the inbound message.
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the status of the inbound message is changed.
	<b>Note:</b> At present, no data appears in this column. The implementation team can build the custom logic to meet the business requirements.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the inbound message by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Inbound Message Log** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of an inbound message	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of an Inbound Message</a> on page 1643
How to add a log entry for an inbound message	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1644

## Editing an Inbound Message

### Procedure

To edit an inbound message:

1. Search for the inbound message in the **Inbound Message** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Inbound Message Information** column corresponding to the inbound message whose details you want to edit.

The **Inbound Message** screen appears.

3. Ensure that the **Main** tab is selected.
4. Click the **Edit** button in the **Inbound Message** zone.

The **Inbound Message** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays the basic information about the inbound message. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Inbound Message Information	Displays information about the inbound message.
Inbound Message Type	Indicates the inbound message type using which the inbound message is created.
Source System	Indicates the source system from where the inbound message is received.
External Transaction ID	Indicates the transaction in the external source system which resulted in the inbound message.
External Batch ID	Indicates the batch job in the external source system through which the inbound message is created.
External Source ID	Displays the external source system ID.

- **Characteristics** - Used to define, edit, or remove characteristics from the inbound message.

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the inbound message is in the **Pending** or **Rejected** status.

5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the inbound message, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the inbound message are saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an inbound message	<a href="#">Searching for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1631
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1634
<b>Inbound Message</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message</a> on page 1634
How to define a characteristic for an inbound message	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1638

## **Defining a Characteristic for an Inbound Message**

### **Prerequisites**

To define a characteristic for an inbound message, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Inbound Message**)


### **Procedure**


To define a characteristic for an inbound message:

1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are editing an inbound message.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the inbound message.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the inbound message.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Inbound Message</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the inbound message.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the inbound message.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the inbound message, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the inbound message, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the inbound message.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit an inbound message	<a href="#">Editing an Inbound Message</a> on page 1637

## Deleting an Inbound Message

There might be situations when incorrect inbound messages are received in the system. In such case, the system provides you with an ability to delete the inbound message when it is not yet validated or processed. Note that you can delete an inbound message only when the inbound message is in the **Pending** status.

### Procedure

To delete an inbound message:

- 1. Search for the inbound message in the **Inbound Message** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Inbound Message Information** column corresponding to the inbound message that you want to delete.

The **Inbound Message** screen appears.

- 3. Ensure that the **Main** tab is selected.
- 4. Click the **Delete** button in the **Inbound Message** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the inbound message.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the inbound message is in the **Pending** status.

- 5. Click **OK**.

The inbound message is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an inbound message	<a href="#">Searching for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1631
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1634
<b>Inbound Message</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message</a> on page 1634

**Processing an Inbound Message**

**Prerequisites**

The following table lists the prerequisites which you should setup before processing the respective inbound message:

Inbound Message	Refer to...
Customer Inbound Message	<a href="#">Prerequisites</a> on page 1504
Membership Inbound Message	<a href="#">Prerequisites</a> on page 1542
ASO Customer Inbound Message	<a href="#">Prerequisites</a> on page 1573

**Procedure**

To process an inbound message:

- 1. Search for the inbound message in the **Inbound Message** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Inbound Message Information** column corresponding to the inbound message that you want to submit for validation and processing.

The **Inbound Message** screen appears.

- 3. Ensure that the **Main** tab is selected.
- 4. Click the **Submit for Processing** button in the **Inbound Message** zone.

The status of the inbound message is changed to **Validation** and the algorithms attached to the **Validation** status are invoked in the specified sequence. If the validation is successful, the status of the inbound message is changed to **Processing** and the algorithms attached to the **Processing** status are invoked in the specified sequence. The following table lists how the system behaves when the respective inbound message is processed:

If the inbound message is a...	Then...
Customer inbound message	<p>Creates or updates a person, account, contract, policy, policy plan, packaged savings, and billable charge for packaged savings. If requested, it terminates, reinstates, or renews a policy. In addition, if requested, it holds an account for a given time period. However, only the bill generation process is kept on hold when the hold request is created for an account through a customer inbound message. Finally, status of the inbound message is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p>It creates a person and account using the person and account business objects, respectively, as specified in the inbound message type. It creates a policy using the policy type specified in the <b>C1-CINMSGPRC</b> algorithm. It creates a policy plan using the <b>Policy Plan BO (C1PPLNBO)</b> characteristic defined on the policy type.</p>
Membership inbound message	<p>Creates or updates a membership in a policy plan, adds or removes dependents from a membership, creates or updates the main subscriber or dependent person, associates a contract with a membership, adds membership premium for a coverage period, or creates billable charges for membership premium. Finally, the status of the inbound message is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p>It creates a membership using the <b>Membership BO (C1MEMBRO)</b> characteristic defined on the policy type. If the person who is the main subscriber or dependent in a membership does not exist, the system creates main subscriber or dependent person using the person business object specified in the inbound message type.</p>
ASO Customer Inbound Message	<p>Creates or updates a parent customer and its bill groups. In addition, it creates or updates an account and self-funded policy of a bill group. Finally, the status of the inbound message is changed to <b>Processed</b>.</p> <p>It creates a parent customer and bill group using the person business object specified in the inbound message type. It creates an account using the account business object specified in the inbound message type. It creates a self-funded policy using the policy type specified in the inbound message type.</p>

However, if the validation or processing fails due to any reason, the status of the inbound message is changed to **Rejected** and the algorithms attached to the **Rejected** status are invoked in the specified sequence. A To Do is created using the To Do type specified in the **C1-TDCRINMSG** algorithm and assigned to the users with the To Do role specified in the **C1-TDCRINMSG** algorithm.

**Note:** The **Submit for Processing** button appears only when the inbound message is in the **Pending** status.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an inbound message	<a href="#">Searching for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1631
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1634
<b>Inbound Message</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message</a> on page 1634

## Using the Retry Option for an Inbound Message

If the validation or processing fails due to any reason, the status of the inbound message is changed to **Rejected**. The system enables you to resubmit the inbound messages for validation and processing on failure. However, to resubmit the inbound message for validation and processing, you need to change the status of the inbound message from **Rejected** to **Pending**. This is possible through using the **Retry** option.

### Procedure

To use the retry option for an inbound message:

1. Search for the inbound message in the **Inbound Message** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Inbound Message Information** column corresponding to the inbound message for which you want to use the retry option.

The **Inbound Message** screen appears.

3. Ensure that the **Main** tab is selected.
4. Ensure that the To Dos created for the inbound message are in the **Complete** status.
5. Click the **Retry** button in the **Inbound Message** zone.

The status of the inbound message is changed to **Pending**.

**Note:** The **Retry** button appears only when the inbound message is in the **Rejected** status.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an inbound message	<a href="#">Searching for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1631
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1634
<b>Inbound Message</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message</a> on page 1634

## Voiding an Inbound Message

There might be situations when incorrect inbound messages are received in the system. In such case, the system provides you with an ability to void or cancel the inbound message after the validation or processing fails. Note that you can void or cancel an inbound message only when the inbound message is in the **Rejected** status.

### Procedure

To void an inbound message:

1. Search for the inbound message in the **Inbound Message** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Inbound Message Information** column corresponding to the inbound message that you want to void.

The **Inbound Message** screen appears.

3. Ensure that the **Main** tab is selected.
4. Click the **Void** button in the **Inbound Message** zone.

The status of the inbound message is changed to **Voided**.

**Note:** The **Void** button appears only when the inbound message is in the **Rejected** status.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an inbound message	<a href="#">Searching for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1631
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1634
<b>Inbound Message</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message</a> on page 1634

## Viewing the Content of an Inbound Message

### Procedure

To view the content of an inbound message:

1. Search for the inbound message in the **Inbound Message** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Inbound Message Information** column corresponding to the inbound message whose details you want to view.

The **Inbound Message** screen appears.

3. Click the **Message** tab.

The **Message** tab appears.

4. View the content of the inbound message in the XML format in the **Inbound Message Content** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an inbound message	<a href="#">Searching for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1631
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1634
<b>Inbound Message Content</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message Content</a> on page 1636

## Viewing the Log of an Inbound Message

### Procedure

To view the log of an inbound message:

1. Search for the inbound message in the **Inbound Message** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Inbound Message Information** column corresponding to the inbound message whose log you want to view.

The **Inbound Message** screen appears.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. View the complete trail of actions performed on the inbound message in the **Inbound Message Log** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an inbound message	<a href="#">Searching for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1631
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1634
<b>Inbound Message Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message Log</a> on page 1637

For more information on...	See...
How to add a log entry for an inbound message	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1644

## Adding a Log Entry for an Inbound Message

### Procedure

To add a log entry for an inbound message:

1. Search for the inbound message in the **Inbound Message** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Inbound Message Information** column corresponding to the inbound message for which you want to add a log entry.

The **Inbound Message** screen appears.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Inbound Message Log** zone.

The **Add Inbound Message Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Inbound Message Information	Displays information about the inbound message.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the inbound message.	Yes

5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.
6. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Inbound Message Log** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for an inbound message	<a href="#">Searching for an Inbound Message</a> on page 1631
<b>Inbound Message</b> screen	<a href="#">Inbound Message (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1634
<b>Inbound Message Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Inbound Message Log</a> on page 1637



---

# Chapter

# 25

---

## Policy-Membership Overview

---

### Topics:

- [Policy Status Transition](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-Policy](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-Membership](#)
- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Policy Type](#)
- [Policy Person Role](#)
- [Policy \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Policy \(Used for Viewing\)](#)
- [Membership](#)
- [Membership Information](#)

The policy is a contract between the insurer and the insured, known as the policy holder, which determines the claims which the insurer is legally required to pay. In exchange for an initial payment, known as the premium, the insurer promises to pay for loss caused by perils covered under the policy statement.

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to create policy. While creating a policy, you need to specify the policy type using which you want to create the policy. It is the policy type which helps the system to determine:

- Policy belongs to which group of customers.

Under policy, you will have multiple plans; one plan is associated with one product. So, once you create a policy, you can associate it with a plan represented by the membership entity. Each plan has a coverage period and corresponding to it, contract is created which is having a premium. Every policy has main subscriber (holder of the policy).

The membership person is billed with the billable charge (called as premium) which is linked to the membership as eligibility based premium or fees contract through a membership contract.

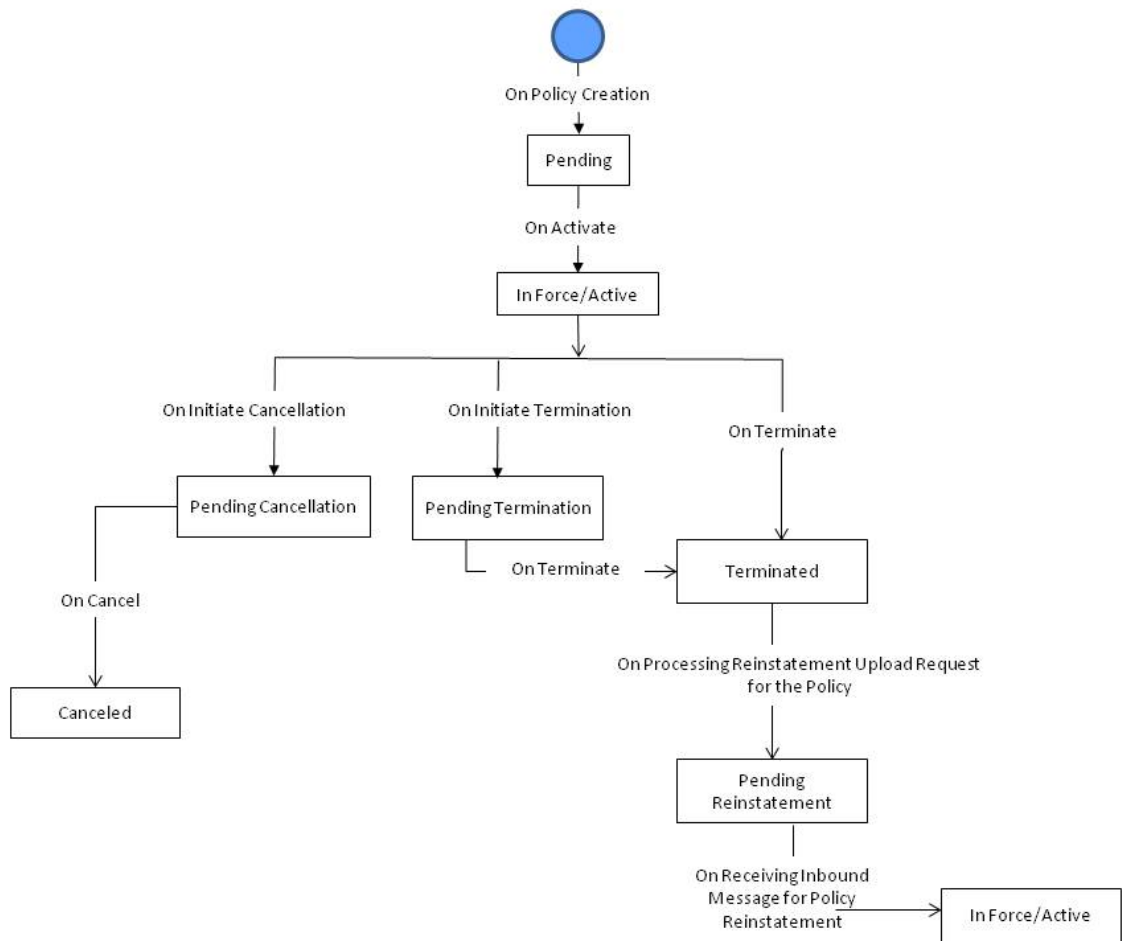
During the policy creation process, a policy goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. For more information about the policy statuses, see [Policy Status Transition](#) on page 1646

Note that the lifecycle of a policy is driven by the business object using which the policy is created. A policy and membership business object named **C1-Policy** and **C1-Membership** respectively are shipped with the product. The policy feature explained in this document is articulated based on the lifecycle and logic defined in the **C1-Policy**

For more information on how to setup the policy processes, see prerequisites [Prerequisites](#) on page 1657

## Policy Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a policy moves from one status to another:



**Note:** A policy will be set to **Pending Reinstatement** only through the upload request and cannot be done manually from the screen. Then, through an inbound message, a policy status will be changed from the **Pending Reinstatement** to **Reinstatement**.

## Algorithms Used in C1-Policy

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-Policy** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Validation	C1-POLBOVAL	C1-POLBOVAL	<p>This algorithm validates the below conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• End date of policy must be later than its start date</li> <li>• Following are the policy person validations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Policy person start and end dates should be within the start and end dates of policy.</li> <li>• Person end date must be later than its start date.</li> <li>• There must be one main customer for a policy.</li> <li>• Policy person role is mandatory.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If Algorithm parameter is provided and if Policy Status is within the list of statuses provided on Algorithm Parameter then Policy Person End Date Validation will be skipped.</li> <li>• Parameter 'State Of Issue' and 'Base Policy Indicator' Characteristic Types are not mandatory. If provided in the parameter value, then the same characteristics should exists on Policy.</li> </ul>
Post-Processing	C1-POLPRDCHR	C1-POLPRDCHR	<p>This algorithm creates following policy period characteristics during creation of a new policy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Policy period start date</li> <li>• Policy period end date</li> </ul> <p>An optional parameter, which is calculated as policy period add days - if the policy period end days have an offset days.</p>

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-Policy** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Pending	Monitor	C1-TRNDFLSYS	C1-TRNDFLSYS	This Algorithm verifies if the request is created online or manually.
Activate	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	This algorithm type transitions business object current state to the input next status or to the status related to the input next transition condition. Either one but not both soft parameters may be specified. If both soft parameters are not specified, the business object will be transitioned to the default next status specified on lifecycle. Algorithms of this algorithm type may be defined for any business object status as its monitor algorithm.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
In Force/ Active	Enter	C1-EVCSTSTAT	C1-EVCSTSTAT	This algorithm evaluates if the customer status is Active or Inactive. If all the policies of the customer are terminated, it is deemed that the customer is Inactive. If the customer owns at least one active policy, the customer is deemed as Active.
In Force/ Active	Enter	C1-ADDRFAGCH	C1-ADDRFAGCH	<p>This algorithm is responsible for adding account aging refresh characteristic for set of accounts while activating or terminating the policy. This algorithm has following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Account Aging Refresh Characteristic Type to add at Account level</li> <li>Account Aging Refresh Characteristic Type value to add at Account level</li> <li>Policy Plan Characteristic Type to determine policy plan at Contract</li> <li>Previous Main Customer Characteristic Type to determine previous main customer</li> </ul>
Pending Termination	Monitor	C1-PTRMCRTTD	C1-PTRMCRTTD	<p>This algorithm creates To Do entry if object is waiting in the specific status for the given number of days. Input parameters are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maximum Wait Days - After Maximum Wait Days To Do gets generated for specified To Do Type.</li> <li>To Do Type Role - Optional. If provided then used to create To Do for this Role else the default one on To Do Type will be used.</li> <li>To Do Type - To Do Type to create a TO Do If Maximum Wait Days are reached for the BO status.</li> <li>Transition To Previous Status - Optional. If provided then used to check if policy should be transitioned to previous status or not.</li> <li>Next Status - Optional. If provided then used to set the next status value.</li> <li>Next Transition Condition (Optional)- If provided then used to set next status condition.</li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Pending Termination	Enter	C1-PLCYTRMRQ	C1-PLCYTRMRQ	<p>This algorithm creates an outbound message for a termination request. It also creates policy log to store outbound message ID details. Parameters are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• External System - Holds other external system configuration.</li> <li>• Outbound Message Type - Holds the Outbound Message BO.</li> <li>• Bill Group Identifier Type - Identifier type of the bill group.</li> <li>• Previous Main Customer Characteristic Type -To get the characteristic type of previous customer while deriving account id in building termination request XML.</li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Terminated	Enter	C1-POLCYTERM	C1-POLCYTERM	<p>This algorithm performs the necessary logic to terminate a policy. End date would be updated and the original end date would be stored. The end date can also cascade to relate objects. Triggers auto transition for related membership parameters are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cascade End Date to Policy Person: Policy person's end date will be ended with terminate date if applicable.</li> <li>• Cascade End Date to Membership: Policy members' end date will be ended with terminate date if applicable.</li> <li>• Original End Date Characteristic Type: The Characteristic Type of the end date before new end date got stamped.</li> <li>• Membership BO Old Status: The old status of the membership BO.</li> <li>• Membership BO New Status: Member BO will be auto transitioned to this status if applicable</li> <li>• Cascade End Date to Billable Charge: Policy membership billable charges will be ended with terminate date if applicable.</li> <li>• Billable Charge Add Days: Used to process terminate proration rule.</li> <li>• Policy Characteristic Type: The characteristic type of the policy.</li> <li>• Billable Charge Previous End Date Char Type: The char type of the billable charge with a previous end date.</li> <li>• Use of Termination Proration Rule: Reinstate Policy Algorithm will start on giving the proration rule and proration rule characteristic type is validated.</li> <li>• Enrollment/Termination Proration Rule Characteristic Type: The characteristic type of the termination proration rule.</li> <li>• Policy Plan Characteristic Type: The characteristic type of the policy plans fetches policy plan char type label.</li> <li>• Proration Rule Characteristic Type: The characteristic type of the proration rule and fetches proration rule char type label.</li> <li>• Invoice Day Characteristic Type: The characteristic type of the invoice day and fetches invoice day char type label.</li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Terminated	Enter	C1-DELTRMLTR	C1-CRTCUSCNT	<p>This algorithm creates a customer contact depending on the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Check Policy Status Reason parameter is set to Y and the provided status reason is specified in the policy status reason code list parameter.</li> <li>When the Check Policy Status Reason parameter is blank or N.</li> </ul> <p>It also provides the option to consolidate policies into one customer contact for the same customer.</p>
Terminated	Enter	C1-EVCSTSTAT	C1-EVCSTSTAT	<p>This algorithm evaluates if the customer status is Active or Inactive. If all the policies of the customer are terminated, it is deemed that the Customer is Inactive. If the Customer owns at least one active policy, the customer is deemed as Active.</p>
Terminated	Enter	C1-MBRTMCC	C1-POLCCMBR	<p>This algorithm creates a customer contact for each active main subscriber associated with the policy being transitioned if the following conditions are met:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the Check Policy Status Reason is set to No.</li> <li>If the Check Policy Status Reason is set to Yes and the status reason is specified in the configured Policy Status Reason Code List parameter.</li> <li>If the State of Issue and Letter Template Characteristic Types are provided and the Policy's State of Issue has a matching Letter Template Characteristic configured on the Division.</li> </ul> <p>The algorithm adds a log entry to the policy to indicate the number of customer contacts created for the policy. The policy id is stamped on the created customer contacts as a characteristic.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Terminated	Enter	C1-ADDRFAGCH	C1-ADDRFAGCH	<p>This algorithm adds Account Aging Refresh Characteristic for set of accounts while activating or terminating the Policy. This algorithm has following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Account Aging Refresh Characteristic Type to add at account level</li> <li>Account Aging Refresh Characteristic Type value to add at account level</li> <li>Policy Plan Characteristic Type to determine policy plan at contract</li> <li>Previous Main Customer Characteristic Type to determine previous main customer</li> </ul>
Pending Reinstatement	Monitor	C1-PREICRTTD	C1-MONCRTETD	<p>This algorithm creates To Do Entry if object is waiting in the specific status for the given number of days. Input Parameters are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maximum Wait Days - After Maximum Wait Days, To Do gets generated for specified To Do Type.</li> <li>To Do Type Role (Optional) - If provided then used to create To Do for this Role else the default one on To Do Type will be used.</li> <li>To Do Type - To Do Type to create a TO Do If Maximum Wait Days are reached for the BO status.</li> <li>Transition To Previous Status (Optional) - If provided then used to check if policy should be transitioned to previous status or not.</li> <li>Next Status (Optional) - If provided then used to set the next status value.</li> <li>Next Transition Condition (Optional) - If provided then used to set next status condition.</li> </ul>
Pending Reinstatement	Enter	C1-PLCYREIRQ	C1-PLCYREIRQ	<p>This algorithm creates an outbound message for reinstate request. It also creates policy log to store outbound message ID details. Parameters are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>External System - Holds other external system configuration.</li> <li>Outbound Message Type - Holds the Outbound Message business object.</li> </ul>



Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Reinstate	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	This algorithm type transitions business object current state to the input Next Status or to the status related to the input Next Transition Condition. Either one but not both soft parameters may be specified. If both soft parameters are not specified, the business object will be transitioned to the default next status specified on lifecycle. Algorithms of this algorithm type may be defined for any business object status as its monitor algorithm.

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Reinstate	Enter	C1-POLCYREIN	C1-POLCYREIN	<p>This algorithm performs the necessary logic to reinstate a policy. End date would be updated and the original end date would be restored. The end date can also cascade to relate Objects. The persons related to the policy, membership status and the billable charges related to the person are also updated. Policy Period End Date will be restored. Triggers Auto Transition for related membership parameters are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cascade End Date to Persons - Policy persons end date will be restored to Policy Period End Date if applicable.</li> <li>• Cascade End Date to Plans - Policy plans' end date will be restored to Policy Period End Date if applicable.</li> <li>• Cascade End Date to Membership - Policy membership end date will be restored to Policy Period End Date if applicable.</li> <li>• Policy Period End Date Characteristic Type - The Characteristic Type of the end date before new end date got stamped.</li> <li>• Membership Old Status - The old status of the membership BO Membership New Status: Membership BO will be auto transitioned to this status if applicable.</li> <li>• Cascade End Date to Billable Charge - Policy plan memberships' billable charges will be restored to Policy Period End Date if applicable.</li> <li>• Policy Characteristic Type - The characteristic type of the policy.</li> <li>• Billable Charge Previous End Date Char Type - The char type of the billable charge with a previous end date.</li> <li>• Use of Termination Proration Rule - Reinstate Policy Algorithm will start on giving the proration rule and proration rule characteristic type is validated.</li> <li>• Contract Plan Characteristic Type - The characteristic type of the policy plans fetches policy plan char type label.</li> <li>• Proration Rule Characteristic Type - The characteristic type of the proration rule and fetches proration rule char type label.</li> <li>• Invoice Day Characteristic Type - The characteristic type of the invoice day and fetches invoice day char type label.</li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Reinstate	Enter	C1-CCPOLRE1	C1-CRTCUSCNT	<p>This algorithm creates a customer contact depending on the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Check Policy Status Reason parameter is set to Y and the provided status reason is specified in the policy status reason code list parameter.</li> <li>When the Check Policy Status Reason parameter is blank or N.</li> </ul> <p>It also provides the option to consolidate policies into one customer contact for the same customer.</p>
Renewal	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	<p>This algorithm type transitions business object current state to the input next status or to the status related to the input next transition condition. Either one but not both soft parameters may be specified. If both soft parameters are not specified, the business object will be transitioned to the default next status specified on lifecycle. Algorithms of this algorithm type may be defined for any business object status as its monitor algorithm.</p>
Pending Cancellation	-	-	-	-
Cancelled	-	-	-	-

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Pending Termination Override	Monitor	C1-PTRMCRTTD	C1-MONCRTETD	<p>This algorithm creates To Do Entry if object is waiting in the specific status for the given number of days. Input Parameters are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maximum Wait Days - After Maximum Wait Days, To Do gets generated for specified To Do Type.</li> <li>To Do Type Role (Optional) - If provided then used to create To Do for this Role else the default one on To Do Type will be used.</li> <li>To Do Type - To Do Type to create a TO Do If Maximum Wait Days are reached for the BO status.</li> <li>Transition To Previous Status (Optional) - If provided then used to check if policy should be transitioned to previous status or not.</li> <li>Next Status (Optional) - If provided then used to set the next status value.</li> <li>Next Transition Condition (Optional) - If provided then used to set next status condition.</li> </ul>
Pending Termination Override	Enter	C1-PLCYTRMRQ	C1-PLCYTRMRQ	<p>This algorithm creates an outbound message for a termination request. It also creates policy log to store outbound message ID details. Parameters are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>External System - Holds other external system configuration.</li> <li>Outbound Message Type - Holds the Outbound Message BO.</li> <li>Bill Group Identifier Type - Identifier type of the bill group.</li> <li>Previous Main Customer Characteristic Type -To get the characteristic type of previous customer while deriving account id in building termination request XML.</li> </ul>

## Algorithms Used in C1-Membership

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-Membership** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Validation	C1-VALMEMBO	C1-VALMEMBO	This algorithm validates the membership business object. The core fields are validated (Date Fields). An optional parameter policy status is provided if membership needs to be within related Policy's Dates.

## Prerequisites

To setup the policy-membership process, you need to do the following:

- Define the termination reasons for the **C1-Policy** business object
- Define the required status reasons for the **C1-Policy** business object.
- Define the required policy types in the system.
- Define the required source systems in the system.
- Define the required policy person roles in the system.
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Policy**.
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Policy Type**.




## Policy Type


Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define a policy type using which you can define a policy. The **Policy Type** screen allows you to define, edit, copy, and delete a policy type. It contains the following zones:

- [Policy Type List](#)
- [Policy Type](#)

### Policy Type List

The **Policy Type List** zone lists policy types that are already defined in the system. You can add, edit, copy, and delete a policy type through this zone. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Policy Type	Displays the policy type.
Description	Displays the description of the policy type.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Policy Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the policy type.
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Policy Type</b> screen appears where you can define a policy type using an existing policy type.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the policy type.  <b>Note:</b> You can delete a policy type only when you have not created a policy using the policy type.

You can define a policy type by clicking the **Add** button in the upper right corner of this zone. On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the policy type column, **Policy Type** zone appears with the details of the respective policy type.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy Type</a> on page 1658
How to define a policy type	<a href="#">Defining a Policy Type</a> on page 1659
How to edit a policy type	<a href="#">Editing a Policy Type</a> on page 1660
How to copy a policy type	<a href="#">Copying a Policy Type</a> on page 1662
How to delete a policy type	<a href="#">Deleting a Policy Type</a> on page 1661

**Policy Type**

The **Policy Type** zone displays the details of the policy type. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays basic information about the policy type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Policy Type	Displays the policy type.
Related Transaction BO	Indicates the business object that will be used to create the policy. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Description	Displays the description of the policy type.
Status	Indicates the status of the policy type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Active</li><li>• Inactive</li></ul>
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the policy type.

- **Characteristics** - Lists the characteristics defined for the policy type. It contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the policy type.
Delete	Used to delete the policy type. <b>Note:</b> You can delete a policy type only when you have not created a policy using the policy type.
Duplicate	Used to create a new policy type using an existing policy type.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the policy type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

By default, the **Policy Type** zone does not appear in the **Policy Type** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the policy type in the **Policy Type List** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy Type List</a> on page 1657
How to define a policy type	<a href="#">Defining a Policy Type</a> on page 1659
How to edit a policy type	<a href="#">Editing a Policy Type</a> on page 1660
How to copy a policy type	<a href="#">Copying a Policy Type</a> on page 1662
How to delete a policy type	<a href="#">Deleting a Policy Type</a> on page 1661

## Defining a Policy Type

### Prerequisites

To define a policy type, you should have:

- **C1-ASOPolicy** business object for the policy.
- **C1-POLICY** maintenance object for the policy.
- **C1-INS-POLICY** application service for the policy.

### Procedure

To define a policy type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Policy Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Policy Type** sub-menu.

The **Policy Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the policy type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the policy type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Type	Used to specify the policy type.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Business Object	Indicates the policy type business object used while defining the policy type.	Not applicable
Related Transaction BO	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while defining the policy.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the policy type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the policy type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	No
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the policy type.	No

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define the characteristics for the policy type, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The policy type is defined.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy Type</a> on page 1657
<b>Policy Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy Type List</a>
How to define characteristics for an inbound message type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Policy Type</a>

## Editing a Policy Type

### Procedure

To edit a policy type:

- Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Policy Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Policy Type** sub-menu.  
The **Policy Type** screen appears.
- In the **Policy Type List** zone, click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the policy type whose details you want to edit.

The **Policy Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** - Used to specify basic details about the policy type.
- Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the policy type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Type	Displays the policy type.	Not applicable
Business Object	Displays the business object used while defining the policy type.	Not applicable
Related Transaction BO	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while defining the policy.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the policy type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the policy type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	No
Detailed Description	Used to specify the additional information about the policy type.	No

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Policy Type** zone to edit the details of the policy type.

5. Modify the required details.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the policy type, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the policy type are saved.


### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy Type</a> on page 1657
<b>Policy Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy Type List</a>
How to define characteristics for a policy type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Policy Type</a>

## **Deleting a Policy Type**

### **Procedure**

To delete a policy type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Policy Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Policy Type** sub-menu.  
The **Policy Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Policy Type List** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the policy type that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the policy type.

**Note:** You can delete a policy type only when you have not created a policy using the policy type.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Delete** button in the **Policy Type** zone to delete the policy type.

5. Click **OK**.

The policy type is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy Type</a> on page 1657
<b>Policy Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy Type List</a>
<b>Policy Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy Type</a>

**Copying a Policy Type**

Instead of creating a policy type from scratch, you can create a new policy type using an existing policy type. This is possible through copying a policy type. On copying a policy type, the details including the characteristics are copied to the new policy type. You can then edit the details, if required.


**Prerequisites**

To copy a policy type, you should have:

- Policy type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Policy business objects defined in the application

**Procedure**

To copy a policy type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Policy Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Policy Type** sub-menu.  
The **Policy Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Policy Type List** zone, click the **Duplicate**( icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the policy type whose copy you want to create.  
The **Policy Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:
  - **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the policy type.
  - **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the policy type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Type	Used to specify the policy type.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Business Object	Displays the policy type business object used while defining the policy type.	Not applicable
Related Transaction BO	Used to indicate the business object that you want to use while defining the policy.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the policy type.	Yes
Status	Used to indicate the status of the policy type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the policy type.	No

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Duplicate** button in the **Policy Type** zone to create a copy of the policy type.

5. Modify the required details.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the policy type, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

A new policy type is defined.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy Type</a> on page 1657
<b>Policy Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy Type List</a>
<b>Policy Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy Type</a> on page 1658
How to define characteristics for a policy type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Policy Type</a>

## Policy Person Role



The **Policy Person Role** screen allows you to define a role that you can assign to a person while creating a policy. It also allows you to edit and delete a policy person role. It contains the following zone:

- [Policy Person Role List](#) on page 1663

### Policy Person Role List

The **Policy Person Role List** zone lists the roles that you can assign to a person while creating a policy. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Policy Person Role	Displays the policy person role.
Description	Displays the description of the policy person role.

Column Name	Column Description
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Policy Person Role</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the policy person role.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the policy person role.
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot delete a role if it is assigned to a person.

You can define a new policy person role by clicking the **Add** link in the upper-right corner of this zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a policy person role	<a href="#">Defining a Policy Person Role</a> on page 1664
How to edit a policy person role	<a href="#">Editing a Policy Person Role</a> on page 1665
How to delete a policy person role	<a href="#">Deleting a Policy Person Role</a> on page 1665

**Defining a Policy Person Role**

**Procedure**

To define a policy person role:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Policy Person Role**.  
The **Policy Person Role** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Policy Person Role List** zone.  
The **Policy Person Role** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Person Role	Used to specify the policy person role.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the policy person role.	Yes

4. Enter the required details.
5. Click **Save**.  
The policy person role is defined.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy Person Role</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy Person Role</a> on page 1663
<b>Policy Person Role List</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy Person Role List</a> on page 1663

## Editing a Policy Person Role

### Procedure

To edit a policy person role:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Policy Person Role**.  
The **Policy Person Role** screen appears.
3. Click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the policy person role whose details you want to edit.

The **Policy Person Role** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Person Role	Displays the policy person role.	Not applicable
Description	Used to modify the description of the policy person role.	Yes

4. Modify the description, if required.
5. Click **Save**.  
The changes made to the policy person role are saved.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy Person Role</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy Person Role</a> on page 1663
<b>Policy Person Role List</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy Person Role List</a> on page 1663

## Deleting a Policy Person Role

### Procedure

To delete a policy person role:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin Menu**, select **P** and then click **Policy Person Role**.  
The **Policy Person Role** screen appears.
3. Click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column in the **Policy Person Role List** zone corresponding to the policy person role that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the policy person role.

**Note:** You cannot delete a policy person role if it is assigned to a person.

4. Click **OK**.  
The policy person role is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy Person Role</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy Person Role</a> on page 1663
<b>Policy Person Role List</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy Person Role List</a> on page 1663

## Policy (Used for Searching)

The **Policy** screen allows you to search for a policy using various search criteria. It also allows you to create a policy. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Policy \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1675

This screen contains the following zone:

- [Search Policy](#) on page 1666

## Search Policy

The **Search Policy** zone allows you to search for a policy using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a policy using various policy options. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Policy Date / Policy Type / Status</li> <li>• Source System / Policy Number / Description</li> <li>• Person Name / Person Identifier</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Policy Date / Policy Type / Status</b> option is selected.	
Policy Type	Used to search a policy using various policy types.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Date / Policy Type / Status</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the policy is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Date / Policy Type / Status</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	<p>Used to search a policy by using various statuses of the policy. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force / Active</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• Pending Cancellation</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Pending Resinstatement</li> <li>• Pending Termination</li> <li>• Pending Termination Overriden</li> <li>• Reinstated</li> <li>• Run Out</li> <li>• Terminated</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Date / Policy Type / Status</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
End Date	<p>Used to specify the date till when the policy is effective.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Date / Policy Type / Status</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Source System	<p>Used to indicate a policy by providing the name of the external system from where the policy is originated.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Source System / Policy Number / Description</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Policy Number	<p>Used to search a policy by specifying the policy number.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Source System / Policy Number / Description</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Description	<p>Used to search a policy by providing the description of the policy.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Source System / Policy Number / Description</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No
Person Name	<p>Used to search a policy by providing the stakeholder of the policy.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Name / Person Identifier</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Identifier Type	Used to search a policy by specifying the person identifier type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Name / Person Identifier</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Identifier	Used to search a policy by specifying the person identifier.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Name / Person Identifier</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a policy.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Policy Number	Displays the policy number.
Information	Displays additional information of the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy Information</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.
Source System	Displays the name of the external system from where the policy is originated.
Description	Displays the description of the policy.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the policy is effective.
Status	Indicates the status of the policy.
Main Customer	Displays information about a person. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens within the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person. If you select <b>Person Name / Person Identifier</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list, this column displays whether the person is the main customer. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Yes</li><li>• No</li></ul>



Column Name	Column Description
Person Information	Displays information about person. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective person.</p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Person Name / Person Identifier</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Policy Person Role	<p>Displays the role of a person in the policy. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Policy Holder</li> <li>• Subscriber</li> <li>• Dependant</li> <li>• Underwriting Co.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This column appears only when you select the <b>Person Name / Person Identifier</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>
Main Customer	<p>Displays whether the person is the main customer of the policy. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the <b>Person Name / Person Identifier</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.</p>

You can create a new policy by clicking the **Add** button in the page title area of the screen.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669
How to define a policy	<a href="#">Defining a Policy</a> on page 1671
How to view the details of a policy	<a href="#">Viewing the Details of a Policy</a> on page 1670

## Searching a Policy

### Prerequisites

To search a policy, you should have:

- Policy types defined in the application
- Person created in the system
- Source systems defined in the system

### Procedure

To search a policy:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Person Information** and then click **Policy**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Policy** sub-menu.  
The **Policy** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Policy** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.  
A list of policies that meet the search criteria appear in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1666
<b>Search Policy</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Policy</a> on page 1666

**Viewing the Details of a Policy**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a policy:

1. Search for the policy in the **Policy** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy whose details you want to view.

The **Policy Information** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- [Policy - Main](#) on page 1676
- [Policy - Plan](#) on page 1680
- [Policy - Log](#) on page 1681

3. Ensure that the **Main** tab is selected.
4. View the details of the policy in the **Policy** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669
How to edit a policy	<a href="#">Editing a Policy</a> on page 1682

## Defining a Policy

### Prerequisites

To create a policy, you should have:

- Policy types defined in the application.

### Procedure

To create a policy:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Person Information** and then click **Policy**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Policy** sub-menu.  
The **Select Policy Type** screen appears.
4. Select the **Policy Type** from the list.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Policy** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify the basic details of the policy.
- **Persons** - Used to specify the basic detail of persons associated with a policy.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the policy.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Type	Displays the type of policy.	Not applicable
Policy Number	Used to specify the policy number.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description of the policy.	No
Source System	Used to specify the name of the external system from where the policy originated.	Yes
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the policy is effective.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the policy is effective.	No
Runout End Date	Used to specify the date when the runout period of the policy ends.  <b>Note:</b> The runout end date cannot be earlier than the policy's end date. You must specify the runout end date when you are defining a self-funded policy.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Runout Administration Fees	Used to indicate whether the administration fees must be charged when the claim transaction for the policy is processed in the runout period. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>None</li> <li>Percentage of Claim</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> At present, this field is used only for the information purposes and is not considered during the billable charge creation for the claim transactions which are received in the runout period of the policy.  You must specify the runout administration fees when you are defining a self-funded policy.	

The **Persons** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Information	Used to indicate the person ID.	Yes
Sequence	Used to specify the sequence number.	Yes
Policy Person Role	Used to indicate the role that can be assigned to a person while creating a policy.	Yes
Main Customer	Used to assign the person as a main customer for the policy.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> At least one person should be selected as <b>Main Customer</b> for a policy
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the policy is effective.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the policy is effective.	No

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the policy.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the policy.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the policy.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the policy.

6. Click **Save**.

The policy is created with the status as **Pending**.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Policy Type** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the page title area of the **Policy** screen.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1666
How to associate a person with a policy	<a href="#">Associating a Person with a Policy</a> on page 1673
How to define the characteristics for a policy	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Policy</a> on page 1674

## Associating a Person with a Policy

### Procedure

To associate person with a policy:

1. Search for the policy in the **Policy** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy with which you want to associate a person.

The **Policy Information** screen appears.


3. Click the **Edit** button.

The **Policy** screen appears.

4. In the **Persons** section, enter the required person details.

**Note:** On clicking the **Search** (🔍) icon, you can search for a specific person ID.

5. If you want to associate more than one person with the policy, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 4.

**Note:** However, if you want to dissociate a person from the policy, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the person ID.

6. Click **Save**.

The selected person is associated with the policy.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1666
<b>Policy Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1675
How to define the characteristics for the policy	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Policy</a> on page 1674

**Defining Characteristics for a Policy**

Following characteristics types are mandatory for to define a policy:

- While adding policy, there are five characteristics that are mandatory, which is defined on the **C1-Policy** business object.
- Proration Rule characteristic type should be defined with a pre-defined characteristic value.
- Base Policy Indicator characteristic type should be defined with a pre-defined characteristic value.
- State of Issue characteristic type should be defined with a pre-defined characteristic value.
- Rating Zip Code should be defined with a characteristic value.
- Policy Suffix Value should be defined with a characteristic value.

**Procedure**

To define characteristics for a policy:

1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a policy.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the policy.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The date should be on or before the policy start date.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the policy.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to policy.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the policy.


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the policy.

**Note:** Proration Rule, Policy Suffix Value, Base Policy Indicator, State of Issue, and Rating Zip Code characteristic type are mandatory characteristic type for defining a policy.

2. Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the policy, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the policy, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the policy.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1666
<b>Policy Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1675
How to create a policy	<a href="#">Defining a Policy</a> on page 1671

## Policy (Used for Viewing)

Once you create a policy, the **Policy** screen allows you to:

- Create a policy
- Associate a policy with a plan
- Edit the details of a policy
- Delete a policy
- View the details of a policy
- Activate or terminate a policy
- Renew a policy
- Associate a membership to the policy plan
- Edit the details of a policy plan
- View the log for a policy

- Add the log entry for a policy

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- [Policy - Main](#) on page 1676
- [Policy - Plan](#) on page 1680
- [Policy - Log](#) on page 1681

**Policy - Main**

The **Main** tab on the **Policy Information** screen contains the following zone:

- [Policy](#) on page 1676

**Policy**

The **Policy** zone displays the details of the policy. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays the basic information about the policy. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Information	Displays additional information of the policy.
Policy Type	Indicates the type of the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy Type</b> screen appears with the details of the respective policy type.
Status	Displays the status of the policy.
Policy Number	Displays the number of the policy.
Description	Displays the description of the policy.
Source System	Displays the name of the external system from where the policy is originated.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the policy is effective.



Field Name	Field Description																													
Paid Through Date	Indicates the term end date of the last fully or partially paid term. The system considers the term to be fully paid when the threshold limit is met.																													
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the paid through date is calculated at the policy level. The paid through date is calculated while freezing or cancelling a payment or adjustment depending on whether the required algorithm is attached to the respective system event:																													
	<table><tr><th>Entity</th><th>System Event</th><th>Algorithm</th></tr><tr><td>Customer Class</td><td>Payment Freeze</td><td>C1-PSPTDCAL</td></tr><tr><td>Customer Class</td><td>Payment Cancellation</td><td>C1-PXPTDCAL</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment Type</td><td>Adjustment Freeze</td><td>C1-ADPTDCAL</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment Type</td><td>Adjustment Cancellation</td><td>C1-AXPTDCAL</td></tr></table>	Entity	System Event	Algorithm	Customer Class	Payment Freeze	C1-PSPTDCAL	Customer Class	Payment Cancellation	C1-PXPTDCAL	Adjustment Type	Adjustment Freeze	C1-ADPTDCAL	Adjustment Type	Adjustment Cancellation	C1-AXPTDCAL														
	Entity	System Event	Algorithm																											
	Customer Class	Payment Freeze	C1-PSPTDCAL																											
	Customer Class	Payment Cancellation	C1-PXPTDCAL																											
	Adjustment Type	Adjustment Freeze	C1-ADPTDCAL																											
	Adjustment Type	Adjustment Cancellation	C1-AXPTDCAL																											
	The following table indicates when the paid through date is calculated at the policy and/or membership level:																													
	<table><tr><th>If the Paid Through Date Calculation Level parameter is set to...</th><th>If the following characteristics are defined for the bill charge or adjustment...</th><th>Then...</th></tr><tr><td>P</td><td>C1-POLID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at the policy level</td></tr><tr><td>P</td><td>C1-MPID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at the policy level</td></tr><tr><td>P</td><td>C1-POLID and C1-MPID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at the policy level</td></tr><tr><td>M</td><td>C1-POLID</td><td>Paid through date is not calculated at the membership level</td></tr><tr><td>M</td><td>C1-MPID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at the membership level</td></tr><tr><td>M</td><td>C1-POLID and C1-MPID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at the membership level</td></tr><tr><td>P, M</td><td>C1-POLID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at the policy level</td></tr><tr><td>P, M</td><td>C1-MPID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at both the policy and membership levels</td></tr><tr><td>P, M</td><td>C1-POLID and C1-MPID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at both the policy and membership levels</td></tr></table>	If the Paid Through Date Calculation Level parameter is set to...	If the following characteristics are defined for the bill charge or adjustment...	Then...	P	C1-POLID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level	P	C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level	P	C1-POLID and C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level	M	C1-POLID	Paid through date is not calculated at the membership level	M	C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the membership level	M	C1-POLID and C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the membership level	P, M	C1-POLID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level	P, M	C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at both the policy and membership levels	P, M	C1-POLID and C1-MPID
If the Paid Through Date Calculation Level parameter is set to...	If the following characteristics are defined for the bill charge or adjustment...	Then...																												
P	C1-POLID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level																												
P	C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level																												
P	C1-POLID and C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level																												
M	C1-POLID	Paid through date is not calculated at the membership level																												
M	C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the membership level																												
M	C1-POLID and C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the membership level																												
P, M	C1-POLID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level																												
P, M	C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at both the policy and membership levels																												
P, M	C1-POLID and C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at both the policy and membership levels																												

Field Name	Field Description
Runout End Date	Displays the date when the runout period of the policy ends.
Runout Administration Fees	<p>Displays the administration fees charged when the claim transaction for the policy is processed in the runout period. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None</li> <li>• Percentage of Claim</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> At present, this field is displayed only for the information purposes and is not considered during the billable charge creation for the claim transactions which are received in the runout period of the policy.</p>

- **Persons** - Lists the persons associated with a policy. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Person Information	<p>Displays the basic information of the person. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears with the details of the respective person.</p>
Sequence	Displays the sequence number.
Policy Person Role	Displays the role that was assigned to a person while creating a policy.
Main Customer	Displays the main customer of the policy.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the policy is effective.

- **Characteristics** - Lists the characteristics defined for the policy. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the policy.
Characteristic Type	<p>Displays the characteristic type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to policy.</p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Characteristic Type</b> screen appears with the details of the respective characteristic type.</p>
Characteristic Value	<p>Displays the value of the characteristic type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.</p>
Description	Displays the description of a characteristic.

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Activate	Used to activate the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> This button appears only when the policy is in the <b>Pending</b> or <b>Pending Termination</b> status.
Edit	Used to edit the details of the policy.
Delete	Used to delete the policy.
Cancel	Used to cancel the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> This button appears only when the policy is in the <b>Pending Cancellation</b> status.
Initiate Cancellation	Used to cancel the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> This button appears only when the policy is in the <b>In Force/Active</b> status.
Initiate Termination	Used to initiate the termination request.
	<b>Note:</b> This button appears only when the policy is in the <b>In Force/Active</b> status.
Terminate	Used to terminate the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> This button appears only when the policy is in the <b>In Force/Active</b> or <b>Pending Termination</b> status.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the policy is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the policy status is updated.
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the policy is created.

- **Termination Information** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Terminate Date	Displays the date when the policy will be terminated.
Terminate Reason	Displays the reason of terminating the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Status Reason</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective termination reason.

**Note:** This section appears only when the policy is in **Pending Termination** status.

- **Reinstate Information** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Reinstate Reason	Displays the reason of reinstating the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Status Reason</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective termination reason.

**Note:** This section appears only when the policy is in **Pending Reinstatement** status.


Policy - Plan


The **Plan** tab on the **Policy** screen contains the following zones:

- [Plans](#) on page 1680
- [Memberships](#) on page 1681

Plans

The **Plans** zone displays the plan details of a policy. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Information	Displays additional information of the policy. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy Plan</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective policy plan.
Price Item Information	Displays additional information of the product associated with the policy plan.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price item.
Plan Number	Displays the plan number for the policy.
Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the policy is effective.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Policy Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the policy type.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Price Item**, **Plan Number**, **Effective From**, and so on) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is visible. You can hide the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can create a new policy plan by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy Plan Memberships</b> zone	<a href="#">Memberships</a> on page 1681
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669
How to define a policy	<a href="#">Defining a Policy</a> on page 1671

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a policy	<a href="#">Viewing the Details of a Policy</a> on page 1670


## Memberships

The **Memberships** zone displays the details of policy plan membership. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy plan is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when the policy plan is effective.
Information	Displays additional information of the policy plan. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Membership Information</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the policy plan membership.
Enrolled Members	Displays the number of enrolled person to the policy plan.
Last Billed Coverage	Displays the information of the last bill coverage. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill Segment</b> screen appears where you can view the billing details of policy plan.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **External Membership ID**, **Plan Number**, **Effective From**, **Effective To**, and so on) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can create a new policy plan membership by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

By default, the **Memberships** zone does not appear in the **Policy** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the policy plan of the **Plans** zone.

## Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Plans</b> zone	<a href="#">Plans</a> on page 1680
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669
How to define a policy	<a href="#">Defining a Policy</a> on page 1671
How to view the details of a policy	<a href="#">Viewing the Details of a Policy</a> on page 1670

## Policy - Log

The **Log** tab on the **Policy** screen contains the following zone: [Policy Log](#) on page 1681

### Policy Log

The **Policy Log** zone on the **Policy** screen lists the complete trail of actions performed on the policy. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the policy.

Column Name	Column Description
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the policy.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the policy.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Displays the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> It contains a link. On clicking the link, the <b>To Do Entry</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the related object.
Status Reason	Displays the status reason of action performed on the policy.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the policy by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Policy Log** zone.

The **Add Request Log** window appears. Enter **Log Details** and click **Save**. The policy log is added.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669
How to view the log of a policy	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Policy</a> on page 1691

## Activating a Policy

### Procedure

To activate a policy:

1. Search for a policy in the **Policy** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy whose details you want to activate.

The **Policy Information** screen appears.

3. Click the **Activate** button in the **Policy** zone.

The policy gets activated and the status of the policy is changed to **In Force/Active**.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1666
<b>Policy</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy</a> on page 1676
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669

## Editing a Policy

### Procedure

To edit a policy:

1. Search for the policy in the **Policy** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy whose details you want to edit.

The **Policy Information** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Policy** zone.

The **Policy** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the policy. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Information	Displays the additional information about policy.	Not applicable
Policy Type	Displays the type of policy.	Not applicable
Policy Number	Used to specify the policy number.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description of the policy.	No
Source System	Used to specify the name of the external system from where the policy originated.	Yes
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the policy is effective.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the policy is effective.	No
Runout End Date	Used to specify the date when the runout period of the policy ends.  <b>Note:</b> The runout end date cannot be earlier than the policy's end date.  You must specify the runout end date when you are editing a self-funded policy.	
Runout Administration Fees	Used to indicate whether the administration fees must be charged when the claim transaction for the policy is processed in the runout period. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None</li> <li>• Percentage of Claim</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> At present, this field is used only for the information purposes and is not considered during the billable charge creation for the claim transactions which are received in the runout period of the policy.  You must specify the runout administration fees when you are editing a self-funded policy.	No

- **Persons** - Used to specify the basic detail of persons associated with a policy. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Information	Used to indicate the basic information of a person.	Yes
Sequence	Used to specify the sequence number.	Yes
Policy Person Role	Used to indicate the role that can be assigned to a person while creating a policy.	Yes
Main Customer	Used to assign the person as a main customer for the policy.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> At least one person should be selected as <b>Main Customer</b> for a policy
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the policy is effective.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the policy is effective.	No

- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the policy. This section contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the policy.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the policy.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Policy</b> .	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the policy.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the policy.

4. Modify the details of the policy.

5. If you want to specify more than one characteristics or persons within the policy, click the **Add** (+) in the respective section and then specify the details.

**Note:**

However, if you want to remove a characteristics or persons from the policy, click the **Delete** (🗑) icon corresponding to the respective characteristics or persons.



6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the policy are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1666
<b>Policy Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1675
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669

## Deleting a Policy

### Procedure

To delete a policy:

1. Search for the policy in the **Policy** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy whose details you want to delete.

The **Policy Information** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Policy** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the policy.

4. Click **OK**.

The policy is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669

## Initiating a Termination Request for a Policy

### Procedure

To initiate a termination request for a policy:

1. Search for the policy in the **Policy** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy for which you want to initiate the termination request.

The **Policy Information** screen appears.

3. For initiating a termination request for the policy, click the **Initiate Termination** button available in the **Policy** zone.

The termination process is initiated and the status of the policy is changed to the **Pending Termination**.

**Note:** This button appears only when the policy is in **In Force/Active** status.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669

Terminating a Policy

**Procedure**

To terminate a policy:

1. Search for the policy in the **Policy** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy whose details you want to terminate.

The **Policy Information** screen appears.

3. Click the **Terminate** button in the **Policy** zone.

The **Status Reason** screen appears.

**Note:** The **Terminate** button appears only when the policy is in the **Pending Termination** status.

4. Select the reason of terminating a policy.
5. Click **Save**.

The policy is terminated.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669

Defining a Policy Plan

**Procedure**

To create a policy plan:

1. Search for the policy in the **Policy** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy for which you want to create the policy plan.


The **Policy** screen appears.

3. Click the **Plan** tab.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Plans** zone.

The **Plan** screen appears. It contains two section:

- **Main** - Used to specify the basic details about the policy. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy ID	Displays the policy ID.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate whether the policy can be associated with a price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.	
Plan Number	Used to specify the plan number.	No
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the policy plan is effective.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the policy plan is effective.	No

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define the characteristics for the policy plan, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The policy plan is defined.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1675
How to define the characteristics for a policy plan	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Policy Plan</a> on page 1687

## Defining Characteristics for a Policy Plan

To define characteristics for a policy plan, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application.


#### Procedure


To define characteristics for a policy plan:


- Search for the policy in the **Policy** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy whose details you want to view.  
The **Policy Information** screen appears.
- Click the **Plan** tab.  
The **Policy** screen appears with the details of the policy plan.
- Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Plans** zone.  
The **Plan** screen appears.
- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded, while you are editing or adding a policy plan. It contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the policy plan.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the policy plan.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to policy plan.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the policy plan.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the policy plan.

6. Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

7. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the policy plan, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 6.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the policy plan, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

8. Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the policy plan.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy - Plan</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy - Plan</a> on page 1680
How to define a policy plan	<a href="#">Defining a Policy</a> on page 1671


## Editing a Policy Plan

### Procedure

To edit a policy plan:

1. Search for the policy associated with the particular policy plan in the **Policy** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy whose policy plan you want to edit.

The **Policy Information** screen appears.

3. Click **Plan** tab.
4. In the **Plans** zone, click the **Edit** () icon corresponding to the policy plan that you want to edit.  
The **Plan** screen appears.
5. Modify the required policy plan details.
6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the policy plan are saved.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1666
<b>Policy Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1675
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669

## Viewing the Membership Details of a Policy Plan

### Procedure

To view the membership details of a policy plan:

1. Search for the membership of a policy plan associated with the particular policy plan in the **Policy** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy whose policy plan membership you want to view.  
The **Policy Information** screen appears.
3. Click **Plan** tab in the **Policy Information** screen.
4. In the **Plans** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the membership of a policy plan that you want to view.

The **Memberships** zone appears.

5. View all the memberships of a policy plan.

#### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1666
<b>Policy Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1675
<b>Memberships</b> zone	<a href="#">Memberships</a> on page 1681
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669

## Filtering a Policy Plan


### Procedure

To filter a policy plan:

1. Search for the policy plan associated with a policy in the **Plans** zone of the **Policy** screen. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to specify the name of price item.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can search for a product by clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the respective field.	
Plan Number	Used to specify the plan number.	No
Effective From	Used to specify the date from when the policy plan is effective.	No

**Note:**

You can define a policy plan by clicking the **Add** link in the upper right corner of this zone. On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the policy plan, the **Memberships** zone appears with the details of the respective policy plan memberships.

At least, one search criteria should be provided while filtering a policy plan.

- Enter the search criteria.
- Click the **Search** button. A list of policy plans that meet the search criteria appears in the search results. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Information	Displays the additional information about the policy plan. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy Plan</b> screen appears with the details of the respective policy.
Price Item Information	Displays name of the price item.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears with the details of the respective policy.
Plan Number	Displays the policy plan number.
Start Date	Displays the date from when policy plan is effective.
End Date	Displays the date till when policy plan is effective.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b>  icon, the <b>Plan</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the policy plan.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1666
<b>Policy Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Policy (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1675
<b>Memberships</b> zone	<a href="#">Memberships</a> on page 1681

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669

## Viewing the Log of a Policy

### Procedure

To view the log of a policy:

1. Search for the policy in the **Policy** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy whose details you want to view.

The **Policy Information** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** - Displays information about policy. It contains the following zone:
  - **Policy** - Displays the details of the policy.
- **Plan** - Displays the details of the different plans of a policy. It contains the following zone:
  - **Plans** - List the different plans of a policy.
  - **Memberships** - List the different policy plan memberships of a policy.
- **Log** - Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the policy. It contains the following zone:
  - **Policy Log** - Displays the trail of actions performed on the particular policy.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Policy Log** zone in the **Log** tab contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the policy.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the policy.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the policy.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the policy.
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the policy was rejected or voided.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the policy by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Policy Log** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669
How to define a log entry for a policy	<a href="#">Defining a Log Entry for a Policy</a> on page 1691

## Defining a Log Entry for a Policy

### Procedure

To define a log entry for a policy:

1. Search for the policy in the **Policy** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy whose log you want to edit.

The **Policy Information** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays information about policy. It contains the following zone:
    - **Policy** – Displays the details of the policy.
  - **Plan** – Displays the details of the different plans of a policy. It contains the following zone:
    - **Policy Plans** – Displays the details of the policy plans.
  - **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the policy. It contains the following zone.
    - **Policy Log** – Displays the trail of actions performed on the particular policy.
3. Click the **Log** tab.
  4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Policy Log** zone.

The **Add Request Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Information	Displays additional information about the policy	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the policy.	Yes

5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.
6. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Policy Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a policy	<a href="#">Searching a Policy</a> on page 1669
How to view the details of a policy	<a href="#">Viewing the Details of a Policy</a> on page 1670

# Membership

The **Membership** screen allows you to search for a membership using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screens:

- Policy screen
- Membership Information screen
- Price Item Relationship screen
- Person screen

This screen contains the following zone:



- [Search Membership](#) on page 1693



## Search Membership

The **Search Membership** zone allows you to search for a membership using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a membership using various search options. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Policy ID / Price Item / Plan Number</li> <li>• Price Item / Status / Membership Date</li> <li>• Person Name / Person Identifier</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, <b>Policy ID / Price Item / Plan Number</b> option is selected.	
Policy ID	Used to search the policy ID.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Search Policy</b> window appears.	
Price Item	Used to search a price item.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.	
Plan Number	Used to search the plan number for a membership.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy ID / Product / Plan Number</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Start Date	Used to search a membership start date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price Item / Status / Membership Date</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to search the status of a membership policy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• Terminated</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price Item / Status / Membership Date</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
End Date	Used to search a membership start date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Price Item / Status / Membership Date</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Name	Used to search a person name with the membership.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Name / Person Identifier</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Identifier Type	Used to specify a person ID type with the membership.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Name / Person Identifier</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Identifier	Used to select a value of the person ID.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Name / Person Identifier</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a membership.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Policy Information	Displays the information of the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy Information</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective policy.
Information	Displays the information of the membership.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Membership Information</b> screen appears with details of the respective membership.

Column Name	Column Description
Price Item Information	Displays the details of the price item.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item Relationship</b> screen appears with details of the respective price item.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the membership policy plan.
End Date	Displays the end date of the membership policy plan.
Status	Displays the status of the membership policy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Cancelled</li> <li>• Terminated</li> </ul>
Main Subscriber	Displays the customer name with the membership. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears with details of the respective person. If you select <b>Person Name / Person Identifier</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list, it displays whether the selected customer is the main subscriber. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Person Information	Displays whether the <b>Person</b> displayed is a main customer or not. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears with details of the respective person. This column appears only when you select <b>Person Name / Person Identifier</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.

You can define a membership by clicking the **Add** button in the page title area of the **Membership** screen.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a membership	<a href="#">Defining a Membership for a Policy Plan</a> on page 1697
<b>Membership</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership</a> on page 1692
<b>Membership</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Membership</a> on page 1693

## Searching for a Membership

### Prerequisites

To search for a membership, you should have:

- Policy associated with a membership
- Product defined in the application
- Person created in the system

**Procedure**

To search for a policy:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. Select **Person Information** and then click **Membership**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Membership** sub-menu  
The **Membership** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Membership** zone depending on whether you want to search for a membership.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.  
A list of memberships that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Membership</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership Information</a> on page 1700
<b>Search Membership</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Membership</a> on page 1693

**Viewing the Membership Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a membership:

1. Search for the membership in the **Membership** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link **Information** column corresponding to the membership whose details you want to view.

The **Membership Information** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays the information about membership. It contains the following zones:
  - **Membership** – Displays the details of the membership.
  - **Persons Included in Membership** – Displays information about the persons in a membership.
  - **Other Plans of Main Subscriber**
    - Displays information about other policy plans in the membership.
- **Contracts & Premiums** – Displays the details of the different contracts and premiums in membership.
- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the membership.

3. View the details of the membership in the **Membership** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	
<b>Membership Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership Information</a> on page 1700
<b>Membership</b> zone	<a href="#">Membership</a> on page 1700
<b>Persons Included in Membership</b> zone	<a href="#">Persons Included in Membership</a> on page 1703
<b>Other Plans of Main Subscriber</b> zone	<a href="#">Other Plans of Main Subscriber</a> on page 1704


## Defining a Membership for a Policy Plan

### Procedure

To define a membership for a policy plan:



1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main Menu**, select **Person Information** and then click **Policy**.  
A sub menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Policy** sub-menu.  
The **Policy** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Policy** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the policy number whose plan details you want to view.  
The Policy screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:
  - [Policy - Main](#) on page 1676
  - [Policy - Plan](#) on page 1680
  - [Policy - Log](#) on page 1681
6. Ensure that **Plan** tab is selected.
7. Enter the search parameters to search a policy plan in the **Plans** zone.
8. A list of policy plans that meet the search criteria appear in the **Search Results** section.
9. In the **Plans** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the membership of a policy plan that you want to view.  
The **Memberships** zone appears.
10. Click the Add link in the **Memberships** zone.  
The **Membership** screen is displayed.

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the membership.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the membership.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Plan	Used to specify the policy plan.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Policy Plan Search</b> screen appears.	
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the membership policy plan will begin.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the membership policy plan will end.	Yes
Main Subscriber	Used to specify the main subscriber name and policy ID.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Person Search</b> window appears.	
Relationship Type	Used to indicate the relationship type of <b>Main Subscriber</b> for the policy plan. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dependent</li> <li>• Error</li> </ul>	Yes
External Membership ID	Used to specify the external membership ID.	No


11. Enter the required details in the main section.

12. Define characteristics for the membership, if required.

**Note:**

You can search for a characteristic value by clicking **Search**  icon corresponding to the respective field.

13. If you want to associate more than one characteristic type from effective date with the membership, click the **Add**  icon and then specify the details.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic type from effective date for the membership, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the field.

14. Click **Save**.

The membership is defined.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Policy Plan screen	<a href="#">Policy Plan</a>
Policy Plan zone	<a href="#">Policy Plan</a>

## Defining Characteristics for a Membership

### Procedure


To define characteristics for a membership:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a membership.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to indicate the date from when membership is effective for the policy plan.	No
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to the membership created.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the membership policy plan.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the membership policy plan.

2. Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the membership, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the membership, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a membership	<a href="#">Defining a Membership for a Policy Plan</a> on page 1697
How to edit a membership	<a href="#">Editing a Membership</a> on page 1709
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	<a href="#">Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value</a>

## Membership Information

Once you create a membership, the **Membership Information** screen allows you to:

- Add, edit, and delete a membership
- Add persons to a membership
- View the details of a membership
- Add, edit, and delete the membership contract
- View the membership contracts details
- View premium details for a membership
- View and add a log entry for a membership

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- **Main** – Displays the information about membership. It contains the following zones:
  - **Membership** – Displays the details of the membership.
  - **Persons Included in Membership** – Displays information about the persons included in a membership
  - **Other Plans of Main Subscriber**
    - Displays information about other policy plans in the membership.
- **Contracts & Premiums** – Displays the details of the different contracts and premiums in membership
- **Log** – Lists the complete trail of actions performed on the membership.

### Membership - Main

The **Main** tab on the **Membership Information** screen contains the following zones:

- [Membership](#) on page 1700
- [Persons Included in Membership](#) on page 1703
- [Other Plans of Main Subscriber](#) on page 1704

### Membership

The **Membership** zone displays the details of the memberships. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - This section provides basic information about the membership. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Information	Displays information about the membership.
Plan	Displays the policy plan for the membership.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy Plan</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective membership.
Status	Indicates the status of the membership. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Active</li><li>• Cancelled</li><li>• Terminated</li></ul>



Field Name	Field Description
Start Date	Displays the date when membership is created.
End Date	Displays the date when membership is ended.
External Membership ID	Displays the membership ID of external system.

Field Name	Field Description																													
Paid Through Date	Indicates the term end date of the last fully or partially paid term. The system considers the term to be fully paid when the threshold limit is met.																													
	<b>Note:</b>  This field appears only when the paid through date is calculated at the membership level.  The paid through date is calculated while freezing or cancelling a payment or adjustment depending on whether the required algorithm is attached to the respective system event:																													
	<table><tr><th>Entity</th><th>System Event</th><th>Algorithm</th></tr><tr><td>Customer Class</td><td>Payment Freeze</td><td>C1-PSPTDCAL</td></tr><tr><td>Customer Class</td><td>Payment Cancellation</td><td>C1-PXPTDCAL</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment Type</td><td>Adjustment Freeze</td><td>C1-ADPTDCAL</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment Type</td><td>Adjustment Cancellation</td><td>C1-AXPTDCAL</td></tr></table>	Entity	System Event	Algorithm	Customer Class	Payment Freeze	C1-PSPTDCAL	Customer Class	Payment Cancellation	C1-PXPTDCAL	Adjustment Type	Adjustment Freeze	C1-ADPTDCAL	Adjustment Type	Adjustment Cancellation	C1-AXPTDCAL														
	Entity	System Event	Algorithm																											
	Customer Class	Payment Freeze	C1-PSPTDCAL																											
	Customer Class	Payment Cancellation	C1-PXPTDCAL																											
	Adjustment Type	Adjustment Freeze	C1-ADPTDCAL																											
	Adjustment Type	Adjustment Cancellation	C1-AXPTDCAL																											
	The following table indicates when the paid through date is calculated at the policy and/or membership level:																													
	<table><tr><th>If the Paid Through Date Calculation Level parameter is set to...</th><th>If the following characteristics are defined for the bill charge or adjustment...</th><th>Then...</th></tr><tr><td>P</td><td>C1-POLID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at the policy level</td></tr><tr><td>P</td><td>C1-MPID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at the policy level</td></tr><tr><td>P</td><td>C1-POLID and C1-MPID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at the policy level</td></tr><tr><td>M</td><td>C1-POLID</td><td>Paid through date is not calculated at the membership level</td></tr><tr><td>M</td><td>C1-MPID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at the membership level</td></tr><tr><td>M</td><td>C1-POLID and C1-MPID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at the membership level</td></tr><tr><td>P, M</td><td>C1-POLID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at the policy level</td></tr><tr><td>P, M</td><td>C1-MPID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at both the policy and membership levels</td></tr><tr><td>P, M</td><td>C1-POLID and C1-MPID</td><td>Paid through date is calculated at both the policy and membership levels</td></tr></table>	If the Paid Through Date Calculation Level parameter is set to...	If the following characteristics are defined for the bill charge or adjustment...	Then...	P	C1-POLID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level	P	C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level	P	C1-POLID and C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level	M	C1-POLID	Paid through date is not calculated at the membership level	M	C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the membership level	M	C1-POLID and C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the membership level	P, M	C1-POLID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level	P, M	C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at both the policy and membership levels	P, M	C1-POLID and C1-MPID
If the Paid Through Date Calculation Level parameter is set to...	If the following characteristics are defined for the bill charge or adjustment...	Then...																												
P	C1-POLID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level																												
P	C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level																												
P	C1-POLID and C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level																												
M	C1-POLID	Paid through date is not calculated at the membership level																												
M	C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the membership level																												
M	C1-POLID and C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at the membership level																												
P, M	C1-POLID	Paid through date is calculated at the policy level																												
P, M	C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at both the policy and membership levels																												
P, M	C1-POLID and C1-MPID	Paid through date is calculated at both the policy and membership levels																												

- **Characteristics** - This section lists the characteristics defined for the membership. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when membership is effective.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the membership.
Delete	Used to delete the membership.  <b>Note:</b> You can delete a membership only when you have not associated the membership with a policy plan.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the membership is created. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the membership status is updated
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the membership is created.

You can define a membership by clicking the **Add** button in the page title area of the **Membership Information** screen.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a membership	<a href="#">Defining a Membership for a Policy Plan</a> on page 1697
How to edit a membership	<a href="#">Editing a Membership</a> on page 1709
How to delete a membership	<a href="#">Deleting a Membership</a> on page 1711
How to search for a membership	<a href="#">Searching for a Membership</a> on page 1695

### **Persons Included in Membership**

The **Persons Included in Membership** zone displays the details of person with membership. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Start Date	Displays the date from when the person is added as a member for the policy.

Column Name	Column Description
End Date	Displays the date till when the person will be considered as a member for the policy.
Person Information	Displays the name of the person associated with the membership of the policy. In addition, it has the context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears with the details of the respective membership person.
Relationship Type	Displays the relationship of the person with the main customer.
Main Subscriber	Indicates whether the membership person is a main customer. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Delete	Used to delete the membership person.
	<b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (🗑️) icon, you can delete the membership person.
Edit	Used to edit the details of membership person.
	<b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (✎️) icon, the <b>Membership Persons</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the membership person.
Member	Indicates whether the membership person is a member of the policy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>

You can define a membership person by clicking the **Add Person** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view details of membership	<a href="#">Viewing the Membership Details</a> on page 1696
How to edit a membership person details	<a href="#">Editing Membership Details of a Person</a> on page 1714
How to delete a membership person	<a href="#">Deleting a Person from Membership</a> on page 1715
How to add a membership person	<a href="#">Adding a Person in a Membership</a> on page 1711

### **Other Plans of Main Subscriber**

The **Other Plans of Main Subscriber** zone allows you to view the other policy plans associated with the membership. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Start Date	Displays the date from when the membership was associated with the policy.
End Date	Displays the date till which the membership will be associated with the policy.
Plan Number	Displays the plan number for the policy.
Price Item	Displays the name of the price item associated with the membership record.

Column Name	Column Description
Membership Information	Displays additional information about the membership.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Membership Information</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective membership person.
Last Billed Coverage	Displays the information of the last bill covered.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill Segment</b> screen appears where you can view the billing details of policy plan.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a membership	<a href="#">Searching for a Membership</a> on page 1695
How to view details for a membership	<a href="#">Viewing the Membership Details</a> on page 1696
How to define the membership details	<a href="#">Defining a Membership</a>

## Membership - Contracts & Premiums

The **Contracts & Premiums** tab on the **Membership Information** screen contains the following zones:

- [Membership Contracts](#) on page 1705
- [Premiums](#) on page 1706

### Membership Contracts

The **Membership Contracts** zone allows you to view, edit and delete membership contracts. This zone contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Start Date	Displays the date from when the membership is associated with the policy.
End Date	Displays the date till which the membership will be associated with the policy.
Bill To	Displays the entity to which the bill is raised as per membership contract.
Contract ID	Displays the contract number for the membership.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.
Account Information	Displays additional information about the account associated with the membership contract. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective account.

Column Name	Column Description
Delete	Used to delete the membership contract associated with the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (🗑️) icon, you can delete the membership contract.
Edit	Used to edit the membership contract associated with the policy.
	<b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (✎) icon, the <b>Associate Contract with Membership</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the membership contract.

You can filter the list using the search criteria such as, **Bill To** list available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (⌵) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

You can also add a membership contract manually by clicking the **Add Contract** link in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a membership	<a href="#">Searching for a Membership</a> on page 1695
How to add a membership contract	<a href="#">Adding a Membership Contract</a> on page 1707
How to edit details of a membership contract	<a href="#">Editing a Membership Contract</a> on page 1708
How to delete a membership contract	<a href="#">Deleting a Membership Contract</a> on page 1708

### **Premiums**

The **Premiums** zone allows you to view billing details of the membership contract. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Start Date	Displays the date from when the premium is calculated.
End Date	Displays the date till when the premium is calculated.
Bill To	Displays the entity to which the bill is raised as per membership contract.
Bill Period	Displays the period of bill generation.
Last Billed Coverage	Displays the information of the last bill coverage.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill Segment</b> screen appears where you can view the billing details of policy plan.
Billable Charge ID	Displays the billable charge for the premium
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Billable Charge ID</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective billable charges.

You can filter the list using the search criteria such as, **Bill To** list available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (⌵) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a membership	<a href="#">Searching for a Membership</a> on page 1695
How to view details for a membership	<a href="#">Viewing the Membership Details</a> on page 1696

## Adding a Membership Contract

### Procedure

To add a contract in a membership:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main Menu**, select **Person Information** and then click **Membership**.  
The **Membership** screen appears.
3. Search for the membership policy in the **Membership** screen.
4. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the membership for which you want to add a membership contract.  
The **Membership Information** screen appears.
5. Click **Contracts & Premiums** tab.
6. Click the **Add Contract** link in the upper right corner of the **Membership Contracts** zone.  
The **Associate Contract with Membership** screen appears. It contains the following fields.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Membership Information	Displays the additional information about the membership.	Not applicable
Contract ID	Used to indicate the contract associated with the membership.	Yes
Bill To	Used to indicate the bill to type option.	Yes
Start Date	Used to specify the date from which the contract is associated with membership.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the contract is associated with membership.	No

7. Click **Save**.

The contract is added to the membership.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Membership</b> screen	<a href="#">Search Membership</a> on page 1693
<b>Membership Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership Information</a> on page 1700
How to edit details of a membership contract	<a href="#">Editing a Membership Contract</a> on page 1708
How to delete a membership contract	<a href="#">Deleting a Membership Contract</a> on page 1708

Editing a Membership Contract

Procedure

To edit a membership contract:

- 1. Search for the membership in the **Membership** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the membership whose details you want to edit.  
The **Membership Information** screen appears.
- 3. Click **Contracts & Premiums** tab.
- 4. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the membership whose details you want to edit.

The **Associate Contract with Membership** screen appears. It contains the following fields.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Membership Information	Displays the additional information about the membership.	Not applicable
Contract ID	Used to indicate the contract associated with the membership.	Yes
Bill To	Used to indicate the bill to type option.	Yes
Start Date	Used to specify the date from which the contract is associated with membership.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the contract is associated with membership.	No

- 5. Modify the membership and contract details.
- 6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the membership contract are saved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Membership</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership</a> on page 1692
<b>Membership Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership Information</a> on page 1700
How to associate a contract with a membership	<a href="#">Adding a Membership Contract</a> on page 1707
How to delete a membership contract	<a href="#">Deleting a Membership Contract</a> on page 1708

Deleting a Membership Contract

Procedure

To delete a membership contract:

- 1. Search for the membership in the **Membership** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the membership for which you want to edit.  
The **Membership Information** screen appears.



3. Click **Contracts & Premiums** tab.

4. In the **Search Results** section, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the membership contract that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the membership contract.

5. Click **OK**.

The membership contract is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to associate a contract with a membership	<a href="#">Adding a Membership Contract</a> on page 1707
How to edit details of a membership contract	<a href="#">Editing a Membership Contract</a> on page 1708

## Membership - Log

The **Log** tab on the **Membership Information** contains the following zone:

- [Membership Log](#) on page 1709

### Membership Log

The **Membership Log** zone on the **Membership Information** screen lists the complete trail of actions performed on the membership. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the membership.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the membership.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the membership.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the membership.
Status Reason	Displays the status reason of action performed on the membership.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Policy Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Policy Log</a> on page 1681
How to view log of a membership	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Policy</a> on page 1691
How to add an entry in a membership log	<a href="#">Defining a Log Entry for a Policy</a> on page 1691

## Editing a Membership

### Procedure

To edit a membership:

1. Search for a membership in the **Membership** screen.

- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the membership whose details you want to edit.

The **Membership Information** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the membership.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the policy.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Information	Displays the additional information about membership.	Not applicable
Plan	Displays the information of policy plan.	Not applicable
Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the membership is effective.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the date till when the membership is effective.	Yes
External Membership ID	Used to specify the external membership ID.	No

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the membership.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the membership.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Membership</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the membership.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the membership.

- Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
- If you want to associate more than one characteristic type from effective date with the membership, click the **Add** (+) icon and then specify the details.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic type from effective date for the membership, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the field.

- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the membership are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Membership</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership</a> on page 1692
<b>Membership Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership Information</a> on page 1700
How to view the details of the membership	<a href="#">Viewing the Membership Details</a> on page 1696
How to define characteristics for a membership	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Membership</a> on page 1699

## Deleting a Membership

### Procedure

To delete a membership:

1. Search for the membership in the **Membership** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the membership whose details you want to delete.

The **Membership Information** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Membership** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the membership.

4. Click **OK**.

The membership is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Membership</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership</a> on page 1692
<b>Membership Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership Information</a> on page 1700
How to add a membership	<a href="#">Defining a Membership for a Policy Plan</a> on page 1697
How to edit a membership	<a href="#">Editing a Membership</a> on page 1709

## Adding a Person in a Membership

### Procedure

To add a person in a membership:

1. Search for a membership in the **Membership** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the membership where you want to add a person.


The **Membership Information** screen appears.


3. Click the **Add Person** link in the upper right corner of the **Persons Included in Membership** zone.

The **Add Person in Membership** screen appears. It contains the following sections:


- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the membership person.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the membership person.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Membership Information	Displays information of membership person.	Not applicable
Person ID	Used to select the person ID.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Person Search</b> window appears.	Yes
Relationship Type	Used to indicate the relationship type of person in contract. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dependent</li> <li>• Member</li> </ul>	Yes
Financially Responsible	Used to specify whether the person is financially responsible for the membership policy or not.	No
Main Subscriber	Used to specify whether the person is the main customer for the membership policy or not.	No
Member	Used to specify whether the person is a member of the membership policy or not.	No
Start Date	Used to specify the person membership start date.  <b>Note:</b> Selected <b>Start Date</b> must be within the membership start date and end date.	Yes
End Date	Used to specify the person membership end date.  <b>Note:</b> Selected <b>End Date</b> must be within the membership start date and end date.	No

- Enter the required details.
- If you want to associate more than one characteristic type from effective date for the membership person, click the **Add** () icon and then specify the details.

**Note:**

However, if you want to remove a characteristic type from effective date for the membership person, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to that characteristics.

- Click **Save**.

The membership person is defined.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Membership</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership</a> on page 1692
<b>Membership Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership Information</a> on page 1700
<b>Persons Included in Membership</b> zone	<a href="#">Persons Included in Membership</a> on page 1703
How to search for a membership.	<a href="#">Searching for a Membership</a> on page 1695
How to view details of membership.	<a href="#">Viewing the Membership Details</a> on page 1696

**Defining Characteristics for a Membership - Person****Procedure**


To define characteristics for a membership person:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a membership person.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to indicate the date from when the characteristic is effective for the membership person.	No
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to the membership person created.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the membership person.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the membership person.

2. Enter the required details.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the membership person, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the membership person, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the membership person.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to add a membership person	<a href="#">Adding a Person in a Membership</a> on page 1711
How to edit a membership person	<a href="#">Editing Membership Details of a Person</a> on page 1714
How to search for a predefined characteristic value	<a href="#">Searching for a Predefined Characteristic Value</a>


## Editing Membership Details of a Person

### Procedure

To edit a membership details of a person:

1. Search for the membership in the **Membership** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the membership record for which you want to edit.


The **Membership Information** screen appears.

3. In the **Persons Included in Membership** zone, click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the membership person whose details you want to edit.

The **Add Person in Membership** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the membership person.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the membership person.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Membership Information	Displays information of membership person.	Yes
Person ID	Used to specify the person ID.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Person Search</b> window appears.	Yes
Relationship Type	Used to indicate the relationship type of person in contract. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Member</li></ul>	Yes
Financially Responsible	Used to specify whether the person is financially responsible for the membership policy or not.	No
Main Subscriber	Used to specify whether the person is the main customer for the membership policy or not.	No
Member	Used to specify whether the person is a member of the membership policy or not.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Start Date	Used to specify the person membership start date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Selected <b>Start Date</b> must be within the membership start date and end date.	
End Date	Used to specify the person membership end date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> Selected <b>End Date</b> must be within the membership start date and end date.	

4. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
5. If you want to associate more than one characteristic type from effective date with the membership person, click the **Add** (+) icon and then specify the details.

**Note:**

However, if you want to remove a characteristic type from effective date for the membership person, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the field.

6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the membership person are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Membership</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership</a> on page 1692
<b>Membership Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership Information</a> on page 1700
<b>Search for Person</b> screen	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a>
How to define characteristics for a membership person	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Membership - Person</a> on page 1713
How to add a membership person	<a href="#">Adding a Person in a Membership</a> on page 1711
How to delete a membership person	<a href="#">Deleting a Person from Membership</a> on page 1715

**Deleting a Person from Membership****Procedure**

To delete a person from membership:

1. Search for the membership in the **Membership** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the membership whose details you want to delete.

The **Membership Information** screen appears.

3. In the **Membership Person** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the membership person that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete a person from membership.

4. Click **OK**.

The person is deleted from a membership.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Membership</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership</a> on page 1692
<b>Membership Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership Information</a> on page 1700
How to edit the details of the membership	<a href="#">Editing Membership Details of a Person</a> on page 1714
How to define the characteristics for a person associated with the membership	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Membership - Person</a> on page 1713

## **Viewing the Log of a Membership**

### **Procedure**

To view the log of a membership:

1. Search for the membership in the **Membership** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the membership whose details you want to view.

The **Membership Information** screen appears.

3. Click **Log** tab.
4. View the log entries in the **Membership Log** zone.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Membership</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership</a> on page 1692
<b>Membership Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership Information</a> on page 1700
<b>Membership Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Membership Log</a> on page 1709
How to add an entry in a membership log	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for the Membership</a> on page 1716

## **Adding a Log Entry for the Membership**

### **Procedure**

To add a log entry for a membership:

1. Search for the membership in the **Membership** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Information** column corresponding to the membership to which you want to add a log.



The **Membership Information** screen appears.

3. Click **Log** tab.
4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Membership Log** zone.

The **Add Membership Log** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Membership Information	Displays the details of the membership.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify the details of the log.	Yes

5. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Membership Log** zone.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Membership</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership</a> on page 1692
<b>Membership Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Membership Information</a> on page 1700
<b>Membership Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Membership Log</a> on page 1709



---

# Chapter

# 26

---

## Upload Lockbox Payment and Remittance Advices Overview

---

### Topics:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [EDI 820 Flat File Description](#)
- [Sample EDI 820 Flat File](#)
- [Upload EDI 820 Files in ORMB](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to upload lockbox payment and remittance advices received in the **Electronic Data Exchange (EDI) 820** format. Under this feature, the payments made by customers are directed to a special post office box instead of going to the company directly. The bank goes to this post office box, retrieves the payments, processes them and deposits the funds directly into the company's bank account.

An EDI 820 payment order or remittance advice is an electronic document that can be used to initiate payments and send remittance information. EDI 820 sends information to vendor furnishing details of payment for his supplies. A remittance advice is a note sent from a customer to their supplier, informing the supplier that they have paid their invoice. The advice may contain elements such as a text note, the invoice number and the invoice amount, among others. Remittance advice is not required, but they are seen as a courtesy since they make it easier for the supplier to match invoices with payments.

To enable this feature, lockbox payment files are required to be uploaded on ORMB and these files has to be allocated to the appropriate accounts. To support multiple lines of business, the lockbox upload needs to:

- Consider the primary identifier when looking for a source customer number match. For customers having multiple source system identifiers, the lockbox process only matches against the one identified as primary customer.
- Incorporate the payment allocation logic in the system on the basis of which the lockbox uploads the payments for the identified customer.

To support remittances which can split a tender across multiple customers:

- Allow source customer number or tax id to be provided as remittance (RMR) values. In case of multiple source customer number or tax id, remittance values are provided for a single tender, the account associated with the first remittance value is set as the payor account. If there is at least one remittance value where a single customer account cannot be determined, the entire tender is placed into general suspense.
- A new payment upload batch **C1-PUPSG** is developed to read lockbox payment files from the bank and load the payment details into the ORMB payment upload staging tables for processing.
- Once the text file is uploaded, the deposit control staging, tender control staging, and payment upload staging records are created in the respective tables. You can then execute the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch to create the deposit control, tender controls, payment events, tenders,

payments, and payment segments using payment records in the staging area.

**Note:** For more information about the batches, refer to the *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

## Prerequisites

---

To setup the upload lockbox payment process, you need to do the following:

- Define the values in the parameters of the **C1-CCPYTSADS** and **C1-MATSATYP** algorithms.
- Lockbox tender types defined in the **C1\_LBX\_TENDER\_TYPE** lookup field.
- Lockbox record type, lockbox reference identification qualifier, and lockbox remittance identification types defined in the **C1\_LBX\_820\_RECORD\_TYPE**, **C1\_LBX\_REF\_IDQ\_LKP**, and **C1\_LBX\_RMR\_ID\_TYPE** lookup fields respectively.

## EDI 820 Flat File Description

---

Following is the description of the key field segments in the EDI 820 flat file format:

Field Name	Description
External Source ID	Uniquely identifies the lockbox.
External Transmission ID	Uniquely identifies the transmission. To ensure this transmission, the date component (such as, 20150813) should match the deposit date and there should only be one file per deposit date.
External Batch ID	Uniquely identifies the batch of payments in a transmission. To ensure these payments, if there are multiple ST records in a file, the transaction set control number (such as, 0101, 0202, ..) should be unique.

Field Name	Description																										
Payment Transaction	The following table describes the fields that are included in the payment transaction:																										
	<table><tr><th>Field</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>Attributes</td><td>Following are the attributes of payment transaction:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Payment Amount</li><li>• Payment Method</li><li>• Payment Date</li><li>• Payor Name</li></ul></td></tr><tr><td>Reference Records</td><td>Uniquely identifies the transaction. This is retrieved from different reference records based on the payment method. The following table indicates the external reference ID based on the payment methods used in the transaction:<table><tr><th>External Reference ID Value</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ACH</td><td>Use the automated clearinghouse trace number. (Reference Identifier Code is 8G).</td></tr><tr><td>CHK</td><td>Use the transaction reference number. (Reference Identifier Code TN).</td></tr><tr><td>FWT</td><td>Use the FEDWIRE confirmation number. (Reference Identifier Code 8I).</td></tr><tr><td>CAS</td><td>Use the transaction reference number. (Reference Identifier Code TN).</td></tr><tr><td>OBP</td><td>Use the online payment trace number. (Reference Identifier Code 8G).</td></tr></table></td></tr><tr><td>Source Customer Number</td><td>Uniquely identifies the customer. This is retrieved from the internal customer number reference record. (Reference Identifier Code is IT).</td></tr><tr><td>MICR</td><td>Uniquely identifies the MICR. (Reference Identifier Code is MICR)</td></tr><tr><td>Check Number</td><td>Uniquely identifies the check number. (Reference Identifier Code is CK)</td></tr><tr><td>Taxpayer Identification Number</td><td>Uniquely Identifies the taxpayer. (Reference Identifier Code is EI)</td></tr></table>	Field	Description	Attributes	Following are the attributes of payment transaction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Payment Amount</li><li>• Payment Method</li><li>• Payment Date</li><li>• Payor Name</li></ul>	Reference Records	Uniquely identifies the transaction. This is retrieved from different reference records based on the payment method. The following table indicates the external reference ID based on the payment methods used in the transaction: <table><tr><th>External Reference ID Value</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ACH</td><td>Use the automated clearinghouse trace number. (Reference Identifier Code is 8G).</td></tr><tr><td>CHK</td><td>Use the transaction reference number. (Reference Identifier Code TN).</td></tr><tr><td>FWT</td><td>Use the FEDWIRE confirmation number. (Reference Identifier Code 8I).</td></tr><tr><td>CAS</td><td>Use the transaction reference number. (Reference Identifier Code TN).</td></tr><tr><td>OBP</td><td>Use the online payment trace number. (Reference Identifier Code 8G).</td></tr></table>	External Reference ID Value	Description	ACH	Use the automated clearinghouse trace number. (Reference Identifier Code is 8G).	CHK	Use the transaction reference number. (Reference Identifier Code TN).	FWT	Use the FEDWIRE confirmation number. (Reference Identifier Code 8I).	CAS	Use the transaction reference number. (Reference Identifier Code TN).	OBP	Use the online payment trace number. (Reference Identifier Code 8G).	Source Customer Number	Uniquely identifies the customer. This is retrieved from the internal customer number reference record. (Reference Identifier Code is IT).	MICR	Uniquely identifies the MICR. (Reference Identifier Code is MICR)	Check Number	Uniquely identifies the check number. (Reference Identifier Code is CK)	Taxpayer Identification Number	Uniquely Identifies the taxpayer. (Reference Identifier Code is EI)
	Field	Description																									
	Attributes	Following are the attributes of payment transaction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Payment Amount</li><li>• Payment Method</li><li>• Payment Date</li><li>• Payor Name</li></ul>																									
	Reference Records	Uniquely identifies the transaction. This is retrieved from different reference records based on the payment method. The following table indicates the external reference ID based on the payment methods used in the transaction: <table><tr><th>External Reference ID Value</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ACH</td><td>Use the automated clearinghouse trace number. (Reference Identifier Code is 8G).</td></tr><tr><td>CHK</td><td>Use the transaction reference number. (Reference Identifier Code TN).</td></tr><tr><td>FWT</td><td>Use the FEDWIRE confirmation number. (Reference Identifier Code 8I).</td></tr><tr><td>CAS</td><td>Use the transaction reference number. (Reference Identifier Code TN).</td></tr><tr><td>OBP</td><td>Use the online payment trace number. (Reference Identifier Code 8G).</td></tr></table>	External Reference ID Value	Description	ACH	Use the automated clearinghouse trace number. (Reference Identifier Code is 8G).	CHK	Use the transaction reference number. (Reference Identifier Code TN).	FWT	Use the FEDWIRE confirmation number. (Reference Identifier Code 8I).	CAS	Use the transaction reference number. (Reference Identifier Code TN).	OBP	Use the online payment trace number. (Reference Identifier Code 8G).													
	External Reference ID Value	Description																									
	ACH	Use the automated clearinghouse trace number. (Reference Identifier Code is 8G).																									
	CHK	Use the transaction reference number. (Reference Identifier Code TN).																									
	FWT	Use the FEDWIRE confirmation number. (Reference Identifier Code 8I).																									
	CAS	Use the transaction reference number. (Reference Identifier Code TN).																									
OBP	Use the online payment trace number. (Reference Identifier Code 8G).																										
Source Customer Number	Uniquely identifies the customer. This is retrieved from the internal customer number reference record. (Reference Identifier Code is IT).																										
MICR	Uniquely identifies the MICR. (Reference Identifier Code is MICR)																										
Check Number	Uniquely identifies the check number. (Reference Identifier Code is CK)																										
Taxpayer Identification Number	Uniquely Identifies the taxpayer. (Reference Identifier Code is EI)																										

Field Name	Description												
Remittance Advice	<p>he following table describes the fields that are involved in the remittance advice:</p> <table> <tr> <th>Field</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>Attributes</td><td> <p>Following are the attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Invoice Number</li> <li>• Payment Amount</li> </ul> </td></tr> <tr> <td>Reference Records</td><td> <p>Uniquely identifies the remittance advice. The following table indicates the external reference ID based on the payment methods used in the remittance advice:</p> <table> <tr> <th>External Reference ID Value</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>Billing Account ID</td><td>Uniquely identifies the account. (Reference Identifier Code is 12).</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Group ID</td><td>Uniquely identifies the billing group. (Reference Identifier Code is U1).</td></tr> </table> </td></tr> </table>	Field	Description	Attributes	<p>Following are the attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Invoice Number</li> <li>• Payment Amount</li> </ul>	Reference Records	<p>Uniquely identifies the remittance advice. The following table indicates the external reference ID based on the payment methods used in the remittance advice:</p> <table> <tr> <th>External Reference ID Value</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>Billing Account ID</td><td>Uniquely identifies the account. (Reference Identifier Code is 12).</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Group ID</td><td>Uniquely identifies the billing group. (Reference Identifier Code is U1).</td></tr> </table>	External Reference ID Value	Description	Billing Account ID	Uniquely identifies the account. (Reference Identifier Code is 12).	Bill Group ID	Uniquely identifies the billing group. (Reference Identifier Code is U1).
Field	Description												
Attributes	<p>Following are the attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Invoice Number</li> <li>• Payment Amount</li> </ul>												
Reference Records	<p>Uniquely identifies the remittance advice. The following table indicates the external reference ID based on the payment methods used in the remittance advice:</p> <table> <tr> <th>External Reference ID Value</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>Billing Account ID</td><td>Uniquely identifies the account. (Reference Identifier Code is 12).</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bill Group ID</td><td>Uniquely identifies the billing group. (Reference Identifier Code is U1).</td></tr> </table>	External Reference ID Value	Description	Billing Account ID	Uniquely identifies the account. (Reference Identifier Code is 12).	Bill Group ID	Uniquely identifies the billing group. (Reference Identifier Code is U1).						
External Reference ID Value	Description												
Billing Account ID	Uniquely identifies the account. (Reference Identifier Code is 12).												
Bill Group ID	Uniquely identifies the billing group. (Reference Identifier Code is U1).												

You can refer the following sample of EDI 820 flat file for better understanding:

[Sample EDI 820 Flat File](#) on page 1723

## Sample EDI 820 Flat File

Following is the sample of EDI 820 flat file format:

```

ISA*00**00**ZZ*USBANK*ZZ*UHGI*081315*1013*U*00401*000000005*0*P*|~
GS*RA*USBBRSLBX*UHGI*20150813*1013*4*X*004010~
/** This is for a batch of ACH payments, with 2 ACH transactions, each with one remittance advice **/
ST*ACH*000000001~
BPR*D*9135.79*C*ACH*****104791546344*20150813~
REF*8G*0210000210000000~ /** This is the Automated Clearinghouse (ACH) Trace Number
REF*IT*09R7680~ /** This is the Source Customer Number
RMR*IV*117122276200**9135.79~ /** This is the BRMS Invoice ID (from scan line) and the Amount Paid for
the Invoice
BPR*D*40000.79*C*ACH*****104791546344*20150813~
REF*8G*0210000560000000~
REF*IT*0738148~
RMR*IV*117122276200**9135.79~

```

SE\*2\*000000001~/\*\* 2 is the count of BPR records in the set, 000000001 is the control number of the set header  
/\*\* This is for a batch of Check payments, where there are 7 Check transactions \*\*/  
ST\*CHK\*000000002~  
/\*\*\*\*\* 1 check pays 1 invoice \*\*\*\*\*/  
BPR\*D\*40000.00\*C\*CHK\*\*\*\*\*104791546344\*20150813~  
REF\*TN\*7228595404~/\*\* This is the Transaction Reference Number (unique identifier for transaction)  
REF\*IT\*0920193~/\*\* This is the Source Customer Number  
REF\*CK\*7228595~/\*\* This is the Check Number  
REF\*EI\*999999999~/\*\* This is the Taxpayer Identification Number  
REF\*MN\*021000021000123456~/\*\* This is the MICR Number  
RMR\*IV\*877121234200\*\*40000.00~/\*\* This is the BRMS Invoice ID and the Amount Paid for the Invoice  
REF\*12\*8771281929~/\*\* This is the BRMS Account ID  
REF\*U1\*001~/\*\* This is the Account Number, which is Bill Group ID  
/\*\*\*\*\* 2 checks pays 1 invoice (invoice total is \$3600.00) \*\*\*\*\*/  
BPR\*D\*1800.00\*C\*CHK\*\*\*\*\*104791546344\*20150813~  
REF\*TN\*000243404~  
REF\*IT\*0822930~  
REF\*CK\*0000243~  
REF\*MN\*021000021000120000~  
RMR\*IV\*839221223382\*\*1800.00~  
REF\*12\*8392281929~  
REF\*U1\*001~  
BPR\*D\*1800.00\*C\*CHK\*\*\*\*\*104791546344\*20150813~  
REF\*TN\*000244404~  
REF\*IT\*0822930~  
REF\*CK\*0000244~  
REF\*MN\*021000021000120000~  
RMR\*IV\*839221223382\*\*1800.00~  
REF\*12\*8392281929~  
REF\*U1\*001~  
/\*\*\*\*\* 2 checks pays 1 invoice (invoice total is \$3600.00), invoice not fully paid (i.e. 2nd check only for \$1600.00  
\*\*\*\*\*/  
BPR\*D\*1800.00\*C\*CHK\*\*\*\*\*104791546344\*20150813~  
REF\*TN\*003001404~  
REF\*IT\*0522789~  
REF\*CK\*0003001~  
REF\*MN\*021000021000123300~  
RMR\*IV\*972221223382\*\*1800.00~



REF\*12\*9722281929~

REF\*U1\*001~

BPR\*D\*1600.00\*C\*CHK\*\*\*\*\*104791546344\*20150813~

REF\*TN\*003002404~

REF\*IT\*0522789~

REF\*CK\*0003002~

REF\*MN\*021000021000123300~

RMR\*IV\*972221223382\*\*1600.00~

REF\*12\*9722281929~

REF\*U1\*001~

**\*\*\*\*\* 1 check pays 2 invoices belonging to the same account \*\*\*\*\*/**

BPR\*D\*1800.00\*C\*CHK\*\*\*\*\*104791546344\*20150813~

REF\*TN\*1232833404~

REF\*IT\*0334920~

REF\*CK\*1232833~

REF\*MN\*021000021000997649~

RMR\*IV\*345124829323\*\*1000.00~

REF\*12\*3451234181~

REF\*U1\*001~

RMR\*IV\*345121739412\*\*800.00~ REF\*12\*3451234181~

REF\*U1\*001~

**\*\*\*\*\* 1 check pays 2 invoices belonging to different accounts \*\*\*\*\*/**

BPR\*D\*1800.00\*C\*CHK\*\*\*\*\*104791546344\*20150813~

REF\*TN\*8437628404~

REF\*IT\*0239921~

REF\*CK\*8437628~

REF\*MN\*021000021000327643~

RMR\*IV\*049014829321\*\*1000.00~

REF\*12\*0490123444~

REF\*U1\*001~

RMR\*IV\*367121739609\*\*800.00~

REF\*12\*3671234100~

REF\*U1\*001~ SE\*7\*000000002~

**/\*\* 7 is the count of BPR records in the set, 000000002 is the control number of the set header**

**/\*\* This is for a batch of Wire payments, with 1 Wire transaction with one remittance advice \*\*/**

ST\*FWT\*000000003~

BPR\*D\*1500.79\*C\*FWT\*\*\*\*\*104791546344\*20150813~

REF\*8I\*0210000210000999~ **/\*\* This is the FEDWIRE Confirmation Number**

REF\*IT\*072A980~ /\*\* This is the Source Customer Number

SE\*000000001\*000000003~ /\*\* 000000001 is the count of BPR records in the set, 000000003 is the control number of the set header

/\*\* This is for a batch of Cash payments, with 1 Cash transaction with one remittance advice \*\*/

ST\*CAS\*000000004~

BPR\*D\*6000.00\*C\*CAS\*\*\*\*\*104791546344\*20150813~

REF\*TN\*0210000210000888~ /\*\* This is the Transaction Reference Number (unique identifier for transaction)

REF\*IT\*066B987~ /\*\* This is the Source Customer Number

REF\*MN\*021000021077777700~ /\*\* This is the alternative to MICR for Cash Items

RMR\*IV\*234868822762\*\*6000.00~ /\*\* This is the BRMS Invoice ID and the Amount Paid for the Invoice

REF\*12\*2348618887~ /\*\* This is the BRMS Account ID

REF\*U1\*001~ /\*\* This is the Account Number, aka Bill Group ID

SE\*1\*000000004~ /\*\* 1 is the count of BPR records in the set, 000000004 is the control number of the set header

/\*\* This is for a batch of E-Lockbox payments, with 1 E-Lockbox transaction with one remittance advice \*\*/

ST\*OBP\*000000005~

BPR\*D\*3100.00\*C\*OBP\*\*\*\*\*104791546344\*20150813~

N1\*PR\*Company AAA~ /\*\*This is the Customer Name

REF\*8C\*0210000210001111~ /\*\* This is the Online Payment Trace Number

REF\*IT\*09C8780~ /\*\* - Source Customer Number

SE\*1\*000000005~ /\*\* 1 is the count of BPR records in the set, 000000005 is the control number of the set header

GE\*5\*4~ /\*\* 5 is the count of transaction sets (SE) in the group, 4 is the group control number of the group header

IEA\*1\*000000005~

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
EDI 820 flat file format description	<a href="#">EDI 820 Flat File Description</a> on page 1721

## Upload EDI 820 Files in ORMB

A new batch named **Lockbox Payment Upload - Small Group (C1-PUPSG)** is introduced in this release. This batch is used to read the EDI 820 lockbox file received from the bank containing payment details for accounts and uploads the payment details into the ORMB payment upload staging tables. The batch uses the reference ID available in the payment and remittance record (in the specified order) to identify the account in the system:

- Source System Customer Number
- Invoice ID (if the source system customer number is not available)
- MICR (if the source system customer number and invoice ID are not available)

If all three reference IDs are available in the payment and remittance record, the system uses the source system customer number to identify the customer in ORMB. If the customer is found in ORMB, the system then checks whether the identified customer has an account. If the identified customer has one account, the system checks the following:

- If the **Check Binder Payment** parameter in the **Pay Tender Staging Account Distribution - Pay Oldest Bill First (C1-CCPYTSADS)** algorithm is set to Y, the system checks whether the payment is the first payment for

the account and the tender used for the payment is not automatic payment. If so, the payment is applied to the **Binder Payment** contract.

- If the **Check Promise To Pay** parameter in the **Tender Staging Account Distribution - Pay Oldest Bill First (C1-CCPYTSADS)** algorithm is set to **Y**, the system checks whether there is an active promise to pay for the account. If so, the payment is applied to the **On Account** contract.
- If the **Check Payment Agreement** parameter in the **Tender Staging Account Distribution - Pay Oldest Bill First (C1-CCPYTSADS)** algorithm is set to **Y**, the system checks whether there is an active payment agreement request for the account. If so, the payment is applied to the **On Account** contract.

However, if the **Check Binder Payment**, **Check Promise To Pay**, and **Check Payment Agreement** parameters are set to **N**, the payment is applied to the account's open bills in the order of the due date (i.e. oldest bill first). If the payment amount is greater than the account's billed balance plus overpayment threshold amount (defined in the **Tender Staging Account Distribution - Pay Oldest Bill First (C1-CCPYTSADS)** algorithm), the entire amount is applied on the On Account contract. However, if the payment amount is greater than the account's billed balance, but less than account's billed balance plus overpayment threshold amount, the overpayment amount is applied on the On Account contract.

Let us understand this with the help of an example:

Payment Amount	Bill 1 (Due Date 01-Feb-2017)	Bill 2 (Due Date 01-April-2016)	Overpayment Threshold Amount	System Behavior
100	50	50	50	One payment (50\$) is created for Bill 2 (oldest due date); One payment (50\$) is created for Bill 1.
150	50	100	120	One payment (100\$) is created for Bill 2 (oldest due date); One payment (50\$) is created for Bill 1.
175	60	75	50	One payment (75\$) is created for Bill 2 (oldest due date); One payment (60\$) is created for Bill 1; The remaining amount (40\$) is applied on the On Account contract.
200	50	50	50	The entire amount (200\$) is applied on the On Account contract. This is because the payment amount is greater than the account's billed balance plus overpayment threshold amount.

If the identified customer has multiple accounts, then the payment is applied to the On Account contract. If there are no accounts for the identified customer, or account could not be found in ORMB, or the customer could not be found in ORMB, the payment is applied to the suspense contract defined on the tender source associated with the external source (lockbox) ID.

If the source system customer number is not available, but the invoice ID and MICR are available in the payment and remittance record, then batch uses the invoice ID to find the account for which the invoice is created. Once the account is identified, the system behaves in the similar manner (listed above) when the identified customer has one account.

If the source system customer number and invoice ID are not available, but the MICR is available in the payment and remittance record, then system finds the payment where the same MICR is stamped as a characteristic and then finds the account for which the respective payment is created. In this way, the system derives the account for which the payment must be applied. However, the MICR is used to derive the account only when the **Search Customer Using MICR (Y/**

**N**) parameter in the batch is set to **Y**. Once the account is derived, the system behaves in the similar manner (listed above) when the identified customer has one account.

You can upload payment and remittance advice in the TXT format. You need to ensure that the text file is in the required format; otherwise the file will not be uploaded.

Once the text file is uploaded through the **Lockbox Payment Upload - Small Group (C1-PUPSG)** batch, the deposit control staging, tender control staging, and payment upload staging records are created in the respective tables. You can then execute the **Payment Upload (PUPL)** batch to create the deposit control, tender controls, payment events, tenders, payments, and payment segments using payment records in the staging area.

<b>Note:</b> For more information about the batches, refer to the <i>Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide</i> .
--

---

# Chapter

# 27

---

## Deferred Revenue Recognition

---

### Topics:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Deferred Revenue Recognition Status Transition](#)
- [Algorithms Used in Deferred Revenue Recognition](#)
- [Deferred Revenue Recognition Template \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Deferred Revenue Recognition Template \(Used for Viewing\)](#)
- [Deferred Revenue Recognition \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Deferred Revenue Recognition \(Used for Viewing\)](#)

Most often, insurance company bill policies in installments, but Accounts Receivable (AR) and revenue for the total premium are booked as new business in the beginning of the policy term. Regulations, restrictions, or company policies may require that revenue for the total premium must be initially booked to the general ledger as deferred revenue. As time passes, the deferred revenue is realized as earned revenue. For example, the total premium for six months auto-policy (July 1 to Dec 31) is \$1200. When this new business is booked, the revenue of \$1200 is initially booked as deferred revenue. However, on July 31, August 31, September 30, October 31, November 30, and December 31, \$200 must be transferred from deferred revenue GL to earned revenue GL. In order to manage this process, adjustments are created that transfer amount from deferred revenue GL to earned revenue GL.

A deferred revenue recognition schedule determines when these deferred revenue recognition adjustments must be created and posted. On the recognition date, the deferred revenue recognition adjustment is created to transfer a portion of deferred revenue to earned revenue. The corresponding financial transaction does not impact customer's account balance.

You need to create a deferred revenue recognition template for each distribution code and contract type combination for which you want to create a deferred revenue recognition (when the bill segment and adjustment financial transactions created against the respective contracts are frozen). It is the deferred revenue recognition template which helps the system to determine:

- Adjustment type using which the adjustment should be created when the deferred revenue is recognized
- Whether the recognition amount and date in the deferred revenue recognition schedule are editable until recognized
- Whether the deferred revenue recognition schedule must be generated automatically or manually
- Whether the deferred revenue must be recognized daily, weekly, or monthly
- Whether the deferred revenue amount must be prorated when the recognition schedule is set to Monthly
- Algorithm using which the recognition lines in the deferred revenue recognition schedule should be created
- Algorithm using which the adjustment must be generated when the deferred revenue is recognized

During the deferred revenue recognition process, a deferred revenue recognition creation goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. For more information

about the deferred revenue recognition statuses, see [Deferred Revenue Recognition Status Transition](#) on page 1731.

**Note:** The lifecycle of a deferred revenue recognition creation is driven by the respective business object using which the deferred revenue recognition is generated. The deferred revenue recognition feature explained in this document is articulated based on the lifecycle and logic defined in the business objects.

For more information on how to setup the deferred revenue recognition process, see [Prerequisites](#) on page 1731.

## Prerequisites

---

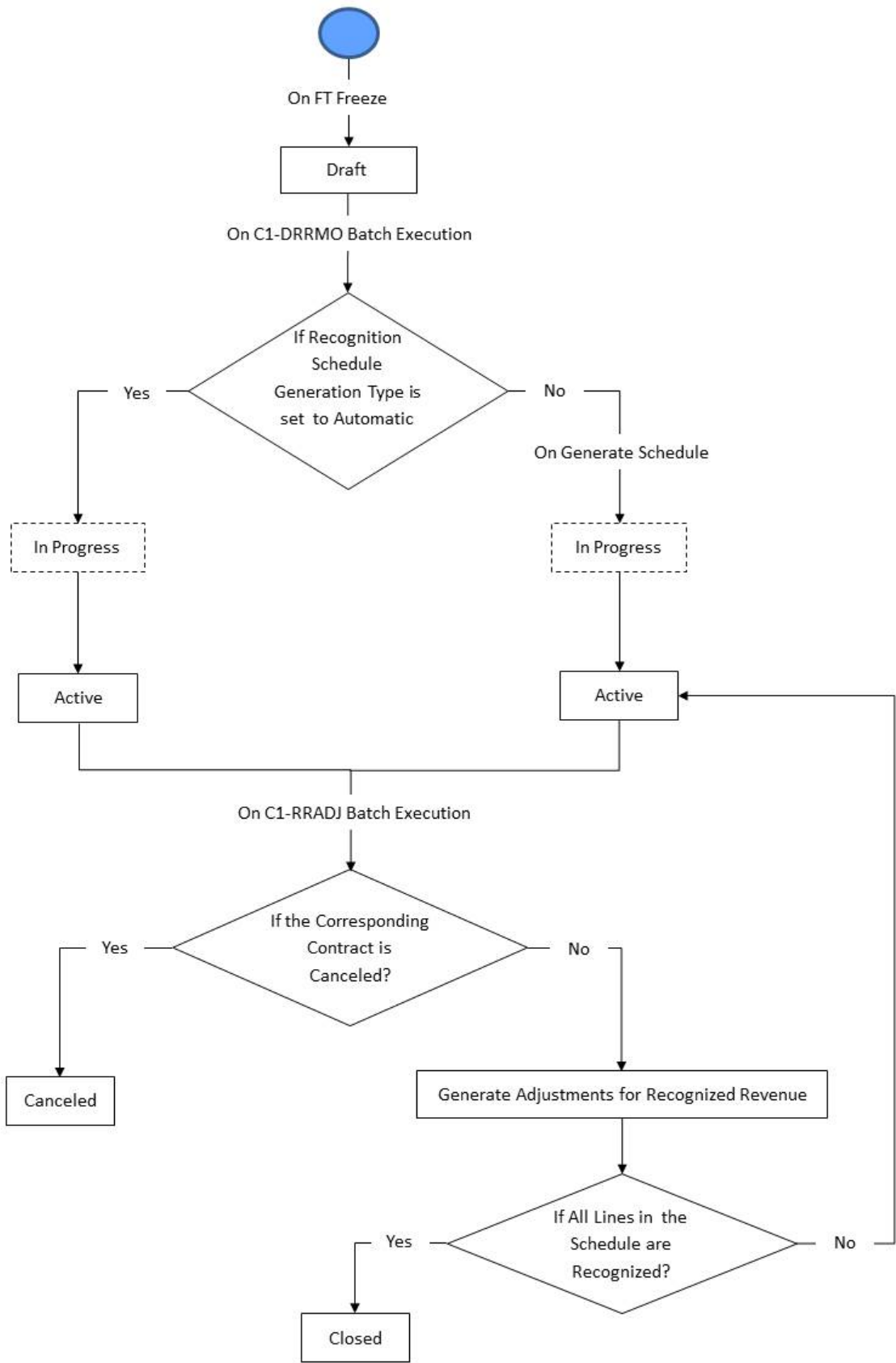
To setup the deferred revenue recognition feature, you need to do the following:

- Define the required deferred revenue recognition templates in the system.
- Define the required characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to **Deferred Revenue Recognition**.
- Define the values for the following parameters in the **C1-REVRECITM** algorithm:
  - Use Calendar or Business Days (C or B)
  - Override Default Recognition Date (Y or N)
  - Override Default Weekly Recognition Day (Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat, Sun)
  - Override Default Monthly Recognition Date (1-31)
- Define the value for the **Use Contract Expiration Date (Y or N)** parameter in the **C1-REVRECSCH** algorithm.
- Define the value for the **Create Adjustments (Y or N)** parameter in the **C1-REVITMREC** algorithm.
- Set the batch control type of the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Periodic Monitor (C1-RRSMO)** batch to **Timed** and define the following attributes:
  - Time Interval
  - Timer Active
  - User ID
  - Batch Language
  - Email Address

## Deferred Revenue Recognition Status Transition

---

The following figure graphically indicates how a deferred revenue recognition status transition moves from one status to another:





## Algorithms Used in Deferred Revenue Recognition

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
		C1-REVRECSCH	C1-REVRECSCH	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the status of the bill segment and adjustment financial transactions created against the contracts (of the contract type to which the algorithm is attached) is set to Frozen. It checks whether an active deferred revenue recognition template exists for the distribution code and contract type combination. If so, it creates a deferred revenue recognition using the template and sets the status of the deferred revenue recognition to Draft. It then checks whether the type of the corresponding financial transaction is Bill Segment or Adjustment. If the type of the corresponding financial transaction is Bill Segment, it sets the valid until date of the deferred revenue recognition to the bill segment end date. However, if the type of the corresponding financial transaction is Adjustment, it checks whether the Use Contract Expiration Date (Y or N) parameter is set to Y or N. If the Use Contract Expiration Date (Y or N) parameter is set to Y, it sets the valid until date of the deferred revenue recognition to the contract expiration date. However, if the Use Contract Expiration Date (Y or N) parameter is set to N, it sets the valid until date of the deferred revenue recognition to the financial transaction arrears date. In addition, on creating the deferred revenue recognition, an appropriate log entry is added which you can view in the Deferred Revenue Recognition Log zone. It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use Contract Expiration Date (Y or N) – Used to indicate whether the valid until date must be set to the contract expiration date when the type of the corresponding financial transaction is Adjustment. The valid values are Y and N. This parameter is mandatory.</li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
		C1-REVRECITM	C1-REVRECITM	<p>This algorithm creates schedule for the deferred revenue recognition. It considers the valid until date and accordingly creates the recognition lines within the schedule. If the recognition schedule is Weekly, by default, the recognition day is set to Mon (which means Monday of each week). However, if the recognition schedule is Monthly, by default, the recognition date is set to the last day of the month (i.e. 28, 29, 30, or 31) It contains the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Use Calendar or Business Days (C or B)</b> - Used to indicate whether you want to use the calendar or business days while generating the recognition schedule. The business days are derived using the work calendar defined on the financial transaction. If you do not specify any value for this parameter, by default, it is set to C. This parameter is mandatory.</li> <li>• <b>Override Default Recognition Date (Y or N)</b> – Used to indicate whether you want to override the default weekly or monthly recognition date. The valid values are Y and N. This parameter is mandatory.</li> <li>• <b>Override Default Weekly Recognition Day (Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat, Sun)</b> – Used to indicate the day of the week when you want to recognize the deferred revenue. The valid values are Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat, and Sun. This parameter is required when you want to override the default weekly recognition day.</li> <li>• <b>Override Default Monthly Recognition Date (1-31)</b> - Used to indicate the day of the month when you want to recognize the deferred revenue. The valid values are 1, 2, 3, ..., 31. This parameter is required when you want to override the default monthly recognition date.</li> </ul>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
		C1-REVRECADJ	C1-REVRECADJ	This algorithm creates deferred revenue recognition adjustment using the adjustment type defined on the respective deferred revenue recognition template. Before creating the deferred revenue recognition adjustment, it checks whether the contract for which the deferred revenue recognition is created is cancelled. If so, the status of the deferred revenue recognition is set to Canceled. If all lines in the recognition schedule are recognized, the status of the deferred revenue recognition is set to Closed.
		C1-REVITMREC	C1-REVITMREC	<p>If this algorithm is attached in the deferred revenue recognition template, it is invoked while executing the C1-RRADJ batch. It contains the following parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Create Adjustments (Y or N)</b> – Used to indicate whether the deferred revenue recognition adjustment must be created or not when the recognition date is earlier than or equal to the batch business date. The valid values are Y and N. This parameter is mandatory.</li> </ul>
		C1-DRRTM-INF	C1-DRRTM-INF	<p>This algorithm generates the deferred revenue recognition template information string which appears throughout the application. It concatenates the following fields separated by a comma in the specified order:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</li> <li>2. Description</li> </ol>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
		C1-DRRTMPVAL	C1-DRRTMPVAL	<p>This algorithm validates the deferred revenue recognition template. It checks the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Whether the data is specified in the mandatory fields, such as Deferred Revenue Recognition Template, Description, Status, Distribution Code, Contract Type, Adjustment Type, Recognition Schedule Generation Type, and Recognition Schedule.</li> <li>Whether an algorithm is attached to the Create Deferred Revenue Recognition Schedule and Generate Deferred Revenue Recognition Adjustment system events.</li> <li>Whether a deferred revenue recognition template already exists for the specified distribution code and contract type combination.</li> <li>Whether special characters except underscore are specified in the Deferred Revenue Recognition Template field.</li> <li>Whether the high proration limit is between 0 to 31 and is greater than the low proration limit.&gt;&gt; Whether the low proration limit is between 0 to 31 and is less than the high proration limit.</li> </ul> <p>In addition, it does not allow you to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delete a deferred revenue recognition template when it is used to create a deferred revenue recognition.</li> <li>Edit a deferred revenue recognition template when the corresponding deferred revenue recognition is in the Draft status.</li> <li>Inactivate a deferred revenue recognition template when the corresponding deferred revenue recognition is not in the Closed status.</li> </ul> <p>You must attach this validation algorithm to the custom business object which is used to create a deferred revenue recognition template. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
		C1-DRRSC-INF	C1-DRRSC-INF	<p>This algorithm generates the deferred revenue recognition information string which appears throughout the application. It concatenates the following fields separated by a comma in the specified order:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</li> <li>2. Deferred Revenue Recognition Status</li> <li>3. Distribution Code</li> <li>4. Deferred Revenue Recognition ID</li> </ol>
		C1-REVMON	C1-REVMON	<p>This algorithm is invoked when the C1-DRRMO batch is executed. It checks whether there are any deferred revenue recognitions in the Draft status. If there is any deferred revenue recognition in the Draft status, it checks whether the recognition schedule generation type in the respective deferred revenue recognition template is set to Automatic or Manual. If the recognition schedule generation type is set to Automatic, the status of the deferred revenue recognition is changed to In Progress. However, if the recognition schedule generation type is set to Manual, the status of the deferred revenue recognition remains as Draft.</p>
		C1-REVRECINP	C1-REVRECINP	<p>This algorithm creates an appropriate log entry when the status of the deferred revenue recognition is changed to In Progress. It invokes the algorithm attached to the Create Deferred Revenue Recognition Schedule system event of the respective deferred revenue recognition template. Once the recognition schedule is successfully created, the status of the deferred revenue recognition is changed to Active.</p>

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
		C1-REVRECACT	C1-REVRECACT	<p>This algorithm transitions the current status to the specified status. You can specify the status to which you want the business object to transition in the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Next Status</li> <li>• Next Transition Condition</li> </ul> <p>At a time, you can specify value for either the <b>Next Status</b> or <b>Next Transition Condition</b> parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle. This algorithm creates an appropriate log entry when the status of the deferred revenue recognition is changed to Active.</p>

## Deferred Revenue Recognition Template (Used for Searching)

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen allows you to search for a deferred revenue recognition template using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Deferred Revenue Recognition Template \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1746

This screen consists of the following zone:

- [Search Deferred Revenue Recognition Template](#) on page 1738

## Search Deferred Revenue Recognition Template

The **Search Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** zone allows you to search for a deferred revenue recognition template using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Deferred Revenue Recognition Template	Used to search the basic information about the deferred revenue recognition template.	Yes
Description	Used to search the description of the deferred revenue recognition template.	No
Recognition Schedule	Used to search deferred revenue recognition with a particular schedule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Daily</li> <li>• Monthly</li> <li>• Weekly</li> </ul>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the deferred revenue recognition template with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a deferred revenue recognition template.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Deferred Revenue Recognition Template	Displays the deferred revenue recognition.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective deferred revenue recognition template.
Distribution Code	Indicates the distribution code associated with the rate component.
Contract Type	Displays the contract which is generated against a particular type of contract.
Recognition Schedule	Displays the schedule when the deferred revenue is recognized.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Viewing the Deferred Revenue Recognition Template Details</a> on page 1745
How to search for a deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1739

## Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template

### Prerequisites

To search for a deferred revenue recognition template, you should have:

- Deferred revenue recognition template defined in the system.
- Deferred Revenue Recognition Schedule defined in the system.

### Procedure

To search for a deferred revenue recognition template:

1. Click the **Admin** menu in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **D** and then click **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template**.  
The **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen appears.
3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of deferred revenue recognition templates that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> screen	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1738
<b>Search Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1738

**Defining a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template**

**Prerequisites**

To define a deferred revenue recognition template, you should have:

- Contract types defined in the system

**Procedure**

To define a deferred revenue recognition template:

- Click the **Admin** menu in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

- From the **Admin** menu, select **D** and then click **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template**.

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen appears.

- Click the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen.

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** – Used to specify basic details about the deferred revenue recognition template.
- Parameters** – Used to specify the various parameters for the deferred revenue recognition template.
- Algorithms** – Used to associate algorithms with the deferred revenue recognition template.
- Divisions** – Used to associate a deferred revenue recognition template with a division.
- Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the deferred revenue recognition template.




The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Deferred Revenue Recognition Template	Used to specify the deferred revenue recognition template.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description of the deferred revenue recognition template.	No



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the status of the deferred revenue recognition template. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes

The **Parameters** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Distribution Code	Used to indicate the distribution code associated with the deferred revenue recognition.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Distribution Code Search</b> window appears.	Yes
Contract Type	Used to indicate a particular type of contract.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Contract Type Search</b> window appears.	Yes
Adjustment Type	Used to indicate the adjustment type using which the adjustment must be created.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.	No
Allow Editing	Used to allow editing of recognition schedule.	No
Generation Type	Used to indicate the type of deferred revenue recognition generation. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Automatic</li> <li>Manual</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
Recognition Schedule	Used to indicate the schedule of deferred revenue recognition generation. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Daily</li> <li>Monthly</li> <li>Weekly</li> </ul>	Yes
Allow Proration	Used to allow proration.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Allow Proration</b> field appears only when you select <b>Recognition Schedule</b> as <b>Monthly</b> .	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
High Proration Limit (Days)	Used to specify whether deferred revenue amount must be prorated while revenue recognition. If the number of days from when the policy is enrolled to the end of the month (in which it is enrolled) is greater than the specified limit, then the amount is prorated.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you check the tick-box for <b>Allow Proration</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required only when the recognition schedule is selected as monthly and when the <b>Allow Proration</b> check box is selected.
Low Proration Limit (Days)	Used to specify whether deferred revenue amount must be prorated while revenue recognition. If the number of days from when the policy is enrolled to the end of the month (in which it is enrolled) is less than the specified limit, then the amount is prorated.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you check the tick-box for <b>Allow Proration</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required only when the recognition schedule is selected as monthly and when the <b>Allow Proration</b> check box is selected.

- Enter the required details.
- Associate algorithms with the deferred revenue recognition template, if required.
- View the division to which the deferred revenue recognition template is associated in the **Divisions** section.
- Define the characteristics specific to division to which the deferred revenue recognition template is associated in the **Characteristics** section.
- Click **Save**.

The deferred revenue recognition template is created.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> screen	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1738
How to associate algorithms with the deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1742

## Associating Algorithms with a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template


### Procedure


To associate algorithms with a deferred revenue recognition template:


- Ensure that the **Algorithms** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a deferred revenue recognition template.

The **Algorithms** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
System Event	Used to indicate the system event for an algorithm.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to specify the sequence number.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	
Algorithm	Used to associate an algorithm to the system event that you have selected.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the algorithm for a system event, the description of the algorithm appears corresponding to the <b>Algorithm</b> field.	

- Enter the required details in the **Algorithms** section.
- If you want to define more than one algorithm for the deferred revenue recognition template, click the **Add**  icon, and then repeat 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove an algorithm from the deferred revenue recognition template, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the algorithm.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Defining a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1740
How to edit a deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Editing a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1748

## Associating Deferred Revenue Recognition Template With A Division

### Prerequisites

To associate deferred revenue recognition template with a division, you should have:

- Divisions defined in the application

### Procedure

To associate deferred revenue recognition template with a division:

- Ensure that the **Divisions** section is expanded when you are creating or editing a deferred revenue recognition template.

The **Divisions** section appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Division	Used to indicate the division to which you want to associate the deferred revenue recognition template.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You can only view those divisions to which you have access in the <b>Division</b> list.	

- Select the required division from the list.
- If you want to associate the deferred revenue recognition template with more than one division, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove the deferred revenue recognition template from a division, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the division.

- Click **Save**.

The deferred revenue recognition template is associated with the divisions.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Editing a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1748
How to define a deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Defining a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1740

**Defining Characteristics for a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template**

**Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a deferred revenue recognition template, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template**)

**Procedure**

To define characteristics for a deferred revenue recognition template:

- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a deferred revenue recognition template.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the deferred revenue recognition template.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Valued</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the deferred revenue recognition template.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the deferred revenue recognition template, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the deferred revenue recognition template, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Editing a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1748
How to define a deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Defining a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1740

## Viewing the Deferred Revenue Recognition Template Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a deferred revenue recognition template:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **D** and then click **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template**.  
The **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen appears.
- Search for the deferred revenue recognition template in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** column corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition template whose details you want to view.  
The **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen appears.
- View the details of the deferred revenue recognition template in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> screen	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition Template (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1738
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> zone	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1746
How to search for a deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1739

## Deferred Revenue Recognition Template (Used for Viewing)

Once the deferred revenue recognition templates are created, the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen allows you to:

- Generate the deferred revenue recognition schedule
- View the details of a deferred revenue recognition template
- Edit a deferred revenue recognition template
- Delete a deferred revenue recognition template

This screen consists of the following zone:

- [Deferred Revenue Recognition Template](#) on page 1746

## Deferred Revenue Recognition Template

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** zone displays the details of the deferred revenue recognition template. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic information about the deferred revenue recognition template. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Deferred Revenue Recognition Template	Displays the deferred revenue recognition template
Description	Used to specify the description of the deferred revenue recognition template
Status	Used to indicate the status of the deferred revenue recognition template. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>

- **Parameters** – Displays the parameters used in the deferred revenue recognition template.

Field Name	Field Description
Distribution Code	Indicates the distribution code.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Distribution Code</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective distribution code.
Contract Type	Displays the <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> which are generated against a particular type of contract.
Adjustment Type	Indicates the adjustment type using which the adjustment must be created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective adjustment type.

Field Name	Field Description
Generation Type	Displays the type of deferred revenue recognition template. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manual</li> <li>Automatic</li> </ul>
Allow Editing	Indicates the editing of recognition schedule.
Recognition Schedule	Indicates the schedule when the deferred revenue is recognized. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Daily</li> <li>Monthly</li> <li>Weekly</li> </ul>
Allow Proration	Used to allow proration.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Allow Proration</b> field appears only when you select <b>Recognition Schedule</b> as <b>Monthly</b> .
High Proration Limit (Days)	Displays whether deferred revenue amount must be prorated while revenue recognition. If the number of days from when the policy is enrolled to the end of the month (in which it is enrolled) is greater than the specified limit, then the amount is prorated.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you check the tick-box for <b>Allow Proration</b> .
Low Proration Limit (Days)	Displays whether deferred revenue amount must be prorated while revenue recognition. If the number of days from when the policy is enrolled to the end of the month (in which it is enrolled) is less than the specified limit, then the amount is prorated.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you check the tick-box for <b>Allow Proration</b> .

- **Divisions** – Displays the associated deferred revenue recognition template with one or more divisions. It contains the following column:

Column Name	Column Description
Division	Displays the division to which you want to associate the deferred revenue recognition template.

- **Algorithms** – Lists the algorithms associated with the deferred revenue recognition template. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
System Event	Indicates the system event on which the algorithm must be executed	No
Sequence	Displays the sequence number.	No

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Algorithm	Displays an algorithm that needs to be attached to the selected system event.	No
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Algorithm</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective algorithm.	

- **Characteristics** – Lists the characteristics defined for the deferred revenue recognition template. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Displays the characteristic type.
Characteristic Type	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to define, edit, and remove algorithms of the deferred revenue recognition template.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the deferred revenue recognition template is in the <b>Active</b> status.
Delete	Used to delete the deferred revenue recognition template.

- 
- **Record Information** – This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the deferred revenue recognition template is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

## Editing a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template

### Procedure

To edit a deferred revenue recognition template:

1. Search for the deferred revenue recognition template in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** column corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition template whose details you want to edit.

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen appears.

3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** zone.

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen appears.



**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the deferred revenue recognition template is in the **Active** status.

4. Associate, edit, or remove algorithms from the deferred revenue recognition template, if required.
5. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the deferred revenue recognition template, if required.
6. Associate deferred revenue recognition template with a division, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the deferred revenue recognition template are saved.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> screen	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition Template (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1746
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> zone	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1746
How to search for a deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1739
How to associate algorithms with a deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1742

## Deleting a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template

### Procedure

To delete a deferred revenue recognition template:

1. Search for the deferred revenue recognition template in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** column corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition template that you want to delete.

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Template** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the deferred revenue recognition template.

4. Click **OK**.

The deferred revenue recognition template is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> screen	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition Template (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1746
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> zone	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1746
How to search for a deferred revenue recognition template	<a href="#">Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</a> on page 1739

## Deferred Revenue Recognition (Used for Searching)

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen allows you to search for a deferred revenue recognition using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Deferred Revenue Recognition \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1755

This screen consists of the following zone:

- [Search Deferred Revenue Recognition](#) on page 1750

## Search Deferred Revenue Recognition

The **Search Deferred Revenue Recognition** zone allows you to search for a deferred revenue recognition using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a deferred revenue recognition using the deferred revenue recognition, person, account, or policy details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account Details</li> <li>• Person Details</li> <li>• Deferred Revenue Recognition Details</li> <li>• Financial Transaction Details</li> <li>• Policy Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Account Details</b> option is selected.	
Person ID	Used to search deferred revenue recognition which are assigned to a particular person.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account ID	Used to search the account ID.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search deferred revenue recognition through which the person's record is created or updated in the system.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> If you specify the person identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the person identifier type.
Person Identifier	Used to specify the value for the person identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> If you specify the person identifier type as a search criteria, you have to specify the person identifier.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type of the account whose details you want to search.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you specify the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value of the account identifier.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to specify the account identifier.
Contract ID	Used to specify the contract ID linked to the account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Hierarchy	Used to indicate whether to display hierarchy of the person linked to a particular bill.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Status	Used to search deferred revenue recognition with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Closed</li> <li>• Canceled</li> <li>• Draft</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Details</b> , <b>Account Details</b> , or <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Deferred Revenue Recognition Template	Used to indicate the template used for deferred revenue recognition.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Details</b> , <b>Account Details</b> , or <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Valid Until Date	Used to specify the date till which the deferred revenue recognition is valid.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Person Details</b> or <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Deferred Revenue Recognition ID	Used to search a particular deferred revenue recognition	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Description	Used to specify the description of the deferred revenue recognition.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Recognition Schedule	Used to search deferred revenue recognition with a particular schedule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Daily</li> <li>• Monthly</li> <li>• Weekly</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Financial Transaction ID	Used to search deferred revenue recognition which are assigned to a particular financial transaction.	
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Financial Transaction Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Policy Type	Used to indicate the type of policy.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Policy Number	Used to indicate the policy number.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Plan Number	Used to indicate the plan number of the policy.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Source System	Used to indicate the name of the external system from where the policy originated.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Start Date	Used to indicate the date from when the policy is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
End Date	Used to indicate the date till when the policy is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Policy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a deferred revenue recognition.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Deferred Revenue Recognition Information	Displays information about the deferred revenue recognition.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective deferred revenue recognition.
Contract Information	Displays the basic information about the contract corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition. In addition, this column has a context menu which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Contract</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective contract.
Financial Transaction Information	Displays the basic information about the financial transaction corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Financial Transaction</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective financial transaction.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Viewing the Deferred Revenue Recognition Details</a> on page 1754
How to search for a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1754

## Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition

### Prerequisites

To search for a deferred revenue recognition, you should have:

- Deferred Revenue Recognition Template defined in the application.
- Person identifier types defined in the application
- Account identifier types defined in the application
- Recognition Schedules defined in the application
- Source Systems defined in the application

### Procedure

To search for a deferred revenue recognition:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Deferred Revenue Recognition**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Deferred Revenue Recognition** sub-menu.  
The **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Deferred Revenue Recognition** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.  
A list of deferred revenue recognition that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Deferred Revenue Recognition screen	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1749
Search Deferred Revenue Recognition zone	<a href="#">Search Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1750

## Viewing the Deferred Revenue Recognition Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a deferred revenue recognition:

1. Search for the deferred revenue recognition in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Information** column corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition whose details you want to view.

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- [Deferred Revenue Recognition - Main](#) on page 1755

- [Deferred Revenue Recognition - Log](#) on page 1758
3. Ensure that the **Main** tab is selected.
  4. View the details of the deferred revenue recognition in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition</b> screen	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1755
<b>Search Deferred Revenue Recognition</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1750
How to search for a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1754

## Deferred Revenue Recognition (Used for Viewing)

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen allows you to:

- View the details of a deferred revenue recognition
- Edit a deferred revenue recognition
- Generate the deferred revenue recognition schedule
- Add related deferred revenue recognitions
- Edit the details of a deferred revenue recognition schedule
- View the log of a deferred revenue recognition
- Add a log entry for a deferred revenue recognition

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- [Deferred Revenue Recognition - Main](#) on page 1755
- [Deferred Revenue Recognition - Log](#) on page 1758

### Deferred Revenue Recognition - Main

The **Main** tab displays information about the deferred revenue recognition. It contains the following zones:

- [Deferred Revenue Recognition](#) on page 1755
- [Associated Deferred Revenue Recognitions](#) on page 1757
- [Recognition Schedule](#) on page 1758
- [Revenue Recognition Items](#) on page 1758

#### Deferred Revenue Recognition

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition** zone displays the details of the deferred revenue recognition. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic information about the deferred revenue recognition. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Deferred Revenue Recognition Information	Displays information about the deferred revenue recognition.

Field Name	Field Description
Deferred Revenue Recognition Template Information	Displays information about the deferred revenue recognition template.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the deferred revenue recognition template.
Distribution Code	Displays the distribution code which indicates the template associated with the deferred revenue recognition.
Financial Transaction Information	Displays the basic information about the financial transaction corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Financial Transaction Information</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the financial transaction.
Total Revenue Deferred	Displays the total revenue deferred.
Total Revenue Recognized	Displays the total revenue recognized.
Status	Indicates the status of the deferred revenue recognition. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Closed</li> <li>• Canceled</li> <li>• Draft</li> </ul>

- **Related Deferred Revenue Recognitions** - Lists the related deferred revenue recognitions. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Deferred Revenue Recognition Information	Displays the basic information of the related Deferred Revenue Recognition Schedules (i.e. DRR Schedule of the BS/AD, corresponding to the BX/AX)
Create Date Time	Displays the date and time when the deferred revenue recognition is created.
Financial Transaction Information	Displays the basic information about the financial transaction corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition.

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to define, edit and remove characteristics, related deferred revenue recognitions of the deferred revenue recognition.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the deferred revenue recognition is in the <b>Active</b> status.



Button Name	Button Description
Generate Schedule	Used to generate the deferred revenue recognition schedule.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Generate Schedule</b> button appears only when the deferred revenue recognition is in the <b>Draft</b> status.

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the deferred revenue recognition is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Create Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the deferred revenue recognition schedule is created.
Status Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the deferred revenue recognition status is updated.

- **Characteristics** – Lists the characteristics defined for the deferred revenue recognition. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the deferred revenue recognition.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

### Associated Deferred Revenue Recognitions

The **Associated Deferred Revenue Recognitions** zone Displays the basic information of the other schedules linked to the same **FT** having a separate **Schedule** due to the different **Distribution Code**. Purpose of this section is to show all the associated **Schedules** generated for a single **FT**. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Deferred Revenue Recognition Information	Displays information about the deferred revenue recognition.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the deferred revenue recognition.
Financial Transaction Information	Displays the basic information about the financial transaction corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Financial Transaction</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective deferred revenue recognition.
Distribution Code	Displays the distribution code which indicates the template associated with the deferred revenue recognitions.

Column Name	Column Description
Deferred Revenue Recognition Template Information	Displays information about the deferred revenue recognition template.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Template</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the deferred revenue recognition template.
Status	Indicates the status of the associated deferred revenue recognition. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Closed</li> <li>• Canceled</li> </ul>

### Recognition Schedule

The **Recognition Schedule** zone lists the adjustment information and the recognition amount of the deferred revenue recognition. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Recognition Date	Displays the date on which the recognition is scheduled.
Recognition Amount	Displays the amount of the recognition scheduled.
Adjustment Information	Displays information about the adjustments in recognition schedule.

This zone contains the **Edit** button. It is used to edit the details of recognition schedule

**Note:** This zone appears when the deferred revenue recognition is in the **Active** status.

### Revenue Recognition Items

The **Revenue Recognition Items** zone displays the adjustment information about the recognition items. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Recognition Date	Displays the date on which the recognition is scheduled.
Recognition Amount	Displays the amount of the recognition scheduled.
Adjustment Information	Displays information about the adjustments in recognition schedule. “
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the deferred revenue recognition.

## Deferred Revenue Recognition - Log

The **Log** tab contains the following zone:

- [Deferred Revenue Recognition Log](#) on page 1758

### Deferred Revenue Recognition Log

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition Log** zone lists the complete trail of actions performed on the deferred revenue recognition. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the deferred revenue recognition
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the deferred revenue recognition
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the deferred revenue recognition
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is created when the action is performed on the deferred revenue recognition.
	<b>Note:</b> At present, no data appears in this column. The implementation team can build the custom logic to meet the business requirements.
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the status of the deferred revenue recognition is changed.
	<b>Note:</b> At present, no data appears in this column. The implementation team can build the custom logic to meet the business requirements.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the deferred revenue recognition by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Log** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1763
How to add a log entry for a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1764

## Editing a Deferred Revenue Recognition

### Procedure

To edit a deferred revenue recognition:

1. Search for the deferred revenue recognition in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Information** column \orresponding to the deferred revenue recognition whose details you want to edit.  
The **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen appears.
3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition** zone.  
The **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen appears.

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the deferred revenue recognition is in the **Active** status.

4. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
5. Define, edit, or remove related deferred revenue recognitions from the deferred revenue recognition, if required.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the deferred revenue recognition, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the deferred revenue recognition are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition</b> screen	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1755
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition</b> zone	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1755
How to search for a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1754
How to add related deferred revenue recognitions	<a href="#">Adding Related Deferred Revenue Recognitions</a> on page 1761
How to define the characteristics for a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1760

**Creating the Deferred Revenue Recognition Schedule****Prerequisites**

To create the deferred revenue recognition schedule, you should have:

- Should have **Revenue Recognition Schedule Creation Algorithm** attached in the **DRR Template**

**Procedure**

To create the deferred revenue recognition schedule:

1. Search for the deferred revenue recognition in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Information** column corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition whose recognition schedule you want to generate.

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen appears.

3. Click the **Generate Schedule** button in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition** zone.

**Note:** The **Generate Schedule** button appears only when the deferred revenue recognition is in the **Draft** status.

The status of the deferred revenue recognition is changed to **Active**.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition</b> screen	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1755
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition</b> zone	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1755
How to search for a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1754

**Defining Characteristics for a Deferred Revenue Recognition****Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a deferred revenue recognition, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Deferred Revenue Recognition**)

**Procedure**


To define characteristics for a deferred revenue recognition:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are editing a deferred revenue recognition.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the deferred revenue recognition.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the deferred revenue recognition.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition</b> .	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the deferred revenue recognition.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the deferred revenue recognition.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

**Note:** If you select a characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a characteristic value.

- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the deferred revenue recognition, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the deferred revenue recognition, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Editing a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1759

## Adding Related Deferred Revenue Recognitions

### Prerequisites

To add related deferred revenue recognitions, you should have:



- Deferred revenue recognition template defined in the system.


### Procedure


To add related deferred revenue recognitions:

- Ensure that the **Related Deferred Revenue Recognitions** section is expanded when you are editing a deferred revenue recognition.

The **Related Deferred Revenue Recognitions** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Deferred Revenue Recognition ID	Used to specify the ID of the deferred revenue recognition.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Search</b> window appears.	
Create Date Time	Used to indicate the creation date and time of the deferred revenue recognition.	Yes
Financial Transaction ID	Used to specify the ID of the financial transaction corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Financial Transactions Search</b> window appears.	

- Enter the required details in the **Related Deferred Revenue Recognitions** section.
- If you want to add more than one related deferred revenue recognition for the deferred revenue recognition, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a related deferred revenue recognition from the deferred revenue recognition, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the related deferred revenue recognition.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Editing a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1759

## Editing the Deferred Revenue Recognition Schedule Details

### Prerequisites

To edit the details of the deferred revenue recognition schedule, you should have:

- Should have **Allow Editing Switch** as **Yes** on deferred revenue recognition template.

### Procedure

To edit the details of the deferred revenue recognition schedule:

- Search for the deferred revenue recognition in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Information** column corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition whose deferred revenue recognition schedule details you want to edit.

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen appears.

- Select the recognition whose details you want to edit in the **Recognition Schedule** zone and click the **Edit** button available in the upper left corner above the table in this zone.

The **Edit Recognition Schedule** screen appears.

**Note:** A recognition schedule from the deferred revenue recognition can be edited only when the deferred revenue recognition is in the **Active** status.

The **Edit Recognition Schedule** screen contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Deferred Revenue Recognition Information	Displays the information about the deferred revenue recognition.
Financial Transaction Information	Displays the information of the financial transaction corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition.

In addition to these fields, this screen contains following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Recognition Date	Used to display the date on which the deferred revenue is recognized.	Yes
Recognition Amount	Used to display the amount of the deferred revenue.	Yes
Adjustment ID	Used to display the adjustment id.	Not applicable

- Modify the details of the recognition schedule.
- If you want to define more than one recognition schedule for the deferred revenue recognition, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 4.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a recognition schedule from the deferred revenue recognition, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the recognition schedule.

- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the recognition schedule are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Recognition Schedule</b> zone	<a href="#">Recognition Schedule</a> on page 1758
How to search for a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1754

## Viewing the Log of a Deferred Revenue Recognition

### Procedure

To view the log of a deferred revenue recognition:

- Search for the deferred revenue recognition in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Information** column corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition whose log you want to view.

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- [Deferred Revenue Recognition - Main](#) on page 1755
- [Deferred Revenue Recognition - Log](#) on page 1758

- Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. View the complete trail of actions performed on the deferred revenue recognition in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Log** zone.

Column Name	Column Description
Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the dispute request.
Details	Displays the details about the deferred revenue recognition log
User	Indicates the user who has performed deferred revenue recognition
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the deferred revenue recognition
Status Reason	Displays the status reason of action performed on the deferred revenue recognition

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Deferred Revenue Recognition Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition Log</a> on page 1758
How to search for a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1754
How to add a log entry for a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1764

**Adding a Log Entry for a Deferred Revenue Recognition**

**Procedure**

To add a log entry for a deferred revenue recognition:

1. Search for the deferred revenue recognition in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Information** column corresponding to the deferred revenue recognition whose log you want to edit.

The **Deferred Revenue Recognition** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:.

- [Deferred Revenue Recognition - Main](#) on page 1755
- [Deferred Revenue Recognition - Log](#) on page 1758

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. Click on the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Log** zone.

The **Add Deferred Revenue Recognition Schedule Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes Or No)
Deferred Revenue Recognition Information	Displays information about the deferred revenue recognition.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the deferred revenue recognition.	Yes

5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.



**6. Click Save.**

The log entry is added in the **Deferred Revenue Recognition Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Deferred Revenue Recognition Log zone	<a href="#">Deferred Revenue Recognition Log</a> on page 1758
How to search for a deferred revenue recognition	<a href="#">Searching for a Deferred Revenue Recognition</a> on page 1754



---

# Chapter

# 28

---

## Reconciliation

---

### Topics:

- [Reconciliation Status Transition](#)
- [Pay Instruction Status Transition](#)
- [Discrepancy Report Status Transition](#)
- [EDI 820 File Format For Reconciliation](#)
- [Sample EDI 820 File Format](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-MemberReconType](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-MemberReconciliation](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-PayInstruction](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-MemberDiscReportType](#)
- [Algorithms Used in C1-DiscrepancyReport](#)
- [Reconciliation Type](#)
- [Reconciliation \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Reconciliation \(Used for Viewing\)](#)
- [Pay Instruction](#)
- [Discrepancy Report Type](#)
- [Discrepancy Report \(Used for Searching\)](#)
- [Discrepancy Report \(Used for Viewing\)](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to reconcile pay instructions received from the external system against the bill segments based on the account identifier, policy number, plan number, member identifier, and coverage period combination. The system enables you to upload a pay instruction file in the following formats:

- **CSV File Format** – You can upload pay instruction files in the CSV format from the specified location on the server using the **Pay Instruction CSV File Upload (C1-RECUP)** batch.
- **EDI 820 File Format** – You can upload pay instruction files in the EDI 820 file format from the specified location on the server using the **Upload Lockbox Payment and Pay Instruction Files (C1-PUPSG)** batch.

**Note:** The **BPR** tag in the EDI 820 file must be set to **I** to indicate that the file contains pay instructions for reconciliation.

While uploading pay instruction files, you need to specify the reconciliation type using which you want to create the reconciliation. A reconciliation type indicates the algorithm which validates the pay instruction file and creates a pay instruction for each record in the file. Two algorithm types named **C1-PAYINSUPL** and **C1-RECONPROC** are shipped with the product. You need to maintain separate reconciliation types for different file formats. If you want to use a reconciliation type while uploading a pay instruction file in the CSV format, you need to create an algorithm using the **C1-PAYINSUPL** algorithm type and attach it to the reconciliation type. However, if you want to use a reconciliation type while uploading a pay instruction file in the EDI 820 format, you need to create an algorithm using the **C1-RECONPROC** algorithm type and attach it to the reconciliation type.

Once a file is successfully validated, the reconciliation is created for the file in the **Draft** status. The reconciliation is immediately transitioned to the **Send Notification** status and the algorithms attached to the Send Notification status are executed. Once the To Do is created, the status of the reconciliation is changed to **Pending**. A pay instruction is created for each record in the file and its status is set to either **Pending** or **Error** depending on whether it is successfully validated or not.

You need to then specify the payment ID against which you want to reconcile the billed items for which you have received the pay instructions. Once you specify the payment information and submit the pay instructions for reconciliation, the payment amount is distributed against the reconciliation contract of the accounts for which you have received the pay instruction. The status of the reconciliation is changed to **Pending Reconciliation**.

On reconciling the pay instructions, the system finds the bill segment against which the pay instruction must be reconciled using the account identifier, policy

number, plan number, member identifier, and coverage period combination. Once the bill segment is identified, the transfer adjustment is created against the bill segment and offset adjustment is created against the respective reconciliation contract. If all pay instructions in the file are successfully reconciled, the status of the reconciliation is changed to **Completed**. However, if one or more pay instruction in the file could not be successfully reconciled, the status of the reconciliation is changed to **Open**. If a file contains a pay instruction for previous coverage period, then system checks whether there is any open pay instruction for that coverage period in the system and accordingly tries to reconcile the pay instruction. However, if an open pay instruction for that coverage period does not exist in the system, the system tries to reconcile the pay instruction against the billed item.

You may manually reconcile the pay instructions which are in the **Pending Reconciliation** status. Alternatively, you can execute the **Reconciliation Periodic Monitor (C1-RCNM)** batch at regular interval to reconcile the pay instructions.

During reconciliation, a pay instruction also goes through various statuses in its lifecycle. You may configure the following two batches to execute at the regular intervals:

- **Pay Instruction Periodic Monitor (for Pending Status) (C1-PIPMO)** – It monitors whether there are any pay instructions in the **Pending** status. If so, it tries to reconcile the pay instruction against a billed item. If the pay instruction is successfully reconciled, the status of the pay instruction is changed to **Completed**. However, if the pay instruction could not be reconciled, the status of the pay instruction is changed to **Open**.
- **Pay Instruction Periodic Monitor (for Open Status) (C1-PIMDF)** – It monitors whether there are any pay instructions in the **Open** status. If so, it tries to reconcile the pay instruction against a billed item. If the pay instruction is successfully reconciled, the status of the pay instruction is changed to **Completed**. However, if the pay instruction could not be reconciled, the status of the pay instruction is changed to **Open**.

If you cancel the payment tender, the payment and reconciliation associated with the payment are automatically canceled. The status of the reconciliation is changed to **Pending Cancellation**. And, the status of all pay instructions in the reconciliation is changed to **Canceled**. If required, you can manually cancel a reconciliation. However, you can cancel a reconciliation only when it is in the **Open** or **Completed** status. On canceling a reconciliation, the status of the reconciliation is changed to **Pending Cancellation** and the status of all pay instructions in the reconciliation is changed to **Canceled**.

You need to configure the **Reconciliation Cancellation Periodic Monitor (C1-RCNMD)** batch to execute at the regular intervals. It monitors whether there are reconciliations in the **Pending Cancellation** status. If there is a reconciliation in the **Pending Cancellation** status, the status of the reconciliation is changed to **Canceled**.

The system enables you to create a copy of reconciliation when it is in the **Canceled** status. If the number of pay instructions in the reconciliation does not exceed the value specified in the **Defer Processing Count** option type of the **C1-RECDUPBH** feature configuration, a copy of the reconciliation and pay instructions is created in the real time (i.e. immediately). The status of the reconciliation is set to **Pending**. And, the status of the pay instruction is set to either **Pending** or **Error** depending on whether it is successfully validated or not.

However, if the number of pay instructions in the reconciliation exceeds the value specified in the **Defer Processing Count** option type of the **C1-RECDUPBH** feature configuration, a batch job is automatically created using the **Duplicate Reconciliation (C1-RECDU)** batch. A message appears indicating the batch job ID. This batch job creates a copy of the reconciliation and pay instructions. The status of the reconciliation is set to **Pending**. And, the status of the pay instruction is set to either **Pending** or **Error** depending on whether it is successfully validated or not.

If the policy number, plan number, and member identifier are specified in a pay instruction, then the pay instruction is reconciled at the main subscriber level. If the policy number and plan number are specified in a pay instruction, then the pay instruction is reconciled at the plan level. However, if the policy number is only specified in a pay instruction, then the pay instruction is reconciled at the policy level.

On reconciling, some pay instructions are fully reconciled against the bill segments, some pay instructions are partially reconciled against the bill segments, and some pay instructions are not reconciled against any bill segments. The system enables you to capture such discrepancies for the reporting purposes. If required, you can generate the discrepancy report at the file or account level. If you generate the discrepancy report at the file level, the system lists the following:

- All pay instructions in the file which were partially reconciled due to rate variance
- All pay instructions in the file which could not be reconciled as the amount was paid, but not yet billed

However, if you generate the discrepancy report at the account level, the system lists the following:

- All billed items which were partially reconciled against pay instructions due to rate variance
- All billed items which could not be reconciled as the amount was billed, but not yet paid
- All pay instructions for the account which could not be reconciled as the amount was paid, but not yet billed

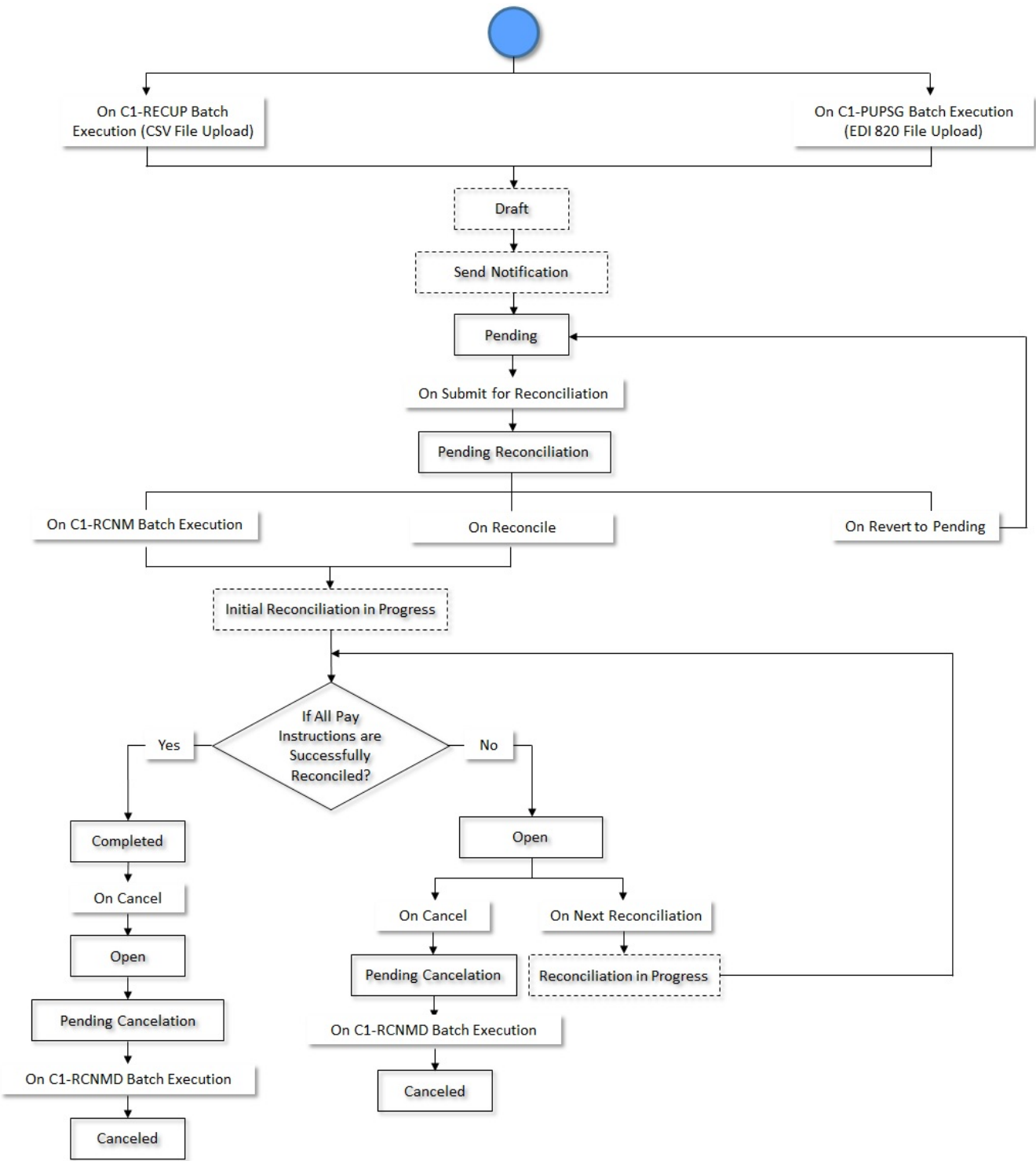
While generating a discrepancy report, you need to specify the discrepancy report type using which you want to create the discrepancy report. Once you review and finalize the discrepancy report, its status is changed to **Completed**. At a time, you can only have one discrepancy report for the file or account in the **Pending** status. Until, you finalize a discrepancy report, you cannot create another discrepancy report for the file or account. Also, note that you can create a discrepancy report for a file only when its corresponding reconciliation is in the **Open** status.

The reconciliation process goes through various statuses in its entire lifecycle. For more information about the reconciliation statuses, see...

- [Reconciliation Status Transition](#) on page 1770
- [Pay Instruction Status Transition](#) on page 1771
- [Discrepancy Report Status Transition](#) on page 1773

## Reconciliation Status Transition

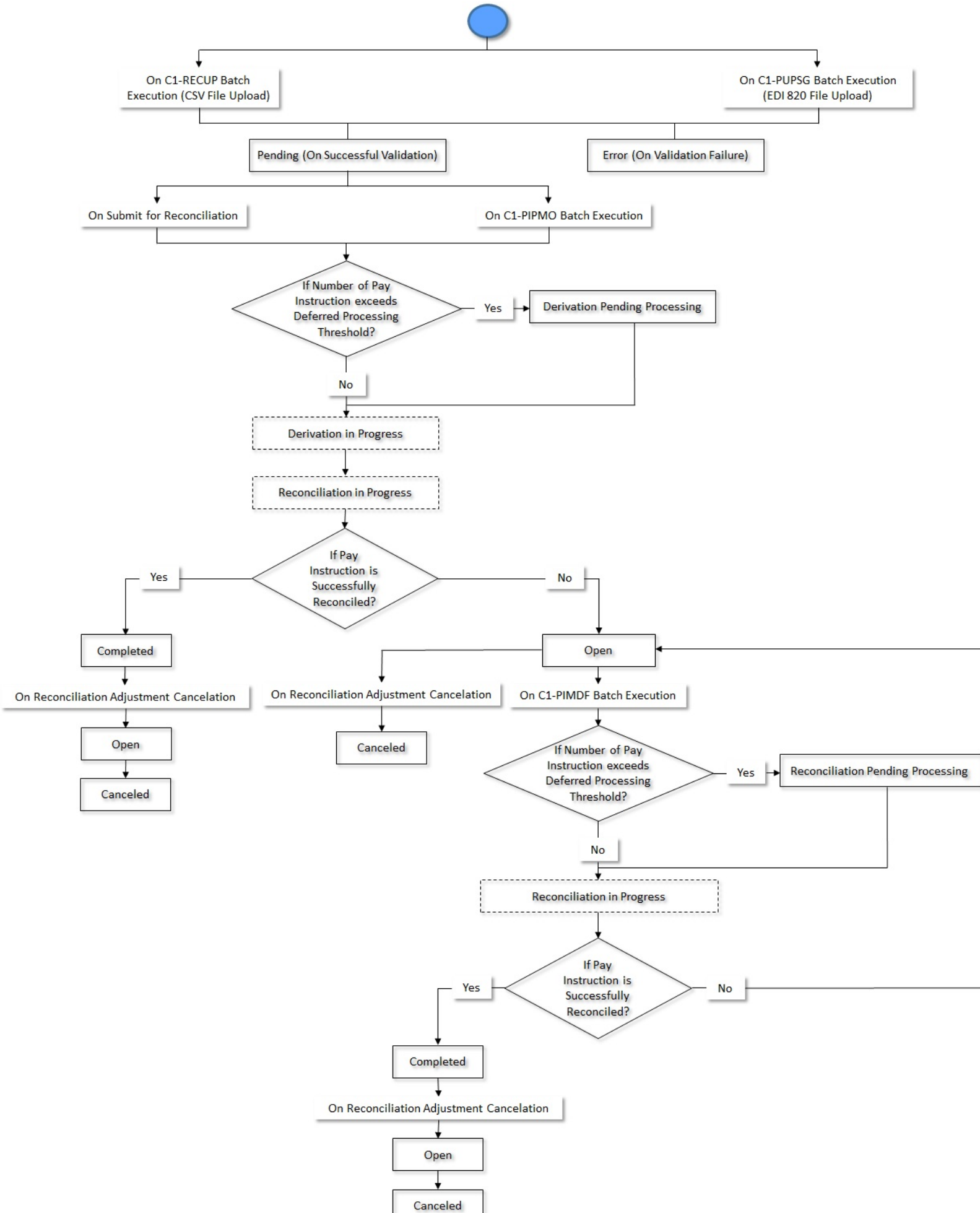
The following figure graphically indicates how a reconciliation goes through various statuses in its lifecycle:



## Pay Instruction Status Transition

---

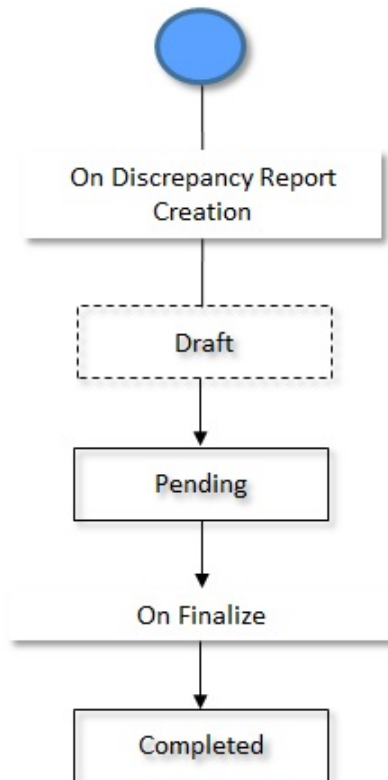
The following figure graphically indicates how a pay instruction goes through various statuses in its lifecycle:





## Discrepancy Report Status Transition

The following figure graphically indicates how a Discrepancy Report goes through various statuses in its lifecycle:



## EDI 820 File Format For Reconciliation

Before uploading an EDI 820 file, you need to ensure that the EDI 820 file contains the following columns:

Tag	Attribute	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Algo Param	Account Identifier Type	Used to specify the account identifier type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Account Name</li> <li>Base Global Account ID</li> <li>Bill Group Identifier</li> <li>Demo Bank Account Number</li> <li>External Account Identifier</li> <li>Flexcube Account ID</li> <li>International Bank Account Number</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
			<b>Note:</b> This data is required when Account Identifier is provided.

Tag	Attribute	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
N1[3]	Account Identifier value	Used to specify the value of the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
			<b>Note:</b> This data is required when Account Identifier Type is provided.
Batch Param	Member Identifier type	Used to specify the member identifier type.	Yes
RMR[2]	Policy Number	Used to specify the policy number of the member.	Yes
Algo Param	Plan Number	Used to specify the plan number of the member.	No
ENT[4]	Member Identifier Value	Used to specify the value of the member identifier type.	Yes
RMR[4]	Amount	Used to specify the amount that has to be paid to the member.	Yes
			<b>Note:</b> The data value of this column must be 0, if no amount is provided.
DTM[6]	Coverage Start Date	Used to specify the date of the policy from where the coverage starts.	Yes
		<b>Note:</b> The Coverage Start Date cannot be later than the coverage end date.	
DTM[6]	Coverage End Date	Used to specify the date of the policy till when the coverage ends.	Yes
		<b>Note:</b> The coverage end date cannot be earlier than the coverage start date.	
NM1[4] [5]	Member Name	Used to specify the name of the member.	Yes
REF[2]	Plan Number	Used to specify the plan number of the member.	Yes (Conditional)
			<b>Note:</b> This data is required when Algo Param tag does not have a value.
Batch Param	Reconciliation Type	Used to specify the type of reconciliation.	Yes
Batch Param	Reconciliation Cancel Status	Used to specify the Reconciliation Cancellation status.	Yes

## Sample EDI 820 File Format

```
ISA*00**00**ZZ*USBANK*ZZ*UHGI*091212*1013*U*00401*000000005*0*P*~
GS*RA*LBTEST01*UHGI*20120912*1013*4*X*004010~
```

```

ST*CHK*000000001~
BPR*I*100*C*NON*****1581282972*****20130326~
DTM*582*****RD8*20170101-20171231~
N1*PE**FI*vinodwReconTest534~
ENT*1*2J*EI*vinodwReconTest534~
NM1*QE*1**vinodwReconTest534***N*11254331870~
RMR*AZ*12345**0~
DTM*582*****RD8*20170401-20170430~
ENT*1*2J*EI*vinodwReconTest534~
NM1*QE*1**vinodwReconTest534***N*11254331870~
RMR*AZ*12345**0~
DTM*582*****RD8*20170501-20170531~
ENT*1*2J*EI*vinodwReconTest534~
NM1*QE*1**vinodwReconTest534***N*11254331870~
RMR*AZ*12345**0~
DTM*582*****RD8*20170601-20170630~
SE*1*000000001~
GE*1*135260~
IEA*1*505043666~

```

Here the tags ISA and IEA resemble Bank Details, whereas LBTEST01 indicates Tender Source information.

Tags like GS and GE, ST and SE are known as Start and End Tags. All of the other tags are embedded inside these Start and End tags.

For more information about the EDI 820 file format, see topic [EDI 820 File Format For Reconciliation](#) on page 1773

## Algorithms Used in C1-MemberReconType

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-MemberReconType** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Pre-Processing	C1-REOCNPEP	C1-REOCNPEP	Refer to <a href="#">C1-REOCNPEP</a> on page 1775

### C1-REOCNPEP

This algorithm validates a reconciliation type.

It checks the following:

- A duplicate algorithm is not added.
- A duplicate characteristic type is not added.

In addition, it does not allow you to:

- Delete a reconciliation type when the corresponding reconciliation is in a status other than **Completed** or **Canceled**.

## Algorithms Used in C1-MemberReconciliation

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-MemberReconciliation** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-RECONINFO	C1-RECONINFO	Refer to <a href="#">C1-RECONINFO</a> on page 1777
Validation	C1-MRECONVAL	C1-MRECONVAL	Refer to <a href="#">C1-MRECONVAL</a> on page 1777

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-MemberReconciliation** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	-	-	-	-
Send Notification	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068
Send Notification	Enter	C1-RCNCRETD	F1-TDCREATE	Refer to <a href="#">F1-TDCREATE</a> on page 1777
Pending	Enter	C1-VALPAYINS	C1-VALPAYINS	Refer to <a href="#">C1-VALPAYINS</a> on page 1778
Pending	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	Refer to <a href="#">F1-TODOCOMPL</a> on page 1068
Pending Reconciliation	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068
Pending Reconciliation	Exit	C1-RECONVAL	C1-RECONVAL	Refer to <a href="#">C1-MRECONVAL</a> on page 1777
Initial Reconciliation In Progress	Monitor	C1-MONPAYINS	C1-MONPAYINS	Refer to <a href="#">C1-MONPAYINS</a> on page 1779
Initial Reconciliation In Progress	Enter	C1-TRNPAYRCN	C1-TRNPAYRCN	Refer to <a href="#">C1-TRNPAYRCN</a> on page 1779
Initial Reconciliation In Progress	Enter	C1-RCOPNPYIN	C1-RCOPNPYIN	Refer to <a href="#">C1-RCOPNPYIN</a> on page 1780
Initial Reconciliation In Progress	Exit	C1-RCNOPNMR	C1-RCNOPNMR	Refer to <a href="#">C1-RCNOPNMR</a> on page 1780
Open	-	-	-	-
Reconciliation Progress	In Monitor	C1-MONPAYINS	C1-MONPAYINS	Refer to <a href="#">C1-MONPAYINS</a> on page 1779
Reconciliation Progress	In Exit	C1-RCOPNPYIN	C1-RCOPNPYIN	Refer to <a href="#">C1-RCOPNPYIN</a> on page 1780
Completed	-	-	-	-

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Pending Cancellation	Monitor	C1-RCMONPNCN	C1-GNBOMNRSN	Refer to <a href="#">C1-RCMONPNCN</a> on page 1780
Cancelled	Enter	C1-CANPAYINS	C1-CANPAYINS	Refer to <a href="#">C1-CANPAYINS</a> on page 1781
Cancelled	Enter	C1-CANRCNPAY	C1-CANRCNPAY	Refer to <a href="#">C1-CANRCNPAY</a> on page 1781
Cancelled	Enter	C1-RCNCANLTD	F1-TDCREATE	Refer to <a href="#">C1-RCNCANLTD</a> on page 1781

## C1-RECONINFO

This algorithm generates the reconciliation information string which appears throughout the application. It concatenates the following fields separated by a comma in the specified order:

- Reconciliation Type Description
- Reconciliation Status
- Reconciliation ID

## C1-MRECONVAL

This algorithm is invoked when you submit the pay instruction file for reconciliation. It checks the following:

- The payment is not associated with any other reconciliation which is in the status other than **Pending Cancellation** or **Canceled**.
- The payment ID and payor account ID are both available for further processing.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Reconciliation Canceled Status** – Used to specify the status code to which the reconciliation in the **Pending Cancellation** status is transitioned when the **Reconciliation Cancellation Periodic Monitor (C1-RCNMD)** batch is executed.
- **Reconciliation Pending Cancellation Status** - Used to specify the status code to which the reconciliation is transitioned when you click the **Cancel** button.

Both these parameters are mandatory.

## F1-AT-RQJ

This algorithm transitions the current status of the business object to the specified status. It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** – Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** – Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

## F1-TDCREATE

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the reconciliation is changed to **Send Notification**. It creates a To Do using the specified To Do type and assigns it to users with the specified To Do role.

It contains the following parameters:

- **To Do Type** – Used to specify the type of notification that you want to generate when the reconciliation is created for a pay instruction file.
- **To Do Role** – Used to specify the To Do role to indicate the users to whom you want to send the notification when the reconciliation is created for a pay instruction file.

The rest of the parameters, such as **To Do Type Element Name**, **To Do Role Element Name**, **Message Category**, **Message Number**, **Characteristic Type For Log Entry**, **To Do Sort Keys Retriever Script**, **Discard Cancel Terminate Reason Element**, **Discard Cancel Terminate Reason**, **Retry Frequency**, and **Retry Frequency Element Name**, are not used at the moment.

## C1-VALPAYINS

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the reconciliation is changed to **Pending**. Once a pay instruction is created, this algorithm validates the following:

- The coverage end date is not earlier than the coverage start date.
- Either the account identifier type and account identifier or the account ID is available in the pay instruction record.
- The member identifier type is available when the member identifier is specified and vice versa.
- A person with the given member identifier type and member identifier combination exists in the system.
- An account with the specified account ID exists in the system.
- The account ID is derived using the account identifier type and account identifier combination when the account ID is not available in the pay instruction record.
- The account is eligible for reconciliation.

If the above mentioned validations are successful, the status of the pay instruction is set to **Pending**. However, if any of the above validation fails, the status of the pay instruction is set to **Error**.

This algorithm contains the following parameters:

- **Eligible for Reconciliation Characteristic Type** – Used to specify the characteristic type which indicates whether the account is eligible for reconciliation. This type of characteristic is defined on the account. You must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to Account.
- **Maintenance Object for Generating Pay Instruction Logs** – Used to specify the maintenance object using which you want to generate logs for the pay instruction.
- **Pay Instruction Error Status** – Used to specify the status code to which you want to transition the pay instruction when the validation fails.
- **Pay Instruction Pending Status** – Used to specify the status code to which you want to transition the pay instruction when the validation is successful.

All these parameters are mandatory.

## F1-TODOCOMPL

This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the **Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion** characteristic is set to **Y** for the business object, the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.

## C1-MRECONVAL

This algorithm is invoked when you submit the pay instruction file for reconciliation. It checks the following:

- The payment is not associated with any other reconciliation which is in the status other than **Pending Cancellation** or **Canceled**.

- The payment ID and payor account ID are both available for further processing.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Reconciliation Canceled Status** – Used to specify the status code to which the reconciliation in the **Pending Cancellation** status is transitioned when the **Reconciliation Cancellation Periodic Monitor (C1-RCNMD)** batch is executed.
- **Reconciliation Pending Cancellation Status** - Used to specify the status code to which the reconciliation is transitioned when you click the **Cancel** button.

Both these parameters are mandatory.

## C1-MONPAYINS

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the reconciliation is changed to **Initial Reconciliation in Progress** or **Reconciliation in Progress**. It monitors or checks whether there are any pay instructions in the following statuses:

- Reconciliation Pending Processing
- Derivation Pending Processing
- Completed

If all pay instructions in the reconciliation are in the **Completed** status, then the status of the reconciliation is changed to **Completed**. However, if there are any pay instructions in the **Reconciliation Pending Processing** or **Derivation Pending Processing** status, then the status of reconciliation is changed to **Open**.

This algorithm contains the following parameters:

- **Pay Instruction Derivation Pending Processing Status** - Used to specify the status code to which the pending pay instruction is transitioned when the number of pay instructions in the reconciliation exceeds the deferred processing threshold (specified in an algorithm which is created using the **C1-RCOPNPYIN** algorithm type).
- **Pay Instruction Reconciliation Pending Processing Status** - Used to specify the status code to which the open pay instruction is transitioned when the number of pay instructions in the reconciliation exceeds the deferred processing threshold (specified in an algorithm which is created using the **C1-RCOPNPYIN** algorithm type).
- **Pay Instruction Completed Status** - Used to specify the status code to which the pay instruction is transitioned when it is fully reconciled.
- **Reconciliation Open Status** - Used to specify the status code to which you want to transition the reconciliation when there is a pay instruction in the status which is specified in the **Pay Instruction Derivation Pending Processing Status** or **Pay Instruction Reconciliation Pending Processing Status** parameter.
- **Reconciliation Completed Status** - Used to specify the status code to which you want to transition the reconciliation when all its pay instructions are in the status which is specified in the **Pay Instruction Completed Status** parameter.

All these parameters are mandatory.

## C1-TRNPAYRCN

This algorithm transfers the payment amount from the payor account's contract to the reconciliation contract of the accounts for which you have received the pay instruction. In this process, the payment against the payor account's contract is canceled and the payment against the payee account's reconciliation contract is created in the **Frozen** status.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Payment Cancel Reason** – Used to indicate the reason that you want to use when the payment on the payor account's contract is canceled.
- **Reconciliation Contract Match Type** – Used to specify the match type using which you want to apply payment against the reconciliation contract.

Both these parameters are mandatory.

## C1-RCOPNPYIN

This algorithm checks whether the number of pay instructions in the reconciliation exceeds the limit defined in the **Deferred Processing Threshold** parameter. If the status of the pay instruction is **Pending** and the number of pay instructions in the reconciliation exceeds the limit defined in the **Deferred Processing Threshold** parameter, then the status of the pay instruction is changed to the value defined in the **Pay Instruction Derivation Pending Processing Status** parameter.

However, if the status of the pay instruction is **Open** and the number of pay instructions in the reconciliation exceeds the limit defined in the **Deferred Processing Threshold** parameter, then the status of the pay instruction is changed to the value defined in the **Pay Instruction Reconciliation Pending Processing Status** parameter.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Pay Instruction Pending Status** – Used to specify the status code to which a pay instruction is transitioned when its validation is successful.
- **Pay Instruction Open Status** – Used to specify the status code to which a pay instruction is transitioned when it is not fully reconciled.
- **Pay Instruction Derivation Pending Processing Status** – Used to specify the status code to which you want to transition the pending pay instruction when the number of pay instructions in the reconciliation exceeds the deferred processing threshold limit.
- **Pay Instruction Reconciliation Pending Processing Status** – Used to specify the status code to which you want to transition the open pay instruction when the number of pay instructions in the reconciliation exceeds the deferred processing threshold limit.
- **Deferred Processing Threshold** – Used to specify the maximum number of pay instructions that can be reconciled in the real time (i.e. immediately). If the number of pay instructions in the reconciliation exceeds the deferred processing threshold limit, the pay instruction is reconciled in the deferred mode.

All these parameters are mandatory.

## C1-RCNOPNMR

This algorithm initiates the reconciliation process for the past open reconciliation records of the account. It contains the following parameters:

- **Reconciliation Open Status** – Used to specify the status code to which the reconciliation is transitioned when its pay instruction is not fully reconciled.
- **Reconciliation In Progress Status** – Used to specify the status code to which you want to transition the past open reconciliation record when the current reconciliation record of the account is reconciled.

Both these parameters are mandatory.

## C1-RCMONPNCN

This algorithm is invoked when the **Reconciliation Cancellation Periodic Monitor (C1-RCNMD)** batch is executed. It checks whether the reason is specified while canceling the reconciliation. If the cancel reason is specified, the status of the reconciliation is changed to **Canceled**. However, if the cancel reason is not specified, an error occurs while executing the **Reconciliation Cancellation Periodic Monitor (C1-RCNMD)** batch.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Reconciliation Cancel Status Reason** -  
Used to specify the cancel reason. If you specify the value for this parameter, the system will validate whether the cancel reason specified while canceling the reconciliation matches the cancel reason specified in this parameter. If the cancel reason does not match, an error occurs while executing the **Reconciliation Cancellation Periodic Monitor (C1-RCNMD)** batch. You must specify a reason which is defined for the **Pending Cancellation** status of the **C1-MemberReconciliation** business object.



## C1-CANPAYINS

This algorithm is invoked when the **Reconciliation Cancellation Periodic Monitor (C1-RCNMD)** batch is executed. It changes the status of all pay instructions in the reconciliation.

It contains the following parameter:

- **Pay Instruction Canceled Status** – Used to specify the status code to which you want to transition a pay instruction when the reconciliation is canceled. This parameter is mandatory.

## C1-CANRCNPAY

This algorithm transfers the payment amount from the payee account's reconciliation contract to the payor account's contract. In this process, the payment against the reconciliation contract is canceled and the payment against the payor account's contract is created in the **Frozen** status.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Payment Cancel Reason** – Used to indicate the reason that you want to use when the payment against the payee account's reconciliation contract is canceled.
- **On Account Match Type** – Used to specify the match type using which you want to apply the payment against the contract of the payor account.

Both these parameters are mandatory.

## C1-RCNCANLTD

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the reconciliation is changed to **Canceled**. It creates a To Do using the specified To Do type and assigns it to users with the specified To Do role.

It contains the following parameters:

- **To Do Type** – Used to specify the type of notification that you want to generate when the reconciliation is canceled.
- **To Do Role** – Used to specify the To Do role to indicate the users to whom you want to send the notification when the reconciliation is canceled.

The rest of the parameters, such as **To Do Type Element Name**, **To Do Role Element Name**, **Message Category**, **Message Number**, **Characteristic Type For Log Entry**, **To Do Sort Keys Retriever Script**, **Discard Cancel Terminate Reason Element**, **Discard Cancel Terminate Reason**, **Retry Frequency**, and **Retry Frequency Element Name**, are not used at the moment.

## Algorithms Used in C1-PayInstruction

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-PayInstruction** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-MPAYININF	C1-MPAYININF	Refer to <a href="#">C1-MPAYININF</a> on page 1782

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-PayInstruction** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Pending	-	-	-	-

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Derivation In Progress	Enter	C1-PYINDRVAN	C1-PYINDRVAN	Refer to <a href="#">C1-PYINDRVAN</a> on page 1782
Reconciliation In Progress	Enter	C1-PIRECOCIL	C1-PIRECOCIL	Refer to <a href="#">C1-PIRECOCIL</a> on page 1783
Open	-	-	-	-
Complete	-	-	-	-
Cancelled	Enter	C1-PYICNADJ	C1-PYICNADJ	Refer to <a href="#">C1-PYICNADJ</a> on page 1784
Derivation Pending Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068
Reconciliation Pending Processing	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068
Error	-	-	-	-

## C1-MPAYININF

This algorithm generates the pay instruction information string which appears throughout the application. It concatenates the following fields separated by a comma in the specified order:

- “Period:” Start Date - End Date
- Pay Instruction Amount
- Pay Instruction Status
- Payor Name
- Pay Instruction ID

## C1-PYINDRVAN

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the pay instruction is changed to **Derivation in Progress**. It derives the following:

- Policy using the policy number
- Plan using the plan number
- Member using the member identifier type and member identifier
- Payee account using the account identifier type and account identifier

If the policy, plan, and member information is available, it validates whether the member is covered under the specified plan of the policy. However, if the policy and plan information is available, it validates whether the plan is included in the specified policy. If the derivation and validation process is successful, the related object information is derived for policy, plan, and/or member from the system.

However, if the derivation and validation process fails, the related object information is not derived for policy, plan, and/or member and the status of the pay instruction remains as **Pending**.

In addition, the system determines whether the pay instruction must be reconciled at the member, plan, or policy level depending on the information available in the pay instruction. If the policy, plan, and member information is available, the pay instruction is reconciled at the member level. If the policy and plan information is available, the pay instruction is reconciled at the policy plan level. However, if the policy information is available, the pay instruction is reconciled at the policy level.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Unsuccessful Processing Status** – Used to specify the status code to which you want to transition the pay instruction when the derivation and validation process fails.
- **Pay Instruction Matching Level Characteristic Type** – Used to specify the characteristic type which indicates whether the pay instruction must be reconciled at the member, plan, or policy level. This type of characteristic is defined on the pay instruction. Here, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to **Payment Instruction**.
- **Member Matching Level Characteristic Value** – Used to specify the value that you want to define for the characteristic type specified in the **Pay Instruction Matching Level Characteristic Type** parameter when the pay instruction must be reconciled at the member level.
- **Plan Matching Level Characteristic Value** - Used to specify the value that you want to define for the characteristic type specified in the **Pay Instruction Matching Level Characteristic Type** parameter when the pay instruction must be reconciled at the policy plan level.
- **Policy Matching Level Characteristic Value** - Used to specify the value that you want to define for the characteristic type specified in the **Pay Instruction Matching Level Characteristic Type** parameter when the pay instruction must be reconciled at the policy level.

All these parameters are mandatory.

## C1-PIRECOCIL

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the pay instruction is changed to **Reconciliation in Progress**. It searches whether there is an open bill segment with the policy, plan, member, and coverage period combination for the payee account. If such bill segment exists in the system, this algorithm reconciles the pay instruction against the open bill segment. It creates two reconciliation adjustments – one against the payee account's reconciliation contract and another against the bill segment's contract.

If the amount on the pay instruction is fully reconciled, then the status of the pay instruction is changed to **Completed**. However, if the amount on the pay instruction is not fully reconciled, then the status of the pay instruction is changed to **Open**.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Pay Instruction Matching Level Characteristic Type** – Used to specify the characteristic type which indicates whether the pay instruction must be reconciled at the member, plan, or policy level. This type of characteristic is defined on the pay instruction. Here, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to **Payment Instruction**.
- **Member Matching Level Characteristic Value** – Used to specify the value of the characteristic type specified in the **Pay Instruction Matching Level Characteristic Type** parameter which indicates that the pay instruction must be reconciled at the member level.
- **Plan Matching Level Characteristic Value** – Used to specify the value of the characteristic type specified in the **Pay Instruction Matching Level Characteristic Type** parameter which indicates that the pay instruction must be reconciled at the policy plan level.
- **Policy Matching Level Characteristic Value** – Used to specify the value of the characteristic type specified in the **Pay Instruction Matching Level Characteristic Type** parameter which indicates that the pay instruction must be reconciled at the policy level.
- **Adjustment Type for Bill Segment Contract** – Used to specify the adjustment type using which you want to create the adjustment on the bill segment's contract when the pay instruction is reconciled.
- **Adjustment Type for Reconciliation Contract** – Used to specify the adjustment type using which you want to create the adjustment on the reconciliation contract when the pay instruction is reconciled.
- **Reconciliation Open Status** – Used to specify the status code to which you want to transition the reconciliation when the status of the pay instruction is changed to **Open**.

- **Pay Instruction Open Status** – Used to specify the status code to which you want to transition the pay instruction when it is not fully reconciled.
- **Pay Instruction Completed Status** – Used to specify the status code to which you want to transition the pay instruction when it is fully reconciled.
- **Reconciliation Characteristic Type** – Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the reconciliation ID. This type of characteristic is defined on the adjustments which are created on reconciliation. Here, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to **Adjustment Type**.
- **Payment Event Characteristic Type** – Used to specify the characteristic type which you want to use to store the payment event ID. This type of characteristic is defined on the reconciliation adjustments to indicate the payment event whose payment is distributed against the bill segment.
- **Adjustment Type for Offsetting Debits against Billed Credits** – Used to specify the adjustment type using which you want to create the adjustments when offsetting billed debit verses billed credits.

All these parameters are mandatory.

## C1-PYICNADJ

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the pay instruction is changed to **Canceled**. It cancels the reconciliation adjustments which are created while reconciling the pay instruction. It cancels the reconciliation adjustment irrespective of whether the status of the pay instruction is **Open** or **Completed**.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Adjustment Cancel Reason** – Used to indicate the reason that you want to use when the reconciliation adjustments are canceled.
- **Pay Instruction Completed Status** – Used to specify the status code to which the pay instruction is transitioned when it is fully reconciled.
- **Pay Instruction Open Status** – Used to specify the status code to which the pay instruction is transitioned when it is not fully reconciled.
- **Reconciliation Completed Status** – Used to specify the status code to which the reconciliation is transitioned when all its pay instructions are fully reconciled.
- **Reconciliation Open Status** – Used to specify the status code to which the reconciliation is transitioned when its pay instruction is not fully reconciled.

All these parameters are mandatory.

## F1-AT-RQJ

This algorithm transitions the current status of the business object to the specified status. It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** – Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** – Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

## Algorithms Used in C1-MemberDiscReportType

---

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-MemberDiscReportType** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Pre-Processing	C1-DISCPEP	C1-DISCPEP	Refer to <a href="#">C1-DISCPEP</a> on page 1785

## C1-DISCPEP

This algorithm validates a discrepancy report type. It checks the following:

- A duplicate characteristic type is not added.

In addition, it does not allow you to:

- Delete a discrepancy report type when the corresponding discrepancy report is in a status other than **Completed**.

## Algorithms Used in C1-DiscrepancyReport

The following table lists the algorithms which are attached to the **C1-DiscrepancyReport** business object:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Information	C1-DISRINFO	C1-DISRINFO	Refer to <a href="#">C1-DISRINFO</a> on page 1785

The following table lists the algorithms which are used in the lifecycle of the **C1-DiscrepancyReport** business object:

Status	System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Draft	Monitor	F1-AT-RQJ	F1-GEN-BOMNJ	Refer to <a href="#">F1-AT-RQJ</a> on page 1068
	Enter	C1-VALNEWDIS	C1-VALNEWDIS	Refer to <a href="#">C1-VALNEWDIS</a> on page 1786
Pending	Enter	C1-CRDSLNTM	C1-CRDSLNTM	Refer to <a href="#">C1-CRDSLNTM</a> on page 1786
	Exit	F1-TODOCOMPL	F1-TODOCOMPL	Refer to <a href="#">F1-TODOCOMPL</a> on page 1068
Completed	Enter	C1-VALCMPDIS	C1-VALCMPDIS	Refer to <a href="#">C1-VALCMPDIS</a> on page 1786

## F1-AT-RQJ

This algorithm transitions the current status of the business object to the specified status. It contains the following parameters:

- **Next Status** – Used when you want to override the default next status specified in the lifecycle.
- **Next Transition Condition** – Used when you want to override the default next transition condition specified in the lifecycle.

At a time, you can specify value for either the **Next Status** or **Next Transition Condition** parameter. If you don't specify any value for these parameters, the system will transition the business object to the default next status specified in its lifecycle.

## C1-DISRINFO

This algorithm generates the discrepancy report information string which appears throughout the application. It concatenates the following fields separated by a comma in the specified order:

- Discrepancy Report Type Description
- Discrepancy Report Status

- Discrepancy Report ID

## C1-VALNEWDIS

This algorithm allows you to create a discrepancy report only when the following conditions are met:

- The account for which discrepancy report is created is eligible for reconciliation.
- A discrepancy report in the **Pending** status does not exist for the account or file.
- A reconciliation record in the **Open** status exists for the account or file.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Eligible for Reconciliation Characteristic Type** – Used to specify the characteristic type which indicates whether the account is eligible for reconciliation. Here, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to **Account**.
- **Eligible for Reconciliation Characteristic Value** – Used to specify the value of the characteristic type specified in the **Eligible for Reconciliation Characteristic Type** parameter which indicates that the account is eligible for reconciliation.

Both these parameters are mandatory.

## C1-CRDSLNTM

This algorithm is invoked when the status of the discrepancy report is changed to **Pending**. If the discrepancy report is created at the account level, this algorithm creates a discrepancy line item for each policy, plan, member, and coverage period combination for which there is an open bill segment for the account and for which there are open and pending pay instructions in the open reconciliation.

However, if the discrepancy report is created at the file level, this algorithm creates a discrepancy line item for each policy, plan, member, and coverage period combination for which there are open and pending pay instructions in the open reconciliation. Note that the discrepancy line items are created for each account whose pay instructions are received in the pay instruction file.

It contains the following parameters:

- **Consumer Status Characteristic Type** – Used to specify the characteristic type which stores the consumer status of the member. The system retrieves the consumer status of the member and stores it against the respective discrepancy line item. Here, you must specify a characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to **Person**. This parameter is mandatory.

## F1-TODOCOMPL

This algorithm completes To Do entries that are created for the business object when the business object exits the given status. It finds and completes all open To Do entries where the business object's primary key is defined as a drill key. However, if the **Exclude To Do Entries From Auto Completion** characteristic is set to **Y** for the business object, the system does not automatically complete the respective To Do entry.

## C1-VALCMPDIS

This algorithm is invoked when you click the **Finalize** button. It changes the status of the discrepancy report to **Completed** only when the discrepancy category is specified for each discrepancy line item in the report.

## Reconciliation Type

---

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define a reconciliation type using which you can create the reconciliation. It is the reconciliation type which helps the system to determine:

- The business object using which the reconciliation should be created.

- The file format through which the pay instruction records can be uploaded in the system.




In addition, a reconciliation type indicates the algorithm which validates the pay instruction file and creates a pay instruction for each record in the file. Two algorithm types named **C1-PAYINSUPL** and **C1-RECONPROC** are shipped with the product. You need to maintain separate reconciliation types for different file formats. If you want to use a reconciliation type while uploading a pay instruction file in the CSV format, you need to create an algorithm using the **C1-PAYINSUPL** algorithm type and attach it to the reconciliation type. However, if you want to use a reconciliation type while uploading a pay instruction file in the EDI 820 format, you need to create an algorithm using the **C1-RECONPROC** algorithm type and attach it to the reconciliation type.


The **Reconciliation Type** screen allows you to define, edit, copy, and delete a reconciliation type. It contains the following zones:

- [Reconciliation Type List](#) on page 1787
- [Reconciliation Type](#) on page 1787

## Reconciliation Type List

The **Reconciliation Type List** zone lists the reconciliation types that are already defined in the system. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Reconciliation Type	Displays the reconciliation type.
Description	Displays the description of the reconciliation type.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Reconciliation Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the reconciliation type.
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Reconciliation Type</b> screen appears where you can define a new reconciliation type using an existing reconciliation type.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the reconciliation type.  <b>Note:</b> You can delete a reconciliation type only when you have not created a reconciliation using the reconciliation type.

On clicking the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a reconciliation type, the **Reconciliation Type** zone appears with the details of the respective reconciliation type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Editing a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1793
How to delete a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Deleting a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1794
How to copy a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Copying a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1795
How to view the details of a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Viewing the Reconciliation Type Details</a> on page 1796

## Reconciliation Type

The **Reconciliation Type** zone displays the details of the reconciliation type. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays basic information about the reconciliation type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Reconciliation Type	Displays the reconciliation type.
Reconciliation Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the reconciliation will be created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Description	Displays the description of the reconciliation type.
Detailed Description	Indicates the status of the reconciliation type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>
Status	Displays additional information about the reconciliation type.

- **Algorithms** - Lists the algorithms which are associated with the reconciliation type. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence	Indicates the order in which the algorithms with the same system event should be executed.
System Event	Indicates the system event when the algorithm should be executed. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upload Pay Instructions</li> </ul>
Algorithm	Indicates the algorithm attached to the system event.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Algorithm</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective algorithm.

- **Characteristics** - Lists the characteristics defined for the reconciliation type. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
Description	Displays the description of the characteristic value.  <b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the type of characteristic value is set to <b>Predefined Value</b> or <b>Foreign Key Value</b> .

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:


Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the reconciliation type.



Button Name	Button Description
Delete	Used to delete the reconciliation type.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a reconciliation type only when you have not created a reconciliation using the reconciliation type.
Duplicate	Used to create a new reconciliation type using an existing reconciliation type.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the reconciliation type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

By default, the **Reconciliation Type** zone does not appear in the **Reconciliation Type** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a reconciliation type in the **Reconciliation Type List** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Editing a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1793
How to delete a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Deleting a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1794
How to copy a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Copying a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1795
How to view the details of a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Viewing the Reconciliation Type Details</a> on page 1796

## Defining a Reconciliation Type

### Prerequisites

To define a reconciliation type, you should have:

- Reconciliation business objects defined in the application

### Procedure

To define a reconciliation type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Reconciliation Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Reconciliation Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reconciliation Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the reconciliation type.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Reconciliation Type** screen.

**Note:** The **Select Business Object** screen appears only when there are multiple reconciliation type business objects defined in the application. If there is only one reconciliation type business object defined in the application, the **Reconciliation Type** screen appears.

4. Select the required reconciliation type business object from the respective field.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Reconciliation Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the reconciliation type.
- **Algorithms** - Used to associate algorithms with the reconciliation type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the reconciliation type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reconciliation Type	Used to specify the reconciliation type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the reconciliation type business object using which you are defining the reconciliation type.	Not applicable
Reconciliation Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the reconciliation.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the reconciliation type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the reconciliation type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the reconciliation type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes

6. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
7. Associate algorithms with the reconciliation type, if required.
8. Define characteristics for the reconciliation type, if required.
9. Click **Save**.

The reconciliation type is defined.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Reconciliation Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1786
How to associate an algorithm with a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Associating an Algorithm with a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1791
How to define characteristics for a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1791

## Defining Characteristics for a Reconciliation Type

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a reconciliation type, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Reconciliation Type**).

### Procedure


To define characteristics for a reconciliation type:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a reconciliation type.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Reconciliation Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the reconciliation type.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the reconciliation type.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the reconciliation type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the reconciliation type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Defining a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1789
How to edit a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Editing a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1793
How to copy a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Copying a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1795

## Associating an Algorithm with a Reconciliation Type

You can upload a pay instruction file in the CSV and EDI 820 file formats. While uploading a pay instruction file, you need to specify the reconciliation type using which you want to create the reconciliation. A reconciliation type indicates the algorithm which validates the pay instruction file and creates a pay instruction for each record in the file. Two

algorithm types named **C1-PAYINSUPL** and **C1-RECONPROC** are shipped with the product. You need to maintain separate reconciliation types for different file formats. If you want to use a reconciliation type while uploading a pay instruction file in the CSV format, you need to create an algorithm using the **C1-PAYINSUPL** algorithm type and attach it to the reconciliation type. However, if you want to use a reconciliation type while uploading a pay instruction file in the EDI 820 format, you need to create an algorithm using the **C1-RECONPROC** algorithm type and attach it to the reconciliation type.

### Prerequisites

To associate an algorithm with a reconciliation type, you should have:


- Algorithm defined using the **C1-PAYINSUPL** or **C1-RECONPROC** algorithm type depending on whether you want to use the reconciliation type while uploading a pay instruction file in the CSV or EDI 820 file format


### Procedure


To associate an algorithm with a reconciliation type:

1. Ensure that the **Algorithms** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a reconciliation type.

The **Algorithms** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the order in which the algorithms with the same system event should be executed.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the reconciliation type.
System Event	Used to indicate the system event when the algorithm should be executed. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Upload Pay Instructions</b> - Used when you want to execute the attached algorithm while uploading a pay instruction file using the <b>Pay Instruction CSV File Upload (C1-RECUP)</b> or <b>Upload Lockbox Payment and Pay Instruction Files (C1-PUPSG)</b> batch.</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the reconciliation type.
Algorithm	Used to indicate the algorithm that you want to attach to the system event. <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the reconciliation type.

2. Enter the required details in the **Algorithms** section.
3. If you want to associate more than one algorithm with the reconciliation type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove an algorithm from the reconciliation type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the algorithm.

4. Click **Save**.

The algorithms are associated with the reconciliation type.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Defining a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1789
How to edit a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Editing a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1793
How to copy a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Copying a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1795

**Editing a Reconciliation Type****Prerequisites**

To edit a reconciliation type, you should have:

- Reconciliation business objects defined in the application

**Procedure**

To edit a reconciliation type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Reconciliation Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Reconciliation Type** sub-menu.  
The **Reconciliation Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Reconciliation Type List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the reconciliation type whose details you want to edit.

The **Reconciliation Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the reconciliation type.
- **Algorithms** - Used to associate algorithms with the reconciliation type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the reconciliation type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reconciliation Type	Displays the reconciliation type.	Not applicable
Business Object	Indicates the reconciliation type business object using which you are defining the reconciliation type.	Not applicable
Reconciliation Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the reconciliation.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the reconciliation type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the reconciliation type.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the status of the reconciliation type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of a reconciliation type by clicking the **Edit** button in the **Reconciliation Type** zone.

5. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
6. Associate or remove an algorithm from the reconciliation type, if required.
7. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the reconciliation type, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the reconciliation type are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Reconciliation Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1786
<b>Reconciliation Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type List</a> on page 1787
<b>Reconciliation Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1787
How to associate an algorithm with a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Associating an Algorithm with a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1791
How to define characteristics for a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1791

## Deleting a Reconciliation Type

### Procedure

To delete a reconciliation type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Reconciliation Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Reconciliation Type** sub-menu.  
The **Reconciliation Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Reconciliation Type List** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the reconciliation type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the reconciliation type.

**Note:** You can delete a reconciliation type only when you have not created a reconciliation using the reconciliation type.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a reconciliation type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Reconciliation Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.

The reconciliation type is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Reconciliation Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1786
<b>Reconciliation Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type List</a> on page 1787
<b>Reconciliation Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1787

## Copying a Reconciliation Type

Instead of creating a reconciliation type from scratch, you can create a new reconciliation type using an existing reconciliation type. This is possible through copying a reconciliation type. On copying a reconciliation type, the details including the algorithms and characteristics are copied to the new reconciliation type. You can then edit the details, if required.

### Prerequisites

To copy a reconciliation type, you should have:

- Reconciliation type (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Reconciliation business objects defined in the application

### Procedure

To copy a reconciliation type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.


A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Reconciliation Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

3. Click the **Search** option from the **Reconciliation Type** sub-menu.

The **Reconciliation Type** screen appears.

4. In the **Reconciliation Type List** zone, click the **Duplicate** () icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the reconciliation type whose copy you want to create.

The **Reconciliation Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the reconciliation type.
- **Algorithms** - Used to associate algorithms with the reconciliation type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the reconciliation type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reconciliation Type	Used to specify the reconciliation type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the reconciliation type business object using which you are defining the reconciliation type.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reconciliation Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the reconciliation.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the reconciliation type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the reconciliation type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the reconciliation type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can copy a reconciliation type by clicking the **Duplicate** button in the **Reconciliation Type** zone.

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Associate or remove an algorithm from the reconciliation type, if required.
- Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the reconciliation type, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The new reconciliation type is defined.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Reconciliation Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1786
<b>Reconciliation Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type List</a> on page 1787
<b>Reconciliation Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1787
How to associate an algorithm with a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Associating an Algorithm with a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1791
How to define characteristics for a reconciliation type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1791


## Viewing the Reconciliation Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a reconciliation type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **R** and then click **Reconciliation Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Reconciliation Type** sub-menu.  
The **Reconciliation Type** screen appears.



4. In the **Reconciliation Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the reconciliation type whose details you want to view.  
The **Reconciliation Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the reconciliation type in the **Reconciliation Type** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Reconciliation Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1786
<b>Reconciliation Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type List</a> on page 1787
<b>Reconciliation Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1787

## Reconciliation (Used for Searching)

The **Reconciliation** screen allows you to search for a reconciliation using various search criteria. It contains the following zone:

- [Search Reconciliation](#) on page 1797

Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Reconciliation \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1801

## Search Reconciliation

The **Search Reconciliation** zone allows you to search for a reconciliation using various search criteria. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a reconciliation using the reconciliation, payee account, or payment tender details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reconciliation Details</li> <li>• Account Details</li> <li>• Payment Tender Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Reconciliation Details</b> option is selected.	
Reconciliation ID	Used to search a particular reconciliation.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Reconciliation Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Reconciliation Type	Used to search reconciliations which are created using a particular reconciliation type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Reconciliation Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Created From	Used to search reconciliations which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Reconciliation Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Status	Used to search reconciliations with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Canceled</li> <li>• Completed</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Initial Reconciliation in Progress</li> <li>• Open</li> <li>• Pending Cancellation</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Pending Reconciliation</li> <li>• Reconciliation in Progress</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Reconciliation Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Created Until	Used to search reconciliations which are created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Reconciliation Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
File Name	Used to search a reconciliation which is created for a particular pay instruction file.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Reconciliation Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Person Name	Used to search reconciliations which contain a particular member's pay instructions.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search reconciliations which contain pay instructions for a particular payee account.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account ID	Used to search reconciliations which contain pay instructions for a particular payee account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value for the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Check Number	Used to search a reconciliation associated with a payment tender which is received through a particular check.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Tender Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Payor Account ID	Used to search reconciliations which are associated with a particular payor account.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Tender Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
MICR ID	Used to search a reconciliation associated with a payment tender which contains a particular MICR code.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Tender Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Tender Amount	Used to search reconciliations associated with payment tenders with a particular amount.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Payment Tender Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a reconciliation.

- **Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Creation Date Time	Displays the date and time when the reconciliation is created in the system.
Reconciliation Information	Displays information about the reconciliation.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Reconciliation</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective reconciliation.

Column Name	Column Description
Status	<p>Indicates the status of the reconciliation. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Canceled</li> <li>• Completed</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Initial Reconciliation in Progress</li> <li>• Open</li> <li>• Pending Cancellation</li> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Pending Reconciliation</li> <li>• Reconciliation in Progress</li> </ul>
Payor Account ID	<p>Indicates the payor account to which the reconciliation is associated.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payor account.</p>
Payment ID	<p>Indicates the payment to which the reconciliation is associated.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payment.</p>
File Name	Indicates the pay instruction file for which the reconciliation is created in the system.
Duplicate	<p>Used to create a new reconciliation using an existing reconciliation.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Duplicate</b> button appears only when the reconciliation is in the <b>Canceled</b> status.</p>

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a reconciliation	<a href="#">Searching for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1800
How to view the details of a reconciliation	<a href="#">Viewing the Reconciliation Details</a> on page 1801

## Searching for a Reconciliation

### Prerequisite

To search for a reconciliation, you should have:

- Reconciliation types and account identifier types defined in the application.

### Procedure

To search for a reconciliation:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Reconciliation**.

The **Reconciliation** screen appears.

3. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Reconciliation** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of reconciliations that meet the search criteria appears in the **Search Results** section.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Reconciliation</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1797
<b>Search Reconciliation</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Reconciliation</a> on page 1797

## Viewing the Reconciliation Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a reconciliation:

1. Search for the reconciliation in the **Reconciliation** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Reconciliation Information** column corresponding to the reconciliation whose details you want to view.  
The **Reconciliation** screen appears.
3. Ensure that the **Main** tab is selected.
4. View the details of the reconciliation in the **Reconciliation** zone.
5. View the list of pay instructions uploaded through the file in the **Pay Instructions** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a reconciliation	<a href="#">Searching for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1800
<b>Reconciliation</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1801
<b>Reconciliation</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation</a> on page 1802
<b>Pay Instructions</b> zone	<a href="#">Pay Instructions</a> on page 1804

## Reconciliation (Used for Viewing)

The **Reconciliation** screen allows you to:

- View the details and characteristics of the reconciliation
- Edit and delete the details of the reconciliation
- Submit the file for reconciliation
- View the pay instructions for reconciliation

- Cancel the pending reconciliation

This screen contains the following tabs:

- [Reconciliation - Main](#) on page 1802
- [Reconciliation - Log](#) on page 1805

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of reconciliation	<a href="#">Viewing the Reconciliation Details</a> on page 1801
How to edit the details of reconciliation	<a href="#">Editing a Reconciliation Type</a> on page 1793
<b>Reconciliation - Main</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1801
<b>Reconciliation - Main</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation</a> on page 1802

Reconciliation - Main

The **Main** tab displays information about the reconciliation. It contains the following zones:

- [Reconciliation](#) on page 1802
- [Pay Instructions](#) on page 1804

Reconciliation

The **Reconciliation** zone displays the details of the reconciliation. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays basic information about the reconciliation. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Reconciliation Information	Displays information about the reconciliation.
Reconciliation Type	Indicates the reconciliation type using which the reconciliation is created.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Reconciliation Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the reconciliation type.
Status	Indicates the status of the reconciliation. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Canceled</li><li>• Completed</li><li>• Draft</li><li>• Initial Reconciliation in Progress</li><li>• Open</li><li>• Pending Cancellation</li><li>• Pending</li><li>• Pending Reconciliation</li><li>• Reconciliation in Progress</li></ul>
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the status of the reconciliation is changed.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the reconciliation is in the <b>Pending Cancellation</b> or <b>Canceled</b> status.

Field Name	Field Description
File Name	Indicates the pay instruction file for which the reconciliation is created in the system.
Payment Information	<p>Indicates the payment to which the reconciliation is associated. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Payment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective payment.</p> <p>This field does not appear when the reconciliation is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Pending</b> status.</p>
Account Information	<p>Indicates the payor account to which the reconciliation is associated.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field does not appear when the reconciliation is in the <b>Draft</b> or <b>Pending</b> status.</p>

- **Characteristics** - Lists the characteristics defined for the reconciliation. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the reconciliation.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
Description	<p>Displays the description of the characteristic value.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the type of characteristic value is set to <b>Predefined Value</b> or <b>Foreign Key Value</b>.</p>

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	<p>Used to edit the details of the reconciliation.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> button appears only when the reconciliation is in the <b>Pending</b> or <b>Draft</b> status.</p>
Delete	<p>Used to delete the reconciliation.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the reconciliation is in the <b>Pending</b> or <b>Draft</b> status.</p>
Submit for Reconciliation	<p>Used to submit the pay instructions for reconciliation.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Submit for Reconciliation</b> button appears only when the reconciliation is in the <b>Pending</b> status.</p>


Button Name	Button Description
Cancel	Used to cancel the reconciliation.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Cancel</b> button appears only when the reconciliation is in the <b>Completed</b> or <b>Open</b> status.
Reconcile	Used to reconcile the pay instructions in the reconciliation.  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Reconcile</b> button appears only when the reconciliation is in the <b>Pending Reconciliation</b> status.
Revert to Pending	Used to revert the status of the reconciliation to <b>Pending</b> .  <b>Note:</b> The <b>Revert to Pending</b> button appears only when the reconciliation is in the <b>Pending Reconciliation</b> status.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the reconciliation is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Status Date Time	Displays the date and time when the reconciliation status is updated.
Creation Date Time	Displays the date and time when the reconciliation is created.

### Pay Instructions

The **Pay Instructions** zone lists the pay instructions that are received from an external system against the bill segment based on the account identifier, policy number, plan number, member identifier, and coverage period combination. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence No.	Displays a sequential number against each record.
View Payment Instruction	On clicking the <b>View Payment Instruction</b> (  ) icon, <b>Pay Instruction</b> screen appears where entire pay instruction details are displayed.
Account Identifier Type	Indicates the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Displays the value of the account identifier type.
Account ID	Displays the account ID.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears with the details of the respective account.
Policy Number	Displays the policy number of the member.
Plan Number	Displays the plan number of the member.
Member Identifier Type	Indicates the member identifier type.



Column Name	Column Description
Member Identifier	Displays the value of the member identifier type.
Member Name	Displays the name of the member.
Coverage Start Date	Displays the date from when the coverage is effective.
Coverage End Date	Displays the date till when the coverage is effective.
Amount	Indicates the amount that has to be paid to the member.
Open Amount	Indicates the amount which has not been paid to the member and is still in the open state.
Status	Indicates the status of the pay instruction. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cancelled</li> <li>Completed</li> <li>Draft</li> <li>Initial Reconciliation In Progress</li> <li>Open</li> <li>Pending Cancellation</li> <li>Pending</li> <li>Pending Reconciliation</li> <li>Reconciliation In Progress</li> </ul>
Pay Instruction ID	Displays the pay instruction ID.

**Note:** You can use the **Previous** and **Next** links to scroll through the pay instructions item list.

## Reconciliation - Log

The **Log** tab contains the following zone:

- [Reconciliation Log](#) on page 1805

### Reconciliation Log

The **Reconciliation Log** zone lists the complete trail of actions performed on the reconciliation. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Creation Date Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the reconciliation.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the reconciliation.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the reconciliation.
Log Type	Indicates the type of the log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity that is created when the action is performed on the reconciliation.

Column Name	Column Description
Status Reason	Indicates the reason why the status of the reconciliation is changed.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the status of the reconciliation is changed to <b>Pending Cancellation</b> or <b>Canceled</b> .

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the reconciliation by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Reconciliation Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of a reconciliation	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Reconciliation</a> on page 1810
How to add a log entry for a reconciliation	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1810

**Editing a Reconciliation**

**Procedure**

To edit a reconciliation:

1. Search for the reconciliation in **Reconciliation** screen.  
A list appears.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Reconciliation Information** column corresponding to the reconciliation whose details you want to edit.  
The **Reconciliation** screen appears.
3. Click the **Edit** button in the **Reconciliation** zone.  
The **Member Reconciliation** screen appears.

**Note:** The **Edit** button appears only when the reconciliation is in the **Pending** status.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the reconciliation, if required.
5. Click **Save**.  
The changes made to the reconciliation are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a reconciliation	<a href="#">Searching for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1800

**Defining Characteristics for a Reconciliation**

**Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a reconciliation, you should have:

- Characteristic Type defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Reconciliation**)


### **Procedure**

To define characteristics for a reconciliation:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are editing a reconciliation.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

The **Reconciliation** screen appears.

3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the reconciliation, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the reconciliation, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

A list of reconciliation files that meet the search criteria appear in the **Search Results** section.

5. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Reconciliation Information** column corresponding to the status column.

The **Reconciliation** screen appears.

6. Click **Edit** button from **Record Actions** section.

The **Member Reconciliation** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify the basic details of the reconciliation.
- **Characteristics** - Used to specify the characteristics for the reconciliation. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the reconciliation.	Yes
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Reconciliation</b> .	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit an reconciliation	<a href="#">Editing a Reconciliation</a> on page 1806

## Deleting a Reconciliation

### Procedure

To delete a reconciliation:

1. Search for the reconciliation in the **Reconciliation** screen.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Reconciliation Information** column corresponding to the reconciliation that you want to delete.

The **Reconciliation** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Reconciliation** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the reconciliation.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the reconciliation is in the **Pending** or **Draft** status.

4. Click **OK**.

The reconciliation object is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Search Reconciliation</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1797
<b>Search Reconciliation</b> zone	<a href="#">Search Reconciliation</a> on page 1797
How to search for a reconciliation	<a href="#">Searching for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1800

## Submitting Pay Instructions for a Reconciliation

### Prerequisites

To submit pay instructions for reconciliation, you should have:

- Account ID defined in the application.
- Reconciliation BO status as Pending.

**Procedure**

To submit pay instructions for a reconciliation:

1. Search for the reconciliation in the **Reconciliation** screen.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Reconciliation Information** column corresponding to the reconciliation that you want to submit.

The **Reconciliation** screen appears.

3. Click the **Submit for Reconciliation** button in the **Reconciliation** zone.

The pay instruction is submitted for reconciliation and the reconciliation status gets changed to **Pending Reconciliation**.

**Note:**

The **Submit for Reconciliation** button appears only when the reconciliation is in the **Pending** status.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search a reconciliation	<a href="#">Searching for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1800

**Reconciling Pay Instructions****Prerequisites**

To reconcile pay instructions, you should have:

- Account ID defined in the application.
- Reconciliation BO Status must be in Pending Reconciliation.

**Procedure**

To reconcile pay instructions:

1. Search for the reconciliation in the **Reconciliation** screen.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Reconciliation Information** column corresponding to the reconciliation that you want to reconcile.

The **Reconciliation** screen appears.

3. Click the **Reconcile** button in the **Reconciliation** zone.

The pay instructions gets reconciled and the reconciliation BO status gets changed to **Completed**.

Note:  
The **Reconcile** button appears only when the reconciliation is in the **Pending Reconciliation** status.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a reconciliation	<a href="#">Searching for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1800

Adding a Log Entry for a Reconciliation

Procedure

To add a log entry for a reconciliation:

- 1. Search for the reconciliation in the **Reconciliation** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Reconciliation Information** column corresponding to the reconciliation whose log you want to edit.

The **Reconciliation** screen appears.

- 3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

- 4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Reconciliation Log** zone.

The **Add Reconciliation Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Reconciliation Information	Displays information about the reconciliation.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the reconciliation.	Yes

- 5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.

- 6. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Reconciliation Log** zone.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a reconciliation	<a href="#">Searching for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1800
<b>Reconciliation</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1801
<b>Reconciliation Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation Log</a> on page 1805

Viewing the Log of a Reconciliation

Procedure

To view the log of a reconciliation:

- 1. Search for the reconciliation in the **Reconciliation** screen.
- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Reconciliation Information** column corresponding to the reconciliation whose log you want to view.

The **Reconciliation** screen appears.

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. View the complete trail of actions performed on the reconciliation in the **Reconciliation Log** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a reconciliation	<a href="#">Searching for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1800
How to add a log entry for a reconciliation	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1810
<b>Reconciliation</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1801
<b>Reconciliation Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation Log</a> on page 1805

## Canceling a Reconciliation

### Prerequisites

To cancel a reconciliation, you should have:

- Cancellation reasons defined in the application.

**Note:** While cancelling a reconciliation, you need to specify the reason why you want to cancel the reconciliation. You can select the appropriate cancellation reason only when you have defined the reasons for the **Canceled** status of the **C1-MemberReconciliation** business object in the **Status Reason** screen.

### Procedure

To cancel a reconciliation:

1. Search for the reconciliation in the **Reconciliation** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Reconciliation Information** column corresponding to the reconciliation that you want to cancel.

The **Reconciliation** screen appears.

- [Reconciliation - Main](#) on page 1802
- [Reconciliation - Log](#) on page 1805

3. Click the **Cancel** button in the **Reconciliation** zone.

The **Status Reason** window appears. It contains following field:

:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status Reason	Used to indicate the reason why you want to cancel the reconciliation.	Yes

**Note:** The **Cancel** button appears only when the reconciliation is in the **Open** or **Completed** status.

4. Select the cancellation status reason from the **Status Reason** list.
5. Click **Save**.

The status of the reconciliation is changed to **Cancelled**.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a reconciliation	<a href="#">Searching for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1800
<b>Reconciliation</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1801
<b>Reconciliation</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation</a> on page 1802
How to view details of reconciliation	<a href="#">Viewing the Reconciliation Details</a> on page 1801

**Viewing the Pay Instruction Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a pay instruction:

1. Search for reconciliation information in the **Reconciliation** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Reconciliation Information** column corresponding to the reconciliation whose pay instruction details you want to view.  
The **Reconciliation** screen appears.
3. The **Reconciliation** screen consists of the following tabs:
  - [Reconciliation - Main](#) on page 1802
  - [Reconciliation - Log](#) on page 1805
4. The **Main** tab displays information about the reconciliation.
5. In the **Pay Instructions** zone, click the **Go To Payment Instruction** () icon corresponding to the pay instruction whose details you want to view.  
The **Pay Instruction** screen appears.
6. View the details of the pay instruction in the **Pay Instruction** screen.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Searching for a Reconciliation	<a href="#">Searching for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1800
<b>Reconciliation</b> screen	<a href="#">Reconciliation (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1801
<b>Reconciliation - Main</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation - Main</a> on page 1802
<b>Pay Instructions</b> zone	<a href="#">Pay Instruction</a>
<b>Pay Instructions</b> screen	<a href="#">Pay Instruction</a> on page 1812

**Pay Instruction**

The **Pay Instruction** screen displays detailed information of a pay instruction which is the part of reconciliation:

- View the details and characteristics of the pay instruction
- View the details of the reconciliation adjustments
- View the related objects

This screen contains of the following tabs:



- [Pay Instruction - Main](#) on page 1813
- [Pay Instruction - Log](#) on page 1814

## Pay Instruction - Main

The **Pay Instruction - Main** tab displays information about the pay instruction. It contains the following zones:

- [Pay Instruction](#)
- [Reconciliation Adjustments](#) on page 1813
- [Related Objects](#) on page 1814

### Pay Instruction

The **Pay Instruction - Main** tab consists of the following zones:

- **Pay Instruction**
- **Reconciliation Adjustments**
- **Related Object**

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pay Instruction - Main</b> zone	<a href="#">Pay Instruction</a>
<b>Reconciliation Adjustments</b> zone	<a href="#">Reconciliation Adjustments</a> on page 1813
<b>Related Objects</b> zone	<a href="#">Related Objects</a> on page 1814

### Reconciliation Adjustments

The **Reconciliation Adjustments** zone displays the adjustment information for each pay instruction. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Transfer Adjustment	Indicates the amount to be transferred from a reconciliation contract against a pay instruction.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the transferred adjustment.
Transfer Type	Displays the type of transfer transaction made against a pay instruction or an internal offsetting.
Transfer Financial Transaction ID	Displays the transfer financial transaction ID.
Offset Adjustment	Indicates a reciprocal adjustment that is associated with a transfer adjustment.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Adjustment</b> screen appears where you can view the offset adjustment details.
Related Object Type	Displays the related object type whether it is pay instruction / financial transaction.

Column Name	Column Description
Related Object ID	Indicates the ID of the related pay instruction / financial transaction created in reconciliation process..
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Financial Transaction</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the financial transaction of reconciliation adjustments.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Reconciliation Adjustments** zone. By default, 10 records are displayed in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as Previous and Next to navigate between pages.

You can filter the adjustments using **Show All Adjustments** available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (  ) icon in the upper right corner of the **Reconciliation Adjustments** zone.

### Related Objects

The **Related Objects** zone displays all those business objects based on which reconciliation process takes place. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Related Object Type	Displays the related object type that was used in pay instruction process.
Related Object Information	Displays the details of related object in brief.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the **Related Topics** zone. By default, 10 records are displayed in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as Previous and Next to navigate between pages.

## Pay Instruction - Log

The **Pay Instruction - Log** tab contains the following zone:

- [Pay Instruction Log](#) on page 1814

### Pay Instruction Log

The **Pay Instruction Log** zone lists the complete trail of actions performed on the pay instructions. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Creation Date Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the pay instruction.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the pay instruction.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the pay instruction.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the pay instruction.
Status Reason	Displays the status reason of action performed on the pay instruction.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the pay instruction by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Pay Instruction Log** zone.

**Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of a pay instruction	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Pay Instruction</a> on page 1815
How to add a log entry for a pay instruction	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Pay Instruction</a> on page 1815

**Adding a Log Entry for a Pay Instruction****Procedure**

To add a log entry for a pay instruction:

1. Search for the reconciliation in the **Reconciliation** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Reconciliation Information** column corresponding to the reconciliation whose pay instruction log you want to edit.

The **Reconciliation** screen is displayed.

3. In the **Pay Instructions** zone of the **Main**, click the Go To icon () corresponding to the pay instruction whose log you want to edit.

The **Pay Instruction** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- [Pay Instruction - Main](#) on page 1813
- [Pay Instruction - Log](#) on page 1814

4. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Pay Instruction** screen appears.

5. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Pay Instruction Log** zone.

The **Add Pay Instruction Log** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pay Instruction Information	Displays information about the pay instruction.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments for the pay instruction.	Yes

6. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.
7. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Pay Instruction Log** zone.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a reconciliation	<a href="#">Searching for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1800

**Viewing the Log of a Pay Instruction****Procedure**

To view the log of a Pay Instruction:

1. Search for the reconciliation information in the **Reconciliation** screen.

- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Reconciliation Information** column corresponding to the reconciliation, whose pay instruction log you want to view.  
The **Reconciliation** screen appears.
- 3. In the **Pay Instructions** zone of the **Main**, click the **Go To Payment Instruction** () icon, corresponding to the to the pay instruction whose log you want to view.  
The **Pay Instruction** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:
  - [Pay Instruction - Main](#) on page 1813
  - [Pay Instruction - Log](#) on page 1814
- 4. Click the **Log** tab.  
The **Log** tab appears.
- 5. View the complete trail of actions performed on the pay instruction in the **Pay Instruction Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to add a log entry for a pay instruction	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Pay Instruction</a> on page 1815
<b>Pay Instruction</b> screen	<a href="#">Pay Instruction</a> on page 1812
<b>Pay Instruction Log</b> zone	<a href="#">Pay Instruction Log</a> on page 1814

**Discrepancy Report Type**

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define a discrepancy report type using which you can create a discrepancy report. The Discrepancy Report Type uses the following business object.

- **C1-DiscrepancyReport**


The **Discrepancy Report Type** screen allows you to define, edit, copy, and delete a discrepancy report type. It consists of the following zones:



- [Discrepancy Report Type List](#) on page 1816
- [Discrepancy Report Type](#) on page 1817


For more information on...	See...
How to define a discrepancy report type	<a href="#">Defining a Discrepancy Report Type</a> on page 1818

**Discrepancy Report Type List**

The **Discrepancy Report Type List** zone lists the various types of discrepancy report types. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Discrepancy Report Type	Displays the discrepancy report type.
Description	Displays the description of the discrepancy report type.
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Discrepancy Report Type</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the discrepancy report type.

Column Name	Column Description
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Discrepancy Report Type</b> screen appears where you can define a discrepancy report type using an existing discrepancy report type.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the discrepancy report type.  <b>Note:</b> You can delete a discrepancy report type only when you have not created a discrepancy report using the discrepancy report type.

On clicking the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a discrepancy report type, the **Discrepancy Report Type** zone appears with the details of the respective discrepancy report type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of discrepancy report type	<a href="#">Viewing the Discrepancy Report Type Details</a> on page 1824
How to edit the details of discrepancy report type	<a href="#">Editing a Discrepancy Report Type</a> on page 1821
How to delete the discrepancy report type	<a href="#">Deleting a Discrepancy Report Type</a> on page 1822
How to copy the discrepancy report type	<a href="#">Copying a Discrepancy Report Type</a> on page 1822

## Discrepancy Report Type

The **Discrepancy Report Type** zone displays the details of the discrepancy report type. It consists of the following sections:

- **Main** - This section provides basic information about the discrepancy report type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Discrepancy Report Type	Displays the discrepancy report type.
Discrepancy Report Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the discrepancy report will be created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Description	Displays the description of the discrepancy report type.
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the discrepancy report type.
Status	Indicates the status of the inbound message type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>

- **Characteristics** - This section lists the characteristics defined for the discrepancy report type. It contains the following columns:


Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to Discrepancy Report Type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the Characteristic Value field.
Description	Displays detailed description of the characteristic type.

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the discrepancy report type.
Delete	Used to delete the discrepancy report type.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a discrepancy report type only when you have not created a discrepancy report using the discrepancy report type.
Duplicate	Used to create a new discrepancy report type using an existing discrepancy report type.

- **Record Information** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the discrepancy report type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.

By default, the **Discrepancy Report Type** zone does not appear in the **Discrepancy Report Type** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a discrepancy report type in the **Discrepancy Report Type List** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of discrepancy report type	<a href="#">Viewing the Discrepancy Report Type Details</a> on page 1824

## Defining a Discrepancy Report Type

### Prerequisites

To define a discrepancy report type, you should have:

- **C1-DiscrepancyReport** Business object defined for discrepancy report.

- Characteristic Type defined for the discrepancy report.

### **Procedure**

To define a discrepancy report type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **D**, and then click **Discrepancy Report Type**.  
The sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Discrepancy Report Type**.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Discrepancy Report Type Business Object	Indicates the discrepancy report type business object used to create a discrepancy report type.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Business Object** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Discrepancy Report Type** screen.

**Note:** The **Select Business Object** screen appears only when there are multiple discrepancy report type business objects defined in the application. If there is only one discrepancy report type business object defined in the application, the **Discrepancy Report Type** screen appears.

4. Select the business object depending on whether you want to create a discrepancy report type.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Discrepancy Report Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the discrepancy report type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the discrepancy report type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Discrepancy Report Type	Used to specify the discrepancy report type.	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the discrepancy report type business object using which you are defining the discrepancy report type	Not applicable
Discrepancy Report Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the discrepancy report.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the discrepancy report type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the discrepancy report type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the discrepancy report type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define characteristics for the discrepancy report type, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The discrepancy report type is defined.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Discrepancy Report Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Discrepancy Report Type List</a> on page 1816
<b>Discrepancy Report Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Discrepancy Report Type</a> on page 1817

**Defining Characteristics for a Discrepancy Report Type**

**Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a discrepancy report type, you should have:

- Characteristic Types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Discrepancy Report Type**).

**Procedure**


To define characteristics for a discrepancy report type:


- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a discrepancy report type.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Discrepancy Report Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the discrepancy report type.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the discrepancy report type.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the discrepancy report type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the discrepancy report type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

**Related Topics**



For more information on...	See...
How to edit a discrepancy report type	<a href="#">Editing a Discrepancy Report Type</a> on page 1821
How to copy a discrepancy report type	<a href="#">Copying a Discrepancy Report Type</a> on page 1822

## Editing a Discrepancy Report Type

### Prerequisites

To edit a discrepancy report type, you should have:

- **C1-DiscrepancyReport** Business object defined for discrepancy report.
- Characteristic Type defined for the discrepancy report.

### Procedure

To edit a discrepancy report type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **D** and then click **Discrepancy Report Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Discrepancy Report Type** sub-menu.  
The **Discrepancy Report Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Discrepancy Report Type List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the discrepancy report type whose details you want to edit.

The **Discrepancy Report Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Used to specify basic details about the discrepancy report type.
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the discrepancy report type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Discrepancy Report Type	Displays the discrepancy report type.	Not applicable
Business Object	Indicates the discrepancy report type business object used while defining the discrepancy report type.	Not applicable
Discrepancy Report Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the discrepancy report.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the discrepancy report type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the discrepancy report type.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the discrepancy report type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	No

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Discrepancy Report Type** zone to edit the details of the discrepancy report type.

- 5. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
- 6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the discrepancy report type, if required.
- 7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the discrepancy report type are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a discrepancy report type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Discrepancy Report Type</a> on page 1820

**Deleting a Discrepancy Report Type**

**Procedure**

To delete a discrepancy report type:

- 1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- 2. From the **Admin** menu, select **D** and then click **Discrepancy Report Type**.  
The sub-menu screen appears.
- 3. Click the **Search** option from the **Discrepancy Report Type** sub-menu.  
The **Discrepancy Report Type** screen appears.
- 4. In the **Discrepancy Report Type List** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the discrepancy report type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the discrepancy report type.

**Note:** You can delete a discrepancy report type only when you have not created a discrepancy report using the discrepancy report type.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Delete** button in the **Discrepancy Report Type** zone to delete the discrepancy report type

- 5. Click **OK** .  
The discrepancy report type is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Discrepancy Report Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Discrepancy Report Type List</a> on page 1816

**Copying a Discrepancy Report Type**

**Prerequisites**

To copy a discrepancy report type, you should have:


- **C1-DiscrepancyReport** Business object defined for discrepancy report.

- Characteristic Type defined for the discrepancy report.

Instead of creating a discrepancy report type from scratch, you can create a new discrepancy report type using an existing discrepancy report type. This is possible through copying a discrepancy report type. On copying a discrepancy report type, the details including the characteristics are copied to the new discrepancy report type. You can then edit the details, if required.

### **Procedure**

To copy a discrepancy report type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **D** and then click **Discrepancy Report Type**.  
The sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Discrepancy Report Type** sub-menu.  
The **Discrepancy Report Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Discrepancy Report Type List** zone, click the **Duplicate** () icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the discrepancy report type whose copy you want to create.

The **Discrepancy Report Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - The main section contains the following fields:
- **Characteristics** - Used to define characteristics for the discrepancy report type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Discrepancy Report Type	Used to specify the discrepancy report type	Not applicable
Business Object	Indicates the discrepancy report type business object using which you are defining the discrepancy report type.	Not applicable
Discrepancy Report Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the discrepancy report.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the discrepancy report type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the discrepancy report type.	No
Status	Indicates the status of discrepancy report type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can create a copy of the **Discrepancy Report Type** zone to create a copy of the discrepancy report type.

5. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the discrepancy report type, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The new discrepancy report type is defined.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a discrepancy report type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Discrepancy Report Type</a> on page 1820

**Viewing the Discrepancy Report Type Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a discrepancy report type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **D** and then click **Discrepancy Report Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Discrepancy Report Type** sub-menu.  
The **Discrepancy Report Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Discrepancy Report Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the discrepancy report type whose details you want to view.  
The **Discrepancy Report Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the discrepancy type in the **Discrepancy Report Type** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Discrepancy Report Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Discrepancy Report Type</a> on page 1816
<b>Discrepancy Report Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Discrepancy Report Type</a> on page 1817
<b>Discrepancy Report Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Discrepancy Report Type List</a> on page 1816

**Discrepancy Report (Used for Searching)**

The **Discrepancy Report** screen allows you to search for a discrepancy report using various search criteria. Through this screen, you can navigate to the following screen:

- [Discrepancy Report \(Used for Viewing\)](#) on page 1829
- [Search Discrepancy Report](#) on page 1824

**Search Discrepancy Report**

The **Search Discrepancy Report** zone allows you to search for a discrepancy report using various search criteria. It contains the following two sections:

**Search Criteria** - The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Search By	Used to indicate whether you want to search for a discrepancy report using the discrepancy or account details. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Discrepancy Details</li> <li>Account Details</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>Discrepancy Details</b> option is selected	
Discrepancy Report ID	Used to search a particular discrepancy report..	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Discrepancy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Discrepancy Report Type	Used to indicate the levels at which the discrepancy report is generated. It has following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Account Level</li> <li>File Level</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when <b>Discrepancy Details</b> is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Status	Used to search a particular discrepancy reports with a particular status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Completed</li> <li>Draft</li> <li>Pending</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Discrepancy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
File Name	Used to specify the filename that is provided when a discrepancy report is created at file level.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Discrepancy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Created From	Used to search discrepancy reports which are created from a particular date onwards.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Discrepancy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Created To	Used to search for discrepancy report which is created till a particular date.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Discrepancy Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Used to search discrepancy reports through which a particular person's record is created or updated in the system.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	
Account Identifier Type	Used to select the identifier type based on which you want to search discrepancy reports through which the account details are created or updated in the system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Account Name</li> <li>Base Global Account ID</li> <li>Bill Group Identifier</li> <li>Demo Bank Account Number</li> <li>External Account Identifier</li> <li>Flexcube Account ID</li> <li>International Bank Account Number</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you specify the account identifier as a search criteria, you have to select the account identifier type.
Account Identifier	Used to specify the value for the account identifier type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when <b>Account Details</b> is selected from the <b>Search By</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> If you specify the account identifier type as a search criteria, you have to specify the account identifier.
Account ID	Used to search discrepancy reports that are created by a particular user.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Account Details</b> option from the <b>Search By</b> list.	

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for a discrepancy report.

**Search Results** - On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Creation Date Time	Displays date and time when the discrepancy report was created.
Discrepancy Report Information	Displays information about the discrepancy report.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Discrepancy Report</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective discrepancy report.

Column Name	Column Description
Status	Indicates the status of the discrepancy report. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Completed</li> </ul>
Account ID	Displays the account ID of the person who created the discrepancy report.
File Name	Displays the filename given when discrepancy report is created at file level.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a discrepancy report	<a href="#">Searching for a Discrepancy Report</a> on page 1827
How to view the details of a discrepancy report	<a href="#">Viewing the Discrepancy Report Details</a> on page 1829

## Searching for a Discrepancy Report

### Prerequisites

To search for a discrepancy report, you should have:

- **C1-DiscrepancyReport** Business object defined for discrepancy report.
- Discrepancy Report Type defined for discrepancy report.
- Status defined for discrepancy report.

### Procedure

To search for a discrepancy report:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Menu** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Discrepancy Report**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Discrepancy Report** sub-menu.  
The **Discrepancy Report** screen appears.
4. Enter the search criteria in the **Search Discrepancy Report** zone.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

5. Click **Search**.

A list of discrepancy reports that meet the search criteria appear in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Discrepancy Report screen	<a href="#">Discrepancy Report (Used for Searching)</a> on page 1824
Discrepancy Report zone	<a href="#">Search Discrepancy Report</a> on page 1824

Creating a Discrepancy Report

Prerequisites

To create a discrepancy report, you should have:

- Discrepancy Report Type defined in the application.
- Report Level defined in the application.

Procedure

To create a discrepancy report:

1. Click the **Menu** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Main** menu, select **Financial** and then click **Discrepancy Report**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Discrepancy Report** sub-menu.

The **Discrepancy Report** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Discrepancy Report Type	Used to indicate the discrepancy report type that you want to use to create the discrepancy report. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Discrepancy Report Type</li><li>• File Discrepancy Report Type</li></ul>	Yes
Report Level	Used to specify the level at which the discrepancy report is created. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• At Account Level</li><li>• At File Level</li></ul>	Yes
File Name	Used to specify a name for the file when report level is selected as <b>At File Level</b> .	Yes (Conditional) <div><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the report level is selected as <b>At File Level</b> while creating a discrepancy report.</div>
Account ID	Used to specify an account ID when report level is selected as <b>At Account Level</b> .	Yes (Conditional) <div><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the report level is selected as <b>At Account Level</b> while creating a discrepancy report.</div>



**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access the **Select Discrepancy Report Type** screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Discrepancy Report** screen.

4. Enter the required details.
5. Click **Save**.

The **Discrepancy Report** is created.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Discrepancy Line Items</b> zone	<a href="#">Discrepancy Line Items</a> on page 1831
<b>Discrepancy Line Items Related Objects</b> zone	<a href="#">Discrepancy Line Item Related Objects</a> on page 1832
<b>Discrepancy Line Item Characteristics</b> zone	<a href="#">Discrepancy Line Items Characteristics Zone</a> on page 1833

## Viewing the Discrepancy Report Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a discrepancy report:

1. Search for the discrepancy report in the **Discrepancy Report** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Discrepancy Report Information** column corresponding to the discrepancy report whose details you want to view.

The **Discrepancy Report** screen appears. It contains the following tabs:

- [Discrepancy Report - Main](#) on page 1830
- [Discrepancy Report - Log](#) on page 1833

3. Ensure that the **Main** tab is selected.
4. View the details of the discrepancy report in the **Discrepancy Report** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a discrepancy report	<a href="#">Searching for a Discrepancy Report</a> on page 1827
<b>Discrepancy Report</b> screen	<a href="#">Discrepancy Report (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 1829
<b>Discrepancy Report</b> zone	<a href="#">Discrepancy Report - Main</a> on page 1830

## Discrepancy Report (Used for Viewing)

Once the discrepancy reports are created, the **Discrepancy Report** screen allows you to:

- View the details of discrepancy report.
- Delete a discrepancy report
- Edit a discrepancy line item
- Finalize a discrepancy report
- View the log of a discrepancy report

- Add a log entry for a discrepancy report
- View the discrepancy line item related objects

This screen consists of the following tabs:

- [Discrepancy Report - Main](#) on page 1830
- [Discrepancy Report - Log](#) on page 1833

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of discrepancy report	<a href="#">Viewing the Discrepancy Report Details</a> on page 1829
How to delete a discrepancy report	<a href="#">Deleting a Discrepancy Report</a> on page 1835
How to edit a discrepancy line item	<a href="#">Editing a Discrepancy Line Item</a> on page 1833
How to add a log entry for a discrepancy report	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Discrepancy Report</a> on page 1836
How to view the log of a discrepancy report	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Discrepancy Report</a> on page 1836
<b>Discrepancy Line Item Related Objects</b> zone	<a href="#">Discrepancy Line Item Related Objects</a> on page 1832

**Discrepancy Report - Main**

The **Discrepancy Report - Main** tab displays information about the discrepancy report. It contains the following zones:

- [Discrepancy Report](#) on page 1830
- [Discrepancy Line Items](#) on page 1831
- [Discrepancy Line Item Related Objects](#) on page 1832
- [Discrepancy Line Items Characteristics Zone](#) on page 1833

**Discrepancy Report**

The **Discrepancy Report** zone displays the details of the discrepancy report. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - Displays basic information about the discrepancy report. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Discrepancy Report Information	Displays information about the discrepancy report.
Discrepancy Report Type	Indicates the discrepancy report type using which the discrepancy report is created. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Discrepancy Report Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the discrepancy report type.
File Name	Displays the filename for which the discrepancy report is generated.
Account Information	Displays the details of the account for which discrepancy report is generated.
Status	Indicates the status of the discrepancy report. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pending</li> <li>• Draft</li> <li>• Completed</li> </ul>

- **Record Actions** - This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Delete	Used to delete the discrepancy report.
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Delete</b> button appears only when the discrepancy report is in the <b>Pending</b> status.
Finalize	Used to finalize all the changes and process the discrepancy report.
	<b>Note:</b> Finalize button appears only when the discrepancy report is in the <b>Pending</b> status.


- **Record Information** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the discrepancy report is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Status Date Time	Displays the date and time when the status of the discrepancy report was defined.
Creation Date Time	Displays the date and time when the discrepancy report was created.


### Discrepancy Line Items


The **Discrepancy Line Items** zone displays the details of the discrepancy report. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Account ID	Indicates the account for which the discrepancy line item is created.
	<b>Note:</b> This column appears only when you select the discrepancy report information where the filename is provided.
Policy Number	Indicates the policy number.
Plan Number	Indicates the plan number of the policy.
Member Identifier Type	Displays the member identifier type.
Member Identifier	Displays the value of the member identifier type.
Member Name	Displays the name of the member to whom the discrepancy report belongs.
Coverage Start Date	Displays the date from when the coverage starts.
Coverage End Date	Displays the date till when the coverage ends.
Billed Amount	Displays the bill segment amount.
Paid Amount	Displays the paid amount of the bill.
Discrepancy Amount	Displays the discrepancy amount.
Discrepancy Category	Displays the discrepancy category.

Column Name	Column Description
Consumer Status	Displays the status of the consumer for its existence in the application.
Comments	Displays the comments, added for the discrepancy line items.
Edit	<p>On clicking the <b>Edit</b> () icon, the <b>Discrepancy Line Item</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the discrepancy line item.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Edit</b> icon appears only when the discrepancy report is in <b>Pending</b> or <b>Draft</b> status.</p>

**Note:**

On clicking the Broadcast () icon corresponding to the discrepancy line item, the Discrepancy Line Item Related Objects and Discrepancy Line Item Characteristics zones appear.

You can filter the discrepancy line items using Discrepancy Category search criteria available in the Filter area. By default, the Filter area is hidden. You can view the Filter area by clicking the Filters () icon in the upper right corner of the Discrepancy Line Items zone.

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the Search Results section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation links, such as Previous and Next to navigate between pages.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of discrepancy report	<a href="#">Viewing the Discrepancy Report Details</a> on page 1829
How to edit the details of discrepancy line items	<a href="#">Editing a Discrepancy Line Item</a> on page 1833

**Discrepancy Line Item Related Objects**

The **Discrepancy Line Item Related Objects** zone lists the related objects for the discrepancy line item. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Related Object Type	Displays <b>Financial Transaction</b> or <b>Member Pay Instruction</b> as the related object type.
Related Object Information	<p>Displays brief information about the related object type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the Pay Instruction screen appears with the details of the respective related object.</p>

By default, the Discrepancy Line Item Related Objects zone does not appear in the Discrepancy Report screen. It appears only when you click the Broadcast () icon corresponding to the discrepancy line item in the Discrepancy Line Items zone.

Pagination is used to display limited number of records in the Search Results section. You can change the number of records displayed per page, if required. You can use the navigation links, such as Previous and Next to navigate between pages.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Discrepancy Line Items zone	<a href="#">Discrepancy Line Items</a> on page 1831

### Discrepancy Line Items Characteristics Zone

**Note:** At present the **Discrepancy Line Item Characteristics** cannot be added. The Discrepancy Line Items Characteristics zone will be fully functional in the future release.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of discrepancy report	<a href="#">Viewing the Discrepancy Report Details</a> on page 1829
How to edit the details of discrepancy line items	<a href="#">Editing a Discrepancy Line Item</a> on page 1833

## Discrepancy Report - Log

The **Discrepancy Report - Log** tab contains the following zone:

- [Discrepancy Report Log](#) on page 1833

### Discrepancy Report Log

The **Discrepancy Report Log** zone lists the complete trail of actions performed on the Discrepancy Report. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Creation Date/Time	Displays the date and time when the action was performed on the discrepancy report.
Details	Displays the details about the action performed on the discrepancy report.
User	Indicates the user who has performed the action on the discrepancy report.
Log Type	Indicates the type of log.
Related Object	Indicates the object or entity which is generated when the action is performed on the discrepancy report.
Status Reason	Displays the status reason of the action performed on the discrepancy report object.

**Note:** You can manually add a log entry for the discrepancy report by clicking the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Discrepancy Report Log** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view the log of the discrepancy report	<a href="#">Viewing the Log of a Discrepancy Report</a> on page 1836
How to add a log entry for a discrepancy report	<a href="#">Adding a Log Entry for a Reconciliation</a> on page 1810

## Editing a Discrepancy Line Item

### Prerequisites

To edit a discrepancy line item, you should have:


- Discrepancy Line Item status as Pending or Draft.

**Procedure**

To edit a discrepancy line item:

1. Search for the discrepancy report in the **Discrepancy Report** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Discrepancy Report Information** column corresponding to the discrepancy report, whose details you want to edit.

The **Discrepancy Report Information** screen appears.

3. In the **Discrepancy Line Items** zone, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** corresponding to the discrepancy line item whose details you want to edit.

The **Discrepancy Line Item** screen appears.

**Note:** The **Edit** icon appears only when the discrepancy line item is in the **Pending** or **Draft** status.

The **Discrepancy Line Item** screen contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Discrepancy Report ID	Displays the discrepancy report ID.
Account ID	Indicates the account for which the discrepancy line item is created.
Policy Number	Indicates the policy number.
Plan Number	Indicates the plan number of the policy.
Member Identifier Type	Displays the member identifier type.
Member Identifier	Displays the value of the member identifier.
Member Name	Displays the name of the member to whom the discrepancy report belongs.
Coverage Start Date	Displays the start date of the coverage cycle.
Coverage End Date	Displays the end date of the coverage cycle.
Billed Amount	Displays the bill segment amount.
Paid Amount	Displays the paid amount of the bill amount.
Discrepancy Amount	Displays the amount that highlights the discrepancy value.
Discrepancy Category	Used to specify the discrepancy category. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Billed Not Paid</li><li>• Paid Not Billed</li><li>• Rate Variance</li></ul>
Comments	Used to specify additional details about the Discrepancy Line Item.

4. Modify the required details for the discrepancy line item.
5. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the discrepancy line item are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of discrepancy report	<a href="#">Viewing the Discrepancy Report Details</a> on page 1829
<b>Discrepancy Report</b> zone	<a href="#">Discrepancy Report</a> on page 1830

## Deleting a Discrepancy Report

### Procedure

To delete a discrepancy report:

1. Search for the discrepancy report in the **Discrepancy Report** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Discrepancy Report Information** column corresponding to the discrepancy report that you want to delete.

The **Discrepancy Report** screen appears.

3. Click the **Delete** button in the **Discrepancy Report** zone.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the discrepancy report.

**Note:** The **Delete** button appears only when the discrepancy report is in the **Pending** or **Draft** status.

4. Click **OK**.

The discrepancy report is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a discrepancy report	<a href="#">Searching for a Discrepancy Report</a> on page 1827

## Finalizing a Discrepancy Report

### Prerequisites

To finalize a discrepancy report, you should have:

- Discrepancy Report status as Pending or Draft.

### Procedure

To finalize a discrepancy report:

1. Search for the discrepancy report in the **Discrepancy Report** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Discrepancy Report Information** column corresponding to the discrepancy report that you want to finalize.

The **Discrepancy Report** screen appears.

3. Click the **Finalize** button in the **Discrepancy Report** zone.

The status of the discrepancy report is changed to **Completed**.

**Note:** The **Finalize** button appears only when the discrepancy report is in the **Pending** status.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a discrepancy report	<a href="#">Searching for a Discrepancy Report</a> on page 1827

Adding a Log Entry for a Discrepancy Report

**Procedure**

To add a log entry for a discrepancy report:

1. Search for the discrepancy report in the **Discrepancy Report** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Discrepancy Report Information** column corresponding to the discrepancy report whose log you want to edit.

The **Discrepancy Report** screen is displayed. It consists of following tabs.

- [Discrepancy Report - Main](#) on page 1830
- [Discrepancy Report - Log](#) on page 1833

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. Click the **Add Log Entry** link in the upper right corner of the **Discrepancy Report Log** zone.

The **Add Discrepancy Report Log** window appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Discrepancy Report Information	Displays information about the discrepancy report.	Not applicable
Log Details	Used to specify additional comments on the discrepancy report.	Yes

5. Enter the comments in the **Log Details** field.
6. Click **Save**.

The log entry is added in the **Discrepancy Report Log** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a discrepancy report	<a href="#">Searching for a Discrepancy Report</a> on page 1827

Viewing the Log of a Discrepancy Report

**Procedure**

To view the log of a discrepancy report:

1. Search for the discrepancy report in the **Discrepancy Report** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Discrepancy Report Information** column corresponding to the discrepancy report whose log you want to view.

The **Discrepancy Report** screen appears. It consists of the following tabs:

- [Discrepancy Report - Main](#) on page 1830
- [Discrepancy Report - Log](#) on page 1833

3. Click the **Log** tab.

The **Log** tab appears.

4. View the complete trail of actions performed on the discrepancy report in the **Discrepancy Report Log** zone.



**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a discrepancy report	<a href="#">Searching for a Discrepancy Report</a> on page 1827



---

# Chapter

# 29

---

## Self-Funded Pricing

---

### Topics:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Approval Workflow for the Self-Funded Pricing Rules](#)
- [Line Item Extendable Lookup](#)
- [Extendable Lookup \(Line Item\)](#)
- [Claim Template Extendable Lookup](#)
- [Extendable Lookup \(Claim Template\)](#)
- [Rate Option Extendable Lookup](#)
- [Extendable Lookup \(Rate Option\)](#)
- [Pricing Group](#)
- [Pricing Rule Type](#)
- [Claim Pricing](#)
- [Specific Stop-Loss \(SSL\) Pricing](#)
- [Aggregate Stop-Loss \(ASL\) Pricing](#)
- [Retention Type Claim Based Pricing](#)
- [Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing](#)
- [Flat Fee Pricing](#)
- [Ancillary Pricing](#)
- [Discount Pricing](#)
- [Level Funding Pricing](#)
- [Pricing Rule \(Used for Viewing\)](#)

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing introduces a new pricing model for the self-funded health care business. In this pricing model, you can define pricing rules using a pricing rule type. You can define the following pricing rule types in ORMB:

- Claim
- Aggregate Stop-Loss
- Specific Stop-Loss
- Retention Type Claim Based
- Retention Type Enrollment

## Prerequisites

To setup the self-funded pricing feature, you need to do the following:

- Define values for claim template extendable lookup
- Define values for rate option extendable lookup
- Define values for line item extendable lookup
- Setup the **C1-ASOBLNG** feature configuration
- Define price items for the pricing rules
- Define parameters for the pricing rules
- Associate parameters to the price items for the pricing rules

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## Approval Workflow for the Self-Funded Pricing Rules

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to configure the approval workflow process for the claim, specific stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, retention type claim based, retention type enrollment based, flat fees, ancillary, discount, or level funded pricing rules. The following approval workflow groups are shipped with the product:

Approval Workflow Group	Description
C1PRCRLCLM	Claim Pricing Rule
C1PRCSSL	Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule
C1PRCASL	Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule
C1PRETCLM	Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule
C1PRRETENR	Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule
C1PRFLTTEE	Flat Fees Pricing Rule
C1PRCANC	Ancillary Pricing Rule
C1PRCDA	Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule
C1PRCLVLFN	Level Funded Pricing Rule

To enable the approval workflow process for the pricing rules, you need to do the following:

1. Create the required approval workflow chains, approval workflow criterion types, approval workflow group chain linkages, and approval workflow reasons.

**Note:** The **Field Level Approval** feature is not supported for the self-funded pricing rules. Therefore, you should not define field approval rule criteria while creating the approval workflow group chain linkage for the above listed approval workflow groups.

2. Define the approval workflow settings for the respective approval workflow group and set the **Active** field to **Yes**.

3. Ensure that the following value is set in the respective option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration:

Option Type	Value
Approval Workflow Group for Claim	C1PRCRLCLM
Approval Workflow Group for SSL	C1PRCSSL
Approval Workflow Group for ASL	C1PRCASL
Approval Workflow Group for Retention Type Claim Based	C1PRETCLM
Approval Workflow Group for Retention Type Enrollment Based	C1PRRETENR
Approval Workflow Group for Flat Fees	C1PRFLTTEE
Approval Workflow Group for Ancillary	C1PRCANC
Approval Workflow Group for Discount Arrangement	C1PRCDA
Approval Workflow Group for Level Funded	C1PRCLVLFN

Once the approval workflow process is enabled for the pricing rules of a particular category (for example, Claim), the system creates an approval transaction whenever you define, edit, or delete a pricing rule of the respective category (i.e. whenever you define, edit, or delete a claim pricing rule). You can view the approval transactions which are created while defining, editing, and deleting the parent customer's and bill groups' pricing rules in the **Pricing Rule Approval Transactions** zone of the **Customer 360° Information** screen. On clicking the link in the **Approval Transaction ID** column corresponding to an approval transaction, the **Comparison: New versus Existing** screen appears. It allows the approver to review the pricing rule and accordingly approve, reject, or cancel the approval transaction.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can review the approval transaction and take appropriate action from the **Approval Transaction** screen.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to setup the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## **Line Item Extendable Lookup**

Different charges, such as consumer-driven amount, traditional healthcare amount, network access fees, and so on are received as part of the claim transaction. These charges which contribute to the total claim amount are defined as the line items in the system. Each line item must be defined in the system using the **Line Item (C1-ExtLookPricingRuleLineItem)** extendable lookup. A line item encapsulates the following information:

- Service Quantity Identifier (SQI) which indicates the transaction field in which the charge amount is stored. It is also used while calculating the percentage based markup or markdown for the charge.
- Billable charge line type using which you want to create the calculation line for the charge.
- Whether the system should write off the charge when it is not eligible for billing.
- Billable charge line type using which you want to create the write off calculation line for the charge.
- Whether the charge should be considered while calculating the percentage based retention type claim based fee.
- The pricing rule type categories to which the charge is associated.

For example, you can create a line item for the following charges:

Charge	Line Item	Write Off, If Not Eligible for Billing	Pricing Rule Type Category
Consumer-Driven Amount	CDH	Yes	Claim
			Specific Stop-Loss
			Aggregate Stop-Loss
			Ancillary
Traditional Healthcare Amount	THC	Yes	Claim
			Specific Stop-Loss
			Aggregate Stop-Loss
Preventive Care Charges	PCC	No	Ancillary

The CDH and THC line items can be included in a claim template. They can also be considered while calculating specific and aggregate stop-loss. The CDH and PCC line items can be considered while defining pricing arrangements in an ancillary pricing rule type. In addition, any charge received for the CDH and THC line items in a claim transaction will be written off when these line items are not eligible for billing.

The **Extendable Lookup Query** screen allows you to search for an extendable lookup. It contains the following zone:

- [Extendable Lookup Search](#) on page 1842

Extendable Lookup Search

The **Extendable Lookup Search** zone allows you to search for an extendable lookup. It contains the following two sections:

- Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Business Object	Used to search a particular extendable lookup business object.	No
Description	Used to search extendable lookups with a particular description.	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an extendable lookup.

- Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Business Object	Displays the extendable lookup business object.
Description	Displays the description of the extendable lookup business object.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective extendable lookup.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Line Item</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Line Item Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1843
How to view the values of the <b>Line Item</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Viewing the Values of the Line Item Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1843

## Searching for the Line Item Extendable Lookup

### Procedure

To search for the **Line Item** extendable lookup:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **E** and then click **Extendable Lookup**.  
The **Extendable Lookup Query** screen appears.
3. In the **Extendable Lookup Search** zone, enter **C1-ExtLookPricingRuleLineItem** in the **Business Object** field.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

The **Line Item** extendable lookup business object appears in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Extendable Lookup Query</b> screen	<a href="#">Line Item Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1841
<b>Extendable Lookup Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Search</a> on page 1842

## Viewing the Values of the Line Item Extendable Lookup

### Procedure

To view the values of the **Line Item** extendable lookup:

1. Search for the **Line Item** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.
3. View the values of the **Line Item** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Line Item</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Line Item Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1843

For more information on...	See...
Extendable Lookup screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Line Item)</a> on page 1844
Extendable Lookup Value List zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1844




## Extendable Lookup (Line Item)

The **Extendable Lookup** screen allows you to view the values of the **Line Item (C1-ExtLookPricingRuleLineItem)** extendable lookup. It also allows you to define, edit, copy, and delete a line item. It contains the following zones:


- [Extendable Lookup Value List](#) on page 1844
- [Extendable Lookup Value](#) on page 1845


## Extendable Lookup Value List

The **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone lists the values which are already defined for the **Line Item** extendable lookup. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Value	Displays the line item.
Description	Displays the description of the line item.
Owner	Indicates who has created the line item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Framework</li><li>• Base</li><li>• Customer Modification</li></ul>
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Line Item</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the line item.
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Line Item</b> screen appears where you can define a new line item using an existing line item.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the line item. <div><b>Note:</b> You can delete a line item only when it is not yet used in the claim template or while defining the self-funded pricing.</div>
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the line item.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

On clicking the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a line item, the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone appears with the details of the respective line item.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Value** and **Description**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics



For more information on...	See...
How to edit a line item	<a href="#">Editing a Line Item</a> on page 1850
How to copy a line item	<a href="#">Copying a Line Item</a> on page 1852
How to delete a line item	<a href="#">Deleting a Line Item</a> on page 1854
How to view the details of a line item	<a href="#">Viewing the Line Item Details</a> on page 1854

## Extendable Lookup Value

The **Extendable Lookup Value** zone displays the details of the line item. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic information about the line item. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Line Item	Indicates the charge for which the line item is created.
Description	Displays the description of the line item.
Override Description	Displays the overridden description of the line item.
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the line item.
Status	Indicates the status of the line item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>
Service Quantity Identifier	Indicates the service quantity identifier associated with the line item.
Billable Charge Line Type	Indicates the billable charge line type using which the calculation line is created for the charge (i.e. line item).
Write Off Billable Charge Line Type	Indicates the billable charge line type using which the write off calculation line is created for the charge (i.e. line item).
Write Off, if Not Eligible for Billing	Indicates whether the system should write off the charge (i.e. line item) when it is not eligible for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Retention Claim Based Percentage Calculation	Indicates whether the charge (i.e. line item) should be considered while calculating the percentage based retention type claim based fee. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>

- **Line Item Usage** – Lists the pricing rule type categories to which the line item is associated. It contains the following field in a grid:


Field Name	Field Description
Pricing Rule Type Category	<p>Indicates the pricing rule type category which is associated with the charge (i.e. line item). The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>Ancillary</li> <li>Claim</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss</li> </ul>

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the line item.
Delete	<p>Used to delete the line item.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can delete a line item only when it is not yet used in the claim template or while defining the self-funded pricing.</p>
Duplicate	Used to create a new line item using an existing line item.

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	<p>Indicates the extendable lookup business object using which the line item is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.</p>
Owner	<p>Indicates who has created the line item. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Framework</li> <li>Base</li> <li>Customer Modification</li> </ul>

By default, the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone does not appear in the **Extendable Lookup** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the line item in the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a line item	<a href="#">Editing a Line Item</a> on page 1850
How to copy a line item	<a href="#">Copying a Line Item</a> on page 1852
How to delete a line item	<a href="#">Deleting a Line Item</a> on page 1854
How to view the details of a line item	<a href="#">Viewing the Line Item Details</a> on page 1854

## Defining a Line Item

### Prerequisites

To define a line item, you should have:

- Service quantity identifiers and billable charge line types defined in the application

### Procedure

To define a line item:

1. Search for the **Line Item** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.

The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.

3. Click the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Extendable Lookup** screen.

The **Line Item** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the line item.
- **Line Item Usage** – Used to associate the line item with one or more pricing rule type categories.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Line Item	Used to specify the charge (for example, consumer-driven amount, traditional healthcare amount, and so on) for which the line item is created.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the line item.	Yes
Override Description	Used when you want to override the description of the line item.	No
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the line item.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the line item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>Active</b> .	
Service Quantity Identifier	Used to indicate the service quantity identifier (SQI) for the line item. The SQI indicates the transaction field in which the charge amount is stored. It is also used while calculating the percentage based markup or markdown for the line item.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the billable charge line type using which you want to create the calculation line for the charge (i.e. line item).	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.	
Write Off Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the billable charge line type using which you want to create the write off calculation line for the charge (i.e. line item).	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.	
Write Off, if Not Eligible for Billing	Used to indicate whether the system should write off the charge (i.e. line item) when it is not eligible for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>No</b> .	
Retention Claim Based Percentage Calculation	Used to indicate whether the charge (i.e. line item) should be considered while calculating the percentage based retention type claim based fee. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>No</b> .	

4. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
5. Associate the line item with one or more pricing rule type categories.
6. Click **Save**.

The line item is added in the **C1-ExtLookPricingRuleLineItem** extendable lookup.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Line Item</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Line Item Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1843
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Line Item)</a> on page 1844
How to associate a line item with a pricing rule type category	<a href="#">Associating a Line Item with a Pricing Rule Type Category</a> on page 1848

## Associating a Line Item with a Pricing Rule Type Category

**Procedure**

To associate a line item with a pricing rule type category:

1. Ensure that the **Line Item Usage** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a line item.

The **Line Item Usage** section contains the following field in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)												
Pricing Rule Type Category	<p>Used to indicate the pricing rule type category which you want to associate with the charge (i.e. line item). The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Aggregate Stop-Loss</li><li>Ancillary</li><li>Claim</li><li>Retention Type Claim Based</li><li>Specific Stop-Loss</li></ul> <p>The following table describes the significance of each category that can be associated with the line item:</p> <table><tr><th>Pricing Rule Type Category</th><th>Significance</th></tr><tr><td>Claim</td><td>Whether the line item can be included in a claim template and thereby while defining a claim pricing rule for a parent customer and bill group.</td></tr><tr><td>Specific Stop-Loss</td><td>Whether the line item can be considered while calculating specific stop-loss.</td></tr><tr><td>Aggregate Stop-Loss</td><td>Whether the line item can be considered while calculating aggregate stop-loss.</td></tr><tr><td>Retention Type Claim Based</td><td>Whether the line item can be used while calculating the percentage based retention type claim based fee.</td></tr><tr><td>Ancillary</td><td>Whether the line item can be considered while defining pricing arrangements in an ancillary pricing rule type.</td></tr></table> <p><b>Note:</b> At present, the line items are not used in the pricing rule types where the pricing rule type category is set to <b>Retention Type Enrollment Based</b> and <b>Flat Fees</b>.</p>	Pricing Rule Type Category	Significance	Claim	Whether the line item can be included in a claim template and thereby while defining a claim pricing rule for a parent customer and bill group.	Specific Stop-Loss	Whether the line item can be considered while calculating specific stop-loss.	Aggregate Stop-Loss	Whether the line item can be considered while calculating aggregate stop-loss.	Retention Type Claim Based	Whether the line item can be used while calculating the percentage based retention type claim based fee.	Ancillary	Whether the line item can be considered while defining pricing arrangements in an ancillary pricing rule type.	<p>Yes (Conditional)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating the line item with a pricing rule type category.</p>
Pricing Rule Type Category	Significance													
Claim	Whether the line item can be included in a claim template and thereby while defining a claim pricing rule for a parent customer and bill group.													
Specific Stop-Loss	Whether the line item can be considered while calculating specific stop-loss.													
Aggregate Stop-Loss	Whether the line item can be considered while calculating aggregate stop-loss.													
Retention Type Claim Based	Whether the line item can be used while calculating the percentage based retention type claim based fee.													
Ancillary	Whether the line item can be considered while defining pricing arrangements in an ancillary pricing rule type.													

2. Enter the required details in the **Line Item Usage** section.

3. If you want to associate the line item with more than one pricing rule type category, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 3.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a pricing rule type category from the line item, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the pricing rule type category.

4. Click **Save**.
- The line item is associated with the pricing rule type category.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a line item	<a href="#">Defining a Line Item</a> on page 1847
How to edit a line item	<a href="#">Editing a Line Item</a> on page 1850
How to copy a line item	<a href="#">Copying a Line Item</a> on page 1852

**Editing a Line Item**

**Prerequisites**

To edit a line item, you should have:

- Service quantity identifiers and billable charge line types defined in the application

**Procedure**

To edit a line item:

1. Search for the **Line Item** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.
3. In the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the line item whose details you want to edit.

The **Line Item** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the line item.
- **Line Item Usage** – Used to associate the line item with one or more pricing rule type categories.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Line Item	Indicates the charge for which the line item is created.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the line item.	Yes
Override Description	Used when you want to override the description of the line item.	No
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the line item.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the status of the line item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Owner	Indicates who has created the rate option. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Framework</li> <li>Base</li> <li>Customer Modification</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Service Quantity Identifier	Used to indicate the service quantity identifier (SQI) for the line item. The SQI indicates the transaction field in which the charge amount is stored. It is also used while calculating the percentage based markup or markdown for the line item.	Yes
Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the billable charge line type using which you want to create the calculation line for the charge (i.e. line item). <div> <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears. </div>	Yes
Write Off Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the billable charge line type using which you want to create the write off calculation line for the charge (i.e. line item). <div> <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears. </div>	Yes (Conditional) <div> <b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Write Off, if Not Eligible for Billing</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>. </div>
Write Off, if Not Eligible for Billing	Used to indicate whether the system should write off the charge (i.e. line item) when it is not eligible for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	No
Retention Claim Based Percentage Calculation	Used to indicate whether the charge (i.e. line item) should be considered while calculating the percentage based retention type claim based fee. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	No

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of a line item by clicking the **Edit** button in the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone.

4. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.

- 5. Associate or remove a pricing rule type category from the line item, if required.
- 6. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the line item are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Line Item</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Line Item Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1843
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Line Item)</a> on page 1844
<b>Extendable Lookup Value List</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1844
<b>Extendable Lookup Value</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value</a> on page 1845
How to associate a line item with a pricing rule type category	<a href="#">Associating a Line Item with a Pricing Rule Type Category</a> on page 1848

**Copying a Line Item**

Instead of creating a line item from scratch, you can create a new line item using an existing line item. This is possible through copying a line item. On copying a line item, the details including the pricing rule type categories to which the line item is associated are copied to the new line item. You can then edit the details, if required.


**Prerequisites**

To copy a line item, you should have:

- Line item (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Service quantity identifiers and billable charge line types defined in the application

**Procedure**

To copy a line item:

1. Search for the **Line Item** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.
3. In the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone, click the **Duplicate** () icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the line item whose copy you want to create.

The **Line Item** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the line item.
- **Line Item Usage** – Used to associate the line item with one or more pricing rule type categories.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Line Item	Used to specify the charge (for example, consumer-driven amount, traditional healthcare amount, and so on) for which the line item is created.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the line item.	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Override Description	Used when you want to override the description of the line item.	No
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the line item.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the line item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Service Quantity Identifier	Used to indicate the service quantity identifier (SQI) for the line item. The SQI indicates the transaction field in which the charge amount is stored. It is also used while calculating the percentage based markup or markdown for the line item.	Yes
Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the billable charge line type using which you want to create the calculation line for the charge (i.e. line item). <div> <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears. </div>	Yes
Write Off Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the billable charge line type using which you want to create the write off calculation line for the charge (i.e. line item). <div> <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears. </div>	Yes (Conditional) <div> <b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Write Off, if Not Eligible for Billing</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>. </div>
Write Off, if Not Eligible for Billing	Used to indicate whether the system should write off the charge (i.e. line item) when it is not eligible for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	No
Retention Claim Based Percentage Calculation	Used to indicate whether the charge (i.e. line item) should be considered while calculating the percentage based retention type claim based fee. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	No

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can copy a line item by clicking the **Duplicate** button in the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone.

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Associate or remove a pricing rule type category from the line item, if required.

6. Click **Save**.

The new line item is added in the **C1-ExtLookPricingRuleLineItem** extendable lookup.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Line Item</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Line Item Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1843
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Line Item)</a> on page 1844
<b>Extendable Lookup Value List</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1844
<b>Extendable Lookup Value</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value</a> on page 1845
How to associate a line item with a pricing rule type category	<a href="#">Associating a Line Item with a Pricing Rule Type Category</a> on page 1848


**Deleting a Line Item**

**Procedure**

To delete a line item:

1. Search for the **Line Item** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.

The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.

3. In the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone, click the **Delete**  icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the line item that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the line item.

**Note:** You can delete a line item only when it is not yet used in the claim template or while defining the Administrative Services Only (ASO) pricing.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a line item by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone.

4. Click **OK**.

The line item is deleted from the **C1-ExtLookPricingRuleLineItem** extendable lookup.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Line Item</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Line Item Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1843
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Line Item)</a> on page 1844
<b>Extendable Lookup Value List</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1844
<b>Extendable Lookup Value</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value</a> on page 1845

**Viewing the Line Item Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a line item:

1. Search for the **Line Item** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.
3. In the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the line item whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup Value** zone appears.
4. View the details of the line item in the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Line Item</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Line Item Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1843
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Line Item)</a> on page 1844
<b>Extendable Lookup Value List</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1844
<b>Extendable Lookup Value</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value</a> on page 1845

## **Claim Template Extendable Lookup**

The ASO service provider may bill different charges for a claim transaction to different employers. The system enables you to create different claim templates for different employers. A claim template contains a set of charges (i.e. line items) which can be billed to a parent customer or bill group. You can define multiple claim templates in the system. Each claim template must be defined in the system using the **Claim Template (C1-ExtLookClaimTemplate)** extendable lookup. A claim template encapsulates the following information:

- Whether the claim template can be used while defining a claim pricing rule for a policy which is in the **In Force/Active, Post Runout**, or **Runout** status.
- Line items which can be billed to a parent customer or bill group.
- Whether you want to calculate the markup or markdown on the line items which are included in the claim template.
- Whether you want to specify a flat markup or markdown amount for the line items or the markup or markdown percentage for the line items which are eligible for percentage based markup or markdown
- Whether a line item is eligible for billing or not.
- Whether you want to define rule based billing eligibility for a line item.
- Whether you want to define billing eligibility for a line item while defining a claim pricing rule.
- Rule type which indicates the rules that should be executed to determine whether the line item is eligible for billing.
- Whether the line item is eligible for percentage based markup or markdown when the markup or markdown type is set to **Percentage**.

Once a claim template is defined in the extendable lookup, you can associate the claim template with a claim pricing rule type. You can associate multiple claim templates with a claim pricing rule type. Then, while defining a claim pricing rule for a parent customer, you can use any one of the claim template associated with the respective claim pricing rule type. The system then inherits the line items and the default markup and markdown values in the claim pricing rule from the claim template.

However, while defining a claim pricing rule for a policy of a bill group, you can only use the claim templates which are defined for the respective policy status and associated with the respective claim pricing rule type.

For example, you can create the claim templates with the following line items:

Claim Template	Policy Status	Line Item	Billing Eligibility	Pricing Strategy	Markup or Markdown Type	Markup or Markdown Amount	Markdown or Markdown Percentage
CT1	In Force/ Active	CDH	Yes	Markup	Flat Amount	\$2	-
		THC	Yes				
		PCC	No				
CT2	Runout	CDH	Yes	Markdown	Percentage	-	2.00
		THC	Yes				
CT3	Post Runout	PCC	Yes	None	-	-	-
		NAF	No				

The **Extendable Lookup Query** screen allows you to search for an extendable lookup. It contains the following zone:

- [Extendable Lookup Search](#) on page 1856

Extendable Lookup Search

The **Extendable Lookup Search** zone allows you to search for an extendable lookup. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Business Object	Used to search a particular extendable lookup business object.	No
Description	Used to search extendable lookups with a particular description.	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an extendable lookup.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Business Object	Displays the extendable lookup business object.
Description	Displays the description of the extendable lookup business object.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective extendable lookup.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Claim Template</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Claim Template Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1857
How to view the values of the <b>Claim Template</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Viewing the Values of the Claim Template Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1857

## Searching for the Claim Template Extendable Lookup

### Procedure

To search for the **Claim Template** extendable lookup:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **E** and then click **Extendable Lookup**.  
The **Extendable Lookup Query** screen appears.
3. In the **Extendable Lookup Search** zone, enter **C1-ExtLookClaimTemplate** in the **Business Object** field.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

The **Claim Template** extendable lookup business object appears in the **Search Results** section.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Extendable Lookup Query</b> screen	<a href="#">Claim Template Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1855
<b>Extendable Lookup Search</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Search</a> on page 1856

## Viewing the Values of the Claim Template Extendable Lookup

### Procedure

To view the values of the **Claim Template** extendable lookup:

1. Search for the **Claim Template** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.
3. View the values of the **Claim Template** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Claim Template</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Claim Template Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1857
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Claim Template)</a> on page 1858

For more information on...	See...
Extendable Lookup Value List zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1858




## Extendable Lookup (Claim Template)

The **Extendable Lookup** screen allows you to view the values of the **Claim Template (C1-ExtLookClaimTemplate)** extendable lookup. It also allows you to define, edit, copy, and delete a claim template. It contains the following zones:


- [Extendable Lookup Value List](#) on page 1858
- [Extendable Lookup Value](#) on page 1859


### Extendable Lookup Value List

The **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone lists the values which are already defined for the **Claim Template** extendable lookup. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Value	Displays the claim template.
Description	Displays the description of the claim template.
Owner	Indicates who has created the claim template. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Framework</li><li>• Base</li><li>• Customer Modification</li></ul>
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Claim Template</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the claim template.
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Claim Template</b> screen appears where you can define a new claim template using an existing claim template.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the claim template.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a claim template only when it is not yet used in a claim pricing rule type.
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the claim template.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

On clicking the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a claim template, the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone appears with the details of the respective claim template.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Value** and **Description**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a claim template	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Template</a> on page 1867
How to copy a claim template	<a href="#">Copying a Claim Template</a> on page 1869
How to delete a claim template	<a href="#">Deleting a Claim Template</a> on page 1870
How to view the details of a claim template	<a href="#">Viewing the Claim Template Details</a> on page 1871

## Extendable Lookup Value

The **Extendable Lookup Value** zone displays the details of the claim template. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic information about the claim template. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Claim Template	Displays the claim template.
Description	Displays the description of the claim template.
Override Description	Displays the overridden description of the claim template.
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the claim template.
Status	Indicates the status of the claim template. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>

- **Claim Template Usage** – Indicates when the claim template can be used while defining a claim pricing rule for a policy of a bill group. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Policy Status	Indicates whether the claim template should be used while defining a claim pricing rule for a policy which is in the <b>In Force/Active</b> , <b>Post Runout</b> , or <b>Runout</b> status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>

- **Default Markup or Markdown Values** – Indicates the default markup or markdown values defined for the line items in the claim template. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Pricing Strategy	Indicates whether you want to markup or markdown the line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None</li> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• Markdown</li> </ul>

Field Name	Field Description
Markup or Markdown Type	Indicates whether you want a flat or percentage based markup or markdown on the line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flat Amount</li> <li>Percentage</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Markup</b> or <b>Markdown</b> option is selected from the <b>Pricing Strategy</b> list.
Markup or Markdown Amount	Displays the default flat markup or markdown amount for the line items.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Flat Amount</b> option is selected from the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> list.
Markup or Markdown Percentage	Displays the default percentage of markup or markdown for all line items.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Percentage</b> option is selected from the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> list.

- **Line Items** – Lists the line items which are added in the claim template. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence	Indicates the order in which the calculation line should be generated for the line item.
Line Item	Indicate the line item which is added in the claim template.
Billing Eligibility	Indicates whether the line item is eligible for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eligible</li> <li>Not Eligible</li> <li>Rule Based</li> <li>Used Defined (Default No)</li> <li>User Defined (Default Yes)</li> </ul>
Rule Type	Indicates that rules of the specified rule type should be executed to determine whether the line item is eligible for billing.
	<b>Note:</b> The data appears in this column only when the <b>Rule Based</b> option is selected from the <b>Billing Eligibility</b> list.
Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility	Indicates whether the line item is eligible for percentage based markup or markdown when the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is set to <b>Percentage</b> . The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eligible</li> <li>Not Eligible</li> </ul>

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:


Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the claim template.



Button Name	Button Description
Delete	Used to delete the claim template.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a claim template only when it is not yet used in a claim pricing rule type.
Duplicate	Used to create a new claim template using an existing claim template.

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the extendable lookup business object using which the claim template is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Owner	Indicates who has created the claim template. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Framework</li> <li>• Base</li> <li>• Customer Modification</li> </ul>

By default, the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone does not appear in the **Extendable Lookup** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the claim template in the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a claim template	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Template</a> on page 1867
How to copy a claim template	<a href="#">Copying a Claim Template</a> on page 1869
How to delete a claim template	<a href="#">Deleting a Claim Template</a> on page 1870
How to view the details of a claim template	<a href="#">Viewing the Claim Template Details</a> on page 1871

## Defining a Claim Template

### Procedure

To define a claim template:

1. Search for the **Claim Template** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.

The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.

3. Click the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Extendable Lookup** screen.

The **Claim Template** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the claim template. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Claim Template	Used to specify the claim template.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the claim template.	Yes
Override Description	Used when you want to override the description of the claim template.	No
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the claim template.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the claim template. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>Active</b> .	

- **Claim Template Usage** – Used to indicate when the claim template can be used while defining a claim pricing rule for a policy of a bill group. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Status	Used to indicate whether you want to use the claim template while defining a claim pricing rule for a policy which is in the <b>In Force/Active</b> , <b>Post Runout</b> , or <b>Runout</b> status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Yes

- **Default Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to indicate the default markup or markdown values for the line items which are added in the claim template.
  - **Line Items** – Used to add the line items in the claim template.
4. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
  5. Select the **In Force/Active**, **Post Runout**, or **Runout** option from the **Policy Status** list depending on whether you want to use the claim template while defining a claim pricing rule for a policy in
  6. Add the required line items in the claim template.
  7. Define the default markup or markdown values for the line items, if required.
  8. Click **Save**.

The claim template is added in the **C1-ExtLookClaimTemplate** extendable lookup.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Claim Template</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Claim Template Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1857
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Claim Template)</a> on page 1858

For more information on...	See...
How to add the line items in a claim template	<a href="#">Adding a Line Item in a Claim Template</a> on page 1863
How to define the default markup or markdown values for the line items	<a href="#">Defining the Default Markup or Markdown Values for the Line Items</a> on page 1865

## Adding a Line Item in a Claim Template

### Prerequisites

To add a line item in a claim template, you should have:

- The line item defined in the **C1-ExtLookPricingRuleLineItem** extendable lookup.
- Rule types defined in the application (where the rule type usage is set to **ASO Billing Line Item Eligibility**) when you want to define rule based billing eligibility for a line item.

### Procedure

To add a line item in a claim template:

1. Ensure that the **Line Items** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a claim template.

The **Line Items** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to indicate the order in which the calculation line should be generated for the line item.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while adding a line item in the claim template.
Line Item	Used to indicate the line item that you want to include in the claim template.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those line items which are associated to the <b>Claim</b> pricing rule type category.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required while adding a line item in the claim template.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billing Eligibility	<p>Used to indicate whether the line item is eligible for billing. If line item is not eligible for billing, the system does not create the calculation line for the line item. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Eligible</b> - Used when the line item is eligible for billing.</li> <li>• <b>Not Eligible</b> - Used when the line item is not eligible for billing.</li> <li>• <b>Rule Based</b> - Used when you want to determine whether the line item is eligible for billing using certain business rules while executing the <b>Update Status (C1-TXNEX)</b> batch.</li> <li>• <b>Used Defined (Default No)</b> - Used when you want to define billing eligibility for the line item while defining a claim pricing rule using the claim template. If you select this option, by default, the <b>User Defined Billing Option</b> option is not selected for the line item in the claim pricing rule.</li> <li>• <b>User Defined (Default Yes)</b> - Used when you want to define billing eligibility for the line item while defining a claim pricing rule using the claim template. If you select this option, by default, the <b>User Defined Billing Option</b> option is selected for the line item in the claim pricing rule.</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while adding a line item in the claim template.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Type	Used to indicate that rules of the specified rule type should be executed to determine whether the line item is eligible for billing.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those rule types where the rule type usage is set to <b>ASO Billing Line Item Eligibility</b> . The values appear in this list only when you select the <b>Rule Based</b> option from the <b>Billing Eligibility</b> list.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you select the <b>Rule Based</b> option from the <b>Billing Eligibility</b> list.
Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility	Used to indicate whether the line item is eligible for percentage based markup or markdown when the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is set to <b>Percentage</b> . The valid values are:	Yes (Conditional)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eligible</li> <li>Not Eligible</li> </ul>	<b>Note:</b> This field is required while adding a line item in the claim template.

- Enter the required details in the **Line Items** section.
- If you want to add more than one line item in the claim template, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a line item from the claim template, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the line item.

- Click **Save**.

The line item is added in the claim template.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a claim template	<a href="#">Defining a Claim Template</a> on page 1861
How to edit a claim template	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Template</a> on page 1867
How to copy a claim template	<a href="#">Copying a Claim Template</a> on page 1869

## Defining the Default Markup or Markdown Values for the Line Items

### Procedure

To define the default markup or markdown values for the line items:

- Ensure that the **Default Markup or Markdown Values** section is expanded when you are defining, editing, or copying a claim template.

The **Default Markup or Markdown Values** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Strategy	Used to indicate whether you want to markup or markdown the line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None</li> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• Markdown</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining the default markup or markdown values for the line items.	
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>Markup</b> .	
Markup or Markdown Type	Used to indicate whether you want a flat or percentage based markup or markdown. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Amount</li> <li>• Percentage</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Markup</b> or <b>Markdown</b> option from the <b>Pricing Strategy</b> list.	
Markup or Markdown Amount	Used to specify the default flat markup or markdown amount for the line items. The specified flat amount appears, by default, when you define a claim pricing rule using the claim template. You can change the flat markup or markdown amount for the line items while defining a claim pricing rule using the claim template. In this case, the system will create only one markup or markdown calculation line for all line items.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Flat Amount</b> option from the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> list.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Markup or Markdown Percentage	Used to specify the default percentage of markup or markdown for all line items. The specified percentage appears, by default, for all line items when you define a claim pricing rule using the claim template. You can change the percentage of markup or markdown for each line item while defining a claim pricing rule using the claim template. In this case, the system will create a markup or markdown calculation line for each line item which is eligible for percentage based markup or markdown.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the <b>Percentage</b> option from the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> list.	

- Enter the required details in the **Default Markup or Markdown Values** section.
- Click **Save**.

The default markup or markdown values are defined in the claim template.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a claim template	<a href="#">Defining a Claim Template</a> on page 1861
How to edit a claim template	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Template</a> on page 1867
How to copy a claim template	<a href="#">Copying a Claim Template</a> on page 1869

## Editing a Claim Template

### Procedure

To edit a claim template:

- Search for the **Claim Template** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.

The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.

- In the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the claim template whose details you want to edit.

The **Claim Template** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** – Used to specify basic details about the claim template. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Claim Template	Displays the claim template.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the claim template.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Override Description	Used when you want to override the description of the claim template.	No
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the claim template.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the claim template. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Owner	Indicates who has created the claim template. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Framework</li> <li>Base</li> <li>Customer Modification</li> </ul>	Not applicable

- **Claim Template Usage** – Used to indicate when the claim template can be used while defining a claim pricing rule for a policy of a bill group. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Status	Used to indicate whether you want to use the claim template while defining a claim pricing rule for a policy which is in the <b>In Force/Active</b> , <b>Post Runout</b> , or <b>Runout</b> status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Yes

- **Default Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to indicate the default markup or markdown value for the line items which are added in the claim template.
- **Line Items** – Used to add the line items in the claim template.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of a claim template by clicking the **Edit** button in the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone.

4. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
5. Modify the policy status in the **Claim Template Usage** section, if required.
6. Add, edit, or remove line items from the claim template, if required.
7. Edit the default markup or markdown values for the line items, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the claim template are saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Claim Template</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Claim Template Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1857



For more information on...	See...
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Claim Template)</a> on page 1858
<b>Extendable Lookup Value List</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1858
<b>Extendable Lookup Value</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value</a> on page 1859
How to add the line items in a claim template	<a href="#">Adding a Line Item in a Claim Template</a> on page 1863
How to define the default markup or markdown values for the line items	<a href="#">Defining the Default Markup or Markdown Values for the Line Items</a> on page 1865

## Copying a Claim Template

Instead of creating a claim template from scratch, you can create a new claim template using an existing claim template. This is possible through copying a claim template. On copying a claim template, the details including the line items and default markup or markdown values are copied to the new claim template. You can then edit the details, if required.


### Prerequisites

To copy a claim template, you should have:

- Claim template (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application

### Procedure

To copy a claim template:

1. Search for the **Claim Template** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.
3. In the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone, click the **Duplicate** () icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the claim template whose copy you want to create.

The **Claim Template** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the claim template. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Claim Template	Used to specify the claim template.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the claim template.	Yes
Override Description	Used when you want to override the description of the claim template.	No
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the claim template.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the claim template. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes

- **Claim Template Usage** – Used to indicate when the claim template can be used while defining a claim pricing rule for a policy of a bill group. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Status	Used to indicate whether you want to use the claim template while defining a claim pricing rule for a policy which is in the <b>In Force/Active</b> , <b>Post Runout</b> , or <b>Runout</b> status. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Yes

- **Default Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to indicate the default markup or markdown value for the line items which are added in the claim template.
- **Line Items** – Used to add the line items in the claim template.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can copy a claim template by clicking the **Duplicate** button in the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone.

4. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
5. Select the **In Force/Active**, **Post Runout**, or **Runout** option from the **Policy Status** list depending on whether you want to use the claim template while defining a claim pricing rule for a policy in
6. Add, edit, or remove line items from the claim template, if required.
7. Edit the default markup or markdown values for the line items, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

The new claim template is added in the **C1-ExtLookClaimTemplate** extendable lookup.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Claim Template</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Claim Template Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1857
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Claim Template)</a> on page 1858
<b>Extendable Lookup Value List</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1858
<b>Extendable Lookup Value</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value</a> on page 1859
How to add the line items in a claim template	<a href="#">Adding a Line Item in a Claim Template</a> on page 1863
How to define the default markup or markdown values for the line items	<a href="#">Defining the Default Markup or Markdown Values for the Line Items</a> on page 1865

## Deleting a Claim Template

### Procedure

To delete a claim template:

1. Search for the **Claim Template** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.

3. In the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the claim template that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the claim template.

**Note:** You can delete a claim template only when it is not yet used in a claim pricing rule type.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a claim template by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone.

4. Click **OK**.

The claim template is deleted from the **C1-ExtLookClaimTemplate** extendable lookup.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Claim Template</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Claim Template Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1857
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Claim Template)</a> on page 1858
<b>Extendable Lookup Value List</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1858
<b>Extendable Lookup Value</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value</a> on page 1859

## Viewing the Claim Template Details

#### Procedure

To view the details of a claim template:

1. Search for the **Claim Template** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.
3. In the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone, click the **Broadcast** (📡) icon corresponding to the claim template whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup Value** zone appears.
4. View the details of the claim template in the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Claim Template</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Claim Template Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1857
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Claim Template)</a> on page 1858
<b>Extendable Lookup Value List</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1858
<b>Extendable Lookup Value</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value</a> on page 1859

## Rate Option Extendable Lookup

The basic pricing details (such as rate schedule, pricing currency) and the transaction aggregation details may vary from one bill group or parent customer to another and from one price item to another. The basic pricing and transaction aggregation details are defined in the rate option. Each rate option must be defined in the system using the **Rate Option (C1-ExtLookRetTypeRateOpt)** extendable lookup. A rate option encapsulates the following information:

- The rate schedule that you want to use while defining the price item pricing.
- Currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.
- Whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill.
- Whether the transactions mapped to the price item should be ignored for billing.
- Whether the transactions mapped to the price item should be aggregated for billing.
- The aggregation schedule using which the transactions should be aggregated for billing.
- How and when you want to rate the transaction legs which are mapped to the price item.
- Whether you want the price item pricing to be applied to all customers or only to the new customers.

Once the rate options are defined in the extendable lookup, you can associate one or more rate options with a price item while adding the price item in a claim, specific stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, retention type claim based, retention type enrollment based, or ancillary pricing rule type. You can then use the rate option while defining pricing rule for the respective price item using the respective pricing rule type. The rate option specified in a pricing rule is used while creating the price item pricing or price assignment for the pricing rule. For example,

Claim Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Rate Option	Claim Pricing Rule	Price Item Pricing
CPRT1	P1	R1	CPR1 (Price Item: P1, Rate Option: R1)	PA1 is created for P1 using the details specified in R1.
		R2	-	-
		R3	CPR2 (Price Item: P1, Rate Option: R3)	PA2 is created for P1 using the details specified in R3.
	P2	R1	-	-
		R4	CPR3 (Price Item: P2, Rate Option: R4)	PA3 is created for P2 using the details specified in R4.
CPRT2	P1	R1	CPR4 (Price Item: P1, Rate Option: R1)	PA4 is created for P1 using the details specified in R1.

The **Extendable Lookup Query** screen allows you to search for an extendable lookup. It contains the following zone:

- [Extendable Lookup Search](#) on page 1872

### Extendable Lookup Search

The **Extendable Lookup Search** zone allows you to search for an extendable lookup. It contains the following two sections:

- **Search Criteria** – The **Search Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Business Object	Used to search a particular extendable lookup business object.	No
Description	Used to search extendable lookups with a particular description.	No

**Note:** You must specify at least one search criterion while searching for an extendable lookup.

- **Search Results** – On clicking the **Search** button, the search results appear based on the specified search criteria. The **Search Results** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Business Object	Displays the extendable lookup business object.
Description	Displays the description of the extendable lookup business object.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective extendable lookup.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Rate Option</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Rate Option Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1873
How to view the values of the <b>Rate Option</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Viewing the Values of the Rate Option Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1874

## **Searching for the Rate Option Extendable Lookup**

### **Procedure**

To search for the **Rate Option** extendable lookup:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **E** and then click **Extendable Lookup**.  
The **Extendable Lookup Query** screen appears.
3. In the **Extendable Lookup Search** zone, enter **C1-ExtLookRetTypeRateOpt** in the **Business Object** field.

**Note:** ORMB search engine supports wildcard search, where you can substitute the percentage (%) symbol as a stand in for any word or letter in a search criteria. You can use the ‘%’ wildcard character in all input fields except the date and ID fields. The ‘%’ wildcard character is suffixed automatically at the end of the partial search criteria. Therefore, you may or may not specify the wildcard character at the end of the partial search criteria. However, you have to prefix the wildcard character manually wherever required.

4. Click **Search**.

The **Rate Option** extendable lookup business object appears in the **Search Results** section.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Extendable Lookup Query screen	<a href="#">Rate Option Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1872
Extendable Lookup Search zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Search</a> on page 1872

## Viewing the Values of the Rate Option Extendable Lookup

### Procedure

To view the values of the **Rate Option** extendable lookup:

1. Search for the **Rate Option** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.
3. View the values of the **Rate Option** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Rate Option</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Rate Option Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1873
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Rate Option)</a> on page 1874
<b>Extendable Lookup Value List</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1874


## Extendable Lookup (Rate Option)



The **Extendable Lookup** screen allows you to view the values of the **Rate Option (C1-ExtLookRetTypeRateOpt)** extendable lookup. It also allows you to define, edit, copy, and delete a rate option. It contains the following zones:

- [Extendable Lookup Value List](#) on page 1874
- [Extendable Lookup Value](#) on page 1875


### Extendable Lookup Value List


The **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone lists the values which are already defined for the **Rate Option** extendable lookup. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Value	Displays the rate option.
Description	Displays the description of the rate option.
Owner	Indicates who has created the rate option. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Framework</li><li>• Base</li><li>• Customer Modification</li></ul>
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b>  icon, the <b>Rate Option</b> screen appears where you can edit the details of the rate option.

Column Name	Column Description
Duplicate	On clicking the <b>Duplicate</b> (  ) icon, the <b>Rate Option</b> screen appears where you can define a new rate option using an existing rate option.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon, you can delete the rate option.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a rate option only when it is not yet used in a pricing rule type.
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the rate option.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation buttons, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

On clicking the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a rate option, the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone appears with the details of the respective rate option.

You can filter the list using various search criteria (such as, **Value** and **Description**) available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** () icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a rate option	<a href="#">Editing a Rate Option</a> on page 1880
How to copy a rate option	<a href="#">Copying a Rate Option</a> on page 1883
How to delete a rate option	<a href="#">Deleting a Rate Option</a> on page 1885
How to view the details of a rate option	<a href="#">Viewing the Rate Option Details</a> on page 1886

## Extendable Lookup Value

The **Extendable Lookup Value** zone displays the details of the rate option. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic information about the rate option. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Rate Option	Displays the rate option.
Description	Displays the description of the rate option.
Override Description	Displays the overridden description of the rate option.
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the rate option.
Status	Indicates the status of the rate option. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>

Field Name	Field Description
Rate Schedule	Indicates the rate schedule that will be used while defining the price item pricing. It is the rate schedule which helps the system to create calculation lines for a transaction leg.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Rate Schedule</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective rate schedule.
Pricing Currency	Indicates the currency in which the price item pricing will be defined.
Print Zero	Indicates whether zero pricing will be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Ignore Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the price item will be ignored for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Aggregate Transaction	Indicates whether the transactions mapped to the price item will be aggregated for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
Aggregation Schedule	Indicates the aggregation schedule using which the transactions will be aggregated for billing.
Transaction Rating Criteria	Indicates how and when the transaction legs which are mapped to the price item are rated. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggregate Transactions and Then Rate SQs</li> <li>• Do Not Rate Transactions</li> <li>• Rate Transaction and Aggregate Calc Lines</li> <li>• Rate Transactions</li> </ul>
Apply To	Indicates whether the price item pricing will be applied to all customers or only to the new customers. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Customers</li> <li>• New Customers</li> </ul>

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:


Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the rate option.
Delete	Used to delete the rate option.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a rate option only when it is not yet used in a pricing rule type.



Button Name	Button Description
Duplicate	Used to create a new rate option using an existing rate option.

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the extendable lookup business object using which the rate option is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.
Owner	Indicates who has created the rate option. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Framework</li> <li>• Base</li> <li>• Customer Modification</li> </ul>

By default, the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone does not appear in the **Extendable Lookup** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the rate option in the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a rate option	<a href="#">Editing a Rate Option</a> on page 1880
How to copy a rate option	<a href="#">Copying a Rate Option</a> on page 1883
How to delete a rate option	<a href="#">Deleting a Rate Option</a> on page 1885
How to view the details of a rate option	<a href="#">Viewing the Rate Option Details</a> on page 1886

## Defining a Rate Option

### Prerequisites


To define a rate option, you should have:

- Rate schedules, currencies, and aggregation schedules defined in the application

### Procedure

To define a rate option:

1. Search for the **Rate Option** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.
3. Click the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Extendable Lookup** screen.  
The **Rate Option** screen appears. It contains the following section:
  - **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the rate option. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Option	Used to specify the rate option.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the rate option.	Yes
Override Description	Used when you want to override the description of the rate option.	No
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the rate option.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the rate option. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>Active</b> .	
Rate Schedule	Used to indicate the rate schedule that you want to use while defining the price item pricing. It is the rate schedule which helps the system to create calculation lines for a transaction leg.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> window appears.	
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.	Yes
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>Yes</b> .	
Ignore Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the price item should be ignored for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>No</b> .	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Aggregate Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the price item should be aggregated for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>No</b> . This field is disabled when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b> .	
Aggregation Schedule	Used to indicate the aggregation schedule using which the transactions should be aggregated for billing.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is disabled when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b> .
Transaction Rating Criteria	Used to indicate how and when you want to rate the transaction legs which are mapped to the price item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggregate Transactions and Then Rate SQs</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This value appears in the list only when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to <b>No</b> and the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b> .	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do Not Rate Transactions</li> <li>• Rate Transaction and Aggregate Calc Lines</li> </ul>	
	<b>Note:</b> This value appears in the list only when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to <b>No</b> and the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b> .	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rate Transactions</li> </ul>	
	<b>Note:</b> This value appears in the list only when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to either <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b> and the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>No</b> .	
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>Do Not Rate Transactions</b> .	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Apply To	Used to indicate whether you want the price item pricing to be applied to all customers or only to the new customers. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All Customers</li> <li>New Customers</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>All Customers</b> .	

4. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.

5. Click **Save**.

The rate option is added in the **C1-ExtLookRetTypeRateOpt** extendable lookup.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Rate Option</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Rate Option Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1873
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Rate Option)</a> on page 1874

## Editing a Rate Option

### Prerequisites

To edit a rate option, you should have:

- Rate schedules, currencies, and aggregation schedules defined in the application

### Procedure

To edit a rate option:

- Search for the **Rate Option** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.

The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.

- In the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the rate option whose details you want to edit.

The **Rate Option** screen appears. It contains the following section:

- Main** – Used to specify basic details about the rate option. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Option	Displays the rate option.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the rate option.	Yes
Override Description	Used when you want to override the description of the rate option.	No
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the rate option.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the status of the rate option. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Owner	Indicates who has created the rate option. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Framework</li> <li>Base</li> <li>Customer Modification</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Rate Schedule	Used to indicate the rate schedule that you want to use while defining the price item pricing. It is the rate schedule which helps the system to create calculation lines for a transaction leg. <div> <b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> window appears. </div>	Yes
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.	Yes
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
Ignore Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the price item should be ignored for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	Yes
Aggregate Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the price item should be aggregated for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b> This field is disabled when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>. </div>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Aggregation Schedule	Used to indicate the aggregation schedule using which the transactions should be aggregated for billing.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is disabled when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b> .
Transaction Rating Criteria	<p>Used to indicate how and when you want to rate the transaction legs which are mapped to the price item. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Transactions and Then Rate SQs</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This value appears in the list only when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to <b>No</b> and the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do Not Rate Transactions</li> <li>Rate Transaction and Aggregate Calc Lines</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This value appears in the list only when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to <b>No</b> and the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rate Transactions</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> This value appears in the list only when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to either <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b> and the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>No</b>.</p>	Yes
Apply To	<p>Used to indicate whether you want the price item pricing to be applied to all customers or only to the new customers. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All Customers</li> <li>New Customers</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of a rate option by clicking the **Edit** button in the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone.

4. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
5. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the rate option are saved.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Rate Option</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Rate Option Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1873
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Rate Option)</a> on page 1874

For more information on...	See...
<b>Extendable Lookup Value List</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1874
<b>Extendable Lookup Value</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value</a> on page 1875

## Copying a Rate Option

Instead of creating a rate option from scratch, you can create a new rate option using an existing rate option. This is possible through copying a rate option. On copying a rate option, the pricing and transaction aggregation details are copied to the new rate option. You can then edit the details, if required.


### Prerequisites

To copy a rate option, you should have:

- Rate option (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Rate schedules, currencies, and aggregation schedules defined in the application

### Procedure


To copy a rate option:

1. Search for the **Rate Option** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.
3. In the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone, click the **Duplicate** () icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the rate option whose copy you want to create.

The **Rate Option** screen appears. It contains the following section:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the rate option. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Option	Used to specify the rate option.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the rate option.	Yes
Override Description	Used when you want to override the description of the rate option.	No
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the rate option.	No
Status	Used to indicate the status of the rate option. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Schedule	Used to indicate the rate schedule that you want to use while defining the price item pricing. It is the rate schedule which helps the system to create calculation lines for a transaction leg.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Rate Schedule Search</b> window appears.	
Pricing Currency	Used to indicate the currency in which you want to define the price item pricing.	Yes
Print Zero	Used to indicate whether zero pricing should be displayed in the bill. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
Ignore Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the price item should be ignored for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
Aggregate Transaction	Used to indicate whether the transactions mapped to the price item should be aggregated for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is disabled when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b> .	
Aggregation Schedule	Used to indicate the aggregation schedule using which the transactions should be aggregated for billing.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is disabled when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b> .	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Transaction Rating Criteria	<p>Used to indicate how and when you want to rate the transaction legs which are mapped to the price item. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Transactions and Then Rate SQs</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <b>Note:</b> This value appears in the list only when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to <b>No</b> and the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>.         </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do Not Rate Transactions</li> <li>Rate Transaction and Aggregate Calc Lines</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <b>Note:</b> This value appears in the list only when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to <b>No</b> and the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>.         </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rate Transactions</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <b>Note:</b> This value appears in the list only when the <b>Ignore Transaction</b> field is set to either <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b> and the <b>Aggregate Transaction</b> field is set to <b>No</b>.         </div>	Yes
Apply To	<p>Used to indicate whether you want the price item pricing to be applied to all customers or only to the new customers. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All Customers</li> <li>New Customers</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can copy a rate option by clicking the **Duplicate** button in the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone.

4. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
5. Click **Save**.

The new rate option is added in the **C1-ExtLookRetTypeRateOpt** extendable lookup.


#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Rate Option</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Rate Option Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1873
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Rate Option)</a> on page 1874
<b>Extendable Lookup Value List</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1874
<b>Extendable Lookup Value</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value</a> on page 1875

## **Deleting a Rate Option**

### **Procedure**

To delete a rate option:

1. Search for the **Rate Option** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.
3. In the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the rate option that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the rate option.

**Note:** You can delete a rate option only when it is not yet used in a pricing rule type.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a rate option by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone.

4. Click **OK**.  
The rate option is deleted from the **C1-ExtLookRetTypeRateOpt** extendable lookup.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Rate Option</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Rate Option Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1873
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Rate Option)</a> on page 1874
<b>Extendable Lookup Value List</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1874
<b>Extendable Lookup Value</b> zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value</a> on page 1875

**Viewing the Rate Option Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a rate option:

1. Search for the **Rate Option** extendable lookup in the **Extendable Lookup Query** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the link in the **Description** column corresponding to the extendable lookup business object whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup** screen appears.
3. In the **Extendable Lookup Value List** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the rate option whose details you want to view.  
The **Extendable Lookup Value** zone appears.
4. View the details of the rate option in the **Extendable Lookup Value** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for the <b>Rate Option</b> extendable lookup	<a href="#">Searching for the Rate Option Extendable Lookup</a> on page 1873
<b>Extendable Lookup</b> screen	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup (Rate Option)</a> on page 1874

For more information on...	See...
Extendable Lookup Value List zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value List</a> on page 1874
Extendable Lookup Value zone	<a href="#">Extendable Lookup Value</a> on page 1875

## Pricing Group

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to create pricing groups for a bill group. It consists of one or more rules. Each rule has a unique priority. A rule contains one or more criteria. Each criterion can contain the following:

- **Source System** - Indicates the external system from where the claim or enrollment transaction is received.
- **Parameter 1, Parameter 2, Parameter 3, and Parameter 4** - Indicates employee attributes based on which you want to define the pricing.

Note that the source system and parameter 1 are mandatory when you are defining a criterion in a rule. In the **Parameter 1** field, you can only specify the employee attribute which is defined for the bill group and source system combination in the **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters** zone.



You can specify multiple parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 combinations in the criterion. You can also specify multiple source system, parameter 1, parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 combinations (i.e. multiple criteria) in a rule. Once a pricing group is defined for a bill group, you can then use the pricing group while defining a pricing rule for the bill group. This enables you to define various rates for employees with different set of attributes. For example, in a claim pricing rule, you can maintain different markup and markdown values for employees who belong to the Western, Eastern, and Central location of United States.

You can define, edit, copy, and delete a pricing group through the **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone in the **Pricing** tab of the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

## Viewing the Pricing Groups of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To view the pricing groups of a bill group:

1. Search for a bill group whose is associated with a self-funded policy in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a bill group whose pricing groups you want to view.  
The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** and **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zones appear.
5. View the pricing groups which are defined for the bill group and are currently active in the **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69

For more information on...	See...
Pricing tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
Bill Group Policy Information zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Information</a> on page 105
Bill Group Pricing Groups zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Pricing Groups</a> on page 111

Defining a Pricing Group for a Bill Group


Prerequisites

To define a pricing group for a bill group, you should have:

- Values defined for the **C1-SourceSystemLookup** extendable lookup

Procedure


To define a pricing group for a bill group:

1. Search for the Administrative Services Only (ASO) person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a bill group for whom you want to define a pricing group.

The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** and **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zones appear.


5. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone.


The **Pricing Group** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the pricing group. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Indicates the bill group for whom you want to define the pricing group.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Active</li><li>• Inactive</li></ul>	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing group.	Yes

- **Pricing Group Rules** – Used to define rules in the pricing group. It contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Priority	Used to indicate the order in which the rule should be executed while determining the pricing for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot define multiple rules in the pricing group with the same priority.	
Rule	Used to specify the rule in the pricing group.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing group rule.	Yes
Criteria	On clicking the <b>Add</b> (  ) icon, you can define criteria for the pricing group rule.	Not applicable

6. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
7. Define the required rules in the **Pricing Group Rules** section.
8. Click the **Add** (  ) icon in the **Criteria** field corresponding to the pricing group rule for which you want to define the criteria.

The following fields appear in another grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Source System	Used to indicate the external system from where the claim or enrollment transaction is received.	Yes
Parameter 1	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to define the pricing.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can only specify the employee attribute which is defined for the bill group and source system combination in the <b>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</b> zone. You must not specify the ampersand (&) character in this field. The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter 1 List for Bill Group</b> window appears.	
Parameter 2	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to define the pricing.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&) character in this field.	
Parameter 3	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to define the pricing.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&) character in this field.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter 4	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to define the pricing.	No
	<b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&) character in this field.	

9. Enter the source system and parameter 1 in the pricing group rule criteria.

**Note:** You must define at least one rule in the pricing group and at least one source system and parameter 1 combination in the pricing group rule.

10. If required, enter the parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 for the source system and parameter 1 combination in the pricing group rule criteria.

11. If you want to define more than one parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 for the source system and parameter 1 combination, click the **Add** (+) icon corresponding to the **Parameter 2** field and then repeat step 10.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 from the source system and parameter 1 combination, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4.

12. If you want to define more than one source system and parameter 1 combination in the pricing group rule, click the **Add** (+) icon corresponding to the **Source System** field and then repeat step 9 and 10.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a source system and parameter 1 combination from the pricing group rule, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the combination.

13. If you want to define more than one rule in the pricing group, click the **Add** (+) icon corresponding to the **Priority** field and then repeat the steps from 7 to 10.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a rule from the pricing group, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the pricing group rule.

14. Click **Save**.

The pricing group is defined for the bill group.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Information</a> on page 105
<b>Bill Group Pricing Groups</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Pricing Groups</a> on page 111
<b>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</a> on page 79

## Editing a Pricing Group of a Bill Group


### Prerequisites

To edit a pricing group of a bill group, you should have:

- Values defined for the **C1-SourceSystemLookup** extendable lookup

### Procedure

To edit a pricing group of a bill group:

1. Search for the Administrative Services Only (ASO) person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a bill group whose pricing group you want to edit.

The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** and **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zones appear.

5. In the **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone, click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing group whose details you want to edit.


The **Pricing Group** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the pricing group. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Indicates the bill group for whom you want to define the pricing group.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing group.	Yes

- **Pricing Group Rules** – Used to define rules in the pricing group. It contains the following fields in a grid:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Priority	Used to indicate the order in which the rule should be executed while determining the pricing for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot define multiple rules in the pricing group with the same priority.	
Rule	Used to specify the rule in the pricing group.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing group rule.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Criteria	On clicking the <b>Add</b> (  ) icon, you can define criteria for the pricing group rule.	Not applicable

**Note:** You cannot define, edit, or remove a rule when the pricing group is already used while defining a pricing rule for the bill group.

6. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
7. Edit the required rules in the **Pricing Group Rules** section.
8. Click the **Add** (  ) icon in the **Criteria** field corresponding to the pricing group rule for which you want to edit the criteria.

The following fields appear in another grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Source System	Used to indicate the external system from where the claim or enrollment transaction is received.	Yes
Parameter 1	<p>Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to define the pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You can only specify the employee attribute which is defined for the bill group and source system combination in the <b>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</b> zone.</p> <p>You must not specify the ampersand (&amp;) character in this field.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter 1 List for Bill Group</b> window appears.</p>	Yes
Parameter 2	<p>Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to define the pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&amp;) character in this field.</p>	No
Parameter 3	<p>Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to define the pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&amp;) character in this field.</p>	No
Parameter 4	<p>Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to define the pricing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&amp;) character in this field.</p>	No



**Note:** You cannot define, edit, or remove the source system, parameter 1, parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 from a rule when the pricing group is already used while defining a pricing rule for the bill group.

9. If required, enter the source system and parameter 1 in the pricing group rule criteria.

**Note:** You must define at least one rule in the pricing group and at least one source system and parameter 1 combination in the pricing group rule.

10. If required, enter the parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 for the source system and parameter 1 combination in the pricing group rule criteria.

11. If you want to define more than one parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 for the source system and parameter 1 combination, click the **Add** (+) icon corresponding to the **Parameter 2** field and then repeat step 10.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 from the source system and parameter 1 combination, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4.

12. If you want to define more than one source system and parameter 1 combination in the pricing group rule, click the **Add** (+) icon corresponding to the **Source System** field and then repeat step 9 and 10.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a source system and parameter 1 combination from the pricing group rule, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the combination.

13. If you want to define more than one rule in the pricing group, click the **Add** (+) icon corresponding to the **Priority** field and then repeat the steps from 7 to 10.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a rule from the pricing group, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the pricing group rule.

14. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the pricing group are saved.


### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Information</a> on page 105
<b>Bill Group Pricing Groups</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Pricing Groups</a> on page 111
<b>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</a> on page 79

## **Deleting a Pricing Group of a Bill Group**

### **Procedure**

To delete a pricing group of a bill group:

1. Search for the Administrative Services Only (ASO) person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.

The **Person** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to a bill group whose pricing group you want to delete.

The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** and **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zones appear.

5. In the **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the pricing group that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the pricing group.

**Note:** You can delete a pricing group only when it is not yet used while defining a pricing rule for the bill group.

6. Click **OK**.

The pricing group is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Information</a> on page 105
<b>Bill Group Pricing Groups</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Pricing Groups</a> on page 111

**Copying a Pricing Group of a Bill Group**

Instead of creating a pricing group from scratch, you can create a new pricing group using an existing pricing group. This is possible through copying a pricing group. On copying a pricing group, the details including the rules are copied to the new pricing group. You can then edit the details, if required.


**Prerequisites**

To copy a pricing group of a bill group, you should have:

- Pricing group (whose copy you want to create) defined in the application
- Values defined for the **C1-SourceSystemLookup** extendable lookup

**Procedure**

To copy a pricing group of a bill group:

1. Search for the Administrative Services Only (ASO) person in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose details you want to view.


The **Person** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.

- Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

- In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a bill group whose pricing group you want to copy.

The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** and **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zones appear.


- In the **Bill Group Pricing Groups** zone, click the **Duplicate**  icon in the **Duplicate** column corresponding to the pricing group whose copy you want to create.


The **Pricing Group** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** – Used to specify basic details about the pricing group. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Indicates the bill group for whom you want to define the pricing group.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing group.	Yes


- Pricing Group Rules** – Used to define rules in the pricing group. It contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Priority	Used to indicate the order in which the rule should be executed while determining the pricing for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You cannot define multiple rules in the pricing group with the same priority.	
Rule	Used to specify the rule in the pricing group.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing group rule.	Yes
Criteria	On clicking the <b>Add</b>  icon, you can define criteria for the pricing group rule.	Not applicable

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define, edit, or remove the required rules from the **Pricing Group Rules** section.
- Click the **Add**  icon in the **Criteria** field corresponding to the pricing group rule for which you want to define or edit the criteria.


The following fields appear in another grid:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Source System	Used to indicate the external system from where the claim or enrollment transaction is received.	Yes


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parameter 1	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to define the pricing.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>You can only specify the employee attribute which is defined for the bill group and source system combination in the <b>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</b> zone.</p> <p>You must not specify the ampersand (&amp;) character in this field.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter 1 List for Bill Group</b> window appears.</p>	
Parameter 2	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to define the pricing.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&amp;) character in this field.</p>	
Parameter 3	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to define the pricing.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&amp;) character in this field.</p>	
Parameter 4	Used to specify the employee attribute based on which you want to define the pricing.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b> You must not specify the ampersand (&amp;) character in this field.</p>	


9. Enter the source system and parameter 1 in the pricing group rule criteria.


**Note:** You must define at least one rule in the pricing group and at least one source system and parameter 1 combination in the pricing group rule.


10. If required, enter the parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 for the source system and parameter 1 combination in the pricing group rule criteria.
11. If you want to define more than one parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 for the source system and parameter 1 combination, click the **Add**  icon corresponding to the **Parameter 2** field and then repeat step 10.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 from the source system and parameter 1 combination, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4.

12. If you want to define more than one source system and parameter 1 combination in the pricing group rule, click the **Add**  icon corresponding to the **Source System** field and then repeat step 9 and 10.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a source system and parameter 1 combination from the pricing group rule, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the combination.

13. If you want to define more than one rule in the pricing group, click the **Add** () icon corresponding to the **Priority** field and then repeat the steps from 7 to 10.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a rule from the pricing group, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the pricing group rule.

14. Click **Save**.

The new pricing group is defined for the bill group.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a person	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69
<b>Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Information</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Information</a> on page 105
<b>Bill Group Pricing Groups</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Pricing Groups</a> on page 111
<b>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</a> on page 79

## Pricing Rule Type

Pricing rules are created using pricing rule types. Following are the pricing rules:

- **Claim** – can be created using the claim pricing rule type.
- **Retention Type Claim Based** – can be created using the retention type claim base pricing rule type.
- **Retention Type Enrollment Based** – can be created using the retention type enrollment base pricing rule type.
- **Specific Stop-Loss** – can be created using the specific stop-loss pricing rule type.
- **Aggregated Stop-Loss** – can be created using the aggregated stop-loss or specific stop-loss pricing rule type.
- **One-Time Flat Fee** – can be created using the one-time flat fee pricing rule type.
- **Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee** – can be created using the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type.
- **Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee** – can be created using the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type.

Pricing rule type has a parent business object, **C1-PricingRuleType** with all the common elements required for all pricing rule types. Elements that are specific to each pricing rule type are configured using the child business object. Following are the child business objects:

- **C1-PricingRuleTypeClaim** business object for Claim Pricing Rule Type.
- **C1-PrcRuleTypRetClaimBase** business object for Retention Claim Based Pricing Rule Type.
- **C1-PrcRuleTypRetEnrollBased** business object for Retention Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type.

- **C1-PricingRuleTypeASL** business object for Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule Type.
- **C1-PricingRuleTypeSSL** business object for Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule Type.
- **C1-PricingRuleTypeFlatFees** business object for One-Time Flat Fee, Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee, Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Types.



The **C1-GetPrcRuleTypeRateOpt** business service returns the list of rate options associated with a pricing rule type and selected price item. The **C1-GetPrcRuleTypeProd** business service returns the list of products associated with the pricing rule type.

This screen consists of the following zones:


- [Pricing Rule Type List](#) on page 1898
- [Pricing Rule Type](#) on page 1900


Pricing Rule Type List

The **Pricing Rule Type List** zone lists the pricing rule types that are already defined in the system. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type.
Description	Displays the description of the pricing rule type.
Pricing Rule Type Category	Indicates the category to which the pricing rule type belongs. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Claim</li><li>• Specific Stop-Loss</li><li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss</li><li>• Retention Type Claim Based</li><li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based</li><li>• Flat Fees</li><li>• Ancillary</li><li>• Discount Arrangement</li><li>• Level Funded</li></ul>
Edit	On clicking the <b>Edit</b>  icon, the <b>Claim Pricing Rule Type</b> , <b>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</b> , <b>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</b> , <b>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</b> , <b>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type</b> , <b>Flat Fees Pricing Rule Type</b> , <b>Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</b> , <b>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</b> , or <b>Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</b> screen appears, based on the pricing rule type category, where you can edit the details of the respective pricing rule type.
Delete	On clicking the <b>Delete</b>  icon, you can delete the pricing rule type.
	<b>Note:</b> You can delete a pricing rule type only when it is not yet used in the system.

**Note:** Pagination is used to display limited number of records in this zone. You can use the navigation links, such as **Previous** and **Next** to navigate between pages.

On clicking the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to a pricing rule type, the **Pricing Rule Type** zone appears with the details of the respective pricing rule type.

You can filter the list using the **Pricing Rule Type Category** field available in the **Filter** area. By default, the **Filter** area is hidden. You can view the **Filter** area by clicking the **Filters** (  ) icon in the upper right corner of this zone.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to edit a claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1915
How to delete a claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Deleting a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1918
How to view the details of a claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Viewing the Claim Pricing Rule Type Details</a> on page 1918
How to edit a specific stop-loss pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1945
How to delete a specific stop-loss pricing rule type	<a href="#">Deleting a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1948
How to view the details of a specific stop-loss pricing rule type	<a href="#">Viewing the Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type Details</a> on page 1948
How to edit an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1981
How to delete an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type	<a href="#">Deleting an Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1984
How to view the details of an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type	<a href="#">Viewing the Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type Details</a> on page 1984
How to edit a retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2015
How to delete a retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Deleting a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2017
How to view the details of a retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Viewing the Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type Details</a> on page 2018
How to edit a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2043
How to delete a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Deleting a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2045
How to view the details of a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Viewing the Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type Details</a> on page 2046
How to edit a one-time flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2072
How to delete a one-time flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Deleting a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2075
How to view the details of a one-time flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Viewing the One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type Details</a> on page 2075
How to edit a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2087
How to delete a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Deleting a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2090

For more information on...	See...
How to view the details of a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Viewing the Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type Details</a> on page 2090
How to edit a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2101
How to delete a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Deleting a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2104
How to view the details of a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Viewing the Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type Details</a> on page 2105
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2140
How to delete an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Deleting an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2144
How to view the details of an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Viewing the Ancillary Pricing Rule Type Details</a> on page 2145
How to edit a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2179
How to delete a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Deleting a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2182
How to view the details of a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Viewing the Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type Details</a> on page 2183
How to edit a level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2213
How to delete a level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Deleting a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2215
How to view the details of a level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Viewing the Level Funded Pricing Rule Type Details</a> on page 2216

## Pricing Rule Type

The **Pricing Rule Type** zone displays the details of the pricing rule type for claim, aggregate stop-loss, specific stop-loss, retention type enrollment based, retention type claim based, one-time flat fee, bill period based recurring flat fee, frequency based recurring flat fee. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Main** – This section provides basic information about the pricing rule type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type.
Description	Displays the description for the pricing rule type.
Detailed Description	Displays additional information about the pricing rule type category.



Field Name	Field Description
Pricing Rule Business Object	<p>Indicates the pricing rule business object. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Flat Fee Pricing Rule</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.</p>
Business Object	<p>Indicates the pricing rule type business object. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>• Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective business object.</p>
Status	<p>Indicates the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>
Primary	Displays whether the pricing rule type is primary or not.
Pricing Rule Type Category	<p>Indicates the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>• Flat Fees</li> </ul>

- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – This section lists the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence	Displays the order in which pricing rule type is executed.
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the related pricing rule type for the parent rule type.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective pricing rule type.

**Note:** This section appears only when the pricing rule type is a primary pricing rule type.

- **Transaction Field Mapping** – This section displays the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Source System	Displays the external system from where the transaction data is mapped.
Parameter 1 ... Parameter 4	Displays the parameters mapped for the transactions.
Incurred Date	Displays the date incurred for transaction.
Paid Date	Displays the transaction paid date.
Source of Funds	Displays the source of funds used to make the payment.
Composite	Displays the composite transaction data.
Claim Disposition	Displays the disposition of the claims transaction.
Provider's Tax Identification Number	Displays the tax identification number of the provider.
Member ID	Displays the member ID.
Main Subscriber ID	Displays the customer ID.
Run-in Identifier	Displays the run-in identifier.
Runout Identifier	Displays the runout identifier.
Coverage Start Date	Displays the transaction coverage start date.
Coverage End Date	Displays the transaction coverage end date.
Retroactivity Indicator	Displays information of the retroactivity indicator.

**Note:** This section appears only when the pricing rule type is a primary pricing rule type.

- **Algorithms** – This section displays the algorithms used for the pricing rule type. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
System Event	Indicates the system event on which the algorithm must be executed. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Account and Price Item Derivation</li> <li>Bill After Date Determination</li> <li>Bill Group Derivation</li> <li>Pricing Rule Post Processing</li> <li>Transaction Validation</li> </ul>
Sequence	Displays the order in which the algorithms for each system event must be executed.
Algorithm	Displays the algorithm.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Algorithm</b> screen appears with the details of the respective algorithm.



- **Additional Data** – This section displays the additional information about the pricing rule type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Eligible for Level Funding	Indicates whether the pricing rule type is eligible for level funding or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>
Eligible for Specific Stop-Loss	Indicates whether the pricing rule type is eligible for specific stop-loss or not. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the option selected for the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> is <b>Claim</b> , <b>Retention Type Claim Based</b> , or <b>Retention Type Enrollment Based</b> .
Run-in Identifier Value	Displays the value for run-in identifier.
Runout Identifier Value	Displays the value for runout identifier.

**Note:** This section does not appear only when the pricing rule type category is flat fees.

- **Price Items** – This section displays the price items assigned to the pricing rule type. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price Item	Displays the price item information.  <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective price item.

Column Name	Column Description						
Rate Option	On clicking the Add (  ) icon, the following column appears:						
	<table><tr><th>Column Name</th><th>Column Description</th></tr><tr><td>Rate Option</td><td>Indicates the rate option for the price item.</td></tr></table>	Column Name	Column Description	Rate Option	Indicates the rate option for the price item.		
	Column Name	Column Description					
	Rate Option	Indicates the rate option for the price item.					
<b>Note:</b> This column does not appear only when the pricing rule type category is flat fees.							
Bill To Account	On clicking the Add (  ) icon, the following columns appear:						
	<table><tr><th>Column Name</th><th>Column Description</th></tr><tr><td>Priority</td><td>Displays the order in which the invoice type was considered while defining a price item.</td></tr><tr><td>Invoice Type</td><td>Displays the invoice type for the price item.</td></tr></table>	Column Name	Column Description	Priority	Displays the order in which the invoice type was considered while defining a price item.	Invoice Type	Displays the invoice type for the price item.
	Column Name	Column Description					
	Priority	Displays the order in which the invoice type was considered while defining a price item.					
Invoice Type	Displays the invoice type for the price item.						

- **Price Item Parameters** – This section displays the price item parameters in the pricing rule type. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Price Item Parameter	Displays the parameter associated with the price item.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Parameter</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective parameter.
Transaction Field	Displays the additional transaction data.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Field</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective transaction field.  This column does not appear only when the pricing rule type category is flat fees.
Eligible for Specific Stop-Loss	Displays the parameter eligible for Specific Stop-Loss when the eligibility checkbox was checked.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the option selected for the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> is <b>Claim</b> , <b>Retention Type Claim Based</b> , or <b>Retention Type Enrollment Based</b> .
Eligible for Level Funding	Displays the parameter eligible for level funding when the eligibility checkbox was checked.

- **Characteristics** – This section displays the pricing rule type characteristics. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.

Column Name	Column Description
Characteristic Value	Displays the value for the characteristic type.

- **Claim Templates** – This section list the pricing rule type for claim template. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Claim Template	Indicates the claim template.

**Note:** This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Claim Pricing Rule Type**.

- **Claim-Specific Additional Data** – This section displays the claim specific additional data. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Rule Based Billing Eligibility Field	Displays whether the rule based field is eligible for billing or not.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Field</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective field.
Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field	Displays whether the rule based markup or markdown field is eligible for billing or not.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Field</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective field.
Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type	Displays the markup or markdown billable charge line type.

**Note:** This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Claim Pricing Rule Type**.

- **ASL-Specific Additional Data** – This section displays the Aggregated Stop-Loss specific additional data. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
ASL Billable Charge Line Type	Displays the Aggregated Stop-Loss billable charge line type.
Domestic Provider Claim Billable Charge Line Type	Displays the claim billable charge line type for domestic provider.
Rule Based Domestic Provider Claim Eligibility Field	Displays the rule based domestic provider for claim eligibility field.
ASL Limit Price Item	Displays the Aggregated Stop-Loss limit price item.
Rule Based Billing Eligibility Field	Displays whether the rule based field is eligible for billing or not.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Field</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective field.

Field Name	Field Description
Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field	Displays whether the rule based markup or markdown field is eligible for billing or not.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Field</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective field.
Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type	Displays the markup or markdown billable charge line type.

**Note:** This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type**.

- **Enrollment-Specific Additional Data** – This section displays the enrollment specific additional data. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Retroactivity Indicator Value	Displays the value for the retroactivity indicator.

**Note:** This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type**.

- **Claim Disposition Details** – This section displays the details of claim disposition. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Claim Disposition	Indicates the claim disposition.
Disposition Mode	Indicates the claim disposition mode. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Align Signage</li> <li>Zero Out</li> </ul>

**Note:** This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type**.

- **SSL-Specific Additional Data** – This section displays the Specific Stop-Loss additional data. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
SSL Billable Charge Line Type	Displays the Specific Stop-Loss billable charge line type.
Domestic Provider Claim Billable Charge Line Type	Displays the claim billable charge line type for domestic provider.
Rule Based Domestic Provider Claim Eligibility Field	Displays the rule based domestic provider for claim eligibility field.
Rule Based Billing Eligibility Field	Displays whether the rule based field is eligible for billing or not.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Field</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective field.

Field Name	Field Description
Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field	Displays whether the rule based markup or markdown field is eligible for billing or not.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Field</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the respective field.
Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type	Displays the markup or markdown billable charge line type.

**Note:** This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type**.

- **Billable Charge Line Types** – This section list the billable charge line type. It contains the following column:

Column Name	Column Description
Billable Charge Line Type	Indicates the billable charge line type.

**Note:** This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Flat Fees Pricing Rule Type**.

- **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** – This section displays the recurring flat fee that is specific and considered as additional data. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Bill Segment Cancel Reason	Indicates the reason for cancelling the bill segment.
Recurring Fee	Displays whether the recurring flat fee is required or not.
Recurring Method	Indicates the recurring method if recurring fee is required. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bill Period</li> <li>• Frequency</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears when the checkbox for <b>Recurring Fee</b> field is selected.

**Note:** This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Flat Fees Pricing Rule Type**.

This section contains the following sub-section:

- **Bill Periods** – This section displays the bill period for the recurring flat fee. It contains the following column:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Period	Indicates the bill period.


**Note:** This section appears when the **Recurring Method** is **Bill Period**.

- **Record Actions** – This section contains the following buttons:

Button Name	Button Description
Edit	Used to edit the details of the pricing rule type.
Delete	Used to delete the pricing rule type.

- **Record Information** – This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which the extendable lookup value for pricing rule type is created. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Business Object</b> screen appears with the details of the respective business object.

By default, the **Pricing Rule Type** zone does not appear in the **Pricing Rule Type** screen. It appears only when you click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the pricing rule type in the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
How to edit the claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1915
How to edit the specific stop-loss pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1945
How to edit the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1981
How to edit the retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2015
How to edit the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2043
How to edit the one-time flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2072
How to edit the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2087
How to edit the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2101
How to delete a pricing rule type	<a href="#">Deleting a Pricing Rule Type</a>

## Claim Pricing

The ASO service provider processes the claims as part of the ASO agreement and pays the claim amount to either hospital or main subscriber. The employer, in turn, reimburses the claim amount to the ASO service provider at the end of the bill period (i.e. typically, every month). Apart from charging the claim amount to the employer, the ASO service provider charges various additional fees, such as fee for network access, fee for non-network access, fee for collection services provided by external vendor, fee for hospital audit performed by external vendor, and so on.

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows the ASO service provider to bill the employers for the claim amount and various additional fees. You can use any custom mechanism or the file upload utility in ORMB to upload the claim transactions. The pricing for the claim transactions can be defined using the claim pricing rules. You can define a claim pricing rule at the parent customer and bill group levels. The claim pricing rule at the bill group level takes precedence over the claim pricing rule at the parent customer level. You can define claim pricing rules for parent customers and bill groups from the **Customer 360° Information** screen. You can define a claim pricing rule using a claim pricing rule type.



It is the claim pricing rule type which helps the system to determine:

- Business object using which the claim pricing rule should be created in the system.
- Whether it is the primary pricing rule type from where the related pricing rule types, such as specific stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, and retention type claim based pricing rule types, will inherit the attributes.

**Note:** You must select the **Primary** option while defining a claim pricing rule type. On selecting the **Primary** option, the **Related Pricing Rule Types** and **Transaction Field Mapping** sections appear in the **Claim Pricing Rule Type** screen.

- Pricing rule types which are related to claim pricing rule type.
- Transaction fields from where the data for claim, specific stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, retention type claim based processing should be retrieved.
- Algorithm which should be triggered while validating a transaction.

**Note:** An algorithm type for validating a transaction is not shipped from the product. You need to create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Algorithms which should be triggered while deriving bill group, account, and price item for a transaction.

**Note:** You must create an algorithm using the **C1\_TXNBGDRV** algorithm type and attach it to the **Bill Group Derivation** system event. Similarly, you must create an algorithm using the **C1\_ACCPRIDRV** algorithm type and attach it to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event.

- Algorithm which should be triggered while determining the bill after date.

**Note:** You must create an algorithm using the **C1\_BAFTDRV** algorithm type and attach it to the **Bill After Date Determination** system event. The **C1\_BAFTDRV** algorithm sets the bill after date to the end date of the aggregation schedule which is specified in the respective rate option. For example, if the aggregation schedule is monthly, the bill after date is set to the last day of the month.

- Post-processing algorithm which should be triggered once the claim pricing rule is derived.

**Note:** A post-processing algorithm type is not shipped from the product. You need to create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Price items for which you can define claim pricing rules using the claim pricing rule type.
- Rate options that you can use while defining the pricing for a price item.
- Different type of account to which the price item should be billed based on the specified priority.
- Price item parameters which you can use while accumulating specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss and while aggregating transactions.
- Claim templates which can be used while defining claim pricing rules using the claim pricing rule type.
- Additional information, such as:
  - Whether the price items included in the claim pricing rule type are eligible for specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss.
  - Identifiers which help to determine whether the claim transaction is received during the run-in period of the policy.
  - Billable charge line type using which you want to create markup or markdown calculation lines.
  - Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the line item is eligible for billing.
  - Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the markup or markdown calculation line is eligible for billing.

Once a claim pricing rule type is defined, you can create claim pricing rules using the claim pricing rule type. While defining a claim pricing rule for a parent customer and bill group, you need to specify the following:

- Price item for which you want to define the pricing.
- Pricing date range during which the pricing is effective.
- Rate option and claim template which you want to use while defining the claim pricing.
- Whether you want to markup or markdown the various charges.
- Whether you want to use a flat amount for markup or markdown on overall charges.
- Whether you want to calculate markup or markdown amount based on percentage for each eligible charge.
- Whether a line item is eligible for billing when the billing eligibility for the line item in the claim template is set to **User Defined**.

**Note:** You can override the default markup and markdown values which are retrieved from the claim template.

In addition, while defining a claim pricing rule for a bill group, you need to specify the status of the policy for which you want to define the claim pricing rule. You can also specify a pricing group while defining a claim pricing rule for a bill group. If you specify a pricing group while defining a claim pricing rule for a bill group, you will have to define the following details for each rule defined in the pricing group:

- Whether you want to markup or markdown the various charges.
- Whether you want to use a flat amount for markup or markdown on overall charges.
- Whether you want to calculate markup or markdown amount based on percentage for each eligible charge.
- Whether a line item is eligible for billing when the billing eligibility for the line item in the claim template is set to **User Defined**.

Once a claim pricing rule is defined for a parent customer and bill group, the system creates one price assignment, one price list, and one price list assignment.

## Defining a Claim Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define a claim pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleTypeClaim** defined for pricing rule type.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleClaim** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for claim defined in the application

### Procedure

To define a claim pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the pricing rule type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a claim pricing rule type using the <b>Claim Pricing Rule Type</b> business object.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Pricing Rule Type** screen.

4. Select the **Claim Pricing Rule Type** business object.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Claim Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the claim pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the pricing rule type.
- **Claim Templates** – Used to define the pricing rule type for claim template.
- **Claim-Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the claim specific additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to specify the pricing rule type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No
Related Transaction Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicate the pricing rule type business object for claim.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.	No
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Claim</li> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> </ul>	Yes

6. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
7. Add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note: Related Pricing Rule Types** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

8. Define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note: Transaction Field Mapping** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

9. Associate algorithms with the pricing rule type, if required.
10. Define additional data for the pricing rule type, if required.
11. Add pricing items in the pricing rule type, if required.
12. Add price item parameters in the pricing rule type, if required.
13. Define characteristics for the pricing rule type, if required.
14. Add claim templates in the claim pricing rule type, if required.
15. Add the claim-specific data in the pricing rule type, if required.
16. Click **Save**.

The claim pricing rule type is defined.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>

For more information on...	See...
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add claim templates in the claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Claim Templates in a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1913
How to add the claim-specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the Claim-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1914

## Adding Claim Templates in a Claim Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To add claim templates in a claim pricing rule type, you should have:

- Claim templates defined in the application

### Procedure

To add claim templates in a claim pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Claim Templates** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule type.

The **Claim Templates** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Claim Template	Used to indicate the claim template.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a claim template for the pricing rule type.

2. Enter the required details in the **Claim Templates** section.
3. If you want to define more than one claim template for the pricing rule type, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a claim template from the pricing rule type, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the claim template.

4. Click **Save**.

The claim templates are defined for the pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1910
How to define a specific stop-loss (SSL) pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1940
How to define an aggregate stop-loss (ASL) pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1976

For more information on...	See...
How to define a retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2011
How to define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2040
How to edit the claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1915
How to edit the specific stop-loss (SSL) pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1945
How to edit the aggregate stop-loss (ASL) pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1981
How to edit the retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2015
How to edit the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2043


## Adding the Claim-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type



### Procedure

To add the Claim-Specific additional data in a pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Claim-Specific Additional Data** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule type.

The **Claim-Specific Additional Data** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Based Billing Eligibility Field	Used to specify whether the rule based field is eligible for billing or not.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Billing Eligibility Field</b> field, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the field, the description of the field appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Billing Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field	<p>Used to specify whether the rule based markup or markdown field is eligible for billing or not.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field</b> field, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the field, the description of the field appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>	No
Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type	<p>Used to specify the markup or markdown billable charge line type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	No

- Enter the required details in the **Claim-Specific Additional Data** section.
- Click **Save**.

The Claim-Specific Additional data is added in the pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1910
How to edit the claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1915

## Editing a Claim Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To edit the claim pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleClaim** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for claim defined in the application

### Procedure

To edit a claim pricing rule type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.

- In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for claim whose details you want to edit.

The **Claim Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the claim pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the pricing rule type.
- **Claim Templates** – Used to define the pricing rule type for claim template.
- **Claim-Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the claim specific additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No
Related Transaction Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Displays the pricing rule type business object for claim.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.	No
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone to edit the pricing rule type for claim.

5. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
6. Add, edit, or remove the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type, if required.
7. Modify the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type, if required.
8. Add, edit, or remove algorithms with the pricing rule type, if required.
9. Modify the additional data for the pricing rule type, if required.
10. Add, edit, or remove pricing items in the pricing rule type, if required.
11. Add, edit, or remove price item parameters in the pricing rule type, if required.
12. Add, edit, or remove characteristics for the pricing rule type, if required.
13. Add, edit, or remove claim templates in the claim pricing rule type, if required.
14. Modify the claim-specific data in the pricing rule type, if required.
15. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the claim pricing rule type are saved.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>

For more information on...	See...
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add claim templates in the claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Claim Templates in a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1913
How to add the claim-specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the Claim-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1914

## Deleting a Claim Pricing Rule Type

### Procedure

To delete a claim pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the claim pricing rule type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the claim pricing rule type.

**Note:** You can delete a claim pricing rule type only when it is not yet used in the system.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a claim pricing rule type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.  
The claim pricing rule type is deleted.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Viewing the Claim Pricing Rule Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a claim pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the claim pricing rule type whose details you want to view.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the claim pricing rule type in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Defining a Claim Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer


### Prerequisites

To define a claim pricing rule for a parent customer, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleClaim** defined for claim pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Price item defined in the application.
- Rate option defined in the application.
- Claim template defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define a claim pricing rule for a parent customer:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab and then click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type to create the pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a claim pricing rule using the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> for claim.	

4. Click **OK**.

The **Claim Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the claim pricing rule.
- **Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to define the markup or markdown values for billable charge lines.
- **Line Items** – Used to associate line items eligible for billing.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the claim pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent customer information	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item.	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the pricing rule start date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected. By default it displays the <b>Policy Start Date</b> .	
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the pricing rule end date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected. By default it displays the <b>Policy End Date</b> .	
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option to define the claim pricing rule for the price item.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Claim Template	Used to indicate the claim template to define the claim pricing rule for a parent customer.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled for selection when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected.	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define markup or markdown values in a claim pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Markup or Markdown Values** section appears only when an option from **Claim Template** field is selected.

- Define line items in a claim pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Line Items** section appears only when an option from **Claim Template** field is selected.

- Define characteristics for a claim pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The claim pricing rule for a parent customer is defined.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to define markup or markdown values for line items in a claim pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining the Markup or Markdown Values for Line Items in a Claim Pricing Rule</a> on page 1921
How to define characteristics for a claim pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Claim Pricing Rule</a> on page 1925

## **Defining the Markup or Markdown Values for Line Items in a Claim Pricing Rule**

### **Procedure**

To define the markup or markdown values for line items in a claim pricing rule:

- Ensure that the **Markup or Markdown Values** and **Line Items** sections are expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Claim Template** field of **Main** section while defining a claim pricing rule.

The **Markup or Markdown Values** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Strategy	Used to indicate the pricing strategy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Markdown</li> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• None</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field is disabled only when the <b>Post Run Out Claims</b> option is selected from the <b>Claim Template</b> field of <b>Main</b> section.	
Markup or Markdown Type	Used to indicate the markup or markdown value type for claim pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Amount</li> <li>• Percentage</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field is disabled only when the <b>Post Run Out Claims</b> option is selected from the <b>Claim Template</b> field of <b>Main</b> section.	
Markup or Markdown Amount	Used to specify the markup or markdown amount.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is disabled when you select, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the <b>Post Run Out Claims</b> option from the <b>Claim Template</b> field of the <b>Main</b> section.</li> <li>• or the <b>Flat Amount</b> option from the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field.</li> </ul>	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you selecting <b>Percentage</b> option from the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field.

The **Line Items** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Displays the sequence number for the line items.	Not applicable
Line Item	Displays the billing line items.	Not applicable
Billing Eligibility	Displays whether the line item is user defined, eligible or not eligible for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eligible</li> <li>• Not Eligible</li> <li>• User Defined (Default Yes)</li> <li>• User Defined (Default No)</li> </ul>	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
User Defined Billing Option	Used to specify whether the billing option is user defined, eligible or not eligible.  <b>Note:</b> The checkbox for this field is by default checked and disabled for values <b>Eligible</b> or <b>Not Eligible</b> in the <b>Billing Eligibility</b> field.  The checkbox for this field is enabled for values <b>User Defined (Default Yes)</b> or <b>User Defined (Default No)</b> in the <b>Billing Eligibility</b> .	Yes
Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility	Displays whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for markup or markdown percentage. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eligible</li> <li>Not Eligible</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Percentage	Used to specify the percentage for markup or markdown value.  <b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when the <b>Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility</b> is <b>Eligible</b> and when the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> is <b>Percentage</b> .	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Markup or Markdown Values** section.
- Enter the required details in the **Line Items** section.
- Click **Save**.

The markup or markdown values for line items are defined for the claim pricing rule.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a claim pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Claim Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 1919
How to edit the claim pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1926

## **Defining the Markup or Markdown Values for Line Items for Each Rule in a Claim Pricing Rule**

### **Procedure**

To define the markup or markdown values for line items for each rule in a claim pricing rule:

- Ensure that sections for each rule are expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Claim Template** field of **Main** section while defining a claim pricing rule.
- Expand the **Markup or Markdown Values** and **Line Items** sections relevant to each rule.

The **Markup or Markdown Values** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Strategy	Used to indicate the pricing strategy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Markdown</li><li>• Markup</li><li>• None</li></ul>	No
Markup or Markdown Type	Used to indicate the markup or markdown value type for claim pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Flat Amount</li><li>• Percentage</li></ul>	No
Markup or Markdown Amount	Used to specify the markup or markdown amount.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is disabled when you select the <b>Flat Amount</b> option from the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you selecting <b>Percentage</b> option from the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field.

The **Line Items** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Displays the sequence number for the line items.	Not applicable
Line Item	Displays the billing line items.	Not applicable
Billing Eligibility	Displays whether the line item is user defined, eligible or not eligible for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Eligible</li><li>• Not Eligible</li><li>• User Defined (Default Yes)</li><li>• User Defined (Default No)</li></ul>	Not applicable



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
User Defined Billing Option	Used to specify whether the billing option is user defined, eligible or not eligible.  <b>Note:</b> The checkbox for this field is by default checked and disabled for values <b>Eligible</b> , <b>Rule Based</b> , or <b>Not Eligible</b> in the <b>Billing Eligibility</b> field.  The checkbox for this field is enabled for values <b>User Defined (Default Yes)</b> or <b>User Defined (Default No)</b> in the <b>Billing Eligibility</b> .	Yes
Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility	Displays whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for markup or markdown percentage. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eligible</li> <li>Not Eligible</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Percentage	Used to specify the percentage for markup or markdown value.  <b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when the <b>Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility</b> is <b>Eligible</b> and when the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> is <b>Percentage</b> .	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Markup or Markdown Values** section.
- Enter the required details in the **Line Items** section.
- Click **Save**.

The markup or markdown values for line items for each rule are defined for the claim pricing rule.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a claim pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group	<a href="#">Defining a Claim Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group</a> on page 1932
How to edit the claim pricing rule of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 1935

## **Defining Characteristics for a Claim Pricing Rule**

### **Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a claim pricing rule, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**)


### **Procedure**


To define characteristics for a claim pricing rule:

- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the claim pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the claim pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the claim pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the claim pricing rule.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the claim pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the claim pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.  
The characteristics are defined for the claim pricing rule.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a claim pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Claim Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 1919
How to edit the claim pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1926

**Editing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer**



**Prerequisites**

To edit a claim pricing rule of a parent customer, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleClaim** defined for claim pricing rule.
- Claim template defined in the application.

### **Procedure**

To edit a claim pricing rule of a parent customer:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view. The **Account, Person, or Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for claim whose claim pricing rule details you want to edit.

The **Claim Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the claim pricing rule.
- **Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to define the markup or markdown values for billable charge lines.
- **Line Items** – Used to associate line items eligible for billing.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the claim pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent customer information	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item.	Not applicable
Pricing Start Date	Displays the pricing rule start date.	Not applicable
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the pricing rule end date. <b>Note:</b> This field by default displays the <b>Policy End Date</b> .	Yes
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option to edit the claim pricing rule for the price item.	Yes
Claim Template	Indicates the claim template of the claim pricing rule for a parent customer. <b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you click the <b>Reapply Claim Template</b> button.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are reapplying for a claim template.

**Note:** This section also consists of a button, **Reapply Claim Template**, on clicking the button a message occurs indicating that updating the claim template will reset all the default fields on the pricing rule.

- Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
- Modify the markup or markdown values in a claim pricing rule, if required.
- Modify the line items in a claim pricing rule, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove characteristics for a claim pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The changes made to a claim pricing rule for a parent customer are saved.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to define markup or markdown values for line items in a claim pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining the Markup or Markdown Values for Line Items in a Claim Pricing Rule</a> on page 1921
How to define characteristics for a claim pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Claim Pricing Rule</a> on page 1925

**Viewing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer**

**Procedure**

To view a claim pricing rule of a parent customer:

- Search for a parent customer whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.
 

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
- Click the **Pricing** tab.
 

The **Pricing** tab appears.
- In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the **Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the claim pricing rule type whose claim pricing rule parent customer details you want to view.
 

The **Claim** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

  - [Claim](#) on page 2244
- View the basic details of claim pricing rule in the **Main** section.
- View the markup or markdown values for billable charge lines in the **Markup or Markdown Values** section.
- View the associated line items eligible for billing in the **Line Items** section.
- View the characteristics defined for the claim pricing rule in the **Characteristics** section.

**Related Topics**



For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99

For more information on...	See...
Parent Customer Pricing Rules zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
Pricing Rule screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 2243

## Deleting a Claim Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer

### Procedure

To delete a claim pricing rule of a parent customer:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the claim pricing rule type whose claim pricing rule you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the claim pricing rule.
4. Click **OK**.  
The claim pricing rule is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Customer 360° Information – Pricing tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
Parent Customer Pricing Rules zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101

## Defining a Claim Pricing Rule for a Bill Group


### Prerequisites

To define a claim pricing rule for a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleClaim** defined for claim pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Policy status defined in the application.
- Price item defined in the application.
- Rate option defined in the application.
- Claim template defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define a claim pricing rule for a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.

- Click the **Pricing** tab and then click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type to create the pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a claim pricing rule using the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> for claim.	
Pricing Group	Used to indicate the pricing group.	No
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Claim pricing rule cannot be created for <b>Runout</b> or <b>Post Runout</b> policy status where the policy run out End Date is missing.	

- Click **OK**.

The **Claim Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.
- Main** – Used to specify basic details about the claim pricing rule.
- Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to define the markup or markdown values for billable charge lines.
- Line Items** – Used to associate line items eligible for billing.
- Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the claim pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item.	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the pricing rule start date.  <b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected. By default it displays the <b>Policy Start Date</b> .	Yes
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the pricing rule end date.  <b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected. By default it displays the <b>Policy End Date</b> .	Yes
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option to define the claim pricing rule for the price item.	Yes
Claim Template	Used to indicate the claim template to define the claim pricing rule for a bill group.  <b>Note:</b> This field is enabled for selection when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected.	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define markup or markdown values in a claim pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Markup or Markdown Values** section appears only when an option from **Claim Template** field is selected.

- Define line items in a claim pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Line Items** section appears only when an option from **Claim Template** field is selected.

- Define characteristics for a claim pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The claim pricing rule for a bill group is defined.

**Note:** A price list and price assignment is created, the price list created is assigned to the claim pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Customer 360° Information – Pricing tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99

For more information on...	See...
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define markup or markdown values for line items in a claim pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining the Markup or Markdown Values for Line Items in a Claim Pricing Rule</a> on page 1921
How to define characteristics for a claim pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Claim Pricing Rule</a> on page 1925

Defining a Claim Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group


Prerequisites

To define a claim pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleClaim** defined for claim pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Pricing group defined in the application.
- Policy status defined in the application.
- Price item defined in the application.
- Rate option defined in the application.
- Claim template defined in the application.

Procedure

To define a claim pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab and then click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type to create the pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a claim pricing rule using the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> for claim.	
Pricing Group	Used to indicate the pricing group.	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Claim pricing rule cannot be created for <b>Runout</b> or <b>Post Runout</b> policy status where the policy run out End Date is missing.	

4. Click **OK**.

The **Claim Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group using pricing group.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the claim pricing rule.
- **Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to define the markup or markdown values for billable charge line for each rule.
- **Line Items** – Used to associate line items eligible for billing for each rule.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the claim pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Group	Displays the pricing group.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the pricing rule start date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected. By default it displays the <b>Policy Start Date</b> .	
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the pricing rule end date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected. By default it displays the <b>Policy End Date</b> .	
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option to define the claim pricing rule for the price item.	Yes
Claim Template	Used to indicate the claim template to define the claim pricing rule for a bill group.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled for selection when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected.	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define markup or markdown values for line items for each rule in a claim pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Markup or Markdown Values** section appears in the rule section and the rule section appears only when an option from **Claim Template** field is selected.

- Define line items for each rule in a claim pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Line Items** section appears in the rule section and the rule section appears only when an option from **Claim Template** field is selected.

- Define characteristics for a claim pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The claim pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group is defined.

**Note:** A price list and price assignment is created, the price list created is assigned to the claim pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define markup or markdown values for line items for each rule in a claim pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining the Markup or Markdown Values for Line Items for Each Rule in a Claim Pricing Rule</a> on page 1923

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a claim pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Claim Pricing Rule</a> on page 1925

## Editing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Bill Group



### Prerequisites

To edit a claim pricing rule of a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleClaim** defined for claim pricing rule.
- Claim template defined in the application.

### Procedure

To edit a claim pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view. The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for claim whose claim pricing rule details you want to edit.

The **Claim Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the claim pricing rule.
- **Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to define the markup or markdown values for billable charge lines.
- **Line Items** – Used to associate line items eligible for billing.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the claim pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item.	Not applicable
Pricing Start Date	Displays the pricing rule start date.	Not applicable
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the pricing rule end date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field by default displays the <b>Policy End Date</b> .	
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option to edit the claim pricing rule for the price item.	Yes
Claim Template	Indicates the claim template of the claim pricing rule for a parent customer.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you click the <b>Reapply Claim Template</b> button.	
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are reapplying for a claim template.

**Note:** This section also consists of a button, **Reapply Claim Template**, on clicking the button a message occurs indicating that updating the claim template will reset all the default fields on the pricing rule.

4. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
5. Modify the markup or markdown values in a claim pricing rule, if required.
6. Modify the line items in a claim pricing rule, if required.
7. Add, edit, or remove characteristics for the characteristics for a claim pricing rule, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

The changes made to a claim pricing rule for a bill group are saved.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define markup or markdown values for line items in a claim pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining the Markup or Markdown Values for Line Items in a Claim Pricing Rule</a> on page 1921
How to define characteristics for a claim pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Claim Pricing Rule</a> on page 1925

## Viewing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Bill Group


### Procedure

To view a claim pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for a bill group in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the

**Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose claim pricing rule bill group details you want to view.

5. In the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the **Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the claim pricing rule type whose claim pricing rule bill group you want to view.

The **Claim** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

- [Claim](#) on page 2244

6. View the basic details of claim pricing rule in the **Main** section.
7. View the markup or markdown values for billable charge lines in the **Markup or Markdown Values** section.
8. View the associated line items eligible for billing in the **Line Items** section.
9. View the characteristics defined for the claim pricing rule in the **Characteristics** section.



### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
<b>Pricing Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 2243

## Deleting a Claim Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To delete a claim pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the pricing rule type that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the claim pricing rule.

4. Click **OK**.

The claim pricing rule is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107

## Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing

Stop-Loss coverage provides liability limits on claims for individuals and for the employer group as a whole. Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) is the form of excess risk coverage that provides protection for the employer against a high claim on any one individual. This is protection against abnormal severity of a single member claim rather than abnormal frequency of claims in total. Specific stop-loss is also known as individual stop-loss. The specific stop-loss is calculated on the claim transactions received for an individual.

You can define a specific stop-loss pricing rule at the parent customer and bill group levels. The specific stop-loss pricing rule at the bill group level takes precedence over the specific stop-loss pricing rule at the parent customer level. You can define specific stop-loss pricing rules for parent customers and bill groups from the **Customer 360° Information** screen. You can define a specific stop-loss pricing rule using a specific stop-loss pricing rule type.

It is the specific stop-loss pricing rule type which helps the system to determine:

- Business object using which the specific stop-loss pricing rule should be created in the system.

**Note:** The specific stop-loss pricing rule type is not a primary pricing rule type. It inherits the attributes from a claim pricing rule type where it is included as a related pricing rule type.

- Algorithm which should be triggered while validating a transaction.

**Note:** An algorithm type for validating a transaction is not shipped from the product. You need to create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Algorithms which should be triggered while deriving account and price item for a transaction.

**Note:** You must create an algorithm using the **C1\_ACCPRISL** algorithm type and attach it to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event.

- Post-processing algorithm which should be triggered once the specific stop-loss pricing rule is derived.

**Note:** A post-processing algorithm type is not shipped from the product. You need to create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Price items for which you can define specific stop-loss pricing rules using the specific stop-loss pricing rule type.
- Rate options that you can use while defining the pricing for a price item.
- Different type of account to which the price item should be billed based on the specified priority.

**Note:** Ideally, the price item parameters should not be specified in a specific stop-loss pricing rule type. The price item parameters which are specified in the claim pricing rule type are used for accumulating specific stop-loss.

- Additional information, such as:
  - Identifier which helps to determine whether the specific stop-loss should be calculated for claim transactions which are received during the run-in period of the policy.
  - SSL billable charge line type using which you want to create specific stop-loss billable charges.
  - Domestic provider claim billable charge line type using which you want to create domestic provider claim calculation lines.
  - Markup or markdown billable charge line type using which you want to create markup or markdown calculation lines.
  - Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the line item is eligible for billing.

- Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the markup or markdown calculation line is eligible for billing.
- Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the domestic provider claim calculation line is eligible for billing.

Once a specific stop-loss pricing rule type is defined, you can create specific stop-loss pricing rules using the specific stop-loss pricing rule type. While defining a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer, you need to specify the following:

- Price item for which you want to define the pricing.
- Pricing date range during which the pricing is effective.
- Rate option which you want to use while defining the specific stop-loss pricing.
- Whether the specific stop-loss pricing rule must be used for only pricing or for pricing and billing.
- Whether the specific stop-loss must be accumulated at the member or main subscriber level.
- Settlement frequency which helps to determine the bill after date. The valid values are:
  - Immediately – If you select this option from the list, the bill after date is not calculated. The specific stop-loss billable charge is billed immediately in the next bill cycle.
  - Manually (At Required Intervals) - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date which is specified in the **Manual Settlement Bill After Date** parameter while executing the **C1-BCSSL** batch is stamped on the specific stop-loss billable charge.
  - Never - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date which is specified in the **Manual Settlement Bill After Date** parameter while executing the **C1-BCSSL** batch is stamped on the specific stop-loss billable charge.
  - Yearly – If you select this option from the list, the bill after date in the specific stop-loss billable charge is set to the pricing end date.
- Accumulation parameters (such as incurred start date, incurred end date, paid start date, paid end date, etc.) based on which you want to accumulate the specific stop-loss for the claim transactions which are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.
- The maximum limit defined for specific stop-loss at the member or main subscriber level.
- Settlement days which helps to calculate the settlement date (i.e. pricing end date, incurred end date, or paid end date whichever is later + settlement days)
- Whether the Aggregate Specific Stop-Loss (ASSL) should be calculated during the C1-BCSSL batch run for each bill group
- The ASSL limit indicating that the aggregate specific stop-loss amount beyond this limit will be paid by the insurance company to the ASSL credit account.
- Whether any member, main subscriber, or provider is excluded during the specific stop-loss calculation Different SSL limit (i.e. lasered amount) for a member, main subscriber, or provider who are expected to have higher claim amount.

However, while defining a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group, you need to specify the following:

- The status of the policy for which you want to define the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
- Price item for which you want to define the pricing.
- Parent customer's SSL pricing rule from which you want to inherit the accumulation parameters and exclusion and lasering information.

**Note:** The pricing date range is derived from the parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule because the specific stop-loss pricing rules for parent customer and bill group should have the same date range.

- Rate option which you want to use while defining the specific stop-loss pricing.
- Whether the specific stop-loss calculated for the claim transactions which are mapped to the specified price items and price item parameters should be accumulated.
- The SSL limit indicating that the specific stop-loss amount beyond this limit will be paid by the insurance company.
- The maximum specific stop-loss limit defined for the member when the claim transactions are received in the run-in period of the policy.
- Whether line items in a claim pricing rule are eligible for specific stop-loss

**Note:** By default, the line items where the pricing rule type category is set to Specific Stop-Loss appear in the Line Items section. If you want to set specific stop-loss eligibility for the line items which belong to a particular claim pricing rule, you must select the respective claim pricing rule.

- Whether certain percentage of SSL should be excluded while calculating specific stop-loss for domestic provider claim.

You can also specify a pricing group while defining a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group. If you specify a pricing group while defining a stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group, you will have to define the following details for each rule defined in the pricing group:

- Whether the specific stop-loss calculated for the claim transactions which are mapped to the specified price items and price item parameters should be accumulated.
- The SSL limit indicating that the specific stop-loss amount beyond this limit will be paid by the insurance company.
- The maximum specific stop-loss limit defined for the member when the claim transactions are received in the run-in period of the policy.
- Whether line items in a claim pricing rule are eligible for specific stop-loss.

**Note:** By default, the line items where the pricing rule type category is set to Specific Stop-Loss appear in the Line Items section. If you want to set specific stop-loss eligibility for the line items which belong to a particular claim pricing rule, you must select the respective claim pricing rule.

- Whether certain percentage of SSL should be excluded while calculating specific stop-loss for domestic provider claim.

Once a specific stop-loss pricing rule is defined for a parent customer and bill group, the system creates one price assignment, one price list, and one price list assignment.

## Defining a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define a specific stop-loss (SSL) pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleTypeSSL** defined for pricing rule type.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleSSL** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for specific stop-loss defined in the application

### Procedure

To define a specific stop-loss pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.



A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Add** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the pricing rule type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a specific stop-loss pricing rule type using the <b>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</b> business object.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Pricing Rule Type** screen.

- Select the **Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type** business object.
- Click **OK**.

The **Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the specific stop-loss pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the pricing rule type.
- **SSL-Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the specific stop-loss related additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to specify the pricing rule type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Related Transaction Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicate the pricing rule type business object for specific stop-loss.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.	No
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> </ul>	Yes

6. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
7. Add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note: Related Pricing Rule Types** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

8. Define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note: Transaction Field Mapping** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

9. Associate algorithms with the pricing rule type, if required.
10. Define additional data for the pricing rule type, if required.
11. Add pricing items in the pricing rule type, if required.
12. Add price item parameters in the pricing rule type, if required.
13. Define characteristics for the pricing rule type, if required.
14. Add the SSL-Specific data in the pricing rule type, if required.
15. Click **Save**.

The specific stop-loss pricing rule type is defined.

**Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add the SSL-Specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the SSL-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1943




**Adding the SSL-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type****Procedure**



To add the SSL-Specific additional data in a pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **SSL-Specific Additional Data** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule type.

The **SSL-Specific Additional Data** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
SSL Billable Charge Line Type	<p>Used to specify the Specific Stop-Loss billable charge line type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>SSL Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>SSL Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Domestic Provider Claim Billable Charge Line Type	<p>Used to specify the claim billable charge line type for domestic provider.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Domestic Provider Claim Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Domestic Provider Claim Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	No
Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type	<p>Used to specify the markup or markdown billable charge line type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	No
Rule Based Billing Eligibility Field	<p>Used to specify whether the rule based field is eligible for billing or not.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Billing Eligibility Field</b> field, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the field, the description of the field appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Billing Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field	<p>Used to specify whether the rule based markup or markdown field is eligible for billing or not.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field</b> field, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the field, the description of the field appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>	No
Rule Based Domestic Provider Claim Eligibility Field	<p>Used to specify the rule based domestic provider for claim eligibility field.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Domestic Provider Claim Eligibility Field</b> field, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the field, the description of the field appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Domestic Provider Claim Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>	No

2. Enter the required details in the **SSL-Specific Additional Data** section.
3. Click **Save**.

The SSL-Specific Additional data is added in the pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a specific stop-loss (SSL) pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1940
How to edit the specific stop-loss (SSL) pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1945

## Editing a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To edit the specific stop-loss (SSL) pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleSSL** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for specific stop-loss (SSL) defined in the application

### Procedure

To edit the specific stop-loss (SSL) pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.

- In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for specific stop-loss (SSL) whose details you want to edit.

The **Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the specific stop-loss pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the pricing rule type.
- **SSL-Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the specific stop-loss additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No
Related Transaction Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Displays the pricing rule type business object for specific stop-loss.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.	No
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone to edit the pricing rule type for specific stop-loss.

5. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
6. Add, edit, or remove the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type, if required.
7. Modify the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type, if required.
8. Add, edit, or remove algorithms with the pricing rule type, if required.
9. Modify the additional data for the pricing rule type, if required.
10. Add, edit, or remove pricing items in the pricing rule type, if required.
11. Add, edit, or remove price item parameters in the pricing rule type, if required.
12. Add, edit, or remove characteristics for the pricing rule type, if required.
13. Modify the SSL-Specific data in the pricing rule type, if required.
14. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the specific stop-loss pricing rule type are saved.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>

For more information on...	See...
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add the SSL-Specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the SSL-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1943

## Deleting a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type

### Procedure

To delete a specific stop-loss pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the specific stop-loss pricing rule type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the specific stop-loss pricing rule type.

**Note:** You can delete a specific stop-loss pricing rule type only when it is not yet used in the system.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a specific stop-loss pricing rule type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.  
The specific stop-loss pricing rule type is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Viewing the Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a specific stop-loss pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.




A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.

- In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the

**Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the specific stop-loss pricing rule type whose details you want to view.

The **Pricing Rule Type** zone appears.

- View the details of the specific stop-loss pricing rule type in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer

### Prerequisites

To define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleSSL** defined for specific stop-loss pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Price item defined in the application.
- Rate option defined in the application.
- Pricing rule usage defined in the application.
- SSL accumulation level defined in the application.
- Settlement frequency defined in the application.
- Underwriter review defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer:

- Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the

**View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.

- Click the **Pricing** tab and then click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type to create the pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a specific stop-loss pricing rule using the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> for specific stop-loss.	

4. Click **OK**.

The **Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
- **Accumulation Parameters** – Used to define the accumulation parameters based on which you want to accumulate the specific stop-loss for the transactions which are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.
- **Run-In Parameters** – Used to define run-in parameters in the run-in period of the policy.
- **Lasering and Exclusion** – Used to define the lasering and exclusion information to inherit the accumulation parameters.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent customer information	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item which you want to define for pricing.	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the pricing rule start date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected. By default it displays the <b>Policy Start Date</b> .	
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the pricing rule end date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected. By default it displays the <b>Policy End Date</b> .	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option which you want to use for defining the specific stop-loss pricing rule for the price item.	Yes
Pricing Rule Usage	Used to indicate whether the pricing rule is used only for pricing or for pricing and billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pricing</li> <li>Pricing and Billing</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected.	
SSL Accumulation Level	Used to indicate whether the specific stop-loss must be accumulated at the member or main subscriber level. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Member</li> <li>Main Subscriber</li> </ul>	
Settlement Frequency	Used to indicate the settlement frequency which helps to determine the bill after date. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Immediately</b> – The bill after date is not calculated. The specific stop-loss billable charge is billed immediately in the next cycle.</li> <li><b>Manually (At Required Intervals)</b> – The bill after date specified in the <b>Manual Settlement Bill After Date</b> parameter while executing the <b>C1-BCSSL</b> batch is stamped on the specific stop-loss billable charge.</li> <li><b>Never</b> – The bill after date specified in the <b>Manual Settlement Bill After Date</b> parameter while executing the <b>C1-BCSSL</b> batch is stamped on the specific stop-loss billable charge.</li> <li><b>Yearly</b> – The bill after date in the specific stop-loss billable charge is set to the pricing end date.</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is disabled when you select <b>Pricing and Billing</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Usage</b> field.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Underwriter Review	Used to indicate whether the underwriter settlement review flag is on or off. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
Claim Template	Used to indicate the claim template to define the claim pricing rule for a parent customer.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled for selection when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected.	

5. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
6. Define accumulation parameters in a specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Accumulation Parameters** section appears only when an option from the **Price Item** field is selected.

7. Define run-in parameters in a specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Run-In Parameters** section appears only when an option from the **Price Item** field is selected.

8. Define lasering and exclusion information in a specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Lasering and Exclusion** section appears only when an option from the **Price Item** field is selected.

9. Define characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.

10. Click **Save**.

The specific stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer is defined.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to define accumulation parameters in a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Accumulation Parameters in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1952
How to define run in parameters in a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Run-in Parameters in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1954
How to define lasering and exclusion information in a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Lasering and Exclusion Information in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1955
How to define characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1957

## **Defining Accumulation Parameters in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule**

### **Procedure**

To define accumulation parameters in a specific stop-loss pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Accumulation Parameters** section is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Price Item** field of **Main** section while defining a specific stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Accumulation Parameters** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Accumulation Group ID	Displays blank field, accumulation group ID is generated when accumulation parameter values are defined for a specific stop-loss.	Not applicable
Incurred Start Date	Used to specify the incurred start date based on which you want to accumulate the specific stop-loss.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The accumulated specific stop-loss for claim transactions are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.	
Incurred End Date	Used to specify the incurred end date based on which you want to accumulate the specific stop-loss.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The accumulated specific stop-loss for claim transactions are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.	
SSL Payout Limit	Used to specify the maximum limit defined for specific stop-loss at the member or main subscriber level.	Yes
Paid Start Date	Used to specify the paid start date based on which you want to accumulate the specific stop-loss.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The accumulated specific stop-loss for claim transactions are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.	
Paid End Date	Used to specify the paid end date based on which you want to accumulate the specific stop-loss.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The accumulated specific stop-loss for claim transactions are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.	
Settlement Days	Used to indicate the settlement days which helps to calculate the settlement date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Settlement date is calculated as the pricing end date, incurred end date, or paid end date whichever is later added with the settlement days.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Compute Aggregate SSL (ASSL)	Used to indicate whether the aggregate specific stop-loss (ASSL) should be calculated or not during the <b>C1-BCSSL</b> batch run for each bill group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
ASSL Credit Count	Used to indicate that the aggregate specific stop-loss amount beyond the ASSL limit will be paid by the insurance company to the ASSL credit account.  <b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when you select <b>Yes</b> option from the <b>Compute Aggregate SSL (ASSL)</b> field.	Yes
ASSL Limit	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when you select <b>Yes</b> option from the <b>Compute Aggregate SSL (ASSL)</b> field.	Yes

2. Enter the required details in the **Accumulation Parameters** section.

3. Click **Save**.

The accumulation parameters are defined in the specific stop-loss pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 1949
How to edit a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1958

## Defining Run-in Parameters in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule

### Procedure

To define run-in parameters in a specific stop-loss pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Run-In Parameters** section is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Price Item** field of **Main** section while defining a specific stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Run-In Parameters** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Run-In	Used to specify whether the run-in parameters of the run-in period of policy are to be considered or not in a specific stop-loss pricing	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Incurred Start Date	Used to specify the incurred start date based on the run-in period of the policy in the specific stop-loss.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field.	
Incurred End Date	Used to specify the incurred end date based on the run-in period of the policy in the specific stop-loss.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field.	
Paid Start Date	Used to specify the paid start date based on the run-in period of the policy in the specific stop-loss.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field.	
Paid End Date	Used to specify the paid end date based on the run-in period of the policy in the specific stop-loss.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field.	

2. Enter the required details in the **Run-In Parameters** section.

3. Click **Save**.

The run-in parameters are defined in the specific stop-loss pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 1949
How to edit a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1958

## Defining Lasering and Exclusion Information in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule

### Prerequisites

To define lasering and exclusion information in a specific stop-loss pricing rule, you should have:

- Lasering or exclusion level defined in the application.
- Exception type defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define lasering and exclusion information in a specific stop-loss pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Lasering and Exclusion** section is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Price Item** field of **Main** section while defining a specific stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Lasering and Exclusion** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Accumulation Group ID	Displays blank column, accumulation group ID is generated when accumulation parameter values are defined for a specific stop-loss.	Not applicable
Level Identifier	Used to specify the lasering or exclusion level identifier.	Yes
Lasering or Exclusion Level	Used to indicate the lasering or exclusion in a specific stop-loss. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Main Subscriber</li> <li>• Member</li> <li>• Provider</li> </ul>	Yes
Exception Type	Used to indicate the exception type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lasering</li> <li>• Exclusion</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field displays <b>Exclusion</b> option and is disabled on selection of <b>Provider</b> option from the <b>Lasering or Exclusion Level</b> column.	
Comments	Used to specify the comments.	No
Lasered Amount	Used to specify the lasered amount.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is disabled when <b>Exclusion</b> option is selected from the <b>Exception Type</b> column.	<b>Note:</b> This column is mandatory when <b>Lasering</b> option is selected from the <b>Exception Type</b> column.

2. Enter the required details in the **Lasering and Exclusion** section.
3. If you want to define more than one lasering and exclusion information in a specific stop-loss pricing rule, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a lasering and exclusion information from the specific stop-loss pricing rule, click the **Delete** (🗑) icon corresponding to the level identifier.

4. Click **Save**.

The lasering and exclusion information is defined in a specific stop-loss pricing rule.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 1949



For more information on...	See...
How to edit the specific stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1958

## Defining Characteristics for a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**)


### Procedure


To define characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the specific stop-loss pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule</b> .	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears. On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the specific stop-loss pricing rule.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the specific stop-loss pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the specific stop-loss pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the specific stop-loss pricing rule.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 1949
How to edit the specific stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1958

**Editing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer**



**Prerequisites**

To edit a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleSSL** defined for specific stop-loss pricing rule.
- Pricing rule usage defined in the application.
- SSL accumulation level defined in the application.
- Underwriter review defined in the application.

**Procedure**

To edit a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for specific stop-loss whose specific stop-loss pricing rule details you want to edit.  
The **Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:
  - **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information.
  - **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
  - **Accumulation Parameters** – Used to define the accumulation parameters based on which you want to accumulate the specific stop-loss for the transactions which are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.
  - **Run-In Parameters** – Used to define run-in parameters in the run-in period of the policy.
  - **Lasering and Exclusion** – Used to define the lasering and exclusion information to inherit the accumulation parameters.
  - **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent customer information	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item defined for pricing.	Not applicable
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the pricing rule start date.	Yes
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the pricing rule end date.	Yes
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option used for defining the specific stop-loss pricing rule for the price item.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Usage	Used to indicate whether the pricing rule is used only for pricing or for pricing and billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pricing</li> <li>Pricing and Billing</li> </ul>	Yes
SSL Accumulation Level	Used to indicate whether the specific stop-loss must be accumulated at the member or main subscriber level. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Member</li> <li>Main Subscriber</li> </ul>	
Settlement Frequency	Indicates the settlement frequency to determine the bill after date. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Immediately</b> – The bill after date is not calculated. The specific stop-loss billable charge is billed immediately in the next cycle.</li> <li><b>Manually (At Required Intervals)</b> – The bill after date specified in the <b>Manual Settlement Bill After Date</b> parameter while executing the <b>C1-BCSSL</b> batch is stamped on the specific stop-loss billable charge.</li> <li><b>Never</b> –</li> <li><b>Yearly</b> – The bill after date in the specific stop-loss billable charge is set to the pricing end date.</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b> This field is disabled when you select <b>Pricing and Billing</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Usage</b> field. </div>	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Underwriter Review	Used to indicate whether the underwriter settlement review flag is on or off. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes

4. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
5. Modify the accumulation parameters in a specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
6. Modify the run-in parameters in a specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
7. Add, edit, or remove the lasering and exclusion information for the specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
8. Add, edit, or remove characteristics for the specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
9. Click **Save**.

The changes made to a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer are saved.


### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to define accumulation parameters in a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Accumulation Parameters in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1952
How to define run-in parameters in a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Run-in Parameters in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1954
How to define lasering and exclusion information in a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Lasering and Exclusion Information in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1955
How to define characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1957

## **Viewing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer**

### **Procedure**

To view a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the **Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the specific stop-loss pricing rule type whose specific stop-loss pricing rule you want to view.

The **Specific Stop-Loss** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

- [Specific Stop-Loss](#) on page 2252
5. View the basic details of specific stop-loss pricing rule in the **Main** section.
  6. View the accumulated parameters in the **Accumulation Parameters** section.
  7. View the run-in parameters in the **Run-In Parameters** section.
  8. View the lasering and exclusion information in the **Lasering and Exclusion** section.
  9. View the characteristics defined for the specific stop-loss pricing rule in the **Characteristics** section.



#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Customer 360° Information – Pricing tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
Parent Customer Pricing Rules zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
Pricing Rule screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 2243

## Deleting a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer

### Procedure

To delete a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account, Person, or Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the specific stop-loss pricing rule type whose specific stop-loss pricing rule you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
4. Click **OK**.  
The specific stop-loss pricing rule is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Customer 360° Information – Pricing tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
Parent Customer Pricing Rules zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101

## Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group

### Prerequisites


To define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleSSL** defined for specific stop-loss pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type defined in the application.

- Policy status defined in the application.
- Price item defined in the application.
- Rate option defined in the application.

**Procedure**

To define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view. The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab and then click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type to create the pricing rule.  <b>Note:</b> You can create a specific stop-loss pricing rule using the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> for specific stop-loss.	Yes
Pricing Group	Used to indicate the pricing group.	No
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> Specific stop-loss pricing rule cannot be created for <b>Runout</b> or <b>Post Runout</b> policy status where the policy run out end date is missing.	Yes

4. Click **OK**.

The **Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
- **Accumulation Criteria** – Used to define the accumulation criteria in a specific stop-loss pricing rule.
- **Pricing Information** – Used to define stop-loss eligibility for claim line items.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the specific stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Once an option is selected for this field, the field appears disabled.	
Parent Customer's SSL Pricing Rules	Used to indicate the pricing date range derived from the parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled for selection when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected.	
Pricing Start Date	Displays the pricing rule start date.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> This field displays the <b>Policy Start Date</b> .	
Pricing End Date	Displays the pricing rule end date.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> This field displays the <b>Policy End Date</b> .	
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option to define the specific stop-loss pricing rule for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Rate options in this field appears for selection, only when you select an option from the <b>Price Item</b> field.	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define accumulation criteria in a specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.

<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Accumulation Criteria</b> section appears only when an option from <b>Parent Customer's SSL Pricing Rules</b> field is selected.</p> <p>You can also define the <b>Accumulation Criteria</b> for each rule in a specific stop-loss pricing rule.</p>
--

- Define stop-loss eligibility for claim line items, if required.

**Note:**

The **Pricing Information** section appears only when an option from **Parent Customer’s SSL Pricing Rules** field is selected.

You can also define the **Pricing Information** for each rule in a specific stop-loss pricing rule.

- Define characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The specific stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group is defined.

**Note:** A price list and price assignment is created, the price list created is assigned to the specific stop-loss pricing rule.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define accumulation criteria in a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Accumulation Criteria in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1964
How to define claim pricing information in a specific stop loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Claim Pricing Information in a Specific Stop Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1966
How to define characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1957

**Defining Accumulation Criteria in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule**

**Procedure**








To define accumulation criteria in a specific stop-loss pricing rule:

- Ensure that the **Accumulation Criteria** section is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Parent Customer’s SSL Pricing Rules** field of **Main** section while defining or editing a specific stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Accumulation Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Accumulation Group ID	Displays blank field, accumulation group ID is generated when accumulation criteria values are defined for a specific stop-loss.	Not applicable
Run-In Maximum Limit	Used to specify the maximum specific stop-loss limit defined for the member when the claim transactions are received in the run-in period of the policy.  <b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when the start date and end date selected from the <b>Parent Customer’s SSL Pricing Rules</b> field of <b>Main</b> section is greater than today’s date.	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
SSL Limit	Used to specify whether the SSL limit indicating that the specific stop-loss amount beyond this limit will be paid by the insurance company.	Yes									
Price Item	Used to specify the price item information.  <b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.	No									
Price Item Parameters	<p>This field contains the following columns:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Column Name</th><th>Column Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Price Item Parameter</td><td>Used to specify multiple parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.  <b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> window appears.</td><td>No</td></tr> <tr> <td>Parameter Value</td><td>Used to specify the value of the parameter.  <b>Note:</b> On selecting the <b>Price Item Parameter</b>, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field, and on clicking the icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> window appears.</td><td>No</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Price Item Parameter	Used to specify multiple parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.  <b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> window appears.	No	Parameter Value	Used to specify the value of the parameter.  <b>Note:</b> On selecting the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> , the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field, and on clicking the icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> window appears.	No	No
Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Price Item Parameter	Used to specify multiple parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.  <b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> window appears.	No									
Parameter Value	Used to specify the value of the parameter.  <b>Note:</b> On selecting the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> , the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field, and on clicking the icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> window appears.	No									

- Enter the required details in the **Accumulation Criteria** section.
- If you want to define more than one price item in the accumulation group, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price item from the accumulation group, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the price item.

- If you want to define more than one price item parameters for the price item, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price item parameter from the price item, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the price item parameter.

- Click **Save**.  
The accumulation criteria is defined in the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
- You can define accumulation rules for each rule in a specific stop-loss pricing rule.

**Note:** You can exclude a rule from the specific stop-loss pricing by selecting the **Exclude Rule** checkbox.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 1961
How to edit a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 1971

**Defining Claim Pricing Information in a Specific Stop Loss Pricing Rule**

**Procedure**

To define the stop-loss eligibility for claim line items:

- Ensure that the **Pricing Information** section is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Parent Customer’s SSL Pricing Rules** field of **Main** section while defining or editing a specific stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Pricing Information** section contains the following section:

- Claim Pricing Rule** – Used to indicate the claim pricing rule. It contains the following sub-sections:
  - Domestic Provider Claims** – Used to specify the domestic provider claim while calculating specific stop-loss.
  - Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to define the markup or markdown values for billable charge line.
  - Line Items** – Used to associate line items eligible for billing.

The **Claim Pricing Rule** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Claim Pricing Rule	Used to indicate the claim pricing rule effective for pricing.	No

On clicking the **Reapply Claim Template** button to the right side of the **Effective Claim Pricing Rule** field you can reapply for claim pricing rule.

**Note:** The **Reapply Claim Template** button appears only when you are editing a specific stop-loss.

The **Domestic Provider Claims** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Exclude SSL (Percentage)	Used to specify the domestic provider claim billable charge line excluding the specific stop-loss in percentage to create domestic provider claim calculation lines.	No

The **Markup or Markdown Values** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Strategy	Indicates the pricing strategy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Markdown</li> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• None</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Type	Indicates the markup or markdown value type for claim line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Amount</li> <li>• Percentage</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Amount	Displays the markup or markdown amount. <div> <b>Note:</b> This field displays amount when <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is <b>Flat Amount</b>. </div>	Not applicable

The **Line Items** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Displays the sequence number for the line items.	Not applicable
Line Item	Displays the billing line items.	Not applicable
Eligible for Specific Stop-Loss	Used to specify whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for specific stop-loss.	No
Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility	Displays whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for markup or markdown percentage. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eligible</li> <li>• Not Eligible</li> </ul>	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Markup or Markdown Percentage	Displays the percentage for markup or markdown value.	Not applicable

2. Select the required details in the **Claim Pricing Rule** section, if required.
3. Enter the required details in the **Domestic Provider Claims** section, if required.
4. Select the required details in the **Line Items** section, if required.
5. Click **Save**.

The claim line items are defined in the specific stop-loss pricing rule.

6. You can define eligibility claim line items for each rule in a specific stop-loss pricing rule.

**Note:** You can exclude a rule from the specific stop-loss pricing by selecting the **Exclude Rule** checkbox.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 1961
How to edit a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 1971

## Defining a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group


### Prerequisites

To define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleSSL** defined for specific stop-loss pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Pricing group defined in the application.
- Policy status defined in the application.
- Price item defined in the application.
- Rate option defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab and then click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type to create the pricing rule.  <b>Note:</b> You can create a specific stop-loss pricing rule using the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> for specific stop-loss.	Yes
Pricing Group	Used to indicate the pricing group.	Yes
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> Specific stop-loss pricing rule cannot be created for <b>Runout</b> or <b>Post Runout</b> policy status where the policy run out End Date is missing.	Yes

4. Click **OK**.

The **Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group using pricing group.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the claim pricing rule.
- **Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to define the markup or markdown values for billable charge line for each rule.
- **Line Items** – Used to associate line items eligible for billing for each rule.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the claim pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Group	Displays the pricing group.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Once an option is selected for this field, the field appears disabled.	
Parent Customer's SSL Pricing Rules	Used to indicate the pricing date range derived from the parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled for selection when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected.	
Pricing Start Date	Displays the pricing rule start date.	Yes
Pricing End Date	Displays the pricing rule end date.	Yes
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option to define the specific stop-loss pricing rule for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Rate options in this field appears for selection, only when you select an option from the <b>Price Item</b> field.	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define accumulation criteria for each rule in a specific stop-loss pricing rule pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Accumulation Criteria** section appears in the rule section and the rule section appears only when an option from **Parent Customer's SSL Pricing Rules** field is selected.

- Define stop-loss eligibility for claim line items, if required.

**Note:** The **Pricing Information** section appears in the rule section and the rule section appears only when an option from **Parent Customer's SSL Pricing Rules** field is selected.

- Define characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The specific stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group is defined.

**Note:** A price list and price assignment is created, the price list created is assigned to the specific stop-loss pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Customer 360° Information – Pricing tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define Accumulation Criteria in a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Accumulation Criteria in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1964

For more information on...	See...
How to define claim pricing information in a specific stop loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Claim Pricing Information in a Specific Stop Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1966
How to define characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1957

## Editing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

### Prerequisites

To edit a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleSSL** defined for specific stop-loss pricing rule.

### Procedure


To edit a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.

2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

**View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for specific stop-loss whose specific stop-loss pricing rule details you want to view.

The **Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.
- **Main** – Displays the basic details about the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
- **Accumulation Criteria** – Used to define the accumulation criteria in a specific stop-loss pricing rule.
- **Pricing Information** – Used to define stop-loss eligibility for claim line items.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the specific stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item.	Not applicable
Parent Customer's SSL Pricing Rules	Indicates the pricing date range derived from the parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule.	Not applicable
Pricing Start Date	Displays the pricing rule start date.	Not applicable
Pricing End Date	Displays the pricing rule end date.	Not applicable
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option of the specific stop-loss pricing rule for the price item.	Not applicable

4. Modify the accumulation criteria in a specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** You can add, edit, or remove price item and its price item parameters in the accumulation criteria for a specific stop-loss, if required.

5. Modify the stop-loss eligibility for claim line items, if required.

**Note:** This section also consists of a button, **Reapply Claim Template**, on clicking the button a message occurs indicating that updating the claim template will reset all the default fields on the claim pricing rule.

6. Add, edit, or remove characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to a specific stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group are saved.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define accumulation criteria in a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Accumulation Criteria in a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1964
How to define claim pricing information in a specific stop loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Claim Pricing Information in a Specific Stop Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1966
How to define characteristics for a specific stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1957

## Viewing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To view a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for a bill group in the **Customer 360° View** screen
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.



4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the



**Broadcast** icon corresponding to the bill group whose specific stop-loss pricing rule bill group details you want to view.

5. In the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the **Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the specific stop-loss pricing rule type whose specific stop-loss pricing rule you want to view.

The **Specific Stop-Loss** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

- [Specific Stop-Loss](#) on page 2252
6. View the basic details of specific stop-loss pricing rule in the **Main** section.
  7. View the accumulation criteria in the **Markup or Markdown Values** section.
  8. View the stop-loss eligibility for claim line items in the **Line Items** section.
  9. View the characteristics defined for the specific stop-loss pricing rule in the **Characteristics** section.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
<b>Pricing Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 2243

## Deleting a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To delete a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account, Person, or Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the specific stop-loss pricing rule type whose specific stop-loss pricing rule you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
4. Click **OK**.

The specific stop-loss pricing rule is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107

## Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing

ASL provides a ceiling on the eligible expenses that an employer would pay, in total for all members or subscribers, during a contract period. The amount that exceeds this limit will be paid by the insurance company.

You can define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule at the parent customer and bill group levels. The aggregate stop-loss pricing rule at the bill group level takes precedence over the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule at the parent customer level. You can define aggregate stop-loss pricing rules for parent customers and bill groups from the **Customer 360° Information** screen. You can define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule using an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type. It is the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type which helps the system to determine:

- Business object using which the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule should be created in the system.

**Note:** The aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type is not a primary pricing rule type. It inherits the attributes from a claim pricing rule type where it is included as a related pricing rule type.

- Algorithm which should be triggered while validating a transaction.

**Note:** An algorithm type for validating a transaction is not shipped from the product. You need to create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Algorithms which should be triggered while deriving account and price item for a transaction.

**Note:** You must create an algorithm using the **C1\_ACCPRISL** algorithm type and attach it to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event.

- Post-processing algorithm which should be triggered once the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule is derived.

**Note:** A post-processing algorithm type is not shipped from the product. You need to create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Price items for which you can define aggregate stop-loss pricing rules using the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type.
- Rate options that you can use while defining the pricing for a price item.
- Different type of account to which the price item should be billed based on the specified priority.

**Note:** Ideally, the price item parameters should not be specified in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type. The price item parameters which are specified in the claim pricing rule type are used for accumulating aggregate stop-loss.

- Additional information, such as:
  - Identifier which helps to determine whether the aggregate stop-loss should be calculated for claim transactions which are received during the run-in period of the policy.
  - ASL billable charge line type using which you want to create aggregate stop-loss billable charges.
  - Domestic provider claim billable charge line type using which you want to create domestic provider claim calculation lines.
  - Markup or markdown billable charge line type using which you want to create markup or markdown calculation lines.
  - Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the line item is eligible for billing.
  - Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the markup or markdown calculation line is eligible for billing.
  - Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the domestic provider claim calculation line is eligible for billing.
  - ASL limit price item whose effective retention type enrollment based pricing should be used to calculate the enrollment based limit when the ASL Limit (During Policy Period) or ASL Limit (During Settlement Period) field is set to Enrollment Based Limit, Enrollment Based or Minimum ASL Limit (Whichever is Greater), or Percentage of Enrollment Based Limit in the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule which is defined for a parent customer.

Once an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type is defined, you can create aggregate stop-loss pricing rules using the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type. While defining an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer, you need to specify the following:

- Price item for which you want to define the pricing.
- Parent customer's SSL pricing rule from which you want to inherit the settlement frequency, settlement days, accumulation parameters (such as incurred start date, incurred end date, paid start date, and paid end date).

**Note:** The pricing date range is derived from the parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule because the specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss pricing rules for a parent customer should have the same date range.

- Rate option which you want to use while defining the aggregate stop-loss pricing.
- Settlement frequency which helps to determine the bill after date. The valid values are:
  - Immediately – If you select this option from the list, the bill after date is not calculated. The aggregate stop-loss billable charge is billed immediately in the next bill cycle.
  - Manually (At Required Intervals) - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date which is specified in the **Manual Settlement Date** parameter while executing the **C1-BCASL** batch is stamped on the aggregate stop-loss billable charge.
  - Monthly - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date which is specified in the **Manual Settlement Date** parameter while executing the **C1-BCASL** batch is stamped on the aggregate stop-loss billable charge.
  - Yearly – If you select this option from the list, the bill after date in the aggregate stop-loss billable charge is set to the pricing end date.
- Account in which the aggregate stop-loss amount should be credited.
- Accumulation parameters (such as incurred start date, incurred end date, paid start date, paid end date, etc.) based on which you want to accumulate the aggregate stop-loss for the claim transactions which are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.
- The maximum limit defined for aggregate stop-loss at the parent customer level.
- Settlement days which helps to calculate the settlement date (i.e. pricing end date, incurred end date, or paid end date whichever is later + settlement days)
- Whether the ASL limit should be set to either of the following during the policy period:
  - Policy Based Limit
  - Enrollment Based or Minimum ASL Limit (Whichever is Greater)
  - Enrollment Based Limit
  - Percentage of Enrollment Based Limit
- Whether the ASL limit should be set to either of the following during the settlement period:
  - Policy Based Limit
  - Enrollment Based or Minimum ASL Limit (Whichever is Greater)
  - Enrollment Based Limit

However, while defining an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group, you need to specify the following:

- The status of the policy for which you want to define the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
- Price item for which you want to define the pricing.
- Parent customer's ASL pricing rule from which you want to inherit the pricing date range.

**Note:** The pricing date range is derived from the parent customer's aggregate stop-loss pricing rule because the aggregate stop-loss pricing rules for parent customer and bill group should have the same date range.

- Rate option which you want to use while defining the aggregate stop-loss pricing.
- Whether the aggregate stop-loss calculated for the claim transactions which are mapped to the specified price items and price item parameters should be accumulated.
- Whether line items in a claim pricing rule are eligible for aggregate stop-loss.

**Note:** By default, the line items where the pricing rule type category is set to Aggregate Stop-Loss appear in the Line Items section. If you want to set aggregate stop-loss eligibility for the line items which belong to a particular claim pricing rule, you must select the respective claim pricing rule.

- Whether certain percentage of ASL should be excluded while calculating aggregate stop-loss for domestic provider claim.

You can also specify a pricing group while defining an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group. If you specify a pricing group while defining an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group, you will have to define the following details for each rule defined in the pricing group:

- Whether the aggregate stop-loss calculated for the claim transactions which are mapped to the specified price items and price item parameters should be accumulated.
- Whether line items in a claim pricing rule are eligible for aggregate stop-loss.

**Note:** By default, the line items where the pricing rule type category is set to Aggregate Stop-Loss appear in the Line Items section. If you want to set aggregate stop-loss eligibility for the line items which belong to a particular claim pricing rule, you must select the respective claim pricing rule.

- Whether certain percentage of ASL should be excluded while calculating aggregate stop-loss for domestic provider claim.

Once an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule is defined for a parent customer and bill group, the system creates one price assignment, one price list, and one price list assignment.

## Defining a Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define an aggregate stop-loss (SSL) pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleTypeASL** defined for pricing rule type.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleASL** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for aggregate stop-loss defined in the application

### Procedure

To define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the pricing rule type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type using the <b>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</b> business object.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Pricing Rule Type** screen.

4. Select the **Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type** business object.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the pricing rule type.
- **ASL-Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the aggregate stop-loss related additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to specify the pricing rule type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No
Related Transaction Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicate the pricing rule type business object for aggregate stop-loss.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.	No
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Claim</li> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> </ul>	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note: Related Pricing Rule Types** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

- Define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note: Transaction Field Mapping** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

- Associate algorithms with the pricing rule type, if required.
- Define additional data for the pricing rule type, if required.
- Add pricing items in the pricing rule type, if required.
- Add price item parameters in the pricing rule type, if required.
- Define characteristics for the pricing rule type, if required.
- Add the ASL-Specific additional data in the pricing rule type, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type is defined.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>

For more information on...	See...
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add the ASL-Specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the ASL-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1979



## Adding the ASL-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type




### Procedure

To add the ASL-Specific additional data in a pricing rule type:


1. Ensure that the **ASL-Specific Additional Data** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule type.

The **ASL-Specific Additional Data** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
ASL Billable Charge Line Type	<p>Used to specify the Aggregate Stop-Loss billable charge line type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>ASL Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>ASL Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	No
Domestic Provider Claim Billable Charge Line Type	<p>Used to specify the claim billable charge line type for domestic provider.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Domestic Provider Claim Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Domestic Provider Claim Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type	Used to specify the markup or markdown billable charge line type.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	
Rule Based Billing Eligibility Field	Used to specify whether the rule based field is eligible for billing or not.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Billing Eligibility Field</b> field, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the field, the description of the field appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Billing Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>	
Rule Based Markup or        Markdown Eligibility Field	Used to specify whether the rule based markup or markdown field is eligible for billing or not.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field</b> field, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the field, the description of the field appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Based Domestic Provider Claim Eligibility Field	<p>Used to specify the rule based domestic provider for claim eligibility field.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Domestic Provider Claim Eligibility Field</b> field, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the field, the description of the field appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Domestic Provider Claim Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>	No
ASL Limit Price Item	Used to specify the Aggregated Stop-Loss limit price item.	No

- Enter the required details in the **ASL-Specific Additional Data** section.
- Click **Save**.

The ASL-Specific Additional data is added in the pricing rule type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an aggregate stop-loss (ASL) pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1976
How to edit the aggregate stop-loss (ASL) pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1981

## Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type


### Prerequisites

To edit the aggregate stop-loss (ASL) pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleASL** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for aggregate stop-loss (ASL) defined in the application

### Procedure

To edit the aggregate stop-loss (ASL) pricing rule type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
- In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for aggregate stop-loss (ASL) whose details you want to edit.

The **Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the pricing rule type.
- **ASL-Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the aggregate stop-loss additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No
Related Transaction Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Displays the pricing rule type business object for aggregate stop-loss.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone to edit the pricing rule type for specific stop-loss.

5. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
6. Add, edit, or remove the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type, if required.
7. Modify the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type, if required.
8. Add, edit, or remove algorithms with the pricing rule type, if required.
9. Modify the additional data for the pricing rule type, if required.
10. Add, edit, or remove pricing items in the pricing rule type, if required.
11. Add, edit, or remove price item parameters in the pricing rule type, if required.
12. Add, edit, or remove characteristics for the pricing rule type, if required.
13. Modify the ASL-Specific data in the pricing rule type, if required.
14. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type are saved.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add the ASL-Specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the ASL-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1979

## Deleting an Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type

### Procedure

To delete an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type.

**Note:** You can delete an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type only when it is not yet used in the system.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.  
The aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Viewing the Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type Details


### Procedure

To view the details of an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.

4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the

**Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type whose details you want to view.

The **Pricing Rule Type** zone appears.

5. View the details of the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer

### Prerequisites

To define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleASL** defined for aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Price item defined in the application.
- Rate option defined in the application.
- Settlement frequency defined in the application.
- Underwriter review defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

**View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab and then click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type to create the pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule using the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> for aggregate stop-loss.	

4. Click **OK**.

The **Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
- **Accumulation Parameters** – Used to define the accumulation parameters based on which you want to accumulate the aggregate stop-loss for the transactions which are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.
- **Run-In Parameters** – Used to define run-in parameters in the run-in period of the policy.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for an aggregation stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent customer information	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item which you want to define for pricing.	Yes
Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules	Used to indicate the pricing date range derived from the parent customer's specific stop-loss or aggregate stop-loss pricing rules.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select an option from the <b>Price Item</b> field.	
Pricing Start Date	Displays the pricing rule start date.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> By default it displays the <b>Policy Start Date</b> .	
Pricing End Date	Displays the pricing rule end date.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> This field displays date only when you select the date range from <b>Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules</b> .	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option which you want to use for defining the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Options appears in this field only when you select an option from the <b>Price Item</b> field.	
Settlement Frequency	Used to indicate the settlement frequency which helps to determine the bill after date. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Immediately</b> – The bill after date is not calculated. The aggregate stop-loss billable charge is billed immediately in the next cycle.</li> <li>• <b>Manually (At Required Intervals)</b> – The bill after date specified in the <b>Manual Settlement Date</b> parameter while executing the <b>C1-BCASL</b> batch is stamped on the aggregate stop-loss billable charge.</li> <li>• <b>Monthly</b> – The bill after date specified in the <b>Manual Settlement Date</b> parameter while executing the <b>C1-BCASL</b> batch is stamped on the aggregate stop-loss billable charge.</li> <li>• <b>Yearly</b> – The bill after date in the aggregate stop-loss billable charge is set to the pricing end date.</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select an option from the <b>Price Item</b> field.	
Underwriter Review	Used to indicate whether the underwriter settlement review flag is on or off. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select an option from the <b>Price Item</b> field.	

5. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.

6. Define accumulation parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Accumulation Parameters** section appears only when an option from the **Price Item** field is selected.

7. Define run-in parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Run-In Parameters** section appears only when an option from the **Price Item** field is selected.

8. Define characteristics for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, if required.

9. Click **Save**.

The aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer is defined.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to define accumulation parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Accumulation Parameters in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1988
How to define run-in parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Run-in Parameters in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1991
How to define characteristics for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1992

## Defining Accumulation Parameters in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule

**Procedure**

To define accumulation parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Accumulation Parameters** section is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Price Item** field of **Main** section while defining an aggregation stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Accumulation Parameters** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Accumulation Group ID	Displays blank field, accumulation group ID is generated when accumulation parameter values are defined for an aggregation stop-loss.	Not applicable
ASL Credit Account	Used to indicate the account in which the aggregate stop-loss amount should be credited.  <b>Note:</b> This field becomes read only when you select a date range from the <b>Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules</b> .	Not applicable
Incurred Start Date	Displays the incurred start date based on which you want to accumulate the aggregate stop-loss.  <b>Note:</b> The accumulated aggregated stop-loss for claim transactions are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy. This field displays date only when you select a date range from the <b>Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules</b> .  <b>Incurred Start Date</b> is equal to the pricing rule start date.	Not applicable



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Incurred End Date	Displays the incurred end date based on which you want to accumulate the aggregate stop-loss.	Not applicable
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The accumulated aggregated stop-loss for claim transactions are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.</p> <p>This field displays date only when you select a date range from the <b>Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules</b>.</p> <p><b>Incurred End Date</b> is equal to the pricing rule end date.</p>	
ASL Payout Limit	Used to specify the maximum limit defined for aggregated stop-loss at the member or main subscriber level.	Yes
Paid Start Date	Used to specify the paid start date based on which you want to accumulate the aggregate stop-loss.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The accumulated specific stop-loss for claim transactions are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.</p> <p>This field displays date only when you select a date range from the <b>Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules</b>.</p> <p><b>Paid Start Date</b> is equal to the pricing rule start date.</p>	
Paid End Date	Used to specify the paid end date based on which you want to accumulate the aggregate stop-loss.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The accumulated specific stop-loss for claim transactions are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.</p> <p>This field displays date only when you select a date range from the <b>Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules</b>.</p> <p><b>Paid End Date</b> is equal to the pricing rule end date.</p>	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Settlement Days	Used to indicate the settlement days which helps to calculate the settlement date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Settlement date is calculated as the pricing end date, incurred end date, or paid end date whichever is later added with the settlement days.	
ASL Limit (During Policy Period)	Used to indicate the aggregate stop-loss limit set during the policy period. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Policy Based Limit</li> <li>Enrollment Based Limit</li> <li>Percentage of Enrollment Based Limit</li> <li>Enrollment Based or Minimum ASL Limit (Whichever is Greater)</li> </ul>	Yes
ASL Limit (During Settlement Period)	Used to indicate the aggregate stop-loss limit set during the settlement period. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Policy Based Limit</li> <li>Enrollment Based Limit</li> <li>Enrollment Based or Minimum ASL Limit (Whichever is Greater)</li> </ul>	Yes
Minimum ASL Limit	Used to specify the minimum ASL limit.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Enrollment Based or Minimum ASL Limit (Whichever is Greater)</b> option from the <b>ASL Limit (During Policy Period)</b> or <b>ASL Limit (During Settlement Period)</b> field.	
Percentage of Enrollment Based Limit	Used to specify the percentage of enrollment based limit.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Percentage of Enrollment Based Limit</b> option from <b>ASL Limit (During Policy Period)</b> field.	
Policy Based Limit	Used to specify the policy based limit.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the <b>Policy Based Limit</b> option from the <b>ASL Limit (During Policy Period)</b> or <b>ASL Limit (During Settlement Period)</b> field.	

2. Enter the required details in the **Accumulation Parameters** section.

### 3. Click **Save**.

The accumulation parameters are defined in the aggregated stop-loss pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an aggregated stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 1985
How to edit an aggregated stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2007

## Defining Run-in Parameters in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule

### Prerequisites

To define run-in parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, you should have:

- Settlement days defined in the application.
- ASL limit during the policy period defined in the application.
- ASL limit during the settlement period defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define run-in parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Run-In Parameters** section is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Price Item** field of **Main** section while defining an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Run-In Parameters** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Run-In	Used to specify whether the run-in parameters of the run-in period of policy are to be considered or not in an aggregate stop-loss pricing	No
Accumulation Group ID	Displays blank column, accumulation group ID is generated when accumulation parameter values are defined for an aggregate stop-loss.	Not applicable
Incurred Start Date	Used to specify the incurred start date based on the run-in period of the policy in the aggregate stop-loss.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field.	
Incurred End Date	Used to specify the incurred end date based on the run-in period of the policy in the aggregate stop-loss.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Paid Start Date	Used to specify the paid start date based on the run-in period of the policy in the aggregate stop-loss.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field.	
Paid End Date	Used to specify the paid end date based on the run-in period of the policy in the aggregate stop-loss.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field.	
Run-In Maximum Limit	Used to specify the maximum limit of the run-in parameters.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when you select the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field.	

- Enter the required details in the **Run-In Parameters** section.
- Click **Save**.

The run-in parameters are defined in the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 1985
How to edit an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1993

## Defining Characteristics for an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**)


### Procedure


To define characteristics for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule:


- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 1985
How to edit the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1993

## Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer



### Prerequisites

To edit an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleASL** defined for aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
- SSL accumulation level defined in the application.
- Underwriter review defined in the application.

### Procedure

To edit an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view. The **Account, Person, or Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for aggregate stop-loss whose aggregate stop-loss pricing rule details you want to view. The **Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:
  - **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information.
  - **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
  - **Accumulation Parameters** – Used to define the accumulation parameters based on which you want to accumulate the aggregate stop-loss for the transactions which are processed in the run-in or active period of the policy.
  - **Run-In Parameters** – Used to define run-in parameters in the run-in period of the policy.
  - **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent customer information	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item defined for pricing.	Not applicable
Parent Customer’s SSL or ASL Pricing Rules	Indicates the pricing date range derived from the parent customer’s specific stop-loss or aggregate stop-loss pricing rules.	Not applicable
Pricing Start Date	Displays the pricing rule start date.	Not applicable
Pricing End Date	Displays the pricing rule end date.	Not applicable
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option used for defining the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for the price item.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Settlement Frequency	<p>Indicates the settlement frequency to determine the bill after date. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Immediately</b> – The bill after date is not calculated. The aggregate stop-loss billable charge is billed immediately in the next cycle.</li> <li>• <b>Manually (At Required Intervals)</b> – The bill after date specified in the <b>Manual Settlement Bill After Date</b> parameter while executing the <b>C1-BCASL</b> batch is stamped on the aggregate stop-loss billable charge.</li> <li>• <b>Monthly</b> – The bill after date specified in the <b>Manual Settlement Date</b> parameter while executing the <b>C1-BCASL</b> batch is stamped on the aggregate stop-loss billable charge.</li> <li>• <b>Yearly</b> – The bill after date in the aggregate stop-loss billable charge is set to the pricing end date.</li> </ul>	Yes
Underwriter Review	<p>Used to indicate whether the underwriter settlement review flag is on or off. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes

4. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
5. Modify the accumulation parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
6. Modify the run-in parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
7. Add, edit, or remove characteristics for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

The changes made to an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a parent customer are saved.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to define accumulation parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Accumulation Parameters in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1988
How to define run-in parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Run-in Parameters in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1991
How to define characteristics for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1992

Viewing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer

Procedure

To view an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the **Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type whose aggregate stop-loss pricing rule you want to view.  
The **Aggregate Stop-Loss** screen appears. It contains the following zone:
  - [Aggregate Stop-Loss](#) on page 2246
5. View the basic details of aggregate stop-loss pricing rule in the **Main** section.
6. View the accumulated parameters in the **Accumulation Parameters** section.
7. View the run-in parameters in the **Run-In Parameters** section.
8. View the characteristics defined for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule in the **Characteristics** section.



Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
<b>Pricing Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 2243

Deleting an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer

Procedure

To delete an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type whose aggregate stop-loss pricing rule you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
4. Click **OK**.  
The aggregate stop-loss pricing rule is deleted.



**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101


**Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group****Prerequisites**

To define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleASL** defined for aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Policy status defined in the application.
- Price item defined in the application.
- Rate option defined in the application.

**Procedure**

To define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab and then click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type to create the pricing rule.  <b>Note:</b> You can create an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule using the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> for aggregate stop-loss.	Yes
Pricing Group	Used to indicate the pricing group.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Aggregate stop-loss pricing rule cannot be created for <b>Runout</b> or <b>Post Runout</b> policy status where the policy run out end date is missing.	

4. Click **OK**.

The **Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
- **Accumulation Criteria** – Used to define the accumulation criteria in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
- **Pricing Information** – Used to define stop-loss eligibility for claim line items.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Once an option is selected for this field, the field appears disabled.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules	Used to indicate the pricing date range derived from the parent customer's specific stop-loss or aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled for selection when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected.	
Pricing Start Date	Displays the pricing rule start date.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> This field displays the <b>Policy Start Date</b> .	
Pricing End Date	Displays the pricing rule end date.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> This field displays the <b>Policy End Date</b> .	
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option to define the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Rate options in this field appears for selection, only when you select an option from the <b>Price Item</b> field.	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define accumulation criteria in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, if required.

**Note:**

The **Accumulation Criteria** section appears only when an option from **Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules** field is selected.

You can also define the **Accumulation Criteria** for each rule in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

- Define stop-loss eligibility for claim line items, if required.

**Note:**

The **Pricing Information** section appears only when an option from **Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules** field is selected.

You can also define the **Pricing Information** for each rule in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

- Define characteristics for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group is defined.

**Note:** A price list and price assignment is created, the price list created is assigned to the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99

For more information on...	See...
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define accumulation criteria in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Accumulation Criteria in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 2000
How to define stop-loss eligibility for claim line items	<a href="#">Defining Claim Pricing Rules in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 2002
How to define characteristics for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1992


## Defining Accumulation Criteria in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule







### Procedure


To define accumulation criteria in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule:


1. Ensure that the **Accumulation Criteria** section is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules** field of **Main** section while defining or editing an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.


The **Accumulation Criteria** section contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Accumulation Group ID	Displays blank field, accumulation group ID is generated when accumulation criteria values are defined for an aggregate stop-loss.	Not applicable
Price Item	Used to specify the price item information.  <b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Price Item Parameters	<p>This field contains the following columns:</p> <table> <tr> <th>Column Name</th><th>Column Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr> <tr> <td>Price Item Parameter</td><td> <p>Used to specify multiple parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> window appears.</p> </td><td>No</td></tr> <tr> <td>Parameter Value</td><td> <p>Used to specify the value of the parameter.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> On selecting the <b>Price Item Parameter</b>, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field, and on clicking the icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> window appears.</p> </td><td>No</td></tr> </table>	Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Price Item Parameter	<p>Used to specify multiple parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> window appears.</p>	No	Parameter Value	<p>Used to specify the value of the parameter.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> On selecting the <b>Price Item Parameter</b>, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field, and on clicking the icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> window appears.</p>	No	No
Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Price Item Parameter	<p>Used to specify multiple parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon that appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> window appears.</p>	No									
Parameter Value	<p>Used to specify the value of the parameter.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> On selecting the <b>Price Item Parameter</b>, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to this field, and on clicking the icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> window appears.</p>	No									

- Enter the required details in the **Accumulation Criteria** section.
- If you want to define more than one price item in the accumulation group, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price item from the accumulation group, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the price item.

- If you want to define more than one price item parameters for the price item, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price item parameter from the price item, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the price item parameter.

5. Click **Save**.

The accumulation criteria is defined in the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

6. You can define accumulation rules for each rule in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

**Note:** You can exclude a rule from the aggregate stop-loss pricing by selecting the **Exclude Rule** checkbox.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 1997
How to edit an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2007

**Defining Claim Pricing Rules in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule**

**Procedure**

To define claim pricing rules in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Pricing Information** section is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Parent Customer’s SSL or ASL Pricing Rules** field of **Main** section while defining or editing an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Pricing Information** section contains the following section:

- **Claim Pricing Rule** – Used to indicate the claim pricing rule. It contains the following sub-sections:
  - **Domestic Provider Claims** – Used to specify the domestic provider claim while calculating aggregate stop-loss.
  - **Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to define the markup or markdown values for billable charge line.
  - **Line Items** – Used to associate line items eligible for billing.

The **Claim Pricing Rule** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Claim Pricing Rule	Used to indicate the claim pricing rule effective for pricing.	No

On clicking the **Reapply Claim Template** button to the right side of the **Effective Claim Pricing Rule** field you can reapply for claim pricing rule.

**Note:** The **Reapply Claim Template** button appears only when you are editing an aggregate stop-loss.

The **Domestic Provider Claims** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Exclude ASL (Percentage)	Used to specify the domestic provider claim billable charge line excluding the aggregate stop-loss in percentage to create domestic provider claim calculation lines.	No

The **Markup or Markdown Values** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Strategy	Indicates the pricing strategy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Markdown</li> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• None</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Type	Indicates the markup or markdown value type for claim line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Amount</li> <li>• Percentage</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Amount	Displays the markup or markdown amount. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin-top: 5px;"> <b>Note:</b> This field displays amount when <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is <b>Flat Amount</b>. </div>	Not applicable

The **Line Items** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Displays the sequence number for the line items.	Not applicable
Line Item	Displays the billing line items.	Not applicable
Eligible for Specific Stop-Loss	Used to specify whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for aggregate stop-loss.	No
Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility	Displays whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for markup or markdown percentage. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eligible</li> <li>• Not Eligible</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Percentage	Displays the percentage for markup or markdown value.	Not applicable

2. Select the required details in the **Claim Pricing Rule** section, if required.
3. Enter the required details in the **Domestic Provider Claims** section, if required.
4. Select the required details in the **Line Items** section, if required.

5. Click **Save**.

The claim line items are defined in the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

6. You can define eligibility claim line items for each rule in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

**Note:** You can exclude a rule from the aggregate stop-loss pricing by selecting the **Exclude Rule** checkbox.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 1997
How to edit an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group	<a href="#">Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2007

**Defining an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group**


**Prerequisites**

To define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleASL** defined for aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Pricing group defined in the application.
- Policy status defined in the application.
- Price item defined in the application.
- Rate option defined in the application.

**Procedure**

To define an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.
 

The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab and then click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type to create the pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule using the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> for aggregate stop-loss.	
Pricing Group	Used to indicate the pricing group.	Yes
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Aggregate stop-loss pricing rule cannot be created for <b>Runout</b> or <b>Post Runout</b> policy status where the policy run out End Date is missing.	

4. Click **OK**.

The **Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group using pricing group.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the claim pricing rule.
- **Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to define the markup or markdown values for billable charge line for each rule.
- **Line Items** – Used to associate line items eligible for billing for each rule.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the claim pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Group	Displays the pricing group.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Once an option is selected for this field, the field appears disabled.	
Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules	Used to indicate the pricing date range derived from the parent customer's specific stop-loss or aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled for selection when an option from <b>Price Item</b> field is selected.	
Pricing Start Date	Displays the pricing rule start date.	Yes
Pricing End Date	Displays the pricing rule end date.	Yes
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option to define the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for the price item.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Rate options in this field appears for selection, only when you select an option from the <b>Price Item</b> field.	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define accumulation criteria for each rule in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** The **Accumulation Criteria** section appears in the rule section and the rule section appears only when an option from **Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules** field is selected.

- Define stop-loss eligibility for claim line items, if required.

**Note:** The **Pricing Information** section appears in the rule section and the rule section appears only when an option from **Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules** field is selected.

- Define characteristics for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group is defined.

**Note:** A price list and price assignment is created, the price list created is assigned to the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define Accumulation Criteria in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Accumulation Criteria in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 2000
How to define stop-loss eligibility for claim line items	<a href="#">Defining Claim Pricing Rules in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 2002

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1992

## Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group



### Prerequisites

To edit an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleASL** defined for aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

### Procedure

To edit an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group:

- Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view. The **Account, Person, or Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
- Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for aggregate stop-loss whose aggregate stop-loss pricing rule details you want to view.

The **Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.
- Main** – Displays the basic details about the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
- Accumulation Criteria** – Used to define the accumulation criteria in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
- Pricing Information** – Used to define stop-loss eligibility for claim line items.
- Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules	Indicates the pricing date range derived from the parent customer's specific stop-loss or aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.	Not applicable
Pricing Start Date	Displays the pricing rule start date.	Not applicable
Pricing End Date	Displays the pricing rule end date.	Not applicable
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option of the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for the price item.	Not applicable

4. Modify the accumulation criteria in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, if required.

**Note:** You can add, edit, or remove price item and its price item parameters in the accumulation criteria for an aggregate stop-loss, if required.

5. Modify the stop-loss eligibility for claim line items, if required.

**Note:** This section also consists of a button, **Reapply Claim Template**, on clicking the button a message occurs indicating that updating the claim template will reset all the default fields on the claim pricing rule.

6. Add, edit, or remove characteristics for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for a bill group are saved.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define accumulation criteria in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Accumulation Criteria in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 2000
How to define stop-loss eligibility for claim line items	<a href="#">Defining Claim Pricing Rules in an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 2002
How to define characteristics for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule</a> on page 1992

## Viewing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To view an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the

**Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose aggregate stop-loss pricing rule bill group details you want to view.

5. In the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the **Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type whose aggregate stop-loss pricing rule you want to view.

The **Aggregate Stop-Loss** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

- [Aggregate Stop-Loss](#) on page 2246

6. View the basic details of aggregate stop-loss pricing rule in the **Main** section.
7. View the accumulated criteria in the **Accumulation Criteria** section.
8. View the stop-loss eligibility for claim line items in the **Pricing Information** section.
9. View the characteristics defined for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule in the **Characteristics** section.



#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
<b>Pricing Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 2243

## Deleting an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To delete an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account, Person, or Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule type whose aggregate stop-loss pricing rule you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
4. Click **OK**.

The aggregate stop-loss pricing rule is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107

## Retention Type Claim Based Pricing

The ASO service provider provides claim administrative services and pays the claim amount on behalf of the employer. Different charges, such as administration fees, network fees, managed care fees, are typically charged as retention type.

claim based fees. The system enables you to charge a flat or percentage based retention type claim based fee. The rate schedule defined in the respective rate option indicates whether the retention type claim based fee is a flat fee or percentage based fee. The system considers the claim line items for calculating the percentage based retention type claim based fee only when the **Retention Claim Based Percentage Calculation** field is set to **Yes**.

You can define a retention type claim based pricing rule at the parent customer and bill group levels. The retention type claim based pricing rule at the bill group level takes precedence over the retention type claim based pricing rule at the parent customer level. You can define retention type claim based pricing rules for parent customers and bill groups from the **Customer 360° Information** screen. You can define a retention type claim based pricing rule using a retention type claim based pricing rule type. It is the retention type claim based pricing rule type which helps the system to determine:

- Business object using which the retention type claim based pricing rule should be created in the system.
- Algorithm which should be triggered while validating a transaction.

**Note:** An algorithm type for validating a transaction is not shipped from the product. You need to create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Algorithms which should be triggered while deriving account and price item for a transaction.

**Note:** You must create an algorithm using the **C1\_ACCPRIDRV** algorithm type and attach it to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event. The **C1\_BAFTDRV** algorithm sets the bill after date to the end date of the aggregation schedule which is specified in the respective rate option. For example, if the aggregation schedule is monthly, the bill after date is set to the last day of the month.

- Algorithm which should be triggered while determining the bill after date.

**Note:** You must create an algorithm using the **C1\_BAFTDRV** algorithm type and attach it to the **Bill After Date Determination** system event.

- Post-processing algorithm which should be triggered once the claim pricing rule is derived.

**Note:** A post-processing algorithm type is not shipped from the product. You need to create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Price items for which you can define retention type claim based pricing rules using the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Rate options that you can use while defining the pricing for a price item.
- Different type of account to which the price item should be billed based on the specified priority.
- Price item parameters which you can use while defining retention type claim based pricing rules.
- Additional information, such as:
  - Whether the price items included in the retention type claim based pricing rule type are used while accumulating specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss.
  - Identifiers which help to determine whether the claim transaction is received during the run-in period of the policy.
  - Indicates how the claim must be disposed. If the **Claim Disposition** field in the transaction is set to **Yes**, you must set the disposition mode to **Align Signage**. However, if the **Claim Disposition** field in the transaction is set to **No**, you must set the disposition mode to **Zero Out**.

**Note:** If the **Disposition Mode** field is set to **Align Signage**, the claim based fees is positive for positive claims and the claim based fees is negative for negative claims. However, if the **Disposition Mode** field is set to **Zero Out**, the claim based fees for the negative claims is set to zero (0).

Once a retention type claim based pricing rule type is defined, you can create retention type claim based pricing rules using the retention type claim based pricing rule type. While defining a retention type claim based pricing rule for a parent customer and bill group, you need to specify the following:

- Price item for which you want to define the pricing.
- Pricing date range during which the pricing is effective.
- Rate option which you want to use while defining the retention type claim based pricing.
- Price item parameters based on which you want to define the pricing.

**Note:** You can only use those price item parameters which are included in the respective retention type claim based pricing rule type.

- Flat or percentage based fee which you want to charge for a price item and price item parameters combination.

In addition, while defining a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group, you need to specify the status of the policy for which you want to define the retention type claim based pricing rule. You can also specify a pricing group while defining a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group. If you specify a pricing group while defining a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group, you will have to define the following details for each rule defined in the pricing group:

- Price item parameters based on which you want to define the pricing.

**Note:** You can only use those price item parameters which are included in the respective retention type claim based pricing rule type.

- Flat or percentage based fee which you want to charge for a price item and price item parameters combination.

The system enables you to define different flat or percentage based fee for different set of price item parameters combination. For example, you can define one flat fee for the claim transactions where health coverage is set to Dental and submission type is set to Paper and another flat fee for the claim transactions where health coverage is set to Dental and submission type is set to Paper.

Once a retention type claim based pricing rule is defined for a parent customer and bill group, the system creates one price assignment for each set of price item parameters combination, one price list, and one price list assignment.

## Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define a retention type claim based pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleRefTypeClaim** defined for retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for the retention type claim defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define a retention type claim based pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the retention type claim based pricing rule type	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a retention type claim based pricing rule type using the <b>Claim Pricing Rule Type</b> business object.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Pricing Rule Type** screen.

4. Select the **Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type** business object.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- **Algorithms** – Used to associate the algorithms with the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to add the price items for which you can define the retention type claim based pricing rules using the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to add the price item parameters based on which you want to define the price item pricing.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- **Claim Disposition Details** – Used to define the disposition details of the claims transaction.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to specify the retention type claim based pricing rule type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the retention type claim based pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify the additional information about the retention type claim based pricing rule type.	No
Pricing Rule Business Object	Used to indicate the retention type claim based pricing rule business object. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicate the retention type claim based pricing rule type business object using which you are defining the retention type claim based pricing rule type.	Not applicable



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Status	Used to indicate the status of the retention type claim based pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to indicate whether the pricing rule type is a primary pricing rule type.  <b>Note:</b> You must not select the <b>Primary</b> option while defining the retention type claim based pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the category to which the pricing rule type belongs. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Retention Type Claim Based</li> </ul>	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Ensure that **Primary** option is not selected when you are defining a retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Associate the following algorithms with the retention type claim based pricing rule type:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Pricing Rule Post Processing	C1-PRCRETPOS	C1-PRCRETPOS	Retention Claim Based - Post Processing
Transaction Validation	C1-RETCLMVAL	C1-RETCLMVAL	Retention Claim Based - Validation

- Define additional data for the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Add the required price items for retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Add price item parameters for the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Define characteristics for the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Add the claim disposition details for retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Click **Save**.

The retention type claim based pricing rule type is defined.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>

For more information on...	See...
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add claim templates in the claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Claim Templates in a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1913
How to add the claim-specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the Claim-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1914

## Adding Claim Based Disposition Details in a Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To add claim based disposition details in a pricing rule type, you should have:

- Pricing rule types defined in the application.
- Account and Price Item Derivation Algorithm defined in the application.
- Claim Disposition and Disposition Mode defined in the application.

### Procedure

To add claim based disposition details in a pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Claim Disposition Details** section is expanded when you are defining or editing for a primary pricing rule type.

The **Claim Disposition Details** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Claim Disposition	Used to specify the type of claim disposition.	No
Disposition Mode	Used to specify the mode of claim disposition.	No

2. Enter the required details in the **Claim Disposition Details** section.

#### Note:

If the **Claim Disposition** field in the transaction is set to **Yes**, you must set the disposition mode to **Align Signage**. However, if the **Claim Disposition** field in the transaction is set to **No**, you must set the disposition mode to **Zero Out**.

If the **Disposition Mode** field is set to **Align Signage**, the claim based fees is positive for positive claims and the claim based fees is negative for negative claims. However, if the **Disposition Mode** field is set to **Zero Out**, the claim based fees for the negative claims is set to zero (0).

3. If you want to define more than one claim disposition entry for the primary pricing rule type, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a claim disposition entry for the primary pricing rule type, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the related pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Defining a retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2011
How to define related pricing rule types for retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define transaction field mapping for retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms for retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define price items for retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define price item parameters for retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>

## Editing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To edit the retention type claim based pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleRefTypeClaim** defined for the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Business Object **C1-PrcRuleTypRetClaimBase** defined for the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Pricing rule type category for the retention type claim based pricing rule type defined in the application

### Procedure

To edit a retention type claim based pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for claim whose details you want to edit.

The **Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the retention type claim based pricing rule type.

- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- **Claim Templates** – Used to define the pricing rule type for retention type claim based template.
- **Claim-Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the retention type claim based specific additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No
Related Transaction Business Object	Used to indicate the retention type claim based pricing rule type business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Displays the retention type claim based pricing rule type business object for retention type claim.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the retention type claim based pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the retention type claim based pricing rule type is primary.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the retention type claim based pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>Claim</li> <li>Discounted Agreement</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone to edit the pricing rule type for retention type claim.

- Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove the related pricing rule types in the retention type claim based pricing rule type, if required.
- Modify the transaction field mapping in the retention type claim based pricing rule type, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove algorithms with the retention type claim based pricing rule type, if required.
- Modify the additional data for the retention type claim based pricing rule type, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove pricing items in the retention type claim based pricing rule type, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove price item parameters in the retention type claim based pricing rule type, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove characteristics for the retention type claim based pricing rule type, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove claim templates in the retention type claim based pricing rule type, if required.
- Modify the claim-specific data in the retention type claim based pricing rule type, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Deleting a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type


### Procedure

To delete a retention type claim based pricing rule type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.

- In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the retention type claim based pricing rule type that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the retention type claim based pricing rule type.

**Note:** You can delete a retention type claim based pricing rule type only when it is not yet used in the system.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a retention type claim based pricing rule type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

- Click **OK**.

The retention type claim based pricing rule type is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Viewing the Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type Details

#### Procedure

To view the details of a retention type claim based pricing rule type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.


- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.

- In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the

**Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the retention type claim based pricing rule type whose details you want to view.

The **Pricing Rule Type** zone appears.

- View the details of the retention type claim based pricing rule type in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer

### Prerequisites


To define a retention type claim based pricing rule for a parent customer, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for the pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleRetTypeClaim** defined for retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Algorithms **C1-APPTXNBAS**, **C1-PRCRETPOS**, and **C1-RETCLMVAL** defined for retention type claim based pricing rule type.

**Note:** A custom algorithm type must be created to validate a transaction.

### Procedure

To define a retention type claim based pricing rule for a parent customer:

1. Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° View** screen.  
The **Search Result** screen appears.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper-right corner of the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone.  
The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Indicates the parent customer for whom you want to create a discount arrangement pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type. The valid values is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
		<b>Note:</b> If the pricing rule type is not selected then the application displays an error message.

5. Select the required pricing rule type in the respective field.
6. Click **OK**.

The **Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:









- **Customer Information** - Displays information about the parent customer for whom you are defining the retention type claim based pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	Indicates the parent customer for whom you are defining the retention type claim based pricing rule.
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type using which you are defining the retention type claim based pricing rule.

- Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item for which you want to define the retention type claim based pricing. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Admin Fee</li> </ul>	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the start date from when the retention type claim based pricing will be effective for the price item.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The pricing start date cannot be later than the pricing end date.	<b>Note:</b> Pricing Start Date should be entered if Pricing End Date has been mentioned.
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the end date till when the retention type claim based pricing will be effective for the price item.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The pricing end date cannot be earlier than the pricing start date.	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Rate Option	<p>Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining the pricing for the price item. The valid value is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flat Dollar Per Claim - Agg Daily</li> </ul> <p>On selecting an option from the <b>Rate Option</b> field, following fields appear in a grid:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Price Item Parameter</td><td> <p>Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p> </div> </td><td>No</td></tr> <tr> <td>Parameter Value</td><td> <p>Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> field.</p> </div> </td><td>No</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you want to define more than one price item parameter to the price item in a retention type claim based pricing rule type, click the <b>Add</b>  icon.</p> <p>However, if you want to remove a price item parameter from the price item in a retention type claim based pricing rule type, click the <b>Delete</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p> </div>	Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Price Item Parameter	<p>Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p> </div>	No	Parameter Value	<p>Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> field.</p> </div>	No	Not applicable
Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Price Item Parameter	<p>Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p> </div>	No									
Parameter Value	<p>Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> field.</p> </div>	No									

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Fee	Used to specify the fee for the price item parameter.	

- **Characteristics** - Used to define the characteristics for the retention type claim based pricing rule for parent customer.

7. Add the required details in the main and characteristics section.

8. Click **Save**.

The retention type claim based pricing rule for a parent customer is defined.

**Note:**

If the approval workflow group setting is set as **Active** for the parent customer, for which the retention type claim based pricing rule is defined then an approval transaction is created for that particular parent customer. The retention type claim based pricing rule for a parent customer is defined, once the approval transaction is approved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a retention type claim based pricing rule.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</a> on page 2022

## Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule

**Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a retention type claim based pricing rule, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**)


**Procedure**


To define characteristics for a retention type claim based pricing rule:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a retention type claim based pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify from when the pricing rule will be effective.	Yes
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type for the retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for retention type claim based pricing rule.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the characteristic value for the retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for retention type claim based pricing rule.</p>

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for retention type claim based pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from retention type claim based pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the retention type claim based pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a retention type claim based pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2019

## Editing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer

### Prerequisites


To edit a retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for the pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleRetTypeClaim** defined for retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Algorithms **C1-APPTXNBAS**, **C1-PRCRETPOS**, and **C1-RETCLMVAL** defined for retention type claim based pricing rule type.


**Note:** A custom algorithm type must be created to validate a transaction.

### Procedure

To edit a retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer:

- Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
- Click the **Pricing** tab. It consists of the following zones:

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4.
- In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Edit** (  ) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the retention type claim based pricing rule, whose details you want to edit.










The **Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- Customer Information** - Displays information about the parent customer for whom the retention type claim based pricing rule is defined. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	Indicates the parent customer for whom the discount arrangement pricing rule is defined.
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type that is chosen to define the retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer.


- Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item for which you want to define the pricing.	Not applicable
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the start date from when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The pricing start date cannot be later than the pricing end date.	
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the end date till when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The pricing end date cannot be earlier than the pricing start date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Rate Option	<p>Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining the pricing for the price item. The valid value is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flat Dollar Per Claim - Agg Daily</li> </ul> <p>On clicking the <b>Add</b> () icon, the following fields appear in a grid:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Price Item Parameter</td><td> <p>Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p> </div> </td><td>No</td></tr> <tr> <td>Parameter Value</td><td> <p>Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> field.</p> </div> </td><td>No</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you want to define more than one price item parameter to the price item in a retention type claim based pricing rule type, click the <b>Add</b> () icon.</p> <p>However, if you want to remove a price item parameter from the price item in a retention type claim based pricing rule type, click the <b>Delete</b> () icon corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p> </div>	Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Price Item Parameter	<p>Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p> </div>	No	Parameter Value	<p>Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> field.</p> </div>	No	Not applicable
Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Price Item Parameter	<p>Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p> </div>	No									
Parameter Value	<p>Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> field.</p> </div>	No									

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Fee	Used to specify the fee for the price item parameter.	Not applicable

- **Characteristics** - Used to define the characteristics for the retention type claim based pricing rule for parent customer. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the effective date from when the characteristic is effective for the retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer.	No
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type for the retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer.	No
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the characteristic value for the retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer.  <b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b> (  ) icon appears corresponding to the Characteristic Value field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the Predefined Characteristic Search window appears. On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the Characteristic Value field.	No

**Note:**

If the approval workflow group setting is set as **Active** for the parent customer, for which the retention type claim based pricing rule is edited then an approval transaction is created for that particular parent customer. The retention type claim based pricing rule for a parent customer is defined, once the approval transaction is approved.



5. Click **Save**.

The retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer is edited.

## Deleting a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer

### Procedure

To delete a retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer:

1. Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab. It consists of the following zones:  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the retention type claim based pricing rule that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the retention type claim based pricing rule type of a parent customer.

5. Click **OK**.

The retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent customer	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101

## Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group

### Prerequisites



To define a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** and **C1-PricingRuleType**, and **C1-PricingGroup** defined for the pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PolicyBOStatusReason** defined for the policy status.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleRetTypeClaim** defined for retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Algorithms **C1-APPTXNBAS**, **C1-PRCRETPOS**, **C1-RETCLMVAL**, **C1-PRRTPREP**, **C1-PRCRLTY** defined for retention type claim based pricing rule type.

**Note:** A custom algorithm type must be created to validate a transaction.

### Procedure

To define a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group:

1. Search for the Administrative Services Only (ASO) person, whose person type is set to **Bill Group**, in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to view.  
The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone is displayed.
5. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.  
The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Indicates the name of the parent customer.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Type	Indicates the type of the parent customer.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> If you are defining the pricing rule type for the parent customer, then the person type will be <b>Parent Customer</b> .	
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type using which you want to create a retention type claim based pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Select the <b>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</b> option, as the pricing rule type.	<b>Note:</b> If the pricing rule type is not selected then the application displays an error message.
Pricing Group	Used to indicate the pricing group for the bill group.	No
	<b>Note:</b> Select the pricing group option only when the retention type claim based pricing rule has to be defined for a bill group using the pricing group.	
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for the bill group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> Policy Status is required once the Pricing Rule Type is selected.

6. Select the appropriate fields in the **Main** section.



7. Click **OK**.

The **Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item for which you want to define the pricing. The valid value are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Admin Fee</li> </ul>	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the start date from when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> Pricing Start Date should be entered if Pricing End Date has been mentioned.
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the end date till when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	No
Rate Option	Used to specify the rate option for the price item. The valid value are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flat Dollar Per Claim - Agg Daily</li> </ul>	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item Parameter	Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.  <b>Note:</b> The Search  icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameters</b> screen appears.	No
Parameter Value	Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.  <b>Note:</b> The Search  icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.	No
Fee	Used to specify the fee for the price item parameter.	No

- **Characteristics** - Used to define the characteristics for the retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group.

8. Add the required details in the main and characteristics section.

9. Click **Save**.

The retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group is defined.

**Note:**

If the approval workflow group setting is set as **Active** for the bill group, for which the retention type claim based pricing rule is defined then an approval transaction is created for that particular bill group. The retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group is defined, once the approval transaction is approved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a retention type claim based pricing rule.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</a> on page 2029

## Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a retention type claim based pricing rule, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**)


### Procedure


To define characteristics for a retention type claim based pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a retention type claim based pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify from when the pricing rule will be effective.	Yes
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eligible for Billing</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for retention type claim based pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for retention type claim based pricing rule.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for retention type claim based pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from retention type claim based pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the retention type claim based pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2027

## Editing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

### Prerequisites




To edit a retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for the pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleRetTypeClaim** defined for retention type claim based pricing rule type.
- Algorithms **C1-APPTXNBAS**, **C1-PRCRETPOS**, and **C1-RETCLMVAL** defined for retention type claim based pricing rule type.

**Note:** A custom algorithm type must be created to validate a transaction.

## Procedure

To edit a retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for a bill group in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to view.  
The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone appears.
5. Click the **Edit** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, corresponding to the **Pricing Rule Type** column, whose details you want to edit.



The **Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- **Customer Information** - Displays the basic information about the customer. It contains the following fields:


Column Name	Column Description
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group name.
Policy Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy is effective.
Policy End Date	Displays the date till when the policy is effective.
Policy Status	Displays the status of the policy.
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type that is chosen to define the retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group.

- **Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item for which you want to define the pricing.	Not applicable
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the start date from when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> Pricing Start Date should be entered if Pricing End Date has been mentioned.
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the end date till when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	No
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option for the price item.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item Parameter	Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The Search  icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameters</b> screen appears.	
Parameter Value	Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The Search  icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.	
Fee	Indicates the fee for the price item parameter.	Not applicable

- **Characteristics** - Used to define the characteristics for the retention type claim based pricing rule for parent customer. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the effective date from when the characteristic is effective for the retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group.	No
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type for the retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eligible for Billing</li> </ul>	No
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the characteristic value for the retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group.	No
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the Characteristic Value field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the Predefined Characteristic Search window appears. On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the Characteristic Value field.	

**6. Click Save.**

The **Approval Transaction Information** pop-up window appears with the Approval Transaction ID that is generated by the application.

**7. Click OK**

The retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group is edited.

**Note:**

If the approval workflow group setting is set as **Active** for the bill group, for which the retention type claim based pricing rule is defined then an approval transaction is created for that particular bill group. The retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group is defined, once the approval transaction is approved.




**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2019

## Deleting a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

**Procedure**

To delete a retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for a bill group in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon corresponding to the bill group whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast**  icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to delete.  
The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone appears.
5. Click the **Delete**  icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the **Pricing Group Information** column, whose bill group information you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group.

**Note:** You can delete a retention type claim based pricing rule only when it is not yet used in the system.

6. Click **OK**.  
The retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group is deleted.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a retention type claim based pricing rule.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</a> on page 2022

## Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group

**Procedure**

To define a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group using pricing group:

1. Search for the Administrative Services Only (ASO) person, whose person type is set to **Bill Group**, in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon corresponding to the bill group whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. Click the **Broadcast**  icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to view.

The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone is displayed.

5. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:



- **Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Select the <b>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</b> option, as the pricing rule type.	<b>Note:</b> If the pricing rule type is not selected then the application displays an error message.
Pricing Group	Used to indicate the pricing group for the bill group.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You must select a pricing group for the bill group on which the retention type claim based pricing rule is to be defined.	
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for the bill group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> Policy Status is required once the Pricing Rule Type is selected.

6. Select the appropriate fields in the **Main** section.
7. Click **OK**.

The **Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item for which you want to define the pricing. The valid value are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Admin Fee</li> </ul>	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the start date from when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> Pricing Start Date should be entered if Pricing End Date has been mentioned.
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the end date till when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	No
Rate Option	Used to specify the rate option for the price item. The valid value are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Dollar Per Claim - Agg Daily</li> </ul>	Yes
Pricing Group Rule Code	Displays the code of the pricing group rule.	Not applicable
Description	Displays the description of the pricing group rule.	Not applicable
Price Item Parameter	Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization. <div> <b>Note:</b> The Search  icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameters</b> screen appears. </div>	No
Parameter Value	Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization. <div> <b>Note:</b> The Search  icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears. </div>	No
Fee	Used to specify the fee for the price item parameter.	No

- **Characteristics** - Used to define the characteristics for the Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group.

8. Add the required details in the main and characteristics section.

9. Click **Save**.

The retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group is defined.

**Note:**

If the approval workflow group setting is set as **Active** for the bill group, for which the retention type claim based pricing rule is defined then an approval transaction is created for that particular bill group. The retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group is defined, once the approval transaction is approved.

Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group using pricing group.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group</a> on page 2036

Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group

Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**)


Procedure

To define characteristics for a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group:


- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group

The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify from when the pricing rule will be effective.	Yes
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eligible for Billing</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.



**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group.

**Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
How to define a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group.	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group</a> on page 2033

## Viewing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer

**Procedure**

To view a retention type claim based pricing rule for a parent customer:

1. Search for a parent customer whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

**View** () icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the **Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the retention type claim based pricing rule type whose retention type claim

The **Retention Type Claim Based** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

- [Retention Type Claim Based](#) on page 2258

5. View the basic details of a retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer in the **Main** section.
6. View the price item parameters of a retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer in the **Price Item Parameters** section.
7. View the characteristics of a retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer in the **Characteristics** section.

**Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99

## Viewing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

**Procedure**

To view a retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group:


1. Search for a bill group in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

**View** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. Click the **Broadcast**  icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to view.
5. In the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the **Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the retention type claim based pricing rule type whose details retention type claim based pricing rule type you want to view.

The **Retention Type Claim Based** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

- [Retention Type Claim Based](#) on page 2258
6. View the basic details of a retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group in the **Main** section.
7. View the price item parameters of a retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group in the **Price Item Parameters** section.
8. View the characteristics of a retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group in the **Characteristics** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99

# Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing

Some of the charges, such as stop-loss premium, administrative fees, etc. are typically calculated based on the number of enrollments. In addition, the ASL limit can also be based on the number of enrollments for the month. These charges can be calculated using the retention type enrollment based pricing rules.

You can define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule at the parent customer and bill group levels. The retention type enrollment based pricing rule at the bill group level takes precedence over the retention type enrollment based pricing rule at the parent customer level. You can define retention type enrollment based pricing rules for parent customers and bill groups from the **Customer 360° Information** screen. You can define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule using a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type. It is the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type which helps the system to determine:

- Business object using which the retention type enrollment based pricing rule should be created in the system.
- Whether it is the primary pricing rule type.

**Note:** You must select the **Primary** option while defining a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type. On selecting the **Primary** option, the **Related Pricing Rule Types** and **Transaction Field Mapping** sections appear in the **Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type** screen. At present, the system does not allow you to define any pricing rule type which inherits the attributes from the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.

- Transaction fields from where the data for retention type enrollment based processing should be retrieved.
- Algorithm which should be triggered while validating a transaction.

**Note:** An algorithm type for validating a transaction is not shipped from the product. You need to create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Algorithms which should be triggered while deriving bill group, account, and price item for a transaction.

**Note:** You must create an algorithm using the **C1\_TXNBGDRV** algorithm type and attach it to the **Bill Group Derivation** system event. Similarly, you must create an algorithm using the **C1\_ACCPRIDRV** algorithm type and attach it to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event.

- Algorithm which should be triggered while determining the bill after date.

**Note:** You must create an algorithm using the **C1\_BAFTDRV** algorithm type and attach it to the **Bill After Date Determination** system event. The **C1\_BAFTDRV** algorithm sets the bill after date to the end date of the aggregation schedule which is specified in the respective rate option. For example, if the aggregation schedule is monthly, the bill after date is set to the last day of the month.

- Post-processing algorithm which should be triggered once the retention type enrollment based pricing rule is derived.

**Note:** A post-processing algorithm type is not shipped from the product. You need to create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Price items for which you can define retention type enrollment based pricing rules using the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- Rate options that you can use while defining the pricing for a price item.
- Different type of account to which the price item should be billed based on the specified priority.
- Price item parameters which you can use while defining retention type enrollment based pricing rules.
- Additional information, such as:
  - Whether the price items included in the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type are used while accumulating specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss.
  - Retroactivity indicator which helps to determine whether the enrollment transaction is retro or non-retro transaction.

Once a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type is defined, you can create retention type enrollment based pricing rules using the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type. While defining a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a parent customer and bill group, you need to specify the following:

- Price item for which you want to define the pricing.
- Pricing date range during which the pricing is effective.
- Rate option which you want to use while defining the retention type enrollment based pricing.
- Whether you want to exempt the retrospective transactions while calculating retention type enrollment based fees.
- Price item parameters based on which you want to define the pricing.

**Note:** You can only use those price item parameters which are included in the respective retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.

- Price item parameters based on which you want to define the pricing.

**Note:** You can only use those price item parameters which are included in the respective retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.

- Flat fee which you want to charge for a price item and price item parameters combination.

The system enables you to define different flat fee for different set of price item parameters combination. For example, you can define one flat fee for the enrollment transactions where health coverage class is set to Medical and health coverage tier is set to Family and another flat fee for the enrollment transactions where health coverage class is set to Dental and health coverage tier is set to Employee.

Once a retention type enrollment based pricing rule is defined for a parent customer and bill group, the system creates one price assignment for each set of price item parameters combination, one price list, and one price list assignment.

## Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define a retention type retention based pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PrcRuleTypRetEnrollBased** defined for retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleRetTypeEnroll** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for the retention type enrollment defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define a retention type retention based pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.  <b>Note:</b> You can create a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type using the <b>Claim Pricing Rule Type</b> business object.	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Pricing Rule Type** screen.

4. Select the **Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type** business object.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the enrollment based parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the enrollment based pricing rule type.
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the enrollment based pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the enrollment based pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the enrollment based pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the enrollment based pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the enrollment based pricing rule type.

- **Enrollment-Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the enrollment specific additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to specify the pricing rule type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No
Related Transaction Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicate the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type business object for the claim.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.	No
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Claim</li> <li>• Discount Arrangement</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss</li> </ul>	Yes

6. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
7. Add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note: Related Pricing Rule Types** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

8. Define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note: Transaction Field Mapping** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

9. Associate algorithms with the enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
10. Define additional data for the enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
11. Add pricing items in the enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
12. Add price item parameters in the enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
13. Define characteristics for the enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
14. Add the enrollment-specific data, if required.
15. Click **Save**.

The retention type enrollment based pricing rule type is defined.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add claim templates in the claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Claim Templates in a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1913
How to add the claim-specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the Claim-Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1914

## **Adding the Enrollment Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type**

### **Prerequisites**

To add enrollment specific data in a pricing rule type, you should have:

- Pricing rule types defined in the application.
- Account and Price Item Derivation Algorithm defined in the application.
- Bill Group Derivation Algorithm defined in the application.

### **Procedure**

To add enrollment specific data in a pricing rule type in a pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Enrollment-Specific Additional Data** section is expanded when you are adding enrollment specific data for a primary pricing

The **Enrollment-Specific Additional Data** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Retroactivity Indicator Value	Used to specify that retroactivity indicator value should not be a part of enrollment based pricing rule type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> Set the retroactivity indicator value to <b>R</b> if the field should be excluded from enrollment based pricing rule types.	

- Enter the required details in the **Enrollment-Specific Additional Data** section.
- Click **Save**.

The enrollment-specific data has been added in the pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Defining a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2040

## Editing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To edit the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleRetTypeEnroll** defined for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- Business Object **C1-PrcRuleTypRetEnrollBased** defined for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- Pricing rule type category for retention type enrollment based pricing rule type defined in the application

### Procedure

To edit a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
- In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for claim whose details you want to edit.

The **Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** – Used to specify basic details about the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type.
- Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.

- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- **Claim Templates** – Used to define the pricing rule type for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- **Claim-Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the retention type enrollment based specific additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No
Related Transaction Business Object	Used to indicate the retention type claim based pricing rule type business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Displays the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type business object for retention type claim.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type is primary.	No



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>Claim</li> <li>Discounted Agreement</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can click the **Edit** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone to edit the pricing rule type for retention type enrollment.

5. Modify the details in the **Main** section, if required.
6. Add, edit, or remove the related pricing rule types in the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
7. Modify the transaction field mapping in the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
8. Add, edit, or remove algorithms with the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
9. Modify the additional data for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
10. Add, edit, or remove pricing items in the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
11. Add, edit, or remove price item parameters in the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
12. Add, edit, or remove characteristics for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
13. Modify the enrollment-specific data in the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type, if required.
14. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type are saved.

#### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Deleting a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type

### Procedure

To delete a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.

3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.
- The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type that you want to delete.
- A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.

**Note:** You can delete a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type only when it is not yet used in the system.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.
- The retention type enrollment based pricing rule type is deleted.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

**Viewing the Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.
- A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.
- A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.
- The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type whose details you want to view.
- The **Pricing Rule Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer

### Prerequisites


To define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a parent customer, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for the pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PrcRuleTypRetEnrollBased** defined for retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- Algorithms **C1-APPTXNBAS** defined for retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.

**Note:** A custom algorithm type must be created to validate a transaction.

### Procedure

To define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a parent customer:

1. Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° View** screen.  
The **Search Result** screen appears.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper-right corner of the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
		<b>Note:</b> If the pricing rule type is not selected then the application displays an error message.

5. Select the required pricing rule type in the respective field.
6. Click **OK**.







The **Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** - Displays information about the parent customer for whom you are defining the retention type enrollment based pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	Indicates the parent customer for whom you are defining the retention type enrollment based pricing rule.
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type using which you are defining the retention type enrollment based pricing rule.

- **Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	<p>Used to indicate the price item for which you want to define the pricing. The valid value are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Administrative Services Fees</li> <li>Administrative Services Fees (No Mandatory Parameters)</li> <li>AS_RET_ENRB</li> <li>Consultant Oversight Fees</li> </ul>	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the start date from when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The pricing start date cannot be later than the pricing end date.	<b>Note:</b> Pricing Start Date should be entered if Pricing End Date has been mentioned.
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the end date till when the retention type enrollment based pricing will be effective for the price item.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The pricing end date cannot be earlier than the pricing start date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Rate Option	<p>Used to specify the rate option for the price item. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flat Dollar Per Claim - Agg Daily</li> <li>Retention - Aggregate Monthly</li> <li>Claims</li> <li>Percentage of Claim - Agg Daily</li> <li>Flat Dollar Per Claim - Agg Daily</li> </ul> <p>On selecting an option from the <b>Rate Option</b> field, following fields appear in a grid:</p> <table> <tr> <th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr> <tr> <td>Price Item Parameter</td><td> <p>Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p> </div> </td><td>No</td></tr> <tr> <td>Parameter Value</td><td> <p>Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> field.</p> </div> </td><td>No</td></tr> </table>	Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Price Item Parameter	<p>Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p> </div>	No	Parameter Value	<p>Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> field.</p> </div>	No	Yes
Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Price Item Parameter	<p>Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p> </div>	No									
Parameter Value	<p>Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> field.</p> </div>	No									

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Exempt Retro Transactions	Used to indicate that retro transactions should not be considered for calculation purposes.	No
Fee	Used to specify the fee for the price item parameter.	No

- **Characteristics** - Used to define the characteristics for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a parent customer.

7. Add the required details in the main and characteristics section.

8. Click **Save**.

The retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a parent customer is defined.

**Note:**  
If the approval workflow group setting is set as **Active** for the parent customer, for whom the retention type enrollment based pricing rule is defined then an approval transaction is created for that particular parent customer. The retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a parent customer is defined, once the approval transaction is approved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a retention type enrollment based pricing rule.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</a> on page 2050

**Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule**

**Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a retention type enrollment based pricing rule, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**)


**Procedure**


To define characteristics for a retention type claim based pricing rule:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a retention type enrollment based pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify from when the pricing rule will be effective.	Yes
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Eligible for Billing</li></ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for retention type enrollment based pricing rule.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for retention type enrollment based pricing rule.</p>

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for retention type enrollment based pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from retention type enrollment based pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2047

## Editing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer

### Prerequisites


To edit a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for the pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PrcRuleTypRetEnrollBased** defined for retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- Algorithms **C1-APPTXNBAS** defined for retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.


**Note:** A custom algorithm type must be created to validate a transaction.

### Procedure

To edit a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer:

- Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
- Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.

4.



In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the retention type enrollment based pricing rule, whose details you want to edit.

The **Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- **Customer Information** - Displays the basic information about the customer. It contains the following fields:


Column Name	Column Description
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent name.
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type that is chosen to define the retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer.

- **Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item for which you want to define the pricing.	Not applicable
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the start date from when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> Pricing Start Date should be entered if Pricing End Date has been mentioned.
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the end date till when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	No
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option for the price item.	Not applicable
Exempt Retro Transactions	Used to indicate that retro transactions should not be considered for calculation purposes.	No
Price Item Parameter	Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization. <b>Note:</b> The Search  icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameters</b> screen appears.	No
Parameter Value	Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization. <b>Note:</b> The Search  icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.	No
Fee	Indicates the fee for the price item parameter.	Not applicable

- **Characteristics** - Used to define the characteristics for the Retention Type Enrollment based pricing rule for parent customer. It contains the following fields:



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the effective date from when the characteristic is effective for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer.	No
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eligible for Billing</li> </ul>	No
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the characteristic value for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer. <div> <b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the Characteristic Value field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the Predefined Characteristic Search window appears. On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the Characteristic Value field. </div>	No

5. Click **Save**.

**Note:**

If the approval workflow group setting is set as **Active** for the parent customer, for which the retention type enrollment based pricing rule is defined then an approval transaction is created for that particular parent customer. The retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a parent customer is defined, once the approval transaction is approved.



6. Click **OK**

The retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer is edited.

## Deleting a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer

### Procedure

To delete a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer:

- Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
- Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
- In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete**  icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the retention type enrollment based pricing rule that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the retention type enrollment based pricing rule.

**Note:** You can delete a retention type enrollment based pricing rule only when it is not yet used in the system.

5. Click **OK**.

The retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent customer	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101

**Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group**

**Prerequisites**


To define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** and **C1-PricingRuleType**, and **C1-PricingGroup** defined for the pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PolicyBOStatusReason** defined for the policy status.
- Business Object **C1-PrcRuleTypRetEnrollBased** defined for retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- Algorithms **C1-APPTXNBAS** defined for retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.

**Note:** A custom algorithm type must be created to validate a transaction.

**Procedure**

To define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group:

1. Search for the Administrative Services Only (ASO) person, whose person type is set to **Bill Group**, in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon corresponding to the person whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. Click the **Broadcast**  icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to view.

The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone is displayed.

5. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Indicates the name of the parent customer.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Type	Indicates the type of the parent customer.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> If you are defining the pricing rule type for the parent customer, then the person type will be <b>Parent Customer</b> .	
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type using which you want to create a retention type enrollment based pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Select the <b>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</b> option, as the pricing rule type.	<b>Note:</b> If the pricing rule type is not selected then the application displays an error message.
Pricing Group	Used to indicate the pricing group for the bill group.	No
	<b>Note:</b> Select the pricing group option only when the retention type enrollment based pricing rule has to be defined for a bill group using the pricing group.	
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for the bill group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> Policy Status is required once the Pricing Rule Type is selected.



6. Select the appropriate fields in the **Main** section.

7. Click **OK**.

The **Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item for which you want to define the pricing. The valid value are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Administrative Services Fees</li> <li>• Administrative Services Fees (No Mandatory Parameters)</li> <li>• AS_RET_ENRB</li> <li>• Consultant Oversight Fees</li> </ul>	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the start date from when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> Pricing Start Date should be entered if Pricing End Date has been mentioned.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the end date till when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	No
	<b>Note:</b> If the pricing end date is mentioned, once the price parameters and fees have been already entered, then the price parameter value and fee field values are reset.	
Rate Option	Used to specify the rate option for the price item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flat Dollar Per Claim - Agg Daily</li> <li>Retention - Aggregate Monthly</li> <li>Claims</li> <li>Percentage of Claim - Agg Daily</li> <li>Flat Dollar Per Claim - Agg Daily</li> </ul>	Yes
Exempt Retro Transactions	Used to indicate that retro transactions should not be considered for calculation purposes.	No
Pricing Group Rule Code	Displays the name of the pricing group rule code.	No
	<b>Note:</b> If a particular bill group has a single or multiple pricing group rule codes then all of those pricing group rule codes are shown along with their respective description.	
Price Item Parameter	Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The Search  icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameters</b> screen appears.	
Parameter Value	Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The Search  icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.	
Fee	Used to specify the fee for the price item parameter.	No

- **Characteristics** - Used to define the characteristics for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group.

8. Add the required details in the main and characteristics section.

9. Click **Save**.

The retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group is defined.

**Note:**

If the approval workflow group setting is set as **Active** for the bill group, for which the retention type enrollment based pricing rule is defined then an approval transaction is created for that particular bill group. The retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group is defined, once the approval transaction is approved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</a> on page 2057

## Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule

**Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a retention type enrollment based pricing rule, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**)


**Procedure**


To define characteristics for a retention type enrollment based pricing rule:

- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a retention type claim based pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify from when the pricing rule will be effective.	Yes
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eligible for Billing</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for retention type enrollment based pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for retention type enrollment based pricing rule.
	On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for retention type enrollment based pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from retention type enrollment based pricing rule, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2054

**Editing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group**

**Prerequisites**




To edit a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for the pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PrcRuleTypRetEnrollBased** defined for retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
- Algorithms **C1-APPTXNBAS** defined for retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.

**Note:** A custom algorithm type must be created to validate a transaction.

**Procedure**

To edit a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for a bill group in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to view.  
The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone appears.
5. Click the **Edit** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, corresponding to the **Pricing Rule Type** column, whose details you want to edit.



The **Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following zones:

- **Customer Information** - Displays the basic information about the customer. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group name.
Policy Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy is effective.
Policy End Date	Displays the date till when the policy is effective.

Column Name	Column Description
Policy Status	Displays the status of the policy.
Pricing Group	Displays the pricing group information.
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type that is chosen to define the retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group.

- **Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item for which you want to define the pricing.	Not applicable
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the start date from when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> Pricing Start Date should be entered if Pricing End Date has been mentioned.
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the end date till when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	No
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option for the price item.	Not applicable
Exempt Retro Transactions	Used to indicate that retro transactions should not be considered for calculation purposes.	No
Pricing Group Rule Code	Displays the name of the pricing group rule code. <b>Note:</b> If a particular bill group has a single or multiple pricing group rule codes then all of those pricing group rule codes are shown along with their respective description.	Not applicable
Price Item Parameter	Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization. <b>Note:</b> The Search  icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameters</b> screen appears.	No
Parameter Value	Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization. <b>Note:</b> The Search  icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.	No
Fee	Indicates the fee for the price item parameter.	Not applicable

**Note:** If you want to define more than one price item parameter information, click the **Add** (+) icon. However, if you want to remove more than one price item or price item bundle, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the price item parameter.

- **Characteristics** - Used to define the characteristics for the retention type claim based pricing rule for parent customer. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the effective date from when the characteristic is effective for the retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group.	No
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type for the retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eligible for Billing</li> </ul>	No
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the characteristic value for the retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group. <div> <p><b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to the Characteristic Value field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the Predefined Characteristic Search window appears. On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the Characteristic Value field.</p> </div>	No

**Note:** If you want to define more than one characteristic, click the **Add** (+) icon. However, if you want to remove more than one characteristic, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the characteristic.

6. Click **Save**.

**Note:**

If the approval workflow group setting is set as **Active** for the bill group, for which the retention type enrollment based pricing rule is defined then an approval transaction is created for that particular bill group. The retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group is defined, once the approval transaction is approved.

7. Click **OK**

The retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a bill group is edited.

## Deleting a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group


### Procedure

To delete a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for the Administrative Services Only (ASO) person, whose person type is set to **Bill Group**, in the **Customer 360° View** screen.




2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

**View** () icon corresponding to the person whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. Click the **Broadcast** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to view.

The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone appears.

5. Click the **Delete** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, corresponding to the **Pricing Rule Type** column, whose details you want to edit.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a bill group.

6. Click **OK**.

The retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a bill group is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2054


## Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group

### Procedure

To define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group using pricing group:

1. Search for the Administrative Services Only (ASO) person, whose person type is set to **Bill Group**, in the **Customer 360° View** screen.


2. In the **Search Results** section, click the

**View** () icon corresponding to the person whose pricing details you want to view..

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. Click the **Broadcast** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to view.

The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone is displayed.

5. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Select the <b>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</b> option, as the pricing rule type.	<b>Note:</b> If the pricing rule type is not selected then the application displays an error message.
Pricing Group	Used to indicate the pricing group for the bill group.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You must select a pricing group for the bill group on which a retention type enrollment based pricing rule is to be defined.	
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for the bill group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Post Runout</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> Policy Status is required once the Pricing Rule Type is selected.

6. Select the appropriate fields in the **Main** section.

7. Click **OK**.

The **Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** - This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item for which you want to define the pricing. The valid value are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Administrative Services Fees</li> <li>Administrative Services Fees (No Mandatory Parameters)</li> <li>AS_RET_ENRB</li> <li>Consultant Oversight Fees</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the start date from when the pricing will be effective for the price item.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> Pricing Start Date should be entered if Pricing End Date has been mentioned.
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the end date till when the pricing will be effective for the price item. <b>Note:</b> If the pricing end date is mentioned, once the price parameters and fees have been already entered, then the price parameter value and fee field values are reset.	No
Rate Option	Used to specify the rate option for the price item. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flat Dollar Per Claim - Agg Daily</li> <li>Retention - Aggregate Monthly</li> <li>Claims</li> <li>Percentage of Claim - Agg Daily</li> <li>Flat Dollar Per Claim - Agg Daily</li> </ul>	Yes
Exempt Retro Transactions	Used to indicate that retro transactions should not be considered for calculation purposes.	No
Pricing Group Rule Code	Displays the code of the pricing group rule.	Not applicable
Description	Displays the description of the pricing group rule.	Not applicable
Price Item Parameter	Used to specify multiple price item parameters based on which you want to determine the price item utilization. <b>Note:</b> The Search (🔍) icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameters</b> screen appears.	No
Parameter Value	Used to specify multiple price item parameter values based on which you want to determine the price item utilization. <b>Note:</b> The Search (🔍) icon does appear corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Parameter Value Search</b> screen appears.	No
Fee	Used to specify the fee for the price item parameter.	No

**Note:** If you want to define more than one price item parameter information, click the **Add** (+) icon. However, if you want to remove more than one price item or price item bundle, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the price item parameter.

- **Characteristics** - Used to define the characteristics for the Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group.
8. Add the required details in the main and characteristics section.
  9. Click **Save**.

The retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group is defined.

If the approval workflow group setting is set as **Active** for the bill group, for which the retention type enrollment based pricing rule is defined then an approval transaction is created for that particular bill group. The retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group is defined, once the approval transaction is approved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define characteristics for a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group using pricing group.	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group</a> on page 2064

**Defining Characteristics for a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group**

**Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**)


**Procedure**


To define characteristics for a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group:


1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a retention type claim based pricing rule for a bill group

The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify from when the pricing rule will be effective.	Yes
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Eligible for Billing</li></ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group.</p>

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group.


#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group.	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule for a Bill Group Using a Pricing Group</a> on page 2061

## Viewing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer

### Procedure

To view a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer:

- Search for a parent customer whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
- Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
- In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the **Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type whose retention type you want to view.  
The **Retention Type Enrollment Based** screen appears. It contains the following zone:
  - [Retention Type Enrollment Based](#) on page 2259
- View the basic details of a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer in the **Main** section.

6. View the price item parameters of a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer in the **Price Item Parameters** section.
7. View the characteristics of a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer in the **Characteristics** section.



#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99

## Viewing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To view a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for a bill group in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the  
**View** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the  
**Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose retention type enrollment based pricing rule bill group details you want to view.
5. In the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the  
**Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type whose retention type enrollment based pricing rule details you want to view.  
The **Retention Type Enrollment Based** screen appears. It contains the following zone:
  - [Retention Type Enrollment Based](#) on page 2259
6. View the basic details of a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a bill group in the **Main** section.
7. View the price item parameters of a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a bill group in the **Price Item Parameters** section.
8. View the characteristics of a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a bill group in the **Characteristics** section.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99

## Flat Fee Pricing

The Administrative Services Only (ASO) provider would like to charge one-time or recurring flat fee to the self-funded employer. Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to process and bill such one-time and recurring charges to the bill group. The system enables you to define one-time or recurring flat fee for a price item. You can define recurring flat fee based on bill period or frequency. The one-time flat fee, bill period based recurring flat fee, and frequency based

recurring flat fee can be defined using the respective flat fee pricing rules. You can only define one-time flat fee, bill period based recurring flat fee, and frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rules for a bill group.

You can define the flat fee pricing rules for bill groups from the **Customer 360° Information** screen. You can define a one-time flat fee, bill period based recurring flat fee, and frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule using the respective flat fee pricing rule type. It is the flat fee pricing rule type which helps the system to determine:

- Business object using which the flat fee pricing rule should be created in the system.

**Note:** You must not select the **Primary** option while defining a one-time flat fee, bill period based recurring flat fee, and frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type.

- Price items for which you can define the flat fee pricing rules.
- Rate options that you can use while defining the pricing for the price item.
- Different type of account to which a price item should be billed based on the specified priority.
- Rule type which indicates the rules that should be executed to determine whether the price item is eligible for billing.
- Additional flat fee specific data, such as:
  - Bill segment cancel reason which you want to use when the one-time or recurring flat fee bill segment is canceled due to change in the flat fee amount.
  - Whether the pricing rule type is defined for one-time flat fee or recurring flat fee.
  - Recurring method which indicates that the system should create recurring flat fee charge based on bill period or frequency. This information is required when you are defining a recurring flat fee pricing rule type.
  - Bill period that you can use while defining a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule. This information is required when you are defining a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type.

Once a one-time flat fee pricing rule type is defined, you can define one-time flat fee pricing rules using the one-time flat fee pricing rule type. While defining a one-time flat fee pricing rule for a bill group, you need to specify the following:

- The policy status in which the one-time flat fee pricing rule is applicable. Note that you cannot define a one-time flat fee pricing rule for the post runout period of the policy.
- Price item for which you want to create the one-time flat fee billable charge.
- Date which you want to specify as the start and end dates in the one-time flat fee billable charge.
- Billable charge line type using which you want to create the one-time flat fee billable charge.
- Bill after date which you want to stamp on the one-time flat fee billable charge.
- Flat fee amount for which you want to create the one-time flat fee billable charge.
- Override account when you want to create the one-time flat fee billable charge on a particular account. If you do not specify the bill to override account, the system will derive the account using the priority defined for the price item in the one-time flat fee pricing rule type.

Once a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type is defined, you can define bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rules using the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type. While defining a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group, you need to specify the following:

- The policy status in which the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule is applicable. Note that you cannot define a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule for the post runout period of the policy.
- Price item for which you want to create the bill period based recurring flat fee billable charge.
- Dates which you want to specify as the start and end dates in the bill period based recurring flat fee billable charge.
- Billable charge line type using which you want to create the bill period based recurring flat fee billable charge.
- Bill period using which the recurring bill segments should be created in the system.

- Flat fee amount for which you want to create the bill period based recurring flat fee billable charge.
- Override account when you want to create the bill period based recurring flat fee billable charge on a particular account. If you do not specify the bill to override account, the system will derive the account using the priority defined for the price item in the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type.

Once a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type is defined, you can define frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rules using the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type. While defining a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group, you need to specify the following:

- The policy status in which the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule is applicable. Note that you cannot define a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule for the post runout period of the policy.
- Price item for which you want to create the frequency based recurring flat fee billable charge.
- Dates which you want to specify as the start and end dates in the frequency based recurring flat fee billable charge.
- Billable charge line type using which you want to create the frequency based recurring flat fee billable charge.
- Frequency using which the recurring bill segments should be created in the system.
- Flat fee amount for which you want to create the frequency based recurring flat fee billable charge.
- Override account when you want to create the frequency based recurring flat fee billable charge on a particular account. If you do not specify the bill to override account, the system will derive the account using the priority defined for the price item in the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type.

Once a one-time flat fee, bill period based recurring flat fee, or frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule is defined for a bill group, the system creates the one-time or recurring flat fee billable charge, respectively. The system does not create any price assignment, price list, or price list assignment in case of flat fee pricing.

Defining a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type

Prerequisites

To define a one-time flat fee pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleTypeFlatFees** defined for pricing rule type.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleFlatFees** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for flat fees defined in the application.

Procedure

To define a one-time flat fee pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the pricing rule type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a one-time flat fee pricing rule type using the <b>Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</b> business object.	



**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Pricing Rule Type** screen.

4. Select the **Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type** business object.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the flat fee pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the pricing rule type.
- **Billable Charge Line Types** – Used to define the pricing rule type for billable charge line type.
- **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the flat fees specific for additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to specify the pricing rule type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No
Pricing Rule Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Flat Fee Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the pricing rule type business object for flat fees.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field is not enabled for selection if the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> is <b>Flat Fees</b> .	
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>• Flat Fees</li> </ul>	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:**

**Related Pricing Rule Types** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.  
This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

- Define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:**

**Transaction Field Mapping** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.  
This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

- Associate algorithms with the pricing rule type, if required.
- Define additional data for the pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:** This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

- Add pricing items in the pricing rule type, if required.
- Add price item parameters in the pricing rule type, if required.
- Define characteristics for the pricing rule type, if required.
- Define billable charge line types in the flat fees pricing rule type, if required.
- Add the flat fees - specific additional data in the pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:** This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Flat Fees Pricing Rule Type**.

- Click **Save**.

The one-time flat fee pricing rule type is defined.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add the one-time flat fee specific additional data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the One-Time Flat Fee Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2071

## Adding the One-Time Flat Fee Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type

### Procedure

To add the one-time flat fee specific data in a pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule type.

The **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Segment Cancel Reason	Used to indicate the bill segment cancel reason.	No
Recurring Fee	Used to specify whether the recurring flat fee or one-time flat fee is required.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field cannot be edited.	
Recurring Method	Used to indicate whether recurring bill segments must be created at the intervals defined in the bill period or at the set invoice frequency. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bill Period</li> <li>• Frequency</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the checkbox for <b>Recurring Fee</b> field. This field cannot be edited.	

2. Enter the required details in the **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** section.

### 3. Click **Save**.

The Flat Fees - Specific Additional data is added in the pricing rule type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a one-time flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2068
How to edit a one-time flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2072

## Editing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type


### Prerequisites

To edit a one-time flat fee pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleFlatFees** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for flat fees defined in the application.

### Procedure

To edit a one-time flat fee pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the Pricing rule type whose details you want to edit.

The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the flat fee pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the pricing rule type.
- **Billable Charge Line Types** – Used to define the pricing rule type for billable charge line type.
- **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the flat fees specific for additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No
Pricing Rule Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Flat Fee Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the pricing rule type business object for flat fees.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.  <div> <b>Note:</b> This field is not enabled for selection if the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> is <b>Flat Fees</b>. </div>	No
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>• Flat Fees</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of a one-time flat fees pricing rule type by clicking the **Edit** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
6. Define, edit or remove related pricing rule types from the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:**

**Related Pricing Rule Types** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

7. Modify the details of transaction field mapping, if required.

**Note:**

**Transaction Field Mapping** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

8. Define, edit or remove algorithms from the pricing rule type, if required.

9. Modify additional data for the pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:** This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

10. Define, edit or remove price items from the pricing rule type, if required.

11. Define, edit or remove price items from the pricing rule type, if required.

12. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the pricing rule type, if required.

13. Define, edit or remove billable charge line types for the flat fees pricing rule type, if required.

14. Modify flat fees - specific additional data in the pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:** This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Flat Fees Pricing Rule Type**.

15. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the one-time flat fees pricing rule type are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>

For more information on...	See...
How to add the one-time flat fee specific additional data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the One-Time Flat Fee Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2071

## Deleting a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type

### Procedure

To delete a one-time flat fee pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the one-time flat fee pricing rule type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the one-time flat fee pricing rule type.

**Note:** You can delete a one-time flat fee pricing rule type only when it is not yet used in the system.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a one-time flat fee pricing rule type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.  
The one-time flat fee pricing rule type is deleted.

### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Viewing the One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a one-time flat fee pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.

4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the one-time flat fee pricing rule type whose details you want to view. The **Pricing Rule Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the one-time flat fee pricing rule type in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

**Defining a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule for a Bill Group**


**Prerequisites**

To define a one-time flat fee pricing rule for a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleFlatFees** defined for one-time flat fee pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Policy status defined in the application.
- Price item defined in the application.
- Billable Charge Line Type defined in the application.

**Procedure**

To define a one-time flat fee pricing rule for a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View**  icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view. The **Account, Person, or Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab and then click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type to create the pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a one-time flat fee pricing rule using the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> for flat fees.	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Yes

4. Click **OK**.


The **Flat Fee Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:


- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the one-time flat fee pricing rule.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the one-time flat fee pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item.	Yes
Charge Date	Used to specify the flat fee charge date.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default this field displays the policy start date or policy runout start date.	
Billable Charge Line Type	Used to specify the billable charge line type.	No
	<b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears. On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.	
Bill After Date	Used to specify the bills after the specific date.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Fee	Used to specify the amount of flat fee.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the billable charge line type in the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.	
Bill To Account Override	Used to specify the account to which the bill is override.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears. On specifying the account, the description of the account appears corresponding to the <b>Bill To Account Override</b> field.	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define characteristics for a one-time flat fee pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The one-time flat fee pricing rule for a bill group is defined.

**Note:** A billable charge is created and assigned to the one-time flat fee pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define characteristics for a one-time flat fee pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule</a> on page 2078

## Defining Characteristics for a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a one-time flat fee pricing rule, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**)


### Procedure


To define characteristics for a one-time flat fee pricing rule:

- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the one-time flat fee pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the one-time flat fee pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.  <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule</b> .	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the one-time flat fee pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.  <b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the one-time flat fee pricing rule.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the one-time flat fee pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the one-time flat fee pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the one-time flat fee pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a one-time flat fee pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2076
How to edit the one-time flat fee pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2079

## Editing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group



### Prerequisites

To edit a one-time flat fee pricing rule of a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleFlatFees** defined for one-time flat fee pricing rule.

**Procedure**

To edit a one-time flat fee pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account, Person, or Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for one-time flat fee whose one-time flat fee pricing rule details you want to view.

The **Flat Fee Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.
- **Main** – Displays the basic details about the one-time flat fee pricing rule.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the one-time flat fee pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• In Force/Active</li><li>• Runout</li></ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item.	Not applicable
Charge Date	Used to specify the flat fee charge date.	Yes
Billable Charge Line Type	Displays the billable charge line type.	Not applicable
Bill After Date	Displays the bills after the specific date.	Not applicable
Fee	Used to specify the amount of flat fee.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you have added the billable charge line type in the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.	
Bill To Account Override	Displays the account to which the bill is override.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billable Charge Information	Displays the billable charge information.	Not applicable

4. Modify the basic details about the one-time flat fee pricing rule, if required.
5. Add, edit, or remove characteristics for a one-time flat fee pricing rule, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

**Note:** If **Fee** or **Charge Date** is modified then it checks whether bill segment is created, and if it is created then,

- If it is in frozen or pending cancelled status then,
  - Bill segment and billable charge is cancelled and new billable charge is created.
- If it is in any other status other than cancelled then,
  - Bill segment is deleted and existing billable charge billable charge is updated.

**Charge Date** is set to billable charge start date and end date.

When characteristics are updated, billable charge is updated with those characteristics.

The changes made to a one-time flat fee pricing rule for a bill group are saved.



### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define characteristics for a one-time flat fee pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule</a> on page 2078

## Viewing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To view a one-time flat fee pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for a bill group in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose one-time flat fee pricing rule bill group details you want to view.
5. In the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the **Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the one-time flat fee pricing rule type whose one-time flat fee pricing rule The **Flat Fee** screen appears. It contains the following zone:
  - [Flat Fee](#) on page 2260
6. View the basic details of one-time flat fee pricing rule in the **Main** section.

- View the characteristics defined for the one-time flat fee pricing rule in the **Characteristics** section.



#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
<b>Pricing Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 2243

## Deleting a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To delete a one-time flat fee pricing rule of a bill group:

- Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
- Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the one-time flat fee pricing rule type whose one-time flat fee pricing rule you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the one-time flat fee pricing rule.
- Click **OK**.

#### **Note:**

If flat fees is not linked to billable charge whose bill segment is in frozen or pending cancelled status then the pricing rule is not deleted.

If bill segment is either not created or is in any other status other than cancelled then delete bill segment, billable charge and pricing rule.

If bill segment is cancelled then billable charge is cancelled and pricing rule is deleted.

The one-time flat fee pricing rule is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107

## Defining a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleTypeFlatFees** defined for pricing rule type.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleFlatFees** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for flat fees defined in the application.

**Procedure**

To define a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the pricing rule type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type using the <b>Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</b> business object.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Pricing Rule Type** screen.

4. Select the **Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type** business object.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the flat fee pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the pricing rule type.
- **Billable Charge Line Types** – Used to define the pricing rule type for billable charge line type.
- **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the flat fees specific for additional data.
  - **Bill Periods** – Used to specify the bill periods for specifying intervals for creating recurring bill segments.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to specify the pricing rule type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No
Pricing Rule Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the pricing rule type business object for flat fees.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field is not enabled for selection if the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> is <b>Flat Fees</b> .	
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Claim</li> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>Flat Fees</li> </ul>	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:**

**Related Pricing Rule Types** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

- Define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type, if required.



**Note:**

**Transaction Field Mapping** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.  
This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

9. Associate algorithms with the pricing rule type, if required.
10. Define additional data for the pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:** This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

11. Add pricing items in the pricing rule type, if required.
12. Add price item parameters in the pricing rule type, if required.
13. Define characteristics for the pricing rule type, if required.
14. Define billable charge line types in the flat fees pricing rule type, if required.
15. Add the flat fees - specific additional data in the pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:**

This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Flat Fees Pricing Rule Type**.  
Add the bill periods in the pricing rule type, if required.

16. Click **Save**.

The bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type is defined.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add the recurring flat fee specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the Recurring Flat Fee Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2085

**Adding the Recurring Flat Fee Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type****Procedure**

To add the recurring flat fee specific data in a pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule type.

The **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Segment Cancel Reason	Used to indicate the bill segment cancel reason.	No
Recurring Fee	Used to specify whether the recurring flat fee or one-time flat fee is required.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field cannot be edited.	
Recurring Method	Used to indicate whether recurring bill segments must be created at the intervals defined in the bill period or at the invoice frequency. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bill Period</li> <li>• Frequency</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the checkbox for <b>Recurring Fee</b> field. This field cannot be edited.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are specifying whether the recurring flat fee is based on bill period or frequency.

The **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** section contains the following sub-section:

The **Bill Periods** sub-section contains the following column in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Period	Used to indicate the bill period that you want to use for specifying the intervals at which the recurring bill segments must be created.	Yes

2. Enter the required details in the **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** section.
3. Enter the details in the **Bill Periods** sub-section, if required.

**Note:** This sub-section appears only when you have selected **Bill Period** as **Recurring Method**.

4. Click **Save**.

The Flat Fees - Specific Additional data is added in the pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2082
How to define a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2097
How to edit a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2087

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2101

## Editing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type


### Prerequisites

To edit a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleFlatFees** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for flat fees defined in the application.

### Procedure

To edit a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the Pricing rule type whose details you want to edit.

The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the flat fee pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the pricing rule type.
- **Billable Charge Line Types** – Used to define the pricing rule type for billable charge line type.
- **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the flat fees specific for additional data.
  - **Bill Periods** – Used to specify the bill periods for specifying intervals for creating recurring bill segments.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No
Pricing Rule Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the pricing rule type business object for flat fees.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.  <div> <b>Note:</b> This field is not enabled for selection if the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> is <b>Flat Fees</b>. </div>	No
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Claim</li> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>Flat Fees</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of a bill period based recurring flat fees pricing rule type by clicking the **Edit** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
6. Define, edit or remove related pricing rule types from the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:**

**Related Pricing Rule Types** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

7. Modify the details of transaction field mapping, if required.

**Note:**

**Transaction Field Mapping** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

8. Define, edit or remove algorithms from the pricing rule type, if required.
9. Modify additional data for the pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:** This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

10. Define, edit or remove price items from the pricing rule type, if required.
11. Define, edit or remove price items from the pricing rule type, if required.
12. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the pricing rule type, if required.
13. Define, edit or remove billable charge line types for the flat fees pricing rule type, if required.
14. Modify flat fees - specific additional data in the pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:**

This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Flat Fees Pricing Rule Type**.

Define, edit or remove bill periods from the pricing rule type, if required.

15. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type are saved.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add the recurring flat fee specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the Recurring Flat Fee Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2085

## Deleting a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type

### Procedure

To delete a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type.

**Note:** You can delete a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type only when it is not yet used in the system.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.  
The bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type is deleted.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Viewing the Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type whose details you want to view.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** zone appears.

- View the details of the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Defining a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule for a Bill Group


### Prerequisites

To define a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleFlatFees** defined for bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Policy status defined in the application.
- Price item defined in the application.
- Billable Charge Line Type defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group:

- Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
- Click the **Pricing** tab and then click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type to create the pricing rule.  <b>Note:</b> You can create a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule using the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> for flat fees.	Yes
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Yes

#### 4. Click **OK**.


The **Flat Fee Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.


The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item.	Yes
Charge Start Date	Used to specify the flat fee charge start date.	Yes
Billable Charge Line Type	Used to specify the billable charge line type. <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p> </div>	No
Charge End Date	Used to specify the flat fee charge end date.	No
Bill Period	Used to indicate the bill period for flat fee.	Yes
Fee	Used to specify the amount of flat fee. <div> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the billable charge line type in the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p> </div>	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill To Account Override	Used to specify the account to which the bill is override.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears. On specifying the account, the description of the account appears corresponding to the <b>Bill To Account Override</b> field.	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define characteristics for a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group is defined.

**Note:** A billable charge is created and assigned to the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define characteristics for a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule</a> on page 2093

## Defining Characteristics for a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**)


### Procedure


To define characteristics for a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule:


- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2091
How to edit the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2094

## Editing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group



### Prerequisites

To edit a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule of a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleFlatFees** defined for bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.

### Procedure

To edit a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for bill period based recurring flat fee whose bill period based recurring flat fee.  
The **Flat Fee Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:
  - **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.
  - **Main** – Displays the basic details about the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
  - **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item.	Not applicable
Charge Start Date	Used to specify the flat fee charge start date.	Yes
Charge End Date	Used to specify the flat fee charge end date.	Yes
Billable Charge Line Type	Displays the billable charge line type.	Not applicable
Bill Period	Indicates the bill period for flat fee.	Not applicable
Fee	Used to specify the amount of flat fee.  <b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you have added the billable charge line type in the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.	Yes
Bill To Account Override	Displays the account to which the bill is override.	Not applicable
Billable Charge Information	Displays the billable charge information.	Not applicable

4. Modify the basic details about the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule, if required.

- Add, edit, or remove characteristics for a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

**Note:**

If **Fee** is modified then,

- The bill period based recurring flat fee is saved as a one time charge process.

If **Charge Start Date** is modified then it checks whether bill segment is already created for a period which is not available for the updated duration then,

- Bill segment is deleted and existing billable charge is updated.
- For recurring flat fee bill segments are not created or is in cancelled status.

**Note:** The modified charge start date should be a future date and not past date.

The changes made to a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group are saved.


**Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
Customer 360° Information – Pricing tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define characteristics for a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule</a> on page 2093

**Viewing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group**

**Procedure**

To view a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule of a bill group:

- Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.
 

The **Account, Person, or Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
- Click the **Pricing** tab.
- In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule bill group details you want to view.
- In the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the **Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type whose bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule details you want to view.
 

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

  - Flat Fee** – Displays the pricing rule bill period based recurring flat fee details for a bill group. It contains the following sections:
    - Main** – Displays the basic details about the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
    - Characteristics** – Displays the characteristics defined for the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
- View the basic details of bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule in the **Main** section.

- View the characteristics defined for the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule in the **Characteristics** section.



#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Customer 360° Information – Pricing tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
Pricing Rule screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 2243
Flat Fee zone	<a href="#">Flat Fee</a> on page 2260

## Deleting a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

### Procedure

To delete a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule of a bill group:

- Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
- Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type whose bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
- Click **OK**.  
The bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Customer 360° Information – Pricing tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107

## Defining a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleTypeFlatFees** defined for pricing rule type.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleFlatFees** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for flat fees defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Add** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the pricing rule type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type using the <b>Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</b> business object.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Pricing Rule Type** screen.

- Select the **Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type** business object.
- Click **OK**.

The **Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** – Used to specify basic details about the flat fee pricing rule type.
- Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the pricing rule type.
- Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the pricing rule type.
- Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the pricing rule type.
- Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the pricing rule type.
- Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the pricing rule type.
- Billable Charge Line Types** – Used to define the pricing rule type for billable charge line type.
- Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the flat fees specific for additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to specify the pricing rule type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>• Flat Fee Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the pricing rule type business object for flat fees.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.  <div> <b>Note:</b> This field is not enabled for selection if the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> is <b>Flat Fees</b>. </div>	No
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Claim</li> <li>• Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>• Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>• Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>• Flat Fees</li> </ul>	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:**

**Related Pricing Rule Types** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

- Define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:**

**Transaction Field Mapping** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

9. Associate algorithms with the pricing rule type, if required.
10. Define additional data for the pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:** This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

11. Add pricing items in the pricing rule type, if required.
12. Add price item parameters in the pricing rule type, if required.
13. Define characteristics for the pricing rule type, if required.
14. Define billable charge line types in the flat fees pricing rule type, if required.
15. Add the flat fees - specific additional data in the pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:**

This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Flat Fees Pricing Rule Type**.

16. Click **Save**.

The frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type is defined.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add the recurring flat fee specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the Recurring Flat Fee Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2085

## **Adding the Recurring Flat Fee Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type**

### **Procedure**

To add the recurring flat fee specific data in a pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule type.

The **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Segment Cancel Reason	Used to indicate the bill segment cancel reason.	No



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Recurring Fee	Used to specify whether the recurring flat fee or one-time flat fee is required.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field cannot be edited.	
Recurring Method	Used to indicate whether recurring bill segments must be created at the intervals defined in the bill period or at the invoice frequency. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bill Period</li> <li>• Frequency</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the checkbox for <b>Recurring Fee</b> field.  This field cannot be edited.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are specifying whether the recurring flat fee is based on bill period or frequency.

The **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** section contains the following sub-section:

The **Bill Periods** sub-section contains the following column in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Period	Used to indicate the bill period that you want to use for specifying the intervals at which the recurring bill segments must be created.	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** section.
- Enter the details in the **Bill Periods** sub-section, if required.

**Note:** This sub-section appears only when you have selected **Bill Period** as **Recurring Method**.

- Click **Save**.

The Flat Fees - Specific Additional data is added in the pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2082
How to define a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2097
How to edit a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2087
How to edit a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2101

## Editing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To edit a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleFlatFees** defined for pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type category for flat fees defined in the application.

### **Procedure**

To edit a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.


A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.

4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Edit**  icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the Pricing rule type whose details you want to edit.

The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the flat fee pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to define the pricing rule types which are related to the parent pricing rule type.
- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to specify the transaction related data mapped to the pricing rule type
- **Algorithms** – Used to define the algorithms used for the pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to define the price items assigned to the pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to define the price item parameters in the pricing rule type.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the pricing rule type.
- **Billable Charge Line Types** – Used to define the pricing rule type for billable charge line type.
- **Flat Fees - Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify the flat fees specific for additional data.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the pricing rule type.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Business Object	Used to indicate the pricing rule business object. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the pricing rule type business object for flat fees.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to select the checkbox if the pricing rule type is primary.  <b>Note:</b> This field is not enabled for selection if the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> is <b>Flat Fees</b> .	No
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the pricing rule type category for the pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Claim</li> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>Flat Fees</li> </ul>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of a frequency based recurring flat fees pricing rule type by clicking the **Edit** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
6. Define, edit or remove related pricing rule types from the primary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:**

**Related Pricing Rule Types** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.

This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

7. Modify the details of transaction field mapping, if required.

**Note:**

**Transaction Field Mapping** section appears only when the pricing rule type is primary.  
This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

8. Define, edit or remove algorithms from the pricing rule type, if required.
9. Modify additional data for the pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:** This section does not appear when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

10. Define, edit or remove price items from the pricing rule type, if required.
11. Define, edit or remove price items from the pricing rule type, if required.
12. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the pricing rule type, if required.
13. Define, edit or remove billable charge line types for the flat fees pricing rule type, if required.
14. Modify flat fees - specific additional data in the pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:** This section appears only when the **Business Object** is **Flat Fees Pricing Rule Type**.

15. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add the recurring flat fee specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding the Recurring Flat Fee Specific Data in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2085

**Deleting a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type****Procedure**

To delete a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type.

**Note:** You can delete a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type only when it is not yet used in the system.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.  
The frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Viewing the Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast** (📡) icon corresponding to the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type whose details you want to view.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Defining a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule for a Bill Group


### Prerequisites

To define a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRule** defined for pricing rule.
- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleFlatFees** defined for frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
- Pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Policy status defined in the application.
- Price item defined in the application.
- Billable Charge Line Type defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab and then click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Displays the person name.	Not applicable
Person Type	Displays the person type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type to create the pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule using the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> for flat fees.	
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Yes

4. Click **OK**.


The **Flat Fee Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:


- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.
- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item.	Yes
Charge Start Date	Used to specify the flat fee charge start date.	Yes
Billable Charge Line Type	Used to specify the billable charge line type. <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p> </div>	No
Charge End Date	Used to specify the flat fee charge end date.	No
Frequency	Used to indicate the frequency for flat fee.	Yes
Fee	Used to specify the amount of flat fee. <div> <p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you select the billable charge line type in the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p> </div>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill To Account Override	Used to specify the account to which the bill is override.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon, the <b>Account Search</b> window appears. On specifying the account, the description of the account appears corresponding to the <b>Bill To Account Override</b> field.	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define characteristics for a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group is defined.

**Note:** A billable charge is created and assigned to the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define characteristics for a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule</a> on page 2108

## Defining Characteristics for a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**)

### Procedure


To define characteristics for a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule:


- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.



Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2106
How to edit the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2109

## Editing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group



### Prerequisites

To edit a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule of a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleFlatFees** defined for frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.

### Procedure

To edit a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone click the **Edit** () icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type for frequency based recurring flat fee whose frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.  
The **Flat Fee Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:
  - **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.
  - **Main** – Displays the basic details about the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
  - **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.

The **Customer Information** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.	Not applicable
Policy Start Date	Displays the policy start date.	Not applicable
Policy End Date	Displays the policy end date.	Not applicable
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.	Not applicable

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item.	Not applicable
Charge Start Date	Used to specify the flat fee charge start date.	Yes
Charge End Date	Used to specify the flat fee charge end date.	Yes
Billable Charge Line Type	Displays the billable charge line type.	Not applicable
Frequency	Indicates the frequency for flat fee.	Not applicable
Fee	Used to specify the amount of flat fee.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when you have added the billable charge line type in the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.	
Bill To Account Override	Displays the account to which the bill is override.	Not applicable
Billable Charge Information	Displays the billable charge information.	Not applicable

4. Modify the basic details about the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule, if required.

5. Add, edit, or remove characteristics for a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule, if required.
6. Click **Save**.

**Note:**

If **Fee** is modified then,

- The frequency based recurring flat fee is saved as a one time charge process.

If **Charge Start Date** is modified then it checks whether bill segment is already created for a period which is not available for the updated duration then,

- Bill segment is deleted and existing billable charge is updated.
- For recurring flat fee bill segments are not created or is in cancelled status.

**Note:** The modified charge start date should be a future date and not past date.

The changes made to a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule for a bill group are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
How to define characteristics for a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule</a> on page 2108

## Viewing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group

**Procedure**

To view a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for a bill group in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the


**View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. In the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, click the

**Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule bill group details you want to view.

5. In the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the link in the **Pricing Rule Information** column corresponding to the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type whose frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule details you want to view.

The **Flat Fee** screen appears. It contains the following zone:

- [Flat Fee](#) on page 2260



6. View the basic details of frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule in the **Main** section.
7. View the characteristics defined for the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule in the **Characteristics** section.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107
<b>Pricing Rule</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule (Used for Viewing)</a> on page 2243

**Deleting a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group****Procedure**

To delete a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the account, person, or policy whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Account**, **Person**, or **Policy** tab in the **Customer 360° Information** screen appears.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab, in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type whose frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
4. Click **OK**.  
The frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules</a> on page 107

**Ancillary Pricing**

The Administrative Services Only (ASO) provider may process some adhoc charges with respect to preventive care, vaccination, diagnostic, and so on. These adhoc charges may also occur due to some corrections in the claim transactions which are already billed to the customer. Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to process and bill these ancillary transactions to the self-funded employer.

The system enables you to create an ancillary charge in either of the following ways:

- Create a pass through charge without markup or markdown (i.e. flat charge).
- Create a pass through charge with a flat or percentage based markup or markdown.
- Create a rate based charge using the rate defined in the ancillary pricing and the service quantity specified in the ancillary transaction. You can also apply markup or markdown to a rate based charge.

You can use any custom mechanism or the file upload utility in ORMB to upload the ancillary transactions. The pricing for the ancillary transactions can be defined using the ancillary pricing rules. You can define an ancillary pricing rule at the parent customer and bill group levels. The ancillary pricing rule at the bill group level takes precedence over the ancillary pricing rule at the parent customer level. You can define the ancillary pricing rules for parent customers and

bill groups from the **Customer 360° Information** screen. You can define an ancillary pricing rule using an ancillary pricing rule type. It is the ancillary pricing rule type which helps the system to determine:

- Business object using which the ancillary pricing rule should be created in the system.
- Whether it is the primary pricing rule type from where the related pricing rule types will inherit the transaction field mapping details.

**Note:** You must select the **Primary** option while defining an ancillary pricing rule type. On selecting the **Primary** option, the **Related Pricing Rule Types** and **Transaction Field Mapping** sections appear in the **Ancillary Pricing Rule Type** screen.

- Rule type which indicates the rules that should be executed to determine whether the related pricing rule type is eligible for deriving the transaction legs.
- Transaction fields from where the data from the ancillary transaction should be stored in the respective fields (for example, the data from the **UDF\_CHAR\_1** transaction field must be stored in the **Parameter 1** field which will be used for deriving the bill group and pricing).
- Algorithm which should be triggered for validating an ancillary transaction.

**Note:** An algorithm type for validating an ancillary transaction is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Algorithm which should be triggered for deriving the bill group, parent customer, and policy for an ancillary transaction.

**Note:** You must create an algorithm using the **C1\_TXNBGDRV** algorithm type and attach it to the **Bill Group Derivation** system event.

- Algorithm which should be triggered for deriving the account and price item for an ancillary transaction.

**Note:** You must create an algorithm using the **C1\_ACCPRIDRV** algorithm type and attach it to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event.

- Algorithm which should be triggered for determining the bill after date.

**Note:** You must create an algorithm using the **C1\_BAFTDRV** algorithm type and attach it to the **Bill After Date Determination** system event.

- Pricing rule post-processing algorithm which should be triggered once the effective ancillary pricing rule is derived.

**Note:** A pricing rule post-processing algorithm type is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Additional generic information, such as:
  - Whether the price items included in the ancillary pricing rule type are eligible for specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss.
  - Whether the price items included in the ancillary pricing rule type are eligible for level funding.
  - Whether the ancillary charges should be written off when the bill is generated in the post runout period of the policy. In this case, a write-off adjustment is created against the respective bill segment during the post bill completion. The write-off adjustment is created using the post runout write-off adjustment type which is specified in the ancillary pricing rule type.
  - Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the price item should be considered for billing.
  - Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the related pricing rule type should be considered for deriving the transaction legs.

- Value which the output parameter in the rule should return when the price item and related pricing rule type in the ancillary pricing rule type should be considered for processing.
- Price items for which you can define ancillary pricing rules using the ancillary pricing rule type.
- Rate options that you can use while defining the pricing for the ancillary price items.
- Different type of account to which a price item should be billed based on the specified priority.
- Rule type which indicates the rules that should be executed to determine whether the price item is eligible for billing.
- Price item parameters based on which you want to define the price item pricing. Two price item parameters are mandatory in the ancillary pricing rule type – one which stores the billable charge line type from the ancillary transaction and another which stores the pricing arrangement from the ancillary transaction. The following pricing arrangements are supported in the ancillary pricing rule:
  - Pass Through Charge Without Markup and Markdown
  - Pass Through Charge With Markup and Markdown
  - Rate Based Charge Without Markup and Markdown
  - Rate Based Charge With Markup and Markdown

**Note:** The price item parameters (for example, BCHGLINETYPE and PRICINGARRANGEMENT) which you include in the ancillary pricing rule type must be defined in the **Billable Charge Line Type Parameter** and **Pricing Arrangement Parameter** option types of the **C1-ASOBLNG** feature configuration, respectively.

- Additional ancillary-specific information, such as:
  - Identifiers which help to determine whether the ancillary transaction is eligible for billing for not.
  - Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the markup or markdown calculation line is eligible for billing.
  - Billable charge line type using which you want to create billable charges for markup and markdown.
  - Rule type which indicates the rules which should be executed to determine whether the markup or markdown calculation line is eligible for billing.
  - How the system should interpret the value stored in the pricing arrangement price item parameter (i.e. whether the value means the ancillary charge should be a pass through charge without markup or markdown, pass through charge with markup or markdown, or rate based charge with or without markup or markdown). Accordingly, the system will search for the pricing in the effective ancillary pricing rule where:
    - Billable charge line type matches the one specified in the ancillary transaction
    - Line defined for the billable charge line type has the pricing arrangement as mentioned in the ancillary transaction
  - Line item which indicates the SQI using which the ancillary charge should be created. You need to specify the line item for each pricing arrangement which is defined in the ancillary pricing rule type.

Once an ancillary pricing rule type is defined, you can create ancillary pricing rules using the ancillary pricing rule type. While defining an ancillary pricing rule for a parent customer and bill group, you need to specify the following:

- Price item for which you want to define the pricing.
- Pricing date range during which the pricing is effective.
- Rate option which you want to use while defining the ancillary pricing.
- Whether you want to define the pricing for a pass through charge without markup or markdown. If you select the **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** option, you cannot define the pricing for a pass through charge with markup or markdown and the pricing for rate based charge with or without markup or markdown in the ancillary pricing rule. However, if the **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** option is not selected,

you can define pricing for different billable charge line types which can be with markup or markdown or which can be rate based with or without markup or markdown. In addition, if the **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** option is not selected, by default, the system will define the pricing for a pass through charge without markup or markdown. Depending on the billable charge line type and pricing arrangement information in the ancillary transaction, the system will accordingly fetch the appropriate pricing for billing the ancillary charge. For example, if the ancillary transaction contains BCLT1 as the billable charge line type and PASSMK as the pricing arrangement and the effective ancillary pricing rule contains the following pricing:

Ancillary Pricing	Billable Charge Line Type	Pricing Arrangement	Rate	Pricing Strategy	Markup Amount	Markdown Amount
AP1	BCLT0	Pass Through with Markup or Markdown	-	Markup	\$10	-
AP2	BCLT1	Pass Through with Markup or Markdown	-	Markdown	-	\$5
AP3	BCLT2	Rate Based without Markup or Markdown	\$5	-	-	-
AP4	BCLT3	Rate Based with Markup or Markdown	\$5	Markup	\$10	-
AP5	BCLT4	Rate Based with Markup or Markdown	\$5	Markdown	-	\$5
AP6	-	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	-	-	-	-

In this case, the system will use the AP2 pricing defined in the ancillary pricing rule. The system will markdown the SQI with the specified amount (i.e. \$5).

- Whether the billable charge line type is eligible for billing or not. Accordingly, the system will create billable charge for the ancillary transaction.

In addition, while defining an ancillary pricing rule for a bill group, you need to indicate the policy status for which the ancillary pricing rule is applicable. You can also specify a pricing group while defining an ancillary pricing rule for a bill group. Once an ancillary pricing rule is created, the system creates multiple price assignments in a price list and assigns the price list to the bill group.

## Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define an ancillary pricing rule type, you should have:

- Ancillary pricing rule type business object defined in the application.
- Ancillary pricing rule business object defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define an ancillary pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Business Object	<p>Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create an ancillary pricing rule type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Claim Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must select the <b>Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Type Business Object</b> list while defining an ancillary pricing rule type.</p>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Pricing Rule Type** screen.

- Select the **Ancillary Pricing Rule Type** option from the **Pricing Rule Type Business Object** list.
- Click **OK**.

The **Ancillary Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** – Used to specify the basic details about the ancillary pricing rule type.
- Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to indicate the non-primary pricing rule types which should inherit the transaction field mapping details from the ancillary pricing rule type. You can add a pricing rule type which belongs to the following category:
  - Specific Stop Loss
  - Aggregate Stop Loss
  - Level Funding

**Note:** You can use any of the above specified pricing rule types as the related pricing rule type in an ancillary pricing rule type.

- Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to map the transaction fields in a ancillary transaction to the appropriate fields in the ancillary pricing rule type. This helps the system to determine the field where the data from the transaction field must be stored. This data is then used in the system for various reasons, such as for deriving a bill group and pricing, deriving an effective related pricing rule, and so on.

**Note:** The **Billing Eligibility Identifier** field is required when you are defining the **Transaction Field Mapping** for an ancillary pricing rule type.

- Algorithms** – Used to associate the algorithms with an ancillary pricing rule type.
- Additional Data** – Used to specify additional information about the ancillary pricing rule type.



- **Price Items** – Used to add the price items for which you can define the ancillary pricing rules using the ancillary pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to add the price item parameters based on which you want to define the price item pricing.

**Note:** There are two price item parameters that are mandatory in the ancillary pricing rule type:

- A price item which stores the billable charge line type from the ancillary transaction.
- A price item which stores the pricing arrangement from the ancillary transaction.

- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule type.
- **Ancillary-Specific Additional Data** – Used to define the ancillary-specific additional data in an ancillary pricing rule type.

**Note:** Following fields are required when you are defining the **Ancillary-Specific Additional Data** for the ancillary pricing rule type.

- **Billing Eligibility Identifier Value**
- **Billing Non-Eligibility Identifier Value**

- **Pricing Arrangements** – Used to define the following pricing arrangements that are used while defining an ancillary pricing rule type.
  - **Pass Through (Markup or Markdown Optional)**
  - **Pass Through Without Markup or Markdown**
  - **Rate Based (Markup or Markdown Optional)**

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to specify the ancillary pricing rule type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the ancillary pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the ancillary pricing rule type.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Business Object	<p>Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the ancillary pricing rule. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Ancillary Pricing Rule</li> <li>Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</li> <li>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</li> <li>Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must select the <b>Ancillary Pricing Rule</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Business Object</b> list while defining an ancillary pricing rule type.</p>	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which you are defining the ancillary pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the ancillary pricing rule type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to indicate whether the ancillary pricing rule type is a primary pricing rule type.	No
Pricing Rule Type Category	<p>Used to indicate the category to which the ancillary pricing rule type belongs. The valid value are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>Ancillary</li> <li>Claim</li> <li>Discount Arrangement</li> <li>Flat Fees</li> <li>Level Funded</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must select the <b>Ancillary</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> list while defining an ancillary pricing rule type.</p>	Yes

6. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.

7. Select the **Ancillary Pricing Rule** option from the **Pricing Rule Business Object** list.
8. Select the **Primary** option in the **Main** section.

The **Related Pricing Rule Types** and **Transaction Field Mapping** sections appear.

9. Select the **Ancillary** option from the **Pricing Rule Type Category** list.
10. Add the related pricing rule types in the ancillary pricing rule type, if required.
11. Map the transaction fields of an ancillary transaction to the appropriate fields in the ancillary pricing rule type.
12. Associate the following algorithms with the ancillary pricing rule type:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Bill Group Derivation	C1_TXNBGDRV	C1_TXNBGDRV	Derive Bill Group
Account and Price Item Derivation	C1_ACCPRIDRV	C1_ACCPRIDRV	Account and Price Item Derivation
Bill After Date Determination	C1_BAFTDRV	C1_BAFTDRV	Bill After Date Determination

13. Define additional data for an ancillary pricing rule type, if required.
14. Add the required price items for which you can define ancillary pricing rules using the ancillary pricing rule type.
15. Add the price item parameters based on which you want to define the ancillary pricing, if required.
16. Define the characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule type, if required.
17. Define the required ancillary-specific additional data in the ancillary pricing rule type.
18. Define the pricing arrangements for an ancillary pricing rule type, if required.
19. Click **Save**.

The ancillary pricing rule type is defined.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to add the related pricing rule types in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Related Pricing Rule Types in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define the transaction field mapping in the primary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Transaction Field Mapping in a Primary Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to associate algorithms with the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define additional data for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add pricing items in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding Price Items in a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to add price item parameters in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2206
How to define characteristics for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define ancillary-specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining the Ancillary-Specific Data in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2136

For more information on...	See...
How to define pricing arrangements for the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Pricing Arrangements in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2138

## Adding a Related Pricing Rule Type in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type

The **Administrative Services Only (ASO)** feature is designed in such a way that all non-primary pricing rule types should inherit the transaction field mapping details from a primary pricing rule type. These non-primary pricing rule types are added in a primary pricing rule type as the related pricing rule types.

### Prerequisites

To add related pricing rule types in an ancillary pricing rule type, you should have:

- Aggregate Stop Loss pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Specific Stop Loss pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Level Funding pricing rule type defined in the application.
- Rule types defined in the application (where the rule type usage is set to **Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility**)

### Procedure



To add related pricing rule type in an ancillary pricing rule type:


1. Ensure that the **Related Pricing Rule Types** section is expanded when you are defining or editing an ancillary pricing rule type.


**Note:** The **Related Pricing Rule Types** section appears only when the **Primary** option is selected in the **Main** section.

The **Related Pricing Rule Types** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to specify the order in which the related pricing rule type should be invoked.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are adding a related pricing rule type in the ancillary pricing rule type.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the non-primary pricing rule type which should inherit the transaction field mapping details from the claim pricing rule type. You can add a non-primary pricing rule type of the following categories in the claim pricing rule type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>2. Discount Arrangement</li> <li>3. Specific Stop-Loss</li> <li>4. Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>5. Level Funding</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the corresponding <b>Sequence</b> field is specified for the related pricing rule type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> We recommend you to add the required related pricing rule types in the above specified sequence. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> field.. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> field, the <b>Pricing Rule Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the pricing rule type, the description of the pricing rule type appears corresponding to the <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> field.</p>	
Eligibility Rule Type	Used to specify the rule type which indicates the rules that should be executed to determine whether the related pricing rule type is eligible for deriving the transaction legs.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b> The list includes only those rule types where the rule type usage is set to <b>Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility</b>.</p>	

2. Enter the required details in the **Related Pricing Rule Types** section.
3. If you want to define more than one related pricing rule type for the ancillary pricing rule type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a related pricing rule type from the ancillary pricing rule type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the related pricing rule type.

4. Click **Save**.

The related pricing rule type is added in the ancillary pricing rule type.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2115

For more information on...	See...
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2140

## Mapping the Transaction Field in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To map the transaction field mapping for an ancillary pricing rule type, you should have:

- Transaction fields defined in the application

### Procedure

To map the transaction field mapping for an ancillary pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Transaction Field Mapping** section is expanded when you are defining an ancillary pricing rule type.

#### Note:

This section appears only when you have chosen the **Primary** option from the **Main** section.

The **Transaction Field Mapping** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Source System	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates the external system from where the ancillary transaction is received. The information stored in this field is then used for deriving the bill group, parent customer, and policy for the ancillary transaction.	Yes
Parameter 1	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	Yes
Parameter 2	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to derive the bill group using multiple employee attributes.
Parameter 3	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to derive the bill group using multiple employee attributes.
Parameter 4	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates the employee attribute based on which you want to derive the bill group.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to derive the bill group using multiple employee attributes.


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Incurred Date	Used to map to a transaction field which contains the date when the healthcare service was availed by the employee.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to fetch an effective specific stop-loss or aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for the claim transaction.
Paid Date	Used to map to a transaction field which contains the date when the claim amount was paid to the employee.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to fetch an effective specific stop-loss or aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for the ancillary transaction.
Source of Funds	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates the source of funding. At present, this field is not used in the system.	No
Composite	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates whether the employee is covered under the composite insurance.	No
Claim Disposition	Used to map to a transaction field which helps to determine how the claim based fees should be charged for the positive and negative claim transactions.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while calculating the retention type claim based fees for the claim transaction.
Provider's Tax Identification Number	Used to map to a transaction field which states the healthcare provider's identification number. The information stored in this field is then used to determine whether the healthcare provider is excluded from the specific stop-loss coverage.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while calculating specific stop-loss for the ancillary transaction.
Member ID	Used to map to a transaction field which states the member's identification number. The information stored in this field is then used to determine whether the member is excluded from the specific stop-loss coverage.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while calculating specific stop-loss for the ancillary transaction.
Main Subscriber ID	Used to map to a transaction field which states the main subscriber's identification number. The information stored in this field is then used to determine whether the main subscriber is excluded from the specific stop-loss coverage.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while calculating specific stop-loss for the ancillary transaction.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Run-in Identifier	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates whether the ancillary transaction is a run-in ancillary transaction.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while defining a ancillary pricing rule type.
Runout Identifier	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates whether the ancillary transaction is a runout ancillary transaction. At present, this field is not used in the system.	No
Third Party Identifier	Used to specify the third party identifier to determine that the ancillary transaction is received from an external source system while defining an ancillary pricing rule type.	No
Coverage Start Date	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates the coverage start date. The information stored in this field is then used to fetch an effective retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a non-retroactive enrollment transaction.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while defining a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
Coverage End Date	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates the coverage end date. The information stored in this field is then used to fetch an effective retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a retroactive enrollment transaction.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while defining a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
Retroactivity Indicator	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates whether the enrollment transaction is a retroactive enrollment transaction.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while defining a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type.
Network Indicator	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates whether the service provider is in network or out of network.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while defining a discount arrangement pricing rule.
Covered Charge Amount	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates the amount which is covered for the employee in the policy.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while calculating the discount using a discount guarantee pricing rule.



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Discount Savings Amount	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates the amount which is offered as the discount to the service provider.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required while calculating the discount using a discount guarantee or discount share pricing rule.
Accumulation Only Identifier	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates that the ancillary transaction should only be used for calculating charges for the accumulated products, such as Specific Stop-Loss, Aggregate Stop-Loss, and so on. This means that the system should not derive the ancillary transaction leg. Instead, it should only derive the specific stop-loss or aggregate stop loss transaction legs for the ancillary transaction.	No
Billing Eligibility Identifier	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates whether the ancillary transaction is eligible for billing.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required while defining an ancillary pricing rule type.
Transaction Upload Date	Used to map to a transaction field which indicates the date when the transaction was uploaded in the external system. The system does not derive the discount transaction leg when the transaction upload date is later than the settlement date.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required while calculating the discount using a discount guarantee or discount share pricing rule.

**Note:**

The **Search**  icon appears corresponding to each field. On clicking the **Search** icon, the **Transaction Field Search** window appears.

On specifying the transaction field, the description of the transaction field appears corresponding to the respective field.

- Enter the required details in the **Transaction Field Mapping** section.
- Click **Save**.

The transaction fields are mapped to the appropriate fields in the claim pricing rule type.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2115
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2140

## Associating an Algorithm with an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To associate algorithms with an ancillary pricing rule type, you should have:

- Algorithms defined using the **C1\_TXNBGDRV**, **C1\_ACCPRIDRV**, and **C1\_BAFTDRV** algorithm types.



### Procedure

To associate an algorithm with an ancillary pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Algorithms** section is expanded when you are defining or editing an ancillary pricing rule type.

The **Algorithms** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
System Event	<p>Used to indicate the system event when you want to invoke the algorithm. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Account and Price Item Derivation</b> - Used to derive the account and price item for the ancillary transaction.</li> <li>• <b>Accumulation Billable Charge Post Proc</b> - Used to introduce a custom logic after creating discount share or discount guarantee billable charges. This algorithm is invoked in the <b>C1-BCDA (Create Billable Charge for Discount)</b> batch.</li> <li>• <b>Accumulation Billable Charge Pre Proc</b> - Used to introduce a custom logic before creating discount share or discount guarantee billable charges. This algorithm is invoked in the <b>C1-BCDA (Create Billable Charge for Discount)</b> batch.</li> <li>• <b>Accumulation Post Processing</b> - Used to introduce a custom logic after accumulating the discount share or discount guarantee amount. This algorithm is invoked in the <b>C1-ACDA (Accumulate Discount Arrangement)</b> batch.</li> <li>• <b>Accumulation Pre Processing</b> - Used to introduce a custom logic before accumulating the discount share or discount guarantee amount. This algorithm is invoked in the <b>C1-ACDA (Accumulate Discount Arrangement)</b> batch.</li> <li>• <b>Bill After Date Determination</b> - Used to determine the bill after date for the ancillary transaction.</li> <li>• <b>Bill Group Derivation</b> - Used to derive the bill group, parent customer, and policy for the ancillary transaction.</li> <li>• <b>Pricing Rule Post Processing</b> - Used to introduce a custom logic once the effective ancillary pricing rule is derived for the ancillary transaction.</li> <li>• <b>Transaction Validation</b> - Used to introduce a custom validation for the ancillary transaction.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must specify <b>Account and Price Item Derivation</b> and <b>Bill Group Derivation</b> algorithms when you are associating the algorithms with an ancillary pricing rule type.</p>	<p>Yes</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the ancillary pricing rule type.</p>
Sequence	Used to specify the order in which the algorithms with the same system event should be executed.	<p>Yes (Conditional)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the ancillary pricing rule type.</p>

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Algorithm	Used to indicate the algorithm that you want to execute on the system event.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>Once you select the system event, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the algorithm, the description of the algorithm appears corresponding to the <b>Algorithm</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the ancillary pricing rule type.</p>

2. Enter the required details in the **Algorithms** section:

System Event	Algorithm	Mandatory (Yes or No)	For more information, see...
Account and Price Item Derivation	C1_ACCPRIDRV	Yes	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Claim Pricing Rule Type Category)</a> on page 2290
Accumulation Billable Charge Post Proc	- <b>Note:</b> An accumulation billable charge post processing algorithm type is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.	No	-
Accumulation Billable Charge Pre Proc	- <b>Note:</b> An accumulation billable charge pre processing algorithm type is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.	No	-
Accumulation Post Processing	- <b>Note:</b> An accumulation post processing algorithm type is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.	No	-
Accumulation Pre Processing	- <b>Note:</b> A accumulation pre processing algorithm type is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.	No	-
Bill After Date Determination	C1_BAFTDRV	Yes	<a href="#">Bill After Date Determination</a> on page 2339

System Event	Algorithm	Mandatory (Yes or No)	For more information, see...
Bill Group Derivation	C1_TXNBGDRV	Yes	<a href="#">Bill Group Derivation</a> on page 2287
Pricing Rule Post Processing	- <b>Note:</b> A pricing rule post processing algorithm type is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.	No	-
Transaction Validation	- <b>Note:</b> An algorithm type for validating an ancillary transaction is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.	No	-

3. If you want to associate more than one algorithm with an ancillary pricing rule type, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove an algorithm from the ancillary pricing rule type, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the algorithm.

4. Click **Save**.

The algorithms are associated with an ancillary pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2115
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2140

## Defining Additional Data in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type

### Procedure




To define additional data in an ancillary pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Additional Data** section is expanded when you are defining or editing an ancillary pricing rule type.

**Note:** This section does not appear only when the **Pricing Rule Type Category** is **Flat Fees**.

The **Additional Data** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Eligible for Specific Stop-Loss	<p>Used to indicate whether the price items included in the ancillary pricing rule type are eligible for specific stop-loss. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears only when the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> is either <b>Ancillary, Claim, Retention Type Claim Based</b>, or <b>Retention Type Enrollment Based</b>.</p> <p>If you do not specify the value for this field, by default, it is set to <b>No</b></p> </div>	No
Eligible for Level Funding	<p>Used to indicate whether the price items included in the ancillary pricing rule type are eligible for level funding. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
Run-in Identifier Value	Used to specify the identifier value to determine whether the ancillary transaction is received during the run-in period of the policy.	No
Third Party Identifier Value	Used to specify the identifier value to determine whether the ancillary transaction is received from an external source system.	No
Accumulation Only Identifier Value	Used to specify the value when received in an ancillary transaction indicates that the ancillary transaction should only be considered for calculating specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss. In such case, a transaction leg is not derived for the ancillary transaction.	No
Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout	<p>Used to indicate whether the pricing rule is eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout or not. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul> <p>For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Write-Off Charges during Post Runout</a> section.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>No</b>.</p> </div>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Post Runout Write-Off Adjustment Type	Used to specify the adjustment type using which the post runout write-off adjustments must be created.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears when the <b>Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Post Runout Write-Off Adjustment Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the adjustment type, the description of the adjustment type appears corresponding to the <b>Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>.</p>
Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field	Used to indicate the transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the price item should be considered for billing. For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Price Item Eligibility</a> on page 2280.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears when the <b>Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the field name, the description of the field name appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field</b>.</p>	
Rule Based Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility Field	Used to indicate the transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the related pricing rule type should be considered for deriving the transaction legs. For more information, refer to <a href="#">Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility</a> on page 2278.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility Field</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the field, the description of the field appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Based Eligibility Value	Used to specify the value which the output parameter in the rule should return when the price item and related pricing rule type in the ancillary pricing rule type should be considered for processing.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when a value is specified in the <b>Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field</b> or <b>Rule Based Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility Field</b> field.

2. Enter the required details in the **Additional Data** section.

3. Click **Save**.

The additional data is defined in the ancillary pricing rule type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2115
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2140

## Adding a Price Item in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To add a price item in an ancillary pricing rule type, you should have:

- Price item defined in the application
- Rate options defined in the **Rate Option (C1-ExtLookRetTypeRateOpt)** extendable lookup
- Values defined for the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic type
- The **C1INVTYP** characteristic type set in the **Invoice Type Characteristic Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration
- Rule types defined in the application (where the rule type usage is set to **Price Item Eligibility**)






### Procedure







To add a price item in an ancillary pricing rule type:


1. Ensure that the **Price Items** section is expanded when you are defining or editing an ancillary pricing rule type.


The **Price Items** section contains the following fields in a grid:



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item that you want to include in an ancillary pricing rule type.	Yes (Conditional)						
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> () icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Items</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are adding a rate option and bill to account in the discount arrangement pricing rule type.</p>						
Rate Option	<p>Used to indicate one or more rate options which are valid for a price item.</p> <p>On clicking the <b>Add</b> () icon, the following field appears in a grid:</p> <table><tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr><tr><td>Rate Option</td><td>Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining pricing for the price item.</td><td>Yes</td></tr></table> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you want to define more than one rate option to the price item in an ancillary pricing rule type, click the <b>Add</b> () icon.</p> <p>However, if you want to remove a price item from an ancillary pricing rule type, click the <b>Delete</b> () icon corresponding to the <b>Rate Option</b> field.</p>	Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining pricing for the price item.	Yes	Not applicable
Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining pricing for the price item.	Yes						

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Bill To Account	<p>Used to indicate a order in which the account should be considered while deriving a transaction leg.</p> <p>On clicking the <b>Add</b> () icon, the following fields appear in a grid:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Priority</td><td>Used to specify the order in which the invoice type is considered for a price item.</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>Invoice Type</td><td> <p>Used to indicate the type which is considered for billing. For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Bill Group's Account</a> on page 47 section.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Invoice Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Invoice Type Search</b> window appears.</p> </div> </td><td>Yes</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you want to define more than one invoice type to the price item in an ancillary pricing rule type, click the <b>Add</b> () icon.</p> <p>However, if you want to remove a invoice type from the price item in an ancillary pricing rule type, click the <b>Delete</b> () icon corresponding to the <b>Priority</b> field.</p>	Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Used to specify the order in which the invoice type is considered for a price item.	Yes	Invoice Type	<p>Used to indicate the type which is considered for billing. For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Bill Group's Account</a> on page 47 section.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Invoice Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Invoice Type Search</b> window appears.</p> </div>	Yes	Not applicable
Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Priority	Used to specify the order in which the invoice type is considered for a price item.	Yes									
Invoice Type	<p>Used to indicate the type which is considered for billing. For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Bill Group's Account</a> on page 47 section.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Invoice Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Invoice Type Search</b> window appears.</p> </div>	Yes									
Eligibility Rule Type	Used to indicate the rule type which indicates the rules that should be executed to determine whether the price item is eligible for billing.	No									

- Enter the required details in the **Price Items** section.
- If you want to define more than one price item for an ancillary pricing rule type, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price item from an ancillary pricing rule type, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the price item.

- Click **Save**.

The price items are added for an ancillary pricing rule type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2115

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2140

## Adding a Price Item Parameter in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To add a price item parameter in an ancillary pricing rule type, you should have:





- Parameters defined in the application where parameter usage is set to **Price Item**.
- Parameters associated with the price item.
- Billable Charge Line Type Parameter** and **Pricing Arrangement Parameter** defined in the application.
- Billable Charge Line Type Parameter** and **Pricing Arrangement Parameter** set as option types in the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration.
- Transaction fields defined in the application.

### Procedure

To add a price item parameter in an ancillary pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Price Item Parameters** section is expanded when you are defining or editing an ancillary pricing rule type.

The **Price Item Parameters** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item Parameter	Used to specify the parameter which you can use while defining an ancillary pricing for the price item.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field, the <b>Parameter Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the parameter, the description of the price item parameter appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required while adding a price item parameter in an ancillary pricing rule type.
Transaction Field	Used to map to a transaction field which contains the parameter value.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Transaction Field</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Transaction Field</b> field, the <b>Transaction Field Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the transaction field, the description of the transaction field appears corresponding to the <b>Transaction Field</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required while adding a price item parameter in an ancillary pricing rule type.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Eligible for Specific Stop-Loss	Used to indicate whether the price item parameter can be used while defining the accumulation criteria in the specific stop-loss or aggregate stop-loss pricing rules at the bill group level.	No
Eligible for Level Funding	Used to indicate whether the price item parameter can be used while defining the accumulation criteria in the level-funding pricing rules at the bill group level.	No

- Enter the required details in the **Price Item Parameters** section.
- If you want to add more than one price item parameter for an ancillary pricing rule type, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price item parameter from an ancillary pricing rule type, click the **Delete** (🗑) icon corresponding to the price item parameter.

- Click **Save**.  
The price item parameter is added in the ancillary pricing rule type.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2115
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2140

**Defining the Ancillary-Specific Data in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type**



**Procedure**

To add the ancillary-specific additional data in an ancillary pricing rule type:

- Ensure that the **Ancillary-Specific Additional Data** section is expanded when you are defining or editing an ancillary pricing rule type.

The **Ancillary-Specific Additional Data** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billing Eligibility Identifier Value	Used to specify the billing eligibility identifiers which help to determine whether the ancillary transaction is eligible for billing.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are adding the ancillary-specific additional data.
Billing Non-Eligibility Identifier Value	Used to specify the billing non-eligibility identifiers which help to determine whether the ancillary transaction is eligible for billing.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are adding the ancillary-specific additional data.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field	Used to specify the transaction field that you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the markup or markdown calculation line is eligible for billing.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when the Markup or Markdown Eligibility Rule Type field is specified.
	<b>Note:</b>  On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field</b> field, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the field, the description of the field appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field</b> field.	
Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type	Used to specify the billable charge line type using which you want to create the billable charges for markup and markdown.	No
	<b>Note:</b>  On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.	
Markup or Markdown Eligibility Rule Type	Used to specify the markup or markdown eligibility rule type for the ancillary pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rule 1</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Markup or Markdown Eligibility Rule Type</b> list includes only those rule-types where the rule type eligibility is <b>ASO Billing Mark Up / Down Eligibility</b> .	

2. Enter the required details in the **Ancillary-Specific Additional Data** section.
3. Define pricing arrangements for ancillary-specific data in the **Ancillary-Specific Additional Data** section.
4. Click **Save**.

The ancillary-specific additional data is added in the ancillary pricing rule type.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2115

For more information on...	See...
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2140
How to define pricing arrangements in an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Pricing Arrangements in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2138

## Defining Pricing Arrangements in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define pricing arrangements in an ancillary pricing rule type, you should have:

- Line Items where category is set to **Ancillary**, as defined in the application.

### Procedure

To add pricing arrangements in an ancillary pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Ancillary-Specific Data** and **Pricing Arrangements** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule type.

The **Pricing Arrangements** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Arrangement Identifier	Used to indicate the pricing arrangement identifier that you can define through an ancillary pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pass Through (Markup or Markdown Optional)</li> <li>Pass Through without Markup or Markdown</li> <li>Rate Based (Markup or Markdown Optional)</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining pricing arrangements for an ancillary pricing rule type.
Pricing Arrangement Identifier Value	Used to specify the value for the pricing arrangement identifier. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pass Through (Markup or Markdown Optional)</li> <li>Pass Through without Markup or Markdown</li> <li>Rate Based (Markup or Markdown Optional)</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining pricing arrangements for an ancillary pricing rule type.
Line Item	Used to indicate the line item which using the billable charge is created for a pricing arrangement.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining pricing arrangements for an ancillary pricing rule type.

2. Enter the required details in the **Pricing Arrangements** section.
3. If you want to define more than one pricing arrangement in an ancillary pricing rule type, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a pricing arrangement from the ancillary pricing rule type, click the **Delete** (🗑) icon corresponding to the pricing arrangement identifier.

4. Click **Save**.

The pricing arrangements are defined for the ancillary pricing rule type.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2115
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2140

**Defining a Characteristic for a Ancillary Pricing Rule Type****Prerequisites**

To define a characteristic for an ancillary pricing rule type, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule Type**)


**Procedure**


To define a characteristic for an ancillary pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining an ancillary pricing rule type.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for an ancillary pricing rule type.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for an ancillary pricing rule type.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for an ancillary pricing rule type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from an ancillary pricing rule type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristic is defined for an ancillary pricing rule type.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to define an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2115
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2140

## **Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type**

### **Prerequisites**

To edit an ancillary pricing rule type, you should have:

- Ancillary pricing rule type business object defined in the application.
- Ancillary pricing rule business object defined in the application.

### **Procedure**

To edit an ancillary pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to an ancillary pricing rule type whose details you want to edit.

The **Ancillary Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the ancillary pricing rule type.
- **Related Pricing Rule Types** – Used to indicate the non-primary pricing rule types which should inherit the transaction field mapping details from the ancillary pricing rule type. You can add a pricing rule type which belongs to the following category:
  1. Retention Type Claim Based
  2. Discount Arrangement
  3. Specific Stop-Loss
  4. Aggregate Stop-Loss
  5. Level Funding

**Note:** We recommend you to add the required related pricing rule types in the above specified sequence. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

- **Transaction Field Mapping** – Used to map the transaction fields in a claim transaction to the appropriate fields in the claim pricing rule type. This helps the system to determine the field where the data from the



transaction field must be stored. This data is then used in the system for various reasons, such as for deriving a bill group and pricing, deriving an effective related pricing rule, and so on.

**Note:** The **Billing Eligibility Identifier** field is required when you are defining the **Transaction Field Mapping** for the ancillary pricing rule type.

- **Algorithms** – Used to associate the algorithms with the ancillary pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the ancillary pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to add the price items for which you can define the ancillary pricing rules using the ancillary pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to add the price item parameters based on which you want to define the price item pricing.

**Note:** There are two price item parameters that are mandatory in the ancillary pricing rule type:

- A price item which stores the billable charge line type from the ancillary transaction.
- A price item which stores the pricing arrangement from the ancillary transaction.

- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the ancillary pricing rule type.
- **Ancillary-Specific Additional Data** – Used to define ancillary-specific additional data.

**Note:** Following fields are required when you are defining the **Ancillary-Specific Additional Data** for the ancillary pricing rule type.

- **Billing Eligibility Identifier Value**
- **Billing Non-Eligibility Identifier Value**

- **Pricing Arrangements** – Used to define the pricing arrangements for the ancillary pricing rule type.
  - **Pass Through (Markup or Markdown Optional)**
  - **Pass Through Without Markup or Markdown**
  - **Rate Based (Markup or Markdown Optional)**

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the ancillary pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for an ancillary pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the ancillary pricing rule type.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Business Object	<p>Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create an ancillary pricing rule. The valid value is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Ancillary Pricing Rule</li> <li>Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</li> <li>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</li> <li>Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must select the <b>Ancillary Pricing Rule</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Business Object</b> list while defining an ancillary pricing rule type.</p>	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the ancillary pricing rule type business object using which you are defining the ancillary pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the ancillary pricing rule type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	<p>Used to indicate whether the ancillary pricing rule type is a primary pricing rule type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is disabled when you select the <b>Flat Fees</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> list.</p>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Category	<p>Indicates the category to which the ancillary pricing rule type belongs. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>Ancillary</li> <li>Claim</li> <li>Discount Arrangement</li> <li>Flat Fees</li> <li>Level Funded</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must select the <b>Ancillary</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> list while defining an ancillary pricing rule type.</p>	No

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of an ancillary pricing rule type by clicking the **Edit** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone to edit the pricing rule type for ancillary.

- Modify the required details in the **Main** section, if required.
- Ensure that the **Ancillary Pricing Rule** option is selected from the **Pricing Rule Business Object** list.
- Ensure that the **Primary** option is selected in the **Main** section.
- Add, edit, or remove the related pricing rule types in the ancillary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:** The **Related Pricing Rule Types** section appears only when the **Primary** option is selected from the **Main** section.

- Modify the transaction field mapping in the ancillary pricing rule type, if required.

**Note:** The **Transaction Field Mapping** section appears only when the **Primary** option is selected from the **Main** section.

- Add, edit, or remove algorithms from the ancillary pricing rule type, if required.

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Account and Price Item Derivation	C1_ACCPRIDIS	C1_ACCPRIDIS	Account and Priceitem Derivation For Discount Arrangement

- Edit generic additional data for the ancillary pricing rule type, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove price items in an ancillary pricing rule type, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove price item parameters in an ancillary pricing rule type, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove characteristics in an ancillary pricing rule type, if required.
- Modify the ancillary-specific data in an ancillary pricing rule type, if required.
- Modify the pricing arrangements in an ancillary pricing rule type, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the ancillary pricing rule type are saved.

### **Related Topics**

<b>For more information on...</b>	<b>See...</b>
How to add related pricing rule type in an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Related Pricing Rule Type in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2120
How to map the transaction fields in an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Mapping the Transaction Field in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2122
How to associate an algorithm with an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating an Algorithm with an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2126
How to defining additional data in an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2129
How to adding a price item in an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2132
How to add a price item parameter in an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2135
How to define the ancillary-specific data in an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining the Ancillary-Specific Data in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2136
How to define pricing arrangements in an ancillary pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Pricing Arrangements in an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2138

## **Deleting an Ancillary Pricing Rule Type**

### **Procedure**

To delete an ancillary pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the ancillary pricing rule type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the ancillary pricing rule type.

**Note:** You can delete an ancillary pricing rule type only when it is not yet used in the system.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete an ancillary pricing rule type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.

The ancillary pricing rule type is deleted.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Viewing the Ancillary Pricing Rule Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of an ancillary pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast**  icon corresponding to the ancillary pricing rule type whose details you want to view.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the ancillary pricing rule type in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer


### Prerequisites

To define an ancillary pricing rule for a parent customer, you should have:

- Pricing rule type where the category is set to **Ancillary**.
- Price items associated with the ancillary pricing rule type.
- Pricing arrangements defined in the ancillary pricing rule type.

### Procedure

To define an ancillary pricing rule for a parent customer:

1. Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Indicates the parent customer for whom you want to create an ancillary pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Person Type	Indicates the type of the parent customer. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Parent Customer</li> </ul>	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> If you are defining the pricing rule type for the parent customer, then the person type will be <b>Parent Customer</b> .	
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type using which you want to create an ancillary pricing rule.	Yes

5. Select the required pricing rule type in the respective field.

6. Click **OK**.

The **Ancillary Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the information about the parent customer. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	Indicates the parent customer for whom you are defining an ancillary pricing rule.
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type using which you are defining an ancillary pricing rule.

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the ancillary pricing rule. In addition it allows you to define pricing for different types of ancillary charges. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item for which you want to define an ancillary pricing rule.	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the ancillary pricing rule is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The pricing start date cannot be later than the pricing end date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the date till when the ancillary pricing rule is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The pricing end date cannot be earlier than the pricing start date.	
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining pricing for the price item.	Yes
Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	Used when markup or markdown should not be calculated for the ancillary charge.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Rate Option</b> field is selected.	
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to calculate the ancillary pricing without the pass through charge while defining the ancillary pricing rule.

The following fields appear only when the **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** option is not selected. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the billable charge line type using which you want to create the ancillary pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The Search  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Line Type Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.	
Billable	Used to indicate whether the ancillary charge is eligible for billing or not.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while creating a pricing arrangement with or without the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field and the <b>Rate Based</b> option.
Rate Based	Used to indicate whether the ancillary charge is calculated using a particular rate.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while creating a pricing arrangement with the <b>Rate Based</b> option.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate	Used to indicate the rate for calculating the ancillary charge.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Rate Based</b> option is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when <b>Rate Based</b> option is selected.
Pricing Strategy	Used to indicate the price calculation strategy which should be applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• Markdown</li> <li>• None</li> </ul>	No
Markup or Markdown Type	Used to indicate the type of charge which should be applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Amount</li> <li>• Percentage</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Pricing Strategy</b> field is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Pricing Strategy</b> field is selected.
Amount / Percentage	Used to specify the actual proportion of the charge that should be applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is selected.

- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule.

7. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
8. Define the characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule, if required.
9. Click **Save**.

The ancillary pricing rule is defined for a parent customer.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent customer	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to define a characteristic for an ancillary pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Ancillary Pricing Rule</a> on page 2148

## **Defining Characteristics for an Ancillary Pricing Rule**

### **Prerequisites**

To define characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule, you should have:




- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**).


### Procedure


To define characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing an ancillary pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the ancillary pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the ancillary pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule</b> .	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the ancillary pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type. <b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears. On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	Yes (Conditional) <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the ancillary pricing rule.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the ancillary pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the ancillary pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for an ancillary pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an ancillary pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2145
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2150

For more information on...	See...
How to define an ancillary pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2153
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2158

### Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer



**Prerequisites**

To edit an ancillary pricing rule of a parent customer, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleAncillary** defined for ancillary pricing rule.

**Procedure**

To edit a ancillary pricing rule of a parent customer:

1. Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** screen appears.
4. In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Edit** () icon in the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, corresponding to the ancillary pricing rule whose details you want to edit.  
The **Ancillary Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the customer information.


Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent customer for whom the ancillary pricing rule is created.
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type for whom the ancillary pricing rule is created.

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the ancillary pricing rule. In addition it allows you to define pricing for different types of ancillary charges. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Displays the price item that is used to create ancillary pricing rule.	Not applicable
Pricing Start Date	Displays the date from when the ancillary pricing rule is effective.	Not applicable
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the date till when the ancillary pricing rule is effective.	Not applicable
Rate Option	Displays the rate option that you want to use while defining the price item.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	Indicates that markup or markdown should not be calculated for the ancillary charge.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Rate Option</b> field is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to calculate the ancillary pricing without the pass through charge while defining the ancillary pricing rule.

The following fields appear only when the **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** option is not selected. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the billable charge line type using which you want to create the ancillary pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The Search  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Line Type Search</b> window appears. On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required while creating a pricing arrangement with or without rate based billable charge line type.
Billable	Used to indicate whether the ancillary charge is eligible for billing or not.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while creating a pricing arrangement with or without the <b>Rate Based</b> option.
Rate Based	Used to indicate whether the ancillary charge is calculated using a particular rate.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while creating a pricing arrangement with the <b>Rate Based</b> option.
Rate	Used to indicate the rate for calculating the ancillary charge.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Rate Based</b> option is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when <b>Rate Based</b> option is selected.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Strategy	Used to indicate the price calculation strategy which should be applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Markup</li> <li>Markdown</li> <li>None</li> </ul>	No
Markup or Markdown Type	Used to indicate the type of charge which should be applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flat Amount</li> <li>Percentage</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Pricing Strategy</b> field is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Pricing Strategy</b> field is selected.
Amount / Percentage	Used to specify the actual proportion of the charge that should be applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is selected.

- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the ancillary pricing rule.

5. Modify the details in the **Main** section.
6. Define, edit, or remove characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule, if required.
7. Click **Save**.

The changes made to an ancillary pricing rule for a parent customer are saved.


### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent customer	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to define the characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Ancillary Pricing Rule</a> on page 2148

## **Deleting an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer**

### **Procedure**

To delete an ancillary pricing rule of a parent customer:

1. Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

- Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** screen appears.

- In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the ancillary pricing rule that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the ancillary pricing rule of a parent customer.

**Note:** You can delete an ancillary pricing rule only when it is not yet used in the system.

- Click **OK**.

The ancillary pricing rule of a parent customer is deleted.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent customer	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
Parent Customer Pricing Rules zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101

## Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule for a Bill Group


### Prerequisites

To define an ancillary pricing rule for a bill group, you should have:

- Pricing rule type where the category is set to **Ancillary**.
- Price items associated with the ancillary pricing rule type.
- Pricing arrangements defined in the ancillary pricing rule type.

### Procedure


To define an ancillary pricing rule for a bill group:

- Search for the Administrative Services Only (ASO) person, whose person type is set to **Bill Group**, in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

- Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

- Click the **Broadcast** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to view.

The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone appears.

- Click the **Add** link in the upper-right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Indicates the name of the parent customer.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Type	Indicates the type of the parent customer.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> If you are defining the pricing rule type for the parent customer, then the person type will be <b>Parent Customer</b> .	
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type using which you want to create an ancillary pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Select the <b>Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</b> option, as the pricing rule.	<b>Note:</b> If the pricing rule type is not selected then the application displays an error message.
Pricing Group	Used to indicate the pricing group which is used while defining the pricing.	No
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for the pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> <li>• Runout</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> An ancillary pricing rule cannot be created for <b>Runout</b> or <b>Post Runout</b> policy status where the policy run out end date is missing.	

6. Click **OK**.

The **Ancillary Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the information about the bill group. It contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.
Policy Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy is effective.
Policy End Date	Displays the date till when the policy is effective.
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for the pricing rule.
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type for whom the ancillary pricing rule is created.

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the ancillary pricing rule. In addition it allows you to define pricing for different types of ancillary charges.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item that is used to create ancillary pricing rule.	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the ancillary pricing rule is effective.	Yes
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the date till when the ancillary pricing rule is effective.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining the price item.	Yes
Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	Used when markup or markdown should not be calculated for the ancillary charge.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Rate Option</b> field is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to calculate the ancillary pricing without the pass through charge while defining the ancillary pricing rule.

The following fields appear only when the **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** option is not selected. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the billable charge line type using which you want to create the ancillary pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The Search  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Line Type Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required while creating a pricing arrangement with or without rate based billable charge line type.
Billable	Used to indicate whether the ancillary charge is eligible for billing or not.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while creating a pricing arrangement with or without the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field and the <b>Rate Based</b> option.
Rate Based	Used to indicate whether the ancillary charge is calculated using a particular rate.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while creating a pricing arrangement with the <b>Rate Based</b> option.
Rate	Used to indicate the rate for calculating the ancillary charge.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Rate Based</b> option is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when <b>Rate Based</b> option is selected.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Strategy	Used to indicate the price calculation strategy which should be applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Markup</li> <li>Markdown</li> <li>None</li> </ul>	No
Markup or Markdown Type	Used to indicate the type of charge which should be applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flat Amount</li> <li>Percentage</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Pricing Strategy</b> field is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Pricing Strategy</b> field is selected.
Amount / Percentage	Used to specify the actual proportion of the charge that should be applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is selected.

- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the ancillary pricing rule.

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define the characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The ancillary pricing rule for a bill group is defined.

**Note:** A price list and price assignment is created, the price list created is assigned to the ancillary pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Customer 360° Information – Pricing</b> tab	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information - Pricing</a> on page 99
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to define the characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Ancillary Pricing Rule</a> on page 2148

## Defining Characteristics for an Ancillary Pricing Rule

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**).


### Procedure


To define characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule:




1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing an ancillary pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the ancillary pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the ancillary pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the ancillary pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the ancillary pricing rule.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the ancillary pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the ancillary pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for an ancillary pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an ancillary pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2145
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2150
How to define an ancillary pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining an Ancillary Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2153

For more information on...	See...
How to edit an ancillary pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2158

## Editing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Bill Group




### Prerequisites

To edit an ancillary pricing rule of a bill group, you should have:

- Business Object **C1-PricingRuleAncillary** defined for ancillary pricing rule.

### Procedure

To edit an ancillary pricing rule of a bill group:

- Search for a bill group in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
- Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
- Click the **Broadcast** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to view.  
The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone appears.
- Click the **Edit** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone, corresponding to the **Pricing Group Information** column, whose pricing details you want to edit.

The **Ancillary Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Customer Information** – Displays the customer information for bill group.


Field Name	Field Description
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group for whom the ancillary pricing rule is define.
Policy Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy is effective.
Policy End Date	Displays the date till when the policy is effective.
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for the pricing rule.
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type using which you want to define an ancillary pricing rule.
Status	Indicates the status of the bill group.

- Main** – Used to specify basic details about the ancillary pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Indicates the price item that is used to create ancillary pricing rule.	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Displays the date from when the ancillary pricing rule is effective.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the date till when the ancillary pricing rule is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> This field by default displays the <b>Policy End Date</b> .	
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option that you want to use while defining the price item.	Yes
Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	Used to indicate that markup and markdown prices must not be considered when the ancillary transaction is processed.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Rate Option</b> field is selected.	
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you want to calculate the ancillary pricing without the pass through charge while defining the ancillary pricing rule.

The following fields appear only when the **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** option is not selected. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the billable charge line type using which you want to create the ancillary pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The Search  icon appears corresponding to this field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Line Type Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.	
Billable	Used to indicate whether the ancillary charge is eligible for billing or not.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while creating a pricing arrangement with or without the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field and the <b>Rate Based</b> option.
Rate Based	Used to indicate whether the ancillary charge is calculated using a particular rate.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required while creating a pricing arrangement with the <b>Rate Based</b> option.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate	Used to indicate the rate for calculating the ancillary charge.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Rate Based</b> option is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when <b>Rate Based</b> option is selected.
Pricing Strategy	Used to indicate the price calculation strategy which should be applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• Markdown</li> <li>• None</li> </ul>	No
Markup or Markdown Type	Used to indicate the type of charge which should be applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Amount</li> <li>• Percentage</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Pricing Strategy</b> field is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Pricing Strategy</b> field is selected.
Amount/Percentage	Used to specify the actual proportion of the charge that should be applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is selected.

- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for the ancillary pricing rule.

6. Modify the details in the **Main** section.
7. Define, edit, or remove characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule, if required.
8. Click **Save**.

The changes made to an ancillary pricing rule for a bill group are saved.




#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent customer	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to define characteristics for an ancillary pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for an Ancillary Pricing Rule</a> on page 2148

## **Deleting an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Bill Group**

### **Procedure**

To delete an ancillary pricing rule of a bill group:

1. Search for a bill group in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the bill group whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to delete.  
The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone appears.
5. Click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the **Pricing Group Information** column, whose bill group information you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the ancillary pricing rule of a bill group.

**Note:** You can delete an ancillary pricing rule only when it is not yet used in the system.

6. Click **OK**.  
The ancillary pricing rule of a bill group is deleted.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent customer	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101

## Discount Pricing

The Administrative Services Only (ASO) provider may offer some discounts to its network hospitals and providers. A portion of these discounts is then charged to the self-funded employer. Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to calculate and bill the discount share or discount guarantee amount to the self-funded employer. The system enables you to calculate the discount using the following methods:

- [Discount Share](#) on page 2162
- [Discount Guarantee](#) on page 2162

The pricing for the share or guarantee discount can be defined using the respective discount pricing rules. You can define a share or guarantee discount pricing rule only at the parent customer level. You can define the share or guarantee discount pricing rules for parent customers from the **Customer 360° Information** screen. You can define a share or guarantee discount pricing rule using a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

Once a discount arrangement pricing rule type is defined, you can create discount pricing rules using the discount arrangement pricing rule type. Once a discount pricing rule is created, the system creates multiple price assignments in a price list and assigns the price list to the parent customer.

The following new batches are introduced in this release:

- **C1-ACDA** – Once the transaction legs and calculation lines are created for discount, this batch is used to accumulate the discount. It also calculates the required minimum or maximum limit on the contract. For more information about the batch refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

- **C1-BCDA** – Once the discount is accumulated, this batch is used to create the credit (if any) and discount billable charges. It is also used to calculate the bill after date. For more information about the batch refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

## Types of Discount Arrangement

The Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to calculate the discount using the following methods:

- [Discount Share](#) on page 2162
- [Discount Guarantee](#) on page 2162

### Discount Share

In the discount share method, the discount is calculated while processing the claim transaction. It is calculated as follows:

**Billable Discount Amount = Discount Savings Amount \* Discount Percentage**

Note that the discount share percentage varies depending on various parameters (such as health coverage class, In or Out Network, etc). Therefore, the system enables you to define different discount percentage for the claim transactions which are received from employees with different set of attributes. The system allows you to define maximum discount amount that can be charged per claim transaction. You can optionally configure the minimum and maximum discount limit on the contract. Note that the minimum limit is applicable during the settlement and maximum limit is applicable when you execute the **C1-ACDA** batch. The minimum and maximum limit can be a flat limit or enrollment based limit. Once the discount is accumulated, you can charge the customer at the pre-defined frequency. If the discount amount exceeds the maximum discount limit per claim or if the discount amount exceeds maximum discount limit defined on the contract, a credit billable charge is created for the customer.

### Discount Guarantee

In the discount guarantee method, the discount is calculated while processing the claim transaction. It is calculated as follows:

**Targeted Guaranteed Amount = Covered Charge Amount \* Discount Guarantee Percentage**

**Billable Discount Amount = Discount Savings Amount - Targeted Guaranteed Amount**

Note that the discount guarantee percentage varies depending on various parameters (such as health coverage class, In or Out Network, etc). Therefore, the system enables you to define different discount percentage for the claim transactions which are received from employees with different set of attributes. The system allows you to define maximum discount amount that can be charged per claim transaction. You can optionally configure the minimum and maximum discount limit on the contract. Note that the minimum limit is applicable during the settlement and maximum limit is applicable when you execute the **C1-ACDA** batch. The minimum and maximum limit can be a flat limit or enrollment based limit. Once the discount is accumulated, you can charge the customer at the pre-defined frequency. If the discount amount exceeds the maximum discount limit per claim or if the discount amount exceeds maximum discount limit defined on the contract, a credit billable charge is created for the customer.

## Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define a discount arrangement pricing rule type, you should have:

- Discount Arrangement pricing rule type business object defined in the application
- Discount Arrangement pricing rule business object defined in the application

### Procedure

To define a discount arrangement pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.

A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Add** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Business Object	<p>Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create a discount arrangement pricing rule type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Ancillary Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Claim Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must select the <b>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Type Business Object</b> list while defining a discount arrangement pricing rule type.</p>	Yes

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Pricing Rule Type** screen.

- Select the **Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type** option from the **Pricing Rule Type Business Object** list.
- Click **OK**.

The **Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- Main** – Used to specify basic details about the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- Algorithms** – Used to associate the algorithms with the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- Additional Data** – Used to specify additional information in the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- Price Items** – Used to add the price items for which you can define the discount arrangement pricing rules using the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- Price Item Parameters** – Used to add the price item parameters based on which you want to define the price item pricing.
- Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- DA – Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify discount arrangement-specific additional data in the discount arrangement pricing rule type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to specify the discount arrangement pricing rule type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the discount arrangement pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the discount arrangement pricing rule type.	No
Pricing Rule Business Object	<p>Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the discount arrangement pricing rule. The valid value are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</b></li> <li>• <b>Ancillary Pricing Rule</b></li> <li>• <b>Claim Pricing Rule</b></li> <li>• <b>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</b></li> <li>• <b>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</b></li> <li>• <b>Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule</b></li> <li>• <b>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</b></li> <li>• <b>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</b></li> <li>• <b>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must select the <b>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Business Object</b> list while defining a discount arrangement pricing rule type.</p>	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which you are defining the discount arrangement pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the discount arrangement pricing rule type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	<p>Used to indicate whether the discount arrangement pricing rule type is a primary pricing rule type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must not select the <b>Primary</b> option while defining a discount arrangement pricing rule type.</p>	Not applicable



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Category	<p>Used to indicate the category to which the discount arrangement pricing rule type belongs. The valid value is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Aggregate Stop-Loss</b></li> <li>• <b>Ancillary</b></li> <li>• <b>Claim</b></li> <li>• <b>Discount Arrangement</b></li> <li>• <b>Flat Fees</b></li> <li>• <b>Level Funded</b></li> <li>• <b>Retention Type Claim Based</b></li> <li>• <b>Retention Type Enrollment Based</b></li> <li>• <b>Specific Stop-Loss</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must select the <b>Discount Arrangement</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> list while defining a discount arrangement pricing rule type.</p>	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Select the **Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule** option from the **Pricing Rule Business Object** list.
- Ensure that **Primary** option is not selected when you are defining a discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- Select the **Discount Arrangement** option from the **Pricing Rule Type Category** list.
- Associate the following algorithms with the discount arrangement pricing rule type:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Account and Price Item Derivation	C1_ACCPRDIS	C1_ACCPRDIS	Account and Priceitem Derivation For Discount Arrangement

- Define additional data for a discount arrangement pricing rule type, if required.
- Add the required price items in the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- Add the price item parameters in the discount arrangement pricing rule type, if required.
- Define characteristics for a discount arrangement pricing rule type, if required.
- Add discount arrangement-specific additional data in the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- Click **Save**.

The discount arrangement pricing rule type is defined.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
How to associate algorithms with the discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2166

For more information on...	See...
How to define additional data for a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2169
How to add price items in the discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2171
How to add price item parameters in the discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2174
How to define characteristics for a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2175
How to add discount arrangement-specific data in the discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining the Discount Specific Data in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2176

## Associating Algorithms with a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To associate algorithms with a discount arrangement pricing rule type, you should have:

- An algorithm defined using the **C1\_ACCPRIDIS** algorithm type.



### Procedure

To associate algorithms with a discount arrangement pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Algorithms** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

The **Algorithms** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
System Event	<p>Used to indicate the system event when you want to execute the algorithm. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Account and Price Item Derivation</b> - Used to derive the account and price item for the discount arrangement transaction.</li> <li>• <b>Accumulation Billable Charge Post Proc</b> - Used to introduce a custom logic after creating discount share or discount guarantee billable charges. This algorithm is invoked in the <b>C1-BCDA (Create Billable Charge for Discount)</b> batch.</li> <li>• <b>Accumulation Billable Charge Pre Proc</b> - Used to introduce a custom logic before creating discount share or discount guarantee billable charges. This algorithm is invoked in the <b>C1-BCDA (Create Billable Charge for Discount)</b> batch.</li> <li>• <b>Accumulation Post Processing</b> - Used to introduce a custom logic after accumulating the discount share or discount guarantee amount. This algorithm is invoked in the <b>C1-ACDA (Accumulate Discount Arrangement)</b> batch.</li> <li>• <b>Accumulation Pre Processing</b> - Used to introduce a custom logic before accumulating the discount share or discount guarantee amount. This algorithm is invoked in the <b>C1-ACDA (Accumulate Discount Arrangement)</b> batch.</li> <li>• <b>Pricing Rule Post Processing</b> - Used to introduce a custom logic once the effective discount arrangement pricing rule is derived for the discount arrangement transaction.</li> <li>• <b>Transaction Validation</b> - Used to introduce a custom validation for the discount arrangement transaction.</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the discount arrangement pricing rule type.</p>
Sequence	Used to specify the order in which the algorithms with the same system event must be executed.	Yes (Conditional)
		<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the discount arrangement pricing rule type.</p>

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm that you want to execute on the system event.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> Once you select the system event, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the algorithm, the description of the algorithm appears corresponding to the <b>Algorithm</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the discount arrangement pricing rule type.

2. Enter the following details in the **Algorithms** section:

System Event	Algorithm	Mandatory (Yes or No)	For more information, see...
Account and Price Item Derivation	C1_ACCPRIDIS	Yes	Information will be available soon...
Accumulation Billable Charge Post Proc	-	No	-
	<b>Note:</b> An accumulation billable charge post processing algorithm type is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.		
Accumulation Billable Charge Pre Proc	-	No	-
	<b>Note:</b> An accumulation billable charge pre processing algorithm type is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.		
Accumulation Post Processing	-	No	-
	<b>Note:</b> An accumulation post processing algorithm type is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.		
Accumulation Pre Processing	-	No	-
	<b>Note:</b> A accumulation pre processing algorithm type is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.		

System Event	Algorithm	Mandatory (Yes or No)	For more information, see...
Pricing Rule Post Processing	-	No	-
	<b>Note:</b> A pricing rule post processing algorithm type is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.		
Transaction Validation	-	No	-
	<b>Note:</b> An algorithm type for validating a discount arrangement transaction is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.		

- If you want to associate more than one algorithm with the discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the **Add** (+) icon and then specify the details. However, if you want to remove an algorithm from the discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the **Delete** (trash) icon corresponding to the algorithm.
- Click **Save**.  
The algorithms are associated with the discount arrangement pricing rule type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define the discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2162
How to edit the discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2179

## Defining Additional Data in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type


### Procedure


To define additional data in a discount arrangement pricing rule type:

- Ensure that the **Additional Data** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

The **Additional Data** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Eligible for Specific Stop-Loss	Used to indicate whether price items included in the discount arrangement pricing rule type are eligible for specific stop-loss. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Eligible for Level Funding	<p>Used to indicate whether price items included in the discount arrangement pricing rule type are eligible for level funding. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the value for this field, by default, it is set to <b>No</b>.</p>	No
Run-in Identifier Value	Used to specify the identifier value to determine whether the discount arrangement transaction is received during the run-in period of the policy.	No
Third Party Identifier Value	<p>Used to specify the identifier value to determine whether the discount arrangement transaction is received from an external source system.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> At present, this field is not used in the system.</p>	Not applicable
Accumulation Only Identifier Value	Used to specify the identifier value to determine whether the discount arrangement transaction contains the accumulated information of ASL, SSL, and Level Funding pricing types.	No
Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout	<p>Used to indicate whether the discount charges should be written off when the bill is generated in the post runout period of the policy. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul> <p>For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Write-Off Charges during Post Runout</a> section.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> By default, the value is set to <b>No</b>.</p>	No
Post Runout Write-Off Adjustment Type	<p>Used to specify the adjustment type using which you want to create post runout write-off adjustment.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>This field appears when the <b>Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Post Runout Write-Off Adjustment Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the adjustment type, the description of the adjustment type appears corresponding to the <b>Post Runout Write-Off Adjustment Type</b> field.</p>	<p>Yes (Conditional)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>.</p>

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field	Used to indicate the transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the price item should be considered for billing.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Price Item Eligibility</a> on page 2280 section.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the field name, the description of the field name appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field</b>.</p>	
Rule Based Eligibility Value	Used to specify the value which the output parameter in the rule should return when the price item in the discount arrangement pricing rule type should be considered for processing.	Yes (Conditional)
		<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when a value is specified in the <b>Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>

- Enter the required details in the **Additional Data** section.
- Click **Save**.

The additional data is defined in the discount arrangement pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2162
How to edit a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2179

## Adding a Price Item in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To add a price item in a discount arrangement pricing rule type, you should have:





- Price item defined in the application
- Rate options defined in the **Rate Option (C1-ExtLookRetTypeRateOpt)** extendable lookup
- Values defined for the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic type
- The **C1INVTYP** characteristic type set in the **Invoice Type Characteristic Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration
- Rule types defined in the application (where the rule type usage is set to **Price Item Eligibility**)

### Procedure







To add a price item in a pricing rule type:


1. Ensure that the **Price Items** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a discount arrangement pricing rule type.


The **Price Items** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)						
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item that you want to include in the discount arrangement pricing rule type.	Yes (Conditional)						
	<div><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears. On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field.</div>	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are adding a rate option and bill to account in the discount arrangement pricing rule type.						
Rate Option	Used to indicate one or more rate options which are valid for a price item.	Not applicable						
	On clicking the <b>Add</b> (  ) icon, the following field appears in a grid:							
	<table><tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr><tr><td>Rate Option</td><td>Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining pricing for the price item.</td><td>Yes</td></tr></table>		Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining pricing for the price item.	Yes
	Field Name		Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)				
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining pricing for the price item.	Yes						
<div><b>Note:</b> If you want to define more than one rate option to the price item in the discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the <b>Add</b>  icon. However, if you want to remove a price item from a discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the <b>Delete</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Rate Option</b> field.</div>								



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Bill To Account	<p>Used to indicate a order in which the account should be considered while deriving a transaction leg.</p> <p>On clicking the <b>Add</b> () icon, the following fields appear in a grid:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Priority</td><td>Used to specify the order in which the invoice type is considered for a price item.</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>Invoice Type</td><td> <p>Used to indicate the type which is considered for billing. For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Bill Group's Account</a> on page 47 section.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Invoice Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Invoice Type Search</b> window appears.</p> </div> </td><td>Yes</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you want to define more than one invoice type to the price item in a discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the <b>Add</b> () icon.</p> <p>However, if you want to remove a invoice type from the price item in a discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the <b>Delete</b> () icon corresponding to the <b>Priority</b> field.</p> </div>	Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Used to specify the order in which the invoice type is considered for a price item.	Yes	Invoice Type	<p>Used to indicate the type which is considered for billing. For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Bill Group's Account</a> on page 47 section.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Invoice Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Invoice Type Search</b> window appears.</p> </div>	Yes	Not applicable
Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Priority	Used to specify the order in which the invoice type is considered for a price item.	Yes									
Invoice Type	<p>Used to indicate the type which is considered for billing. For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Bill Group's Account</a> on page 47 section.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Invoice Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Invoice Type Search</b> window appears.</p> </div>	Yes									
Eligibility Rule Type	Used to indicate the rule type which indicates the rules that should be executed to determine whether the price item is eligible for billing.	No									

- Enter the required details in the **Price Items** section.
- If you want to define more than one price item in a discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price item from a discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the **Price Item** field.

- Click **Save**.

The price items are added for a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2162
How to edit a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2179

## Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To add a price item parameter in a discount arrangement pricing rule type, you should have:





- Parameter defined in the application where parameter usage is set to **Price Item**.
- Parameter associated with the price item.
- Transaction fields defined in the application.

### Procedure

To add a price item parameter in a discount arrangement pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Price Item Parameters** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

The **Price Item Parameters** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item Parameter	Used to specify the parameter which you can use while defining a discount arrangement pricing for the price item.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field, the <b>Parameter Search</b> window appears. On specifying the parameter, the description of the price item parameter appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required while adding a price item parameter in a discount arrangement pricing rule type.
Transaction Field	Used to map to a transaction field which contains the parameter value.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Transaction Field</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Transaction Field</b> field, the <b>Transaction Field Search</b> window appears. On specifying the transaction field, the description of the transaction field appears corresponding to the <b>Transaction Field</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required while adding a price item parameter in a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Eligible for Specific Stop-Loss	Used to indicate whether the price item parameter can be used while defining the accumulation criteria in the specific stop-loss or aggregate stop-loss pricing rules at the bill group level.	No
Eligible for Level Funding	Used to indicate whether the price item parameter can be used while defining the accumulation criteria in the level-funding pricing rules at the bill group level.	No

- Enter the required details in the **Price Item Parameters** section.
- If you want to add more than one price item parameter in a discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price item parameter from a discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the price item parameter.

- Click **Save**.

The price item parameter is added in the discount arrangement pricing rule type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2162
How to edit a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2179

## Defining a Characteristic for a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a discount arrangement pricing rule type, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule Type**)


### Procedure


To define characteristics for a discount arrangement pricing rule type:


- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for a discount arrangement pricing rule type.</p>

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for a discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from a discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristic is defined for a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2162
How to edit a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2179

## Defining the Discount Specific Data in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type




### Procedure




To add the discount-specific data in a discount arrangement pricing rule type:

- Ensure that the **DA - Specific Additional Data** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

The **DA - Specific Additional Data** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Guaranteed Discount	<p>Used to indicate whether the discount arrangement pricing rule type is defined for discount guarantee or discount share. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Yes</b> - Used when you want to create a discount guarantee pricing rule type.</li> <li><b>No</b> - Used when you want to create a discount share pricing rule type.</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Discount Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate a billable charge line type using which you want to create the charge line for discount.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Discount Billable Charge Line Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Discount Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	
Credit Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate a billable charge line type using which you want to create the charge line for any credit to the customer.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Credit Billable Charge Line Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Credit Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	
Minimum Limit Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type which you want to use while calculating the minimum limit for the discount.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Minimum Limit Pricing Rule Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Pricing Rule Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the pricing rule type, the description of the pricing rule type appears corresponding to the <b>Minimum Limit Pricing Rule Type</b> field.</p>	
		<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining enrollment based minimum discount limit on the contract in a discount share pricing rule.</p>

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Minimum Limit Price Item	Used to indicate the price item whose pricing you want to use while calculating the minimum limit for the discount.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Minimum Limit Price Item</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Details</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Minimum Limit Price Item</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining enrollment based minimum discount limit on the contract in a discount share pricing rule.</p>
Maximum Limit Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type which you want to use while calculating the maximum limit for the discount.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Maximum Limit Pricing Rule Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Pricing Rule Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the pricing rule type, the description of the pricing rule type appears corresponding to the <b>Maximum Limit Pricing Rule Type</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining enrollment based maximum discount limit on the contract in a discount share or discount guarantee pricing rule.</p>
Maximum Limit Price Item	Used to indicate the price item whose pricing you want to use while calculating the maximum limit for the discount. Used to indicate the price item whose pricing you want to use while calculating the minimum limit for the discount.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Maximum Limit Price Item</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Details</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Maximum Limit Price Item</b> field.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining enrollment based maximum discount limit on the contract in a discount share or discount guarantee pricing rule.</p>

- Enter the required details in the **DA - Specific Additional Data** section.
- Click **Save**.

The discount-specific data is added in the discount arrangement pricing rule type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2162

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2179

## Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To edit a discount arrangement pricing rule type, you should have:

- Discount arrangement pricing rule type business object defined in the application.
- Discount arrangement pricing rule business object defined in the application.

### Procedure

To edit a discount arrangement pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type whose details you want to edit.

The **Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- **Algorithms** – Used to associate the algorithms with the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify additional information in the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to add the price items for which you can define the discount arrangement pricing rules using the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to add the price item parameters based on which you want to define the price item pricing.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- **DA-Specific Additional Data** – Used to specify discount arrangement-specific additional data in a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the discount arrangement pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the discount arrangement pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the discount arrangement pricing rule type.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Business Object	<p>Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the discount arrangement pricing rule. The valid value is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Ancillary Pricing Rule</li> <li>Claim Pricing Rule</li> <li>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</li> <li>Flat Fee Pricing Rule</li> <li>Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must select the <b>Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Business Object</b> list while defining a discount arrangement pricing rule type.</p>	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the business object used while defining the discount arrangement pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Status	<p>Used to indicate the status of the discount arrangement pricing rule type. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	<p>Used to indicate whether the discount arrangement pricing rule type is a primary pricing rule type.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must not select the <b>Primary</b> option while defining the discount arrangement pricing rule type.</p>	Not applicable



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Category	<p>Indicates the category to which the discount arrangement pricing rule type belongs. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Aggregate Stop-Loss</li> <li>Ancillary</li> <li>Claim</li> <li>Discount Arrangement</li> <li>Flat Fees</li> <li>Level Funded</li> <li>Retention Type Claim Based</li> <li>Retention Type Enrollment Based</li> <li>Specific Stop-Loss</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> You must select the <b>Discount Arrangement</b> option from the <b>Pricing Rule Type Category</b> list while defining a discount arrangement pricing rule type.</p>	No

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of a discount arrangement pricing rule type by clicking the **Edit** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

- Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
- Ensure that the **Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule** option is selected from the **Pricing Rule Business Object** list.
- Ensure that **Primary** option is not selected when you are editing a discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- Associate the following algorithms with the discount arrangement pricing rule type:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Account and Price Item Derivation	C1_ACCPRIDIS	C1_ACCPRIDIS	Account and Priceitem Derivation For Discount Arrangement

- Modify the additional data for a discount arrangement pricing rule type, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove price items in the discount arrangement pricing rule type, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove price item parameters in the discount arrangement pricing rule type, if required.
- Add, edit, or remove characteristics in the discount arrangement pricing rule type, if required.
- Modify the discount arrangement-specific data in the discount arrangement pricing rule type, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The changes made to the discount arrangement pricing rule type are saved.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to associate a algorithm with the discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating Algorithms with a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2166

For more information on...	See...
How to define additional data for discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2169
How to add pricing items in the discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2171
How to add price item parameters in the discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2174
How to define characteristics for the discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2175
How to define discount arrangement-specific data in the pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining the Discount Specific Data in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2176

## Deleting a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type

### Procedure

To delete a discount arrangement pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the discount arrangement pricing rule type that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the discount arrangement pricing rule type.

**Note:** You can delete a discount arrangement pricing rule type only when it is not yet used in the system.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a discount arrangement pricing rule type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.  
The discount arrangement pricing rule type is deleted.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Viewing the Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type Details

### Procedure

To view the details of a discount arrangement pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the discount arrangement pricing rule type whose details you want to view.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the discount arrangement pricing rule type in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer


### Prerequisites

To define a discount arrangement pricing rule for a parent customer, you should have:

- Pricing rule type where the category is set to **Discount Arrangement**.
- Price items associated with the discount arrangement pricing rule type.

### Procedure

To define a discount arrangement pricing rule for a parent customer:

1. Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. Click the **Add** link in the upper-right corner of the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone.  
The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Indicates the parent customer for whom you want to create a discount arrangement pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Person Type	Indicates the type of the parent customer. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Parent Customer</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type using which you want to create a discount arrangement pricing rule.	Yes

5. Select the required pricing rule type in the respective field.

6. Click **OK**.

The **Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays information about the parent customer for whom you are defining the discount arrangement pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	Indicates the parent customer for whom you are defining the discount arrangement pricing rule.
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type using which you are defining the discount arrangement pricing rule.

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the discount arrangement pricing rule.
- **Discount Details** – Used to define eligibility criteria for a discount percentage and maximum discount amount which is allowed per claim.
- **Discount Limits** – Used when you want to define minimum and maximum discount limit on the contract.
- **Exclusion** – Used when you want to exclude certain network hospitals and providers during the discount share or discount guarantee calculation.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the discount arrangement pricing rule.

**Note:** The **Discount Details**, **Discount Limits**, and **Exclusion** sections appear only when you specify a price item in the **Main** section.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item for which you want to define the discount arrangement pricing rule.	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the discount arrangement pricing rule is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The pricing start date cannot be later than the pricing end date.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the date till when the discount arrangement pricing rule is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The pricing end date cannot be earlier than the pricing start date.	
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining the pricing for the price item.	Yes
Settlement Frequency	Used to indicate the settlement frequency which helps to determine the bill after date. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Manually (At Regular Intervals)</b> - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date which is specified in the <b>Manual Settlement Bill After Date</b> parameter while executing the <b>C1-BCDA</b> batch is stamped on the credit billable charge.</li> <li>• <b>Yearly</b> - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date in the credit billable charge is set to the pricing end date.</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The bill after date is stamped on the credit billable charges and not on the discount billable charges.	

7. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
8. Add the required discount details in the discount arrangement pricing rule.
9. Define the minimum and maximum discount limits on the contract in the discount arrangement pricing rule, if required.
10. Add the exclusion details of a network or a provider in the discount arrangement pricing rule, if required.
11. Define characteristics for the discount arrangement pricing rule, if required.
12. Click **Save**.

The discount arrangement pricing rule is defined for the parent customer.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent customer	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to add the discount details in a discount arrangement pricing rule	<a href="#">Adding the Discount Details in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</a> on page 2186
How to define the discount limits in a discount arrangement pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining the Discount Limits in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</a> on page 2187
How to exclude a network or provider in a discount arrangement pricing rule	<a href="#">Excluding a Network or Provider in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</a> on page 2189
How to define a characteristic for a discount arrangement pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</a> on page 2190

## Adding the Discount Details in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule

### Prerequisites

To add the discount details in a discount arrangement pricing rule, you should have:



- Parameters defined in the application
- Parameters associated with the price item.

### Procedure

To add the discount details in a discount arrangement pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Discount Details** section appears when you are defining or editing a discount arrangement pricing rule.

The **Discount Details** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item Parameter	Used to indicate the parameter using which you want to define an eligibility criteria for a discount percentage and maximum discount amount which is allowed per claim.	No
	<b>Note:</b> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the parameter, the description of the parameter appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p> <p>You can only select those price item parameters which are effective during the date range specified in the discount arrangement pricing rule.</p> <p>If a parameter associated with the price item is mandatory, then by default, the parameter appears in the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.</p>	
Parameter Value	Used to specify the value for the price item parameter.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> <p>If you select a predefined parameter, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Parameter Value Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the parameter value, the description of the parameter value appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field.</p>	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the parameter associated with the price item is mandatory.
Discount Percentage	Used to specify the discount share or discount guarantee percentage.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Maximum Discount Per Claim	Used to specify the maximum discount amount which is allowed per claim. If the discount amount exceeds the maximum limit per claim, the additional amount is credited to the customer.	No

**Note:** The **Discount Details** section appears only when you specify a price item in the **Main** section.

- Enter the required details in the **Discount Details** section.
- If you want to define a discount percentage for another price item parameter and parameter value combination, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a discount percentage for a price item parameter and parameter value combination from the discount arrangement pricing rule, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the combination.

- Click **Save**.

The discount details are added in the discount arrangement pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a discount arrangement pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2183
How to edit a discount arrangement pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2191

## Defining the Discount Limits in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule

### Prerequisites

To define the discount limits in a discount arrangement pricing rule, you should have:

- An account, to which you want to credit the discount, defined in the application
- Minimum limit pricing rule type and minimum limit price item defined in the respective discount arrangement pricing rule type when you want to define minimum discount limit on the contract
- Maximum limit pricing rule type and maximum limit price item defined in the respective discount arrangement pricing rule type when you want to define maximum discount limit on the contract

### Procedure

To define the discount limits in a discount arrangement pricing rule:

- Ensure that the **Discount Limits** section appears when you are defining or editing a discount arrangement pricing rule.

The **Discount Limits** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
No Limit	Used to indicate whether you want to define minimum or maximum discount limit on the contract.	No

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Discount Credit Account	Used to indicate the account to which you want to credit the discount when the minimum or maximum discount limit is defined on the contract.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when the <b>No Limit</b> option is not selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>No Limit</b> option is not selected.
Settlement Days	Used to specify the number of days which helps to calculate the final settlement date (which is pricing end date + the settlement days). The valid values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 30 Days</li> <li>• 60 Days</li> <li>• 90 Days</li> <li>• 120 Days</li> <li>• 150 Days</li> <li>• 180 Days</li> </ul>	Yes

In addition, it contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Type of Discount Limit	Displays the type of discount limit. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Minimum</li> <li>• Maximum</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Select	On clicking the check box corresponding to the type of discount limit, you can define minimum or maximum discount limit on the contract. <b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when the <b>No Limit</b> option is not selected.	Yes
Limit Type	Used to indicate whether you want to define a flat limit or an enrollment based limit. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enrollment Based</li> <li>• Flat</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when the <b>No Limit</b> option is not selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a minimum or maximum discount limit in the discount arrangement pricing rule.
	If you select the check box corresponding to the <b>Minimum</b> discount limit, the <b>Limit Type</b> field corresponding to the <b>Minimum</b> discount limit is enabled.	



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Amount Limit	Used to specify the flat minimum or maximum discount amount.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled only when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>No Limit</b> option is not selected.</li> <li>The minimum or maximum limit type is set to <b>Flat</b>.</li> </ul>	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the minimum or maximum limit type is set to <b>Flat</b> .

**Note:** The **Discount Limits** section appears only when you specify a price item in the **Main** section.

- Enter the required details in the **Discount Limits** section.
- Click **Save**.

The discount limits are defined in the discount arrangement pricing rule.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a discount arrangement pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2183
How to edit a discount arrangement pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2191

## **Excluding a Network or Provider in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule**

### **Procedure**

To exclude a network or provider in a discount arrangement pricing rule:

- Ensure that the **Exclusion** section appears when you are defining or editing a discount arrangement pricing rule.

The **Exclusion** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Exclusion Level	Used to indicate whether you want to exclude the discount offered to certain network hospitals and providers during the discount share or discount guarantee calculation. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Network</li> <li>Provider</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The system creates the transaction legs and calculation lines for such excluded network hospitals and providers, but does not accumulate the discount.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required while excluding a network or provider in the discount arrangement pricing rule.

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Level Identifier	Used to specify the network or provider ID.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required while excluding a network or provider in the discount arrangement pricing rule.

2. Enter the required details in the **Exclusion** section.
3. If you want to exclude more than one network or provider in the discount arrangement pricing rule, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a network or provider from the exclusion list, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the network or provider.

4. Click **Save**.
- The network or provider is excluded in the discount arrangement pricing rule.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a discount arrangement pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2183
How to edit a discount arrangement pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2191

**Defining a Characteristic for a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule**


**Prerequisites**


- To define a characteristic for a discount arrangement pricing rule, you should have:
- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**).


**Procedure**

- To define a characteristic for a discount arrangement pricing rule:
1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a discount arrangement pricing rule.
- The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in the grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for the discount arrangement pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the discount arrangement pricing rule.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the discount arrangement pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for the discount arrangement pricing rule.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the discount arrangement pricing rule, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the discount arrangement pricing rule, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the discount arrangement pricing rule.


### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a discount arrangement pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2183
How to edit a discount arrangement pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 2191

## Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer

### Procedure

To edit a discount arrangement pricing rule of a parent customer:

- Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
- In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
- Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the discount arrangement pricing rule, whose details you want to edit.

The **Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays information about the parent customer for whom the discount arrangement pricing rule is defined. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	Indicates the parent customer for whom the discount arrangement pricing rule is defined.
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the discount arrangement pricing rule type using which the discount arrangement pricing rule is defined.

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details in the discount arrangement pricing rule.
- **Discount Details** – Used to define eligibility criteria for a discount percentage and maximum discount amount which is allowed per claim.
- **Discount Limits** – Used when you want to define minimum and maximum discount limit on the contract.
- **Exclusion** – Used when you want to exclude certain network hospitals and providers during the discount share or discount guarantee calculation.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the discount arrangement pricing rule.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item for which you want to define the discount arrangement pricing rule.	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the discount arrangement pricing rule is effective.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The pricing start date cannot be later than the pricing end date.	
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the date till when the discount arrangement pricing rule is effective.	No
	<b>Note:</b> The pricing end date cannot be earlier than the pricing start date.	
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining the pricing for the price item.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Settlement Frequency	<p>Used to indicate the settlement frequency which helps to determine the bill after date. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Manually (At Regular Intervals)</b> - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date which is specified in the <b>Manual Settlement Bill After Date</b> parameter while executing the <b>C1-BCDA</b> batch is stamped on the credit billable charge.</li> <li>• <b>Yearly</b> - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date in the credit billable charge is set to the pricing end date.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The bill after date is stamped on the credit billable charges and not on the discount billable charges.</p>	Yes

5. Modify the required details in the **Main** section.
6. Modify the required discount details in the discount arrangement pricing rule.
7. Modify the minimum or maximum discount limit on the contract in the discount arrangement pricing rule, if required.
8. Modify the exclusion list in the discount arrangement pricing rule, if required.
9. Define, edit, or remove characteristics from the discount arrangement pricing rule, if required.
10. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the discount arrangement pricing rule are saved.

#### Related Topics



For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent customer	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to add the discount details in a discount arrangement pricing rule	<a href="#">Adding the Discount Details in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</a> on page 2186
How to define the discount limits in a discount arrangement pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining the Discount Limits in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</a> on page 2187
How to exclude a network or provider in a discount arrangement pricing rule	<a href="#">Excluding a Network or Provider in a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</a> on page 2189
How to define a characteristic for a discount arrangement pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule</a> on page 2190

## Deleting a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer

### Procedure

To delete a discount arrangement pricing rule of a parent customer:

1. Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° View** screen.

- 2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
- 3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
- 4. In the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the discount arrangement pricing rule that you want to delete.  
A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the discount arrangement pricing rule.

**Note:** You can delete a discount arrangement pricing rule only when it is not yet used in the system.

- 5. Click **OK**.  
The discount arrangement pricing rule of a parent customer is deleted.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent customer	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101

**Write-Off Charges during Post Runout**

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to write-off the claim, specific stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, claim based fees, enrollment based fees, ancillary, discount, and funds charges when the bill is generated in the post runout period of the policy. In this case, a write-off adjustment is created against the respective bill segment during the post bill completion. The write-off adjustment is created using the post runout write-off adjustment type which is specified in the respective pricing rule type.

To enable this feature, you need to do the following:

- 1. Set the **Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout** field in the respective pricing rule type to **Yes**.
- 2. Specify the post runout write-off adjustment type in the respective pricing rule type.
- 3. Attach the **C1-PRCRLWOFF** algorithm to the **Post-Bill Completion** system event in the customer class of the accounts for which you want to write-off the charges in the post runout period of the policy.

**Level Funding Pricing**

Level funding is a type of self-funding. It offers all benefits of traditional self-funding. However, it provides one additional benefit which helps to stabilize monthly costs of the self-funded employer to pay off the claim, ancillary, claim based fee, enrollment based fee, and discount charges.

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to process and bill the funds charges to the self-funded employer in either of the following ways:

- Pay the fixed flat amount in every bill period
- Pay the amount based on the enrollment based limit in every bill period

The system enables you to define whether the price items included in the claim, retention type claim based, retention type enrollment based, ancillary, and discount pricing rule types are eligible for level-funding. If the price items are eligible for level-funding, you can then include them in the level-funding pricing rule type indicating that the charges for these price items will not be included in the respective billable charge (for example, claim billable charge), but it would be settled against the funds billable charge. While adjusting such charges against the funds billable charge, there might be some surplus or deficit in funds at the time of settlement which is ideally at the end of year. In such case, the

system enables you configure whether a flat amount or percentage of surplus should be retained by the ASO provider or whether a flat amount or percentage of deficit is offered as a discount to the self-funded employer.

The pricing for the level-funding can be defined using the level-funding pricing rules. You can define a level-funding pricing rule at the parent customer and bill group levels. The level-funding pricing rule at the bill group level takes precedence over the level-funding pricing rule at the parent customer level. You can define the level-funding pricing rules for parent customers and bill groups from the **Customer 360° Information** screen. You can define a level-funding pricing rule using a level-funding pricing rule type. It is the level-funding pricing rule type which helps the system to determine:

- Business object using which the level-funding pricing rule should be created in the system.

**Note:** You must not select the **Primary** option while defining a level-funding pricing rule type.

- Algorithm which should be triggered for deriving the account and price item while creating the funds transaction legs.

**Note:** You must create an algorithm using the **C1\_ACCPRISL** algorithm type and attach it to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event.

- Pricing rule post-processing algorithm which should be triggered once the effective level-funding pricing rule is derived.

**Note:** A pricing rule post-processing algorithm type is not shipped with the product. You can create a custom algorithm type, if required.

- Additional generic information, such as:
  - Whether the funds charge should be written off when the bill is generated in the post runout period of the policy. In this case, a write-off adjustment is created against the respective bill segment during the post bill completion. The write-off adjustment is created using the post runout write-off adjustment type which is specified in the level-funding pricing rule type.
  - Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the price item should be considered for billing.
  - Value which the output parameter in the rule should return when the price item in the level-funding pricing rule type should be considered for processing.
- Price items for which you can define level-funding pricing rules using the level-funding pricing rule type.
- Rate options that you can use while defining the pricing for the level-funded price items.
- Different type of account to which a price item should be billed based on the specified priority.
- Rule type which indicates the rules that should be executed to determine whether the price item is eligible for billing.
- Additional level-funding specific information, such as:
  - Whether the level-funding premium (i.e. funds) should be calculated using the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule or using the retention type enrollment based pricing rule.
  - Bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type or retention type enrollment based pricing rule type which you want to use for calculating the level-funded premium.
  - Price item whose pricing you want to use for calculating the level-funded premium.
  - LF billable charge line type using which you want to create billable charges for level-funded premium.
  - GL only contract type which indicates the contract against which the claim, ancillary, claim based fees, enrollment based fees, and discount charges that are settled against the funds must be debited. The distribution code on the GL only contract type will indicate the GL account against which charges settled against the funds must be debited.

- Liability distribution code will indicate the GL account against which charges settled against the funds must be credited.
- Number of days before which you want to create a To Do for reminding the self-funded employer to renew the level-funded agreement.
- Surplus billable charge line type using which you want to create the billable charge when the surplus funds are left with the ASO provider at the time of settlement.
- Deficit billable charge line type using which you want to create the billable charge when the funds are in deficit at the time of settlement.
- Domestic provider billable charge line type using which you want to create billable charges for the claim, claim based fees, enrollment based fees, ancillary, and discount charges which are settled against the funds for a domestic provider.
- Markup or markdown billable charge line type using which you want to create billable charges for markup or markdown which are settled against the funds.
- Rule type which indicates the rules that should be executed to determine whether the markup or markdown calculation line is eligible for billing.
- Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the markup or markdown calculation line is eligible for billing.
- Rule type which indicates the rules that should be executed to determine whether the level-funded premium is for a domestic provider.
- Transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the level-funded premium is for a domestic provider.

Once a level-funding pricing rule type is defined, you can create level-funding pricing rules using the level-funding pricing rule type. While defining a level-funding pricing rule for a parent customer, you need to specify the following:

- Price item for which you want to define the pricing.
- Specific stop-loss pricing rule of the parent customer whose accumulation parameters you want to inherit for the level-funding. On selecting a specific stop-loss pricing rule, the level-funding pricing date range is set automatically. The level-funding pricing date range is same as the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
- Rate option which you want to use while defining the level-funding pricing.
- Settlement frequency which helps to determine the bill after date. The valid values are:
  - **Immediately** – If you select this option from the list, the bill after date is not calculated. The funds billable charge is billed immediately in the next bill cycle.
  - **Manually (At Required Intervals)** - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date which is specified in the **Manual Settlement Bill After Date** parameter while executing the **C1-BCLF** batch is stamped on the funds billable charge.
  - **Never** - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date which is specified in the **Manual Settlement Bill After Date** parameter while executing the **C1-BCLF** batch is stamped on the funds billable charge.
  - **Yearly** – If you select this option from the list, the bill after date is set to the pricing end date in the funds billable charge.
  - **On Settlement** - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date is set to the settlement date in the funds billable charge.

**Note:** The accumulation parameters, such as incurred start date, incurred end date, paid start date, paid end date, and settlement days are automatically inherited from the parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule. You cannot change any accumulation parameter except the settlement days.



- Settlement days which helps to calculate the settlement date (which is pricing end date, incurred end date, or paid end date whichever is later + the settlement days)
- Whether the customer would like to renew or cancel the level-funded agreement.
- Whether a flat amount or percentage of surplus should be retained by the ASO provider at the time of settlement.
- Whether a flat amount or percentage of deficit should be offered as discount to the self-funded employer at the time of settlement.

However, while defining a level-funding pricing rule for a bill group, you need to specify the following:

- The policy status in which the level-funding pricing rule is applicable.
- Price item for which you want to define the pricing.
- Parent customer's level-funding pricing rule from which you want to inherit the accumulation parameters.

**Note:**

The pricing date range is derived from the parent customer's level-funding pricing rule because the level-funding pricing rules for parent customer and bill group should have the same date range.

The settlement fund price item is derived from the level-funding pricing rule type using which the level-funding pricing rule is created.

- Rate option which you want to use while defining the level-funding pricing.
- Price items whose charges should be accumulated against the level funded price items so that it can be settled against the funds.
- Whether the line items and markup or markdown in a particular claim pricing rule should be accumulated.

**OR**

Whether the line items which are associated with the **Level Funded** pricing rule type category should be accumulated.

- Whether the charges created using the billable charge line types in a particular ancillary pricing rule should be accumulated.

**OR**

Whether the charges created using the billable charge line types where the **Pricing Rule Type Category** characteristic is set to **Ancillary** should be accumulated.

- Whether the discount calculated using a particular discount arrangement pricing rule should be accumulated.
- Whether the charges calculated using the retention type claim based or retention type enrollment based pricing for a price item should be accumulated.

You can also specify a pricing group while defining a level-funding pricing rule for a bill group. Once a level-funding pricing rule is defined for a bill group, the system creates a price assignment in a price list and assigns the price list to the bill group.

The following new batches are introduced in this release:

- **C1-ACLF** – This batch is used to accumulate the charges which are to be settled against the funds. During the accumulation post-processing, the level funded billable charges (which are created through the TFM process) are posted against the GL accounts which are derived using the GL only contract type and liability distribution code information in the level-funding pricing rule type. For more information about the batch, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.
- **C1-BCLF** – Once the level funded billable charges are accumulated, this batch is used to create the accumulated level funded billable charges. It is also used to calculate the bill after date. For more information about the batch, refer to *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

## Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define a level funded pricing rule type, you should have:

- Level Funded Pricing Rule Type business object defined in the application.
- Level Funded Pricing Rule business object defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define a level funded pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Add** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.

The **Select Business Object** screen appears. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create a level funded pricing rule type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You can create a discount arrangement pricing rule type using the <b>Level Funded Pricing Rule Type (C1-PricingRuleTypeDA)</b> business object.	

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can access this screen by clicking the **Add** button in the **Page Title** area of the **Pricing Rule Type** screen.

4. Select the **Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule Type** option from the **Pricing Rule Type Business Object** list.
5. Click **OK**.

The **Level Funded Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify the basic details about the level funded pricing rule type.
- **Algorithms** – Used to associate the algorithms with a level funded pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the level funded pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to add the price items for which you can define the level funded pricing rules using the level funded pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to add the price item parameters based on which you want to define the price item pricing.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define the characteristics for a level funded pricing rule type.
- **DA – Specific Additional Data** – Used to define the level funded - specific additional data in a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to specify the level funded pricing rule type.	Yes
Description	Used to specify the description for the level funded pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the level funded pricing rule type.	No
Pricing Rule Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the level funded pricing rule. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the business object using which you are defining the level funded pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the level funded pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active</li> <li>Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to indicate whether the pricing rule type is a primary pricing rule type.  <b>Note:</b> You must not select the <b>Primary</b> option while defining a level funded pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type Category	Used to indicate the category to which the pricing rule type belongs. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Level Funded</li> </ul>	Yes

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Ensure that **Primary** option is not selected when you are defining a level funded pricing rule type.
- Associate the following algorithms with the discount arrangement pricing rule type:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Account and Price Item Derivation	C1_ACCPRISL	C1_ACCPRISL	Account and Priceitem Derivation For Level Funded
Accumulation Post Processing	C1-LFACPOST	C1-LFACPOST	Level Funded Accumulation Post Processing

- Define additional data for a level funded pricing rule type, if required.
- Add the required price items in the level funded pricing rule type.
- Add the price item parameters in the level funded pricing rule type, if required.
- Define characteristics for a level funded pricing rule type, if required.
- Add level funded-specific additional data in the level funded pricing rule type.
- Click **Save**.

The level funded pricing rule type is defined.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to associate algorithms with the level funded pricing rule type	
How to define additional data for a level funded pricing rule type	
How to add price items in the level funded pricing rule type	
How to add price item parameters in the level funded pricing rule type	
How to define characteristics for a level funded pricing rule type	
How to add level funded - specific data in the discount arrangement pricing rule type	

## Associating an Algorithm with a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To associate algorithms with a level funding pricing rule type, you should have:

- An algorithm defined using the **C1\_ACCPRIDIS** algorithm type.



### Procedure

To associate algorithms with a discount arrangement pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Algorithms** section is expanded when you are defining or editing the discount arrangement pricing rule type.


The **Algorithms** section contains the following columns in a grid:


Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
System Event	Used to indicate the system event when you want to invoke the algorithm. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Account and Price Item Derivation</li> <li>• Accumulation Billable Charge Post Proc</li> <li>• Accumulation Billable Charge Pre Proc</li> <li>• Accumulation Post Processing</li> <li>• Accumulation Pre Processing</li> <li>• Pricing Rule Post Processing</li> <li>• Transaction Validation</li> </ul>	Yes
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the discount arrangement pricing rule type.

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Used to specify the order in which the algorithms for each system event must be executed.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> Once you select the system event, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Algorithm</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon, the <b>Algorithm Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the algorithm, the description of the algorithm appears corresponding to the <b>Algorithm</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are associating an algorithm with the discount arrangement pricing rule type.

2. Enter the following details in the **Algorithms** section:

System Event	Sequence	Algorithm
Account and Price Item Derivation	10	C1_ACCPRIDIS

3. If you want to associate more than one algorithm with the discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to disassociate an algorithm from the discount arrangement pricing rule type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the algorithm.

4. Click **Save**.

The algorithms are associated with the discount arrangement pricing rule type.

### Related Topics


For more information on...	See...
How to define the discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2162
How to edit the discount arrangement pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2179


## Defining Additional Data in a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type

### Procedure

To define additional data in a level funded pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Additional Data** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a level funded pricing rule type.  
The **Additional Data** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Eligible for Specific Stop-Loss	Used to indicate whether price items included in the level funded pricing rule type are eligible for specific stop-loss. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
Eligible for Level Funding	Used to indicate whether price items included in the level funded pricing rule type are eligible for level funding. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
Run-in Identifier Value	Used to specify the identifier value to determine whether the level funded transaction is received during the run-in period of the policy.	No
Third Party Identifier Value	Used to specify the identifier value to determine whether the level funded transaction is received from an external source system.	No
Accumulation Only Identifier Value	Used to specify the identifier value to determine whether the level funded transaction contains the accumulated information of ASL, SSL, and Level Funding pricing types.	No
Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout	Used to indicate whether the level funded charges should be written off when the bill is generated in the post runout period of the policy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Write-Off Charges during Post Runout</a> section.	
Post Runout Write-Off Adjustment Type	Used to specify the adjustment type using which you want to create post runout write-off adjustment.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b> .  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Post Runout Write-Off Adjustment Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Adjustment Type Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the adjustment type, the description of the adjustment type appears corresponding to the <b>Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b> .

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field	<p>Used to indicate the transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the price item should be considered for billing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Price Item Eligibility</a> on page 2280 section.</p> <p>This field appears when the <b>Eligible for Write-Off in Post Runout</b> field is set to <b>Yes</b>.</p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the field name, the description of the field name appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field</b>.</p>	No
Rule Based Eligibility Value	Used to specify the value which the output parameter in the rule should return when the price item in the discount arrangement pricing rule type should be considered for processing.	Yes (Conditional) <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when a value is specified in the <b>Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>

- Enter the required details in the **Additional Data** section.
- Click **Save**.

The additional data is defined for the pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2198
How to edit a level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2213

## Adding a Price Item in a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To add a price item in a level funded pricing rule type, you should have:

- Price item defined in the application
- Rate options defined in the **Rate Option (C1-ExtLookRetTypeRateOpt)** extendable lookup
- Values defined for the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic type
- The **C1INVTYP** characteristic type set in the **Invoice Type Characteristic Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLNG** feature configuration





- Rule types defined in the application (where the rule type usage is set to **Price Item Eligibility**)

**Procedure**







To add a price item in a level funded pricing rule type:


- Ensure that the **Price Items** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a level funded pricing rule type.


The **Price Items** section contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)				
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item that you want to include in the level funded pricing rule type.	Yes (Conditional)				
	<div><b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field.</div>	<div><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are adding a rate option and bill to account in the level funded pricing rule type.</div>				
Rate Option	Used to indicate one or more rate options which are valid for a price item.	Not applicable				
	On clicking the <b>Add</b> (  ) icon, the following field appears in a grid:					
	<table><tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr><tr><td>Rate Option</td><td>Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining pricing for the price item.</td><td>Yes</td></tr></table>		Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Rate Option
Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)				
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining pricing for the price item.	Yes				
	<div><b>Note:</b>  If you want to define more than one rate option to the price item in the level funded pricing rule type, click the <b>Add</b> (  ) icon.  However, if you want to remove a price item from a level funded pricing rule type, click the <b>Delete</b> (  ) icon corresponding to the <b>Rate Option</b> field.</div>					



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Bill To Account	<p>Used to indicate a order in which the account should be considered while deriving a transaction leg.</p> <p>On clicking the <b>Add</b> () icon, the following fields appear in a grid:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Priority</td><td>Used to specify the order in which the invoice type is considered for a price item.</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>Invoice Type</td><td> <p>Used to indicate the type which is considered for billing. For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Bill Group's Account</a> on page 47 section.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Invoice Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Invoice Type Search</b> window appears.</p> </div> </td><td>Yes</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If you want to define more than one invoice type to the price item in a level funded pricing rule type, click the <b>Add</b> () icon.</p> <p>However, if you want to remove a invoice type from the price item in a level funded pricing rule type, click the <b>Delete</b> () icon corresponding to the <b>Priority</b> field.</p>	Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Priority	Used to specify the order in which the invoice type is considered for a price item.	Yes	Invoice Type	<p>Used to indicate the type which is considered for billing. For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Bill Group's Account</a> on page 47 section.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Invoice Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Invoice Type Search</b> window appears.</p> </div>	Yes	Not applicable
Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Priority	Used to specify the order in which the invoice type is considered for a price item.	Yes									
Invoice Type	<p>Used to indicate the type which is considered for billing. For more information, refer to the <a href="#">Bill Group's Account</a> on page 47 section.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> () icon appears corresponding to the <b>Invoice Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Invoice Type Search</b> window appears.</p> </div>	Yes									
Eligibility Rule Type	Used to indicate the rule type which indicates the rules that should be executed to determine whether the price item is eligible for billing.	No									

- Enter the required details in the **Price Items** section.
- If you want to define more than one price item in a level funded pricing rule type, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price item from a level funded pricing rule type, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the **Price Item** field.

- Click **Save**.

The price items are added for a level funded pricing rule type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2198
How to edit a level funded pricing rule type	

## Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To add a price item parameter in a pricing rule type, you should have:

- Parameters defined in the application
- Transaction field defined in the application
- Price item parameter associated with the price item

### Procedure

To add a price item parameter in a pricing rule type:

1. Ensure that the **Price Item Parameters** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a pricing rule type.

The **Price Item Parameters** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item Parameter	Used to specify the parameter which you can use while defining the pricing for the price item.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field, the <b>Parameter Search</b> window appears. On specifying the parameter, the description of the price item parameter appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining the pricing rule type.
Transaction Field	Used to specify the transaction field from where the data should be retrieved.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On clicking the <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon corresponding to the <b>Transaction Field</b> field, the <b>Transaction Field Search</b> window appears. On specifying the transaction field, the description of the transaction field appears corresponding to the <b>Transaction Field</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required once the price item parameter is specified.
Eligible for Specific Stop-Loss	Used to indicate whether the price item parameter can be used in the accumulation criteria.	No

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Eligible for Level Funding	Used to specify whether the price item parameter can be used in level funding or not.	No

- Enter the required details in the **Price Item Parameters** section.
- If you want to add more than one price item parameter for the pricing rule type, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a price item parameter from the pricing rule type, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the price item parameter.

- Click **Save**.

A price item parameter is added for the pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1910
How to define a specific stop-loss (SSL) pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1940
How to define an aggregate stop-loss (ASL) pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1976
How to define a retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2011
How to define a retention type enrollment based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2040
How to define a one-time flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2068
How to define a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2082
How to define a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2097
How to edit the claim pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Claim Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1915
How to edit the specific stop-loss (SSL) pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1945
How to edit the aggregate stop-loss (ASL) pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing an Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1981
How to edit the retention type claim based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2015
How to edit the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2043
How to edit a one-time flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2072
How to edit a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2087

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2101

## Defining Characteristics for a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define characteristics for a level funded pricing rule type, you should have:

- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule Type**)

### Procedure


To define characteristics for a level funded pricing rule type:


- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a discount arrangement pricing rule type.


The **Characteristics** section contains the following columns in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for a level funded pricing rule type.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for a level funded pricing rule type.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.

**Note:** If you select a predefined characteristic type, the **Search**  icon appears corresponding to the **Characteristic Value** field. On clicking the **Search** icon, you can search for a predefined characteristic value.

- If you want to define more than one characteristic for a level funded pricing rule type, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from a level funded pricing rule type, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

- Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for a level funded pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2198

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2213

## Defining the Level Funded Specific Additional Data in a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To define level funded specific additional data in a level funded pricing rule type, you should have:

- A rule type defined for **Markup or Markdown Eligibility Rule Type** and **Domestic Provider Eligibility Rule Type** field.



### Procedure







To add the level-funded data in a level funded pricing rule type:







1. Ensure that the







**Level Funded - Specific Additional Data** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a level funded pricing rule type.

The **Level Funded - Specific Additional Data** section contains the following fields:



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Funding Arrangement	Used to indicate whether the level-funded premium (i.e. funds) should be calculated using the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule or using the retention type enrollment based pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enrollment Based Premium</li> <li>• Flat Rate Based Premium</li> </ul>	Yes
Settlement Fund Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule type or the retention type enrollment based pricing rule type which you want to use for calculating the level-funded premium. <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The Search  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Settlement Fund Pricing Rule Type</b> field. On clicking the Search  icon corresponding to the <b>Settlement Fund Pricing Rule Type</b> field, the <b>Contract Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the contract type, the description of the contact type appears corresponding to the <b>Settlement Fund Pricing Rule Type</b> field.</p> </div>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Settlement Fund Price Item	<p>Used to indicate the price item that you want to use for calculating the level-funded premium.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Settlement Fund Price Item</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Settlement Fund Price Item</b> field, the <b>Price Item Details</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the price item details, the description of the price item details appears corresponding to the <b>Settlement Fund Price Item</b> field.</p>	Yes
LF Billable Charge Line Type	<p>Used to indicate the level funded billable charge line type using which you want to create the billable charges for level-funded settlement purposes.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>LF Billable Charge Line Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>LF Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> field.</p>	Yes
GL Only Contract Type	<p>Used to indicate the contract against which the level-funded billable charges for claim, ancillary, claim based fees, enrollment based fees, discount, specific stop-loss, and aggregate stop-loss must be debited.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>GL Only Contract Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>GL Only Contract Type</b> field, the <b>Contract Type Search</b> window appears.</p>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Liability Distribution Code	<p>Used to indicate the GL account against which the level-funded billable charges (that are settled against the level-funded premium billable charge) must be credited.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Liability Distribution Code</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Liability Distribution Code</b> field, the <b>Distribution Code Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the distribution code, the description of the distribution code appears corresponding to the <b>Liability Distribution Code</b> field.</p>	Yes
Renewal Decision Lead Time	Used to specify the number of days before which you want to create a To Do for reminding the self-funded employer to renew the level-funded agreement.	Yes
Surplus Billable Charge Line Type	<p>Used to indicate the surplus billable charge line type using which you want to create the billable charge when the surplus funds are left with the ASO provider at the time of settlement.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Surplus Billable Charge Line Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Surplus Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Surplus Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	Yes
Deficit Billable Charge Line Type	<p>Used to indicate the deficit billable charge line type using which you want to create the billable charge when the funds are in deficit at the time of settlement.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Deficit Billable Charge Line Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Deficit Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Deficit Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Domestic Provider Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the domestic provider billable charge line type using which you want to create level-funded settlement billable charge for a domestic provider.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Domestic Provider Billable Charge Line Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Domestic Provider Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Domestic Provider Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	
Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the markup or markdown billable charge line type using which you want to create the billable charges for markup or markdown which are settled against the level-funded premium.	No
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type</b> field, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Markup or Markdown Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p>	
Markup or Markdown Eligibility Rule Type	Used to indicate the rules that should be executed to determine whether the markup or markdown calculation line is eligible for billing.	No
Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field	Used to indicate the transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the markup or markdown calculation line is eligible for billing.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field Type</b> field, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the eligibility field, the description of the field appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Markup or Markdown Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>	
		<p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are specifying a markup or markdown eligibility rule type in a level funded pricing rule type.</p>



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Domestic Provider Eligibility Rule Type	Used to indicate the rules that should be executed to determine whether the level-funded premium is for a domestic provider.	No
Rule Based Domestic Provider Claim Eligibility Field	<p>Used to indicate the transaction field which you want to use in the rules as the output parameter to determine whether the level-funded premium is for a domestic provider.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Domestic Provider Claim Eligibility Field</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Domestic Provider Claim Eligibility Field</b> field, the <b>Field Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the eligibility field, the description of the field appears corresponding to the <b>Rule Based Domestic Provider Claim Eligibility Field</b> field.</p>	<p>Yes (Conditional)</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are specifying a domestic provider eligibility rule type in a level funded pricing rule type.</p>

- Enter the required details in the **Level Funded - Specific Additional Data** section.
- Click **Save**.

The level funded-specific data is added in the level funded pricing rule type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2198
How to edit a level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2213

## Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type

### Prerequisites

To edit a level funded pricing rule type, you should have:

- Level funded pricing rule type business object defined in the application.
- Level funded pricing rule business object defined in the application.

### Procedure

To edit a level funded pricing rule type:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.

4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Edit** (✎) icon in the **Edit** column corresponding to the pricing rule type whose details you want to edit.

The **Level Funded Pricing Rule Type** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details about the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- **Algorithms** – Used to associate the algorithms with a discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- **Additional Data** – Used to specify the additional information about the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- **Price Items** – Used to add the price items for which you can define the discount arrangement pricing rules using the discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- **Price Item Parameters** – Used to add the price item parameters based on which you want to define the price item pricing.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for a discount arrangement pricing rule type.
- **Level Funded - Specific Additional Data** – Used to define the discount arrangement - specific additional data in a discount arrangement pricing rule type.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the level funded pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Description	Used to specify the description for the level funded pricing rule type.	Yes
Detailed Description	Used to specify additional information about the level funded pricing rule type.	No
Pricing Rule Business Object	Used to indicate the business object using which you want to create the level funded pricing rule. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule</li> </ul>	Yes
Business Object	Indicates the business object used while defining the level funded pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Status	Used to indicate the status of the level funded pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active</li> <li>• Inactive</li> </ul>	Yes
Primary	Used to indicate whether the pricing rule type is primary.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> You must not select the <b>Primary</b> option while defining the level funded pricing rule type.	
Pricing Rule Type Category	Indicates the pricing rule type category for the level funded pricing rule type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Level Funded</li> </ul>	No

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can edit the details of a level funded pricing rule type by clicking the **Edit** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Modify the details in the **Main** section.
6. Associate the following algorithms with the level funded pricing rule type:

System Event	Algorithm	Algorithm Type	Description
Account and Price Item Derivation	C1_ACCPRIS	C1_ACCPRID	Account and Priceitem Derivation For Level Funded
Accumulation Post Processing	C1-LFACPOST	C1-LFACPOST	Level Funded Accumulation Post Processing

7. Modify the additional data for a level funded pricing rule type, if required.
8. Add, edit, or remove the required price items in the level funded pricing rule type.
9. Add, edit, or remove the price item parameters in the level funded pricing rule type, if required.
10. Add, edit, or remove characteristics for a level funded pricing rule type, if required.
11. Modify the level funded-specific additional data in the level funded pricing rule type, if required.
12. Click **Save**.

The changes made to the level funded pricing rule type are saved.

### **Related Topics**


For more information on...	See...
How to associate algorithms with the level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Associating an Algorithm with a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2200
How to define additional data for a level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Additional Data in a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2201
How to add price items in the level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item in a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2203
How to add price item parameters in the level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Adding a Price Item Parameter in a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a>
How to define characteristics for a level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining Characteristics for a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2208
How to define level funded-specific data in the level funded pricing rule type	<a href="#">Defining the Level Funded Specific Additional Data in a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 2209

## **Deleting a Level Funded Pricing Rule Type**

### **Procedure**

To delete a level funded pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.

4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Delete** () icon in the **Delete** column corresponding to the level funded pricing rule type that you want to delete.

A message appears confirming whether you want to delete the level funded pricing rule type.

**Note:** You can delete a level funded pricing rule type only when it is not yet used in the system.

**Tip:** Alternatively, you can delete a level funded pricing rule type by clicking the **Delete** button in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

5. Click **OK**.

The level funded pricing rule type is deleted.


**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

**Viewing the Level Funded Pricing Rule Type Details**

**Procedure**

To view the details of a level funded pricing rule type:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **P** and then click **Pricing Rule Type**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Pricing Rule Type** sub-menu.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** screen appears.
4. In the **Pricing Rule Type List** zone, click the **Broadcast** () icon corresponding to the level funded pricing rule type whose details you want to view.  
The **Pricing Rule Type** zone appears.
5. View the details of the level funded pricing rule type in the **Pricing Rule Type** zone.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type List</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type List</a> on page 1898
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

**Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer**

**Prerequisites**


To define a level funded pricing rule for a parent customer, you should have:

- Pricing rule type where the category is set to **Level Funded**.

- Price items associated with the level funded pricing rule type.
- Specific stop-loss pricing rule of the parent customer, whose accumulation parameters you want to inherit for level-funding.

### **Procedure**

To define a level funded pricing rule for a parent customer:

1. Search for a parent customer in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the parent customer whose pricing details you want to view.

The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.

3. Click the **Pricing** tab.

The **Pricing** tab appears.

4. Click the **Add** link in the upper-right corner of the **Parent Customer Pricing Rules** zone.

The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Indicates the parent customer for whom you want to create a level funded pricing rule type.	Not applicable
Person Type	Indicates the type of the parent customer. The valid value is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Parent Customer</b></li> </ul>	Not applicable
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type using which you want to create a level funded pricing rule.	Yes

5. Select the required pricing rule type in the respective field.
6. Click **OK**.

The **Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the information about the parent customer for whom you are defining the level funded pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	Indicates the parent customer for whom you are defining the level funded pricing rule.
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type using which you are defining the level funded pricing rule.

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details in the level funding pricing rule.
- **Accumulation Parameters** – Used to define the accumulation parameters in a level funded pricing rule.
- **Final Settlement Rules** – Used to define the final settlement rules when the customer decides to renew or cancel the level-funded agreement.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the level funded pricing rule.

#### **Note:**

The **Accumulation Parameters** and **Final Settlement Rules** section appear only when you specify a price item in the **Main** section.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item for which you want to define the level funded pricing rule.	Yes
Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Used to indicate the date range of each specific stop-loss pricing rule, defined for the parent customer.  <b>Note:</b> On selecting the specific stop-loss pricing rule of the parent customer, the level funded <b>Pricing Start Date</b> and <b>Pricing End Date</b> field is set automatically.	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the level funded pricing rule is effective.  <b>Note:</b> The pricing start date cannot be later than the pricing end date.	Yes
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the date till when the level funded pricing rule is effective.  <b>Note:</b> The pricing end date cannot be earlier than the pricing start date.	No
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining the pricing for the price item.	Yes
Settlement Frequency	Used to indicate the settlement frequency which helps to determine the bill after date. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Immediately</b> - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date is not calculated. The level-funded settlement billable charge is billed immediately in the next bill cycle.</li> <li>• <b>Manually (At Regular Intervals)</b> - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date which is specified in the <b>Manual Settlement Bill After Date</b> parameter while executing the <b>C1-BCLF</b> batch is stamped on the level-funded settlement billable charge.</li> <li>• <b>Monthly</b> - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date is set to the last day of the month.</li> <li>• <b>On Settlement</b> - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date is set to the settlement date in the level-funded settlement billable charge.</li> <li>• <b>Yearly</b> - If you select this option from the list, the bill after date in the credit billable charge is set to the pricing end date in the level-funded settlement billable charge.</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Underwriter Review	Used to indicate whether the underwriter settlement review flag is on or off. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> By default the value of this option type is set to <b>Yes</b> .	

- Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
- Define the accumulation parameters in the level funded pricing rule.
- Define the final settlement rules in the level funded pricing rule.
- Define characteristics for the level funded pricing rule, if required.
- Click **Save**.

The level funded pricing rule is defined for the parent customer.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent customer	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to define the accumulation parameters in a level funded pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Accumulation Parameters in a Level Funded Pricing Rule</a> on page 2219
How to define the final settlement rules in a level funded pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining the Final Settlement Rules in a Level Funded Pricing Rule</a> on page 2221
How to define the characteristics for a level funded pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Level Funded Pricing Rule</a> on page 2226

## Defining Accumulation Parameters in a Level Funded Pricing Rule

### Procedure

To define accumulation parameters in a level funding pricing rule:

- Ensure that the **Accumulation Parameters** section is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Price Item** field of the **Main** section while defining a level funded pricing rule.

The **Accumulation Parameters** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Accumulation Group ID	Displays a blank field. An accumulation group ID is generated when accumulation parameter values are defined for a level funded pricing rule.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It is a read-only field.	
Settlement Account ID	Used to indicate the account ID to whom the settlement amount is credited.	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Incurred Start Date	Displays the incurred start date (inherited from parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule) based on which you want to accumulate the level funded pricing.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It is a read-only field.	
Incurred End Date	Displays the incurred end date (inherited from parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule) based on which you want to accumulate the level funded pricing.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It is a read-only field.	
Paid Start Date	Displays the paid start date (inherited from parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule) based on which you want to accumulate the level funded pricing.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It is a read-only field.	
Paid End Date	Displays the paid end date (inherited from parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule) based on which you want to accumulate the level funded pricing.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It is a read-only field.	
Settlement Days	Used to indicate the number of days as the settlement days which help in calculating the settlement date. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 30 Days</li> <li>• 60 Days</li> <li>• 90 Days</li> <li>• 120 Days</li> <li>• 150 Days</li> <li>• 180 Days</li> </ul>	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> Settlement date is calculated as the pricing end date, incurred end date, or paid end date whichever is later plus the settlement days.	

2. Enter the required details in the **Accumulation Parameters** section.

3. Click **Save**.

The accumulation parameters are defined in the level funded pricing rule.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a level funded pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2216



For more information on...	See...
How to edit a level funded pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a>

## Defining the Final Settlement Rules in a Level Funded Pricing Rule

### Procedure

To define the final settlement rules in a level funded pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Final Settlement Rules** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a level funded pricing rule type.

The **Final Settlement Rules** section contains the following sub-sections:

- **Customer Renews** - Used to define the final settlement rules when the customer renews the contract.
- **Customer Cancels** - Used to define the final settlement rules when the customer cancels the contract.
- **Renewal Decision** - Used to indicate the status for the upcoming level funded contract.

The **Customer Renews** sub-section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Final Settlement Mode	Displays the final settlement mode when the customer renews the level funded agreement. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Final Settlement Surplus</li> <li>Final Settlement Deficit</li> </ul>	Not applicable									
Final Settlement Option	Used to indicate the final settlement option when the customer renews the level funded agreement. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Final Settlement Surplus</td><td>Used to indicate the final settlement option in case of surplus.</td><td>Yes</td></tr> <tr> <td>Final Settlement Deficit</td><td>Used to indicate the final settlement option in case of deficit.</td><td>Yes</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Final Settlement Surplus	Used to indicate the final settlement option in case of surplus.	Yes	Final Settlement Deficit	Used to indicate the final settlement option in case of deficit.	Yes	Not applicable
Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Final Settlement Surplus	Used to indicate the final settlement option in case of surplus.	Yes									
Final Settlement Deficit	Used to indicate the final settlement option in case of deficit.	Yes									

Field Name	Field Description			Mandatory (Yes or No)
Flat/ Percentage	Used to indicate the final settlement payment type when the customer renews the level funded agreement.			Not applicable
	Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	
	Final Settlement Surplus	Used to indicate the payment type in case of surplus. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flat Dollar</li> <li>Percentage</li> </ul>	Yes	
	Final Settlement Deficit	Used to indicate the payment type in case of deficit. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flat Dollar</li> <li>Percentage</li> </ul>	Yes	
Percentage Retained	Used to specify the percentage retained by the ASO provider when the customer renews the level funded agreement.			Not applicable
	Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	
	Final Settlement Surplus	Used to specify the percentage of surplus that should be retained by the ASO provider. <div>Note: This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Percentage</b>.</div>	Yes (Conditional)	
	Final Settlement Deficit	Used to specify the percentage of deficit that should be offered as a discount by the ASO provider. <div>Note: This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Percentage</b>.</div>	Yes (Conditional)	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Flat Effective Payout	Used to specify the actual amount which should be retained by the ASO provider or offered as a discount, when the customer renews the level funded agreement.	Not applicable									
	<table><tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr><tr><td>Final Settlement Surplus</td><td>Used to specify the actual amount of surplus that should be retained by the ASO provider.<div><b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Flat Dollar</b>.</div></td><td>Yes (Conditional)</td></tr><tr><td>Final Settlement Deficit</td><td>Used to specify the actual amount of deficit that should be offered as a discount by the ASO provider.<div><b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Flat Dollar</b>.</div></td><td>Yes (Conditional)</td></tr></table>		Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Final Settlement Surplus	Used to specify the actual amount of surplus that should be retained by the ASO provider. <div><b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Flat Dollar</b>.</div>	Yes (Conditional)	Final Settlement Deficit	Used to specify the actual amount of deficit that should be offered as a discount by the ASO provider. <div><b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Flat Dollar</b>.</div>	Yes (Conditional)
	Field Name		Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)							
	Final Settlement Surplus		Used to specify the actual amount of surplus that should be retained by the ASO provider. <div><b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Flat Dollar</b>.</div>	Yes (Conditional)							
Final Settlement Deficit	Used to specify the actual amount of deficit that should be offered as a discount by the ASO provider. <div><b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Flat Dollar</b>.</div>	Yes (Conditional)									

The **Customer Cancels** sub-section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Final Settlement Mode	Displays final settlement mode when the customer cancels the level funded agreement. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Final Settlement Surplus</li><li>Final Settlement Deficit</li></ul>	Not applicable									
Final Settlement Option	Used to indicate the final settlement option when the customer cancels the level funded agreement. <table><tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr><tr><td>Final Settlement Surplus</td><td>Used to indicate the final settlement option in case of surplus.</td><td>Yes</td></tr><tr><td>Final Settlement Deficit</td><td>Used to indicate the final settlement option in case of deficit.</td><td>Yes</td></tr></table>	Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Final Settlement Surplus	Used to indicate the final settlement option in case of surplus.	Yes	Final Settlement Deficit	Used to indicate the final settlement option in case of deficit.	Yes	Not applicable
Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Final Settlement Surplus	Used to indicate the final settlement option in case of surplus.	Yes									
Final Settlement Deficit	Used to indicate the final settlement option in case of deficit.	Yes									

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Flat/ Percentage	Used to indicate the final settlement payment type when the customer cancels the level funded agreement.	Not applicable									
	<table><tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr><tr><td>Final Settlement Surplus</td><td>Used to indicate the payment type in case of surplus. The valid values are:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Flat Dollar</li><li>Percentage</li></ul></td><td>Yes</td></tr><tr><td>Final Settlement Deficit</td><td>Used to indicate the payment type in case of deficit. The valid values are:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Flat Dollar</li><li>Percentage</li></ul></td><td>Yes</td></tr></table>		Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Final Settlement Surplus	Used to indicate the payment type in case of surplus. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Flat Dollar</li><li>Percentage</li></ul>	Yes	Final Settlement Deficit	Used to indicate the payment type in case of deficit. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Flat Dollar</li><li>Percentage</li></ul>	Yes
	Field Name		Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)							
	Final Settlement Surplus		Used to indicate the payment type in case of surplus. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Flat Dollar</li><li>Percentage</li></ul>	Yes							
Final Settlement Deficit	Used to indicate the payment type in case of deficit. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Flat Dollar</li><li>Percentage</li></ul>	Yes									
Percentage Retained	Used to specify the percentage retained by the ASO provider when the customer cancels the level funded agreement.	Not applicable									
Percentage Retained	<table><tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr><tr><td>Final Settlement Surplus</td><td>Used to specify the percentage of surplus that should be retained by the ASO provider.<div>Note: This field appears when the Flat/Percentage field is Percentage.</div></td><td>Yes</td></tr><tr><td>Final Settlement Deficit</td><td>Used to specify the percentage of deficit that should be offered as a discount by the ASO provider.<div>Note: This field appears when the Flat/Percentage field is Percentage.</div></td><td>Yes</td></tr></table>		Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Final Settlement Surplus	Used to specify the percentage of surplus that should be retained by the ASO provider. <div>Note: This field appears when the Flat/Percentage field is Percentage.</div>	Yes	Final Settlement Deficit	Used to specify the percentage of deficit that should be offered as a discount by the ASO provider. <div>Note: This field appears when the Flat/Percentage field is Percentage.</div>	Yes
	Field Name		Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)							
	Final Settlement Surplus		Used to specify the percentage of surplus that should be retained by the ASO provider. <div>Note: This field appears when the Flat/Percentage field is Percentage.</div>	Yes							
Final Settlement Deficit	Used to specify the percentage of deficit that should be offered as a discount by the ASO provider. <div>Note: This field appears when the Flat/Percentage field is Percentage.</div>	Yes									

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Flat Effective Payout	Used to specify the actual amount which should be retained by the ASO provider or offered as a discount, when the customer cancels the level funded agreement.	Not applicable									
	<table><tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr><tr><td>Final Settlement Surplus</td><td>Used to specify the actual amount of surplus that should be retained by the ASO provider.<div><b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Flat Dollar</b>.</div></td><td>Yes</td></tr><tr><td>Final Settlement Deficit</td><td>Used to specify the actual amount of deficit that should be offered as a discount by the ASO provider.<div><b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Flat Dollar</b>.</div></td><td>Yes</td></tr></table>		Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Final Settlement Surplus	Used to specify the actual amount of surplus that should be retained by the ASO provider. <div><b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Flat Dollar</b>.</div>	Yes	Final Settlement Deficit	Used to specify the actual amount of deficit that should be offered as a discount by the ASO provider. <div><b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Flat Dollar</b>.</div>	Yes
	Field Name		Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)							
	Final Settlement Surplus		Used to specify the actual amount of surplus that should be retained by the ASO provider. <div><b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Flat Dollar</b>.</div>	Yes							
Final Settlement Deficit	Used to specify the actual amount of deficit that should be offered as a discount by the ASO provider. <div><b>Note:</b> This field appears when the <b>Flat/Percentage</b> field is <b>Flat Dollar</b>.</div>	Yes									

The **Renewal Decision** sub-section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Renewal Decision	Used to indicate the upcoming status of the level funded contract. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cancelled</li> <li>Renewed</li> </ul>	No
	<div><b>Note:</b></div> This field appears only when the level funded current contract date is exceeded.	

- Enter the required details in the **Final Settlement Rules** section.
- Click **Save**.

The final settlement rules are added in the level funded pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a level funded pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2216

For more information on...	See...
How to edit a level funded pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a>

Defining a Characteristic for a Level Funded Pricing Rule

Prerequisites

To define a characteristic for a level funded pricing rule, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**).


Procedure

To define a characteristic for a level funded pricing rule:

- Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a level funded pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in the grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for a level funded pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for a level funded pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for a level funded pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for a level funded pricing rule.

- Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
- If you want to define more than one characteristic for the level funded pricing rule, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the level funded pricing rule, click the **Delete** () icon corresponding to the characteristic.

#### 4. Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the level funded pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a level funded pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2216
How to edit a level funded pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a>
How to define a level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2227
How to edit a level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a>

## Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Bill Group



### Prerequisites

To define a level funded pricing rule for a bill group, you should have:

- Pricing rule type where the category is set to **Level Funded**.
- Price items associated with the level funded pricing rule type.
- Specific stop-loss pricing rule of the parent customer, whose accumulation parameters you want to inherit for level-funding.
- Policy status defined in the application.

### Procedure

To define a level funded pricing rule for a bill group:

1. Search for the Administrative Services Only (ASO) person, whose person type is set to **Bill Group**, in the **Customer 360° View** screen.
2. In the **Search Results** section, click the **View** () icon corresponding to the person whose pricing details you want to view.  
The **Person** tab appears in the **Customer 360° Information** screen.
3. Click the **Pricing** tab.  
The **Pricing** tab appears.
4. Click the **Broadcast** () icon in the **Bill Group Policy Information** zone, corresponding to the **Bill Group Information** column, whose bill group details you want to view.  
The **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone is displayed.
5. Click the **Add** link in the upper right corner of the **Bill Group Policy Pricing Rules** zone.  
The **Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Name	Indicates the name of the parent customer.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person Type	Indicates the type of the parent customer.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> If you are defining the pricing rule type for the parent customer, then the person type will be <b>Parent Customer</b> .	
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the pricing rule type using which you want to create a level funded pricing rule.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> Select the <b>Level Funded Pricing Rule Type</b> option, as the pricing rule.	<b>Note:</b> If the pricing rule type is not selected then the application displays an error message.
Pricing Group	Used to indicate the pricing group which is used while defining the pricing.	No
Policy Status	Used to indicate the policy status for the pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Force/Active</li> <li>Runout</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> Policy Status is required once the Pricing Rule Type is selected.

6. Click **OK**.

The **Level Funded (LF) Pricing Rule** screen appears. It contains the following sections:

- **Customer Information** – Displays the information about the bill group. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information.
Policy Start Date	Displays the date from when the policy is effective.
Policy End Date	Displays the date till when the policy is effective.
Policy Status	Indicates the policy status for the pricing rule.
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type for whom the level funded pricing rule is created.

- **Main** – Used to specify basic details in the level funding pricing rule.
- **Accumulation Criteria** – Used to define the accumulation criteria in a level funded pricing rule.
- **Pricing Information for rule type category : Claim** – Used to define the line items in a particular claim pricing rule or those which are associated with the level funded rule type category.
- **Pricing Information for rule type category : Ancillary** – Used to define the line items in a particular ancillary pricing rule or those which are associated with the level funded rule type category.
- **Pricing Information for rule type category : Discount** – Used to define the discount arrangement pricing rule which is effective for level-funding calculations.
- **Pricing Information for rule type category : Retention** – Used to define the retention pricing rule which is effective for level-funding calculations.
- **Characteristics** – Used to define characteristics for the level funded pricing rule.



**Note:**

The **Accumulation Criteria**, **Pricing Information for rule type category: Claim**, **Pricing Information for rule type category: Ancillary**, **Pricing Information for rule type category: Discount**, and **Pricing Information for rule type category: Retention** section appear only when you specify a price item in the **Main** section.

The **Main** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item for which you want to define the level funded pricing rule.	Yes
Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Used to indicate the date range of each specific stop-loss pricing rule, defined for the parent customer.  <b>Note:</b> On selecting the specific stop-loss pricing rule of the parent customer, the level funded <b>Pricing Start Date</b> and <b>Pricing End Date</b> field is set automatically.	Yes
Pricing Start Date	Used to specify the date from when the level funded pricing rule is effective.  <b>Note:</b> The pricing start date cannot be later than the pricing end date.	Not applicable
Pricing End Date	Used to specify the date till when the level funded pricing rule is effective.  <b>Note:</b> The pricing end date cannot be earlier than the pricing start date.	Not applicable
Rate Option	Used to indicate the rate option that you want to use while defining the pricing for the price item.	Yes
Settlement Fund Price Item	Used to indicate the price item derived from the level funded pricing rule type, used to create the level funded pricing rule type.	Not applicable

7. Enter the required details in the **Main** section.
8. Define the accumulation criteria in the level funded pricing rule for a bill group.
9. Define the pricing information for the claim rule type category for a bill group.
10. Define the pricing information for the ancillary rule type category for a bill group, if required.
11. Define the pricing information for the discount rule type category for a bill group, if required.
12. Define the pricing information for the retention rule type category for a bill group, if required.
13. Define characteristics for the level funded pricing rule for a bill group, if required, if required.
14. Click **Save**.

The level funded pricing rule is defined for a bill group.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to search for a parent customer	<a href="#">Searching for a Person</a> on page 60
<b>Parent Customer Pricing Rules</b> zone	<a href="#">Parent Customer Pricing Rules</a> on page 101
How to define accumulation criteria in a level funded rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining Accumulation Criteria in a Level Funded Pricing Rule</a> on page 2230
How to define claim pricing information in a level funded pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Claim Pricing Information in a Level Funded Pricing Rule</a> on page 2233
How to define ancillary pricing information in a level funded pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Ancillary Pricing Information in a Level Funded Pricing Rule</a> on page 2236
How to define discount pricing information in a level funded pricing rule	<a href="#">Defining Discount Arrangement Pricing Information in a Level Funded Pricing Rule</a> on page 2239
How to define retention type claim based and/or retention type enrollment based pricing rules eligible for level funding	<a href="#">Defining Retention Type Claim Based and/or Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Information in a Level Funded Pricing Rule</a> on page 2241
How to define characteristics for the level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Characteristic for a Level Funded Pricing Rule</a> on page 2226

## Defining Accumulation Criteria in a Level Funded Pricing Rule






### Procedure






To define accumulation criteria in a level funding pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Accumulation Criteria** section is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Price Item** field of the **Main** section while defining a level funded pricing rule.

The **Accumulation Criteria** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Accumulation Group ID	Displays a blank field. An accumulation group ID is generated when accumulation parameter values are defined for a level funded pricing rule.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It is a read-only field.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)							
Price Items	Used to indicate the price item that you want to include in the accumulation criteria for a bill group.	Not applicable							
	<table><tr><th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr><tr><td rowspan="2">Price Item</td><td>Used to indicate the price item which is eligible for level funding.</td><td rowspan="2">Not applicable</td></tr><tr><td><div><p><b>Note:</b></p><p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.</p><p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field.</p></div></td></tr></table>		Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Price Item	Used to indicate the price item which is eligible for level funding.	Not applicable	<div><p><b>Note:</b></p><p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.</p><p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field.</p></div>
	Field Name		Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)					
	Price Item		Used to indicate the price item which is eligible for level funding.	Not applicable					
<div><p><b>Note:</b></p><p>The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Search</b> window appears.</p><p>On specifying the price item, the description of the price item appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field.</p></div>									
<div><p><b>Note:</b></p><p>If you want to add more than one price item in a level funded pricing rule, click the <b>Add</b>  icon.</p><p>However, if you want to remove a price item from a level funded pricing rule, click the <b>Delete</b>  icon corresponding to the price item.</p></div>									

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Price Item Parameters	Used to indicate the price item parameters that you want to include in the accumulation criteria for a bill group.	Not applicable									
	<table> <tr> <th>Field Name</th><th>Field Description</th><th>Mandatory (Yes or No)</th></tr> <tr> <td>Price Item Parameter</td><td>Used to indicate the price item parameter which is eligible for level funding.   <div> <b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> window appears.   On specifying the price item parameter, the description of the price item parameter appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. </div> </td><td>Not applicable</td></tr> <tr> <td>Parameter Value</td><td>Used to indicate the parameter values which is eligible for level funding.</td><td>Not applicable</td></tr> </table>	Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)	Price Item Parameter	Used to indicate the price item parameter which is eligible for level funding.  <div> <b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> window appears.   On specifying the price item parameter, the description of the price item parameter appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. </div>	Not applicable	Parameter Value	Used to indicate the parameter values which is eligible for level funding.	Not applicable	
Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)									
Price Item Parameter	Used to indicate the price item parameter which is eligible for level funding.  <div> <b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item Parameter</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Price Item Parameter Search</b> window appears.   On specifying the price item parameter, the description of the price item parameter appears corresponding to the <b>Parameter Value</b> field. </div>	Not applicable									
Parameter Value	Used to indicate the parameter values which is eligible for level funding.	Not applicable									
	<b>Note:</b> If you want to add more than one price item parameter in the accumulation criteria, click the <b>Add</b>  icon.  However, if you want to remove a price item parameter from the accumulation criteria, click the <b>Delete</b>  icon corresponding to the price item parameter.										

2. Enter the required details in the **Accumulation Criteria** section.

3. Click **Save**.

The accumulation criteria is defined in the level funded pricing rule.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2227
How to edit a level funded pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a>

## Defining Claim Pricing Information in a Level Funded Pricing Rule

### Procedure

To define the claim pricing information in the level funded pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Pricing Information for rule type category : Claim** zone is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Price Item** field of the **Main** section while defining or editing a level funded pricing rule for a bill group.

The **Pricing Information for rule type category : Claim** zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the claim pricing rule type effective for level funded pricing.	Yes
Derive Using	Used to indicate the method through which the claim pricing rule information is derived. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LF Line Items</li> <li>• Pricing Rules</li> </ul>	Yes

If **LF Line Items** option is selected from the **Derive Using** field, the following sub-sections appear:

- **Domestic Provider Claims** – Used to specify the domestic provider claims while calculating the level funding line items.
- **Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to define the markup or markdown values for level funding line items.
- **Line Items** – Used to associate the line items which are eligible for billing.

The **Domestic Provider Claims** section contains the following field:



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Exclude LF (Percentage)	Used to specify the billable charge line excluding the level funding charge in the percentage to create the domestic provider claim calculation lines.	No

The **Markup or Markdown Values** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Strategy	Used to indicate the pricing strategy for the claim line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Markdown</li> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• None</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Type	Used to indicate the markup or markdown value type for the claim line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Amount</li> <li>• Percentage</li> </ul>	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Markup or Markdown Amount	Used to specify the markup or markdown amount for the claim line items.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> This field displays amount when <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is set as <b>Flat Amount</b> .	
Markup / Markdown Included Settlement? in	Used to specify whether markup or markdown amount should be included in the level funding settlement. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when <b>Flat Amount</b> option is selected from the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field.	

The **Line Items** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Line Item	Used to indicate the line item which is eligible for level funded pricing.	No
	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Line Item</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Line Item</b> field, the <b>Pricing Rule Line Item Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the pricing rule line item, the description of the pricing rule line item appears corresponding to the <b>Line Item</b> field.	

If **Pricing Rule Type** option is selected from the **Derive Using** field, following sub-sections appear:

- **Claim Pricing Rule** – Used to indicate the claim pricing rule. It contains the following sub-sections:
  - **Domestic Provider Claims** – Used to specify the domestic provider claims while calculating the level funded pricing.
  - **Markup or Markdown Values** – Used to define the markup or markdown values for the billable charge line items.
  - **Line Items** – Used to associate the line items which are eligible for billing.

The **Claim Pricing Rule** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Claim Pricing Rule	Used to indicate the claim pricing rule effective for level funded pricing.	No

**Note:** If you are editing a bill group's level funded pricing rule for the **Claim** rule type category (where the bill group's pricing has ended), a **Reapply** button appears corresponding to the **Effective Claim Pricing Rule** field. You can select an effective claim pricing rule and click the **Reapply** button to set a new pricing for the claim rule type that is eligible for level funding.

The **Domestic Provider Claims** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Exclude LF (Percentage)	Used to specify the billable charge line excluding the level funding charge in the percentage to create the domestic provider claim calculation lines.	No

The **Markup or Markdown Values** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Strategy	Used to indicate the pricing strategy for the claim line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Markdown</li> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• None</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Type	Used to indicate the markup or markdown value type for the claim line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Amount</li> <li>• Percentage</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Amount	Used to specify the markup or markdown amount for the claim line items.  <b>Note:</b> This field displays amount when <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is set as <b>Flat Amount</b> .	Not applicable
Markup / Markdown Included in Settlement?	Used to specify whether markup or markdown amount should be included in the level funding settlement. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> This field is required when <b>Flat Amount</b> option is selected from the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field.	Yes (Conditional)

The **Line Items** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Displays the sequence number for the line items.	Not applicable
Line Item	Displays the billing line items.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Include in Settlement	Used to indicate whether the line item should be included in the level funded claim pricing settlement.	No
Markup or Markdown Included in Settlement	Used to indicate whether markup or markdown should be included in the level funded claim settlement.	No
Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility	Used to indicate whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for markup or markdown percentage. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eligible</li> <li>Not Eligible</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Percentage	Used to indicate the percentage for markup or markdown value.	Not applicable

- Enter the required details in the appropriate sections, based on the option that is selected from the **Derive Using** field.
- If you want to add information for more than one claim pricing rule type to the level funded pricing rule, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove information of more than one claim pricing rule type from the level funded pricing rule, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the pricing rule type field.

- Click **Save**.

The claim line items are defined in the level funded pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2227
How to edit level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a>

## Defining Ancillary Pricing Information in a Level Funded Pricing Rule

### Procedure

To define the ancillary pricing information in the level funded pricing rule:

- Ensure that the **Pricing Information for rule type category : Ancillary** zone is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Price Item** field of the **Main** section while defining or editing a level funded pricing rule for a bill group.

The **Pricing Information for rule type category : Ancillary** zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the ancillary pricing rule type effective for level funded pricing.	Yes



Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Derive Using	Used to indicate the method through which the ancillary pricing rule information is derived. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ancillary Billable Charge Line Type</li> <li>Pricing Rules</li> </ul>	Yes

If **Ancillary Billable Charge Line Type** option is selected from the **Derive Using** field, the following sub-sections appear:

- Billable Charge Line Types** – Used to associate the billable charge line items which are eligible for billing.

The **Billable Charge Line Types** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the billable charge line type using which you want to create the calculation line for the charge (i.e. line item). <div> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears.</p> <p>On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.</p> </div>	Yes
Rate Based	Used to indicate that the billable charge line type is rate based.	No
Rate	Used to specify the rate for the billable charge line type. <div> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Rate Based</b> option is selected.</p> </div>	Yes (Conditional) <div> <p><b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Rate Based</b> option is selected.</p> </div>
Markup / Markdown Included in Settlement?	Used to indicate that markup or markdown amount must be included in the level funding settlement.	No
Pricing Strategy	Used to indicate the pricing strategy for the billable charge line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Markdown</li> <li>Markup</li> <li>None</li> </ul>	Yes

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Markup or Markdown Type	Used to indicate the markup or markdown type for the billable line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flat Amount</li> <li>Percentage</li> </ul>	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Pricing Strategy</b> option is selected either as <b>Markup</b> or <b>Markdown</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Rate Based</b> option is selected either as <b>Markup</b> or <b>Markdown</b> .
Amount/Percentage	Used to specify the amount or percentage for markup or markdown value.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> option is selected.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when the <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> option is selected.

If **Pricing Rule Type** option is selected from the **Derive Using** field, the following zone appears:

- Ancillary Pricing Rule** - Used to indicate the ancillary pricing rule. It contains the following sub-section:
  - The **Billable Charge Line Types** - Used to define the billable charge line types for an ancillary pricing rule, eligible for level funding.

The **Ancillary Pricing Rule** section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Ancillary Pricing Rule	Used to indicate the ancillary pricing rule effective for level funded pricing.	No

**Note:** If you are editing a bill group's level funded pricing rule for the **Ancillary** rule type category (where the bill group's pricing has ended), a **Reapply** button appears corresponding to the **Effective Ancillary Pricing Rule** field. You can select an effective ancillary pricing rule and click the **Reapply** button to set a new pricing for the ancillary rule type that is eligible for level funding.

The **Billable Charge Line Types** section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Sequence	Displays the sequence number for the line items.	Not applicable
Billable Charge Line Type	Used to indicate the billable charge line type using which you want to create the calculation line for the charge (i.e. line item).	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>Search</b> (🔍) icon appears corresponding to the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type Search</b> window appears. On specifying the billable charge line type, the description of the billable charge line type appears corresponding to the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Include Settlement in	Used to indicate whether the billable charge line item should be included in the level funded ancillary pricing settlement.	Not applicable
Rate Based	Indicates that the billable charge line type is rate based.	Not applicable
Rate	Displays the rate for the billable charge line type.	Not applicable
Markup / Markdown Included in Settlement?	Used to indicate that markup or markdown amount must be included in the level funding settlement.	Not applicable
Pricing Strategy	Displays the pricing strategy for the billable charge line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Markdown</li> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• None</li> </ul>	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Type	Indicates the markup or markdown type for the billable charge line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Amount</li> <li>• Percentage</li> </ul> <div> <b>Note:</b> This field is enabled when the <b>Pricing Strategy</b> option is selected either as <b>Markup</b> or <b>Markdown</b>. </div>	Not applicable
Amount/ Percentage	Displays the amount or percentage which is specified as the markup or markdown value.	Not applicable

- Enter the required details in the appropriate sections, based on the option selected from the **Derive Using** field.
- If you want to add information for more than one ancillary pricing rule type to the level funded pricing rule, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove information of more than one ancillary pricing rule type from the level funded pricing rule, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the pricing rule type field.

- Click **Save**.

The ancillary line items are defined in the level funded pricing rule.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2227
How to edit level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a>

## **Defining Discount Arrangement Pricing Information in a Level Funded Pricing Rule**

### **Procedure**

To define the discount arrangement pricing information in the level funded pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the

**Pricing Information for rule type category : Discount** zone is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Price Item** field of the **Main** section while defining or editing a level funded pricing rule for a bill group.

The **Pricing Information for rule type category : Discount** zone contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Rule Type	Used to indicate the discount arrangement pricing rule type which is effective for level-funding.	Yes
Derive Using	Used to indicate the method through which the discount arrangement pricing rule information is derived. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pricing Rules</li> </ul>	Yes

On selecting the **Pricing Rule Type** option from the **Derive Using** field, the following sub-section appears:

- **Discount Pricing Rule** - Used to indicate the discount arrangement pricing rule. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Discount Pricing Rule	Used to indicate the discount arrangement pricing rule which is effective for level funding.	Yes

2. Select the appropriate discount arrangement pricing rule from the **Discount Pricing Rule** section.

**Note:**

On selecting the discount arrangement pricing rule, the system does not generate any line items for the discount arrangement pricing information. This discount arrangement pricing rule is used at the time of level-funding calculations in the TFM module.

3. If you want to add information for more than one discount pricing rule type to the level funded pricing rule, click the **Add** (+) icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove information of more than one discount pricing rule type from the level funded pricing rule, click the **Delete** (🗑️) icon corresponding to the pricing rule type field.

4. Click **Save**.

The discount arrangement pricing information is defined in the level funded pricing rule.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2227
How to edit level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<< insert links here >>

## Defining Retention Type Claim Based and/or Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Information in a Level Funded Pricing Rule



### Procedure

To define the retention type claim based and/or retention type enrollment based pricing rules eligible for level funding in the level funded pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the

**Pricing Information for rule type category : Retention** zone is expanded only when you have selected an option from the **Price Item** field of the **Main** section while defining or editing a level funded pricing rule for a bill group.


The **Pricing Information for rule type category : Retention** zone contains the following fields:


Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Retention Rule Type	Used to indicate the retention type claim based and/or retention type enrollment based pricing rule type for the level funded pricing rule.	Yes
Price Item	Used to indicate the price item for the level funded pricing rule.  <b>Note:</b>  The <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b>  icon corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field, the <b>Get Retention Type Pricing Rules</b> window appears.  On specifying the retention type pricing rule, the description of the retention type pricing rule appears corresponding to the <b>Price Item</b> field.	Yes

2. Select the appropriate **Retention Rule Type** and **Price Item** from the **Pricing Information for rule type category : Retention** zone.

#### Note:

Once the retention type claim based and/or retention type enrollment based pricing rule type is selected along with the price item, the system does not generate line items for the retention type claim/enrollment based pricing rule. This retention type claim/enrollment based pricing rule is used at the time of level-funding calculations in the TFM module.

3. If you want to add more than one retention type claim based and/or retention type enrollment based pricing rule type to the level funded pricing rule, click the **Add**  icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove more than one retention type claim based and/or retention type enrollment based pricing rule type from the level funded pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the pricing rule type field.

4. Click **Save**.

The retention type claim based and/or retention type enrollment based pricing rules eligible for level-funding are defined in the level funded pricing rule.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2227
How to edit level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a>

## Defining a Characteristic for a Level Funded Pricing Rule

### Prerequisites

To define a characteristic for a level funded pricing rule, you should have:


- Characteristic types defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to **Pricing Rule**).


### Procedure


To define a characteristic for a level funded pricing rule:

1. Ensure that the **Characteristics** section is expanded when you are defining or editing a level funded pricing rule.

The **Characteristics** section contains the following fields in the grid:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Used to specify the date from when the characteristic is effective for a level funded pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for a level funded pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Used to indicate the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The list includes only those characteristic types where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Pricing Rule</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for a level funded pricing rule.
Characteristic Value	Used to specify the value for the characteristic type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> If you select a predefined characteristic type, the <b>Search</b>  icon appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field. On clicking the <b>Search</b> icon, the <b>Predefined Characteristic Search</b> window appears.  On specifying the value for a predefined characteristic type, the description of the characteristic value appears corresponding to the <b>Characteristic Value</b> field.	<b>Note:</b> This field is required when you are defining a characteristic for a level funded pricing rule.

2. Enter the required details in the **Characteristics** section.
3. If you want to define more than one characteristic for the level funded pricing rule, click the **Add** () icon and then repeat step 2.

**Note:** However, if you want to remove a characteristic from the level funded pricing rule, click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the characteristic.

4. Click **Save**.

The characteristics are defined for the level funded pricing rule.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a level funded pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2216
How to edit a level funded pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a>
How to define a level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Bill Group</a> on page 2227
How to edit a level funded pricing rule for a bill group	<a href="#">Editing a Level Funded Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a>

## **Pricing Rule (Used for Viewing)**

The **Pricing Rule** screen allows you to:

- View the details of a claim pricing rule of a parent customer
- View the details of a claim pricing rule of a bill group
- View the details of an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer
- View the details of an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group
- View the details of a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer
- View the details of a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group
- View the details of a retention type claim based pricing rule of a parent customer
- View the details of a retention type claim based pricing rule of a bill group
- View the details of a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a parent customer
- View the details of a retention type enrollment based pricing rule of a bill group
- View the details of a one-time flat fee pricing rule of a bill group
- View the details of a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule of a bill group
- View the details of a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule of a bill group
- View the details of an ancillary pricing rule of a parent customer
- View the details of an ancillary pricing rule of a bill group
- View the details of a discount arrangement pricing rule of a parent customer
- View the details of a level funded pricing rule of a parent customer
- View the details of a level funded pricing rule of a bill group

This screen consists of the following zones:

- [Claim](#) on page 2244
- [Aggregate Stop-Loss](#) on page 2246
- [Specific Stop-Loss](#) on page 2252
- [Retention Type Claim Based](#) on page 2258
- [Retention Type Enrollment Based](#) on page 2259
- [Flat Fee](#) on page 2260
- [Ancillary](#) on page 2262
- [Discount Arrangement](#) on page 2264
- [Level Funded](#) on page 2267

## Claim

The **Claim** zone displays the details of the claim pricing rule for respective parent customer, bill group or a bill group using a pricing group. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic details about the claim pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	<p>Displays the parent customer information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b>, <b>Account</b> or <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parent customer.</p> <p>This field appears only when the claim pricing rule is viewed for parent customer.</p>
Bill Group Information	<p>Displays the bill group information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b>, <b>Account</b> or <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the bill group.</p> <p>This field appears only when the claim pricing rule is viewed for bill group.</p>
Policy Information	<p>Displays the policy information.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the policy.</p>
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.
Price Item Information	<p>Indicates the price item information.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.</p>



Field Name	Field Description
Pricing Start Date	Displays the claim pricing rule start date.
Pricing End Date	Displays the claim pricing rule end date.
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option of the claim pricing rule for the price item.
Claim Template	Indicates the claim template of the claim pricing rule.
Pricing Group	Displays the pricing group of the claim pricing rule.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the claim pricing rule is viewed for pricing group.

- **Markup or Markdown Values** – Lists the markup or markdown values for line items in a claim pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Strategy	Indicates the pricing strategy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Markdown</li> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• None</li> </ul>
Markup or Markdown Type	Indicates the markup or markdown value type for claim pricing rule. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Amount</li> <li>• Percentage</li> </ul>
Markup or Markdown Amount	Displays the markup or markdown amount.

- **Line Items** – This section contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence	Displays the sequence number for the line items.
Line Item	Displays the billing line items.
Billing Eligibility	Displays whether the line item is user defined, eligible or not eligible for billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eligible</li> <li>• Not Eligible</li> <li>• User Defined (Default Yes)</li> <li>• User Defined (Default No)</li> </ul>
User Defined Billing Option	Displays whether the billing option is user defined, eligible or not eligible.

Column Name	Column Description
Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility	Displays whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for markup or markdown percentage. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eligible</li> <li>Not Eligible</li> </ul>
Markup or Markdown Percentage	Displays the percentage for markup or markdown value.

- **Characteristics** – Lists the characteristics defined for the claim pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the claim pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view a claim pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1928
How to view a claim pricing rule of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing a Claim Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 1936

## Aggregate Stop-Loss

The **Aggregate Stop-Loss** zone displays the details of the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for respective parent customer, bill group or a bill group using a pricing group. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic details about the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent customer information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b>, <b>Account</b> or <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parent customer.</p> <p>This field appears only when the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for parent customer.</p>

Field Name	Field Description
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b>, <b>Account</b> or <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the bill group.</p> <p>This field appears only when the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for bill group.</p>
Policy Information	Displays the policy information.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the policy.</p> <p>This field appears only when the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for bill group.</p>
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.
Price Item Information	Indicates the price item information.
	<p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.</p>
Parent Customer's SSL or ASL Pricing Rules	Displays the pricing date range derived from the parent customer's specific stop-loss or aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
Pricing Start Date	Displays the pricing rule start date.
Pricing End Date	Displays the pricing rule end date.
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option of the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule for the price item.
Settlement Frequency	<p>Indicates the settlement frequency that helps to determine the bill after date. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Immediately</li> <li>• Manually (At Required Intervals)</li> <li>• Monthly</li> <li>• Yearly</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for parent customer.</p>

Field Name	Field Description
Underwriter Review	Indicates whether the underwriter settlement review flag is on or off. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for parent customer.
Pricing Group	Displays the pricing group of the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for pricing group.

- **Accumulation Parameters** – Lists the accumulation parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Accumulation Group ID	Displays the accumulation group ID generated when accumulation parameters are defined for a specific stop-loss..
ASL Credit Account	Indicates the account in which the aggregate stop-loss amount is credited.

This section also lists the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Incurred Start Date	Displays the incurred start date based on the accumulated specific stop-loss.
Incurred End Date	Displays the incurred end date based on the accumulated specific stop-loss.
ASL Payout Limit	Displays the maximum limit for the specific stop-loss at member or main subscriber level.
Paid Start Date	Displays the paid start date based on the accumulated specific stop-loss.
Paid End Date	Displays the paid end date based on the accumulated specific stop-loss.
Settlement Days	Indicates the settlement days used in calculating the settlement date.
ASL Limit (During Policy Period)	Indicates the aggregate stop-loss limit that was set during the policy period. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Policy Based Limit</li> <li>• Enrollment Based Limit</li> <li>• Percentage of Enrollment Based Limit</li> <li>• Enrollment Based or Minimum ASL Limit (Whichever is Greater)</li> </ul>
ASL Limit (During Settlement Period)	Indicates the aggregate stop-loss limit that was set during the settlement period. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Policy Based Limit</li> <li>• Enrollment Based Limit</li> <li>• Enrollment Based or Minimum ASL Limit (Whichever is Greater)</li> </ul>

Column Name	Column Description
Minimum ASL Limit	Displays the minimum ASL limit.
	<b>Note:</b> This field displays value only when the <b>Enrollment Based or Minimum ASL Limit (Whichever is Greater)</b> option appears for the <b>ASL Limit (During Policy Period)</b> or <b>ASL Limit (During Settlement Period)</b> field.
Percentage of Enrollment Based Limit	Displays the percentage of enrollment based limit.
	<b>Note:</b> This field displays value only when the <b>Percentage of Enrollment Based Limit</b> option appears for the <b>ASL Limit (During Policy Period)</b> field.
Policy Based Limit	Displays the policy based limit.
	<b>Note:</b> This field displays value only when the <b>Policy Based Limit</b> option appears for the <b>ASL Limit (During Policy Period)</b> or <b>ASL Limit (During Settlement Period)</b> field.

**Note:** This section appears only when the aggregate stop loss is created for parent customer.

- **Accumulation Criteria** – This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description							
Accumulation Group ID	Displays the accumulation group ID generated when the accumulation criteria values were defined for a aggregate stop-loss.							
Price Item Information	Displays the price item information.							
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.							
Price Item Parameters	This field contains the following columns:							
	<table><tr><th>Column Name</th><th>Column Description</th></tr><tr><td rowspan="2">Price Item Parameter</td><td>Displays the multiple parameters based on which you have determined the price item utilization.</td></tr><tr><td><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Parameter</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parameter.</td></tr><tr><td>Parameter Value</td><td>Displays the value of the parameter.</td></tr></table>	Column Name	Column Description	Price Item Parameter	Displays the multiple parameters based on which you have determined the price item utilization.	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Parameter</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parameter.	Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter.
	Column Name	Column Description						
	Price Item Parameter	Displays the multiple parameters based on which you have determined the price item utilization.						
<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Parameter</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parameter.								
Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter.							

**Note:**

This section appears only when the aggregate stop-loss is created for a bill group.

Accumulation criteria for each rule appears only when the aggregate stop-loss is created for a bill group using a pricing group.

- **Pricing Information** – This section contains the following sub-section:
  - **Claim Pricing Rule** – This sub-section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Effective Claim Pricing Rule	Indicates the claim pricing rule effective for pricing.

This sub-section contains the following sections:

- **Domestic Provider Claims** – Displays the domestic provider claim while calculating aggregate stop-loss. This section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Exclude ASL (Percentage)	Displays the domestic provider claim billable charge line excluding the aggregate stop-loss in percentage created for domestic provider claim calculation lines.

- **Markup or Markdown Values** – Displays the markup or markdown values for billable charge line. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Pricing Strategy	Indicates the pricing strategy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Markdown</li> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• None</li> </ul>
Markup or Markdown Type	Indicates the markup or markdown value type for claim line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Amount</li> <li>• Percentage</li> </ul>
Markup or Markdown Amount	Displays the markup or markdown amount. <div> <b>Note:</b> This field displays amount when <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is <b>Flat Amount</b>.           </div>

- **Line Items** – Displays the associated line items eligible for billing. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Sequence	Displays the sequence number for the line items.
Line Item	Displays the billing line items.
Eligible for Aggregate Stop-Loss	Displays whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for aggregate stop-loss.
Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility	Displays whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for markup or markdown percentage. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eligible</li> <li>• Not Eligible</li> </ul>

Field Name	Field Description
Markup or Markdown Percentage	Displays the percentage for markup or markdown value.

**Note:**

This section appears only when the aggregate stop-loss is created for a bill group.

Claim line items for each rule appears only when the aggregate stop-loss is created for a bill group using a pricing group.

- **Run-In Parameters** – This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Run-In	Displays whether the run-in parameters of the run-in period of policy are to be considered or not in an aggregate stop-loss pricing
Accumulation Group ID	Displays the accumulation group ID that is generated when the accumulation parameter values were defined for an aggregate stop-loss.
Incurred Start Date	Displays the incurred start date based on the run-in period of the policy in the aggregate stop-loss. <b>Note:</b> This field displays value only when the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field is selected.
Incurred End Date	Displays the incurred end date based on the run-in period of the policy in the aggregate stop-loss. <b>Note:</b> This field displays value only when the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field is selected.
Paid Start Date	Displays the paid start date based on the run-in period of the policy in the aggregate stop-loss. <b>Note:</b> This field displays value only when the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field is selected.
Paid End Date	Displays the paid end date based on the run-in period of the policy in the aggregate stop-loss. <b>Note:</b> This field displays value only when the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field is selected.
Run-In Maximum Limit	Displays the maximum limit of the run-in parameters. <b>Note:</b> This field displays value only when the checkbox for the <b>Run-In</b> field is selected.

**Note:** This section appears only when the specific stop loss is created for parent customer.

- **Characteristics** – Lists the characteristics defined for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to view an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1996
How to view an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing an Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2008

## **Specific Stop-Loss**

The **Specific Stop-Loss** zone displays the details of the specific stop-loss pricing rule for respective parent customer, bill group or a bill group using a pricing group. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic details about the specific stop-loss pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent customer information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b>, <b>Account</b> or <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parent customer.</p> <p>This field appears only when the specific stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for parent customer.</p>
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b>, <b>Account</b> or <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the bill group.</p> <p>This field appears only when the specific stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for bill group.</p>



Field Name	Field Description
Policy Information	Displays the policy information.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the policy.</p> <p>This field appears only when the specific stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for parent customer.</p>
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the pricing rule type.
Price Item Information	Indicates the price item information.
	<p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.</p>
Parent Customer's SSL Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing date range derived from the parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule.
	<p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the specific stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for bill group.</p>
Pricing Start Date	Displays the specific stop-loss pricing rule start date.
Pricing End Date	Displays the specific stop-loss pricing rule end date.
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option of the specific stop-loss pricing rule for the price item.
Pricing Rule Usage	Indicates whether the pricing rule is used only for pricing or for pricing and billing. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pricing</li> <li>Pricing and Billing</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the specific stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for parent customer.</p>
Accumulation Level	Indicate whether the specific stop-loss is accumulated at the member or main subscriber level. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Member</li> <li>Main Subscriber</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the specific stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for parent customer.</p>

Field Name	Field Description
Settlement Frequency	Indicates the settlement frequency that helps to determine the bill after date. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Immediately</li> <li>• Manually (At Required Intervals)</li> <li>• Never</li> <li>• Yearly</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the specific stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for parent customer.
Underwriter Review	Indicates whether the underwriter settlement review flag is on or off. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the specific stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for parent customer.
Pricing Group	Displays the pricing group of the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when the specific stop-loss pricing rule is viewed for pricing group.

- **Accumulation Parameters** – Lists the accumulation parameters in a specific stop-loss pricing rule. It contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Accumulation Group ID	Displays the accumulation group ID generated when accumulation parameters are defined for a specific stop-loss..

This section also lists the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Incurred Start Date	Displays the incurred start date based on the accumulated specific stop-loss.
Incurred End Date	Displays the incurred end date based on the accumulated specific stop-loss.
SSL Payout Limit	Displays the maximum limit for the specific stop-loss at member or main subscriber level.
Paid Start Date	Displays the paid start date based on the accumulated specific stop-loss.
Paid End Date	Displays the paid end date based on the accumulated specific stop-loss.
Settlement Days	Indicates the settlement days used in calculating the settlement date.
Compute Aggregate SSL (ASL)	Indicates whether the aggregate specific stop-loss (ASSL) is calculated or not during the <b>C1-BCSSL</b> batch run for each bill group. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes</li> <li>• No</li> </ul>

Column Name	Column Description
ASSL Credit Account	Indicates that the aggregate specific stop-loss amount beyond the ASSL limit paid by the insurance company to the ASSL credit account.
ASSL Limit	

**Note:** This section appears only when the specific stop loss is created for parent customer.

- **Accumulation Criteria** – This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description						
Accumulation Group ID	Displays the accumulation group ID generated when the accumulation criteria values were defined for a specific stop-loss.						
Run-In Maximum Limit	Displays the maximum specific stop-loss limit defined for the member when the claim transactions were received in the run-in period of the policy.						
SSL Limit	Displays whether the SSL limit indicating the specific stop-loss amount beyond this limit is paid by the insurance company.						
Price Item Information	Displays the price item information. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.						
Price Item Parameters	This field contains the following columns: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Column Name</th><th>Column Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Price Item Parameter</td><td>Displays the multiple parameters based on which you have determined the price item utilization. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Parameter</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parameter.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Parameter Value</td><td>Displays the value of the parameter.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Column Name	Column Description	Price Item Parameter	Displays the multiple parameters based on which you have determined the price item utilization. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Parameter</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parameter.	Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter.
Column Name	Column Description						
Price Item Parameter	Displays the multiple parameters based on which you have determined the price item utilization. <b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Parameter</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parameter.						
Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter.						

**Note:**

This section appears only when the specific stop-loss is created for a bill group.

Accumulation criteria for each rule appears only when the specific stop-loss is created for a bill group using a pricing group.

- **Pricing Information** – This section contains the following sub-section:
  - **Claim Pricing Rule** – This sub-section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Effective Claim Pricing Rule	Indicates the claim pricing rule effective for pricing.

This sub-section contains the following sections:

- **Domestic Provider Claims** – Displays the domestic provider claim while calculating specific stop-loss. This section contains the following field:

Field Name	Field Description
Exclude SSL (Percentage)	Displays the domestic provider claim billable charge line excluding the specific stop-loss in percentage created for domestic provider claim calculation lines.

- **Markup or Markdown Values** – Displays the markup or markdown values for billable charge line. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Pricing Strategy	Indicates the pricing strategy. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Markdown</li> <li>• Markup</li> <li>• None</li> </ul>
Markup or Markdown Type	Indicates the markup or markdown value type for claim line items. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flat Amount</li> <li>• Percentage</li> </ul>
Markup or Markdown Amount	Displays the markup or markdown amount. <div> <b>Note:</b> This field displays amount when <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is <b>Flat Amount</b>. </div>

- **Line Items** – Displays the associated line items eligible for billing. This section contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Sequence	Displays the sequence number for the line items.
Line Item	Displays the billing line items.
Eligible for Specific Stop-Loss	Displays whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for specific stop-loss.
Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility	Displays whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for markup or markdown percentage. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eligible</li> <li>• Not Eligible</li> </ul>
Markup or Markdown Percentage	Displays the percentage for markup or markdown value.

**Note:**

This section appears only when the specific stop-loss is created for a bill group.

Claim line items for each rule appears only when the specific stop-loss is created for a bill group using a pricing group.

- **Run-In Parameters** – This section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Run-In	Displays whether the run-in parameters of the run-in period of policy are to be considered or not in a specific stop-loss pricing
Incurred Start Date	Displays the incurred start date based on the run-in period of the policy in the specific stop-loss.
Incurred End Date	Displays the incurred end date based on the run-in period of the policy in the specific stop-loss.
Paid Start Date	Displays the paid start date based on the run-in period of the policy in the specific stop-loss.
Paid End Date	Displays the paid end date based on the run-in period of the policy in the specific stop-loss.

**Note:** This section appears only when the specific stop loss is created for parent customer.

- **Lasering and Exclusion** – Lists the lasering and exclusion information in a specific stop-loss pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Accumulation Group ID	Displays the accumulation group ID generated when the accumulation parameter values were defined for the specific stop-loss.
Level Identifier	Displays the lasering or exclusion level identifier.
Lasering or Exclusion Level	Indicates the lasering or exclusion level of the specific stop-loss. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Main Subscriber</li> <li>• Member</li> <li>• Provider</li> </ul>
Exception Type	Indicates the exception type. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lasering</li> <li>• Exclusion</li> </ul>
Comments	Displays the comments.
Lasered Amount	Displays the lasered amount.

**Note:** This section appears only when the specific stop loss is created for parent customer.

- 
- **Characteristics** – Lists the characteristics defined for the specific stop-loss pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the specific stop-loss pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a> on page 1960
How to view a specific stop-loss pricing rule of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing a Specific Stop-Loss Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 1972

## Retention Type Claim Based

The **Retention Type Claim Based** zone displays the details of the Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Main** – This section provides basic information about the retention type claim based pricing rule type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	<p>Displays the parent customer information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parent customer.</p> <p>This field appears only when the retention type claim based pricing rule is viewed for parent customer.</p>
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type.
Price Item Information	<p>Displays the price item.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.</p>
Rate Option	Displays the rate option of the retention type claim based pricing rule.
Pricing Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing is effective for retention type claim based pricing rule.
Pricing End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing is effective for retention type claim based pricing rule.

- **Parameters** – This section lists the parameters which are defined for retention type claim based pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	
Price Item Parameters	Displays the parameter item information for retention type claim based pricing rule.	
	Column Name	Column Description
	Price Item Parameters	Displays multiple parameters based on which you have determined the price item utilization.
	Parameter Description	Displays the description of the parameter.
	Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter.
	Parameter Value Description	Displays the description of the value, defined as a parameter.
Fee	Displays the fee that is applicable for which price item parameters are defined.	

- **Characteristics** – This section displays the pricing rule type characteristics. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristics are effective.
Characteristic Type	Displays the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value for the characteristic type.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Retention Type Enrollment Based

The **Retention Type Enrollment Based** zone displays the details of the Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule. This zone contains the following sections:

- **Main** – This section provides basic information about the retention type claim based pricing rule type. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Parent Customer Information	<p>Displays the parent customer information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parent customer.</p> <p>This field appears only when the retention type enrollment based pricing rule is viewed for parent customer.</p>
Pricing Rule Type	Displays the pricing rule type.

Field Name	Field Description
Price Item Information	Displays the price item.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.
Rate Option	Displays the rate option of the retention type enrollment based pricing rule.
Pricing Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing is effective for retention type enrollment based pricing rule.
Pricing End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing is effective for retention type enrollment based pricing rule.
Exempt Retro Transactions	Indicates whether retro transactions should be a part of retention type enrollment based pricing rule.

- **Parameters** – This section lists the parameters which are defined for retention type enrollment based pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	
Price Item Parameters	Displays the parameter item information for retention type enrollment based pricing rule.	
	Column Name	Column Description
	Price Item Parameters	Displays multiple parameters based on which you have determined the price item utilization.
	Parameter Description	Displays the description of the parameter.
	Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter.
	Parameter Value Description	Displays the description of the value, defined as a parameter.
Fee	Displays the fee that is applicable for which price item parameters are defined.	

- **Characteristics** – This section displays the pricing rule type characteristics. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristics are effective.
Characteristic Type	Displays the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value for the characteristic type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1897
<b>Pricing Rule Type</b> zone	<a href="#">Pricing Rule Type</a> on page 1900

## Flat Fee

The **Flat Fee** zone displays the details of the one-time, bill period, and frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule for bill group. It contains the following sections:



- **Main** – Displays basic details about the one-time, bill period, and frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person, Account</b> or <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the bill group.
Policy Information	Displays the policy information.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the policy.
Price Item Information	Indicates the price item information.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.
Charge Date	Displays the flat fee charge date.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only for the one-time flat fee pricing rule for bill group.
Charge Start Date	Displays the flat fee charge start date.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only for both bill period and frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule for bill group.
Charge End Date	Displays the flat fee charge end date.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only for both bill period and frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule for bill group.
Bill To Account Override	Displays the account to which the bill is override. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Account</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the account.
Billable Charge Line Type	Displays the billable charge line type.
Fee	Displays the amount of flat fee.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only when a value is displayed in the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> field.
Bill Period	Indicates the bill period for flat fee.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only for the bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule for bill group.

Field Name	Field Description
Frequency	Indicates the frequency for flat fee.
	<b>Note:</b> This field appears only for the frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule for bill group.
Billable Charge Information	Displays the billable charge information.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Bill Charge ID</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the billable charge.

- **Characteristics** – Lists the characteristics defined for the one-time, bill period, and frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the one-time, bill period, and frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view a one-time flat fee pricing rule of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing a One-Time Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2081
How to view a bill period based recurring flat fee pricing rule of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing a Bill Period Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2096
How to view a frequency based recurring flat fee pricing rule of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing a Frequency Based Recurring Flat Fee Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a> on page 2111

## Ancillary

The **Ancillary** zone displays the details of the ancillary pricing rule for the respective parent customer, bill group, or a bill group using a pricing group. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic details about the ancillary pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent customer information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person, Account or Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parent customer.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person, Account or Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the bill group.	
Policy Information	Displays the policy information.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the policy.	
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the type of the pricing rule.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates the status of the pricing rule.	Not applicable
Price Item Information	Indicates the price item information.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.	
Pricing Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing rule is effective.	Not applicable
Pricing End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing rule is effective.	Not applicable
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option of the ancillary pricing rule for the price item.	Not applicable
Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	Indicates that markup or markdown should not be calculated for the ancillary charge.	Not applicable

- **Ancillary Charges** – Lists the accumulation parameters in an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billable Charge Line Type	Indicates the billable charge line type using which the ancillary pricing rule type is created.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the billable charge line type.	
Billable	Indicates whether the ancillary billable charge is eligible for billing or not.	Not applicable
Rate Based	Indicates whether the ancillary charge is calculated using a particular rate or not.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Rate	Indicates the rate for calculating the ancillary charge.	Not applicable
Pricing Strategy	Indicates the price calculation strategy that is applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule.	Not applicable
Markup or Markdown Type	Indicates the type of charge that is applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule.	Not applicable
Amount / Percentage	Displays the actual proportion of the charge that is applied while defining the ancillary pricing rule.	Not applicable

- **Characteristics** – Lists the characteristics defined for the aggregate stop-loss pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the ancillary pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to view an ancillary pricing rule of a parent customer	<a href="#">Viewing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Parent Customer</a>
How to view an ancillary pricing rule of a bill group	<a href="#">Viewing an Ancillary Pricing Rule of a Bill Group</a>

## Discount Arrangement

The **Discount Arrangement** zone displays the details of the discount arrangement pricing rule for the respective parent customer, bill group, or a bill group using a pricing group. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic details about the discount arrangement pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent customer information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person, Account or Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parent customer.	

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person, Account or Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the bill group.	
Policy Information	Displays the policy information.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the policy.	
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the type of the pricing rule.	Not applicable
Status	Indicates the status of the pricing rule.	Not applicable
Price Item Information	Indicates the price item for which the pricing rule is created.	Not applicable
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.	
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option of the discount arrangement pricing rule for the price item.	Not applicable
Pricing Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing rule is effective.	Not applicable
Pricing End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing rule is effective.	Not applicable
Settlement Frequency	Indicates the settlement frequency which helps to determine the bill after date.	Not applicable

- **Discount Details** – Displays the eligibility criteria for a discount percentage and maximum discount amount that is allowed per claim. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Item Parameter	Displays the parameter using which an eligibility criteria is defined for a discount percentage and maximum amount that is allowed per claim.	Not applicable
Parameter Information	Indicates the order in which the parameter and its value should be displayed in the price item parameter information string across the application.	Not applicable
Parameter Value	Indicates the value of the parameter.	Not applicable
Parameter Value Description	Displays the description of the value, defined as a parameter.	Not applicable

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Discount Percentage	Displays the discount share or discount guarantee percentage.	Not applicable
Maximum Discount Per Claim	Displays maximum discount amount which is allowed per claim. If the discount amount exceeds the maximum limit per claim, the additional amount is credited to the customer.	Not applicable

- **Discount Limits** – Displays the minimum and maximum discount limit defined on the contract. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
No Limit	Indicates the type of discount limit (minimum or maximum) on the contract.	Not applicable
Discount Credit Account	Indicates the account to which the discount is credited, when the minimum or maximum discount limit is defined on the contract.	Not applicable
Settlement Days	Indicates the number of days which help in calculating the final settlement date.	Not applicable

In addition, it contains the following fields in a grid:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Type of Discount	Displays the type of discount.	Not applicable
Select	Indicates the type of discount that is applied on the contract.	Not applicable
Limit Type	Indicates the type of limit defined in the discount arrangement pricing rule.	Not applicable
Amount Limit	Indicates the amount limit (flat minimum or maximum discount) on the contract.	Not applicable

- **Exclusion** – Displays the entity (network or provider) which is excluded in the discount arrangement pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Field Name	Field Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Exclusion Level	Indicates the entity (network hospitals or providers) that are excluded during the discount share or discount guarantee calculation.	Not applicable
Level Identifier	Displays the network or provider ID.	Not applicable

- **Characteristics** – Displays the characteristics defined for the discount arrangement pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the discount arrangement pricing rule.	Not applicable

Column Name	Column Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.	Not applicable
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.	Not applicable

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define a discount arrangement pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Discount Arrangement Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2183

## Level Funded

The **Level Funded** zone displays the details of the level funded pricing rule for the respective parent customer, bill group, or a bill group using a pricing group. It contains the following sections:

- **Main** – Displays basic details about the level funded pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Parent Customer Information	Displays the parent customer information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person, Account</b> or <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parent customer.
Bill Group Information	Displays the bill group information. In addition, a context menu appears corresponding to this field which helps in navigating to other screens in the application.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Person, Account</b> or <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the bill group.
Policy Information	Displays the policy information.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Policy</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the policy.
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the type of the pricing rule.
Status	Indicates the status of the pricing rule.
Price Item Information	Indicates the price item for which the pricing rule is created.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.
Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule of the parent customer.

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Start Date	Displays the date from when the pricing rule is effective.
Pricing End Date	Displays the date till when the pricing rule is effective.
Rate Option	Indicates the rate option of the level funded pricing rule for the price item.
Settlement Frequency	Indicates the settlement frequency which helps to determine the bill after date.
Settlement Fund Price Item	Indicates the price item derived from the level funded pricing rule type, used to create the level funded pricing rule type.
	<b>Note:</b> The settlement fund price item appears only when the level funded pricing rule is created for a bill group.
Underwriter Review	Indicates whether the underwriter settlement review flag is on or off.

- **Accumulation Parameters** – Displays the accumulation parameters for a parent customer in the level funded pricing rule. It contains the following fields:

Column Name	Column Description
Accumulation Group ID	Displays an accumulation group ID which is generated when accumulation parameter values are defined for a level funded pricing rule.
Settlement Account ID	Indicates the account ID to whom the settlement amount is credited.
Incurred Start Date	Displays the incurred start date (inherited from parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule) based on which you want to accumulate the level funded pricing.
Incurred End Date	Displays the incurred end date (inherited from parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule) based on which you want to accumulate the level funded pricing.
Paid Start Date	Displays the paid start date (inherited from parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule) based on which you want to accumulate the level funded pricing.
Paid End Date	Displays the paid end date (inherited from parent customer's specific stop-loss pricing rule) based on which you want to accumulate the level funded pricing.
Settlement Days	Indicates the number of days as the settlement days which help in calculating the settlement date.

**Note:**

The above section appears only when the level funded pricing rule is created for a parent customer.

- **Accumulation Criteria** – Displays the accumulation criteria for a bill group in the level funded pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Accumulation Group ID	Displays the accumulation group ID generated when the accumulation criteria values were defined for a level funding pricing rule type.
Price Item Information	Displays the price item information.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.



Column Name	Column Description	
Price Item Parameters	This field contains the following columns:	
	Column Name	Column Description
	Price Item Parameter	Displays the multiple parameters based on which you have determined the price item utilization.
		<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, the <b>Parameter</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the parameter.
Parameter Value	Displays the value of the parameter.	

**Note:**

The above section appears only when the level funded pricing rule is created for a bill group.

The accumulation criteria for each rule appears only when the level funded pricing rule is created for a bill group using a pricing group.

- The **Pricing Information for rule type category : Claim** zone contains the following sections:
  - The **Claim Pricing Rule** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the claim pricing rule type effective for the level funded pricing.
Derive Using	Indicates the method through which the claim pricing rule information is derived.
Effective Claim Pricing Rule	Displays the claim pricing rule effective for pricing.

- The **Domestic Provider Claims** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Exclude LF (Percentage)	Displays the billable charge line excluding the level funding charge in the percentage to create the domestic provider claim calculation lines.

- The **Markup or Markdown Values** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Strategy	Indicates the pricing strategy for the claim line items.
Markup or Markdown Type	Indicates the markup or markdown value type for the claim line items.
Markup or Markdown Amount	Displays the markup or markdown amount for the claim line items.
	<b>Note:</b> This field displays amount when <b>Markup or Markdown Type</b> field is set as <b>Flat Amount</b> .
Markup / Markdown Included in Settlement?	Displays whether the markup or markdown amount should be included in the level funding settlement. The valid values are:

- The **Line Items** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence	Displays the sequence number for the line items.
Line Item	Displays the billing line items.
Include in Settlement	Indicates whether the line item should be included in the level funded claim pricing settlement.
Markup or Markdown Included in Settlement	Indicates whether markup or markdown should be included in the level funded claim settlement.
Markup or Markdown Percentage Eligibility	Indicates whether the line item is eligible or not eligible for markup or markdown percentage.
Markup or Markdown Percentage	Indicates the percentage for markup or markdown value.

**Note:**

The above section appears only when the level funded pricing rule is created for a bill group.

- The **Pricing Information for rule type category : Ancillary** zone contains the following sections:
  - The **Ancillary Pricing Rule** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the ancillary pricing rule type effective for level funded pricing.
Derive Using	Indicates the method through which the ancillary pricing rule information is derived.
Effective Ancillary Pricing Rule	Displays the ancillary pricing rule effective for pricing.

- The **Billable Charge Line Types** section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Sequence	Displays the sequence number for the line items.
Billable Charge Line Type	Indicates the billable charge line type using which you want to create the calculation line for the charge (i.e. line item)
Include in Settlement	Indicates whether the billable charge line item should be included in the level funded ancillary pricing settlement.
Rate Based	Indicates that the billable charge line type is rate based.
Rate	Displays the rate for the billable charge line type.
Markup / Markdown Included in Settlement?	Indicates that markup or markdown amount must be included in the level funding settlement.
Pricing Strategy	Displays the pricing strategy for the billable charge line items.
Markup or Markdown Type	Indicates the markup or markdown type for the billable charge line items.
Amount/Percentage	Displays the amount or percentage which is specified as the markup or markdown value.

**Note:**

The above section appears only when the level funded pricing rule is created for a bill group.

- The **Pricing Information for rule type category : Discount** zone contains the following section:

Column Name	Column Description
Pricing Rule Type	Indicates the discount arrangement pricing rule type which is effective for level-funding.
Derive Using	Indicates the method through which the discount arrangement pricing rule information is derived.

- Discount Pricing Rule** - Indicates the discount arrangement pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Discount Pricing Rule	Indicates the discount arrangement pricing rule which is effective for level funding.

**Note:**

The above section appears only when the level funded pricing rule is created for a bill group.

- The **Pricing Information for rule type category : Retention** zone contains the following section:

Column Name	Column Description
Retention Rule Type	Indicates the retention type claim based and/or retention type enrollment based pricing rule type for the level funded pricing rule.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, <b>Pricing Rule Type</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the rule type.
Price Item	Indicates the price item for the level funded pricing rule.
	<b>Note:</b> It has a link. On clicking the link, <b>Price Item</b> screen appears where you can view the details of the price item.

**Note:**

The above section appears only when the level funded pricing rule is created for a bill group.

- Final Settlement Rules** – Displays the final settlement rules when the customer renews or cancels the contract. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Final Settlement Mode	Displays the final settlement mode when the customer renews the level funded agreement
Final Settlement Option	Indicates the final settlement option when the customer renews the level funded agreement.
Flat/Percentage	Indicates the final settlement payment type when the customer renews the level funded agreement.

Column Name	Column Description
Percentage Retained	Displays the percentage retained by the ASO provider when the customer renews the level funded agreement.
Flat Effective Payout	Displays the actual amount which should be retained by the ASO provider or offered as a discount, when the customer renews the level funded agreement.

The **Renewal Decision** sub-section contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Renewal Decision	Indicates the upcoming status of the level funded contract.

- **Characteristics** – Displays the characteristics defined for the level funded pricing rule. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Column Description
Effective Date	Displays the date from when the characteristic is effective for the level funded pricing rule.
Characteristic Type	Indicates the characteristic type.
Characteristic Value	Displays the value of the characteristic type.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define a level funded pricing rule for a parent customer	<a href="#">Defining a Level Funded Pricing Rule for a Parent Customer</a> on page 2216

---

# Chapter

# 30

---

## Self-Funded Billing

---

### Topics:

- [Pre-requisites](#)
- [Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters](#)
- [Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility](#)
- [Price Item Eligibility](#)
- [Self-Funded Billing Process](#)
- [Bill Group Derivation](#)
- [Account and Price Item Derivation \(for the Claim Pricing Rule Type Category\)](#)
- [Account and Price Item Derivation \(for the Specific Stop-Loss and Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule Type Categories\)](#)
- [Account and Price Item Derivation \(for the Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type Category\)](#)
- [Account and Price Item Derivation \(for the Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type Category\)](#)
- [Account and Price Item Derivation \(for the Ancillary Pricing Rule Type Category\)](#)
- [Bill After Date Determination](#)

Administrative Services Only (ASO) is an arrangement in which an organization funds its own employee benefit plan such as a health plan but hires an outside firm to perform specific administrative services. For example, an organization may hire an insurance company to evaluate and process claims under its employee health plan, while maintaining the responsibility to pay the claims itself.

The self-funded plan specifics vary depending on the agreement a company establishes with insurance companies and third-party administrators (TPA). In the self-funded plan, the insurance company may provide little to no degree of insurance protection. ASO services are gaining popularity because many employers, particularly larger ones, explore that the self-funded plan provides the potential financial advantages at an acceptable cost.

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing (ORMB) provides a complete solution in terms of pricing, billing, and revenue management to support the self-funded plans. It also provides risk coverage for offering self-funded plans through the stop-loss services, such as specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss. The specific stop-loss solution in ORMB helps the employer in mitigating high-cost claims for individual members. And, the aggregate stop-loss helps the employer in mitigating risk against high-volume claims.

The **Transaction Feed Management (TFM)** module is enhanced to support the self-funded billing. You can upload the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions in the system using the **File Upload Interface** feature. You can use the **File Upload Interface** feature to upload transaction data files in the following formats:

- Comma Separated Values
- JavaScript Object Notation
- Fixed Position
- Pipe Separated Values
- Tilde Separated Values
- Extensible Markup Language

Once the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transaction data files are uploaded in the system, you need to:

- Validate Header Details
- Validate Transaction Details and Determine Initial Price Item
- Verify Price Item Pricing
- Rate Transactions Before Billing (if required)
- Create and Update Billable Charge with the SQI values

- Clean-up Unwanted Data

The system provides the flexibility to rate the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions either prior to billing or during billing. Based on the business requirements, you can configure the system such that transactions mapped to a price item can be rated at a frequency which is different from the account's billing frequency. For example, daily, weekly, etc.

A new pricing model is introduced for the self-funded health care business which enables you to create pricing rules for:

- Claim
- Specific Stop-Loss
- Aggregate Stop-Loss
- Claim Based Fees
- Enrollment Based Fees
- One-time and Recurring Flat Fees
- Ancillary Charges

Once you create the required pricing structure, you can bill for the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions. Once the billable charges for claims, claim based fees, enrollment based fees, and ancillary are created through the transaction aggregation process, you can accumulate the specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss and create billable charges for them. Once the required billable charges are created, you can bill them using the charge-based billing batches.

## Pre-requisites

To setup the Self-Funded Billing feature, you need to do the following:

- Define the parent customers and bill groups in the system.
- Define the required pricing rule types for different pricing rule type categories, such as **Claim**, **Specific Stop-Loss**, **Aggregate Stop-Loss**, **Retention Type Claim Based**, **Retention Type Enrollment Based**, **Flat Fees**, and **Ancillary**.
- Map the transaction fields appropriately in the primary pricing rule types.
- Attach an algorithm created using the **C1\_TXNBGDRV** algorithm type to the **Bill Group Derivation** system event of the pricing rule type where the pricing rule type category is set to **Claim** or **Retention Type Enrollment Based**.
- Attach an algorithm created using the **C1\_ACCPRIDRV** algorithm type to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event of the pricing rule type where the pricing rule type category is set to **Claim**, **Retention Type Claim Based**, **Retention Type Enrollment Based**, or **Ancillary**.
- Attach an algorithm created using the **C1\_ACCPRISL** algorithm type to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event of the pricing rule type where the pricing rule type category is set to **Specific Stop-Loss** or **Aggregate Stop-Loss**.
- Attach an algorithm created using the **C1\_BAFTDRV** algorithm type to the **Bill After Date Determination** system event of the pricing rule type where the pricing rule type category is set to **Claim**, **Retention Type Claim Based**, **Retention Type Enrollment Based**, or **Ancillary**.
- Attach an algorithm created using the **SA\_DERV\_POPC** algorithm type to the **TFM - Contract Derivation** algorithm spot of the required divisions.
- Attach an algorithm created using the **C1-VRPR\_POPC** algorithm type to the **TFM - Verify Pricing Post-Processing** algorithm spot of the required divisions.
- Attach an algorithm created using the **C1\_BCHG\_POPC** algorithm type to the **TFM - Billable Charge Post-Processing** algorithm spot of the required divisions.
- Map each transaction record type to either the required rule type or primary pricing rule type.
- Define the pricing groups for the required bill groups.
- Define the required pricing rules for the parent customer and bill groups.
- Define the rate schedules with the following calculation algorithms for different price items:

Price item related to....	Calculation Algorithm
Claim	C1-CLAIMCALC
Specific Stop-Loss	C1-SSLRTCALC
Aggregate Stop-Loss	C1-ASLRTCALC
Retention Type Enrollment Based	None
Flat Fees	None
Ancillary	C1-ANCICALC

- Attach an algorithm created using the **C1-RETFLAT** algorithm type to the **TFM – Rate Pre-Processing** algorithm spot of the required divisions.
- Define the TFM information in the rating option for different price items in the following manner:

Price item related to....	Rate Option			
	Aggregate Transaction	Aggregation Schedule	Ignore Transaction	Rating Criteria
Claim	Yes	As Required	No	RITA
Specific Stop-Loss	No	-	Yes	RITX
Aggregate Stop-Loss	No	-	Yes	RITX
Retention Type Claim Based	Yes	As Required	No	RITA
Retention Type Enrollment Based	Yes	As Required	No	RITA
Ancillary	Yes	As Required	No	RITA

- Define the derivation and pricing parameters for each bill group.
- Set the following option types in the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration:
  - Person Relationship Type
  - Bill Group Policy Person Role
  - Invoice Type Characteristic Type
  - Pricing Group Rule Parameter
  - Billable Charge Line Type Parameter
  - Pricing Arrangement Parameter

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to set up the <b>C1-ASOBLLNG</b> feature configuration	<a href="#">Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration</a> on page 2349

## **Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters**

An employer may have different bill groups. Each bill group will handle the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions of employees based on the employee attributes, such as location, employment status, employment department, and so on.

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing allows you to define the derivation and pricing parameters, such as source system, parameter 1, parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 for the bill group. These parameters are used to derive the bill group against which the billable charges created for the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions should be billed in the system. The derived bill group is also used for billing the claim based fees, one-time or recurring fees, specific stop-loss credits, and aggregate stop-loss credits. You can define multiple derivation and pricing parameters for a bill group, but the derivation and pricing parameter combination must be unique for a particular duration.

For example, if you want bill group 1 to handle the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions of employees:

- Who reside in the Western location of the city
- Who belong to Grade A
- Whose transactions are received from the X system

Then, you need to define the following derivation and pricing parameters for bill group 1:



Bill Group Name	Sort ID	Source System	Parameter 1	Parameter 2	Parameter 3	Parameter 4
Bill Group 1	111	X	Western	Grade A	-	-

#### Example 1: Derivation and Pricing Parameters for Bill Group 1

Similarly, if you want bill group 2 to handle the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions of employees:

- Who reside in the Eastern location of Mumbai
- Who are the person of Indian origin
- Who belong to Grade A
- Whose transactions are received from the X system

Then, you need to define the following derivation and pricing parameters for bill group 2:

Bill Group Name	Sort ID	Source System	Parameter 1	Parameter 2	Parameter 3	Parameter 4
Bill Group 2	123	X	Eastern	Grade A	Mumbai	India

#### Example 2: Derivation and Pricing Parameters for Bill Group 2

In the example 1 and 2, the bill group is derived based on the specified employee attributes only when the source system, parameter 1, parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 are mapped to the appropriate transaction fields in the primary pricing rule type using which the pricing rules are defined for the bill group. For example,

Pricing Rule Type	Source System	Parameter 1	Parameter 2	Parameter 3	Parameter 4
PR1	External System	Location	Designation	City	Country

#### Example 3: Transaction Field Mapping in Primary Pricing Rule Type

You can also define criteria for a rule in a pricing group using the parameters, such as source system, parameter 1, parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4. For example,

Pricing Group	Rule	Source System	Parameter 1	Parameter 2	Parameter 3	Parameter 4
PG1	R1	X	Eastern	Grade A	Mumbai	India
	R2	X	Western	Grade A	-	-

#### Example 4: Rules Defined in a Pricing Group

If a pricing rule is defined for a bill group using a pricing group, you can define more than one price in the pricing rule which is offered based on the attributes of the employees. For example,

Pricing Rule	Pricing Group	Rule	Rule Criteria	Pricing Strategy	Markup or Markdown Type	Markup or Markdown Amount
PRRR1	PG1	R1	Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, Parameter 2 = Grade A, Parameter 3 = Mumbai, Parameter 4 = India	Markup	Flat Amount	\$20
		R2	Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Grade A	Markdown	Flat Amount	\$10

#### Example 5: Defining a Pricing Rule Using a Pricing Group

In the example 5, the system will use the markup strategy on the claim line items for the employees who satisfy the criteria specified in R1. On the other hand, the system will use the markdown strategy on the claim line items for the employees who satisfy the criteria specified in R2.

The derivation and pricing parameters for the bill group and sort ID combination are effective from a particular date. However, the effective date must fall within the date range defined for the sort ID of the bill group. The source system and parameter 1 are mandatory while defining the derivation and pricing parameters for a bill group.

You can define and edit the derivation and pricing parameters for the bill group and sort ID combination from the **Customer 360° Information** screen. You can also upload the derivation and pricing parameters for one or more bill group and sort ID combinations at the same time using the **Upload Request** feature. You can upload the derivation and pricing parameters for the bill group and sort ID combinations from the **Customer 360° Information** or **Upload Request** screen. Note that you can upload the derivation and pricing parameters for the bill group and sort ID only using the CSV file format.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</b> zone	<a href="#">Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</a> on page 79
How to define the derivation and pricing parameters for a bill group and sort ID combination	<a href="#">Defining the Derivation and Pricing Parameters for a Bill Group and Sort ID Combination</a> on page 119
How to edit the derivation and pricing parameters of a bill group and sort ID combination	<a href="#">Editing the Derivation and Pricing Parameters of a Bill Group and Sort ID Combination</a> on page 122
How to create an upload request for the derivation and pricing parameters from the <b>Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters</b> zone	<a href="#">Creating a Bill Group Derivation and Pricing Parameters Upload Request</a> on page 123
How to create an upload request for the derivation and pricing parameters from the <b>Upload Request</b> screen	<a href="#">Creating an Upload Request</a> on page 1406

## Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to define eligibility rule type for a related pricing rule type in a primary pricing rule type. If the eligibility rule type is defined of a related pricing rule type, the system checks whether the related pricing rule type is eligible for deriving the transaction legs when it is called during the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch execution. The system searches for all rules which are created using the respective rule type and then executes them one by one in the specified priority until the following conditions are met in a rule:

- The eligibility criteria defined in the rule is satisfied.
- The satisfied rule returns the output parameter and its value as specified in the **Rule Based Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility Field** and **Rule Based Eligibility Value** fields, respectively, of the primary pricing rule type.
- The **Rule True Action** field in the satisfied rule returns **Success**.

**Note:** At present, the system considers all rules created using the respective rule type irrespective of whether it is effective on the transaction date or not.

If all the above conditions are met in a rule, the system calls the respective related pricing rule type for deriving the transaction legs. If none of the rules created using the rule type are satisfied, the system does not call the respective related pricing rule type for deriving the transaction legs. Let us understand this with the help of an example. If the claim transaction is received with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_15 is set Employee

- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 11-05-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR1

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Eligibility Rule Type	Rule	Rule's Effective Start Date	Rule's Effective End Date	Priority	Rule Criteria	Output Parameter	Output Parameter Value
TR1	CLAIM	CLAIM BASED FEES	RT1	R1	01-01-2018	31-03-2018	1	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_15	Director
				R2	01-01-2018	31-03-2018	2	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_15	Employee
				R3	01-04-2018	30-06-2018	3	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_15	Employee
				R4	01-07-2018	31-12-2018	4	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_15	Director
		SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS	RT2	R5	01-01-2018	31-03-2018	1	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_15	Director
				R6	01-01-2018	31-03-2018	2	UDF_CHAR_1 = Eastern	UDF_CHAR_15	Employee
				R7	01-04-2018	31-12-2018	3	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_15	Employee
		AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS	RT3	R8	01-04-2018	31-12-2018	1	UDF_CHAR_1 = Eastern	UDF_CHAR_15	Employee
				R9	01-04-2018	31-12-2018	2	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_15	Director

**Note:** Here, the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field in the CLAIM pricing rule type. In addition, the **Rule Based Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility Field** field is set to **UDF\_CHAR\_15** and the **Rule Based Eligibility Value** field is set to **Employee** in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

#### Example 1: Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility Rules

In the example 1, the rules which are created using the RT1 rule type are invoked for the CLAIM BASED FEES pricing rule type in the specified priority. The claim transaction meets the eligibility criteria defined in the R1 rule. But, the output parameter's value specified in the R1 rule does not match the value specified in the **Rule Based Eligibility Value** field. Therefore, the system executes the rule with the next priority (i.e. R2). The claim transaction meets the eligibility criteria defined in the R2 rule. In addition, the output parameter and its value specified in the R2 rule match the values specified in the **Rule Based Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility Field** and **Rule Based Eligibility Value** fields, respectively. Therefore, the system considers the CLAIM BASED FEES pricing rule type for deriving the transaction legs.

The rules which are created using the RT2 rule type are invoked for the SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS pricing rule type in the specified priority. The claim transaction meets the eligibility criteria defined in the R5 rule. But, the output parameter's value specified in the R5 rule does not match the value specified in the **Rule Based Eligibility Value** field. Therefore, the system executes the rule with the next priority (i.e. R6). Here, the claim transaction does not meet the eligibility criteria defined in the R6 rule. The system then executes the rule with the next priority (i.e. R7). The claim transaction meets the eligibility criteria defined in the R7 rule. In addition, the output parameter and its value specified in the R7 rule match the values specified in the **Rule Based Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility Field** and **Rule Based Eligibility Value** fields, respectively. Therefore, the system considers the SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS pricing rule type for deriving the transaction legs.

Similarly, the rules which are created using the RT3 rule type are invoked for the AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS pricing rule type in the specified priority. The claim transaction does not meet the eligibility criteria defined in the R8 rule. Therefore, the system executes the rule with the next priority (i.e. R9). The claim transaction meets the eligibility criteria defined in the R9 rule. But, the output parameter's value specified in the R9 rule does not match the value specified in

the **Rule Based Eligibility Value** field. As none of the rules created using the rule type met the criteria, the system does not consider the AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS pricing rule type for deriving the transaction legs.

## Price Item Eligibility

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to define eligibility rule type for a price item in a pricing rule type. If the eligibility rule type is defined of a price item, the system checks whether the price item is eligible for billing when the pricing rule type is called during the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch execution. The system searches for all rules which are created using the respective rule type and then executes them one by one in the specified priority until the following conditions are met in a rule:

- The eligibility criteria defined in the rule is satisfied.
- The satisfied rule returns the output parameter and its value as specified in the **Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field** and **Rule Based Eligibility Value** fields, respectively, of the pricing rule type.
- The **Rule True Action** field in the satisfied rule returns **Success**.

**Note:** At present, the system considers all rules created using the respective rule type irrespective of whether it is effective on the transaction date or not.

If all the above conditions are met, the system searches for an effective pricing rule for the respective price item. If none of the rules created using the rule type are satisfied, the system does not map the transaction to the price item. Let us understand this with the help of an example. If the claim transaction is received with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_20 is set to Employee
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 05-03-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR1

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Eligibility Rule Type	Rule	Rule's Effective Start Date	Rule's Effective End Date	Priority	Rule Criteria	Output Parameter	Output Parameter Value
TR1	CLAIM	P1	RT1	R1	01-01-2018	31-03-2018	1	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_20	Director
				R2	01-01-2018	31-03-2018	2	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_20	Employee
				R3	01-04-2018	30-06-2018	3	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_20	Employee
				R4	01-07-2018	31-12-2018	4	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_20	Director
		P2	RT2	R5	01-01-2018	31-03-2018	1	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_20	Director
				R6	01-01-2018	31-03-2018	2	UDF_CHAR_1 = Eastern	UDF_CHAR_20	Employee
				R7	01-04-2018	31-12-2018	3	UDF_CHAR_1 = Western	UDF_CHAR_20	Employee

**Note:** Here, the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field in the CLAIM pricing rule type. In addition, the **Rule Based Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility Field** field is set to **UDF\_CHAR\_20** and the **Rule Based Eligibility Value** field is set to **Employee** in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

### Example 1: Price Item Eligibility Rules

In the example 1, the rules which are created using the RT1 rule type are invoked for P1 in the specified priority. The claim transaction meets the eligibility criteria defined in the R1 rule. But, the output parameter's value specified in the R1 rule does not match the value specified in the **Rule Based Eligibility Value** field. Therefore, the system executes the rule with the next priority (i.e. R2). The claim transaction meets the eligibility criteria defined in the R2 rule. In addition, the output parameter and its value specified in the R2 rule match the values specified in the **Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field** and **Rule Based Eligibility Value** fields, respectively. Therefore, the system considers P1 for billing and maps the claim transaction to P1 if an effective pricing rule, account, and active contract are available for P1.

Similarly, the rules which are created using the RT2 rule type are invoked for P2 in the specified priority. The claim transaction meets the eligibility criteria defined in the R5 rule. But, the output parameter's value specified in the R5 rule does not match the value specified in the **Rule Based Eligibility Value** field. Therefore, the system executes the rule with the next priority (i.e. R6). Here, the claim transaction does not meet the eligibility criteria defined in the R6 rule. The system then executes the rule with the next priority (i.e. R7). The claim transaction meets the eligibility criteria defined in the R7 rule. In addition, the output parameter and its value specified in the R7 rule match the values specified in the **Rule Based Price Item Eligibility Field** and **Rule Based Eligibility Value** fields, respectively. Therefore, the system considers P2 for billing and maps the claim transaction to P2 if an effective pricing rule, account, and active contract are available for P2.

## Self-Funded Billing Process

---

The **Self-Funded Billing** process consists of the following sub-processes:

- [Transaction Aggregation](#) on page 2281
- [Stop Loss Calculation](#) on page 2286
- [Bill Generation](#) on page 2286

### Transaction Aggregation

Once the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions are uploaded, you can create billable charges for the following using the **Transaction Aggregation** process in the **Transaction Feed Management (TFM)** module:

- Claim
- Claim Based Fees
- Retroactive Enrollment Fees
- Non-retroactive Enrollment Fees
- Ancillary

The transaction calculation lines for specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss are created during the **Transaction Aggregation** process. Earlier, the **Transaction Aggregation** process was designed to meet the requirements of the **Payments** and **Financial Services** industries. Now, in addition, it is tuned slightly to meet the requirements of the self-funded health care business. The changes are made in the following batches which are executed in the **Transaction Aggregation** process:

- **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** - During this batch execution, the system validates the transaction. If the transaction validation fails due to any reason, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**. If the transaction validation is successful, the system checks whether a primary pricing rule type is specified in the respective transaction record type. If a primary pricing rule type is not specified in the transaction record type, the system maps the transaction to one or more price item, price item parameters, and account combinations using the rules which are invoked through the rule type. However, if a primary pricing rule type is specified in the transaction record type, the system calls the primary pricing rule type and invokes the algorithms which are attached to the following system events of the primary pricing rule type in the specified sequence:
  1. **Transaction Validation** - At present, the product has not shipped an algorithm type for the **Transaction Validation** system event. If required, you can create a custom algorithm type which validates the transaction before deriving the transaction legs.

2. **Bill Group Derivation** - For more information, refer to the [Bill Group Derivation](#) on page 2287 section.
3. **Account and Price Item Derivation** - Depending on the category to which the pricing rule type belongs, you need to attach different algorithm to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event. The following table lists the algorithms that you can attach to a primary pricing rule types with different category:

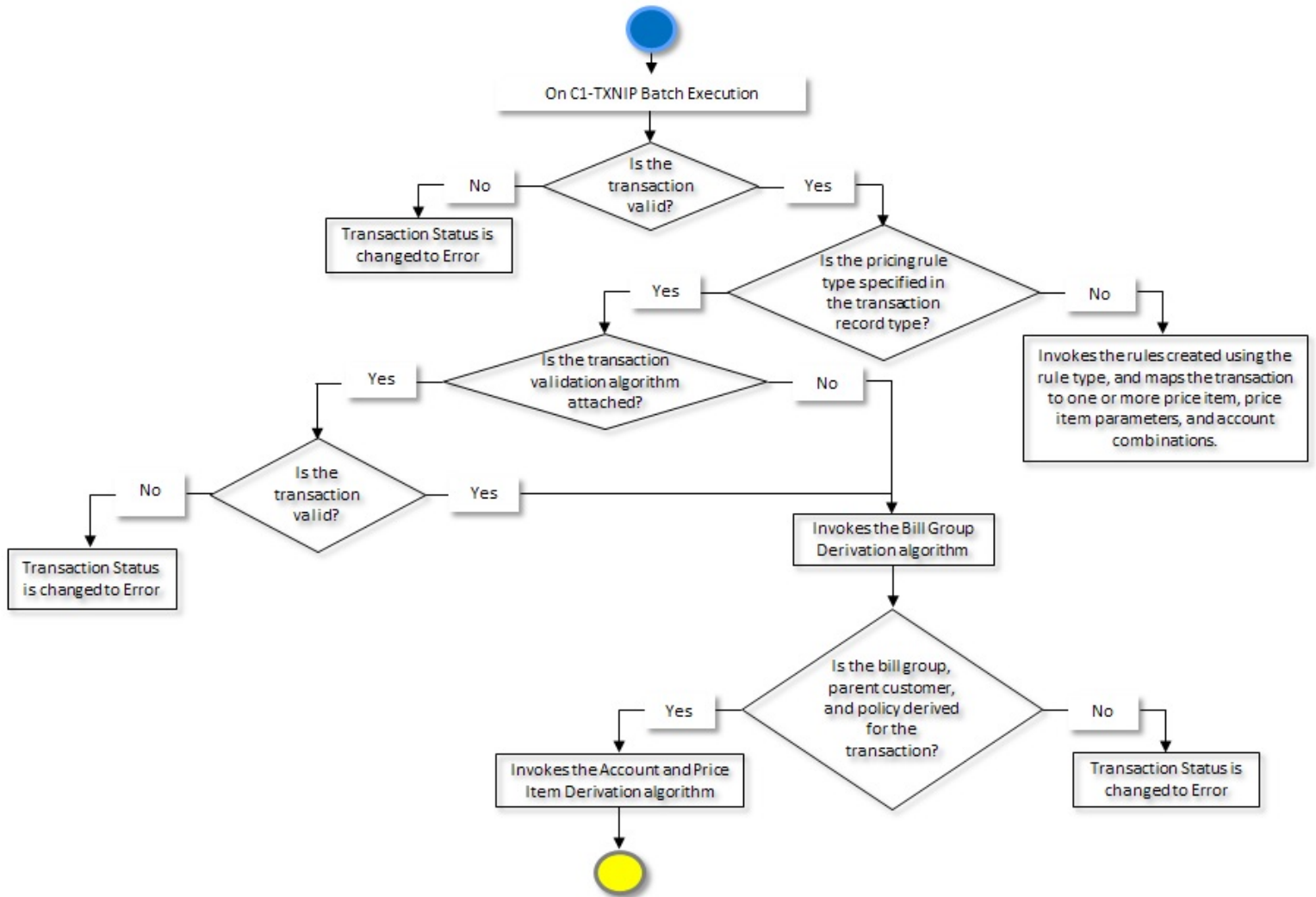
Pricing Rule Type Category	Algorithm	For more information on how the system derives the transaction legs, refer to...
Claim	C1_ACCPRIDRV	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Claim Pricing Rule Type Category)</a> on page 2290
Retention Type Enrollment Based	C1_ACCPRIDRV	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type Category)</a> on page 2320
Ancillary	C1_ACCPRIDRV	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Ancillary Pricing Rule Type Category)</a> on page 2330

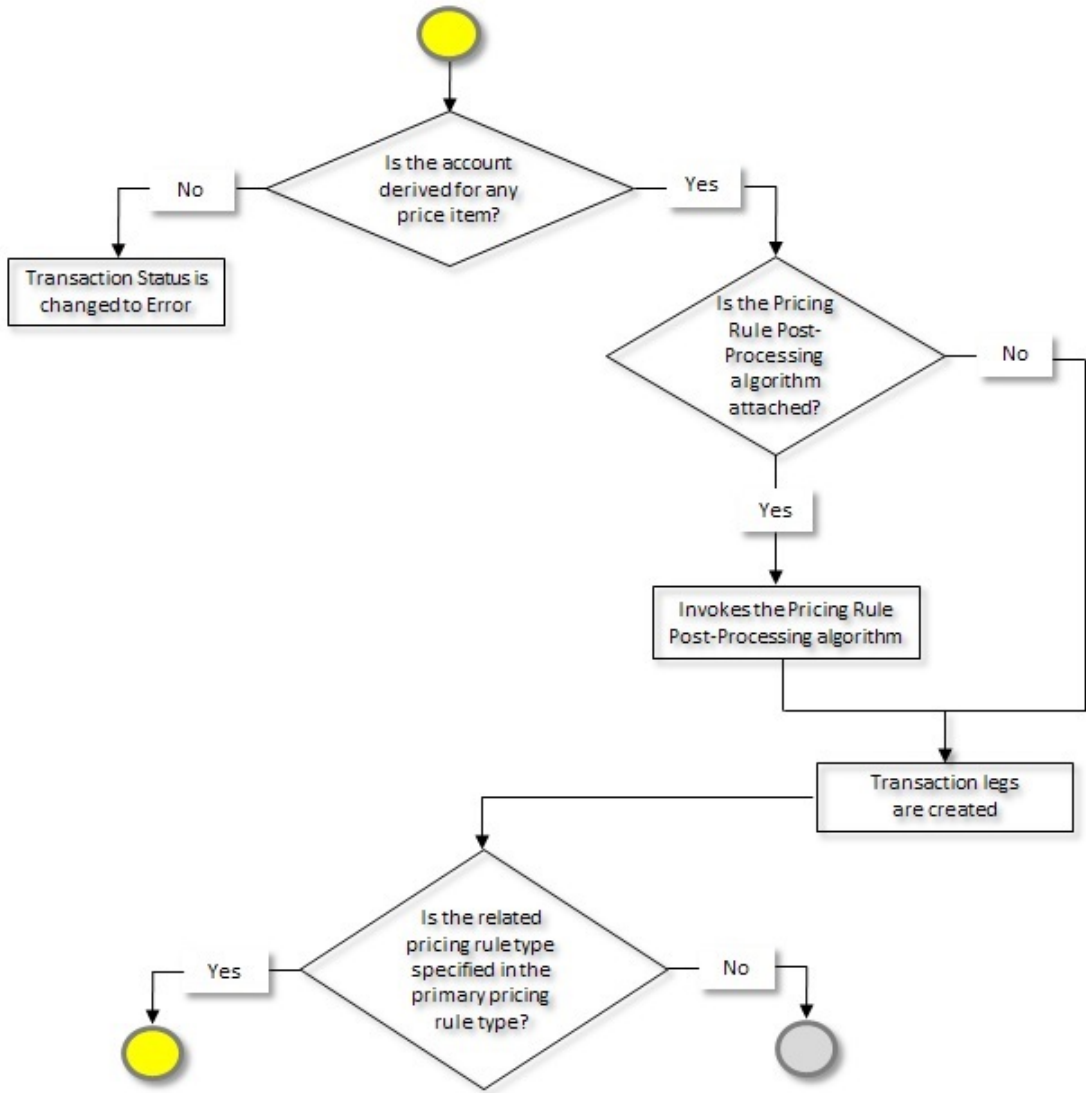
This batch then calls the eligible related pricing rule types (if any) defined in the primary pricing rule type. Note that the related pricing rule types are called one by one in the specified sequence. The system invokes the algorithms which are attached to the following system events of the related pricing rule type in the specified sequence:

1. **Transaction Validation** - At present, the product has not shipped an algorithm type for the **Transaction Validation** system event. If required, you can create a custom algorithm type which validates the transaction before deriving the transaction legs.
2. **Account and Price Item Derivation** - Depending on the category to which the pricing rule type belongs, you need to attach different algorithm to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event. The following table lists the algorithms that you can attach to a related pricing rule type with different category:

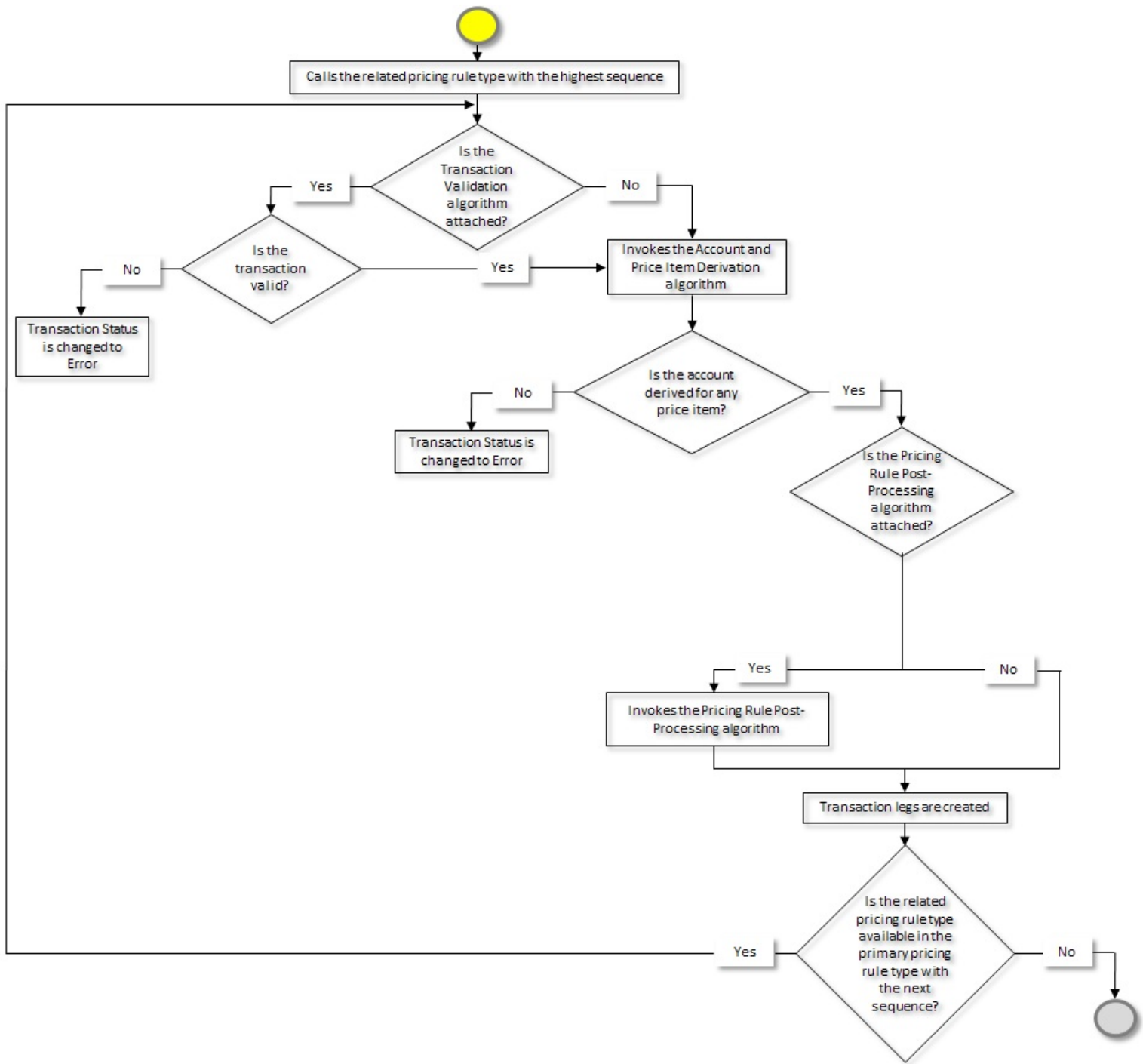
Pricing Rule Type Category	Algorithm	For more information on how the system derives the transaction legs, refer to...
Specific Stop-Loss	C1_ACCPRISL	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Specific Stop-Loss and Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule Type Categories)</a> on page 2295
Aggregate Stop-Loss	C1_ACCPRISL	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Specific Stop-Loss and Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule Type Categories)</a> on page 2295
Retention Type Claim Based	C1_ACCPRIDRV	<a href="#">Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type Category)</a> on page 2308

The following figure graphically explains the execution process of the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch:









- **Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)** - During this batch execution, the system derives an effective pricing for each transaction leg on the processing date. For more information, refer to the [Price Item Pricing Verification](#) on page 664 section. In addition, the system invokes the algorithms attached to the following algorithm spots of the derived account's division in the specified sequence for the self-funded health care business:

1. **TFM - Contract Derivation** - You can attach an algorithm created using the **SA\_DERV\_POPC** algorithm type to this algorithm spot. If the account has multiple active contracts of the contract type which is associated with the price item, this algorithm derives the contract which is associated with the policy and

maps it to the transaction leg. The manner in which the system derives the active contract for the account differs in the following scenarios:

If the effective pricing rule stamped against the transaction leg is defined at ...	Then...
The bill group level	The system first fetches the policy derived for the transaction and then derives the active contract which is associated with the policy.
The parent customer level	The system first fetches the bill group to which the account belongs and then the policy where the bill group is associated with the policy using the policy person role which is specified in the <b>Bill Group Policy Person Role</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration. Once the policy is derived, the system derives the active contract which is associated with the policy.

2. **TFM - Verify Pricing Post-Processing** - You can attach an algorithm created using the **C1-VRPR\_POPC** algorithm type to this algorithm spot. This algorithm removes the price assignment ID and price item parameter group ID from the summary ID column of each transaction leg.
- **Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)** - During this batch execution, the system aggregates the transaction legs, creates a billable charge, and updates the SQI values in the billable charge. For more information, refer to the [Aggregation](#) on page 669 section. In addition, the system invokes the algorithm attached to the following algorithm spot of the derived account's division for the self-funded health care business:
  - **TFM - Billable Charge Post Processing** - You can attach an algorithm created using the **C1\_BCHG\_POPC** algorithm type to this algorithm spot. This algorithm invokes the algorithm which is attached to the **Bill After Date Determination** system event of the respective pricing rule type. For more information, refer to the [Bill After Date Determination](#) on page 2339 section.

## Stop Loss Calculation

Oracle Revenue Management and Billing enables you to accumulate the specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss and create billable charges for them. Once the transaction calculation lines for specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss are created using the transaction aggregation process, you need to execute the following batches in the specified sequence:

1. Stamp Accumulate After Date Batch (C1-STAAD)
2. Accumulate Specific Stop Loss (C1-ACSSL)
3. Create Specific Stop-Loss Billable Charge (C1-BCSSL)
4. Accumulate Aggregate Stop Loss (C1-ACASL)
5. Create Aggregate Stop-Loss Billable Charge (C1-BCASL)

For more information about these batches, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

## Bill Generation

Once the billable charges are created for claim, claim based fees, specific stop-loss credits, aggregate stop-loss credits, enrollment based fees, and ancillary, you need to execute the following charge-based billing batches in the specified sequence to generate bills for the self-funded employer:

1. Pending Bill Generation (C1-PNDBL)
2. Bill Segment Generation (C1-BLGEN)

### 3. Bill Completion (C1-BLPPR)

For more information about these batches, see *Oracle Revenue Management and Billing Batch Guide*.

## Bill Group Derivation

The **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch derives the bill group, parent customer, and policy for the claim, enrollment, and ancillary transactions. This is possible only when an algorithm created using the **C1\_TXNBGDRV** algorithm type is attached to the **Bill Group Derivation** system event of the primary pricing rule type. The derived bill group is used for billing the following (if any):

- Claim Charges
- Claim Based Fees
- Specific Stop-Loss (SSL) Credits
- Aggregate Stop-Loss (ASL) Credits
- Retroactive Enrollment Fees
- Non-retroactive Enrollment Fees
- One-time or Recurring Fees
- Ancillary Charges

To derive a bill group, the system first determines the derivation date. The paid date is considered as the derivation date while processing the claim transactions. The coverage end date is considered as the derivation date while processing the retroactive enrollment transactions. And, the coverage start date is considered as the derivation date while processing the non-retroactive enrollment transactions. If the system cannot determine the derivation date, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

Depending on the transaction fields which are mapped to source system, parameter 1, parameter 2, parameter 3, and parameter 4 in the primary pricing rule type, the system derives the data from the transaction. For example, if the source system is mapped to the **External System** field, parameter 1 is mapped to the **Location** field, parameter 2 is mapped to the **Designation** field, parameter 3 is mapped to the **Employee Group** field, and parameter 4 is mapped to the **Nationality** field, the system derives these details from the transaction. Based on the data available in the transaction, the system derives a bill group using the derivation and pricing parameters which are defined for the bill group. Note that the system considers the derivation and pricing parameters which are effective on the derivation date. For example, if the following derivation and pricing parameters are defined for the Bill Group 1 and Bill Group 2:

Bill Group Name	Sort ID	Effective Date	Source System	Parameter 1	Parameter 2	Parameter 3	Parameter 4
Bill Group 1	123	01-01-2018	X	Eastern	Senior Manager	BG1	Indian
Bill Group 1	132	01-04-2018	X	Western	Senior Manager	-	-
Bill Group 1	156	01-07-2018	Y	Eastern	Senior Manager	BG1	Indian
Bill Group 1	163	01-10-2018	Y	Western	Senior Manager	-	-
Bill Group 2	172	01-01-2018	Y	Eastern	-	-	-
Bill Group 2	181	01-04-2018	Y	Western	-	-	-
Bill Group 2	122	01-07-2018	X	Eastern	-	-	-
Bill Group 2	112	01-10-2018	X	Western	-	-	-

Now, if the system receives a claim transaction with the following details:

- External System is set to X
- Location is set to Western
- Designation is set to Senior Manager
- Paid Date is set to 12-05-2018

In this example, the derivation and pricing parameters defined for the Bill Group 1 and 132 (sort ID) combination are effective on the paid date, and therefore the system derives Bill Group 1 for billing the claim transaction. Let us take another example where the system receives a retroactive enrollment transaction with the following details:

- External System is set to X
- Location is set to Eastern
- Designation is set to Senior Manager
- Employee Group is set to BG1
- Nationality is set to Indian
- Coverage Start Date is set to 01-01-2018
- Coverage End Date is set to 31-03-2018

In this example, the derivation and pricing parameters defined for the Bill Group 1 and 123 (sort ID) combination are effective on the coverage end date, and therefore the system derives Bill Group 1 for billing the retroactive enrollment transaction.

In the above two examples, the system could find the exact match for the bill group in the system. However, if the exact match is not available, the system finds the bill group using the best fit match. For example, if the system receives a claim transaction with the following details:

- External System is set to Y
- Location is set to Western
- Designation is set to Senior Manager
- Employee Group is set to BG2
- Nationality is set to Indian
- Paid Date is set to 01-06-2018

In this example, the system could not find the effective derivation and pricing parameters with exact match (i.e. Source System = Y, Location = Western, Designation = Senior Manager, Employee Group = BG2, and Nationality = Indian) on the paid date. Therefore, it searches for the best fit match.

While searching for the best fit match, the system first rules out the optional parameter 4 (i.e. Nationality = Indian) and then checks whether the effective derivation and pricing parameters, where Source System = Y, Location = Western, Designation = Senior Manager, and Employee Group = BG2, are available on the paid date. If so, it considers the derivation and pricing parameters and accordingly derives the bill group. If not, the system then rules out the optional parameter 3 (i.e. Employee Group = BG2) and then checks whether the effective derivation and pricing parameters, where Source System = Y, Location = Western, and Designation = Senior Manager, are available on the paid date. If so, it considers the derivation and pricing parameters and accordingly derives the bill group. If not, the system then rules out the optional parameter 2 (i.e. Designation = Senior Manager) and then checks whether the effective derivation and pricing parameters, where Source System = Y and Location = Western, are available on the paid date. If so, it considers the derivation and pricing parameters and accordingly derives the bill group. If not, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

In this example, the derivation and pricing parameters, where Source System = Y and Location = Western, defined for the Bill Group 2 and 181 (sort ID) combination are considered as the best fit match. Therefore, the system derives Bill Group 2 for billing the claim transaction. Let us take another example where the system receives a non-retroactive enrollment transaction with the following details:

- External System is set to Y
- Location is set to Eastern
- Designation is set to Senior Manager
- Employee Group is set to BG1
- Nationality is set to Indian
- Coverage Start Date is set to 01-01-2018
- Coverage End Date is set to 31-03-2018

In this example, the system could not find the effective derivation and pricing parameters with exact match (i.e. Source System = Y, Location = Eastern, Designation = Senior Manager, Employee Group = BG1, and Nationality = Indian) on the coverage start date. Therefore, it searches for the best fit match. The derivation and pricing parameters, where Source System = Y and Location = Eastern, defined for the Bill Group 2 and 172 (sort ID) combination are considered as the best fit match. Therefore, the system derives Bill Group 2 for billing the non-retroactive enrollment transaction.

Once the bill group is derived, the system derives the parent customer of the bill group. Once the parent customer is derived, the system derives the policy for the transaction in the following manner:

If the transaction is a...	Then...
Claim Transaction	<p>The system checks whether the paid date of the claim transaction falls within the policy start date and runout end date of any policy where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The bill group is associated with the policy using the policy person role which is specified in the <b>Bill Group Policy Person Role</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration.</li> <li>• The status of the policy is set to either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Force/Active</li> <li>• Runout</li> <li>• Post Runout</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Retroactive Enrollment Transaction	<p>The system checks whether the coverage end date falls within the policy start date and policy end date of any policy where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The bill group is associated with the policy using the policy person role which is specified in the <b>Bill Group Policy Person Role</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration.</li> <li>• The status of the policy is set to <b>In Force/Active</b>.</li> </ul>
Non-retroactive Enrollment Transaction	<p>The system checks whether the coverage start date falls within the policy start date and policy end date of any policy where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The bill group is associated with the policy using the policy person role which is specified in the <b>Bill Group Policy Person Role</b> option type of the <b>C1-ASOBLNG</b> feature configuration.</li> <li>• The status of the policy is set to <b>In Force/Active</b>.</li> </ul>

If the system cannot derive the policy for the transaction, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

## Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Claim Pricing Rule Type Category)

The **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch maps a claim transaction to one or more price item and price item parameters which are defined in the respective primary pricing rule type. This is possible only when an algorithm created using the **C1\_ACCPRIDRV** algorithm type is attached to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event of the primary pricing rule type.

**Note:** If you have specified the price item parameters (for which the parameter usage is set to **Pricing**) in the pricing rule types where the pricing rule type category is set to **Claim**, the system does not use these price item parameters while searching for an effective pricing rule for the respective price items. However, you can use these price item parameters while defining the accumulation criteria in the related pricing rule types where the pricing rule type category is set to **Specific Stop-Loss** or **Aggregate Stop-Loss**.

This algorithm fetches the effective pricing rule for each price item specified in the primary pricing rule type on the derivation date. The system considers the paid date as the derivation date while fetching the effective pricing rules for the claim transactions. This algorithm first searches for the effective pricing rule for a price item which is defined for the policy at the bill group level. If the system does not find any effective pricing rule for a price item which is defined for the policy at the bill group level, it inherits the effective pricing rule for a price item from the parent customer level.

For example, if the system receives a claim transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 15-01-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR1

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Assignment Level
TR1	CLAIM	P1	C1P1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Parent Customer
			C2P1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Bill Group
			C3P1	01-01-2019	30-06-2019	Bill Group
		P2	C1P2	01-06-2017	31-12-2017	Bill Group
			C2P2	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Parent Customer
			C3P2	01-01-2019	30-06-2019	Bill Group

**Note:** Here, the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

### Example 1: Effective Pricing Rule Derivation

In the example 1, the system fetches C2P1 and C2P2 pricing rules for P1 and P2, respectively, which are effective on the paid date. Note that the effective pricing rule for P1 is derived at the bill group level, whereas the effective pricing rule for P2 is derived from the parent customer level.

The system then derives the account with a particular invoice type (to which a price item must be billed) based on the priority which is defined for the respective price item in the pricing rule type. For example,

Price Item	Priority	Invoice Type	Account
P1	10	Standard	A1
	20	Retention	A2
P2	10	Retention	A2
	20	Standard	A1

### Example 2: Priority Based Account Derivation

In the example 2, while mapping the claim transaction to P1, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Standard** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the standard account (A1) of the bill group for billing. However, if an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Standard** does not exist for the bill group, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Retention** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the retention account (A2) of the bill group for billing. If an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Retention** does not exist for the bill group, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

Similarly, while mapping the claim transaction to P2, the system considers the account of the bill group which is available based on the priority. The system derives the billing account for only those price items for which the effective pricing rule is derived.

**Note:** The characteristic type which indicates the type of account (for example, **C1INVTYP**) must be specified in the **Invoice Type Characteristic Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

Once the account is derived, the system then checks whether the account has one active contract of the contract type which is associated with the price item. If so, it fetches the contract for further processing. Once the effective pricing rule, account, and active contract are derived, the transaction is mapped to the respective price item, price item parameters, and account. A transaction leg is created for each price item, price item parameters, and account combination. For example, if the claim transaction is mapped to the following price item and account combinations:

Price Item	Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
P1	PR1	A1	C1	TL1
P2	PR2	A2	C2	TL2
P3	PR3	A3	C3	TL3

### Example 3: Transaction Leg Derivation

In the example 3, the system creates three transaction legs — TL1, TL2, and TL3 for the transaction. Once a transaction leg is created, the respective effective pricing rule is stamped against the transaction leg. Usually, once a transaction leg is created in the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch, the price item parameters (for which the parameter usage is set to **Pricing**) of the transaction leg are grouped. The system does not support multiple parameter based pricing for the pricing rule types where the pricing rule type category is set to **Claim**. Therefore, when the price item parameters are not specified, the price item parameter group ID is set to 1 corresponding to each transaction leg — TL1, TL2, and TL3.

**Note:** A price item parameter group is used to determine the price item pricing. A unique group ID is generated for each group. If a group with a set of price item parameters already exists in the system, a new group is not created. Instead, the existing group is used for determining the price item pricing.

If a pricing group is used while defining a pricing rule for a bill group, the system fetches the pricing rule for a claim transaction only when the following conditions are met:

- The paid date of the claim transaction falls within the pricing rule's date range.

- The employee attributes specified in the claim transaction match the criteria defined in any one of the pricing group rule.

Let us understand this with the help of an example. A claim transaction is received with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to X
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to Indian
- UDF\_CHAR\_4 is set to HR
- UDF\_CHAR\_5 is set to Permanent
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 04-06-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR1

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Rule 1	Rule 2
TR1	CLAIM	PP1	PR1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	PG1	Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent	Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, and Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent

**Note:** Here, the source system is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_1** field, the parameter 1 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_2** field, the parameter 2 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_3** field, the parameter 3 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_4** field, the parameter 4 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_5** field, and the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

#### Example 4: Effective Pricing Rule is Defined Using a Pricing Group

In the example 4, the system considers the PR1 pricing rule for PP1 because of the following reasons:

- The paid date (i.e. 04-06-2018) of the claim transaction falls within the PR1 pricing rule's date range (i.e. 01-01-2018 to 31-12-2018).
- The employee attributes specified in the claim transaction match the criteria defined in the Rule 1 (i.e. Source System = X, Location = Western, Nationality = Indian, Employee Department = HR, and Employee Status = Permanent)

The system then stores the pricing group rule which is satisfied against a parameter which is defined in the **Pricing Group Rule Parameter** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. In the example 4, the price item parameter group is created and it contains the pricing group rule parameter. For example, Group A contains Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 1.

In the example 4, the system could find the exact match for pricing parameters defined in the pricing group rule. However, if the exact match is not available, the system finds the effective pricing rule using the best fit match for the pricing parameters defined in the pricing group rule. Note that the system searches for the exact match in the effective pricing rules at both the bill group and parent customer levels. If the exact match is not available at both the levels, the system finds the effective pricing rule using the best fit match for the pricing parameters (defined in the pricing group rule) first at the bill group level and then at the parent customer level.



Let us understand this with the help of an example. A claim transaction is received with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to X
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to Indian
- UDF\_CHAR\_4 is set to HR
- UDF\_CHAR\_5 is set to Permanent
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 04-06-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR2

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Rule 1	Rule 2
TR2	CLM	PP1	PR1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	PG1	Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western	Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Eastern
		PP2	PR2	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	PG2	Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent	Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent

**Note:** Here, the source system is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_1** field, the parameter 1 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_2** field, the parameter 2 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_3** field, the parameter 3 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_4** field, the parameter 4 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_5** field, and the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field in the CLM pricing rule type.

#### Example 5: Effective Pricing Rule Derivation Using Best Fit Match for Pricing Parameters

In the example 5, the system could not find the exact match for the pricing parameters (i.e. Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent) in the effective pricing rule for PP1. Therefore, the system searches for the best fit match. While searching for the best fit match, the system rules out the optional parameter 4 (i.e. Parameter 4 = Permanent) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, and Parameter 3 = HR exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers PR1 as the effective pricing rule for PP1. If not, the system then rules out the optional parameter 3 (i.e. Parameter 3 = HR) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, and Parameter 2 = Indian exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers PR1 as the effective pricing rule for PP1. If not, the system then rules out the optional parameter 2 (i.e. Parameter 2 = Indian) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers PR1 as the effective pricing rule for PP1. If not, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

In the example 5, the system considers Rule 1 where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western as the best fit match, and therefore fetches PR1 as the effective pricing rule for PP1. In addition, the system fetches PR2 as the effective pricing rule for PP2. The system creates two price item parameter groups — One contains Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 1 and another contains Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 2. Once the price item parameter group is created, the system creates the aggregation parameter group. An aggregation parameter group contains all price item parameters included in the pricing rule type for which the parameter usage is set to **Aggregation**.

**Note:** We recommend that you should only include the optional aggregation price item parameters in the pricing rule types where the pricing rule type category is set to **Claim**. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

If the effective pricing rule is not derived for a price item or if the account or active contract for the account is not derived, the system does not create a transaction leg for the respective price item. Let us understand this with the help of an example:

Price Item	Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
PP1	-	-	-	-
PP2	PR2	-	-	-
PP3	PR3	A3	C3	TL1
PP4	-	-	-	-
PP5	PR5	A2	C1	TL2
PP6	PR6	A1	-	-

#### Example 6: No. of Transaction Legs Derived

In the example 6, the system could not find the effective pricing rule for PP1 and PP4, the required account for PP2, and the active contract for PP6 on A1. Therefore, in this case, the system creates two transaction legs — TL1 and TL2 for the claim transaction.

If the eligibility rule type is defined of a price item, the system maps the claim transaction to the price item only when the eligibility rule is satisfied. If the eligibility rule is not satisfied, the system does not consider the price item for billing. For example,

Price Item	Eligibility Criteria Met	Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
PE1	Yes	PR1	A1	C1	TL1
PE2	-	PR2	-	-	-
PE3	No	-	-	-	-
PE4	Yes	-	-	-	-
PE5	Yes	PR3	A2	-	-
PE6	Yes	PR4	-	-	-

#### Example 7: Price Item Eligibility for Transaction Leg Derivation

In the example 7, the eligibility criteria was defined for PE1, PE3, PE4, PE5, and PE6. The eligibility criteria was satisfied for PE1, PE4, PE5, and PE6, but not for PE3. Further, the system could not find the effective pricing rule for PE4, the required account for PE2 and PE6, and the active contract for PE5 on A2. Therefore, in this case, the system creates one transaction leg (i.e. TL1) for the claim transaction. For more information, refer to the [Price Item Eligibility](#) on page 2280 section.

Once a transaction leg is created, the derivation date is set as the processing date corresponding to the transaction leg.

## Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Specific Stop-Loss and Aggregate Stop-Loss Pricing Rule Type Categories)

Once the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch calls the primary pricing rule type specified in the transaction record type, it calls the related pricing rule types (if any) defined in the primary pricing rule type. Note that the related pricing rule types are called one by one in the specified sequence. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Primary Pricing Rule Type	Sequence	Related Pricing Rule Type
CLAIM	10	SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS
	20	AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS

### Example 1: Related Pricing Rule Type Sequence

In the example 1, the system first calls the related pricing rule type with the highest sequence (i.e. 10) once the CLAIM pricing rule type is called. The system calls the related pricing rule type irrespective of whether the transaction legs are derived using the primary pricing rule type. Once the SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS pricing rule type is called, the system calls the related pricing rule type with the next sequence (i.e. 20). This process continues until all related pricing rule types defined in the primary pricing rule type are called one by one in the specified sequence.

If the eligibility rule type is defined for a related pricing rule type, the system considers the related pricing rule type for deriving the transaction legs only when the eligibility rule is satisfied. If the eligibility rule is not satisfied, the system does not consider the related pricing rule type for deriving the transaction legs. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Primary Pricing Rule Type	Sequence	Related Pricing Rule Type	Eligibility Criteria Met
CLAIM	10	SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS	Yes
	20	AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS	No

### Example 2: Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility Criteria

In the example 2, the eligibility criteria is defined for the SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS and AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS pricing rule types. However, the eligibility criteria for the AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS pricing rule type was not satisfied, and therefore it is not used for deriving the transaction legs.

The **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch maps a claim transaction to one or more price item and price item parameters which are defined in the eligible related pricing rule type. This is possible only when you attach an algorithm created using the **C1\_ACCPRISL** algorithm type to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event of the related pricing rule type.

**Note:** Ideally, the pricing rule types where the pricing rule type category is set to **Specific Stop-Loss** or **Aggregate Stop-Loss** should not have price item parameters for which the parameter usage is set to **Pricing**. This is because the system will not use these price item parameters while searching for an effective pricing rule for the respective price items.

This algorithm fetches an effective pricing rule for each price item specified in the related pricing rule type. It searches for an effective pricing rule for a price item at the bill group level. It derives an effective pricing rule for each price item using the incurred and paid dates specified in the claim transaction. It fetches an effective pricing rule where the following conditions are met:

- The incurred and paid dates of the claim transaction fall within the incurred and paid date ranges defined in the parent accumulation group (which is derived through the parent customer's pricing rule).
- A transaction leg is already created for at least one price item and price item parameters combination which is specified in the accumulation criteria.

For run-in claim transactions, this algorithm fetches an effective pricing rule where the following conditions are met:

- The run-in incurred and paid dates of the claim transaction fall within the run-in incurred and paid date ranges defined in the run-in accumulation group (which is derived through the parent customer's pricing rule).
- The effective pricing rule exists for at least one price item and price item parameters combination which is specified in the accumulation criteria.

For example, if the system receives a claim transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to BG1
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 18-02-2018
- UDF\_DATE\_2 is set to 28-02-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR1

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Incurred Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Paid Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Accumulation Criteria
					(i.e. in Parent Accumulation Group)		
TR1	CLAIM	SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS	S1	C1S1	01-01-2017 - 31-12-2017	01-01-2017 - 28-02-2018	Price Item: CLAIM, Price Item Parameters: Location = Western, Employee Group = BG1
				C2S1	01-01-2018 - 31-12-2018	01-01-2018 - 28-02-2019	Price Item: CLAIM, Price Item Parameters: Location = Western, Employee Group = BG1
					S2	C1S2	01-01-2017 - 31-12-2017

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Incurred Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Paid Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Accumulation Criteria
					(i.e. in Parent Accumulation Group)		
				C2S2	01-01-2018 - 31-12-2018	01-01-2018 - 28-02-2019	Price Item: CLM, Price Item Parameters: Location = Western, Employee Group = BG1

**Note:**

Price Item in Primary Pricing Rule Type: CLM; Price Item Parameters in Primary Pricing Rule Type where the Eligible for Stop-Loss option is selected: Location = UDF\_CHAR\_1 and Employee Group = UDF\_CHAR\_2.

Here, the incurred date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field and the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_2** field in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

**Example 3: SSL and ASL Effective Pricing Rule Derivation for Claim Transaction**

In the example 3, the system fetches the C2S1 and C2S2 pricing rules for S1 and S2, respectively, because of the following reasons:

- Incurred date mentioned in the claim transaction falls within the incurred date range (i.e. 01-01-2018 - 31-12-2018) defined in the parent accumulation group.
- Paid date mentioned in the claim transaction falls within the paid date range (i.e. 01-01-2018 - 28-02-2019) defined in the parent accumulation group.
- A transaction leg already exists for the following price item and price item parameters combination which is specified in the accumulation criteria of the C2S1 and C2S2 pricing rules:
  - Price Item: CLM, Price Item Parameters: Location = Western and Employee Group = BG1

Let us take another example where the system receives a run-in claim transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to Eastern
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to Active
- UDF\_DATE\_3 is set to 18-06-2017
- UDF\_DATE\_4 is set to 01-07-2017
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR2

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Run-in Incurred Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Run-in Paid Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Accumulation Criteria
					(i.e. in Run-in Accumulation Group)		
TR2	CLAIM	AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS	AS1	C1AS1	01-01-2017 - 31-12-2017	01-01-2017 - 28-02-2018	Price Item: CLAIM, Price Item Parameters: Location = Eastern, Employee Status = Active
				C2AS1	01-01-2018 - 31-12-2018	01-01-2018 - 28-02-2019	Price Item: CLAIM, Price Item Parameters: Location = Eastern, Employee Status = Active
							Price Item: CLM, Price Item Parameters: Location = Eastern, Employee Status = Active
			AS2	C1AS2	01-01-2017 - 31-12-2017	01-01-2017 - 28-02-2018	Price Item: CLM, Price Item Parameters: Location = Eastern, Employee Status = Active
				C2AS2	01-01-2018 - 31-12-2018	01-01-2018 - 28-02-2019	Price Item: CLM, Price Item Parameters: Location = Eastern, Employee Status = Active

**Note:**

Price Items in Primary Pricing Rule Type: CLAIM and CLM; Price Item Parameters in Primary Pricing Rule Type where the Eligible for Stop-Loss option is selected: Location = UDF\_CHAR\_1 and Employee Status = UDF\_CHAR\_3. Here, the run-in incurred date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_3** field and the run-in paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_4** field in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

**Example 4: SSL and ASL Effective Pricing Rule Derivation for Run-in Claim Transaction**

In the example 4, the system fetches the C1AS1 and C1AS2 pricing rules for AS1 and AS2, respectively, because of the following reasons:

- Run-in incurred date mentioned in the claim transaction falls within the run-in incurred date range (i.e. 01-01-2017 - 31-12-2017) defined in the run-in accumulation group.
- Run-in paid date mentioned in the claim transaction falls within the run-in paid date range (i.e. 01-01-2017 - 28-02-2018) defined in the run-in accumulation group.
- An effective pricing rule exists for the following price item and price item parameters combination which is specified in the accumulation criteria of the C1AS1 and C1AS2 pricing rules:
  - Price Item: CLAIM, Price Item Parameters: Location = Eastern, Employee Status = Active
  - Price Item: CLM, Price Item Parameters: Location = Eastern, Employee Status = Active

The system then checks whether the ASSL Credit Account (in case of specific stop-loss pricing rule) and ASL Credit Account (in case of aggregate stop-loss pricing rule) is specified in the associated parent customer's pricing rule. If so, the system considers the respective account for billing. Otherwise, the system derives the account with a particular invoice type (to which a price item must be billed) based on the priority which is defined for the respective price item in the related pricing rule type. For example,

Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Priority	Invoice Type	Account
SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS	S1	10	Standard	A1
		20	Retention	A2
	S2	10	Retention	A2
		20	Standard	A1

#### Example 5: Priority Based Account Derivation

In the example 5, while mapping the claim transaction to S1, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Standard** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the standard account (A1) of the bill group for billing. However, if an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Standard** does not exist for the bill group, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Retention** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the retention account (A2) of the bill group for billing. If an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Retention** does not exist for the bill group, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

Similarly, while mapping the claim transaction to S2, the system considers the account of the bill group which is available based on the priority. The system derives the billing account for only those price items for which the effective pricing rule is derived.

**Note:** The characteristic type which indicates the type of account (for example, **C1INVTYP**) must be specified in the **Invoice Type Characteristic Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

Once the account is derived, the system then checks whether the account has one active contract of the contract type which is associated with the price item. If so, it fetches the contract for further processing. Once the effective pricing rule, account, and active contract are derived, the transaction is mapped to the respective price item, price item parameters, and account. A transaction leg is created for each price item, price item parameters, and account combination. For example, if the claim transaction is mapped to the following price item and account combinations:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
TR1	CLAIM	SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS	S3	PRS3	A1	C3	TL3
			S4	PRS4	A2	C4	TL4

#### Example 6: Transaction Leg Derivation

In the example 6, the system creates two transaction legs — TL3 and TL4 for the claim transaction. Once a transaction leg is created, the respective effective pricing rule is stamped against the transaction leg. Usually, once a transaction leg is created in the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch, the price item parameters (for which the parameter usage is set to **Pricing**) of the transaction leg are grouped. The system does not support multiple parameter based pricing for the pricing rule types where the pricing rule type category is set to **Specific Stop-Loss** and **Aggregate Stop-Loss**. Therefore, when the price item parameters are not specified, the price item parameter group ID is set to 1 corresponding to each transaction leg — TL3 and TL4.

**Note:** A price item parameter group is used to determine the price item pricing. A unique group ID is generated for each group. If a group with a set of price item parameters already exists in the system, a new group is not created. Instead, the existing group is used for determining the price item pricing.

If a pricing group is used while defining a pricing rule for a bill group, the system fetches the pricing rule for a claim transaction only when the following conditions are met:

- The incurred and paid dates of the claim transaction fall within the incurred and paid date ranges defined in the parent accumulation group (which is derived through the parent customer's pricing rule).
- A transaction leg is already created for at least one price item and price item parameters combination which is specified in the accumulation criteria.
- The employee attributes specified in the claim transaction match the criteria defined in any one of the pricing group rule.

Similarly, the system will fetch the pricing rule for a run-in claim transaction only when the following conditions are met:

- The run-in incurred and paid dates of the claim transaction fall within the run-in incurred and paid date ranges defined in the run-in accumulation group (which is derived through the parent customer's pricing rule).
- The effective pricing rule exists for at least one price item and price item parameters combination which is specified in the accumulation criteria.
- The employee attributes specified in the run-in claim transaction match the criteria defined in any one of the pricing group rule.

Let us understand this with the help of an example. A claim transaction is received with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to X
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to Indian
- UDF\_CHAR\_4 is set to HR
- UDF\_CHAR\_5 is set to Permanent
- UDF\_CHAR\_6 is set to Senior Manager
- UDF\_CHAR\_7 is set to BG1
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 31-12-2018



- UDF\_DATE\_2 is set to 28-02-2019
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR1

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Incurred Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Paid Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Accumulation Criteria
					(i.e. in Parent Accumulation Group)				
TR1	CLAIM	SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS	S1	PR1	01-01-2018 - 31-12-2018	01-01-2018 - 28-02-2019	PG1	Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Price Item: CLM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG1
								Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Price Item: CLM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG2

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Incurred Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Paid Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Accumulation Criteria
					(i.e. in Parent Accumulation Group)				
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, and Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Price Item: CLM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG1
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, and Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Price Item: CLM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG2

**Note:**

Price Item in Primary Pricing Rule Type: CLM; Price Item Parameters in Primary Pricing Rule Type where the Eligible for Stop-Loss option is selected: Designation = UDF\_CHAR\_6 and Employee Group = UDF\_CHAR\_7.

Here, the source system is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_1** field, the parameter 1 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_2** field, the parameter 2 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_3** field, the parameter 3 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_4** field, the parameter 4 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_5** field, the incurred date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field, and the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_2** field in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

**Example 7: Effective Pricing Rule is Defined Using a Pricing Group**

In the example 7, the system considers the PR1 pricing rule for S1 because of the following reasons:

- Incurred date mentioned in the claim transaction falls within the incurred date range (i.e. 01-01-2018 - 31-12-2018) defined in the parent accumulation group.
- Paid date mentioned in the claim transaction falls within the paid date range (i.e. 01-01-2018 - 28-02-2019) defined in the parent accumulation group.
- The employee attributes specified in the claim transaction match the criteria defined in the Rule 1 (i.e. Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent).
- A transaction leg already exists for the following price item and price item parameters combination which is specified in the accumulation criteria of the PR1 pricing rule:
  - Price Item: CLM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG1

The system then stores the pricing group rule which is satisfied against a parameter which is defined in the **Pricing Group Rule Parameter** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. In the example 7, the price item parameter group is created and it contains the pricing group rule parameter. For example, Group A contains Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 1.

In the example 7, the system could find the exact match for pricing parameters defined in the pricing group rule. However, if the exact match is not available, the system finds the effective pricing rule using the best fit match for the pricing parameters defined in the pricing group rule. Let us understand this with the help of an example. A claim transaction is received with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to X
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to Indian
- UDF\_CHAR\_4 is set to HR
- UDF\_CHAR\_5 is set to Permanent
- UDF\_CHAR\_6 is set to Senior Manager
- UDF\_CHAR\_7 is set to BG1
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 06-06-2018
- UDF\_DATE\_2 is set to 27-06-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR2

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Incurred Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Paid Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Accumulation Criteria
					(i.e. in Parent Accumulation Group)				
TR2	CLAIM	SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS	S1	PR1	01-01-2018 - 31-12-2018	01-01-2018 - 28-02-2019	PG1	Rule 1 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western)	Price Item: CLAIM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1
								Rule 1 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western)	Price Item: CLAIM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG2
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Eastern)	Price Item: CLAIM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Eastern)	Price Item: CLAIM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG2

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Incurred Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Paid Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Accumulation Criteria
					(i.e. in Parent Accumulation Group)				
			S2	PR2	01-01-2018 - 31-12-2018	01-01-2018 - 28-02-2019	PG2	Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Price Item: CLAIM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG2
								Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Price Item: CLAIM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Price Item: CLAIM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG2

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Incurred Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Paid Date Range in Associated Parent Customer's Pricing Rule	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Accumulation Criteria
					(i.e. in Parent Accumulation Group)				
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Price Item: CLAIM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1

**Note:**

Price Item in Primary Pricing Rule Type: CLAIM; Price Item Parameters in Primary Pricing Rule Type where the Eligible for Stop-Loss option is selected: Designation = UDF\_CHAR\_6 and Employee Group = UDF\_CHAR\_7.

Here, the source system is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_1** field, the parameter 1 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_2** field, the parameter 2 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_3** field, the parameter 3 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_4** field, the parameter 4 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_5** field, the incurred date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field, and the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_2** field in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

**Example 8: Effective Pricing Rule Derivation Using Best Fit Match for Pricing Parameters**

In the example 8, the system could not find the exact match for the pricing parameters (i.e. Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent) in the effective pricing rule for S1. Therefore, the system searches for the best fit match. While searching for the best fit match, the system rules out the optional parameter 4 (i.e. Parameter 4 = Permanent) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, and Parameter 3 = HR exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers the pricing group rule for further processing. If not, the system then rules out the optional parameter 3 (i.e. Parameter 3 = HR) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, and Parameter 2 = Indian exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers the pricing group rule for further processing. If not, the system then rules out the optional parameter 2 (i.e. Parameter 2 = Indian) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers the pricing group rule for further processing. If not, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

In the example 8, the system considers Rule 1 where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western as the best fit match in the PR1 pricing rule for S1. In addition, a transaction leg already exists for the following price item and price item parameters combination which is specified in the accumulation criteria of the PR1 pricing rule:

- Price Item: CLAIM; Price Item Parameters: Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1

Therefore, the system fetches PR1 as the effective pricing rule for S1. In addition, the system fetches PR2 as the effective pricing rule for S2. The system creates two price item parameter groups — One contains Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 1 and another contains Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 2. Once the price item parameter group is created,

the system creates the aggregation parameter group. An aggregation parameter group contains all price item parameters included in the related pricing rule type for which the parameter usage is set to **Aggregation**.

If the effective pricing rule is not derived for a price item or if the account or active contract for the account is not derived, the system does not create a transaction leg for the respective price item. Let us understand this with the help of an example:

Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS	AS11	-	-	-	-
	AS12	PR12	A1	C1	TL11
	AS13	PR13	-	-	-
	AS14	PR14	A2	-	-
	AS15	PR15	-	-	-
	AS16	-	-	-	-
	AS17	PR17	A2	C2	TL12

#### Example 9: No. of Transaction Legs Derived

In the example 9, the system could not find the effective pricing rule for AS11 and AS16, the required account for AS13 and AS15, and the active contract for AS14 on A2. Therefore, in this case, the system creates two transaction legs — TL11 and TL12 for the transaction.

If the eligibility rule type is defined for a price item, the system maps the transaction to the price item only when the eligibility rule is satisfied. If the eligibility rule is not satisfied, the system does not consider the price item for billing. For example,

Sequence	Related Pricing Rule Type	Rule Type Eligibility Criteria Met	Price Item	Price Item Eligibility Criteria Met	Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
10	SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS	Yes	SS1	Yes	PR1	A1	C1	TL1
			SS2	-	PR2	A2	C2	TL2
			SS3	No	-	-	-	-
20	AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS	No	AS4	-	-	-	-	-
			AS5	-	-	-	-	-
			AS6	-	-	-	-	-

#### Example 10: Price Item Eligibility for Transaction Leg Derivation

In the example 10, the eligibility criteria is defined for the SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS and AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS pricing rule types. However, the eligibility criteria for the AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS pricing rule type was not satisfied, and therefore it is not used for deriving the transaction legs. The eligibility criteria for SS1 was satisfied, but the eligibility criteria for SS3 was not satisfied. Therefore, in this case, the system creates two transaction legs (i.e. TL1 and TL2) for the claim transaction. For more information about the related pricing rule type eligibility and price item eligibility features, refer to the [Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility](#) on page 2278 and [Price Item Eligibility](#) on page 2280 sections, respectively.

Once a transaction leg is created, the effective pricing rule's start date is set as the processing date corresponding to the transaction leg.

## Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Retention Type Claim Based Pricing Rule Type Category)

Once the **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch calls the primary pricing rule type specified in the transaction record type, it calls the related pricing rule types (if any) defined in the primary pricing rule type. Note that the related pricing rule types are called one by one in the specified sequence. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Primary Pricing Rule Type	Sequence	Related Pricing Rule Type
CLAIM	10	RETENTION TYPE CLAIM BASED
	20	SPECIFIC STOP-LOSS
	30	AGGREGATE STOP-LOSS

### Example 1: Related Pricing Rule Type Sequence

In the example 1, the system first calls the related pricing rule type with the highest sequence (i.e. 10) once the CLAIM pricing rule type is called. The system calls the related pricing rule type irrespective of whether the transaction legs are derived using the primary pricing rule type. Once the RETENTION TYPE CLAIM BASED pricing rule type is called, the system calls the related pricing rule type with the next sequence (i.e. 20). This process continues until all related pricing rule types defined in the primary pricing rule type are called one by one in the specified sequence.

If the eligibility rule type is defined for a related pricing rule type, the system considers the related pricing rule type for deriving the transaction legs only when the eligibility rule is satisfied. If the eligibility rule is not satisfied, the system does not consider the related pricing rule type for deriving the transaction legs. Let us understand this with the help of an example.

Primary Pricing Rule Type	Sequence	Related Pricing Rule Type	Eligibility Criteria Met
CLAIM	10	RETENTION TYPE CLAIM BASED	Yes
	20	CLAIM BASED FEES	-
	30	CLAIM FEE CHARGES	No

### Example 2: Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility Criteria

In the example 2, the eligibility criteria is defined for the RETENTION TYPE CLAIM BASED and CLAIM FEE CHARGES pricing rule types. However, the eligibility criteria for the CLAIM FEE CHARGES pricing rule type was not satisfied, and therefore it is not used for deriving the transaction legs.

The **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch maps a claim transaction to one or more price item and price item parameters which are defined in the eligible related pricing rule type. This is possible only when you attach an algorithm created using the **C1\_ACCPRIDRV** algorithm type to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event of the related pricing rule type.

This algorithm fetches the effective pricing rule for each price item and price item parameters combination specified in the related pricing rule type on the derivation date. The system considers the paid date as the derivation date. This algorithm first searches for the effective pricing rule for a price item and price item parameters combination which is defined for the policy at the bill group level. If the system does not find any effective pricing rule for a price item and price item parameters combination which is defined for the policy at the bill group level, it inherits the effective pricing rule for a price item and price item parameters combination from the parent customer level.



For example, if the system receives a claim transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 15-01-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR1

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Assignment Level
TR1	CLAIM	RETENTION TYPE CLAIM BASED	P3	C1P3	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Parent Customer
				C2P3	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Bill Group
			P4	C1P4	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Parent Customer
				C2P4	01-01-2019	30-06-2019	Bill Group

**Note:** Here, the paid date is mapped to the UDF\_DATE\_1 field in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

### Example 3: Effective Pricing Rule Derivation

In the example 3, the system fetches C2P3 and C1P4 pricing rules for P3 and P4 respectively, which are effective on the paid date. Note that the effective pricing rule for P3 is derived at the bill group level, whereas the effective pricing rule for P4 is derived from the parent customer level.

While fetching the effective pricing rule, the system first searches for the exact match for the price item parameters at both the levels. For example, if the system receives a claim transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Active
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 20-03-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR4

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item Parameters in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Price Item Parameters in Pricing Rule	Fees	Assignment Level
TR4	CLAIM	CLAIM BASED CHARGES	P1	Location = UDF_CHAR_1 and Employee Status = UDF_CHAR_2	C1P1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Location = Western and Employee Status = Active	\$10	Parent Customer
								Location = Eastern and Employee Status = Active	\$12	

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item Parameters in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Price Item Parameters in Pricing Rule	Fees	Assignment Level
								Location = Eastern and Employee Status = Retired	\$11	
								Location = Western and Employee Status = Retired	\$9	
					C2P1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Location = Western and Employee Status = Active	\$8	Bill Group
								Location = Eastern and Employee Status = Active	\$9	
								Location = Eastern and Employee Status = Retired	\$10	
								Location = Western and Employee Status = Retired	\$9	

**Note:** Here, the paid date is mapped to the UDF\_DATE\_1 field in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

#### Example 4: Exact Match for Price Item Parameters

In the example 4, the system fetches the C2P1 pricing rule for P1 because of the following reasons:

- The paid date (i.e. 20-03-2018) of the claim transaction falls within the date range (i.e. 01-01-2018 to 31-12-2018) of the C2P1 pricing rule which is defined at the bill group level.
- It contains the exact match for the price item parameters which are received in the transaction.

If the system cannot find the exact match for the price item parameters at both the levels, it searches for the best fit match for the price item parameters first at the bill group level and then at the parent customer level. For example, if the system receives a claim transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Active
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to HR
- UDF\_CHAR\_4 is set to Indian
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 07-06-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR5

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item Parameters in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Price Item Parameters in Pricing Rule	Fees	Assignment Level
TR5	CLAIM	RETENTION CLAIM BASED FEES	P3	Location = UDF_CHAR_1, Employee Status = UDF_CHAR_2, Employee Department = UDF_CHAR_3, and Nationality = UDF_CHAR_4	C1P3	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Location = Western and Employee Status = Active	\$10	Bill Group
								Location = Eastern and Employee Status = Active	\$12	
								Location = Eastern and Employee Status = Retired	\$11	
								Location = Western and Employee Status = Retired	\$9	

**Note:** Here, the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

#### Example 5: Best Fit Match for Price Item Parameters

**Note:** The **Location** and **Employee Status** parameters are mandatory for P3. However, the **Employee Department** and **Nationality** parameters are optional with the priority set to 1 and 2, respectively.

In the example 5, the system could not find the exact match for the price item parameters (i.e. Location = Western, Employee Status = Active, Employee Department = HR, and Nationality = Indian) in the effective pricing rule for P3. Therefore, the system searches for the best fit match. While searching for the best fit match, the system rules out the optional parameter with lowest priority (i.e. Nationality = Indian) and checks whether pricing is defined for the price item parameters (i.e. Location = Western, Employee Status = Active, and Employee Department = HR) in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers C1P3 as the effective pricing rule for P3. If not, the system rules out the optional parameter with the next lowest priority (i.e. Employee Department = HR) and checks whether pricing is defined for the price item parameters (i.e. Location = Western and Employee Status = Active) in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers C1P3 as the effective pricing rule for P3. If not, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

In the example 5, the system considers pricing defined for the price item parameters (i.e. Location = Western and Employee Status = Active) as the best fit match, and therefore fetches C1P3 as the effective pricing rule for P3. While fetching the effective pricing rule, the system considers only those price item parameters specified in the related pricing rule type for which the parameter usage is set to **Pricing**.

The system then derives the account with a particular invoice type (to which a price item must be billed) based on the priority which is defined for the respective price item in the related pricing rule type. For example,

Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Priority	Invoice Type	Account
RETENTION TYPE CLAIM BASED	P3	10	Standard	A1
	P4	10	Retention	A2
		20	Standard	A1

#### Example 6: Priority Based Account Derivation

In the example 6, while mapping the claim transaction to P3, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Standard** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the standard account (A1) of the bill group for billing. However, if an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Standard** does not exist for the bill group, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

Similarly, while mapping the claim transaction to P4, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Retention** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the retention account (A2) of the bill group for billing. However, if an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Retention** does not exist for the bill group, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Standard** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the standard account (A1) of the bill group for billing. If an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Standard** does not exist for the bill group, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

**Note:** The characteristic type which indicates the type of account (for example, **C1INVTYP**) must be specified in the **Invoice Type Characteristic Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

Once the account is derived, the system then checks whether the account has one active contract of the contract type which is associated with the price item. If so, it fetches the contract for further processing. Once the effective pricing rule, account, and active contract are derived, the transaction is mapped to the respective price item, price item parameters, and account. A transaction leg is created for each price item, price item parameters, and account combination. For example, if the system receives a claim transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Active
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to HR
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 03-01-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR5

Let us assume that the claim transaction is mapped to the following price item, price item parameters, and account combinations:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item Parameters in Related Pricing Rule Type	Effective Pricing Rule	Best Fit Match for Price Item Parameters in Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
TR5	CLAIM	CLAIM BASED FEES	P1	Location = UDF_CHAR_1, Employee Status = UDF_CHAR_2, Employee Department = UDF_CHAR_3, and Nationality = UDF_CHAR_4	PR1	Location = Western and Employee Status = Active	A1	C1	TL1

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item Parameters in Related Pricing Rule Type	Effective Pricing Rule	Best Fit Match for Price Item Parameters in Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
			P2		PR2	Location = Western and Employee Status = Active	A2	C2	TL2
			P3		PR3	Location = Western and Employee Status = Active	A3	C3	TL3

**Note:** Here, the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

### Example 7: Transaction Leg Derivation

In the example 7, the system maps the claim transaction to the following price item, price item parameters, and account combinations:

- Price Item: P1; Price Item Parameter: Location = Western, Employee Status = Active, and Employee Department = HR; and Account: A1
- Price Item: P2; Price Item Parameter: Location = Western, Employee Status = Active, and Employee Department = HR; and Account: A2
- Price Item: P3; Price Item Parameter: Location = Western, Employee Status = Active, and Employee Department = HR; and Account: A3

**Note:** The nationality information of an employee is not received in the **UDF\_CHAR\_4** field, and therefore the claim transaction is not mapped to the **Nationality** price item parameter.

In the example 7, the system creates three transaction legs — TL1, TL2, and TL3 for the claim transaction. Once a transaction leg is created, the respective effective pricing rule is stamped against the transaction leg. In addition, the price item parameters of the transaction leg are grouped. In the example 7, the system creates one price item parameter group which contains the following price item parameters:

- Location = Western
- Employee Status = Active
- Employee Department = HR

A group is used to determine the price item pricing. A unique group ID is generated for each group. If a group with a set of price item parameters already exists in the system, a new group is not created. Instead, the existing group is used for determining the price item pricing.

**Note:** The price item parameter group contains only those price item parameters included in the related pricing rule type for which the parameter usage is set to **Pricing**.

If a pricing group is used while defining a pricing rule for a bill group, the system fetches the pricing rule for a claim transaction only when the following conditions are met:

- The paid date of the claim transaction falls within the pricing rule's date range.
- The employee attributes specified in the claim transaction match the criteria defined in any one of the pricing group rule.

- The employee attributes specified in the claim transaction match the price item parameters defined within the satisfied rule.

Let us understand this with the help of an example. A claim transaction is received with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to X
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to Indian
- UDF\_CHAR\_4 is set to HR
- UDF\_CHAR\_5 is set to Permanent
- UDF\_CHAR\_6 is set to Senior Manager
- UDF\_CHAR\_7 is set to BG1
- UDF\_DATE\_1 03-01-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR6

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item Parameters in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Price Item Parameters	Fees
TR6	CLAIM	CLAIM BASED FEES	PP1	Designation = UDF_CHAR_6; Employee Group = UDF_CHAR_7	PR1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	PG1	Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG1	\$10
									Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG2	\$12

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item Parameters in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Price Item Parameters	Fees
									Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, and Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG1	\$8
									Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, and Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG2	\$9

**Note:** Here, the source system is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_1** field, the parameter 1 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_2** field, the parameter 2 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_3** field, the parameter 3 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_4** field, the parameter 4 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_5** field, and the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

#### Example 8: Effective Pricing Rule is Defined Using a Pricing Group

In the example 8, the system considers the PR1 pricing rule for PP1 because of the following reasons:

- The paid date (i.e. 03-01-2018) of the claim transaction falls within the PR1 pricing rule's date range (i.e. 01-01-2018 to 31-12-2018).
- The employee attributes specified in the claim transaction match the criteria defined in the Rule 1 (i.e. Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent).
- The employee attributes specified in the claim transaction match the price item parameters defined within the Rule 1.

The system then stores the pricing group rule which is satisfied against a parameter which is defined in the **Pricing Group Rule Parameter** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. In such case, the price item parameter group contains the price item parameters and the pricing group rule parameter. For example, Group A contains Designation = Senior Manager, Employee Group = BG1, and Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 1.

In the example 8, the system could find the exact match for pricing parameters defined in the pricing group rule. However, if the exact match is not available, the system finds the effective pricing rule using the best fit match for the pricing parameters defined in the pricing group rule. Note that the system searches for the exact match in the effective

pricing rules at both the bill group and parent customer levels. If the exact match is not available at both the levels, the system finds the effective pricing rule using the best fit match for the pricing parameters (defined in the pricing group rule) first at the bill group level and then at the parent customer level.

Let us understand this with the help of an example. A claim transaction is received with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to X
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to Indian
- UDF\_CHAR\_4 is set to HR
- UDF\_CHAR\_5 is set to Permanent
- UDF\_CHAR\_6 is set to Senior Manager
- UDF\_CHAR\_7 is set to BG1
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 31-05-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR6

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item Parameters in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Price Item Parameters in Pricing Rule	Fees
TR6	CLAIM	CLAIM BASED FEES	PP1	Designation = UDF_CHAR_6, Employee Group = UDF_CHAR_7	PR1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	PG1	Rule 1 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1	\$20
									Rule 1 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG2	\$21
									Rule 2 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Eastern)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1	\$18



Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item Parameters in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Price Item Parameters in Pricing Rule	Fees
									Rule 2 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Eastern)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG2	\$19
			PP2		PR2	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	PG2	Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG2	\$5
									Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1	\$5
									Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG2	\$6

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item in Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item Parameters in Related Pricing Rule Type	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Price Item Parameters in Pricing Rule	Fees
									Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1	\$9

**Note:** Here, the source system is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_1** field, the parameter 1 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_2** field, the parameter 2 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_3** field, the parameter 3 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_4** field, the parameter 4 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_5** field, and the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field in the CLAIM pricing rule type.

#### Example 9: Effective Pricing Rule Derivation Using Best Fit Match for Pricing Parameters

In the example 9, the system could not find the exact match for the pricing parameters (i.e. Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent) in the effective pricing rule for PP1. Therefore, the system searches for the best fit match. While searching for the best fit match, the system rules out the optional parameter 4 (i.e. Parameter 4 = Permanent) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, and Parameter 3 = HR exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers the pricing group rule for further processing. If not, the system then rules out the optional parameter 3 (i.e. Parameter 3 = HR) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, and Parameter 2 = Indian exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers the pricing group rule for further processing. If not, the system then rules out the optional parameter 2 (i.e. Parameter 2 = Indian) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers the pricing group rule for further processing. If not, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

In the example 9, the system considers Rule 1 where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western as the best fit match in the PR1 pricing rule for PP1. In addition, the employee attributes in the claim transaction satisfy the price item parameters (i.e. Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG1) defined within the Rule 1. Therefore, the system fetches PR1 as the effective pricing rule for PP1. In addition, the system fetches PR2 as the effective pricing rule for PP2. The system creates two price item parameter groups — One contains Designation = Senior Manager, Employee Group = BG1, and Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 1 and another contains Designation = Senior Manager, Employee Group = BG1, and Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 2. Once the price item parameter group is created, the system creates the aggregation parameter group. An aggregation parameter group contains all price item parameters included in the related pricing rule type for which the parameter usage is set to **Aggregation**.

If the effective pricing rule is not derived for a price item and price item parameters combination or if the account or active contract for the account is not derived, the system does not create a transaction leg for the respective price item. Let us understand this with the help of an example:

Related Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
RETENTION TYPE CLAIM BASED	PP11	Designation = UDF_CHAR_6, Employee Status = UDF_CHAR_7	-	-	-	-
	PP12		PR12	A1	C1	TL11
	PP13		PR13	-	-	-
	PP14		PR14	A2	-	-
	PP15		PR15	-	-	-
	PP16		-	-	-	-
	PP17		PR17	A2	C2	TL12

#### Example 10: No. of Transaction Legs Derived

In the example 10, the system could not find the effective pricing rule for PP11 and PP16, the required account for PP13 and PP15, and the active contract for PP14 on A2. Therefore, in this case, the system creates two transaction legs — TL11 and TL12 for the transaction.

If the eligibility rule type is defined for a price item, the system maps the transaction to the price item only when the eligibility rule is satisfied. If the eligibility rule is not satisfied, the system does not consider the price item for billing. For example,

Sequence	Related Pricing Rule Type	Rule Type Eligibility Criteria Met	Price Item	Price Item Eligibility Criteria Met	Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
10	RETENTION TYPE CLAIM BASED	Yes	PE1	Yes	PR1	A1	C1	TL1
			PE2	-	PR2	A2	-	-
			PE3	No	-	-	-	-
20	CLAIM BASED FEES	-	PE4	-	PR3	A1	C2	TL2
			PE5	Yes	PR4	-	-	-
			PE6	No	-	-	-	-
30	CLAIM FEE CHARGES	No	PE7	-	-	-	-	-
			PE8	-	-	-	-	-
			PE9	-	-	-	-	-

#### Example 11: Price Item Eligibility for Transaction Leg Derivation

In the example 11, the eligibility criteria is defined for the RETENTION TYPE CLAIM BASED and CLAIM FEE CHARGES pricing rule types. However, the eligibility criteria for the CLAIM FEE CHARGES pricing rule type was not satisfied, and therefore it is not used for deriving the transaction legs. The eligibility criteria for PE1 and PE5 was satisfied, but the eligibility criteria for PE3 and PE6 was not satisfied. Further, the system could not find the required account for PE5 and the active contract for PE2 on A2. Therefore, in this case, the system creates two transaction legs (i.e. TL1 and TL2) for the claim transaction. For more information about the related pricing rule type eligibility and price item eligibility features, refer to the [Related Pricing Rule Type Eligibility](#) on page 2278 and [Price Item Eligibility](#) on page 2280 sections, respectively.

Once a transaction leg is created, the derivation date is set as the processing date corresponding to the transaction leg.

## Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Retention Type Enrollment Based Pricing Rule Type Category)

The **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch maps the retroactive and non-retroactive enrollment transactions to one or more price item and price item parameters which are defined in the respective primary pricing rule type. This is possible only when an algorithm created using the **C1\_ACCPRIDRV** algorithm type is attached to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event of the primary pricing rule type.

This algorithm fetches the effective pricing rule for each price item and price item parameters combination specified in the primary pricing rule type on the derivation date. The system considers the coverage end date and coverage start date as the derivation date while fetching the effective pricing rules for the retroactive and non-retroactive enrollment transactions, respectively. This algorithm first searches for the effective pricing rule for a price item and price item parameters combination which is defined for the policy at the bill group level. If the system does not find any effective pricing rule for a price item and price item parameters combination which is defined for the policy at the bill group level, it inherits the effective pricing rule for a price item and price item parameters combination from the parent customer level.

For example, if the system receives a non-retroactive enrollment transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 01-02-2018
- UDF\_DATE\_2 is set to 28-02-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR3

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Assignment Level
TR3	RETENTION TYPE ENROLLMENT BASED	P1	C1P1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Parent Customer
			C2P1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Bill Group
			C3P1	01-01-2019	30-06-2019	Bill Group
		P2	C1P2	01-06-2017	31-12-2017	Bill Group
			C2P2	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Parent Customer
			C3P2	01-01-2019	30-06-2019	Bill Group

**Note:** Here, the coverage start date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field and the coverage end date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_2** field in the RETENTION TYPE ENROLLMENT BASED pricing rule type.

### Example 1: Effective Pricing Rule Derivation

In the example 1, the system fetches C2P1 and C2P2 pricing rules for P1 and P2, respectively, which are effective on the coverage start date. Note that the effective pricing rule for P1 is derived at the bill group level, whereas the effective pricing rule for P2 is derived from the parent customer level.

While fetching the effective pricing rule, the system first searches for exact match for the price item parameters at both the levels. For example, if the system receives a retroactive enrollment transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Active

- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 01-03-2018
- UDF\_DATE\_2 is set to 31-03-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR4

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Price Item Parameters in Pricing Rule	Fees	Assignment Level
TR4	ENROLLMENT BASED FEES	P1	Location = UDF_CHAR_1 and Employee Status = UDF_CHAR_2	C1P1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Location = Western and Employee Status = Active	\$10	Parent Customer
							Location = Eastern and Employee Status = Active	\$12	
							Location = Eastern and Employee Status = Retired	\$11	
							Location = Western and Employee Status = Retired	\$9	
				C2P1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Location = Western and Employee Status = Active	\$8	Bill Group
							Location = Eastern and Employee Status = Active	\$9	
							Location = Eastern and Employee Status = Retired	\$10	
							Location = Western and Employee Status = Retired	\$9	

**Note:** Here, the coverage start date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field and the coverage end date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_2** field in the ENROLLMENT BASED FEES pricing rule type.

#### Example 2: Exact Match for Price Item Parameters

In the example 2, the system fetches the C2P1 pricing rule for P1 because of the following reasons:

- The coverage end date (i.e. 31-03-2018) of the retroactive enrollment transaction falls within the date range (i.e. 01-01-2018 to 31-12-2018) of the C2P1 pricing rule which is defined at the bill group level.
- It contains the exact match for the price item parameters which are received in the transaction.

If the system cannot find the exact match for the price item parameters at both the levels, the system searches for the best fit match for the price item parameters first at the bill group level and then at the parent customer level. For example, if the system receives a retroactive enrollment transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Active
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to HR
- UDF\_CHAR\_4 is set to Indian
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 01-03-2018
- UDF\_DATE\_2 is set to 31-03-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR5

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Price Item Parameters in Pricing Rule	Fees	Assignment Level
TR5	ENROLLMENT BASED CHARGES	P3	Location = UDF_CHAR_1, Employee Status = UDF_CHAR_2, Employee Department = UDF_CHAR_3, and Nationality = UDF_CHAR_4	C1P3	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Location = Western and Employee Status = Active	\$10	Bill Group
							Location = Eastern and Employee Status = Active	\$12	
							Location = Eastern and Employee Status = Retired	\$11	
							Location = Western and Employee Status = Retired	\$9	

**Note:**

Here, the coverage start date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field and the coverage end date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_2** field in the ENROLLMENT BASED CHARGES pricing rule type.

Here, the **Location** and **Employee Status** parameters are mandatory for P3. However, the **Employee Department** and **Nationality** parameters are optional with the priority set to 1 and 2, respectively.

**Example 3: Best Fit Match for Price Item Parameters**

In the example 3, the system could not find the exact match for the price item parameters (i.e. Location = Western, Employee Status = Active, Employee Department = HR, and Nationality = Indian) in the effective pricing rule for P3. Therefore, the system searches for the best fit match. While searching for the best fit match, the system rules out the optional parameter with lowest priority (i.e. Nationality = Indian) and checks whether pricing is defined for the price item parameters (i.e. Location = Western, Employee Status = Active, and Employee Department = HR) in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers C1P3 as the effective pricing rule for P3. If not, the system rules out the optional parameter with the next lowest priority (i.e. Employee Department = HR) and checks whether pricing is defined for the price item

parameters (i.e. Location = Western and Employee Status = Active) in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers C1P3 as the effective pricing rule for P3. If not, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

In the example 3, the system considers pricing defined for the price item parameters (i.e. Location = Western and Employee Status = Active) as the best fit match, and therefore fetches C1P3 as the effective pricing rule for P3. While fetching the effective pricing rule, the system considers only those price item parameters specified in the primary pricing rule type for which the parameter usage is set to **Pricing**. For retroactive enrollment transactions, the system considers only those effective pricing rules where the **Exempt Retro Transactions** option is not selected.

The system then derives the account with a particular invoice type (to which a price item must be billed) based on the priority which is defined for the respective price item in the pricing rule type. For example,

Price Item	Priority	Invoice Type	Account
P1	10	Standard	A1
	20	Retention	A2
P2	10	Retention	A2
	20	Standard	A1

#### Example 4: Priority Based Account Derivation

In the example 4, while mapping the enrollment transaction to P1, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Standard** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the standard account (A1) of the bill group for billing. However, if an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Standard** does not exist for the bill group, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Retention** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the retention account (A2) of the bill group for billing. If an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Retention** does not exist for the bill group, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

Similarly, while mapping the enrollment transaction to P2, the system considers the account of the bill group which is available based on the priority. The system derives the billing account for only those price items for which the effective pricing rule is derived.

**Note:** The characteristic type which indicates the type of account (for example, **C1INVTYP**) must be specified in the **Invoice Type Characteristic Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

Once the account is derived, the system then checks whether the account has one active contract of the contract type which is associated with the price item. If so, it fetches the contract for further processing. Once the effective pricing rule, account, and active contract are derived, the transaction is mapped to the respective price item, price item parameters, and account. A transaction leg is created for each price item, price item parameters, and account combination. For example, if the system receives a non-retroactive enrollment transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Active
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to HR
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 01-03-2018
- UDF\_DATE\_2 is set to 31-03-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR5

Let us assume that the non-retroactive enrollment transaction is mapped to the following price item, price item parameters, and account combinations:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Effective Pricing Rule	Best Fit Match for Price Item Parameters in Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
TR5	ENROLLMENT BASED FEES	P1	Location = UDF_CHAR_1, Employee Status = UDF_CHAR_2, Employee Department =	PR1	Location = Western and Employee Status = Active	A1	C1	TL1
		P2	UDF_CHAR_3, and Nationality = UDF_CHAR_4	PR2	Location = Western and Employee Status = Active	A2	C2	TL2
		P3		PR3	Location = Western and Employee Status = Active	A3	C3	TL3

**Note:** Here, the coverage start date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field and the coverage end date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_2** field in the ENROLLMENT BASED FEES pricing rule type.

#### Example 5: Transaction Leg Derivation

In the example 5, the system maps the non-retroactive enrollment transaction to the following price item, price item parameters, and account combinations:

- Price Item: P1; Price Item Parameter: Location = Western, Employee Status = Active, and Employee Department = HR; and Account: A1
- Price Item: P2; Price Item Parameter: Location = Western, Employee Status = Active, and Employee Department = HR; and Account: A2
- Price Item: P3; Price Item Parameter: Location = Western, Employee Status = Active, and Employee Department = HR; and Account: A3

**Note:** The nationality information of an employee is not received in the **UDF\_CHAR\_4** field, and therefore the non-retroactive enrollment transaction is not mapped to the **Nationality** price item parameter.

In the example 5, the system creates three transaction legs — TL1, TL2, and TL3 for the non-retroactive enrollment transaction. Once a transaction leg is created, the respective effective pricing rule is stamped against the transaction leg. In addition, the price item parameters of the transaction leg are grouped. In the example 5, the system creates one price item parameter group which contains the following price item parameters:

- Location = Western
- Employee Status = Active
- Employee Department = HR

A group is used to determine the price item pricing. A unique group ID is generated for each group. If a group with a set of price item parameters already exists in the system, a new group is not created. Instead, the existing group is used for determining the price item pricing.

**Note:** The price item parameter group contains only those price item parameters included in the pricing rule type for which the parameter usage is set to **Pricing**.



The following table describes how the system fetches a pricing rule when a pricing group is used while defining the pricing rule for a bill group:

If the transaction is a...	Then the system fetches the pricing rule only when the following conditions are met...
Retroactive enrollment transaction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The coverage end date of the retroactive enrollment transaction falls within the pricing rule's date range.</li> <li>• The exact or best fit match is available for the price item parameters in the effective pricing rule.</li> <li>• The retroactive enrollment transaction satisfies the criteria defined in any one of the pricing group rule.</li> </ul>
Non-retroactive enrollment transaction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The coverage start date of the non-retroactive enrollment transaction falls within the pricing rule's date range.</li> <li>• The exact or best fit match is available for the price item parameters in the effective pricing rule.</li> <li>• The non-retroactive enrollment transaction satisfies the criteria defined in any one of the pricing group rule.</li> </ul>

Let us understand this with the help of an example. A retroactive enrollment transaction is received with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to X
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to Indian
- UDF\_CHAR\_4 is set to HR
- UDF\_CHAR\_5 is set to Permanent
- UDF\_CHAR\_6 is set to Senior Manager
- UDF\_CHAR\_7 is set to BG1
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 01-03-2018
- UDF\_DATE\_2 is set to 31-03-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR6

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Price Item Parameters	Fees
TR6	ENROLLMENT BASED FEES	PP1	Designation = UDF_CHAR_6; Employee Group = UDF_CHAR_7	PR1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	PG1	Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG1	\$10
								Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG2	\$12
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, and Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG1	\$8
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, and Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG2	\$9

**Note:** Here, the source system is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_1** field, the parameter 1 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_2** field, the parameter 2 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_3** field, the parameter 3 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_4** field, the parameter 4 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_5** field, the coverage start date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field, and the coverage end date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_2** field in the ENROLLMENT BASED FEES pricing rule type.

### Example 6: Effective Pricing Rule is Defined Using a Pricing Group

In the example 6, the system considers the PR1 pricing rule for PP1 because of the following reasons:

- The coverage end date (i.e. 31-03-2018) of the retroactive enrollment transaction falls within the PR1 pricing rule's date range (i.e. 01-01-2018 to 31-12-2018).
- The employee attributes specified in the retroactive enrollment transaction match the criteria defined in the Rule 1 (i.e. Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)
- The employee attributes specified in the retroactive enrollment transaction match the price item parameters defined within the Rule 1.

The system then stores the pricing group rule which is satisfied against a parameter which is defined in the **Pricing Group Rule Parameter** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. In such case, the price item parameter group contains the price item parameters and the pricing group rule parameter. For example, Group A contains Designation = Senior Manager, Employee Group = BG1, and Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 1.

In the example 6, the system could find the exact match for pricing parameters defined in the pricing group rule. However, if the exact match is not available, the system finds the effective pricing rule using the best fit match for the pricing parameters defined in the pricing group rule. Note that the system searches for the exact match in the effective pricing rules at both the bill group and parent customer levels. If the exact match is not available at both the levels, the system finds the effective pricing rule using the best fit match for the pricing parameters (defined in the pricing group rule) first at the bill group level and then at the parent customer level.

Let us understand this with the help of an example. A non-retroactive enrollment transaction is received with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to X
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to Indian
- UDF\_CHAR\_4 is set to HR
- UDF\_CHAR\_5 is set to Permanent
- UDF\_CHAR\_6 is set to Senior Manager
- UDF\_CHAR\_7 is set to BG1
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 01-05-2018
- UDF\_DATE\_2 is set to 31-05-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR6

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Price Item Parameters in Pricing Rule	Fees
TR6	ENROLLMENT BASED FEES	PP1	Designation = UDF_CHAR_6, Employee Group = UDF_CHAR_7	PR1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	PG1	Rule 1 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1	\$20
								Rule 1 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG2	\$21
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Eastern)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1	\$18
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Eastern)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG2	\$19
		PP2		PR2	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	PG2	Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG2	\$5
								Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1	\$5

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Price Item Parameters in Pricing Rule	Fees
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG2	\$6
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Designation = Senior Manager; Employee Group = BG1	\$9

**Note:** Here, the source system is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_1** field, the parameter 1 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_2** field, the parameter 2 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_3** field, the parameter 3 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_4** field, the parameter 4 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_5** field, the coverage start date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field, and the coverage end date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_2** field in the ENROLLMENT BASED FEES pricing rule type.

#### Example 7: Effective Pricing Rule Derivation Using Best Fit Match for Pricing Parameters

In the example 7, the system could not find exact match for the pricing parameters (i.e. Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent) in the effective pricing rule for PP1. Therefore, the system searches for the best fit match. While searching for the best fit match, the system rules out the optional parameter 4 (i.e. Parameter 4 = Permanent) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, and Parameter 3 = HR exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers the pricing group rule for further processing. If not, the system then rules out the optional parameter 3 (i.e. Parameter 3 = HR) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, and Parameter 2 = Indian exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers the pricing group rule for further processing. If not, the system then rules out the optional parameter 2 (i.e. Parameter 2 = Indian) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers the pricing group rule for further processing. If not, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

In the example 7, the system considers Rule 1 where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western as the best fit match in the PR1 pricing rule for PP1. In addition, the employee attributes in the non-retroactive enrollment transaction satisfy the price item parameters (i.e. Designation = Senior Manager and Employee Group = BG1) defined within Rule 1. Therefore, the system fetches PR1 as the effective pricing rule for PP1. In addition, the system fetches PR2 as the effective pricing rule for PP2. The system creates two price item parameter groups — One contains Designation = Senior Manager, Employee Group = BG1, and Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 1 and another contains Designation = Senior Manager, Employee Group = BG1, and Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 2. Once the price item parameter

group is created, the system creates the aggregation parameter group. An aggregation parameter group contains all price item parameters included in the pricing rule type for which the parameter usage is set to **Aggregation**.

If the effective pricing rule is not derived for a price item and price item parameters combination or if the account or active contract for the account is not derived, the system does not create a transaction leg for the respective price item. Let us understand this with the help of an example:

Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
ENROLLMENT BASED FEES	PP1	Designation = UDF_CHAR_6, Employee Status = UDF_CHAR_7	-	-	-	-
	PP2		PR2	-	-	-
	PP3		PR3	A3	C3	TL1
	PP4		-	-	-	-
	PP5		PR5	A2	C1	TL2
	PP6		PR6	A1	-	-

#### Example 8: No. of Transaction Legs Derived

In the example 8, the system could not find the effective pricing rule for PP1 and PP4, the required account for PP2, and the active contract for PP6 on A1. Therefore, in this case, the system creates two transaction legs — TL1 and TL2 for the enrollment transaction.

If the eligibility rule type is defined of a price item, the system maps the enrollment transaction to the price item only when the eligibility rule is satisfied. If the eligibility rule is not satisfied, the system does not consider the price item for billing. For example,

Price Item	Eligibility Criteria Met	Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
PE1	Yes	PR1	A1	C1	TL1
PE2	-	PR2	-	-	-
PE3	No	-	-	-	-
PE4	Yes	-	-	-	-
PE5	Yes	PR3	A2	-	-
PE6	Yes	PR4	-	-	-

#### Example 9: Price Item Eligibility for Transaction Leg Derivation

In the example 9, the eligibility criteria was defined for PE1, PE3, PE4, PE5, and PE6. The eligibility criteria was satisfied for PE1, PE4, PE5, and PE6, but not for PE3. Further, the system could not find the effective pricing rule for PE4, the required account for PE2 and PE6, and the active contract for PE5 on A2. Therefore, in this case, the system creates one transaction leg (i.e. TL1) for the enrollment transaction. For more information, refer to the [Price Item Eligibility](#) on page 2280 section.

Once a transaction leg is created, the derivation date is set as the processing date corresponding to the transaction leg.

## Account and Price Item Derivation (for the Ancillary Pricing Rule Type Category)

The **Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)** batch maps an ancillary transaction to one or more price item and price item parameters which are defined in the respective primary pricing rule type. This is possible only

when an algorithm created using the **C1\_ACCPRIDRV** algorithm type is attached to the **Account and Price Item Derivation** system event of the primary pricing rule type.

This algorithm fetches the effective pricing rule for each price item and price item parameters combination specified in the primary pricing rule type on the derivation date. The system considers the paid date as the derivation date. This algorithm first searches for the effective pricing rule for a price item and price item parameters combination which is defined for the policy at the bill group level. If the system does not find any effective pricing rule for a price item and price item parameters combination which is defined for the policy at the bill group level, it inherits the effective pricing rule for a price item and price item parameters combination from the parent customer level.

For example, if the system receives an ancillary transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_6 is set to BC1
- UDF\_CHAR\_7 is set to PASS
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 15-03-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR1

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Arrangement	Assignment Level
TR1	ANCILLARY	P1	BCHGLINETYPE = UDF_CHAR_6 and PRICINGARRANGEMENT = UDF_CHAR_7	C1P1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	Parent Customer
				C2P1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	Bill Group
				C3P1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	Bill Group
		P2		C1P2	01-06-2017	31-12-2017	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	Bill Group
				C2P2	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	Parent Customer
				C3P2	01-01-2019	30-06-2019	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	Bill Group

**Note:**

Here, the **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** pricing arrangement identifier is set to **PASS** in the ANCILLARY pricing rule type. This means that the system will consider only effective pricing rules where the pricing arrangement is set to **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** when the ancillary transaction is received where **UDF\_CHAR\_7** is set to **PASS**.

Here, the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field in the ANCILLARY pricing rule type.

**Example 1: Effective Pricing Rule Derivation**

In the example 1, the system fetches C2P1 and C2P2 pricing rules for P1 and P2, respectively, because of the following reasons:

- The paid date (i.e. 15-03-2018) of the ancillary transaction falls within the C2P1 and C2P2 pricing rules' date range (i.e. 01-01-2018 to 31-12-2018).
- The pricing arrangement is set to **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** in the C2P1 and C2P2 pricing rules.

Note that the effective pricing rule for P1 is derived at the bill group level, whereas the effective pricing rule for P2 is derived from the parent customer level.

**Note:** The price item parameters (i.e. BCHGLINETYPE and PRICINGARRANGEMENT) must be defined in the **Billable Charge Line Type Parameter** and **Pricing Arrangement Parameter** option types of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration, respectively. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

The system then derives the account with a particular invoice type (to which a price item must be billed) based on the priority which is defined for the respective price item in the pricing rule type. For example,

Price Item	Priority	Invoice Type	Account
P1	10	Standard	A1
	20	Retention	A2
P2	10	Retention	A2
	20	Standard	A1

**Example 2: Priority Based Account Derivation**

In the example 2, while mapping the claim transaction to P1, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Standard** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the standard account (A1) of the bill group for billing. However, if an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Standard** does not exist for the bill group, the system checks whether an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Retention** exists for the bill group. If so, it considers the retention account (A2) of the bill group for billing. If an account where the **Invoice Type (C1INVTYP)** characteristic is set to **Retention** does not exist for the bill group, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

Similarly, while mapping the claim transaction to P2, the system considers the account of the bill group which is available based on the priority. The system derives the billing account for only those price items for which the effective pricing rule is derived.

**Note:** The characteristic type which indicates the type of account (for example, **C1INVTYP**) must be specified in the **Invoice Type Characteristic Type** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. Otherwise, erroneous results might occur.

Once the account is derived, the system then checks whether the account has one active contract of the contract type which is associated with the price item. If so, it fetches the contract for further processing. Once the effective pricing rule, account, and active contract are derived, the transaction is mapped to the respective price item, price item parameters,



and account. A transaction leg is created for each price item, price item parameters, and account combination. For example, if the system receives an ancillary transaction with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_6 is set to BC1
- UDF\_CHAR\_7 is set to PASS
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 15-03-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR1

Let us assume that the ancillary transaction is mapped to the following price item, price item parameters, and account combinations:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Effective Pricing Rule	Pricing Arrangement	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
TR1	ANCILLARY	P1	BCHGLINETYPE = UDF_CHAR_6 and PRICINGARRANGEMENT = UDF_CHAR_7	PR1	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	A1	C1	TL1
		P2		PR2	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	A2	C2	TL2
		P3		PR3	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown	A3	C3	TL3

**Note:** Here, the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field and the **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** pricing arrangement identifier is set to **PASS** in the ANCILLARY pricing rule type.

### Example 3: Transaction Leg Derivation

In the example 3, the system maps the ancillary transaction to the following price item, price item parameters, and account combinations:

- Price Item: P1; Price Item Parameter: BCHGLINETYPE = BC1 and PRICINGARRANGEMENT = Pass Through without Markup or Markdown; and Account: A1
- Price Item: P2; Price Item Parameter: BCHGLINETYPE = BC1 and PRICINGARRANGEMENT = Pass Through without Markup or Markdown; and Account: A2
- Price Item: P3; Price Item Parameter: BCHGLINETYPE = BC1 and PRICINGARRANGEMENT = Pass Through without Markup or Markdown; and Account: A3

In the example 3, the system creates three transaction legs — TL1, TL2, and TL3 for the ancillary transaction. Once a transaction leg is created, the respective effective pricing rule is stamped against the transaction leg. In addition, the price item parameters of the transaction leg are grouped. In the example 3, the system creates one price item parameter group which contains the following price item parameters:

- BCHGLINETYPE = BC1
- PRICINGARRANGEMENT = PASS

A group is used to determine the price item pricing. A unique group ID is generated for each group. If a group with a set of price item parameters already exists in the system, a new group is not created. Instead, the existing group is used for determining the price item pricing.

**Note:** The price item parameter group contains only those price item parameters included in the primary pricing rule type for which the parameter usage is set to **Pricing**.

If a pricing group is used while defining a pricing rule for a bill group, the system fetches the pricing rule for an ancillary transaction only when the following conditions are met:

- The paid date of the ancillary transaction falls within the pricing rule's date range.
- The employee attributes specified in the ancillary transaction match the criteria defined in any one of the pricing group rule.
- The pricing arrangement specified in the ancillary transaction matches the pricing arrangement specified in the pricing rule.

Let us understand this with the help of an example. An ancillary transaction is received with the following details:

- UDF\_CHAR\_1 is set to X
- UDF\_CHAR\_2 is set to Western
- UDF\_CHAR\_3 is set to Indian
- UDF\_CHAR\_4 is set to HR
- UDF\_CHAR\_5 is set to Permanent
- UDF\_CHAR\_6 is set to BC1
- UDF\_CHAR\_7 is set to PASS
- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 26-01-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR6

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Pricing Arrangement
TR6	ANCILLARY	P1	BCHGLINETYPE = UDF_CHAR_6 and PRICINGARRANGEMENT = UDF_CHAR_7	PR1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	PG1	Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Pricing Arrangement
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, and Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown

**Note:** Here, the source system is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_1** field, the parameter 1 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_2** field, the parameter 2 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_3** field, the parameter 3 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_4** field, the parameter 4 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_5** field, the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field, and the **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** pricing arrangement identifier is set to **PASS** in the **ANCILLARY** pricing rule type.

#### Example 4: Effective Pricing Rule is Defined Using a Pricing Group

In the example 4, the system considers the PR1 pricing rule for P1 because of the following reasons:

- The paid date (i.e. 26-01-2018) of the ancillary transaction falls within the PR1 pricing rule's date range (i.e. 01-01-2018 to 31-12-2018).
- The employee attributes specified in the ancillary transaction match the criteria defined in the Rule 1 (i.e. Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent).
- The pricing arrangement is set to **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** within Rule 1 of the PR1 pricing rule.

The system then stores the pricing group rule which is satisfied against a parameter which is defined in the **Pricing Group Rule Parameter** option type of the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration. In such case, the price item parameter group contains the price item parameters and the pricing group rule parameter. For example, Group A contains **BCHGLINETYPE = BC1**, **PRICINGARRANGEMENT = PASS**, and **Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 1**.

In the example 4, the system could find the exact match for pricing parameters defined in the pricing group rule. However, if the exact match is not available, the system finds the effective pricing rule using the best fit match for the pricing parameters defined in the pricing group rule. Note that the system searches for the exact match in the effective pricing rules at both the bill group and parent customer levels. If the exact match is not available at both the levels, the system finds the effective pricing rule using the best fit match for the pricing parameters (defined in the pricing group rule) first at the bill group level and then at the parent customer level.

Let us understand this with the help of an example. An ancillary transaction is received with the following details:

- **UDF\_CHAR\_1** is set to X
- **UDF\_CHAR\_2** is set to Western
- **UDF\_CHAR\_3** is set to Indian
- **UDF\_CHAR\_4** is set to HR
- **UDF\_CHAR\_5** is set to Permanent
- **UDF\_CHAR\_6** is set to BC1
- **UDF\_CHAR\_7** is set to PASS

- UDF\_DATE\_1 is set to 31-05-2018
- Transaction Record Type is set to TR6

Let us assume that the following pricing structure is defined in the system:

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Pricing Arrangement
TR6	ANCILLARY	PP1	BCHGLINETYPE = UDF_CHAR_6 and PRICINGARRANGEMENT = UDF_CHAR_7	PR1	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	PG1	Rule 1 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western)	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown
								Rule 1 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western)	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Eastern)	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Eastern)	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown
		PP2		PR2	01-01-2018	31-12-2018	PG2	Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown

Transaction Record Type	Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Pricing Rule	Pricing Start Date	Pricing End Date	Pricing Group	Pricing Group Rule	Pricing Arrangement
								Rule 1 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Eastern, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown
								Rule 2 (where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent)	Pass Through without Markup or Markdown

**Note:** Here, the source system is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_1** field, the parameter 1 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_2** field, the parameter 2 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_3** field, the parameter 3 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_4** field, the parameter 4 is mapped to the **UDF\_CHAR\_5** field, the paid date is mapped to the **UDF\_DATE\_1** field, and the **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** pricing arrangement identifier is set to **PASS** in the ANCILLARY pricing rule type.

#### Example 5: Effective Pricing Rule Derivation Using Best Fit Match for Pricing Parameters

In the example 5, the system could not find the exact match for the pricing parameters (i.e. Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, Parameter 3 = HR, and Parameter 4 = Permanent) in the effective pricing rule for PP1. Therefore, the system searches for the best fit match. While searching for the best fit match, the system rules out the optional parameter 4 (i.e. Parameter 4 = Permanent) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, Parameter 2 = Indian, and Parameter 3 = HR exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers the pricing group rule for further processing. If not, the system then rules out the optional parameter

3 (i.e. Parameter 3 = HR) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X, Parameter 1 = Western, and Parameter 2 = Indian exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers the pricing group rule for further processing. If not, the system then rules out the optional parameter 2 (i.e. Parameter 2 = Indian) and then checks whether the pricing group rule where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western exists in the effective pricing rule. If so, it considers the pricing group rule for further processing. If not, the status of the transaction is changed to **Error**.

In the example 5, the system considers Rule 1 where Source System = X and Parameter 1 = Western as the best fit match in the PR1 pricing rule for PP1. In addition, the pricing arrangement is set to **Pass Through without Markup or Markdown** within Rule 1 of the PR1 pricing rule. Therefore, the system fetches PR1 as the effective pricing rule for PP1. In addition, the system fetches PR2 as the effective pricing rule for PP2. The system creates two price item parameter groups — One contains BCHGLINETYPE = BC1, PRICINGARRANGEMENT = PASS, and Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 1 and another contains BCHGLINETYPE = BC1, PRICINGARRANGEMENT = PASS, and Pricing Group Rule Parameter = Rule 2. Once the price item parameter group is created, the system creates the aggregation parameter group. An aggregation parameter group contains all price item parameters included in the related pricing rule type for which the parameter usage is set to **Aggregation**.

If the effective pricing rule is not derived for a price item and price item parameters combination or if the account or active contract for the account is not derived, the system does not create a transaction leg for the respective price item. Let us understand this with the help of an example:

Primary Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Price Item Parameters	Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
ANCILLARY	PP11	BCHGLINETYPE = UDF_CHAR_6 and PRICINGARRANGEMENT = UDF_CHAR_7	-	-	-	-
	PP12		PR12	A1	C1	TL11
	PP13		PR13	-	-	-
	PP14		PR14	A2	-	-
	PP15		PR15	-	-	-
	PP16		-	-	-	-
	PP17		PR17	A2	C2	TL12

#### Example 6: No. of Transaction Legs Derived

In the example 6, the system could not find the effective pricing rule for PP11 and PP16, the required account for PP13 and PP15, and the active contract for PP14 on A2. Therefore, in this case, the system creates two transaction legs — TL11 and TL12 for the transaction.

If the eligibility rule type is defined of a price item, the system maps the ancillary transaction to the price item only when the eligibility rule is satisfied. If the eligibility rule is not satisfied, the system does not consider the price item for billing. For example,

Price Item	Eligibility Criteria Met	Effective Pricing Rule	Account	Active Contract	Transaction Leg
PE1	Yes	PR1	A1	C1	TL1
PE2	-	PR2	-	-	-
PE3	No	-	-	-	-
PE4	Yes	-	-	-	-
PE5	Yes	PR3	A2	-	-
PE6	Yes	PR4	-	-	-

#### Example 7: Price Item Eligibility for Transaction Leg Derivation

In the example 7, the eligibility criteria was defined for PE1, PE3, PE4, PE5, and PE6. The eligibility criteria was satisfied for PE1, PE4, PE5, and PE6, but not for PE3. Further, the system could not find the effective pricing rule for PE4, the required account for PE2 and PE6, and the active contract for PE5 on A2. Therefore, in this case, the system creates one transaction leg (i.e. TL1) for the ancillary transaction. For more information, refer to the [Price Item Eligibility](#) on page 2280 section.

Once a transaction leg is created, the derivation date is set as the processing date corresponding to the transaction leg.

## Bill After Date Determination

Once the billable charges are created for claim, claim based fees, enrollment based fees, and ancillary, the system enables you to automatically stamp the bill after date in these billable charges. The system can automatically stamp the bill after date in these billable charges only when an algorithm created using the **C1\_BAFTDRV** algorithm type is attached to the **Bill After Date Determination** system event of the respective pricing rule type. This algorithm sets the bill after date to the end date of the aggregation schedule period in which the transaction date falls. Note that the system considers the aggregation schedule specified in the rate option which is defined for the respective price item. Let us understand this with the help of an example. If the claim transaction with the transaction date set to 25-06-2018 is mapped to the following price item and account combinations:

Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Rate Option	Aggregate Transaction	Aggregation Schedule	Schedule Period	Account	Billable Charge
CLAIM	P1	R01	Yes	Monthly	01-01-2018 — 31-01-2018	A1	BC1
					01-02-2018 — 28-02-2018		
					01-03-2018 — 31-03-2018		
					01-04-2018 — 30-04-2018		
					01-05-2018 — 31-05-2018		
					01-06-2018 — 30-06-2018		
					01-07-2018 — 31-07-2018		
					01-08-2018 — 31-08-2018		
					01-09-2018 — 30-09-2018	A2	BC2
					01-10-2018 — 31-10-2018		
	P2	R01					

Pricing Rule Type	Price Item	Rate Option	Aggregate Transaction	Aggregation Schedule	Schedule Period	Account	Billable Charge
					01-11-2018 — 30-11-2018		
					01-12-2018 — 31-12-2018		
	P3	R02	Yes	Yearly	01-01-2018 — 31-12-2018	A3	BC3

**Example 1: Bill After Date Determination Using the Aggregation Schedule**

In the example 1, the system stamps 30-06-2018 as the bill after date in the BC1 and BC2 billable charges. This is because the transaction date (i.e. 25-06-2018) falls in the 01-06-2018 — 30-06-2018 period of the R01 aggregation schedule.

However, the system stamps 31-12-2018 as the bill after date in the BC3 billable charge. This is because the transaction date (i.e. 25-06-2018) falls in the 01-01-2018 — 31-12-2018 period of the R02 aggregation schedule.

**Note:** The bill after date for the specific stop-loss and aggregate stop-loss billable charges is calculated using the settlement frequency in the **Create Specific Stop-Loss Billable Charge (C1-BCSSL)** and **Create Aggregate Stop-Loss Billable Charge (C1-BCASL)** batches, respectively.



---

# Appendix

## A

---

### Most Commonly Used Tasks

---

**Topics:**

- [Changing the Layout](#)

This section lists some of the common tasks that are performed while using various functionality in the application.


## Changing the Layout

You can change the layout of the zone by:

- [Removing a Column from the Zone](#) on page 2342
- [Adding a Column to the Zone](#) on page 2342
- [Rearranging Columns in the Zone](#) on page 2342

### Adding a Column to the Zone

Once you have removed the columns from the zone, you can add them back to the zone. To add a column to the zone:

1. Click the **Column Configuration**  icon in the upper right corner of the zone.

A panel appears at the bottom of the zone with a list of column names.

**Note:** The column names with the white background in the panel are currently not displayed in the zone.

2. Drag and drop the column name from the panel to the location where you want to add the column in the zone.  
The white background of the column name in the panel changes to the grey background indicating that the column is currently displayed in the zone.
3. If you want to add another column name from the panel to the zone, repeat the second step. Click the **Refresh** button, data will be displayed to the columns added in the zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to change the layout of the zone	<a href="#">Changing the Layout</a> on page 2342

### Rearranging Columns in the Zone

You can change the order in which the columns are displayed in the zone. To change the position of a column in the zone:

1. Click the column name whose position you want to change in the zone.
2. Drag and drop the column name between the columns where you want to place the selected column.


The position of the column changes in the zone.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to change the layout of the zone	<a href="#">Changing the Layout</a> on page 2342

### Removing a Column from the Zone

To remove a column from the zone:

Click the **Delete**  icon corresponding to the column name that you want to remove from the zone.

The column is removed from the zone and is currently displayed with white background in the panel.

**Note:** Alternatively you can remove the column from the zone by clicking the Delete (🗑️) icon corresponding to the column name in the panel.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to change the layout of the zone	<a href="#">Changing the Layout</a> on page 2342



---

## Appendix

# B

---

## Administration

---

### Topics:

- [UI Maps](#)
- [Feature Configurations](#)

This section lists some of the administrative tasks.

## UI Maps

---

This section explains how to create the UI maps for viewing and modifying data of the business objects within the approval workflow group.

### Creating Display UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group

The system provides you with the ability to automatically generate a Display UI map, and associate it with the approval workflow group. Alternatively, you can create a Display UI map manually, and attach it to the approval workflow group.

#### **Procedure**

To create a Display UI map manually:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **U** and then click **UI Map**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **UI Map** sub-menu.  
The **UI Map** screen appears.
4. In the **Main** tab, enter the name and description of the Display UI map.

**Note:** The system uses the CM\_<Approval Workflow Group Code>\_AppTxn\_Display naming convention while automatically generating a Display UI map. Therefore, do not use this naming convention while creating a Display UI map manually.

5. Select **Complete HTML Document** from the **UI Map Type** list.
6. Click the **Schema** tab.  
The **Schema** tab appears.
7. Add the following schema in the **Scheme Editor** zone:

```
<schema>
  <<Business Object Name> type="group">
    <includeBO name="<Business Object Name>" />
  </<Business Object Name>>
</schema>
```

In the above schema, you must replace <Business Object Name> with the name of the business object. For example, if you want to create a Display UI map for account, you must use the following schema:

```
<schema>
  <account type="group">
    <includeBO name="Account" />
  </account>
</schema>
```

8. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.  
The **Display Only** and **Input Map** buttons are enabled on the dashboard.
9. Click the **Display Only** button.  
The HTML code is generated in the **HTML Editor** zone.
10. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.  
The changes are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Defining an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 546
How to edit an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Editing an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 556

**Creating Input UI Map for an Approval Workflow Group**

The system provides you with the ability to automatically generate an Input UI map, and associate it with the approval workflow group. Alternatively, you can create an Input UI map manually, and attach it to the approval workflow group.

**Procedure**

To create an Input UI map manually:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **U** and then click **UI Map**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **UI Map** sub-menu.  
The **UI Map** screen appears.
4. In the **Main** tab, enter the name and description of the Input UI map.

**Note:** The system uses the CM\_<Approval Workflow Group Code>\_AppTxn\_Input naming convention while automatically generating an Input UI map. Therefore, do not use this naming convention while creating an Input UI map manually.

5. Select **Complete HTML Document** from the **UI Map Type** list.
6. Click the **Schema** tab.  
The **Schema** tab appears.
7. Add the following schema in the **Scheme Editor** zone:

```
<schema>
  <approvalTransactionId/>
  <action/>
  <<Business Object Name> type="group">
    <includeBO name="<Business Object Name>" />
  </<Business Object Name>>
</schema>
```

In the above schema, you must replace <Business Object Name> with the name of the business object. For example, if you want to create an Input UI map for account, you must use the following schema:

```
<schema>
  <approvalTransactionId/>
  <action/>
  <account type="group">
    <includeBO name="Account" />
  </account>
</schema>
```

The <approvalTransactionId/> tag is used in the schema to retrieve the approval transaction ID of the respective business object. The <action/> tag is used in the schema to retrieve the action performed by the submitter.

8. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

The **Display Only** and **Input Map** buttons are enabled on the dashboard.

9. Click the **Input Map** button.

The HTML code is generated in the **HTML Editor** zone.

10. Add the following tag in the head tag:

```
<script language="javascript" type="text/javascript" src="code/
approvalWorkflow.js"></script>
```

11. Add the text highlighted in bold within the tag as shown below:

```
<td>
<input onClick="performAction('<Approval Workflow Group Code>');"
oraMdLabel="SAVE_BTN_LBL" class="oraButton" type="button">
<input onClick="oraSubmitMap('CANCEL', false);" oraMdLabel="CANCEL_LBL"
class="oraButton" type="button">
</td>
```

In the above HTML code, you must replace <Approval Workflow Group Code> with the code of the approval workflow group for which you are creating a UI map.

12. Click the **Save** link in the **Actions/Navigation** area.

The changes are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
How to define an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Defining an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 546
How to edit an approval workflow group	<a href="#">Editing an Approval Workflow Group</a> on page 556

## Feature Configurations

This section explains how to set various feature configurations which are required for implementing various features in the Banking module.

### Setting the C1\_ACCTINFO Feature Configuration

**Prerequisites**

To set the **C1\_ACCTINFO** feature configuration, you should have:

- Account Type characteristic type defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Account)
- Invoice Group Account characteristic type defined in the application (where the characteristic entity is set to Account)

**Procedure**

To set the **C1\_ACCTINFO** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.



A list appears.

- From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.

The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.

- Enter **C1\_ACCTINFO** in the **Feature Name** field.

- Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Account Type	Used to specify the characteristic type. This characteristic type is used to define the type of account in the <b>Account</b> screen.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>C1_F_ATY</b> characteristic type is specified. If you want to use account types other than the ones defined in the <b>C1_F_ATY</b> characteristic type, you need to create a new predefined characteristic type and add the required account types as its characteristic values. Then, specify the newly created characteristic type as the value for this option type.	
Invoice Group Account	Used to specify the characteristic type. This characteristic type is used to indicate whether the account is a master or member account in the <b>Account</b> screen.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> By default, the <b>C1_F_IGA</b> characteristic type is specified. If you want to use any other characteristic type other than <b>C1_F_IGA</b> , you need to create a new predefined characteristic type and add two characteristic values — Y and N. Then, specify the newly created characteristic type as the value for this option type.	

- Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.

- Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Invoicing Group	<a href="#">Invoicing Group</a>

## **Setting the C1-ASOBLLNG Feature Configuration**

The **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration enables the system to determine the following:

- Whether the approval transaction should be created while defining, editing, or deleting a self-funded pricing rule
- Various parameters, characteristic types, and extendable lookup business objects which should be used while creating or editing the self-funded pricing rules
- Person relationship type using which the bill group should be related to the parent customer
- Policy person roles using which the parent customer and bill groups should be associated with the self-funded policies

### **Prerequisites**

To set the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration, you should have:

- Required policy person roles and person relationship types defined in the application
- Approval workflow settings configured for the **C1PRCANC**, **C1PRCASL**, **C1PRCRLCLM**, **C1PRCDA**, **C1PRFLTFFEE**, **C1PRCLVLFN**, **C1PRETCLM**, **C1PRRETENR**, and **C1PRCSSL** approval workflow groups
- Required characteristic types defined in the application
- Values defined for the **C1-ExtLookClaimTemplate**, **C1-ExtLookPricingRuleLineItem**, and **C1-ExtLookRetTypeRateOpt** extendable lookups
- Predefined values defined for the **C1INVTYP** characteristic type
- Pricing arrangement parameter defined in the application (where the value type is set to **Adhoc**, source entity is set to **Transaction**, and the parameter usage is set to **Price Item**)
- Billable charge line type parameter defined in the application (where the value type is set to **Adhoc**, source entity is set to **Transaction**, and the parameter usage is set to **Price Item**)
- Pricing group rule parameter defined in the application (where the value type is set to **Adhoc**, source entity is set to **Transaction**, and the parameter usage is set to **Price Item**)

### **Procedure**

To set the **C1-ASOBLLNG** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1-ASOBLLNG** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group for Ancillary	Used to specify the approval workflow group for an ancillary pricing rule. It helps the system to determine whether the approval transaction should be created while defining, editing, or deleting an ancillary pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>C1PRCANC</b> approval workflow group for an ancillary pricing rule is shipped with the product. By default, the value is set to <b>C1PRCANC</b> . You can change the value, if required.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while enabling the approval workflow process for an ancillary pricing rule.
Approval Workflow Group for ASL	Used to specify the approval workflow group for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule. It helps the system to determine whether the approval transaction should be created while defining, editing, or deleting an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>C1PRCASL</b> approval workflow group for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule is shipped with the product. By default, the value is set to <b>C1PRCASL</b> . You can change the value, if required.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while enabling the approval workflow process for an aggregate stop-loss pricing rule.
Approval Workflow Group for Claim	Used to specify the approval workflow group for a claim pricing rule. It helps the system to determine whether the approval transaction should be created while defining, editing, or deleting a claim pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>C1PRCRLCLM</b> approval workflow group for a claim pricing rule is shipped with the product. By default, the value is set to <b>C1PRCRLCLM</b> . You can change the value, if required.	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while enabling the approval workflow process for a claim pricing rule.

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group for Discount Arrangement	Used to specify the approval workflow group for the discount share and discount guarantee pricing rules. It helps the system to determine whether the approval transaction should be created while defining, editing, or deleting the discount share and discount guarantee pricing rules.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>C1PRCDA</b> approval workflow group for the discount share and discount guarantee pricing rules is shipped with the product.</p> <p>By default, the value is set to <b>C1PRCDA</b>. You can change the value, if required.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This data is required while enabling the approval workflow process for the discount share and discount guarantee pricing rules.</p>
Approval Workflow Group for Flat Fees	Used to specify the approval workflow group for the one-time and recurring flat fees pricing rules. It helps the system to determine whether the approval transaction should be created while defining, editing, or deleting the one-time and recurring flat fees pricing rules.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>C1PRFLTTEE</b> approval workflow group for the one-time and recurring flat fees pricing rules is shipped with the product.</p> <p>By default, the value is set to <b>C1PRFLTTEE</b>. You can change the value, if required.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This data is required while enabling the approval workflow process for the one-time and recurring flat fees pricing rules.</p>
Approval Workflow Group for Level Funded	Used to specify the approval workflow group for the enrollment based premium and flat rate based premium level funded pricing rules. It helps the system to determine whether the approval transaction should be created while defining, editing, or deleting the enrollment based premium and flat rate based premium level funded pricing rules.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>C1PRCLVLFN</b> approval workflow group for the enrollment based premium and flat rate based premium level funded pricing rules is shipped with the product.</p> <p>By default, the value is set to <b>C1PRCLVLFN</b>. You can change the value, if required.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This data is required while enabling the approval workflow process for the enrollment based premium and flat rate based premium level funded pricing rules.</p>

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Workflow Group for Retention Type Claim Based	Used to specify the approval workflow group for a retention type claim based pricing rule. It helps the system to determine whether the approval transaction should be created while defining, editing, or deleting a retention type claim based pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>C1PRETCLM</b> approval workflow group for a retention type claim based pricing rule is shipped with the product.</p> <p>By default, the value is set to <b>C1PRETCLM</b>. You can change the value, if required.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This data is required while enabling the approval workflow process for a retention type claim based pricing rule.</p>
Approval Workflow Group for Retention Type Enrollment Based	Used to specify the approval workflow group for a retention type enrollment based pricing rule. It helps the system to determine whether the approval transaction should be created while defining, editing, or deleting a retention type enrollment based pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>C1PRRETENR</b> approval workflow group for a retention type enrollment based pricing rule is shipped with the product.</p> <p>By default, the value is set to <b>C1PRRETENR</b>. You can change the value, if required.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This data is required while enabling the approval workflow process for a retention type enrollment based pricing rule.</p>
Approval Workflow Group for SSL	Used to specify the approval workflow group for a specific stop-loss pricing rule. It helps the system to determine whether the approval transaction should be created while defining, editing, or deleting a specific stop-loss pricing rule.	Yes (Conditional)
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>C1PRCSSL</b> approval workflow group for a specific stop-loss pricing rule is shipped with the product.</p> <p>By default, the value is set to <b>C1PRCSSL</b>. You can change the value, if required.</p>	<p><b>Note:</b> This data is required while enabling the approval workflow process for a specific stop-loss pricing rule.</p>
Bill Group Policy Person Role	Used to specify the policy person role using which a bill group should be associated with a self-funded policy when the policy information is given for the bill group in an inbound message.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b> You must specify a policy person role which is already defined in the system.</p>	

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billable Charge Line Type Parameter	Used to specify the parameter in which you want to store the billable charge line type. This parameter can then be used while defining an ancillary pricing rule type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify an adhoc parameter where the source entity is set to <b>Transaction</b> and the parameter usage is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining an ancillary pricing rule type.
Claim Template Extendable Lookup Business Object	Used to specify the claim template extendable lookup business object. The system displays the values of the specified extendable lookup in the <b>Claim Template</b> list while defining or editing a claim pricing rule type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>C1-ExtLookClaimTemplate</b> extendable lookup for claim template is shipped with the product.  By default, the value is set to <b>C1-ExtLookClaimTemplate</b> . You can change the value, if required.	
Invoice Type Characteristic Type	Used to specify the characteristic type which indicates the type of account. This characteristic type is defined for the account. The system then uses this characteristic type to determine the account on which the claim, specific stop-loss credits, aggregate stop-loss credits, claim based fee, enrollment based fee, one-time flat fees, recurring flat fees, ancillary, discount, or level funded billable charge should be created in the system. For more information, refer to <a href="#">Bill Group's Account</a> on page 47.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b>  The <b>C1INVTYP</b> characteristic type is shipped with the product.  By default, the value is set to <b>C1INVTYP</b> . You can change the value, if required. However, note that you must specify a predefined characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Account</b> .	

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Line Item Extendable Lookup Business Object	Used to specify the line item extendable lookup business object. The system displays the values of the specified extendable lookup in the <b>Line Item</b> list while defining, editing, or copying a claim template.	Yes
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The <b>C1-ExtLookPricingRuleLineItem</b> extendable lookup for line item is shipped with the product.</p> <p>By default, the value is set to <b>C1-ExtLookPricingRuleLineItem</b>. You can change the value, if required.</p>	
Parent Customer Policy Person Role	Used to specify the policy person role using which the parent customer should be associated with a self-funded policy when the policy information is given for the bill group in an inbound message.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a policy person role which is already defined in the system.	
Person Relationship Type	Used to indicate how a bill group should be related to a parent customer. The system uses the person relationship type while: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Creating a bill group for a parent customer through an inbound message</li> <li>Viewing the 360° information of a parent customer</li> </ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a person relationship type which is already defined in the system.	
Pricing Arrangement Parameter	Used to specify the parameter in which you want to store the pricing arrangement. This parameter can then be used while defining an ancillary pricing rule type.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify an adhoc parameter where the source entity is set to <b>Transaction</b> and the parameter usage is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	<p><b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining an ancillary pricing rule type.</p>

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Pricing Group Rule Parameter	Used to specify the parameter in which you want to store the pricing group rule. The system stamps this parameter on the price assignment which is created through a pricing rule using a pricing group. It indicates that the price assignment is created using the respective rule in the pricing group.	Yes (Conditional)
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify an adhoc parameter where the source entity is set to <b>Transaction</b> and the parameter usage is set to <b>Price Item</b> .	<b>Note:</b> This data is required while defining a claim, specific stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, retention type claim based, or retention type enrollment based pricing rule for a bill group using a pricing group.
Pricing Rule Type Category Characteristic	Used to specify the characteristic type which indicates the pricing rule type category. This characteristic type is defined for a billable charge line type. The system uses this characteristic to lists the billable charge line types which are valid while defining a pricing rule type or pricing rule of a particular category.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>C1PRTCAT</b> characteristic type is shipped with the product.  By default, the value is set to <b>C1PRTCAT</b> . You can change the value, if required. However, note that you must specify a foreign key characteristic type where the characteristic entity is set to <b>Billable Charge Line Type</b> .	
Rate Option Extendable Lookup Business Object	Used to specify the rate option extendable lookup business object. The system displays the values of the specified extendable lookup in the <b>Rate Option</b> list while defining, editing, or copying a pricing rule type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The <b>C1-ExtLookRetTypeRateOpt</b> extendable lookup for rate option is shipped with the product.  By default, the value is set to <b>C1-ExtLookRetTypeRateOpt</b> . You can change the value, if required.	

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.

7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Customer 360° Information screen	<a href="#">Customer 360° Information</a> on page 69



For more information on...	See...
ASO Customer Inbound Message	<a href="#">ASO Customer Inbound Message</a> on page 1572

## Setting the C1\_AXENTITY Feature Configuration

### Procedure

To set the **C1\_AXENTITY** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1\_AXENTITY** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Transaction Compare New or Missing Entry Color	Used to indicate the color in which the new additions must be highlighted. This helps in comparing the existing and new data while approving, rejecting, or cancelling approval workflow requests. You must specify hexadecimal value in this option type.	Yes
Approval Transaction Compare Value Changed Color	Used to indicate the color in which the existing data modifications must be highlighted. This helps in comparing the existing and new data while approving, rejecting, or cancelling approval workflow requests. You must specify hexadecimal value in this option type.	Yes
Approval Transaction Entity Access Algorithms	Used to specify the algorithm which controls access to the existing and new maintenance objects based on the access group and division. By default, the C1-APPTXN algorithm is specified. If you create new maintenance objects and want the access control for these new maintenance objects to be based on the access group and division, you have to create a custom algorithm and then attach it to this option type. In such case, you would define this option type twice — one with the default algorithm (that is, C1-APPTXN) and another with the custom algorithm.	Yes
Approval Transaction Fields to be Disabled in Input UI Maps	Used to indicate the fields that you want to disable whenever the input UI maps are regenerated.	Yes

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Approval Transaction Resolve To Do Type	Used to indicate the type of To Do that must be created when an approver at any level in the hierarchy rejects a request.	Yes
Display UI XSL	Used to indicate the XSL file that you want to use while regenerating the Display UI maps.	Yes
Input UI XSL	Used to indicate the XSL file that you want to use while regenerating the Input UI maps.	Yes

- Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
- Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to set the prerequisites to implement the approval workflow process	<a href="#">Prerequisites</a> on page 491
How to approve price assignment request of an account	<a href="#">Approving a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 511
How to approve price assignment request of a person	<a href="#">Approving a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 512
How to approve price assignment request of a price list	<a href="#">Approving a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 513
How to reject price assignment request of an account	<a href="#">Rejecting a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 514
How to reject price assignment request of a person	<a href="#">Rejecting a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 515
How to reject price assignment request of a price list	<a href="#">Rejecting a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 517
How to cancel price assignment request of an account	<a href="#">Canceling a Price Assignment for an Account</a> on page 518
How to cancel price assignment request of a person	<a href="#">Canceling a Price Assignment for a Person</a> on page 519
How to cancel price assignment request of a price list	<a href="#">Canceling a Price Assignment for a Price List</a> on page 521

## Setting the C1-BILLADJSQ Feature Configuration

### Prerequisites

To set the **C1-BILLADJSQ** feature configuration, you should have:

- Service quantity identifiers (SQIs) defined in the application

### Procedure

To set the **C1-BILLADJSQ** feature configuration:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.

4. Enter **C1-BILLADJSQ** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Billable Charge SQI	Used to specify the service quantity identifier (SQI) which you want to use while creating a billable charge for the state assessment fee.	Yes (Conditional)  <b>Note:</b> This data is required when you want to create billable charges for the state assessment fee.
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify an SQI which is already defined in the system.	
Coverage End Date SQI	Used to specify the service quantity identifier (SQI) which you want use to derive the coverage end date from the account's last billed charge. The system uses the derived coverage end date in calculating the future retro adds (debits) for the respective account.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify an SQI which is already defined in the system.	
Premium Amount SQI	Used to specify the service quantity identifier (SQI) based on which you want to calculate the catch up premium for each eligible billable charge. The value derived is finally used to calculate the future retro adds (debits) for the respective account.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify an SQI which is already defined in the system.  The future retro adds (debits) appears in the <b>Billing and Adjustment Summary</b> zone of the <b>Account</b> tab on the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.	

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

#### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
<b>Billing and Adjustment Summary</b> zone	<a href="#">Billing and Adjustment Summary</a> on page 88

## Setting the C1-BILLCYCLE Feature Configuration

On executing the **Customer Inbound Message Periodic Monitor (C1-CUSIN)** batch, the system validates whether the bill cycle specified in the customer inbound message exists in the **C1-BILLCYCLE** feature configuration. Therefore,

you need to ensure that the specified bill cycle exists in the **C1-BILLCYCLE** feature configuration before processing the customer inbound message.

**Prerequisites**

To set the **C1-BILLCYCLE** feature configuration, you should have:

- Values defined for the **C1BC\_OPT\_TYP\_FLG** lookup field

**Procedure**

To set the **C1-BILLCYCLE** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1-BILLCYCLE** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
<Value from the <b>C1BC_OPT_TYP_FLG</b> lookup field>	Used to specify the bill cycle.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> You must specify a bill cycle which is already defined in the system.	

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Customer Inbound Message XML Format	<a href="#">Customer Inbound Message XML Format</a> on page 1519

**Setting the C1\_CMO Feature Configuration**

**Prerequisites**

To set the **C1\_CMO** feature configuration, you should have:

- Contract types defined in the application

**Procedure**

To set the **C1\_CMO** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.

The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.

- Enter **C1\_CMO** in the **Feature Name** field.
- Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Administrative Contract Type	Used to specify the contract type. The contracts of the specified contract type are then listed in the <b>Administrative Contracts</b> zone of the <b>Account</b> tab on the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.	Yes
On Account Contract Type	Used to specify the contract type. The excess credit transactions on the contracts of the specified contract type are then listed in the <b>Billed Vs Paid</b> zone of the <b>Account</b> tab on the <b>Customer 360° Information</b> screen.	Yes

- Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
- Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Administrative Contracts</b> zone	<a href="#">Administrative Contracts</a> on page 86
<b>Billed Vs Paid</b> zone	<a href="#">Billed Vs Paid</a> on page 90

## **Setting the C1\_DIVFUNCT Feature Configuration**

### **Procedure**

To set the **C1\_DIVFUNCT** feature configuration:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
- Enter **C1\_DIVFUNCT** in the **Feature Name** field.
- Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Enforce division-specific validations	Used to indicate whether the division-specific validations must be triggered on the <b>Person</b> , <b>Account</b> and <b>Contract</b> screens. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.

7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

## Setting the C1\_EXCHRATE Feature Configuration

### Procedure

To set the **C1\_EXCHRATE** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

A sub-menu appears.

3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.

The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.

4. Enter **C1\_EXCHRATE** in the **Feature Name** field.

5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
End Date Required for Division Override	Used to indicate whether the end date is mandatory for a division-specific exchange rate. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul> By default, the value of this option type is set to <b>N</b> .	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.

7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to define an exchange rate	<a href="#">Defining an Exchange Rate</a>
How to edit an exchange rate	<a href="#">Editing an Exchange Rate</a>

## Setting the C1\_EXP\_OVRD Feature Configuration

### Procedure

To set the **C1\_EXP\_OVRD** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1\_EXP\_OVRD** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Expire Override Switch	Used to indicate whether you want to automatically expire an agreed pricing when the agreed pricing of a person or an account without end date is overridden. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

## Setting the C1\_FINTRANOP Feature Configuration

### Procedure

To set the **C1\_FINTRANOP** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.

The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.

- Enter **C1\_FINTRANOP** in the **Feature Name** field.
- Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill Segment Regeneration on Freeze	<p>Used to indicate whether you want to regenerate the bill segments before freezing them. The valid value is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Y</li> </ul> <p>If you do not want to regenerate the bill segments before freezing them, you must leave this option type blank.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the <b>Freeze and Complete</b> check box is selected for the bill cycle and the <b>Bill Segment Regeneration on Freeze</b> option type is set to <b>Y</b>, then the bill segments are regenerated and the status of the bill segments is set to <b>Frozen</b>. However, if the <b>Freeze and Complete</b> check box is not selected for the bill cycle, then the bill segments are always regenerated irrespective of whether the <b>Bill Segment Regeneration on Freeze</b> option type is set to <b>Y</b> or not.</p>	No
Billable Charges Date	<p>Used to indicate whether you want to consider the billable charges whose start or end date is earlier than or equal to the cut-off date. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>S</b> — Used when you want to consider the billable charges whose start date is earlier than or equal to the cut-off date.</li> <li><b>E</b> — Used when you want to consider the billable charges whose end date is earlier than or equal to the cut-off date.</li> </ul> <p>If you do not set the value of this option type, by default, the system considers the billable charges whose start date is earlier than or equal to the cut-off date.</p>	No

- Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
- Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

## Setting the C1\_FM Feature Configuration



**Procedure**

To set the **C1\_FM** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1\_FM** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
First Batch in Transaction Aggregation Cycle	Used to specify the first mandatory batch that you want to be executed in the transaction aggregation cycle.  <b>Note:</b> At present, the system does not support any value other than <b>C1-TXNIP</b> for this option type.	Yes
Last Batch in Transaction Aggregation Cycle	Used to specify the last mandatory batch that you want to be executed in the transaction aggregation cycle.  <b>Note:</b> At present, the system does not support any value other than <b>C1-TXNCU</b> for this option type.	Yes
Disaggregation - Price Assignment	Used to indicate whether the disaggregation request should be automatically created for a person or account when a price item is assigned to the person or account or the existing price item pricing assigned to the person or account is modified. The valid values are:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true</li> <li>• false</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> You can use this feature only when an algorithm which is created using the <b>TXNDISAGGPRA</b> algorithm type is attached to the <b>Post-Processing</b> system event of the <b>C1_PRASGN_BO</b> business object.	No

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Allow Duplicate Summary ID	Used to indicate whether the transaction legs can have duplicate summary ID while creating an aggregated billable charge using the <b>Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)</b> batch. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• true</li><li>• false</li></ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b>  If you set this option type to <b>false</b> , the system does not create the aggregated billable charge when one or more transaction legs have the same summary ID.  If you do not specify the value for this option type, by default, the value is set to <b>false</b> .	

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Parallel Query Degree	<p>Used to specify the degree of parallelism that you want to use while creating chunks (i.e. work units) in various Transaction Feed Management (TFM) batches. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1</li> <li>• 2</li> <li>• 3</li> <li>• 4</li> <li>• 5</li> <li>• 6</li> <li>• 7</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>With the parallel query feature, multiple threads on the database can work together simultaneously to process a single SQL statement which is used to create chunks. This helps to improve the batch performance.</p> <p>The system calculates the number of threads on the database that can be used to execute the SQL statement by setting 2 to the power of the specified parallel query degree. For example, if you set the parallel query degree to 4, the system uses 16 (i.e. <math>2^4</math>) threads on the database to create work units.</p> <p>You must set the parallel query degree depending on the infrastructure available on the site. If you do not specify the value for this option type, by default, the parallel query degree is set to 2.</p>	No
Price Item Determination Batch Description	<p>Used to specify the description for the batch which is used for validating the transaction and deriving the price item in the transaction aggregation cycle. For example, <b>Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item</b>. This description appears in the error message when the transaction aggregation batches are not executed in the specified sequence.</p>	Yes

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Remove Duplicates from Accumulated Rule Output	<p>Used to indicate whether duplicate transaction legs must be created during the transaction aggregation cycle through the rule output accumulation process. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true</li> <li>• false</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the value for this option type, by default, the value is set to <b>false</b>.</p>	No
Rule Output Accumulation	<p>Used to indicate whether the system should accumulate the output parameters of all rules where the criteria returns <b>Rule Is True</b> irrespective of whether the rule true action is set to <b>Next Dependent</b>, <b>Next Rule by Priority</b>, or <b>Success</b> and then create transaction legs using the accumulated output parameters. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true</li> <li>• false</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the value for this option type, by default, the value is set to <b>false</b>.</p>	No
Show Default Values in Price Item Pricing	<p>Used to indicate whether the default values must appear in the <b>Ignore Transaction</b>, <b>Aggregate Transaction</b>, and <b>Aggregation Schedule</b> fields while defining the price item pricing. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>	Yes
Use Materialized Views	<p>Used to indicate whether the price item pricing information must be cached in the <b>CI_PRC_AGRD</b>, <b>CI_PRC_PL</b>, and <b>CI_PRC_INH_PL</b> tables. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true</li> <li>• false</li> </ul>	Yes
Maximum Price Item Parameters Cache Size	Used to indicate the maximum number of price items whose parameter information can be cached in the memory.	Yes
Maximum Price Item Parameter Groups Cache Size	Used to indicate the maximum number of price item parameter groups whose information can be cached in the memory.	Yes

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
SQ Recalculation Required	Used to indicate whether the SQIs in an aggregated billable charge must be recalculated while executing the <b>C1-TXNCU</b> batch. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> If you do not specify the value for this option type or if you set the value to <b>N</b> , the system will not recalculate the SQIs in an aggregated billable charge.	
Transaction Detail Account Validation	Used to indicate whether the account must be validated during the transaction validation process. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>	No
	<b>Note:</b> If you set this option type to <b>N</b> , the system overrides the transaction's account identifier type, account identifier, and division with the first derived account's account identifier type, account identifier, and division, respectively.  If you do not specify the value for this option type, the system will validate the account during the transaction validation process.	
Populate Summary Table Batch Description	Used to specify the description for the batch which is used for adding a summary record in the <b>CI_TXN_DTL_PRITM_SUMMARY</b> table. For example, <b>Populate CI_TXN_DTL_PRITM_SUMMARY Table</b> . This description appears in the error message when the transaction aggregation batches are not executed in the specified sequence.	Yes (Conditional)
		<b>Note:</b> This data is required when the <b>Use C1-TXNPS During Transaction Aggregation</b> option type is set to <b>true</b> .
Find Price Item Pricing Batch Description	Used to specify the description for the batch which is used for finding the price item pricing for transactions in the transaction aggregation cycle. For example, <b>Price Item Pricing Verification</b> . This description appears in the error message when the transaction aggregation batches are not executed in the specified sequence.	Yes

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Update Transaction Status Batch Description	Used to specify the description for the batch which is used for updating the status of the transactions (for which the error has occurred) in the transaction aggregation cycle. For example, <b>Update Status</b> . This description appears in the error message when the transaction aggregation batches are not executed in the specified sequence.	Yes
Service Quantity Calculation Batch Description	Used to specify the description for the batch which is used for creating the billable charges for transactions in the transaction aggregation cycle. For example, <b>Service Quantity Calculation</b> . This description appears in the error message when the transaction aggregation batches are not executed in the specified sequence.	Yes
Transaction Completion Batch Description	Used to specify the description for the batch which is used for updating the status of the transactions in the transaction aggregation cycle. For example, <b>Mark Completion</b> . This description appears in the error message when the transaction aggregation batches are not executed in the specified sequence.	Yes
Cleanup Unwanted Data Batch Description	Used to specify the description for the batch which is used for updating or deleting billable charges created for transactions in the transaction aggregation cycle. For example, <b>Clean Up</b> . This description appears in the error message when the transaction aggregation batches are not executed in the specified sequence.	Yes

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Use C1-TXNPS During Transaction Aggregation	<p>Used to indicate whether you want to use an alternative transaction aggregation process when the aggregation ratio is low. The valid values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>true</li> <li>false</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> If you set this option type to <b>true</b>, you need to execute the following batches in the specified order in the transaction aggregation cycle:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Flush All Caches (F1-FLUSH)</li> <li>2. Refresh Pricing (C1-TXNRP)</li> <li>3. Header Validation (C1-TXNHV)</li> <li>4. Validate Transaction and Derive Price Item (C1-TXNIP)</li> <li>5. Populate CI_TXN_DTL_PRITM_SUMMARY Table (C1-TXNPS)</li> <li>6. Price Item Pricing Verification (C1-TXNVP)</li> <li>7. Update Status (C1-TXNEX)</li> <li>8. Service Quantity Calculation (C1-TXNSQ)</li> <li>9. Mark Completion (C1-TXNCM)</li> <li>10. Clean Up (C1-TXNCU) with the <b>Request Type</b> parameter set to <b>EROR</b></li> </ol>	No

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.

7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

## Setting the C1-PAYPORTAL Feature Configuration

### Procedure

To set the **C1-PAYPORTAL** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.

A list appears.

- From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.

A sub-menu appears.

- Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.

The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.

- Enter **C1-PAYPORTAL** in the **Feature Name** field.

- Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Allow Overpayment	Used to indicate whether you want to allow overpayment against an entity while editing the payment amount. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>true</li> <li>false</li> </ul>	Yes
FK Reference for Bill	Used to indicate the foreign key reference which generates the information string for a bill in the <b>Edit Payment Amount</b> screen.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The C1-BLACT foreign key reference for bill is shipped with the product. You can also create a custom foreign key reference, if required.	
FK Reference for Bill Segment	Used to indicate the foreign key reference which generates the information string for a bill segment in the <b>Edit Payment Amount</b> screen.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The C1-BSEG foreign key reference for bill segment is shipped with the product. You can also create a custom foreign key reference, if required.	
FK Reference for Contract	Used to indicate the foreign key reference which generates the information string for a contract in the <b>Edit Payment Amount</b> screen.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> The C1_F_SA foreign key reference for contract is shipped with the product. You can also create a custom foreign key reference, if required.	
FK Reference for Settlement	Used to indicate the foreign key reference which generates the information string for a settlement ID in the <b>Edit Payment Amount</b> screen.	No
	<b>Note:</b> At present, no foreign key reference for settlement ID is shipped with the product. Only the settlement ID appears in the information string. You can create a foreign key reference for settlement ID and specify it in this field.	

- Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
- Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.



The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
How to edit the payment amount against each entity	<a href="#">Editing the Payment Amount</a> on page 968

## Setting the C1\_PERACCT Feature Configuration

### Procedure

To set the **C1\_PERACCT** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1\_PERACCT** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Create Person Account Together	Used to indicate whether you want to create a person and account for that person simultaneously. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Y</li> <li>• N</li> </ul>	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

## Setting the C1\_PER\_REL Feature Configuration

You can define person to person relationship type sequence in the **C1\_PER\_REL** feature configuration. This sequence is used while searching for effective price item pricing at the parent customer level.

### Procedure

To set the **C1\_PER\_REL** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.

- 2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- 3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
- 4. Enter **C1\_PER\_REL** in the **Feature Name** field.
- 5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Person to Person Relationship Type	Used to indicate the person to person relationship type.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> If you want to define more than one relationship type in the feature configuration, you need to specify the sequence in which the relationship type should be considered while searching effective price item pricing at the parent customer level.	

- 6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
- 7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.  
The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence</b> screen	<a href="#">Person to Person Relationship Type Sequence</a> on page 449

**Setting the C1\_PPARM\_FLG Feature Configuration**

**Procedure**

To set the **C1\_PPARM\_FLG** feature configuration:

- 1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- 2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- 3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
- 4. Enter **C1\_PPARM\_FLG** in the **Feature Name** field.
- 5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Multi Price Parameter	Used to indicate whether you want to use the multi parameter based pricing feature. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>True</b> — Indicates that you want to enable the multi parameter based pricing feature.</li> <li><b>False</b> — Indicates that you want to disable the multi parameter based pricing feature.</li> </ul>	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.

7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Multi Parameter Based Pricing</b> feature	<a href="#">Multi Parameter Based Pricing</a> on page 139

## Setting the C1\_PRASNORDR Feature Configuration

### **Procedure**

To set the **C1\_PRASNORDR** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1\_PRASNORDR** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Price Assignment Algorithm	Used to specify the algorithm which contains the default search order for global customers. The valid search order values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AGREED_PRICELIST</li> <li>AGREED_FIRST</li> </ul> You can change this default search order, whenever required. You can also create a custom search order, if required.	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.

- Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Pricing (Person)</a> on page 344

## Setting the C1\_PR\_REC Feature Configuration

**Procedure**

To set the **C1\_PR\_REC** feature configuration:

- Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
- From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
- Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
- Enter **C1\_PR\_REC** in the **Feature Name** field.
- Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Effective Pricing RecordSet Limit	Used to specify the number of records that can be displayed in the <b>Search Results</b> section of the <b>Effective Price Assignment</b> zone. The value must be an integer and not in decimals. The maximum number of records that can be displayed are 5000.	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> If you enter the value as <b>0</b> or if you do not specify the value for the <b>Effective Pricing RecordSet Limit</b> option type, no records will be displayed in the <b>Search Results</b> section.	

- Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
- Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

**Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
<b>Effective Price Assignment</b> zone in the <b>Pricing (Account)</b> screen	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Account</a> on page 311
<b>Effective Price Assignment</b> zone in the <b>Pricing (Person)</b> screen	<a href="#">Effective Price Assignments for Person</a> on page 345

## Setting the C1-PYREQSRT Feature Configuration

### Procedure

To set the **C1-PYREQSRT** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1-PYREQSRT** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Bill	Used to sort columns by the selected option type. The table fields in CI_BILL table are used to set the values for the option type <b>Bill</b> . It also enables sorting by order. Its valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ascending</li> <li>• Descending</li> </ul>	No
Bill Segment	Used to sort columns by the selected option type. The table fields in CI_BSEG table are used to set the values for the option type <b>Bill Segment</b> . It also enables sorting by order. Its valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ascending</li> <li>• Descending</li> </ul>	No
Contract	Used to sort columns by the selected option type. The table fields in CI_SA table are used to set the values for the option type <b>Contract</b> . It also enables sorting by order. Its valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ascending</li> <li>• Descending</li> </ul>	No

**Note:** Above options types are configured for the **Sort By** field for sorting columns on the **Edit Payment Amount** screen.

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

## Setting the C1\_RLENG Feature Configuration

### Procedure

To set the **C1\_RLENG** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1\_RLENG** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Logging Rules for Transaction Feed	Used to indicate whether a log should be generated when you execute the <b>Transaction Validation and Initial Product Determination (C1-TXNIP)</b> batch. The valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• True</li><li>• False</li></ul>	Yes
	<b>Note:</b> This log indicates the rules that were executed for each transaction and whether each rule passed or failed during the execution.	
Maximum Number of Rules in Cache	Used to indicate the maximum number of rules whose entry should be created in the log file.	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

### Related Topics

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Feed Management	<a href="#">Transaction Feed Management</a> on page 641

## Setting the C1-TXNDMYID Feature Configuration

For manually added transactions, the system can generate header details including the header ID automatically if you set the option types in the **C1-TXNDMYID** feature configuration.

### Procedure

To set the **C1-TXNDMYID** feature configuration:

1. Click the **Admin** link in the **Application** toolbar.  
A list appears.
2. From the **Admin** menu, select **F** and then click **Feature Configuration**.  
A sub-menu appears.
3. Click the **Search** option from the **Feature Configuration** sub-menu.  
The **Feature Configuration Search** window appears.
4. Enter **C1-TXNDMYID** in the **Feature Name** field.
5. Click the **Search** button corresponding to the **Feature Name** field.

The **Feature Configuration** screen appears. It contains the following option types:

Option Type	Description	Mandatory (Yes or No)
Dummy File Name	Used to specify the dummy file name.	Yes
Dummy Header ID	Used to specify the dummy header ID.	Yes
Dummy Transaction Source	Used to specify the dummy transaction source.	Yes
Dummy Header Date	Used to specify the dummy header date.	Yes

6. Enter the values for the required option types in the **Feature Configuration** screen.
7. Click the **Save** button in the **Page Title** area.

The changes made to the feature configuration are saved.

#### **Related Topics**

For more information on...	See...
Transaction Feed Management	<a href="#">Transaction Feed Management</a> on page 641

